

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS  
CHINESE-ENGLISH

大中华文库

汉英对照

封神演义  
CREATION OF  
THE GODS  
I



LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS  
CHINESE-ENGLISH

大中华文库

汉英对照

封神演义  
CREATION OF  
THE GODS  
II



LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS  
CHINESE-ENGLISH

大中华文库

汉英对照

封神演义  
CREATION OF  
THE GODS  
III





LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS  
CHINESE-ENGLISH

大中华文库

汉英对照

封神演义  
CREATION OF  
THE GODS  
IV



大中华文库

汉英对照

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS

Chinese-English

# 封神演义

## Creation of the Gods

I



许仲琳 编著

顾执中 译

By Xi Zhonglin

Translated by Gu Zhizhong

新世界出版社

New World Press

外文出版社

Foreign Languages Press

湖南人民出版社

Hunan People's Publishing House





大中华文库

汉英对照

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS

Chinese-English

# 封神演义

## Creation of the Gods

### II



许仲琳 编著

顾执中 译

By Xu Zhonglin

Translated by Gu Zhizhong

新世界出版社

New World Press

外文出版社

Foreign Languages Press

湖南人民出版社

Hunan People's Publishing House



大中华文库

汉英对照

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS

Chinese-English

# 封神演义

## Creation of the Gods

### III



许仲琳 编著

顾执中 译

By Xu Zhonglin

Translated by Gu Zhizhong

新世界出版社

New World Press

外文出版社

Foreign Languages Press

湖南人民出版社

Hunan People's Publishing House





大中华文库

汉英对照

LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS

Chinese-English

# 封神演义

## Creation of the Gods

### IV



许仲琳 编著

顾颉刚 译

By Xu Zhonglin

Translated by Gu Jiegang

新世界出版社

New World Press

外文出版社

Foreign Languages Press

湖南人民出版社

Hunan People's Publishing House



## 图书在版编目(CIP)数据

封神演义：汉英对照 / (明) 许仲琳编著；顾执中译。

北京：新世界出版社，2000.2 (大中华文库)

ISBN 7-80005-486-1

I. 封… II. ①许… ②顾… III. 小说 - 对照读物  
- 汉、英 IV. H319.4:I

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(1999)第74832号

责任编辑：陈有昇

英文编辑：李淑娟

大中华文库

封神演义

许仲琳 编著

顾执中 译

©2000 新世界出版社

出版发行者：

新世界出版社

(中国北京百万庄大街24号)

邮政编码100037

E-mail: nwpcn@public.bta.net.cn

外文出版社

(中国北京百万庄大街24号)

邮政编码100037

http://www.flp.com.cn

湖南人民出版社

(湖南长沙银盆南路78号)

邮政编码410006

制版、排版者：

湖南省新华印刷三厂(湖南新华精品印务有限公司)

印制者：

深圳当纳利旭日印刷有限公司印刷

开本：960×640 1/16(精装) 印张：139 印数：1-3000

2000年第1版第1次印刷

(汉英)

ISBN 7-80005-486-1/I·039

定价：260元(全4卷)

---

版权所有 盗版必究





First Edition 2000

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, now known or to be invented, without permission in writing from the publishers, except for brief quotations by reviewers.

ISBN 7-80005-486-1

© 2000 New World Press

*Published by*

New World Press

24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China

E-mail: nwpcn@public.bta.net.cn

Foreign Languages Press

24 Baiwanzhuang Road, Beijing 100037, China

<http://www.flp.com.cn>

Hunan People's Publishing House

78 Yin Pen South Road, Changsha 410006, Hunan, China

*Printed by*

Donnelley Bright Sun Printing Co., Shenzhen, China

*Printed in the People's Republic of China*





## 总 序

《大中华文库》终于出版了。我们为之高兴，为之鼓舞，但也倍感压力。

当此之际，我们愿将郁积在我们心底的话，向读者倾诉。

—

中华民族有着悠久的历史 and 灿烂的文化，系统、准确地将中华民族的文化经典翻译成外文，编辑出版，介绍给全世界，是几代中国人的愿望。早在几十年前，西方一位学者翻译《红楼梦》，书名译成《一个红楼上的梦》，将林黛玉译为“黑色的玉”。我们一方面对国外学者将中国的名著介绍到世界上去表示由衷的感谢，一方面为祖国的名著还不被完全认识，甚而受到曲解，而感到深深的遗憾。还有西方学者翻译《金瓶梅》，专门摘选其中自然主义描述最为突出的篇章加以译介。一时间，西方学者好像发现了奇迹，掀起了《金瓶梅》热，说中国是“性开放的源头”，公开地在报刊上鼓吹中国要“发扬开放之传统”。还有许多资深、友善的汉学家译介中国古代的哲学著作，在把中华民族文化介绍给全世界的工作方面作出了重大贡献，但或囿于理解有误，或缘于对中国文字认识的局限，质量上乘的并不多，常常是隔靴搔痒，说不到点子上。大哲学家黑格尔曾经说过：中国有最完备的国史。但他认为中国古代没有真正意义上的哲学，还处



在哲学史前状态。这么了不起的哲学家竟然作出这样大失水准的评论，何其不幸。正如任何哲学家都要受时间、地点、条件的制约一样，黑格尔也离不开这一规律。当时他也只能从上述水平的汉学家译过去的文字去分析、理解，所以，黑格尔先生对中国古代社会的认识水平是什么状态，也就不难想象了。

中国离不开世界，世界也缺少不了中国。中国文化摄取外域的新成分，丰富了自己，又以自己的新成就输送给别人，贡献于世界。从公元5世纪开始到公元15世纪，大约有一千年，中国走在世界的前列。在这一千多年的时间里，她的光辉照耀全世界。人类要前进，怎么能不全面认识中国，怎么能不认真研究中国的历史呢？

## 二

中华民族是伟大的，曾经辉煌过，蓝天、白云、阳光灿烂，和平而兴旺；也有过黑暗的、想起来就让人战栗的日子，但中华民族从来是充满理想，不断追求，不断学习，渴望和平与友谊的。

中国古代伟大的思想家孔子曾经说过：“三人行，必有我师焉。择其善者而从之，其不善者而改之。”孔子的话就是要人们向别人学习。这段话正是概括了整个中华民族与人交往的原则。人与人之间交往如此，在与周边的国家交往中也是如此。

秦始皇第一个统一了中国，可惜在位只有十几年，来不及作更多的事情。汉朝继秦而继续强大，便开始走出去，了解自己周边的世界。公元前138年，汉武帝派张骞出使西





域。他带着一万头牛羊，总值一万万钱的金帛货物，作为礼物，开始西行，最远到过“安息”(即波斯)。公元前36年，班超又率36人出使西域。36个人按今天的话说，也只有一个排，显然是为了拜访未曾见过面的邻居，是去交朋友。到了西域，班超派遣甘英作为使者继续西行，往更远处的大秦国(即罗马)去访问，“乃抵条支而历安息，临西海以望大秦”(《后汉书·西域传》)。“条支”在“安息”以西，即今天的伊拉克、叙利亚一带，“西海”应是今天的地中海。也就是说甘英已经到达地中海边上，与罗马帝国隔海相望，“临大海欲渡”，却被人劝阻而未成行，这在历史上留下了遗憾。可以想见班超、甘英沟通友谊的无比勇气和强烈愿望。接下来是唐代的玄奘，历经千难万险，到“西天”印度取经，带回了南亚国家的古老文化。归国后，他把带回的佛教经典组织人翻译，到后来很多经典印度失传了，但中国却保存完好，以至于今天，没有玄奘的《大唐西域记》，印度人很难编写印度古代史。明代郑和“七下西洋”，把中华文化传到东南亚一带。鸦片战争以后，一代又一代先进的中国人，为了振兴中华，又前赴后继，向西方国家学习先进的科学思想和文明成果。这中间有我们的领导人朱德、周恩来、邓小平；有许许多多大科学家、文学家、艺术家，如郭沫若、李四光、钱学森、冼星海、徐悲鸿等。他们的追求、奋斗，他们的博大胸怀，兼收并蓄的精神，为人类社会增添了光彩。

中国文化的形成和发展过程，就是一个以众为师，以各国人民为师，不断学习和创造的过程。中华民族曾经向周边国家和民族学习过许多东西，假如没有这些学习，中华民族决不可能创造出昔日的辉煌。回顾历史，我们怎么能够不对伟大的古埃及文明、古希腊文明、古印度文明满怀深深的感



激?怎么能够不对伟大的欧洲文明、非洲文明、美洲文明、澳洲文明,以及中国周围的亚洲文明充满温情与敬意?

中华民族为人类社会曾作出过独特的贡献。在15世纪以前,中国的科学技术一直处于世界遥遥领先的地位。英国科学家李约瑟说:“中国在公元3世纪到13世纪之间,保持着一个西方所望尘莫及的科学知识水平。”美国耶鲁大学教授、《大国的兴衰》的作者保罗·肯尼迪坦言:“在近代以前时期的所有文明中,没有一个国家的文明比中国更发达,更先进。”

世界各国的有识之士千里迢迢来中国观光、学习。在这个过程中,中国唐朝的长安城渐渐发展成为国际大都市。西方的波斯、东罗马,东亚的高丽、新罗、百济、南天竺、北天竺,频繁前来。外国的王侯、留学生,在长安供职的外国官员,商贾、乐工和舞士,总有几十个国家,几万人之多。日本派出“遣唐使”更是一批接一批。传为美谈的日本人阿部仲麻吕(晁衡)在长安留学的故事,很能说明外国人与中国的交往。晁衡学成仕于唐朝,前后历时五十余年。晁衡与中国的知识分子结下了深厚的友情。他归国时,传说在海中遇难身亡。大诗人李白作诗哭悼:“日本晁卿辞帝都,征帆一片远蓬壶。明月不归沉碧海,白云愁色满苍梧。”晁衡遇险是误传,但由此可见中外学者之间在中国长安交往的情谊。

后来,不断有外国人到中国来探寻秘密,所见所闻,常常让他们目瞪口呆。《希腊纪事》(希腊人波桑尼阿著)记载公元2世纪时,希腊人在中国的见闻。书中写道:“赛里斯人用小米和青芦喂一种类似蜘蛛的昆虫,喂到第五年,虫肚子胀裂开,便从里面取出丝来。”从这段对中国古代养蚕技术的描述,可见当时欧洲人与中国人的差距。公元9世纪中叶,



阿拉伯人来到中国。一位阿拉伯作家在他所著的《中国印度见闻录》中记载了曾旅居中国的阿拉伯商人的见闻：

——一天，一个外商去拜见驻守广州的中国官吏。会见时，外商总盯着官吏的胸部，官吏很奇怪，便问：“你好像总盯着我的胸，这是怎么回事？”那位外商回答说：“透过你穿的丝绸衣服，我隐约看到你胸口上长着一个黑痣，这是什么丝绸，我感到十分惊奇。”官吏听后，失声大笑，伸出胳膊，说：“请你数数吧，看我穿了几件衣服？”那商人数过，竟然穿了五件之多，黑痣正是透过这五层丝绸衣服显现出来的。外商惊得目瞪口呆，官吏说：“我穿的丝绸还不算是最好的，总督穿的要更精美。”

——书中关于茶(他们叫干草叶子)的记载，可见阿拉伯国家当时还没有喝茶的习惯。书中记述：“中国国王本人的收入主要靠盐税和泡开水喝的一种干草税。在各个城市里，这种干草叶售价都很高，中国人称这种草叶叫‘茶’，这种干草叶比苜蓿的叶子还多，也略比它香，稍有苦味，用开水冲喝，治百病。”

——他们对中国的医疗条件十分羡慕，书中记载道：“中国人医疗条件很好，穷人可以从国库中得到药费。”还说：“城市里，很多地方立一石碑，高10肘，上面刻有各种疾病和药物，写明某种病用某种药医治。”

——关于当时中国的京城，书中作了生动的描述：中国的京城很大，人口众多，一条宽阔的长街把全城分为两半，大街右边的东区，住着皇帝、宰相、禁军及皇家的总管、奴婢。在这个区域，沿街开凿了小河，流水潺潺；路旁，葱茏的树木井然有序，一幢幢宅邸鳞次栉比。大街左边的西区，住着庶民和商人。这里有货栈和商店，每当清晨，人们可以





看到，皇室的总管、宫廷的仆役，或骑马或步行，到这里来采购。

此后的史籍对西人来华的记载，渐渐多了起来。13世纪意大利旅行家马可·波罗，尽管有人对他是否真的到过中国持怀疑态度，但他留下一部记述元代事件的《马可·波罗游记》却是确凿无疑的。这部游记中的一些关于当时中国的描述使得西方人认为是“天方夜谭”。总之，从中西文化交流史来说，这以前的时期还是一个想象和臆测的时代，相互之间充满了好奇与幻想。

从16世纪末开始，由于航海技术的发展，东西方航路的开通，随着一批批传教士来华，中国与西方开始了直接的交流。沟通中西的使命在意大利传教士利玛窦那里有了充分的体现。利玛窦于1582年来华，1610年病逝于北京，在华20余年。除了传教以外，做了两件具有历史象征意义的事，一是1594年前后在韶州用拉丁文翻译《四书》，并作了注释；二是与明代学者徐光启合作，用中文翻译了《几何原本》。

西方传教士对《四书》等中国经典的粗略翻译，以及杜赫德的《中华帝国志》等书对中国的介绍，在西方读者的眼前展现了一个异域文明，在当时及稍后一段时期引起了一场“中国热”，许多西方大思想家的眼光都曾注目中国文化。有的推崇中华文明，如莱布尼兹、伏尔泰、魁奈等，有的对中华文明持批评态度，如孟德斯鸠、黑格尔等。莱布尼兹认识到中国文化的某些思想与他的观念相近，如周易的卦象与他发明的二进制相契合，对中国文化给予了热情的礼赞；黑格尔则从他整个哲学体系的推演出发，认为中国没有真正意义上的哲学，还处在哲学史前的状态。但是，不论是推崇还是批评，是吸纳还是排斥，中西文化的交流产生了巨大的影



响。随着先进的中国科学技术的西传，特别是中国的造纸、火药、印刷术和指南针四大发明的问世，大大改变了世界的面貌。马克思说：“中国的火药把骑士阶层炸得粉碎，指南针打开了世界市场并建立了殖民地，而印刷术则变成了新教的工具，变成对精神发展创造必要前提的最强大的杠杆。”英国的哲学家培根说：中国的四大发明“改变了全世界的面貌和一切事物的状态”。

### 三

大千世界，潮起潮落。云散云聚，万象更新。中国古代产生了无数伟大科学家：祖冲之、李时珍、孙思邈、张衡、沈括、毕升……，产生了无数科技成果：《齐民要术》、《九章算术》、《伤寒杂病论》、《本草纲目》……，以及保存至今的世界奇迹：浑天仪、地动仪、都江堰、敦煌石窟、大运河、万里长城……。但从15世纪下半叶起，风水似乎从东方转到了西方，落后的欧洲只经过400年便成为世界瞩目的文明中心。英国的牛顿、波兰的哥白尼、德国的伦琴、法国的居里、德国的爱因斯坦、意大利的伽利略、俄国的门捷列夫、美国的费米和爱迪生……，光芒四射，令人敬仰。

中华民族开始思考了。潮起潮落究竟是什么原因？中国人发明的火药，传到欧洲，转眼之间反成为欧洲列强轰击中国大门的炮弹，又是因为什么？

鸦片战争终于催醒了中国人沉睡的迷梦，最先“睁眼看世界”的一代精英林则徐、魏源迈出了威武雄壮的一步。曾国藩、李鸿章搞起了洋务运动。中国的知识分子喊出“民主与科学”的口号。中国是落后了，中国的志士仁人在苦苦探



索。但落后中饱含着变革的动力，探索中孕育着崛起的希望。“向科学进军”，中华民族终于又迎来了科学的春天。

今天，世界毕竟来到了 21 世纪的门槛。分散隔绝的世界，逐渐变成联系为一体的世界。现在，全球一体化趋势日益明显，人类历史也就在愈来愈大的程度上成为全世界的历史。当今，任何一种文化的发展都离不开对其它优秀文化的汲取，都以其它优秀文化的发展为前提。在近现代，西方文化汲取中国文化，不仅是中国文化的传播，更是西方文化自身的创新和发展；正如中国文化对西方文化的汲取一样，既是西方文化在中国的传播，同时也是中国文化在近代的转型和发展。地球上所有的人类文化，都是我们共同的宝贵遗产。既然我们生活的各个大陆，在地球史上曾经是连成一气的“泛大陆”，或者说是一个完整的“地球村”，那么，我们同样可以在这个以知识和学习为特征的网络时代，走上相互学习、共同发展的大路，建设和开拓我们人类崭新的“地球村”。

西学仍在东渐，中学也将西传。各国人民的优秀文化正日益迅速地为中国文化所汲取，而无论西方和东方，也都需要从中国文化中汲取养分。正是基于这一认识，我们组织出版汉英对照版《大中华文库》，全面系统地翻译介绍中国传统文化典籍。我们试图通过《大中华文库》，向全世界展示，中华民族五千年的追求，五千年的梦想，正在新的历史时期重放光芒。中国人民就像火后的凤凰，万众一心，迎接新世纪文明的太阳。

杨牧之

1999 年 8 月 北京



## PREFACE TO THE LIBRARY OF CHINESE CLASSICS

The publication of the *Library of Chinese Classics* is a matter of great satisfaction to all of us who have been involved in the production of this monumental work. At the same time, we feel a weighty sense of responsibility, and take this opportunity to explain to our readers the motivation for undertaking this cross-century task.

### 1

The Chinese nation has a long history and a glorious culture, and it has been the aspiration of several generations of Chinese scholars to translate, edit and publish the whole corpus of the Chinese literary classics so that the nation's greatest cultural achievements can be introduced to people all over the world. There have been many translations of the Chinese classics done by foreign scholars. A few dozen years ago, a Western scholar translated the title of *A Dream of Red Mansions* into "A Dream of Red Chambers" and Lin Daiyu, the heroine in the novel, into "Black Jade." But while their endeavours have been laudable, the results of their labours have been less than satisfactory. Lack of knowledge of Chinese culture and an inadequate grasp of the Chinese written language have led the translators into many errors. As a consequence, not only are Chinese classical writings widely misunderstood in the rest of the world, in some cases their content has actually been distorted. At one time, there was a "*Jin Ping Mei* craze" among Western scholars, who thought that they had uncovered a miraculous phenomenon, and published theories claiming that China was the "fountainhead of eroticism," and that a Chinese "tradition of permissiveness" was about to be laid bare. This distorted view came about due to the translators of the *Jin Ping Mei* (*Plum in the Golden Vase*) putting one-sided stress on the raw elements in that novel, to the neglect of its overall literary value. Meanwhile, there have been many distinguished and well-intentioned





Sinologists who have attempted to make the culture of the Chinese nation more widely known by translating works of ancient Chinese philosophy. However, the quality of such work, in many cases, is unsatisfactory, often missing the point entirely. The great philosopher Hegel considered that ancient China had no philosophy in the real sense of the word, being stuck in philosophical “prehistory.” For such an eminent authority to make such a colossal error of judgment is truly regrettable. But, of course, Hegel was just as subject to the constraints of time, space and other objective conditions as anyone else, and since he had to rely for his knowledge of Chinese philosophy on inadequate translations it is not difficult to imagine why he went so far off the mark.

China cannot be separated from the rest of the world; and the rest of the world cannot ignore China. Throughout its history, Chinese civilization has enriched itself by absorbing new elements from the outside world, and in turn has contributed to the progress of world civilization as a whole by transmitting to other peoples its own cultural achievements. From the 5th to the 15th centuries, China marched in the front ranks of world civilization. If mankind wishes to advance, how can it afford to ignore China? How can it afford not to make a thoroughgoing study of its history?

2

Despite the ups and downs in their fortunes, the Chinese people have always been idealistic, and have never ceased to forge ahead and learn from others, eager to strengthen ties of peace and friendship.

The great ancient Chinese philosopher Confucius once said, “Wherever three persons come together, one of them will surely be able to teach me something. I will pick out his good points and emulate them; his bad points I will reform.” Confucius meant by this that we should always be ready to learn from others. This maxim encapsulates the principle the Chinese people have always followed in their dealings with other peoples, not only on an individual basis but also at the level of state-to-state relations.

After generations of internecine strife, China was unified by Emperor Qin Shi Huang (the First Emperor of the Qin Dynasty) in 221 B.C. The Han Dynasty, which succeeded that of the short-lived Qin, waxed pow-



erful, and for the first time brought China into contact with the outside world. In 138 B.C., Emperor Wu dispatched Zhang Qian to the western regions, i.e. Central Asia. Zhang, who traveled as far as what is now Iran, took with him as presents for the rulers he visited on the way 10,000 head of sheep and cattle, as well as gold and silks worth a fabulous amount. In 36 B.C., Ban Chao headed a 36-man legation to the western regions. These were missions of friendship to visit neighbours the Chinese people had never met before and to learn from them. Ban Chao sent Gan Ying to explore further toward the west. According to the "Western Regions Section" in the *Book of Later Han*, Gan Ying traveled across the territories of present-day Iraq and Syria, and reached the Mediterranean Sea, an expedition which brought him within the confines of the Roman Empire. Later, during the Tang Dynasty, the monk Xuan Zang made a journey fraught with danger to reach India and seek the knowledge of that land. Upon his return, he organized a team of scholars to translate the Buddhist scriptures, which he had brought back with him. As a result, many of these scriptural classics which were later lost in India have been preserved in China. In fact, it would have been difficult for the people of India to reconstruct their own ancient history if it had not been for Xuan Zang's *A Record of a Journey to the West in the Time of the Great Tang Dynasty*. In the Ming Dynasty, Zheng He transmitted Chinese culture to Southeast Asia during his seven voyages. Following the Opium Wars in the mid-19th century, progressive Chinese, generation after generation, went to study the advanced scientific thought and cultural achievements of the Western countries. Their aim was to revive the fortunes of their own country. Among them were people who were later to become leaders of China, including Zhu De, Zhou Enlai and Deng Xiaoping. In addition, there were people who were to become leading scientists, literary figures and artists, such as Guo Moruo, Li Siguang, Qian Xuesen, Xian Xinghai and Xu Beihong. Their spirit of ambition, their struggles and their breadth of vision were an inspiration not only to the Chinese people but to people all over the world.

Indeed, it is true that if the Chinese people had not learned many things from the surrounding countries they would never have been able to produce the splendid achievements of former days. When we look back





upon history, how can we not feel profoundly grateful for the legacies of the civilizations of ancient Egypt, Greece and India? How can we not feel fondness and respect for the cultures of Europe, Africa, America and Oceania?

The Chinese nation, in turn, has made unique contributions to the community of mankind. Prior to the 15th century, China led the world in science and technology. The British scientist Joseph Needham once said, "From the third century B.C. to the 13th century A.D. China was far ahead of the West in the level of its scientific knowledge." Paul Kennedy, of Yale University in the U.S., author of *The Rise and Fall of the Great Powers*, said, "Of all the civilizations of the pre-modern period, none was as well-developed or as progressive as that of China."

Foreigners who came to China were often astonished at what they saw and heard. The Greek geographer Pausanias in the second century A.D. gave the first account in the West of the technique of silk production in China: "The Chinese feed a spider-like insect with millet and reeds. After five years the insect's stomach splits open, and silk is extracted therefrom." From this extract, we can see that the Europeans at that time did not know the art of silk manufacture. In the middle of the 9th century A.D., an Arabian writer includes the following anecdote in his *Account of China and India*:

"One day, an Arabian merchant called upon the military governor of Guangzhou. Throughout the meeting, the visitor could not keep his eyes off the governor's chest. Noticing this, the latter asked the Arab merchant what he was staring at. The merchant replied, 'Through the silk robe you are wearing, I can faintly see a black mole on your chest. Your robe must be made out of very fine silk indeed!' The governor burst out laughing, and holding out his sleeve invited the merchant to count how many garments he was wearing. The merchant did so, and discovered that the governor was actually wearing five silk robes, one on top of the other, and they were made of such fine material that a tiny mole could be seen through them all! Moreover, the governor explained that the robes he was wearing were not made of the finest silk at all; silk of the highest grade was reserved for the garments worn by the provincial governor."

The references to tea in this book (the author calls it "dried grass")



reveal that the custom of drinking tea was unknown in the Arab countries at that time: "The king of China's revenue comes mainly from taxes on salt and the dry leaves of a kind of grass which is drunk after boiled water is poured on it. This dried grass is sold at a high price in every city in the country. The Chinese call it 'cha.' The bush is like alfalfa, except that it bears more leaves, which are also more fragrant than alfalfa. It has a slightly bitter taste, and when it is infused in boiling water it is said to have medicinal properties."

Foreign visitors showed especial admiration for Chinese medicine. One wrote, "China has very good medical conditions. Poor people are given money to buy medicines by the government."

In this period, when Chinese culture was in full bloom, scholars flocked from all over the world to China for sightseeing and for study. Chang'an, the capital of the Tang Dynasty was host to visitors from as far away as the Byzantine Empire, not to mention the neighboring countries of Asia. Chang'an, at that time the world's greatest metropolis, was packed with thousands of foreign dignitaries, students, diplomats, merchants, artisans and entertainers. Japan especially sent contingent after contingent of envoys to the Tang court. Worthy of note are the accounts of life in Chang'an written by Abeno Nakamaro, a Japanese scholar who studied in China and had close friendships with ministers of the Tang court and many Chinese scholars in a period of over 50 years. The description throws light on the exchanges between Chinese and foreigners in this period. When Abeno was supposedly lost at sea on his way back home, the leading poet of the time, Li Bai, wrote a eulogy for him.

The following centuries saw a steady increase in the accounts of China written by Western visitors. The Italian Marco Polo described conditions in China during the Yuan Dynasty in his *Travels*. However, until advances in the science of navigation led to the opening of east-west shipping routes at the beginning of the 16th century Sino-Western cultural exchanges were coloured by fantasy and conjecture. Concrete progress was made when a contingent of religious missionaries, men well versed in Western science and technology, made their way to China, ushering in an era of direct contacts between China and the West. The experience of this era was embodied in the career of the Italian Jesuit Matteo Ricci. Arriving in



China in 1582, Ricci died in Beijing in 1610. Apart from his missionary work, Ricci accomplished two historically symbolic tasks — one was the translation into Latin of the “Four Books,” together with annotations, in 1594; the other was the translation into Chinese of Euclid’s *Elements*.

The rough translations of the “Four Books” and other Chinese classical works by Western missionaries, and the publication of Père du Halde’s *Description Geographique, Historique, Chronologique, Politique, et Physique de l’Empire de la Chine* revealed an exotic culture to Western readers, and sparked a “China fever,” during which the eyes of many Western intellectuals were fixed on China. Some of these intellectuals, including Leibniz, held China in high esteem; others, such as Hegel, nursed a critical attitude toward Chinese culture. Leibniz considered that some aspects of Chinese thought were close to his own views, such as the philosophy of the *Book of Changes* and his own binary system. Hegel, on the other hand, as mentioned above, considered that China had developed no proper philosophy of its own. Nevertheless, no matter whether the reaction was one of admiration, criticism, acceptance or rejection, Sino-Western exchanges were of great significance. The transmission of advanced Chinese science and technology to the West, especially the Chinese inventions of paper-making, gunpowder, printing and the compass, greatly changed the face of the whole world. Karl Marx said, “Chinese gunpowder blew the feudal class of knights to smithereens; the compass opened up world markets and built colonies; and printing became an implement of Protestantism and the most powerful lever and necessary precondition for intellectual development and creation.” The English philosopher Roger Bacon said that China’s four great inventions had “changed the face of the whole world and the state of affairs of everything.”

## 3

Ancient China gave birth to a large number of eminent scientists, such as Zu Chongzhi, Li Shizhen, Sun Simiao, Zhang Heng, Shen Kuo and Bi Sheng. They produced numerous treatises on scientific subjects, including *The Manual of Important Arts for the People’s Welfare*, *Nine*



*Chapters on the Mathematical Art, A Treatise on Febrile Diseases and Compendium of Materia Medica.* Their accomplishments included ones whose influence has been felt right down to modern times, such as the armillary sphere, seismograph, Dujiangyan water conservancy project, Dunhuang Grottoes, Grand Canal and Great Wall. But from the latter part of the 15th century, and for the next 400 years, Europe gradually became the cultural centre upon which the world's eyes were fixed. The world's most outstanding scientists then were England's Isaac Newton, Poland's Copernicus, France's Marie Curie, Germany's Rontgen and Einstein, Italy's Galileo, Russia's Mendeleev and America's Edison.

The Chinese people then began to think: What is the cause of the rise and fall of nations? Moreover, how did it happen that gunpowder, invented in China and transmitted to the West, in no time at all made Europe powerful enough to batter down the gates of China herself?

It took the Opium War to wake China from its reverie. The first generation to make the bold step of "turning our eyes once again to the rest of the world" was represented by Lin Zexu and Wei Yuan. Zeng Guofan and Li Hongzhang started the Westernization Movement, and later intellectuals raised the slogan of "Democracy and Science." Noble-minded patriots, realizing that China had fallen behind in the race for modernization, set out on a painful quest. But in backwardness lay the motivation for change, and the quest produced the embryo of a towering hope, and the Chinese people finally gathered under a banner proclaiming a "March Toward Science."

On the threshold of the 21st century, the world is moving in the direction of becoming an integrated entity. This trend is becoming clearer by the day. In fact, the history of the various peoples of the world is also becoming the history of mankind as a whole. Today, it is impossible for any nation's culture to develop without absorbing the excellent aspects of the cultures of other peoples. When Western culture absorbs aspects of Chinese culture, this is not just because it has come into contact with Chinese culture, but also because of the active creativity and development of Western culture itself; and vice versa. The various cultures of the world's peoples are a precious heritage which we all share. Mankind no longer lives on different continents, but on one big continent, or in a





“global village.” And so, in this era characterized by an all-encompassing network of knowledge and information we should learn from each other and march in step along the highway of development to construct a brand-new “global village.”

Western learning is still being transmitted to the East, and vice versa. China is accelerating its pace of absorption of the best parts of the cultures of other countries, and there is no doubt that both the West and the East need the nourishment of Chinese culture. Based on this recognition, we have edited and published the *Library of Chinese Classics* in a Chinese-English format as an introduction to the corpus of traditional Chinese culture in a comprehensive and systematic translation. Through this collection, our aim is to reveal to the world the aspirations and dreams of the Chinese people over the past 5,000 years and the splendour of the new historical era in China. Like a phoenix rising from the ashes, the Chinese people in unison are welcoming the cultural sunrise of the new century.



## 前 言

姜太公封神的传说由来已久。《史记·封禅书》记载说：“始皇遂东游海上行礼，祠名山大川及八神，求仙人羡门之属。八神将自古而有之，或曰：太公以来作之。”《旧唐书·礼仪志》引《六韬》云：“武王伐纣，雪深丈馀，五车二马，行无辙迹，诣营求谒。武王怪而问焉，太公对曰：‘此必五方之神，来受事耳。’遂以其名召入，各以其职命焉。既而克殷，风调雨顺。”这“五车二马”，据《北堂书钞》卷一四四引《太公金匮》，乃是四海之神：东海之神句芒，南海之神祝融，西海之神蓐收，北海之玄冥，以及河伯、风伯、雨师。姜太公在古代传说是一位熟知神异之事并且代表上天授予各神以职司的人物。这位姜太公在民间信仰中具有崇高的地位，直到近现代，中国民间还在门窗上张贴“姜太公在此，诸神回避”的条幅——传说他封了众神后却没有了自己的位置，只好坐在窗户上。

《封神演义》写姜太公封神，只是小说的大结局，情节主干还是殷纣王如何荒淫无道，周武王如何被逼举兵讨伐，框架仍是武王伐纣的历史。在《封神演义》之前，演说武王伐纣的小说，最早有刊行元代至治间(1321—1323)的《武王伐纣平话》，这平话中虽然也夹带一些姜太公封神的传说，但是风格写实，主要还是讲历史。接着又有编刊于明代嘉靖年间(1522—1566)的《列国志传》(卷一部分)，从情节和文



字与《武王伐纣平话》比较来看，它是以《武王伐纣平话》为底子再编创的。它也有一些神异的描写，主要情节还是现实的。《封神演义》的作者在写作的时候肯定参照过《武王伐纣平话》和《列国志传》，但是他的创造远远多于因循，不只是在人物情节上别开生面，就是在创作方法上也中另辟蹊径。历史事件只是一个引子，只是一个虚空的框架，作者驰骋想象，吸纳了大量民间信仰的神仙故事，独具匠心地编织出人神共事的小说情节。这里是人世间的西周与殷商的战争，同时又是神与魔的战争。神与圣君集结在仁义的旗帜下，魔与暴君沆瀣一气倒行逆施，经过你死我活的反复较量，正义得到伸张，邪恶被彻底消灭，人间归于西周一统，神的世界秩序也重新得以确定。在战争中阵亡的将士，不论是善是恶，灵魂都统统归趋到封神台受封，似乎经过血的洗礼，所有的灵魂都得到超脱和升华。受封的神灵各领职司，就如周武王大封天下，天下诸侯的封建秩序从此而定一样，神界的品位职司的完整谱系也因封神而编制完成。这个神界的谱系对中国民间信仰产生了深远的影响。《武王伐纣平话》、《列国志传》和《封神演义》都以商周革命为题材，但是就小说类型而言，前二者是讲史小说，《封神演义》则是神魔小说。

《搜神记》谈鬼说怪，它的作者干宝在自序中声明，是为了证明“神道之不诬”，显有宗教的目的。《封神演义》写了许多道教神祇，其中一些如文殊广法天尊、慈航道人、燃灯道人、普贤真人等等是借用的佛教菩萨，小说中贯穿着儒、道、释三教合一的思想，从民间信仰的角度，它详尽地



解说了众神的由来，所有这些都迹近为神道设教。但是它与《搜神记》一类的志怪小说却有性质的不同，神魔也好，宗教也好，都是小说情节之表，这些只是作者藉以表达对现实社会的不满的方式而已。换言之，《封神演义》不是讲神道，而是藉神道寄托着对现实社会的批判。

首先让我们来考究下武王伐纣这一历史题材，弄清楚作者为什么要选取这个题材演义成一部长篇说部。明代嘉靖时代的小说家余邵鱼在《题全像列国传引》中说：“骚人墨客沉郁草莽，故对酒长歌，逸兴每飞云汉，而扪虱谈古，壮心动涉江湖，是以往往有所托而作焉。”《封神演义》作者眼中的武王伐纣有何现实意义呢？武王伐纣发生在公元前1066年。武王的西周与纣王的殷商不是部族与部族的关系，而是侯国与中央共主的关系，这种关系在先秦典籍《尚书》、《诗经》中均有记载，这种关系在战国时代是被公认的。这样，武王伐纣，其性质便是以“臣”伐“君”，用儒家所坚持的君为臣纲的伦理纲常来考量，这是大逆不道。但是儒家又十分推崇周武王，这个矛盾怎样解释？战国后期齐宣王就向孟轲提出了这个尖锐的问题，《孟子·梁惠王下》记齐宣王问孟子云：武王伐纣，“臣弑其君，可乎？”孟子回答说：“贼仁者谓之‘贼’，贼义者谓之‘残’。残贼之人谓之‘一夫’。闻诛一夫纣矣，未闻弑君也。”孟子认为君主不仁不义便是独夫，讨伐独夫不能叫做弑君，这就为武王伐纣找到了合理性。孟子从这个历史实践中产生了他的著名的民本思想，《孟子·离娄上》曰：“桀纣之失天下也，失其民也，失其民者，失其心也。得天下有道：得其民，斯得天下



矣；得其民有道：得其心，斯得民矣；得其心有道：所欲与之聚之，所恶勿施，尔也。”他指出纣王之失天下，就在他不仁不义、倒行逆施而失去民心，失民心则失其民，失其民则失天下，纣王的覆亡是必然的，也是咎由自取。孟子于是给儒家思想关于君臣关系的原 则加上了条件，《孟子·离娄下》曰：“君之视臣如手足，则臣视君如腹心；君之视臣如犬马，则臣视君如国人；君之视臣如土芥，则臣视君如寇仇。”《孟子·尽心下》又说：“民为贵，社稷次之，君为轻。”孟子的民本思想含有宝贵的民主因素，它实际否认了君为臣纲的绝对性，这不但制约了君主的至高无上的绝对地位，而且为臣民推翻一个暴君提供了理论根据。

每个在位的君主，大概心里都不会喜欢孟子的民本思想，因为它无疑是悬在自己头上的利剑；不过在口头上还是要尊重它作为孔孟之道的一部分。唯有明朝开国皇帝朱元璋公开表示不同意，朱元璋认为这些言论抑扬太过，失之偏颇，于洪武二十六年（1393）诏令翰林学士刘三吾等人将它们删节。次年删节告竣，共删去所谓“语言太峻”者八十五条，所余一百七十馀条遂命之曰《孟子节文》颁行天下。武王伐纣的合理性，至少在明朝朱元璋时代给打上了一个大问号。

明朝皇帝对待他的大臣，如果用孟子说的“君之视臣如土芥”来形容是一点也不过分的。纣王以炮烙、蚕盆施于大臣，而明朝皇帝则有“厂卫”、“廷杖”、“诏狱”等等，其中剥皮、凌迟、抽肠以及种种酷刑，暴虐程度比之纣王是有过之而无不及。鲁迅曾愤激地说，“大明一朝，以剥皮



始，以剥皮终，可谓始终不变”（《且介亭杂文·后杂谈》）。明朝开国发展到正德武宗，国势发生逆转。正德十六年间，阶级矛盾和统治阶级内部矛盾达到白热化的程度：刘瑾“阉党”专权，刘六、刘七农民起义，江西宁王叛乱，严重动摇了明朝统治根基。继武宗即位的嘉靖皇帝朱厚熜并不思励精图志，他是武宗的堂兄弟，但他即位后却要尊自己的父亲兴献王为兴献皇帝，完全不顾封建宗法昭穆制度，从而引发著名的“礼仪”之争，那些伏阙争大礼的鲠直的廷臣，统统被打入大狱，笞杖的笞杖，流放的流放，而邪佞之徒如严嵩之类便得以进用，大权渐至落入奸臣严嵩之手。嘉靖皇帝又迷信丹药方术，好事鬼神，日以斋醮为事，长期不理朝政。嘉靖四十五年（1566）海瑞上疏指责说：“吏贪官横，民不聊生，水旱无时，盗贼滋炽，陛下试思今日天下为何如乎？”嘉靖皇帝读疏勃然大怒，立即下旨逮捕海瑞，他身边的太监告诉他，海瑞已作好一死的准备，并不打算逃跑，他只得哀叹道：“此人可方比干，第朕非纣耳。”可见在嘉靖皇帝头上盘旋着武王伐纣的历史阴影，尽管他不承认自己就是那历史上荒淫无道的纣王。

汉代以来，各朝皇帝向自己的臣属施虐的事情并非没有，但没有一个朝代像明朝这样贯彻始终的、普遍的惨酷施虐。有明一朝就是按照朱元璋删节《孟子》并一度罢祀孟子的思路处理君臣关系，实质上是处理与士人的关系的。了解明朝的这一特殊的历史背景，就不难理解《封神演义》的作者为什么会对武王伐纣的历史产生如此浓厚的兴趣，非要把它演绎成一部长篇小说不可。弄明白了《封神演义》创作的





语境，也就比较容易读懂《封神演义》人物情节中所深藏的语义了。

《封神演义》成书于隆庆、万历年间，现存有万历刊本。《封神演义》的主旨是阐发君若无道，臣民当伐之的民本思想。它详尽地描写纣王失道的种种劣行：置炮烙，造虿盆，剖胎敲骨，肆意虐杀忠臣，残害平民，弄得朝纲萎堕，民不堪命。第六回写纣王炮烙敢于直谏的梅伯，黄飞虎议论道：“据我末将看将起来，此炮烙不是炮烙大臣，乃烙的是纣王江山，炮的成汤社稷。古云道得好：‘君之视臣如手足，则臣视君如腹心，君之视臣如土芥，则臣视君如寇仇。’今主上不行仁政；以非刑加上大夫，不出数年，必有祸乱。”另一方面，小说把作为商纣臣属的周文王、周武王描写成仁义的化身，形容他们治理的西周是“民丰物阜，行人让路，老幼不欺，市井谦和”，小说情节展示了他们受到纣王的虐待，被纣王无端地征剿，被逼举兵伐纣的全过程。

值得注意的是《孟子》中那些被朱元璋删掉的话语，被《封神演义》用“古云”的名义把它们捡了回来。其实，永乐皇帝篡了建文的帝位以后便恢复了《孟子》的原貌，有永乐年间由国子监颁刻的《孟子》版本为证，《封神演义》尽可以直书“孟子曰”，不必借用什么“古云”之类的话头，可是它偏偏要说是“古云”，这是不是蓄意的点醒人们不要忘了《孟子节文》，不要忘记朱元璋践踏孟子的民本思想的历史呢？

作为一部长篇小说，《封神演义》的成功之处在于它生动的描写了周文王姬昌、周武王姬发、姜子牙以及他们统率



的将领们，怎样从殷商的忠臣转变成殷商的叛徒和掘墓人这样一个艰难痛苦的历程。这个历程的艰难，与其说在战争，勿宁说是在观念的转变。姬昌被纣王囚禁羑里七年，长子伯邑考被纣王剁成肉酱，姬昌还被逼得忍着巨痛吞食自己儿子肉身做的肉饼。姬昌被纣王无端地加害，手段之残忍令人发指，可是姬昌对纣王并无反叛之意，他临终告诫姬发一定要恪守君臣之道，“纵天子不德，亦不得造次妄为，以成臣弑君之名”。纣王派遣大军几次进剿西岐。西岐的姜子牙在抵御这几次大规模进攻之后，主张反守为攻，东征殷商，这时武王仍拘于父王的遗嘱，对举兵之事犹豫不决，他说：“虽说纣王无道，为天下共弃，理当征伐；但昔日先王曾有遗言：‘切不可以臣伐君。’……总纣王无道，君也。孤若伐之，谓之不忠。孤与相父共守臣节，以俟纣王改过迁善，不亦善乎？”经过姜子牙等大臣反复申述吊民伐罪的大义之后，武王才转变思想，准旨兴师伐纣。从文王到武王的转变，客观上是纣王无休止施虐所逼，但关键还是孟子的民本思想提供了精神支柱的理论武器。

生活在封建宗法社会中，浸染着儒家纲常伦理思想的士大夫，要冒天下之大不韪做逆子贰臣，甚至篡弑，谈何容易！文王的忍辱负重、委曲求全，武王对举兵的犹豫，他们情感的痛苦和思想的矛盾，是真实可信的。当然，这是就小说的艺术世界中的文王、武王而论，历史上真实的武王肯定不会有如此的矛盾和犹豫，因为孔子在他们五百年之后才出世，儒家思想在他们生活的时代即使有，也只有某些不成体系的因素和萌芽而已。小说把文王、武王等等人物放在了孔



子思想已成为统治思想的封建宗法社会环境中进行描写，赋予了他们这个典型环境的典型性格。

从“忠”到“叛”是怎样一个艰难的转变，在黄飞虎身上体现得最丰富和最生动。黄飞虎的妹妹是纣王的西宫黄妃，他自己身居武成王，是殷商的股肱大臣。纣王宠信妲己，炮烙忠良、黄飞虎已义愤填膺；随即他的夫人不堪纣王凌辱而跳楼殒命，他的妹妹黄妃也被纣王摔下楼去身亡。辱妻杀妹，是可忍，孰不可忍？但是，当他的兄弟黄明鼓动他反出殷商，他却说：“黄氏一门七世忠良，享国恩二百余年，难道为一女人造反？”这种似乎不合情理的反应，使读者真切感受到黄飞虎心灵上的重压。后来他终于行动了，但也只是从殷商出走，投奔西周。在西行路上，他每闯一关，必有一场恶战，恶战之前必有一场忠与叛的论战，而论战则是对黄飞虎的信念的严重考验。最严重的考验发生在界牌关下，据守界牌关的守将是他的父亲黄滚，黄滚摆出一副殷商忠臣的面孔，斥责并威逼他：或者投降，庶几黄氏不至于满门罹难；或者弑父，以免他作为父亲的殷商大臣落得不忠的结局。面对自己“义正词严”的父亲，他得之不易的“君不正，臣投外国”的信念顷刻发生动摇，几乎就有下骑投降之意。小说通过黄飞虎等人从“忠”到“叛”的转变，形象的论证了“君之视臣如土芥，则臣视君如寇仇”的合理性。

与黄飞虎反叛君主相辉映的是哪吒忤逆父亲的故事。哪吒闹海以及他在与封建宗法秩序的种种冲突中所表现的天真和无畏，使人很容易联想到《西游记》的孙悟空。然而哪吒却又不同于孙悟空，孙悟空是从石头里迸出来的，真是赤条

条无牵挂，哪吒却有生身父母，因而哪吒也就不能像孙悟空那样超脱以血缘为纽带的封建伦常关系，正是他与封建伦常的冲突，构成了他的性格之不同于孙悟空的独特之处。哪吒的父亲李靖是陈塘关的总兵官，此人求仙不成，却享有不浅的人间富贵，为了保守这份荣华富贵，李靖为人为官都从来是谨小慎微。不意他的第三个儿子哪吒却毫不理会他的苦衷，在外惹事生非，先是打死了仗势欺人的夜叉，接着又结果了不可一世的龙王三太子。哪吒此举是除霸锄奸，乃是大快人心之事。可是李靖并不问是非曲直，见是得罪了权贵，生怕招来灭门之祸，不仅一味指责哪吒，甚至要把哪吒交出去任由龙王处置。李靖的自私和胆小，使他自己几乎丧失了慈父之情。哪吒不愿连累父母，在龙王和父母面前剖腹、剜肠、剔骨肉，以一死来了却此案。在哪吒看来，骨肉既已还给父母，他的灵魂也就和李靖没有了任何关系。可是祭祀他灵魂的祠庙，仍不能见容于李靖。李靖害怕沾惹“私造神祠”的罪名，害怕由此而断送自己的功名富贵，毫不留情地砸毁了神祠，使得哪吒魂灵无以依附。哪吒自认为还了父母骨肉便与父母无涉，于是寻找李靖报仇，打得李靖狼狈不堪。哪吒的二哥木吒跳出来帮助父亲，斥责哪吒是“子杀父，忤逆乱伦”。尽管哪吒陈述事实，但在木吒看来，不仅骨肉属于父母，而且灵魂也属于父母，哪吒要与父母论理简直是大逆不道。木吒教训哪吒说：“天下无有不是的父母！”这个在封建宗法社会中被视为铁的定理，在此时的语境中从木吒口中道出，却含有浓厚的反讽意味。封建宗法的君臣之道，是从父子之道引申出来的，哪吒的故事无疑在更深的层



次上批判了绝对化的君臣之道。

同样处在父与子的矛盾中的毁洪、殷郊，其命运更具悲剧性。他们兄弟是纣王的亲子，同时又是纣王的臣属，他们的母亲被妲己诬陷惨死于纣王之手，他们也被纣王判处死刑。父与子，君与臣，无论从那方面说都是恩断义绝。但是殷洪、殷郊虽然被仙人所救，死里逃生，虽然也一度发誓要为母亲报仇，宣言与纣王这个君父决裂，终于还是冲不破“君叫臣死，臣不得不死，父叫子亡，子不得不亡”这种信条的思想牢笼，在申公豹的煽惑下“浪子”回头，最后做了殷纣王的殉葬人。在《武王伐纣平话》中，太子殷交是逆子贰臣，他在“浪子神庙”里得神人所授“破纣之斧”，殷交挥舞这“破纣之斧”追随武王东征，一路所向披靡，直捣朝歌，并用此斧斩了自己的父亲纣王。《封神演义》对这一情节的改动，突现了传统思想的难以克服的惰性力量，同时也从一个侧面揭示出君臣父子关系准则之绝对化的荒谬性和悲剧性。

作为一部长篇小说，《封神演义》最显著的特点是政治斗争与宗教斗争的结合，人间世界和神魔世界的交融。武王伐纣，按《史记·周本纪》记载，发生在公元前1066年，一月出兵，二月即攻下朝歌。这场战争简直就是摧枯拉朽，殷商王朝瞬息便土崩瓦解。《封神演义》不但把这场战争渲染得复杂化、曲折化和激烈化了，而且在这场战争中注入了十分深厚的政治伦理和宗教思想内容。以武王为首的西周高举仁义的旗帜，辅佐西周的是道家的阐教。阐教之人都秉承天命，深悟玄机，支持仁义，征讨邪恶，他们团结道家的清



流，同时还联合隐指释家的西方教主。以纣王为首的殷商失道寡德，维持殷商腐朽统治的是道家的截教。截教之人如通天教主、申公豹之流，有的是有逆天道、不守清规、助纣为虐的名利之徒，有的是不解天意、不识时务的愚顽痴迂之辈，申公豹头向背后，便是他们倒行逆施的象征。

阐教和截教，道教史上并没有这样的教派，他们显然出自作者的杜撰。阐教、截教的取名出自何典，不得其详，鲁迅从字义上解释：“‘阐’是明的意思，‘阐教’就是正教；‘截’是断的意思，‘截教’或者就是佛教中所谓断见外道。”（《中国小说的历史的变迁》）阐教为正，截教为邪，小说就是如此描写，毫无疑义。问题在于，作者为什么要这样写？这样写的喻义何在？

武王伐纣时还没有道教，道教尊崇的老子和佛教创始人释迦牟尼是孔子同时的人，他们都在武王伐纣的五百年后才诞生，《封神演义》描写的宗教情形决不是历史的摹写，而只能是作者那个时代的现实的投影。问题还是要回到明朝。中国道教由多个派别发展到元末逐渐形成正一道和全真道两大派，正一道以符箓为主，全真道以内丹修炼为主。明朝立国后，朝廷正式将道教划定为正一、全真两大派，朱元璋于洪武七年（1374）作《御制斋醮仪文序》云：“朕观释道之教，各有二徒：僧有禅有教，道有正一、有全真。”又说“禅与全真，务以修身养性，独为自己而已；教与正一，专以超脱，特为孝慈子亲之设，益人伦，厚风俗，其功大矣哉。”基于伦理教化以维护其统治的需要，朱元璋看重正一道。洪武五年（1372）御制制诰，命正一道第四十二代天师张正常





“掌天下道教事”，事实上确认了正一道在道教中的至尊地位。洪武十五年(1382年)朝廷正式设道箓司总管全国道教，并确定正一、全真两派道士的身份，发给两派道士不同的度牒和职衔，使得正一和全真两派泾渭分明，这种派别划分和正一道的主流地位得以制度化和法律化。

明朝历代受皇帝宠信的道士，绝大多数都是正一道的人物。正一道掌管天下道教，很多首领不事性命双修却热衷俗世的富贵荣华，并且仗恃权势胡作非为。史书记载，第四十六代天师张元吉于正统、景泰、天顺、成化年间执掌天下道教事，“宠赉独盛，朝野荣之”，张元吉“素凶顽，至僭用舆服，擅易制书，夺良家子女，逼取人财物，家置狱，前后杀四十余人”。第四十八代天师张彦颢“知天子好神仙，遣其徒十余人乘传诣云南、四川，采取遗经、古器进上方，且以蟒衣玉带遗镇守中贵”，实是一个佞臣。第四十九代天师张永绪“荒淫不检，死无嫡子”。还有被《明史》列入“佞倖列传”的嘉靖时期的陶仲文、邵元节，善于以方术道法迎合嘉靖皇帝，尤其是陶仲文，所获荣耀之显赫，非朝廷儒臣所可比。正一道以斋醮祈禳为职事，擅长符箓法术，又因为被朝廷封为主派，富贵荣华者甚多，道流素质江河日下，在道教理论教义建设方面无甚贡献。

全真道在元朝也曾显赫一时，入明以后被排斥在边缘位置，这个流派的道士荣贵者寥寥无几。处在寂寞中的全真道以修身养性为务，隐栖潜心苦修，他们对于道教理论教义的贡献远远大于正一道。明初武当山全真道士张三丰著有《大道论》、《玄机直指》、《道言浅说》、《玄要篇》等，明



代中叶并未入道的陆西星著有《玄肤论》、《参同契测疏》、《金丹就正篇》等，对于道教内丹学皆有重要建树。全真道和正一道同是道教，在教理教义上并没有根本的不同，正一道吸收全真道理论的某些因素也是不争事实，但是他们的区别也是明显的。全真道强调心性的修炼，更多地吸收佛教禅宗思想，在宗教实践上主张“苦己利人”，因而全真道士一般均能保持出家人的朴素作风，苦心励节，潜心修炼，与那些崇尚符篆、迷恋黄白之术的正一道士有显著差别。

《封神演义》描写的阐教和截教同属道家，第七十七回阐教元始天尊批评截教通天教主，口口声声称“你我道家”，通天教主亦称元始天尊为“道兄”，阐教和截教为道家中的两派，在小说中写得十分清楚。截教助纣为虐，极力维护商纣的腐朽统治，对抗顺应天意的新兴的西周，在阐教中人的眼中他们都是不守清净的名利之徒。第八十二回“三教大会万仙阵”是阐教与截教的大决战，双方都摆出了自己的全部阵容。黄龙真人蔑视截教队伍说：“自元始以来，为道独尊，但不知截教门中一意滥传，遍及匪类，真是可惜工夫，苦劳心力，徒费精神。不知性命双修，枉了一生作用，不能免生死轮回之苦，良可悲也。”燃灯道人等指着截教徒众说：“人人异样，个个凶形，全无办道修行意，反有争持杀伐心。”鸿钧道人则指责截教领袖通天教主热衷名利、放纵邪欲，不守清净，“名利乃凡夫俗子之所争，嗔怒乃儿女子之所事”，岂是道家人的心性！《封神演义》中阐教对截教的批评，切中明朝正一道的要害，而阐教言论和行动则又反映了明朝全真道的立场和观点，由此得出结论说：《封神演



义》所描写的神魔大战，曲折地反映了明朝中期政治与宗教的现实，隐含着站在全真道立场的对正一道与腐朽朝廷沆瀣一气的批判，这样说大概离事实不远吧。

《封神演义》的成书稍晚于《西游记》，并且接受了《西游记》的某些影响。哪吒的形象是一个典型的例证。哪吒的故事在民间流传已久，宋代普济《五灯会元》卷二附《西天乐土应化圣贤》有哪吒小传：“那吒太子析肉还母，然后现本身，运大神力，为父母说法。”《西游记》第八十三回叙哪吒出身经历与小传无大出入，第四回和第八十三回写哪吒使用的兵器是一口剑，变成三头六臂时，六只手所持的六般兵器中有一种“火轮儿”；《西游记》又另写有一个孩童形象的红孩儿，“战裙巧绣盘龙凤，形比哪吒更富胎”，他使的是火尖枪，站在火焰腾腾的车子上。《封神演义》显然是综合了《西游记》的哪吒和红孩儿两人的特点，创造一个手持火尖枪、脚踏风火轮的哪吒形象。这个创造是成功的。

作为神魔小说的《封神演义》与古代神话仙话以及宗教有千丝万缕的关系。哪吒原是佛教故事中的人物，广成子最早见于《庄子·在宥》，赵公明之名首见于《搜神记》，赵公明之妹的三霄娘娘则是民间信仰的紫姑脱胎而来，诸如此类不胜枚举。小说的描写一些人物变化为三头六臂，法身异像则是面如蓝靛，鬓似硃砂，巨齿獠牙，有的还多一只天眼，所有这些显然都源自佛教密宗的尊神造像。即如小说的情节模式，大体上是因袭古老的黄帝赋予蚩尤战争神话。代表正义的黄帝指派应龙出战，蚩尤则命令风伯雨师迎战，两



军旗鼓相当，正不压邪，于是天女下来助战，这才打败了蚩尤。《封神演义》写的两军对战难决雌雄时，就会有一位神仙下来助战，从而扭转战局。情节的构思来源于黄帝蚩尤战争神话是显而易见的。《封神演义》更从神话仙话中获得想象的灵感，我们不能不赞叹小说对战争描写所表现出来的丰富的想象力。比如能使全城全军染上瘟疫的武器“瘟丹”，能使炎夏变成冰天雪地的手段，窥测敌情的千里眼和千里耳，日行千里的风火轮，可以使人翱翔蓝天的肋下肉翅，等等，这些愿望的合理性业已被现代军事科技所证实。《封神演义》的神仙，许多来自神话、仙话和宗教故事，这些神仙经过《封神演义》的描写和改塑，又凭藉通俗文学与大众的亲密关系，便广泛流传于民间，给民间信仰以深刻的影响。小说创造的许多的神仙都被请进地方庙宇，有些佛寺竟供奉托塔李天王，有些道观竟祭祀本来是佛教人物的准提，被民间顶礼膜拜的就更多了。一部长篇小说对于民间信仰产生如此深远的影响，小说史上仅《封神演义》而已。

就艺术而论，《封神演义》不及《西游记》，也不及《三国演义》、《水浒传》、《金瓶梅》。它描写了数以百计的人物，其中性格丰满的形象并不多。这是不是因为人物多而不能集中笔墨描写主要人物所致呢？《三国演义》的人物更多，但《三国演义》形象鲜明的人物可以列出一长串名单，人物多并不必然导致性格苍白的缺点。《封神演义》此缺点应有别的原因在。原因之一，也可以说是最重要的原因之一是《封神演义》把情节冲突二极化。在写殷商朝廷内部斗争时，就只有昏君奸臣与忠臣这一组矛盾；在写黄飞虎叛



逃西周时就只有叛将与朝廷这一组矛盾；在写纣王进剿西周和西周东征纣王时，就只有西周与纣王这一组矛盾。像闻太师这样的人物，前期是一个对纣王极为不满的铮铮忠臣，后期则是与西周不共戴天的顽固敌人。各类人物，无论是凡人还是仙人，都只能像闻太师一样在两极的斗争格局中选择自己的位置。由此，人物性格也趋于两极：好人或者坏人。以单一冲突为基础的情节，不论铺排得如何汪洋恣肆、仪态万方，也是缺乏力度和深度的，活动在这种情节舞台上的人物也必然是平面的、单色调的和概念化的。社会生活中的矛盾从来都是多极存在。《三国演义》正是把它的情节植根在“三”的多极冲突中，其情节和人物才具有和现实生活一样的复杂性、深刻性和生动性。

关于《封神演义》的作者，目前学术界有两种说法：一说是许仲琳，一说是陆西星。

“许仲琳说”的根据是明代天金闾舒冲甫刊本（藏于日本内阁文库）卷二署有“钟山逸叟许仲琳编辑、金闾载阳舒文渊梓行”的字样。许仲琳的生平，除此之外就再未发现新的踪迹。

此说比较通行，但证据却不足。它只有一个孤证。“许仲琳编辑”的题署在天启舒冲甫刊本中只见于卷二，该版本的卷首以及其他各卷均无此题署。天启舒冲甫刊本决非《封神演义》初刻本，它的卷首邗江李云翔序宣称此书是他的朋友舒冲甫从楚地购得，序中有“幸而天启文明，我国家景运洪开”之语，从而判定此本刊刻时间为天启（1621—1627）。卷二所署“金闾载阳舒文渊梓行”的舒载阳与内封识语所



署、李云翔序所称的舒冲甫不是一人，舒载阳所刻之书有万历四十八年(1620)刊本《徐文长先生评唐传演义》，时间稍早。有理由相信，在舒冲甫刊本之前尚有一个舒载阳刊本，遗憾的是此本尚未发现传本。舒冲甫刊本袭用了舒载阳刊本的一些旧版，至少保留了卷二镌有“钟山逸叟许仲琳编辑、金阊载阳舒文渊梓行”的一叶板片。这就是为什么天启舒冲甫刊本仅在卷二署有“许仲琳编辑”的原因。李云翔序称此书是舒冲甫购自楚中的秘册，且由他“删其荒谬，去其鄙俚”而“竟其业”。这样，“舒载阳梓行”和“许仲琳编辑”的字样均要消除掉，现存卷二的首叶是消之未尽的漏网之鱼，使书商的麒麟皮下露出了马脚。现存明刊本还有崇祯长洲周之标序本《新刻钟伯敬先生批评封神演义》十卷一百回，日本无穷会图书馆有藏。此本版心题“全像封神传”，正文的版式为上图下文，并无评语。可是此本未署“许仲琳编辑”。清代康熙三十四年(1695)四雪草堂“清籁阁藏板”本二十卷一百回，此本因袭天启舒冲甫刊本，卷二首叶亦署“钟山逸叟许仲琳编辑”，但却将“金阊载阳舒文渊梓行”改题“竟陵伯敬钟惺批评”。由于此本是天启舒冲甫本的翻刻本，它不能成为“许仲琳编辑”的旁证。清代其他各本，均未有题“许仲琳编辑”者。现存明代和清代各本的序言，也都没有提及过编辑者或作者是许仲琳。

认定许仲琳为作者是相当晚近的事情。天津市图书馆所藏邹存淦钞本的俞景《封神诠解序》(嘉庆二十年·1815)谈到作者时，说“名氏泯灭无闻”。刊于道光二十八年(1848)的梁章钜《浪迹续谈》卷六“封神传”说：“忆吾乡林樾亭先





生，尝与余谈《封神传》一书，则前明一名宿所撰。”现代人访读日本内阁文库所藏天启舒冲甫刊本，方提出作者为许仲琳。但直至今日，我们除了根据“钟山逸叟许仲琳编辑”这个题署，知道许仲琳号钟山逸叟，明南京应天府人之外，对于许仲琳的生平资料没有一点新的发现。再者“编辑”一词从古代小说各种版本使用的情况看，含义比较宽泛，并不是撰著的同义词。《封神演义》的作者为许仲琳，此说还需要有更坚强的证据提出，方能成立。

另一说认为作者是陆西星。根据是1914年古今书室石印本《传奇汇考》（编纂于清乾隆时期）卷七《顺天时》传奇题解：“《封神传》系元时道士陆长庚所作，未知的否。”

此说也是只有一个孤证，而且这个证据还比较软弱：一是它弄错了陆长庚时代，陆长庚是明朝人，不是元朝人；二是它的语气不肯定，“未知的否”，自己也不敢断定。

但是此说的魅力在于陆长庚有生平事迹可考，而且陆长庚的思想与《封神演义》的思想十分相合。陆长庚（1520—1606），名西星，字长庚，号潜虚子，又号方壶外史，晚年皈依佛教密宗后又号淮海参佛弟子蕴空居士，江苏扬州兴化人。据咸丰刊《重修兴化县志》（尊经阁藏板）卷八和《藏外道书》第5册记叙，他少有才华，博览群书，早年事举子业，几试不遇，于是弃儒问道，潜心研究丹法，著有道家内丹学著作多种。他虽未入道，但由于他的理论贡献，却被推为明代中期全真道的代表人物，全真道内丹东派尊他为开山祖师。他晚年皈依佛教密宗，撰有密宗理论著作多种。陆西星由儒入道，又由道入佛，他的著述有着鲜明的三教合一的



思想，他的思想是明代中期主张性命双修的全真道思想的代表。这些思想与《封神演义》完全相合。澳大利亚学者柳存仁指出陆西星晚年学佛自号“蕴空居士”，而《封神演义》有一位“度厄尊人”，两个名号同出《般若波罗密多心经》之“照见五蕴皆空，度一切苦厄”一语，可见陆西星与《封神演义》的关系之一端。如果此说成立，则可以推论陆西星创作《封神演义》是在他皈依佛教后的晚年，不会晚于万历三十四年(1606)。

《传奇汇考》说《封神演义》的作者可能是陆西星，虽然没有说明根据所在，但参与纂写《传奇汇考》的多是知名人士，它的不加断定的口气，也从一个侧面说明执笔者的态度相当慎重。本人倾向于此说。

《封神演义》在二十世纪始有外文译本，大多为选译。最早有德文片断译文，译者为格鲁贝(W Grube)，译文载于译者所著《中国文学史》一书，该书1902年由莱比锡阿梅朗斯出版社出版。德文译本《封神演义：中国神话历史小说》(Feng—Shen Ren—1 Die Metamorphosen der Goetter: Historisch—mythologischer Roman aus dem Chinesischen···)，共二卷，1912年莱登E. J. 布里尔出版社出版。该书第一回至第四十六回为全译，译者是格鲁贝；第四十七回到第一百回为摘译，译者是赫伯特·米勒(Herbert Mueller)。

英文选译收在倭讷译著《中国的神话与传说》(Myth and Legends of China)，1922年伦敦G·哈鲁普出版社出版。

日文选译本《封神演义》，译者为木嶋道，1977年东京谦光社出版。



本译本以北京人民文学出版社 1973 年排印本为底本。该排印本依据清康熙三十四年(1695)四雪草堂刊本,参校广百宋斋石印本、蔚文堂本、三馀堂本以及问渠阁丛书本等等,酌改了四雪草堂本所存在的若干明显矛盾错误之处,是中国现在通行的本子。有些原著的诗词未全部译出,主要照顾西方读者的阅读习惯,个别章节未全部对号入座翻译。但本译本仍为海内外至今最全的英译本。

中国社会科学院  
文学研究所教授 石昌渝

1999 年 10 月 北京

## INTRODUCTION

The legend of the canonization of gods by Jiang Tai Gong (Jiang Ziya) dates back to very early times. The book on canonization in the *Records of the Historian* says that Qin Shi Huang made a ritual tour of the eastern sea. He worshiped famous mountains, big rivers and eight gods, whom he beseeched to let him enter the celestial realm. The eight celestial generals had existed since ancient times or from the time of Jiang Tai Gong. The chapter on ritual affairs in *Old Tang History*, quotes *Liu Tao*, as saying that when King Wu of the Zhou Dynasty led a punitive expedition against King Zhou of the Shang Dynasty, five carriages pulled by two horses came to the barracks. The men begged to see King Wu. The carriages left no trace on the ground which was covered by more than 10 feet of snow. Taken by surprised at their sudden appearance, King Wu asked Jiang Tai Gong why they had come. Jiang Tai Gong replied, "They were gods of five directions coming to work for the king." In the name of King Wu, Jiang asked them to enter and gave them jobs. Later they destroyed the Shang Dynasty and the country enjoyed prosperity under favorable climatic conditions. Quoting *Tai Gong Jin Kui*, Vol. 144, *Excerpts from Books in the Northern Hall* says that the four gods of the sea are: Ju Mang, god of the East Sea, Zhu Rong, god of the South Sea, Ru Shou, god of the West Sea and Xuan Ming, god of the North Sea. There are He Bo, Feng Bo, and Yu Shi as well. In ancient Chinese legends Jiang Tai Gong is a person who is familiar with celestial affairs and appoints gods to undertake various tasks on behalf of Heaven. He is highly esteemed in folk belief. To this day people paste a scroll on doors, saying all gods should stay away because Jiang Tai Gong is here. Jiang Tai Gong is said





to have canonized the gods but he did not have a place for himself among them. As a result he only sits on windows and doorways.

The end of the novel, *Creation of the Gods*, describes Jiang Tai Gong's canonization of gods. The plot mainly deals with the licentious and lewd life of King Zhou of the Shang Dynasty, against whom King Wu of Zhou was obliged to launch a punitive expedition. The framework of the novel is built on the historical theme of the punishment of King Zhou by King Wu. *Before Creation of the Gods*, novels on the same theme appeared in *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou* in the reign of Zhi Chi (1321-1323) of the Yuan Dynasty. The story is realistic in style and mainly deals with history, though it is mixed with a legend on the canonization of gods by Jiang Tai Gong. *A Fictionalized History of the States* (parts of Vol. 1) appeared in the reign of Jia Jing, Ming Dynasty (1522-1566), in the wake of *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou*. Judging by its plot and language, *A Fictionalized History of the States* is written on the basis of *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou*. There are some descriptions of celestials and some episodes are weird. The main plot is still realistic. It is certain that in writing *Creation of the Gods* the author must have read and used certain material from *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou* and *A Fictionalized History of the States* and adopted them for his own work. But the creativeness of the author goes far beyond copying old stories. A historical event is only an introduction or an empty frame. But the author used his rich imagination and combined the event with fairy tales from folk beliefs to create a unique plot in which humans and gods lived together. His approach to the plot and characterization was original and in the novel we find a war in the human world between Western Zhou and Yin-Shang. At the same time there is a war between gods and devils. The gods and the sacred emperor rallied together under the banner of benevolence and justice. The devil and the despotic ruler banded together to carry out perverse acts. Through repeated life and death struggles justice prevailed and evil was totally



destroyed. The human world was unified under the Western Zhou Dynasty. Order in the world of gods was reaffirmed. Warriors, good or evil who died in battle, were canonized on the Terrace of Creation. All souls, having received the baptism of fire, were transcended and sublimed. The canonized gods were given various tasks to perform, like King Wu of the Zhou Dynasty who gave titles and fiefdoms to his warriors. From then on the order of feudal dukes and marquises became uniform. The pedigree of different gods with tasks and ranks was completely classified under canonization. This pedigree in the world of gods exerted a far-reaching impact on Chinese folk beliefs. *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou, A Fictionalized History of the States* and *Creation of the Gods* portray the theme of the revolution in the Shang and Zhou dynasties. The first two are historical novels while the last is a novel of gods and devils.

*Stories of Immortals* is another book that describes ghosts and bizarre episodes. The author Gan Bao claimed in his preface that his aim was to demonstrate that the ways of gods was not fabricated. Clearly it has a religious purpose. *Creation of the Gods* describes many revered deities in Taoism, such as, Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture, Merciful Navigation, Burning Lamp, Universal Virtue, who are borrowed from Buddhism. The idea of combining three religions, Confucianism, Taoism and Buddhism into one is a thread running through the novel. Folk beliefs are used in the novel to describe in detail the origins of various gods. This is close to preaching spirits and deities. As a novel *Creation of the Gods* is different in nature from *Stories of Immortals*, which is a novel about the strange and weird. Gods; evil or religion are only a device in *Creation of the Gods*, and serve as a form through which the author can express his dissatisfaction with reality. In other words, *Creation of the Gods* criticizes society through an allegorical world of spirits and deities.

First, let us make it clear why the author chose the theme of King Wu launching a punitive expedition against King Zhou and developed it into a lengthy story. In the eyes of the author of *Creation of the Gods* how did





the punishment of Zhou by Wu relate to his contemporary world? The event took place in 1066 BC. The relationship of King Wu of Western Zhou and King Zhou of the Yin-Shang Dynasty was not that of one tribe to another. It was the relationship between the regime of a marquis and the central government of the king. The relationship is written down in ancient codes and records of the pre-Qin era, such as *Book of Documents* and *The Book of Songs*. The relationship was universally acknowledged during the Warring States Period. As far as the nature of the punishment of King Zhou by King Wu is concerned it was the punishment of an emperor by an official. This was a monstrous crime of insubordination and a violation of Confucian ethics governing the relationship between a king and his officials. However, the Confucian School pays great respect to King Wu of Zhou Dynasty. How can this contradiction be solved? King Xuan of Qi raised this question with Mencius during the latter part of the Warring States Period. He asked Mencius if, as in the case of King Wu who punished King Zhou, an official could kill a king? (*Mencius, Liang Hui Wang*, second part.) Mencius replied: "To kill or injure the benevolent is called brutal, to kill or hurt the righteous is called cruel. A brutal or cruel person is called a tyrant. We've heard that the tyrant king Zhou was punished; not that the king was murdered." In the opinion of Mencius a king who is not benevolent and righteous is a tyrant. The punishment of a tyrant should not be regarded as killing a king. This proposition enables Mencius to find a rationale for King Wu to punish King Zhou. Mencius founded his well known precept, that the people form the foundation of the state, on the basis of this historical event. In the book, *Mencius, Li Lou Shang*, Mencius said that Jie of Xia and Zhou of Shang had lost their kingdoms. This means they lost the people. The loss of people means the loss of the people's hearts. There is a way to win a kingdom. It is to win the hearts of the people; when you win the hearts of the people you win the kingdom. There is a way to win the hearts of the people; it is to give them what they need or to let them have what they want. Don't give them



what they don't want. That is all.

Mencius pointed out that the reason why King Zhou had lost a kingdom was because he was unrighteous and unjust. He was perverse. He lost popularity. In losing popularity he lost the people. In losing the people he lost the kingdom. The downfall of King Zhou was inevitable; he had only himself to blame. Thus Mencius added a condition to the Confucian relationship of a king and his officials.

In *Mencius, Li Lou Xia* (second part), Mencius said: "If the king regards his officials as hands and feet, they will regard him as heart and stomach. If he regards his officials as dogs and horses, they will look upon him as a common man. If he regards his officials as lumps of earth, they will look upon him as a bandit or enemy." Mencius said in *Mencius, Jin Xin Xia* (second part): "The people are most important. The state comes second. The king is the least important." The idea propounded by Mencius, that people constitute the foundation of the state, contains precious elements of democracy. He denied the absolute authority of the king as the basic principle in the king's dealings with his officials. Not only did Mencius restrict the authority of the king, he also provided a theoretical basis for overthrowing despotic kings by subject people.

Mencius' idea of people being the foundation of state was not welcomed by all incumbent kings, because the idea doubtlessly threatened their position and was like a sharp sword placed over their heads. However, they had to pay lip service to it and respect it as part of the doctrines of Confucius and Mencius. Zhu Yuanzhang, the founder of the Ming Dynasty, publicly expressed disagreement, saying that the remarks gave too much praise or blame and were unjust to one side. In 1393 he ordered Liu Sanyu and other grand academicians to delete the remarks from the text. The deletion was made the following year. About 85 remarks were deleted on the grounds of being too severe in language. About 170 remarks were left and this became known as the *Abridged Essays of Mencius*. They were published nationwide. The rationale for the punishment of



King Zhou by King Wu was seriously questioned during the time of Zhu Yuanzhang of the Ming Dynasty.

The treatment of officials by the emperors of the Ming Dynasty may be described, in the words of Mencius, as the king regarding his officials as lumps of earth. The description is not at all excessive. King Zhou used Paoge (a burning pillar) and Chaipen (a serpent pit) to punish his grand ministers. The Ming emperors used many other ways to torture people. The punishments inflicted on officials in the Ming Dynasty such as flaying people alive, slow death by torture, disemboweling and other varieties of torture were far more cruel than the punishments of King Zhou.

Lu Xun indignantly remarked that the Great Ming Dynasty began with the flaying of people alive and ended in the flaying of people alive. This hardly ever changed. From the founding of the Ming Dynasty to the reign of Zheng De (Wuzong) a perverse situation developed in the country. In the 16th year of Zheng De's reign contradictions between classes and the inner contradictions among the ruling class allowed Liu Jin's eunuch clique to usurp power. Later peasant revolts led by Liu Liu and Liu Qi and the rebellion by Prince Ning in Jiangxi seriously shook the foundations of Ming rule. Zhu Houcong who succeeded Wuzong as Emperor Jia Jing did not make a serious effort to build a strong nation. Being the cousin of Wuzong, Jia Jing wanted to revere his own father Prince Xingxian as the king, in utter disregard of the feudal system of Zhao Mu. This led to the outbreak of the notorious ceremonial and ritual dispute. Upright officials who spoke their minds by bending their knees at the palace gate were all imprisoned. Some were caned. Others were exiled to remote places. Evil and flattering courtiers like Yan Song became trusted officials. The power of the monarch was transferred to the disloyal Yan Song. Emperor Jia Jing held superstitious beliefs about a pill that granted immortality. He worshiped spirits and deities and went on a fast everyday. He rarely held audiences or attended to state affairs. In 1566 Hai Rui submitted a report to the emperor, denouncing officials who were taking bribes and riding



roughshod over the people. The hard pressed people lived in misery; flood and drought occurred frequently; brigands and thieves were rife. The report said that His Majesty could well imagine the situation in the country. Jia Jing read the report and immediately became furious. He gave orders for Hai Rui to be arrested. A eunuch told the emperor that Hai Rui was ready to die and did not intend to run away. Jia Jing sighed and said, "Hai Rui behaved like Bi Gan. Was I King Zhou?" The shadow of King Wu punishing King Zhou in Chinese history weighed heavily on Jia Jing, though he did not admit that he had behaved like the licentious King Zhou.

Ever since the Han Dynasty emperors have acted brutally and treated officials abominably but no dynasty was so thoroughly and universally brutal from beginning to end as the Ming Dynasty. The first emperor of the Ming Dynasty Zhu Yuanzhang deleted passages from the writings of *Mencius* and rejected Mencius' ideas on the relation between a king and his officials. In substance it was the relationship between a king and scholars or intellectuals. If we understand this special historical background we can easily understand why the author of *Creation of the Gods* was so interested in the story of King Wu punishing King Zhou and why he decided make it into a full-length novel. If we understand the circumstances at the time the book was written, we can easily understand the deeper meanings hidden in the plot and characters.

*Creation of the Gods* was completed in the reigns of Long Qing and Wan Li. The Wan Li edition of the book has been preserved to the present day. The main theme of the book is that people are the foundation of state and if the king is morally unprincipled the subject people should punish him. The book describes in detail various evil deeds of the unpopular King Zhou, whose punishments included Paoge and Chaipen. During his reign loyal officials were brutally beaten and killed and the people placed in danger. This led to a disruption of the political system in the Court and people were unable to get on with their normal lives. In Chapter 6 of



*Creation of the Gods* Mei Bo and Huang Feihu remonstrated with the emperor in a forthright manner, saying that as they saw it the Paoge was applied not just to officials but to the territory of King Zhou and the state of Cheng Tang. As the ancients said, if the king regards his officials as hands and feet, they look upon him as the heart and belly. But if he regards them as lumps of earth, they look upon him as an enemy. If the king did not rule benevolently and inflicted extreme torture on his grand masters, great disasters would certainly follow in a few years. The novel portrays King Wen and King Wu, subordinate officials of Shang, as the personification of justice and righteousness. It describes Western Zhou as a state in which the people thrived and there was plenty. "The pedestrians will wait and allow you to pass first. Neither the old nor the young are cheated. The market is stable." The plot of the novel reveals just how people in Western Zhou were being treated by King Zhou of Yin-Shang, who had mounted expeditions to destroy them. They were forced to punish King Zhou.

It is interesting that the words of *Mencius*, deleted from text by Zhu Yuanzhang, were reiterated in *Creation of the Gods*, and attributed to "something said by the ancients". Emperor Yong Le restored the original book of *Mencius*, after he usurped the throne of Jian Wen. This is testified by the block print edition published under the supervision of the Directorate of Education in the reign of Yong Le. *Creation of the Gods* could very well have given Mencius as the source; there was no need to ascribe it to "the ancients". But it did. Why? Was the author reminding readers that Mencius' proposition had been deleted from the *Abridged Essays of Mencius* and the principal that people were the foundation of the state had been distorted?

The success of *Creation of the Gods* as a full-length novel is its vivid delineation of the difficult and painful process of Ji Chang ( King Wen of Zhou), Ji Fa (King Wu of Zhou) and Jiang Ziya in effecting a change of heart in loyal officials of the Yin-Shang Dynasty. The difficulty lay in



effecting a change of heart rather than in waging battles. Ji Chang had been sent to prison in Youli by King Zhou for seven years. King Zhou ordered Ji Chang's eldest son Bo Yikao to be hacked to pieces and forced Ji Chang to eat a pie made of pieces of his own son's flesh. Ji Chang was persecuted or destroyed for no reason. The methods of persecution adopted by King Zhou made one's hair stand on end. For all this Ji Chang did not harbor thoughts of rebellion against him. On his deathbed he advised Ji Fa to observe the principle governing the relationship between a king and officials: "Even if the moral character of the son of Heaven (emperor) is bad, you cannot go so far as to rebel and kill him because you are his official."

King Zhou sent a huge army to wipe out West Qi on several occasions. Jiang Tai Gong advocated attacking Yin-Shang in the east, after beating off King Zhou's attacks, instead of only defending themselves. King Wu, however, was still bound by his father's words and hesitated to undertake a military expedition. He said, "Though King Zhou was bad morally, abandoned by the whole country and should be punished, yet my late father left words that I should under no circumstances punish the king because I am his official. King Zhou was immoral but he was king." He added, "If I attack him I shall be a disloyal official. If my father and I are to observe the high moral principles of a loyal official and wait till King Zhou repents, wouldn't that be good?" After repeated argument by Jiang Ziya and other ministers on the cardinal principle of people punishing the guilty king, King Wu finally had a change of heart. He gave the order to punish King Zhou. The changes in King Wen and King Wu resulted from factors such as the endless persecution of officials, but more importantly it was due to a theoretical weapon, which provided spiritual support. It was Mencius' idea that people are the foundation of the state that made the change of heart possible.

It was not easy for scholar-officials, under the patriarchal clan system of feudalism and the influence of Confucian moral principles of the Court,



to become disloyal officials serving two masters and it was harder still to usurp the power of the king and kill him in defiance of universal condemnation. King Wen was deeply humiliated and showed forbearance and conciliated for the common good. King Wu hesitated to use troops to punish King Zhou. Their conflicting thoughts and painful emotions were real and should be believed. Of course we are speaking only of fictional King Wen and King Wu. The historical King Wu experienced no such contradiction or hesitation. Confucius was born 500 years after the punishment of King Zhou. Confucian ideas may have existed in King Wu's mind. They would have been only fragmentary, not fully formed ideas. The novel places King Wen and King Wu in a patriarchal clan system in which Confucianism is the dominating thought. It makes them typical characters in this typical situation.

How difficult it was to change from loyalty to the king to rebellion against him. This is most vividly and magnificently portrayed in Huang Feihu, who had a sister, Lady Huang who was a concubine of King Zhou and lived in the West Palace. Huang Feihu, Prince for National Pacification and of Military Prowess, was an important official under King Zhou, who was bewitched and loved Daji very much. King Zhou administered a cruel punishment to loyal officials by burning them on a hot brass pillar which made Huang Feihu very indignant and furious. His wife jumped from a building and perished as a result of being humiliated by King Zhou. His sister, Concubine Huang, was thrown from a building by King Zhou and died. If Huang Feihu could tolerate that, what would he not tolerate? Yet when his brother Huang Ming tried to incite him to rebel and leave Yin-Shang, Huang Feihu said, "The entire Huang family has been loyal for seven generations. It has enjoyed the blessings of the state for more than 200 years. Shall I rebel against the king for the sake of a woman?" This rather unreasonable response indicates to the reader the stress Huang Feihu was under. In the end he acted. His action was confined to his departure from Yin-Shang and going over to Western Zhou. In his trip



westward he had to pass through city gates and fight his way out. At each city gate there was bitter fighting. Beside the actual fighting there was a war of words over loyalty and disloyalty. This debate or argument severely tested the beliefs of Huang Feihu. The toughest test came before Jiepai Pass, which was defended by Huang Gun, his father and a loyal official of Yin-Shang. He rebuked his son calling on him to either surrender, so that the entire Huang family would not court disaster, or to kill him so that he might avoid the fate of becoming disloyal to Yin-Shang. Faced with these stern and just words Huang Feihu wavered in his newly acquired beliefs. He almost got down from his ox to surrender to his father. In tracing the change from loyalty to disloyalty, the novel graphically demonstrated the rationale of the theme; if the king regards his official as lumps of earth, they look upon him as an enemy.

The story of the rebellion of Huang Feihu against the king was written alongside another brilliantly portrayed story, that of Nezha who disobeyed his father. The storming of the sea by Nezha and the naivety and fearlessness he showed in the conflict against the patriarchal clan system of feudalism probably reminded readers of Sun Wukong (the Monkey King) in *The Journey to the West*. Yet Nezha is different from Sun Wukong in that the latter was born in the cleavage of a rock, naked and with no worries of any sorts (about clans), whereas Nezha was the son of his parents. Nezha could not transcend feudal moral principle with its ties of blood relations. This difference made the two characters unique and different. The father of Nezha, Li Jing, was the commander of the Cheng Tang Pass. He had not succeeded in entering the realm of celestials but enjoyed great wealth in the world of humans. To preserve his wealth and prestige he behaved as an extremely cautious official. His third son, Nezha, ignored his father's concern and beat to death Yaksha and killed the third son of the Dragon King. This act eradicated evil, and gladdened the hearts of the people. Li Jing was not concerned about the rights and wrongs of the case. He thought that Nezha's act could result in punishment and disaster to the family. He





condemned his son and was going to send him to the Dragon King for punishment. Li Jing's selfishness and cowardice resulted in him losing the affection of his son. Nezha did not want to involve his father. He wanted to end the matter by cutting his own belly, taking out his intestines and picking the flesh from his bones. If he destroyed himself physically, his flesh and bones would be returned to his parents and his soul would terminate his relationship with his parents. After Nezha died, Li Jing would not tolerate the setting up of a temple to worship him. Afraid that he might be punished and lose his wealth and position for the crime of privately setting up the temple, Li Jing destroyed it. Nezha's soul had no place to go. Nezha believed that he had severed his relations with his parents. He sought them out to avenge the displacement of his soul. He gave his father a sound beating. The second elder brother of Nezha, Muzha, came to the father's rescue. He condemned Nezha for wanting to kill the father and becoming a rebel. He had violated the moral principles governing father and son, a heinous crime. Nezha told him what had happened. In the eyes of Muzha the bones and flesh of the son belonged to father; the soul belonged to him as well. Nezha was acting against the way of Heaven. Muzha told Nezha that there was no wrongdoer among parents in the world. This feudal patriarchal principle was regarded as an ironclad rule. Muzha pronounced the patriarchal principle. In the circumstances under which the book was written this was ironical. The divine right of a king over his officials was derived from the patriarchal principle of the father and son relationship. The story of Nezha was ironic but penetrating criticism of the absolute divine rights of a king over his officials.

There were similar contradictions in the father son relationships of Yin Hong and Yin Jiao. The two brothers, the sons of King Zhou, were subordinate officials. Their mother had been falsely charged by Daji and died at the hands of King Zhou. They were given the death sentence by King Zhou. The loyalty owed, both in the father to son and official to king relationship ceased to exist. Yin Hong and Yin Jiao escaped death by



being rescued by celestials. At one time they vowed to avenge the death of their mother and said their relationship with their father had terminated. In the end they could not free themselves from the ideological bondage of the concept that if the king wants officials to die, they must die; if a father wants his sons to die, they must die. They were persuaded by Shen Gongbao to return to their father and were buried alive with him as offerings in the grave. In *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou*, Crown Prince Yin Jiao was a rebel son and disloyal official who served two masters. In the Prodigal Son and Celestial Temple he was given an axe by a celestial to destroy Zhou. He used this axe to follow King Zhou in military exploits in the east. He won victory after victory until he destroyed Zhaoge and used the axe to kill his father. *Creation of the Gods* differs from *The Story of King Wu's Campaign Against Zhou* in a change of the plot in which Yin Jiao was killed by a general of the Western Zhou Dynasty. It is difficult for people imbued with traditional ideas to accept a plot in which a son kills his own father. The book reveals another aspect of the absurdity and tragedy of the accepted king-official and father-son relationship.

The most striking feature of *Creation of the Gods* as a full-length novel is the combination of political struggle and religious strife and the mingling of man's world with the world of deities and devils. According to *Records of the Historian* (Chapter on Zhou Dynasty), the punitive expedition of King Wu against King Zhou took place in 1066B.C. King Wu dispatched his army in January and stormed Zhaoge in February. This battle was likened to crushing dry weeds and smashing rotten wood, and resulted in the collapse of the Yin-Shang Dynasty. In *Creation of the Gods* the battle takes a complicated and zigzag course. Rich political, ethical and religious contents are injected into the novel. Western Zhou led by King Wu, hoisted the banner of justice and righteousness, supported by the Chanjiao of Taoism. Men of the Chanjiao were deeply aware of truth in accordance with the mandate of Heaven. They sup-



ported the cause of righteousness and justice. They rallied top theoreticians in Taoism and leaders of Buddhism in the Pure Land of the West. King Zhou of Yin-Shang was immoral and unpopular. The Yin-Shang Dynasty received support from the Jiejiao of Taoism which included Grand Master of Heaven and Shen Gongbao. Disloyal to the will of Heaven, they were men who had broken moral law and sought wealth and reputation. Some of these men did not know the will of Heaven and their actions were not appropriate to the times. Shen Gongbao was a man whose head looked backward. This symbolized men of this sect going against the current.

There have never been sects such as Chanjiao or Jiejiao in the history of Taoism. They were obviously invented by the author. We have no information about where the author got the names of Chanjiao and Jiejiao. Lu Xun gave an explanation from the meanings of the words. He said the word “Chan” means to expound. Chanjiao means the orthodox religion. The word “Jie” means to cut off or break something. Jiejiao means evil religion (*Changes in the History of the Chinese Novel*). Since Jie means to cut off, it may be surmised that Jiejiao is an evil cult that has been cut off from the orthodox religion. Was Chanjiao described as an orthodox religion and Jiejiao as an evil cult? The novel assuredly depicts these two sects in these terms. The point is why did the author create them as he did? Wherein lies the allegory?

Taoism had not come into existence when King Zhou was punished by King Wu. Lao Zi, whom Taoism revered as a great sage and Sakyamuni, who founded Buddhism, were contemporaries of Confucius. The three were born 500 years after King Wu’s punitive expedition against King Zhou. What *Creation of the Gods* describes is not an historical event but what the author intended was to reflect the reality of the time in which he lived. We have to go back to the Ming Dynasty for an answer to this. Formerly there were many sects in Taoism. It developed into two major sects, the Zhengyi sect and the Quanzhen sect towards the end of the



Yuan Dynasty. The former practiced efficacious charms, phylactery, incantation, and enchantment while the latter cultivated the mind and refined the internal pill. After the founding of the Ming Dynasty the Ming government formally divided Taoism into these two sects. Based on the need to maintain his rule with moral justification, Zhu Yuanzhang stressed Zhengyi sect. In 1372 or the 15th year of his reign Zhu Yuanzhang (also known as Hong Wu) issued an imperial order to allow the Taoists to write books and appointed Chang Zhenchang, the 42nd generation of Heavenly Teacher to oversee Taoist affairs. This in fact acknowledged the supreme position of Zhengyi sect in Taoism. In 1382 the government set up the Dao Luo Si (a government office) to oversee Taoist affairs, affirming the status of Zhengyi and Quanzhen priests, who were issued different certificates and titles. This widened the differences of the two sects. The pre-eminent position of Zhengyi sect became legalized and systematized under the classification.

Taoist priests who were trusted and won favor from emperors of the Ming Dynasty mainly belonged to the Zhengyi sect (which did not devote itself to the cultivation of the mind and the body). They coveted glory, honor and riches of the secular world and their influence perpetuated wrongs and evil. The Record of the Historian said that in the reigns of Zheng Tong, Jing Tai, Tian Shun and Cheng Hua, Zhang Yuanji, the 46th generation of Heavenly Teacher won unusual favors and was honored by the Court and people outside the Court. Zhang was extremely cruel. He secretly rode in a carriage and wore formal gowns and changed imperial orders at will. He seized other people's women and property. He even had a private prison, where he imprisoned over 40 persons. Zhang Yanyu, the 48th generation of Heavenly Teacher, knew that the emperor was fond of celestials. He sent over 10 of his men in a four-horse carriage to Yunnan and Sichuan to gather lost ancient scriptures and antiques, which he sent to the emperor. The emperor was pleased with this. He gave Zhang Yanyu a jade belt and a robe with the pattern of a python. Zhang Yanyu's men



were made local officials with rank as high as that of eunuch officials and were sent to govern from the central government. Zhang Yanyu proved to be a flattering and disloyal official. The 49th generation of Heavenly Teacher, Zhang Yongxu was utterly licentious and when he died he left no son. Tao Zhongwen and Shao Yuanjie were good at witchcraft with which they flattered Emperor Jia Jing. In particular Tao Zhongwen got the highest reward in terms of glory, wealth and official position. No Confucian-scholar officials in the Court could compare with him in glory. After the Zhengyi sect became the chief sect in Taoism, Zhengyi priests enjoyed wealth and high position. The doctrine of Taoism declined; the sect never contributed to the theory and doctrine of Taoism.

The Quanzhen sect, which enjoyed great prestige in the Yuan Dynasty, was more lowly esteemed in the Ming Dynasty. Few priests of this sect enjoyed wealth and high official position. The ones who were left cultivated the mind and body and lived as hermits deep in the mountains. They were devoted to the cultivation of the mind and body. They contributed much more to the theory and doctrine of Taoism than the Zhengyi sect.

The two sects do not differ very much in Taoist religious doctrines. In this they were basically identical. The Zhengyi sect has absorbed certain elements from the theory of the Quanzhen sect, that is an indisputable fact. But their differences are marked. The Quanzhen sect stresses the cultivation and ascetic training of the mind and thought. It has absorbed more from the Chan sect of Buddhism. In religious practice it advocates Takas or self-mortification as a means of benefiting other people. Quanzhen priests preserve the purity of style of a recluse. They are devoted to religious doctrine and engage in religious practices, differing from Zhengyi priests who engage in charms, divination and witchcraft

*Creation of the Gods* describes Chan and Jie as both belonging to Taoism. In Chapter 77 when Heavenly Primogenitor (Yuanshi Tianzun), the patriarch of Chan Taoism criticized Grand Master of Heaven, head of



the Jie sect, he repeated the phrase, “Your Taoist religion and my own Taoist religion”. The Master of Heaven, addressed Heavenly Primogenitor as “elder Taoist brother”. The novel made it quite clear that Chan and Jie were two sects of Taoism. The latter sect helped Zhou perpetuate evil and it propped up the decadent Shang rule. The Shang rule was a counter to the new emerging Western Zhou Dynasty which set the trend in accordance with the will of Heaven. In the eyes of the Chan, followers of Jie were persons who looked for wealth and fame and did not practice purity of mind. Chapter 82, the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap, describes the decisive battle between Chan and Jie. Both sides were in full battle array. Huang Long Zhen Ren (the Yellow Dragon Immortal) looked upon the Jie battle formation, saying that since Heavenly Primogenitor the Jie had enjoyed reverence in Taoism. The Jie, however, had been taught wantonly to bandits and the like. It was a pity that such physical and mental efforts had been wasted. They had cultivated the mind and body to no purpose. They could not avoid suffering on the wheel of transmigration of life and death. This was truly a pity. Burning Lamp pointed at Jie priests, saying that they looked so cruel and so different. None of them wished to cultivate their minds or was devoted to Taoist precepts. The Jie were only intent on killing people. Master Grand Completion reproached the Jie Master of Heaven for seeking fame and wealth and giving free rein to his evil desires as well as observing no purity of mind. He said fame and wealth were what secular persons sought and only ordinary people were beset by dissatisfaction and anger. How could Taoists harbor such thoughts in their minds? The criticism of the Jie by the Chan in *Creation of the Gods* referred indirectly to the Zhengyi sect of the Ming Dynasty. The words and actions of the Chan reflected the stand and viewpoint of the Quanzhen sect. From this we may conclude that the major battle between celestials and devils reflects the ups and downs in the political and religious reality of the Ming Dynasty. It was an indirect criticism of the Zhengyi sect and the decadent Ming Court that collaborated in evil. In saying this



we are not far from truth.

*Creation of the Gods* was completed slightly later than *The Journey to the West*. The former was somewhat influenced by the latter. A case in point is the image of Nezha. The story of Nezha has been popular among the Chinese people for a very long time. The book *Wu Deng Hui Yuan* (Vol. 2) by Pu Ji of the Song Dynasty has an appendage giving a brief biography of Nezha under the title *Xi Tian Dong Tu Ying Hua Shen Xian*. It says that Nezha chopped off his flesh and returned it to his mother. He appeared, demonstrated his magical powers and preached dharma law to his parents. The novel, *The Journey to the West* (Chapter 83), describes the status and experiences of Nezha in more or less the same way as the brief biography. Chapters 4 and 83 of the novel describe the weapon used by Nezha as a sword. When he had three heads and six arms, Nezha held a wheel of fire as one of the six weapons in his hands. The same novel gives another image of a boy, Hong Hai'er, who wore a war skirt nicely embroidered with a dragon and phoenix pattern. Hong Hai'er looked better than Nezha. He used a Fire-Tip Lance and rode a carriage that puffed out fire. *Creation of the Gods* apparently combines features of Nezha and Hong Hai'er from *The Journey to the West* to create the image of Nezha who held a Fire-Tip Lance and rode on Wind-Fire Wheels. This combination is very successful.

As a novel about celestials *Creation of the Gods* is closely related to ancient mythology and religion. There are numerous links. Nezha originally appeared as a character in Buddhist stories. Guang Chengzi made his appearance in *Works of Zhuang Zi*. The name, Zhao Gongming was mentioned for the first time in *Stories of Immortals*. San Xiao Niang Niang, the younger sister of Zhao Gongming, is based on Zi Gu, a character in popular folk legend. Similar connections of the characters in the novel are too numerous to mention. *Creation of the Gods* portrays people who acquire three heads and six arms. The spiritual form has a strange shape with an indigo and cinnabar face and protruding buckteeth. Some



creatures have an extra heavenly eye. All these are obviously derived from images of reverence in the Esoteric sect of Buddhism. The plot and framework of the novel are drawn largely from the ancient myth of the Yellow Emperor battling against Chi You. Representing justice, the Yellow Emperor sent Ying Long to fight against Chi You, who in turn sent Feng Bo and Yu Shi to engage Ying Long in battle. The forces of justice could not win because the two sides were equally matched. Tian Nu came to help Ying Long. This tipped the scales so that justice defeated evil. It is quite obvious that the plot of *Creation of the Gods* comes from the battle of the Yellow Emperor against Chi You. *Creation of the Gods* also draws inspiration from the colorful imagery of the myth of the Yellow Emperor battling against Chi You.

The description of war is imaginative. For example, a pill plagued an entire city and army; hot summer weather was turned into icy wintry cold; thousand *li* ears and eyes could detect the movements of the enemy; a wind-fire wheel traveled one thousand *li* a day; and wings under the hip could make a human fly into sky. Modern military science and technology have only just caught up with some of these ideas. The deities and celestials in *Creation of the Gods* come from mythology, tales of celestials and religious stories. The deities and celestials, reshaped and rewritten in *Creation of the Gods*, which was popular literature, have a close relationship with the people. They were widely known by ordinary people and exerted a strong impact. The celestials invented in the novel are found in local places of worship and were enshrined in Buddhist temples. Li Jing is even worshiped in Buddhist temples. Candi-avalokitesvara, the Buddha, is enshrined and worshiped in Taoist Temples. This god is worshiped by more people than any other. *Creation of the Gods* is the only full-length work in the history of the novel that has exerted a deep impact on the religious beliefs of the people.

As a work of art *Creation of the Gods* is not as good as *The Journey to the West*, *Three Kingdoms*, or *Plum in the Golden Vase*. There are hun-





dreds of characters but few are well developed. Can this be the result of too many characters? *Three Kingdoms* gives a long list of characters who impress the reader with their striking images and features. This shows that a large cast does not necessarily mean less memorable characters. There must be other factors to make them stand out. Perhaps the most important reason that the characters in *Creation of the Gods* are less impressive is because the conflict was polarized. In the account of the internal struggle in the Yin-Shang Court there is only the contradiction between the fatuous and self-indulgent ruler and loyal officials. When Huang Feihu escaped to Western Zhou there is only the conflict between the rebel general and the Court. On the theme of King Zhou launching expedition against Western Zhou and Western Zhou mounting a counter punitive expedition against King Zhou there is only the contradiction between Western Zhou and King Zhou. Grand Tutor Wen appeared as an official who was utterly dissatisfied with King Zhou in the early days but later became a diehard and sworn enemy of Western Zhou. Every character, whether he was an ordinary human being or a celestial, is positioned in the polarized struggle like Grand Tutor Wen. The characters are either good or bad. A plot based on a single conflict, even if the background is complex, lacks depth and vitality. Characters who appear on such a stage can only be dull and monotonous and are mere concepts. *Three Kingdoms*, on the other hand, bases its stories on a greater range of conflicts. The story and characters possess complexity, depth and are vivid as in real life.

There are two current academic views about who was the author of *Creation of the Gods*. One claims that he was Xu Zhonglin and the other asserts that he was Lu Xixing. The claim that Xu Zhonglin wrote it is based on the edition by Shu Chongfu, published in the Ming Dynasty (kept in the Library of the Japanese Cabinet in Japan). The second volume of the edition contains the words, “edited by Xu Zhonglin”, a hermit of Zhongshan. Apart from this nothing else is known about the life of Xu Zhonglin.



Nevertheless quite a number of people regard Xu Zhonglin as the author but there is very little evidence to support it. The words, “edited by Xu Zhonglin” appeared only once in Vol. 2 of the Shu Chongfu edition. The first page of Vol. 1 and other volumes of this edition contain no similar words. The Shu Chongfu edition of the Ming Dynasty, is decidedly not the first block edition of *Creation of the Gods*. The beginning of the volume contains a preface by Li Yunxiang, which says that the novel was purchased in the territory of Chu by his friend, Shu Chongfu. The preface says that as luck would have it the reign of Tian Qi was an enlightened era, the country enjoyed prosperity and prospects were good. It can be assumed from this remark that the novel was carved in a block edition in the reign of Tian Qi (1621-1627). Vol. 2 said that Shu Zaiyang published it in a wood block edition. On the inside page there is a preface, written by Li Yunxiang, that refers to Shu Chongfu. So Shu Zaiyang and Shu Congfu are not the same person. The Shu Zaiyang woodcut edition appeared in 1620 or the 48th year of the reign of Wan Li. It may have appeared slightly earlier. We have reason to believe that another Shu Zaiyang edition must have existed prior to the Shu Chongfu edition. Much to our regret we have not found copies of the book. The Shu Chongfu edition is based on the old Shu Zaiyang edition. Vol. 2 has at least been preserved and contains a flyleaf, acknowledging that it was edited by Xu Zhonglin, a hermit of Zhongshan, together with the words, “block print of Shu Zaiyang”. This is the reason why the Shu Chongfu edition in the reign of Tian Qi has a reference to the Xu Zhonglin edition.

Li Yunxiang says in the preface that Shu Chongfu bought the novel in the territory of Chu. He deleted parts of the book that were absurd and vulgar to improve and perfect it. Thus words such as “Shu Zaiyang woodblock edition” and “edited by Xu Zhonglin” are left out. The first page of the existing Vol. 2 has no such inscription. This leaves clues as to the publisher. The existing edition of the Ming Dynasty contains a preface by Zhou Zhibiao of Changzhou during the reign of Chong Zhen (newly



engraved edition of *Creation of the Gods* with commentary by Mr. Zhong Bo Jing). The book which consists of 100 chapters in ten volumes is now kept in the Library of the Boundless Society of Japan. The title of this edition is *Illustrated Creation of the Gods*, and it has illustrations on top and text below. It does not have a commentary or the claim “edited by Xu Zhonglin”. *Creation of the Gods* of the Qing Lai Ge, Si Xue Cao Tang edition, published in 1695 (34th year of the reign of Kang Xi, Qing Dynasty) has 100 chapters in 20 volumes. This edition is based on the Shu Chongfu edition of the reign of Tian Qi. The words, “edited by Xu Zhonglin, a hermit of Zhongshan,” are found on the first page of Vol. 2. But the words: Jinchang Zai Yang Shu Wen Yuan Xin Xing ( Shu Zaiyang or Wenyuan of Jinchang or Suzhou) are changed to “with commentaries by Zhong Xing ( Bo Jing) of Jingling (now Tianmen Hubei Province)”. Since the book is a reproduction of Shu Chongfu edition of the reign of Tian Qi, it does not provide collateral evidence that it is compiled by Xu Zhonglin. Prefaces to Ming and Qing editions presently preserved also make no mention of the book being edited or written by Xu Zhonglin.

The claim that Xu Zhonglin was the author of *Creation of the Gods* is a fairly recent one. A copy of *Creation of the Gods*, owned by Zou Cungan and now kept in the Tianjin Library, is dated 1815 or the 20th year of the reign of Jia Qing. It has a preface by Yu Jing, titled *Preface to Creation of the Gods with Annotations*. On the subject of the author of *Creation of the Gods*, Yu Jing said that he had sunk into oblivion. *Feng Shen Zhuan* had this to say in *Lang Ji Xu Tan* (Vol. 6) by Liang Zhangju, published in 1848 or the 28th year of the reign of Dao Guang: “I remember when Mr. Lin Yueting, a native of my home county, told me about *Creation of the Gods*. He said it was written by a well-known figure of the Ming Dynasty.” The claim that Xu Zhonglin is author of *Creation of the Gods* is based on a copy of the work edited by Shu Chongfu in the reign of Tian Qi, kept in the Library of the Japanese Cabinet. Apart from the words, “edited by Xu Zhonglin, a hermit of Zhongshan,” (which tells



us that Xu Zhonglin is titled a hermit of Zhongshan and is a native of Yingtianfu, Nanjing) we have up to now, found no new information on the life of Xu Zhonglin. The word “edit” as judged by its usage in various editions of ancient Chinese novels conveys a wide variety of meanings. It is not synonymous with “write”. The assertion that Xu Zhonglin is author of *Creation of the Gods* requires more substantive evidence before it can be accepted.

Another school claims that the author of *Creation of the Gods* was Lu Xixing. The claim is based on the lithographic copy of *Chuan Qi Hui Kao* (edited in the reign of Qian Long, Qing Dynasty) published by the Gu Jin Shu Shi in 1914. Vol. 7 of *Chuan Qi Hui Kao*, titled *Shun Tian Shi*, says that *Creation of the Gods* was written by Lu Changgen, a Taoist priest of the Yuan Dynasty. But it adds that this is not certain. The assertion is not supported by any other evidence and what there is is comparatively weak. First, it places Lu Changgen in the wrong period. Lu Changgen lived in the Ming Dynasty and not in the Yuan Dynasty. Second, the statement, “this is not certain,” indicates the doubts of the writer himself.

But there are other factors which tend to support the claim that Lu Xixing could have been the author. Lu Xixing’s outlook and ideas were very similar to those found in *Creation of the Gods*. Lu Changgen (1520-1606), alias Xixing, alias Jian Xu Zi, alias Fang Hu Wai Shi, became a follower of the Esoteric sect of Buddhism in his later years. He was a native of Xinghua, Yangzhou.

According to Vol. 8 of the *Revised edition of the History of Xinghua County* (preserved in Zun Jing Ge) published in the reign of Xian Feng and Vol. 5 of *Zang Wai Dao Shu* (books outside Taoist Patrology) Lu Changgen, was very talented when young and was very well read. He took part in the imperial examination several times but failed to become a successful candidate. He abandoned hope of becoming a Confucian scholar official and devoted himself to a study of the method of refining pills. He



wrote several books on the subject of pills. As a result of his contributions to the theory of Taoism he was elected a representative of Quanzhen. He was revered as the pioneer teacher in the eastern sect of Internal Pill under Quanzhen. In his later years he became a follower of the Esoteric sect of Buddhism and wrote a number of books on Esoteric theory. From Confucianism he changed to Taoism, from which he switched to Buddhism. Lu Xixing's philosophy combines three religions. He advocated cultivation of the mind and strengthening the body which was stressed by the Quanzhen sect in the mid-Ming Dynasty. His views coincide with the ideas in *Creation of the Gods*. The Australian-Chinese scholar, Liu Cunren, points out that Lu Xixing studied Buddhism in his later years, calling himself Retired Scholar Yun Kong. In *Creation of the Gods* we find a character named Du'er Zun Ren. The two names are derived from the Buddhist precept of Prajnaparamita which says that all perceptions of the five organs — eyes, ears, nose, mouth and lips are void. By reaching a state in which the perceptions are void, a person can transcend suffering. From this we can see that there is a possible relationship between Lu Xixing and *Creation of the Gods*. If this were established we could infer that *Creation of the Gods* was written by Lu Xixing after he became a Buddhist in his later years, which should be earlier than 1606 or the 34th year of the reign of Wan Li.

The book *Chuan Qi Hui Kao* says that the author of *Creation of the Gods* may be Lu Xixing. It did not give us any basis for this assertion, but many well known scholars took part in its compilation. The book refers to the author of *Creation of the Gods* in a very tentative manner which reflects the compilers' caution in their attitude to the subject. I am personally inclined to be cautious also.

Translations of *Creation of the Gods* into foreign languages began at the beginning of the 20th century. Certain parts of *Creation of the Gods* were chosen and translated. The earliest translation by W. Grube was in German. It appeared in the book, *History of Chinese Literature*, which



was written by the translator and published by a publishing house in Leipzig in 1902. The German translation: *Feng-Shen Ren-I Die Metamorphosen der Goetter: Historisch- mythologischer Roman aus dem Chinesischen*, was published in two volumes in 1912. Chapters 1-46 were translated in full by W. Grube. Chapters 47-100 were abridged versions, translated by Herbert Mueller.

The English translation of *Creation of the Gods* by Edward Theodore Chalmers Werner was included in the book *Myths and Legends of China* published in London in 1922.

The Japanese translation of *Creation of the Gods* by Kijima Mitchi was published by Kanko Bookstore, Tokyo in 1977.

The present English translation of *Creation of the Gods* by Gu Zhizhong is from the Chinese edition of the novel published by the Beijing People's Literature Publishing House in 1973 and has been edited. The Chinese edition is based on the Si Xue Cao Tang edition of 1695 (the 34th year of the reign of Kang Xi, Qing Dynasty). The 1695 edition is based on the lithographic edition of the Guang Bai Song Zhai Bookstore, the Wei Wen Tang edition, the San Yu Tang edition, and the Wen Qin Ge series. Many errors and obvious contradictions have been corrected in the compilation of the book. The Beijing People's Publishing House edition is the leading edition of *Creation of the Gods* in China today.

**Shi Changyu**

Professor

Institute of Literature

Chinese Academy of Social Sciences

*October 1999, Beijing*

学术顾问委员会: (按姓氏笔画排序)

丁望道 叶水夫 任继愈 刘重德  
汤博文 李学勤 李赋宁 杨宪益  
沙博理 季羨林 林茂荪 金开诚  
胡文仲 徐公持 袁行霁 梁良兴  
韩素音 戴文葆

总 监 纂: 于友先  
副 总 监 纂: 杨正泉 刘 杲  
陈满之

工作委员会:

主 任: 杨牧之  
副 主 任: 黄友义 阎晓宏  
张光华  
委 员: (按姓氏笔画排序)  
王显臣 李朋义  
李振国 李景端  
陈万雄 周洪力  
凌 原 熊治祁

编辑委员会:

总 编 辑: 杨牧之  
副 总 编 辑 (按姓氏笔画排序)  
马欣来 尹飞舟  
徐明强 黄友义

装 帧 设 计 廖 铁 蔡 荣  
李伯红  
印 装 监 制 李 坦 黄国斌

Academic Consulting Committee:

Dai Wenbao, Ding Wangdao,  
Han Suyin, Hu Wenzhong, Ji Xianlin,  
Jin Kaicheng, Li Funing, Li Xueqin,  
Liang Liangxing, Lin Wusun,  
Liu Zhongde, Ren Jiyu, Sidney Shapiro,  
Tang Bowen, Xu Gongchi, Yang Xianyi,  
Ye Shuifu, Yuan Xingpei

Compilation Supervisor: Yu Youxian  
Compilation Co-Supervisors:  
Yang Zhengquan, Liu Gao,  
Chen Manzhi

Working Committee:

Chairman: Yang Muzhi  
Vice-Chairmen:  
Huang Youyi, Yan Xiaohong,  
Zhang Guanghua  
Members:  
Chan Man-hung, Li Jingduan,  
Li Pengyi, Li Zhenguo, Ling Yuan,  
Wang Xianchen, Xiong Zhiqi,  
Zhou Hongli

Editorial Committee:

Chief-Editor: Yang Muzhi  
Deputy Chief-Editors:  
Huang Youyi, Ma Xinlai,  
Xu Mingqiang, Yin Feizhou

Designers: Liao Tie, Cai Rong,  
Li Bohong  
Production Controllers:  
Li Tan, Huang Guobin

## 目 录

- |          |     |
|----------|-----|
| 第一回      | 2   |
| 纣王女娲宫进香  |     |
| 第二回      | 16  |
| 冀州侯苏护反商  |     |
| 第三回      | 44  |
| 姬昌解围进妲己  |     |
| 第四回      | 68  |
| 恩州驿狐狸死妲己 |     |
| 第五回      | 82  |
| 云中子进剑除妖  |     |
| 第六回      | 98  |
| 纣王无道造炮烙  |     |
| 第七回      | 118 |
| 费仲计废姜皇后  |     |
| 第八回      | 142 |
| 方弼方相反朝歌  |     |
| 第九回      | 172 |
| 商容九间殿死节  |     |
| 第十回      | 190 |
| 姬伯燕山收雷震  |     |
| 第十一回     | 208 |
| 姜里城囚西伯侯  |     |
| 第十二回     | 232 |
| 陈塘关哪吒出世  |     |





# CONTENTS

<i>CHAPTER 1</i>	3
King Zhou and Goddess Nu Wa	
<i>CHAPTER 2</i>	17
The Rebellion of Su Hu	
<i>CHAPTER 3</i>	45
Daji Enters the Palace	
<i>CHAPTER 4</i>	69
The Fox Sprite Murders Daji	
<i>CHAPTER 5</i>	83
A Vain Attempt by Master of the Clouds	
<i>CHAPTER 6</i>	99
The Burning Pillar Torture	
<i>CHAPTER 7</i>	119
Fei Zhong Plots to Depose the Queen	
<i>CHAPTER 8</i>	143
Princes Take Flight	
<i>CHAPTER 9</i>	173
The Prime Minister's Death	
<i>CHAPTER 10</i>	191
The Discovery of Thunderbolt	
<i>CHAPTER 11</i>	209
The Ill-Fortunes of the Grand Dukes	
<i>CHAPTER 12</i>	233
The Birth of Nezha	



第十三回	252
太乙真人收石矶	
第十四回	272
哪吒现莲花化身	
第十五回	294
昆仑山子牙下山	
第十六回	312
子牙火烧琵琶精	
第十七回	330
纣王无道造蜃盆	
第十八回	348
子牙谏主隐磻溪	
第十九回	370
伯邑考进贡赎罪	
第二十回	390
散宜生私通费尤	
第二十一回	412
文王夸官逃五关	
第二十二回	426
西伯侯文王吐子	
第二十三回	444
文王夜梦飞熊兆	
第二十四回	462
渭水文王聘子牙	



<i>CHAPTER 13</i>	253
Combat Between Two Fairies	
<i>CHAPTER 14</i>	273
Reincarnation with Lotus Flowers	
<i>CHAPTER 15</i>	295
Jiang Ziya Leaves Mount Kunlun	
<i>CHAPTER 16</i>	313
Burning the Jade Lute Specter	
<i>CHAPTER 17</i>	331
The Serpent Pit	
<i>CHAPTER 18</i>	349
Flight from Zhaoge	
<i>CHAPTER 19</i>	371
Gifts to the King	
<i>CHAPTER 20</i>	391
San Yisheng Bribes the Corrupt Courtiers	
<i>CHAPTER 21</i>	413
Flight Through the Five Passes	
<i>CHAPTER 22</i>	427
Return of the Grand Duke	
<i>CHAPTER 23</i>	445
Dream of a Flying Bear	
<i>CHAPTER 24</i>	463
From Fisherman to Prime Minister	



## 目 录

- |                  |     |
|------------------|-----|
| 第二十五回<br>苏妲己请妖赴宴 | 488 |
| 第二十六回<br>妲己设计害比干 | 504 |
| 第二十七回<br>太师回兵陈十策 | 524 |
| 第二十八回<br>子牙兵伐崇侯虎 | 546 |
| 第二十九回<br>斩侯虎文王托孤 | 564 |
| 第三十回<br>周纪激反武成王  | 584 |
| 第三十一回<br>闻太师驱兵追袭 | 606 |
| 第三十二回<br>黄天化潼关会父 | 622 |
| 第三十三回<br>黄飞虎泗水大战 | 638 |
| 第三十四回<br>飞虎归周见子牙 | 658 |
| 第三十五回<br>晁田兵探西岐事 | 676 |
| 第三十六回<br>张桂芳奉诏西征 | 694 |
| 第三十七回<br>姜子牙一上昆仑 | 714 |



# CONTENTS

<i>CHAPTER 25</i>	489
A Banquet for Specters in the Palace	
<i>CHAPTER 26</i>	505
Daji Plots Revenge	
<i>CHAPTER 27</i>	525
Return of the Grand Tutor	
<i>CHAPTER 28</i>	547
Punitive Expedition Against the North Grand Dukedom	
<i>CHAPTER 29</i>	565
Death of Two Grand Dukes	
<i>CHAPTER 30</i>	585
Incidents Leading to a Rebellion	
<i>CHAPTER 31</i>	607
Flight and Pursuit	
<i>CHAPTER 32</i>	623
Huang Tianhua Meets His Father	
<i>CHAPTER 33</i>	639
The Battle at Sishui Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 34</i>	659
Huang Feihu Meets the Prime Minister	
<i>CHAPTER 35</i>	677
The Surrender of Two Generals	
<i>CHAPTER 36</i>	695
First Expedition Against West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 37</i>	715
Jiang Ziya Visits Mount Kunlun	



第三十八回	732
四圣西岐会子牙	
第三十九回	754
姜子牙冰冻岐山	
第四十回	776
四天王遇丙灵公	
第四十一回	806
闻太师兵伐西岐	
第四十二回	828
黄花山收邓辛张陶	
第四十三回	848
闻太师西岐大战	
第四十四回	868
子牙魂游昆仑山	
第四十五回	896
燃灯议破十绝阵	
第四十六回	918
广成子破金光阵	
第四十七回	940
公明辅佐闻太师	
第四十八回	962
陆压献计射公明	
第四十九回	982
武王失陷红沙阵	
第五十回	1004
三姑计摆黄河阵	
第五十一回	1024
子牙劫营破闻仲	



<i>CHAPTER 38</i>	733
Four Holy Men in West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 39</i>	755
Jiang Ziya Freezes Mount Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 40</i>	777
West Qi City Under Siege	
<i>CHAPTER 41</i>	807
Grand Tutor Wen Attacks West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 42</i>	829
Surrender of the Bandit Chiefs	
<i>CHAPTER 43</i>	849
Grand Tutor Wen Suffers Defeat	
<i>CHAPTER 44</i>	869
Jiang Ziya's Souls Float Over Mount Kunlun	
<i>CHAPTER 45</i>	897
Confronting the Destructive Forces	
<i>CHAPTER 46</i>	919
Breaking the Golden Light Trap	
<i>CHAPTER 47</i>	941
Zhao Gongming Assists the Grand Tutor	
<i>CHAPTER 48</i>	963
The Death of Zhao Gongming	
<i>CHAPTER 49</i>	983
King Wu in the Red Sand Trap	
<i>CHAPTER 50</i>	1005
The Yellow River Trap	
<i>CHAPTER 51</i>	1025
Grand Tutor Wen's Disastrous Defeat	



## 目 录

第五十二回 绝龙岭闻仲归天	1046
第五十三回 邓九公奉敕西征	1064
第五十四回 土行孙立功显耀	1088
第五十五回 土行孙归伏西岐	1108
第五十六回 子牙设计收九公	1122
第五十七回 冀州侯苏护伐西岐	1150
第五十八回 子牙西岐逢吕岳	1176
第五十九回 殷洪下山收四将	1200
第六十回 马元下山助殷洪	1220
第六十一回 太极图殷洪绝命	1244
第六十二回 张山李锦伐西岐	1264
第六十三回 申公豹说反殷郊	1284
第六十四回 罗宣火焚西岐城	1310





# CONTENTS

<i>CHAPTER 52</i>	1047
Grand Tutor Wen's Death	
<i>CHAPTER 53</i>	1065
Deng Jiugong Attacks West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 54</i>	1089
Earth Traveler Sun Poses a Threat	
<i>CHAPTER 55</i>	1109
Surrender of Earth Traveler Sun	
<i>CHAPTER 56</i>	1123
Deng Jiugong Is Won Over	
<i>CHAPTER 57</i>	1151
Su Hu Against West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 58</i>	1177
Lu Yue, the God of the Plague	
<i>CHAPTER 59</i>	1201
The God of the Plague Is Defeated	
<i>CHAPTER 60</i>	1221
Ma Yuan Assists Yin Hong	
<i>CHAPTER 61</i>	1245
Yin Hong Meets His Doom	
<i>CHAPTER 62</i>	1265
Zhang Shan in West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 63</i>	1285
Yin Jiao's Revolt	
<i>CHAPTER 64</i>	1311
Fires Blaze All Over West Qi City	



第六十五回	1330
殷郊岐山受犁锄	
第六十六回	1352
洪锦西岐城大战	
第六十七回	1370
姜子牙金台拜将	
第六十八回	1396
首阳山夷齐阻兵	
第六十九回	1416
孔宣兵阻金鸡岭	
第七十回	1436
准提道人收孔宣	
第七十一回	1456
姜子牙三路分兵	
第七十二回	1476
广成子三谒碧游宫	
第七十三回	1496
青龙关飞虎折兵	
第七十四回	1518
哼哈二将显神通	
第七十五回	1544
土行孙盗骑陷身	
第七十六回	1572
郑伦捉将取汜水	
第七十七回	1594
老子一气化三清	



<i>CHAPTER 65</i>	1331
The Head of Crown Prince Hoed Off	
<i>CHAPTER 66</i>	1353
Hong Jin Attacks West Qi	
<i>CHAPTER 67</i>	1371
Jiang Ziya as Commander	
<i>CHAPTER 68</i>	1397
Two Hermits Stop the Army	
<i>CHAPTER 69</i>	1417
Trouble at the Golden Chicken Range	
<i>CHAPTER 70</i>	1437
Subjugation of the Peacock	
<i>CHAPTER 71</i>	1457
The Offensive on Three Routes	
<i>CHAPTER 72</i>	1477
Grand Completion at the Green Touring Palace	
<i>CHAPTER 73</i>	1497
Huang Feihu Defeated at the Green Dragon Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 74</i>	1519
Combat Between Two Generals	
<i>CHAPTER 75</i>	1545
An Attempted Theft Ends in Failure	
<i>CHAPTER 76</i>	1573
The Occupation of Sishui Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 77</i>	1595
Transformation into Three Fairies	



## 目 录

第七十八回 三教会破诛仙阵	1614
第七十九回 穿云关四将被擒	1636
第八十回 杨任下山破瘟司	1658
第八十一回 子牙潼关遇痘神	1682
第八十二回 三教大会万仙阵	1706
第八十三回 三大师收狮象狃	1728
第八十四回 子牙兵取临潼关	1754
第八十五回 邓芮二侯归周主	1782
第八十六回 扈池县五岳归天	1810
第八十七回 土行孙夫妻阵亡	1832
第八十八回 武王白鱼跃龙舟	1854
第八十九回 纣王敲骨剖孕妇	1874
第九十回 子牙捉神荼郁垒	1894

# CONTENTS

<i>CHAPTER 78</i>	1615
Breaking the Trap	
<i>CHAPTER 79</i>	1637
Four Generals in Captivity at Chuanyun Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 80</i>	1659
Collapse of the Pestilence Trap	
<i>CHAPTER 81</i>	1683
The God of Smallpox at Tongguan Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 82</i>	1707
At the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap	
<i>CHAPTER 83</i>	1729
Subjugation of Lion, Elephant and Jaguar	
<i>CHAPTER 84</i>	1755
Occupation of Lintong Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 85</i>	1783
The Rebellion of Two Marquises	
<i>CHAPTER 86</i>	1811
The Fall of Generals and Princes	
<i>CHAPTER 87</i>	1833
Death of Earth Traveler Sun and His Wife	
<i>CHAPTER 88</i>	1855
Crossing the Yellow River	
<i>CHAPTER 89</i>	1875
Cutting Open the Bellies of Pregnant Women	
<i>CHAPTER 90</i>	1895
The Subjugation of Two Sprites	



第九十一回 蟠龙岭烧郟文化	1914
第九十二回 杨戩哪吒收七怪	1936
第九十三回 金吒智取游魂关	1960
第九十四回 文焕怒斩殷破败	1982
第九十五回 子牙暴纣王十罪	2004
第九十六回 子牙发柬擒妲己	2026
第九十七回 摘星楼纣王自焚	2046
第九十八回 周武王鹿台散财	2066
第九十九回 姜子牙归国封神	2094
第一百回 武王封列国诸侯	2126



<i>CHAPTER 91</i>	1915
Fire Attack on Mount Coiling Dragon	
<i>CHAPTER 92</i>	1937
The Subjugation of Seven Sprites	
<i>CHAPTER 93</i>	1961
Occupation of Youhun Pass	
<i>CHAPTER 94</i>	1983
The Tyrant's Last Struggle	
<i>CHAPTER 95</i>	2005
The Tyrant's Ten Capital Crimes	
<i>CHAPTER 96</i>	2027
Daji Is Captured	
<i>CHAPTER 97</i>	2047
The Tyrant Ends His Own Life	
<i>CHAPTER 98</i>	2067
Relief Supplies Distributed	
<i>CHAPTER 99</i>	2095
Deification of the Dead	
<i>CHAPTER 100</i>	2127
King Wu Creates the States	







## 第一回

### 纣王女娲宫进香

古风一首：

混沌初分盘古先，太极两仪四象悬。子天丑地人寅出，  
避除兽患有巢贤。燧人取火免鲜食；伏羲画卦阴阳前。  
神农治世尝百草；轩辕礼乐婚姻联。少昊五帝民物阜；  
禹王治水洪波蠲。承平享国至四百，桀王无道乾坤颠，  
日纵妹喜荒酒色，成汤造亳洗腥羶，放桀南巢拯暴虐，  
云霓如愿后苏全。三十一世传殷纣，商家脉络如断弦：  
紊乱朝纲绝伦纪，杀妻诛子信谗言，秽污宫闱宠妲己，  
蜃盆炮烙忠贞冤，鹿台聚斂万姓苦，愁声怨气应障天，  
直谏剖心尽焚炙，孕妇刳剔朝涉歼，崇信奸回弃朝政，  
屏逐师保性何偏，郊社不修宗庙废，奇技淫巧尽心研，  
昵比罪人乃罔畏，沉酗肆虐如鸱鸢。西伯朝商囚羑里；  
微子抱器走风烟。皇天震怒降灾毒，若涉大海无渊边。  
天下荒荒万民怨，子牙出世人中仙，终日垂丝钓人主，  
飞熊入梦猎岐田，共载归周辅朝政，三分有二日相沿。  
文考未集大勋没，武王善述日乾乾。孟津大会八百国，  
取彼凶残伐罪愆。甲子昧爽会牧野，前徒倒戈反回旋。  
若崩厥角齐稽首，血流漂杵脂如泉。戎衣甫着天下定，  
更于成汤增光妍。牧马华山示偃武，开我周家八百年。  
太白旗悬独夫死，战亡将士幽魂潜。天挺人贤号尚父，





## Chapter 1

### King Zhou and Goddess Nu Wa

The Shang Dynasty replaced the Xia Dynasty and ruled China for nearly 650 years. The Shang court produced twenty-eight kings of whom King Zhou was the last.

Before King Zhou ascended the throne, he and his father, King Di Yi, and many civil and military officials were walking in the royal garden one day, viewing the blooming peonies, when suddenly the Flying Cloud Pavilion collapsed and a beam flew towards them. Rushing forward, King Zhou or then Prince Shou, caught the beam and replaced it in a display of miraculous strength. Deeply impressed, Prime Minister Shang Rong and Supreme Minister Mei Bo advised King Di Yi to name him Crown Prince.

When King Di Yi passed away after thirty years on the throne, Crown Prince Shou was immediately crowned king to rule the country in his father's place. King Zhou established his capital at Zhaoge, a metropolis on the Yellow River. The king appointed Grand Tutor Wen Zhong to be in charge of civil affairs and Huang Feihu, Prince for National Pacification and of Military Prowess, to supervise military affairs. In this way, the king hoped the nation would live in peace under a civil administration backed up by the military. The king placed Queen Jiang in the Central Palace; Concubine Huang in the West Palace and Concubine Yang in the Fragrant Palace. They were all virtuous and chaste in their behavior and mild and gentle in manner.

King Zhou ruled his country in peace, and was respected by the neighboring states. His people worked happily in their different professions, and his peasants were especially blessed by favorable winds and rains. There were 800 marquises in the country who offered their allegiance to



封神坛上列花笺，大小英灵尊位次，商周演义古今传。

成汤乃黄帝之后也，姓子氏。初，帝啻次妃简狄祈于高禘，有玄鸟之祥，遂生契。契事唐虞为司徒，教民有功，封于商。传十三世生太乙，是为成汤；闻伊尹耕于有莘之野，而乐尧舜之道，是个大贤，即时以币帛，三遣使往聘之，而不敢用，进之于天子。桀王无道，信谗逐贤，而不能用，复归之于汤。后桀王日事荒淫，杀直臣关龙逢，众庶莫敢直言；汤使人哭之。桀王怒，囚汤于夏台。后汤得释而归国。出郊，见人张网四面而祝之曰：“从天坠者，从地出者，从四方来者，皆罹吾网！”汤解其三面，止置一面，更祝曰：“欲左者左，欲右者右，欲高者高，欲下者下；不用命者乃入吾网！”汉南闻之曰：“汤德至矣！”归之者四十余国。桀恶日暴，民不聊生。伊尹乃相汤伐桀，放桀于南巢。诸侯大会，汤退而就诸侯之位。诸侯皆推汤为天子。于是汤始即位，都于亳。元年乙未，汤在位，除桀虐政，顺民所喜，远近归之。因桀无道，大旱七年，成汤祈祷桑林，天降大雨。又以庄山之金铸币，救民之命。作乐“大濩”，濩者护也，言汤宽仁大德，能救护生民也。在位十三年而崩，寿百岁，享国六百四十年，传至商受而止：

成汤	太甲	沃丁	太庚	小甲	雍己
太戊	仲丁	外壬	河亶甲	祖乙	祖辛
沃甲	祖丁	南庚	阳甲	盘庚	小辛
小乙	武丁	祖庚	祖甲	廩辛	庚丁
武乙	太丁	帝乙	纣王		

纣王乃帝乙之三子也。帝乙生三子：长曰微子启；次曰



four dukes, each of whom ruled over 200 of these marquises on behalf of King Zhou. The four dukes were: the East Grand Duke Jiang Huanchu, the South Grand Duke E Chongyu, the West Grand Duke Ji Chang and the North Grand Duke Chong Houhu.

In the second month of the seventh year of the reign of King Zhou, a report reached Zhaoge of a rebellion of seventy-two marquises in the North Sea district, and Grand Tutor Wen Zhong was immediately ordered to lead a strong army to suppress the rebels. One day when King Zhou was holding court, Shang Rong stepped out from the right row, knelt and said, "Your humble Prime Minister Shang Rong begs to report something urgent to Your Majesty. Tomorrow is the 15th day of the third month, the birthday of Goddess Nu Wa, and Your Majesty should honor her and hold a ceremony at her temple."

"What has Goddess Nu Wa done that a great king such as myself is obliged to go to her temple and worship her?" King Zhou asked.

"Goddess Nu Wa's been a great goddess since ancient times and possesses saintly virtues. When the enraged demon Gong Gong knocked his head against Buzhou Mountain, the northwest section of Heaven collapsed and the earth sunk down in the southeast. At this critical moment, Nu Wa came to the rescue and mended Heaven with multi-colored stones she had obtained and refined from a mountain," Shang Rong explained. "She's performed this great service for the people, who've built temples to honor her in gratitude. Zhaoge is fortunate to have the chance to worship this kind goddess. She'll ensure peace and health to the people and prosperity to the country; she'll bring us timely wind and rain and keep us free from famine and war. She's the proper guardian angel for both the people and the nation. So I make bold to suggest that Your Majesty honor her tomorrow."

"You're right, Prime Minister. I'll do as you advise."

Returning to his residential palace, King Zhou ordered a notice be issued that His Majesty, together with his civil and military officials, were to make a pilgrimage to worship Goddess Nu Wa at her temple the next



微子衍；三曰寿王。因帝乙游于御园，领众文武玩赏牡丹，因飞云阁塌了一梁，寿王托梁换柱，力大无比；因首相商容、上大夫梅伯、赵启等上本立东宫，乃立季子寿王为太子。后帝乙在位三十年而崩，托孤与太师闻仲，随立寿王为天子，名曰纣王，都朝歌。文有太师闻仲，武有镇国武成王黄飞虎；文足以安邦，武足以定国。中宫元配皇后姜氏，西宫妃黄氏，馨庆宫妃杨氏：三宫后妃，皆德性贞静，柔和贤淑。纣王坐享太平，万民乐业，风调雨顺，国泰民安；四夷拱手，八方宾服，八百镇诸侯尽朝于商——有四路大诸侯率领八百小诸侯，东伯侯姜桓楚，居于东鲁，南伯侯鄂崇禹，西伯侯姬昌，北伯侯崇侯虎；每一镇诸侯领二百镇小诸侯，共八百镇诸侯属商。

纣王七年，春二月，忽报到朝歌，反了北海七十二路诸侯袁福通等。太师闻仲奉敕征北。不题。

一日，纣王早朝登殿，设聚文武。但见：

瑞霭纷纭，金銮殿上坐君王；祥光缭绕，白玉阶前列文武。

沉檀八百喷金炉，则见那珠帘高卷；兰麝氤氲笼宝扇，且看他雉尾低回。

天子问当驾官：“有奏章出班，无事朝散。”言未毕，只见右班中一人出班，俯伏金阶，高擎牙笏，山呼称臣：“臣商容待罪宰相，执掌朝纲，有事不敢不奏。明日乃三月十五日，女娲娘娘圣诞之辰，请陛下驾临女娲宫降香。”王曰：“女娲有何功德，朕轻万乘而往降香？”商容奏曰：“女娲娘娘乃上古神女，生有圣德。那时共工氏头触不周山，天倾西北，地陷东南；女娲乃采五色石，炼之以补青天，故有功于百姓。黎



day.

It would have been better if he hadn't gone at all, for it was this very pilgrimage that caused the fall of the Shang Dynasty, making it impossible for the people to live in peace. It was as if the king had tossed a fishing line into a big river and unexpectedly caught numerous disasters leading to the loss of both his throne and his life.

The king and his entourage left the palace and made their way through the south gate of the capital. Every house they passed was decorated with bright silk, and the streets were scented for the king by burning incense. The king was accompanied by 3,000 cavalrymen and 800 royal guards under the command of General Huang Feihu, Prince for National Pacification and of Military Prowess and followed by all the officials of the royal court.

Reaching the Temple of Goddess Nu Wa, King Zhou left his royal carriage and went to the main hall, where he burned incense sticks, bowed low with his ministers and offered prayers. King Zhou then wandered about the hall, finding it splendidly decorated in gold and other colors. Before the statue of the goddess stood golden lads holding pennants, and jade lasses holding S-shaped jade ornaments which symbolized peace and happiness. The jade hooks on the curtain hung obliquely, like new crescent moons suspended in the air, and hundreds of fine phoenixes embroidered on the curtain appeared to be flying towards the North Pole. Beside the altar of the goddess, made of fragrant wood, cranes and dragons were dancing in the scented smoke rising from the gold incense burners and the sparkling flames of the silvery candles.

As King Zhou was admiring the splendors of the hall, a whirlwind suddenly blew up, rolling back the curtain and exposing the image of the goddess to all. She was extremely beautiful, much more than flowers, more than the fairy in the moon palace, and certainly more than any woman in the world. She looked quite alive, smiling sweetly at the king and staring at him with joy in her eyes.

Her utter beauty bewitched King Zhou, setting him on fire with lust.



庶立禋祀以报之。今朝歌祀此福神，则四时康泰，国祚绵长，风调雨顺，灾害潜消。此福国庇民之正神，陛下当往行香。”王曰：“准卿奏章。”纣王还宫。旨意传出：次日天子乘辇，随带两班文武，往女娲宫进香。——此一回纣王不来还好，只因进香，惹得四海荒荒，生民失业。正所谓：漫江撒下钩和线，从此钓出是非来。怎见得，有诗为证：

天子鸾舆出凤城，旌旄瑞色映簪缨。龙光剑吐风云色；  
赤羽幢摇日月精。堤柳晓分仙掌露；溪花光耀翠裘清。  
欲知巡幸瞻天表，万国衣冠拜圣明。

驾出朝歌南门，家家焚香设火，户户结彩铺毡。三千铁骑，八百御林，武成王黄飞虎保驾，满朝文武随行，前至女娲宫。天子离辇，上大殿，香焚炉中；文武随班拜贺毕。纣王观看殿中华丽。怎见得：

殿前华丽，五彩金妆。金童对对执幡幢；玉女双双捧如意。  
玉钩斜挂，半轮新月悬空；宝帐婆婆，万对彩鸾朝斗。  
碧落床边，俱是舞鹤翔鸾；沉香宝座，造就走龙飞凤。  
飘飘奇彩异寻常，金炉瑞霭；袅袅祯祥腾紫雾，银烛辉煌。  
君王正看行宫景，一阵狂风透胆寒。

纣王正看此宫殿宇齐整，楼阁丰隆，忽一阵狂风，卷起幔帐，现出女娲圣像，容貌端丽，瑞彩翩跹，国色天姿，婉然如生；真是蕊宫仙子临凡，月殿嫦娥下世。古语云：“国之将兴，必有祯祥；国之将亡，必有妖孽。”纣王一见，神魂飘荡，陡起淫心。自思：朕贵为天子，富有四海，纵有六院三宫，并无有此艳色。王曰：“取文房四宝。”侍驾官忙取将来，献与纣王。天子深润紫毫，在行宫粉壁之上作诗一首：



He desired to possess her, and thought to himself in frustration, "Though I'm wealthy and powerful and have concubines and maidservants filling my palace, there's none as beautiful and charming as this goddess."

He ordered his attendants to bring brush and ink and wrote a poem on the wall near the image of the goddess to express his admiration and deep love for her. The poem ran like this:

The scene is gay with phoenixes and dragons,  
But they are only clay and golden colors.  
Brows like winding hills in jade green,  
Sleeves like graceful clouds, you're  
As pear blossoms soaked with raindrops,  
Charming as peonies enveloped in mist.  
I pray that you come alive,  
With sweet voice and gentle movements,  
And I'll bring you along to my palace.

When he finished writing, Prime Minister Shang Rong approached him. "Nu Wa's been a proper goddess and the guardian angel for Zhaoge, I only suggested that you worship her so that she would continue to bless the people with timely rains and favorable winds and ensure that they'll continue to live in peace. But with this poem, you've not only shown your lack of sincerity on this trip but have insulted her as well." He demanded, "This isn't the way a king should behave. I pray you wash this blasphemous poem off the wall, lest you be condemned by the people for your immorality."

"I found Goddess Nu Wa so beautiful that I wrote a poem in praise of her, and that's all. Hold your tongue. Don't forget that I am the king. People will be only too glad to read the poem I wrote in my own hand, for it enables them to identify the true beauty of the goddess."

King Zhou dismissed him lightly. The other civil and military officials remained silent, none daring to utter a word. They then returned to the capital. The king went directly to the Dragon Virtue Court, where he met his queen and concubines in a happy reunion.





“凤鸾宝帐景非常，尽是泥金巧样妆。曲曲远山飞翠色；翩翩舞袖映霞裳。梨花带雨争娇艳；芍药笼烟骋媚妆。但得妖娆能举动，取回长乐侍君王。”

天子作毕，只见首相商容启奏曰：“女娲乃上古之正神，朝歌之福主。老臣请驾拈香，祈求福德，使万民乐业，雨顺风调，兵火宁息。今陛下作诗亵渎神明，毫无虔敬之诚，是获罪于神圣，非天子巡幸祈请之礼。愿主公以水洗之。恐天下百姓观见，传言圣上无有德政耳。”王曰：“朕看女娲之容有绝世之姿，因作诗以赞美之，岂有他意？卿毋多言。况孤乃万乘之尊，留与万姓观之，可见娘娘美貌绝世，亦见孤之遗笔耳。”言罢回朝。文武百官默默点首，莫敢谁何，俱钳口而回。有诗为证：

凤辇龙车出帝京，拈香厘祝女中英。只知祈福黎民乐，孰料吟诗万姓惊。目下狐狸为太后；眼前豺虎尽簪缨。上天垂象皆如此，徒令英雄叹不平。

天子驾回，升龙德殿。百官朝贺而散。时逢望辰，三宫妃后朝君：中宫姜后，西宫黄妃，馨庆宫杨妃，朝毕而退。按下不表。

且言女娲娘娘降诞，三月十五日往火云宫朝贺伏羲、炎帝、轩辕三圣而回，下得青鸾，坐于宝殿。玉女金童朝礼毕，娘娘猛抬头，看见粉壁上诗句，大怒骂曰：“殷受无道昏君，不想修身立德以保天下，今反不畏上天，吟诗亵我，甚是可恶！我想成汤伐桀而王天下，享国六百余年，气数已尽；若不与他个报应，不见我的灵感。”即唤碧霞童子驾青鸾往朝歌一回。不题。



On her birthday, Goddess Nu Wa had left her palace and paid her respects to the three emperors, Fu Xi, Shen Nong and Xuan Yuan. She then returned to her temple, seated herself in the main hall, and received greetings from the golden lads and jade lasses.

Looking up, she saw the poem on the wall. "That wicked king!" She flew into a rage. "He doesn't think how to protect his country with virtue and morality. On the contrary, he shows no fear of Heaven and insults me with this dirty poem. How vile he is! The Shang Dynasty's already ruled for over 600 years and is coming to an end. I must take my revenge on him if I'm to assuage my own conscience."

She took action at once. She mounted a phoenix and headed for Zhaoge.

King Zhou had two sons. One was Yin Jiao, who later became the "Star God Presiding over the Year," and the other Yin Hong, who later became the "God of Grain." As the two gods paid their respects to their father, two red divine beams rose from the tops of their heads and soared high in the sky, blocking the way of the goddess. Looking down through the clouds, Nu Wa at once realized King Zhou had still twenty-eight years to go before his downfall. She also realized that she could do nothing about it at this moment, since that would go against the will of Heaven.

The goddess returned to her temple, highly displeased. Back in her palace, Goddess Nu Wa ordered a young maidservant to fetch a golden gourd and put it on the Cinnabar Terrace outside her court. When its stopper was removed, Nu Wa pointed at the gourd with one finger and suddenly a thick beam of brilliant white light rose from the mouth of the gourd and shot up fifty feet into the air. Hanging from the beam was a multi-colored flag called the Demon Summoning Pennant. As soon as this pennant made its appearance, glittering high up in the sky, all demons and evil sprites, no matter where they were, would gather round.

Moments later, dark winds began to howl, eerie fogs enveloped the earth, and vicious-looking clouds gathered in the sky. All the demons in the world had arrived to receive her command. Nu Wa gave orders that all the demons return home except the three sprites that dwelt in the grave of



却说二位殿下殷郊、殷洪来参谒父王——那殷郊后来是“封神榜”上“值年太岁”；殷洪是“五谷神”：皆有名神将。正行礼间，顶上两道红光冲天。娘娘正行时，被此气挡住云路；因望下一看，知纣王尚有二十八年气运，不可造次，暂回行宫，心中不悦。唤彩云童儿把后宫中金葫芦取来，放在丹墀之下；揭去芦盖，用手一指。葫芦中有一道白光，其大如线，高四五丈有余。白光之上，悬出一首幡来，光分五彩，瑞映千条，名曰“招妖幡”。不一时，悲风飒飒，惨雾迷漫，阴云四合，风过数阵，天下群妖俱到行宫听候法旨。娘娘分付彩云：“着各处妖魔且退；只留轩辕坟中三妖伺候。”三妖进宫参谒，口称：“娘娘圣寿无疆！”这三妖一个是千年狐狸精，一个是九头雉鸡精，一个是玉石琵琶精，俯伏丹墀。娘娘曰：“三妖听吾密旨：成汤望气黯然，当失天下；凤鸣岐山，西周已生圣主。天意已定，气数使然。你三妖可隐其妖形，托身宫院，惑乱君心；俟武王伐纣，以助成功，不可残害众生。事成之后，使你等亦成正果。”娘娘分付已毕，三妖叩头谢恩，化清风而去。正是：狐狸听旨施妖术，断送成汤六百年。有诗为证，诗曰：

三月中旬驾进香，吟诗一首起飞殃。只知把笔施才学，不晓今番社稷亡。

按下女娲娘娘分付三妖，不题。

且言纣王只因进香之后，看见女娲美貌，朝暮思想，寒暑尽忘，寝食俱废，每见六院三宫，真如尘饭土羹，不堪谛视；终朝将此事不放心怀，郁郁不乐。一日驾升显庆殿，时有常随在侧。纣王忽然猛省，着奉御宣中谏大夫费仲。——



Emperor Xuan Yuan.

Who were these three sprites? The first was a thousand-year-old female fox sprite; the second was a female pheasant sprite with nine heads; and the third was a jade lute sprite.

“May you live eternally, dear goddess!” the three sprites greeted Nu Wa, kowtowing on the Cinnabar Terrace.

“Listen carefully to my secret orders. The Shang Dynasty’s destined to end soon. The singing of the phoenix at Mount Qi augurs the birth of a new ruler in West Qi. This has all been determined by the will of Heaven, and no one has the power to change what must happen. You may transform yourselves into beauties, enter the palace, and distract King Zhou from state affairs. You’ll be richly rewarded for giving the new dynasty an auspicious start and helping the old one to its downfall. However, you mustn’t bring harm to the people.”

At the end of her order, the three sprites kowtowed, turned themselves into winds, and flew away.

Since his visit to the Temple of Goddess Nu Wa, King Zhou had sunk into a deep depression. He ardently admired the beauty of the goddess and, yearning for her day and night, lost all desire to eat and drink. He had no passion for his queen, his concubines, or the numerous maids in his palace. They now all appeared to him like lumps of clay. He would not be bothered with state affairs.

One day, he remembered Fei Zhong and You Hun, two minion courtiers who would flatter and slander as he pleased. King Zhou sent for Fei Zhong, and the latter appeared in no time.

“I went to worship Goddess Nu Wa recently,” King Zhou began. “She’s so beautiful I believe she has no rival in the world, and none of my concubines is to be compared with her. I’m head over heels in love, and feel very sad as I cannot get her. Have you any ideas with which to comfort me?”

“Your Majesty! With all your honor and dignity, you’re the most powerful and the richest man in the world. You possess all the wealth within



乃纣王之幸臣；近因闻太师仲，奉敕平北海，大兵远征，戍外立功，因此上就宠费仲、尤浑二人。此二人朝朝蠹惑圣聪，谗言献媚，纣王无有不从。大抵天下将危，佞臣当道。——不一时，费仲朝见。王曰：“朕因女娲宫进香，偶见其颜艳丽，绝世无双，三宫六院，无当朕意，将如之何？卿有何策，以慰朕怀？”费仲奏曰：“陛下乃万乘之尊，富有四海，德配尧、舜，天下之所有，皆陛下之所有，何思不得，这有何难。陛下明日传一旨，颁行四路诸侯：每一镇选美女百名以充王庭。何忧天下绝色不入王选乎。”纣王大悦，“卿所奏甚合朕意。明日早朝发旨。卿且暂回。”随即命驾还宫。毕竟不知此后何如，且听下回分解。

the four seas, and are virtuous as the sage emperors Yao and Shun. You may have anything you wish for, and you should have no difficulty in satisfying your desires. You can issue an order tomorrow demanding 100 beauties from the grand dukes. You'll then have no trouble finding one as beautiful as Goddess Nu Wa," Fei Zhong suggested.

King Zhou was delighted. He said, "Your suggestion appeals to me greatly. I'll issue the order tomorrow. You may return home for the time being."

He then left the throne hall and returned to his royal chambers to rest.

If you wish to know what happened thereafter, please read the following chapter.



## 第二回

### 冀州侯苏护反商

诗曰：

丞相金銮直谏君，忠肝义胆孰能群。早知侯伯来朝覲，  
空费倾葵纸上文。

话说纣王听奏大喜，即时还宫。一宵经过。次日早朝，聚两班文武朝贺毕。纣王便问当驾官：“即传朕旨意，颁行四镇诸侯，与朕每一镇地方拣选良家美女百名，不论富贵贫贱，只以容貌端庄，情性和婉，礼度闲淑，举止大方，以充后宫役使。”天子传旨未毕，只见左班中一人应声出奏，俯伏言曰：“老臣商容启奏陛下：君有道则万民乐业，不令而从。况陛下后宫美女，不啻千人，嫔御而上，又有妃后。今劈空欲选美女，恐失民望。臣闻‘乐民之乐者，民亦乐其乐；忧民之忧者，民亦忧其忧’。此时水旱频仍，乃事女色，实为陛下不取也。故尧、舜与民偕乐，以仁德化天下，不事干戈，不行杀伐，景星耀天，甘露下降，凤凰止于庭，芝草生于野；民丰物阜，行人让路，犬无吠声，夜雨昼晴，稻生双穗；此乃有道兴隆之象也。今陛下若取近时之乐，则目眩多色，耳听淫声，沉湎酒色，游于苑圃，猎于山林，此乃无道败亡之象也。老臣待罪首相，位列朝纲，侍君三世，不得不启陛下。臣愿陛下：进贤，退不肖，修行仁义，通达道德，则和气贯于天下，自然民富财丰，天下太平，四海雍





## Chapter 2

### The Rebellion of Su Hu

The next morning, after he had received respects from his ministers, King Zhou addressed his messengers, "Transmit my orders to the four grand dukes that they must each present me with 100 beautiful virgins to serve in the palace. Their family background, in terms of rank and wealth, may be ignored, but they must be gentle, virtuous, and above all beautiful."

But before the king had finished this announcement, a great minister stepped out from the ranks, and knelt down before him. "Your old minister Shang Rong begs to advise Your Majesty that if you rule the country properly the people will continue to take pleasure in their work and obey your wishes without having to be ordered." Shang reminded him, "Your Majesty has already 1,000 beautiful women at least, who serve you in your chamber palace. If you now order the conscription of so many beautiful virgins, the people will be dissatisfied and oppose you. Remember the saying, 'When a ruler rejoices with his people, they also rejoice with him; when he grieves at the sorrow of his people, they also grieve at his.' Your people are now suffering seriously from floods and droughts. How can Your Majesty seek pleasure in women at a time like this? You must recall how emperors Yao and Shun rejoiced with the people and ruled the country with kindness and virtue, without resorting to violence and without bloodshed or war. During their reigns, lucky stars shone brightly over the sky and sweet dew drenched the earth. Phoenixes danced in the palace courtyard and herbs of immortality grew in the fields. The people were rich and everything was in abundance. Rain fell at night and every day was sunny. Two ears would grow on each rice stalk. If Your Majesty seeks only short-lived pleasures: fixing your eyes on obscene events, filling your ears with lewd music, drinking until you become intoxicated, and hunting in the mountains and forests, this is a poor way to rule and will bring about the downfall of the dynasty. As prime minister in your government, and one who's served under three kings, I'm obliged to present





熙，与百姓共享无穷之福。况今北海干戈未息，正宜修其德，爱其民，惜其财费，重其使令，虽尧、舜不过如是；又何必区区选侍，然后为乐哉？臣愚不识忌讳，望祈容纳。”纣王沉思良久，“卿言甚善，朕即免行。”言罢，群臣退朝，圣驾还宫。不题。

不意纣王八年，夏四月，天下四大诸侯率领八百镇朝觐于商。那四镇诸侯乃东伯侯姜桓楚，南伯侯鄂崇禹，西伯侯姬昌，北伯侯崇侯虎。天下诸侯俱进朝歌。此时太师闻仲不在都城，纣王宠用费仲、尤浑。各诸侯俱知二人把持朝政，擅权作威，少不得先以礼贿之以结其心，正所谓“未去朝天子，先来谒相公”。内中有位诸侯，乃冀州侯，姓苏名护，此人生得性如烈火，刚方正直，那里知道奔竞夤缘；平昔见稍有不公不法之事，便执法处分，不少假借，故此与二人俱未曾送有礼物。也是合当有事，那日二人查天下诸侯俱送有礼物，独苏护并无礼单，心中大怒，怀恨于心。不题。

其日元旦吉晨，天子早朝，设聚两班文武，众官拜贺毕。黄门官启奏陛下：“今年乃朝贺之年，天下诸侯皆在午门外朝贺，听候玉音发落。”纣王问首相商容，容曰：“陛下止可宣四镇首领臣面君，采问民风土俗，淳庞浇兢，国治邦安；其余诸侯俱在午门外朝贺。”天子闻言大悦，“卿言极善。”随命黄门官传旨：“宣四镇诸侯见驾，其余午门朝贺。”

话说四镇诸侯整齐朝服，轻摇玉珮，进午门，行过九龙桥，至丹墀，山呼朝拜毕，俯伏。王慰劳曰：“卿等与朕宣猷赞化，抚绥黎庶，镇摄荒服，威远宁迩，多有勤劳，皆卿等之功耳。朕心喜悦。”东伯侯奏曰：“臣等荷蒙圣恩，官居总



Your Majesty with the truth and hope that you won't conscript the virgins and indulge in lascivious pleasure."

King Zhou remained silent for a long time. Finally he said, "You're right. I'll repeal my edict at once."

Annoyed by what had happened, he had too little patience to remain in the hall discussing state affairs with his ministers and quickly retired to his chamber palace.

The following summer, all 800 marquises came to Zhaoge to pledge their allegiance to the Shang Dynasty. As Grand Tutor Wen Zhong had been sent to the front to subdue the rebels of the North Sea, Fei Zhong and You Hun had become extremely influential at court and demanded of the dukes and marquises bribes and presents. But Su Hu, Marquis of Jizhou, refused to comply. Su Hu had an indomitable spirit and a fiery temper, but was a righteous man. He refused to ingratiate himself by dishonest means and would explode at the slightest injustice or wrongdoing. He did everything according to law, and refused to confer gifts upon Fei Zhong and You Hun, who as a result were very much annoyed.

At court that morning, after King Zhou had received respects from his ministers, the gate guard came forward and reported, "To mark this year of celebration, all the dukes and marquises of the nation have arrived in the capital to make obeisance to Your Majesty. At present, they are waiting for your orders outside the palace gate."

When King Zhou discussed the matter with Shang Rong, the latter replied, "I suggest that Your Majesty grant an audience only to the four grand dukes, whom you can question about the livelihood of their people and about peace and security in their districts, and that the marquises make their obeisance outside the palace gate."

"You're right, Prime Minister," King Zhou said with delight.

The four grand dukes, all splendidly dressed, entered the Meridian Gate and walked over the Nine Dragon Bridge to the Cinnabar Terrace, where they knelt and prostrated themselves before King Zhou. The king, in turn, thanked them for their services.

"You labor diligently for me, spending your energy and time educating the people and protecting them from starvation and war. You've achieved great things for the nation," the king said in encouragement. "I'm greatly pleased you've come."



镇。臣等自叨职掌，日夜兢兢，常恐不克负荷，有辜圣心；纵有犬马微劳，不过臣子分内事，尚不足报涓涯于万一耳，又何劳圣心垂念！臣等不胜感激！”天子龙颜大喜，命首相商容、亚相比干于显庆殿治宴相待。四臣叩头谢恩，离丹墀前至显庆殿，相序筵宴。不题。

天子退朝至便殿，宣费仲、尤浑二人，问曰：“前卿奏朕，欲令天下四镇大诸侯进美女，朕欲颁旨，又被商容谏止；今四镇诸侯在此，明早召入，当面颁行，俟四人回国，以便拣选进献，且免使臣往返。二卿意下若何？”费仲俯伏奏曰：“首相谏止采选美女，陛下当日容纳，即行停旨，此美德也。臣下共知，众庶共知，天下景仰。今一旦复行，是陛下不足以取信于臣民，切为不可。臣近访得冀州侯苏护有一女，艳色天姿，幽闲淑性，若选进宫帟，随侍左右，堪任役使。况选一人之女，又不惊扰天下百姓，自不动人耳目。”纣王听言，不觉大悦，“卿言极善！”即命随侍官传旨：“宣苏护。”使命来至馆驿传旨：“宣冀州侯苏护商议国政。”苏护即随使命至龙德殿朝见，礼毕，俯伏听命。王曰：“朕闻卿有一女，德性幽闲，举止中度。朕欲选侍后宫。卿为国戚，食其天禄，受其显位，永镇冀州，坐享安康，名扬四海，天下莫不欣羨。卿意下如何？”苏护听言，正色而奏曰：“陛下宫中，上有后妃，下至嫔御，不啻数千。妖冶妩媚，何不足以悦王之耳目？乃听左右谄谀之言，陷陛下于不义。况臣女蒲柳陋质，素不谙礼度，德色俱无足取。乞陛下留心邦本，速斩此进谗言之小人，使天下后世知陛下正心修身，纳言听谏，非好色之君，岂不美哉！”纣王大笑曰：“卿



Jiang Huanchu, the East Grand Duke, replied, "It's by grace of Your Majesty that we were created dukes. We're obliged to be diligent and watchful at our posts, so that Your Majesty's mind will always remain at ease. Any service we've rendered comes within the limits of our duty and isn't worthy of praise. However, we greatly appreciate the kind concern shown us by Your Majesty."

The king was delighted with this reply and ordered Shang Rong and Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan to entertain the four grand dukes, while he himself retired to his private court with his favorites Fei Zhong and You Hun.

"Though you advised me to ask the four grand dukes for beautiful virgins, I was stopped by Shang Rong. Now that we've got the dukes here, I'll issue the order to them directly tomorrow morning. That way I can save the trouble of sending messengers to them later. What do you think about that?"

"It was virtuous of Your Majesty to suspend the conscription of beautiful virgins on the Prime Minister's advice." Fei Zhong said but then admonished the king, "Your Majesty's decision is known to everyone, and you mustn't change your mind or you'll lose their trust. I learned recently that Su Hu has a daughter as beautiful and charming as an angel. She's fully qualified to serve you in the palace. Furthermore, by having her brought to the palace, Your Majesty won't upset the whole nation."

King Zhou was overjoyed when he heard this and immediately sent an order for Su Hu to see him at the Dragon Virtue Court to discuss urgent state affairs.

When he came, Su Hu kowtowed and then waited on his knees for the king to speak.

"I'm told that your daughter's mild, virtuous, and modest. I would like to have her serve me in the rear palace. As her father, you'll become related to the royal family and enjoy wealth and rank, and be known and admired throughout the country. How do you feel about it, Marquis?" asked King Zhou.

"Your Majesty's got a queen consort and thousands of concubines. They're all charming and beautiful and possess talents to please all of your senses. How is it that you're so unwise as to be deluded by your lying courtiers?" Su Hu protested. "My daughter, moreover, is crude and ignorant of the rites and has a very homely face. I beg Your Majesty to accept my humble advice and take immediate action to behead your mali-



言甚不谙大体。自古及今，谁不愿女作门楣。况女为后妃，贵敌天子；卿为皇亲国戚，赫奕显荣，孰过于此！卿毋迷惑，当自裁审。”苏护闻言，不觉厉声言曰：“臣闻人君修德勤政，则万民悦服，四海景从，天禄永终。昔日有夏失政，淫荒酒色；惟我祖宗不迓声色，不殖货财，德懋懋官，功懋懋赏，克宽克仁，方能割正有夏，彰信兆民，邦乃其昌，永保天命。今陛下不取法祖宗，而效彼夏王，是取败之道也。况人君爱色，必颠覆社稷；卿大夫爱色，必绝灭宗庙；士庶人爱色，必戕贼其身。且君为臣之表率，君不向道，臣下将化之，而朋比作奸，天下事尚忍言哉！臣恐商家六百余年基业，必自陛下紊乱之矣。”纣王听苏护之言，勃然大怒曰：“君命召，不俟驾；君赐死，不敢违；况选汝一女为后妃乎！敢以戇言忤旨，面折朕躬，以亡国之君匹朕，大不敬孰过于此！着随侍官，拿出午门，送法司勘问正法！”左右随将苏护拿下。转出费仲、尤浑二人，上殿俯伏奏曰：“苏护忤旨，本该勘问；但陛下因选侍其女，以致得罪；使天下闻之，道陛下轻贤重色，阻塞言路。不若赦之归国，彼感皇上不杀之恩，自然将此女进贡宫闈，以待皇上。庶百姓知陛下宽仁大度，纳谏容流，而保护有功之臣。是一举两得之意。愿陛下准臣施行。”纣王闻言，天颜少霁，“依卿所奏。即降赦，令彼还国，不得久羁朝歌。”

话说圣旨一下，迅如烽火，即催逼苏护出城，不容停止。那苏护辞朝回至驿亭，众家将接见慰问：“圣上召将军进朝，有何商议？”苏护大怒，骂曰：“无道昏君，不思量祖宗德业，宠信谗臣谄媚之言，欲选吾女进宫为妃。此必是费



cious courtiers so that you may rule with virtue. The future generations will know that you're a good and proper ruler and not a womanizer."

King Zhou burst out laughing. "You're both ignorant and lacking in common sense. Since ancient times, no one has been so foolish as to refuse royal connection. Once a daughter is lucky enough to be chosen queen or royal concubine, she's honored as highly as the king. You would enjoy untold glory as my relative if you let your daughter serve in my palace. Don't be muddle-headed. Think it over."

At this, Su Hu flew into a rage. He shouted sternly, "The rule can only last when the king reigns with virtue and diligence and the people remain satisfied. You're now careless of state affairs, distracted from your duties by an unbridled passion for women. Behaving this way, I'm afraid you'll end up the downfall of your 600-year-old dynasty."

King Zhou was enraged. "You must obey the king, even if it means giving up your life. How dare you oppose my order! And how dare you offend me with your rubbish and insult me by claiming I am a wicked king! This is the gravest of offences. You should be arrested and put to death according to law!" he threatened.

When the palace guards placed Su Hu under arrest, Fei Zhong and You Hun entered the court, knelt down and kowtowed to the king. "Su Hu should be punished for his disobedience. However, you would be looked upon as a bad ruler, and people would say that you had insulted a good man and imposed limitations on freedom of speech just because you were unable to get his daughter. It would be better to set him free and let him return to his post. This way he'll be grateful for your generosity and be willing to give you his daughter. By doing so, the people will admire you as a good ruler, generous and kind, permitting all to enjoy the freedom of speech and allowing dutiful ministers to live in peace. You'll be killing two birds with one stone."

Now calming down a little, King Zhou said, "I'll do as you advise. Set him free and let him return to his post. But he may no longer remain here in the capital."

Su Hu was expelled from the court and ordered to leave the city at once. When he reached his residence, he was met by his generals, who asked him, "What important problem did His Majesty discuss with you?"



仲、尤浑以酒色迷惑君心，欲专朝政。我听旨不觉直言谏诤；昏君道我忤旨，拿送法司。二贼子又奏昏君，赦我归国，谅我感昏君不杀之恩，必将吾女送进朝歌，以遂二贼奸计。我想闻太师远征，二贼弄权，眼见昏君必荒淫酒色，紊乱朝政，天下荒荒，黎民倒悬，可怜成汤社稷化为乌有。我自思：若不将此女进贡，昏君必兴问罪之师；若要送此女进宫，以后昏君失德，使天下人耻笑我不智。诸将必有良策教我。”众将闻言，齐曰：“吾闻‘君不正则臣投外国’，今主上轻贤重色，眼见昏乱，不若反出朝歌，自守一国，上可以保宗社，下可保一家。”此时苏护正在盛怒之下，一闻此言，不觉性起，竟不思维，便曰：“大丈夫不可做不明白事。”叫左右：“取文房四宝来，题诗在午门墙上，以表我永不朝商之意。”诗曰：

“君坏臣纲，有败五常。冀州苏护，永不朝商！”

苏护题了诗，领家将迳出朝歌，奔本国而去。

且言纣王见苏护当面折诤一番，不能遂愿，“虽准费、尤二人所奏，不知彼可能将女进贡深宫，以遂朕于飞之乐？”正踌躇不悦，只见看午门内臣俯伏奏曰：“臣在午门，见墙上苏护题有反诗十六字，不敢隐匿，伏乞圣裁。”随侍接诗铺在御案上。纣王一见，大骂：“贼子如此无礼！朕体上天好生之德，不杀鼠贼，赦令归国，彼反写诗午门，大辱朝廷，罪在不赦！”即命：“宣殷破败、晁田、鲁雄等，统领六师，朕须亲征，必灭其国！”当驾官随宣鲁雄等见驾。不一时，鲁雄等朝见，礼毕。王曰：“苏护反商，题诗午门，甚辱朝纲，情殊可恨，法纪难容。卿等统人马二十万为先锋；朕



Su Hu was still in a rage and cursed the king soundly. "If I don't send my daughter to him, the bloody bastard is sure to send an army. But if I do, he'll neglect state affairs, and people'll curse and ridicule me. What shall I do, Generals?"

"It's said that when the ruler is immoral, ministers may abandon him and seek their future abroad. Our king ignores his good and faithful ministers and devotes himself solely to sexual pleasure. Chaos is bound to overrun the country soon. Let's leave this place and declare independence to save our own homes and lives and the land inherited from our ancestors," they advised him.

Su Hu was greatly excited. "A hero must act in public. Hand me a brush and ink, and I'll write a poem on the Meridian Gate to express my strong resolve never again to serve the Shang Dynasty." Eventually, he wrote the following on the wall:

You ignore the rites between king and ministers,  
You corrupt the five cardinal virtues of mankind.  
Thus, Su Hu, the Marquis of Jizhou, has decided  
To offer no further obeisance to the Shang Dynasty.

King Zhou pondered deeply after Su Hu was removed from the palace, "Though I've set him free, I still don't know whether he'll give his daughter to me or not."

But his meditation was interrupted by a gate officer, who knelt before him and said, "While on duty at the palace gate, I discovered a quatrain written by Su Hu, in which he announces a rebellion. Not daring to keep it to myself, I'm reporting this to Your Majesty."

Reading over the explosive poem, King Zhou once more became infuriated. "How dare that bloody bastard act like this. As Heaven prefers not to kill, I didn't cut his damned head off but set him free instead. This is the way he shows his gratitude! This time he must be punished," he cursed, and gave the order, "Generals Yin, Chao and Lu are hereby ordered to lead six armies under my command to attack Jizhou. Our goal is the utter decimation of the city."





亲率六师，以声其罪。”鲁雄听罢，低首暗思：“苏护乃忠良之士，素怀忠义，何事触忤天子，自欲亲征，冀州休矣！”鲁雄为苏护俯伏奏曰：“苏护得罪于陛下，何劳御驾亲征。况且四大镇诸侯俱在都城，尚未归国，陛下可点一二路征伐，以擒苏护，明正其罪，自不失挾伐之威。何必圣驾远事其地。”纣王问曰：“四侯之内，谁可征伐？”费仲在傍，出班奏曰：“冀州乃北方崇侯虎属下，可命侯虎征伐。”纣王即准施行。鲁雄在侧自思：“崇侯虎乃贪鄙暴横之夫，提兵远征，所经地方，必遭残害，黎庶何以得安。见有西伯姬昌，仁德四布，信义素著。何不保举此人，庶几两全。”纣王方命传旨，鲁雄奏曰：“侯虎虽镇北地，恩信尚未孚于人，恐此行未能伸朝廷威德；不如西伯姬昌，仁义素闻，陛下若假以节钺，自不劳矢石，可擒苏护，以正其罪。”纣王思想良久，俱准奏。特旨令二侯秉节钺，得专征伐。使命持旨到显庆殿宣读。不题。

只见四镇诸侯与二相饮宴未散，忽报“旨意下”，不知何事。天使曰：“西伯侯、北伯侯接旨。”二侯出席接旨，跪听宣读：

“诏曰：朕闻冠履之分维严，事使之道无两，故君命召，不俟驾；君赐死，不敢返命；乃所以隆尊卑，崇任使也。兹不道苏护，狂悖无礼，立殿忤君，纪纲已失，被赦归国，不思自新，辄敢写诗午门，安心叛主，罪在不赦。赐尔姬昌等节钺，便宜行事，往惩其忤，毋得宽纵，罪有攸归。故兹诏示汝往。钦哉。谢恩。”

天使读毕，二侯谢恩平身。姬昌对二丞相、三侯伯言



Hearing this order, General Lu Xiong thought, "Su Hu is a good and faithful minister, but how did he offend the king so much that His Majesty himself is going to Jizhou. Woe to the city!" Feeling a pang of compassion for Su Hu, he knelt down and reported, "Though Su Hu was offensive in Your Majesty's presence, it's unnecessary for you to venture personally to the front. Since the grand dukes are still in the capital, Your Majesty may appoint one or two of them to command the attack. You shouldn't place yourself in danger on the front."

"Who would be the best qualified to act on my behalf?"

"Since Jizhou's in the north, under the administration of the North Grand Duke, Your Majesty may logically appoint Chong Houhu," Fei Zhong said.

This was quickly approved by the king.

"Chong Houhu's avaricious and cruel. Wherever his army goes, people suffer terribly," General Lu Xiong thought. "But the West Grand Duke Ji Chang is virtuous, loved and well-trusted by the people. Better I recommend him to prevent things from getting worse." The king was ordering to publish the appointment when he objected. "Though Chong Houhu is the North Grand Duke, he's not fully trusted by the people, and it may be difficult for him to accomplish his mission. However, Ji Chang has long been known for his virtue. I recommend that you appoint him to take your place. This way, Su Hu'll be punished according to law without your having to confront the danger of arrows and spears."

After a long hesitation, King Zhou approved both recommendations, and appointed Chong Houhu and Ji Chang in joint command of the army. When the announcement reached him, Ji Chang remarked to the two prime ministers and the three other dukes at the banquet, "Though Su Hu came to offer his allegiance, he wasn't admitted to the palace, nor was he



曰：“苏护朝商，未进殿庭，未参圣上；今诏旨有‘立殿忤君’，不知此语何来？且此人素怀忠义，累有军功，午门题诗，必有诈伪。天子听信何人之言，欲伐有功之臣。恐天下诸侯不服。望二位丞相明日早朝见驾，请察其详。苏护所得何罪？果言而正，伐之可也；倘言而不正，合当止之。”比干言曰：“君侯言之是也。”崇侯虎在傍言曰：“‘王言如丝，其出如纶’。今诏旨已出，谁敢抗违。况苏护题诗午门，必然有据；天子岂无故而发此难端。今诸侯八百，俱不遵王命，大肆猖獗，是王命不能行于诸侯，乃取乱之道也。”姬昌曰：“公言虽善，是执其一端耳。不知苏护乃忠良君子，素秉丹诚，忠心为国，教民有方，治兵有法，数年以来，并无过失。今天子不知为谁人迷惑，兴师问罪于善类。此一节恐非国家之祥瑞。只愿当今不事干戈，不行杀伐，共乐尧年。况兵乃凶象，所经地方，必有惊扰之虞，且劳民伤财，穷兵黷武，师出无名，皆非盛世所宜有者也。”崇侯虎曰：“公言固是有理，独不思君命所差，概不由己？且煌煌天语，谁敢有违，以自取欺君之罪。”昌曰：“既如此，公可领兵前行，我兵随后便至。”当时各散。西伯便对二丞相言：“侯虎先去，姬昌暂回西岐，领兵续进。”遂各辞散。不题。

次日，崇侯虎下教场，整点人马，辞朝起行。

且言苏护离了朝歌，同众士卒，不一日回到冀州。护之长子苏全忠率领诸将出郭迎接。其时父子相会进城，帅府下马。众将到殿前见毕。护曰：“当今天子失政，天下诸侯朝覲，不知那一个奸臣，暗奏吾女姿色，昏君宣吾进殿，欲将吾女选立宫妃。彼时被我当面谏诤，不意昏君大怒，将我拿



received by His Majesty. How could he possibly have offended the king? He's known to all for his loyalty and good conduct, and for his many outstanding military successes. There must have been a good reason for him to write the poem. His Majesty'll lose sympathy from the marquises if he believes the malicious accusations by his minions and attacks Su Hu. Would you two prime ministers try to find out at court tomorrow morning what crime it is that Su Hu's committed. Should he be guilty, Su Hu must be punished. If not, we must do something about it."

"You're right, Grand Duke," Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan agreed.

But Chong Houhu held a different view. "The king's words, if unspoken, are like silk threads, but turn into satin once he begins to speak. Who would dare to oppose an order he had already issued! Besides, Su Hu did indeed write an abusive poem, and His Majesty hasn't made his decision groundlessly. Should the 800 marquises all begin to disobey the king, how can His Majesty maintain order?"

"Your point seems quite reasonable, yet it's only one-sided. No one doubts that Su Hu's a faithful minister. He serves the country with loyalty, educates the people methodically and commands his army brilliantly. He's acted faultlessly for years now." Ji Chang refuted him. "I'm at a loss as to who's tricked His Majesty into punishing the innocent. This isn't an auspicious omen for the country. I pray that His Majesty won't choose to use violence. War is a serious disaster. It wastes money, slaughters the people and destroys the peace of the nation."

"You may be right, Grand Duke, but how can we disobey His Majesty's orders? We're compelled to follow them, lest we commit the crime of opposing the king," replied Chong Houhu.

"If it be so, lead your army to the front first, and I'll follow you there soon," said Ji Chang.

The banquet ended, and the party went their separate ways. Before his departure, the West Grand Duke said to the prime ministers, "Chong Houhu'll be there first. I have to return to West Qi for the time being, and will join him shortly."

Arriving back at Jizhou, Su Hu was met in the suburbs by his eldest son Su Quanzhong at the head of his generals. When he entered the city,



问忤旨之罪，当有费仲、尤浑二人保奏，将我赦回，欲我送女进献。彼时心甚不快，偶题诗帖于午门而反商。此回昏君必点诸侯前来问罪。众将官听令：且将人马训练，城垣多用滚木炮石，以防攻打之虞。”诸将听令，日夜防维，不敢稍懈，以待厮杀。

话说崇侯虎领五万人马，即日出兵，离了朝歌，望冀州进发。但见：

轰天炮响，振地锣鸣。轰天炮响，汪洋大海起春雷；振地锣鸣，万仞山前丢霹雳。幡幢招展，三春杨柳交加；号带飘扬，七夕彩云蔽日。刀枪闪烁，三冬瑞雪重铺；剑戟森严，九月秋霜盖地。腾腾杀气锁天台，隐隐红云遮碧岸。十里汪洋波浪滚，一座兵山出土来。

大兵正行，所过州府县道，非止一日。前哨马来报：“人马已至冀州，请千岁军令定夺。”侯虎传令安营。怎见得：

东摆芦叶点钢枪，南摆月样宣花斧，西摆马闸雁翎刀，北摆黄花硬柄弩，中央戊己按勾陈，杀气离营四十五。

辕门下按九宫星，大寨暗藏八卦谱。

侯虎安下营寨，早有报马报进冀州。苏护问曰：“是那路诸侯为将？”探事回曰：“乃北伯侯崇侯虎。”苏护大怒曰：“若是别镇诸侯，还有他议；此人素行不道，断不能以礼解释。不若乘此大破其兵，以振军威，且为万姓除害。”传令：“点兵出城厮杀！”众将听令，各整军器出城，一声炮响，杀气振天。城门开处，将军马一字摆开。苏护大叫曰：“传将进去，请主将辕门答话！”探事马飞报进营。侯虎传令整点人马。只见门旗开处，侯虎坐逍遥马，统领众将出营，展两杆龙凤



he held a meeting and told his generals all that had happened to him in the capital. "We must train men and horses and make preparations to defend the city walls with catapults and rolling logs against the king's army," he warned them.

All of his generals and soldiers took extra care while on guard and prepared themselves for the anticipated attack.

Without the least delay, Chong Houhu gathered a 50,000-strong army and left the capital for Jizhou. He was well-equipped with cannons powerful enough to shake the earth, and his troops with their spears and swords were imposing as huge mountains. After marching through countless cities and towns, a report came from the vanguard, "The army's arrived at Jizhou and requests orders from the commander." He ordered the army to halt, and encamp within stockades and strongholds.

When he learned of the arrival of the invaders, Su Hu asked an intelligence officer, "Who's the commander of the army?"

"It's Chong Houhu, the North Grand Duke."

Su Hu was infuriated. "I'd settle this matter with a compromise if it were any other grand duke but Chong Houhu," he declared. "Chong's an evil fellow, and it's absolutely hopeless to try to settle in peace with him. I'll take him by surprise, and ensure that people won't suffer any harm."

Amid the firing of cannons, Su Hu led his generals and soldiers out of the city roaring like thunder. He lined up his men and shouted, "Let me talk with your commander now!"

Chong Houhu led his men out of the strongholds to meet the challenge. He rode on a tall stallion, wore golden chain mail, a red robe and a jade belt, and held a cutlass across his saddle. Behind him came his eldest son, Chong Yingbiao, his generals and two great banners, one embroidered with a dragon and the other with a phoenix.



绣旗。后有长子崇应彪压住阵脚。苏护见侯虎飞凤盔，金锁甲，大红袍，玉束带，紫骅骝，斩将大刀担于鞍鞞之上。苏护一见，马上欠身曰：“贤侯别来无恙。不才甲冑在身，不能全礼。今天子无道，轻贤重色，不思量留心邦本；听谗佞之言，强纳臣子之女为妃，荒淫酒色，不久天下变乱。不才自各守边疆，贤侯何故兴此无名之师？”崇侯闻言大怒曰：“你忤逆天子诏旨，题反诗于午门，是为贼臣，罪不容诛。今奉诏问罪，则当肘膝辕门，尚敢巧语支吾，持兵贯甲，以骋其强暴哉！”崇侯回顾左右：“谁与我擒此逆贼？”言未了，左哨下有一将，头带凤翅盔；黄金甲，大红袍，狮蛮带，青骠马；厉声而言曰：“待末将擒此叛贼！”连人带马滚至军前。这壁厢有苏护之子苏全忠，见那阵上一将当先，刺斜里纵马摇戟曰：“慢来！”全忠认得是偏将梅武。梅武曰：“苏全忠，你父子反叛，得罪天子，尚不倒戈服罪，而强欲抗天兵，是自取灭族之祸矣。”全忠拍马摇戟，劈胸来刺。梅武手中斧劈面相迎。但见：

二将阵前交战，锣鸣鼓响人惊。该因世上动刀兵，致使英雄相驰骋。这个那分上下，那个两眼难睁。你拿我，凌烟阁上标名；我捉你，丹凤楼前画影。

斧来戟架，绕身一点风摇头；戟去斧迎，不离腮边过顶额。两马相交，二十回合，早被苏全忠一戟刺梅武于马下。苏护见子得胜，传令擂鼓。冀州阵上大将赵丙、陈季贞纵马抡刀杀将来。一声喊起，只杀的愁云荡荡，旭日辉辉，尸横遍野，血溅成渠。侯虎麾下金葵、黄元济、崇应彪且战且走，败至十里之外。



Seeing Chong Houhu in front of him, Su Hu bowed. "How are you, Grand Duke. I'm terribly sorry that I cannot offer you a complete salutation, as I'm in helmet and armor," he greeted him and then came to the point. "King Zhou has of late become corrupt and immoral as a ruler. He shows no respect for his ministers, cares little for the state and listens only to the servile courtiers. He compelled me to give him my daughter as a concubine. Addicted to sex and wine, he now leads a life of dissipation. The kingdom'll soon suffer from great disturbances and is bound to fall before long. But I've always stayed within my own marquissate, and am surprised to see you here with your army."

In anger, Chong Houhu said, "You disobeyed the orders of His Majesty and wrote a treasonable poem on the wall of the Meridian Gate. You're a rebel and ought to be punished by death. On the order of His Majesty, I'm here to carry out his sentence. You should have knelt down before my army in unconditional surrender, but you stand there in armor brandishing your weapons and mouth glib rubbish!" Turning towards his men he demanded, "Who'll take that filthy bandit for me?"

A general, wearing a phoenix-feather helmet, a scarlet robe and golden armor, urged forward his black stallion crying, "I'll take that bloody bastard."

Galloping swiftly to the front, he was met by General Su Quanzhong, Su Hu's eldest son, who, brandishing a halberd, shouted, "What's the big hurry? Come on, let's fight." He recognized his opponent as General Mei Wu.

"Su Quanzhong, you and your father are rebelling against His Majesty. Lay down your arms and surrender, or else your whole clan will die."

Su Quanzhong remained silent. Urging his horse forward, he stabbed at Mei Wu's chest with his halberd. Mei Wu resisted bravely and struck at him with his battle-axe. Their combat proceeded vigorously. After twenty rounds, Mei Wu received a fatal wound and fell dead to the ground.

Now that his son had won the first encounter, Su Hu ordered his men to beat the drums, signaling an all-round engagement. At this Zhao Bing, Chen Jizhen and the Jizhou soldiers launched into the enemy line. After a fierce battle, the field was soon piled high with the dead and wounded, and blood flowed freely over the wilderness under a gloomy sky. Chong Houhu and his generals Jin Kui, Huang Yuanji and Chong Yingbiao were utterly defeated and retreated to a distance of ten *li* (1 *li*=0.3 mile).





苏护传令鸣金收兵，回城到帅府，升殿坐下，赏劳有功诸将，“今日虽大破一阵，彼必整兵复仇，不然定请兵益将，冀州必危，如之奈何？”言未毕，副将赵丙上前言曰：“君侯今日虽胜，而征战似无已时。前者题反诗，今日杀军斩将，拒敌王命，此皆不赦之罪。况天下诸侯，非止侯虎一人，倘朝廷盛怒之下，又点几路兵来，冀州不过弹丸之地，诚所谓‘以石投水’，立见倾危。若依末将愚见，‘一不做，二不休’，侯虎新败，不过十里远近；乘其不备，人衔枚，马摘辔，暗劫营寨，杀彼片甲不存，方知我等利害。然后再寻那一路贤良诸侯，依附于彼，庶可进退，亦可以保全宗社。不知君侯尊意何如？”护闻此言大悦，曰：“公言甚善，正合吾意。”即传令：命子全忠领三千人马出西门十里，五岗镇埋伏。全忠领命而去。陈季贞统左营，赵丙统右营，护自统中营。时值黄昏之际，卷幡息鼓，人皆衔枚，马皆摘辔，听炮为号，诸将听令。不表。

且言崇侯虎恃才妄作，提兵远伐，孰知今日损军折将，心甚羞惭。只得将败残军兵收聚，扎下行营，纳闷中军，郁郁不乐，对众将曰：“吾自行军，征伐多年，未尝有败；今日折了梅武，损了三军，如之奈何？”旁有大将黄元济谏曰：“君侯岂不知‘胜败乃兵家常事’，想西伯侯大兵不久即至，破冀州如反掌耳。君侯且省愁烦，宜当保重。”侯虎军中置酒，众将欢饮。不题。有诗为证，诗曰：

侯虎提兵事远征，冀州城外驻行旌，三千铁骑摧残后，始信当年浪得名。

且言苏护把人马暗暗调出城来，只待劫营。时至初更，



Returning, Su Hu held a meeting to discuss the future with his generals. "Though we've defeated Chong Houhu today, he'll come here again with a stronger force," Su Hu said. "Jizhou's still in great danger. What shall we do now?"

Zhao Bing stepped forward and said, 'In my humble opinion, since we've taken the first step, we must take the second. Chong's suffered defeat this time and retreated, though not too far from us. We might launch a surprise attack tonight and smash his stockades in the darkness. When we've routed him completely Chong'll come to realize that we're not to be trifled with. Only then can we hope to come to terms with a duke other than Chong and save the city from destruction. What do you think, Marquis?'

Su Hu was overjoyed at this suggestion. "You're quite right. I agree with you completely," he said, then issued orders, "Su Quanzhong with 3,000 men are to lay an ambush at Wugang, about ten *li* beyond the west gate; General Chen Jizhen's to lead his army on the left and Zhao Bing on the right, while I'll be in the middle."

After dusk, Su Hu's armies were ordered to march to their positions, flags rolled up, drums quiet and horses moving in silence. Soon they would take the enemy by surprise.

Chong Houhu had not expected such a defeat and the loss of his generals and soldiers. With nowhere to turn to, he gathered his troops and encamped anew. He addressed his men, "Though I've fought countless battles in my day, never have I suffered such a defeat as today! The death of Mei Wu in particular is a great loss to us. What shall we do?"

General Huang Yuanji consoled him, "Don't you know, Grand Duke, that victories and defeats are routine business in the army. The West Grand Duke'll soon be with us, and we'll be able to smash Jizhou as easily as snapping our fingers. You shouldn't worry too much."

At this Chong Houhu brightened up and drank with his generals in their new camp. Meanwhile Su Hu led his army quietly out of the city and



已行十里。探马报与苏护，护即传令，将号炮点起。一声响亮，如天崩地塌，三千铁骑，一齐发喊，冲杀进营。如何抵当，好生利害，怎见得：

黄昏兵到，黑夜军临。黄昏兵到，冲开队伍怎支持？黑夜军临，撞倒寨门焉可立？人闻战鼓之声，惟知惶惶奔走；马听轰天之炮，难分南北东西。刀枪乱刺，那明上下交锋；将士相迎，岂知自家别个。浓睡军东冲西走；未醒将怎着头盔。先行官不及鞍马；中军帅赤足无鞋。围子手东三西四；拐子马南北奔逃。劫营将骁如猛虎；冲寨军一似蛟龙。着刀的连肩拽背；着枪的两臂流红；逢剑的砍开甲冑；遇斧的劈破天灵。人撞人，自相践踏；马撞马，遍地尸横。着伤军哀哀叫苦；中箭将咽咽悲声。弃金鼓幡幢满地；烧粮草四野通红。只知道奉命征讨，谁承望片甲无存。愁云直上九重天，一派败兵随地拥。

只见三路雄兵，人人敢勇，个个争先，一片喊杀之声，冲开七层围子，撞倒八面虎狼。单言苏护，一骑马，一条枪，直杀入阵来，捉拿崇侯虎。左右营门，喊声振地。崇侯虎正在梦中闻见杀声，披袍而起，上马提刀，冲出帐来。只见灯光影里，看苏护金盔金甲，大红袍，玉束带，青骢马，火龙枪，大叫曰：“侯虎休走！速下马受缚！”捻手中枪劈心刺来。崇侯虎落慌，将手中刀对面来迎，两马交锋。正战时，只见这崇侯虎长子应彪带领金葵、黄元济杀将来助战。崇营左粮道门赵丙杀来，右粮道门陈季贞杀来。两家混战，夤夜交兵。怎见得：



waited patiently for the moment to come. By the time of the first watch, the army had marched ten *li*, and the enemy camp was in sight. At a prearranged signal, Su Hu's cavalry and infantry bravely launched their attack, taking Chong completely by surprise. They rushed in like tigers and wolves, slaughtering and maiming on all sides. Su Hu was riding alone, lance in hand, in search of Chong Houhu.

Chong was startled from his dreams by the battle cries. He dressed quickly, mounted his horse, grabbed his cutlass and stormed away from his tent into the combat. Soon he came upon Su Hu, in a golden helmet and armor, mounted on a black horse and wielding a long fire dragon lance. Su Hu saw him. "Chong Houhu! How dare you flee so shamelessly. Get down from your horse and be my captive," he shouted.

Chong was greatly frightened, and had little choice but to match his cutlass against Su Hu's lance. At this moment, his son Chong Yingbiao, Jin Kui and Huang Yuanji came to his aid. But Zhao Bing and Chen Jizhen appeared moments later to right the temporary imbalance. The



征云笼地户，杀气锁天关。天昏地暗排兵，月下星前布阵。四下里齐举火把，八方处乱掌灯球。那营里数员战将厮杀；这营中千匹战马如龙。灯影战马，火映征夫。灯影战马，千条烈焰照貔貅；火映征夫，万道红霞笼獬豸。开弓射箭，星前月下吐寒光；转背抡刀，灯里火中生灿烂。鸣金小校，恹恹二目竟难睁；擂鼓儿郎，渐渐双手不能举。刀来枪架，马蹄下人头乱滚；剑去戟迎，头盔上血水淋漓。锤鞭并举，灯前小校尽倾生；斧钶伤人，目下儿郎都丧命。喊天振地自相残，哭泣苍天连叫苦。只杀得满营炮响冲霄汉，星月无光斗府迷。

说话两家大战，苏护有心劫营，崇侯虎不曾防备，冀州人马以一当十。金葵正战，早被赵丙一刀砍于马下。侯虎见势不能支，且战且走。有长子应彪保父，杀一条路逃走，好似丧家之犬，漏网之鱼。冀州人马，凶如猛虎，恶似豺狼，只杀的尸横遍野，血满沟渠。急忙奔走，夜半更深，不认路途而行，只要保全性命。苏护赶杀侯虎败残人马约二十余里，传令鸣金收军。苏护得全胜回冀州。

单言崇侯虎父子，领败兵迤逦望前正走，只见黄元济、孙子羽催后军赶来，打马而行。侯虎在马上叫众将言曰：“吾自提兵以来，未尝大败；今被逆贼暗劫吾营，黑夜交兵，未曾准备，以致损折军将。此恨如何不报！吾想西伯侯姬昌自在安然，违避旨意，按兵不动，坐观成败，真是可恨！”长子应彪答曰：“军兵新败，锐气已失，不如按兵不动，遣一军催西伯侯起兵前来接应，再作区处。”侯虎曰：“我儿所见甚明。到天明收住人马，再作别议。”言未毕，一声炮响，喊



men on both sides battled furiously in the dark of night. Su Hu's troops were well-prepared for the attack, while Chong Houhu's men were taken by surprise. Thus, the soldiers of Jizhou fought with extraordinary bravery, and Chong Houhu's men were totally overwhelmed.

In the midst of the fight, Jin Kui was felled from his horse by Zhao Bing and died instantly. Realizing that the situation was not to be saved, Chong Houhu was forced to beat a fighting retreat with Chong Yingbiao. They ran like homeless dogs, while the soldiers of Jizhou fought as bravely as tigers and fiercely as wolves. The ground was strewn with corpses, and blood flowed in streams. After pursuing the fleeing troops for twenty *li*, Su Hu gave the order that his men return to Jizhou.

Fleeing, Chong Houhu and Chong Yingbiao met Huang Yuanji, Sun Ziyu and their soldiers. Chong Houhu groaned. "Since I first became a soldier, I've never suffered such a big defeat as this. I never expected those treacherous bandits would attack our stockades in the middle of night, and cost us officers and many soldiers. We must take our revenge. I'm also displeased that Ji Chang should rest peacefully in his dukedom, and ignore His Majesty's orders. He doesn't send us a single soldier but sits back and watches me suffer a defeat. I won't tolerate this."

"We've lost our fighting spirit," Chong Yingbiao said. "I suggest that we take a defensive position and take no further action for the present. Let's send a messenger to Ji Chang to request reinforcements."

"You're right, my son. Let's discuss this again at dawn," replied Chong Houhu.

He was not aware that an ambush was prepared for them. As they rode, the sudden thunder of cannons rent the air and they heard the Jizhou soldiers roaring "Chong Houhu dismount from your horse and die!"



杀连天，只听得叫：“崇侯虎快快下马受死！”侯虎父子、众将，急向前看时，见一员小将，束发金冠，金抹额，双摇两根雉尾，大红袍，金锁甲，银合马，画杆戟，面如满月，唇若涂朱，厉声大骂：“崇侯虎，吾奉父亲之命，在此候尔多时。可速倒戈受死！还不下马，更待何时！”侯虎大骂曰：“好贼子！你父子谋反，忤逆朝廷，杀了朝廷命官，伤了天子军马，罪业如山。寸磔汝尸，尚不足以赎其辜。偶尔夤夜中贼奸计，辄敢在此耀武扬威，大言不惭。不日天兵一到，汝父子死无葬身之地。谁与我拿此反贼？”黄元济纵马舞刀，直取苏全忠。全忠用手中戟，对面相还，两马相交，一场大战：

刮地寒风声似飒，滚滚征尘飞紫雪。骛骛拨拨马啼鸣，  
叮叮当当袍甲结。齐心刀砍锦征袍，举意枪刺连环甲。

只杀的摇旗小校手连颠，擂鼓儿郎槌乱匝。

二将酣战，正不分胜负。孙子羽纵马舞叉，双战全忠。全忠大喝一声，刺子羽于马下。全忠复奋勇来战侯虎。侯虎父子双迎上来，战住全忠。全忠抖擞神威，好似弄风猛虎，搅海蛟龙，战住三将。正战间，全忠卖个破绽，一戟把崇侯虎护腿金甲挑下了半边。侯虎大惊，将马一夹，跳出围来，往外便走。崇应彪见父亲败走，意急心慌，慌了手脚，不提防被全忠当心一戟刺来。应彪急闪时，早中左臂，血淋袍甲，几乎落马。众将急上前架住，救得性命，望前逃走。全忠欲要追赶，又恐黑夜之间不当稳便，只得收了人马进城。此时天色渐明，两边来报苏护。护令长子到前殿问曰：“可曾拿了那贼？”全忠答曰：“奉父亲将令，在五岗镇埋伏，至半夜败兵



Looking up, Chong Houhu saw a brave young general in a golden helmet and armor, with a face round as the full moon and lips red as vermilion. "On my father's orders I've waited for you for a long time. Throw down your cutlass, get off your horse and meet your death," cried Su Quanzhong. "What are you waiting for?"

"You bloody bastard! Both you and your father are wicked rebels, killing generals and soldiers sent here by His Majesty. Your crimes are weighty as mountains, and you deserve to be sliced into a thousand pieces. It's too early for you to brag about victory, though I've suffered from your surprise raid. As soon as the reinforcements from His Majesty arrive, you and your father shall meet instant deaths," Chong Houhu reviled in return. "Who'll take this rascal for me?"

General Huang Yuanji spurred his horse forward and swung his cutlass at Su Quanzhong, who met the charge with his halberd. They fought an intense battle, with neither side taking the immediate upper hand. Then, Sun Ziyu galloped out with his forked spear to join the fight against Su. With a mighty roar, Su Quanzhong pierced Sun Ziyu's helmet with his weapon, bringing him crashing to the ground.

Though the combat was joined by Chong Houhu and his son, Su Quanzhong fought on single-handedly against the three generals, displaying the courage of a tiger in the mountains or a dragon in the sea. Su Quanzhong's halberd slashed Chong Houhu's armor, knocking off a piece covering his thigh. Much alarmed, Chong spurred his horse and with a rapid leap fled the scene of combat. Seeing his father flee, Chong Yingbiao became discouraged and distracted. A thrust of Su's halberd at his heart caught him unawares, but hastily avoiding it, he took a heavy blow in the left arm. Blood soaked his robes and armor. He would have fallen from his horse had not his generals rushed forward to support him. Once again, Chong Houhu's army suffered a terrible defeat.

Su Quanzhong dared not pursue any further in the darkness, and went back to the city.

At dawn, Su Hu held a conference at court. He asked Su Quanzhong, "Have you captured that rogue?"

"By your order, I had my men lay an ambush at Wugang, and the



方至，孩儿奋勇刺死孙子羽；挑崇侯虎护腿甲；伤崇应彪左臂，几乎落马，被众将救逃。奈黑夜不敢造次追赶，故此回兵。”苏护曰：“好了这老贼！孩儿且自安息。”不题。不知崇侯虎往何路借兵，且听下回分解。



defeated enemy troops fell into the trap at midnight. I fought bravely and managed to stab Sun Ziyu to death, knock off Chong Houhu's armor and pierce Chong Yingbiao's left arm. They were thoroughly defeated, but I dared not chase them farther in the dark. I had no choice but to return," Su Quangzhong reported.

"Chong Houhu was lucky. You may rest now, my son." Su Hu was very pleased with this outcome.

If you wish to know what happened after that, please read the next chapter.



## 第三回

### 姬昌解围进妲己

诗曰：

崇君奉敕伐诸侯，智浅谋庸枉怨尤。白昼调兵输战策；  
黄昏劫寨失前筹。从来女色多亡国；自古权奸不到头。  
岂是纣王求妲己，应知天意属东周。

话说崇侯虎父子带伤，奔走一夜，不胜困乏；急收聚败残人马，十停止存一停，俱是带着重伤。侯虎一见众军，不胜伤感。黄元济转上前曰：“君侯何故感叹。‘胜负军家常事’，昨夜偶未提防，悞中奸计。君侯且将残兵暂行扎住。可发一道催军文书往西岐，催西伯速调兵马前来，以便截战。一则添兵相助；二则可复今日之恨耳。不知君侯意下如何？”侯虎闻言，沉吟曰：“姬伯按兵不举，坐观成败，我今又去催他，反便宜了他一个‘违避圣旨’罪名。”正迟疑间，只听前边大势人马而来。崇侯虎不知何处人马，骇得魂不附体，魄绕空中。急自上马，望前看时，只见两杆旗幡开处，见一将面如锅底，海下赤髯，两道白眉，眼如金镞，带九云烈焰飞兽冠，身穿锁子连环甲，大红袍，腰系白玉带，骑火眼金睛兽，用两柄湛金斧，此人乃崇侯虎兄弟崇黑虎也，官



## Chapter 3

### Daji Enters the Palace

Chong Houhu and his wounded son fled for their lives the whole night through. Gathering the remnants of his troops, Chong was deeply grieved to find that only one-tenth of his men were left, most of them severely wounded.

General Huang Yuanji came forward to offer him comfort. "Why are you so full of worries again, Grand Duke? I still hold that victory and defeat are commonplace events in a general's life. Though we were defeated last night, we can still gather new forces." He urged Chong, "Why not send an urgent dispatch to the West Grand Duke and request reinforcements as soon as possible, so that we may continue our combat and seek our revenge? What do you think?"

Chong Houhu pondered a while. "Since the West Grand Duke takes no action while we've suffered defeat and seems indifferent as to whether we win or lose, I'm reluctant to ask him for help," he said, "lest he be acquitted of the crime of disobeying His Majesty's orders."

As the discussion went on, a report was delivered, "A huge army is marching towards us at great speed." Not knowing where the army was coming from, or whether it was friendly or hostile, Chong Houhu became scared. He hurriedly mounted his horse, and looking ahead wildly, saw a general with a face black as the bottom of a cauldron, a red beard and round golden eyes. He was wearing a coronet embroidered with clouds, flames, and flying birds, a suit of mail and a bright red robe. He was riding a fiery-eyed monster, and held two golden axes in his hands. Chong Houhu soon realized that this was none other than his own younger brother Chong Heihu, the Black Tiger, the Marquis of Caozhou.

This new arrival set Chong Houhu's heart at ease. After exchanging





拜曹州侯。侯虎一见是亲弟黑虎，其心方安。黑虎曰：“闻长兄兵败，特来相助，不意此处相逢，实为万幸。”崇应彪马上亦欠背称谢：“叔父，有劳远涉。”黑虎曰：“小弟此来，与长兄合兵，复往冀州；弟自有处。”彼时大家合兵一处。崇黑虎只有三千飞虎兵在先，后随二万有余，人马复到冀州城下安营。曹州兵在先，呐喊叫战。

冀州报马飞报苏护：“今有曹州崇黑虎兵至城下，请爷军令定夺。”苏护闻报，低头默默无语；半晌，言曰：“黑虎武艺精通，晓畅玄理，满城诸将皆非对手，如之奈何？”左右诸将听护之言，不知详细。只见长子全忠上前曰：“‘兵来将当，水来土压’，谅一崇黑虎有何惧哉！”护曰：“汝年少不谙事体，自负英勇；不知黑虎曾遇异人传授道术，百万军中取上将首级，如探囊中之物。不可轻觑。”全忠大叫曰：“父亲长他锐气，灭自己威风。孩儿此去，不生擒黑虎，誓不回来见父亲之面！”护曰：“汝自取败，勿生后悔。”全忠那里肯住，翻身上马，开放城门，一骑当先，厉声高叫：“探马的！与我报进中军，叫崇黑虎与我说话！”

蓝旗忙报与二位主帅得知：“外有苏全忠讨战。”黑虎暗喜曰：“吾此来一则为长兄兵败，二则为苏护解围，以全吾友谊交情。”令左右备坐骑，即翻身来至军前。见全忠马上耀武扬威。黑虎曰：“全忠贤侄，你可回去，请你父亲出来，我



greetings, Black Tiger said, "When I learned that you had suffered defeat on the front, I rushed here with my army to help you. How good it is to be with you once again."

Chong Yingbiao saluted his uncle from his saddle. "You must be tired after marching so far," he asked his uncle with concern.

But Black Tiger Chong Heihu only replied, "My army will join yours under one command. Let's go back to Jizhou and see what we can do there."

Chong Heihu had brought 3,000 Flying Tiger Soldiers with him, and there were another 20,000 following later on. The two armies marched to Jizhou, encamped and prepared themselves for battle. Meanwhile, in Jizhou, Su Hu had heard about the arrival of Chong Heihu. He lowered his head and remained silent for a long time.

"Black Tiger's highly skilled in combat and learned in the art of war. There's no rival for him among the generals in this city!" he finally said, and asked his generals, "What shall we do?"

"Generals are accustomed to fighting against invading armies, just as earth is commonly used to cover water. We mustn't be timid before Black Tiger," Su Quanzhong commented.

"You're too young and inexperienced. Don't you know that Black Tiger Chong Heihu was tutored by a magician? He can chop off the head of a great general as easily as pulling something out of a bag," Su Hu warned. "You mustn't underestimate him."

"Father! By praising the enemy, you're only compromising yourself!" Su Quanzhong replied. "I'll meet the challenge at once and not return until I capture Black Tiger."

"You'll suffer from your mistakes and soon regret what you've done," Su Hu warned again.

Despite these warnings, Su Quanzhong leaped upon his horse and galloped out of the city, shouting, "Tell Black Tiger to come out and fight at once."

Hearing the report, Black Tiger was secretly glad. "I'm here first to avenge my brother's defeat and second to try to save Su Hu," he thought. "I must help him for friendship's sake."

Before the camp, Black Tiger watched Su Quanzhong display his martial skills and called to him, "Dear nephew! Go back and tell your father to come and see me. I've something important to tell him."



自有说话。”全忠乃年幼之人，不谙事体，又听父亲说黑虎枭勇，焉肯善回，乃大言曰：“崇黑虎，我与你势成敌国，我父亲又与你论甚交情！速倒戈退军，饶你性命；不然悔之晚矣！”黑虎大怒曰：“小畜生焉敢无礼！”举湛金斧劈面砍来。全忠将手中戟急架相还。兽马相交，一场恶战。怎见得：

二将阵前寻斗赌，两下交锋谁敢阻。这个似摇头狮子下山岗；那个如摆尾狻猊寻猛虎。这一个兴心要定锦乾坤；那一个实意欲把江山补。从来恶战几千番，不似将军多英武。

二将大战冀州城下。苏全忠不知崇黑虎幼拜截教真人为师，秘授一个葫芦，背伏在脊背上，有无限神通。全忠只倚平生勇猛，又见黑虎用的是短斧，不把黑虎放在心上，眼底无人，自逞己能，欲要擒获黑虎，遂把平日所习武艺尽行使出。戟有尖有咎，九九八十一进步，七十二开门，腾、挪、闪、赚，迟、速、收、放。怎见好戟：

能工巧匠费经营，老君炉里炼成兵，造出一根银尖戟，安邦定国正乾坤。黄幡展三军害怕，豹尾动战将心惊，冲行营犹如大蟒，踏大寨虎荡羊群。休言鬼哭与神嚎，多少儿郎轻丧命。全凭此宝安天下，画戟长幡定太平。

苏全忠使尽平生精力，把崇黑虎杀了一身冷汗。黑虎叹曰：“苏护有子如此，可谓佳儿。真是将门有种！”黑虎把斧一晃，拨马便走。就把苏全忠在马上笑了一个腰软骨酥：“若听俺父亲之言，竟为所悞。誓拿此人，以灭我父之口。”放马赶来，那里肯舍。紧走紧赶，慢走慢追。全忠定要成功，往前赶有多时。黑虎闻脑后金铃响处，回头见全忠赶来不舍，忙把脊梁上红葫芦顶揭去，念念有词。只见葫芦里边一道黑烟冒出，化开如网罗，大小黑烟中有“噫哑”之声，遮天映日飞来，乃是铁嘴神鹰，张开口，劈面啄来。全忠只知马上



But Su Quanzhong was young and uncultured and longed to engage in combat with Black Tiger, because his father had praised him as a brave fighter. He did not take the cue.

“We’re enemies, though my father was friends with you. You had better leave this place at once, lest you lose your life,” he shouted back.

“How dare you speak so rudely to me, you little beast,” Black Tiger cursed him furiously and lunged forward with his gold axes at Su’s face.

Su met the blows with his halberd. Thus began a fierce combat between the two heroic generals. Su Quanzhong did not know that since his childhood Black Tiger had been the disciple of a mystical sage, who had given him a magic gourd, which he always carried on his back and enabled him to perform miracles. But Su Quanzhong had only his bravery to rely on and looked with contempt upon anyone who chose to fight with short-handled axes. He exerted every effort to fulfill his ambition of taking Black Tiger alive.

Their violent combat caused Black Tiger to perspire all over. He said to himself, “I admire Su Hu for having such a good son. A brave general’s son must certainly be a brave general.”

He made a feint with his axes, pulled his horse around and fled. Su Quanzhong laughed at his cowardice, and urged his horse after him. Seeing that his enemy was unwilling to give up, Black Tiger stealthily removed the lid from his gourd and began to mutter incantations under his breath. Suddenly a stream of black smoke rushed out of the gourd, filling the sky, and a flock of Heavenly Eagles could be heard calling loudly as they flew back and forth. The eagles opened their iron beaks and swooped





英雄，那晓的黑虎异术？急展戟护其身面。坐下马早被神鹰把眼一嘴伤了，那马跳将起来，把苏全忠跌了个金冠倒蹶，铠甲离鞍，撞下马来。黑虎传令：“拿了！”众军一拥向前，把苏全忠绑缚二臂。黑虎掌得胜鼓回营，辕门下马。探马报崇侯虎：“二老爷得胜，生擒反臣苏全忠，辕门听令。”侯虎传令：“请！”黑虎上帐，见侯虎，口称：“长兄，小弟擒苏全忠已至辕门。”侯虎喜不自胜，传令：“推来！”不一时把全忠推至帐前。苏全忠立而不跪。侯虎大骂曰：“贼子，今已被擒，有何理说？尚敢倔强抗礼！前夜五岗镇那样英雄，今日恶贯满盈，推出斩首示众！”全忠厉声大骂曰：“要杀就杀，何必作此威福！我苏全忠视死轻如鸿毛，只不忍你一班奸贼，蛊惑圣聪，陷害万民，将成汤基业被你等断送了。但恨不能生啖你等之肉耳！”侯虎大怒，骂曰：“黄口孺子！今已被擒，尚敢簧舌！”速令：“推出斩之！”方欲行刑，转过崇黑虎言曰：“长兄暂息雷霆。苏全忠被擒，虽则该斩，奈他父子皆系朝廷犯官，前闻旨意拿解朝歌，以正国法。况且护有女姐已，姿貌甚美，倘天子终有怜惜之意，一朝赦其不臣之罪，那时不归罪于我等？是有功而实为无功也。且姬伯未至，我兄弟何苦任其咎。不若且将全忠囚禁后营，破了冀州，擒护满门，解入朝歌，请旨定夺，方是上策。”侯虎曰：“贤弟之言极善。只是好了这反贼耳。”传令：“设宴，与你二爷爷贺功。”按下不表。

且言冀州探马报与苏护：“长公子出阵被擒。”护曰：“不必言矣。此子不听父言，自恃己能，今日被擒，理之当然。但吾为豪杰一场，今亲子被擒，强敌压境，冀州不久为他人



down to peck at Su Quanzhong. He tried to defend himself with his halberd, but he could not protect his horse at the same time. When one of his horse's eyes was pecked out, the horse fell. Su was thrown onto the ground and taken captive by Black Tiger.

When Su Quanzhong was brought before Chong Houhu, he did not beg for mercy, but continued cursing and swearing. Chong Houhu lost patience with him and ordered the executioners to behead him at once. But Black Tiger saved him, suggesting that he be escorted to the capital and dealt with personally by the king.

Hearing the bad news, Su Hu groaned to himself. "What can I say now? My son didn't listen to my warning, and as a result was taken captive today. I've been a hero all my life, but now my son's been taken captive, and with such a strong enemy, Jizhou's bound to be taken before long. Why have I ended up in such a miserable situation?" he wondered to himself. "Is it because I've given birth to a daughter? The bloody king's been deluded by the minions, and demands her as a concubine. Because of my refusal, my family and the innocent citizens of this city shall meet their ends. The disaster's due solely to her, my daughter.

"It will be my greatest humiliation if the city's taken and my wife and daughter are sent to Zhaoge as prisoners. They would be tried and put to death and their corpses would be displayed in the market. I would



所有，却为何来！只因生了姐己，昏君听信谗佞，使我满门受祸，黎庶遭殃，这都是我生此不肖之女，以遭此无穷之祸耳。倘久后此城一破，使我妻女擒往朝歌，露面抛头，尸骸残暴，惹天下诸侯笑我为无谋之辈，不若先杀其妻女，然后自刎，庶几不失丈夫之所为。”苏护带十分烦恼，仗剑走进后厅，只见小姐姐己，盈盈笑脸，微吐朱唇，口称：“爹爹，为何提剑进来？”苏护一见姐己，乃亲生之女，又非仇敌，此剑焉能举的起。苏护不觉含泪点头言曰：“冤家！为你，兄被他人所擒，城被他人所困，父母被他人所杀，宗庙被他人所有，生了你一人，断送我苏氏一门！”正感叹间，只见左右击云板，“请老爷升殿。崇黑虎索战。”护传令：“各城门严加防守，准备攻打。”崇黑虎有异术，谁敢拒敌。急令众将上城，支起弓弩，架起信炮、灰瓶、滚木之类，一应完全。

黑虎在城下暗想：“苏兄，你出来与我商议，方可退兵，为何惧哉，反不出战，这是何说。”没奈何，暂且回兵。报马报与侯虎。侯虎道：“请。”黑虎上帐坐下，就言苏护闭门不出。侯虎曰：“可架云梯攻打。”黑虎曰：“不必攻打，徒费心力。今只困其粮道，使城内百姓不能得接济，则此城不攻自破矣。长兄可以逸待劳，俟西伯侯兵来，再作区处。”按下不题。

且言苏护在城内，并无一筹可展，一路可投，真为束手待毙。正忧闷间，忽听来报：“启君侯，督粮官郑伦候令。”护叹曰：“此粮虽来，实为无益。”急叫：“令来。”郑伦到滴水檐前，欠背行礼毕。伦曰：“末将路闻君侯反商，崇侯奉旨



certainly be ridiculed and despised by all the marquises in the kingdom. I'll be a greater hero if I kill them first and then put myself to the sword."

Thus thinking, he took his sword and rushed to the rear palace. When Daji saw him, she ran up and greeted him with a sweet smile. "Dear papa! Why do you come here with your sword in hand?"

How could Su Hu possibly raise his sword against Daji? She was his beloved daughter, not an enemy in battle. He broke into tears. "My darling daughter! Because of you, your elder brother has been taken captive. Because of you, this city is surrounded at this very moment. Because of you, your parents shall lose their lives. Because of you, our entire family will perish...."

But before he could finish, a challenge from Black Tiger was reported, and he immediately returned to the court. He held a conference with his staff. "Since Black Tiger's skilled in witchcraft, we mustn't answer his challenge," he remarked. "We had better defend the city wall with arrows, stones and rolling logs."

At the foot of the city wall, Black Tiger was also confused. "Brother, if only you would only consult with me, I could withdraw my troops. Why do you fear and refuse to see me? I don't understand!" He had to return to the camp. Chong Houhu suggested that they attack the city with tall ladders, but Black Tiger had a better idea. "There's no need to launch an attack. Let's rather surround the city and block their supply lines. They'll be left inside without anything to eat, and we can take the city without an effort. Besides, we can rest now while waiting for the arrival of the West Grand Duke."

Su Hu was thus hopelessly besieged. One day, it was reported to him that General Zheng Lun had brought in provisions, and was waiting outside for further orders. "Though we've got rice now, what use is it!" he sighed, then said, "Tell him to come in." When Zheng Lun came in, Su



征讨，因此上末将心悬两地，星夜奔回。但不知君侯胜负如何？”苏护曰：“昨因朝商，昏君听信谗言，欲纳吾女为妃；吾以正言谏净，致触昏君，便欲问罪。不意费、尤二人将计就计，赦吾归国，使吾自进其女。吾因一时暴躁，题诗反商。今天子命崇侯虎伐吾，连赢他二三阵，损军折将，大获全胜。不意曹州崇黑虎将吾子全忠拿去。吾想黑虎身有异术，勇贯三军，吾非敌手。今天下诸侯八百，我苏护不知往何处投托？自思至亲不过四人，长子今已被擒，不若先杀其妻女，然后自尽，庶不使天下后世取笑。汝众将可收拾行装，投往别处，任诸公自为成立耳。”苏护言罢，不胜悲泣。郑伦听言，大叫曰：“君侯今日是醉了？迷了？痴了？何故说出这等不堪言语！天下诸侯有名者：西伯姬昌，东鲁姜桓楚，南伯鄂崇禹，总八百镇诸侯，一齐都到冀州，也不在我郑伦眼角之内。何苦自视卑弱如此？末将自幼相从君侯，荷蒙提挈，玉带垂腰，末将愿效驽骀，以尽犬马。”苏护听伦之言，对众将曰：“此人催粮，路逢邪气，口里乱谈。且不但天下八百镇诸侯，只这崇黑虎曾拜异人，所传道术，神鬼皆惊，胸藏韬略，万人莫敌，你如何轻视此人？”只见郑伦听罢，按剑大叫曰：“君侯在上，末将不生擒黑虎来见，把项上首级纳于众将之前！”言罢，不由军令，翻身出府，上了火眼金睛兽，使两柄降魔杵，放炮开城，排开三千乌鸦兵，象一块乌云卷地。及至营前，厉声高叫曰：“只叫崇黑虎前来见我！”

崇营探马报入中军：“启二位老爷，冀州有一将请二爷答话。”黑虎欠身，“小弟一往。”调本部三千飞虎兵，一对旗幡开处，黑虎一人当先。见冀州城下有一簇人马，按北方



Hu described the whole situation to him. "No one can beat Black Tiger since he's both brave and skilled in magic," he concluded. "There's no one that I can turn to for help in the whole kingdom. There are four in my family, but my son's already been taken captive. I've decided to kill my wife and my daughter first, and then myself; otherwise, we'll be ridiculed by the future generations. You generals may as well pack up and find yourselves a new master!"

"Marquis! Are you drunk? Are you mad? Or are you possessed? Even if the other three dukes and all the 800 marquises joined forces, I wouldn't even glance at them. How can you be so cowardly?" Zheng said in anger. "I've been in your service since my youth and owe my present position to you. I'll always do my best for you."

"I see that General Zheng's been possessed by an evil sprite, and that's why he's speaking nothing but nonsense," Su Hu declared to his other generals. "Let's forget about the 800 marquises for now. But this Black Tiger alone is a headache. Tutored by a sage in magic arts he's a source of alarm to both gods and demons. He's also a great strategist and can stand up to 10,000 men without fear. You mustn't underestimate him."

"Let me go and fight him. If I can't take Black Tiger, I'll have my head cut off and presented to all the generals assembled here." Zheng shouted. Without waiting for further orders, he jumped onto his fiery-eyed monster, grasped his two Demon Subduing Clubs and left the city at the head of his army. His 3,000 Crow Soldiers, dressed in black, resembled a huge black cloud rolling swiftly over the plains. "Come out here, Black Tiger," he shouted at the top of his voice when he got to the enemy camp.

Black Tiger rushed out with his Flying Tiger Soldiers, and found himself in front of a general with a date-purple face and a shining beard. He was wearing a scarlet robe, gold chain mail and a jade belt, and like Black Tiger himself was mounted on a fiery-eyed monster.



壬癸水，如一片乌云相似。那一员将，面如紫枣，须似金针，带九云烈焰冠，大红袍，金锁甲，玉束带，骑火眼金睛兽，两根降魔杵。郑伦见崇黑虎装束稀奇：带九云四兽冠，大红袍，连环铠，玉束带，也是金睛兽，两柄湛金斧。黑虎认不得郑伦。黑虎曰：“冀州来将通名！”伦曰：“冀州督粮上将郑伦也。汝莫非曹州崇黑虎？擒我主将之子，自恃强暴，可速献出我主将之子，下马受缚。若道半字，立为齑粉！”崇黑虎大怒，骂曰：“好匹夫！苏护违犯天条，有碎骨粉躯之祸；你皆是反贼逆党，敢如此大胆，妄出浪言！”催开坐下兽，手中斧飞来，直取郑伦。郑伦手中杵急架相还。二兽相迎，一场大战。但见：

两阵咚咚发战鼓，五采幡幢空中舞。三军呐喊助神威，惧战儿郎持弓弩。二将齐纵金睛兽，四臂齐举斧共杵。这一个怒发如雷烈焰生；那一个自小生来情性凶。这一个面如锅底赤须长；那一个脸似紫枣红霞吐。这一个蓬莱海岛斩蛟龙；那一个万仞山前诛猛虎。这一个昆仑山上拜明师；那一个八卦炉边参老祖。这一个学成武艺去整江山；那一个秘授道术把乾坤补。自来也见将军战，不似今番杵对斧。

二兽相交，只杀的红云惨惨，白雾霏霏。两家棋逢对手，将遇作家，来往有二十四五回合。郑伦见崇黑虎脊背上背一红葫芦，郑伦自思：“主将言此人有异人传授秘术，即此是他法术。常言道：‘打人不过先下手。’”——郑伦也曾拜西昆仑度厄真人为师。真人知道郑伦“封神榜”上有名之士，特传他窍中二气，吸人魂魄。凡与将对敌，逢之即擒。故此着他下



“State your name before combat,” Black Tiger called out, as he did not know Zheng Lun.

“I’m General Zheng Lun of Jizhou. You must be Black Tiger. You think you’re very brave, seizing my young master. Set him free at once, dismount and surrender! If you dare say no, I’ll turn you into dust.”

“You dolt! Su Hu’s committed a capital crime, and you’re his accomplice. How dare you speak such arrogant nonsense.” Black Tiger urged his mount forward and slashed at Zheng Lun with his axes. Zheng Lun met the charge with his clubs. They fought twenty-four rounds vigorously, neither giving way.

As they struck back and forth Zheng Lun caught sight of a red gourd on Black Tiger’s back. “My commander told me that Black Tiger was taught by a sage in magic powers. This must be his secret weapon. As the saying goes, ‘In a fight always make the first move.’ I must use mine first,” he thought to himself.

Zheng Lun himself was a disciple of the Woe Evading Sage of the West Mount Kunlun. Predicting that Zheng Lun would someday be created a god, the immortal taught him a magic skill whereby he might exhale a magic vapor and snatch the souls of his enemies. After a period of apprenticeship, Zheng Lun left the mountain and came to Jizhou.

And now in the midst of combat, Zheng Lun waved his club in the air, and immediately his Crow Soldiers lined up like a long snake. They





山投冀州，挣一条玉带，享人间福禄。——今日会战，郑伦把手中杵在空中一晃，后边三千乌鸦兵一声喊，行如长蛇之势，人人手拿挠钩，个个横拖铁索，飞云闪电而来。黑虎观之，如擒人之状。黑虎不知其故。只见郑伦鼻窍中一声响如钟声，窍中两道白光喷将出来，吸人魂魄。崇黑虎耳听其声，不觉眼目昏花，跌了个金冠倒蹶，铠甲离鞍，一对战靴空中乱舞。乌鸦兵生擒活捉，绳缚二臂。黑虎半晌方苏，定睛看时，已被绑了。黑虎怒曰：“此贼好赚眼法！如何不明不白，将我擒获？”只见两边掌得胜鼓进城。诗曰：

海岛名师授秘奇，英雄猛烈世应稀。神鹰十万全无用，方显男儿语不移。

且言苏护正在殿上，忽听得城外鼓响，叹曰：“郑伦休矣！”心甚迟疑。只见探马飞报进来：“启老爷：郑伦生擒崇黑虎，请令定夺。”苏护不知其故，心下暗想：“伦非黑虎之敌手，如何反为所擒？”急传令：“令来。”伦至殿前，将黑虎被擒诉说一遍。只见众士卒把黑虎簇拥至阶前。护急下殿，叱退左右，亲释其缚；跪下言曰：“护今得罪天下，乃无地可容之犯臣。郑伦不谙事体，触犯天威，护当死罪！”崇黑虎答曰：“仁兄与弟，一拜之交，未敢忘义。今被部下所擒，愧身无地！又蒙厚礼相看，黑虎感恩非浅！”苏护尊黑虎上坐，命郑伦众将来见。黑虎曰：“郑将军道术精奇，今遇所擒，使黑虎终身悦服。”护令设宴，与黑虎二人欢饮。护把天子欲进女之事一一对黑虎诉了一遍。黑虎曰：“小弟此来，一则为兄失利，二则为仁兄解围，不期令郎年纪幼小，自恃刚强，不肯进城请仁兄答话，因此被小弟擒回在后营，此小



shouted battle cries and, carrying hooks and chains, raced up like a piece of dark cloud. Before Black Tiger knew what was happening, two strong beams of light gushed forth from Zheng Lun's nostrils with a noise like the clanging of a huge bell. Black Tiger suddenly became dizzy, his vision blurred. Tumbling from his monster, he passed out and was seized and tied up by the Crow Soldiers. When he regained consciousness he realized that he was trussed up as a prisoner of war. He was furious. "That scoundrel really has some crafty tricks. How did he manage to capture me?"

Hearing the drums rolling outside the city, Su Hu groaned. "Poor Zheng Lun! He must be done for." But his doubts and worries were suddenly interrupted by a report that General Zheng Lun had won the battle and had taken Black Tiger alive.

Zheng Lun arrived and reported how he had captured Black Tiger Chong Heihu. Even as he spoke, his soldiers brought in the captive to the stone steps at the front of the court. Su Hu hastily left his seat, curtly dismissed the guards, untied Black Tiger and knelt before him. "I've offended His Majesty and committed a grave crime. Zheng Lun's rude and should be dealt with severely."

"I've never forgotten that we're sworn brothers. I'm ashamed to be a captive and greatly appreciate your courtesy," Black Tiger said in response.

Su Hu invited Black Tiger to take the place of honor, and ordered Zheng Lun and other generals to come and pay him their respects.

"General Zheng's skilled in the most ingenious arts. His capturing me today's filled me with the utmost respect for him," Black Tiger remarked.

At the feast that followed, Su Hu told Black Tiger the whole story of how King Zhou had demanded him for his daughter as a concubine. Black Tiger said, "The main reasons for my coming here are to discuss my brother's defeats and your way out of trouble. But I never expected that your son would be so naive, and so stubborn that he refused to understand me and take my message back to you. I was forced to take him. I'm actually trying my best to help you."

"I'll never forget your friendship, Brother," Su Hu said earnestly.

Hearing the report of how his brother had been taken, Chong Houhu was taken aback. "Who would have thought that such a miracle could



弟实为仁兄也。”苏护谢曰：“此德此情，何敢有忘！”

不言二侯城内饮酒，单言报马进辕门来报：“启老爷：二爷被郑伦擒去，未知凶吉，请令定夺。”侯虎自思：“吾弟自有道术，为何被擒？”其时略阵官言：“二爷与郑伦正战之间，只见郑伦把降魔杵一摆，三千乌鸦兵一齐而至；只见郑伦鼻子里两道白光出来，如钟声响亮，二爷便撞下马来，故此被擒。”侯虎听说，惊曰：“世上如何有此异术？再差探马，打听虚实。”言未毕，报：“西伯侯差官辕门下马。”侯虎心中不悦，分付：“令来。”只见散宜生素服角带，上帐行礼毕，“卑职散宜生拜见君侯。”侯虎曰：“大夫，你主公为何偷安，竟不为国，按兵不动，违避朝廷旨意？你主公甚非为人臣之礼。今大夫此来，有何说话？”宜生答曰：“我主公言：兵者凶器也，人君不得已而用之。今因小事，劳民伤财，惊慌万户，所过州府县道，调用一应钱粮，路途跋涉，百姓有征租榷税之扰，军将有披坚执锐之苦，因此我主公先使卑职下一纸之书，以息烽烟，使苏护进女王廷，各罢兵戈，不失一殿股肱之意。如护不从，大兵一至，剿叛除奸，罪当灭族。那时苏护死而无悔。”侯虎听言，大笑曰：“姬伯自知违避朝廷之罪，特用此支吾之辞，以来自释。吾先到此，损将折兵，恶战数场；那贼焉肯见一纸之书而献女也。吾且看大夫往冀州见苏护如何。如不依允，看你主公如何回旨？你且去！”宜生出营上马，径到城下叫门：“城上的，报与你主公，说西伯侯差官下书。”城上士卒急报上殿：“启爷：西伯侯差官在城下，口称下书。”苏护与崇黑虎饮酒未散，护曰：“姬伯乃西岐之贤人，速令开城，请来相见。”不一



take place?" He began dispatching his men for further news when the report came that a messenger had arrived from the West Grand Duke. Though Chong Houhu was upset, he ordered his men to let the messenger in. This messenger was none other than San Yisheng, supreme minister and a well-known scholar from the West Grand Dukedom. After San Yisheng had offered his respects, Chong Houhu began to reproach him. "Minister! Why does your master ignore His Majesty's orders and remain in the comfort of his palace indulging in pleasure?" he said in anger. "Your master's guilty of disloyalty to both His Majesty and the country. What have you got to say to me today?"

"My master always says 'War's a calamity,' and should be resorted to only in desperate need. You're involved in a war on account of a trivial incident. It'll result in a great waste of manpower and money. People are panic-stricken; all the houses and farms are left empty and unattended. How terribly the people and the soldiers have suffered! For this reason, my master's sent me here with a letter, exhorting Su Hu to cease resistance, and give up his daughter on condition that he retains his title as the Marquis of Jizhou. If he remains stubborn, then we'll use a stronger force which he'll be unable to resist," San Yisheng explained.

Chong Houhu burst into a great roar of laughter. "Ji Chang's making excuses, since he realizes that he's guilty of disobeying His Majesty's orders," he mocked. "I've already fought Su Hu a few times, but suffered heavy losses. How can that brigand be persuaded to send his daughter to the king by just reading a letter? Go and see Su Hu, and let's just see what happens."

San Yisheng left the camp and advanced to the foot of the city wall. "Here's a messenger from the West Grand Duke, bringing a letter to you," he shouted to the soldiers above, and minutes later the city gates were opened, admitting him. He was brought before Su Hu, who was dining with Black Tiger.

"What instructions do you bring me in this humble city, Officer?" Su Hu asked him.

"I've come here by order of the West Grand Duke. As you offended His Majesty by writing that poem, my master was ordered to punish you.



时，宜生到殿前行礼毕。护曰：“大夫今到敝郡，有何见谕？”宜生曰：“卑职今奉西伯侯之命，前月君侯怒题反诗，得罪天子，当即敕命起兵问罪。我主公素知君侯忠义，故此按兵未敢侵犯。今有书上达君侯，望君侯详察施行。”宜生锦囊取书，献与苏护。护接书开拆。书曰：

“西伯侯姬昌百拜冀州君侯苏公麾下：昌闻：‘率土之滨，莫非王臣。’今天子欲选艳妃，凡公卿士庶之家，岂得隐匿。今足下有女淑德，天子欲选入宫，自是美事。足下竟与天子相抗，是足下忤君。且题诗午门，意欲何为？足下之罪，已在不赦。足下仅知小节，为爱一女，而失君臣大义。昌素闻公忠义，不忍坐视，特进一言，可转祸为福，幸垂听焉。且足下若进女王廷，实有三利：女受宫闈之宠，父享椒房之贵，官居国戚，食禄千钟，一利也；冀州永镇，满宅无惊，二利也；百姓无涂炭之苦，三军无杀戮之惨，三利也。公若执迷，三害目下至矣：冀州失守，宗社无存，一害也；骨肉有族灭之祸，二害也；军民遭兵燹之灾，三害也。大丈夫当舍小节而全大义，岂得效区区无知之辈以自取灭亡哉。昌与足下同为商臣，不得不直言上渎，幸贤侯留意也。草草奉闻，立候裁决。谨启。”

苏护看毕，半晌不言，只是点头。宜生见护不言，乃曰：“君侯不必犹豫。如允，以一书而罢兵戈；如不从，卑职回覆主公，再调人马。无非上从君命，中和诸侯，下免三军之劳苦。此乃主公一段好意，君侯何故缄口无语。乞速降号令，以便施行。”苏护闻言，对崇黑虎曰：“贤弟，你来看一看，



But he knows that you're loyal, and refuses to cooperate with Chong Hohu. He sent me with a letter to you, and hopes you'll read it carefully," San Yisheng said as he took out the letter.

Su Hu took the letter and began to read:

Knowing that you are virtuous and loyal I cannot rest unconcerned in my palace and allow you to continue in your misfortune. But I know that you may turn your misfortune into future if you place your trust in me and accept the advice that I offer you in this letter.

There will be three advantages if you send your daughter to the royal palace: (1) As long as she enjoys the favor of the king, her father will be honored as a royal relative with a high stipend; (2) Jizhou will remain untroubled by war, and Su Hu's whole family will enjoy peace and the respect of the court forever; and (3) The people will no longer suffer, nor will soldiers in the army be slaughtered. Yet, if you choose to remain obstinate, three terrible things will happen: (1) Jizhou will be taken and occupied, and neither your home nor the temple of your ancestors will be spared; (2) Every member of your family will be exterminated; and (3) The innocent people and soldiers will suffer disaster.

A hero should concern himself with matters of great importance and ignore everything which smacks of the trivial. You should not destroy yourself like a common fool.

We are both ministers of the Shang Dynasty. Thus, I must speak the truth and offer my advice so that you may make a quick decision....

After reading the letter over, Su Hu remained silent, only nodding his head. San Yinsheng noticed this. "You needn't hesitate any more, sir! The war'll be over if you agree, but continue if you don't. Why do you remain silent?" he urged.

Su Hu turned to Black Tiger, "Brother, please read it. It's full of reason and truth and in the best interests of the nation and the people. How could I dare to oppose his wishes!" He then invited San Yisheng to join the feast and put him in his own mansion for the night. The next day,



姬伯之书，实是有理，果是真心为国为民，乃仁义君子也。敢不如命！”于是命酒管待散宜生于馆舍。次日修书赠金帛，令先回西岐，“我随后便进女朝商赎罪。”宜生拜辞而去。真是一封书抵十万之师，有诗为证，诗曰：

舌辩悬河汇百川，方知君义与臣贤。数行书转苏侯意，何用三军枕戟眠？

苏护送散宜生回西岐，与崇黑虎商议：“姬伯之言甚善，可速整行装，以便朝商，毋致迟迟，又生他议。”二人欣喜。不知其女如何，且听下回分解。

He asked San Yisheng to deliver his reply to the West Grand Duke along with gifts of gold and satin.

When San Yisheng left, Su Hu said that he would personally escort his daughter to the palace and make amends for his errors. The power of a single letter was much greater than that of 100,000 soldiers! At this, Black Tiger said to Su Hu, "The West Grand Duke's a reasonable man. You should pack your bags and make ready to send your daughter to His Majesty as soon as possible. For this is a noble act of obeisance to the Shang Dynasty."

Both Su Hu and Black Tiger were greatly pleased with themselves.









## 第四回

### 恩州驿狐狸死妲己

诗曰：

天下荒荒起战场，致生谗佞乱家邦。忠言不听商容谏，  
逆语惟知费仲良。色纳狐狸友琴瑟，政由豺虎逐鸾凰。  
甘心亡国为污下，赢得人间一捏香。

话说宜生接了回书，竟往西岐。不题。

且说崇黑虎上前言曰：“仁兄大事已定，可作速收拾行装，将令爱送进朝歌，迟恐有变。小弟回去，放令郎进城。我与家兄收兵回国，具表先达朝廷，以便仁兄朝商谢罪。不得又有他议，致生祸端。”苏护曰：“蒙贤弟之爱，与西伯之德，吾何爱此一女而自取灭亡哉。即时打点无疑。贤弟放心。只是我苏护止此一子，被令兄囚禁行营，贤弟可速放进城，以慰老妻悬望。举室感德不浅！”黑虎道：“仁兄宽心，小弟出去，即时就放他来，不必挂念。”二人彼此相谢。出城，行至崇侯虎行营。两边来报：“启老爷：二老爷已至辕门。”侯虎急传令：“请！”黑虎进营，上帐坐下。侯虎曰：“西伯侯姬昌好生可恶！今按兵不举，坐观成败。昨遣散宜生来下书，说苏护进女朝商，至今未见回报。贤弟被擒之后，吾日日差人打听，心甚不安。今得贤弟回来，不胜万千之喜！不知苏护果肯朝王谢罪？贤弟自彼处来，定知苏护端的，幸道其详。”黑虎厉声大叫曰：“长兄，想我兄弟二人，自始





## Chapter 4

### The Fox Sprite Murders Daji

Taking his leave, Black Tiger said to Su Hu, "We've settled everything now, Brother. Make haste to escort your daughter to the capital. Any delay might mean a possible change for the worse. As soon as I return, I'll set your son free. Both my brother and I will return with our armies. We'll present our reports to the king to smooth the path for you. If you attempt to do things in any other way, disaster may befall you once again."

"In gratitude for your affection and the kindness of the West Grand Duke, I won't sacrifice my life on account of my adoration for my daughter. Please set your heart at rest. I'll certainly set off as soon as possible," Su Hu reassured him. "But my only son's in your camp. Would you set him free, lest my old wife worry herself to death. Once again I greatly appreciate your kindness."

"You need't worry, Brother. He'll leave as soon as I reach the camp," Black Tiger said earnestly. They then thanked each other once again and parted reluctantly.

Black Tiger returned to the camp and sat down in his brother's tent. "What a vile wretch the West Grand Duke is. He keeps his army idle, awaiting the outcome of the battle without lifting a finger. He sent San Yisheng to see me yesterday with a letter to Su Hu, trying to persuade him to send his daughter to the palace. I let San Yisheng see Su Hu yesterday, but he still hasn't come back," Chong Houhu complained. "Ever since you were taken captive, I've been worried and constantly sent my men to make inquiries. You must know how pleased I am that you're free now. I don't know whether Su Hu will admit his faults or not, but you must know all about it since you've just come from Jizhou. Please tell me the details, Brother."

"Though we share the same ancestors and father, yet as an old prov-



祖一脉，相传六世，俺弟兄系同胞一本，古语有言：‘一树之果，有酸有甜；一母之子，有愚有贤。’长兄，你听我说：苏护反商，你先领兵征伐，故此损折军兵。你在朝廷也是一镇大诸侯，你不与朝廷干些好事，专诱天子近于佞臣，故此天下人人怨恶你。五万之师总不如一纸之书，苏护已许进女朝王谢罪。你折兵损将，愧也不愧？辱我崇门。长兄，从今与你一别，我黑虎再不会你！两边的，把苏公子放了！”两边不敢违令，放了全忠，上帐谢黑虎曰：“叔父天恩，赦小侄再生，顶戴不尽！”崇黑虎曰：“贤侄可与令尊说，叫他速收拾朝王，毋得迟滞。我与他上表，转达天子，以便你父子进朝谢罪。”全忠拜谢出营，上马回冀州。不题。

崇黑虎怒发如雷，领了三千人马，上了金睛兽，自回曹州去了。

且言崇侯虎愧莫敢言，只得收拾人马，自回本国，具表请罪。不题。

单言苏全忠进了冀州，见了父母，彼此感慰毕。护曰：“姬伯前日来书，真是救我苏氏灭门之祸。此德此恩，何敢有忘！我儿，我想君臣之义至重，君叫臣死，不敢不死，我安敢惜一女，自取败亡哉。今只得将你妹子进往朝歌，面君赎罪。你可权镇冀州，不得生事扰民。我不日就回。”全忠拜领父言。苏护随进内，对夫人杨氏将“姬伯来书劝我朝王”一节细说一遍。夫人放声大哭。苏护再三安慰。夫人含泪言曰：“此女生来娇柔，恐不谙侍君之礼，反又惹事。”苏护曰：“这也没奈何，只得听之而已。”夫妻二人不觉感伤一夜。



erb says, 'one tree may bear both sweet and sour fruit, and sons born of the same mother may be either bad and foolish or good and wise. Listen, Brother!' Black Tiger snapped. "When Su Hu rose up against King Zhou, you recklessly attacked him, suffering heavy losses. You're also a grand duke of the Shang Dynasty, but you've never performed any good deeds for the government. You've egged on the king to accept the minions and caused hatred the country over. That's why your 50,000 men have less power than a letter from the West Grand Duke. Su Hu's already promised to send his daughter to the king, and to beg His Majesty's pardon at the same time. Doesn't this make you feel embarrassed? You're a disgrace to the family. I'm going to leave you now, and I never want to see you again," Black Tiger swore, and then ordered that Su Quanzhong be set free. When the boy appeared in his tent and expressed his gratitude, Black Tiger warned again. "My dear nephew! You must tell your father to begin his journey immediately. I'll send a petition to the king and report what your father intends to do, so as to make it easier for him."

Su Quanzhong then bade him farewell and left the camp for Jizhou. Burning with fury, Black Tiger also mounted his monster and led his 3,000 men back to Caozhou. Chong Houhu, embarrassed and ashamed, filed a report to the king and withdrew to his own dukedom. Meanwhile father and son met again in Jizhou.

"We cannot forget the virtue and grace of Ji Chang. It is he that has saved us from destruction. As I cannot let the family perish on account of Daji, I've got no choice but to send her to the palace and apologize to His Majesty. While I'm away, you must look after Jizhou and take care not to disturb the people. I'll return as soon as possible," Su Hu told his son.

He then entered the inner palace to see his wife Madame Yang and tell her of Ji Chang's advisory letter. Knowing that her husband was going to take her daughter away, she burst into tears. When Su Hu tried to comfort her, she said, "She's so delicate that I'm afraid she'll be unable to serve the king properly. My worst fear is that she may bring annoyance to His Majesty."

"Unfortunately, there's very little we can do about that now," Su Hu said. The old couple spent the whole night in despair and sorrow. The



次日，点三千人马，五百家将，整備毡车，令姐已梳妆起程。姐已闻命，泪下如雨，拜别母亲、长兄，婉转悲啼，百千娇媚，真如笼烟芍药，带雨梨花。子母怎生割舍。只见左右侍儿苦劝，夫人方哭进府中，小姐也含泪上车。兄全忠送至五里而回。苏护压后，保姐已前进。只见前面打两杆贵人旗幡，一路上饥餐渴饮，朝登紫陌，暮践红尘，过了些绿杨古道，红杏园林，见了些啼鸦唤春，杜鹃叫月。在路行程非止一两日，逢州过县，涉水登山。那日抵暮，已至恩州。只见恩州驿丞接见。护曰：“驿丞，收拾厅堂，安置贵人。”驿丞曰：“启老爷：此驿三年前出一妖精，以后凡有一应过往老爷，俱不在里面安歇。可请贵人权在行营安歇，庶保无虞。不知老爷尊意如何？”苏护大喝曰：“天子贵人，岂惧什么邪魅。况有馆驿，安得停居行营之礼！快去打扫驿中厅堂住室，毋得迟误取罪！”驿丞忙叫众人打点厅堂内室，准备铺陈，注香洒扫，一色收拾停当，来请贵人。苏护将姐已安置在后面内堂里，有五十名侍儿在左右奉侍。将三千人马俱在驿外边围绕；五百家将在馆驿门首屯扎。苏护正在厅上坐着，点上蜡烛。苏护暗想：“方才驿丞言此处有妖怪，此乃皇华驻节之所，人烟凑集之处，焉有此事？然亦不可不防。”将一根豹尾鞭放在案桌之旁，剔灯展玩兵书。只听得恩州城中戍鼓初敲，已是一更时分。苏护终是放心不下，乃手提铁鞭，悄步后堂，于左右室内点视一番；见诸侍儿并小姐寂然安寝，方才放心；复至厅上再看兵书，不觉又是二更。不一时，将交三鼓，可煞作怪，忽然一阵风响，透人肌肤，将灯灭而复明。怎见得：



next morning, Su Hu mobilized 3,000 soldiers and 500 officers, made ready his carriages, and told Daji to prepare for the long journey. When she heard this, Daji broke down in a flood of tears and bade a sorrowful farewell to her mother and brother. She was beautiful, radiating as much sweetness and charm as peony blossoms dripping with dew. Though unwilling to be separated from each other, they were compelled to say their goodbyes at last. Madame Yang returned weeping to her bed chamber, while Daji stepped into her carriage in tears. Su Quanzhong escorted his father and sister for five *li* before he returned home.

Flags and pennants led the long train, and Su Hu rode behind his daughter's carriage in order to offer her protection in case of emergency. Many days passed as they traveled over rivers and mountains until they came to Enzhou. Arriving at the courier station, Su Hu met the station officer. He asked the officer to prepare a room for his daughter.

"I should tell you the truth, sir!" the officer replied. "About three years ago, an evil sprite appeared here, and ever since then, not a single honorable guest passing through this area has taken up residence here. For the sake of security, you're advised to reside at the hostel in the military camp."

"Do you really think that a royal relative could be terrified by a mere sprite?" Su Hu demanded. "We're not going anywhere else. Clean up the place at once."

Once the bedrooms were cleaned up, Su Hu placed Daji in a room in the rear hall in the company of fifty maidservants. The station was in addition surrounded by the 3,000 soldiers and the gates were tightly guarded by the 500 officers.

Sitting in the candle-lit hall, Su Hu was in deep thought. "Though the station officer warned me about an evil sprite, I don't believe it, situated as it is in the middle of a busy market, with people coming and going," he said to himself. "Nevertheless, I must heighten my vigilance, lest something unexpected should take place."

So thinking, he first placed a leopard-tail staff beside his desk before picking up a book about war strategy. As the first watch struck in the city, Su Hu still could not set his heart at rest. With the iron staff in hand, he walked silently towards the rear hall where his daughter was staying. When he discovered that Daji and her maidservants were all sleeping soundly, he returned to the front hall and started reading his book on war strategy





非干虎啸，岂是龙吟。淅凛凛寒风扑面，清冷冷恶气侵人，到不能开花谢柳，多暗藏水怪山精。悲风影里露双睛，一似金灯在惨雾之中，黑气丛中探四爪，浑如钢钩出紫霞之外，尾摆头摇如狻猊；狰狞雄猛似狻猊。

苏护被这阵怪风吹得毛骨耸然。心下正疑惑之间，忽听后厅侍儿一声喊叫：“有妖精来了！”苏护听说后边有妖精，急忙提鞭在手，抢进后厅，左手执灯，右手执鞭，将转大厅背后，手中灯已被妖风扑灭。苏护急转身，再过大厅，急叫家将取进灯火来时，复进后厅，只见众侍儿慌张无措。苏护急到姐已寝榻之前，用手揭起幔帐，问曰：“我儿，方才妖气相侵，你曾见否？”姐已答曰：“孩儿梦中听得侍儿喊叫‘妖精来了’，孩儿急待看时，又见灯光，不知是爹爹前来，并不曾看见甚么妖怪。”护曰：“这个感谢天地庇佑，不曾惊吓了你，这也罢了。”护复安慰女儿安息，自己巡视，不敢安寝。——不知这个回话的乃是千年狐狸，不是姐已。方才灭灯之时，再出厅前取得灯火来，这是多少时候了，姐已魂魄已被狐狸吸去，死之久矣；乃借体成形，迷惑纣王，断送他锦绣江山。此是天数，非人力所为。有诗为证：

恩州驿内怪风惊，苏护提鞭扑灭灯。二八娇容今已丧，错看妖魅当亲生。

苏护心慌，一夜不曾着枕，“幸喜不曾惊了贵人，托赖天地祖宗庇佑；不然又是欺君之罪，如何解释。”等待天明，离了恩州驿，前往朝歌而来。晓行夜住，饥餐渴饮，在路行程，非止一日。渡了黄河，来至朝歌，安下营寨。苏护先差官进城，用“脚色”见武成王黄飞虎。飞虎见了苏护进女贖

again. Soon the second watch was sounded and then the third. Suddenly, there was a great whirlwind, an unusual coldness bit into his flesh and bones, and the candles flickered off and on again. It seemed as if a wild beast had bounced into the room and was about to snatch someone away.

This wild wind gave Su Hu goose-bumps all over his body. As he puzzled over it, he suddenly heard voices from the rear hall, "A ghost! It's a ghost!" He picked up the iron staff and a lamp and rushed into the rear hall. The lamp, however, was blown out before he arrived. As he could do nothing in the darkness, he rapidly returned to his own room and urgently ordered for another lamp.

When he rushed to the rear hall a second time, he saw the maidservants running about in a panic. Entering Daji's room, he pulled open the bed curtains. "How are you, my child? Did you see the ghost come in?" he asked.

"I was dreaming when I heard the cries, but when I looked up and round, I saw only you coming in with the lamp in hand. I haven't seen any ghost."

"Thank Heaven and earth that you were not terrified. Rest easy, my child."

Saying goodnight, Su Hu returned to his own room and remained on watch through the rest of the night, not daring to sleep for even an instant.

What Su Hu did not know was that the woman whom he talked to was none other than the thousand-year-old female fox sprite. During the few minutes it took him to return to his room for a second lamp, the fox sprite had sucked out Daji's soul and then occupied her body. Her purpose was to seduce King Zhou and overthrow the Shang Dynasty, as Goddess Nu Wa had ordered.

Su Hu could not sleep that night, yet he was satisfied. "It's lucky that the future concubine of the king wasn't alarmed at all," he thought to himself. "This must be a blessing from Heaven, earth and my ancestors. Otherwise, I would be accused again of offending the king and would never be able to explain myself."

At dawn they set out from Enzhou, traveling by the day and resting by night. Several days later, they forded the Yellow River and arrived at the capital, camping outside the city. Su Hu sent a messenger to the royal court to announce his arrival. Hearing the report, Prince Huang Feihu realized that Su Hu had changed his mind about his daughter. He sent a



罪文书，忙差龙环出城，分付苏护，把人马扎在城外，令护同女进城，到金亭馆驿安置。

当时权臣费仲、尤浑见苏护又不先送礼物，叹曰：“这逆贼，你虽则献女赎罪，天子之喜怒不测，凡事俱在我二人点缀，其生死存亡，只在我等掌握之中，他全然不理我等，甚是可恶！”

不讲二人怀恨，且言纣王在龙德殿，有随侍官启驾：“费仲候旨。”天子命：“传宣。”只见费仲进朝，称呼礼毕，俯伏奏曰：“今苏护进女，已在都城候旨定夺。”纣王闻奏，大怒曰：“这匹夫，当日强辞乱政，朕欲置于法，赖卿等谏止，赦归本国；岂意此贼题诗午门，欺藐朕躬，殊属可恨。明日朝见，定正国法，以惩欺君之罪！”费仲乘机奏曰：“天子之法，原非为天子而重，乃为万姓而立。今叛臣贼子不除，是为无法。无法之朝，为天下之所弃。”王曰：“卿言极善。明日朕自有说。”费仲退散已毕。次日天子登殿，钟鼓齐鸣，文武侍立。但见：

银烛朝天紫陌长，禁城春色晓苍苍。池边弱柳垂青琐；  
百转流莺绕建章。剑佩风随凤池步；衣冠身惹御炉香。  
共沐恩波凤池上，朝朝染翰侍君王。

天子升殿，百官朝贺毕。王曰：“有奏章者出班，无事且散。”言未毕，午门官启驾：“冀州侯苏护候旨午门，进女请罪。”王命：“传旨宣来。”苏护身服犯官之服，不敢冠冕衣裳，来至丹墀之下俯伏，口称：“犯臣苏护，死罪！死罪！”王曰：“冀州苏护，你题反诗午门‘永不朝商’，及至崇侯虎奉敕问罪，你尚拒敌天兵，损坏命官军将，你有何说，今又朝



messenger of his own to tell Su Hu to station his troops outside the city but bring Daji in and put her up at the Golden Reception House.

But Fei Zhong and You Hun were displeased, as Su Hu had brought them no gifts. "That treacherous thief Su Hu!" they commented. "He hopes to atone for his crimes, but the royal wrath or joy are subject to our influence, and it is we that decide whether he should live or die, be rich or poor. Yet he seems to have no regard for us at all!"

In the Dragon Virtue Court the next day, Fei Zhong stepped forward and knelt before King Zhou, "Su Hu's here to offer his daughter. He's awaiting your orders outside the palace."

At this the king exploded in a great rage. "That common oaf! When he offended me that day, I decided to put him to death at once, but then I took your advice and sent him back to his territory," he cried out. "However, he showed no appreciation for my generosity, and wrote that poem! He insulted me so shamelessly that I must put him to death tomorrow. Such is the law of this land."

"The laws pronounced by Your Majesty are applicable to every soul in the country. It would be anarchy if rebellious and treacherous acts were not dealt with seriously. A nation without law will be forsaken and soon fall into ruin," Fei Zhong at once took the cue.

"You're right, Fei Zhong. See what I do tomorrow," King Zhou said.

As drums were beaten and bells struck, King Zhou made his solemn appearance at the morning court session. All his civil and military ministers were lined up in order beside him. After greetings and cheers, the gate officer rushed up and reported to the king, "Su Hu of Jizhou's waiting outside the palace to offer you his daughter and redeem his faults."

"Let him in."

Su Hu, not daring to wear the coronet and red robes of his rank, was dressed in the garb of a convict. He knelt down and kowtowed. "This criminal Su Hu has committed a capital crime in opposing you. I deserve to die!" he said.

"Su Hu of Jizhou! You wrote that poem stating that you would never again offer allegiance to this dynasty. You dared to resist the royal army and slaughtered my generals and soldiers. How can you justify yourself coming to my court again today? For these crimes you must die at once!"



君!”着随侍官：“拿出午门梟首，以正国法!”言未毕，只见首相商容出班谏曰：“苏护反商，理当正法；但前日西伯侯姬昌有本，令苏护进女赎罪，以完君臣大义。今苏护既尊王法，进女朝王赎罪，情有可原。且陛下因不进女而致罪，今已进女而又加罪，甚非陛下本心。乞陛下怜而赦之。”纣王犹豫未定，有费仲出班奏曰：“丞相所奏，望陛下从之。且宣苏护女妲己朝见。如果容貌出众，礼度幽闲，可任役使，陛下便赦苏护之罪；如不称圣意，可连女斩于市曹，以正其罪。庶陛下不失信于臣民矣。”王曰：“卿言有理。”——看官：只因这费仲一语，将成汤六百年基业送与他人。这且不题。但言——纣王命随侍官：“宣妲己朝见。”妲己进午门，过九龙桥，至九间殿滴水檐前，高擎牙笏，进礼下拜，口称：“万岁!”纣王定睛观看，见妲己乌云叠鬓，杏脸桃腮，浅淡春山，娇柔柳腰，真似海棠醉日，梨花带雨，不亚九天仙女下瑶池，月里嫦娥离玉阙。妲己启朱唇似一点樱桃，舌尖上吐的是美孜孜一团和气，转秋波如双弯凤目，眼角里送的是娇滴滴万种风情。口称：“犯臣女妲己愿陛下万岁，万岁，万万岁!”只这几句，就把纣王叫的魂游天外，魄散九



King Zhou ordered his guards to take Su Hu away and decapitate him outside the palace gate.

But at this moment, Prime Minister Shang Rong left the ranks and fell on his knees before the king. "Su Hu should have his head cut off for rebelling against the Shang Dynasty. However, Ji Chang has sent a petition here and reports that Su Hu is willing to offer you his daughter and atone for his crimes. For this, Su Hu may be pardoned. He committed a crime, but how can you treat him so severely after he has changed his mind. I beg you to have mercy on him."

King Zhou was still thinking this over when Fei Zhong stepped out. "I suggest that Your Majesty accept the Prime Minister's proposal and bring Daji in right now. If she's indeed beautiful, virtuous, familiar with the rites, eloquent in speech and ready to serve you, you may take her and forgive Su Hu at once. If, on the contrary, she's not and doesn't appeal to you at all, Your Majesty may cut off both their heads in the market and show the people that you deal with important matters in a solemn and strict fashion."

"You're right, Fei Zhong. Bring Daji here to see me at once," the king ordered.

Daji moved gracefully towards the palace gate, crossed over the Nine Dragon Bridge, and when she reached the entrance to the court, raised the ivory tablet in her hands, knelt down and saluted the king, "Long live the King! Long live the King!"

King Zhou fixed his eyes on her. She had soft black hair, cheeks as pretty as peach blossoms, a body slender as a tender willow branch, and was dressed as elegantly as floating clouds. She gave one the impression of a begonia drunk with sunshine, or a pear blossom drenched in rain. She was as ethereal as a fairy from either the Ninth Heaven, or the moon palace. When she parted her cherry lips, she gave off a breath of perfumed fragrance. Her eyes were like autumn ripples, radiating coquettish charm.

When she said in her sweet voice "The daughter of your criminal servant prays that Your Majesty be blessed with 10,000 years," King Zhou was entirely bewitched and seemed to be flying towards the sky.



霄，骨软筋酥，耳热眼跳，不知如何是好。当时纣王起立御案之旁，命：“美人平身。”令左右宫妃：“挽苏娘娘进寿仙宫，候朕躬回宫。”忙叫当驾官传旨：“赦苏护满门无罪，听朕加封：官还旧职，国戚新增，每月加俸二千担，显庆殿筵宴三日，众百官首相庆贺皇亲，夸官三日。文官二员、武官三员送卿荣归故地。”苏护谢恩。两班文武见天子这等爱色，都有不悦之意，奈天子起驾还宫，无可诤谏，只得都到显庆殿陪宴。

不言苏护进女荣归；天子同妲己在寿仙宫筵宴，当夜成就凤友鸾交，恩爱如同胶漆。纣王自进妲己之后，朝朝宴乐，夜夜欢娱，朝政隳堕，章奏混淆。群臣便有谏章，纣王视同儿戏。日夜荒淫，不觉光阴瞬息，岁月如流，已是二月不曾设朝；只在寿仙宫同妲己宴乐。天下八百镇诸侯多少本到朝歌，文书房本积如山，不能面君，其命焉能得下。眼见天下大乱。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



His body went limp, his ears grew hot and his vision blurred. He could hardly control himself. He stood up and ordered, "Rise, my beauty! You may stand." Turning towards his palace maidservants he said, "Lead Lady Su to the Fairy Longevity Palace and await my arrival," and then pronounced, "Su Hu's whole family is now pardoned. Su Hu is restored to his original rank, and as a royal relative he's granted an extra monthly allowance of 2,000 piculs of rice. He's to be entertained for three days at the Celebration Court, and escorted back to Jizhou by two civil and three military ministers."

Su Hu knelt down and thanked King Zhou, but the ministers, seeing the king's blind passion for women, were extremely displeased. The king rose and returned to his palace, leaving no chance for them to give advice. They had no choice but to go to the Celebration Court and entertain Su Hu.

King Zhou returned to the Fairy Longevity Palace, where he banqueted with Daji and then spent a passionate, blissful night in her company. Their love developed swiftly and King Zhou began to spend all of his energy and time taking pleasure in her. He lost his patience for state affairs and his civil and military officials, and mountains of reports, petitions and other documents piled up awaiting his decision. None of the 800 marquises had a chance to discuss urgent matters with him, and orders ceased to be issued from the palace. The kingdom rapidly sank into chaos.

If you wish to know what happened after that, please read the next chapter.





## 第五回

### 云中子进剑除妖

诗曰：

白云飞雨过南山，碧落萧疏春色闲。楼阁金辉来紫雾；  
交梨玉液驻朱颜。花迎白鹤歌仙曲；柳拂青鸾舞翠鬟。  
此是仙凡多隔世，妖氛一派透天关。

不言纣王贪恋妲己，终日荒淫，不理朝政。话说终南山有一炼气士，名曰云中子，乃是千百年得道之仙。那日闲居无事，手携水火花篮，意欲往虎儿崖前采药；方才驾云兴雾，忽见东南上一道妖气，直冲透云霄。云中子打一看时，点首嗟叹：“此畜不过是千年狐狸，今假托人形，潜匿朝歌皇宫之内，若不早除，必为大患。我出家人慈悲为本，方便为门……”忙唤金霞童子：“你与我将老枯松枝取一段来，待我削一木剑，去除妖邪。”童儿曰：“何不用照妖宝剑，斩断妖邪，永绝祸根？”云中子笑曰：“千年老狐，岂足当吾宝剑！只此足矣。”童儿取松枝与云中子，削成木剑，分付童子：“好生看守洞门，我去就来。”云中子离了终南山，脚踏祥云，望朝歌而来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

不用乘骑与驾舟，五湖四海任遨游。大千世界须臾至，  
石烂松枯当一秋。

且不言云中子往朝歌来除妖邪。只见纣王日迷酒色，旬月不朝，百姓皇皇。满朝文武议论纷纷。内有上大夫梅伯与



## Chapter 5

### A Vain Attempt by Master of the Clouds

On Mount Zhongnan dwelt a Taoist immortal named Master of the Clouds, who had made his home on the mountain for several thousand years. One day, having nothing to do, he took a flower basket and went to pick medicinal herbs near Tiger Cliff.

As he rode off on a floating cloud, he suddenly noticed the emanation of an evil sprite shooting high into the sky in the southeast. Looking down from the cloud, Master of the Clouds sighed.

"It's only a thousand-year-old female fox that's occupied the body of Daji to bewitch the king. She'll bring great calamities to the people unless she's exorcised. This is my duty, since my mission's to deliver mercy." He called over his disciple, Golden Haze, and instructed, "Bring me a withered pine branch. I'll make a sword out of it and take care of that lewd spirit."

"Why don't you use your steel sword, Master?"

Master of the Clouds smiled. "A pine sword's entirely sufficient for the task. There's no need for me to use my steel sword to knock off a fox sprite."

Golden Haze fetched a pine branch for his master, who whittled it into a wooden sword in a few minutes, and told the lad, "Look after my cave while I'm gone. I'll be back quite soon."

He then left Mount Zhongnan, riding upon an auspicious cloud, and sped directly to Zhaoge. A poem recorded the event:

No steed has he mounted, no boat does he ply,  
Yet he flies over the world in a wink.  
Thousands of ages pass by in a day,  
In only a moment pines rot, stones decay.

Meanwhile King Zhou had become so dissipated by wine and women that he did not make a single appearance in court for more than ten months. The king's behavior both puzzled the ministers and caused much anxiety.



首相商容、亚相比干言曰：“天子荒淫，沉湎酒色，不理朝政，本积如山，此大乱之兆也。公等身为大臣，进退自有当尽的大义。况君有诤臣，父有诤子，士有诤友。下官与二位丞相俱有责焉。今日不免鸣钟击鼓，齐集文武，请驾临轩，各陈其事，以力争之，庶不失君臣大义。”商容曰：“大夫之言有理。”传执殿官：“鸣钟鼓请王升殿。”纣王正在摘星楼宴乐，听见大殿上钟鼓齐鸣，左右奏：“请圣驾升殿。”纣王不得已，分付妲己曰：“美人暂且安顿，待朕出殿就回。”妲己俯伏送驾。纣王秉圭坐辇，临殿登座。文武百官朝贺毕。天子见二丞相抱本上殿，又见八大夫抱本上殿，与镇国武成王黄飞虎抱本上殿。纣王连日酒色昏迷，情思厌倦，又见本多，一时如何看得尽，又有退朝之意。只见二丞相进前，俯伏奏曰：“天下诸侯本章候命。陛下何事旬月不临大殿。日坐深宫，全不把朝纲整理，此必有在王左右迷惑圣聪者。乞陛下当以国事为重，无得仍前高坐深宫，废弛国事，大拂臣民之望。臣闻天位惟艰，况今天心未顺，水旱不均，降灾下民，未有不非政治得失所致。愿陛下留心邦本，痛改前辙，去谗远色，勤政恤民；则天心效顺，国富民丰，天下安康，四海受无穷之福矣。愿陛下幸留意焉。”纣王曰：“朕闻四海



Supreme Minister Mei Bo went to see Prime Minister Shang Rong and Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan.

“His Majesty’s so involved with wine and women that he totally disregards state affairs. This is a bad omen and the kingdom’s sure to suffer as a result. We’re his most powerful ministers and obliged to serve the country and people with loyalty. The king should have ministers to remonstrate with him, just as a father should have a son to point out his mistakes, and scholars, friends to correct them when they go astray. We must take action today. Let’s call together all the civil and military officials and ask the king to appear on the throne. Otherwise, we’ll be failing in our duty,” he suggested, and the two prime ministers were in full agreement.

King Zhou was drinking with Daji at the Star Picking Mansion when he heard the clamor of drums and bells. An attendant reported, “Your Majesty’s requested at the Grand Court.” He had no choice but to go. “My dear lady! Rest for a while. I’ll return soon,” he comforted Daji, who knelt down as he left.

The king mounted his chariot and drove off to the Grand Court. Seated on his throne, he received cheers from his ministers and officials. He now felt great disgust at the sight of his two prime ministers, eight supreme ministers and Prince Huang Feihu, each holding files of reports for him to read. The king had indulged so long in wine and sex with Daji that he was of no mind to read so many reports. Knowing well that he couldn’t read them all in a short time, he felt inclined to retire and go back to Daji.

Before King Zhou said anything, however, Shang Rong and Bi Gan stepped forward and knelt down. “All the nobles are eagerly awaiting your decisions about their reports. Why has Your Majesty been absent from the court for so long, and why have you not shown any regard for state affairs? We can only assume that there’s someone misleading you. We pray earnestly that Your Majesty will pay more attention to state affairs, and less to your concubines. This goes against the will of your people and ministers, and we fear that Heaven will be so dissatisfied that famines, floods and drought will be visiting on us. We sincerely hope that Your Majesty will stay away from women, avoid the minions, and be diligent in your duty. We hope, too, that you’ll please Heaven, make the nation prosperous and the people rich, and allow the country to enjoy peace and the four seas to be blessed with boundless happiness.”



安康，万民乐业，止有北海逆命，已令太师闻仲剿除奸党，此不过疥癬之疾，何足挂虑？二位丞相之言甚善，朕岂不知。但朝廷百事，俱有首相与朕代劳，自是可行，何尝有壅滞之理。纵朕临轩，亦不过垂拱而已，又何必哓哓于口舌哉。”君臣正言国事，午门官启奏：“终南山有一炼气士云中子见驾，有机密重情，未敢擅自朝见，请旨定夺。”纣王自思：“众文武诸臣还抱本伺候，如何得了。不如宣道者见朕闲谈，百官自无纷纷议论，且免朕拒谏之名。”传旨：“宣！”云中子进午门，过九龙桥，走大道，宽袍大袖，手执拂尘，飘飘徐步而来。好齐整！但见：

头带青纱一字巾，脑后两带飘双叶，额前三点按三光，  
脑后双圈分日月。道袍翡翠按阴阳，腰下双绦王母结。  
脚登一对踏云鞋，夜晚闲行星斗怯。上山虎伏地埃尘，  
下海蛟龙行跪接。面如傅粉一般同，唇似丹砂一点血。  
一心分免帝王忧，好道长，两手补完天地缺。

道人左手携定花篮，右手执着拂尘，近到滴水檐前，执拂尘打个稽首，口称：“陛下，贫道稽首了。”纣王看这道人如此行礼，心中不悦，自思：“朕贵为天子，富有四海，‘率土之滨，莫非王臣’，你虽是方外，却也在朕版图之内，这等可恶！本当治以慢君之罪，诸臣只说朕不能容物。朕且问他端的，看他如何应我。”纣王曰：“那道者从何处来？”道人答曰：“贫道从云水而至。”王曰：“何为云水？”道人曰：“心似白云常自在，意如流水任东西。”纣王乃聪明智慧天子，便问曰：“云散水枯，汝归何处？”道人曰：“云散皓月当空，



"I know that the people of our kingdom are living in contentment and rejoice in their work. The only exception is the North Sea district, where Grand Tutor Wen Zhong's been suppressing a rebellion. It's a mere skin disease, and we needn't worry about it at all. I fully accept your suggestions. However, all important state affairs have been taken care of by you as my prime ministers, and how can there be any backlog of work? Even if I hold regular court, I'll just let things alone, and it's not my way to talk so much," the king argued.

They were thus debating when a messenger arrived from the Meridian Gate and reported, "An immortal has arrived from Mount Zhongnan, wishing to see Your Majesty about an urgent and confidential matter. Will you see him, Your Majesty?"

"How can I be expected to have enough patience to read over so many reports from so many ministers? It would be better for me to have an idle chat with that Taoist, since that's bound to be more interesting than these garrulous ministers," King Zhou thought to himself, and ordered that the Taoist be ushered in.

Master of the Clouds entered the gate of the palace, walked over the Nine Dragon Bridge and strolled down the broad royal way. He was dressed in a long robe with wide sleeves and held a dust whisk in his right hand and a flower basket in his left. When he walked on his cloud, stars and planets trembled and shook. When he passed through the mountains tigers kowtowed before him, and when he traveled through the seas, dragons bowed and scraped before him. When he reached the entrance to the court, he said, "Your Majesty, this humble Taoist greets you."

Seeing that the Taoist did not kneel down and kowtow before him, King Zhou was displeased. "I'm king, master of the four seas. Though he's a Taoist immortal, he also lives within my territory. How dare he act so rudely! He should be punished for this, though my officials would criticize me for being intolerant. Let me ask him some questions and see whether he can answer me properly," he decided. "Where do you come from, Sir?"

"I come from the clouds and rivers," the Taoist replied.

"What do you mean by the 'clouds and rivers'?"

"My heart's as free as the white clouds, and my mind flows like water."

King Zhou was a witty ruler, and he asked a philosophical question, "Where will you go when the clouds disperse and the rivers dry up?"

"When the clouds disperse, a bright moon hangs in the sky and when the rivers dry up, a brilliant pearl appears before me."



水枯明珠出现。”纣王闻言，转怒为喜，曰：“方才道者见朕稽首而不拜，大有慢君之心；今所答之言，甚是有理；乃通知通慧之大贤也。”命左右：“赐坐。”云中子也不谦让，旁侧坐下。云中子欠背而言曰：“原来如此。天子只知天子贵，三教元来道德尊。”帝曰：“何见其尊？”云中子曰：“听衲子道来：

但观三教，惟道至尊。上不朝于天子；下不谒于公卿。避樊笼而隐迹，脱俗网以修真。乐林泉兮绝名绝利，隐岩谷兮忘辱忘荣。顶星冠而曜日，披布衲以长春。或蓬头而跣足，或丫髻而幅巾。摘鲜花而砌笠，折野草以铺茵。吸甘泉而漱齿，嚼松柏以延龄。歌之鼓掌，舞罢眠云。遇仙客兮，则求玄问道；会道友兮，则诗酒谈文。笑奢华而浊富，乐自在之清贫。无一毫之挂碍，无半点之牵缠。或三三而参玄论道，或两两而究古谈今。究古谈今兮叹前朝兴废，参玄论道兮究性命之根因。任寒暑之更变，随乌兔之逡巡。苍颜返少，发白还青。携单瓢兮到市廛而乞化，聊以充饥；提锄篮兮进山林而采药，临难济人。解安人而利物，或起死以回生。修仙者骨之坚秀，达道者神之最灵。判凶吉兮明通爻象，定祸福兮密察人心。阐道法，扬太上之正教；书符篆，除人世之妖氛。谒飞神于帝阙，步罡气于雷门。扣玄关，天昏地暗；击地户，鬼泣神欬。夺天地之秀气，采日月之精华。运阴阳而炼性，养水火以胎凝。二八阴消兮若恍若惚，三九阳长兮如杳如冥。按四时而采取，炼九转而丹成。跨青鸾直冲紫府，骑白鹤游遍玉京。参乾坤之妙用，表道德之殷勤。比儒者兮官高职显，富贵浮云；比截教兮五刑道术，正果难成。但谈三教，惟道独尊。”



King Zhou's rage turned to happiness, and he exclaimed with joy, "At first I was rather displeased with the way you greeted me, but from your answers, I realize that you're a great and wise saint."

King Zhou told his attendants to show Master of the Clouds to a seat, and without further ado the Taoist sat down at the king's side.

Master of the Clouds lowered his head respectfully and addressed the monarch, "Your Majesty knows only that a king must be accorded the highest honor, but has no idea that of the three religions—Taoism, Buddhism and Confucianism, Taoism is the most honored."

"How is that?"

"Let me tell you. Among the three religions, Taoism is the most highly esteemed. A Taoist neither makes obeisance to a king nor calls on dukes and high ministers. He resides in his hermitage and avoids the entrapments of political powers. He thoroughly rejects the vulgar world, regarding it as a net, and endeavors throughout his life to seek truth. He distances himself from fame and riches, he finds joy in forests and streams, he abandons all concepts of honor and dishonor, and he takes refuge in caves. He's got a blanket of stars above by night, and of sunshine by day. He wears cotton gowns, weaves hats of fresh flowers and plucks wild grass for mattresses. He drinks from sweet springs, eats pine and cypress seeds to ensure his longevity, claps his hands when he sings and sleeps in the clouds when the dancing's over. He discusses the Way, and essays and poems over wine with his friends. He disdains wealth and rejoices in purity and poverty. He lives a carefree life, spending his time discussing the rise and fall of dynasties.

"Though the four seasons follow in an endless cycle, he can turn his white hair black and rejuvenate his old body. He helps people with medicinal herbs and saves them from death. He exorcises specters and demons by means of charms and spells. He gathers refined emanations from both Heaven and earth and collects the essences of the sun and moon. He cultivates himself with the *yin* and *yang* and achieves rebirth by means of fire and water. Collecting the ingredients in the appropriate season, he refines the elixirs of life. He rides upon green phoenixes or white cranes and calls upon the Purple Jade Palace of the Supreme Emperor.

"Unlike the Confucians who seek positions as high ministers, Taoists see riches and political power as floating clouds. Unlike the Jieists who practise sorcery and witchcraft, the Taoists care only for the Way. Thus, of the three religions, Taoism is the most respectable."





纣王听言大悦：“朕聆先生此言，不觉精神爽快，如在尘世之外，真觉富贵如浮云耳。但不知先生果住何处洞府？因何事而见朕？请道其详。”云中子曰：“贫道住终南山玉柱洞，云中子是也。因贫道闲居无事，采药于高峰，忽见妖气贯于朝歌，怪气生于禁闼。道心不缺，善念常随，贫道特来朝见陛下，除此妖魅耳。”纣王笑曰：“深宫秘阙，禁闼森严，防维更密，又非尘世山林，妖魅从何而来？先生此来莫非错了！”云中子笑曰：“陛下若知道有妖魅，妖魅自不敢至矣。惟陛下不识这妖魅，他方能乘机蠹惑。久之不除，酿成大害。贫道有诗为证，诗曰：

艳丽妖娆最感人，暗侵肌骨丧元神。若知此是真妖魅，世上应多不死身。

纣王曰：“宫中既有妖气，将何物以镇之？”云中子揭开花篮，取出松树削的剑来，拿在手中，对纣王曰：“陛下不知此剑之妙，听贫道道来：

松树削成名‘巨阙’，其中妙用少人知。虽无宝气冲牛斗，三日成灰妖气离。

云中子道罢，将剑奉与纣王。纣王接剑曰：“此物镇于何处？”云中子曰：“挂在分宫楼，三日内自有应验。”纣王随命传奉官：“将此剑挂在分宫楼前。”传奉官领命而去。纣王复对云中子曰：“先生有这等道术，明于阴阳，能察妖魅，何不弃终南山而保护朕躬，官居显爵，扬名于后世，岂不美哉！何苦甘为淡薄，没世无闻。”云中子谢曰：“蒙陛下不弃



King Zhou was delighted by what he heard, and said, "What you've said refreshes my spirit as if I had moved beyond the vulgar world, and really looked upon riches and power as floating clouds that would soon pass away. Where's the cave that you live in? And why do you come here to see me?"

"I reside in the Jade Pillar Cave on Mount Zhongnan, and my name's Master of the Clouds. When I went out to gather medicinal herbs the other day, I noticed the aura of an evil sprite soaring up into the sky above your palace. Since I've always had feelings of good will towards Your Majesty and the people, I came here to rid the kingdom of this danger."

King Zhou just laughed. "The palace walls are tall and strong and the palace is closely guarded all the time. As it's situated in the city rather than in the forests and mountains, how could a specter possibly get in? Perhaps you've made a mistake, sir."

Master of the Clouds smiled and said, "If you could recognize the sprite, it would never have dared to run such risks. It's only because Your Majesty cannot recognize it that it dares sneak into the palace and bewitch you. A great disaster will take place if you allow it to remain here. Here's a short poem I've composed about this:

She's bewitching and fresh,  
But she saps your spirit, devors your flesh.  
If you detect her before it's too late,  
You'll save countless souls from a miserable fate.

"What can we do if indeed there's a specter hidden in the palace?" King Zhou asked.

Master of the Clouds opened his flower basket, removed his pine sword and held it up to show the king. "This pine sword has magic properties. Though it emits no strong light that penetrates to the depth of the sky, it can turn any specter to ashes within a period of three days."

Taking the pine sword in his hands, King Zhou asked, "In which part of this palace will this sword be most effective?"

"Hang it before the Central Palace Tower and observe the results in three days."

King Zhou ordered that his attendants do as the Taoist had directed, then turned to him, "You're marvelous, telling about spirits and devils. Are you willing to give up your hermitage and come here to protect me? I'll give you a high rank and let your name be known to all future generations. Wouldn't this be better than living in poverty, unknown to the world?"



幽隐，欲贫道居官，贫道乃山野慵懒之夫，不识治国安邦之法，日上三竿堪睡足，裸衣跣足满山游。”纣王曰：“便是这等，有什么好处？何如衣紫腰金，封妻荫子，有无穷享用。”云中子曰：“贫道其中也有好处：

身逍遥，心自在；不操戈，不弄怪；万事忙忙付肚外。吾不思理正事而种韭，吾不思取功名如拾芥，吾不思身服锦袍，吾不思腰悬角带，吾不思拂宰相之须，吾不思借君王之快，吾不思伏弩长驱，吾不思望尘下拜，吾不思养我者享禄千钟，吾不思簇我者有人四被。小小庐，不嫌窄；旧旧服，不嫌秽。制芰荷以为衣，结秋兰以为佩。不问天皇、地皇与人皇，不问天籁、地籁与人籁。雅怀恍如秋水同，兴来犹恐天地碍。闲来一枕山中睡，梦魂要赴蟠桃会。那里管玉兔东升，金乌西坠。”

纣王听罢，叹曰：“朕闻先生之言，真乃清静之客。”忙命随侍官：“取金银各一盘，为先生前途盘费耳。”不一时，随侍官将红漆端盘捧过金银。云中子笑曰：“陛下之恩赐，贫道无用处。贫道有诗为证”。诗曰：

随缘随分出尘林，似水如云一片心。两卷道经三尺剑；  
一条藜杖五弦琴。囊中有药逢人度；腹内新诗遇客吟。  
一粒能延千载寿，慢夸人世有黄金。

云中子道罢，离了九间大殿，打一稽首，大袖飘风，扬长竟出午门去了。两边八大夫正要上前奏事，又被一个道人来讲什么妖魅，便耽阁了时候。纣王与云中子谈讲多时，已是厌倦，袖展龙袍，驾起还宫，令百官暂退。百官无可奈何，只得退朝。



Master of the Clouds thanked King Zhou but declined his invitation. “I greatly appreciate your kindness, but I’m a mere idler and know nothing about ruling a nation. I sleep until the sun rises high over the bamboos and wander barefooted in the mountains.”

“What good is that for you! It would be better if you could dress in purple robes and serve in the palace, for this would glorify your life and enable your sons to receive a good inheritance. You may live in luxury for the rest of your life.”

“I’ve got my own pleasures, Your Majesty. My body’s light and my heart’s free. I fight with nobody and know no tricks. I ignore politics, preferring to spend my days cultivating leeks. I never wear satin robes or jade-studded belts, and have no intention of serving at the palace as a minister. I’ll never stroke the beard of the prime minister nor kneel down before the throne of the king. I’ve no desire for rich emolument or glory for my descendants. I prefer to reside in a small cave and wear old, worn-out clothes. I never enquire about the emperors of Heaven, earth or man. I dream only of being invited to the Feast of Immortal Peaches held in paradise or taking a mid-afternoon nap in the mountains. I don’t care about the sun setting in the west or the bright moon rising in the east.”

King Zhou sighed. “Sir, you’re truly a man devoted to purity and quietitude.”

The king ordered his attendants to fetch two big plates, one full of silver and the other of gold, and gave them to Master of the Clouds to use on his return journey. But the Taoist only smiled. “Your silver and gold are useless to me. Though I thank you very much, I cannot accept them. Here’s another poem I’ve composed:

I forsake the dusty world, leave my lot to destiny,  
Like rivers and clouds my heart e’re roams free.  
A sword, a walking stick, a lute and sutras,  
To pass the hours, these are all I need.  
With herbs the old and sick I treat,  
New poems in my mind I chant to those I meet.  
My elixir adds to your years,  
More precious than all the gold in this poor world.

His long sleeves swinging, Master of the Clouds bowed and strolled out.

The ministers had been forced to wait with their petitions, but the visit of the Taoist had left the king thoroughly exhausted. Rising from his throne, he returned to his residential quarters, dismissing the court at the same time.



话说纣王驾至寿仙宫前，不见妲己来接见，纣王心甚不安。只见侍御官接驾。纣王问曰：“苏美人为何不接朕？”侍御官启陛下：“苏娘娘偶染暴疾，人事昏沉，卧榻不起。”纣王听罢，忙下龙辇，急进寝宫，揭起金龙幔帐，见妲己面似金枝，唇如白纸，昏昏惨惨，气息微茫，恹恹若绝。纣王便叫：“美人，早晨送朕出宫，美貌如花，为何一时有恙，便是这等垂危！叫朕如何是好？”——看官，这是那云中子宝剑挂在分宫楼，镇压的这狐狸如此模样。倘若是镇压的这妖怪死了，可不保得成汤天下。也是活该这纣王江山有败，周室将兴，故此纣王终被他迷惑了。表过不题。——只见妲己微睁杏眼，强启朱唇，作呻吟之状，喘吁吁叫一声：“陛下！妾身早晨送驾临轩，午时远迎陛下，不知行至分宫楼前候驾，猛抬头见一宝剑高悬，不觉惊出一身冷汗，竟得此危症。想贱妾命薄缘慳，不能长侍陛下于左右，永效于飞之乐耳。乞陛下自爱，无以贱妾为念。”道罢，泪流满面。纣王惊得半晌无言，亦含泪对妲己曰：“朕一时不明，几为方士所悞。分宫楼所挂之剑，乃终南山炼气之士云中子所进，言朕宫中有妖气，将此镇压，孰意竟于美人作祟。乃此子之妖术，欲害美人，故捏言朕宫中有妖气。朕思深宫邃密之地，尘迹不到，焉有妖怪之理。大抵方士悞人，朕为所卖。”传旨急命左右：“将那方士所进木剑，用火作速焚毁，毋得迟悞，几惊坏美人。”纣王再三温慰，一夜无寝。——看官：纣王不焚此宝剑，还是商家天下，只因焚了此剑，妖气绵固深宫，把纣王缠得颠倒错乱，荒了朝政，人离天怨，白白将天下失于西伯，此也是天意合该如此。不知焚剑如何，且听下回分解。



When King Zhou reached the Fairy Longevity Palace, and Daji failed to come and meet him, he became very uneasy. He asked his attendants, “Why doesn’t Lady Su come out to meet me?”

When he was told that Daji had suddenly fallen ill and taken to bed, King Zhou rushed into the bed chamber, pulled aside the golden dragon curtains and looked down at his lover. Daji’s face was yellow as gold, her lips white as paper, and she seemed to be having trouble breathing. “Oh! Daji! You were so healthy when I left here this morning. How is it you suddenly became ill? What shall I do now?”

The fox sprite occupying Daji’s body was actually suffering from the effects of the pine sword. It was evident that she had little time to live.

Daji opened her eyes a little and spoke with a sigh, “Your Majesty! I escorted you to the Grand Court this morning and went to meet you at noon. When I reached the Central Palace Tower I chanced to look up and saw a sword hanging high up there. I was shocked and began sweating all over, I’m now so ill that I may be unable to enjoy sexual pleasure with you anymore. For this I’m terribly sorry, Your Majesty.” Tears poured down her cheeks.

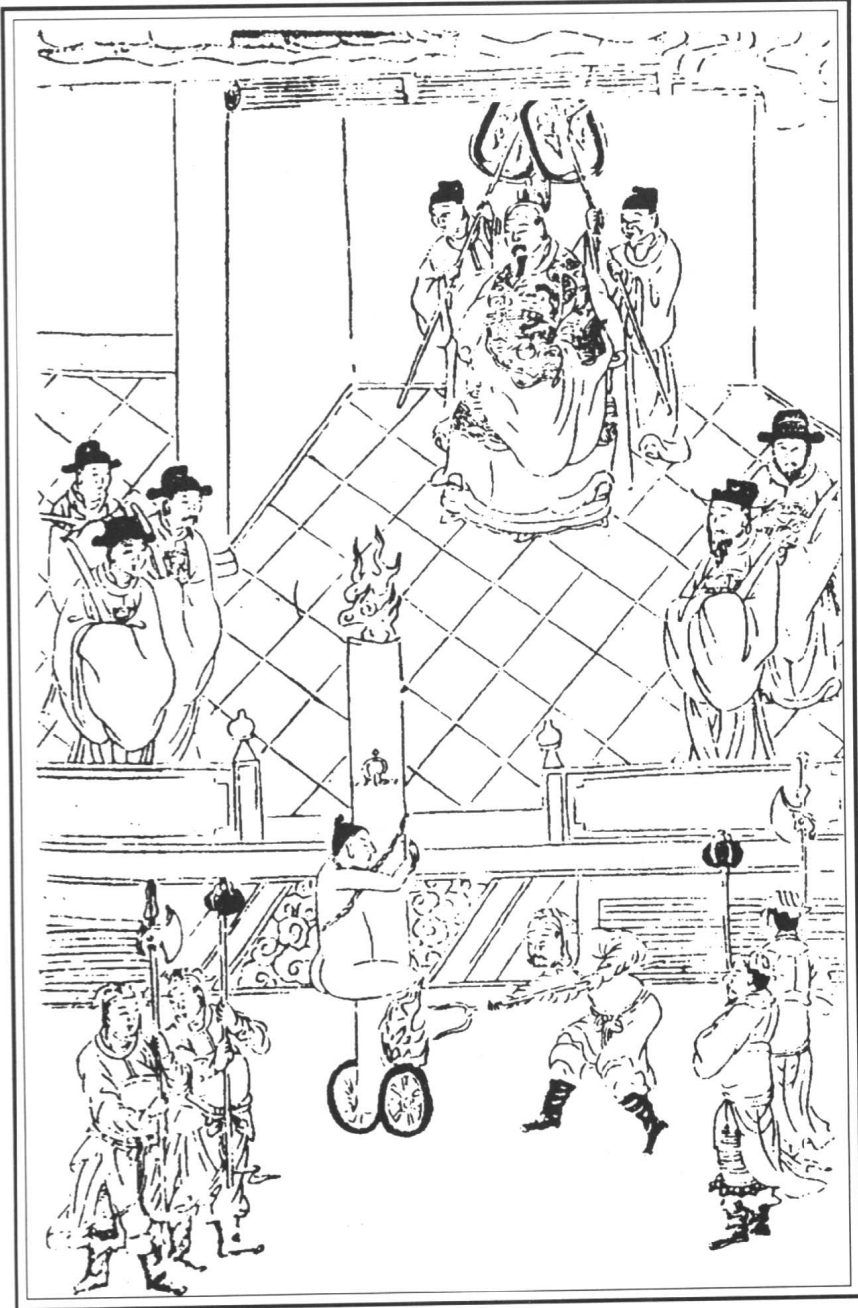
King Zhou was terrified and remained silent for a long while. “I was deceived outright by a sorcerer. Master of the Clouds presented me that sword. He told me that there was the aura of an evil spirit in the palace, and advised me to exorcise the menace by hanging up that sword. How could I have guessed that the Taoist was actually plotting to harm you!” He ordered, “Take down that wooden sword and burn it immediately, lest Lady Su be disturbed again.”

King Zhou comforted Daji the whole night through, never letting his attention wander from her.

The Shang Dynasty grew weaker and weaker as a result of Master of the Clouds’ failure to exorcise the spectre from the palace.

If you want to know what happened after the sword was destroyed, please read the next chapter.







## 第六回

### 纣王无道造炮烙

诗曰：

纣王无道杀忠贤，酷惨奇冤触上天。侠烈尽随灰烬灭；  
妖氛偏向禁宫旋。朝歌艳曲飞檀板；暮宴龙涎吐碧烟。  
取次催残黄耆散，孤魂无计返家园。

话说纣王见惊坏了妲己，慌忙无措，即传旨命侍御官，  
将此宝剑立刻焚毁。不知此剑莫非松树削成，经不得火，立  
时焚尽。侍御官回旨。妲己见焚了此剑，妖光复长，依旧精  
神。正是，有诗为证，诗曰：

火焚宝剑智何庸，妖气依然透九重。可惜商都成画饼，  
五更残月晓霜浓。

妲己依旧侍君，摆宴在宫中欢饮。

且说此时云中子尚不曾回终南山，还在朝歌，忽见妖光  
复起，冲照宫闱，云中子点首叹曰：“我只欲以此剑镇灭妖  
氛，稍延成汤脉络，孰知大数已去，将我此剑焚毁。一则是  
成汤合灭；二则是周国当兴；三则神仙遭逢大劫；四则姜子  
牙合受人间富贵；五则有诸神欲讨封号。罢，罢，罢，也是  
贫道下山一场，留下二十四字，以验后人。”云中子取文房  
四宝，留笔迹在司天台杜太师照墙上。诗曰：

“妖氛秽乱宫庭，圣德播扬西土。要知血染朝歌，戊午  
岁中甲子。”

云中子题罢，径回终南山去了。





## Chapter 6

### The Burning Pillar Torture

Terribly upset by Daji's illness, King Zhou ordered that the wooden sword be burned at once. Daji recovered rapidly and continued to lure the king into feasting and merry-making with her day and night.

Master of the Clouds did not return directly to Mount Zhongnan, but remained at Zhaoge to observe the situation. He soon caught sight of the spectral light soaring up again into the sky from the king's palace. "I tried to save the Shang Dynasty, but it's by fate that the sword was turned into ashes without fulfilling its purpose," he thought. "The causes are rather complex: First, the Shang Dynasty must come to an end; second, the Zhou Dynasty's rising to replace it; third, immortals will meet with disaster; fourth, Jiang Ziya will enjoy worldly glory and fifth, gods are to be created. What can I do about it? I might as well leave a poem to tell the people what'll happen in the near future."

He took a brush, dipped it in ink and wrote on the wall of the observatory in the busy marketplace:

A lascivious specter holds sway in the palace,  
While sacred virtue flourishes in the West Land.  
E're many years will pass,  
Zhaoge will be stained with the blood of war.



且言朝歌百姓见道人在照墙上吟诗，俱来看念，不解其意。人烟拥挤，聚积不散。正看之间，只见太师杜元铎回朝。只见许多人围绕府前，两边侍从将人喝开。太师问：“什么事？”管府门役禀：“老爷，有一道人在照墙上吟诗，故此众人来看。”杜太师在马上看见，是二十四字，其意颇深，一时难解；命门役将水洗了。太师进府，将二十四字细细推详，穷究幽微，终是莫解。暗想：“此必是前日进朝献剑道人，说妖气旋绕宫闱，此事到有些着落。连日我夜观乾象，见妖气日盛，旋绕禁闼，定有不祥，故留此铃记。目今天子荒淫，不理朝政；权奸蠹惑，天愁民怨，眼见兴衰。我等受先帝重恩，安忍坐视？见朝中文武，个个忧思，人人危惧，不若乘此具一本章，力谏天子，尽其臣节，非是买直沽名，实为国家治乱。”杜元铎当夜修成疏章，次日至文书房，不知是何人看本。今日却是首相商容。元铎大喜，上前见礼，叫曰：“老丞相，昨夜元铎观司天台，妖氛累贯深宫，灾殃立见，天下事可知矣。主上国政不修，朝纲不理，朝欢暮乐，荒淫酒色，宗庙社稷所关，治乱所系，非同小可，岂得坐视。今特具谏章，上于天子。敢劳丞相将此本转达天庭。丞相意下如何？”商容听言，曰：“太师既有本章，老夫岂有坐视之理。只连日天子不御殿庭，难于面奏。今日老夫与太师进内庭见驾面奏，何如？”商容进九间大殿，过龙德殿、显庆殿、嘉善殿，再过分宫楼。商容见奉御官。奉御官口称：“老丞相，寿仙宫乃禁闼所在，圣躬寝室，外臣不得进此！”商容曰：“我岂不知？你与我启奏：商容候旨。”奉御官进宫启奏：“首相商容候旨。”王曰：“商容何事进内见朕？但他虽



When finished, Master of the Clouds returned straight to Mount Zhongnan. People at once gathered round the wall, but no one could understand what it meant. They were still debating and deciphering when Grand Tutor Du Yuanxian came over on his way home and read over the poem from his saddle. He knew immediately that the poem must have been written by the Taoist, and though he did not understand every word of it, he agreed that a lascivious specter was occupying the palace. "I've spent nights recently observing the heavenly bodies, and noticed that an ever more powerful spectral aura has been enveloping the palace. This is a bad omen, a warning of the disaster to come. The king pays scant attention to politics, and his unseemly behavior causes Heaven to worry and people to grumble. We were so kindly treated by the late king that we cannot sit back and simply watch the situation develop. I must write to the king, and make it on behalf of the people and nation as I've got nothing personal to gain," he decided.

He spent the night writing this report. He showed it to Prime Minister Shang Rong the next morning, asking him to present it to the king in person.

"I cannot disregard your report, but the king's failed to appear in court for many days already. It'll certainly be difficult for your report to be transmitted to him, but I'll try to see him in his residence," Shang Rong reassured him, and immediately made his way through the Grand Hall, the Celebration Court, the Hall of Ceremonies, the Hall of Clemency and the Central Palace Tower to the Fairy Longevity Palace, where he was stopped by the royal guards.

"Prime Minister! This is the forbidden court where His Majesty lives. No intrusion's permitted."

"I know that well. Would you kindly tell His Majesty that I desire to see him?"

A royal guard entered the Fairy Longevity Palace, knelt down before King Zhou and reported, "Prime Minister Shang Rong asks to see you."

"What could he possibly want? Admit him, since he's an old minister and has served three emperors in succession."



是外官，乃三世之老臣也，可以进见。”命：“宣！”商容进宫，口称“陛下”，俯伏阶前。王曰：“丞相有甚紧急奏章，特进宫中见朕？”商容启奏：“执掌司天台首官杜元铎，昨夜观乾象，见妖气照笼金阙，灾殃立见。元铎乃三世之老臣，陛下之股肱，不忍坐视。且陛下何事，日不设朝，不理国事，端坐深宫，使百官日夜忧思。今臣等不避斧钺之诛，干冒天威，非为沽直，乞垂天听。”将本献上。两边侍御官接本在案。纣王展开观看：

“具疏臣执掌司天台官杜元铎奏，为保国安民，靖魅除妖，以隆宗社事：臣闻国家将兴，祯祥必现；国家将亡，妖孽必生。臣元铎夜观乾象，见怪雾不祥，妖光绕于内殿，惨气笼罩深宫。陛下前日躬临大殿，有终南山云中子见妖氛贯于宫闱，特进木剑，镇压妖魅。闻陛下火焚木剑，不听大贤之言，致使妖氛复成，日盛一日，冲霄贯斗，祸患不小。臣切思：自苏护进贵人之后，陛下朝纲无纪，御案生尘。丹墀下百草生芽，御阶前苔痕长绿。朝政紊乱，百官失望。臣等难近天颜。陛下贪恋美色，日夕欢娱。君臣不会，如云蔽日。何日得睹赓歌喜起之隆，再见太平天日也？臣不避斧钺，冒死上言，稍尽臣节。如果臣言不谬，望陛下早下御音，速赐施行。臣等不胜惶悚待命之至！谨具疏以闻。”

纣王看毕，自思：“言之甚善。只因本中具有云中子除妖之事，前日几乎把苏美人险丧性命，托天庇佑，焚剑方安；今日又言妖氛在宫闱之地！”纣王回首问妲己曰：“杜元铎上书，又提妖魅相侵，此言果是何故？”妲己上前跪而奏曰：



Shang Rong came forward, knelt down on the steps and said, "Your Majesty!"

"What urgent business brings you to my inner palace?"

"The Chief Official of the Observatory Du Yuanxian discovered last night that your palace is enveloped in a spectral aura, and is afraid that the state will suffer from some unexpected disaster. He's served the Shang Dynasty loyally since your grandfather's time and wouldn't be put off. Besides, the ministers have been fretting over your sustained absence from court. Offending your dignity today, I risk committing a capital crime and having my head cut off by either axe or sword, but I'm not seeking personal gain. I pray that you attend to our faithful advice," Shang Rong said boldly, and submitted the report.

King Zhou placed it on his desk and began to read. It ran:

The Chief Official of the Observatory, Du Yuanxian, ventures to report to Your Majesty with the end to ridding the palace of specters and demons, and to secure peace and blessings for the nation and the people. As we know, good omens appear when the nation is enjoying progress and prosperity, and specters and demons appear when the nation is about to collapse. While making my observations at night, I was astonished to discover that the royal palace is covered by an aura of specters and demons which pervades every court as well as the royal residence. When you made your appearance at the Grand Hall several days ago, a Taoist presented you with a wooden sword to help you exorcise the specter, but you had it burnt, which only served to intensify the aura. You disregarded the Taoist's warning, and the spectral aura has grown stronger and stronger, until it can now even be observed in the Ninth Heaven, suggesting that woe and calamity will soon plague the nation. I have given this matter careful consideration. Facts show that ever since Su Hu sent his daughter to the palace, you have ceased paying attention to your administration, and your desk has become covered with dust. The steps before the Grand Court are overgrown with weeds, grass and slippery moss. While the ministers await an audience with Your Majesty in vain, you are taking pleasure in a woman. This has created a gap between Your Majesty and the ministers like the sun being covered up by floating clouds. I venture to present this admonition, irrespective of punishment by axe or sword, as my obligation to Your Majesty....

"Though he speaks the truth, my Lady Su nearly lost her life the day before yesterday, and she was saved when I had that wooden sword destroyed," the king pondered. "But here again, this fuss over the spectral



“前日云中子乃方外术士，假捏妖言，蔽惑圣聪，摇乱万民，此是妖言乱国；今杜元铎又假此为题，皆是朋党惑众，驾言生事。百姓至愚，一听此妖言，不慌者自慌，不乱者自乱，致使百姓皇皇，莫能自安，自然生乱。究其始，皆自此无稽之言惑之也。故凡妖言惑众者，杀无赦！”纣王曰：“美人言之极当！传朕旨意：把杜元铎梟首示众，以戒妖言！”首相商容曰：“陛下，此事不可！元铎乃三世老臣，素秉忠良，真心为国，沥血披肝，无非朝怀报主之恩，暮思酬君之德，一片苦心，不得已而言之。况且职受司天，验照吉凶，若按而不奏，恐有司参论。今以直谏，陛下反赐其死，元铎虽死不辞，以命报君，就归冥下，自分得其死所。只恐四百文武之中，各有不平元铎无辜受戮。望陛下原其忠心，怜而赦之。”王曰：“丞相不知，若不斩元铎，诬言终无已时，致令百姓皇皇，无有宁宇矣。”商容欲待再谏，争奈纣王不从，令奉御官送商容出宫。奉御官逼令而行，商容不得已，只得出来。及到文书房，见杜太师俟候命下，不知有杀身之祸。旨意已下：“杜元铎妖言惑众，拿下梟首，以正国法。”奉御官宣读驾帖毕，不由分说，将杜元铎摘去衣服，绳缠索绑，拿出午门。方至九龙桥，只见一位大夫，身穿大红袍，乃梅伯也。伯见杜太师绑缚而来，向前问曰：“太师得何罪如此？”元铎曰：“天子失政，吾等上本内庭，言妖气累贯于宫中，灾星立变于天下。首相转达，有犯天颜。君赐臣死，不敢违旨。梅先生，‘功名’二字，化作灰尘；数载丹心，竟成冰冷！”梅伯听言，“两边的，且住了。”竟至九龙桥边，适逢首相商容。梅伯曰：“请问丞相，杜太师有何罪犯君，特



aura!" He turned to Daji. "Du Yuanxian's sent me a written report about the palace being haunted by a demon. Do you know what this is all about?"

At this, Daji fell at once on her knees, "That Taoist is a sorcerer. He spreads rumors about a specter and throws the nation into confusion. Du Yuanxian cooperates with him, and must be one of his accomplices. People are innocent; they're gullible and easily disturbed. I ask that such rumors be suppressed, and anyone spreading them have their heads cut off," Daji begged the king.

"You're right, my beauty. Give my order to stop this rumor at once, and Du Yuanxian be executed in public."

"You can't act like this, Your Majesty. Du's a loyal minister and would willingly sacrifice his life for the benefit of the people and nation. His heart's in the right place. As an observer of heavenly phenomena, it's his duty to tell you the truth," Shang argued, warning, "But if you repay his loyalty with death, your officials are bound to uphold his innocence, and you'll be criticized for your cruelty. I implore you to pardon him."

"You don't know, Prime Minister, that if I don't cut his head off, more people will invent stories and disturb the people's lives without an end. I must weed out such threats." King Zhou then ordered his attendants to escort Shang Rong away from the palace.

Back at his own office, Shang Rong met Du Yuanxian, waiting eagerly to learn of His Majesty's response to his petition. Before long, the king's guards also arrived with the following order, "Du Yuanxian has committed the serious crime of deceiving the people by spreading rumors about specters. For this, he shall be punished with death and beheaded at once according to law." Without further delay, the royal guards removed Du's coronet and red robe, bound him with thick ropes and iron chains and dragged him off to the palace gate.

On the way, however, they met an official dressed in a scarlet robe. This was Supreme Minister Mei Bo. When he saw Du Yuanxian bound in chains, Mei Bo was bemused. "Why are you being treated in this fashion, Grand Tutor?" he asked, and when Du told him what had happened, he said, "Don't worry, Grand Tutor! I'll try to speak with the king about this."

Rushing into the palace, Mei Bo met Shang Rong at the Nine-Dragon Bridge. "What did Du Yuanxian do to have offended His Majesty?"

"Du Yuanxian delivered a written report to the king about the palace being haunted by the spectral aura, but since Lady Su is His Majesty's favorite,





赐其死？”商容曰：“元铄本章实为朝廷，因妖氛绕于禁阙，怪气照于宫闱。当今听苏美人之言，坐以‘妖言惑众，惊慌万民’之罪。老夫苦谏，天子不从。如之奈何！”梅伯听罢，只气得“五灵神暴躁，三昧火烧胸”：“老丞相夔理阴阳，调和鼎鼐，奸者即斩，佞者即诛，贤者即荐，能者即褒，君正而首相无言，君不正以直言谏主。今天子无辜而杀大臣，似丞相这等钳口不言，委之无奈，是重一己之功名，轻朝内之股肱，怕死贪生，爱血肉之微躯，惧君王之刑典，皆非丞相之所为也！”叫：“两边，且住了！待我与丞相面君！”梅伯携商容过大殿，径进内庭。伯乃外官，及至寿仙宫门首，便自俯伏。奉御官启奏：“商容、梅伯候旨。”王曰：“商容乃三世之老臣，进内可赦；梅伯擅进内廷，不尊国法。”传旨：“宣！”商容在前，梅伯随后，进宫俯伏。王问曰：“二卿有何奏章？”梅伯口称：“陛下！巨梅伯具疏，杜元铄何事干犯国法，致于赐死？”王曰：“杜元铄与方士通谋，架捏妖言，摇惑军民，播乱朝政，污蔑朝廷。身为大臣，不思报本酬恩，而反诈言妖魅，蒙蔽欺君，律法当诛，除奸剿佞不为过耳。”梅伯听纣王之言，不觉厉声奏曰：“臣闻尧王治天下，应天而顺人；言听于文官，计从于武将，一日一朝，共谈安民治国之道；去谗远色，共乐太平。今陛下半载不朝，乐于深宫，朝朝饮宴，夜夜欢娱，不理朝政，不容谏章。臣闻‘君如腹心，臣如手足’，心正则手足正，心不正则手足歪邪。古语有云：‘臣正君邪，国患难治。’杜元铄乃



he accepted her advice and sentenced Du Yuanxian to death. I pleaded with His Majesty to spare Du, but to no avail. What shall we do now?"

"You're prime minister and it's your responsibility to administer the nation in harmony and peace, to put the wicked to death, and to recommend loyal subjects to high posts. You may keep your mouth shut as long as the king acts in an upright fashion, but you ought to admonish him when he acts improperly. Now that he's about to slaughter the innocent, how can you keep your mouth shut, making excuses that you feel sorry and can do nothing! You care only for your own honor and position, and disregard the fate of your colleagues. You cherish your life and fear death. For the good of the country, no prime minister should fear spilling his blood or losing his life," Mei Bo cried out, very angry. "Executioners! Take no action at present, and await our return," he shouted, and led Shang Rong by the arm through the Grand Hall to the inner palace.

They knelt down when they arrived at the Fairy Longevity Palace and awaited the king's permission to enter.

"Since Shang Rong's already served three Shang Dynasty emperors, his intrusion into the inner palace may be excused, but how dare Mei Bo ignore the law!" King Zhou was displeased when he heard the report of their arrival, but nevertheless, he ordered that both Shang Rong and Mei Bo be admitted.

Shang Rong led the way into the Fairy Longevity Palace and both knelt down before the king.

"What do you have to report to me?"

"Your Majesty! May I learn what crime Du Yuanxian has committed that you should have ordered his death?" Mei Bo asked.

"He conspired with a sorcerer and spread rumors about a spectral aura in the palace, to deceive the people and disrupt the peace. An official of the top rank that commits such evil acts should be put to death. I'm merely attempting to eliminate a traitor from the kingdom."

"I've heard that Emperor Yao ruled according to the will of Heaven. He accepted political advice from his civil officials and strategems of war from his military ministers. He held daily discussions on how to rule the country and serve the people, and was pious and upright in his comportment. He avoided minions, and distanced himself from beautiful concubines. But Your Majesty's been absent from court for more than half a year. You drink and feast by day and lust by night. You've long ceased to show any concern for the people and state, and for the faithful advice of



治世之忠良。陛下若斩元铎而废先王之大臣，听艳妃之言，有伤国家之梁栋，臣愿主公赦杜元铎毫末之生，使文武仰圣君之大德。”纣王听言，“梅伯与元铎一党，违法进宫，不分内外，本当与元铎一例典刑，奈前侍朕有劳，姑免其罪，削其上大夫，永不序用！”梅伯厉声大言曰：“昏君听妲己之言，失君臣之义，今斩元铎，岂是斩元铎，实斩朝歌万民！今罢梅伯之职，轻如灰尘。这何足惜！但不忍成汤数百年基业丧于昏君之手！今闻太师北征，朝纲无统，百事混淆。昏君日听谗佞之臣，左右蔽惑，与妲己在深宫，日夜荒淫，眼见天下变乱，臣无面见先帝于黄壤也！”纣王大怒，着奉御官：“把梅伯拿下去，用金瓜击顶！”两边才待动手，妲己曰：“妾有奏章。”王曰：“美人有何奏朕？”——“妾启主公：人臣立殿，张眉竖目，詈语侮君，大逆不道，乱伦反常，非一死可赎者也。且将梅伯权禁囹圄，妾治一刑，杜狡臣之渎奏，除邪言之乱正。”纣王问曰：“此刑何样？”妲己曰：“此刑约高二丈，圆八尺，上、中、下用三火门，将铜造成，如铜柱一般；里边用炭火烧红。却将妖言惑众、利口侮君、不尊法度、无事妄生谏章、与诸般违法者，跣剥官服，将铁索缠身，裹围铜柱之上，只炮烙四肢筋骨，不须臾，烟尽骨消，尺成灰烬。此刑名曰‘炮烙’。若无此酷刑，奸猾之臣，沽名之辈，尽玩法纪，皆不知戒惧。”纣王曰：“美人之



your loyal ministers.” Mei Bo worked himself up. “Du Yuanxian’s a loyal minister. If you put him to death on account of your concubine, you’ll be cursed for butchering your father’s old minister, and denounced as the destroyer of the nation, for your act tantamount to wrecking a house by removing its pillars and beams. I exhort you to let Du Yuanxian live, for if you do, people will honor you as a saintly ruler.”

King Zhou was displeased. “Mei Bo must be an accomplice of Du Yuanxian, and must be likewise punished, for he’s committed the crime of trespassing the forbidden inner palace. Yet I’ll pardon him since he’s served me so well in the past. However, he should be dismissed from his post in the royal government forever,” he announced.

“You licentious tyrant! You place your trust in your concubine Daji, but have only disdain for your ministers,” Mei Bo protested sternly. “If you execute Du Yuanxian, you’re actually decapitating thousands of the citizens of Zhaoge. Dismissing me from my post will cause me no regret; I’m glad to shake this dust from my body. Yet, I’m indeed sorry to see the Shang Dynasty, which has lasted for hundreds of years, about to collapse in the hands of a licentious tyrant! State affairs have taken a bad turn ever since the Grand Tutor Wen Zhong left for the front. You listen daily to the fawning courtiers and spend your nights in dissipation with Daji. The kingdom will suffer disaster soon, and I fear that I won’t have the face to confront our deceased kings in the nether world.”

King Zhou became enraged and ordered his guards to seize Mei Bo and smash his skull at once. As the guards were about to lay hands on Mei Bo, Daji stepped in and said, “Wait! I’ve got a suggestion, Your Majesty.”

“How do you intend to deal with him, my love?” King Zhou asked.

“I must say that any minister who dares to stand before Your Majesty, eyebrows raised, eyes bulging and insult Your Majesty shouldn’t be treated as an ordinary criminal and shouldn’t be put to death in the ordinary way. Put Mei Bo in gaol temporarily. I’ll deal with him in a new form of torture and give a warning to the cunning and the wicked.”

“What’s this torture?” asked King Zhou.

“It uses a hollow pillar of brass, twenty feet in height and eight in circumference. It has three fire doors in its upper, middle and lower part through which charcoal is placed inside. Strip the criminals, chain and wrap them around the red-hot pillar. In a second, bones, flesh and blood will turn to a fetid smoke and disappear. This new torture’s called the Burning Pillar, and we may use it to subdue the wicked ministers that dare to break the law.”



法，可谓尽善尽美！”即命传旨：“将杜元铣枭首示众，以戒妖言；将梅伯禁于囹圄。”又传旨意，照样造炮烙刑具，限作速完成。首相商容观纣王将行无道，任信妲己，竟造炮烙，在寿仙宫前叹曰：“今观天下大事去矣！只是成汤懋敬厥德，一片小心，承天永命；岂知传至当今天子，一旦无道。眼见七庙不守，社稷丘墟。我何忍见！”又听妲己造炮烙之刑，商容俯伏奏曰：“臣启陛下：天下大事已定，国家万事康宁。老臣衰朽，不堪重任，恐失于颠倒，得罪于陛下，恳乞念臣侍君三世，数载揆席，实愧素餐，陛下虽不即赐罢斥，其如臣之庸老何。望陛下赦臣之残躯，放归田里，得含哺鼓腹于光天之下，皆陛下所赐之余年也。”纣王见商容辞官，不居相位，王慰劳曰：“卿虽暮年，尚自矍铄，无奈卿苦苦固辞，但卿朝纲劳苦，数载殷勤，朕甚不忍。”即命随侍官：“传朕旨意，点文官二员，四表礼，送卿荣归故里，仍著本地方官不时存问。”商容谢恩出朝。

不一时，百官俱知首相商容致政荣归，各来远送。当有黄飞虎、比干、微子、箕子、微子启、微子衍各官，俱在十里长亭饯别。商容见百官在长亭等候，只得下马。只见七位亲王，把手一举：“老丞相今日固是荣归，你为一国元老，如何下得这般毒意，就把成汤社稷抛弃一旁，扬鞭而去，于心安乎！”商容泣而言曰：“列位殿下，众位先生，商容纵粉骨碎身，难报国恩，这一死何足为惜，而偷安苟免。今天子信任妲己，无端造恶，制造炮烙酷刑，拒谏杀忠，商容力谏不听，又不能挽回圣意。不日天愁民怨，祸乱自生，商容进不足以辅君，死适足以彰过，不得已让位待罪，俟贤才俊彦，大展经纶，以救祸乱，此容本心，非敢远君而先身谋也。列位殿下所赐，商容立饮一杯。此别料还有会期。”乃持杯作



“This is indeed a perfect idea, my dear lady!” King Zhou said. “Decapitate Du Yuanxian for spreading rumors about the palace spectral aura, and send Mei Bo to gaol,” he ordered, and then told his engineers to make burning pillars according to Daji’s design.

Observing the king’s atrocities, and his blind faith in Daji, Shang Rong was filled with despair. “I must report to you, Your Majesty. As all urgent matters are now settled, and as everything in the kingdom is thriving, my old age and poor health make it difficult for me to bear the heavy burden of office. I’m afraid I may make errors in my confusion and offend Your Majesty. I pray that you’ll have mercy on me and permit me to retire and live out my life in peace.”

But King Zhou tried to comfort him, saying, “Though you’re in the evening of life, you’re still healthy. Nevertheless, I must approve your resignation since you’ve approached me with due sincerity. You’ve labored faithfully for so many years and I’m very reluctant to let you go.”

He ordered that two ministers escort Shang Rong to his native home and that he be given rewards. He also issued an order that Shang Rong should be well taken care of by the local magistrate.

When the ministers learned that Shang Rong had retired and was returning to his native place, they gathered at the Changting Pavilion beyond the capital to see him off. Among them were Prince Huang Feihu, Bi Gan, Wei Zi, Ji Zi, Wei Ziqi, and Wei Ziyang, all close relatives of King Zhou. When Shang Rong arrived, he dismounted from his horse and went up to greet his colleagues.

A spokesman for them all said, “Prime Minister! You’re retiring in honor. But as an elder statesman, how can you cast the Dynasty aside and gallop away home. Will you be able to remain there with your heart at ease?”

Shang Rong was visibly moved. “Colleagues! I’m sorry that I cannot give my body and soul in return for the grace bestowed on me by the nation; yet it’s also against my will to spend the rest of my days in retirement. You’re all well aware that His Majesty blindly trusts Daji. She’s now suggested the idea of the burning pillar to deal with the loyal. My petitions all go unheeded, and I’m afraid that before long new disorders will erupt in the kingdom. As I no longer had the competence to serve His Majesty, I decided to retire and give someone more qualified than myself a chance. I’m saying farewell to His Majesty out of selfish concern for my own personal safety and happiness. Let’s toast to our brief separation, for we’ll soon meet again,” he said and, cup in hand, chanted a poem:



诗一首，以志后会之期。诗曰：

“蒙君十里送归程，把酒长亭泪已倾。回首天颜成隔世，归来畝亩祝神京。丹心难化龙逢血；赤日空消夏桀名。几度话来多悒悒，何年重诉别离情？”

商容作诗已毕，百官无不洒泪而别。商容上马前去，各官俱进朝歌。不表。

话言纣王在宫欢乐，朝政荒乱。不一日，监造炮烙官启奏功完。纣王大悦，问妲己曰：“铜柱造完，如何处置？”妲己命取来过目。监造官将炮烙铜柱推来：黄邓邓的高二丈，圆八尺，三层火门，下有二滚盘，推动好行。纣王观之，指妲己而笑曰：“美人神传，秘授奇法，真治世之宝！待朕明日临朝，先将梅伯炮烙殿前，使百官知惧，自不敢阻挠新法，章牒烦扰。”一宿不题。

次日，纣王设朝，钟鼓齐鸣，聚两班文武朝贺已毕。武成王黄飞虎见殿东二十根大铜柱，不知此物新设何用。王曰：“传旨把梅伯拿出！”执殿官去拿梅伯。纣王命把炮烙铜柱推来，将三层火门用炭架起，又用巨扇煽那炭火，把一根铜柱火烧的通红。众官不知其故。午门官启奏：“梅伯已至午门。”王曰：“拿来！”两班文武看梅伯垢面蓬头，身穿缟素，上殿跪下，口称：“臣梅伯参见陛下。”纣王曰：“匹夫！你看看此物是什么东西？”梅大夫观看，不知此物，对曰：“臣不知此物。”纣王笑曰：“你只知内殿侮君，仗你利口，诬言毁骂。朕躬治此新刑，名曰‘炮烙’。匹夫！今日九间殿前炮烙你，教你筋骨成灰！使狂妄之徒，如侮谤人君者，以梅伯为例耳。”梅伯闻言，大叫，骂曰：“昏君！梅伯死轻



For seeing me off this far,  
I raise my glass, tears falling.  
Away from the king, as if in another world,  
I'll pray for peace from my native place.  
I would sooner shed blood, like martyrs of old,  
Than aid a tyrant, the history's worst.  
Sorrows linger among us this day,  
When shall we meet again, and recall this parting?

When Shang Rong finished, his colleagues tearfully took their leave. Shang Rong mounted his horse and rode away, and they returned to Zhaoge.

King Zhou continued to indulge with Daji day and night, ignoring all state affairs. Several days later, it was reported to the tyrant that the burning pillars were ready. Greatly pleased, King Zhou asked Daji, "Now that the burning pillars are ready, what shall we do?"

Daji ordered that the pillars be brought in for her inspection. When they were, she looked them over carefully. She noted with satisfaction that they were made precisely according to her design, and each was fitted with two wheels so that they might move around.

King Zhou pointed his finger at Daji and laughed. "My beauty! You're so clever to have invented such a marvelous torture. Let's try it out on Mei Bo at the Grand Hall tomorrow." Early the next morning, King Zhou ascended his throne. After the official greetings were over, Huang Feihu saw twenty shining brass pillars standing at the eastern end of the court. He was wondering what they were for when the king ordered that Mei Bo be brought in and a brass pillar moved to the center of the court. The fire was lit and fanned until the heat turned the pillar molten red. Then Mei Bo entered. He knelt down before King Zhou, his hair disheveled, his face unwashed and his thin cotton garments in dirt.

"You damned fool! Do you know what this is for?" the king asked.

Mei Bo raised his head, and looked at the burning brass pillar. "No, I've no idea what it is for, Your Majesty."

The king laughed. "You damned fool! All you know is how to insult your own king with your sharp tongue, but it seems you're ignorant of the fact that I've invented the burning pillars specifically to deal with you. I'll now use it to roast your flesh and bones. Let those who would blaspheme me with rumors and slanders take this as a warning."

"You licentious tyrant!" Mei Bo shouted. "I'm not afraid of death.





如鸿毛，有何惜哉？我梅伯官居上大夫，三朝旧臣，今得何罪，遭此惨刑？只是可怜成汤天下，丧于昏君之手！久以后将何面目见汝之先王耳！”纣王大怒，将梅伯剥去衣服，赤身将铁索绑缚其手足，抱住铜柱。可怜梅伯，大叫一声，其气已绝。只见九间殿上烙得皮肤筋骨，臭不可闻，不一时化为灰烬。可怜一片忠心，半生赤胆，直言谏君，遭此惨祸！正是：一点丹心归大海，芳名留得万年扬。后人看此，有诗叹曰：

血肉残躯尽化灰，丹心耿耿烛三台。生平正直无偏党，死后英魂亦壮哉。烈焰俱随亡国尽，芳名多傍史官裁。可怜太白悬旗日，怎似先生叹隼才？

话说纣王将梅伯炮烙在九间大殿之前，阻塞忠良谏净之口，以为新刑稀奇；但不知两班文武观见此刑，梅伯惨死，无不恐惧，人人有退缩之心，个个有不为官之意。纣王驾回寿仙宫。不表。

且言众大臣俱至午门外，内有微子、箕子、比干对武成王黄飞虎曰：“天下荒荒，北海动摇，闻太师为国远征，不意天子任信妲己，造此炮烙之刑，残害忠良，若使播扬四方，天下诸侯闻知，如之奈何！”黄飞虎闻言，将五柳长须捻在手内，大怒曰：“三位殿下，据我末将看将起来，此炮烙不是炮烙大臣，乃烙的是纣王江山，炮的是成汤社稷。古云道得好：‘君之视臣如手足，则臣视君如腹心；君之视臣如土芥，则臣视君如寇仇。’今主上不行仁政，以非刑加上大夫，不出数年，必有祸乱。我等岂忍坐视败亡之理？”众官俱各各嗟叹而散，各归府宅。



I've already served three emperors of this dynasty. What crime have I committed that you'll put me to such a cruel death? I only regret that the Shang Dynasty will end tragically in your hands. Won't you be ashamed to meet your ancestors in the nether world?"

King Zhou was infuriated and immediately had Mei Bo stripped, shackled and placed upon the red-hot brass pillar. Mei Bo let out a single piercing scream, and his body turned to ashes, leaving a nauseating stink pervading the court. What a pity that Mei Bo should meet a tragic end simply because he served his people, his nation, and his king with loyalty!

King Zhou thought that the burning pillar was a wonderful invention, but he did not know that all of his ministers were in full sympathy with Mei Bo and that there was not one of them who didn't want to leave the palace and give up his official life. It was clear that by now the unity of the kingdom was broken and that the dynasty's days were numbered.

As they left the Grand Hall, Wei Zi, Ji Zi and Bi Gan met Huang Feihu. "The state is now unstable. Uprisings broke out in the North Sea district, and Grand Tutor Wen rushed there to suppress them. How could we ever imagine that the king would devote himself wholeheartedly to Daji, and treat us so mercilessly. Now he's invented that cruel torture in order to slaughter his loyal ministers. If word of it reached the nobles, our troubles would multiply endlessly," they said, greatly troubled.

Huang Feihu stroked his long beard. "Princes! As I see it, the worst victim of the burning pillar isn't Mei Bo, but the Shang Dynasty. It'll be reduced to ashes and vanish from the face of the earth. An ancient proverb says, 'If a king regards his officials as his hands and feet, they will regard him as the heart and stomach; but if he looks upon them as dust, they will hate him as a thief.' The king's ruthless killing of Mei Bo is a bad omen, and great disasters will soon follow. How can we sit calmly and watch the downfall of this Dynasty!"



且言纣王回宫，妲己迎接圣驾。纣王下辇，携妲己手而言曰：“美人妙策，朕今日殿前炮烙了梅伯，使众臣俱不敢出头强谏，钳口结舌，唯唯而退。是此炮烙乃治国之奇宝也。”传旨：“设宴与美人贺功。”其时笙簧杂奏，箫管齐鸣。纣王与妲己在寿仙宫，百般作乐，无限欢娱，不觉樵楼鼓角二更，乐声不息。有阵风将此乐音送到中宫，姜皇后尚未寝，只听乐声聒耳，问左右宫人：“这时候那里作乐？”两边宫人答：“娘娘，这是寿仙宫苏美人与天子饮宴未散。”姜皇后叹曰：“昨闻天子信妲己，造炮烙，残害梅伯，惨不可言。我想这贱人，蛊惑圣聪，引诱人君，肆行不道。”即命乘辇，“待我往寿仙宫走一遭。”——看官，此一去，未免有娥眉见妒之意，只怕是非从此起，灾祸目前生。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



When he arrived at his residence, King Zhou was met by Daji. "It's your wonderful idea. Mei Bo's death will serve as a warning to anyone who won't keep his mouth shut! The pillar's truly an efficient tool," he told her and took her in his arms.

He then ordered a feast in honor of Daji. They ate and drank to the accompaniment of music until midnight, when a sudden gust of wind blew the sweet strains to Queen Jiang's bedroom. Hearing it, she asked her attendants, "Where does that alluring music come from at this hour of night?"

"Your Majesty! It comes from the Fairy Longevity Palace, where His Majesty and Lady Su are still drinking together."

Queen Jiang sighed deeply. "I was informed that His Majesty took Daji's advice, built the burning pillars and has put Mei Bo to death. That cheap wench is luring him into evil deeds. Prepare my coach. I'll go to the Fairy Longevity Palace and see His Majesty at once," she ordered.

This visit was undoubtedly prompted in part by jealousy, and would lead to greater calamities.

If you want to know what happened next, you must read the next chapter.

## 第七回

### 费仲计废姜皇后

诗曰：

纣王无道乐温柔，日夜宣淫兴未休。月色已西重进酒；  
清歌才罢奏箜篌。养成暴虐三纲绝；酿就酗戕万姓愁。  
讽谏难回流下性，至今余恨锁西楼。

话言姜皇后听得音乐之声，问左右，知是纣王与妲己饮宴，不觉点首叹曰：“天子荒淫，万民失业，此取乱之道。昨外臣谏诤，竟遭惨死，此事如何是好！眼见成汤天下变更，我身为皇后，岂有坐视之理！”姜皇后乘辇，两边排列宫人，红灯闪烁，簇拥而来，前至寿仙宫。侍驾官启奏：“姜娘娘已到宫门候旨。”纣王更深带酒，醉眼眸斜，“苏美人，你当去接梓童。”妲己领旨出宫迎接。苏氏见皇后行礼。皇后赐以平身。妲己引导姜皇后至殿前，行礼毕。纣王曰：“命左右设坐，请梓童坐。”姜皇后谢恩，坐于右首。——看官：那姜后乃纣王元配；妲己乃美人，坐不得，侍立一旁。纣王与正宫把盏。王曰：“梓童今到寿仙宫，乃朕喜幸。”命妲己：“美人著宫娥鲛捐轻敲檀板，美人自歌舞一回，与梓童赏玩。”其时鲛捐轻敲檀板，妲己歌舞起来。但见：

霓裳摆动，绣带飘扬，轻轻裙襖不沾尘，袅袅腰肢风折柳。  
歌喉嘹亮，犹如月里奏仙音；一点殊唇，却似樱桃逢雨湿。  
尖纤十指，恍如春笋一般同；杏脸桃腮，好像牡丹初绽蕊。



## Chapter 7

### Fei Zhong Plots to Depose the Queen

Accompanied by her maids holding lanterns, Queen Jiang got into her coach and headed for the Fairy Longevity Palace. When the guards announced her arrival, King Zhou glanced at Daji with half-closed eyes. "Lady Su! Would you please meet Her Majesty for me?" he asked.

Daji walked out, bowed courteously, and escorted the queen into the court. After exchanging greetings, the queen sat down on the right side of the king, while Daji, as a mere concubine, had to remain standing. King Zhou offered a cup of wine to the queen. "I'm very glad to see you here tonight, my dear wife!" he said, then ordered Gun Juan, a palace maid, to play upon a hard-wood clapper and Daji to sing and dance to entertain the queen.





正是：琼瑶玉宇神仙降，不亚嫦娥下世间。

姐已腰肢袅娜，歌韵轻柔，好似轻云岭上摇风，嫩柳池塘拂水。只见鲧捐与两边侍儿喝采，跪下齐称“万岁！”姜皇后正眼也不看，但以眼观鼻，鼻叩于心。

忽然纣王看见姜后如此，带笑问曰：“御妻，光阴瞬息，岁月如流，景致无多，正宜当此取乐。如姐已之歌舞，乃天上奇观，人间少有的，可谓真宝。御妻何无喜悦之色，正颜不观，何也？”姜皇后就此出席，跪而奏曰：“如姐已歌舞，岂足稀奇，也不足真宝。”纣王曰：“此乐非奇宝，何以为奇宝也？”姜后曰：“妾闻人君有道，贱货而贵德，去谗而远色，此人君自省之宝也。若所谓天有宝，日月星辰；地有宝，五谷园林；国有宝，忠臣良将；家有宝，孝子贤孙。此四者，乃天地国家所有之宝也。如陛下荒淫酒色，征歌逐技，穷奢极欲，听谗信佞，残杀忠良，驱逐正士，播弃黎老，昵比匪人，惟以妇言是用，此‘牝鸡司晨，惟家之索’。以此为宝，乃倾家丧国之宝也。妾愿陛下改过弗吝，聿修厥德，亲师保，远女寺，立纲持纪，毋事宴游，毋沉酗于酒，毋怠荒于色；日勤政事，弗自满假，庶几天心可回，百姓可安，天下可望太平矣。妾乃女流，不识忌讳，妄干天听，愿陛下痛改前愆，力赐施行。妾不胜幸甚！天下幸甚！”姜皇后奏罢，辞谢毕，上辇还宫。

且言纣王已是酒醉，听姜皇后一番言语，十分怒色：“这贱人不识抬举！朕着美人歌舞一回，与他取乐玩赏，反被他言三语四，许多说话。若不是正宫，用金瓜击死，方消我恨。好懊恼人也！”此时三更已尽，纣王酒已醉了，叫：“美



Daji danced beautifully and sang with a sweet voice. When she danced her long sleeves waved up and down like graceful butterflies. It seemed as if her feet did not touch the ground. Her performance was applauded by everyone except Queen Jiang, who never even glanced at her. She sat there staring down her nose and breathing into her breast. When King Zhou noticed her expression, he smiled.

“Don’t you know that the years pass away in a wink, like flowing water, and that we have very little time to enjoy the pleasures of life? Daji sings and dances, and she sings as marvelously as the fairies in Heaven. Talents like hers are certainly rare in this vulgar world. Why can’t you enjoy yourself?” he asked her.

At this Queen Jiang stood up, left her seat, and knelt down before the king. “There’s nothing wonderful or precious about Daji’s singing and dancing,” she replied.

“What, then, is wonderful and precious, if not this?”

“As I’ve learned, a good ruler is pleased by virtue and contemptuous of material things. He distances himself from minions and lewd concubines. A king’s self-awareness is the most precious treasure of the country. The treasures of Heaven are the sun, moon and stars; those of the earth are grains and fruits; those of a country, loyal ministers and fine generals, while those of a family, filial sons and grandsons. However, Your Majesty prefers lewdness and wine, slaughters the loyal, forsakes the elders, connives with the wicked, and trusts only your favorite concubine. There’s actually nothing to be prized here, for they only spell the end of the dynasty. I pray that you will repent your errors, hold fast to law and discipline, and be diligent about state affairs, so that Heaven will bless us, the people will be happy and the state will enjoy peace. I’m a mere woman, and I apologize if I’ve said something wrong,” she stated bravely and then excused herself.

Annoyed with her words, King Zhou turned to Daji. “What’s the matter with that woman! She really doesn’t know how to appreciate favors. To please her, I asked you to dance and sing, but all she did was say things to annoy me. If she weren’t the queen, I would have had her beaten to death with the gold-clawed cudgel.” At the third watch, King Zhou was totally drunk. “My beauty! I’m still upset by what happened earlier this evening. Would you please dance for me again to drive my





人，方才朕躬着恼，再舞一回，与朕解闷。”妲己跪下奏曰：“妾身从今不敢歌舞。”王曰：“为何？”妲己曰：“姜皇后深责妾身，此歌舞乃倾家丧国之物。况皇后所见甚正，妾身蒙圣恩宠眷，不敢暂离左右。倘娘娘传出宫闱，道贱妾蛊惑圣聪，引诱天子，不行仁政，使外庭诸臣持此督责，妾虽拔发，不足偿其罪矣。”言罢泪下如雨。纣王听罢，大怒曰：“美人只管侍朕，明日便废了贱人，立你为皇后。朕自己做主，美人勿忧。”妲己谢恩，复传奏乐饮酒，不分昼夜。不表。

一日，朔望之辰。姜皇后在中宫，各宫嫔妃朝贺皇后。西宫黄贵妃——乃黄飞虎之妹，——馨庆宫杨贵妃俱在正宫。只见宫人来报：“寿仙宫苏妲己候旨。”皇后传：“宣！”妲己进宫，见姜皇后升宝座，黄贵妃在左，杨贵妃在右，妲己进宫朝拜已毕。姜皇后特赐美人平身。妲己侍立一旁。二贵妃问曰：“这就是苏美人？”姜后曰：“正是。”因对苏氏责曰：“天子在寿仙宫，无分昼夜，宣淫作乐，不理朝政，法纪混淆；你并无一言规谏。迷惑天子，朝歌暮舞，沉湎酒色，拒谏杀忠，坏成汤之大典，悞国家之安危，是皆汝之作俑也。从今如不悛改，引君当道，仍前肆无忌惮，定以中宫之法处之！且退！”

妲己忍气吞声，拜谢出宫，满面羞愧，闷闷回宫。时有鲧捐接住妲己，口称“娘娘”。妲己进宫，坐在绣墩之上，长吁一声。鲧捐曰：“娘娘今日朝正宫而回，为何短叹长吁？”妲己切齿曰：“我乃天子之宠妃，姜后自恃元配，对黄、杨二贵妃耻辱我不堪，此恨如何不报！”鲧捐曰：“主公



depression away?" he asked.

Daji knelt down before him. "I dare not dance again, Your Majesty."

"What's that? What do you mean?"

"Her Majesty reproached me very severely, saying that dancing and singing are the downfall of both the family and the state. I'm sure she's right, and I'm now quite worried. To return your favor, I must serve you to the best of my ability. But what can I do if Her Majesty holds that I've seduced you so that you enjoy only sexual pleasure and become a tyrant? For this I would be condemned by all the nobles and ministers, who would have all my hair pulled out before they put me to death. But even this would be insufficient punishment for the crimes I've committed," she said, tears rolling down her cheeks like rain.

"You only have to concern yourself with me," the king said, and added angrily, "I will depose her and let you take her place. Don't worry, my beauty, I know how to deal with this matter."

Daji thanked King Zhou and they continued to indulge in drinking, dancing, sweet music, and love-making day and night.

On the first day of the month, as was the custom, Queen Jiang received congratulations from the royal concubines. She was talking with Concubine Huang and Concubine Yang when Daji's arrival was announced. When she was admitted, she knelt down to greet Queen Jiang, and the latter returned the salutation, asking her to get up and stand beside her.

"This must be Lady Su that we've heard so much about," the two other concubines said.

"Yes, this is indeed," Queen Jiang replied then turned to Daji. "His Majesty spends all his time with you, disregarding state affairs. Why don't you talk to him about it? You've seduced and incited him to all manner of evil," she rebuked. "You're the instigator and must repent at once. If you continue to wreak havoc upon this dynasty, I will deal with you according to the law! You may leave now."

Daji suppressed her temper, thanked the queen, and returned to her own court feeling humiliated.

"You've been sighing and moaning ever since you returned from the queen's palace. What's wrong?" Gun Juan asked.

"I'm the favorite of His Majesty, but I was rudely insulted by the queen in front of Concubine Huang and Concubine Yang. For this I must seek my revenge," Daji said bitterly, gnashing her teeth.



前日亲许娘娘为正宫，何愁不能报复？”姐己曰：“虽许，但姜后现在，如何做得！必得一奇计，害了姜后，方得妥贴；不然，百官也不服，依旧谏诤不宁，怎得安然。你有何计可行？其福亦自不浅。”鲧捐对曰：“我等俱系如流，况奴婢不过一侍婢耳，有甚深谋远虑。依奴婢之意，不若召一外臣，计议方妥。”姐己沉吟半晌曰：“外宫如何召得进来。况且耳目甚众，又非心腹之人，如何使得！”鲧捐曰：“明日天子幸御园，娘娘暗传懿旨，宣召中谏大夫费仲到宫，待奴婢分付他，定一妙计，若害了姜皇后，许他官居显任，爵禄加增，他素有才名，自当用心，万无一失。”姐己曰：“此计虽妙，恐彼不肯，奈何？”鲧捐曰：“此人亦系主公宠臣，言听计从；况娘娘进宫，也是他举荐。奴婢知他必肯尽力。”姐己大喜。

那日纣王幸御花园，鲧捐暗传懿旨，把费仲宣至寿仙宫。费仲在宫门外，只见鲧捐出宫问曰：“费大夫，娘娘有密旨一封，你拿出去自拆，观其机密，不可漏泄。若成事之后，苏娘娘决不负大夫。宜速，不宜迟。”鲧捐道罢，进宫去了。费仲接书，急出午门，到于本宅，至密室开拆观看，“乃姐己教我设谋，害姜皇后的重情。”看罢，沉思忧惧：“我想起，姜皇后乃主上元配；他的父亲乃东伯侯姜桓楚，镇于东鲁，雄兵百万，麾下大将千员；长子姜文焕又勇贯三军，力敌万夫，怎的惹得他！若有差讹，其害非小。若迟疑不行，他又是天子宠妃。那日他若仇恨，或枕边密语，或酒后谗言，吾死无葬身之地矣！”心下踌躇，坐卧不安，如芒刺背。沉思终日，并无一筹可展，半策可施。厅前走到



"Oh! You needn't worry about that. His Majesty's already promised that you would become the queen."

"Even though he's promised me, it's impossible with Queen Jiang still alive. Only with her gone can I have the chance to take her place. Otherwise, the ministers will make it difficult for me to live in peace. Have you any good ideas? You will be richly rewarded if I succeed."

"I'm a mere maidservant. How could I have any ideas like that? Let's consult a minister outside the palace and see what we can do."

Daji pondered for a long while. "How can we get in touch with a minister outside the palace? There are so many eyes and ears here, and there's no one we can trust."

"When His Majesty goes to the royal garden tomorrow, you may ask Fei Zhong privately to come and think up a way for you. All you have to do is promise him that he will be promoted if the plan succeeds. He is well known for his skill in such matters. We can trust him to help us."

"Though your plan's a good one, what shall we do if he refuses to cooperate?"

"Fei Zhong is one of His Majesty's favorites at court. Moreover, he was the one who recommended you to His Majesty. I assure you that he would be glad to be of service to you," Gun Juan spoke with such confidence that Daji was overjoyed.

The next day, when King Zhou went to the royal garden with Daji to enjoy the scenery, Gun Juan secretly summoned Fei Zhong to the Fairy Longevity Palace. She told Fei Zhong, "Your Honor! Here's a private letter to you from Lady Su. Please read it over carefully at home, and keep its contents a secret. Lady Su will be sure to remember any help you can render her. But please hurry!"

Fei Zhong returned home at once, entered his study and read the letter. Daji requested him to help plot against Queen Jiang. "The way I see it, Queen Jiang's the official wife of King Zhou. Her father, East Grand Duke Jiang Huanchu, commands hundreds of thousands of soldiers and generals, and Jiang Wenhuan, her brother, can defeat 10,000 men by himself. How dare I stir up trouble with the queen," Fei Zhong thought to himself. "But if I refuse Daji's orders or even delay in the slightest, she can easily speak ill of me before His Majesty, either in bed when they're enjoying themselves or at the table when His Majesty's half drunk, and I will surely lose my life."

Fei Zhong could not set his mind at rest. He felt as if there were thorns



厅后，神魂颠倒，如醉如痴。坐在厅上，正纳闷间，只见一人，身長丈四，膀阔三停，壮而且勇，走将过去。费仲问曰：“是什么人？”那人忙向前叩头，曰：“小的是姜环。”费仲闻说，便问：“你在我府中几年了？”姜环曰：“小的来时，离东鲁到老爷台下五年了。蒙老爷一向抬举，恩德如山，无门可报。适才不知老爷闷坐，有失回避，望老爷恕罪。”费仲一见此人，计上心来，便叫：“你且起来，我有事用你。不知你肯用心去做否？你的富贵亦自不小。”姜环曰：“若老爷分付，安敢不努力前去？况小的受老爷知遇之恩，便使小的赴汤蹈火，万死不辞。”费仲大喜，曰：“我终日沉思，无计可施，谁知却在你身上！若事成之后，不失金带垂腰，其福应自不浅。”姜环曰：“小的怎敢望此。求老爷分付，小人领命。”费仲附姜环耳上：“……这般这般，如此如此，若此计成，你我有无穷富贵。切莫漏泄，其祸非同小可！”姜环点头，领计去了。这正是：金风未动蝉先觉，暗送无常死不知。有诗为证。诗曰：

姜后忠贤报主难，孰知平地起波澜。可怜数载鸳鸯梦，  
取次凋残不忍看。

话说费仲密密将计策写明，暗付鲧捐。鲧捐得书，密奏与妲己。妲己大喜，正宫不久可居。

一日，纣王在寿仙宫闲居无事，妲己启奏曰：“陛下顾恋妾身，旬月未登金殿，望陛下明日临朝，不失文武仰望。”王曰：“美人所言，真是难得！虽古之贤妃圣后，岂是过哉。明日临朝，裁决机务，庶不失贤妃美意。”——看官：此是费仲、妲己之计，岂是好意？表过不题。



pricking his back. He thought about Daji's proposal all day long but was unable to decide how to deal with the problem. He paced to and fro, numb as a drunken man. Just as he was racking his brains, he caught sight of a stranger walking in front of him. The man was broad-shouldered, about fifteen feet tall, and looked tough and brave.

"Who are you?" Fei Zhong asked.

The stranger knelt down. "My name's Jiang Huan," he replied.

"How long have you served in my place?"

"It's already been five years since I left East Lu and came here. I'm very grateful to you for the way you've treated me. I don't know how to repay you. Seeing you look so worried, I meant to stay out of your way; I hope you will pardon me for interrupting you."

When he heard that Jiang Huan was from East Lu and shared the queen's surname, a plot suddenly leaped into Fei Zhong's mind. "You may get up, Jiang Huan. I would like you to do something for me. If you accomplish this mission, I will reward you generously with wealth and honor."

"I will do everything within my power to carry out your orders. I would even dare to rush into fire or leap into boiling water on your behalf."

"I had no idea how to solve the problem at hand, but seeing you has given me the perfect solution. If you succeed, you will be promoted and wear a golden belt around your waist," Fei Zhong promised.

"That is the most I could hope for. I will do just as you order," Jiang Huan replied with great sincerity.

Fei Zhong leaned over and whispered the entire plot into Jiang Huan's ear. "If our plot succeeds, both of us will be rewarded with boundless wealth and power. But you must keep this absolutely secret, or else will only meet disasters," he warned.

Jiang Huan nodded in silent agreement and left the place. Fei Zhong hastily sent a note to Gun Juan telling Daji what he was planning to do. Several days later King Zhou was relaxing at the Fairy Longevity Palace when Daji said, "Your love for me has caused you to be absent from the Grand Hall for nearly ten months now. I pray that you hold court tomorrow morning so as not to lose the respect of your ministers."

"You're right. Your words are as virtuous as those of the great empresses of old. I will appear tomorrow in the Grand Hall and deal with state affairs, for this is your wish, my lady."

The next morning, he left the Fairy Longevity Palace in his coach,



次日，天子设朝，但见左右奉御保驾，出寿仙宫，銮舆过龙德殿，至分宫楼，红灯簇簇，香气氤氲。正行之间，分宫楼门角旁一人，身高丈四，头带扎巾，手执宝剑，行如虎狼，大喝一声，言曰：“昏君无道，荒淫酒色，吾奉主母之命，刺杀昏君，庶成汤天下不失与他人，可保吾主为君也！”一剑劈来。两边该多少保驾官，此人未近前时，已被众官所获，绳缠索绑，拿近前来，跪在地下。纣王惊而且怒，驾至大殿升座，文武朝贺毕，百官不知其故。王曰：“宣武成王黄飞虎、亚相比干。”二臣随出班拜伏称“臣”。纣王曰：“二卿，今日升殿，异事非常。”比干曰：“有何异事？”王曰：“分宫楼有一刺客，执剑刺朕，不知何人所使？”黄飞虎听言大惊，忙问曰：“昨日是那一员官宿殿？”内有一人，乃是“封神榜”上有名，官拜总兵，姓鲁名雄，出班拜伏：“是臣宿殿，并无奸细。此人莫非五更随百官混入分宫楼内，故有此异变！”黄飞虎分付：“把刺客推来！”众官将刺客拖到滴水之前。天子传旨：“众卿，谁与朕勘问明白回旨？”班中闪一人进礼称：“臣费仲不才，勘明回旨。”——看官，费仲原非问官，此乃做成圈套，陷害姜皇后的；恐怕别人审出真情，故此费仲讨去勘问。

话说费仲拘出刺客，在午门外勘问，不用加刑，已是招成谋逆。费仲进大殿，见天子，俯伏回旨。百官不知原是设成计谋，静听回奏。王曰：“勘明何说？”费仲奏曰：“臣不敢奏闻。”王曰：“卿既勘问明白，为何不奏？”费仲曰：“赦臣罪，方可回旨。”王曰：“赦卿无罪。”费仲奏：“刺客姓姜名环，乃东伯侯姜桓楚家将，奉中宫姜皇后懿旨，行刺陛下，



with generals and soldiers, carrying red lanterns and fragrant incense, guarding him closely. The magnificent train had passed through the Dragon Virtue Hall and come to the Central Palace Tower when a man, fourteen feet tall, and wearing a red scarf, leaped out from behind a corner. He held a sword in hand, and was fierce as tiger.

“You wicked and lascivious tyrant! You’ve drowned your reason in wine and sex. I’ve come by order of my mistress to put you to death so that the Shang Dynasty won’t come to an end. The power to rule over the kingdom shall pass into the hands of my mistress’ father,” he cried, swinging his mighty sword at King Zhou, but the king was immediately surrounded by a cordon of generals and guards. The assassin was forced back, seized and tightly bound up. When he was thrown on the ground, he knelt before the king.

King Zhou was both shocked and enraged, yet he continued on his way, entered the Grand Hall, and ascended the throne. After the greeting ceremonies were over, the king ordered Huang Feihu and Bi Gan to approach the throne. “Ministers! Something quite extraordinary happened this morning. A man attacked me near the Central Palace Tower with a sword. I’ve no idea who is behind this plot.”

Huang Feihu was stunned. “Who was the general on duty last night?” he demanded sharply.

Lu Xiong stepped out and knelt down before the king. “I was on duty, but neither my guards nor myself found anyone suspicious in the palace. The assassin may have entered the palace at the fifth watch among the ministers who came here to see Your Majesty on state affairs,” he explained.

Huang Feihu ordered that the assassin be brought to the court and when he was pushed in, King Zhou asked, “Who will interrogate him.”

Fei Zhong stepped forward and knelt down before King Zhou. “Though your servant is lacking in talent, I will handle the case and report it to you as quickly as possible,” he said. Though he was not a judicial official, he sought this task so as to complete the trap to ensnare Queen Jiang and prevent other officials from uncovering the truth. He held the trial outside the palace gate, and without having to apply any torture, the assassin willingly pleaded guilty. Having obtained a full confession, Fei Zhong returned and reported the case. All the court officials listened carefully, not knowing that it was a preconceived plot.

“I dare not submit my report about the trial, Your Majesty, unless you exempt me from guilt for making such a report,” Fei Zhong pleaded.

“You certainly won’t be judged guilty for reporting the results of the case.”





意在侵夺天位，与姜桓楚而为天子。幸宗社有灵，皇天后土庇佑，陛下洪福齐天，逆谋败露，随即就擒。请陛下下九卿文武，议贵议戚，定夺。”纣王听奏，拍案大怒曰：“姜后乃朕元配，辄敢无礼，谋逆不道，还有什么议贵议戚？况宫弊难除，祸潜内禁，肘腋难以提防，速着西宫黄贵妃勘问回旨！”纣王怒发如雷，驾回寿仙宫。不表。

且言诸大臣纷纷议论，难辨假真。内有上大夫杨任对武成王曰：“姜皇后贞静淑德，慈祥仁爱，治内有法。据下官所论，其中定有委曲不明之说，宫内定有私通。列位殿下，众位大夫，不可退朝，且听西宫黄娘娘消息，方存定论。”百官俱在九间殿未散。

话言奉御官承旨至中宫，姜皇后接旨，跪听宣读。奉御官宣读曰：

“敕曰：皇后位正中宫，德配坤元，贵敌天子，不思日夜兢惕，敬修厥德，毋忝姆懿，克谐内助，乃敢肆行大逆，豢养武士姜环，于分宫楼前行刺，幸天地有灵，大奸随获，发赴午门勘问，招称：皇后与父姜桓楚同谋不道，侥幸天位。彝伦有乖，三纲尽绝。着奉御官拿送西宫，好生打着勘明，从重拟罪，毋得徇情故纵，罪有攸归。特敕。”

姜皇后听罢，放声大哭道：“冤哉！冤哉！是那一个奸贼生事，做害我这个不赦的罪名！可怜数载宫闱，克勤克俭，夙兴夜寐，何敢轻为妄作，有忝姆训。今皇上不察来历，将我拿送西宫，存亡未保！”姜后悲悲泣泣，泪下沾襟。奉御官同姜后来至西宫。黄贵妃将旨意放在上首，尊其国法。姜皇



"The assassin is Jiang Huan, a general under Jiang Huanchu, the East Grand Duke. He was ordered by Queen Jiang to put you to death as part of a conspiracy to usurp the throne and replace you with her father. Thanks to the blessings of your ancestors, the kindness of Heaven and earth, and to the good fortune of Your Majesty, their plot has been exposed and the assassin arrested. I pray that Your Majesty discuss this case with your ministers and come up with a verdict" Fei Zhong said.

King Zhou banged his fist down on his desk. "Madame Jiang is my wife and Queen. How can she be so reckless, despite the relationship between us, as to commit treason!" he cried out in anger. "Conspiracies are difficult to uncover, and rebellious cliques aren't easy to guard against. I will appoint Concubine Huang of the West Palace as Chief Justice of the trial for this case."

When he had returned, violent as thunder, to the Fairy Longevity Palace, a heated discussion raged among the ministers in the Grand Hall, but no one could determine whether the alleged facts of the case were true or not.

"Queen Jiang is virtuous and kind and runs palace affairs strictly according to the regulations. This case is rather complicated, and it's likely that there are hidden conspirators involved," Supreme Minister Yang Ren said to Huang Feihu. "We must remain here and wait for Concubine Huang's report before we determine the truth."

Meanwhile, Queen Jiang was kneeling on the ground as the court herald read the king's decree:

The queen is enthroned in the Central Palace. As the highest ranking female in the kingdom, she is equal in status to the king. Nonetheless, she has failed to heighten her vigilance, refine her virtues, observe the good conduct befitting her sex, or help the king rule the nation properly. Now she has committed the crime of treason, dispatching her underling, Jiang Huan, to the Central Palace Tower to assassinate the king, but he has already been arrested. The assassin has confessed his guilt and has submitted a statement to the effect that the queen and her father conspired against the king in violation of the rites governing the relations between husband and wife and between the king and his ministers. The queen is now under arrest and will be sent to the West Palace for trial. The case will be dealt with severely.

When the herald finished reading, Queen Jiang burst into tears. "Who has so shamelessly condemned this innocent woman?" she cried out. "I've served the king with diligence and frugality for years, daring not commit the slightest error, just as my mother taught me. How can he place me



后跪而言曰：“我姜氏素秉忠良，皇天后土，可鉴我心。今不幸遭人陷害，望乞贤妃鉴我平日所为，替奴作主，雪此冤枉！”黄妃曰：“圣旨道你命姜环弑君，献国与东伯侯姜桓楚，篡成汤之天下。事干重大，逆礼乱伦，失夫妻之大义，绝元配之恩情。若论情真，当夷九族！”姜后曰：“贤妃在上，我姜氏乃姜桓楚之女，父镇东鲁，乃二百镇诸侯之首，官居极品，位压三公，身为国戚，女为中宫，又在四大诸侯之上。况我生子殷郊，已正东宫，圣上万岁后，我子承嗣大位；身为太后，未闻父为天子，而能令女配享太庙者也。我虽系女流，未必痴愚至此。且天下诸侯，又不止我父亲一人，若天下齐兴问罪之师，如何保得永久！望贤妃详察，雪此奇冤，并无此事。恳乞回旨，转达愚衷，此恩非浅！”话言未了，圣旨来催。黄妃乘辇至寿仙宫候旨。纣王宣黄妃进宫，朝贺毕。纣王曰：“那贱人招了不曾？”黄妃奏曰：“奉旨严问姜后，并无半点之私，实有贞静贤能之德。后乃元配，侍君多年，蒙陛下恩宠，生殿下已正位东宫，陛下万岁后，彼身为太后，有何不足，尚敢欺心，造此灭族之祸！况姜桓楚官居东伯，位至皇亲，诸侯朝称千岁，乃人臣之极品，乃敢使人行刺，必无是理。姜后痛伤于骨髓之中，衔冤于覆盆之上。即姜后至愚，未有父为天子而女能为太后、甥能承祧者也。至若弃贵而投贱，远上而近下，愚者不为；况姜后正位数年，素明礼教者哉！妾愿陛下察冤雪枉，无令元配受诬，有乖圣德。再乞看太子生母，怜而赦之。妾身幸甚！姜后举室幸甚！”纣王听罢，自思曰：“黄妃之言甚是明白，果无此事，必有委曲。”正在迟疑未决之际，只见姐已在旁微



under arrest and send me to trial without even checking the facts? My life now hangs in a balance.”

When she arrived at the West Palace, Queen Jiang knelt before Lady Huang. “Heaven and earth know that I am loyal and chaste. I implore you to have pity on me. There are devils that have designs upon me. I earnestly hope that you will base your verdict on my daily behavior and clear me of this unjust charge,” she begged.

“The royal decree states that you dispatched Jiang Huan to kill the king in order to place your father on the throne. Should these facts be substantiated, you would be guilty of violating the ethics governing the relationship between husband and wife, and your father, mother, and their close relatives would all be put to death,” Lady Huang warned.

“Please hear me out, Lady! My father is in charge of 200 marquises in East Lu. He holds one of the highest posts in the government, and as father-in-law of His Majesty, is also a royal relative. Since his daughter is the queen and he himself the highest ranking duke, he has no motive to usurp the throne. Moreover, my son Yin Jiao is the Crown Prince. When His Majesty passes away, I shall become the queen dowager, with the privilege of being worshiped at the royal temple. Yet I would lose that privilege if my father took the throne. Though I am a woman, I would not act so foolishly as to risk losing all of this. Furthermore, there are so many nobles in this country that if we did perpetrate such a crime, they would immediately attack us with their armies, and the state would soon collapse. I beg you to report these facts to His Majesty.”

But before she could finish, a herald was sent from the king, urging Lady Huang to confess, and Lady Huang rushed to the Fairy Longevity Palace.

“Has she confessed yet?” the king asked.

Concubine Huang repeated the queen’s statement with great accuracy. “I urge Your Majesty to treat the queen with sympathy; she is obviously the victim of injustice. Don’t allow your wife to be wronged by a conspiracy framed by unseen hands. Have mercy on her, for she’s the mother of the Crown Prince,” she implored.

King Zhou listened carefully to the queen’s statement and Huang’s opinions. “The report from Concubine Huang is quite clear. If the queen is being framed, there must be a complex reason behind it,” he pondered, and while he was thus torn by doubt, he noticed Daji smiling coldly beside him. “What are you smiling about without saying anything, my beauty?”



微冷笑。纣王见妲己微笑，问曰：“美人微笑不言，何也？”妲己对曰：“黄娘娘被姜后惑了。从来做事的人，好的自己播扬，恶的推于别人。况谋逆不道，重大事情，他如何轻易便认。且姜环是他父亲所用之人，既供有主使，如何赖得过。且三宫后妃，何不攀扯别人，单指姜后，其中岂得无说。恐不加重刑，如何肯认！望陛下详察。”纣王曰：“美人言之有理。”黄妃在旁言曰：“苏妲己毋得如此！皇后乃天子之元配，天下之国母，贵敌至尊，虽自三皇治世，五帝为君，纵有大过，止有贬谪，并无诛斩正宫之法。”妲己曰：“法者乃为天下而立，天子代天宣化，亦不得以自私自便，况犯法无尊亲贵贱，其罪一也。陛下可传旨：如姜后不招，剜去他一目。眼乃心之苗，他惧剜目之苦，自然招认。使文武知之，此亦法之常，无甚苛求也。”纣王曰：“妲己之言也是。”

黄贵妃听说欲剜姜后目，心甚着忙，只得上辇回西宫；下辇见姜后，垂泪顿足曰：“我的皇娘，妲己是你百世冤家！君前献妒忌之言，如你不认，即剜你一目。可依我，就认了罢！历代君王，并无将正宫加害之理，莫非贬至不游宫便了。”姜后泣而言曰：“贤妹言虽为我，但我生平颇知礼教，怎肯认此大逆之事，贻羞于父母，得罪于宗社。况妻刺其夫，有伤风化，败坏纲常，令我父亲作不忠不义之奸臣，我为辱门败户之贱辈，恶名千载，使后人言之切齿，又致太子不得安于储位，所关甚巨，岂可草率冒认。莫说剜我一目，便投之于鼎镬，万刚千锤，这是生前作孽今生报，岂可有乖大义。古云‘粉骨碎身俱不惧，只留清白在人间’，……”言未了，圣旨下：“如姜后不认，即去一目！”黄妃曰：“快认



"I think that Concubine Huang must have been deceived. The guilty always brag and praise themselves as virtuous while pushing the blame onto others. Treason against Your Majesty is a very grave crime. We cannot expect her to confess easily. Jiang Huan was in the employ of her father; this is one fact she cannot deny. With so many concubines and maids in this palace, why is Queen Jiang the only woman mentioned in his confession? The reason is clear. She will not ever tell the truth until she is severely tortured. Doesn't that make sense, Your Majesty?" Daji suggested.

"Yes, you're absolutely right, my beauty," King Zhou agreed.

Concubine Huang lost her patience. "Please don't talk like that, Su Daji. The queen is the wife of the king and the first lady of the country. Ever since ancient times, a queen may be deposed but never beheaded, even if she has committed a great error. That is the law," she said.

"The law is applicable to every person in the country. Even the king, who rules and educates the people on the model from Heaven, isn't permitted to deal with the law in a selfish or unjust way. Everyone, rich or poor, common or noble, is equal before the law. Your Majesty, you may decide. If Queen Jiang refuses to confess, one of her eyes must be removed. As the eyes are the external manifestation of the soul, she will certainly tell the truth, for she would be unwilling to lose an eye. Let the ministers understand that this is the way the law must be enforced," Daji argued.

"You're quite right, Daji," King Zhou supported her.

Concubine Huang started with fright but had no choice but to return to the West Palace. Entering her chamber, she wept in despair. "Your Majesty! Daji must be your deadly enemy from a previous incarnation. She's proposed to the king that one of your eyes be taken out if you fail to make the confession she wants. To save yourself from suffering, you'd better make a false statement. No king in history has ever put his queen to death; the worst that could happen is to be deposed and confined," Lady Huang begged tearfully.

Queen Jiang was also in tears. "Sister! Though you speak out of concern for me, I've been educated in the ethics ever since childhood; how can I confess to such a humiliating crime as treason? That would be the greatest insult to my father and my ancestors. Dispatching an assassin to kill one's husband is a crime so serious that to admit guilt would make my father a treacherous minister and me an unprincipled woman, cursed by later generations. How can I make a false confession? My eyes are expendable. I won't confess even if I'm thrown into a caldron full of boiling oil, or minced to bits and pieces, or beaten to a pulp. I would rather have my flesh and bones smashed than compromise my chastity, purity, and loyalty."



了罢!”姜后大哭曰：“纵死，岂有冒认之理？”奉御官百般逼迫，容留不得，将姜皇后剜去一目，血染衣襟，昏绝于地。黄妃忙教左右宫人扶救，急切未醒。可怜！有诗为证，诗曰：

剜目飞灾祸不禁，只因规谏语相侵。早知国破终无救，空向西宫血染襟。

黄贵妃见姜后遭此惨刑，泪流不止。奉御官将剜下来血滴滴一目盛贮盘内，同黄妃上辇来回纣王。黄妃下辇进宫。纣王忙问曰：“那贱人可曾招成？”黄妃奏曰：“姜后并无此情，严究不过，受剜目屈刑，怎肯失了大节？奉旨已取一目。”黄妃将姜后一目血淋淋的捧将上来。纣王观之，见姜后之睛，其心不忍；恩爱多年，自悔无及，低头不语，甚觉伤情。回首责妲己曰：“方才轻信你一言，将姜后剜去一目，又不曾招成，咎将谁委？这事俱系你轻率妄动。倘百官不服，奈何，奈何！”妲己曰：“姜后不招，百官自然有说，如何干休。况东伯侯坐镇一国，亦要为女洗冤。此事必欲姜后招成，方免百官万姓之口。”纣王沉吟不语，心下煎熬，似羝羊触藩，进退两难，良久，问妲己曰：“为今之计，何法处之方妥？”妲己曰：“事已到此，一不做，二不休，招成则安静无说，不招则议论风生，竟无宁宇。为今之计，只有严刑酷拷，不怕他不认。今传旨：令贵妃用铜斗一只，内放炭火烧红，如不肯招，炮烙姜后二手。十指连心，痛不可当，不愁他不承认！”纣王曰：“据黄妃所言，姜后全无此事；今又用此惨刑，屈勘中宫，恐百官他议。剜目已错，岂可再乎？”妲己曰：“陛下差矣！事到如此，势成骑虎，宁可屈勘姜后，陛下不可得罪于天下诸侯、合朝文武。”纣王出乎无奈，只得传



She was still speaking when an order arrived from King Zhou to remove her eyes if she still held out.

“Hurry! Hurry! Confess, Your Majesty!” Concubine Huang urged.

“How can I! I would rather die...!” the queen cried pitifully.

The royal guards, impatient by nature, grabbed her and gouged out one eye with a dagger. Blood streamed down her face, staining her clothing. She fell on the floor unconscious. Weeping at the sight, Concubine Huang ordered her attendants to help the queen up and offer first aid, but it took a long time before she came to. The royal guards placed the queen’s eye on a tray and returned to the Fairy Longevity Palace with Concubine Huang.

“Has that worthless woman confessed to her crime?” King Zhou asked Concubine Huang.

“No, as she never committed it. She would rather die than admit to disloyalty. We thus removed one of her eyes as Your Majesty ordered,” Concubine Huang said, presenting the tray to him.

Looking at the bleeding eye, King Zhou lowered his head and remained silent. There was deep regret in his heart, but it was already too late. He turned to Daji. “I took your advice and had her eye gouged out. What shall we do if this cruel act of mine becomes known and she still refuses to plead guilty?”

“We must now force her to confess to treason, or else all the ministers will criticize us. Her father may even raise an army and launch an attack on us for making his daughter suffer cruelly without reason,” Daji replied.

King Zhou remained silent, for he knew not how to deal with the matter. Finally, he asked Daji, “What’s the proper course of action for us now?”

“Since we’ve already taken the first step, we’re compelled to follow through with the second. We will be able to live in peace if she admits to her guilt, but we will have a great deal of trouble if she doesn’t. We must use violence now. Concubine Huang must prepare a brass dipper and fill it with burning charcoal. If Queen Jiang still refuses to admit to her crime, her hands should be burned in it. The fingers are connected directly to the heart, and the pain will be so unbearable that she will readily admit her guilt.”

“According to Concubine Huang’s report, Queen Jiang has committed no such crime. If we force her to suffer another cruel torture, the ministers are bound to protest. We’ve already erred in having her eye taken out; how can we do something like that again?” King Zhou rebuked her.

“You’re wrong, Your Majesty! The situation before us is similar to riding on the back of a fierce tiger. We will be devoured instantly if we get off. We mustn’t give the nobles and ministers any good reason to oppose us!”





旨：“如再不认，用炮烙二手，毋得徇情掩饰！”

黄妃听得此言，魂不附体，上辇回宫，来看姜后——可怜身倒尘埃，血染衣襟，情景惨不忍见。放声大哭曰：“我的贤德娘娘！你前身作何恶孽，得罪于天地，遭此横刑！”乃扶姜后而慰曰：“贤后娘娘，你认了罢！昏君意呆心毒，听信贱人之言，必欲致你死地。如你不再招，用铜斗炮烙你二手。如此惨恶，我何忍见。”姜后血泪染面，大哭曰：“我生前罪深孽重，一死何辞！只是你替我作个证盟，就死瞑目！”言未了，只见奉御官将铜斗烧红，传旨曰：“如姜后不认，即烙其二手！”姜后心如铁石，意似坚钢，岂肯认此诬陷屈情。奉御官不由分说，将铜斗放在姜后两手，只烙的筋断皮焦，骨枯烟臭。十指连心，可怜昏死在地。后人观此，不胜伤感，有诗叹曰：

铜斗烧红烈焰生，宫人此际下无情。可怜一片忠贞意，化作空流日夜鸣！

黄妃看见这等光景，兔死狐悲，心如刀绞，意似油煎，痛哭一场，上辇回旨，进宫见纣王。黄妃含泪奏曰：“惨刑酷法，严审数番，并无行刺真情。只怕奸臣内外相通，做害中宫，事机有变，其祸不小。”纣王闻言，大惊曰：“此事皆美人教朕传旨勘问，事既如此，奈何奈何！”妲己跪而奏曰：“陛下不必忧虑。刺客姜环现在，传旨着威武大将军晁田、晁雷，押解姜环进西宫，二人对面执问，难道姜后还有推托？此回必定招认。”纣王曰：“此事甚善。”传旨：“宣押刺客对审。”黄妃回宫。不题。话言晁田、晁雷押刺客姜环进西宫对词。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



King Zhou said nothing to refute her. "If she still refuses to confess, burn her fingers and hands without mercy!" he ordered.

Concubine Huang was terrified when she heard this and immediately returned to her apartments, where she found Queen Jiang lying in a pool of blood. She burst into tears.

"My virtuous queen! What sin did you commit against Heaven and earth in your previous incarnations that should lead to your suffering like this today!" she cried, helping the queen up. "Worthy Lady! It would be better for you to admit that you're guilty! That empty-headed tyrant believes everything that base woman says. If you still refuse to do as they wish, they will burn your hands with a brass dipper. I couldn't bear to see such brutal torture!"

With blood streaming down her face, Queen Jiang cried, "I've no fear of death. But if you will be witness to my innocence I will be able to die in peace!"

The royal attendants had already fired the charcoal in the brass dipper to a fiery red. As Queen Jiang staunchly refused to yield to the unjust accusation, her hands were pushed into the dipper, and in a moment, skin, flesh, bones, and blood were burned and turned to ashes, giving off a horrible odor which filled the room. The poor queen fainted and collapsed to the ground.

Watching this tragic scene, Concubine Huang felt as if her heart was being pierced by knives. She wept bitterly. But after she regained her strength, she got into her coach and went to see King Zhou.

"Though she's been cruelly and mercilessly tortured, the queen still denies that she's committed the crime she's accused of. Don't you think that someone might have conspired to hurt her? This could become a great calamity in the near future if it were proven true," she told the king.

King Zhou was greatly alarmed. "I followed the advice of Lady Su in this matter. What should I do now?" he said worriedly.

"Don't worry, Your Majesty! As we already have Jiang Huan in our custody, Your Majesty may order that he be brought in and tried together with the queen. She will be unable to make any further denial, and we will obtain a full confession," Daji said, kneeling down.

"That's a very good idea," King Zhou said, feeling much relieved.

Concubine Huang returned to the West Palace and Chao Tian and Chao Lei soon followed in with Jiang Huan. If you want to learn how the queen fared, please read the next chapter.







## 第八回

### 方弼方相反朝歌

诗曰：

美人祸国万民灾，驱逐忠良若草莱。擅宠诛妻夫道绝；  
听谗杀子国储灰。英雄弃主多亡去；俊彦怀才尽隐埋。  
可笑纣王孤注立，纷纷兵甲起尘埃。

话言晁田、晁雷押姜环至西宫跪下。黄妃曰：“姜娘娘，你的对头来了。”姜后屈刑凌陷，一目睁开，骂曰：“你这贼子！是何人买嘱你陷害我，你敢诬执我主谋弑君！皇天后土，也不祐你！”姜环曰：“娘娘役使小人，小人怎敢违旨。娘娘不必推辞，此情是实。”黄妃大怒：“姜环，你这匹夫！你见姜娘娘这等身受惨刑，无辜绝命，皇天后土，天必杀汝！”

不言黄妃勘问，且说东宫太子殷郊、二殿下殷洪弟兄正在东宫无事弈棋，只见执掌东宫太监杨容来启：“千岁，祸事不小！”太子殷郊此时年方十四岁，二殿下殷洪年方十二岁，年纪幼小，尚贪嬉戏，竟不在意。杨容复禀曰：“千岁不要弈棋了，今祸起宫闱，家亡国破！”殿下忙问曰：“有何大事，祸及宫闱？”杨容含泪曰：“启千岁：皇后娘娘不知何人陷害，天子怒发西宫，剜去一目，炮烙二手，如今与刺客对词，请千岁速救娘娘！”殷郊一声大叫，同弟出东宫，竟进西宫。进得宫来，忙到殿前。太子一见母亲浑身血染，两手枯焦，臭不可闻，不觉心酸肉颤，近前俯伏姜皇后身上，跪



## Chapter 8

### Princes Take Flight

When Generals Chao Tian and Chao Lei brought Jiang Huan into the West Palace, Concubine Huang said, "Queen Jiang! Your enemy's arrived."

Queen Jiang opened her eye. "You wretch! Who is it that pays you to make false accusations against me? Heaven will punish you for this!"

"I dared not refuse the orders you gave me. How can you deny that, Your Majesty?"

Concubine Huang became enraged. "Jiang Huan, you vile clod! Queen Jiang's been cruelly tortured, even though she's entirely innocent. For this act, Heaven won't spare you."

In the East Palace, Crown Prince Yin Jiao and his brother Prince Yin Hong were playing chess when the eunuch Yang Rong hurried in.

"Your Highness, a great calamity's about to befall you!"

Yin Jiao was only fourteen years old and Yin Hong two years his junior. Neither of them paid any attention to Yang Rong's report.

"Your Highness! Stop your game. A true disaster's taken place, and will bring both your family and the entire kingdom to ruin," Yang Rong said again.

The two looked up from their game and asked, "What great calamity you say's taking place right here in the palace?"

Yang Rong was all tears. "Someone's dared to slander the queen with a false accusation, and His Majesty's deceived. Her Majesty was tried in the West Palace. When she denied the accusation, one of her eyes was gouged out, and then her hands were burnt to ashes. I urge you to hurry to her rescue."

Yin Jiao let out a roar and ran with his brother to the West Palace. When they got there and saw the pathetic condition the queen was in, they knelt down beside her and sobbed.



而哭曰：“娘娘为何事受此惨刑！母亲，你总有大恶，正位中宫，何轻易加刑。”姜后闻子之声，睁开一目，母见其子，大叫一声：“我儿！你看我剜目烙手，刑甚杀戮。这个姜环做害我谋逆；姐已进献谗言残我手目；你当为母明冤洗恨，也是我养你一场！”言罢大叫一声“苦死我也！”呜咽而绝。

太子殷郊见母气死，又见姜环跪在一旁，殿下问黄妃曰：“谁是姜环？”黄妃指姜环曰：“跪的这个恶人就是你母亲对头。”殿下大怒，只见西宫门上挂一口宝剑，殿下取剑在手，“好逆贼！你欺心行刺，敢陷害国母！”把姜环一剑砍为两段，血溅满地。太子大叫曰：“我先杀姐已以报母仇！”提剑出宫，掉步如飞。晁田、晁雷见殿下执剑前来，只说杀他，不知其故，转身就跑往寿仙宫去了。黄妃见殿下杀了姜环，持剑出宫，大惊曰：“这冤家不谙事体。”叫殷洪：“快赶回你哥哥来！说我有话说！”殷洪从命，出宫赶叫曰：“皇兄！黄娘娘叫你且回去，有话对你说！”殷郊闻言，回来进宫。黄妃曰：“殿下，你忒暴躁，如今杀了姜环，人死无对，你待我也将铜斗烙他的手，或用严刑拷讯，他自招成，也晓得谁是主谋，我好回旨。你又提剑出宫赶杀姐已，只怕晁田、晁雷到寿仙宫见那昏君，其祸不小！”黄妃言罢，殷郊与殷洪追悔不及。

晁田、晁雷跑至宫门，慌忙传进宫中，言：“二殿下持剑赶来！”纣王闻奏大怒，“好逆子！姜后谋逆行刺，尚未正法，这逆子敢持剑进宫弑父，总是逆种，不可留。着晁田、晁雷取龙凤剑，将二逆子首级取来，以正国法！”晁田、晁雷领剑出宫，已到西宫。时有西宫奉御官来报黄妃曰：“天子



“Why have you been so cruelly tortured, Mother? Even if you had committed a crime, as queen you’re not to be subjected to torture.”

Hearing their voices, Queen Jiang opened her eye. ‘My sons! Look at your mother. I’ve lost my eye and my hands. Jiang Huan’s made a false accusation of me, and Daji convinced the king to torture me. You must clear your mother of this injustice and seek revenge,’ she cried out bitterly, and soon died.

The brothers saw a man still kneeling at one side. “Who’s Jiang Huan, and where is he now?” Yin Jiao asked.

Lady Huang pointed to Jiang Huan and said, “That man kneeling there, your mother’s deadly enemy.”

The crown prince was so enraged that he grabbed a sword hanging on the gate of the West Palace and slashed Jiang Huan in two. In seconds, the ground was covered with blood. But slaying Jiang Huan served only to fire his rage. “I’ll cut off Daji’s head in revenge for my mother!” Yin Jiao cried, and sword in hand, he flew out of the palace.

Chao Tian and Chao Lei, fearing that the crown prince would kill them next, fled before him to the Fairy Longevity Palace. Concubine Huang was shocked. “The boy’s too young to understand what’s happening,” she said, and called to Yin Hong, “Hurry and tell your brother to come back here at once. I’ve something to say.”

Yin Hong rushed after Yin Jiao. “Brother! Lady Huang wants you to go back at once. She has something urgent to tell you!” he cried.

Yin Jiao heard this and returned to the West Palace.

“Dear prince! You’ve acted too rashly. Now that you’ve killed Jiang Huan, how can we ever learn the truth! If he were still alive, I could have tortured him with the burning dipper and found out who was behind him. Now that he’s dead, what can I do? I’m afraid Chao Tian and Chao Lei have already reported everything to the king and you’ll have trouble soon!” Concubine Huang reprimanded Yin Jiao.

The boys expressed their regrets, but it was too late. Chao Tian and Chao Lei had rushed into the Fairy Longevity Palace. “The princes are rushing over here with their swords drawn,” they reported.

“Those treacherous young curs! Their mother sent an assassin to murder me, for which I’ve yet to put her to death. How dare they try to kill their father! They must die at once. I hereby order Chao Tian and Chao Lei to decapitate those unfilial brats with my Dragon Phoenix sword,” the king, infuriated, cried out the order.

Back at the West Palace, Concubine Huang had heard the report that





命晁田、晁雷捧剑来诛殿下。”黄妃急至宫门，只见晁田兄弟二人，捧天子龙凤剑而来。黄妃问曰：“你二人何故又至我西宫？”晁田二人便对黄贵妃曰：“臣晁田、晁雷奉皇上命，欲取二位殿下首级，以正弑父之罪。”黄妃大喝一声：“这匹夫！适才太子赶你同出西宫，你为何不往东宫去寻，却怎么往我西宫来寻？我晓得你这匹夫倚天子旨意，遍游内院，玩弄宫妃。你这欺君罔上的匹夫，若不是天子剑旨，立斩你这匹夫驴头，还不速退！”晁田兄弟二人只吓得魂丧魄消，喏喏而退，不敢仰视，竟往东宫而来。

黄妃忙进宫中，急唤殷郊兄弟二人。黄妃泣曰：“昏君杀子诛妻，我这西宫救不得你，你可往馨庆宫杨贵妃那里，可避一二日。若有大臣谏救，方保无事。”二位殿下双双跪下，口称：“贵妃娘娘，此恩何日得报。只是母死，尸骸暴露，望娘娘开天地之心，念母死冤枉，替他讨得片板遮身，此恩天高地厚，莫敢有忘！”黄妃曰：“你作速去，此事俱在我，我回旨自有区处。”

二殿下出宫门，径往馨庆宫来，只见杨妃身倚宫门，望姜皇后信息。二殿下向前哭拜在地。杨贵妃大惊，问曰：“二位殿下，娘娘的事怎样了？”殷郊哭诉曰：“父王听信妲己之言，不知何人买嘱姜环架捏诬害，将母亲剜去一目，炮烙二手，死于非命。今又听妲己谗言，欲杀我兄弟二人。望姨母救我二人性命！”杨妃听罢，泪流满面，呜咽言曰：“殿下，你快进宫来！”二位殿下进宫。杨妃沉思：“晁田、晁雷至东宫，不见太子，必往此处追寻。待我把二人打发回去，再作区处。”杨妃站立宫门，只见晁田兄弟二人行如狼虎，飞奔



“Chao Tian and Chao Lei are coming with the king’s sword to decapitate the two princes.” She rushed out to the palace gate, met the two generals, and demanded to know what they were about.

“By order of His Majesty, we’ve come to cut off the heads of the two princes as punishment for attempting to kill their father.”

“You stupid fools! The two princes chased you out of here just now. Why don’t you go and look for them in the East Palace? Why do you come looking for them here? You’re just utilizing His Majesty’s orders as an excuse to wander around the inner palace and insult His Majesty’s concubines and maidservants. You two wretches are out to cheat and offend His Majesty. I’d chop your donkey heads off right now, if you didn’t have the king’s sword. Get out of here immediately!”

Frightened, Chao Tian and Chao Lei immediately made their way to the East Palace.

Concubine Huang went back inside. “That tyrant’s killed his wife and now he wants to kill his sons. I can’t protect you here, so you’d better seek shelter in the Fragrant Palace with Concubine Yang for a few days. You’ll be safe once a powerful minister speaks to His Majesty on your behalf,” she told the two princes.

The two princes knelt down and expressed their gratitude. “Dear Lady! How can we thank you for your kindness? Mother’s still lying here exposed to the elements. If you could provide her with a coffin, we’ll never forget you for the rest of our lives.”

“You had better leave here as soon as possible. I’ll try to do as you say,” the concubine reassured them.

The two princes left the palace and made their way to Fragrant Palace. They found Concubine Yang leaning on the gate, anxious to hear about the fate of Queen Jiang. The two princes ran forward, knelt down before her and started to cry. This surprised Concubine Yang. “How’s your mother, my good princes?” she asked them.

Jin Jiao was all tears again. “My father’s been taken in by Daji and does whatever she says. He’s tortured Mother to death. And now he listens to Daji again and wants to kill us. I beg you to save our lives.”

Concubine Yang wept aloud. “My good princes, come in quickly,” she told them. She thought to herself, “When the generals find that the princes are not in the East Palace, they’re bound to come here looking for them. I’ll get rid of them first and then decide on the next step.” She went out again and stood at the gate of the palace. She soon saw the generals



前来。杨妃命：“传宫官，与我拿了来人！此乃深宫内阙，外官焉敢在此，法当夷族！”晁田听罢，向前口称：“娘娘千岁！臣乃晁田、晁雷；奉天子旨，找寻二位殿下。上有龙凤剑在，臣不敢行礼。”杨妃大喝曰：“殿下在东宫，你怎往馨庆宫来？若非天子之命，拿问贼臣才好。还不快退去！”晁田不敢回言，只得退走。兄弟计较：“这件事怎了？”晁雷曰：“三宫全无，宫内生疏，不知内庭路径，且回寿仙宫见天子回旨。”二人回去。不表。

且言杨妃进宫，二位殿下见。杨妃曰：“此间不是你弟兄所居之地，眼目且多，君昏臣暗，杀子诛妻，大变纲常，人伦尽灭。二位殿下可往九间殿去，合朝文武未散；你去见皇伯微子、箕子，比干、微子启、微子衍、武成王黄飞虎，就是你父亲要为难你兄弟，也有大臣保你。”二位殿下听罢，叩头拜谢姨母指点活命之恩，洒泪而别。杨妃送二位殿下出宫。杨妃坐于绣墩之上，自思叹曰：“姜后元配，被奸臣做陷，遭此横刑，何况偏宫！今姐已恃宠，蛊惑昏君，倘有人传说二位殿下自我宫中放去，那时归罪于我，也是如此行径，我怎经得这般惨刑。况我侍奉昏君多年，并无一男半女；东宫太子乃自己亲生之子，父子天性，也不过如此，三纲已绝，不久必有祸乱。我以后必不能有甚好结果。”杨妃思想半日，凄惶自伤，掩了深宫，自缢而死。有宫官报入寿仙宫中。纣王闻杨妃自缢，不知何故，传旨：“用棺椁停于白虎殿。”

且说晁田、晁雷来至寿仙宫，只见黄贵妃乘辇回旨。纣王曰：“姜后死了？”黄妃奏曰：“姜后临绝，大叫数声道：‘妾



bounding up like wolves. "Guards! Arrest these men. This is the inner palace, where intrusion is forbidden under penalty of death," She ordered.

Chao Tian and Chao Lei stepped forward respectfully. "Honorable lady! We're Chao Tian and Chao Lei. On His Majesty's order, we're here to search for the two princes," they said.

"The princes are in the East Palace. How dare you be so rude as to come to my Fragrant Palace! I would have you arrested if you weren't sent by the king. Get out of here now!" Concubine Yang shouted at the top of her voice.

Chao Tian and Chao Lei dared not say anything and left. When they were outside, Chao Lei said to his brother, "We've been to three palaces already, but we still can't find the princes. We're strangers here and don't know our way around. We should return to the Fairy Longevity Palace and report this to His Majesty."

After the generals left, Concubine Yang returned to her apartments. "This isn't a safe place for you, dear princes. There are too many ears and eyes about, and it's difficult to predict what the king'll do next. I suggest that you go to the Grand Hall and speak with Wei Zi, Ji Zi, Wei Ziyan and Huang Feihu. Even if your father makes trouble for you, they'll protect you," she told the princes.

The two princes kowtowed to her in gratitude and bade her farewell in tears. When they left, Concubine Yang sat alone on a silk cushion in her own room. "Queen Jiang was the queen, but she died tragically, a victim of torture and injustice. What can I expect as a mere concubine! Daji makes use of her position to deceive the king. If someone reports to her that the two princes were here, I'll be found guilty and suffer terrible tortures. Though I've served the king for many years, I haven't borne him any children. The crown prince is his own child, yet he feels no fatherly affection for him. Now that he's killed his wife, and ordered his sons' death, the sacred relationships between husband and wife, father and son, and king and ministers have been defiled. My future's dark; very little hope remains," she pondered, and mourned over her fate.

She then shut herself in her inner room and hanged herself. When King Zhou learned of her death, he was puzzled as to why she had taken such a step, and ordered that her coffin be placed in the White Tiger Hall, according to the customary funeral rites.

When Chao Tian and Chao Lei arrived at the Fairy Longevity Palace, they saw Concubine Huang entering to make her report.



侍圣躬十有六载，生二子，位立东宫，自待罪宫闱，谨慎小心，夙夜匪懈，御下并无嫉妒。不知何人妒我，买刺客姜环，坐我一个大逆不道罪名，受此惨刑，十指枯焦，筋酥骨碎，生子一似浮云，恩爱付于流水，身死不如禽兽，这场冤枉无门可雪，只传与天下后世，自有公论。’万望妾身转达天听。姜后言罢气绝，尸卧西宫。望陛下念元配生太子之情，可赐棺椁，收停白虎殿，庶成其礼，使文武百官无议，亦不失主上之德。”纣王传旨：“准行。”黄妃回宫。只见晁田回旨，纣王问：“太子何在？”晁田等奏曰：“东宫寻觅，不知殿下下落。”王曰：“莫非只在西宫？”晁田对曰：“不在西宫；连馨庆宫也不在。”纣王言曰：“三宫不在，想在大殿。必须擒获，以正国法。”晁田领旨出宫来。不表。

且言二殿下往长朝殿来，两班文武俱不曾散朝，只等宫内信息。武成王黄飞虎听得脚步惶惶之声，望孔雀屏里一看，见二位殿下慌忙错乱，战战兢兢，黄飞虎迎上前曰：“殿下为何这等慌张？”殷郊看见武成王黄飞虎，大叫：“黄将军救我兄弟性命！”道罢大哭，一把拉住黄飞虎袍服，顿足曰：“父王听信妲己之言，不分皂白，将我母亲剜去一目，铜斗烧红，烙去二手，死于西宫。黄贵妃勘问，并无半点真情。我看见生身母亲受此惨酷之刑，那姜环跪在前面对词，那时心甚焦躁，不曾思忖，将姜环杀了；我复仗剑，欲杀妲己；不意晁田奏准父王，父王赐我兄弟二人死。望列位皇伯怜我母亲受屈身亡，救我殷郊，庶不失成汤之一脉！”言罢，二位殿下放声痛哭。两班文武齐含泪上前曰：“国母受诬，我等如何坐视。可鸣钟击鼓，请天子上殿，声明其事；庶几罪人



“Is Queen Jiang dead?” King Zhou asked her.

“Yes, she is. But before she took her last breath, she cried out, ‘I’ve served His Majesty for sixteen years and borne him two sons, one of them the crown prince. I’ve always behaved myself carefully, performing my duties faithfully. I still don’t know who it is that dispatched Jiang Huan to assassinate His Majesty and to accuse me of treason. Though I’ve been queen, this is of no more significance than fleeting clouds, now that the king’s love has flowed away like a river. I’m dying more wretchedly than the birds and beasts. I cannot right the injustice done me and can only trust that future generations will judge me fairly.’ Now her corpse is still lying in the West Palace. I pray that Your Majesty might take it into consideration that she’s the mother of the crown prince, and grant her a coffin and the right to be placed in the White Tiger Hall in accordance with the burial rites. That way your officials will be satisfied, and you’ll preserve your sovereignly virtue.”

King Zhou approved her request, and when she had left, turned to Chao Tian and Chao Lei. “Where are the princes?”

“We looked in the East Palace, but couldn’t find them. They aren’t in the West Palace or the Fragrant Palace either.”

“If they weren’t there, then they must have fled to the Grand Hall. Go arrest them and put them to death,” King Zhou ordered.

The Grand Hall was still crowded with ministers and officials waiting for news from the palace. Suddenly Huang Feihu heard the sound of flurried footsteps, and saw the panic-stricken princes rushing into the hall. Going forward to meet them, he asked, “What are you so upset about, my good princes?”

“Please save our lives, General Huang!” Yin Jiao cried out, and all tears, he clung tightly to Huang Feihu’s robes. “My father’s performed every sort of terrible deed ever since he placed his trust in Daji. When I saw my mother die from the cruel torture he ordered, I cut Jiang Huan in two and wanted to kill Daji. Chao Tian brought this to my father, and now he’s ordered our deaths. I beg you to take pity on my dead mother and save our lives so as to prolong the rule of the Shang Dynasty.”

All the ministers approached the princes in tears. “How can we possibly disregard the unjust death of Her Majesty? We’ll strike the bells and beat the drums, and ask to see His Majesty so that we can discover the



可得，洗雪皇后冤枉。”

言未了，只听得殿西首一声喊叫，似空中霹雳，大呼曰：“天子朱政，杀子诛妻，建造炮烙，阻塞忠良，恣行无道，大丈夫既不能为皇后洗冤，太子复仇，含泪悲啼，效儿女子之态！古云：‘良禽择木而栖，贤臣择主而仕。’今天子不道，三纲已绝，大义有乖，恐不能为天下之主，我等亦耻为之臣。我等不若反出朝歌，另择新君，去此无道之主，保全社稷！”众人看时，却是镇殿大将军方弼、方相兄弟二人。黄飞虎听说，大喝一声：“你多大官，敢如此乱言！满朝该多少大臣，岂到得你讲！本当拿了你这等乱臣贼子，还不退去！”方弼兄弟二人低头喏喏，不敢回言。

黄飞虎见国政颠倒，叠现不祥，也知天意人心，俱有离乱之兆，心中沉郁不乐，咄咄无言；又见微子、比干、箕子诸位殿下，满朝文武，人人切齿，个个长吁，正无甚计策；只见一员官，身穿大红袍，腰悬宝带，上前对诸位殿下言曰：“今日之变，正应终南山云中子之言，古云‘君不正，则臣生奸佞’。今天子屈斩太师杜元铣，治炮烙坏谏官梅伯，今日又有这异事。皇上青白不分，杀子诛妻，我想起来，那定计奸臣，行事贼子，他反在旁暗笑。可怜成汤社稷，一旦丘墟，似我等不久终被他人所掳。”言者乃上大夫杨任。黄飞虎长叹数声：“大夫之言是也！”百官默默。二位殿下悲哭不止。

只见方弼、方相分开众人，方弼夹住殷郊，方相夹住殷洪，厉声高叫曰：“纣王无道，杀子而绝宗庙，诛妻有坏纲常，今日保二位殿下往东鲁借兵，除了昏君，再立成汤之嗣。我等反了！”二人背负殿下，径出朝歌南门去了。——



identity of the real criminal and right the injustice done to Her Majesty," they said in one voice.

"The king's failed to play his proper role in the kingdom; he's slaughtered his queen and attempted to kill his sons; he's tortured the loyal to death with burning pillars," a voice exploded like thunder at the west end of the hall. "If we're true heroes, we should right the injustice done to the queen and seek revenge for the princes! Yet all we do now is stand around crying like women! As the old saying goes, 'A good bird chooses a solid tree to roost in; a good minister chooses a good master to serve.' The king's recent behavior attests to the fact that he's no longer fit to act as the ruler of this nation, and we should be ashamed to serve him. It would be better for all of us to leave Zhaoge in revolt and select a new ruler to protect our country."

Everyone turned to see who dared to speak so recklessly. It was Fang Bi and Fang Xiang, Chiefs of Guards in the Grand Hall.

Huang Feihu was angry. "How dare you speak like this? There are senior statesmen and supreme ministers here to discuss this matter; there's certainly no need for the likes of you to take part. You should be arrested! Get out of here at once!" he swore at them.

Fang Bi and Fang Xiang dared not argue with Huang Feihu. They lowered their heads and remained silent. But Huang Feihu had also realized that the dynasty was in trouble. He remained quiet, watching Wei Zi, Ji Zi, Bi Gan and the others sigh and fret and gnash their teeth. None knew what to do.

"What happened today is just as the Taoist predicted. An ancient saying goes, 'An improper ruler will have corrupt ministers!' The king's unjustly cut off the head of Grand Tutor Du Yuanxian, cruelly killed Supreme Minister Mei Bo with the burning pillar, tortured his queen to death, and ordered the execution of his two sons. This is bound to bring smiles on the faces of the wicked among us. It is a pity that the Shang Dynasty will fall to ruin and we'll all be prisoners before long," Supreme Minister Yang Ren said.

"You're right, Supreme Minister," Huang Feihu agreed.

The rest of the officials kept silent while the two princes wept bitterly. Fang Bi and Fang Xiang forced their way through the crowd. "King Zhou's a wicked tyrant. In ordering his sons' execution, he's trying to sever his own ancestral line, and in killing his wife, he's violated the ethical code. We'll escort the two princes to East Lu and raise an army to uproot him. This is a rebellion," they cried out.





大抵二人气力甚大，彼时不知跌倒几多官员，那里当得住他！后人诗为证，诗曰：

方家兄弟反朝歌，殿下今番脱网罗。漫道美人能破舌，  
天心已去奈伊何。

话说众多文武见反了方弼、方相，大惊失色。独黄飞虎若为不知。亚相比干近前曰：“黄大人，方弼反了，大人为何独无一言？”黄飞虎答曰：“可惜文武之中，并无一位似方弼二人的。方弼乃一夯汉，尚知不忍国母负屈，太子枉死，自知卑小，不敢谏言，故此背负二位殿下去了。若圣旨追赶回来，殿下死无疑，忠良尽皆屠戮。此事明知有死无生，只是迫于一腔忠义，故造此罪孽，然情甚可矜。”百官未及答，只听后殿奔逐之声。众官正看，只见晁田兄弟二人捧宝剑到殿前，言曰：“列位大人，二位殿下可曾往九间殿来？”黄飞虎曰：“二位殿下方才上殿哭诉冤枉，国母屈勘遭诛，又欲赐死太子，有镇殿大将军方弼、方相听见，不忿沉冤，把二位殿下背负，反出都城，去尚不远。你既奉天子旨意，速去拿回，以正国法。”晁田、晁雷听得是方弼兄弟反了，吓的魂不附体。话说那方弼身長三丈六尺，方相身長三丈四尺，晁田兄弟怎敢惹他？一拳也经不起。晁田自思：“此是黄飞虎明明奈何我。我有道理。”晁田曰：“方弼既反，保二位殿下出都城去了，末将进宫回旨。”

晁田来至寿仙宫见纣王，奏曰：“臣奉旨到九间殿，见文武未散，找寻二位殿下不见。只听百官道：二位殿下见文武哭诉冤情，有镇殿将军方弼、方相保二位殿下反出都城，投东鲁借兵去了。请旨定夺。”纣王大怒曰：“方弼反了，你速



Fang Bi picked up Yin Jiao and Fang Xiang Yin Hong, and with the princes on their backs, they left the capital through the south gate. Fortunately they were both strong, for they had to fight their way through numerous officials who tried to stop them.

All the ministers were astonished at what was taking place, except Huang Feihu, who remained entirely unmoved. Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan approached him. "Why do you remain in complete silence while this rebellion is taking place?" he asked Huang Feihu.

"It is truly a pity that among so many ministers, none are as loyal as they. They may be vulgar and uncivilized, but they cannot bear to see the queen die unjustly and to see the princes die for no reason. They must have realized that they were so low in rank that they couldn't possibly deliver admonitions directly to the king, so they chose to carry away the two princes. They risk their lives doing this, for they know that they'll probably die if the king sends men after them on horseback. They were acting exclusively out of conscience and loyalty," Huang Feihu explained with a sigh.

At this moment, hurried footsteps were heard at the back of the court, and Chao Tian and Chao Lei entered carrying the king's sword. "Ministers!" they cried out, "Have any of you seen the princes here?"

Huang Feihu told the Chao brothers what had happened and urged them to chase after the four of them. But this was a terrifying thought to the Chao brothers, for they knew that Fang Bi was thirty-six feet tall and Fang Xiang thirty-four and that they were not to be trifled with. They also knew that Huang Feihu was deliberately putting them in a difficult position. They returned to the Fairy Longevity Palace and reported what they had learned to King Zhou.

The king was greatly enraged. "Go and arrest the Fang brothers and the two princes and put them all to death without further delay!" he bel-  
lowed.



赶去拿来，毋得疏虞纵法！”晁田奏曰：“方弼力大勇猛，臣焉能拿得来。要拿方弼兄弟，陛下速发手诏，着武成王黄飞虎方可成功，殿下亦不致漏网。”纣王曰：“速行手敕，着黄飞虎速去拿来！”——晁田将这个担儿卸与黄飞虎。晁田奉手敕至大殿，命武成王黄飞虎速擒反叛方弼、方相，并取二位殿下首级回旨。黄飞虎笑曰：“我晓的，这是晁田与我担儿挑。”即领剑敕出午门。只见黄明、周纪、龙环、吴炎曰：“小弟相随。”黄飞虎曰：“不必你们去。”自上五色神牛，催开坐下兽——两头见日，走八百里。

且言方弼、方相背负二位殿下，一口气跑了三十里，放下来。殿下曰：“二位将军，此恩何日报得。”方弼曰：“臣不忍千岁遭此屈陷，故此心下不平，一时反了朝歌。如今计议，前往何方投脱。”正商议间，只见武成王黄飞虎坐五色神牛飞奔赶来。方弼、方相着慌，忙对二位殿下曰：“未将二人，一时卤莽，不自三思，如今性命休矣，如何是好！”殿下曰：“将军救我兄弟性命，无恩可酬，何出此言。”方弼曰：“黄将军来拿我等，此去一定伏诛。”殷郊急看，黄飞虎已赶到面前。二位殿下辄道跪下曰：“黄将军此来，莫非捉获我等？”黄飞虎见二殿下跪于道旁，滚下神牛，亦跪于地上，口称：“臣该万死！殿下请起。”殷郊曰：“将军此来有甚事？”飞虎曰：“奉命差遣，天子赐龙凤剑前来，请二位殿下自决，臣方敢回旨意。非臣敢逼弑储君。请殿下速行。”殷郊听罢，兄弟跪告曰：“将军尽知我母子衔冤负屈。母遭惨刑，沉魂莫白；再杀幼子，一门尽绝。乞将军可怜衔冤孤儿，开天地仁慈之心，赐一线再生之路。倘得寸土可安，生



“Fang Bi is very strong and brave. I’m afraid that we can never capture him. Only Prince Huang Feihu can carry out your request,” Chao Tian suggested.

When the order was issued, Huang Feihu smiled. “I’m well aware that it is Chao Tian who’s placed this burden on my shoulders.” He took the king’s sword and left the palace. Generals Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Yan came forward and offered to go with him, but he replied, “You needn’t come with me. I can manage on my own.”

He mounted his divine Rainbow Ox, which could cover 800 *li* in one day, and rode off at high speed.

Carrying the young princes on their backs, Fang Bi and Fang Xiang could only walk thirty *li* a day. While they were discussing what route to take, they noticed Huang Feihu rushing towards them on his Rainbow Ox. Trembling in fright, they cried to the two princes, “We’ve acted much too impulsively. Now that death is staring us in the face, what shall we do?”

“How can you say things like that? You’ve saved our lives,” the two princes replied in wonder.

“Look! Marshal Huang’s come to take us back. We’re sure to be executed,” Fang Bi said.

When Huang Feihu arrived before them, the two young princes knelt down on the road. “Marshal Huang! Do you come to bring us back?”

Huang Feihu immediately threw himself down on the ground. “I should die for what I’ve done. Your Highnesses, please stand up,” he begged.

“What are you going to do with us, Marshal?” Yin Jiao asked.

“By His Majesty’s order, I came here with the royal sword for you two princes to take your lives at once. I myself daren’t commit such a crime, but I’ve got no choice but to obey the king! I beg you to take your own lives quickly.”

Yin Jiao was on his knees again. “You know we have been grievously wronged. My mother was killed after being cruelly tortured, and if we die, there’ll be no one left in our family. Please have pity on us and give us a chance to live. Your generosity will never be forgotten,” he implored.

Huang Feihu remained on his knees. “I know quite well that you both are the victims of injustice. But the king’s order gives me no choice. If I



则衔环，死当结草，没世不敢忘将军之大德！”黄飞虎跪而言曰：“臣岂不知殿下冤枉，君命概不由己。臣欲要放殿下，便得欺君卖国之罪；欲要不放殿下，其实身负沉冤，臣心何忍。”彼此筹画，再三沉思，俱无计策。只见殷郊自思，料不能脱此灾，“也罢，将军既奉君命，不敢违法，还有一言，望将军不知可施此德，周旋一脉生路？”黄飞虎曰：“殿下有何事？但说不妨。”郊曰：“将军可将我殷郊之首级回都城回旨。可怜我幼弟殷洪，放他逃往别国。倘他日长成，或得借兵报怨，得泄我母之沉冤。我殷郊虽死之日，犹生之年。望将军可怜！”殷洪上前急止之曰：“黄将军，此事不可。皇兄乃东宫太子；我不过一郡王。况我又年幼，无有大施展，黄将军可将我殷洪首级回旨。皇兄或往东鲁，或去西岐，借一旅之师。尚可报母弟之仇，弟何惜此一死！”殷郊上前一把抱住兄弟殷洪，放声大哭曰：“我何忍幼弟遭此惨刑！”二人痛哭，彼此不忍，你推我让，那里肯舍。方弼、方相看见如此苦情疼切，二人一声叫：“苦杀人也！”泪如瓢倾。黄飞虎看见方弼有这等忠心，自是不忍见，甚是凄惶，乃含泪教“方弼不可啼哭，二位殿下不必伤心。此事惟有我五人共知。如有漏泄，我举族不保。方弼过来，保殿下往东鲁见姜桓楚；方相，你去见南伯侯鄂崇禹，就言我在中途放殿下往东鲁，传与他，教他两路调兵，靖奸洗冤。我黄飞虎那时自有处治。”方弼曰：“我兄弟二人今日早朝，不知有此异事，临朝保驾，不曾带有路费；如今欲分头往东南二路去，这事怎了？”飞虎曰：“此事你我俱不曾打点。”飞虎沉思半晌曰：“可将我内悬宝玦，拿去前途货卖，权作路费。上



set you free, I'll have committed the crime of deceiving him, and should I not set you free, I'll commit the sin of going against my conscience."

Yin Jiao realized that he and his brother had little chance of escaping doom. "Marshal Huang! You're certainly right to follow the king's order, but I beg your leniency and help us in another way."

He decided to appeal to Huang Feihu's kind heart.

"What's that? Please tell me, Your Highness."

"You may cut off my head and take it to the king, but take pity on my younger brother. Set him free and allow him to flee elsewhere. When he grows up, he'll lead a big army and seek revenge for the injustice perpetrated on our innocent mother."

At this, Yin Hong came forward and interrupted his brother. "Marshal Huang! This is all wrong! He is the crown prince. And I'm young and have no talents. You should cut off my head and take it to the king. If you let him go to East Lu or West Qi and seek revenge for the death of my innocent mother and myself, I won't regret dying now," he begged.

Yin Jiao put his arms around his brother and cried bitterly. "How could I bear to see my younger brother meet such a cruel death!"

The two brothers each argued that the other should live. Observing the scene, Fang Bi and Fang Xiang found tears rolling down their cheeks. "How sad it all is!" they exclaimed.

Huang Feihu was moved by the princes, and by the devotion the Fang brothers showed to the princes. Tears welled up in his eyes. "Fang Bi! Fang Xiang! Stop your weeping. Princes, worry no more! I've got an idea," he told them, "but it must remain a secret among the five of us, for the slightest leak will spell death for every member of my family. Fang Bi, you escort the princes to East Lu, to their grandfather Jiang Huanchu. Fang Xiang, you go and see E Chongyu, and tell him that I've released the princes and that he should join with Jiang Huanchu in an attack on Zhaoge from two different directions. We must remove traitors from the palace and right the wrong done to Queen Jiang."

"Since we left the palace this morning in a great hurry, we brought no funds with us. How shall we make the journey?" Fang Bi asked.

After thinking it over, Huang Feihu said, "Though I've got no money in my pocket, I'll give you my jade pendant inlaid with gold. You may



有金厢，价直百金。二位殿下，前途保重。方弼、方相，你兄弟宜当用心，其功不小。臣回宫复命。”飞虎上骑回朝歌。进城时日色已暮，百官尚在午门，黄飞虎下骑。比干曰：“黄将军，怎样了？”黄飞虎曰：“追赶不上，只得回旨。”百官大喜。且言黄飞虎进宫候旨。纣王问曰：“逆子叛臣，可曾拿了？”黄飞虎曰：“臣奉手敕，追赶七十里，到三叉路口，问来往行人，俱言不曾见。臣恐有悞回旨，只得回来。”纣王曰：“追袭不上，好了逆子叛臣！卿且暂退，明日再议。”黄飞虎谢恩出午门，与百官各归府第。

且说妲己见未曾拿住殷郊，复进言曰：“陛下，今日走脱了殷郊、殷洪，倘投了姜桓楚，只恐大兵不久即至，其祸不小。况闻太师远征，不在都城。不若速命殷破败、雷开，点三千飞骑，星夜拿来，斩草除根，恐生后患。”纣王听说，“美人此言，正合朕意。”忙传手诏：“命殷破败、雷开点飞骑三千，速拿殿下，毋得迟悞取罪！”殷、雷二将领诏，要往黄飞虎府内，来领兵符，调选兵马。黄飞虎坐在后厅，思想：“朝廷不正，将来民愁天怨，万姓皇皇，四海分崩，八方播乱，生民涂炭，日无宁宇，如何是好！”正思想间，军政司启：“老爷，殷、雷二将听令。”飞虎曰：“令来。”二位进后厅，行礼毕。飞虎问曰：“方才散朝，又有何事？”二将启曰：“天子手诏，令末将领三千飞骑，星夜追赶殿下，捉方弼等以正国法；特来请发兵符。”飞虎暗想：“此二将赶去，必定拿来；我把前面方便付与流水。”乃分付殷破败、雷开曰：“今日晚了，人马未齐；明日五更，领兵符速去。”殷、雷二将不敢违令，只得退去。这黄飞虎乃是元戎，殷、雷二



easily exchange it for 100 taels of silver to cover the expenses of your journey. Take good care of yourselves.”

Huang Feihu returned to Zhao at dusk and saw that all the ministers had gathered before the palace gate. He dismounted from his Rainbow Ox, and met Bi Gan.

“How did it go, Marshal Huang?” Bi Gan asked.

“I couldn’t overtake them and had to return,” Huang Feihu told him.

All the officials were delighted. He then entered the court to see King Zhou.

“On your order, I pursued the princes and the Fang brothers for seventy *li*, all the way to the triple crossroads, but failed to catch up with them. I made enquiries along the way, but no one had seen them. I had to return,” he reported.

“My unfilial sons and those two rebellious officials have been lucky this time. You may retire now. We’ll discuss this further tomorrow,” the king replied.

“If you let them get away, they’ll be sure to flee to Jiang Huanchu, and he’ll raise a powerful army against us,” Daji reminded him, after Huang Feihu had left. “Since Grand Tutor Wen Zhong’s far away at the front, let’s dispatch Yin Pobai and Lei Kai with 3,000 cavalymen to pursue them through the night. We must kill the plant by uprooting it, so as to prevent any calamity.”

“You’re right. This is just as I wish,” King Zhou said, and gave the order, “Yin Pobai and Lei Kai lead 3,000 flying horsemen to seize the two princes without delay.”

Huang Feihu was alone in his rear hall. “The king’s acted improperly. People are grumbling and Heaven’s dissatisfied. The state will collapse into chaos and no one will be able to live in peace,” he thought to himself. “What shall I do now?” His meditation was interrupted when the arrival of Generals Yin and Lei was announced.

“I’ve just come back from the court. What is it that you want?” Huang Feihu asked when the two entered and greeted him.

“By order of His Majesty, we must take 3,000 flying horsemen to pursue the princes and the Fang brothers, and put them to death,” they reported. “We’ve come for men and equipment.”

“If they capture the princes, then all my efforts will have been in vain,” Huang Feihu thought to himself, and said, “It’s late now. How can I possi-





将乃是麾下，焉敢强辩，只得回去。不表。

且言黄飞虎对周纪曰：“殷破败来领兵符，调三千飞骑，追赶殿下。你明日五更，把左哨疾病、衰老、懦弱不堪的点三千与他去。”周纪领命。次早五更，殷、雷二将等发兵符。周纪下教场，令左哨点三千飞骑，发与殷、雷二将领去。二将观之，皆老弱不堪，疾病之卒，又不敢违令，只得领人马出南门而去。一声炮响，催动三军，那老弱疾病之兵，如何行得快，急得二将没奈何，只得随军征进。有诗为证，诗曰：

三千飞骑出朝歌，呐喊摇旗擂鼓锣。队伍不齐叫“难走”，行人拍手笑呵呵。

不言殷破败、雷开追赶殿下；且言方弼、方相保二位殿下行了一二日，方弼与弟言曰：“我和你保二位殿下反出朝歌，囊篋空虚，路费毫无，如何是好！虽然黄老爷赐有玉玦，你我如何好用，倘有人盘诘，反为不便。来此正是东南二地，你我指引二位殿下前往；我兄弟再投他处，方可两全。”方相曰：“此言极是。”方弼请二位殿下，说曰：“臣有一言，启二位千岁：臣等乃一勇之夫，秉性愚卤；昨见殿下负此冤苦，一时性起，反了朝歌，并不曾想到路途穹远，盘费全无。今欲将黄将军所留玉玦货卖使用，又恐盘诘出来，反为不便。况逃灾避祸，须要隐秀些方是。适才臣想一法，必须分路各自潜行，方保万全。望二位千岁详察。非臣不能终始。”殷郊曰：“将军之言极当。但我兄弟幼小，不知去路，奈何！”方弼曰：“这一条路往东鲁，这一条路往南都，俱是大路，人烟凑集，可以长行。”殷郊曰：“既然如此，二



bly supply you with the men and horses straight away. Come back here at the fifth watch tomorrow morning, and I'll have everything ready then."

Since Huang Feihu was commander and Yin and Lei were under his command, they dared not utter a word, and so they left. Then Huang Feihu summoned his general Zhou Ji. "Yin Pobai was here with the king's official tally and asked me to supply him with 3,000 flying horsemen to pursue the princes. Select only the old, the weak and the infirm. General Yin Pobai may take them along with him at the fifth watch," he ordered.

The next morning, Yin Pobai and Lei Kai arrived and found that their men were both old and weak and nearly unable to march. This army of stumbling and floundering men was certainly something to laugh at.

By now the Fang brothers had already traveled for two days with the young princes.

"Now that we've come this far, I'm afraid we need to spend some money. Though the Marshal gave us his precious jade piece, selling it may get us into trouble if someone realizes whom it belongs to," Fang Bi said to Fang Xiang. "We've come to a fork in the road. One road leads to the east and the other to the south. Let's send the princes on their way, while we head off in an entirely different direction. This way all the four of us won't be captured."

"You're right, Brother," Fang Xiang agreed.

Fang Bi then turned to the two princes. "There's something we have to tell you, Your Highnesses. Though we're loyal and brave, we're crude and uncultivated. When we saw you wrongly treated, we became infuriated and fled with you from Zhaoge. In doing so we declared our rebellion against the king. However, we didn't bring enough money to defray the expenses for our journey. What shall we do? Though Marshal Huang's given us his jade piece, we can't sell it for fear that the secret will be discovered," he said, and suggested, "After thinking it over, we've decided that it'll be safer if we go our own ways. We apologize for not accompanying you all the way."

"You're right, Generals, but we're too young to find our own way. What shall we do?" asked Yin Jiao.

"This road leads to East Lu and that to the South Grand Dukedom. Both are busy highways full of travelers, and you needn't worry about losing your way," Fang Bi reassured them.



位将军不知往何方去?何时再能重会也?”方相曰:“臣此去,不管那镇诸侯处暂且安身;俟殿下借兵进朝歌时,臣自来投拜麾下,以作前驱耳。”四人各各洒泪而别。

不表方弼、方相别殿下,投小路而去;且说殷郊对殷洪曰:“兄弟,你投那一路去?”殷洪曰:“但凭哥哥。”殷郊曰:“我往东鲁,你往南都。我见外翁,哭诉这场冤苦,舅爷必定调兵。我差官知会你,你或借数万之师,齐伐朝歌,擒拿妲己,为母亲报仇。此事不可忘了!”殷洪垂泪点头,“哥哥,从此一别,不知何日再会?”兄弟二人放声大哭,执手难分。有诗为证,诗曰:

旅雁分飞实可伤,兄南弟北苦参商。思亲痛有千行泪;  
失路愁添万结肠。横笛几声催暮霭;孤云一片逐沧浪。  
谁知国破人离散,方信倾城在女娘。

话言殷洪上路,泪不能干,凄凄惨惨,愁怀万缕。况殿下年纪幼小,身居宫阙,那晓的跋涉长途。行行且止,后绊前思,腹内又饥。你想那殿下深居宫中,思衣则绫锦,思食则珍羞,那里会求乞于人!见一村舍人家,大小俱在那里吃饭。殿下走到跟前,便教:“拿饭与孤家用!”众人看见殿下身着红衣,相貌非俗,忙起身曰:“请坐,有饭。”忙忙取饭放在桌上。殷洪吃了,起身谢曰:“承饭有扰,不知何时还报你们。”乡人曰:“小哥那里去?贵处?上姓?”殷洪曰:“吾非别人,纣王之子殷洪是也。如今往南都见鄂崇禹。”那些人



"Where will you two generals go? When shall we meet again?" Yin Jiao asked.

"We'll take refuge in any dukedom that'll take us in, and join your vanguard when your army starts advancing towards Zhaoge," Fang Xiang replied.

The four of them bade farewell to each other in tears.

"Which way will you take, Brother?" Yin Jiao asked.

"As you please, Brother," Yin Hong replied.

"I'll head for East Lu, and you can make your way to the south. When I speak with grandfather, I'll tell him about mother's sufferings, and he'll certainly mobilize his troops. I'll inform you of our route, and you may join us in the attack on Zhaoge. We'll take Daji alive to get our revenge. Don't forget this, Brother."

Yin Hong nodded and wept. He said, "Brother! When shall we meet again?"

They burst into tears and set off on their separate ways.

Yin Hong's tears did not dry as he walked alone on his way. He was young, and brought up with every possible comfort in the palace, had never experienced the hardships of travel. He walked in fits and starts, and before long became both hungry and tired. When he was living in the palace he wore nothing but satin and ate only the finest delicacies, and certainly never had to beg anyone for anything. When he arrived in a small village, his hunger led him to a home where he saw the family eating dinner. He walked in.

"Bring over food. Let the prince eat!" he ordered.

When the family looked up and saw him in red satin, both smart and gallant, they hurriedly stood up. "Take a seat, please, and we'll bring you food," they said with respect and put more rice and dishes on the table for their unexpected guest.

Yin Hong sat down to his meal. He soon finished and stood up. "I'm sorry to trouble you for this meal, and hope that I'll be able to repay your kindness some day," he said gratefully.

"Where are you going? Where do you come from? What's your honorable surname?" the cottagers asked him.

"I'm the younger son of King Zhou. My name's Yin Hong. I am now heading south to see E Chongyu, the South Grand Duke," he told them.



听是殿下，忙叩在地，口称：“千岁！小民不知，有失迎迓，望乞恕罪。”殿下曰：“此处可是往南都去的路？”乡民曰：“这是大路。”殿下离了村庄，望前趲行，一日走不上二三十里。大抵殿下乃深宫娇养，那里会走路。此时来到前不巴村，后不着店，无处可歇，心下着慌。又行二三里，只见松阴密杂，路道分明，见一座古庙，殿下大喜，一径奔至前面。见庙门一匾，上书“轩辕庙”。殿下进庙，拜倒在地，言曰：“轩辕圣主，制度衣裳，礼乐冠冕，日中为市，乃上古之圣君也。殷洪乃成汤三十一代之孙，纣王之子。今父王无道，杀子诛妻，殷洪逃难，借圣帝庙宇安宿一夜，明日早行。望圣帝护祐！若得寸土安身，殷洪自当重修殿宇，再换金身。”此时殿下一路行来，身体困倦，圣座下和衣睡倒。不表。

且言殷郊望东鲁大道一路行来，日色将暮，止走了四五十里。只见一府第，上书“太师府”。殷郊曰：“此处乃是宦门，可以借宿一宵，明日早行。”殿下曰：“里边有人否？”问了一声，见里边无人答应，殿下只得又进一层门。只听的里面有人长叹，作诗曰：



When they learned that the boy was a prince, they immediately knelt down on the ground and kowtowed. "Your Highness! Please pardon us for not offering you a warm welcome, as we were ignorant of your honorable arrival in our village."

"Does this highway lead to the South Grand Dukedom?" Yin Hong asked.

"Yes, it does, Your Highness," they replied.

Yin Hong set out again on his way. He could only manage to cover twenty or thirty *li* that day. Accustomed to all the comforts of the palace, he was naturally unable to walk very far.

That night he came to a place where there were neither houses nor inns, and could find nowhere to spend the night. He was just beginning to get agitated when he spotted an ancient temple that stood in a dense forest of pine trees, two or three *li* ahead of him. He raced towards it and discovered a board set horizontally over the gate. From the characters carved on it, Yin Hong learned that this was the Temple of Emperor Xuanyuan.

He entered and knelt down before the image of the ancient emperor. "You were a virtuous and saintly emperor. You taught the people how to make clothing, to observe the rites and laws and to conduct themselves in the marketplace. You were honored and respected by all the people. I belong to the thirty-first generation of the Shang Dynasty and am the son of King Zhou. My father has behaved improperly, killing his wife and then trying to kill his sons. I have chosen to flee from these woes and must spend the night in your temple. I shall leave here first thing in the morning. If you are kind enough to protect me for the night, I shall rebuild your temple and recast your image in gold," he prayed.

He was so tired from the day's walking that he collapsed in front of the image and fell fast asleep.

Meanwhile Yin Jiao made his way towards East Lu, but had traveled only forty or fifty *li* before dusk fell. He found himself in front of a Grand Tutor's mansion, as he could tell from the board hanging on the gate.

"As this is the home of a high official, I can rest for the night here and resume my journey early tomorrow morning," Yin Jiao thought and called out, "Is anybody home?"

But no one answered. He entered the compound and heard someone sighing deeply over a poem:



“几年待罪掌丝纶，一片丹心岂自湮。辅弼有心知为国，坚持无地伺私人。孰知妖孽生宫室，致使黎民化鬼磷。可惜野臣心魏阙，乞灵无计叩枫宸。”

话说殿下听毕里面作诗，殷郊复问曰：“里面有人么？”里面听有人声，问曰：“是谁？”天色已晚，黑影之中，看得不甚分明。殷郊曰：“我是过路投亲，天色晚了，借府上一宿，明日早行。”那里面老者问曰：“你声音好象朝歌人？”殷郊答曰：“正是。”老者问曰：“你在乡，在城？”殿下曰：“在城。”——“你既在城，请进来问你一声。”殿下向前一看，“呀，元来是老丞相！”商容见殷郊，下拜曰：“殿下何事到此？老臣有失迎迓，望乞恕罪。”商容又曰：“殿下乃国之储贰，岂有独行至此，必国有不祥之兆。请殿下坐了，老臣听说详细。”殷郊流泪，把纣王杀子诛妻事故细说一遍。商容顿足大叫曰：“孰知昏君这等暴横，绝灭人伦，三纲尽失！我老臣虽是身在林泉，心怀魏阙，岂知平地风波，生此异事，娘娘竟遭惨死，二位殿下流离涂炭。百官为何钳口结舌，不



As prime minister for years,  
Loyalty still wells up in my heart.  
For the benefit of the state,  
Never once did I act for personal gain.  
A sudden specter appears in the palace,  
The innocent turn into ghosts!  
Retired, I care still for the kingdom.  
Sadly I watch the downfall of this reign!

Yin Jiao listened, and then asked once again, "Is anybody home?"

"Who is that?" called a voice from inside.

It was dark out by then, and neither of them could see clearly. "I'm just passing through on my way to visit a relative. As it's late now, I'm wondering if you would kindly permit me to stay here for the night. I'll be leaving very early tomorrow morning," Yin Jiao explained politely.

"Are you from Zhaoge? From your voice, I can tell you're a native of the capital."

"Yes, I am."

"Where do you live there, inside the city walls or beyond?"

"In the city, sir."

"Come on in, please. I've some questions for you."

When Yin Jiao walked in, he found much to his surprise that the old man speaking to him was none other than Shang Rong who, equally surprised, instantly knelt down before the crown prince.

"Why do you come here, Your Highness? Excuse me for not going out to welcome you, as I had absolutely no idea that you were here. As crown prince, why is it that you're traveling alone? Something unfortunate must have happened in the capital. Please sit down and tell me all the details."

Yin Jiao broke into tears and told Shang Rong all about King Zhou's cruelties.

Shang Rong stamped his foot. "That damned tyrant is inhuman!" he cried. "He's already severed the sacred ties between husband and wife, father and son, and between himself and the ministers. Though I've retired from political life, I haven't stopped worrying about what takes place in the palace. Like a storm blowing up from nowhere, the palace has been thrown into chaos, the likes of which have never been seen before. Why did all the ministers keep their mouths shut when the king began to act in this fashion? Rest easy, Your Highness! I'll return to Zhaoge with you and directly petition His Majesty to abandon his course of misconduct and save the kingdom from doom."





犯颜极谏，致令朝政颠倒！殿下放心，待老臣同进朝歌，直谏天子，改弦易辙，以救祸乱。”即唤左右：“分付整治酒席，款待殿下，候明日修本。”

不言殷郊在商容府内，且说殷、雷二将领兵追赶二位殿下，虽有人马三千，俱是老弱不堪的，一日止行三十里，不能远走。行了三日，走上百里远近。一日，来到三叉路口，雷开曰：“长兄，且把人马安在此处，你领五十名精壮士卒，我领五十名精壮士卒，分头追赶：你往东鲁，我往南都。”殷破败曰：“此言甚善。不然，日同老弱之卒，行走不上二三十里，如何赶得上，终是误事。”雷开曰：“如长兄先赶着，回来也在此等我；若是我先赶着，回来也在此等兄。”殷破败曰：“说得有理。”二人将此老弱军卒屯扎在此，另各领年壮士卒五十名，分头赶来，不知二位殿下性命如何，且听下回分解。



Shang Rong then ordered his attendants to prepare wine and fine dishes for the prince, while he himself started on his petition to the king. He would deliver it as soon as he reached Zhaoge.

On King Zhou's order, Generals Yin Pobai and Lei Kai took 3,000 mounted soldiers in pursuit of the princes, but because every one of them was either old or infirm, they were incapable of riding quickly and could only cover some thirty *li* per day. When they finally reached the triple fork in the road, Lei Kai said, "Brother! Let's select 100 stronger men from among this lot and divide them into two platoons. You take fifty of them in the direction of East Lu and I'll head south with the other half. The rest can all wait here. What do you think?"

"This is certainly a very good idea. Otherwise, we can only expect to cover twenty or thirty *li* a day with this bunch of worn-out warriors."

"If you catch up with them, bring them back here and wait for me. Likewise, I'll wait for you here if I succeed on my mission."

"I'll do as you say," Yin Pobai said.

If you want to learn what happened to the two princes, please read the next chapter.

## 第九回

### 商容九间殿死节

诗曰：

忠臣直谏岂沽名，只欲君明国政清。不愿此身成个是，  
忍教今日祸将盈？报储一念坚金石，诛佞孤忠贯玉京。  
大志未酬先碎首，令人睹此泪如倾。

话说雷开领五十名军卒，往南都追赶，似电走云飞，风驰雨骤。赶至天晚，雷开传令：“你们饱餐，连夜追赶；料去不远。”军士依言，饱吃了战饭又赶。将及到二更时分，军士因连日跋涉劳苦，人人俱在马上困倦，险些儿闪下马来。雷开暗想：“夜里追赶，只怕赶过了，倘或殿下在后，我反在前，空劳心力；不如歇宿一宵，明日精健好赶。”叫左右：“往前边看，可有村舍？暂宿一宵，明日赶罢。”众军卒因连日追赶辛苦，巴不得要歇息。两边将火把灯球高举，照得前面松阴密密，却是村庄。及至看时，乃是一座庙宇。军卒前来禀曰：“前边有一古庙，老爷可以暂居半夜，明早好行。”雷开曰：“这个却好。”众军到了庙前，雷开下马，抬头观看，上悬字乃是“轩辕庙”，里边并无庙主，军卒用手推门，齐进庙来，火把一照，只见圣座下一人，鼾睡不醒。雷开向前看时，却是殿下殷洪。雷开叹曰：“若往前行，却不错过了！此也是天数。”雷开叫曰：“殿下，殿下！”殷洪正在浓睡之间，猛然惊醒，只见灯球火把，一簇人马拥塞。殿下认



## Chapter 9

### The Prime Minister's Death

General Lei Kai took his fifty soldiers southwards. At dusk Lei Kai gave the order, "Let's eat our fill, and then continue through the night. The princes cannot have gotten very far ahead of us."

The soldiers did as he said and they were soon back on the road. Near the second watch, his soldiers, wearied of the fast pace of advance, began napping on the saddles, many of them nearly falling off. "Traveling at this speed in the dark, efforts will have been in vain. It would be better to rest now and go after them again early in the morning when our strength's renewed," Lei Kai thought, then ordered his men, "See if there's a village nearby where we can rest for the night."

His order greatly pleased the soldiers, who raised their torches and saw in the distance a village in the dense pine trees. When they got there, however, they found that it was nothing more than a temple. One of the soldiers reported to the general, "There's an ancient temple ahead. We can spend the night there."

"That is an excellent idea," Lei Kai replied.

When he arrived at the gate, Lei Kai learned from the horizontal board that it was the Temple of Emperor Xuanyuan. He saw that there were no monks there to take care of it. When the soldiers pushed the door open and entered, their torch light fell upon a youth sleeping soundly before the emperor's image. Looking closely, Lei Kai saw that it was Prince Yin Hong.

"If we had continued further, we certainly would have missed him. Fate has delivered us here." Lei Kai sighed, and cried to Yin Hong, "Your Highness! Your Highness!"

Yin Hong woke up and was astonished to find so many people crowded



的是雷开。殿下叫：“雷将军！”雷开曰：“殿下，臣奉天子命，来请殿下回朝。百官俱有保本，殿下可以放心。”殷洪曰：“将军不必再言，我已尽知，料不能逃此大难。我死也不惧，只是一路行来，甚是狼狈，难以行走。乞将军把你的马与我骑一骑，你意下如何？”雷开听得，忙答曰：“臣的马请殿下乘骑，臣愿步随。”彼时殷洪离庙上马，雷开步行押后，往三叉路口而来。不表。

且言殷破败望东鲁大道赶来，行了一二日，赶到风云镇，又过十里，只见八字粉墙，金字牌扁，上书“太师府”。殷破败勒住马看时，原来是商丞相的府。殷破败滚鞍下马，径进相府，来看商容。——商容原是殷破败座主，殷破败是商容的门生，故此下马谒见商容，却不知太子殷郊正在厅上吃饭。——殷破败忝在门生，不用通报，径到厅前；见殿下同丞相用饭。殷破败上厅曰：“千岁，老丞相，末将奉天子旨意，来请殿下回朝。”商容曰：“殷将军，你来的好。我想朝歌有四百文武，就无一员官直谏天子，文官钳口，武不能言，爱爵贪名，尸位素餐，成何世界！”丞相正骂起气来，那里肯住！且说殿下殷郊，颤兢兢面如金纸，上前言曰：“老丞相不必大怒，殷将军既奉旨拿我，料此去必无生路。”言罢泪如雨下。商容大呼曰：“殿下放心！我老臣本尚未完，若见天子，自有说话。”叫左右槽头：“收拾马匹，打点行装，我亲自面君便了。”殷破败见商容自往朝歌见驾，恐天子罪责。殷破败曰：“丞相听启：卑职奉旨来请殿下，可同殿下先回，在朝歌等候；丞相略后一步。见门生先有天子而后私情也。不识丞相可容纳否？”商容笑曰：“殷将军，我



into the temple. As soon as he caught sight of Lei Kai, he called out, "General Lei!"

"Your Highness! By His Majesty's order, I've come here to ask you to return to the palace. Hundreds of officials have been speaking on your behalf, and you needn't worry."

"Say no more, General. I know very well that it is utterly impossible to escape from this great calamity. I'm not afraid of death, but I'm so tired from my journey that I can no longer walk. Would you be kind enough as to let me ride on your horse?"

"You may ride on my horse, and I'll follow on foot, Your Highness."

And thus they made their way directly to the fork in the road as previously arranged.

After he had traveled east for two days, General Yin Pobai came to Fengyun, a small village, and ten *li* beyond he noticed a big mansion with high walls and a horizontal board with "The House of the Grand Tutor" inscribed in gold. This, he soon discovered, was the residence of the retired Prime Minister Shang Rong. He jumped off his horse and entered the mansion to pay a visit to his patron. When he saw that Shang Rong was dining and drinking with Yin Jiao, he stepped forward.

"Your Highness! Prime Minister!" he announced himself. "By order of His Majesty, I've come here to ask Your Highness to return to the palace at once."

"Welcome, General Yin!" Shang Rong replied. "I often wonder how it is that there are 400 civil and military officials at Zhaoge, yet not one of them dares to admonish the king. In their vain pursuit of rank and fame, they hold their positions but fail to serve the nation dutifully!"

The old prime minister's fury scared Yin Jiao. "Prime Minister! Please control your temper. Now that General Yin's come to arrest and take me back to the palace, I've little hope that I'll live much longer," Yin Jiao said, his voice trembling. Tears fell like rain.

"Don't fear, Your Highness! Though I haven't yet completed my written report, I'll go to the king and speak to him in person," Shang Rong comforted him.

Yin Pobai began to worry that the king might accuse him of conspiring with Shang Rong. "Prime Minister! Since I have an order to bring His Highness back to the palace at once, we can depart first. You may set off somewhat later, so as to demonstrate that there have been no private dealings between us."



晓得你这句话：我要同行，你恐天子责你容情之罪。也罢，殿下，你同殷将军前去；老夫随后便至。”却说殿下离了商容府第，行行且止，两泪不干。商容便叫殷破败：“贤契，我响当当的殿下交与你，你莫望功高，有伤君臣大义，则罪不胜诛矣。”破败顿首曰：“门下领命，岂敢妄为！”殿下辞了商容，同殷破败上马，一路行来。殷郊在马上暗想：“我虽身死不辞，还有兄弟殷洪，尚有申冤报恨之时。”行非一日，不觉来到三叉路口。军卒报雷开。雷开到辕门来看时，只见殿下同殷破败在马上。雷开曰：“恭喜千岁回来！”殿下下马进营，殷洪在帐上高坐，只见报说：“千岁来了。”殷洪闻言，抬头看时，果见殷郊。殷郊又见殷洪，心如刀绞，意似油煎，赶上前，一把扯住殷洪，放声大哭曰：“我兄弟二人，生前得何罪与天地！东南逃走，不能逃脱，竟遭网罗！两人被擒，父母戴天之仇，化为乌有。”顿足捶胸，伤心切骨，“可怜我母死无辜，子亡无罪！”正是二位殿下悲啼，只见三千士卒闻者心酸，见者掩鼻。二将不得已，催动人马望朝歌而来。有诗为证，诗曰：

皇天何苦失推详，兄弟逃灾离故乡。指望借兵申大恨，孰知中道遇豺狼。思亲漫有冲霄志，诛佞空怀报怨方。此日双双投陷阱，行人一见泪千行。

话说殷、雷二将获得殿下，将至朝歌，安下营寨。二将进城回旨，暗喜成功。有探马报到武成王黄飞虎帅府来，说：“殷、雷二将已捉获得二位殿下，进城回旨。”黄飞虎听报大怒：“这匹夫！你望成功，不顾成汤后嗣，我叫你千钟未享餐刀剑，功未褒封血染衣！”令黄明、周纪、龙环、吴炎：



“General Yin! I see what you mean, and you’re quite right. Prince, you may leave at once with General Yin and I’ll follow later,” Shang Rong said with a smile.

Before their departure, Shang Rong warned Yin Pobai, “Now that I’ve permitted the crown prince to go with you, just don’t be too anxious about a promotion, nor should you disregard the relationship between yourself and the crown prince, lest you commit a serious error and risk capital punishment.”

“Your disciple will certainly do as you’ve ordered,” General Yin said, kneeling down and kowtowing.

“Though I’ll meet my death, my younger brother will survive and take revenge for the injustice done to our beloved mother.” Yin Jiao comforted himself.

After a couple of days’ journey they came to the fork in the road. When Lei Kai saw the crown prince alongside Yin Pobai, he said joyfully, “I should offer you my congratulations, Your Highness.”

When the two brothers met again as captives they embraced and wept bitterly. “What sins did we commit to Heaven and earth in our past lives that we have to end up like this! It’s unfair that we’ll fail to avenge our poor mother’s death!”

The heart-rending laments of the two doomed princes moved the 3,000 soldiers to tears, but the two fierce generals could do nothing but drive their men back to Zhaoge in all haste. When they arrived, Generals Yin and Lei were secretly delighted at their success. They encamped their 3,000 soldiers and escorted the two princes to the city to see King Zhou. Huang Feihu exploded in a rage when he learned that they had returned with the princes.

“You damned wretches! You seek only to please that tyrant, but show no regard for the future of the Shang Dynasty. I promise you that you’ll taste my sword before you get any promotion! Blood will stain your garments before you obtain any honor,” he swore, and gave an urgent order to his generals Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Yan, “Have all the ministers and all the princes assemble at the palace gate.”





“你们与我传请各位老千岁与诸多文武，俱至午门会齐。”四将领命去了。黄飞虎上了坐骑，径至午门。方才下骑，只见纷纷文武，往往官僚，闻捉获了殿下，俱到午门。不一时，亚相比干、微子、箕子、微子启、微子衍、伯夷、叔齐、上大夫胶鬲、赵启、杨任、孙寅、方天爵、李烨、李燧，百官相见。黄飞虎曰：“列位老殿下，诸位大夫，今日安危，俱在丞相、列位谏议定夺。吾乃武臣，又非言路，乞早为之计。”正议论间，只见军卒簇拥二位殿下来到午门。百官上前，口称“千岁”。殷郊、殷洪垂泪大叫曰：“列位皇伯、皇叔并众位大臣！可怜成汤三十一世之孙，一旦身遭屠戮。我自正位东宫，并无失德，纵有过恶，不过贬谪，也不致身首异处。乞列位念社稷为重，保救余生，不胜幸甚！”微子启曰：“殿下，不妨。多官俱有本章保奏，料应无事。”

且言殷、雷二将进寿仙宫回旨，纣王曰：“既拿了逆子，不须见朕，速斩首午门正法，收尸埋葬回旨。”殷破败奏曰：“臣未得行刑旨出，焉敢处决！”纣王即用御笔书“行刑”二字付与。殷、雷二将捧行刑旨意，速出午门来。黄飞虎一见，火从心上起，怒向胆边生，站立午门正中，阻住二将，大叫曰：“殷破败！雷开！恭喜你擒太子有功，杀殿下有爵！只怕你官高必险，位重者身危！”殷、雷二将还未及回言，只见一员官，乃上大夫赵启是也，走上前，劈手一把，将殷破败捧的行刑旨扯得纷纷粉碎，厉声大叫曰：“昏君无道，匹夫助恶，谁敢捧旨擅杀东宫太子！谁敢执宝剑妄斩储君！似今朝纲常大变，礼义全无！列位老殿下，诸位大臣，午门非议国事之所，齐到大殿，鸣其钟鼓，请驾临朝，俱要犯



He rode his Rainbow Ox to the palace gate, and soon Bi Gan, Jizi, Wei Ziqi, Wei Ziyang and the other ministers also arrived.

“Your Highnesses! Ministers!” Huang Feihu began. “The fate of the state rests in your hands. I’m merely a military officer and know little about such affairs. I hope that you’ll all consider these matters carefully.”

They were discussing what to do when the two princes arrived at the palace gate under armed escort. They all moved forward to greet them.

“Members of the royal clan! Ministers!” Yin Jiao addressed them in tears. “You know as well as we what a disaster it would be if we’re to be slaughtered! My brother and I have never behaved improperly. Even if we had committed an error, we should only be demoted but not punished by decapitation! I pray that all of you show your concern for the state and rescue us from death!”

“Your Highnesses! Don’t worry so much! A large number of officials here are ready to speak out on your behalf,” Wei Ziqi said sympathetically.

Meanwhile Generals Yin Pobai and Lei Kai had arrived at the Fairy Longevity Palace and made their reports.

“Now that you’ve got them, there’s no need for them to come and see me. Simply behead them at the palace gate, bury their corpses, and then come back to report to me,” the king ordered.

“How can we execute them without your written order?” Yin Pobai asked.

King Zhou wrote, “Supervise the execution,” and gave the order to Yin Pobai. The two generals came out only to run into the princes and ministers waiting at the gate. When he saw them, Huang Feihu felt a burning rage rising in his heart. He stepped in their way. “Yin Pobai! Lei Kai! I congratulate you both on achieving this marvelous feat! I trust that you’ll be given well-deserved promotions for cutting their heads off. I only want to warn you that high positions are fraught with danger.”

Before the two generals could say a word to Huang Feihu, Supreme Minister Zhao Qi came up, grabbed the king’s order, and tore it to pieces. “The cursed king’s committed every possible offence, and you stupid wretches have encouraged him in his wantonness! I dare you to slay the crown prince! I dare you to behead them with the king’s sword! How can we ignore this violation of the ethical code? How can we overlook the corruption of sacred virtues?” he roared. “Princes and ministers, the palace gate isn’t the proper place to discuss state affairs. Let’s go to the Grand Hall and invite His Majesty to attend. We must admonish him whether he likes it or not. We must save the state from destruction.”



颜直谏，以定国本。”殷、雷二将见众官激变，不复朝仪，吓得目瞪口呆，不知所出。黄飞虎又命黄明、周纪等四将，守住殿下，以防暗害。这八名奉御官把二位殿下绑缚，只等行刑旨意，孰知众官阻住。这且不言。且说众官齐上大殿，鸣钟击鼓，请天子登殿。纣王在寿仙宫听见钟鼓之声，正欲传问，只见奉御官奏曰：“合朝文武请陛下登殿。”纣王对妲己曰：“此无别事，只为逆子，百官欲来保奏。如何处治？”妲己奏曰：“陛下传出旨意：今日斩了殿下，百官明日见朝。一面传旨，一面催殷破败回旨。”奉御官旨意下，百官仰听玉音：

“诏曰：君命召，不俟驾；君赐死，不敢生。此万古之大法，天子所不得轻重者也。今逆子殷郊，助恶殷洪，灭伦藐法，肆行不道，仗剑入宫，擅杀逆贼姜环，希图无证；复持剑敢杀命官，欲行弑父。悖理逆常，子道尽灭。今擒获午门，以正祖宗之法。卿等毋得助逆祐恶，明听朕言。如有国家政事，俟明日临殿议处。故慈诏示，想宜知悉。”

奉御官读诏已毕，百官无可奈何，纷纷议论不决，亦不敢散；不知行刑旨已出午门了。这且不表。

单言上天垂象，定下兴衰，二位殿下乃“封神榜”上有名的，自是不该命绝。当有太华山云霄洞赤精子，九仙山桃源洞广成子，只因一千五百年神仙犯了杀戒，昆仑山玉虚宫掌阐道法宣扬正教圣人元始天尊闭了讲筵，不阐道德；二仙无事，闲乐三山，兴游五岳，脚踏云光，往朝歌径过，忽被二位殿下顶上两道红光把二位大仙足下云光阻住。二仙乃拨

Generals Yin and Lei were greatly taken aback to see them so agitated. They stood dumbfounded, not knowing what to do. Huang Feihu ordered Generals Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Yan to protect the princes from any possible harm that might befall them. The eight executioners, who had bound up the princes and were waiting for the execution order, could do nothing but stand around and wait.

The ministers streamed into the Grand Hall. They struck the bells and beat the drums to announce their intentions of speaking to King Zhou.

The king was with Daji in the Fairy Longevity Palace. He heard the clanging and banging, and was about to send someone to see what was going on when a report was delivered by one of his attendants, "Your Majesty is requested to ascend the throne in the Grand Hall and meet with your ministers."

King Zhou turned to Daji. "It must be the ministers that attempt to plead on behalf of my two unfilial sons. What shall I do?"

"Issue an order that the princes must be executed today, and if there's anything to discuss, it can wait until tomorrow morning. You must urge Yin Pobai to carry out your order as soon as possible," she suggested.

King Zhou agreed with her and wrote a decree to be read before the ministers:

The king's order must be carried out at once. All royal death warrants are irrevocable; this has been the law since ancient times. No one may ignore it, not even the king himself. My unfilial son Yin Jiao and his accomplice Yin Hong have trespassed the boundaries of filial piety. After murdering Jiang Huan in an effort to eradicate all traces of their crimes, they pursued royal officers with swords drawn in an attempt to end their father's life. This is the most wicked form of unfilial behavior, for which they must be executed at the palace gate in accordance with the law inherited from our ancestors. Gentlemen, you shall obey my instructions and lend no further support to my wicked sons. If any state affairs need discussing, let them wait until tomorrow morning. Consider yourselves officially informed of these matters.

While the ministers argued among themselves about the king's pronouncement, the executioners had already gone stealthily out of the palace gate, and were making ready to decapitate the two princes.

Actually, the two princes were not destined by fate to die at this time, as their names were both on the List of Creations. There were two immortals, one called Pure Essence, who lived in the Exalted Cloud Cave on Mount Taihua, and the other Grand Completion, who lived in the Peach Spring Cave on Nine Immortal Mountain. Because immortals were fated to break





开云头观看，见午门杀气连绵，愁云卷结。二仙早知其意。广成子曰：“道兄，成汤王气将终，西岐圣主已出。你看那一簇众生之内，绑缚二人，红气冲霄，命不该绝；况且俱是姜子牙帐下名将，你我道心，无处不慈悲，何不救他一救。你带他一个，我带他一个回山，久后助姜子牙成功，东进五关，也是一举两得。”赤精子曰：“此言有理，不可迟悞。”广成子忙唤黄巾力士：“与我把那二位殿下抓回本山来听用！”黄巾力士领法旨，驾起神风，只见播土扬尘，飞沙走石，地暗天昏，一声响唬，如崩开华岳，折倒泰山，吓得围宿三军，执刀士卒，监斩殷破败用衣掩面，抱头鼠窜；及至风息无声，二位殿下不知何往，踪迹全无。吓得殷破败魂不附体，异事非常。午门外众军一声呐喊。黄飞虎在大殿读诏，才商议纷纷；忽听喊声，比干正问何事呐喊，有周纪到大殿，报黄飞虎曰：“方才大风一阵，满道异香，飞沙走石，对面不能见人。只一声响唬，二位殿下不知刮往何处去了。异事非常，真是可怪！”百官闻言，喜不自胜，叹曰：“天不亡衒冤之子，地不绝成汤之脉。”百官俱有喜色。只见殷破败慌忙进宫，启奏纣王。后人诗感叹此事，诗曰：

仙风一阵异香生，播土扬尘蔽日明。力士奉文施道术；  
将军失守枉持兵。空劳铁骑追风影，漫有谗言害鹤鸣。  
堪叹废兴皆定数，周家八百已生成。

话说殷破败进寿仙宫，见纣王奏曰：“臣奉旨监斩，正候行刑旨出，忽被一阵狂风，把二殿下刮将去了，无踪无迹。异事非常，请旨定夺。”纣王闻言，沉吟不语，暗想曰：“奇哉！怪哉！”心下犹豫不决。



the commandment against killing, Heavenly Primogenitor, Grand Master of Chan Taoism, had stopped giving lectures on the Way. This left the two immortals with very little to do except travel about the sacred mountains.

One day, they were passing over Zhaoge when two red beams of light rose from the skulls of the princes and blocked their way. The two immortals poked a hole in the clouds they were riding, looked down, and saw vapors of death hanging around the palace gate. They instantly understood what was taking place.

“Brother! The Shang Dynasty’s coming to an end, and the new ruler’s already living in West Qi. Look at the two boys down there in the crowd. They’re bound up, but exude beams of light. It’s wrong for them to die now, for they’re destined to serve West Qi,” Grand Completion said. “Why not do them a favor and rescue them from death? You take one and I the other. We may bring them back to our caves, and when the time comes enjoin them to help Jiang Ziya on his expedition to the five passes. We will be killing two birds with one stone.”

“You’re right, Brother, but we must act quickly.”

Grand Completion issued an order to his yellow-scarved genii, “Bring the two princes back to our mountains without delay.”

The genii did as they were ordered. They stirred up a great gust of divine wind, raising dust and rocks in the air, blocking the sun and turning day into night. Cracks of thunder rolled in the sky, threatening to split the mountains in two. This unnatural storm frightened the executioners and General Yin Pobai so badly that they ran about wildly, covering their faces with their sleeves and protecting their heads with their arms. When the wind subsided and the thunder died down, the princes had vanished without trace. This scared Yin Pobai out of his wits, and all the soldiers guarding the palace gate began crying in wonder at what had just taken place. Huang Feihu and the other officials were listening to King Zhou’s order when they heard a clamor of voices outside.

As Bi Gan hurried out to enquire what had happened, Zhou Ji came in. “A few moments ago, a blast of wind with a strange fragrance blew in from the palace gate with a terrifying noise. It was so strong that the air was filled with sand and rocks, so that no one could see what was going on right under their own noses. It seems as if this wind has blown the two princes away! This is an extremely strange phenomenon!” he exclaimed.

Most of the officials were greatly relieved by this strange occurrence. “Heaven’s kind to the innocent, and earth won’t cut off the lifeblood of the Shang Dynasty,” they sighed.

Chief Executioner Yin Pobai rushed off to the Fairy Longevity Palace to see King Zhou. “I was overseeing the execution of the two princes when a strong gust of wind blew them away. I’ve come to report this most odd happening.”



且说丞相商容，随后赶进朝歌，只听得朝歌百姓俱言“风刮去二位殿下”，商容甚是惊异。来到午门，只见人马拥挤，甲士纷纷。商容径进午门，过九龙桥，时有比干看见商容前来，百官俱上前迎接，口称“丞相”。商容曰：“众位老殿下，列位大夫，我商容有罪，告归林下未久；孰想天子失政，杀子诛妻，荒淫无道，可惜堂堂宰府，烈烈三公，既食朝廷之禄，当为朝廷之事，为何无一言谏止天子者，何也？”黄飞虎曰：“丞相，天子深居内宫，不临大殿，有旨皆系传奉。诸臣不得面君，真是君门万里。今日殷、雷二将把殿下捉获，进都城回旨，绑缚午门，专候行刑旨意，幸上大夫赵先生扯碎旨意，百官鸣钟击鼓，请天子临殿面谏。只见内宫传旨，俟斩了殿下，明日看百官奏章。内外不通，君臣阻隔，不得面奏。正无可奈何，却得天从人愿，一阵狂风，把二位殿下刮将去了。殷破败才进宫回旨，尚未出来。老丞相略等一等，俟他出来，便知端的。”只见殷破败走出大殿，看见商容，未及言说。商容向前曰：“殿下被风刮去了，恭喜你的功高任重，不日列土分茅！”殷破败欠身打躬曰：“丞相罪杀未将了！君命点差，非为己私，丞相错怪我了。”商容对百官曰：“老夫此来，面见天子，有死无生，今日必犯颜直谏，舍身报国，庶几有日见先王于在天之灵。”叫执殿官鸣钟鼓。执殿官将钟鼓齐鸣，奉御官奏乐请驾。纣王正在宫中，因风刮去殿下，郁郁不乐。又闻奏乐临朝，钟鼓不绝，纣王大怒，只得命驾登殿，升于宝座。百官朝贺毕。天子曰：“卿等有何奏章？”商容在丹墀下，俯伏不言。纣王观见丹墀下俯伏一人，身穿缟素，又非大臣，王曰：“俯伏何



King Zhou did not speak, silently pondering, "How strange it all is."

On his way to Zhaohe, Shang Rong heard people everywhere talking about the miraculous wind that had blown the two princes away. When he arrived at the palace gate, he noticed that it was crowded with people and horses and that soldiers and guards were busily rushing about. Entering the palace and crossing the Nine Dragon Bridge, Shang Rong was met by Bi Gan and a number of other ministers, who greeted him warmly.

"Princes and ministers! How wrong I was to retire from my post and take up a life of ease in the forest!" he began. "I never expected that the king would behave so foully, killing his wife and attempting to kill his innocent sons while indulging in his favorite concubine. What a shame that you prime ministers and supreme ministers receive high salaries from the government and are of no service to the state! Why do you all keep your mouths shut?"

"Prime Minister! Don't you realize that His Majesty hides himself away in the inner palace and rarely makes an appearance at the Grand Hall? His orders are transmitted by his messengers, and we rarely have a chance to see him," Huang Feihu explained. "Today, when Generals Yin and Lei caught the two princes and brought them back to the palace, Zhao Qi grabbed and tore to pieces the royal order for execution. The ministers rang the bells and beat the drums to call His Majesty before us, yet he insisted that the princes be beheaded today and put off the audience until tomorrow. It was a great surprise to all of us when Heaven mercifully sent a strong gust of wind and blew the two poor princes away. Yin Pobai's now with the king. When he returns, you'll learn the whole story."

Minutes later, General Yin entered the hall.

"Congratulations, General!" Shang Rong greeted him. "Though the princes are lost, you've set a fine example by your meritorious acts. No doubt, you'll soon be granted vast territory and honorable titles!"

Yin Pobai knew quite well what Shang Rong meant. He bowed. "Prime Minister, I'm terribly sorry, but I couldn't possibly have refused His Majesty's orders. You're blaming me most unfairly."

Shang Rong turned to the ministers. "I've come here to remonstrate with the king, though I will surely die. I'll tell him the whole truth; for only in this way can I bear to confront the emperors of yore after my death." He ordered the guards on duty to strike the bells and beat the drums.

When he heard the loud ringing in the Grand Hall, King Zhou became very angry, yet he had little choice but to proceed to his throne. He received the cheers from his ministers. "What memorials are to be presented?" he asked.





人？”商容奏曰：“致政首相待罪商容朝见陛下。”纣王见商容，惊问曰：“卿既归林下，复往都城，不遵宣诏，擅进大殿，何自不知进退如此！”商容肘膝行至滴水檐前，泣而奏曰：“臣昔居相位，未报国恩；近闻陛下荒淫酒色，道德全无，听谗逐正，紊乱纪纲，颠倒五常，污蔑彝伦，君道有亏，祸乱已伏。臣不避万刃之诛，具疏投天，恳乞陛下容纳，真拨云见日，普天之下瞻仰圣德于无疆矣。”商容将本献上，比干接表，展于龙案。纣王观之：

“具疏臣商容奏：为朝廷失政，三纲尽绝，伦纪全乖，社稷颠危，祸乱已生，隐忧百出事：臣闻天子以道治国，以德治民，克勤克戒，毋敢怠荒，夙夜祇惧，以祀上帝，故宗庙社稷，乃得磐石之安，金汤之固。昔日陛下初嗣宝位，修仁行义，不遑宁处，罔敢倦勤，敬礼诸侯，优恤大臣，忧民劳苦，惜民货财，智服四夷，威加遐迩，雨顺风调，万民乐业，真可轶尧驾舜，乃圣乃神，不是过也。不意陛下近时信任奸邪，不修政道，荒乱朝政，大肆凶顽，近佞远贤，沉湎酒色，日事声歌。听谗臣设谋，而陷正宫，人道乖和；信妲己赐杀太子，而绝先王宗嗣，慈爱尽灭；忠谏遭其炮烙惨刑，君臣大义已无。陛下三纲污蔑，人道俱垂，罪符夏桀，有忝为君。自古无道人君，未有过此者。臣不避斧钺之诛，献逆耳之言，愿陛下速赐妲己自尽于宫闱，申皇后、太子屈死之冤，斩谗臣于藁街，谢忠臣义士惨刑酷死之苦。人民仰服，文武欢心，朝纲整饬，宫内肃清。陛下坐享太平，安康万载。臣虽死之日，犹生之年。臣临启不胜惶悚待命之至！谨疏以闻。”



Shang Rong knelt down at the foot of the Cinnabar Steps without speaking. The king saw only a man dressed in mourning kneeling before him.

“Who’s that man?” he asked again.

“The former Prime Minister Shang Rong dares to risk his life and appear before Your Majesty.”

“Since you’ve retired to the forest, how can you return to this palace again without my orders? Explain this reckless behavior!”

Shang Rong crawled forward on his knees until he was beneath the eaves and wept.

“Though I served as prime minister, I’m ashamed that I failed in my duties. Recently, I’ve heard of many improprieties committed by Your Majesty, and of your gross dereliction of duty. I don’t fear your axe and sword, and earnestly beg you to accept what I’ve written in my report. If indeed you follow this course, it would be like the brilliant light of the sun shining through a sky full of dark clouds; the entire country will admire and praise you for your boundless virtue,” said Shang Rong and handed his report to Bi Gan, who spread it out on the king’s desk.

King Zhou began to read it carefully:

I am submitting this report in response to a marked worsening in the affairs of state. With your neglect of the law and rites, the state is facing danger of destruction. When Your Majesty first ascended the throne you acted virtuously and diligently, and untiringly served the country and the people. You honored the dukes, treated your ministers generously, were economical in terms of labor and money, and won over the barbarian tribes and foreign countries with your wisdom. In this way, you were blessed by Heaven with timely wind and rain, and people went about their work happily. At that time, you could easily be compared to the ancient emperors Yao and Shun. Yet, recently you have placed your trust in traitors and dealt with state affairs in a cruel and ruthless way. You avoid good people but are intimate with the wicked; you indulge in wine and women, and have been led by the fawning courtiers to murdering your queen. You trust blindly in Daji and have ordered the death of your own sons, seeking to cut short your family line and abandon a father’s love. You have destroyed the relationship between ruler and subject by putting the loyal to death. You are a tyrant and no longer qualified to sit on the throne.

At whatever risk, I beg Your Majesty to have Daji end her own life as a means of righting the gross injustice done to the queen and the princes. I urge you to behead all those who conspired with her to requite the



纣王看完表章大怒，将本扯得粉碎，传旨命当驾官：“将这老匹夫拿出午门，用金瓜击死！”两边当驾官欲待上前，商容站立檐前，大呼曰：“谁敢拿我！我乃三世之股肱，托孤之大臣！”商容手指纣王大骂曰：“昏君！你心迷酒色，荒乱国政，独不思先王克勤克俭，聿修厥德，乃受天明命；今昏君不敬上天，弃厥先宗社，谓恶不足畏，谓敬不足为，异日身弑国亡，有辱先王。且皇后乃元配，天下国母，未闻有失德。昵比妲己，惨刑毒死，大纲已失。殿下无辜，信谗杀戮，今飘刮无踪，父子伦绝。阻忠杀谏，炮烙良臣，君道全亏。眼见祸乱将兴，灾异叠见。不久宗庙丘墟，社稷易主。可惜先王竭精揆髓遗为子孙万世之基，金汤锦绣之天下，被你这昏君断送了个干干净净的！你死于九泉之下，将何颜见你之先王哉！”纣王拍案大骂：“快拿匹夫击顶！”商容大喝左右：“吾不惜死！帝乙先君：老臣今日有负社稷，不能匡救于君，实愧见先王耳！你这昏君，天下只在数载之间，一旦失与他人！”商容望后一闪，一头撞倒龙盘石柱上面。——可怜七十五岁老臣，今日尽忠，脑浆喷出，血染衣襟，一世忠臣，半生孝子，今日之死，乃是前生造定的。后人诗吊之，诗曰：

速马朝歌见纣王，九间殿上尽忠良。骂君不怕身躯碎，叱主何愁剑下亡。炮烙岂辞心似铁，忠言直谏如意钢。今朝撞死金阶下，留得声名万古香。

话说众臣见商容撞死阶下，面面相觑。纣王犹怒声不息，吩咐奉御官：“将这老匹夫尸骸抛去都城外，毋得掩埋！”左右将商容尸骸扛去城外。不题。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



innocent death of the loyal ministers. Only in this way can you regain the respect of the people and gladden the hearts of the officials, restore the nation to order and bring peace to the palace. Only in this way will you continue to live happily and in good health for 10,000 years.

Though I deserve death for what I say, my deeds shall live on forever. I earnestly urge you to consider this and act upon it promptly.

King Zhou became so infuriated by Shang Rong's memorial that he tore it up into shreds and ordered his guards, "Take this useless fool out to the palace gate and beat him to death with the gold hammer."

As the royal guards approached Shang Rong, the old prime minister stood up. "Who dares to take me away? I've been the right-hand man of three Shang rulers, caring for the dynasty as if it were a motherless child!" he cried out, pointing a finger at King Zhou. "You damned tyrant! Your mind's so muddled with wine and sex that you've neglected state affairs. You've completely forgotten that your ancestors were blessed with this kingdom because of their diligence and virtuous conduct. In ceasing to show proper respect to Heaven and your ancestors, you'll only bring humiliation on them when the dynasty falls and you die in the near future. You've murdered your wife on the false accusations by your concubine. You've attempted to put your own sons to death. And you've put the loyal to death on the burning pillar. It's obvious that disaster will soon befall this dynasty and that it will soon be replaced by a successor. Since you're the master criminal behind all this treachery, will you have the conscience to confront your ancestors upon your demise?"

King Zhou banged on his desk with his fist and roared, "Grab that old wretch and beat him to death at once!"

"I'm not afraid to die. I'm only sorry that I've failed to transform this tyrant into a good ruler. You scourge! You won't last long on that throne of yours, that's for sure! The kingdom will be done for in a matter of years," Shang Rong shouted back, and turning around, he threw himself at a stone pillar. His skull was crushed and his brains and blood began to drip down over the collar of his robe.

The ministers exchanged horrified glances at Shang Rong's tragic death, but King Zhou was still very angry. He ordered that the corpse be tossed into an empty field beyond the capital.

If you want to know what happened after that, please read the next chapter.

## 第十回

### 姬伯燕山收雷震

诗曰：

燕山此际瑞烟笼，雷起东南助晓风。霹雳声中惊蝶梦，  
电光影里发尘蒙。三分有二开岐业，百子名全应镐酆。  
卜世卜年龙虎将，兴周灭纣建奇功。

话说众官见商容撞死，纣王大怒，俱未及言语。只见大夫赵启见商容皓首死于非命，又令抛尸，心下甚是不平，不觉竖目扬眉，忍纳不住，大叫出班：“臣赵启不敢有负先王，今日殿前以死报国，得与商丞相同游地下足矣。”指纣王骂曰：“无道昏君！绝首相，退忠良，诸侯失望；宠妲己，信谗佞，社稷摧颓。我且历数昏君的积恶：皇后遭枉酷死，自立妲己为正宫；追杀太子，使无踪迹；国无根本，不久丘墟。昏君，昏君！你不义诛妻，不慈杀子，不道治国，不德杀大臣，不明近邪佞，不正贪酒色，不智立三纲，不耻败五常。昏君！人伦道德，一字全无，枉为人君，空禅帝座，有辱成汤，死有余愧！”纣王大怒，切齿拍案大骂：“匹夫焉敢侮君骂主！”传旨：“将这逆贼速拿炮烙！”赵启曰：“吾死不足惜，止留忠孝于人间，岂似你这昏君，断送江山，污名万载！”纣王气冲牛斗。两边将炮烙烧红，把赵启剥去冠冕，将铁索裹身，只烙的筋断皮焦，骨化烟飞，九间殿烟飞人臭，众官员钳口伤情。纣王看此惨刑，其心方遂，传旨驾回。有诗为



## Chapter 10

### The Discovery of Thunderbolt

Seeing this tragedy, Zhao Qi was enraged and could not contain himself any longer. He stepped out of the ranks.

“As I’ve never forgotten the benevolence bestowed upon me by your predecessors, I’m willing to sacrifice my life for the country today and accompany the old prime minister on his way to the underworld,” he cried and then pointed at King Zhou, swearing, “You wretched tyrant! You’ve killed your prime minister, forsaken the loyal, and gravely disappointed your dukes. You trust in Daji, listen to the minions and propel the state towards ruin. It’s not necessary to enumerate all the vicious crimes you’ve committed. Your state’s like a tree without roots, and bound to topple in a short time! You’re unworthy of the throne, for you’ve brought untold shame upon the Shang Dynasty, shame that even your death won’t wipe out.”

King Zhou was furious and pounded his desk. “You damned wretch! How dare you insult me! Dispose of this treacherous villain with the burning pillar!”

“Death’s nothing to me, for I’ll leave my loyalty behind in this world. But you, you tyrant, shall lose your throne, and be condemned for 10,000 years!”

The guards had already heated the burning pillar until it glowed bright red. They took and stripped Zhao Qi of his official robes and hat, bound him to it, and in a matter of seconds his body was reduced to ashes, emitting a noxious odor that filled the Grand Hall. As the officials remained in sorrowful silence, the king felt greatly satisfied with himself for having ordered such a barbarous torture. He ordered his attendants to





证，诗曰：

炮烙当庭设，火威乘势热。四肢未抱时，一炬先摧烈。  
须臾化骨筋，顷刻成膏血。要知纣山河，随此烟烬灭。

九间殿又炮烙大臣，百官胆颤魂飞。不表。

且说纣王回宫，妲己接见。纣王携手相搀，并坐龙墩之上。王曰：“今日商容撞死，赵启炮烙，朕被这两个匹夫辱骂不堪。这样惨刑，百官俱还不怕，毕竟还再想奇法，治此倔强之辈。”妲己对曰：“容妾再思。”王曰：“美人大位已定，朝内百官也不敢谏阻，朕所虑东伯侯姜桓楚，知他女儿惨死，领兵反叛，构引诸侯，杀至朝歌；闻仲北海未回，如之奈何？”妲己曰：“妾乃女流，闻见有限，望陛下急召费仲商议，必有奇谋，可安天下。”王曰：“御妻之言有理。”即传旨：“宣费仲。”不一时，费仲至宫拜见。纣王曰：“姜后已亡，朕恐姜桓楚闻知，领兵反乱，东方恐不得安宁。卿有何策可定太平？”费仲跪而奏曰：“姜后已亡，殿下又失，商容撞死，赵启炮烙，文武各有怨言，只恐内传音信，构惹姜桓楚兵来，必生祸乱。陛下不若暗传四道旨意，把四镇大诸侯诓进都城，枭首号令，斩草除根。那八百镇诸侯知四臣已故，如蛟龙失首，猛虎无牙，断不敢猖獗。天下可保安宁。不知圣意如何？”纣王闻言大悦，“卿真乃盖世奇才，果有安邦之策，不负苏皇后之所荐。”费仲退出宫中。纣王暗发诏旨四道，点四员使命官，往四处去，诏姜桓楚、鄂崇禹、姬昌、崇侯虎。不题。

且说那一员官径往西岐前来，一路上风尘滚滚，芳草凄凄，穿州过府，旅店村庄，真是朝登紫陌，暮踏红尘。不一



prepare his coach, and he returned to the Fairy Longevity Palace. When he arrived, Daji came out to meet him. He embraced her and sat down beside her on a silk cushion embroidered with dragons.

"Today Shang Rong committed suicide by smashing his head on a pillar, and then I put Zhao Qi to death on the burning pillar. Those stupid wretches heaped no end of insult on me. The problem is that they don't seem to be intimidated by any of the existing methods of torture. Have you any better means to deal with these stubborn jackasses?" he asked Daji.

"Let me think it over," Daji replied.

"Your position as queen is assured, my beauty, as none of the ministers would dare to oppose it. My only worry is Jiang Huanchu. Once he learns about his daughter's death, he's bound to rise in rebellion and entice other nobles to join him. Grand Tutor Wen Zhong hasn't yet returned from the North Sea district. What shall we do?"

"I'm a woman and lack good political sense. I suggest that you summon Fei Zhong. He's sure to think of an ingenious plan to pacify the country."

Before long, Fei Zhong was summoned at the Fairy Longevity Palace to see King Zhou.

"As Queen Jiang's dead, I fear that Jiang Huanchu will rise in rebellion against us, and people in the area may not be able to live in peace. Have you any advice for me?" King Zhou asked him.

Fei Zhong knelt down. "As Queen Jiang's dead, the princes are missing, Shang Rong's killed himself and Zhao Qi's burned to death, the ministers are beginning to express dissatisfaction with Your Majesty. Were they to conspire with Jiang Huanchu, we would face the danger of being trapped by our enemies from within and without. I advise you to summon the four dukes secretly to Zhaoge, then take immediate action to behead all of them. This way, the 800 will be able to do nothing to oppose you. They would be like a dragon without the head, or a tiger without teeth and claws. Only then will the state be in peace," he suggested.

King Zhou was greatly pleased. "Your gifted strategy will enable all under Heaven to live in peace. Queen Daji recommended you, and you certainly haven't let me down."

After Fei Zhong had left the Fairy Longevity Palace, King Zhou issued four secret orders to summon Jiang Huanchu, E Chongyu, Ji Chang and Chong Houhu to Zhaoge.

The royal messenger to the West Grand Dukedom traveled through dust and wind and desolate grasslands. Several days later, he crossed





日，过了西岐山七十里，进了都城。使命观看城内光景：民丰物阜，市井安闲，做买做卖，和容悦色，来往行人，谦让尊卑。使命叹曰：“闻道姬伯仁德，果然风景雍和，真是唐虞之世。”使命至金庭馆驿下马。次日，西伯侯姬昌设殿，聚文武讲论治国安民之道。端门官报道：“旨意下。”姬伯带领文武，接天子旨。使命到殿，跪听开读：

“诏曰：北海猖獗，大肆凶顽，生民涂炭，文武莫知所措，朕甚忧心。内无辅弼，外欠协同，特诏尔四大诸侯至朝，共襄国政，戡定祸乱。诏书到日，尔西伯侯姬昌速赴都城，以慰朕缱怀，毋得羈迟，致朕伫望。俟功成之日，进爵加封，广开茅土。谨钦来命，朕不食言。汝其钦哉！特诏。”

姬昌拜诏毕，设筵款待天使。次日整备金银表礼，赍送天使。姬昌曰：“天使大人，只在朝歌会齐；姬昌收拾就行。”使命官谢毕姬昌去了。不题。

且言姬昌坐端明殿，对上大夫散宜生曰：“孤此去，内事托与大夫，外事托与南宫适、辛甲诸人。”宣儿伯邑考至，分付曰：“昨日天使宣召，我起一易课，此去多凶少吉，纵不致损身，该有七年大难。你在西岐，须是守法，不可改于国政，一循旧章；弟兄和睦，君臣相安，毋得任一己之私，便一身之好。凡有作为，惟老成是谋。西岐之民，无妻者给与金钱而娶；贫而愆期未嫁者，给与金银而嫁；孤寒无依者，当月给口粮，毋使欠缺。待孤七载之后灾满，自然荣归。你切不可差人来接我。此是至嘱至嘱，不可有忘！”伯邑考听父此言，跪而言曰：“父王既有七载之难，子当代往，父王不



Mount Qi and covered the last seventy *li* to the capital of the dukedom. Entering the city, he found that people appeared well-to-do and the markets were full of things for sale. People behaved courteously to each other and a general sense of peace and security prevailed. "The West Grand Duke's well known for his kindness and virtue. Now I can see with my own eyes that he rules his dukedom so that his people are as happy as in the days of the ancient emperors Yao and Shun," he sighed.

When he arrived at the local guesthouse, he dismounted from his horse and was invited in to be entertained. The next morning, when Ji Chang held court, the gate officer reported his arrival. Ji Chang led his civil and military officials out to welcome him. They then went back inside, where Ji Chang and his officials knelt respectfully while the royal messenger read the decree:

The North Sea district is undergoing a great disturbance, causing the people to suffer severely. The ministers are at a loss what to do. I summon the four dukes to Zhaoge to discuss this matter and seek better ways of suppressing the rebellions. By this decree I request the West Grand Duke to start on his journey at once. There must be no delay. Upon the successful completion of the mission, each grand duke shall be rewarded with land and titles....

After acknowledging the decree, Ji Chang entertained the royal messenger, and before he returned to Zhaoge, Ji Chang presented him with gold and silver. "I'll be on my way at once," he assured the messenger. Back in the Proper Brightness Court, he said to San Yisheng, "After my departure, you'll be in charge of all internal affairs while Nangong Kuo and Xin Jia will take care of external affairs." He then sent for his eldest son Bo Yikao. "I've been summoned to Zhaoge for an important meeting. I've divined and found that the trip is ominous. Though I may not lose my life, I'll suffer for seven years," he told his son when the latter arrived. "Thus I would like you to take my place. You must rule according to law and custom, and ensure peace among your brothers and among the ministers. You mustn't act in your own interest, and should frequently ask your elders for advice. Provide gold and silver to those who are too poor to marry, and distribute a monthly grain allowance to orphans, widows and widowers. I'll return after seven years, during which time you shall never send anyone to see me."

Bo Yikao knelt down before his father and said, "Dear Father! Let me go in your stead."



可亲去。”姬昌曰：“我儿，君子见难，岂不知回避？但天数已定，断不可逃，徒自多事。你等专心守父嘱诸言，即是大孝，何必乃尔。”姬昌退至后宫，来见母亲太姜，行礼毕。太姜曰：“我儿，为母与你演先天数，你有七年灾难。”姬昌跪下答曰：“今日天子诏至，孩儿随演先天数，内有不祥，七载罪愆，不能绝命。方才内事外事，俱托文武，国政付子伯邑考。孩儿特进宫来辞别母亲，明日欲往朝歌。”太姜曰：“我儿此去，百事斟酌，不可造次。”姬昌曰：“谨如母训。”随出内宫与元妃太姬作别。——西伯侯有四乳，二十四妃，生九十九子，长子曰伯邑考，次子姬发即武王天子也。周有三母，乃昌之母太姜，昌之元妃太姬，武王之元配太妊，故周有三母，俱是大贤圣母。姬昌次日打点往朝歌，匆匆行色，带领从人五十名。只见合朝文武：上大夫散宜生，大将军南宫适，毛公遂、周公旦、召公奭、毕公、荣公、辛甲、辛免、太颠、闾夭——四贤、八俊，与世子伯邑考、姬发，领众军民人等，至十里长亭饯别，摆九龙侍席，百官与世子把盏。姬昌曰：“今与诸卿一别，七载之后，君臣又会矣。”姬昌以手拍邑考曰：“我儿，只你弟兄和睦，孤亦无虑。”饮罢数盏，姬昌上马。父子君臣，洒泪而别。

西伯那一日上路，走七十余里，过了岐山。一路行来，夜住晓行，也非一日。那一日行至燕山，姬伯在马上曰：“叫左右看前面可有村舍茂林，可以避雨，咫尺间必有大雨来了。”跟随人正议论曰：“青天朗朗，云翳俱无，赤日流光，雨从何来？……”说话未了，只见云雾齐生。姬昌打马，叫速进茂林避雨。众人方进得林来，但见好雨：



“A wise man should keep out of harm’s way, but when something’s destined by the will of Heaven, he can do nothing to escape from it. You’ll be behaving as a filial son if you obey me,” Ji Chang said, then went to the inner palace to bid farewell to his mother Tai Jiang.

“My son,” she said, “the oracle predicts that you’ll suffer for seven years!”

Ji Chang knelt down. “After I received the royal decree, I also divined and learned that I should suffer misfortunes for seven years, though I won’t lose my life. I’ve asked my officials and my son to perform various duties during my absence. I’ll set out for Zhaoge tomorrow. I’ve come especially to bid you farewell,” he told her.

“Please be cautious in everything you do, my son,” Tai Jiang urged.

“I’ll do just as you say, Mother.”

He left his mother’s to see his wife Tai Ji. He had twenty-four concubines and ninety-nine sons. Bo Yikao was his eldest son, while Ji Fa, his second son, later became the first king of the Zhou Dynasty. There were three saintly women in the kingdom of Zhou—his mother Tai Jiang; his wife Tai Ji; and Ji Fa’s wife, Tai Ren.

The next morning, he set out for Zhaoge with fifty attendants. San Yisheng, Nangong Kuo, Xin Jia, Bo Yikao and many other civil and military officials gathered at Changting Pavilion and a farewell banquet was held.

“Though we’re parting today, we’ll meet again in seven years,” said Ji Chang to his ministers. Pointing at Bo Yikao, he went on, “I’ll have no worries if you and your brothers can live in peace.”

The ministers and Bo Yikao toasted him in farewell, and Ji Chang mounted, starting on his way. He and his attendants traveled seventy *li* the first day and got as far as Mount Qi. One day they were approaching Mount Yan when Ji Chang announced to his men, “Try to find some cottage nearby and take shelter from the coming rainstorm.”

“The sky’s clear and blue and the sun’s shining brightly. How could it possibly rain now?” his attendants murmured among themselves perplexedly.

Nevertheless, within a few minutes, the sky was filled with clouds and mist. Ji Chang ordered his men to hurry into a nearby forest to take cover.



云长东南，雾起西北。霎时间风狂生冷气，须臾内雨气可侵人。初起时微微细雨，次后来密密层层。滋禾润稼，花枝上斜挂玉玲珑；壮地肥田，草稍尖乱滴珍珠滚。高山翻下千重浪，低凹平添白练水。遍地草浇鸭顶绿，满山石洗佛头青。推塌锦江花四海，好雨，扳倒天河往下倾。

话说姬昌在茂林避雨，只见滂沱大雨，一似瓢泼盆倾，下有半个时辰。姬伯分付众人：“仔细些，雷来了！”跟随众人大家说：“老爷分付，雷来了，仔细些！”话犹未了，一声响亮，霹雳交加，震动山河大地，崩倒华岳高山。众人大惊失色，都挤紧在一处。须臾云散雨收，日色当空，众人方出得林子来。姬昌在马上浑身雨湿，叹曰：“雷过生光，将星出现。左右的，与我把将星寻来！”众人冷笑不止：“将星是谁？那里去找寻？”然而不敢违命，只得四下里寻觅。众人正寻之间，只听得古墓旁边，象一孩子哭泣声响。众人向前一看，果是个孩子。众人曰：“想此古墓，焉得有这孩儿？必然古怪，想是将星。就将这婴孩抱来献与千岁看，何如？”众人果将这孩儿抱来，递与姬伯。姬伯看见好个孩子，面如桃蕊，眼有光华。姬昌大喜，想：“我该有百子，今止有九十九子，适才之数，该得此儿，正成百子之兆，真是美事。”命左右：“将此儿送往前村权养，待孤七载回来，带往西岐；久后此子福分不浅。”姬昌纵马前行，登山过岭，赶过燕山。往前正走，不过一二十里，只见一道人，丰姿清秀，相貌稀奇，道家风味异常，宽袍大袖，那道人有飘然出世之表，向马前打稽首曰：“君侯，贫道稽首了。”姬昌慌忙下马答礼，



In no time the storm began, and in a matter of minutes, giant waves were rolling down from the mountain tops, and the paths in the valleys were transformed into broad rivers. It was as if the ocean were falling from the sky.

“Be careful! Here comes the thunder!” Ji Chang shouted.

A moment later a great thunderclap exploded, shaking the sky and earth. The party was frightened and ashen-faced, they huddled together in one place. But before long, the clouds disappeared, the rain stopped and the sun reappeared in the sky.

As they started to leave the forest, Ji Chang, soaked through, said from his saddle, “The appearance of a glowing light in the sky after the clap of thunder means that the star of a great warrior has come into existence. I would like you men to find it for me now.”

All the soldiers grinned at this strange request. “What’s this warrior star? Where shall we begin looking for it?”

However, none of them dared to disobey his orders, and so they started roaming about in search of the star. Nearing an old tomb, they heard a baby crying. And when they got closer, they discovered a little boy.

“What a strange thing! Could this be what he means by ‘the star of a warrior’?”

They brought him to Ji Chang, who examined the baby carefully and discovered that he was a handsome child indeed, with a face like a peach blossom and eyes sparking like stars.

“I really should have 100 sons, but now I’ve got only ninety-nine. If I make this child my son, I’ll have 100,” he thought and told his men to find a local family who would take and raise the boy for seven years until he claimed him.

Ji Chang got back on his horse and set off again. After crossing many steep mountains, they came to Mount Yan. They traveled another twenty *li* and came upon a Taoist coming from the opposite direction. The Taoist had an air of refinement about him, and in his large robe with broad sleeves, he looked more like an immortal than a human being. Approaching Ji Chang, the Taoist bowed low.

“Grand Duke! I offer you my respects,” he began.

Ji Chang dismounted and returned the salutation. “Forgive my lack of courtesy, but where do you live, Your Holiness? Why do you come to me?”



言曰：“不才姬昌失礼了。请问道者为何到此？那座名山？甚么洞府？今见不才有何见谕？愿闻其详。”那道人答曰：“贫道是终南山玉柱洞炼气士云中子是也。方才雨过雷鸣，将星出现。贫道不辞千里而来，寻访将星。今睹尊颜，贫道幸甚。”姬昌听罢，命左右抱过此子付与道人。道人接过看曰：“将星，你这时候才出现！”云中子曰：“贤侯，贫道今将此儿带上终南，以为徒弟；俟贤侯回日，奉与贤侯。不知贤侯意下如何？”昌曰：“道者带去不妨，只是久后相会，以何名为证？”道人曰：“雷过现身，后会时以‘雷震’为名便了。”昌曰：“不才领教，请了。”云中子抱雷震子回终南而去。——若要相会，七年后姬伯有难，雷震子下山重会。此是后话，表过不题。

且说姬昌一路无词，进五关，过渑池县，渡黄河，过孟津，进朝歌，来至金庭馆驿。馆驿中先到了三路诸侯：东伯侯姜桓楚、南伯侯鄂崇禹、北伯侯崇侯虎。三位诸侯在驿中饮酒，左右来报：“姬伯侯到了。”三位迎接。姜桓楚曰：“姬贤伯为何来迟？”昌曰：“因路远羁縻，故此来迟，得罪了。”四位行礼已毕，复添一席，传杯欢饮。酒行数巡，姬昌问曰：“三位贤伯，天子何事紧急，诏我四臣到此？我想有什么大事情，都城内有武成王黄飞虎，是天子栋梁，治国有方；亚相比干，能调和鼎鼐，治民有法，有干何事，宣诏我等。”四人饮酒半酣，只见南伯侯鄂崇禹平时知道崇侯虎会夤缘钻刺，结党费仲、尤浑，蠹惑圣聪，广施土木，劳民伤财，那肯为国为民，只知贿赂于己，此时酒已多了，偶然想起从前事来，鄂崇禹乃曰：“姜贤伯，姬贤伯，不才有一言奉



"I'm Master of the Clouds. I reside on Mount Zhongnan. A few minutes ago, the star of a warrior appeared in the sky in a thunderclap, and I've traveled a long way to look for it."

Hearing this, Ji Chang ordered his men to give the boy to Master of the Clouds.

"You're the star of a warrior! Why did you make your appearance so late?" the Taoist addressed the child, then turning to Ji Chang, he said, "Grand Duke! Let me take this baby with me to Mount Zhongnan. He can be one of my disciples. I'll give him back to you when you return from Zhaoge."

"As you like, sir. But what's his name, and what shall I call him when I meet him again in the future?"

"His name'll be 'Thunderbolt,' since he made his appearance in a great thunderclap," Master of the Clouds suggested.

"That's a very good idea," Ji Chang replied politely. And without further ceremony, they parted and went their own ways.

Continuing on his journey, Ji Chang traversed the five passes, crossed the Yellow River and finally entered Zhaoge. At the Golden Reception House, Ji Chang was entertained in the company of Jiang Huanchu, E Chongyu and Chong Houhu.

"Dukes! What urgent matter could have so upset His Majesty that he had to summon us all at once? General Huang Feihu and Bi Gan are here to aid him with state affairs. What help can we be?" Ji Chang asked, after a few rounds of wine.

Deep in his cups, E Chongyu's tongue was loosened. "We're the leaders of the nobles, but you do nothing but indulge in vice," he began to express his disapproval of Chong Houhu. "You exploit the people for your own benefit and curry favor with the likes of Fei Zhong and You Hun. You work people to death building lavish mansions and exempt from labor all who are willing to bribe you. Your heart's as greedy as a wolf's and





启崇贤伯。”崇侯虎笑容答曰：“贤伯有甚事见教？不才敢不领命？”鄂崇禹曰：“天下诸侯首领是我等四人，闻贤伯过恶多端，全无大臣体面，剥民利己，专与费仲、尤浑往来。督功监造摘星楼，闻得你三丁抽二，有钱者买闲在家，无钱者重役苦累，你受私爱财，苦杀万民，自专杀伐，狐假虎威，行似豺狼，心如饿虎，朝歌城内军民人等，不敢正视，千门切齿，万户衔冤。贤伯，常言道得好：‘祸由恶作，福自德生。’从此改过，切不可为！”就把崇侯虎说得满目烟生，口内火出，大叫道：“鄂崇禹！你出言狂妄。我和你俱是一样大臣，你为何席前这等凌虐我！你有何能，敢当面以诬言污蔑我！”——看官，崇侯虎倚费仲、尤浑内里有人，就酒席上要与鄂崇禹相争起来。只见姬昌指侯虎曰：“崇贤伯，鄂贤伯劝你俱是好言，你怎这等横暴！难道我等在此，你好毁打鄂贤伯！若鄂贤伯这番言语，也不过是爱公忠告之道，若有此事，痛加改过；若无此事，更自加勉；则鄂伯之言句句良言，语语金石。今公不知自责，反怪直谏，非礼也。”崇侯虎听姬昌之言，不敢动手。不提防被鄂崇禹一壶酒，劈面打来，正打侯虎脸上。侯虎探身来抓鄂崇禹，又被姜桓楚架开，大喝曰：“大臣厮打，体面何存！崇贤伯，夜深了，你睡罢。”侯虎忍气吞声，自去睡了。有诗曰：

馆舍传杯论短长，奸臣设计害忠良。刀兵自此纷纷起，播乱朝歌万姓殃。

且言三位诸侯，久不曾会，重整一席，三人共饮。将至二鼓时分，内中有一驿卒，见三位大臣饮酒，点头叹曰：“千岁，千岁！你们今夜传杯欢会饮，只怕明日鲜红染市曹！”更



as fierce as a tiger's. It's likely that you're hated by every person in the capital. There's an old proverb, saying, 'Calamity arises from accumulated vices; blessings arise from acts of benevolence.' You'd better repent at once and change your ways."

"E Chongyu! How dare you insult me like this," Chong Houhu was enraged. "We're all ministers of the nation, but why do you slander me before our colleagues?"

He rose to strike at E Chongyu.

"Duke E's only trying to help you mend your ways. You really shouldn't become so annoyed," Ji Chang stopped him.

At this, Chong Houhu could not very well raise his fists, but E Chongyu had picked up a wine pot and struck Chong Houhu in the face. Chong leaped again out of his seat to strike back, but he was stopped by Jiang Huanchu.

"How disgraceful it is for us dukes to be fighting like this. Duke Chong! It's already quite late. You'd better retire for the night."

Chong Houhu suppressed his anger and returned to his room, while the other three continued with their drinks. At the second watch, an attendant who had been watching them sighed and muttered to himself, "You're drinking so joyfully tonight, but little do you know that your blood will stain the marketplace tomorrow."

In the silence of the night, Ji Chang heard him.

"Whoever said that must come forward!" he demanded.

All the attendants knelt down before the dukes.

"Who just said that our blood will stain the market tomorrow?" Ji Chang asked again.



深夜静，人言甚是明白。姬昌明明听见这样言语，便问：“什么人说话？叫过来。”左右侍酒人等，俱在两傍，只得俱过来，齐齐跪倒。姬伯问曰：“方才谁言‘今夜传杯欢会饮，明日鲜红染市曹’？”众人答曰：“不曾说此言语。”只见姜、鄂二侯也不曾听见。姬伯曰：“句句分明，怎言不曾说？”叫家将进来，“拿出去，都斩了！”驿卒听得，谁肯将生替死！只得挤出这人。众人齐叫：“千岁爷，不干小人事，是姚福亲口说出。”姬伯听罢，叫：“住了。”众人起去。唤姚福问曰：“你为何出此言语？实说有赏，假说有罪。”姚福道：“‘是非只为多开口’，千岁爷在上，这一件事是机密事。小的是使命官家下的人，因姜皇后屈死西宫，二殿下大风刮去，天子信姐己娘娘暗传圣旨，宣四位大臣明日早朝，不分皂白，一概斩首。今夜小人不忍，不觉说出此言。”姜桓楚听罢，忙问曰：“姜娘娘为何屈死西宫？”姚福话已露了，收不住言语，只得从头诉说：“纣王无道，杀子诛妻，自立姐己为正宫……”细细诉说一遍。姜皇后乃桓楚之女，女死，心下如何不痛！身似刀碎，意如油煎，大叫一声，跌倒在地。姬昌命人扶起。桓楚痛哭曰：“我儿剜目，炮烙双手，自古及今，那有此事！”姬伯劝曰：“皇后受屈，殿下无踪，人死不能复生。今夜我等各具奏章，明早见君，犯颜力谏，必分清白，以正人伦。”桓楚哭而言曰：“姜门不幸，怎敢动劳列位贤伯



"We didn't hear anyone say that, Grand Duke," they answered in chorus.

"We didn't hear it either," said the two other dukes.

"I heard every word clearly, but how can you say that no one said it?" Ji Chang demanded, then he ordered the guards, "Take them all out of here and cut their heads off!"

None of the attendants was willing to give up his own life to protect the man. They pushed him out of the line. "Grand Dukes! It has nothing to do with us. Yao Fu's the culprit you're looking for."

"You may all return to your places," Ji Chang ordered, and then he questioned Yao Fu. "Why did you speak like that? If you tell us the truth, you'll be well rewarded; but if you don't, you'll be severely punished."

"An open mouth's the worst source of trouble," Yao Fu sighed, and continued. "What I was talking about is a matter of the greatest secrecy, but I learned about it because I serve in the family of a royal messenger. After the death of Queen Jiang and the disappearance of the princes, His Majesty took Daji's advice and summoned you here with the end of putting you all to death. When His Majesty holds court tomorrow morning, you'll all have your heads cut off. I couldn't bear imagining such a tragedy. I spoke what I felt as I watched you drinking happily."

"Tell me, how did Queen Jiang die?" Jiang Huanchu asked anxiously.

Yao Fu had already divulged the secret, so he decided to tell Jiang Huanchu the whole story from beginning to end. "The wicked king tortured Queen Jiang to death and then was about to murder his own sons when a great wind blew them away from the palace. Now he's even set Daji on the throne as his queen!"

Jiang Huanchu was heartbroken when he heard the story of his daughter's death and collapsed to the floor in a faint.

Ji Chang's men helped Jiang Huanchu up, and when he regained consciousness, he wept bitterly. "Oh! My dear daughter! How horribly you must have suffered when your eye was gouged out and your hands burnt to ashes. Never before has such cruel torture been applied."

"Since the queen's already dead, and the princes are missing, all we can do is present a petition to His Majesty tomorrow morning, claiming that a great injustice was done. Let's work on the petition tonight," Ji Chang comforted him.

"The Jiang family's ill-fated. Why should I trouble you to petition the king on my behalf? I'll go alone to see him and clear up this injustice with him directly," Jiang Huanchu said, still in tears.



上言。我姜桓楚独自面君，辩明冤枉。”姬昌曰：“贤伯另是一本，我三人各具本章。”姜桓楚雨泪千行，一夜修本。不题。

且说奸臣费仲知道四大臣在馆驿住，奸臣费仲暗进偏殿见纣王，具言四路诸侯俱到了。纣王大喜。——“明日升殿，四侯必有奏章，上言阻谏。臣启陛下，明日但四侯上本，陛下不必看本，不分皂白，传旨拿出午门枭首，此为上策。”王曰：“卿言甚善。”费仲辞王归宅，一宿晚景已过。次日，早朝升殿，聚积两班文武。午门官启驾：“四镇诸侯候旨。”王曰：“宣来。”只见四侯伯听诏，即至殿前。东伯侯姜桓楚等，高擎牙笏，进礼称“臣”毕。姜桓楚将本章呈上，亚相比干接本。纣王曰：“姜桓楚，你知罪么？”桓楚奏曰：“臣镇东鲁，肃严边庭，奉法守公，自尽臣节，有何罪可知。陛下听谗宠色，不念元配，痛加惨刑，诛子灭伦，自绝宗嗣。信妖妃，阴谋忌妒；听佞臣，炮烙忠良。臣既受先王重恩，今睹天颜，不避斧钺，直言冒奏，实君负微臣，臣不负于君。望乞见怜，辩明冤枉。生者幸甚，死者幸甚！”纣王大怒，骂曰：“老逆贼！命女弑君，忍心篡位，罪恶如山，今反饰辞强辩，希图漏网。”命武士：“拿出午门，碎醢其尸，以正国法！”金瓜武士将姜桓楚剥去冠冕，绳缠索绑。姜桓楚骂不绝口。不由分说，推出午门。只见西伯侯姬昌、南伯侯鄂崇禹、北伯侯崇侯虎出班称“臣”，“陛下，臣等俱有本章。姜桓楚真心为国，并无谋篡情由，望乞详察。”纣王安心要杀四镇诸侯，将姬昌等本章放于龙案之上。不知姬昌等性命如何，且听下回分解。



“You may petition as you wish. We three will submit our own reports in any case,” Ji Chang replied.

Tears continued to roll down Jiang Huanchu’s cheeks as they returned to their own rooms.

Fei Zhong was quick to announce the arrival of the four dukes to King Zhou, who was delighted at the news.

“When you ascend your throne tomorrow morning, the dukes will inevitably present their reports, but you needn’t read any of them. Just order the royal guards to tie them up, take them out and cut their heads off at the palace gate,” Fei Zhong suggested.

The night passed quietly. The next morning, King Zhou arrived in the Grand Hall. After the officials had lined up before him, the gate officer reported, “The four grand dukes are awaiting your orders at the palace gate.”

“Send them in to see me.”

Minutes later, the dukes walked in and knelt down before him.

When Jiang Huanchu handed in his written report, King Zhou shouted at him, “Are you aware of the crimes you’ve committed against the royal government?”

“I protect East Lu with my strong army and deal with everything according to the law. I’ve always been loyal to the state and have never committed a single error,” Jiang Huanchu promptly replied. “You, on the other hand, wallow in flattery and have no shame for your evil deeds. You’ve killed the queen and attempted to slay the princes to sever your own family line. You listen only to your concubine and minions and put the loyal to death. I fear neither axe nor sword, for I speak only for truth and justice.”

King Zhou exploded in a great rage. “You treacherous old wretch! You and your daughter planned to murder me in an attempt to usurp the crown. This is a crime as great as a mountain. How dare you argue such nonsense in hope of slipping through the net of the law,” he swore, and ordered his guards, “Take him out and cut him into 1,000 tiny pieces!”

As the royal guards began to remove Jiang Huanchu’s robes and hat to take him out to the palace gate, the three other dukes rushed in, protesting Jiang’s innocence. Determined to kill all four of them, King Zhou took their petitions and placed them on the desk before him.

If you want to learn the fate of the dukes, you must read the next chapter.

## 第十一回

### 羑里城囚西伯侯

诗曰：

君虐臣奸国事非，如何信口泄天机。若非丹陛忠心谏，已见薰街血色飞。羑里七年沾化雨，伏羲八卦阐精微。从来世运归明主，漫道岐山日正辉。

话说西伯侯姬昌见天子不看姜桓楚的本，竟平白将桓楚拿出午门，碎醢其尸，心上大惊，知天子甚是无道。三人俯伏称“臣”，奏曰：“君乃臣之元首，臣乃君之股肱。”陛下不看臣等本章，即杀大臣，是谓虐臣。文武如何肯服，君臣之首绝矣。乞陛下垂听。”亚相比干将姬昌等本展开。纣王只得看本：

“具疏臣鄂崇禹、姬昌、崇侯虎等奏：为正国正法，退佞除奸，洗明沉冤，以匡不替，复立三纲，内剿狐媚事：臣等闻圣王治天下，务勤实政，不事台榭陂池；亲贤远奸，不驰务于游畋，不沉湎于酒，淫荒于色；惟敬修天命，所以天府三事允洽，以故尧舜不下阶，垂拱而天下太平，万民乐业。今陛下承嗣大统以来，未闻美政，日事怠荒，信谗远贤，沉湎酒色。姜后贤而有礼，并无失德，竟遭惨刑；妲己秽污宫中，反宠以重位。屈斩太史，有失司天之内监；轻醢大臣，而废国家之股肱；造炮烙，阻忠谏之口；听谗言，杀子无慈。臣等愿



## Chapter 11

### The Ill-Fortunes of the Grand Dukes

Seeing how King Zhou put Jiang Huanchu's report aside without reading it and how he harshly ordered his death, Ji Chang and two other dukes were shocked. They immediately knelt down before him.

"The king's honored as the head while the ministers are his limbs. To order so rashly the death of a duke without even reading his memorial is cruelty towards a subject, and no one in this court would approve of it. Such an act would disrupt the proper relationship between the king and his ministers. We beg Your Majesty to reconsider your decision," they pleaded.

As they spoke, Bi Gan spread their petition open on the king's desk, and he had no choice but to read it:

Your Grand Dukes E Chongyu, Ji Chang and Chong Houhu present this petition for the purpose of restoring the country to order by law, eliminating flatterers, rectifying injustices, reestablishing the proper relationships and ridding the palace of hidden conspirators.

We understand that the ancient sage emperors ruled with diligence and good administration and took no interest in building gorgeous palaces or large gardens. They worked closely with the able and virtuous but distanced themselves from flatterers. They did not preoccupy themselves with the pleasure of hunting, nor did they indulge in wine and women. They respected only the will of Heaven and effortlessly maintained order throughout the nation. All the people enjoyed their work and were content in their daily life. But in contrast, Your Majesty has achieved nothing praiseworthy since coming onto the throne. You neglect state affairs, trust flatterers, distance yourself from the loyal, and indulge yourself in wine and women. Queen Jiang was virtuous and observed the rites, yet she was cruelly tortured and met a tragic death, while Daji, obscene and lewd, has been favored with the position of queen. The Grand Tutor was unjustly beheaded and loyal ministers were silenced with the burning pillar. You even ordered the death of your own sons, indicating that no fatherly love remains in your heart. We earnestly beseech that you take immediate action to demote Fei Zhong and You Hun and behead Daji, so that the whole palace may be cleansed







陛下贬费仲、尤浑，惟君子是亲；斩妲己整肃宫闱，庶几天心可回，天下可安。不然，臣等不知所终矣。臣等不避斧钺，冒死上言，恳乞天颜，纳臣直谏，速赐施行。天下幸甚，万民幸甚！臣不胜战栗待命之至！谨具疏以闻。”

纣王看罢大怒，扯碎表章，拍案大呼：“将此等逆臣枭首回旨！”武士一齐动手，把三位大臣绑出午门。纣王命鲁雄监斩，速发行刑旨。只见右班中有中谏大夫费仲、尤浑出班，俯伏奏曰：“臣有短章，冒渎天听。”王曰：“二卿有何奏章？”——“臣启陛下：四臣有罪，触犯天颜，罪在不赦；但姜桓楚有弑君之恶，鄂崇禹有叱主之愆，姬昌利口侮君，崇侯虎随众诬谤。据臣公议：崇侯虎素怀忠直，出力报国，造摘星楼，沥胆披肝，起寿仙宫，夙夜尽瘁，曾竭力公家，分毫无过。崇侯虎不过随声附和，实非本心；若是不分皂白，玉石俱焚，是有功而与无功同也，人心未必肯服。愿陛下赦侯虎毫末之生，以后将功赎今日之罪。”纣王见费、尤二臣谏赦崇侯虎，盖为费、尤二人，乃纣王之宠臣，言听计从，无语不入。王曰：“据二卿之言，昔崇侯虎既有功于社稷，朕当不负前劳。”叫奉御官传旨：“特赦崇侯虎。”二人谢恩归班。旨意传出：“单赦崇侯虎。”殿东头恼了武成王黄飞虎，执笏出班，有亚相比干并微子、箕子、微子启、微子衍、伯夷、叔齐七人同出班俯伏。比干奏曰：“臣启陛下：大臣者乃天子之股肱。姜桓楚威镇东鲁，数有战功，若言弑君，一无可证，安得加以极刑；况姬昌忠心不二，为国为民，实邦家之福臣；道合天地，德配阴阳，仁结诸侯，义施



and the whole nation returned to peace and order. Not evading death, your subjects venture to speak frankly, expecting your generous acceptance and swift action....

As King Zhou read, he exploded with fury. He tore up the petition, and pounded his desk. "Take those traitors away and cut their heads off at once," he shouted.

As the guards bound up the three dukes and pushed them out of the palace, Fei Zhong and You Hun left the ranks of ministers and knelt before King Zhou. "At the risk of offending Your Majesty we would like to reveal the true situation: The four dukes have committed an unpardonable crime by gravely offending Your Majesty and should be punished by death. Nevertheless, they're guilty in different degrees. Jiang Huanchu's committed the capital crime of attempting to murder his king; E Chongyu's guilty of harshly rebuking his liege; Ji Chang's used his skilful tongue to insult you, while Chong Houhu's committed the error of foolishly following the others. As we see it, Chong Houhu's loyal at heart. He spent all his energy and time in constructing the Star Picking Mansion and spared no effort in building the Fairy Longevity Palace. He's faultless and innocent. To fail to differentiate between worthy men and criminals is like burning jade with stone or confusing black with white. This is unjust and nobody will approve of it. For these reasons, we beg that Your Majesty spare Chong Houhu so that he can make amends for today's error with outstanding service in the future!"

As Fei Zhong and You Hun were both favorites of the king, he granted their request, saying, "I haven't forgotten Chong Houhu's outstanding service in the past. He's granted a special pardon."

Fei Zhong and You Hun thanked the king and returned to their positions. But the fact that only Chong Houhu would be pardoned greatly annoyed Huang Feihu and the other princes. They all left their positions and knelt before the king.

"We're of the opinion that the dukes and ministers are like the limbs of Your Majesty," Bi Gan spoke on their behalf. "Jiang Huanchu enjoys great prestige, and is highly respected in East Lu, where he's fought many victorious battles. There's no evidence to prove that he plotted to murder Your Majesty. How can he be given the death sentence! Ji Chang's loyal, working solely for the nation and people. His virtues please Heaven and earth and his benevolence unites all the dukes. He treats his civil and military officials with righteousness, and rules his people in accordance with the rites. Rebels are won over by his wisdom and he enjoys the trust of both the army and people. His administration's strict and orderly. In his



文武，礼治邦家，智服反叛，信达军民，纪纲肃清，政事严整，臣贤君正，子孝父慈，兄友弟恭，君臣一心，不肆干戈，不行杀伐，行人让路，夜不闭户，路不拾遗，四方瞻仰，称为西方圣人；鄂崇禹身任一方重寄，日夜勤劳王家，使一方无警；皆是有功社稷之臣。乞陛下一并怜而赦之，群臣不胜感激之至！”王曰：“姜桓楚谋逆，鄂崇禹、姬昌簧口鼓惑，妄言诋君，俱罪在不赦，诸臣安得妄保！”黄飞虎奏曰：“姜桓楚、鄂崇禹皆名重大臣，素无过举；姬昌乃良心君子，善演先天之数，皆国家梁栋之才。今一旦无罪而死，何以服天下臣民之心！况三路诸侯俱带甲数十万，精兵猛将，不谓无人；倘其臣民知其君死非其罪，又何忍其君遭此无辜，倘或机心一骋，恐兵戈扰攘，四方黎庶倒悬。况闻太师远征北海，今又内起祸胎，国祚何安！愿陛下怜而赦之。国家幸甚！”纣王闻奏，又见七王力谏，乃曰：“姬昌，朕亦素闻忠良，但不该随声附和，本宜重处；姑看诸卿所奏赦免，但恐他日归国有变，卿等不得辞其责矣。姜桓楚、鄂崇禹谋逆不赦，速正典刑！诸卿再毋得渎奏。”旨意传出：“赦免姬昌。”天子命奉御官：“速催行刑，将姜桓楚、鄂崇禹以正国法。”只见左班中有上大夫胶鬲、杨任等六位大臣进礼称“臣”：“臣有奏章，可安天下。”纣王曰：“卿等又有何奏章？”杨任奏曰：“四臣有罪，天赦姬昌，乃七王为国为贤者也。且姜桓楚、鄂崇禹皆称首之臣。桓楚任重功高，素无失德，谋逆无证，岂得妄坐。崇禹性刚不屈，直谏圣聪，无虚无谬。臣闻君明则臣直。直谏君过者，忠臣也，词谀逢君者，佞臣也。臣等目观国事艰难，不得不繁言渎奏。愿陛下



domains the ruler is kind and officials are loyal; sons are filial and fathers full of paternal love; Brothers are affectionate and respectful. There are neither quarrels nor wars in the dukedom. People are courteous and honest, and no door need be closed at night. He's praised by all as the West Sage. E Chongyu guards against the invasions that occur from time to time and serves the country tirelessly. They're all mainstays of the state. We beg that Your Majesty show pity and forgive them. For this your ministers would be deeply grateful!"

"Jiang Huanchu has committed treason, while E Chongyu and Ji Chang insulted me with a lot of nonsense. They're all unpardonable. How can you speak so rashly and seek to protect them?" King Zhou rejected the plea completely.

"Both Jiang Huanchu and E Chongyu are renowned dukes and have committed no errors. Ji Chang's a kind gentleman, skilled at divining. They're all cornerstones of the state. If you execute these three innocent men in one day, how can the people and officials approve of your action?" Huang Feihu protested. "Moreover, they each have strong armies and brave generals. War would be on if the dukes are slaughtered for crimes of which they're innocent. Civil war would bring disasters to the people and endanger the dynasty. In addition, Grand Tutor Wen Zhong's still tied down in the North Sea district, and there would be no peace for the nation. We beg that you pardon them for the nation's sake."

Observing the vehemence of the princes, King Zhou was obliged to yield a little. "I know well that Ji Chang's loyal to me; nevertheless, he shouldn't have echoed the insults. He should be dealt with severely, but in response to your plea I'll pardon him. Should he stage an uprising against me after returning to his dukedom, however, you'll be held responsible. Notwithstanding, I can't extend the pardon to Jiang Huanchu and E Chongyu. They must be executed at once."

At this, the seven supreme ministers headed by Yang Ren and Jiao Ge stepped out from the left line and knelt before the king. "Your Majesty, for the sake of national peace we wish to offer our advice."

"What is it?"

"On the petition of the seven princes you've generously forgiven Ji Chang. But as leaders of marquises, both Jiang Huanchu and E Chongyu bear heavy responsibilities and have rendered outstanding services. Their frank advice only shows that they're loyal, seeking to save the nation from disaster. We beg that you take pity on these gentlemen, and with a magnanimity that'll be eulogized by all, set them free and allow them to return to their dukedoms," Yang Ren said.



怜二臣无辜，赦还本国，清平各地，使君臣喜乐于尧天，万姓讴歌于化日，臣民念陛下宽洪大度，纳谏如流，始终不负臣子为国为民之本心耳。臣等不胜感激之至！”王怒曰：“乱臣造逆，恶党簧舌，桓楚弑君，醢尸不足以尽其辜。崇禹谤君，泉首正当其罪。众卿强谏，朋比欺君，污蔑法纪。如再阻言者，即与二逆臣同罪！”随传旨：“速正典刑！”杨任等见天子怒色，莫敢谁何。也是合该二臣命绝，旨意出，鄂崇禹泉首，姜桓楚将巨钉钉其手足，乱刀碎剝，名曰醢尸。监斩官鲁雄回旨，纣王驾回宫阙。姬昌拜谢七位殿下，泣而诉曰：“姜桓楚无辜惨死，鄂崇禹忠谏丧身，东南两地，自此无宁日矣！”众人俱各惨然泪下曰：“且将二侯收尸，埋葬浅土，以俟事定，再作区处。”有诗为证，诗曰：

忠告徒劳谏净名，逆鳞难犯莫轻撻。醢尸桓楚身遭惨；  
服甸崇禹命已倾。两国君臣空望眼；七年羸里屈孤贞。  
上天有意倾人国，致使纷纷祸乱生。

且不题二侯家将星夜逃回，报与二侯之子去了。且说纣王次日升显庆殿，有亚相比干具奏，收二臣之尸，放姬昌归国。天子准奏。比干领旨出朝。傍有费仲谏曰：“姬昌外若忠诚，内怀奸诈，以利口而惑众臣。面是心非，终非良善。恐放姬昌归国，反构东鲁姜文焕、南都鄂顺兴兵扰乱天下，军有持戈之苦，将有披甲之艰，百姓惊慌，都城扰攘，诚所谓纵龙入海，放虎归山，必生后悔。”王曰：“诏赦已出，众臣皆知，岂有出乎反乎之理。”费仲奏曰：“臣有一计，可除姬昌。”王曰：“计将何出？”费仲对曰：“既赦姬昌，必拜阙方归故土，百官也要与姬昌饯行。臣去探其虚实，若昌果有真



“They’re traitors and have ganged together and spread vicious lies about me. Even cutting Jiang Huanchu to pieces isn’t punishment enough for his attempted murder! It’s only proper that E Chongyu be decapitated for slandering me. Your petition shows your sympathy with them and is an insult to the king and a violation of law. You shall be dealt the same punishment if you insist on helping them,” King Zhou roared furiously and ordered, “Execute them at once!”

When the order arrived, one executioner beheaded E Chongyu while several others nailed Jiang Huanchu’s hands and feet to a big board and sliced his flesh off in a thousand pieces. When news came that the execution was over, King Zhou returned to the Fairy Longevity Palace.

Ji Chang thanked the seven princes who had saved his life. “Though innocent, Jiang Huanchu met a tragic death, while E Chongyu paid with his life for his admonitions. Henceforth, there can be no peace in the south and east of the kingdom,” he said, with tears in his eyes.

Everyone wept. They ordered the palace guards to bury the two corpses in shallow earth, so that they could be exhumed for full funeral rites sometime in the future. The attendants of the two dukes fled home under the cover of night, and reported the misfortunes to the dukes’ sons.

When King Zhou appeared at the Celebration Court the next morning, Bi Gan requested that the corpses be buried and Ji Chang be sent back to his dukedom. The king promptly approved all that Bi Gan proposed. But as soon as Bi Gan left the court, Fei Zhong, who was standing beside the king, came forward.

“Ji Chang appears loyal and honest, but he’s really treacherous, and confuses the ministers with his eloquent tongue. He says one thing and thinks another, and is unreliable. If you let him return to his dukedom he’s bound to join forces with Jiang Wenhuan in the east and E Shun in the south. They would throw the whole country into chaos, and we would have to send our soldiers and generals to war. The result would be that the people couldn’t live in peace and the capital would be endangered. If we send the dragon back to the sea and the tiger back to the mountain, we’re bound to regret it.”

“The pardon’s already been issued, and everybody knows about it. How can I go back on my word now?” King Zhou hesitated.

“I’ve got a plan to get rid of Ji Chang.”

“What is it?”

“He’s bound to attend a farewell feast before returning to his dukedom. I’ll be there to find out where he truly stands. If he’s really loyal, you may forgive him and let him go; otherwise, you may have him executed to nip any future disaster in the bud,” Fei Zhong replied.



心为国，陛下赦之；若有欺诳，即斩昌首以除后患。”王曰：“卿言是也。”

且说比干出朝，径至馆驿来看姬伯。左右通报。姬昌出门迎接，叙礼坐下。比干曰：“不才今日便殿见驾奏王，为收二侯之尸，释君侯归国。”姬昌拜谢曰：“老殿下厚德，姬昌何日能报再造之恩！”比干复前执手低言曰：“国内已无纲纪，今无故而杀大臣，皆非吉兆。贤侯明日拜阙，急宜早行，迟则恐奸佞忌刻，又生他变。至嘱，至嘱！”姬昌欠身谢曰：“丞相之言，真为金石。盛德岂敢有忘！”次日早临午门，望阙拜辞谢恩，姬昌随带家将，竟出西门，来到十里长亭。百官钦敬，武成王黄飞虎、微子、箕子、比干等俱在此伺候多时。姬昌下马。黄飞虎与微子慰劳曰：“今日贤侯归国，不才等具有水酒一杯，一来为君侯荣饯，尚有一言奉渎。”昌曰：“愿闻。”微子曰：“虽然天子有负贤侯，望乞念先君之德，不可有失臣节，妄生异端，则不才辈幸甚，万民幸甚！”昌顿首谢曰：“感天子赦罪之恩，蒙列位再生之德，昌虽没齿，不能报天子之德，岂敢有他念哉。”百官执杯把盏。姬伯量大，有百杯之饮，正所谓“知己到来言不尽”，彼此更觉绸缪，一时便不能舍。正欢饮之间，只见费仲、尤浑乘马而来，自具酒席，也来与姬伯饯别。百官一见费、尤二人至，便有几分不悦，个个抽身。姬昌谢曰：“二位大人，昌有何能，荷蒙远饯！”费仲曰：“闻贤侯荣归，卑职特来饯别，有事来迟，望乞恕罪。”姬昌乃仁德君子，待人心实，那有虚意。一见二人殷勤，便自喜悦。然百官畏此二人，俱先散了，只他三人把盏。酒过数巡，费、尤二人曰：“取大杯



“Your idea’s excellent.”

Bi Gan left the palace and made his way directly to the guesthouse where Ji Chang was staying. Ji Chang welcomed him at the gate, and when greetings were over each took a seat inside. “This morning I petitioned His Majesty to bury the corpses of the dukes and allow you to return to your dukedom. Both requests were granted,” Bi Gan told him.

Ji Chang bowed and thanked him. “Your virtue’s profound. I hope I may have the opportunity some day to repay you for saving my life,” Ji Chang said gratefully.

Bi Gan moved forward, took Ji Chang’s hand and spoke in a low voice, “We’ve neither law nor discipline in the country at present. It isn’t a good omen that the dukes were put to death unjustly. My worthy duke, you ought to leave here with all speed. You should bid farewell at the palace and quit the place early tomorrow morning. Any delay might mean a change for the worse, as the minions hate you very much. Bear this in mind.”

“I’m deeply grateful for your invaluable advice, Prime Minister, and will never forget your abundant virtue,” Ji Chang answered with emotion.

Early the next morning, Ji Chang presented himself at the palace gate, knelt down and kowtowed in farewell to the king. Then he left the city by the west gate and rode to the Changting Pavilion, about ten *li* beyond the capital. Huang Feihu, Bi Gan, Wei Zi, Ji Zi and the other ministers had been waiting there for him. As soon as Ji Chang dismounted, Huang Feihu and Wei Zi moved up to greet him. “As you’re going home today, we’ve prepared wine to bid you farewell. However, we’ve got to make an appeal and hope you’ll give it kind consideration.”

“I’ll only be delighted to listen,” Ji Chang answered politely.

“Though His Majesty’s so ungrateful, you should recall the virtues of the deceased emperors and continue to serve him as a good minister. Take no harsh action that would throw the country into a turmoil,” Wei Zi advised solemnly.

“I cannot forget the grace His Majesty showed in pardoning me, and I’m deeply grateful for your kindness in saving my life. I’ve got no ambition to do anything to upset the country,” he said and bowed.

All the ministers raised their glasses to wish Ji Chang good luck on his journey. Ji Chang could drink an extraordinary quantity of wine, and the party went on for a long while, as they were unwilling to part. They were thus enjoying themselves when Fei Zhong and You Hun rode over with food and wine to bid farewell to Ji Chang. At the sight of them, the ministers became displeased and instantly dispersed.

“Your Honors, I really don’t deserve the favor of your coming far,” Ji Chang said.

“As you’re returning to your dukedom today, we’ve come here to wish you a pleasant journey. Please forgive us for being a little late,” Fei Zhong said.





来。”二人满斟一杯，奉与姬伯。姬伯接酒，欠身谢曰：“多承大德，何日衔环！”一饮而尽。姬伯量大，不觉连饮数杯。费仲曰：“请问贤侯，仲常闻贤侯能演先天数，其应果否无差？”姬昌答曰：“阴阳之理，自有定数，岂得无准。但人能反此以作，善趋避之，亦能逃越。”仲复问曰：“若当今天子所为皆错乱，不识将来究竟可预闻乎？”此时姬伯酒已半酣，却忘记此二人来意，一听得问天子休咎，便蹙额歎歎，叹曰：“国家气数黯然，只此一传而绝，不能善其终。今天子所为如此，是速其败也。臣子安忍言之哉！”姬伯叹毕，不觉凄然。仲又问曰：“其数应在何年？”姬伯曰：“不过四七年间，戊午岁中甲子而已。”费、尤二人俱咨嗟长叹，复以酒酬西伯。少顷，二人又问曰：“不才二人，亦求贤侯一数，看我等终身何如？”姬伯原是贤人君子，那知虚伪，即袖演一数，便沉吟良久，曰：“此数甚奇甚怪！”费、尤二人笑问曰：“如何？不才二人数内有甚奇怪？”昌曰：“人之死生，虽有定数，或瘫痪鼓膈，百般杂症，或五刑水火，绳缢跌扑，非命而已。不似二位大夫，死得蹊蹊跷跷，古古怪怪。”费、尤二人笑问曰：“毕竟如何？死于何地？”昌曰：“将来不知何故，被雪水滄身，冻在冰内而死。”——后来姜子牙冰冻岐山，拿鲁雄，捉此二人，祭封神台。此是后事。表过不题。二人听罢，含笑曰：“‘生有时辰死有地’，也自由他。”三人复又畅饮。费、尤二人乃乘机诱之曰：“不知贤侯平日可曾演得自己究竟如何？”昌曰：“这平昔我也曾演过。”费仲曰：“贤侯祸福何如？”昌曰：“不才还讨得个善终正寝。”费、尤二人复虚言庆慰曰：“贤侯自是福寿双全。”西伯谦谢。三人又



Ji Chang was a virtuous and honest man and treated people sincerely. He felt pleased to meet them, as Fei Zhong and You Hun were very solicitous. As the other ministers had already left, the three of them drank alone.

"Let's use larger cups," Fei Zhong suggested, after they'd been drinking for some time.

He then filled a large wine cup and handed it to Ji Chang, who emptied it in a single draught.

"I must thank you for your hospitality. I hope that I might return it some day," Ji Chang thanked him.

He had a prodigious capacity for wine and drank several more cups in succession.

"Duke, you're well-known for your divination, but is it really reliable?" Fei Zhong asked.

"The theory of *yin* and *yang* is completely logical, so the divination's naturally reliable," Ji Chang said with confidence.

"As His Majesty handles state affairs in a most haphazard way, can you predict the fate of this dynasty?" Fei Zhong asked on purpose.

Ji Chang, already half drunk, forgot to guard against them.

"The future's so dark that his rule won't last long. King Zhou will be the last monarch of the dynasty. The way he rules only serves to speed up his own downfall. It's unbearable even to mention it."

"When do you think the end will come?" Fei Zhong asked further.

"In a few decades, no more," Ji Chang replied.

Fei Zhong and You Hun sighed deeply and plied Ji Chang with more wine.

"Would you be kind enough to predict our fate, Duke?"

Ji Chang was a virtuous and honest man. Not realizing their real intentions, he made a divination, but then fell silent for a long time before saying somberly, "Your fates are most strange."

"What's so strange about them?"

Ji Chang hesitated. "Though life and death are destined by fate, the manner of death varies widely. Some lives are taken by disease such as tuberculosis, heart attack, ascites or the plague, while others by fire, flood, torture or suicide. But yours are exceptions to all these. It puzzles me that you two should die in such a bizarre manner."

"How are we going to die? And where?" Fei Zhong and You Hun asked, laughing uproariously.

"For some unknown reason you'll be caught in snow and frozen to death in the ice!"

Fei Zhong and You Hun smiled. "The time of birth and place of death are preordained. Let things be as they are destined."

As they continued drinking, Fei Zhong and You Hun asked cunningly, "Duke, have you ever divined your own fate?"



饮数杯。费、尤二人曰：“不才朝中有事，不敢久羁。贤侯前途保重！”各人分别。费、尤二人在马上骂曰：“这老畜生！自己死在目前，反言善终正寝。我等反寒冰冻死。分明骂我等。这样可恶！”正言话间，已至午门，下马，便殿朝见天子。王问曰：“姬昌可曾说什么？”二臣奏曰：“姬昌怨忿，乱言辱君，罪在大不敬。”纣王大怒曰：“这匹夫！朕赦汝归国，到不感德，反行侮辱，可恶！他以何言辱朕？”二人复奏曰：“他曾演数，言国家只此一传而绝，所延不过四七之年；又道陛下不能善终。”纣王怒骂曰：“你不问这老匹夫死得何如？”费仲曰：“臣二人也问他，他道善终正寝。大抵姬昌乃利口妄言，惑人耳目，即他之死生出于陛下，尚然不知，还自己说善终。这不是自家哄自家！即臣二人叫他演数，他言臣二人冻死冰中。只臣莫说托陛下福荫，即系小民，也无冻死冰中之理。即此皆系荒唐之说，虚谬之言，惑世诬民，莫此为甚。陛下速赐施行！”王曰：“传朕旨，命晁田赶去拿来，即时枭首，号令都城，以戒妖言！”晁田得旨追赶。不表。

且说姬昌上马，自觉酒后失言，忙令家将：“速离此间，恐后有变。”众皆催动，迤逦而行。姬伯在马上自思：“吾演数中，七年灾迍，为何平安而返。必是此间失言，致有是非，定然惹起事来。”正迟疑间，只见一骑如飞赶来。及到面前，乃是晁田也。晁田大呼曰：“姬伯！天子有旨，请回！”



"Yes, I have. I found that I'll have a natural death in a good place."

Fei Zhong and You Hun congratulated him falsely, saying, "Duke, you're sure to be blessed with both happiness and longevity."

Ji Chang thanked the two flatterers sincerely, and the three men drank several more cups together. Then Fei Zhong and You Hun got up and said, "Please excuse us. We have business to attend to in the palace and must take our leave. Take care on your journey." But on their way back, they began swearing. "That old beast! He's facing immediate death, yet he spouts nonsense about dying naturally! He claims that we'll be frozen in ice. He was obviously cursing us."

When they reached the Fairy Longevity Palace, Fei Zhong and You Hun dismounted and entered to see King Zhou.

"What did he say about me?" the king asked hurriedly.

"Ji Chang's bitter and resentful. He insulted you with a lot of unruly talk and is guilty of gross disrespect towards Your Majesty."

"That old bastard! I forgave him and set him free, but he isn't at all grateful. On the contrary, he insulted me! What wickedness! Tell me what he said."

"He predicted that the dynasty would end in this generation. Only a few decades remain. Besides that, he said that you wouldn't be blessed with a good and proper death."

King Zhou roared with anger. "Did you ask the old bastard how he would die?"

"We did ask such a question, and he said that he would be sure to enjoy a good death. He wags his tongue and deceives people with nonsense. His life or death is controlled absolutely by Your Majesty, but he fails to realize it and still says that he'll have a good death. He's simply deceiving himself! When we asked him to divine our future, he said that we would be frozen to death in ice. No one, not even a plebeian has ever been frozen to death in ice. He's absurd. We suggest that you have him executed without delay!"

"Let Chao Tian bring him back. Chop his head off and hang it on the city wall as a warning to sorcerers," King Zhou ordered.

When Ji Chang got on his horse, he realized that he had spoken rashly while under the influence of wine. He ordered his party to set out with all haste, lest any incident should occur.

As they hurried along, Ji Chang was busy thinking. "The divination I made showed that I would suffer for seven years. How can I return home now so peacefully? Those thoughtless words I spoke before Fei Zhong and You Hun are bound to cause trouble!"

He pondered and noticed a horse galloping towards him. As it drew nearer, he recognized General Chao Tian.



姬伯回答曰：“晁将军，我已知道了。”姬伯乃对众家将曰：“吾今灾至难逃；你们速回。我七载后自然平安归国。着伯邑考上顺母命，下和弟兄，不可更西岐规矩。再无他说，你们去罢！”众人洒泪回西岐去了。姬昌同晁田回朝歌来。有诗曰：

十里长亭饯酒卮，只因直语欠委蛇。若非天数羈羑里，焉得姬侯赞伏羲。

话说姬昌同晁田往午门来，就有报马飞报黄飞虎。飞虎大惊，沉思：“为何去而复返！莫非费、尤两个奸逆坐害姬昌。”令周纪：“快请各位老殿下，速至午门！”周纪去请。黄飞虎随上坐骑，急急来到午门。时姬昌已在午门候旨。飞虎忙问曰：“贤侯去而复返者何也？”昌曰：“圣上召回，不知何事。”却说晁田见驾回旨。纣王大怒，叫：“速召姬昌！”姬昌至丹墀，俯伏奏曰：“荷蒙圣恩，释臣归国；今复召臣回，不知圣意何故？”王大骂曰：“老匹夫！释你归国，不思报效君恩，而反侮辱天子，尚有何说。”姬昌奏曰：“臣虽至愚，上知有天，下知有地，中知有君，生身知有父母，训教知有师长，‘天、地、君、亲、师’五字，臣时刻不敢有忘，怎敢侮辱陛下，甘冒万死。”王怒曰：“你还在此巧言强辩！你演甚么先天数，辱骂朕躬，罪在不赦！”昌奏曰：“先天神农、伏羲演成八卦，定人事之吉凶休咎，非臣故捏。臣不过据数而言，岂敢妄议是非。”王曰：“你试演朕一数，看天下如何？”昌奏曰：“前演陛下之数不吉，故对费仲、尤浑二大夫言；即曰不吉，并不曾言什么是非。臣安敢妄议。”纣



“Grand Duke, by order of His Majesty, you’re requested to return to Zhaoge at once,” Chao Tian shouted to him.

“I knew, General Chao,” Ji Chang answered calmly. He then addressed his men, “It’s difficult to escape the present calamity. Return home with all speed, and I’ll be back safely in seven years. Tell Bo Yikao to be obedient to his mother, to live in harmony with his brothers, and to not change the laws and customs of the land. I’ve nothing more to say. You may go.”

As his attendants continued their westward journey in tears, Ji Chang followed Chao Tian back to Zhaoge.

Huang Feihu was shocked to hear the unexpected news that Ji Chang was returning to Zhaoge. He silently pondered, “Why is he coming back again? Could Fei Zhong and You Hun be conspiring to hurt him?” He immediately ordered General Zhou Ji, “Ask all the old princes, ministers and high officials to hurry to the palace gate.”

Galloping with urgent haste to the palace gate, Huang Feihu saw Ji Chang waiting there and quickly asked him, “Why did you come back again?”

“His Majesty’s ordered my return. I don’t know the reason.”

When Chao Tian reported Ji Chang’s return, King Zhou ordered furiously, “Bring him in here right now”

Ji Chang knelt down on the cinnabar terrace steps before the king and reported, “By your bountiful grace, you set me free and allowed me to return to my dukedom. For what reason did Your Majesty order my return?”

King Zhou swore in a loud voice, “You damned wretch! I forgave you and let you return to your grand dukedom, but you didn’t think how to return my kindness. On the contrary, you wantonly insulted me.”

Ji Chang answered, “Though I’m extremely stupid, I know that there’s Heaven above, earth below and the king between them. I know I was brought up by my parents and educated by my teachers. I have respected Heaven, earth, the king, parents, and teachers all my life. How could I dare commit the capital crime of insulting you?”

King Zhou’s anger was unabated, “You still dare to use your enticing tongue to defend yourself with sophistry! You must be put to death for insulting me with your divinations.”

“Divination by the eight diagrams was invented by the ancient sage emperors Shen Nong and Fu Xi. It’s used to predict the success or failure of events and wasn’t falsely forged by me. I simply read what’s predicted. I wouldn’t have dared to make rash predictions on my own.”

“Try making a divination to see how my dynasty will fare,” King Zhou demanded.

“I made one for you with inauspicious results. I told Fei Zhong and You Hun about it, but merely said the results weren’t auspicious and nothing more. I wouldn’t have dared to give my own presumptuous opinions.”



王立身大呼曰：“你道朕不能善终，你自夸寿终正寝，非侮君而何！此正是妖言惑众，以后必为祸乱。朕先教你先天数不验，不能善终！”传旨：“将姬昌拿出午门枭首，以正国法！”左右才待上前，只见殿外有人大呼曰：“陛下！姬昌不可斩！臣等有谏章。”纣王急视，见黄飞虎、微子等七位大臣进殿俯伏，奏曰：“陛下天赦姬昌还国，臣民仰德如山。且昌先天数乃是伏羲先圣所演，非姬昌捏造。若是不准，亦是据数推详；若是果准，姬昌亦是直言君子，不是狡诈小人。陛下亦可赦其小过。”王曰：“骋自己之妖术，谤主君以不堪，岂得赦其无罪！”比干奏曰：“臣等非为姬昌，实为国也。今陛下斩姬昌事小，社稷安危事大。姬昌素有令名，为诸侯瞻仰，军民钦服。且昌先天数，据理直推，非是妄捏。如果圣上不信，可命姬昌演目下凶吉。如准，可赦姬昌；如不准，即坐以捏造妖言之罪。”纣王见大臣力谏，只得准奏，命姬昌演目下吉凶。昌取金钱一晃，大惊曰：“陛下，明日太庙火灾，速将宗社神主请开，恐毁社稷根本！”王曰：“数演明日，应在何时？”昌曰：“应在午时。”王曰：“既如此，且将姬昌发下囹圄，以候明日之验。”众官同出午门。姬伯感谢七位殿下。黄飞虎曰：“贤侯，明日颠危，必须斟酌！”姬昌曰：“且看天数如何。”众官散罢。不题。

且言纣王谓费仲曰：“姬昌言明日太庙火灾，若应其言，如之奈何？”尤浑奏曰：“传旨，明日令看守太庙宫官仔细防



King Zhou sprang up from his throne. "You cursed me, saying I wouldn't be blessed with a good death, and bragged that you would live a long life and die in a proper place. What's that if not an insult to your king! You confuse the masses with your sorcery and are sure to bring chaos to the nation. I'll show you right now that your prediction about your own good death isn't true," he mocked Ji Chang, then ordered, "Take him out and behead him."

As the royal guards came forward for Ji Chang, King Zhou heard voices outside the court, "Your Majesty! You mustn't put him to death. We've got written reports." He looked up and saw Huang Feihu, Wei Zi and five other princes hasten into the court. They knelt down before him.

"Both the people and your ministers appreciated your great virtue in setting Ji Chang free and letting him return to his dukedom. Divination was invented by the sage emperor Fu Xi, not by Ji Chang. He just made his divination according to the theory, whether it's true or not. He's really an honest gentleman, not a cunning bootlicker. We beg you to forgive him this minor error, Your Majesty."

"How can I when he uses his sorcery to insult me?" King Zhou retorted.

"We don't speak for Ji Chang but for the future of the nation," Bi Gan replied. "His execution is of minor importance compared with the safety and consolidation of the Shang Dynasty. Ji Chang is known to all and is loved by all. His divinations are made according to fixed theories and aren't his own fabrication. If you don't believe them, Your Majesty, you may order him to divine the immediate future. You may pardon him if he proves accurate and charge him with sorcery if he doesn't."

King Zhou yielded to their plea and ordered Ji Chang to predict the development of current events.

Ji Chang divined with gold coins and gave a cry of alarm. "Your Majesty! The divination indicates that the Ancestral Temple will catch fire tomorrow. You must quickly remove all the images and spirit tablets of your ancestors, lest they be destroyed."

"According to your divination, at what time tomorrow will the fire break out?"

"It will happen at noon," Ji Chang answered with confidence.

"In that case, put him in gaol temporarily, and we'll see what happens tomorrow," the king decided.

All the ministers left the court, and at the palace gate, Ji Chang expressed his gratitude.

"Duke, you will be facing a crisis tomorrow. You must take great care!" Huang Feihu warned him.

"I can only abide by the will of Heaven."

"Ji Chang predicts that the Ancestral Temple will catch fire tomorrow. What shall we do if it comes true?" King Zhou asked Fei Zhong, when all the ministers were gone.





闲，亦不必焚香，其火从何而至。”王曰：“此言极善。”天子回宫。费、尤二人也出朝。不表。

且言次日，武成王黄飞虎约七位殿下俱在王府，候午时火灾之事，命阴阳官报时刻。阴阳官报：“禀上众老爷，正当午时了。”众官不见太庙火起，正在惊慌之际，只听半空中霹雳一声，山河振动。忽见阴阳官来报：“禀上众老爷，太庙火起！”比干叹曰：“太庙灾异，成汤天下必不久矣！”众人齐出王府看火。好火！但见：

此火本原生于石内，其实有威有雄，坐居离地东南位，势转丹砂九鼎中。此火乃燧人氏出世，刻木钻金，旋坤转乾。八卦内只他有威，五行中独他无情。朝生东南，照万物之光辉；暮落西北，为一世之混沌。火起处，滑刺刺闪电飞腾；烟发时，黑沉沉遮天蔽日。看高低，有百丈雷声；听远近，发三千火炮。黑烟铺地，百忙里走万道金蛇；红焰冲空，霎时间有千团火块。狂风助力，金钉硃户一时休；恶火飞来，碧瓦雕檐撚指过。火起千条焰，星洒满天红。都城齐呐喊，轰动万民惊。数演先天莫浪猜，成汤宗庙尽成灰。老天已定兴衰事，算不由人枉自谋。

话说纣王在龙德殿，正聚文武商议时，只见奉御官来奏：“果然午时太庙火起！”只吓得天子魂飞天外，魄散九霄；两个奸臣肝胆尽裂。——姬昌真圣人也。——纣王曰：“姬昌之数今果有应验。大夫，如何处之？”费、尤二臣奏曰：“虽然姬昌之数偶验，适逢其时，岂得骤赦归国！陛下恐众大臣有所谏阻，只赦放姬昌，须……如此如此，天下可安，强臣无虑。此四海生民之福也。”王曰：“卿言甚善。”言未毕，微子、比干、黄飞虎等朝见毕。比干奏曰：“今日太庙火灾，姬昌之数果验。望陛下赦昌直言之罪。”王曰：“昌数果应，赦其死罪，不赦归国；暂居羑里，待后国事安宁，方许归国。”比干等谢恩而出，俱至午门。比干对昌言曰：“为贤侯特奏天子，准赦死罪，不赦还国，暂居羑里月余。



“Your Majesty, order the temple guards to watch the Ancestral Temple very carefully. Don’t let anybody burn candles or incense sticks for worship. That way there’s no way a fire can start,” Fei Zhong replied.

“You’re quite right,” King Zhou nodded.

On the following day, Huang Feihu invited the seven princes to his home to wait for the fire. At noon everyone became alarmed as no fire had occurred in the Ancestral Temple. But then a sudden thunderbolt cracked through the sky, shaking the mountains and rivers.

Attendants rushed in. “The Ancestral Temple’s on fire,” they reported.

“This strange fire is an omen that the dynasty won’t last long!” Bi Gan sighed.

Everyone left the mansion to watch the big fire. Dark smoke from the temple covered the sky, turning day into night. Flames flashed like lightning, and the roar of the fire could be heard all over the capital. A strong wind blew and fanned the flames and in a short time the gold and pearl doors, carved pillars and glazed roof tiles were completely destroyed. The Ancestral Temple of the Shang was reduced to ashes. By this, Heaven decreed the downfall of the dynasty. It was no longer in the power of man to prevent it.

King Zhou was holding a discussion with some of his officials in the Dragon Virtue Court when a royal guard rushed in. “The Ancestral Temple caught fire at noon, just as predicted.” The king almost fainted with terror, and the two minions were also very frightened. They had to admit that the West Grand Duke really was a sage!

“Ministers! Ji Chang’s prediction has come true. What can we do with him now?” King Zhou asked disappointedly.

“Though his prediction has come true, it’s only accidental. How can we set him free? It would be better to keep him here so that the kingdom will remain in peace,” Fei Zhong and You Hun suggested.

“You’re right,” King Zhou agreed.

Just then, Huang Feihu, Bi Gan, Wei Zi and the others arrived.

“The fire has proved Ji Chang’s divination. I hope Your Majesty will keep your word and pardon him,” Bi Gan said.

“Yes, his prediction has come true, and I’ll repeal the death sentence. Nevertheless, I can’t set him free. He must live at Youli until the state is restored to peace and order. Only then may he return home.”

They thanked the king for his kindness and left the court. At the palace gate, Bi Gan told Ji Chang what the king had decided. Ji Chang immediately knelt down and kowtowed towards the palace in gratitude.



贤侯且自宁耐，俟天子转日回天，自然荣归故地。”姬昌顿首谢曰：“今日天子禁昌羑里，何处不是浩荡之恩，怎敢有违？”飞虎又曰：“贤侯不过暂居月余，不才等逢机构会，自然与贤侯力为挽回，断不令贤侯久羁此地耳。”姬昌谢过众人，随在午门望阙谢恩，即同押送官往羑里来。羑里军民父老，牵羊担酒，拥道跪迎。父老言曰：羑里今得圣人一顾，万物生光。欢声杂地，鼓乐惊天，迎进城郭。押送官叹曰：“圣人心同日月，普照四方，今日观百姓迎接姬伯，非伯之罪可知。”姬昌进了府宅。押送官往都城回旨。不表。且言姬昌一至羑里，教化大行，军民乐业，闲居无事，把伏羲八卦，反复推明，变成六十四卦，中分三百六十爻象，守分安居，全无怨主之心。后人诗赞曰：

七载艰难羑里城，卦爻一一变分明。玄机参透先天秘，  
万古留传大圣名。

话表纣王囚禁大臣，全无忌惮。一日，报到元戎府。黄飞虎看报，见反了东伯侯姜文焕，领四十万人马，兵取游魂关；又反了南伯侯鄂顺，领人马二十万取三山关；天下已反了四百镇诸侯。黄飞虎叹曰：“二镇兵起，天下慌慌，生民何日得安！”忙发令箭，令将紧守关隘。此话不表。

且言乾元山金光洞太乙真人，因神仙一千五百年犯了杀戒，乃年积月累，天下大乱一场，然后复定。一则姜子牙该斩将封神，成汤天下该灭，周室将兴，因此玉虚宫住讲道教。太乙真人闲坐洞中，只听昆仑山玉虚宫白鹤童子持玉札到山。太乙真人接玉札，望玉虚宫拜罢。白鹤童子曰：“姜子牙不久下山，请师叔把灵珠子送下山去。”太乙真人曰：“我已知道了。”白鹤童子回去。不表。太乙真人送这一位老爷下山。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。

When Ji Chang arrived under escort at Youli, people surged into the streets, knelt and welcomed him with wine and mutton. Ji Chang lived there peacefully, his mind at ease, bearing not the slightest grudge against the king.

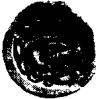
One day, Huang Feihu received the report that Jiang Wenhuan had rebelled and was attacking Youhun Pass with 400,000 men; E Shun was attacking Sanshan Pass with 200,000 men. This meant that 400 marquises had already risen against King Zhou. Sighing deeply over the fate of the kingdom and its people, Huang Feihu issued orders to his generals to tightly guard the strategic passes.

But now let's turn to Fairy Primordial in the Golden Light Cave on Qianyuan Mountain. One day he was sitting idly in his cave when White Crane Lad arrived from the Jade Emptiness Palace with a letter. Taking the letter, Fairy Primordial turned to face Mount Kunlun and kowtowed respectfully. "Jiang Ziya will soon leave Mount Kunlun, and you're requested to send the Pearl Spirit to the world straightway," White Crane Lad told him.

"I know that already."

When the White Crane Lad had left, Fairy Primordial sent the Pearl Spirit down to the world of men.

If you want to know how events developed, you must read the next chapter.







## 第十二回

### 陈塘关哪吒出世

诗曰：

金光洞里有奇珍，降落尘寰辅至仁。周室已生佳气色；  
商家应自灭精神。从来泰运多梁栋，自古昌期有劫燐。  
戊午时中逢甲子，慢嗟朝野尽沉沦。

话说陈塘关有一总兵官，姓李，名靖，自幼访道修真，拜西昆仑度厄真人为师，学成五行遁术。因仙道难成，故遣下山辅佐纣王，官居总兵，享受人间之富贵。元配殷氏，生有二子：长曰金吒，次曰木吒。殷夫人后又怀孕在身，已及三年零六个月，尚不生产。李靖时常心下忧疑。一日，指夫人之腹，言曰：“孕怀三载有余，尚不降生，非妖即怪。”夫人亦烦恼曰：“此孕定非吉兆，教我日夜忧心。”李靖听说，心下甚是不乐。当晚夜至三更，夫人睡得正浓，梦见一道人，头挽双髻，身着道服，径进香房。夫人叱曰：“这道人甚不知理。此乃内室，如何径进，着实可恶！”道人曰：“夫人快接麟儿！”夫人未及答，只见道人将一物往夫人怀中一送，夫人猛然惊醒，骇出一身冷汗。忙唤醒李总兵曰：“适才梦中……如此如此……”说了一遍。言未毕时，殷夫人已觉腹中疼痛。靖急起来，至前厅坐下。暗想：“怀身三年零六个月，今夜如此，莫非降生，吉凶尚未可知。”正思虑间，只见两个侍儿，慌忙前来，“启老爷：夫人生下一个妖精来



## Chapter 12

### The Birth of Nezha

The commander at Chentang Pass was Li Jing, who had devoted himself to Taoism since childhood. His master was Immortal Woe Evading Sage on the West Kunlun Mountain, from whom he had learned some magic arts. He could ride on metal, wood, water, fire or dust, but as he was not destined to be an immortal, he was instructed to enjoy riches and power in the human world.

His wife Madame Yin had given him two sons. The elder was called Jinzha and the younger Muzha. Now she was pregnant for the third time, but was still not in labor though three years and six months had already passed. The prolonged pregnancy made the husband and wife extremely worried.

"This pregnancy's been so long that the child must be either a demon or a monster," Li Jing said one day, pointing at her belly.

"It's indeed inauspicious. I've worried about it day and night," Madame Yin agreed.

His wife's words made him even more worried than before. Late that night Madame Yin fell asleep, and had a strange dream in which a Taoist rushed directly into their bedroom.

"How dare you intrude so rudely into our bed chamber! How detestable you are!" she scolded him.

"Hurry, Madame, and receive this excellent baby," the Taoist called to her.

Before she could say anything, the Taoist threw something at her belly. Greatly startled, she woke up in a cold sweat and quickly woke her husband. As she told him about the dream, she began to feel pains in her belly. Li Jing immediately left the room and waited in the front hall.

"Three and a half years of pregnancy, and the moment's here at last! Whether it's fortuitous or not still remains to be seen," he mused.

But just then two maidservants rushed up to him. "Sir, Madame's just given birth to a demon!" they cried out.







了！”李靖听说，急忙来至香房，手执宝剑，只见房里一团红气，满屋异香。有一肉毬，滴溜溜圆转如轮。李靖大惊，望肉毬上一剑砍去，划然有声。分开肉毬，跳出一个小孩儿来，满地红光，面如傅粉，右手套一金镯，肚腹上围着一块红绫，金光射目。——这位神圣下世，出在陈塘关，乃姜子牙先行官是也；灵珠子化身。金镯是“乾坤圈”，红绫名曰“混天绫”。此物乃是乾元山镇金光洞之宝。表过不题。——只见李靖砍开肉毬，见一孩儿满地上跑。李靖骇异，上前一把抱将起来，分明是个好孩子，又不忍作为妖怪坏他性命，乃递与夫人看。彼此恩爱不舍，各各忧喜。却说次日，有许多属官，俱来贺喜。李靖刚发放完毕，中军官来禀：“启老爷：外面有一道人求见。”李靖原是道门，怎敢忘本，忙道：“请来。”军政官急请道人。道人径上大厅，朝上对李靖曰：“将军，贫道稽首了。”李靖忙答礼毕，尊道人上坐。道人不谦，便就坐下。李靖曰：“老师何处名山？什么洞府？今到此关，有何见谕？”道人曰：“贫道乃乾元山金光洞太乙真人是也。闻得将军生了公子，特来贺喜。借令公子一看，不知尊意如何？”李靖闻道人之言，随唤侍儿抱将出来。侍儿将公子抱将出来。道人接在手，看了一眼，问曰：“此子落在那个时辰？”李靖答曰：“生在丑时。”道人曰：“不好。”李靖问曰：“此子莫非养不得么？”道人曰：“非也。此子生于丑时，正犯了一千七百杀戒。”又问：“此子可曾起名否？”李靖答曰：“不曾。”道人曰：“待贫道与他起个名，就与贫道做个徒弟，何如？”李靖答曰：“愿拜道者为师。”道人曰：“将军有几位公子？”李靖答曰：“不才有三子：长曰金吒，拜五



Sword in hand, Li Jing rushed into the bed chamber. There he found the chamber full of red light and fragrance and saw a fleshy ball rolling to and fro near the bed. Shocked at the sight, he moved forward and struck the fleshy ball with his sharp sword. As it split in two, a baby boy jumped out amidst the red light. He had a white, beautiful face, wore a gold bracelet on his right wrist, and his belly was covered with a piece of red damask silk that shone with golden light.

He was the reincarnation of the Pearl Spirit, disciple of Fairy Primordial. The gold bracelet was a magic weapon called the Universal Ring and the red silk was the magic Sky Muddling Damask. They were both treasures from the Golden Light Cave.

Li Jing was astonished to see this baby boy running about the room. He caught him and held him in his arms. He was such a lovely child that Li Jing could not believe it was a demon and slaughter it. He carried the baby to his wife, who took to him at once. Indeed they were both delighted.

The next day, his colleagues came to congratulate him on the birth of his third son. When all the guests had gone, Li Jing received the unexpected news that a Taoist had requested to see him. A Taoist himself, Li Jing quickly invited the man in and offered him the seat of honor.

“Master, from which holy mountain and cave do you come? What instructions would you give me?”

“I’m Fairy Primordial from the Golden Light Cave on Qianyuan Mountain. I’ve come here to congratulate you on your new son. May I see the child?”

Li Jing immediately told a maidservant to bring the baby out. Fairy Primordial held the child and looked at him over closely.

“At what hour was he born?”

“About four yesterday morning.”

“That’s terrible,” Fairy Primordial muttered.

“Do you mean that we may not bring him up, Master?”

“Oh, no! I mean that since he was born at four o’clock in the morning, he’s sure to break the commandment on killing. Have you given him a name yet?”

“Not yet, Master.”

“Would you let me give him a name and take him for a disciple?”

“We would only be too delighted.”

“How many sons do you have, General?”

“Three. The eldest is Jinzha, disciple of Heavenly Master of Outstand-



龙山云霄洞文殊广法天尊为师；次曰木吒，拜九宫山白鹤洞普贤真人为师。老师既要此子为门下，但凭起一名讳，便拜道者为师。”道人曰：“此子第三，取名叫做‘哪吒’。”李靖谢曰：“多承厚德命名，感谢不尽。”唤左右：“看斋。”道人乃辞曰：“这个不必。贫道有事，即便回山。”着实固辞，李靖只得送道人出府。那道人别过，径自去了。

话说李靖在关上无事，忽闻报天下反了四百诸侯。忙传令出，把守关隘，操演三军，训练士卒，谨提防野马岭要地。乌飞兔走，瞬息光阴，暑往寒来，不觉七载。哪吒年方七岁，身長六尺。时逢五月，天气炎热，李靖因东伯侯姜文焕反了，在游魂关大战窦荣，因此每日操练三军，教练士卒。不表。

且说三公子哪吒见天气暑热，心下烦躁，来见母亲，参见毕，站立一傍，对母亲曰：“孩儿要出关外闲玩一会。禀过母亲，方敢前去。”殷夫人爱子之心重，便叫：“我儿，你既要去关外闲玩，可带一名家将领你去，不可贪顽，快去快来。恐怕你爹爹操练回来。”哪吒应道：“孩儿晓得。”哪吒同家将出得关来，正是五月天气，也就着实炎热。但见：

太阳真火炼尘埃，绿柳娇禾欲化灰。行旅畏威慵举步；  
佳人怕热懒登台。凉亭有暑如烟燎；水阁无风似火埋。  
慢道荷香来曲院，轻雷细雨始开怀。

话说哪吒同家将出关，约行一里之余，天热难行。哪吒走得汗流满面，乃叫家将：“看前面树荫之下，可好纳凉？”家将来到绿柳荫中，只见薰风荡荡，烦襟尽解，急忙走回来，对哪吒禀曰：“禀公子，前面柳荫之内，甚是清凉，可以避



ing Culture at the High Cloud Cave on the Five Dragon Mountain; the second is Muzha, disciple of Immortal Universal Virtue at the White Crane Cave on the Nine Palace Mountain. As you would have this youngest for a disciple, please give him a name.”

“Call him Nezha, as he’s the third.”

“I greatly appreciate it and thank you very much,” Li Jing said, and ordered that a vegetarian feast be prepared for the immortal.

“I’ve got things to do at Qianyuan Mountain and must return there at once,” the immortal declined the offer and left.

One day Li Jing was sitting in his office when news arrived that 400 marquises had rebelled against the king. He issued orders to keep close watch over the pass and other strategic places and to strengthen the defence at the Wild Horse Mountain.

Seasons came and went, and seven years quickly passed. Though it was now the fifth month by the lunar calendar, and the weather was very hot, Li Jing was still training his soldiers vigorously to defend Youhun Pass against Jiang Wenhuan. Irritated by the heat, Nezha, now seven years old and already six feet tall, went to see his mother.

“Mother, won’t you let me stroll out beyond the pass? I daren’t go there without your permission,” he said.

“Only if you bring a guard along, son. But you mustn’t linger there too long. Return before your father does.”

Accompanied by a guard, Nezha went out beyond the gates of the pass. By the time they had walked about one *li*, Nezha was so hot that he could go no further.

“There are shady trees ahead. Can we cool ourselves there?” he asked.

The guard rushed over and, walking under the shade of the trees, immediately felt a refreshing breeze. “Master, it’s really cool here,” he told Nezha.



暑。”哪吒听说，不觉大喜；便走进林内，解开衣带，舒放襟怀，甚是快乐。猛忽的见那壁厢清波滚滚，绿水滔滔，真是两岸垂杨风习习，崖傍乱石水潺潺。哪吒立起身来，走到河边，叫家将：“我方才走出关来，热极了，一身是汗。如今且在石上洗一个澡。”家将曰：“公子仔细，只怕老爷回来，可早些回去。”哪吒曰：“不妨。”脱了衣裳，坐在石上，把七尺混天绫放在水里，蘸水洗澡。不知这河是九湾河，乃东海口上。哪吒将此宝放在水中，把水俱映红了。摆一摆，江河晃动；摇一摇，乾坤动撼。那哪吒洗澡，不觉那水晶宫已晃的乱响。

不说那哪吒洗澡，且说东海敖光在水晶宫坐，只听得宫阙震响，敖光忙唤左右，问曰：“地不该震，为何宫殿晃摇？”传与巡海夜叉李艮，看海口是何物作怪。夜叉来到九湾河一望，见水俱是红的，光华灿烂，只见一小儿将红罗帕蘸水洗澡。夜叉分水，大叫曰：“那孩子将甚么作怪东西，把河水映红，宫殿摇动？”哪吒回头一看，见水底一物，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，巨口獠牙，手持大斧。哪吒曰：“你那畜生，是个甚东西，也说话？”夜叉大怒，“吾奉主公点差巡海夜叉，怎骂我是畜生？”分水一跃，跳上岸来，望哪吒顶上一斧劈来。哪吒正赤身站立，见夜叉来得勇猛，将身躲过，把右手套的乾坤圈望空中一举。此宝原系昆仑山玉虚宫所赐太乙真人镇金光洞之物，夜叉那里经得起，那宝打将下来，正落在夜叉头上，只打的脑浆迸流，即死于岸上。哪吒笑曰：“把我的乾坤圈都污了。”复到石上坐下，洗那圈子。水晶宫如何经得起此二宝震撼，险些儿把宫殿俱晃倒了。敖



Nezha happily joined him in the shade. He untied the belt around his gown and stripped to the waist. He was soon cool and comfortable. Looking around him, he caught sight of blue ripples sparkling in a nearby stream. Long, slender willow branches hung low over the water, swaying gracefully in the gentle breeze and small waterfalls gurgled over the rocks. Nezha stood up quickly and strode over to the bank of the stream.

"I got so hot on my way here that I'm bathed in a sweat. I want to have a wash in the stream," he told the guard.

"Don't forget, Master, that you must be home earlier than your father," the guard cautioned him.

"That's no problem," Nezha replied airily and immediately took his clothes off. He sat on a rock and, dipping his Sky Muddling Damask into the water, wiped his body with it.

This stream was the Nine Bend River, and it flowed into the East Sea. As the Sky Muddling Damask was a magic weapon, every time Nezha dipped it in the water, the river turned red, and when he swished it, the river shook violently until the Crystal Palace of the East Sea creaked and groaned.

Ao Guang, the dragon king of the East Sea, was sitting in his own room when the palace began shaking violently. "As there's no earthquake, what's shaking the palace?" he hurriedly asked, and ordered Li Gen, the Yaksha on duty, to find out the cause.

When the Yaksha reached the Nine Bend River, he saw the water there had turned a bright shining red, and a young boy was dipping a red scarf in the water and wiping his body with it.

"Boy! What have you got in your hand that turns the water red and rocks the Crystal Palace?" Li Gen parted the waters and shouted loudly.

Nezha look up and saw a creature with a blue face, red hair, a huge mouth and long protruding tusks, holding a large axe.

"What kind of beast are you? What a wonder that you can speak!" Nezha cried in surprise.

"I'm the Yaksha Sea Patrolman, and I'm here by order of my master. How dare you insult me, calling me a beast," Li Gen said angrily.

He jumped onto the bank, raised his axe and struck at Nezha's head. Nezha, naked and empty-handed, dodged the vicious blow, raised his Universal Ring and struck Li Gen on the head. How could the Yaksha withstand the magic weapon from Fairy Primordial! His skull broke open and he fell dead on the river bank.

"He's soiled my Universal Ring," Nezha laughed, and began to wash it in the stream. This shook the Crystal Palace so violently that it nearly fell down.



光曰：“夜叉去探事未回，怎的这等凶恶！”正说话间，只见龙兵来报：“夜叉李艮被一孩童打死在陆地，特启龙君知道。”敖光大惊，“李艮乃凌霄殿御笔点差的，谁敢打死？”敖光传令：“点龙兵，待吾亲去，看是何人！”话未了，只见龙王三太子敖丙出来，口称：“父王，为何大怒？”敖光将李艮打死的事说了一遍。三太子曰：“父王请安。孩儿出去拿来便是。”忙调龙兵，上了逼水兽，提画杆戟，径出水晶宫来。分开水势，浪如山倒，波涛横生，平地水长数尺。哪吒起身看着水，言曰：“好大水！好大水！”只见波浪中现一水兽，兽上坐一人，全装服色，持戟骁雄，大叫曰：“是甚人打死我巡海夜叉李艮？”哪吒曰：“是我。”敖丙一见，问曰：“你是谁人？”哪吒答曰：“我乃陈塘关李靖第三子哪吒是也。俺父亲镇守此间，乃一镇之主。我在此避暑洗澡，与他无干；他来骂我，我打死了他，也无妨。”三太子敖丙大惊曰：“好泼贼！夜叉李艮乃天王殿差，你敢大胆将他打死，尚敢撒泼乱言！”太子将画戟便刺，来取哪吒。哪吒手无寸铁，把手一低，攒将过去，“少待动手，你是何人？通个姓名，我有道理。”敖丙曰：“孤乃东海龙君三太子敖丙是也。”哪吒笑曰：“你原来是敖光之子。你妄自尊大。若恼了我，连你那老泥鳅都拿出来，把皮也剥了他的。”三太子大叫一声：“气杀我！好泼贼！这等无礼！”又一戟刺来。哪吒急了，把七尺混天绫望空一展，似火块千团，往下一裹，将三太子裹下逼水兽来。哪吒抢一步赶上去，一脚踏住敖丙的颈项，提起乾坤圈，照顶门一下，把三太子的元身打出，是一



“What’s going on? It’s rocking even more violently! And Li Gen still hasn’t returned.”

The dragon king was thus wondering when a dragon soldier ran up. “Your Majesty, Li Gen the Yaksha’s been killed by a young boy.”

Ao Guang was shocked. “Li Gen was appointed by the Jade Emperor in person at the Spiritual Firmament Hall in Heaven. Who’s dared to kill him?” He issued an order, “Alert the dragon troops! I’ll personally confront the fellow.”

As he spoke, Ao Bing, his third son, arrived. “Father, Why are you so angry?”

When Ao Guang told him the whole story, Ao Bing said, “You may rest at ease, father. I’ll go and catch the criminal for you.”

Mounted on his Water Parting Monster, Ao Bing took a lance and led the dragon soldiers out of the Crystal Palace. As the water parted before them, mighty waves rose as high as mountains and crashed onto the shore, flooding the low-lying land. Nezha was standing there watching the flood when he saw a man in full battle array surface on a marine beast. The man was armed with a lance and displayed valiant bearing.

“Who is it that killed Li Gen, the Yaksha Sea Patrolman?” the man demanded.

“It was me,” Nezha answered frankly.

“Who are you?” Ao Bing asked.

“I’m the third son of Commander Li Jing of Chentang Pass. My father’s the head of this district. My coming here to bathe in the river had nothing to do with Li Gen, yet he swore at me and acted rudely. Naturally I killed him.”

“You damned scoundrel!” swore the third prince, growing angry. “Li Gen was appointed to his post by the Jade Emperor. How dare you beat him to death and then spout such nonsense!”

He raised his lance and ran at Nezha. Having no weapon, Nezha ducked out of the way.

“Wait a moment! Tell me who you are,” he called to the dragon prince.

“I’m the third son of Ao Guang, Dragon King of the East Sea. My name’s Ao Bing.”

Nezha burst into laughter. “Oh! So you’re a son of Ao Guang. Don’t be so proud. Should you annoy me further, I’ll drag out your old loach of a father and skin him alive!”

“You damned scoundrel! You’ve gone too far this time,” the dragon prince roared and lunged at Nezha again.

Nezha became irritated and cast his Sky Muddling Damask into the air at the dragon prince. Thousands of fire balls suddenly appeared, enveloping the third prince and sweeping him from his mount. Nezha rushed over, trod on his neck, and lifting his Universal Ring, struck the prince on





条龙，在地上挺直。哪吒曰：“打出这小龙的本像来了。也罢，把他的筋抽去，做一条龙筋绦与俺父亲束甲。”哪吒把三太子的筋抽了，径带进关来。把家将吓得浑身骨软筋酥，腿慢难行，挨到帅府门前。哪吒来见母夫人。夫人曰：“我儿，你往那里耍子，便去这半日？”哪吒曰：“关外闲行，不觉来迟。”哪吒说罢，往后园去了。

且说李靖操演回来，发放左右，自卸衣甲，坐于后堂。忧思纣王失政，逼反天下四百诸侯，日见生民涂炭，正在那里烦恼。

且说敖光在水晶宫，只听得龙兵来报说：“陈塘关李靖之子哪吒把三太子打死，连筋都抽去了。”敖光听报，大惊曰：“吾儿乃兴云步雨滋生万物正神，怎说打死了！李靖，你在西昆仑学道，吾与你也有一拜之交；你敢纵子为非，将我儿子打死，这也是百世之冤，怎敢又将我儿子筋都抽了！言之痛心切骨！”敖光大怒，恨不能即与其子报仇，随化一秀士，径往陈塘关来。至于帅府，对门官曰：“你与我传报，有故人敖光拜访。”军政官进内厅禀曰：“启老爷：外有故人敖光拜访。”李靖曰：“吾兄一别多年，今日相逢，真是天幸。”忙整衣来迎。敖光至大厅，施礼坐下。李靖见敖光一脸怒色，方欲动问，只见敖光曰：“李贤弟，你生的好儿子！”李靖笑答曰：“长兄，多年未会，今日奇逢，真是天幸，何故突发此言？若论小弟，止有三子：长曰金吒，次曰木吒，三曰哪吒，俱拜名山道德之士为师，虽未见好，亦不是无赖之辈。长兄莫要错见。”敖光曰：“贤弟，你错见了，



the head. The third prince resumed his true form and lay stretched out motionless on the ground.

“What a surprise! I’ve beaten this young dragon into his true form. I’ll take his main tendon and make my father a dragon belt for a present,” Nezha said to himself.

When he had taken the tendon from the dead dragon, he left the place at once and returned to the pass. The scene had so terrified the guard that he had gone weak and could scarcely walk.

“My son! Where have you been? Why did it take you so long?” his mother asked him.

“I just wandered out beyond the pass. I forgot the time and so returned late.”

Before long, Li Jing returned from the military exercises. He dismissed his attendants, removed his armor and went to the back hall. He sat there worrying about the rebellion of the marquises and the ever-increasing hardship people were suffering.

Ao Guang was waiting in his palace when he got the news of his son’s death. He was told that “Nezha, son of Commander Li Jing of Chentang Pass, killed the third prince and cruelly drew out his tendon.”

He was shocked. “My son was God of Clouds and Rain and Plant Life, created by the Jade Emperor. Who dares to strike him a mortal blow? Li Jing, we met once when you were studying the Way at West Kunlun Mountain. How could you allow your son to wickedly murder mine? This injustice can never be erased. Your son’s got the gall to take the tendon from my son’s body! I’m burning with hatred!”

In a great rage and eager to avenge his son, Ao Guang transformed himself into a scholar and made his way directly to Chentang Pass.

Hearing that it was Ao Guang, Li Jing was delighted. “I’ve been separated from my brother Ao Guang for years and have missed him sorely. It must be a blessing from Heaven that we’re to meet today,” he said.

He straightened his clothes, hurried out, and invited Ao Guang into the main hall. They greeted each other and sat down. Seeing that Ao Guang was boiling with rage, Li Jing was bemused. He was about to question him when Ao Guang began, “Worthy Brother, how lucky you are to have such a good son!”

Li Jing smiled. “Brother, we haven’t seen each other for many years. How happy I am that Heaven’s blessed us with this meeting. Why do you speak so abruptly? I’ve got three sons, Jinzha, Muzha and Nezha, and each has been adopted by a sage as a disciple. Though they’re not so good, they’re not rascals, either. Please don’t get a wrong impression of them.”



我岂错见！你的儿子在九湾河洗澡，不知用何法术，将我水晶宫几乎震倒。我差夜叉来看，便将我夜叉打死。我第三子来看，又将我三太子打死，还把他筋都抽了来。……”敖光说至此，不觉心酸，勃然大怒曰：‘你还说不晓事护短的话！’”李靖忙陪笑答曰：“不是我家，兄错怪了我。我长子在五龙山学艺；二子在九宫山学艺；三子七岁，大门不出，从何处做出这等大事来？”敖光曰：“便是你第三子哪吒打的！”李靖曰：“真是异事非常。长兄不必性急，待我教他出来你看。”李靖往后堂来。殷夫人问曰：“何人在厅上？”李靖曰：“故友敖光。不知何人打死他三太子，说是哪吒打的。如今叫他出去与他认。哪吒今在那里？”殷夫人自思：“只今日出门，如何做出这等事来？”不敢回言，只说：“在后园里面。”李靖径进后园来叫：“哪吒在那里？”叫了半个时辰不应。李靖径走到海棠轩来，见门又关住。李靖在门口大叫，哪吒在里面听见，忙开门来见父亲。李靖便问：“我儿，你在此作何事？”哪吒对曰：“孩儿今日无事出关，至九湾河顽耍，偶因炎热，下水洗个澡。叵耐有个夜叉李艮，孩儿又不惹他，他百般骂我，还拿斧来劈我。是孩儿一圈打死了。不知又有个甚么三太子叫做敖丙，持画戟刺我。被我把混天绫裹他上岸，一脚踏住颈项，也是一圈，不意打出一条龙来。孩儿想龙筋最贵气，因此上抽了他的筋来，在此打一条龙筋绦，与父亲束甲。”就把李靖只吓得张口如痴，结舌不语；半晌，大叫曰：“好冤家！你惹下无涯之祸。你快出去见你伯父，自回他话。”哪吒曰：“父亲放心，不知者不坐罪，筋又



"Brother, you're the one with the wrong impression! One of your sons took a bath at the Nine Bend River today. Using some magic weapon, he shook the waters until my Crystal Palace nearly collapsed. I sent my Yaksha to find out what was going on, but your son beat him to death. When I sent my third son to see what had happened, he was also beaten to death, and his tendon was cut out. How can you be so unreasonable as to defend his crimes!"

The dragon king was bitter, but Li Jing hurriedly comforted him with a smile. "You've blamed me wrongly, Brother. It couldn't have been one of my sons. My eldest son's at the Five Dragon Mountain, the second at the Nine Palace Mountain. The third is just seven years old and stays indoors all day long. How could any of them have done such a thing?"

"It was your third son, Nezha," Ao Guang said with assurance.

"That's most odd! Don't get impatient, Brother. Let me bring him out here and you can see for yourself."

Without any delay, Li Jing rushed to the back hall to see his wife, who asked, "Who's the visitor in the main hall?"

"My old friend, Ao Guang. He complains that his third son was killed by Nezha. I'll get Nezha to see him, and he'll see that it's not true. Where is Nezha now?"

Madame Yin thought to herself, "This is the first time Nezha went outside to play. How could he have done such a thing?" Not daring to tell him, she said simply, "He's playing in the back garden."

Li Jing entered the back garden. "Where are you, Nezha? Come here at once," he shouted.

Receiving no reply, Li Jing went to Begonia Hall but found the door bolted. He shouted again. Nezha immediately opened the door and came out to meet his father.

"What are you doing here, son?"

"As I had nothing to do today, I went out to the Nine Bend River. It was very hot and so I bathed in the river. Then Li Gen the Yaksha appeared and swore at me most foully. He ruthlessly chopped at me with his axe. I lost my patience and knocked him off with my Universal Ring. Then some third prince called Ao Bing rushed at me, brandishing a lance, but I captured him with my Sky Muddling Damask. I trod on his neck and knocked him with my Universal Ring. He turned into a dead dragon with just one blow. I've heard that the main tendon of a dragon is very valuable, so I took it to make a dragon tendon belt for you."

Li Jing was stunned and speechless. It was a long time before he cried out, "Woe is me! Don't you know that you've got me into trouble and endless suffering? You'd better come with me to see your uncle and tell him what you did."



不曾动他的，他要，元物在此，待孩儿见他去。”

哪吒急走来至大厅，上前施礼，口称：“伯父，小侄不知，一时失错，望伯父恕罪。元筋交付明白，分毫未动。”敖光见物伤情，对李靖曰：“你生出这等恶子，你适才还说我错了。今他自己供认，只你意上可过的去！况吾子者，正神也；夜叉李艮亦系御笔点差；岂得你父子无故擅行打死！我明日奏上玉帝，问你的师父要你！”敖光径扬长去了。李靖顿足放声大哭：“这祸不小！”夫人听见前庭悲哭，忙问左右侍儿，侍儿回报曰：“今日三公子因游玩，打死龙王三太子。适才龙王与老爷折辨，明日要奏准天庭。不知老爷为何啼哭。”夫人着忙，急至前庭，来看李靖。李靖见夫人来，忙止泪，恨曰：“我李靖求仙未成，谁知你生下这样好儿子，惹此灭门之祸！龙王乃施雨正神，他妄行杀害，明日玉帝准奏施行，我和你多则三日，少则两朝，俱为刀下之鬼！”说罢又哭，情甚惨切。夫人亦泪如雨下，指哪吒而言曰：“我怀你三年零六个月，方才生你，不知受了多少苦辛。谁知你是灭门绝户之祸根也！”哪吒见父母哭泣，立身不安，双膝跪下，言曰：“爹爹，母亲，孩儿今日说了罢。我不是凡夫俗子，我是乾元山金光洞太乙真人弟子。此宝皆系师父所赐，料敖光怎的不得我。我如今往乾元山上，问我师尊，必有主意。常言道：‘一人做事一人当。’岂敢连累父母？”哪吒出



“Don’t worry, father. As I didn’t do it deliberately, I shouldn’t be considered guilty. I haven’t done anything to his son’s tendon yet. It’s all here in one piece if he would like to have it. Let me go and see him.”

When Nezha reached the main hall with his father, he rushed up and greeted Ao Guang, “Uncle, I’ve unknowingly committed an error and offended you. I beg you earnestly to forgive me. Here’s the tendon in perfect condition. I haven’t done anything to it yet.”

Looking at it, Ao Guang felt even more grief-stricken. “Your son’s so wicked, yet you try to tell me that I’m wrong! Now that he’s admitted to his crime, how can you be so cold and unsympathetic? Moreover, my son was a god, and the Yaksha was appointed by the Jade Emperor. How could you take it upon yourselves to murder them in cold blood! I’ll report this case to the Jade Emperor tomorrow, and have you both severely dealt with,” he threatened, and stormed out in a fury.

Li Jing began to stamp his feet and bewail the great calamity. Hearing his cries, Madame Yin found out from her attendants what had happened and hurried to the main hall herself to comfort him.

When she came to him, Li Jing stopped crying and said, “It was bad luck enough that I failed to become an immortal, but now you’ve produced this wonderful son! He’s going to bring destruction on our whole family! The dragon prince was the god of rain, and now Nezha’s murdered him. Ao Guang’s bound to report this case to Heaven tomorrow, and within no more than three days we’ll all turn to ghosts under the sword.”

He began to weep again. Madame Yin also wept. “I suffered for three and a half years to give birth to you! Who would have guessed that you would be the ruin of our family,” she pointed at Nezha and accused him.

Nezha felt extremely upset and knelt down before them. “Let me tell you the truth, Father and Mother. I’m not an ordinary mortal, but the disciple of Fairy Primordial at the Golden Light Cave on Qianyuan Mountain, and these weapons were all bestowed on me by him. It would certainly be impossible for Ao Guang to get the better of me. I’ll now go straight to Qianyuan Mountain and ask my master how to deal with the matter. He’ll surely help us out,” he said, then declared, “I’ve caused all this trouble, and I hold myself responsible for it. I won’t get you involved.”



了府门，抓一把土，望空一洒，寂然无影。此是生来根本，借土遁往乾元山来。有诗为证，诗曰：

乾元山上叩吾生，诉说敖光东海情。宝德门前施法力，方知仙术不虚名。

话说哪吒借土遁来至乾元山金光洞，候师法旨。金霞童子忙启师父：“师兄候法旨。”太乙真人曰：“着他进来。”金霞童子至洞门对哪吒曰：“师父命你进去。”哪吒至碧游床倒身下拜。真人问曰：“你不在陈塘关，到此有何话说？”哪吒曰：“启老师：蒙恩降生陈塘，今已七载。昨日偶到九湾河洗澡，不意敖光子敖丙将恶语伤人，弟子一时怒发，将他伤了性命。今敖光欲奏天庭，父母惊慌，弟子心甚不安，无门可救，只得上山，恳求老师，赦弟子无知之罪，望祈垂救。”真人自思曰：“虽然哪吒无知，悞伤敖丙，这是天数。今敖光虽是龙中之王，只是步雨兴云，然上天垂象，岂得推为不知！以此一小事干渎天庭，真是不谙事体！”忙叫：“哪吒过来，你把衣裳解开。”真人以手指在哪吒前胸画了一道符录，分付哪吒：“你到宝德门……如此如此。事完后，你回到陈塘关与你父母说，若有事，还有师父，决不干碍父母。你去罢。”

哪吒离了乾元山，径往宝德门来。正是天宫异景非凡像，紫雾红云罩碧空。但见上天，大不相同：

初登上界，乍见天堂，金光万道吐红霓，瑞气千条喷紫雾。只见那南天门：碧沉沉琉璃造就，明晃晃宝鼎妆成。两旁有四根大柱，柱上盘绕的是兴云步雾赤须龙；正中有二座玉桥，桥上站立的是彩羽凌空丹顶凤。明霞灿烂映天光，碧雾朦胧遮斗日。天上有三十六座仙宫：遗云宫、昆沙宫、紫霄宫、太阳宫、太阴宫、化乐宫，一宫宫脊吞金獬豸；又有七十二重宝殿：乃朝会殿、凌



He then left the room. Picking up a handful of earth and throwing it into the air, he disappeared. Using his magic powers, he flew on the dust to Qianyuan Mountain. He soon arrived, was ushered in by Golden Haze Lad, and knelt before Fairy Primordial.

“Why don’t you stay at Chentang Pass? Why do you come here to see me?” his master asked.

Nezha explained what had happened and begged his master for help.

“Though Nezha killed Ao Bing by mistake, it was in fact destined by fate. Even though Ao Guang is the king of dragons, he’s only assigned to gather clouds and distribute the rain. He should understand the celestial phenomena that indicate political trends in the near future. It would be absurd to trouble Heaven with such a minor matter,” Fairy Primordial thought, and said, “Come over here, Nezha. Unbutton your coat and shirt.”

Nezha did as his master ordered. The immortal drew an Invisibility Charm with his fingers on Nezha’s chest and ordered, “Go to the Precious Virtue Gate of the Heavenly Palace and do the following.... When you’ve finished, return directly to Chentang Pass. Should there be any more trouble, come to see me. I’ll always help you. Nothing will happen to your parents. You may go now.”

Nezha left Qianyuan Mountain and made his way directly to the Precious Virtue Gate of the Heavenly Palace. Everything in Heaven was different from on earth. Rays of golden light, shining in all directions, produced thousands of beautiful rainbows, and an auspicious purple haze hung in the air.

The South Heavenly Gate was built entirely of green-blue glazed bricks, and was decorated with numerous dazzling precious tripods. On each side of the gate were four huge pillars around which coiled red-bearded dragons whose duty it was to make rain by gathering clouds and fog. Just within the gate were two jade bridges, on each of which stood or danced multi-colored phoenixes.

The Heavenly Palace complex contained thirty-six splendid palaces and seventy-two immense halls constructed with massive jade pillars, carved with the images of unicorns. Beneath the numerous terraces were





虚殿、宝光殿、聚仙殿、传奏殿，一殿殿柱列玉麒麟。寿星台、禄星台、福星台，台下有千千年不卸奇花；炼丹炉、八卦炉、水火炉，炉中有万万载常青的绣草。朝圣殿中绛纱衣，金霞灿烂；彤廷阶下芙蓉冠，金碧辉煌。灵霄宝殿，金钉攒玉户；积圣楼前，彩凤舞朱门。伏道回廊，处处玲珑剔透；三檐四簇，层层龙凤翱翔。上面有紫巍巍、明晃晃、圆丢丢、光灼灼、亮铮铮的葫芦顶；左右是紧簇簇、密层层、响叮叮、滴溜溜、明朗朗的玉佩声。正是：天宫异物般般有，世上如他件件稀。金阙银鸾并紫府，奇花异草暨瑶天。朝王玉兔坛边过；参圣金鸟着底飞。若人有福来天境，不堕人间免污泥。

哪吒到了宝德门，来的尚早，不见敖光；又见天宫各门未开，哪吒站立在聚仙门下。不多时，只见敖光朝服叮当，径至南天门。只见南天门未开。敖光曰：“来早了，黄巾力士还不曾至，不免在此间等候。”哪吒看见敖光；敖光看不见哪吒。——哪吒是太乙真人在他前心书了符篆，名曰“隐身符”，故此敖光看不见哪吒。哪吒看见敖光在此等候，心中大怒，撒开大步，提起手中乾坤圈，把敖光后心一圈，打了个饿虎扑食，跌倒在地。哪吒赶上去，一脚踏住后心。不知敖光性命如何，且听下回分解。



wonderful gardens with exotic grasses and eternal flowers. Among the precious furnaces were the Furnace for Refining the Elixir of Life, the Divination Furnace and the Water-Fire Furnace, in which were planted evergreen fragrant grass. The Hall for Worshipping the Sages was full of officials dressed in brilliant purple silk robes, and standing or kneeling on the stone steps, were numerous officers wearing lotus coronets that glittered in the golden light.

Inside the Spiritual Firmament Hall, golden dragons coiled on the jade doors, while at the Hall for the Worthies, phoenixes danced in front of the pearl gates. Long, winding corridors were exquisitely wrought with wonderful carvings. Pretty birds darted gracefully in and out under the eaves. At the ends of roof-ridges were shining purple gourd-shaped adornments, and just under the roof hung jade bells that rang with sweet tunes in mild breeze. Inside the Heavenly Palace were many rare and precious things. The walls and beams were made of silver, gold and jade. Anyone who had the good fortune to enter the Heavenly Palace would never be polluted by the vulgar world again.

It was still early when Nezha reached the Precious Virtue Gate. Ao Guang had not yet arrived, and the palace gates had not yet opened. He waited at the Gate for the Worthies for a long while before he saw Ao Guang in his official robes striding swiftly towards the South Heavenly Gate.

Finding the gate still closed, Ao Guang said to himself, "I've arrived too early. The heavenly guards haven't come to open the gates yet. I'll have to wait here."

Though Nezha was standing close, he was invisible to the Dragon King because Fairy Primordial had drawn a charm on his chest.

The idea that Ao Guang was to accuse him before the Jade Emperor and have him punished angered Nezha. Rushing over, he raised his Universal Ring and struck Ao Guang a heavy blow on the back. As Ao Guang fell to the ground, Nezha trod on his neck, ready to deal with him.

If you want to know what happened to Ao Guang, you must read the next chapter.

## 第十三回

### 太乙真人收石矶

诗曰：

天然顽石得机先，结就灵胎已万年。吸月飡星探地窟，  
填离取坎伏天乾。慢跨步雾兴云术，且听吟龙啸虎仙。  
劫火运逢难措手，须知邪正有偏全。

话说哪吒在宝德门将敖光踏住后心，敖光扭颈回头看时，认得是哪吒，不觉勃然大怒，况又被他打倒，用脚踏住，挣持不得，乃大骂曰：“好大胆泼贼！你黄牙未退，奶毛未干，骋凶将御笔钦点夜叉打死，又将我三太子打死，他与你何仇，你敢将他筋俱抽去！这等凶顽，罪已不赦。今又敢在宝德门外，毁打兴云步雨正神。你欺天罔上，虽损醢汝尸，不足以尽其辜！”哪吒被他骂得性起，恨不得就要一圈打死他，奈太乙真人分付，只是按住他道：“你叫，你叫，我便打死你这老泥鳅也无甚大事！我不说，你也不知我是谁。吾非别人，乃乾元山金光洞太乙真人弟子灵珠子是也。奉玉虚宫法牒，脱化陈塘关李门为子。因成汤合灭，周室当兴，姜子牙不久下山，吾乃是破纣辅周先行官是也。偶因九湾河洗澡，你家人欺负我；是我一时性急，便打死他二命，也是小事。你就上本。我师父说来，就连你这老蠢物都打死了，也不妨事。”敖光听罢，骂曰：“好孺子！打的好！打的好！”哪吒曰：“你要打，就打你。”拎起拳来，或上或下，卐卐卐，一气打有一二十拳。打的敖光喊叫。哪吒道：“你这老蠢才，乃顽皮；要不打你，你是不怕的。”古云：“龙怕揭鳞，



## Chapter 13

### Combat Between Two Fairies

Twisting his head, Ao Guang looked round to find out who had knocked him to the ground and was furious to see Nezha. "You audacious scoundrel! You're just a kid and have yet to lose your milk teeth, but you viciously murdered first the Yaksha and then my third son. He wasn't your enemy, yet you had the gall to extract the tendon from his body. The crimes you've committed are really unforgivable, and now you're so barbarous as to beat me, the god of rain, right in front of the Precious Virtue Gate of the Heavenly Palace. You offend Heaven, and even mincing your flesh to bits wouldn't make amends for your crimes," he shouted.

This made Nezha so angry that he longed to beat him to death. But Fairy Primordial had strictly forbidden him to do so. He shifted more weight onto Ao Guang's neck. "Shut up or I'll kill you with my Universal Ring, you old loach! I'm none other than the Pearl Spirit, disciple of Fairy Primordial. By decree of the Jade Emptiness Palace, I was sent down to the world and reincarnated as son of Li Jing at Chentang Pass. Don't you know that the Shang Dynasty won't last long and the Zhou Dynasty will soon take its place? When Jiang Ziya descends from his mountain I'll be leading his vanguard on Zhaohe.

"I took a bath in the Nine Bend River to cool myself down. How could I expect to be insulted by the men you sent? I was so annoyed that I struck the two of them dead. It was only a trivial matter, yet you've come to report me to the Jade Emperor. My master told me that even if I beat you to death like the others, you old fool, it would be of no consequence."

Ao Guang was also exasperated. "You wretched brat! How dare you beat me like this!"

"If you like, I'll hit you again." Nezha immediately lifted his fist and beat Ao Guang until he began to cry out. "You old fool! You're too stubborn. As you're not afraid of my fist, I won't beat you any more. An ancient proverb says, 'A dragon fears having its scales removed, and a tiger fears having its tendon pulled out.'"





虎怕抽筋。”哪吒将敖光朝服一把拉去了半边，左肋下露出鳞甲。哪吒用手连抓数把，抓下四、五十片鳞甲，鲜血淋漓，痛伤骨髓。敖光疼痛难忍，只叫“饶命！”哪吒曰：“你要我饶命，我不许你上本，跟我往陈塘关去，我就饶你。你若不依，一顿乾坤圈打死你，料有太乙真人作主，我也不怕你。”敖光遇着恶人，莫敢谁何，只得应承：“愿随你去！”哪吒曰：“放你起来。”敖光起来，正欲同行，哪吒曰：“尝闻龙会变化，要大便撑天柱地，要小便芥子藏身。我怕你走了，往何处寻你。你变一个小小蛇儿，我带你回去。”敖光不得脱身，没奈何，只得化一个小青蛇儿。哪吒拿来放在袖里，离了宝德门，往陈塘关来，时刻便至帅府。家将忙报李靖曰：“三公子回府了。”李靖闻言，甚是不乐。只见哪吒进府来谒见父亲。见李靖眉锁春山，愁容可掬，上前请罪。李靖问曰：“你往那里去来？”哪吒曰：“孩儿往南天门去，请回伯父敖光不必上本。”李靖大喝一声：“你这说谎畜生！你是何等之辈，敢往天界。俱是一派谎言，瞞昧父母，甚是可恼！”哪吒曰：“父亲不必大怒，现在伯父敖光可证。”李靖曰：“你尚胡说！伯父如今在那里？”哪吒曰：“在这里。”袖内取出青蛇，望下一丢，敖光一阵清风，见化成人形。李靖吃了一惊，忙问曰：“长兄为何如此？”敖光大怒，把南天门毁打之事，说了一遍；又把肋下鳞甲把与李靖观看，“你生这等恶子，我把四海龙王齐约到灵霄殿，申明冤枉，看你如何理说！”道罢，化一阵清风去了。李靖顿足曰：“此事愈反加重，如何是好？”哪吒近前，跪而禀曰：“老爷，母亲，只管放心。孩儿求教师父，师父说我不是私自投胎至此，奉玉虚



He tore away part of Ao Guang's robes, exposing the scales on the dragon king's left side and quickly scratched dozens of them with his thumb and fingers, splashing the ground with the dragon king's blood. The pain was unbearable for Ao Guang, and he began to cry for mercy.

"If you want mercy from me, you must forget about reporting me to the Jade Emperor and follow me back to Chentang Pass. If you don't do as I say, I'll knock you dead with my Universal Ring and let Fairy Primordial deal with the case. I'm not afraid of you in the least."

Confronted with such a wicked fellow, Ao Guang had no choice but to agree, saying, "I'm willing to follow you to Chentang Pass."

Nezha let him get up. They were about to leave for Chentang Pass when Nezha said, "I've heard that dragons have the ability to transform themselves to any size. They can expand their bodies high enough to touch the sky or make themselves as small as a mustard seed. I'm afraid that you'll run away from me and I won't be able to find you again. You'd better transform yourself into a small snake so that I can carry you back with me."

Ao Guang had no choice but to transform himself into a small green snake. Nezha picked him up, put him in one of his sleeves, left the Precious Virtue Gate and made his way directly to Chentang Pass, arriving home moments later. When he heard that Nezha was home, Li Jing felt very unhappy. Nezha noticed his frown. He went up to him respectfully and begged him earnestly for forgiveness.

"Where have you been?" Li Jing asked.

"I went to the South Heavenly Gate to request Uncle Ao Guang not to make his complaint but to return here with me."

"You lying beast! What makes you qualified to call at the Heavenly Palace? You're just telling a pack of lies to deceive your parents."

"Don't be angry, father. Uncle Ao Guang can verify everything I've said."

"You're absurd. Where's your uncle Ao Guang?"

"He's in my sleeve," Nezha said, immediately took a small green snake from his sleeve and threw it on the ground. In a gust of wind, Ao Guang transformed himself into human form. Li Jing was astonished.

"What's happened, Brother?" Li Jing asked.

In a great rage, Ao Guang told him the whole story: How he was badly beaten and how his scales had been scratched off. He showed Li Jing the wounds on his left side.

"Your son's vicious and wicked! I'm going to summon the dragon kings of all the four seas to go together to the Spiritual Firmament Hall to complain to the Jade Emperor of this injustice. See what you can do about it then," Ao Guang said angrily, turned himself into a light wind and disappeared.

Li Jing stamped his foot with anxiety. "Matters are becoming worse. What shall we do now?"



宫符命来保明君。连四海龙王，便都坏了，也不妨甚么事。若有大事，师父自然承当。父亲不必挂念。”李靖乃道德之士，亦明玄中奥妙，又见哪吒南天门打敖光的手段，既上得天曹，其中必有原故。殷夫人终是爱子之心，见哪吒站立傍边，李靖烦恼，有恨儿子之意，夫人曰：“你还在这里，不往后边去！”哪吒听母命，径往后园来。坐了一会，心上觉闷，乃出后园门，径上陈塘关的城楼上来纳凉。此时天气甚热，此处不曾到过，只见好景致：熏熏荡荡，绿柳依依，观望长空，果然似一轮火盖。正是：行人满面流珠落，避暑闲人把扇摇。哪吒看了一回，自言曰：“从不知道这个所在好顽耍！”又见兵器架上有一张弓，名曰乾坤弓；有三枝箭，名曰震天箭。哪吒自思：“师父说我后来做先行官，破成汤天下，如今不习弓马，更待何时。况且有现成弓箭，何不演习演习。”哪吒心下甚是欢喜，便把弓拿在手中，取一枝箭，搭箭当弦，望西南上一箭射去。响一声，红光缭绕，瑞彩盘旋。这一箭不当紧，正是：沿河撒下钩与线，从今钓出是非来。哪吒不知此弓箭乃镇陈塘关之宝，乾坤弓，震天箭，自从轩辕黄帝大破蚩尤，传留至今，并无人拿的起来。今日哪吒拿起来，射了一箭，只射到骷髅山白骨洞，有一石矶娘娘的门人，名曰碧云童子，携花篮采药，来至山崖之下，被这一箭正中咽喉，翻身倒地而死。少时，只见彩云童子看见碧云中箭而死，急忙报与石矶娘娘曰：“师兄不知何故，箭射咽喉而死。”石矶娘娘听说，走出洞来，行至崖边，看见碧云童儿，果然中箭而死。只见翎花下有名讳“镇陈塘关总兵李靖”字号。石矶娘娘怒曰：“李靖，你不能成道，我在你师父



Nezha walked forward and knelt down. "Father! Mother! You can set your minds at rest. When I asked for help from my master, he told me that it wasn't on my own authority that I was reincarnated here. I was sent down by a decree from the Jade Emptiness Palace on Mount Kunlun. Even if I killed the dragon kings of all the four seas, it would be a trifling matter. My master would take full responsibility for anything really serious. You needn't worry, father," he assured them.

Li Jing had studied the Way, and could understand what Nezha said. Moreover, he realized that since Nezha was able to fly to Heaven and torture Ao Guang at the South Heavenly Gate, he was no ordinary mortal, and must have been sent to the world for a purpose. Madame Yin, however, simply adored her son. Seeing Li Jing still looking angry, she said to Nezha, "Why do you still linger here? Go to the back yard and play."

Nezha went to the back garden as his mother requested, but after sitting there for a while, he felt bored. He left the back garden and mounted the pass wall. He walked up to a tower on top of the wall, intending to enjoy the cool breeze there.

He had never been there before and found the scenery enchanting. The weather was very hot. He saw pedestrians with pearls of sweat on their faces walking under the green willow trees, the sky hanging above them like a burning umbrella. He looked around and noticed a weapon rack with a bow and three arrows. It was the Universal Bow and the Sky Shocking Arrows. Looking at them, he said to himself, "My master told me that I would be in the vanguard in the war against the Shang Dynasty. I shouldn't waste my time. I'll start practicing archery now, especially as I've found a bow and arrows here."

He took the bow and one of the arrows in his hand, put the arrow on the string and shot it towards the southwest. It whistled through the air glowing with red light. Little did Nezha know that this arrow was to bring him even more serious trouble. He had no idea that this was the magic bow and arrows and that no one had had the strength to draw since Sage Emperor Xuanyuan used it to subdue his enemies in ancient times. He simply picked up the bow and shot the arrow into the distance.

It flew to the White Bone Cave on Skeleton Mountain. This was the home of a fairy called Lady Rock, who had two young disciples named Blue Cloud Lad and Pretty Cloud Lad. On that day Blue Cloud Lad was picking medicinal herbs when suddenly an arrow struck him in the throat. The lad fell dead to the ground. When Pretty Cloud Lad found his mate dead, he hurried back and reported the matter to his mistress. Lady Rock rushed to where Blue Cloud Lad was lying dead on the edge of a cliff. She





前着你下山，求人间富贵，你今位至公侯，不思报德，反将箭射我的徒弟，恩将仇报。”叫：“彩云童儿看着洞府，待我拿李靖来，以报此恨。”

石矶娘娘乘青鸾而来，只见金霞荡荡，彩雾纷纷，正是：仙家妙用无穷尽，咫尺青鸾到此关。娘娘在半空中大呼：“李靖出来见我！”李靖不知道是谁人叫，急出来看时，象似石矶娘娘。李靖倒身下拜，“弟子李靖拜见。不知娘娘驾至，有失迎迓，望乞恕罪。”娘娘曰：“你行的好事！尚在此巧语花言。”将八卦云光帕——上面有坎离震兑之宝，包罗万象之珍。——望下一丢，命黄巾力士：“将李靖拿进洞府来！”黄巾力士平空把李靖拿去，至白骨洞放下。娘娘离了青鸾，坐在蒲团之上。力士将李靖拿至面前跪下。石矶娘娘曰：“李靖，你仙道未成，已得人间富贵，你却亏了何人。今不思报本，反起歹意，将我徒弟碧云童儿射死，有何理说？”李靖不知何事，真是平地风波。李靖曰：“娘娘，弟子今得何罪？”娘娘曰：“你恩将仇报，射死我门人，你还故推不知？”李靖曰：“箭在何处？”娘娘命：“取箭来与他看。”李靖看时，却是震天箭。李靖大惊曰：“这乾坤弓，震天箭，乃轩辕皇帝传留，至今镇陈塘关之宝，谁人拿得起来。这是弟子运乖时蹇，异事非常。望娘娘念弟子无辜被枉，冤屈难明，放弟子回关，查明射箭之人，待弟子拿来，以分皂白，庶不冤枉无辜。如无射箭之人，弟子死甘瞑目。”石矶娘娘曰：“既如此，我且放你回去。你若查不出来，我问你师父要你！你且去！”

李靖连箭带回，借土遁来至关前；收了遁法，进了帅



pulled the arrow out, looked at it, and recognized at once that it was a Sky Shocking Arrow.

"The arrow's kept at Chentang Pass and must have been shot by Li Jing. Oh, Li Jing, why are you so ungrateful? When you failed to become an immortal, I recommended that your master allow you to leave the mountain in search of riches and power in the world. Now that you've got a high post you don't try to repay my kindness. Instead, you've shot my disciple and returned my kindness with enmity!" She cried bitterly, then ordered her disciple, "Pretty Cloud Lad, look after the cave. I'm going to bring back Li Jing and take my revenge."

Riding a male phoenix, she sped through the air and soon reached Chentang Pass. "Li Jing, come out to see me at once!"

Li Jing rushed out, and upon seeing Lady Rock, knelt down and kowtowed.

"Your disciple Li Jing kowtows before you. I didn't know you were coming. Please forgive me for not coming out sooner," he apologized.

"You've committed an outrage, yet still try to dupe me with cunning words," Lady Rock snapped sharply.

She threw her Cloud Radiance Handkerchief at Li Jing, and ordered her yellow-scarved genie to wrap him up and take him back to the Skeleton Mountain. Back in the cave, Lady Rock sat down on her rush throne and ordered that Li Jing be brought in. Li Jing knelt before her.

"Li Jing! Though you're unable to become an immortal, you've got wealth and position in the world. Have you considered who this is all due to? Now with no thought to reciprocate my kindness, you've wickedly shot my disciple Blue Cloud Lad! What do you have to say for yourself?"

Not knowing what she was talking about, Li Jing was bewildered, "My Lady, what crime have I committed against you?"

"You returned my grace with enmity and shot my disciple. Why pretend that you don't know?" Lady Rock rebuked him.

"Where's the arrow? Show it to me, please."

When Lady Rock showed him the arrow, he was surprised to find that it was a Sky Shocking Arrow kept in the tower at Chentang Pass.

"The Universal Bow and Sky Shocking Arrows were left by the Sage Emperor Xuanyuan and are treasures of Chentang Pass. No one had been able to draw the bow since ancient times," he cried out in astonishment. "It's my ill-fortune that such an extraordinary thing's happened. I hope you'll realize that I'm innocent. If you let me return to Chentang Pass, I'll find out who the real murderer is and bring him here for your judgment."

"If that's so, I'll let you return home. Should you try to run away, I'll



府。殷夫人不知何故，见李靖平空拎去，正在惊慌之处，李靖回见夫人。夫人曰：“将军为甚事平空摄去？使妾身惊慌无地。”李靖顿足叹曰：“夫人，我李靖居官二十五载，谁知今日运蹇时乖。关上敌楼有乾坤弓，震天箭，乃镇压此关之宝；不知何人将此箭射去，把石矶娘娘徒弟射死。箭上是我官衔，方才被他拿去，要我抵偿性命。被我苦苦哀告，回来访是何人，拿去见他，方能与我明白。”李靖又曰：“若论此弓箭，别人也拿不动，莫非又是哪吒？”夫人曰：“岂有此理！难道敖光事未了，他又敢惹这是非！就是哪吒，也拿不起来。”李靖沉思半晌，计上心来，叫左右侍儿：“请你三公子来。”不一时，哪吒来见，站立一旁。李靖曰：“你说你有师父承当，叫你辅弼明君，你如何不去学习些弓马，后来也好去用力。”哪吒曰：“孩儿奋志如此。才偶在城敌楼上，见弓箭在此，是我射了一箭，只见红光缭绕，紫雾纷霏，把一枝好箭射不见了。”就把李靖气得大叫一声：“好逆子！你打死三太子，事尚未定，今又惹这等无涯之祸！”夫人默默无言。哪吒不知真情，便问：“为何？又有何事？”李靖曰：“你方才一箭，射死石矶娘娘的徒弟。娘娘拿了我去，被我说过，放我回来，寻访射箭之人，原来却是你！你自去见娘娘回话！”哪吒笑曰：“父亲且息怒。石矶娘娘在那里住？他的徒弟在何处？我怎样射死他？平地赖人，其心不服。”李靖说：“石矶娘娘在骷髅山白骨洞，你既射死他徒弟，你去见他！”哪吒曰：“父亲此言有理，同到甚么白骨洞，若还不是我，打他个搅海翻江，我才回来。父亲请先行，孩儿随后。”父子二人驾土遁往骷髅山来：



ask your master to hand you over to me. You may leave now, Li Jing," Lady Rock said mildly.

Carrying the arrow, Li Jing returned home riding on a dust cloud. He reached his headquarters to find Madame Yin in a state of panic.

"Why were you suddenly seized and carried off? I was worried to death," she cried out.

Li Jing sighed and told her all that had happened, then added, "No one else would be strong enough to draw the Universal Bow. Could it have been Nezha again?"

"That's preposterous! How would he dare to create new trouble when the trouble with Ao Guang's still not settled. Besides, I don't think Nezha could draw that bow."

After pondering for a long time, Li Jing came up with an idea. He sent his men to tell Nezha to see him at once. Soon Nezha arrived, bowed and stood quietly before his father.

"Since your master said you're going to help the sage king against King Zhou, why don't you spend your time learning archery and horsemanship?"

"That's what I've always wanted. A minute ago I was on the pass wall, and I found a bow and three arrows in the tower there. I shot one of the arrows. It flew through the air emitting a red light, and then disappeared," Nezha answered.

Li Jing was furious. "You damned unfilial son! You knocked off the third prince and the trouble isn't over yet. But now you've brought this new calamity upon us."

Madame Yin remained silent, and Nezha, not knowing what his father was talking about, was simply puzzled. He asked innocently, "What do you mean? What has happened?"

"This arrow you shot killed one of Lady Rock's disciples. She took me to her cave and was going to put me to death, but I pleaded my innocence. She sent me back to look for the murderer. How could I have guessed it was you! You must go to see Lady Rock and tell her what you've done!"

"Don't be angry, father. Where does she live? Where was her disciple and how could I have shot him? I won't yield if I've been wrongly accused," Nezha said with a smile.

"She lives at the White Bone Cave on Skeleton Mountain. You've shot her disciple, and you'd better go to see her now," Li Jing said.

"You're right, father. I'll go to this White Bone Cave. But if it turns out



箭射金光起，红云照太虚。真人今出世，帝子已安居。  
莫浪夸仙术，须知念玉书。万邪难克正，不免破三军。

话说李靖到了骷髅山，分付哪吒：“站立在此，待我进去，回了娘娘法旨。”哪吒冷笑：“我在那里，平空赖我，看他如何发付我。”且言李靖进洞中，参见娘娘。娘娘曰：“是何人射死碧云童儿？”李靖启娘娘：“就是李靖所生逆子哪吒。弟子不敢有违，已拿在洞府前，听候法旨。”娘娘命彩云童儿：“着他进来！”

只见哪吒看见洞里一人出来，自想：“打人不过先下手。此间是他巢穴，反为不便。”拎起乾坤圈，一下打将来。彩云童儿不曾提防，夹颈一圈，“呵呀”一声，跌倒在地。彩云童儿彼时一命将危。娘娘听得洞外跌得人响，急出洞来，彩云童儿已在地下挣命。娘娘曰：“好孽障！还敢行凶，又伤我徒弟！”哪吒见石矶娘娘带鱼尾金冠，穿大红八卦衣，麻履丝绦，手提太阿剑赶来。哪吒收回圈，复打一圈来。娘娘看是太乙真人的乾坤圈，“呀！原来是你！”娘娘用手接住乾坤圈。哪吒大惊，忙将七尺混天绦来裹娘娘。娘娘大笑，把袍袖望上一迎，只见混天绦轻轻的落在娘娘袖里。娘娘叫：“哪吒，再把你师父的宝贝用几件来，看我道术如何！”哪吒手无寸铁，将何物支持，只得转身就跑。娘娘叫：“李靖，不干你事。你回去罢。”不言李靖回关，且说石矶娘娘赶哪吒，飞云掣电，雨骤风驰，赶彀多时，哪吒只得往乾元山来。到了金光洞，慌忙走进洞门，望师父下拜。真人问曰：“哪吒为何这等慌张？”哪吒曰：“石矶娘娘赖弟子射死他的徒弟，提宝剑前来杀我，把师父的乾坤圈、混天绦都收去了。”



that I'm not the killer, I'll knock her off before I return home. Please lead the way," Nezha answered.

Father and son traveled rapidly on the dust to Skeleton Mountain, where Li Jing told Nezha, "Wait for me here while I go in and report to Lady Rock."

Nezha smiled coldly. "I'll be here. See what she can do with me. She's accused me groundlessly."

Li Jing entered the cave and greeted Lady Rock, who asked him, "Have you found out who shot Blue Cloud Lad?"

"It was my unfilial son Nezha. I've brought him here as you ordered."

Lady Rock instantly ordered Pretty Cloud Lad, "Tell him to come in."

Seeing a man coming out of the cave, Nezha thought, "Since there's going to be a fight, I might as well strike the first blow. This is their nest here, and I'm at a disadvantage. I can't let them get the upper hand."

Catching the lad off his guard, Nezha raised his Universal Ring and struck him on the neck. Seriously wounded, he collapsed onto the ground. Hearing the thud of his fall, Lady Rock rushed out from her cave. She saw Pretty Cloud Lad lying there, close to death. "You vile monster! How dare you hurt my other disciple!" She screamed with rage.

She was wearing a gold fish-tail coronet and silk-belted red robes embroidered with the eight diagrams. When Nezha saw her come at him with a sharp sword, he threw up his Universal Ring to strike her.

Recognizing Fairy Primordial's Universal Ring, Lady Rock cried out in surprise, "Oh, so it's you!" Stretching out her hand, she took the ring.

Nezha was greatly frightened and hastily tossed the Sky Muddling Damask into the air in an attempt to wrap her up. Lady Rock laughed uproariously. Lifting one of her arms, she opened her sleeve and the Sky Muddling Damask dropped gently inside it.

"Nezha, take out some more of your master's magic things and see what my magic is like!"

Left empty-handed, Nezha could do nothing but turn and run for life.

"Li Jing, this has nothing to do with you. You're free and can return home now," Lady Rock called pursuing Nezha with the speed of lightning.

In such a desperate situation, Nezha only knew to flee to Qianyuan Mountain. He rushed into the Golden Light Cave and knelt down before his master.



如今赶弟子不放，现在洞外。弟子没办法，只得求见师父，望乞救命！”太乙真人曰：“你这孽障，且在后桃园内，待我出去看。”真人出来，身倚洞门，只见石矶满面怒色，手提宝剑，恶狠狠赶来，见太乙真人，打稽首，“道兄请了！”太乙真人答礼。石矶曰：“道兄，你的门人仗你道术，射死贫道的碧云童儿，打坏了彩云童子，还将乾坤圈、混天绫来伤我。道兄，好好把哪吒叫他出来见我，还是好面相看，万事俱息；若道兄隐护，只恐明珠弹雀，反为不美。”真人曰：“哪吒在我洞里，要他出来不难，你只到玉虚宫，见吾掌教老师。他教与你，我就与你。哪吒奉御敕钦命出世，辅保明君，非我一己之私。”娘娘笑曰：“道兄差矣！你将教主压我，难道你纵徒弟行凶，杀我的徒弟，还将大言压我。难道我不如你，我就罢了！你听我道来：

道德森森出混元，修成乾建得长存。三花聚顶非闲说，  
五气朝元岂浪言。闲坐苍龙归紫极，喜乘白鹤下昆仑。  
休将教主欺吾党，劫运回环已万源。

话说太乙真人曰：“石矶，你说你的道德清高，你乃截教，吾乃阐教，因吾辈一千五百年不曾斩却三尸，犯了杀戒，故此降生人间，有征诛杀伐，以完此劫数。今成汤合灭，周室当兴，玉虚封神，应享人间富贵。当时三教金押‘封神榜’，吾师命我教下徒众，降生出世，辅佐明君。哪吒乃灵珠子下世，辅姜子牙而灭成汤，奉的是元始掌教符命。就伤了你的徒弟，乃是天数。你怎言包罗万象，迟早飞升。似你等无忧无虑，无辱无荣，正好修持；何故轻动无名，自伤雅道。”石矶娘娘忍不住心头火，喝曰：“道同一理，怎见高低？”太



“Why are you so flustered, Nezha?”

“Lady Rock unjustly accuses me of shooting her disciple and is chasing me, trying to kill me. She’s taken both your Universal Ring and Sky Muddling Damask. She won’t let me alone and is now outside the cave. There’s nothing I can do but beg you to save me, Master,” Nezha cried.

“You poor devil! Take cover in the peach garden at the back. I’ll go out and meet her.”

Fairy Primordial went out and leaned on the door waiting. Soon he saw Lady Rock rushing angrily towards his cave brandishing a sword.

“How are you, Brother!” Lady Rock bowed when she saw the master. “I’ve come to complain that Nezha’s killed one of my disciples and seriously wounded another. He also tried to slay me with the Universal Ring and Sky Muddling Damask. Tell him to come out and see me and the matter can be settled. If you try to protect him, it’ll be the worse for you.”

“Nezha’s in my cave now and I can easily tell him to come out. All you have to do is go to the Jade Emptiness Palace and get an order from my Grand Master. Nezha was reincarnated in this world by his order to support the sage king of the Zhou Dynasty. I’m not acting out of selfish considerations.”

Lady Rock smiled. “You’re wrong, Brother. How can you force your Grand Master on me? Don’t bully me with your words. You must realize that I’m not inferior to you in the least.”

“Lady Rock, though you’re of Jie Taoism and I of Chan, we come from the same source. We of Chan Taoism cannot purge ourselves of desire although we’ve studied the Way for 1,500 years. We’re fated to break the commandment on killing and have thus been sent down into the world and meet our fate.

“As we all can see, the Shang Dynasty is destined to fall and the Zhou Dynasty will rise to replace. Jiang Ziya will create gods on behalf of the Jade Emptiness Palace and enjoy wealth and power in the world. To this end, not long ago the chiefs of the three religions drew up the List of Creations. I was instructed by my Grand Master to send all my disciples down to the world to join in the war. Nezha’s the reincarnation of the Pearl Spirit, and by order of the Jade Emptiness Palace he’ll help Jiang Ziya found the new dynasty. All that he’s done is destined by fate. Though your disciple has died, he’s to be created a god sooner or later. You need





乙真人曰：“道虽一理，各有所陈。你且听吾分割：

交光日月炼金英，一颗灵珠透室明。摆动乾坤知道力，  
避移生死见功成。逍遥四海留踪迹，归在三清立姓名。

直上五云云路稳，紫鸾殊鹤自来迎。”

石矶娘娘大怒，手执宝剑望真人劈面砍来。太乙真人让过，抽身复入洞中，取剑挂在手上，暗袋一物，望东昆仑山下拜，“弟子今在此山开了杀戒。”拜罢，出洞指石矶曰：“你根源浅薄，道行难坚，怎敢在我乾元山自恃凶暴！”石矶又一剑砍来。太乙真人用剑架住，口称：“善哉！”——石矶乃一顽石成精，采天地灵气，受日月精华，得道数千年，尚未成正果；今逢大劫，本像难存，故到此山。一则石矶数尽；二则哪吒该在此处出身。天数已定，怎能躲避。石矶娘娘与太乙真人往来冲突，翻腾数转，二剑交架，未及数合，只见云彩辉辉，石矶娘娘将八卦龙须帕丢起空中，欲伤真人。真人笑曰：“万邪岂能侵正。”真人口中念念有词，用手一指，“此物不落，更待何时？”八卦帕落将下来。石矶大怒，脸变桃花，剑如雪片。太乙真人曰：“事到其间，不得不行。”真人将身一跃，跳出圈子外来，将九龙神火罩抛起空中。石矶见罩，欲避不出，已罩在里面。

且说哪吒看见师父用此物罩了石矶，叹曰：“早将此物传我，也不费许多力气。”哪吒出洞来见师父。太乙真人回头，看见徒弟来，“呀！这顽皮，他看见此罩，毕竟要了。但如今他还用不着，待子牙拜将之后，方可传他。”真人忙叫：“哪吒，你快去！四海龙君奏准玉帝，来拿你父母了。”哪吒听得此言，满眼垂泪，恳求真人曰：“望师父慈悲弟子一



know neither worry nor sorrow, neither glory nor humiliation. Why get so emotional and cause a setback in your advance?"

Lady Rock could not control her wrath. "Though we both study the Way, we must find out which is the superior and which the inferior."

"Though we're of the same source, our achievements differ. Don't you think so?" Fairy Primordial said. "I've so refined my spirit under the sun and moon that it's like a pearl now, bright and sparkling. I've magic powers to shake Heaven and earth, and have escaped the cycle of life and death. I've left my footprints over all the four seas. As such I've in this way gained everlasting fame for my accomplishments. Clouds are firm under my feet, and purple divine phoenixes and vermilion cranes meet me where I travel."

This haughty lecture made Lady Rock even more furious. She rushed at him and slashed at his face with her sword, but he evaded the blow and dodged back into his cave. Taking up his sword and a secret weapon, he kowtowed in the direction of the Kunlun Mountain.

"Forgive me, Master, for your disciple will break the commandment on killing on this mountain today," he prayed, then coming out of his cave again, he said, "Your learning's superficial, but how dare you make trouble here on my mountain!"

Lady Rock slashed at him again, and Fairy Primordial parried the blow with his sword crying, "Heaven forbid!" Lady Rock was an uncut rock, but for centuries she had been refining herself with essences from the sun and moon and Heaven and earth, until she had obtained magic powers and human form. But she was not yet an immortal, and so could not avoid the disaster brought about by her rash temper. After a few rounds she threw her Dragon Beard Handkerchief into the air to capture her enemy.

"How can the evil ever conquer the good!" Fairy Primordial said with a smile. He muttered an incantation and pointed at the handkerchief, which dropped to the ground.

Lady Rock was furious. She swung her sword wildly at Fairy Primordial, who leapt out of range and tossed his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet into the air. It landed neatly on Lady Rock before she had the chance to run away. Glancing towards the cave, Fairy Primordial found that Nezha had stolen out to watch their combat and had taken a great fancy to the wonderful Divine Fire Coverlet. But Fairy Primordial refused to give it to him.



双父母!子作灾殃,遗累父母,其心何安。”道罢,放声大哭。真人见哪吒如此,乃附耳曰:“……如此如此。可救你父母之厄。”哪吒叩谢,借土遁往陈塘关来。不表。

且说太乙真人罩了石矶,石矶在罩内不知东西南北。真人用两手一拍,那罩内腾腾焰起,烈烈光生,九条火龙盘绕——此乃三昧神火烧炼石矶。一声雷响,把娘娘真形炼出,乃是一块顽石。此石生于天地玄黄之外,经过地水火风,炼成精灵;今日天数已定,合于此地而死,故现其真形。此是太乙真人该开杀戒。真人收了神火罩,又收乾坤圈、混天绫,进洞。不表。

且说哪吒飞奔陈塘关来,只见帅府前人声扰攘。众家将见公子来了,忙报李靖曰:“公子回来了。”四海龙王敖光、敖顺、敖明、敖吉正看间,只见哪吒厉声叫曰:“‘一人行事一人当’,我打死敖丙、李艮,我当偿命,岂有子连累父母之理!”乃对敖光曰:“我一身非轻,乃灵珠子是也。奉玉虚符命,应运下世。我今日剖腹、剜肠、剔骨肉,还于父母,不累双亲。你们意下如何?如若不肯,我同你齐到灵霄殿见天王,我自有话说。”敖光听见此言,“也罢,你既如此,救你父母,也有孝名。”四龙王便放了李靖夫妇。哪吒便右手提剑,先去一臂膊,后自剖其腹,剜肠剔骨,散了七魄三魂,一命归泉。四龙王据哪吒之言回旨。不表。

殷夫人见哪吒尸骸,用棺木盛了埋葬。不表。

且说哪吒魂无所依,魄无所倚——他元是宝贝化现,借了精血,故有魂魄。哪吒飘飘荡荡,随风而至,径到乾元山来。不知后事如何,且听下回分解。



“You must return home right now. The Jade Emperor has already approved the request made by the four dragon kings and has sent his guards to arrest your parents!” the immortal told Nezha, who burst into loud sobs and begged him to think of a way out of the trouble. Fairy Primordial told him what he must do to save them and Nezha rode back on a dust cloud to Chentang Pass.

When Nezha had gone, Fairy Primordial clapped his hands and a fierce fire immediately began to rage within his magic coverlet. Nine fire dragons twisted and coiled upon Lady Rock, burning her until she resumed her original form — a huge uncut rock.

Meanwhile, Nezha had arrived back home and found the house in an uproar. He confronted the four dragon kings. “I assume full responsibility for what I’ve done and shall pay with my life. My parents are in no way involved,” he announced.

He drew his sword, first cut off his own left arm, then cut open his belly, gouged out his intestines and broke his own bones. He died soon afterwards, and his soul floated on the wind until it reached Qianyuan Mountain.

If you want to know what happened next, you must read the next chapter.





## 第十四回

### 哪吒现莲花化身

诗曰：

仙家法力妙难量，起死回生有异方。一粒丹砂归命宝；  
几根荷叶续魂汤。超凡不用肮脏骨，入圣须寻返魄香。  
从此开疆归圣主，岐周事业借匡襄。

且说金霞童儿进洞来，启太乙真人曰：“师兄杳杳冥冥，飘飘荡荡，随风定止，不知何故。”真人听说，早解其意，忙出洞来。真人分付哪吒：“此处非汝安身之所。你回到陈塘关，托一梦与你母亲，离关四十里，有一翠屏山，山上有一空地，令你母亲造一座哪吒行宫，你受香烟三载，又可立于人间，辅佐真主。可速去，不得迟悞！”哪吒听说，离了乾元山往陈塘关来。正值三更时分，哪吒来到香房，叫：“母亲，孩儿乃哪吒也。如今我魂魄无栖，望母亲念为儿死得好苦，离此四十里，有一翠屏山上，与孩儿建立行宫，使我受些香烟，好去托生天界。孩儿感母亲之慈德甚于天渊。”夫人醒来，却是一梦。夫人大哭。李靖问曰：“夫人为何啼哭？”夫人把梦中事说了一遍。李靖大怒曰：“你还哭他！他害我们不浅。常言‘梦随心生’，只因你思想他，便有许多梦魂颠倒，不必疑惑。”夫人不言。且说次日又来托梦；三日又来。夫人合上眼，殿下就站立面前。不觉五七日之后，哪吒他生前性格勇猛，死后魂魄也是骁雄，遂对母亲曰：“我求



## Chapter 14

### Reincarnation with Lotus Flowers

Golden Haze Lad rushed into the cave. "My fellow disciple's floating about on the wind. He seems to be quite out of control. I don't know what's happened."

Fairy Primordial immediately realized what had happened and hurried out of the cave. "This is no place for you to stay," he told Nezha's soul. "It would be better for you to return to Chentang Pass. Visit your mother in a dream and ask her to build a temple for you on Jade Screen Mountain, about forty *li* from the pass. When you've been worshiped with incense and candles for three years, you'll be reincarnated into human form again, so that you can assist the sage king to found the new dynasty. Go quickly and don't delay."

Nezha left Qianyuan Mountain and went straight to Chentang Pass. In the early hours of the morning, he entered his parents' bed chamber and said, "Dear mother, I'm Nezha. I'm dead now, and have no place to rest my soul. Please take pity on me and build a temple for me on Jade Screen Mountain. If my soul is worshiped, I'll be able to go to Heaven. Your kindness will be appreciated forever."

Madame Yin woke startled from her sleep and wept bitterly. She told Li Jing all that had happened, but Li Jing was furious.

"Why should you weep for him? Haven't you suffered enough because of Nezha? It's often said that a dream is the product of the day's thinking. You must have been thinking of him during the day. You don't need to worry about it!" Li Jing dismissed the dream lightly.

Madame Yin didn't answer. But on the following night, she dreamt of Nezha again, and yet again the third night. As soon as she closed her eyes, she saw Nezha standing before her, making the same request.

Nezha had a fiery temper when he was alive, and had not changed after his death. After five or six days, Nezha said roughly to his mother,







你数日，你全不念孩儿苦死，不肯造行宫与我，我便吵你个六宅不安！”夫人醒来，不敢对李靖说。夫人暗着心腹人，与些银两，往翠屏山兴工破土，起建行宫，造哪吒神像一座，旬月功完。哪吒在此翠屏山显圣，感动万民，千请千灵，万请万应，因此庙宇轩昂，十分齐整。但见：

行宫八字粉墙开，硃户铜环左右排。碧瓦雕檐三尺水，数株桧柏两重台。神厨宝座金妆就，龙凤幡幢瑞色裁。帐幔悬钩吞半月，狰狞鬼判立尘埃。沉檀袅袅烟结凤，逐日纷纷祭祀来。

哪吒在翠屏山显圣，四方远近居民，俱来进香，纷纷如蚁，日盛一日，往往不断。祈福禳灾，无不感应。不觉乌飞兔走，似箭光阴，半载有余。

且说李靖因东伯姜文焕为父报仇，调四十万人马，游魂关大战窦荣，荣不能取胜。李靖在野马岭操演三军，紧守关隘。一日回兵往翠屏山过，李靖在马上看见往来来来，扶老携幼，进香男女，纷纷似蚁，人烟凑积。李靖在马上问曰：“这山乃翠屏山，为何男女纷纷，络绎不绝？”军政官对曰：“半年前，有一神道在此感应显圣，千请千灵，万请万应，祈福福至，禳患患除；故此惊动四方男女进香。”李靖听罢，想起来，问中军官：“此神何姓何名？”中军回曰：“是哪吒行宫。”李靖大怒，传令：“安营！待我上山进香。”人马站立，李靖纵马往山上来进香，男女闪开。李靖纵马径至庙前，只见庙门高悬一扁，书“哪吒行宫”四字。进得庙来，见哪吒形相如生，左右站立鬼判。李靖指而骂曰：“畜生！你生前扰害父母，死后愚弄百姓！”骂罢，提六陈鞭，一鞭把



"I've begged for several days already, yet you've completely ignored me! If you don't do as I ask I'll trouble you all the time, making it impossible for the family to live in peace."

After the last dream, Madame Yin didn't have the courage to tell Li Jing but sent a trusted servant directly to Jade Screen Mountain to build a temple. The construction was finished in ten months.

It was a magnificent structure, surrounded by a high white wall. Fir and pine trees were planted both inside and out. Its vermilion gates were fixed with brass ring knockers, while the roofs were beautifully laid with blue-green tiles. Inside the main hall Nezha's image was seated on a pedestal of shining gold, while the silk curtains around it were embroidered with phoenixes and dragons. On either side of Nezha stood the images of secretaries and guards.

Nezha manifested his divine virtue to all people, answered all their prayers and helped them meet their needs. This attracted a steady stream of people from far and near to worship at the temple. Half a year passed in peace and prosperity.

Meanwhile, East Grand Duke Jiang Wenhuan had been leading attacks against Youhun Pass, and General Dou Rong was unable to subdue him. As a result, Li Jing took measures to strengthen this defence and train the soldiers day and night.

One day, when the training was over at Wild Horse Mountain, Li Jing passed Jade Screen Mountain on his way home and was surprised to see all kinds of people, young and old, male and female, passing back and forth before him.

"What are all these people doing here?" he asked his men.

"About six months ago a god appeared here. He grants every request made of him, gives blessings when asked, and answers prayers when there are disasters. The god's loved and attracts worshipers from all over," one of them replied.

"What's the name of this god?"

"God Nezha."

Li Jing was furious. "Halt the army here for a while. I'll go up and have a look," he ordered.

Galloping up the mountain, when he got to the temple he saw a horizontal board on the gate inscribed with "The Temple of God Nezha." He entered and found a lifelike image of his son standing between images of secretaries and guards.



哪吒金身打的粉碎。李靖怒发，复一脚蹬倒鬼判。传令：“放火，烧了庙宇。”分付进香万民曰：“此非神也，不许进香。”吓得众人忙忙下山。李靖上马，怒气不息。有诗为证，诗曰：

雄兵才至翠屏疆，忽见黎民日进香。鞭打金身为粉碎，  
脚蹬鬼判也遭殃。火焚庙宇腾腾焰，烟透长空烈烈光。

只因一气冲牛斗，父子参商有战场。

话说李靖兵进陈塘关帅府下马，传令：“将人马散了。”李靖进后厅，殷夫人接见。李靖骂曰：“你生的好儿子，还遗害我不少，今又替他造行宫，煽惑良民。你要把我这条玉带送了才罢！如今权臣当道，况我不与费仲、尤浑二人交接，倘有人传至朝歌，奸臣参我假降邪神，白白的断送我数载之功。这样事俱是你妇人所为！今日我已烧毁庙宇。你若再与他起造，那时我也不与你好休！”

且不言李靖；再表哪吒那一日出神，不在行宫；及至回来，只见庙宇无存，山红土赤，烟焰未灭，两个鬼判，含泪来接。哪吒问曰：“怎的来？”鬼判答曰：“是陈塘关李总兵突然上山，打碎金身，烧毁行宫，不知何故。”哪吒曰：“我与你无干了，骨肉还于父母，你如何打我金身，烧我行宫，令我无处栖身？”心上甚是不快。沉思良久，“不若还往乾元山走一遭。”哪吒受了半年香烟，已觉有些形声，一时到了高山，至于洞府。金霞童儿引哪吒见太乙真人。真人曰：“你不在行宫接受香火，你又来这里做甚么？”哪吒跪诉前情：“被父亲将泥身打碎，烧毁行宫。弟子无所依倚，只得来见师父，望祈怜救。”真人曰：“这就是李靖的不是。他既还了



“You beast! You brought suffering to your parents when you were alive and cheat the people when dead,” Li Jing swore. He whipped and smashed the image and kicked the secretaries off their pedestals. “Set the temple on fire!” he ordered his men, then told the worshipers, “He’s not a real god. You mustn’t worship him any more.”

Thoroughly frightened, they left the place. Li Jing mounted his horse and returned home, his anger unabated. He dismissed his men and entered the back hall to see his wife.

“The son you bore gave me enough trouble already. How could you have built that temple for him to deceive the public?” he reprimanded her. “You won’t be satisfied until I’m dismissed from my post! You know that Fei Zhong and You Hun control the court, and I’ve never associated with them. Should anyone report to Zhaoge what you did I would certainly be impeached for encouraging the worship of a false god and would be dealt with seriously. All my years of service would come to nothing. How could you do anything so thoughtlessly! I’ve already burnt down his temple, and I forbid you to rebuild it. I won’t forgive you if you repeat your mistake.”

On that day, Nezha’s soul was not in the temple. When he returned at dusk, he was astonished to find it burnt down. The surrounding land was still smouldering and dense smoke filled the air. Two of his secretaries came forward in tears.

“What happened?”

“Commander Li Jing of Chentang Pass broke your golden image and set fire to the temple. We’ve got no idea why,” the secretaries answered.

“Oh, Li Jing! There’s no longer any relationship between us. I’ve already returned my flesh and bones to you. How could you smash my image and burn my temple, leaving me no place to live?” Nezha cried in annoyance.

He pondered for a long time, and decided to go to Qianyuan Mountain and ask his master to deal with the problem. After months of worship by the people, he had regained some shape and voice. He soon reached the mountain and was led into the cave by Golden Haze Lad.

“Why do you come here? Why don’t you stay in your temple?” Fairy Primordial asked him.

Nezha knelt down and told him what had happened and begged his master to save him.

“Li Jing, you’ve acted wrongly. Nezha returned his flesh and bones to you, and has made no trouble on Jade Screen Mountain, yet you’ve



父母骨肉，他在翠屏山上，与你无干；今使他不受香火，如何成得身体。况姜子牙下山已快。也罢，既为你，就与你做件好事。”叫金霞童儿：“把五莲池中莲花摘二枝，荷叶摘三个来。”童子忙忙取了荷叶、莲花，放于地下。真人将花勒下瓣儿，铺成三才，又将荷叶梗儿折成三百骨节，三个荷叶，按上、中、下，按天、地、人。真人将一粒金丹放于居中，法用先天，气运九转，分离龙、坎虎，绰住哪吒魂魄，望荷、莲里一推，喝声：“哪吒不成人形，更待何时！”只听响一声，跳起一个人来，面如傅粉，唇似涂朱，眼运精光，身長一丈六尺，此乃哪吒莲花化身，见师父拜倒在地。真人曰：“李靖毁打泥身之事，其实伤心。”哪吒曰：“师父在上，此仇决难干休！”真人曰：“你随我桃园里来。”真人传哪吒火尖枪，不一时已自精熟。哪吒就要下山报仇。真人曰：“枪法好了，赐你脚踏风火二轮，另授灵符秘诀。”真人又付豹皮囊，囊中放乾坤圈、混天绦、金砖一块，“你往陈塘关去走一遭。”哪吒叩首，拜谢师父，上了风火轮，两脚踏定，手提火尖枪，径往关上来。诗曰：

两朵莲花现化身，灵珠二世出凡尘。手提紫焰蛇矛宝；  
脚踏金霞风火轮。豹皮囊内安天下；红锦绦中福世民。  
历代圣人为第一，史官遗笔万年新。

话说哪吒来到陈塘关，径进关来至帅府，大呼曰：“李靖早来见我！”有军政官报入府内：“外面有三公子，脚踏风火二轮，手提火尖枪，口称老爷姓讳，不知何故，请老爷定夺。”李靖喝曰：“胡说！人死岂有再生之理！”言未了，只见又一起人来报：“老爷如出去迟了，便杀进府来！”李靖大



smashed his image, and made it impossible for him to be reincarnated," the immortal thought. "Time's short, and Jiang Ziya will come down soon. Nezha must be there to cooperate with him. I must do something to help Nezha." He ordered Golden Haze Lad, "Go to the lotus pond and pick two lotus flowers and three lotus leaves for me at once!"

Golden Haze Lad brought the flowers and leaves and placed them on the floor. Fairy Primordial pulled all the petals off and arranged them in three piles: top, middle and bottom. Then he broke the stems into 300 pieces to represent the 300 bones. Finally, he put a lotus leaf on each of the three groups of lotus petals to represent heaven, earth and man. When this was done, he placed a grain of golden elixir in the center and worked his own vital energies into them. Then he grasped Nezha's soul and threw it into the petals, leaves and stems. "What are you waiting for, Nezha? Look, you're a man already," he cried.

There was a tremendous bang, and a boy leapt up before Fairy Primordial. He was young and dashing, with a handsome white face, red lips, shining eyes and a sturdy body sixteen feet tall. Nezha, now reincarnated from lotus flowers, kowtowed to Fairy Primordial in gratitude.

"It was really terrible of Li Jing to have smashed your image in the temple!" His master said to him sympathetically.

"Master, I cannot forgive him. I must take revenge," Nezha said with emotion.

"Come with me to the peach garden, Nezha."

In an open space in the peach garden, Fairy Primordial handed Nezha his Fire-Tip Lance and taught him how to use it. Nezha completely mastered the weapon in a short time, and then made ready to leave Qianyuan Mountain to take his revenge on Li Jing.

"Besides the Fire-Tip Lance, I'll give you two Wind-Fire Wheels. When you stand on them, they'll carry you wherever you wish to go at a fantastic speed. I'll tell you the spells and you can use them as you like," the master said, handing him a leopard-skin bag with the Universal Ring, the Sky Muddling Damask and a gold brick. Bidding Nezha farewell, he said, "You may go to Chentang Pass now."

Nezha kowtowed and thanked him. He then took the Fire-Tip Lance, rode off on the Wind-Fire Wheels and soon arrived at Chentang Pass.

"Li Jing! Come out to see me at once," Nezha shouted loudly.

The guard at the gate rushed in. "The young master's outside. He's riding on a pair of Wind-Fire Wheels and brandishing a Fire-Tip Lance. He demands that you see him."

"Rubbish!" shouted Li Jing. "How can a dead man come alive again."



怒，“有这样事！”忙提画戟，上了青骢，出得府来。见哪吒脚踏风火二轮，手提火尖枪，比前大不相同。李靖大惊，问曰：“你这畜生！你生前作怪，死后还魂，又来这这里缠扰！”哪吒曰：“李靖！我骨肉已交还与你，我与你无相干碍，你为何往翠屏山鞭打我的金身，火烧我的行宫？今日拿你，报一鞭之恨！”把枪晃一晃，劈脑刺来。李靖将画戟相迎。轮马盘旋，戟枪并举。哪吒力大无穷，三五合把李靖杀的马仰人翻，力尽筋输，汗流脊背。李靖只得望东南避走。哪吒大叫曰：“李靖休想今番饶你！不杀你决不空回！”往前赶来。不多时，看看赶上。——哪吒的风火轮快，李靖马慢。李靖心下着慌，只得下马，借土遁去了。哪吒笑曰：“五行之术，道家平常，难道你土遁去了，我就饶你！”把脚一登，驾起风火二轮，只见风火之声，如飞云掣电，望前追赶。李靖自思：“今番赶上，被他一枪刺死，如之奈何？”李靖见哪吒看看至近，正在两难之际，忽然听得有人作歌而来，歌曰：

“清水池边明月，绿杨堤畔桃花。别是一般清味，凌空几片飞霞。”

李靖看时，见一道童，顶着鬚巾，道袍大袖，麻履丝绦，来者乃九公山白鹤洞普贤真人徒弟木吒是也。木吒曰：“父亲，孩儿在此。”李靖看时，乃是次子木吒，心下方安。哪吒驾轮正赶，见李靖同一道童讲话。哪吒落下轮来。木吒上前，大喝一声：“慢来！你这孽障好大胆！子杀父，忤逆乱伦。早早回去，饶你不死！”哪吒曰：“你是何人，口出大言？”木吒曰：“你连我也认不得！吾乃木吒是也。”哪吒方知是二哥，忙叫曰：“二哥，你不知其详。”哪吒把翠屏山的事细细说了



As he spoke, several more guards rushed in. "If you don't go out quickly, he'll fight his way into your living quarters."

Li Jing was furious. He grabbed his halberd, leapt on his horse and galloped out of his headquarters. He was astonished to see Nezha with his Wind-Fire Wheels and Fire-Tip Lance. He swore loudly, "You damned beast! You caused us endless suffering before your death and now that you've been reborn, you're troubling us again!"

"Li Jing! I returned my flesh and bones to you, and there's no longer any relationship between us. Why did you smash my golden image with your whip and burn down my temple on Jade Screen Mountain? Today I must take my revenge."

He thrust at Li Jing's face, and Li Jing hurriedly parried the blow with his halberd. They fought vigorously. But Nezha had marvelous strength, and after four or five rounds, Li Jing was exhausted. Abandoning the fight, he fled towards the southeast.

"Li Jing! I won't let you off. I won't stop until I've taken your life!" Nezha screamed after him.

As the Wind-Fire Wheels were much faster than Li Jing's grey horse, Nezha soon caught up with him. Panic-stricken, Li Jing jumped down from his horse and mounted a dust cloud.

"There's nothing special for a Taoist to ride invisibly on the five elements. You don't believe you'll get rid of me by riding on the dust, do you?" Nezha said with a smile and rode his Wind-Fire Wheels even faster in pursuit.

Li Jing was frightened. "He'll overtake me soon and kill me with his lance. What shall I do?"

Just at this critical moment, he heard someone approaching, singing a song:

The moon shines o'er the clear still waters,  
On the bank peach flowers and willows grow.  
This is a scene of no ordinary beauty,  
High in the sky, the dawn clouds glow.

He saw a young Taoist, and immediately recognized to be his second son, Muzha, disciple of the Immortal Universal Virtue.

"Father, Muzha's here." Seeing him, Li Jing felt relieved. As Nezha rushed up, Muzha moved forward to meet him.

"Stop, you wretch! To murder your father is a capital crime. I'll spare your life only if you leave here at once," he threatened.

"Who are you that dares brag so?"

"You don't even recognize me! I'm your elder brother Muzha."





一遍，“……这个是李靖的是，是我的是？”木吒大喝曰：“胡说！天下无有不是的父母！”哪吒又把“剖腹、刳肠，已将骨肉还他了，我与他无干，还有什么父母之情！”木吒大怒曰：“这等逆子！”将手中剑望哪吒一剑砍来。哪吒枪架住曰：“木吒，我与你无仇，你站开了，待吾拿李靖报仇。”木吒大喝：“好孽障！焉敢大逆！”提剑来取。哪吒道：“这是大数造定，将生替死。”手中枪劈面交还。轮步交加，弟兄大战。哪吒见李靖站立一旁，又恐走了他，哪吒性急，将枪挑开剑，用手取金砖望空打来。木吒不堤防，一砖正中后心，打了一交，跌在地下。哪吒登轮来取李靖。李靖抽身就跑。哪吒叫曰：“就赶到海岛，也取你首级来，方泄吾恨！”李靖望前飞走，真似失林飞鸟，漏网游鱼，莫知东南西北。往前又赶多时，李靖见事不好，自叹曰：“罢！罢！罢！想我李靖前生不知作甚孽障，致使仙道未成，又生出这等冤愆。也是合该如此，不若自己将刀戟刺死，免受此子之辱。”正待动手，只见一人叫曰：“李将军切不要动手，贫道来！”信口作歌，歌曰：

“野外清风拂柳，池中水面飘花。借问安居何地？白云深处为家。”

作歌者乃五龙山云霄洞文殊广法天尊，手执拂尘而来。李靖看见，口称：“老师救末将之命！”天尊曰：“你进洞去，我这里等他。”少刻，哪吒雄赳赳、气昂昂，脚踏风火轮，持枪赶至。看见一道者，怎生模样：

双抓髻，云分霭霭；水合袍，紧束丝绦。仙风道骨任逍遥，腹隐许多玄妙。玉虚宫元始门下，群仙首曾赴蟠



Learning that it was his brother, Nezha hastily said, "Second brother, you don't know the details of what's happened." He told Muzha the whole story, then asked, "Who is right, Li Jing or I?"

"Parents are always right on matters concerning their children!"

"But don't you know that I returned my flesh and bones to him! No relationship exists between us as father and son now," Nezha argued.

At this, Muzha flew into a rage, and cursing him as an unfilial son, slashed at Nezha with his sword. Nezha parried the blow with his lance.

"Muzha! There's no bad feeling between us. Stand back and let me take my revenge on Li Jing."

Muzha swore angrily, "You damned wretch! How dare you be so perverse!"

As Muzha aimed another blow, Nezha sighed. "Things are destined by fate. He's willing to substitute death for life."

He returned the blow with a thrust of his Fire-Tip Lance. Though engaged with his brother, Nezha's mind was on his father. Worried that he might run away, he parried Muzha's blow, took the gold brick from his bag and threw it straight at Muzha. Caught off guard, Muzha was struck on the back and fell to the ground. Nezha turned to Li Jing, who took flight at once.

"Even if you run to the seaside or to an island, I'll get you," Nezha taunted with a laugh.

Li Jing sped along wildly, not knowing whether he was going east, west, south or north. After he had run for a long time, he was exhausted.

"Enough! Enough! I don't know what dreadful sin I must have committed in my previous incarnation that I first failed to become an immortal and then produced such a wicked son. I'd better kill myself so as to avoid further humiliation!" he decided, and was reaching for his weapon when he heard someone call him.

"General Li, stop! I'm coming now," a voice said, and then began to sing:

Warm winds caress the willow trees,  
And on the pool sweet petals float.  
You ask me where it is I dwell,  
I answer "In white clouds remote."

It was Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture. He approached swiftly with a duster in his hand.

Li Jing cried out, "Master, save my life, I beg of you!"

"Go into my cave at once. I'll wait for him here," the immortal said.



桃。全凭五气炼成豪，天皇氏修仙养道。

话说哪吒看见一道人站立山坡上，又不见李靖。哪吒问曰：“那道者可曾看见一将过去？”天尊曰：“方才李将军进我云霄洞里去了。你问他怎的？”哪吒曰：“道者，他是我的对头。你好好放他出洞来，与你干休；若走了李靖，就是你替他戳三枪。”天尊曰：“你是何人？这等狠，连我也要戳三枪。”

哪吒不知那道人是何等人，便叫曰：“吾乃乾元山金光洞太乙真人徒弟哪吒是也。你不可小觑了我。”天尊说：“自不曾听见有甚么太乙真人徒弟叫做哪吒！你在别处撒野便罢了，我这所在撒不的野。若撒一撒野，便拿去桃园内，吊三年，打二百扁拐。”哪吒那里晓得好歹，将枪一展，就刺天尊。天尊抽身就往本洞跑。哪吒踏轮来赶。天尊回头，看见哪吒来的近了，袖中取一物，名曰“遁龙桩”，又名“七宝金莲”，望空丢起。只见风生四野，云雾迷空，播土扬尘，落来有声，把哪吒昏沉沉不知南北，黑惨惨怎认东西，颈项套一个金圈，两只腿两个金圈，靠着黄邓邓金柱子站着。哪吒及睁眼看时，把身子动不得了。天尊曰：“好孽障！撒的好野！”唤金吒：“把扁拐取来！”金吒忙取扁拐，至天尊面前禀曰：“扁拐在此。”天尊曰：“替我打！”金吒领师命，持扁拐把哪吒一顿扁拐，打的三昧真火七窍齐喷。天尊曰：“且住了。”同金吒进洞去了。哪吒暗想：“赶李靖到不曾赶上，到被他打了一顿扁拐，又走不得。”哪吒切齿深恨，没办法，只得站立此间，气冲牛斗。——看官：这个是太乙真人明明送哪吒到此磨他杀性。真人已知此情。哪吒正烦恼时，只见那壁厢大袖宽袍，丝绦麻履，乃太乙真人来也。哪吒看见，



A few moments later, Nezha sped up militantly on his Wind-Fire Wheels. He stopped, spotting the Taoist standing on a slope but no sign of Li Jing.

"Master, have you seen a general pass by?"

"General Li Jing's just gone into my cave. Why do you ask?"

"Master, he's my enemy. You'd better tell him to come out. This matter has nothing to do with you, but if you help him get away, I'll give you a taste of my lance in his place," Nezha said harshly.

"Who are you? Why are you so ferocious as to threaten even me?"

Nezha had no idea who the Taoist was. He answered haughtily, "I'm a disciple of Fairy Primordial on Qianyuan Mountain. My name's Nezha. I'm not to be trifled with!"

"I've never heard of Fairy Primordial's disciple. This isn't the place for you to be blustering about. If you don't behave yourself I'll take you to the peach garden, give you 300 strokes with the cane and hang you there for three years."

Not knowing what was good for him, Nezha lunged at Heavenly Master, who turned and ran towards his cave with Nezha chased close behind. The immortal took out the magic Dragon Bound Stake from his sleeve and threw it into the air. In an instant, fierce winds sprang up, fog filled the sky, and dust billowed through the air. Nezha began to feel faint and his mind became confused. Before he knew what was happening, he found himself tightly bound to a golden stake by golden rings around his neck, arms and legs, unable to move an inch.

The Heavenly Master walked up. "Enough of your impudence, you wicked brat!" he cursed, and then told Jinzha, Nezha's eldest brother, "Fetch me a cane." When it was brought, the Heavenly Master ordered, "Beat him for me."

Jinzha did as he was ordered and gave Nezha a severe beating. After quite a long while, the Heavenly Master said, "All right, that's enough" and the two returned to the cave together.

"What's going on? I not only failed to get Li Jing, but I got myself caught and beaten black and blue in the bargain!" Nezha thought. He gnashed his teeth in fury but could do nothing but wait quietly outside the cave.

Fairy Primordial had planned all this meaning to temper Nezha's violent nature. As Nezha was fuming with rage, he saw his master arrive at High Cloud Cave.

"Master! Master! Please save me," Nezha cried loudly, but Fairy Pri-



叫曰：“师父！望乞救弟子一救！”连叫数声，真人不理，径进洞去了。有白云童儿报曰：“太乙真人在此。”天尊迎出洞来，对真人携手笑曰：“你的徒弟，叫我教训。”他二仙坐下。太乙真人曰：“贫道因他杀戒重了，故送他来磨其真性；孰知果获罪于天尊。”天尊命金吒：“放了哪吒来。”金吒走到哪吒面前道：“你师父叫你。”哪吒曰：“你明明的奈何我，你弄甚么障眼法儿，把我动展不得？你还来消遣我！”金吒笑曰：“你闭了目。”哪吒只得闭着眼。金吒将灵符画毕，收了遁龙桩；哪吒急待看时，其圈、桩俱不见了。哪吒点头道：“好，好，好，今日吃了无限大亏，且进洞去，见了师父，再做处置。”二人进洞来。哪吒看见打他的道人在左边，师父在右边。太乙真人曰：“过来，与你师伯叩头！”哪吒不敢违拗师命，只得下拜。哪吒道：“谢打了。”转身又拜师父。太乙真人叫：“李靖过来。”李靖倒身下拜。真人曰：“翠屏山之事，你也不该心量窄小，故此父子参商。”哪吒在旁只气的面如火发，恨不的吞了李靖才好。二仙早解其意。真人曰：“从今父子再不许犯颜。”分付李靖：“你先去罢。”李靖谢了真人，径出来了。就把哪吒急的敢怒而不敢言，只在旁边抓耳揉腮，长吁短叹。真人暗笑，曰：“哪吒，你也回去罢。好生看守洞府。我与你师伯下棋，一时就来。”哪吒听见此言，心花儿也开了。哪吒曰：“弟子晓得。”忙忙出洞，踏起风火二轮，追赶李靖。往前赶有多时，哪吒看是李靖前边驾着土遁，大叫：“李靖休走，我来了！”李靖看见，叫苦曰：“这道者可为失言！既先着我来，就不该放他下山，方是为我。今没多时，便放他来赶我，这正是为人不终，怎生奈



mordial took no notice of him and went directly into the cave.

When White Cloud Lad reported his arrival, Heavenly Master came out and took his hand. "I've been teaching your disciple a little lesson," he said with a smile.

After they sat down, Fairy Primordial said, "I realized that Nezha's too violent by nature. I sent him here to be tempered. I'm sorry if he's offended you."

"Go and set Nezha free. Tell him to come in," Heavenly Master ordered Jinzha.

Jinzha went up to Nezha. "Your master orders you to see him inside."

"As your master could do nothing with me, he played some trick to make me unable to move. How can you joke with me now?"

Jinzha smiled. "Close your eyes and I'll set you free."

Nezha closed his eyes. Jinzha drew a charm to remove the Dragon Bound Stake. When he opened his eyes, Nezha found that all the rings, together with the stake, had disappeared. Shaking his head, he murmured, "Good Heavens! I've suffered too much today. Let me see my master and find out what I can do."

When Jinzha and Nezha entered the cave, the latter saw his master sitting on the right and the Taoist on the left.

"Come here. Kneel down and kowtow to your uncle!" Fairy Primordial ordered him.

Nezha didn't dare disobey his master, and so he kowtowed to Heavenly Master. "Thank you for the beating," he said and then kowtowed to his own master.

Fairy Primordial asked Li Jing to come over. When Li Jing knelt before him, he said, "Li Jing! What you did on Jade Screen Mountain was really too narrow-minded. It created this hostility between father and son."

This criticism failed to soothe Nezha. His anger rose so high that he wished secretly to devour Li Jing. The two immortals, however, knew exactly what he was thinking.

"From this day on, there must be no more antagonism between you two. Li Jing, you may leave here first," Fairy Primordial added.

Li Jing thanked the two immortals and left the cave. Nezha seethed with fury but dared not utter a word. He scratched his cheeks, pulled his ears, sighed and groaned. Fairy Primordial laughed inwardly at him.

"You may go too. Go and keep watch on the cave. I'll have a game of chess with your uncle and be back in a minute," he told Nezha.

Nezha was elated. He left the cave immediately and began to pursue Li Jing on his Wind-Fire Wheels. After quite a while, he caught sight of Li Jing hurrying along on the dust. "Li Jing! Stop running! I'm coming to get



何？”只得往前避走。

却说李靖被哪吒赶的上天无路，入地无门。正在危急之际，只见山岗上有一道人，倚松靠石而言曰：“山脚下可是李靖？”李靖抬头一看，见一道人，靖曰：“师父，末将便是李靖。”道人曰：“为何慌忙？”靖曰：“哪吒追之甚急，望师父垂救！”道人曰：“快上岗来，站在我后面，待我救你。”李靖上岗，躲在道人之后，喘息未定，只见哪吒风火轮响，看看赶至岗下。哪吒看见两人站立，便冷笑一番：“难道这一遭又吃亏罢！”踏着轮往岗上来。道者问曰：“来者可是哪吒？”哪吒答曰：“我便是。你这道人为何叫李靖站立在你后面？”道人曰：“你为何事赶他？”哪吒又把翠屏山的事说了一遍。道人曰：“你既在五龙山讲明了，又赶他，是你失信也。”哪吒曰：“你莫管我们。今日定要拿他，以泄我恨！”道人曰：“你既不肯——”便对李靖曰：“你就与他杀一回与我看。”李靖曰：“老师，这畜生力大无穷，末将杀他不过。”道人站起来，把李靖一口啐，把脊背上打一巴掌，“你杀与我看。有我在此，不妨事。”李靖只得持戟刺来。哪吒持火尖枪来迎。父子二人战在山岗，有五六十回合。哪吒这一回被李靖杀的汗流满面，遍体生津。哪吒遮架画戟不住，暗自沉思：“李靖原杀我不过，方才这道人啐他一口，扑他一掌，其中必定有些原故。我有道理：待我卖个破绽，一枪先戳死道人，然后再拿李靖。”哪吒将身一跃，跳出圈子来，一枪竟刺道人。道人把口一张，一朵白莲花接住了火尖枪。道人曰：“李靖，且住了。”李靖听说，急架住火尖枪。道人问哪吒曰：“你这孽障！你父子厮杀，我与你无仇，你怎的刺我一



you!” he called after him.

“How could that Taoist fool me like this? Since I was allowed to leave first, he shouldn’t have set him free to chase after me! That immortal had no good intentions at all. What am I to do now?” Li Jing cried out pitifully.

He continued to flee, but time was running out. Just at the critical moment, catching sight of another Taoist on top of a peak leaning casually on a pine tree, he called out for help.

“Is that Li Jing?” the Taoist asked.

“Yes, it’s me, Master,” Li Jing answered frantically.

“Why are you in such a panic?”

“Nezha’s close on my heels. Save me, I beg you.”

“Come up here and stand behind me.”

Li Jing immediately went up and hid behind the Taoist. Before he could catch his breath, Nezha arrived at the foot of the mountain and saw Li Jing and the unknown Taoist standing on the peak before a pine tree.

“Don’t think that I’ll come off worst this time,” Nezha smiled and rode his Wind-Fire Wheels up the peak.

“Why are you chasing him?” the Taoist asked Nezha.

When Nezha had repeated the whole story, the Taoist said, “Since you agreed to keep peace, why are you pursuing him again? You’re breaking your promise!”

“This isn’t any of your business. Don’t interfere with me. I must get hold of him to vent my hatred.”

“If you insist,” said the Taoist, and turning to Li Jing he said, “Go and fight with him while I watch.”

“Master! This beast has unbounded strength; I’m surely no match for him,” Li Jing answered dejectedly.

The Taoist stood up, spat on him and clapped him on the back, saying, “Go and fight with him. I’m here, so don’t worry.”

Li Jing had no choice but to lift his halberd and charge into the fight. Nezha met him with his Fire-Tip Lance. Father and son fought violently on the open space of the peak. After fifty or sixty rounds, Nezha was utterly exhausted, his whole body bathed in sweat.

“Li Jing was no match for me, but now he’s getting the upper hand. It must be because that Taoist spat on him and clapped him on the back. I’ll first stab the Taoist and then deal with Li Jing,” he thought to himself and leapt suddenly away from the fight and lunged straight at the Taoist.

The Taoist quickly opened his mouth and spat out a white lotus flower





枪! 到是我白莲架住。不然我反被你暗算。这是何说?” 哪吒曰:“先前李靖杀我不过, 你叫他与我对战, 你为何啐他一口, 掌他一下。这分明是你弄鬼, 使我战不过他。我故此刺你一枪, 以泄其忿。” 道人曰:“你这孽障, 敢来刺我!” 哪吒大怒, 把枪展一展, 又劈脑刺来。道人跳开一旁, 袖儿望上一举, 只见祥云缭绕, 紫雾盘旋, 一物往下落来, 把哪吒罩在玲珑塔里。道人双手在塔上一拍, 塔里火发, 把哪吒烧的大叫“饶命”。道人在塔外问曰:“哪吒, 你可认父亲?” 哪吒只得连声答应:“老爷, 我认是父亲了。” 道人曰:“既认父亲, 我便饶你。” 道人忙收宝塔。哪吒睁眼一看, 浑身上下, 并莫有烧坏些儿。哪吒暗思:“有这等的异事! 此道人真是弄鬼!” 道人曰:“哪吒, 你既认李靖为父, 你与他叩头。” 哪吒意欲不肯, 道人又要祭塔; 哪吒不得已, 只得忍气吞声, 低头下拜, 尚有不忿之色。道人曰:“还要你口称‘父亲’。” 哪吒不肯答应。道人曰:“哪吒, 你既不称‘父亲’, 还是不服。再取金塔烧你!” 哪吒着慌, 连忙高叫:“父亲, 孩儿知罪了。” 哪吒口内虽叫, 心上实是不服, 只是暗暗切齿, 自思道:“李靖, 你长远带着道人走!” 道人唤李靖曰:“你且跪下, 我秘受你这一座金塔。如哪吒不服, 你便将此塔祭起烧他。” 哪吒在旁, 只是暗暗叫苦。道人曰:



which stopped the lance in mid-air. "You wicked brat! Your fight's with your father. There's no animosity between us. Why did you stab at me with your lance? I would have lost my life if it hadn't been for my white lotus flower. Why are you so savage?"

"Li Jing's never been able to beat me before," Nezha shouted.

"Why did you spit and clap him on the back? There's obviously some trick in it to make me unable to defeat him. That's why!"

"You damned brat! I dare you to stab me again!" the Taoist challenged.

In a burning rage, Nezha lunged forward, aiming his lance straight at the breast of the Taoist. The immortal jumped aside and lifted his sleeves towards the sky. The air was instantly filled with beautiful whirling clouds and a swirling purple mist. An exquisitely wrought pagoda dropped from the sky on top of Nezha, trapping him inside. The Taoist struck the top of the pagoda with both hands, and a fierce fire began to rage within. Nezha was burnt so terribly that he cried out for mercy.

"Are you willing to acknowledge your father now?"

"I do, I do. I acknowledge him." Nezha had to agree.

"Then I'll spare your life," said the Taoist and quickly removed the pagoda.

Looking down at his body, Nezha was astonished to find that he had not a single burn. "How extraordinary," he thought. "This Taoist is playing tricks on me."

"Since you acknowledge Li Jing as your father, you must kowtow to him."

Seeing that if he refused, the Taoist would burn him in the pagoda again, Nezha controlled himself with an effort and kowtowed to Li Jing with an angry expression on his face.

"You must call him 'Father'," the Taoist ordered. When Nezha hesitated, he said, "Since you refuse, you must be still unwilling to acknowledge him. I'll have to burn you again in the pagoda."

This alarmed Nezha so that he hastily cried, "Father! Father! Your son's sinned against you."

The Taoist then told Li Jing to kneel down. "I'll give you this pagoda and teach you how to use it. Should Nezha trouble you again, you can burn him with it."

Hearing this, Nezha realized that it would be impossible for him to get it back at Li Jing. He felt greatly disappointed.

"Henceforth, the two of you must live in harmony. You'll be ministers



“哪吒，你父子从此和睦，久后俱系一殿之臣，辅佐明君，成其正果，再不必言其前事。哪吒，你回去罢。”哪吒见是如此，只得回乾元山去了。李靖跪而言曰：“老爷广施道德，解弟子之危厄，请问老爷，高姓大名？那座名山？何处仙府？”道人曰：“贫道乃灵鹫山元觉洞燃灯道人是也。你修炼未成，合享人间富贵。今商纣失德，天下大乱，你且不必做官，隐于山谷之中，暂忘名利。待武周兴兵，你再出来立功立业。”李靖叩首在地，回关隐迹去了。——道人原是太乙真人请到此间磨哪吒之性，以认父之情。后来父子四人，肉身成圣，托塔天王乃李靖也。后人诗曰：

黄金造就玲珑塔，万道毫光透九重。不是燃灯施法力，  
天教父子复相从。

此是哪吒二次出世于陈塘关。后子牙下山，正应文王美里七载之事。不知后节何如，且听下回分解。

one day in the same court. You should help the sage king found the new dynasty while cultivating your own proper lives. Nothing more should be said of past events. Nezha, you may go now.”

Nezha understood the situation. He left and returned to Qianyuan Mountain.

Li Jing knelt down. “Master, your kindness has saved me from great peril. May I know your honorable name and the cave you live in?”

“I’m Master Burning Lamp from the Prime Consciousness Cave on Mount Divine Hawk. Though you failed to attain the Way, you’ve enjoyed wealth and power in the world. Now King Zhou rules without virtue and the kingdom is in chaos. You needn’t be a garrison commander any longer, but should become a hermit in some mountain valley. Keep away from fame and riches temporarily. When King Wu of the rising Zhou Dynasty launches an attack on King Zhou, you may come out of the mountains and distinguish yourself.”

Li Jing kowtowed and returned to Chentang Pass. He gave up his post and became a hermit in the mountains.

Burning Lamp had come at the request of Fairy Primordial to temper Nezha and to effect a reconciliation between father and son.

If you want to know what happened next, you must read the next chapter.



## 第十五回

### 昆仑山子牙下山

诗曰：

子牙此际落凡尘，白首牢骚类野人。几度策身成老拙；  
三番涉世反相嗔。磻溪未入飞熊梦，渭水安知有瑞林。  
世际风云开帝业，享年八百庆长春。

话说昆仑山玉虚宫掌阐教道法元始天尊因门下十二弟子犯了红尘之厄，杀罚临身，故此闭宫止讲；又因昊天上帝命仙首十二称臣；故此三教并谈，乃阐教、截教、人道三等，共编成三百六十五位成神，又分八部：上四部雷、火、瘟、斗，下四部群星列宿、三山五岳、步雨兴云、善恶之神。此时成汤合灭，周室当兴；又逢神仙犯戒，元始封神，姜子牙享将相之福，恰逢其数，非是偶然。所以“五百年有王者起，其间必有名世者”，正此之故。

一日，元始天尊坐八宝云光座上，命白鹤童子：“请你师叔姜尚来。”白鹤童子往桃园中来请子牙，口称：“师叔，老爷有请。”子牙忙至宝殿座前行礼曰：“弟子姜尚拜见。”天尊曰：“你上昆仑几载了？”子牙曰：“弟子三十二岁上山，如今虚度七十二岁了。”天尊曰：“你生来命薄，仙道难成，只可受人间之福。成汤数尽，周室将兴。你与我代劳，封神下山，扶助明主，身为将相，也不枉你上山修行四十年之功。此处亦非汝久居之地，可早早收拾下山。”子牙哀告曰：“弟





## Chapter 15

### Jiang Ziya Leaves Mount Kunlun

Heavenly Primogenitor, the Grand Master of Chan Taoism, lived in the Jade Emptiness Palace on Mount Kunlun. As his disciples were destined to experience the vulgar world and break the commandment on killing, he closed his palace and stopped giving lectures on the Way.

The heads of Chan and Jie Taoism and Confucianism held a meeting, at which it was decided to create 365 gods. They were to be the gods of thunder, fire, plague, constellations, stars, sacred mountains, clouds and rain, virtue, and evil. The creation was destined for the downfall of the Shang and rise of the Zhou when immortals would break the commandment on killing. It was not by chance that Jiang Ziya was to enjoy power and wealth as commander and prime minister.

One day Heavenly Primogenitor ascended his Eight Treasure and Cloud Radiance Throne. "Go to the peach garden and tell Jiang Ziya to see me at once," he told White Crane Lad.

Jiang Ziya hurried into the court and knelt before the Grand Master, saying, "Your disciple Jiang Ziya kowtows."

"How long have you been on Mount Kunlun?"

"I came when I was thirty-two years old, and now I'm seventy-two."

"You were born unlucky. It's difficult for you to become an immortal, and all you can do is enjoy the pleasures of the world. The end of the Shang Dynasty is near at hand, and the House of Zhou is rising. Would you descend the mountain and create gods on my behalf? You're to assist the sage ruler and serve as his commander and prime minister. Your forty years of cultivation here make you ideal for the posts. This isn't the place for you to remain long. You'd better pack up and leave as soon as possible."

"Master," Jiang Ziya begged pitifully, "When I left home, I made up my mind to achieve the Way. I've been at it for so many years. Though the Way is as boundless as the ocean, I hope you might be so compas-



子乃真心出家，苦熬岁月，今亦有年。修行虽是滚芥投针，望老爷大发慈悲，指迷归觉，弟子情愿在山苦行，必不敢贪恋红尘富贵，望尊师收录。”天尊曰：“你命缘如此，必听于天，岂得违拗？”子牙恋恋难舍。有南极仙翁上前言曰：“子牙，机会难逢，时不可失；况天数已定，自难逃躲。你虽是下山，待你功成之时，自有上山之日。”子牙只得下山。子牙收拾琴剑衣囊，起身拜别师尊，跪而泣曰：“弟子领师法旨下山，将来归着如何？”天尊曰：“子今下山，我有八句铃偈，后日有验。偈曰：

二十年来窘迫联，耐心守分且安然。磻溪石上垂竿钓，自有高明访子贤。辅佐圣君为相父，九三拜将握兵权。诸侯会合逢戊甲，九八封神又四年。”

天尊道罢，“虽然你去，还有上山之日。”子牙拜辞天尊，又辞众位道友，随带行囊，出玉虚宫。有南极仙翁送子牙，在麒麟崖分付曰：“子牙前途保重！”子牙别了南极仙翁，自己暗思：“我上无叔伯、兄嫂，下无弟妹、子侄，叫我往那里去？我似失林飞鸟，无一枝可栖。……”忽然想起：“朝歌有一结义仁兄宋异人，不若去投他罢。”子牙借土遁前来，早至朝歌。离南门三十五里，至宋家庄。子牙看门庭依旧，绿柳长存。子牙叹曰：“我离此四十载，不觉风光依旧，人面不同。”子牙到得门前，对看门的问曰：“你员外在家否？”管门人问曰：“你是谁？”子牙曰：“你只说故人姜子牙相访。”庄童来报员外：“外边有一故人姜子牙相访。”宋异人正算帐，听见子牙来，忙忙迎出庄来，口称：“贤弟，如何数十载不通音问？”子牙连应曰：“不才弟有。”二人携手相搀，至



sionate as to guide me to success. I would be glad to continue this effort, and crave for neither riches nor power in the world. I earnestly hope that you'll permit me to remain here and serve you as before."

"This is your destiny, and you must comply with the will of Heaven."

As Jiang Ziya was lingering on, unwilling to leave Mount Kunlun, Immortal of the South Pole came up and urged him, "Ziya! This is an opportunity too good to be missed. Besides, it's destined by Heaven so you'll never get out of it. Though you'll be leaving us, you can come back here when you've achieved success."

Jiang Ziya had no choice but to leave Mount Kunlun. He packed up his books, lute, sword and clothes, and went to take leave of the Grand Master. He knelt before the throne. "I'm leaving as you've ordered, but can you tell me what the outcome will be?" he asked in tears.

"My prophecy is as follows.

Live in poverty for twenty years,  
Just be patient with your lot.  
When fishing at the Panxi Stream,  
A sage will seek you from his realm.  
A fatherly prime minister to the king,  
You'll be commander at ninety-three.  
Nobles will meet to found the new dynasty,  
At ninety-eight you hold the creation."

The Grand Master recited, and then added, "Though you're leaving now, you'll return one day."

Jiang Ziya bade him farewell and left the Jade Emptiness Palace carrying his luggage. The Immortal of the South Pole saw him off as far as the Unicorn Cliff.

"Where shall I go now? I've got no relatives. I'm like a bird without a branch to roost on," he wondered as he said farewell to the immortal, but then he remembered. "I have a sworn brother, Song Yiren, at Zhaoge whom I can go to see. Perhaps he'll take me in."

He rode on a dust cloud and soon reached the Song Village, about thirty-five *li* south of Zhaoge. He found Song Yiren's residence the same as before, but he no longer recognized the people there. He approached the gate.

"Is your master in?" he asked.

"May I know your name?" requested the gatekeeper.

"Just tell your master that Jiang Ziya, his old friend, has come to visit him."





于草堂，各施礼坐下。异人曰：“常时渴慕，今日重逢，幸甚，幸甚！”子牙曰：“自别仁兄，实指望出世超凡，奈何缘浅分薄，未遂其志。今到高庄，得会仁兄，乃尚之幸。”异人忙吩咐收拾饭食，又问曰：“是斋？是荤？”子牙曰：“既出家，岂有饮酒吃荤之理。弟是吃斋。”宋异人曰：“酒乃瑶池玉液，洞府琼浆，就是神仙也赴蟠桃会，酒吃些儿无妨。”子牙曰：“仁兄见教，小弟领命。”二人欢饮。异人曰：“贤弟上昆仑多少年了？”子牙曰：“不觉四十载。”异人叹曰：“好快！贤弟在山可曾学些甚么？”子牙曰：“怎么不学？不然所作何事？”异人曰：“学些甚么道术？”子牙曰：“挑水，浇松，种桃，烧水，扇炉，炼丹。”异人笑曰：“此乃仆佣之役，何足挂齿。今贤弟既回来，不若寻些事业，何必出家。就在我家同住，不必又往别处去。我与你相知，非比别人。”子牙曰：“正是。”异人曰：“古云：‘不孝有三，无后为大。’贤弟，也是我与你相处一场，明日与你议一门亲，生下一男半女，也不失姜姓之后。”子牙摇手曰：“仁兄，此事且再议。”二人谈讲至晚，子牙就在宋家庄住下。

话说宋异人二日早起，骑了驴儿往马家庄上来议亲。异人到庄，有庄童报与马员外曰：“有宋员外来拜。”马员外大喜，迎出门来，便问：“员外是那阵风儿刮将来？”异人曰：“小侄特来与令爱议亲。”马员外大悦，施礼坐下。茶罢，员外问曰：“贤契，将小女说与何人？”异人曰：“此人乃东海许州人氏，姓姜，名尚，字子牙，别号飞熊，与小侄契交通家，因此上这一门亲正好。”马员外曰：“贤契主亲，并无差迟。”宋异人取白金四锭以为聘资，马员外收了，忙设酒席



Hearing that it was Jiang Ziya, Song Yiren put aside his account book and came out to meet him. The two friends walked arm in arm into the hall, exchanged greetings and then sat down.

"Brother," cried Song Yiren, "I haven't heard from you for decades, but I'm always thinking of you. I'm overjoyed to meet you again today."

"After leaving you I hoped to sever myself from the world and become a supernatural being, but I'm ill-fated and couldn't make it. I'm really delighted to see you, too."

Before lunch was prepared, Song Yiren asked, "Do you take meat or only vegetables?"

"Since I'm a Taoist, how could I drink wine or eat meat? I only eat vegetables."

"Wine's made of precious essences, and I've heard that immortals drink too at the Longevity Peach Banquet. There's no harm in drinking just a little," Song Yiren urged.

"You're right, Brother. I'll do as you say."

While they were drinking, Song Yiren asked, "How long have you been on Mount Kunlun?"

"Forty years."

"How time flies!" sighed Song Yiren. "What have you learned there?"

"I've learned a lot: to carry water, to water the pine trees, to plant peach trees, to tend the fire, and to fan furnaces and refine elixirs."

"These are tasks for servants not worth mentioning. You should start a business or something. You don't want to go back to the monastery, do you? You may stay here with me, so don't look anywhere else for a place to live," Song Yiren suggested warmly.

"Thank you, Brother."

"There's been a saying since ancient times: 'There are three unfilial acts and the most serious one is to have no sons to continue the family line.' As your brother, it's now my duty to find you a wife," Song Yiren added.

Jiang Ziya waved his hand at this in disapproval. "I need to think it over."

Early the next morning, Song Yiren rode a donkey to see Ma Hong, a squire in Ma Village, about the marriage. Ma Hong came out to meet him and showed him into the hall.

"What wind has blown you here today?" Ma Hong asked.

"I'm here as a matchmaker for your daughter."

Ma Hong was delighted. "Who is it, nephew?"

"He's my intimate friend, a native of Xuzhou in the East Sea district," Song replied. "His name is Jiang Shang. He's also known as Jiang Ziya or



款待异人，抵暮而散。且说子牙起来，一日不见宋异人，问庄童曰：“你员外那里去了？”庄童曰：“早晨出门，想必讨帐去了。”不一时，异人下了牲口。子牙看见，迎门接曰：“兄长那里回来？”异人曰：“恭喜贤弟！”子牙问曰：“小弟喜从何至？”异人曰：“今日与你议亲，正是相逢千里，会合姻缘。”子牙曰：“今日时辰不好。”异人曰：“阴阳无忌，吉人天相。”子牙曰：“是那家女子？”异人曰：“马洪之女，才貌两全，正好配贤弟；还是我妹子，人家六十八岁黄花女儿。”异人治酒与子牙贺喜。二人饮罢，异人曰：“可择一良辰娶亲。”子牙谢曰：“承兄看顾，此德怎忘。”乃择选良时吉日，迎娶马氏。宋异人又排设酒席，邀庄前、庄后邻舍，四门亲友，庆贺迎亲。其日马氏过门，洞房花烛，成就夫妻。正是：天缘遇合，不是偶然。有诗曰：

离却昆仑到帝邦，子牙今日娶妻房。六十八岁黄花女，稀寿有二做新郎。

话说子牙成亲之后，终日思慕昆仑，只虑大道不成，心中不悦，那里有心情与马氏暮乐朝欢。马氏不知子牙心事，只说子牙是无用之物。不觉过了两月。马氏便问子牙曰：“宋伯伯是你姑表弟兄？”子牙曰：“宋兄是我结义兄弟。”马氏曰：“原来如此。便是亲生弟兄，也无有不散的筵席。今宋伯伯在，我夫妻可以安闲自在；倘异日不在，我和你如何处？常言道：‘人生天地间，以营运为主。’我劝你做些生意，以防我夫妻后事。”子牙曰：“贤妻说得是。”马氏曰：“你会做些什么生理？”子牙曰：“我三十二岁在昆仑学道，不识甚么世务生意，只会编箎篱。”马氏曰：“就是这个生意也好。况

Jiang Feixiong, the flying bear. It would be an excellent match.”

“With you as matchmaker, there can be no mistake,” Ma Hong said with satisfaction.

Song Yiren immediately offered him four silver ingots as a betrothal gift, and the latter ordered a sumptuous banquet to entertain him. When Song returned home in the afternoon he met Jiang Ziya in the doorway.

“Where have you been, Brother?” Jiang Ziya asked.

“I must congratulate you.”

“On what?”

“I’ve arranged a marriage for you. An ideal match.”

“But it’s not an auspicious day today,” Jiang Ziya objected.

“Forget about it. Heaven blesses a good man.”

“Which family is she from?”

“She’s Ma Hong’s daughter. Well-educated. At sixty-eight she’s still a virgin,” Song Yiren told Jiang Ziya.

As they drank, Song said, “We must choose a lucky date for your wedding.”

“I’ll never forget your kind regard for me,” Jiang said gratefully.

An auspicious day was selected for the marriage. Song Yiren invited relatives, friends and neighbors to attend the wedding feast. The bride was sixty-eight years old and the bridegroom seventy-two.

Though married, Jiang Ziya’s mind was still on Mount Kunlun. He had failed to attain the Way and thus failed to become an immortal. He was unhappy and had no interest at all in his family life. Madame Ma didn’t know what was on his mind, thinking only that Jiang was impotent and useless.

“Is Song Yiren one of your cousins?” She asked Jiang Ziya one day.

“Oh, no! He’s my sworn brother.”

“Is that so? Even if he were your brother, the present situation, much like a banquet, can’t last long. Now we can live a life of ease under his patronage. But what would we do if he passed away? As the saying goes, ‘A person born into this world must be independent and support himself.’ I advise you to do some business so that we can cope with any calamity that might befall us in the future.”

“You’re right, wife.”

“What kind of business can you do?”

“At thirty-two I went to Mount Kunlun and know nothing of business. All I can do is make rakes,” Jiang Ziya said despondantly.

“O.K., then let’s do that. The back garden’s full of bamboo. We can cut some down, use the bamboo splints to weave rakes, and then sell them at Zhaoge to make a bit of money. Business is business, no matter what the scale,” Madame Ma said with delight.

Jiang Ziya did as his wife suggested: He cut the bamboo and made two loads of bamboo rakes. Carrying them on a shoulder pole, he went to



后园又有竹子，砍些来，劈些篾，编成笊篱，往朝歌城卖些钱钞，大小都是生意。”子牙依其言，劈了篾子，编了一担笊篱，挑到朝歌来卖。从早至午，卖到未末申初，也卖不得一个。子牙见天色至申时，还要挑着走三十五里，腹内又饿了，只得奔回。一去一来，共七十里路，子牙把肩头都压肿了。走到门前，马氏看时，一担去，还是一担来。正待问时，只见子牙指马氏曰：“娘子，你不贤。恐怕我在家闲着，叫我卖笊篱。朝歌城必定不用笊篱，如何卖了一日，一个也卖不得，到把肩头压肿了？”马氏曰：“笊篱乃天下通用之物，不说你不会卖，反来假抱怨！”夫妻二人语去言来，犯颜嘶嚷。宋异人听得子牙夫妇吵嚷，忙来问子牙曰：“贤弟，为何事夫妻相争？”子牙把卖笊篱事说了一遍。异人曰：“不要说是你夫妻二人，就有三二十口，我也养得起。你们何必如此？”马氏曰：“伯伯虽是这等好意，但我夫妻日后也要归着，难道束手待毙。”宋异人曰：“弟妇之言也是，何必做这个生意；我家仓里麦子生芽，可叫后生磨些面，贤弟可挑去货卖，却不强如编笊篱。”子牙把笊担收拾，后生支起磨来，磨了一担干面，子牙次日挑着进朝歌货卖。从四门都走到了，也卖不的一斤。腹内又饥，担子又重，只得出南门，肩头又痛。子牙歇下了担儿，靠着城墙坐一坐，少憩片时。自思运蹇时乖，作诗一首，诗曰：

“四入昆仑访道玄，岂知缘浅不能全！红尘黯黯难睁眼；  
浮世纷纷怎脱肩。借得一枝栖止处，金枷玉锁又来缠。  
何时得遂平生志，静坐溪头学老禅。”

话说子牙坐了一会，方才起身。只见一个人叫：“卖面的



Zhaoge to sell them, but much to his annoyance, he didn't sell a single rake all day. As dusk fell, he decided to go home. He had to walk thirty-five *li* to get home. He came back to the Song Village, tired and hungry, his shoulders sore and swollen under the heavy load.

Madame Ma met him at the doorway and noticed that both baskets were still full. She was about to question him when Jiang Ziya pointed at her and complained, "You're no worthy wife! You're afraid of my being idle at home and send me to sell bamboo rakes. But there can be no doubt that the people of Zhaoge don't use rakes; otherwise how could I have failed to sell a single one all day?"

"Everybody uses rakes. Why don't you admit you don't know how to sell them, instead of grumbling at me!" Madame Ma retorted.

Husband and wife soon began to exchange insults. Hearing their raised voices, Song Yiren rushed over. "Brother, what are you quarreling about?"

When Jiang Ziya told him the whole story, he comforted them. "Don't worry. I could easily support forty people. There's no need for you to do business."

"It's so very kind of you, but we can't be dependent on you for the rest of our lives. We should be self-reliant," Madame Ma argued.

"You may be right, but you'd better give up selling bamboo rakes. We've got so much wheat in our barn that it's beginning to sprout. You can tell the young servants to grind it into flour and my brother can sell it in the market. Selling flour's much better than selling bamboo rakes," Song Yiren proposed.

Jiang Ziya thus put the rakes aside, and the next day, after the servants finished grinding the wheat, he carried the flour to Zhaoge. He went to the market at each of the four gates of the capital, but nobody came to him. The load was heavy, and he was tired and hungry. He went left by the south gate, lay the load on the ground and rested his aching shoulders against the city wall. Feeling down on his luck, he chanted a poem:

At thirty-two I began to study the Way,  
But didn't expect that I would fail.  
The world's dark, and ugly to see,  
How can I shake it off my shoulders.  
Having found a branch to roost upon,  
Gold shackles now fetter me again.  
When shall I fulfil my life's ambition,  
And sit on a stream refining my soul.



站着!”子牙说：“发利市的来了。”歇下担子。只见那人走到面前，子牙问曰：“要多少面？”那人曰：“买一文钱的。”子牙又不好不卖，只得低头撮面。不想子牙不是久挑担子的人，把肩担抛在地旁，绳子撒在地下；此时因纣王无道，反了东南四百镇诸侯，报来甚是紧急；武成王日日操练人马，因放散营炮响，惊了一骑马，溜缰奔走如飞。子牙弯着腰撮面，不曾提防，后边有人大叫曰：“卖面的，马来了！”子牙忙侧身，马已到了。担上绳子铺在地下，马来的急，绳子套在马七寸上，把两箩面拖了五六丈远，面都泼在地下，被一阵狂风将面刮个干净。子牙急抢面时，浑身俱是面裹了。买面的人见这等模样，就去了。子牙只得回去。一路嗟叹，来到庄前。马氏见子牙空箩回来，大喜，“朝歌城干面这等卖的。”子牙到了马氏跟前，把箩担一丢，骂曰：“都是你这贱人多事！”马氏曰：“干面卖的干净是好事，反来骂我！”子牙曰：“一担面挑至城里，何尝卖得，至下午才卖一文钱。”马氏曰：“空箩回来，想必都除去了。”子牙气冲冲的曰：“因被马溜缰，把绳子绊住脚，把一担面带泼了一地；天降狂风，一阵把面都吹去了。都不是你这贱人惹的事！”马氏听说，把子牙劈脸一口啐道：“不是你无用，反来怨我，真是饭囊衣架，惟知饮食之徒！”子牙大怒，“贱人女流，焉敢啐侮丈夫！”二人揪扭一堆。宋异人同妻孙氏来劝：“叔叔却为何事与婶婶争竞？”子牙把卖面的事说了一遍。异人笑曰：“担把面能值几何，你夫妻就这等起来。贤弟同我来。”子牙同异人往书房中坐下。子牙曰：“承兄雅爱，提携小弟。弟时乖运蹇，做事无成，实为有愧！”异人曰：“人以运为主，花逢时



He was rising from this brief rest when he saw a man approach.

"Flour hawker! Wait a minute."

Jiang Ziya was elated. "Here comes the God of Wealth!" he muttered to himself, and then asked, "How much flour would you like?"

"Just one cent's worth."

Jiang Ziya could not refuse to accept even such a small deal. Not being an experienced hawker, he threw the bamboo pole on the street and let the ropes tying the sacks of flour trail all over the ground.

At this time, 400 marquises in the south and east had already rebelled against the king, and the situation in Zhaoge was tense. Prince Huang Feihu drilled his soldiers everyday. Today, when cannons were fired to signal the end of the training, a horse was startled, got out of control and came galloping down the street.

Busy weighing out the flour, Jiang Ziya did not notice the horse until someone shouted out, "Flour hawker, look out for the horse!" He looked up, but the horse was already upon him. Its hooves caught in the trailing ropes and the sacks were dragged along the street, spilling the flour all over. A strong wind rose and blew all of it away. The disappointed customer left, and Jiang Ziya, covered in flour, returned home with the empty sacks.

Madame Ma was delighted to see him return with empty sacks. "So flour's easy to sell at Zhaoge!"

Jiang Ziya threw down the bamboo pole and the sacks. "It's all your idea, you worthless, meddlesome hussy!" he began to swear at her.

"It's wonderful you've sold all the flour! Why should you swear at me so absurdly?" his wife protested.

Jiang told her what had happened, and concluded, "You're the cause of all this trouble, you good-for-nothing."

Madame Ma spat angrily in his face. "You're the useless one, yet you grumble at me! You're nothing but a rice bucket and a clothes rack. All you can do is eat and wear out clothes," she retorted.

"You damned bitch! How dare you insult your husband like that!"

Jiang Ziya was furious. The quarrel soon turned to blows, and Song Yiren and his wife Madame Sun hurried over to interfere.

"Brother, what are you quarreling about?" Madame Sun asked.

When Jiang Ziya told them the story, Song smiled. "How can you quarrel about two worthless sacks of flour. Come with me, Brother."

"I really appreciate your help, but I have such bad luck that everything





发，古语有云：‘黄河尚有澄清日，岂可人无得运时？’贤弟不必如此。我有许多伙计，朝歌城有三五十座酒饭店，俱是我的。待我邀众朋友来，你会他们一会，每店让你开一日，周而复始，轮转作生涯，却不是好。”子牙作谢道：“多承仁兄抬举。”异人随将南门张家酒饭店与子牙开张。朝歌南门乃是第一个所在，近教场，各路通衢，人烟凑积，大是热闹。其日做手多宰猪羊，蒸了点心，收拾酒饭齐整，子牙掌柜，坐在里面。一则子牙乃万神总领，一则年庚不利，从早晨到巳牌时候，鬼也不上门。及至午时，倾盆大雨，黄飞虎不曾操演，天气炎热，猪羊肴馔，被这阵暑气一蒸，登时臭了，点心馊了，酒都酸了。子牙坐得没趣，叫众把持：“你们把酒肴都吃了罢，再过一时可惜了。”子牙作诗曰：

“皇天生我在尘寰，虚度风光困世间。鹏翅有时腾万里，也须飞过九重山。”

当时子牙至晚回来。异人曰：“贤弟，今日生意如何？”子牙曰：“愧见仁兄！今日折了许多本钱，分文也不曾卖得下来。”异人叹曰：“贤弟不必恼，守时候命，方为君子。总来折我不多，再作区处，别寻道路。”异人怕子牙着恼，兑五十两银子，叫后生同子牙走积场，贩卖牛、马、猪、羊，“难道活东西也会臭了。”子牙收拾去买猪、羊，非止一日。那日贩卖许多猪、羊，赶往朝歌来卖。此时因纣王失政，姐已残害生灵，奸臣当道，豺狼满朝，姑此天心不顺，旱潦不均，朝歌半年不曾下雨。天子百姓祈祷，禁了屠沽，



I do ends in failure. I feel terribly ashamed,” Jiang Ziya said, sitting down in the study.

“A man’s controlled by his destiny, and flowers bloom only when the time’s right. The saying goes: ‘Even the Yellow River will one day flow with clear water, and every man will meet with good fortune sooner or later.’ You needn’t worry, Brother,” Song comforted him. “I’ve got about fifty restaurants and wine shops in Zhaoge. You may go to a different one each day and work as an accountant or shopkeeper. Does that sound alright to you?”

Jiang Ziya thanked him saying, “I’m most grateful for your kind help.”

On the first day Song Yiren sent Jiang Ziya to a big restaurant at the south gate of Zhaoge, the busiest part of the city. The cooks, waiters and assistants slaughtered pigs and sheep and prepared food and wine for the customers. But as Jiang Ziya was to be the head of the gods and exuded an aura of dignity and power, people avoided him, and no one entered the restaurant from early morning till noon. In the afternoon, there was a heavy rain, and everyone stayed indoors. Even Huang Feihu had to cancel the military exercises.

As it was hot, the meat and cakes in the restaurant began to go bad and smell, and wine turned sour. Jiang Ziya began to worry, and so he called the staff together saying, “You’d better eat all the food you’ve prepared before it becomes inedible!” He then wrote a poem to complain about his fate:

Heaven begot me in this dusty world,  
I spend my time but achieve nothing.  
A roc sometimes soars high in the sky,  
And in doing so must cross the nine peaks.

“How was business today?” Song Yiren asked when Jiang Ziya returned home that night.

“I’m ashamed to tell you that we lost a lot of money. We sold nothing at all,” Jiang Ziya answered with a sigh.

“Don’t be vexed, Brother. A gentleman must know how to wait for his time to come. You haven’t lost much in this business. I’ll find you something else to do later,” Song Yiren said, sighing in agreement.

Fearing that Jiang Ziya would be annoyed, Song Yiren gave him fifty taels of silver as capital and advised him to buy and sell livestock with the assistance of his young servants. “These are living creatures that can’t go bad so we won’t suffer any further losses,” he commented.



告示晓谕军民人等，各门张挂。子牙失于打点，把牛、马、猪、羊往城里赶，被看门人役叫声：“违禁犯法，拿了！”子牙听见，就抽身跑了。牛马牲口，俱被入官。子牙只得束手归来。异人见子牙慌慌张张，面如土色，急问子牙曰：“贤弟为何如此？”子牙长吁叹曰：“屡蒙仁兄厚德，件件生意俱做不着，致有亏折。今贩猪羊，又失打点，不知天子祈雨，断了屠沽，违禁进城，猪、羊、牛、马入官，本钱尽绝，使姜尚愧身无地。奈何！奈何！”宋异人笑曰：“几两银子入了官罢了，何必恼他。今煮得酒一壶与你散散闷怀，到我后花园去。”——子牙时来运至，后花园先收五路神。不知后事何如，且听下回分解。



Jiang Ziya did as his sworn brother advised and spent several days buying up pigs and sheep. He then drove a large number of them to the market in Zhaoge.

By this time, Daji had already ruthlessly sent numerous innocents to death and the government was monopolized by the wicked, who filled all important offices. Heaven was disgusted and punished the Shang kingdom with floods and droughts. Six months had passed since rain had fallen on the land. Crops in the fields were withered, and the capital was facing starvation. King Zhou and the people began to pray daily for rain.

As Heaven disapproved of the taking of life, slaughtering livestock was strictly prohibited during the rain prayer period. Official proclamations were posted on the walls and gates of the city. All the slaughterhouses were closed and livestock was confiscated. Jiang Ziya, however, didn't know the situation. He drove a herd of pigs and sheep through the city gate, and was immediately stopped by the guards.

"Look! Animals for the slaughterhouse. This is a serious violation of the law. Arrest that man at once!"

Hearing them shout, Jiang Ziya abandoned his pigs and sheep and fled. The guards confiscated all the animals and let him flee empty-handed.

When Song Yiren saw Jiang Ziya return home panic-stricken and his face ashen, he asked urgently, "Brother, what's the matter with you?"

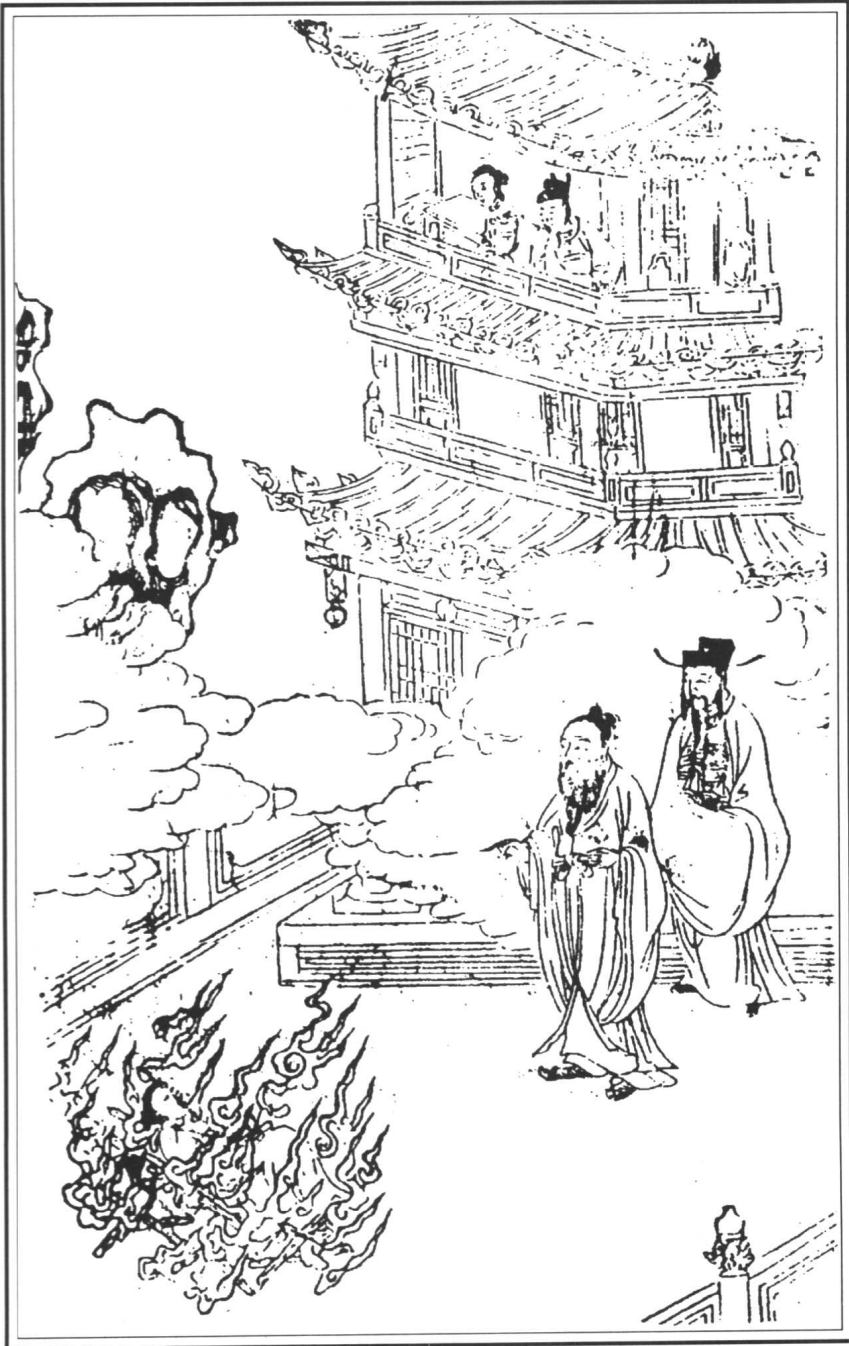
Jiang Ziya gave a long sigh. "You're so kind and generous to me, but I'm always ill-fated and fail in everything I try. I've lost a lot of your money already, but I lost even more for you this time. I didn't know the prohibition on slaughtering livestock, and had my pigs and sheep confiscated when I drove them into the city. They tried to arrest me, but I ran away. I'm so ashamed to have lost your capital again that I don't know how to face you. What shall I do, Brother?"

"A few taels of silver confiscated by the government is nothing to worry about. Let's go to the back garden together and drink away our sorrows," Song Yiren said with a smile.

After that, Jiang Ziya's luck took a turn for the better, and he met with success after success.

If you want to know what happened to Jiang Ziya after that, you must read the next chapter.







## 第十六回

### 子牙火烧琵琶精

诗曰：

妖孽频兴国势阑，大都天意久摧残。休言怪气侵牛斗，且俟精灵杀豸冠。千载修持成往事，一朝被获若为欢。当时不遇天仙术，安得琵琶火后看。

话说子牙同异人来到后花园，周围看了一遍，果然好个所在。但见：

墙高数仞，门壁清幽。左边有两行金线垂杨；右壁有几株剔牙松树。牡丹亭对玩花楼，芍药圃连秋千架。荷花池内，来来往往锦鳞游；木香篷下，翩翩翻翻蝴蝶戏。

正是：小园光景似蓬莱，乐守天年娱晚景。

话说异人与子牙来后园散闷，子牙自不曾到此处，看了一回，子牙曰：“仁兄，这一块空地，怎的不起五间楼？”异人曰：“起五间楼怎说？”子牙曰：“小弟无恩报兄，此处若起做楼，按风水有三十六条玉带，金带有一升芝麻之数。”异人曰：“贤弟也知风水？”子牙曰：“小弟颇知一二。”异人曰：“不瞒贤弟说，此处也起造七八次，造起来就烧了，故此我也无心起造他。”子牙曰：“小弟择一日辰，仁兄只管起造。若上梁那日，仁兄只是款待匠人，我在此替你压压邪气，自然无事。”异人信子牙之言，择日兴工破土，起造楼房。那日子时上梁，异人待匠在前堂，子牙在牡丹亭里坐定等候，



## Chapter 16

### Burning the Jade Lute Specter

Jiang Ziya found the back garden a very pleasant place. Surrounded by high walls, it was planted with weeping willows on the left side and pine trees on the right. Opposite the Peony Pavilion was the Hall for Enjoying Flowers. Flower beds lay near a swing. In the lotus pond schools of gold fish swam to and fro, while under the arbor pairs of butterflies danced together. The garden looked like a fairyland—an ideal place to enjoy one's retirement.

Jiang Ziya had never been in the garden before. Looking around for a long time, he asked Song Yiren, "Why don't you build a tower on this vacant space?"

"Why build a tower?"

"You've shown me great kindness, but I can give you only a little advice. According to geomancy, a tower here would guarantee that your family will produce thirty-six jade belted ministers and numerous gold belted officials."

"You're also familiar with geomancy!" Song was surprised.

"I know just a little."

"To tell you the truth, I've tried to build here several times, but every time it's been burnt down shortly afterwards. I've lost interest."

"I'll choose a lucky day, and you just take care of the construction. On the day when the beams are raised, you entertain the masons, carpenters and other workers, and I'll stay here to deal with the evil spirits. Nothing serious will happen," Jiang Ziya assured him.

Trusting him, Song Yiren chose an auspicious day on which he hired laborers and began the construction. At midnight on the day chosen to raise the beams, Song Yiren entertained the workmen in the front hall while Jiang Ziya sat quietly on watch in the Peony Pavilion. Before long, a fierce wind blew up. It was so violent that it sent clouds of sand and dust into the air and scattered stones and rocks over the ground.





看是何怪异。不一时，狂风大作，走石飞砂，播土扬尘，火光影里见些妖魅，脸分五色，狰狞怪异，怎见得：

狂风大作，恶火飞腾。烟绕处，黑雾濛濛；火起处，千团红焰。脸分五色：赤白黑色共青黄；巨口獠牙，吐放霞光千万道。风逞火势，忽喇喇走万道金蛇；火绕烟迷，赤律律天黄地黑。山红土赤，煞时间万物齐崩；闪电光辉，一会家千门尽倒。正是：妖气烈火冲霄汉，方显龙冈怪物凶。

话说子牙在牡丹亭里，见风火影里，五个精灵作怪。子牙忙披发仗剑，用手一指，把剑一挥，喝声：“孽畜不落，更待何时！”再把手一放，雷鸣空中，把五个妖物慌忙跪倒，口称：“上仙，小畜不知上仙驾临，望乞全生，施放大德！”子牙喝道：“好孽畜！火毁楼房数次，凶心不息；今日罪恶贯盈，当受诛戮。”道罢，提剑向前就斩妖怪。众怪哀告曰：“上仙，道心无处不慈悲。小畜得道多年，一时冒渎天颜，望乞怜赦。今一旦诛戮，可怜我等数半功行，付于流水！”拜伏在地，苦苦哀告。子牙曰：“你既欲生，不许在此扰害万民。你五畜受吾符命，径往西岐山，久后搬泥运土，听候所使。有功之日，自然得其正果。”五妖叩头，径往岐山去了。

不说子牙压星收妖，且说那日是上梁吉日，三更子时，前堂异人待匠，马氏同姆姆孙氏往后园暗暗的看子牙做什么事。二人来至后园，只听见子牙分付妖怪。马氏对孙氏曰：“大娘，你听听，子牙自己说话。这样人一生不长进。说鬼话的人，怎得有升腾日子。”马氏气将起来，走到子牙面前，问子牙曰：“你在这里与谁讲话？”子牙曰：“你女人家不



In the flickering light of a fire that broke out when the wind came up, Jiang Ziya saw five malignant spirits with faces of five colors, spitting thousands of fiery rays from between their bared fangs. The fire, magnified by the violent wind, became so fierce that it turned the earth red, destroying everything in its path.

Seeing these evil spirits, Jiang Ziya drew his sword and left the pavilion. He waved his sword in the air, pointed at the spirits with the other hand, and then opened his palm. "Come down, you devils!" he shouted.

A thundercrack shook the earth, knocking the spirits onto their knees before him. "Celestial lord! We lower beasts didn't know of your honorable arrival and failed to meet you in time. We beg you to be merciful and spare our lives!" they begged.

"You wicked beasts! You've already burned down the tower here several times, yet your evil knows no end. Now you must all die for it," Jiang Ziya rebuked, and moved forward, sword raised.

The apparitions all kowtowed. "Celestial lord! The Way demands us to be compassionate at all times. We were once animals, but succeeded in becoming spirits. Should you punish us with death today because of our rash mistake, our years of cultivation will all have been in vain. We're sorry to have offended you and beg you to pardon us."

"If you wish to live, you must stop troubling the people here. You five animal spirits must take my order and go straight to Mount Qi. Wait for me there because I'll need you to move earth and clay sometime in the future. When you've accomplished meritorious acts, you'll naturally make spiritual progress along the proper path," Jiang Ziya instructed.

The five spirits kowtowed before him then set off for Mount Qi at once. All this time, Song Yiren was entertaining the masons and carpenters in the front hall, but Madame Ma and Madame Sun had crept stealthily out to see what Jiang Ziya was doing. When they got to the back garden, they saw him talking into thin air.

"Madame, listen! Jiang Ziya's talking to himself. He's never gotten anywhere in his life. How can a man who speaks a lot of mumbo jumbo have any hope of success in the future!" Madame Ma exclaimed, greatly annoyed. She rushed up to Jiang. "Who are you talking to?"

"Oh, you women don't understand. I was just subduing some evil spirits."

"You were just talking mumbo jumbo to yourself! Don't give me that rubbish about subduing apparitions!"



知道，方才压妖。”马氏曰：“自己说鬼话，压什么妖！”子牙曰：“说与你也不知道。”马氏正在园中与子牙分辨，子牙曰：“你那里晓得甚么，我善能风水，又识阴阳。”马氏曰：“你可会算命？”子牙曰：“命理最精，只是无处开一命馆。”正言之间，宋异人见马氏、孙氏与子牙说话，异人曰：“贤弟，方才雷响，你可曾见些甚么？”子牙把收妖之事说了一遍。异人谢曰：“贤弟这等道术，不枉修行一番。”孙氏曰：“叔叔会算命，却无处开一命馆。不知那所在有便房，把一间与叔叔开馆也好。”异人曰：“你要多少房子？朝歌南门最热闹，叫后生收拾一间房子，与子牙去开命馆，这个何难。”却说安童将南门房子不日收拾齐整，贴几幅对联，左边是“只言玄妙一团理”，右边是“不说寻常半句虚”。里边又有一对联云：“一张铁嘴，识破人间凶与吉；两只怪眼，善观世上败和兴。”上席又一幅云：“袖里乾坤大；壶中日月长。”子牙选吉日开馆。不觉光阴捻指，四、五个月不见算命卦帖的来。

只见那日有一樵子，姓刘名乾，挑着一担柴往南门来。忽然看见一命馆，刘乾歇下柴担，念对联，念到“袖里乾坤大；壶中日月长”。刘乾原是朝歌破落户，走进命馆来，看见子牙伏案而卧，刘乾把桌子一拍。子牙唬了一惊，揉眉擦眼，看时，那一人身长丈五，眼露凶光。子牙曰：“兄起课，是看命？”那人道：“先生上姓？”子牙曰：“在下姓姜，名尚，字子牙，别号飞熊。”刘乾曰：“且问先生，‘袖里乾坤大；壶中日月长’，这对联怎么讲？”子牙曰：“‘袖里乾坤大’乃知过去未来，包罗万象；‘壶中日月长’有长生不死之



"Even if I explained, you wouldn't understand," Jiang Ziya retorted. "Little do you know that I'm not only skilled at geomancy but can predict the future by analyzing the *yin* and *yang*."

"What? You can do fortune-telling?" asked Madame Ma.

"Yes, I'm an outstanding fortune-teller, but I've got no place to open a shop."

As they talked, Song Yiren came up. "Brother, did you see anything during that thunderstorm?"

Jiang Ziya told him the whole story.

"You're so well-versed in magic arts that your years of study were not spent in vain," Song said, admiring him.

"Since he can tell fortunes, it's a pity that no place can be found to open a fortune-teller's shop. We should find a vacant house somewhere for him," Madame Sun urged her husband.

"That's no problem at all. How many rooms do you need? The busiest place in Zhaoge is the south gate district. I'll tell my servants to rent a house there and clean it up," Song Yiren promised.

A few days later, the house in the south gate district was chosen, cleaned and set in order, and a couplet was pasted on the door. On the left was written, "Speaking only of the Way," while the right side read, "Never uttering a word of falsehood." Inside the house was posted a couplet in two long sentences. On one side was written, "The iron mouth can predict all mortal fortunes and misfortunes" and on the opposite side, "Two crystal eyes observe the rise and decline of all the world." A third couplet read, "Inside the sleeves are the immense sky and earth. Within the jug appear the eternal sun and moon."

When everything was ready, Jiang Ziya selected an auspicious day and opened his fortune-telling shop. But four or five months slipped by, and not a single customer came to have his fortune told. One day, a woodcutter named Liu Qian came to the south gate carrying a shoulder pole laden with firewood. When he caught sight of the fortune-teller's shop, he put his load on the ground, read the couplet on the door, and then entered the house. He found Jiang Ziya taking a nap, his head resting on the desk. Liu Qian banged on the desk, awakening Jiang Ziya with a start.

Looking up, Jiang Ziya found a man fifteen feet tall glaring at him fiercely. "Do you want me to make a divination by diagrams or just tell your fortune by the date of your birth?"

"What's your honorable name, sir?" Liu Qian asked.



术。”刘乾曰：“先生口出大言，既知过去未来，想课是极准的了。你与我起一课。如准，二十文青蚨；如不准，打几拳头，还不许你在此开馆。”子牙暗想：“几个月全无生意，今日撞着这一个，又是拨嘴的人。”子牙曰：“你取下一卦帖来。”刘乾取了一个卦帖儿，递与子牙。子牙曰：“此卦要你依我才准。”刘乾曰：“必定依你。”子牙曰：“我写四句在帖儿上，只管去。”上面写着：“一直往南走，柳阴一老叟。青蚨一百二十文，四个点心、两碗酒。”刘乾看罢，“此卦不准。我卖柴二十余年，那个与我点心酒吃；论起来，你的不准。”子牙曰：“你去，包你准。”刘乾挑着柴，径往南走；果见柳树下站立一老者，叫曰：“柴来！”刘乾暗想：“好课！果应其言。”老者曰：“这柴要多少钱？”刘乾答应：“要一百文。”——少讨二十文，拗他一拗。老者看看，“好柴！乾的好，捆子大，就是一百文也罢。劳你替我拿进来。”刘乾把柴拿在门里，落下草叶来。刘乾爱干净，取扫帚把地下扫得光光的，方才将尖担绳子收拾停当等钱。老者出来，看见地下干净，“今日小厮勤谨。”刘乾曰：“老丈，是我扫的。”老者曰：“老哥，今日是我小儿毕姻，遇着你这好人，又卖的好柴。”老者说罢，往里边去，只见一个孩子，捧着四个点心、一壶酒、一个碗，“员外与你吃。”刘乾叹曰：“姜先生真乃神仙也！我把这酒满满的斟一碗，那一碗浅些，也不算他准。”刘乾满斟一碗，再斟第二碗，一样不差。刘乾吃了酒，见老者出来，刘乾曰：“多谢员外。”老者拿两封钱出来，先递一百文与刘乾曰：“这是你的柴钱。”又将二十文递与刘乾曰：“今日是我小儿喜辰，这是与你做喜钱，买酒



"My name's Jiang Shang. I'm called Jiang Ziya or Feixiong."

"Would you tell me what 'Inside the sleeves are the immense sky and earth; within the jug appear the eternal sun and moon' means?" Liu Qian asked.

"The first sentence means that I'm so profound in my learning that I know both the past and the future and understand all phenomena in the world. The second means that I'm in possession of the art of living eternally."

"You brag too much. Since you know both the past and the future, your prediction should be extremely accurate. Make a divination for me. If it's accurate, I'll give you twenty coppers for your service, but if it's not, I'll give you the taste of my fists and close down your shop in the bargain," Liu Qian said fiercely.

"I've been idle for the last few months, and now that I finally have a customer, he turns out to be a rogue!" Jiang Ziya thought to himself, and said, "Pick up one of the divining slips from the plate and let me work it out for you."

Liu Qian picked out one and handed it to Jiang Ziya. Jiang looked at it.

"My prediction will come true if you do just as I tell you. I'll write three sentences on a sheet of paper, and you may go on your way, but you must make sure to follow their directions."

Liu Qian took the sheet of paper from Jiang Ziya and found the following instructions, "Go straight south. You will find an old man under the willow trees. You will be given 120 coppers, four dishes of refreshments and two bowls of wine."

"How can your prediction possibly come true?" said Liu Qian scornfully. "I've been selling firewood for over twenty years, but never once have I been given refreshments and wine. You're way off the mark!"

"You just go ahead. I guarantee it's accurate," Jiang Ziya insisted.

Liu Qian shouldered his load of firewood and walked directly south. Sure enough, he soon came upon an old man standing in the shade of some willow trees. "Woodcutter, come here a moment," the man shouted to him.

"Good Heavens!" thought Liu Qian, "It's just as he said."

"How much do you want for your firewood?" the old man asked.

Intending to prevent Jiang Ziya's prediction from coming true, Liu Qian answered, "I'll sell it for 100 coppers."

The old man looked the firewood over and said, "It's good firewood, well-dried and tied in large bundles. All right, I'll take it for 100 coppers."

Liu Qian helped the old man take the firewood inside, and being of a tidy nature, swept the ground clean. Then, he waited patiently for his money.



吃。”就把刘乾惊喜无地，想：“朝歌城出神仙了！”拿着尖担，径往姜子牙命馆来。早晨有人听见刘乾言语不好，众人曰：“姜先生，这刘大不是好惹的；卦如果不准，你去罢。”子牙曰：“不妨。”众人俱在这里闲站，等刘乾来。不一时，只见刘乾如飞前来。子牙问曰：“卦准不准？”刘乾大呼曰：“姜先生真神仙也！好准课！朝歌城中有此高人，万民有福，都知趋吉避凶！”子牙曰：“课既准了，取谢仪来。”刘乾曰：“二十文其实难为你，轻你。”口里只管念，不见拿出钱来。子牙曰：“课不准，兄便说闲话；课既准，可就送我课钱。如何只管口说！”刘乾曰：“就把一百二十文都送你，也还亏你。姜先生不要急，等我来。”刘乾站立檐前，只见南门那边来了一个人，腰束皮挺带，身穿布衫，行走如飞，刘乾赶上去，一把扯住那人。那人曰：“你扯我怎的？”刘乾曰：“不为别事，扯你算个命儿。”那人曰：“我有紧急公文要走路，我不算命。”刘乾道：“此位先生，课命准的好，该照顾他一命。况举医荐卜，乃是好情。”那人曰：“兄真个好笑！我不算命，也由我。”刘乾大怒，“你算也不算？”那人道：“我不算！”刘乾曰：“你既不算，我与你跳河，把命配你！”一把拽住那人，就往河里跑。众人曰：“那朋友，刘大哥分上，算个命罢！”那人说：“我无甚事，怎的算命？”刘乾道：“若算不准，我替你出钱；若准，你还要买酒请我。”那人无法，见刘乾凶得紧，只得进子牙命馆来。那人是个公差有



When the old man came out to pay him, he saw the ground already swept. "Brother, it's my son's wedding today. I'm so glad to have met a good fellow like you and got such excellent firewood," he said, and went back inside.

Moments later, a young servant came out with a tray, on which were four dishes of refreshment, a pot of wine and a bowl. "My master offers you some refreshment. Please help yourself." Liu Qian gasped in astonishment. "Mr. Jiang must be a celestial being! But I'll play a trick on him. I'll fill the first bowl right up to the brim so that there'll not be wine left to fill up the second. That way his prediction will be rendered untrue," he thought.

He filled the bowl with wine and drank it, then filled it up again. To his surprise the wine filled the bowl exactly to the brim. As he was finishing off the second bowl, the old man came out again carrying two strings of coins. "Here's the money for the firewood," the old man said, giving him the first string, then added, "As it's my son's wedding day today, here's a celebratory tip of twenty coppers to buy wine with."

Shouldering the empty baskets, Liu Qian rushed straight back to the fortune-teller's shop, exclaiming, "A celestial being in Zhaoge!"

Some people had heard Liu Qian's threat that morning. "Liu Qian's not someone to tangle with. You'd better leave in case your prediction doesn't come true," they warned Jiang Ziya. "There's no need for that," Jiang had answered unperturbed.

Everyone remained there chatting and waiting for Liu Qian's return. Soon Liu Qian came rushing in.

"Was my prediction accurate?" Jiang Ziya asked him.

"You must be a celestial being, sir," Liu Qian cried out. "Everything you said came true. How lucky the people of Zhaoge are to have such a saint with them. They can enjoy happiness and evade all misfortune."

"Since my prediction came true, let me have my pay," Jiang Ziya demanded.

"Twenty coppers is too little for your valuable service," Liu Qian said generously, but did not take his money out.

"If my prediction hadn't come true, you could certainly condemn me, but since it turned out to be accurate, you must pay me now. How can you just give me a lot of empty talk?" Jiang Ziya protested.

"It wouldn't be enough even if I gave you all 120 coppers. Don't get excited. Let me do something for you, sir," Liu Qian said earnestly.

He went outside and stood under the eaves, looking around, and when he caught sight of a man in a cotton shirt with a leather belt rushing up from the south gate, he raced forward and grasped him tightly.

"What do you think you're doing?" the man snapped.

"Oh, nothing. I'm just taking you to see a fortune-teller."





紧急事，等不的算八字，“看个卦罢。”扯下一个帖儿来与子牙看。子牙曰：“此卦做甚么用？”那人曰：“催钱粮。”子牙曰：“卦帖批与你去自验。此卦逢于艮，钱粮不必问。等候你多时，一百零三锭。”那人接了卦帖，问曰：“先生，一课该几个钱？”刘乾曰：“这课比众不同，五钱一课。”那人曰：“你又不是先生，你怎么定价？”刘乾曰：“不准包回换。五钱一课，还是好了你。”那人心忙意急，恐误了公事，只得称五钱银子去了。刘乾辞谢子牙。子牙曰：“承兄照顾。”众人在子牙命馆门前，看那催钱粮的如何。过了一个时辰，那人押解钱粮，到子牙命馆门前曰：“姜先生真乃神仙出世！果是一百零三锭。真不负五钱一课！”子牙从此时来，轰动一朝歌。军民人等，俱来算命看课，五钱一命。子牙收得起的银子。马氏欢喜，异人遂心。不觉光阴似箭，日月如梭，半年以后，远近闻名，多来推算，不在话下。

"I'm on business for the yamen, and I'm in a great hurry. I don't want my fortune told."

"But this fortune-teller's really wonderful. All his predictions come true. Besides, don't you know that it's a sign of favor for a person to recommend a good doctor or a good fortune-teller?" Liu Qian urged.

"How funny you are, Brother. It's up to me to decide whether I consult a fortune-teller or not. You can't force me to do it," the man protested.

"If you won't consult the fortune-teller, let's simply jump into the river and end our lives together," Liu Qian said rudely, pulling the man towards the river.

"Friend! Better have your fortune told. Can't you see how sincere Brother Liu is in offering you his recommendations?" the onlookers exhorted the man.

"But I've nothing to ask the fortune-teller, so how can he make any prediction?"

"If his prediction doesn't come true, I'll pay the fee for you, but if it does come true, you buy me a drink," Liu Qian challenged.

The man realized that it was futile to resist, and so he followed Liu reluctantly into the fortune-teller's. He was a clerk in the yamen who was being sent on urgent business, so he had no time to have his fortune told by his birth date. He picked out a divining slip and handed it to Jiang Ziya.

"What do you wish to know, Sir?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"I've been sent to collect the land tax. What do you think will happen?"

"You may verify yourself whether my prediction comes true or not. Your mission will be easily accomplished. The tax payers are already waiting for you and will pay without delay. You'll collect 103 silver ingots from them," Jiang Ziya said with confidence.

"How much do I owe you, sir?"

"This is no ordinary fortune-teller's, so the fees are quite high. It's half a tael of silver for each divination," Liu Qian said.

"You're not the fortune-teller. How do you know?" the clerk protested.

"We've got only one price here. At half a tael you're getting it cheap," Liu Qian retorted.

Not having time to argue, the clerk paid and left.

When Liu Qian bade farewell to Jiang Ziya, the latter thanked him sincerely for his help. Many onlookers remained at the fortune-teller's shop eager to witness the results of Jiang's second prediction.

About two hours later, the clerk rushed back. As soon as he reached the door, he shouted loudly, "Oh, sir, you really are an immortal from Heaven. I got 103 ingots, exactly as you predicted. It really is worth half a tael of silver for one prediction!"



且说南门外轩辕坟中，有个玉石琵琶精，往朝歌城来看姐己，便在宫中夜食宫人。御花园太湖石下，白骨现天。琵琶精看罢出宫，欲回巢穴，驾着妖光，径往南门过，只听得哄哄人语，扰嚷之声。妖精拨开妖光看时，却是姜子牙算命。妖精曰：“待我与他推算，看他如何？”妖精一化，变作一个妇人，身穿重孝，扭捏腰肢而言曰：“列位君子让一让，妾身算一命。”纣时人老诚，两边闪开。子牙正看命，见一妇人来的蹊跷。子牙定睛观看，认得是个妖精，暗思：“好孽畜！也来试我眼色。今日不除妖怪，等待何时！”子牙曰：“列位看命君子，‘男女授受不亲’，先让这小娘子算了去，然后依次算来。”众人曰：“也罢，我们让他先算。”妖精进了里面坐下。子牙曰：“小娘子，借右手一看。”妖精曰：“先生算命，难道也会风鉴？”子牙曰：“先看相，后算命。”妖精暗笑，把右手递与子牙看。子牙一把将妖精的寸关尺脉门搭住，将丹田中先天元气，运上火眼金睛，把妖光钉住了。子牙不言，只管看着。妇人曰：“先生不相不言，我乃女流，如何拿住我手。快放手！旁人看着，这是何说！”旁人且多不知奥妙，齐齐大呼：“姜子牙，你年纪老大，怎干这样事！你贪爱此女姿色，对众欺骗，此乃天子日月脚下，怎这等无知，实为可恶！”子牙曰：“列位，此女非人，乃是妖精。”众人大喝曰：“好胡说！明明一个女子，怎说是妖精。”外面围看的挤嚷不开。子牙暗思：“若放了女子，妖精一去，青白难分。我既在此，当除妖怪，显我姓名。”子牙手中无物，止有一紫石砚台，用手抓起石砚，照妖精顶上响一声，打得脑



After that, news of Jiang Ziya spread like wildfire through Zhaoge, and everyone was eager to pay half a tael of silver to have his fortune told. Jiang's daily income now satisfied his wife, and Song Yiren was naturally delighted. In six months, Jiang Ziya was known throughout the land, and people came from far and wide to consult him.

In the Xuanyuan grave mound south of Zhaoge lived the Jade Lute specter. Each time she went to the palace to visit Daji, she took the opportunity to devour some of the palace maids under the cover of night and pile the bones under the ornamental Taihu Lake rocks.

One morning she bade farewell to Daji and left the palace on her spectral cloud. Over the south gate, she heard a great clamor below and saw Jiang Ziya making divinations among a big crowd.

"I'll go down and see if he can find out what I am," she decided, transforming herself into a beautiful young woman in mourning. She moved up gracefully. "Gentlemen, please let me through to have my fortune told," she said in a sweet voice.

People made way for her at once. Jiang Ziya sensed something odd about the woman. Looking at her closely, he realized that she was a specter.

"The damned beast! How dare she come and test me out! Why wait till later to subdue her? I'll finish her off today!" he decided, and said, "Would you gentlemen please give precedence to the lady? Let her have her fortune told first." When she sat down, he said, "Show me your right hand, please!"

"Do you also tell fortunes by reading palms?" the specter asked with a smile.

"I'll read your palm first and your birth date later."

The Jade Lute smiled again and gave her hand to Jiang Ziya. He held her wrist tightly, and then transmitting congenital energy to his eyes, he stared at her and fixed her in her seat.

"Why don't you tell my fortune? How dare you grasp my hand like this! Don't you see I'm a lady! Let go at once. How can you explain yourself to all these onlookers?" the specter cried.

Not understanding what was happening, the onlookers shouted, "Jiang Ziya, you're already an old man. How can you be so bewitched as to lose control of yourself? This is the capital where His Majesty resides. How dare you be so indecent here!"

"Gentlemen," Jiang tried to explain, "this is a specter, not a human being."

"What nonsense! We're not blind. She's clearly a woman. How can you say she's a specter?"

As the crowd grew larger, Jiang Ziya thought, "Should I release my hand, the specter would run away, and I would have no evidence to explain myself. I must subdue her and let my name be known."



浆喷出，血染衣襟。子牙不放手，还摞住了脉门，使妖精不能变化。两边人大叫：“莫等他走了！”众人齐喊：“算命的打死了人！”重重叠叠围住了子牙命馆。不一时，打路的来，乃是亚相比干乘马来到，问左右：“为何众人喧嚷？”众人齐说：“丞相驾临，拿姜尚去见丞相爷！”比干勒住马，问：“甚么事？”内中有抱不平的人跪下，“启老爷：此间有一人算命，叫做姜尚。适间有一个女子来算命，他见女子姿色，便欲欺骗。女子贞洁不从，姜尚陡起凶心，提起石砚，照顶上一下打死，可怜血溅满身，死于非命。”比干听众口一辞，大怒，唤左右：“拿来！”子牙一只手拖住妖精，拖到马前跪下。比干曰：“看你皓头白须，如何不知国法，白日欺奸女子，良妇不从，为何执砚打死！人命关天，岂容恶党！勘问明白，以正大法。”子牙曰：“老爷在上，容姜尚禀明。姜尚自幼读书守礼，岂敢违法。但此女非人，乃是妖精。近日只见妖气贯于宫中，灾星历遍天下，小人既在辇毂之下，感当今皇上水土之恩，除妖灭怪，荡魔驱邪，以尽子民之志。此女实是妖怪，怎敢为非。望老爷细察，小民方得生路。”旁边众人，齐齐跪下：“老爷，此等江湖术士，利口巧言，遮掩狡诈，蔽惑老爷，众人经目，明明欺骗不从，逞凶打死；老爷若听他言，可怜女子衔冤，百姓负屈！”比干见众口难调，又见子牙拿住妇人手不放，比干问曰：“那姜尚，妇人已死，为何不放他手，这是何说？”子牙答曰：“小人若放他手，妖精去了，何以为证。”比干闻言，分付众民：“此处不可辨明，待吾启奏天子，便知清白。”众民围住子牙；子牙拖着妖精，往午门来。比干至摘星楼候旨。纣王宣比干见。比干进内，俯伏启奏。王曰：“朕无旨意，卿有何奏章？”比干奏曰：“臣过南门，有一术士算命，只见一女子算命，术士看女子是妖精，不是人，便将砚石打死。众民不服，齐言术士爱女子姿色，强奸不从，逞凶将女子打死。臣据术士之言，亦似有理。然众民之言，又是经目可证。臣请陛下旨意定



He had no weapon, so he picked up a purple stone ink slab from his desk and struck a heavy blow on her temple. Her skull cracked and blood soaked her clothing. Jiang Ziya continued to hold her wrist so that she couldn't transform herself to another form.

"Don't let him run away! The fortune-teller's killed a woman," people cried.

They surrounded the house shouting and cursing. Just then Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan came by on his horse. "Why are they making such a racket here?" he asked his attendants.

But the crowd had already seen him. "Here comes the Prime Minister. Let's take Jiang Ziya to see him."

Bi Gan stopped his horse. "What's the matter here?"

One member of the crowd, exasperated by the atrocity, stepped forward and knelt down. "There's a fortune-teller here named Jiang Shang. Just now a woman asked him to tell her fortune. He took a fancy to her and tried to insult her, but the woman was chaste and resisted him. He became annoyed and killed her with a stone ink slab. It's a terrible shame that this innocent woman should die such a violent death."

Bi Gan became very angry. "Seize him and bring him over," he ordered his guards.

Jiang Ziya was still holding the specter's wrist. He dragged her over and knelt down.

"You're an aged man, but you ignore the law and attempt to insult this woman in broad daylight. How dare you beat her to death when she refused to comply! Your behavior cannot be tolerated. You must be sent to court for trial and seriously dealt with," Bi Gan swore.

"Please allow me to speak, sir! I've studied the rites since childhood and never dare to break the law. This woman isn't a human being but a specter. The aura of evil spirits has filled the palace recently, and the kingdom's beset with disaster. Since I'm a citizen of the capital, I have the obligation to wipe out specters. I hope you can realize that this woman is indeed a specter."

"She's already dead, so why do you still hold her so tightly?" Bi Gan asked.

"If I release my hand and she runs away, I'll have no evidence to prove my innocence."

Bi Gan saw that people were on the verge of a riot. "The case cannot be examined here. I'll report it to His Majesty and it can be clarified at the palace," he announced.

Following Bi Gan, Jiang Ziya dragged the specter to the palace gate. Bi Gan entered the palace and proceeded to the Star Picking Mansion, where he reported to King Zhou what had happened.



夺。”姐已在后听见比干奏此事，暗暗叫苦：“妹妹，你回巢穴去便罢了，算甚么命！今遇恶人打死，我必定与你报仇！”姐已出见纣王，“妾身奏闻陛下，亚相所奏，真假难辨。主上可传旨，将术士连女子拖至摘星楼下，妾身一观，便知端的。”纣王曰：“御妻之言是也。”传旨：“命术士将女子拖于摘星楼见驾。”旨意一出，子牙将妖精拖至摘星楼。子牙俯伏阶下，右手摞住妖精不放。纣王在九曲雕栏之外，王曰：“阶下俯伏何人？”子牙曰：“小民东海许州人氏，姓姜，名尚，幼访名师，秘授阴阳，善识妖魅。因尚住居都城，南门求食，不意妖氛作怪，来惑小民。尚看破天机，剿妖精于朝野，灭怪静其宫阙。姜尚一则感皇王都城戴载之恩，报师傅秘授不虚之德。”王曰：“朕观此女，乃是人像，并非妖邪，何无破绽？”子牙曰：“陛下若要妖精现形，可取柴数担，炼此妖精，原形自现。”天子传旨：搬运柴薪至于楼下。子牙将妖精顶上用符印镇住原形，子牙方放了手，把女子衣裳解开，前心用符，后心用印，镇住妖精四肢，拖在柴上，放起火来。好火！但见：

浓烟笼地角，黑雾锁天涯。积风生烈焰，赤火冒红霞。  
风乃火之师，火乃风之帅。风仗火行凶；火以风为害。  
滔滔烈火，无风不能成形；荡荡狂风，无火焉能取胜。  
风随火势，须臾时燎彻天关；火趁风威，顷刻间烧开地户。  
金蛇串绕，难逃火炙之殃；烈焰围身，大难飞来怎躲。  
好似老君扳倒炼丹炉，一块火光连地滚。

子牙用火炼妖精，烧炼两个时辰，上下浑身，不曾烧枯了些儿。纣王问亚相比干曰：“朕观烈火焚烧两个时辰，浑身也不焦烂，真乃妖怪！”比干奏曰：“若看此事，姜尚亦是奇人。但不知此妖终是何物作怪。”王曰：“卿问姜尚，此妖果是何物成精？”比干下楼，问子牙。子牙答曰：“要此妖现真形，这也不难。”子牙用三昧真火烧此妖精。不知妖精性命如何，且听下回分解。



Hearing his report, Daji groaned inwardly. "Oh, Sister! Why didn't you go straight home instead of looking for trouble with the fortune-teller! I'll avenge you, Sister," she promised, and immediately presented herself before King Zhou. "Your Majesty! It's really difficult to determine the truth from the Vice Prime Minister's report. Send them and let me see them."

"You're right, Queen," King Zhou agreed and sent for Jiang Ziya and the dead woman.

When Jiang Ziya knelt down and told his story, the king said, "As far as I can see, she's a real woman, not a specter. How can you prove that she is indeed a specter?"

"Your Majesty may see her original form by burning her in fire."

When King Zhou gave his approval, Jiang Ziya laid the specter on the ground, unbuttoned her clothes and stamped a charm on her breast and back, preventing her from running away. Then the guards put her on a great pile of firewood and set it alight. They burned her in the fierce fire for four hours, but she remained unharmed, without even the slightest burn mark on her skin.

"Four hours in the fire hasn't even scorched her. She's undoubtedly a specter," King Zhou said to Bi Gan.

"Jiang Shang's obviously no ordinary man," replied Bi Gan. "But we still don't know what her real form is."

"Go ask Jiang Shang," the king directed.

If you want to know what became of the specter, you must read the next chapter.



## 第十七回

### 纣王无道造蜃盆

诗曰：

蜃盆极恶已满天，宫女无辜血肉腩。媚骨已无埋玉处，  
芳魂犹带秽腥膻。故园有梦空歌月，此地沉冤未息肩。  
怨气漫漫天应惨，周家世业更安然。

话说子牙用三昧真火烧这妖精。此火非同凡火，从眼、鼻、口中喷将出来，乃是精、气、神炼成三昧，养就离精，与凡火共成一处，此妖精怎么经得起！妖精在火光中，扒将起来，大叫曰：“姜子牙，我与你无冤无仇，怎将三昧真火烧我？”纣王听见火里妖精说话，吓的汗流浹背，目瞪口呆。子牙曰：“陛下，请驾进楼，雷来了。”子牙双手齐放，只见霹雳交加，一声响，火灭烟消，现出一面玉石琵琶来。纣王与妲己曰：“此妖已现真形。”妲己听言，心如刀绞，意似油煎，暗暗叫苦：“你来看我，回去便罢了，又算什么命！今遇恶人，将你原形烧出，使我肉身何安。我不杀姜尚，誓不与匹夫俱生！”妲己只得勉作笑容，启奏曰：“陛下命左右将玉石琵琶取上楼来，待妾上了丝弦，早晚与陛下进御取乐。妾观姜尚，才术两全，何不封彼在朝保驾？”王曰：“御妻之言甚善。”天子传旨：“且将玉石琵琶，取上楼来。姜尚听朕封官：官拜下大夫，特授司天监职，随朝侍用。”子牙谢恩，出午门外，冠带回来异人庄上。异人设席款待，亲友俱





## Chapter 17

### The Serpent Pit

As ordinary fire could not hurt the Jade Lute specter, Jiang Ziya began to spurt divine fire from his mouth, nostrils and eyes. It was produced by tempering breath with vital energies and his own spirit. When this divine fire was applied, the specter's defences broke down.

She struggled to get up crying, "Jiang Ziya, there's no enmity between us. How can you burn me so ruthlessly?"

Hearing her cries amidst the flames, King Zhou was struck dumb with terror and broke out in a cold sweat.

"Please go inside, Your Majesty. Thunder's approaching," Jiang Ziya directed him, opening both palms towards the sky.

Great thunderbolts crashed and the earth shook. The fire went out and the smoke dispersed, revealing a jade lute lying on the ground.

"Now the specter's returned to its original form," King Zhou told Daji.

She was devastated by what had happened. "Sister, I must take revenge for you and kill him! He and I cannot exist at the same time," she murmured silently. She then forced a smile and suggested, "Send for the jade lute. When I've strung it, I can play it day and night for Your Majesty's enjoyment. Jiang Ziya's highly talented. You should give him a post so that he can protect you."

"Excellent idea, Queen," King Zhou agreed. He ordered, "Bring the jade lute into the Star Picking Mansion. Jiang Ziya is hereby appointed Junior Minister and Director of the Imperial Observatory."

Jiang Ziya thanked the king for the appointment and returned to Song Yiren's mansion in his official hat and robes. Song Yiren then held a banquet to honor his promotion, inviting his relatives and friends. The



来恭贺。饮酒数日，子牙复往都城随朝。不表。

且说妲己把玉石琵琶放于摘星楼上，采天地之灵气，受日月之精华，已后五年，返本還元，断送成汤天下。

一日，纣王在摘星楼与妲己饮宴，酒至半酣，妲己歌舞一回，与纣王作乐。三宫嫔妃，六院宫人，齐声喝采。内有七十余名宫人，俱不喝采，眼下且有泪痕。妲己看见，停住歌舞，查问那七十余名宫人，原是那一宫的。内有奉御官查得：原是中宫姜娘娘侍御宫人。妲己怒曰：“你主母谋逆赐死，你们反怀忿怒，久后必成宫闱之患。”奏与纣王，纣王大怒，传旨：“拿下楼，俱用金瓜打死！”妲己奏曰：“陛下，且不必将这起逆党击顶，暂且送下冷宫，妾有一计，可除宫中大弊。”奉御官即将宫女送下冷宫。且说妲己奏纣王曰：“将摘星楼下，方圆开二十四丈阔，深五丈。陛下传旨，命都城万民，每一户纳蛇四条，都放于此坑之内。将作弊宫人，跣剥干净，送下坑中，喂此毒蛇。此刑名曰‘蝮盆’。”纣王曰：“御妻之奇法，真可剔除宫中大弊。”天子随传旨意，张挂各门。国法森严，万民遭累，勒令限期，往龙德殿交蛇。众民日日进于朝中，并无内外，法纪全消。朝廷失政，不止一日。众民纳蛇，都城那里有这些蛇，俱到外县买蛇交纳。一日，文书房胶鬲——官居上大夫，在文书房里，看天下本章，只见众民或三两成行，四五一处，手提筐篮，进九间大殿。大夫问执殿官：“这些百姓，手提筐篮，里面是甚么东西？”执殿官答曰：“万民交蛇。”大夫大惊曰：“天子要蛇何用？”执殿官曰：“卑职不知。”大夫出文书房到大殿，众民见大夫叩头。胶鬲曰：“你等拿的甚么东西？”众民



celebration lasted several days.

Meanwhile Daji placed the jade lute in the highest part of the Star Picking Mansion so that it could absorb the spiritual essences from Heaven, earth, the sun and the moon. This way, in five years, it would become a specter again and help Daji bring about the fall of the Shang Dynasty.

One day, King Zhou was drinking in the Star Picking Mansion when Daji began to sing and dance to entertain him. She was applauded by all the concubines and maidservants, except for about seventy palace maids who only shed silent tears. Seeing this, Daji stopped and sent her people to enquire which palace they belonged to. When it was reported that they had been maids of Queen Jiang, Daji was furious.

"Their mistress deserved to die for her treachery. Why are they so deeply sympathetic towards her. They'll be a source of trouble within the palace if they're not dealt with," she cried, and told King Zhou as much.

King Zhou also flared up. "Take them all downstairs and beat them to death with gold hammers," he ordered.

"Your Majesty! There's no need to beat the rebels to death at once. Put them in isolation temporarily while I devise a plan to eradicate this evil from the palace," she said.

The palace maids were taken to the court prison.

Daji told King Zhou, "Dig a pit in front of the Star Picking Mansion, 240 feet in circumference and 50 in depth. Ask for four snakes from each household in the capital and place them in the pit. The palace maids are to be stripped and thrown in the pit among the serpents."

"This wonderful idea of yours is sure to rid the palace of this serious menace," King Zhou praised.

He ordered at once to post a decree on the walls of the capital demanding that serpents be submitted to the Dragon Virtue Hall on the fixed date. It stirred the whole capital into a fever of activity. From morning till night, the streets were crowded with people rushing towards the palace to hand in their serpents. Traffic was disrupted and the city was in chaos. Soon there were no more serpents in the capital, and people rushed to other counties beyond Zhaoge to buy them to meet the king's demands.

One day, Supreme Minister Jiao Ge was reading documents in the secretariat when he saw crowds of people with baskets in their hands hurrying into the palace.

"What's in their baskets?" he asked the Chief of Guards.



曰：“天子榜文，张挂各门，每一户交蛇四条。都城那里许多蛇，俱是百里之外，买蛇交纳。不知圣上那里用。”胶鬲曰：“你们且去交蛇。”众民去了。大夫进文书房，不看本章，只见武成王黄飞虎、比干、微子、箕子、杨任、杨修俱至，相见礼毕。胶鬲曰：“列位大人可知天子令百姓每户纳蛇四条，不知取此何用。”黄飞虎答曰：“未将昨日看操回来，见众民言，天子张挂榜文，每户交蛇四条，纷纷不绝，俱有怨言。因此今日到此，请问列位大人，必知其详。”比干、箕子曰：“我等一字也不知。”黄飞虎曰：“列位既不知道，叫执殿官过来，你听我吩咐。你上心打听，天子用此物做甚么事。若得实信，速来报我，重重赏你。”执殿官领命去讫，众官随散。不表。

且说众民又过五七日，蛇已交完。收蛇官往摘星楼回旨，奏曰：“都城众民交蛇已完，奴婢回旨。”纣王问妲己曰：“坑中蛇已完了，御妻何以治此？”妲己曰：“陛下传旨，可将前日暂寄不游宫宫人，跣剥干净，用绳缚背，推下坑中，喂此蛇蝎。若无此极刑，宫中深弊难除。”纣王曰：“御妻所设此刑，真是除奸之要法。蛇既纳完，命奉御官将不游宫前日送下宫人，绑出推落蚕盆。”奉御官得旨，不一时将宫人绑至坑边。那宫人一见蛇蝎狰狞，扬头吐舌，恶相难看，七十二名宫人一齐叫苦。那日胶鬲在文书房，也为这件事，逐日打听；只听得一阵悲声惨切。大夫出的文书房来，见执殿官忙忙来报：“启老爷：前日天子取蛇，放在大坑中；今日将七十二名宫人跣剥入坑，喂此蛇蝎。卑职探听得实，前来报知。”胶鬲闻言，心中甚是激烈，迳进内庭，过了龙



“The serpents that the king demands.”

He was astonished. “What does His Majesty want them for?”

“Sorry, I don’t know, Supreme Minister.”

Jiao Ge left his office and walked to the Grand Hall. When people bowed to him, he asked, “What do you have in your baskets?”

“A royal decree posted on the city gates requires that every household contribute four serpents to the palace. We’re here to hand them in, but we don’t know what His Majesty wants them for.”

Jiao Ge had just returned to his office when Prince Huang Feihu, Bi Gan, Wei Zi, Ji Zi, Yang Ren and Yang Xiu arrived unexpectedly. After the customary exchange of greetings, Jiao Ge asked, “Fellow ministers, His Majesty’s ordered every household in the capital to contribute four serpents to the palace. Do you know what His Majesty wants them for?”

“When I was returning from the military exercises I heard the people complaining about the royal decree. I’ve to come here to enquire what it’s all about,” Huang Feihu replied.

“We know nothing about it either,” Bi Gan and Ji Zi said.

“Since none of us knows, let’s ask the Chief of Guards,” Huang Feihu suggested, and sent for him. “Do as I tell you,” he instructed when the Chief of Guards had come. “Try to find out what His Majesty wants the serpents for. If you find out the truth, you’ll be well rewarded.”

The Chief of Guards departed, and the ministers returned home. Five or six days later, the collection of serpents had been completed.

“The pit’s already full of serpents. What do you plan to do with them, my Queen?” the king asked Daji.

“Your Majesty may order that the imprisoned maids be stripped, bound, then pushed into the pit for the serpents to eat alive. Without this drastic punishment, I’m afraid we would find it impossible to eliminate the deep-rooted evil from the palace.”

King Zhou praised her ingenuity and gave his orders to the palace guards. The palace maids were led out to the brink of the pit. Looking down at the venomous serpents writhing and spitting below, the poor women were utterly horrified and began to scream and moan.

Jiao Ge was in his office and heard the women’s bitter cries. He was on his way to investigate when the Chief of Guards ran up to him.

“Sir, His Majesty’s put all the serpents into a huge pit and will feed them on the seventy-two palace maids today. This information’s completely accurate. I’ve made haste to inform you.”

The report stunned Jiao Ge. He immediately made his way to the Star



德殿，进分宫楼，走至摘星楼下，只见众宫人赤身缚背，泪流满面，哀声叫苦，凄惨难观。胶鬲厉声大叫曰：“此事岂可行！胶鬲有本启奏！”纣王正要看毒蛇咬食宫人以为取乐，不期大夫胶鬲启奏。纣王宣胶鬲上楼俯伏，王问曰：“朕无旨意，卿有何奏章？”胶鬲泣而奏曰：“臣不为别事，因见陛下横刑惨酷，民遭荼毒，君臣睽隔，上下不相交接，宇宙已成否塞之象。今陛下又用这等非刑，宫人得其何罪！昨日臣见万民交纳蛇蝎，人人俱有怨言。今旱潦频仍，况且买蛇百里之外，民不安生。臣闻：民贫则为盗，盗聚则生乱。况且海外烽烟，诸侯离叛，东南二处，刻无宁宇，民日思乱，刀兵四起。陛下不修仁政，日行暴虐，自从盘古至今，并不曾见，此刑为何名？那一代君王所制？”王曰：“宫人作弊，无法可除，往往不息，故设此刑，名曰‘蚕盆’。”胶鬲奏曰：“人之四肢，莫非皮肉，虽有贵贱之殊，总是一体。今入坑穴之中，毒蛇吞啖，苦痛伤心。陛下观之，其心何忍，圣意何乐。况宫人皆系女子，朝夕宫中，侍陛下于左右，不过役使，有何大弊，遭此惨刑。望陛下怜赦宫人，真皇上浩荡之恩，体上天好生之德。”王曰：“卿之所谏，亦似有理；但肘腋之患，发不及觉，岂得以草率之刑治之。况妇寺阴谋险毒，不如此，彼未必知警耳。”胶鬲厉声言曰：“‘君乃臣之元首，臣是君之股肱。’又曰：‘亶聪明作元后，元后作民父母。’今陛下忍心丧德，不听臣言，妄行暴虐，罔有悛心，使天下诸侯怀怨，东伯侯无辜受戮，南伯侯屈死朝歌，谏官尽遭炮烙；今无辜宫娥，又入蚕盆。陛下只知欢娱于深宫，信谗听佞，荒淫酗酒，真如重疾在心，不知何时举发，诚所



Picking Mansion. There he saw the palace maids, bound, naked, sobbing and wailing. It was a horrifying sight.

"This is an outrage. I must admonish His Majesty against it," he roared at the top of his voice.

King Zhou was just about to amuse himself by watching the serpents devour the maids when Jiao Ge unexpectedly requested to see him. He ordered to admit him. As Jiao Ge knelt down, he asked, "What do you have to say?"

Jiao Ge wept. "By using torture, you'll destroy the close relationship between yourself and your ministers, and you'll bring chaos on the kingdom," he began. "The maids are all innocent, yet you're sending them to such a cruel death! Yesterday I saw people coming here with the serpents, and every one was full of complaints. They've suffered from flood and drought and were further compelled to go as far as 100 *li* away for the serpents. Poverty drives them to become outlaw and outlaws endanger the kingdom. In addition, war's ravaging the North Sea district, and hundreds of marquises in the East and south have rebelled. If the country cannot remain in peace, the dynasty is in danger. In spite of all this, Your Majesty refuses to practice virtuous government and commits new atrocities daily. Never since Pan Gu created the world has such a situation prevailed. Which ruler in all of history has ever used this form of torture?"

"The palace maids are wicked. We cannot deal with them by any other means, so we devised this serpent pit."

"They'll suffer unbearable agony. How could you bear to watch, and what pleasure could it give you? Furthermore, they're all women and have served you day and night obeying your orders. They've done nothing to deserve such cruel torture. I beg Your Majesty to forgive them. Let them live as Heaven would desire," Jiao Ge admonished emotionally.

"Though what you've said seems to be reasonable, the conspiracy plotted by these women cannot be dismissed lightly. If they're not punished like this, they're likely to continue their subversive ways."

Jiao Ge grew angry. "The king's the head of a body and his ministers are the limbs. The king should try to be a wise and beloved parent. But you're ruthless and devoid of virtue. You reject wise advice from the loyal and use cruel torture without the slightest remorse. You've murdered the innocent East Grand Duke and South Grand Duke, as well as those who admonished you against the burning pillars. Now you intend to send the guiltless maids into the serpent pit. All you know is drink and





谓大痛既溃，命亦随之。陛下不一思省，只知纵欲败度，不想国家何以如磐石之安。可惜先王克勤克俭，敬天畏民，方保社稷太平，华夷率服。陛下当改恶从善，亲贤远色，退佞进忠，庶几宗社可保，国泰民安，生民幸甚。臣等日夕焦心，不忍陛下沦于昏暗，黎民离心离德，祸生不测，所谓社稷宗庙非陛下之所有也。臣何忍深言，望陛下以祖宗天下为重，不得妄听女子之言，有废忠谏之语，万民幸甚！”纣王大怒曰：“好匹夫！怎敢无知侮谤圣君，罪在不赦！”叫左右：“即将此匹夫剥净，送入蚕盆，以正国法！”众人方欲来拿，被胶鬲大喝曰：“昏君无道，杀戮谏臣，此国家大患，吾不忍见成汤数百年天下一旦付与他人，虽死我不瞑目。况吾官居谏议，怎入蚕盆！”手指纣王大骂：“昏君！这等横暴，终应西伯之言！”大夫言罢，望摘星楼下一跳，撞将下来，跌了个脑浆迸流，死于非命。有诗为证：

赤胆忠心为国忧，先生撞下摘星楼。早知天数成汤灭，可惜捐躯血水流。

话说胶鬲坠楼，粉骨碎身。纣王看见，更觉大怒，传旨：“将宫女推下蚕盆，连胶鬲一齐喂了蛇蝎！”可怜七十二名宫人，齐声高叫：“皇天后土，我等又未为非，遭此惨刑！姐已贱人！我等生不能食汝之肉，死后定啖汝阴魂！”纣王见宫人落于坑内，饿蛇将宫人盘绕，吞咬皮肤，钻入腹内，苦痛非常。姐已曰：“若无此刑，焉得除宫中大患！”纣王以手拂姐已之背曰：“喜你这等奇法，妙不可言！”两边宫人，心酸胆碎。有诗为证：

蚕盆蛇蝎势狰狞，宫女遭殃入此坑。一见魂飞千里外，



lust," he cried. "You must mend your evil ways! Keep your distance from Daji and the minions and turn to the loyal and worthy. Only then can the state be saved and peace be brought to the land. I demand that Your Majesty give this precedence over all else. You mustn't trust the words of women."

King Zhou was furious. "You damned wretch! How dare you insult your monarch like this. You deserve death." He ordered, "Guards, seize this wretch, strip him naked and throw him into the serpent pit."

As the guards moved forward, Jiao Ge shouted, "You damned tyrant! I can't bear to see the Shang Dynasty fall into the hands of somebody else. Though I'll die, I'll find no peace. Furthermore, I hold the post of Supreme Admonishing Minister. How can you unlawfully send me to the serpent pit for admonishing you?" He pointed at King Zhou and swore, "You damned tyrant! You're bound to meet your doom before long."

He ran to a window and threw himself out. His skull smashed on the ground below, and he died in a pool of blood. But King Zhou's wrath remained unabated. "Throw the palace maids and his corpse into the serpent pit to feed the serpents," he ordered.

The maids cried, "Heaven! We've done nothing wrong, but he sends us to a cruel death. Daji, you damned bitch! Though we can't bite your flesh off while alive, we'll devour your soul when we're dead."

King Zhou watched as they were thrown into the pit. The serpents coiled about them, devouring their flesh and boring into their intestines. All died very tragically.

"If we hadn't invented this torture, how could we rid the palace of this scourge," Daji said.

King Zhou patted her on the back and praised her, "This ingenious invention of yours is really too wonderful for words."



可怜惨死胜油烹。

话说纣王将宫人入于坑内，以为美刑。妲己又奏曰：“陛下可再传旨，将蚕盆左边掘一池，右边挖一沼。池中以糟丘为山；右边以酒为池。糟丘山上，用树枝插满，把肉披成薄片，挂在树枝之上，名曰‘肉林’。右边将酒灌满，名曰‘酒海’。天子富有四海，原该享无穷富贵，此肉林、酒海，非天子之尊，不得妄自尊享也。”纣王曰：“御妻异制奇观，真堪玩赏；非奇思妙想，不能有此。”随传旨，依法制造。非止一日，将酒池、肉林，造的完全。纣王设宴，与妲己玩赏肉林、酒池。正饮之间，妲己奏曰：“乐声烦厌，歌唱寻常，陛下传旨，命宫人与宦官扑跌，得胜者池中赏酒；不胜者乃无用之婢，侍于御前，有辱天子，可用金瓜击顶，放于糟内。”妲己奏毕，纣王无不听从，传旨：“命宫人宦官扑跌。”可怜这妖孽在宫中，无所不为，宫宦遭殃，伤残民命。——看官：他为何事要将宫人打死，人在糟内？妲己或二、三更，现出原形，要吃糟内宫人，以血食养他妖气，惑于纣王。有诗曰：

悬肉为林酒作池，纣王无道类穷奇。蚕盆怨气冲霄汉，  
炮烙精魂傍火炊。文武无心扶社稷；军民有意破宫篱。  
将来国土何时尽？戊午旬中甲子期。

话说纣王听信妲己，造酒池、肉林，一无忌惮，朝纲不整，任意荒淫。一日，妲己忽然想起玉石琵琶精之恨，设一计要害子牙；作一图画。那日在摘星楼与纣王饮宴，酒至半酣，妲己曰：“妾有一图画，献与陛下一观。”王曰：“取来朕看。”妲己命宫人将画叉挑着。纣王曰：“此画又非翎毛，又



“Your Majesty may dig a second pit to the left of this one. Have hills of distiller’s grain heaped up inside it, and cover them with a forest of tree branches hung with thin slices of meat. Then you’ll have a ‘Meat Forest.’ Dig a pool to the right of the serpent pit, fill it with wine, and you’ll have what’s called a ‘Wine Pool.’ Your Majesty’s master of the kingdom and should enjoy boundless wealth and power. Only Your Majesty should be privileged to enjoy the Meat Forest and Wine Pool, nobody else,” Daji suggested.

“My dear Queen! You really are wonderful. You can think of such marvelous inventions,” the king said admiringly.

Some days later, when both the Meat Forest and Wine Pool had been completed, the king held a feast to enjoy them with Daji. While they were drinking, Daji came up with another suggestion.

“As we’re tired of music and dance, let the palace maids wrestle with the eunuchs. The winners may drink from the Wine Pool while the losers, unfit to serve you, must be beaten to death with gold hammers and thrown into the Meat Forest.”

King Zhou promptly agreed to her proposal, and ordered that wrestling matches between palace maids and eunuchs be held at once. Great was their suffering, and many of them met cruel deaths.

But why was Daji interested in having the maids and eunuchs murdered and their corpses thrown into the Meat Forest? It was because late every night, the fox sprite assumed her real form and nourished her body and spirit by devouring the flesh and sucking the blood from the corpses.

Adoring Daji to the utmost degree, King Zhou lived extravagantly, neglecting government affairs and wallowing in sexual pleasures. One day, Daji suddenly remembered the humiliation the Jade Lute specter had suffered at the hands of Jiang Ziya, and devised a plot to have him put to death. She designed a magnificent building complex and showed her drawing to the tipsy king when they were drinking at the Star Picking Mansion. It



非走兽，又非山景，又非人物。”——上画一台，高四丈九尺，殿阁巍峨，琼楼玉宇，玛瑙砌就栏杆，明珠妆成梁栋，夜现光华，照耀瑞彩，名曰“鹿台”。姐己奏曰：“陛下万圣至尊，贵为天子，富有四海，若不造此台，不足以壮观瞻。此台真是瑶池玉阙，阆苑蓬莱。陛下早晚宴于台上，自有仙人、仙女下降。陛下得与真仙遨游，延年益寿，禄算无穷。陛下与妾，共叨福庇，永享人间富贵也。”王曰：“此台工程浩大，命何官督造？”姐己奏曰：“此工须得才艺精巧、聪明睿智、深识阴阳、洞晓生克，以妾观之，非下大夫姜尚不可。”纣王闻言，即传旨：“宣下大夫姜尚。”使臣往比干府宣召姜尚。比干慌忙接旨。使臣曰：“旨意乃是宣下大夫姜尚。”子牙即忙接旨，谢恩曰：“天使大人，可先到午门，卑职就至。”使臣去了。子牙暗起一课，早知今日之危。子牙对比干谢曰：“姜尚荷蒙大德提携，并早晚指教之恩，不期今日相别。此恩此德，不知何时可报。”比干曰：“先生何故出此言？”子牙曰：“尚占运命，主今日不好，有害无利，有凶无吉。”比干曰：“先生又非谏官在位，况且不久面君，以顺为是，何害之有！”子牙曰：“尚有一柬帖，压在书房砚台之下，但丞相有大难临身，无处解释，可观此柬，庶几可脱其危，乃卑职报丞相涓涯之万一耳。从今一别，不知何日能再睹尊颜！”子牙作辞，比干着实不忍，“先生果有灾迤，待吾进朝面君，可保先生无虞。”子牙曰：“数已如此，不必动劳，反累其事。”比干相送，子牙出相府，上马来到午



was a huge terrace forty-nine feet high, on which stood splendid jewelled halls and towers, with jade beams and agate railings that shone brightly in the darkness. She named it "The Happy Terrace."

As King Zhou was looking over the design, Daji said, "Your Majesty's the ruler of the country and the son of Heaven. Nothing other than this magnificent construction is sufficient to manifest your prestige and dignity. The terrace would be exactly like a jade palace in the Penglai fairyland. When you hold feasts there, celestial beings would come down from Heaven to participate. By meeting them you could attain longevity and unbounded power and happiness. You and I can then live happily together, enjoying all the riches and honors of this world."

"Who would be qualified to oversee the construction of such an immense complex?"

"The overseer must not only be an architect, but also have a thorough understanding of *yin* and *yang*. As I can see it, no one but Jiang Shang is qualified to undertake the task," Daji said unhesitatingly.

King Zhou promptly ordered, "Send for Jiang Shang."

The royal messenger found Jiang Ziya in Bi Gan's office. Jiang Ziya received the royal order, expressed his thanks for the honor of meeting His Majesty, and then told the messenger, "You may leave for the palace first. I'll be there shortly."

After the messenger left, Jiang Ziya quickly made a divination and found to his surprise that great danger was imminent. He bade farewell to Bi Gan, saying, "I'll always appreciate your kindness and help. I'm sorry that I don't know when I'll have the opportunity to see you again."

"Why do you say that?"

"I just made a divination and found that today I'll encounter a misfortune which I'll be unable to avoid."

"But you aren't an appointed admonitor, and it's a good sign that he's about to receive you. Just do as he instructs, and there can be no danger at all."

"I've written a note and placed it under your ink slab. If you face a calamity in the future and cannot find a way out, you may read it. It will help you to avert the disaster. I'm sorry there's nothing more I can do to return your kindness."



门，径至摘星楼候旨。奉御官宣上摘星楼，见驾毕。王曰：“卿与朕代劳，起造鹿台，俟功成之日，加禄增官，朕决不食言。图样在此。”子牙一看，高四丈九尺，上造琼楼玉宇，殿阁重檐，玛瑙砌就栏杆，宝石妆成梁栋。子牙看罢，暗想：“朝歌非吾久居之地，且将言语感悟这昏君，昏君必定不听、发怒。我就此脱身隐了，何为不可！”毕竟子牙凶吉如何，且听下回分解。

Jiang Ziya rode to the palace gate and then made his way to the Star Picking Mansion to see King Zhou.

"I've appointed you to oversee the construction of the Happy Terrace for me. As soon as it's completed, I'll reward you with a promotion," the king said, showing him the project.

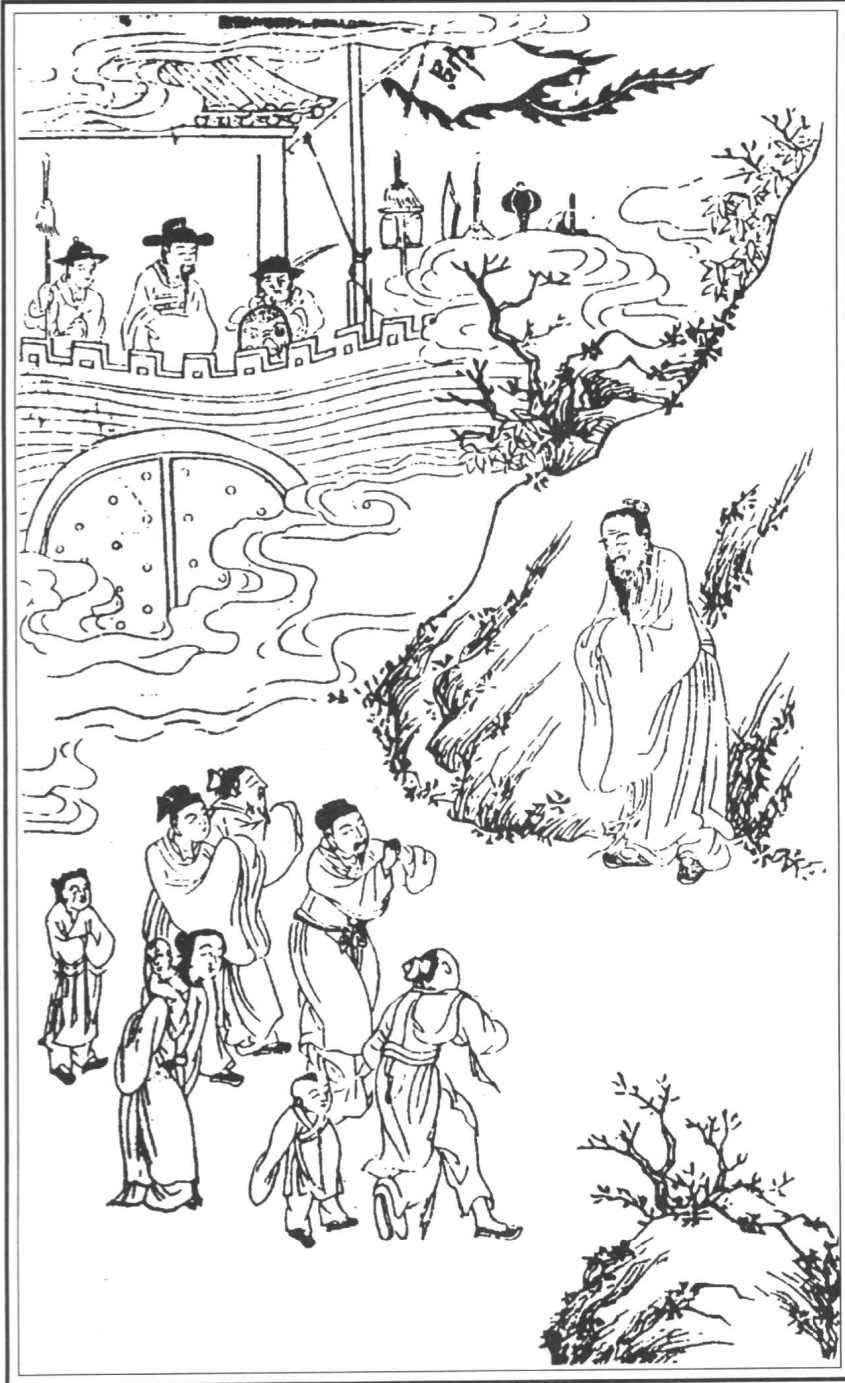
Jiang Ziya looked over the design. "As Zhaoge's not the place for me to stay long, I must try my best to admonish this tyrant. It's certain that he won't listen to me but will fly into a rage and try to hurt me. I must get out of here and hide myself," he decided.

If you want to know what became of Jiang Ziya, you must read the next chapter.









## 第十八回

### 子牙谏主隐磻溪

诗曰：

渭水潺潺日夜流，子牙从此独垂钩。当时未入飞熊梦，  
几向斜阳叹白头。

话说子牙看罢图样，王曰：“此台多少日期方可完得此工？”尚奏曰：“此台高四丈九尺，造琼楼玉宇，碧槛雕栏，工程浩大。若完台工，非三十五年不得完成。”纣王闻奏，对妲己曰：“御妻，姜尚奏朕，台工要三十五年方成。朕想光阴瞬息，岁月如流，年少可以行乐，若是如此，人生几何，安能长在！造此台实为无益。”妲己奏曰：“姜尚乃方外术士，总以一派诬言。那有三十五年完工之理！狂悖欺主，罪当炮烙！”纣王曰：“御妻之言是也。传奉官，可与朕拿姜尚炮烙，以正国法。”子牙曰：“臣启陛下，鹿台之工，劳民伤财，愿陛下且息此念头，切为不可。今四方刀兵乱起，水旱频仍，府库空虚，民生日促，陛下不留心邦本，与百姓养和平之福，日荒淫于酒色，远贤近佞，荒乱国政，杀害忠良，民怨天愁，累世警报，陛下全不修省。今又听狐媚之言，妄兴土木，陷害万民，臣不知陛下之所终矣。臣受陛下知遇之恩，不得不赤胆披肝，冒死上陈。如不听臣言，又见昔日造琼宫之故事耳。可怜社稷生民，不久为他人之所有。臣何忍坐视而不言！”纣王闻言，大骂：“匹夫！焉敢诽谤天子！”令



## Chapter 18

### Flight from Zhaoge

As Jiang Ziya looked at the project, King Zhou asked, "How long do you need for the construction, Jiang Shang?"

"It's a huge project, forty-nine feet high and with halls and towers of jade and agate. It'll take a great amount of labor and I think at least thirty-five years."

King Zhou turned to Daji. "My dear Queen! Jiang Shang says it'll take thirty-five years to complete the Happy Terrace. Time flies swiftly and pleasures are best enjoyed when young. If it takes so long, we'll be too old to enjoy it. There seems to be no point in having it built at all."

"Jiang Shang's a sorcerer and speaks only nonsense. How can it take so long! He's deceiving you and should be punished with the burning pillar."

"You're right, Queen. Guards, seize him and execute him by the burning pillar."

"Your Majesty, I must point out that the labor required for this project is enormous. It'll exhaust the people and waste a lot of money. Your Majesty must abandon the whole idea," Jiang Ziya told the king. "We're constantly troubled by war, floods and drought, and the royal treasury's empty. The people are living in dire poverty. Your Majesty doesn't consider how to help them and bring them peace but spends time on wine and women. You've estranged the loyal and trust only the wicked. You murder the faithful, breed discontent among the people and anger Heaven. Now another project at the instigation of that enchantress, and it'll be your own ruin. As I've received your favor, I'm duty-bound to risk death and make this frank admonition. I can't bear to watch the state change hands."

"You damned fool! How dare you insult me!" King Zhou ordered his guards, "Seize him and slice him in pieces."





两边承奉官：“与朕拿下，醢尸齑粉，以正国法！”众人方欲向前，子牙抽身往楼下飞跑。纣王一见，且怒且笑，“御妻，你看这老匹夫，听见‘拿’之一字就跑了。礼节法度，全然不知，那有一个跑了的？”传旨命奉御官：“拿来！”众官赶子牙过了龙德殿、九间殿，子牙至九龙桥，只见众官赶来甚急，子牙曰：“承奉官不必赶我，莫非一死而已。”接着九龙桥栏杆，望下一撺，把水打了一个窟窿。众官急上桥看，水星儿也不冒一个——不知子牙借水遁去了。承奉官往摘星楼回旨。王曰：“好了这老匹夫！”

且不表纣王。话说子牙投水桥下，有四员执殿官扶着栏杆，看水嗟叹。适有上大夫杨任进午门，见桥边有执殿官，伏着望水。杨任问曰：“你等在此看什么？”执殿官曰：“启老爷：下大夫姜尚投水而死。”杨任曰：“为何事？”执殿官答曰：“不知。”杨任进文书房看本章。不题。

且说纣王与妲己议鹿台差那一员官监造。妲己奏曰：“若造此台，非崇侯虎不能成功。”纣王准行，差承奉宣崇侯虎。承奉得旨，出九间殿往文书房，来见杨任。杨任问曰：“下大夫姜子牙何事忤君，自投水而死？”承奉答曰：“天子命姜尚造鹿台，姜尚奏事忤旨，因命承奉拿他，他跑至此，投水而死。今诏崇侯虎督工。”杨任问曰：“何为鹿台？”承奉答曰：“苏娘娘献的图样，高四丈九尺，上造琼楼玉宇，殿阁重檐，玛瑙砌就栏杆，珠玉妆成梁栋。今命崇侯虎监造。卑职见天子所行皆桀王之道，不忍社稷丘墟，特来见大人。大人秉忠谏止土木之工，救万民搬泥运土之苦，免商贾有陷血本之殃，此大夫爱育天下生民之心，可播扬于世世矣。”杨



As the palace guards moved up to arrest him, Jiang Ziya turned and ran downstairs.

“Look at that old wretch! He ran off the moment he heard the word ‘seize,’ completely ignoring the protocol. Have you ever seen anything like it?” King Zhou was angry but also amused.

The guards chased Jiang Ziya past the Dragon Virtue Hall to the Nine Dragon Bridge. He was caught there at bay.

“Guards! There’s no need to chase me. I’ll take my own life,” Jiang Ziya called, and vaulting over the railings, he threw himself into the river and sank beneath the surface.

The guards ran onto the bridge and gazed into the water but could see no trace of him. Little did they know that Jiang Ziya had mounted an invisible water cloud and flown away.

“The old clod got off lightly,” King Zhou commented when he learned that Jiang Ziya had drowned himself.

Four guards were leaning over the bridge gazing and sighing when Supreme Minister Yang Ren entered the palace and saw them.

“What are you looking at?” he asked.

“Junior Minister Jiang Shang just drowned himself in the water here.”

“Why?” Yang Ren asked again.

“We don’t know, sir.”

Yang Ren went on to his office in the palace to read documents and reports. Meanwhile, King Zhou was still discussing with Daji as to who should be the overseer of the Happy Terrace.

“I should think that no one’s fully qualified to take up the task except Chong Houhu,” Daji said thoughtfully.

King Zhou immediately approved the recommendation and ordered the secretariat to summon Chong Houhu to Zhaoge.

When the messenger reached the secretariat, he met Yang Ren.

“What did Jiang Shang do to have offended the king that compelled him to commit suicide?” Yang Ren asked.

“His Majesty appointed him to supervise the construction of the Happy Terrace, but Jiang spoke against him, and he ordered Jiang’s arrest. When the palace guards tried to seize him he ran and drowned himself in the river.”

“What’s this Happy Terrace?”

“It’s a project designed by Lady Su. Extravagant buildings are to be constructed on a terrace forty-nine feet high. His Majesty’s now appointed Chong Houhu as supervisor. I can’t bear to see him behave like an ancient



任听罢，谓承奉曰：“你且将此诏停止，待吾进见圣上，再为施行。”杨任径往摘星楼下候旨。纣王宣杨任上楼见驾。王曰：“卿有何奏章？”杨任奏曰：“臣闻治天下之道，君明臣直，言听计从，惟师保是用，忠良是亲，奸佞日远，和外国，顺民心，功赏罪罚，莫不得当，则四海顺从，八方仰德，仁政施于人，则天下景从，万民乐业，此乃圣主之所为。今陛下信后妃之言，而忠言不听，建造鹿台。陛下只知行乐权娱，歌舞宴赏，作一己之乐，致万姓之愁，臣恐陛下不能享此乐，而先有腹心之患矣。陛下若不急为整饬，臣恐陛下之患不可得而治之矣。主上三害在外，一害在内，陛下听臣言。其外三害：一害者东伯侯姜文焕，雄兵百万，欲报父仇，游魂关兵无宁息，屡折军威，苦战三年，钱粮尽费，粮草日艰，此为一害；二害者南伯侯鄂顺，为陛下无辜杀其父亲，大势人马，昼夜攻取三山关，邓九公亦是苦战多年，库藏空虚，军民失望，此为二害；三害者，况闻太师远征北海大敌，十有余年，今且未能返国，胜败未分，凶吉未定。陛下何苦听信谗言，杀戮正士。狐媚偏于信从，谗言致之不问。小人日近于君前，君子日闻于退避。宫帙竟无内外，貂璫紊乱深宫。三害荒荒，八方作乱。陛下不容谏官，有阻忠耿，今又起无端造作，广施土木，不惟社稷不能奠安，宗庙不能磐石，臣不忍朝歌百姓受此涂炭。愿陛下速止台工，民心乐业，庶可救其万一。不然，民一离心，则万民荒乱。古云：‘民乱则国破，国破主君亡。’只可惜六百年已定华夷，一旦被他人所虏矣。”纣王听罢，大骂：“匹夫！把笔书生，焉敢无知，直言犯主！”命奉御官：“将此匹夫剜去二目！朕念



tyrant and the country fall into ruin. I hope you'll petition him to give up this project. If you can save the people from the project and relieve the merchants from crippling exactions, your kindness will never be forgotten."

"Don't publish the appointment for the time being. Wait until I've seen His Majesty. We'll see what we can do then," Yang Ren said.

He went to the Star Picking Mansion, and was ordered to go upstairs.

"What memorial do you wish to present?"

"Your Majesty must realize that we're faced with three calamities from without and one from within. As for the calamities from without: First, there's Jiang Wenhuan who's rebelled in revenge for his father. He's besieged Youhu Pass for three years, and we've suffered several defeats. Second, there's E Shun who's also rebelled in revenge for his father. General Deng Jiugong's been fighting him at Sanshan Pass in a bitter war that's emptied the national treasury. Both the people and soldiers have lost hope. Third, Grand Tutor Wen Zhong's expedition to the North Sea district has already lasted ten years without achieving a final victory. As for the calamity from within, it's clearly seen by all. You're completely bewitched by your concubine and deceived by the minions. As a result many of the loyal have met cruel deaths. Now you're planning to carry out a massive project that will only further threaten the peace of the country. I beg you to give it up and please the people. Otherwise, you'll lose their support and inevitably be faced with doom. What a pity it would be for the 600-year-old Shang Dynasty to fall into the hands of someone else," Yang Ren said bluntly.

On hearing this petition, King Zhou cursed furiously, "You damned wretch! How dare you insult me so!" He immediately ordered, "Royal guards! Take him downstairs and gouge his eyes out. Out of consideration for his past service to me, I'll let him off lightly this time."





前岁有功，姑恕他一次。”杨任复奏曰：“臣虽剜目不辞，只怕天下诸侯有不忍臣之剜目之苦也。”奉御官把杨任搀下楼，一声响，剜二目献上楼来。且说杨任忠肝义胆，实为纣王，虽剜二目，忠心不灭，一道怨气，直冲在青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君面前。真君早解其意，命黄巾力士：“可救杨任回山。”力士奉旨，至摘星楼下，用三阵神风，异香遍满，摘星楼下，地播起尘土，扬起沙灰，一声响，杨任尸骸竟不见了。纣王急往楼内，避其沙土。不一时，风息沙平，两边启奏纣王曰：“杨任尸首风刮不见了。”纣王叹曰：“似前番朕斩太子也被风刮去，似此等事，皆系常事，不足怪也。”纣王谓妲己曰：“鹿台之工，已诏侯虎；杨任谏朕，自取其祸。速诏崇侯虎！”侍驾官催诏去了。

且说杨任的尸首被力士摄上紫阳洞，回真君法旨。道德真君出洞来，命白云童儿，葫芦中取二粒仙丹，将杨任眼眶里放二粒仙丹。真人用仙天真气吹在杨任面上，喝声：“杨任不起，更待何时！”真是仙家妙术，起死回生。只见杨任眼眶里长出两只手来；手心里生两只眼睛——此眼上看天庭，下观地穴，中识人间万事。杨任立起半晌，定省见自己目化奇形，见一道人立在山洞前。杨任问曰：“道长，此处莫非幽冥地界？”真君曰：“非也。此处乃青峰山紫阳洞，贫道是炼气士清虚道德真君，因见子有忠心赤胆，直谏纣王，怜救万民，身遭剜目之灾，贫道怜你阳寿不绝，度你上山，后辅周王成其正道。”杨任听罢，拜谢曰：“弟子蒙真君怜救，指引还生，再见人世，此恩此德，何敢有忘！望真君不弃，愿拜为师。”杨任就在青峰山居住。后只待破瘟瘟阵下山，助子



“Though I can bear the agony of having my eyes gouged out,” Yang Ren warned him, “I’m afraid that the marquises of the kingdom may be unable to bear the sight of my suffering.”

Carrying out the orders, the guards took Yang Ren downstairs, gouged out his eyes and presented them on a tray to the king.

Yang Ren was a very loyal minister. Even though he had lost his eyes, his loyalty remained unchanged. His bitterness rose to the sky and drifted to Master Virtue of the Pure Void in the Purple Sun Cave on Mount Green Peak. The master realized what had happened and immediately ordered his yellow-scarved genie, “Rescue Yang Ren and bring him here at once.”

The genie flew straight to the Star Picking Mansion and, using three gusts of fragrant magic wind, raised a violent dust storm. Yang Ren’s body disappeared in the whirl of dust. King Zhou had run inside to protect himself from the sand and stones. When the wind subsided, the royal guards came to report that Yang Ren’s body had disappeared during the storm.

“The same thing happened when I was about to execute the two princes. It’s a commonplace occurrence nowadays and nothing to wonder at,” King Zhou said, and turning, said to Daji, “Yang Ren deserved death for his insolent admonitions. Chong Houhu must receive my order of appointment with all speed.”

When Yang Ren’s corpse was brought to the Purple Sun Cave, Master Virtue of the Pure Void came out. He placed two celestial elixirs into the empty eye sockets and then blew a celestial breath into Yang Ren’s face. “Yang Ren! Rise up!” he shouted.

Yang Ren came right back to life. From his empty eye sockets sprouted two small hands, each with an eye in the center of the palm that enabled him to see the scenes and secrets of Heaven and earth and everything in the world of men. He stood before the cave for a long while, pondering over his new form, before he noticed a Taoist beside him.

“Your Reverence! Is this the world of the dead?” he asked.

“No,” the immortal replied. “This is the Purple Sun Cave on Mount Green Peak, and my name’s Virtue of the Pure Void. As you bravely confronted King Zhou in order to save the people from suffering, I took pity on you, brought you here and restored you to life, so that you can help found the new Zhou Dynasty.”

Yang Ren bowed and thanked him, saying, “You’re so kind. I’ll never forget your generosity. Allow me to be your disciple and serve you throughout my life.”



牙成功。有诗曰：

大夫直谏犯非刑，剜目伤心不忍听。不是真君施妙术，焉能两眼察天庭。

不说杨任居此安身。且说纣王诏崇侯虎督造鹿台。此台功成浩瀚，要动无限钱粮，无限人夫，搬运木植、泥土、砖瓦，络绎之苦，不可胜计。各州府县军民，三丁抽二，独丁赴役。有钱者买闲在家，无钱者任劳累死。万民惊恐，日夜不安，男女慌慌，军民嗟怨，家家闭户，逃奔四方。崇侯虎仗势虐民，可怜老少累死不计其数，皆填鹿台之内。朝歌变乱，逃亡者甚多。

不表侯虎监督台工。且说子牙借水遁，回到宋异人庄上。马氏接住：“恭喜大夫，今日回家。”子牙曰：“我如今不做官了。”马氏大惊：“为何事来？”子牙曰：“天子听姐己之言，起造鹿台，命我督工。我不忍万民遭殃，黎庶有难，是我上一本，天子不行；被我直谏，圣上大怒，把我罢职归田。我想纣王非吾之主。娘子，我同你往西岐去，守时候命。我一日时来运至，官居显爵，极品当朝，人臣第一，方不负吾心中实学。”马氏曰：“你又不是文家出身，不过是江湖一术士，天幸做了下大夫，感天子之德不浅。今命你造台，乃看顾你监工，况钱粮既多，你不管甚东西，也赚些回来。你多大官，也上本谏言？还是你无福，只是个术士的命！”子牙曰：“娘子，你放心。是这样官，未展我胸中才学，难遂我平生之志。你且收拾行装，打点同我往西岐去。不日官居一品，位列公卿，你授一品夫人，身着霞珮，头带珠冠，荣耀西岐，不枉我出仕一番。”马氏笑曰：“子牙，你



After that, Yang Ren stayed on Mount Green Peak until he was sent down to break the Plague Trap.

King Zhou, meanwhile, had appointed Chong Houhu to supervise the building of the Happy Terrace. The project required a vast amount of labor, huge sums of money and an enormous quantity of materials. Armies of laborers had to be conscripted from all over the land to transport timber, clay, tiles, bricks and other materials. The rich could hire substitute laborers, but the poor had no choice but to endure exhaustion and even death. The people lived in fear and uncertainty, and many fled the country to settle elsewhere. In addition, Chong Houhu treated people so cruelly that vast numbers of young and old died of exhaustion and were buried in the foundations of the Happy Terrace.

But let's now talk of Jiang Ziya. Fleeing the palace, he returned to Song Yiren's mansion and met his wife. "Welcome home, my husband minister!" she greeted him joyfully.

"I've already given up my post," he told her bluntly and explained what had happened. He added, "I don't consider King Zhou my real master. Let's go to West Qi and wait there for my luck to turn. When the time comes I'll be appointed to the highest rank and be able to use my genius and talent to its fullest."

"It's only by luck that you were made a junior minister. You should have appreciated the great favor bestowed on you by His Majesty and exerted yourself in the construction of the Happy Terrace. Moreover, as supervisor, you would have had plenty of money and material at your disposal to bring some home from time to time. How could you have opposed the king so recklessly? You're simply destined to be nothing but a paltry magician," Madame Ma said contemptuously.

"Wife! Take it easy! In that junior post I couldn't make use of my talent nor achieve my life's ambition. You'd better pack up and come with me to West Qi. I'll soon be made prime minister, and you'll be a first-ranking lady, wearing jade pendants and a pearl coronet."

Madame Ma laughed. "You're talking a lot of unrealistic nonsense. You couldn't even keep the post you had, yet you're expecting to go



说的是失时话。现成官你没福做，到去空拳只手去别处寻！这不是折得你苦思乱想，走投无路，舍近求远，尚望官居一品？天子命你监造台工，明明看顾你。你做的是那里清官！如今多少大小官员，都是随时而已。”子牙曰：“你女人家不知远大。天数有定，迟早有期，各自有主。你与我同到西岐，自有下落。一日时来，富贵自是不浅。”马氏曰：“姜子牙，我和你缘分夫妻，只到的如此。我生长朝歌，决不往他乡外国去。从今说过，你行你的，我干我的，再无他说！”子牙曰：“娘子错说了。嫁鸡怎不逐鸡飞，夫妻岂有分离之理！”马氏曰：“妾身原是朝歌女子，那里去离乡背井。子牙，你从实些，写一纸休书与我，各自投生。我决不去！”子牙曰：“娘子随我去好！一日身荣，无边富贵。”马氏曰：“我的命只合如此，也受不起大福分。你自去做一品显官，我在此受些穷苦。你再娶一房有福的夫人罢。”子牙曰：“你不要后悔！”马氏曰：“是我造化低，决不后悔！”子牙点头叹曰：“你小看了我！既嫁与我为妻，怎不随我去。必定要你同行！”马氏大怒：“姜子牙！你好，就与你好开交；如要不肯，我与父兄说知，同你进朝歌见天子，也讲一个明白！”夫妻二人正在此斗口，有宋异人同妻孙氏来劝子牙曰：“贤弟，当时这一件事是我作的。弟妇既不同你去，就写一字与他。贤弟乃奇男子，岂无佳配，何必苦苦留恋他。常言道：‘心去意难留。’勉强终非是好结果。”子牙曰：“长兄、嫂在上：马氏随我一场，不曾受用一些，我心不忍离他；他倒有离我之心。长兄吩咐，我就写休书与他。”子牙写了休书拿在手中，“娘子，书在我手中，夫妻还是团圆的。你接了此书，



somewhere else empty-handed and be made a high official! Day-dreaming will get you nowhere! What makes you think you'll be made prime minister in West Qi? You failed to see His Majesty's deep concern for you when he chose you to supervise the building of the Happy Terrace. Why play the upright official when everyone else just goes along with the current situation?" she mocked him.

"Wife, you don't understand that Heaven's fixed a tune for everything. We'll enjoy a good future in West Qi. Come with me now, Dear. You'll soon be blessed with riches and happiness."

"Jiang Ziya, our predestined marriage comes to an end right here! I'm a native of Zhaoge, and I won't go to a strange land. From now on, you do what you like, and I'll do as I please. There's no other alternative," Madame Ma said resolutely.

"You're wrong! 'A woman must follow her husband.' How can we be separated?"

"I was born in Zhaoge, and I'm unwilling to leave this place. Ziya, you must allow me to divorce you. Please write me a note to make it formal, and we can go our own ways. I absolutely refuse to go with you."

"Come with me, Dear, and we'll enjoy riches and power together."

"It's my fate. I'm really not destined to enjoy riches and power. You go and be your prime minister; I'll stay here and endure my poverty. You can marry some other lucky woman."

"You won't regret it afterwards?"

"No, this is my destiny."

"Since you married me, how can you leave me? I insist that you come with me," Jiang Ziya protested.

Madame Ma became angry. "Jiang Ziya! If you agree with me, we can separate in peace. Otherwise, I'll tell my father and brother. We can go together to Zhaoge and get justice from the king."

As they quarreled, Song Yiren and his wife came in.

"Brother! I was the one who arranged this marriage. Since she's unwilling to go with you, you'd better write her a note of divorce. As a man of talent you'll have no trouble finding a new wife. Why are you so reluctant? As the saying goes, 'Once the heart's gone, it's not easy to retain the body.' Nothing good can be achieved by force," Song Yiren advised.

"But Brother, ever since she married me, she hasn't enjoyed any happiness, and I feel uneasy to leave her like this. But as she's made up her mind, I'll write her a note of divorce."



再不能完聚了!”马氏伸手接书，全无半毫顾恋之心。子牙叹曰：“青竹蛇儿口，黄蜂尾上针，两般自由可，最毒妇人心!”马氏收拾回家，改节去了。不题。子牙打点起行，作辞宋异人、嫂嫂孙氏：“姜尚蒙兄嫂看顾提携，不期有今日之别!”异人治酒与子牙饯行，饮罢，远送一程，因问曰：“贤弟往那里去?”子牙曰：“小弟别兄往西岐做些事业。”异人曰：“倘贤弟得意时，可寄一音，使我也放心。”二人洒泪而别。

异人送别在长途，两下分离心思孤，只为金兰恩义重，几回搔首意踟蹰。

话说子牙离了宋家庄，取路往孟津；过了黄河，径往渑池县，往临潼关来。只见一起朝歌奔逃百姓，有七八百黎民，父携子哭，弟为兄悲，夫妻泪落，男女悲哭之声，纷纷载道。子牙见而问曰：“你们是朝歌的民?”内中也有人认的是姜子牙，众民叫曰：“姜老爷!我等是朝歌民。因为纣王起造鹿台，命崇侯虎监督。那天杀的奸臣，三丁抽二，独丁赴役，有钱者买闲在家，累死数万人夫，尸填鹿台之下，昼夜无息。我等经不得这等苦楚，故此逃出五关。不期总兵张老爷不放我们出关。若是拿将回去，死于非命，故此伤心啼哭。”子牙曰：“你们不必如此，待我去见张总兵，替你们说个人情，放你们出关。”众人谢曰：“这是老爷天恩，普施甘露，枯骨重生!”子牙把行囊与众人看守，独自前往张总兵府来。家人问曰：“那里来的?”子牙曰：“烦你通报，商都下大夫姜尚来拜你总兵。”门上人来报：“启老爷：商都下大夫姜尚来拜。”张凤想：“下大夫姜尚来拜……他是文官，我乃



When the note was written, Jiang Ziya held it in his hand and said, "Wife! We're husband and wife as long as this note remains in my hand, but once you accept it, we must part forever."

Madame Ma stretched out her hand without the least hesitation. Jiang Ziya sighed. "The fangs of a snake and the sting of a yellow wasp are nothing when compared to her heart," he commented.

Madame Ma packed her bags and returned home to marry someone else. When Jiang Ziya was ready to leave, Song Yiren invited him to have a few farewell drinks. He escorted him on the first part of his journey.

"Where will you go, Brother?"

"I appreciate very much the deep concern you've shown for me and never expected to be leaving you today. I plan to seek a career in West Qi."

"If you meet with success, let me know, and I'll be able to set my mind at rest," Song Yiren urged.

The two men parted in tears.

After leaving the Song Village, Jiang Ziya made his way westwards to Mengjin, crossed the Yellow River, passed through Mianchi County and approached Lintong Pass. There he came upon several hundred refugees, weeping and crying in a deplorable state.

"Are you all from Zhaoge?" Jiang Ziya asked.

Some of the refugees recognized him. "Yes, Mr. Jiang, We're all from Zhaoge." They explained, "King Zhou's ordered the building of the Happy Terrace, and appointed Chong Houhu to be supervisor. Two out of every three able-bodied men must do corvee labor on the terrace and tens of thousands have already died of exhaustion. Their corpses are buried in the foundation. We can't bear such suffering and want to flee beyond the five passes, but the garrison commander won't let us through. If we're taken back, we're sure to die violent deaths. That's why we're weeping here."

"Don't despair. I'll go to see him and talk him into letting you all through the pass," Jiang Ziya promised.

"It's kind of you to bless us with such Heavenly grace. You'll help us to escape death," they thanked him.

Jiang Ziya left his luggage with them and went to see Zhang Feng, the garrison commander. When questioned where he was from, Jiang told the guards, "I'm Jiang Shang, a junior minister from the capital."





武官；他近朝廷，我居关隘，百事有烦他。”急命左右请进。子牙道家打扮，不曾公服，径往里面，见张凤。凤一见子牙道服而来，便坐而问曰：“来者何人？”子牙曰：“吾乃下大夫姜尚是也。”凤问曰：“大夫为何道服而来？”子牙答曰：“卑职此来，不为别事，单为众民苦切。天子不明，听妲己之言，广施土木之功，兴造鹿台，命崇侯虎督工。岂意彼陷虐万民，贪图贿赂，罔惜民力。况四方兵未息肩，上天示儆，水旱不均，民不聊生，天下失望，黎庶遭殃，可怜累死军民填于台内。荒淫无度，奸臣蛊惑天子，狐媚巧闭圣聪，命吾督造鹿台。我怎肯欺君误国，害民伤财，因此直谏。天子不听，反欲加刑于我。我本当以一死以报爵禄之恩，奈尚天数未尽，蒙恩赦宥，放归故乡，因此行到贵治。偶见许多百姓，携男拽女，扶老携幼，悲号苦楚，甚是伤情。如若执回，又惧炮烙、蚕盆，惨刑恶法，残缺肢体，骨粉魂消，可怜民死无辜，怨魂怀屈。今尚观之，心实可怜，故不辞愧面，奉谒台颜，恳求赐众民出关，黎庶从死而之生，将军真天高海阔之恩，实上天好生之德。”张凤听罢大怒，言曰：“汝乃江湖术士，一旦富贵，不思报本于君恩，反以巧言而惑我。况逃民不忠，若听汝言，亦陷我以不义。我受命执掌关隘，自宜尽臣子之节，逃民玩法，不守国规，宜当拿解于朝歌。自思只是不放过此关，彼自然回国，我已自存一线之生路矣。若论国法，连汝并解回朝，以正国典。奈吾初会，暂且姑免。”喝两边：“把姜尚叉将出去！”众人一声喝，把子牙推将出来。子牙满面羞愧。众民见子牙回来，问曰：“姜老爷，张老爷可放我等出关？”子牙曰：“张总兵连我也要拿



“He’s a civil official close to the palace, while I’m a military commander far away from the central government,” Zhang Feng thought when he heard the report. “If I establish a good relationship with him it’ll make things easier for me in Zhaoge.” He quickly ordered that Jiang Ziya be admitted, but grew doubtful when he saw Jiang Ziya in Taoist robes. “Who are you?” he asked.

“I’m Junior Minister Jiang Shang.”

“Why do you come wearing Taoist robes?”

Jiang Ziya explained about the Happy Terrace and his flight from Zhaoge, then added, “When I got here I found a crowd of refugees in despair because they’re unable to pass through. Should those poor people be taken back to Zhaoge, they’re bound to be put to death either on the burning pillar or in the serpent pit. I beg that you let them through and grant them life. It’s by the mercy of Heaven that I’ve met with a man of your boundless kindness and compassion today. You’ll surely grant this favor.”

Zhang Feng became very angry. “You’re only a common sorcerer. Having gained wealth and honor, you should have striven to return the grace bestowed on you by the king. How dare you venture to deceive me with your cunning words! Those fleeing people are not loyal citizens, and I would be an unloyal official if I granted your request and let them through. If I were really to do my duty, I would arrest all of them and send them back to be dealt with. But I have merely stopped them from getting through, compelling them to return to Zhaoge of their own accord, and giving them a chance to live. According to the law, I should take you back to Zhaoge to be punished along with them, but I’ll let you off, because this is the first time we’ve ever met,” he said and ordered his guards to throw Jiang Ziya out.

When they saw Jiang Ziya return from the meeting with the garrison commander, the refugees rushed forward. “Will he permit us through the pass?” they asked.



进朝歌城去。是我说过了。”众人听罢，齐声叫苦，七八百黎民号啕痛哭，哀声彻野。子牙看见不忍。子牙曰：“你们众民不必啼哭，我送你们出五关去。”有等不知事的黎民，闻知此语，只说宽慰他，乃曰：“老爷也出不去，怎生救我们？”内中有知道的，哀求曰：“老爷若肯救援，便是再生之恩！”子牙道：“你们要出五关者，到黄昏时候，我叫你等闭眼，你等就闭眼。若听得耳内风响，不要睁眼。若开了眼时，跌出脑子来，不要怨我。”众人应承了。子牙到一更时候，望昆仑山拜罢，口中念念有词，一声响。这一会，子牙土遁救出万民。众人只听的风声飒飒，不一会，四百里之程出了临潼关、潼关、穿云关、界牌关、汜水关，到金鸡岭，子牙收了土遁，众民落地。子牙曰：“众人开眼！”众人睁开了眼。子牙曰：“此处就是汜水关外金鸡岭，乃西岐州地方。你们好好去罢！”众人叩头谢曰：“老爷，天垂甘露，普救群生，此恩此德，何日能报！”众人拜别。不题。

且说子牙往磻溪隐迹。有诗为证：

弃却朝歌远市尘，法施土遁救民生，闲居渭水垂竿待，  
只等风云际会缘。武吉灾殃为引道，飞熊仁兆主求贤。  
八十才逢明圣主，方立周朝八百年。

话说众民等待天明，果是西岐地界。过了金鸡岭，便是首阳山；走过燕山，又过了白柳村，前至西岐山；过了七十里，至西岐城。众民进城，观看景物：民丰物阜，行人让路，老幼不欺，市井谦和，真乃尧天舜日，别是一番风景。众民作一手本，投递上大夫府。散宜生接看手本。翌日伯邑考传命：“既朝歌逃民因纣王失政，来归吾土，无妻者给银与



“No, he won’t. He wants to take all of us, including me, back to Zhaoge to be severely dealt with,” Jiang Ziya said dejectedly.

At this, all the refugees began to wail and lament, their crying echoing across the wilderness.

Jiang Ziya couldn’t bear to see such a pitiful scene. “Don’t cry,” he comforted them. “I can help you get out of here, but you must do exactly as I tell you. At dusk, I’ll order all of you to close your eyes tightly. You may hear the sound of rushing wind, but on no account should you open your eyes. If you do, you’ll fall to death.”

In the early evening, Jiang Ziya kowtowed towards Mount Kunlun and began to recite incantations. There was a great crash, and the refugees felt the wind whistling past their ears. Traveling on the dust, they crossed Lintong Pass, Tongguan Pass, Chuanyun Pass, Jiepai Pass and Sishui Pass as far as the Golden Chicken Ranges. All the refugees landed safely on the ground. “You can open your eyes now,” Jiang Ziya said. “You’re now in the Golden Chicken Ranges beyond Sishui Pass, in the West Grand Dukedom. You may go now. Good luck!”

The refugees kowtowed to express their heartfelt gratitude and then set out for West Qi City, capital of the Dukedom.

When Supreme Minister San Yisheng received a petition from the refugees from Zhaoge, he immediately reported the case to Bo Yikao, acting ruler of the dukedom.



他娶妻。又与银子，令众人僦居安处。鰥寡孤独者在三济仓造名，自领口粮。”宜生领命。邑考曰：“父王囚羑里七年，孤欲自往朝歌，代父赎罪。卿等意下如何？”散宜生奏曰：“臣启公子：主公临别之言，‘七年之厄已满，灾完难足，自然归国’。不得造次，有违主公临别之言。如公子于心不安，可差一士卒前去问安，亦不失为子之道。何必自驰鞍马，身临险地哉。”伯邑考叹曰：“父王有难，七载禁于异乡，举目无亲。为人子者，于心何忍。所谓立国立家，徒为虚设，要我等九十九子何用！我自带祖遗三件宝贝，往朝歌进贡，以赎父罪。”伯邑考此去，不知吉凶如何，且听下回分解。

“They must be taken care of in every way,” Bo Yikao decided. “Distribute silver among them, so that the bachelors can marry, and all may set up new homes. Widows, widowers, orphans and old people without support may register at the granary and receive free grain rations.” He then asked San Yisheng, “My father’s been confined in Youli for seven years already. I wish to go to Zhaoge to atone for his crime. What do you think?”

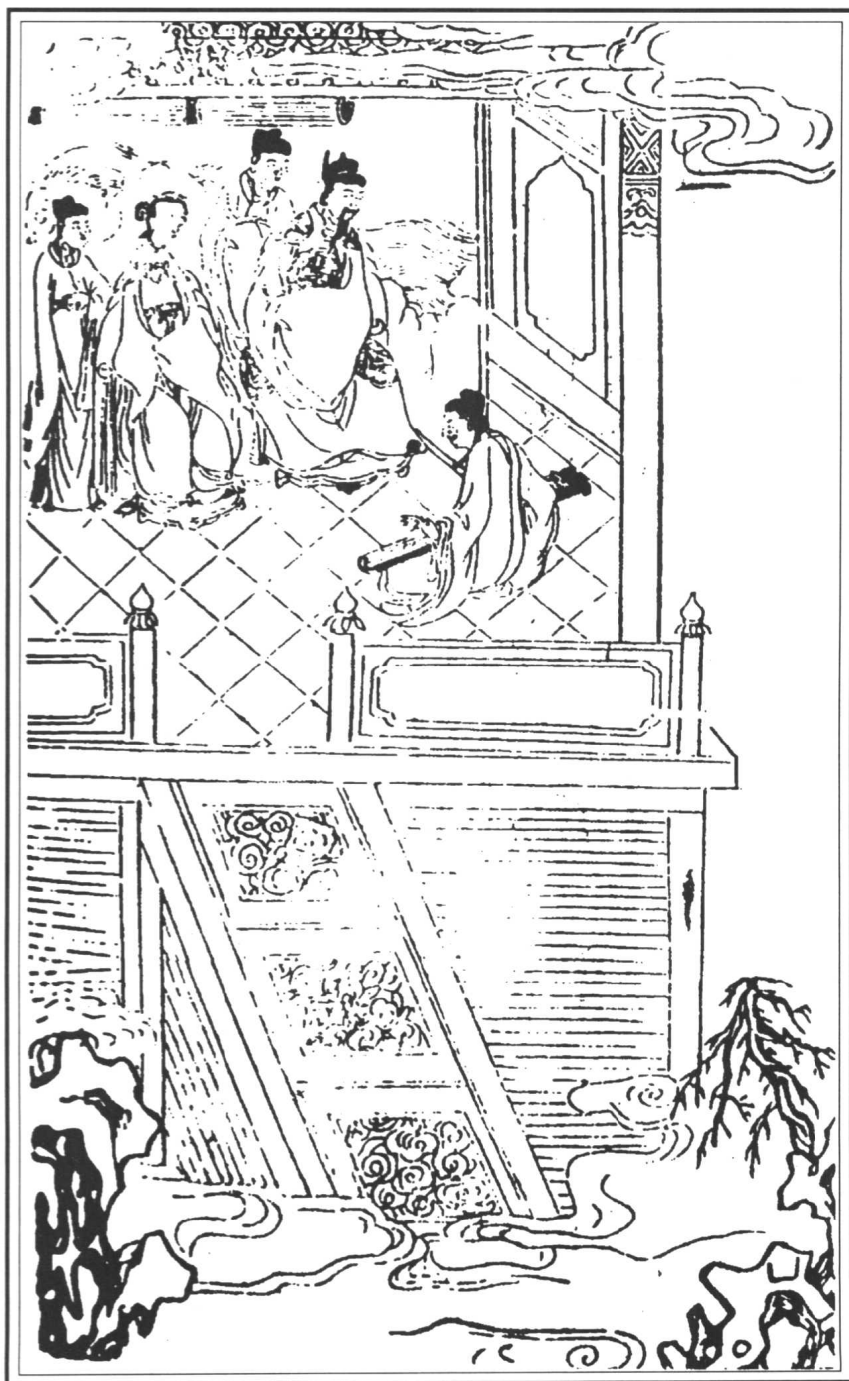
“At his departure, he warned us not to do anything rash. He said he would return as soon as the period of adversity is over. You shouldn’t go, Prince.”

Bo Yikao sighed and said, “As a son, I can’t bear to have my father confined to a strange land for so long without any member of his family there to comfort him. What use are we ninety-nine sons? I’ll take the three precious family heirlooms and present them to the king in order to obtain my father’s release.”

What was the result of Bo Yikao’s journey to Zhaoge? If you want to know, you must read to the next chapter.











## 第十九回

### 伯邑考进贡赎罪

诗曰：

忠臣孝子死无辜，只为殷商有怪狐。淫乱不羞先荐耻，  
贞诚岂畏后来诛。宁甘万刃留青白，不受千娇学独夫。  
史册不污千载恨，令人屈指泪如珠。

话说伯邑考要往朝歌为父赎罪。时有上大夫散宜生阻  
谏，公子立意不允，随进宫辞母太姬，要往朝歌赎罪。太姬  
曰：“汝父被羈羑里，西岐内外事托付何人？”考曰：“内事托  
与兄弟姬发，外事托付与散宜生，军务托付南宫适。孩儿亲  
往朝歌面君，以进贡为名，请赎父罪。”母亲见伯邑考坚执  
要去，只得依允，分付曰：“孩儿此去，须要小心！”邑考辞  
出，竟到殿前与弟姬发言曰：“兄弟好生与众兄弟和美，不可  
改西岐规矩。我此去朝歌，多则三月，少则二月，即便回  
程。”邑考分付毕，收拾宝物进贡，择日起行。姬发同文武  
九十八弟，在十里长亭饯别。邑考与众人饮酒作辞。一路前  
行，扬鞭纵马，过了些红杏芳林，行无限柳阴古道。伯邑考  
与从人一日行至汜水关。关上军兵见两杆进贡幡幢，上书西  
伯侯旗号。军官来报主帅。守关总兵韩荣命开关。邑考进  
关，一路无辞。行过五关，来到渑池县，渡黄河至孟津，进  
了朝歌城，皇华馆驿安下。次日，问驿丞：“丞相府住在那  
里？”驿丞答曰：“在太平街。”次日，邑考来至午门，并不

## Chapter 19

### Gifts to the King

Bo Yikao was unwilling to give up his plan, even though it was strongly opposed by San Yisheng. He went into the inner palace to bid farewell to Tai Ji, his mother.

“If you leave here, who’s to rule the dukedom?” Taiji asked.

“I’ve entrusted Ji Fa with all domestic affairs, San Yisheng with all external affairs and General Nangong Kuo with military affairs. In the name of offering tribute, I’m going to Zhaoge to see the king in order to redeem my father.”

Seeing that Bo Yikao was so determined, Tai Ji gave her reluctant consent, but she cautioned him, “You must be very careful.”

Bo Yikao then left his mother and went to the front palace to see his younger brother Ji Fa. “Remain in harmony with your brothers and don’t change any customs or regulations. It’ll be two or three months before I come back,” he instructed.

He prepared the items for tribute and selected an auspicious day on which to start his journey. When the day arrived, Ji Fa and his other ninety-seven brothers, as well as all the civil and military officials escorted Bo Yikao to Changting Pavilion ten *li* from the city, where they parted after farewell toasts.

Traveling quickly, Bo Yikao and his party reached Sishui Pass after a single journey. When the guards saw the procession of horses, chariots and especially the penants indicating “Tribute to His Majesty from the West Grand Duke,” they rushed in and reported to Commander Han Rong, who ordered that the gates be opened at once. Bo Yikao went through the five passes in this way without any trouble. He reached Mianchi County, where he crossed the Yellow River by ferry to Mengjin and finally entered Zhaoge. He put up there in an official hostel.

The next morning, he dressed up in mourning, took his memorial and went to the palace gate. When he got there, he saw no one about, and as





见一员官走动，又不敢擅入午门。往返五日。邑考素缟抱本立于午门外。少时，只见一位大臣骑马而至，乃亚相比干也。伯邑考向前跪下。比干问曰：“阶下跪者何人？”邑考答曰：“吾乃犯臣姬昌子伯邑考。”比干闻言，滚鞍下马，以手相扶，口称：“贤公子请起！”二人立在午门外。比干问曰：“公子为何事至此？”邑考答曰：“父亲得罪于天子，蒙丞相保护，得全性命，此恩真天高地厚；愚父子弟兄，铭刻难忘！只因七载光阴，父亲久羁羑里，人子何以得安。想天子必思念循良，岂肯甘为鱼肉。邑考与散宜生共议，将祖遗镇国异宝，进纳王廷，代父赎罪。万望丞相开天地仁慈之心，怜姬昌久羁羑里之苦，倘蒙赐骸骨，得归故土，真恩如太山，德如渊海。西岐万姓，无不感念丞相之大恩也。”比干答曰：“公子纳贡，乃是何宝？”伯邑考曰：“自始祖亶父所遗七香车，醒酒毡，白面猿猴，美女十名，代父赎罪。”比干曰：“七香车有何贵乎？”邑考答曰：“七香车：乃轩辕皇帝破蚩尤于北海，遗下此车，若人坐上面，不用推引，欲东则东，欲西则西——乃传世之宝也。醒酒毡：倘人醉酩酊，卧此毡上，不消时刻即醒。白面猿猴：虽是畜类，善知三千小曲，八百大曲，能讴筵前之歌，善为掌上之舞，真如啾啾莺篁，翩翩弱柳。”比干听罢，“此宝虽妙，今天子失德，又以游戏之物进贡，正是助桀为虐，荧惑圣聪，反加朝廷之乱；无奈公子为父羑囚，行其仁孝，一点真心，此本我替公子转达天听，不负公子来意耳。”比干往摘星楼下候旨。

奉御官启奏：“亚相比干见驾。”纣王曰：“宣比干上楼。”比干上楼朝见。王曰：“朕无旨宣召，卿有何表章？”



he dared not enter without authorization, he returned to his lodgings. On the fifth day he finally saw a minister approaching the palace gate on horseback. It was Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan. He went up and knelt down before him.

“Who is the gentleman kneeling before me?” Bi Gan asked.

“I’m Bo Yikao, son of Ji Chang, the convict.”

Bi Gan quickly dismounted and raised Bo Yikao to his feet, saying, “Please get up, Prince. What brings you here?”

“When my father offended His Majesty, he was only saved from death by your appeal to the throne. My family will never forget this overwhelming kindness you have shown us. Nevertheless, my father’s been confined in Youli for seven years already, and we’ve worried about him constantly. I’m sure His Majesty must remember how honest and loyal my father has always been and wouldn’t do anything to him. I discussed the matter with San Yisheng and decided to offer some precious family heirlooms as tribute to His Majesty in order to redeem my father. I hope you’ll sympathize with us and help my father return to his native land. The people of West Qi would be eternally grateful.”

“What’s the tribute you’re offering?” Bi Gan inquired.

“There’s the Seven Fragrance Carriage, a sobriety carpet, a white-faced monkey, and ten beautiful maids,” Bo Yikao answered.

“Why’s the Seven Fragrance Carriage regarded as precious?” “This Seven Fragrance Carriage was left by the ancient sage emperor Xuanyuan, who used it to defeat his enemies in the North Sea district. The carriage needs neither driver nor horses, and runs automatically according to the will of the rider. The sobriety carpet is also very valuable. Any drunkard who lies on the carpet quickly becomes sober. As for the white-faced monkey, though it’s not human, it’s a great musician. It knows 3,000 folksongs and 800 classical pieces. He can sing at banquets and dance gracefully upon one’s palm.”

“Though they’re truly wonderful, they won’t help His Majesty mend his ways. He’s lost all virtue and may possibly become worse if you present him with these playthings. But you’re doing this out of true filial concern for your father, so I’ll report your arrival to His Majesty so as not to thwart your good intentions.”

King Zhou quickly admitted Bi Gan and asked him what he wished to report.



比干奏曰：“臣启陛下：西伯侯姬昌子伯邑考，纳贡代父赎罪。”王曰：“伯邑考纳进何物？”比干将进贡本呈上。帝览毕，向比干曰：“七香车，醒酒毡，白面猿猴，美女十名代西伯侯赎罪。”纣王命宣邑考上楼。邑考肘膝而行，俯伏奏曰：“犯臣子伯邑考朝见。”纣王曰：“姬昌罪大忤君，今子纳贡为父赎罪，亦可为孝矣。”伯邑考奏曰：“犯臣姬昌罪犯忤君，赦宥免死，暂居羑里，臣等举室感陛下天高海阔之洪恩，仰地厚山高之大德。今臣等不揣愚陋，昧死上陈，请代父罪。倘荷仁慈，赐以再生，得赦归国，使臣母子等骨肉重完，臣等万载瞻仰陛下好生之德出于意外也。”纣王见邑考悲惨，为父陈冤，极其恳至，知是忠臣孝子之言，不胜感动，乃赐邑考平身。邑考谢恩，立于栏杆之外。妲己在帘内，见邑考丰姿都雅，目秀眉清，唇红齿白，言语温柔。妲己传旨：“卷去珠帘。”左右宫人将珠帘高卷，搭上金钩。纣王见妲己出来，口称：“御妻，今有西伯侯之子伯邑考纳贡代父赎罪，情实可矜。”妲己奏曰：“妾闻西岐伯邑考善能鼓琴，真世上无双，人间绝少。”纣王曰：“御妻何以知之？”妲己曰：“妾虽女流，幼在深闺闻父母传说，邑考博通音律，鼓琴更精，深知大雅遗音，妾所以得知。陛下可着邑考抚弹一曲，便知深浅。”纣王乃酒色之徒，久被妖氛所惑，一听其言，便命伯邑考叩见妲己。邑考朝拜毕。妲己曰：“伯邑考，闻你善能鼓琴，你今试抚一曲何如？”邑考奏曰：“娘娘在上：臣闻父母有疾，为人子者，不敢舒衣安食。今犯臣父七载羑囚，苦楚万状，臣何忍蔑视其父，自为喜悦而鼓琴哉！况臣心碎如麻，安能宫商节奏，有辱圣聪。”纣王曰：



“Bo Yikao, son of Ji Chang, the West Grand Duke, has arrived with tributes hoping to redeem his father.”

“What’s he offering?”

Bi Gan presented Bo Yikao’s memorial, and after reading it, the king ordered that Bo Yikao be admitted. When Bo Yikao entered, he fell down and walked on his knees towards the throne.

“The son of your criminal minister ventures to seek an audience with Your Majesty,” he said.

“Ji Chang committed a serious crime, but you’re a filial son to offer precious tributes to redeem him.”

“Our whole family greatly appreciates the boundless grace Your Majesty showed in sparing my father’s life. I venture to redeem him so that he may be reunited with his family. If you would grant this favor, your mercy and great virtue would be remembered and admired for 10,000 years.”

King Zhou was deeply moved by Bo Yikao’s filial piety and his sincere and courteous manner. He ordered that he get up and stand beyond the rail of the court. Daji peeped at Bo Yikao from behind the curtain and was captivated by his handsome appearance and refined manners. Unable to restrain herself, she ordered her attendants to raise the curtain.

“Queen! Bo Yikao, son of the West Grand Duke, has brought gifts to atone for his father’s crime. He really is rather pitiful,” King Zhou addressed her.

“I’ve heard that Bo Yikao is a great musician. His skill in playing the zither is unrivaled anywhere in the world,” Daji told King Zhou.

“How do you know that, my dear?”

“When I was still at home I heard from my parents that Bo Yikao was good at music and especially skilled at playing the zither. You may see for yourself.”

The king believed every word she said and ordered Bo Yikao to enter and meet Daji.

“I’ve heard that you play the zither well. Would you play a tune for me now?” Daji asked, after he had kowtowed.

“Your Majesty! The saying goes that ‘when parents are not in good health, their sons dare not dress comfortably or eat in comfort.’ As my father’s suffered for seven years, how could I be so unconcerned about him as to take pleasure in music! In addition, my heart’s broken, and I cannot play in tune. My performance would be an insult to you,” Bo Yikao said sadly.



“邑考，你当此景，抚操一曲，如果稀奇，赦你父子归国。”邑考听见此言，大喜谢恩。纣王传旨，取琴一张。邑考盘膝坐在地上，将琴放在膝上，十指尖尖，拨动琴弦，抚弄一曲，名曰“风入松”：

“杨柳依依弄晓风，桃花半吐映日红。芳草绵绵铺锦绣，任他车马各西东。”

邑考弹至曲终，只见音韵幽扬，真如戛玉鸣珠，万壑松涛，清婉欲绝，令人尘襟顿爽，恍如身在瑶池凤阙；而笙篁箫管，檀板讴歌，觉俗气逼人耳。诚所谓“此曲只应天上有，人间能得几回闻”。纣王听罢，心中大悦，对妲己曰：“真不负御妻所闻。邑考此曲可称尽善尽美。”妲己奏曰：“伯邑考之琴，天下共闻，今亲覩其人，所闻未尽所见。”纣王大喜，传旨：摘星楼排宴。妲己偷睛看邑考，面如满月，丰姿俊雅，一表非俗，其风情袅袅动人。妲己又看纣王容貌，大是暗昧，不甚动人。——看官：纣王虽是帝王之相，怎经色欲相亏，形容枯槁。自古佳人爱少年，何况妲己乃一妖魅乎。妲己暗想：“且将邑考留在此处，假说传琴，乘机挑逗，庶几成就鸾凤，共效于飞之乐。况他少年，其为补益更多，而拘拘于此老哉。”妲己设计欲留邑考，随即奏曰：“陛下当赦西伯父子归国，固是陛下浩荡之恩，但邑考琴为天下绝调，今赦之归国，朝歌竟为绝响，深为可惜。”纣王曰：“如之奈何？”妲己奏曰：“妾有一法，可全二事。”纣王曰：“卿有何妙策可以两全？”妲己曰：“陛下可留邑考在此，传妾之琴，俟妾学精熟，早晚侍陛下左右，以助皇上清暇一乐。一则西伯父子感陛下赦宥之恩；二则朝歌不致绝瑶



“Yikao,” said King Zhou genially, “play a tune for us here. If your skill’s outstanding, I’ll set both you and your father free.”

Bo Yikao was delighted and thanked the king profusely. When a zither was brought in, he sat crosslegged on the floor, rested it on his knees, and began to play a tune entitled “The Breeze in the Pine Forest”:

*Delicate willows tremble in the morning breeze,  
Half-opened peach blossoms reflect the sun.  
Heedless of the carriages running east and west,  
Fragrant grass covers the earth with brocade.*

Bo Yikao played enchantingly, and the notes fell now like the tinkling of jade and pearls, and now like the rustling of pines in a secluded gorge. Everyone felt cleansed and uplifted as if they had visited paradise and heard its Heavenly music. King Zhou was greatly pleased. “You’re right, Queen. Bo Yikao’s playing is perfection itself.”

“His skill is renowned throughout the kingdom, but as we’ve just seen, not even his reputation does justice to his talent,” Daji replied.

Even more pleased, King Zhou ordered a banquet at the Star Picking Mansion in honor of Bo Yikao. At the table, Daji watched Bo Yikao surreptitiously and found him very fascinating. She noticed his full, handsome face, elegant manner and charming behavior. Looking then at King Zhou, she found him in contrast to be old, withered and unattractive. Since ancient times, beautiful young women have always preferred handsome youths, and Daji was no exception, particularly as she was, in fact, a lewd fox sprite!

“I must keep him here on the pretext of having him teach me to play the zither,” she thought. “Then I’ll take the opportunity to play with him in bed. Since he’s a young man he can satisfy me more than that old guy,” she mused, and thought up a plan. “Though your kindness would be boundless as the heavens should you set his father free, Bo Yikao’s the only person in the world so skilled in playing the zither. Zhaoge would regret his absence if he leaves here. What a pity it would be!” she said to King Zhou.

“What should we do then?”

“I have a perfect solution.”

“What ingenious idea have you come up with now, dear?”

“You may set Ji Chang free, but keep Bo Yikao here to teach me the zither. He can attend to you all day and entertain you with his music. Both





琴之乐，庶几可以两全。”纣王闻言，以手拍妲己之背曰：“贤哉爱卿！真是聪慧贤明，深得一举两全之道。”随传旨：“留邑考在此楼传琴。”妲己不觉暗喜：“我如今且将纣王灌醉了，扶去浓睡，我自好与彼行事，何愁此事不成。”忙传旨排宴。纣王以为妲己好意，岂知内藏伤风败俗之情，大坏纲常礼义之防。妲己手奉金杯，对纣王曰：“陛下进此寿酒！”纣王以为美爱，只顾欢饮，不觉一时酩酊。妲己命左右侍御宫人，扶皇上龙榻安寝，方着邑考传琴。两边宫人取琴二张，上一张是妲己，下一张是伯邑考传琴。邑考奏曰：“犯臣子启娘娘：此琴有内外五形，六律五音。吟、揉、勾、剔。左手龙睛，右手凤目，按宫、商、角、徵、羽。又有八法，乃抹、挑、勾、剔、撇、托、副、打。有六忌，七不弹。”妲己问曰：“何为六忌？”邑考曰：“闻哀，恸泣，专心事，忿怒情怀，戒欲、惊。”妲己又问：“何为七不弹？”邑考曰：“疾风骤雨，大悲大哀，衣冠不正，酒醉性狂，无香近褻，不知音近俗，不洁近秽。遇此皆不弹也。此琴乃太古遗音，乐而近雅，与诸乐大不相同，其中有八十一大调，五十一小调，三十六等音。”有诗为证：

音和平兮清心目，世上琴声天上曲，尽将千古圣人心，  
付与三尺梧桐木。

邑考言毕，将琴拨动，其音嘹亮，妙不可言。且说妲己原非为传琴之故，实为贪邑考之姿容；挑逗邑考，欲效于飞，纵淫败度，何尝留心于琴。只是左右勾引，故将脸上桃花现娇艳夭姿，风流国色。转秋波，送娇滴滴情怀；启朱唇，吐软温温悄语。无非欲动邑考，以惑乱其心。邑考乃圣



the West Grand Duke and his son would be overwhelmed by your kindness while Zhaoge wouldn't miss his sweet music," Daji said excitedly.

King Zhou patted her on the shoulder. "Darling, you've come up with a solution to please everybody," he said admiringly, then ordered, "Let Bo Yikao stay at the Star Picking Mansion to give zither lessons."

Daji was secretly overjoyed. "I must get King Zhou drunk and put him to bed and out of the way, so that I can make it with Bo Yikao," she thought, ordering the palace attendants to prepare another feast. King Zhou assumed it was a sign of her deep love for him, never imagining that she dared to offend public decency and violate the ethical code by committing adultery.

She raised a gold goblet and toasted King Zhou again and again. "Long live Your Majesty! Bottoms up!"

Believing that she loved him deeply, the king drank freely and soon became intoxicated. Daji ordered the palace maids to help him to bed and then asked Bo Yikao to begin teaching.

When the palace maids fetched two zithers, Bo Yikao began, "Your Majesty, I'll start with a description of the zither. It's composed of five parts, and can be played on six pentatonic scales. When playing, the fingers of the left hand should assume the shape of a dragon's eye and those of the right, the shape of a phoenix's eye. There are eight types of fingering: downward stroke, upward stroke, picking, scraping, casting, holding, pressing and beating. But one should never play when in one of six frames of mind and or in seven kinds of situations."

"What are these?" Daji asked.

"When one's affected by sounds of mourning; when one cries; when one's mind is heavy; when one is angry; when one's sexually aroused; and when one's frightened. The seven situations are: thunderstorms, great grief, untidy appearance, drunkenness, when there's no incense, ignorance in music, and dirty environment. The zither is inherited from the remote past and enhances elegance as no other instrument can. There're eighty-one majors, fifty-one minors and thirty-six enharmonics."

At the end of his introduction, Bo Yikao moved his fingers across the strings, producing resonant notes of indescribable beauty. Nevertheless, from the start, Daji had not had her mind on the zither, but on Bo Yikao's handsome appearance. She tried all she could to seduce him, endeavoring to rouse him with smiles, amorous glances and sweet words.



人之子，因为父受羈囚之厄，欲行孝道，故不辞涉水之劳，往朝歌进贡，代赎父罪，指望父子同还故都，那有此意。虽是传琴，心如铁石，意若坚纲，眼不旁观，一心只顾传琴。姐己两番三次勾邑考不动。姐己曰：“此琴一时难明。”分付左右：“且排上宴来。”两边随办上宴来。姐己命席旁设坐，令邑考侍宴。邑考魂不附体，跪而奏曰：“邑考乃犯臣之子，荷蒙娘娘不杀之恩，赐以再生之路，感圣德真如山海。娘娘乃万乘之尊，人间国母，邑考怎敢侧坐。臣当万死！”邑考俯伏，不敢抬头。姐己曰：“邑考之言差矣！若论臣子，果然坐不得；若论传琴，乃是师徒之道，坐即何妨。”伯邑考闻姐己之言，暗暗切齿：“这贱人把我当作不忠、不德、不孝、不仁、非礼、非义、不智、不良之类。想吾始祖亶父在尧为臣，官居司农之职；相传数十世，累代忠良。今日邑考为父朝商，误入陷阱。岂知姐己以邪淫坏主上之纲常，有伤于风化，深辱天子，其恶不小。我邑考宁受万刃之诛，岂可坏姬门之节也。九泉之下，何颜相见始祖哉！”且说姐己见邑考俯伏不言，又见邑考不动心情，并无一计可施。姐己邪念不绝：“我到有爱恋之心，他全无顾盼之意。也罢，我再将一法引逗他，不怕此人心情不动耳！”姐己只得命宫人将酒收了，令邑考平身，曰：“卿既坚执不饮，可还依旧用心传琴。”邑考领旨，依旧抚琴，照前勾拨多时。姐己猛曰：“我居于上，你在于下，所隔疏远，按弦多有错乱，甚是不便，焉能一时得熟。我有一法，可以两便，又相近，可以按纳，有何不可。”邑考曰：“久抚自精，娘娘不必性急。”姐己曰：“不是这等说。今夜不熟，明日主上问我，我将何言相



However, Bo Yikao was son of a sage and had risked his life in coming to Zhaoge for the sole purpose of redeeming his father and bringing him home. His heart was like ice, his will inflexible. He did not even glance at Daji and concentrated solely on his teaching.

When she realized that she was getting nowhere, Daji ordered her maids to prepare a feast and invited Bo Yikao to take a seat beside her. Bo Yikao was frightened out of his wits and knelt down before her.

"I'm the son of a convict. I greatly appreciate your kindness in permitting me to live. In your lofty position as Queen, you're respected by all as mother of the kingdom. If I should dare to sit beside you, I ought to be punished with 10,000 deaths," he said, and knelt there, daring not to raise his head.

"Bo Yikao! You're wrong. As a subject, you're certainly not qualified to sit beside the queen, but as a tutor, there's nothing wrong for you to sit beside your pupil."

Bo Yikao gnashed his teeth. "This cheap hussy takes me for one at once disloyal, unfilial, unrighteous and lacking in propriety, virtue and wisdom," he thought and made up his mind. "I must think of my ancestors who have been loyal officials since the time of Emperor Yao and never allow myself to fall into her trap. I never imagined that she would violate the sacred code and be so cheap. It's an insult to the king! I would rather be cut into 1,000 pieces than sully my ancestral name."

Daji was disappointed to see him kneeling before her in silence. She could do nothing, but she was unwilling to give him up at once.

"Though I love him deeply, he's not in the least interested in me. What can I do next?" she wondered. "Ah! I'll use another trick to seduce him, one that cannot fail to make him mine." She ordered her maids to clear the table, then turned to Bo Yikao. "Since you're determined not to drink, let's continue with the lessons."

Bo Yikao dared not disobey her orders and began to demonstrate the techniques to her.

"We're too far away from each other. I can't see properly and keep playing the wrong notes," Daji suddenly cut him short. "It's too inconvenient, and I'll never be able to learn quickly. If we sit close together I can learn much faster. You sit in my place, and I'll sit on your lap. Then you can hold my hand and guide it across the strings. That way I'll make rapid progress and you needn't spend years teaching me."



对?深为不便。可将你移于上坐,我坐你怀内,你拿着我手双拨此弦,不用一刻即熟,何劳多延日月哉。”就把伯邑考吓得魂游万里,魄走三千。邑考思量:“此是大数已定,料难脱此罗网,毕竟做个青白之鬼,不负父亲教子之方,只得把忠言直谏,就死甘心。”邑考正色奏曰:“娘娘之言,使臣万载竟为狗彘之人!史官载在典章,以娘娘为何如后!娘娘乃万姓之国母,受天下诸侯之贡贺,享椒房至尊之贵,掌六宫金阙之权;今为传琴一事,褻尊一至于此,深属儿戏,成何体统!使此事一闻于外,虽娘娘冰清玉洁,而天下万世又何信哉。娘娘请无性急,使旁观若有辱于至尊也。”就把姐己羞得彻耳通红,无言可对。随传旨命伯邑考暂退。邑考下楼。回馆驿,不题。

且说姐己深恨:“这等匹夫,轻人如此!‘我本将心托明月,谁知明月照沟渠!’反被他羞辱一场。管教你粉骨碎身,方消吾恨!”姐己只得陪纣王安寝。次日天明,纣王问姐己曰:“夜来伯邑考传琴,可曾精熟?”姐己枕边挑剔,乘机潜曰:“妾身启陛下:夜来伯邑考无心传琴,反起不良之念,将言调戏,甚无人臣礼。妾身不得不奏。”纣王闻言大怒曰:“这匹夫焉敢如此!”随即起来,整饬用膳,传旨:“宣伯邑考。”邑考在馆驿,闻命即至摘星楼下候旨。王命:“宣上楼来。”邑考上楼,叩拜在地,王曰:“昨日传琴,为何不尽心相传,反迁延时刻,这是何说?”邑考奏曰:“学琴之事,要在心坚意诚,方能精熟。”姐己在旁言曰:“琴中之法无他,若仔细分明,讲的斟酌,岂有不精熟之理。只你传习不明,讲论糊涂,如何得臻其音律之妙。”纣王听姐己之



Bo Yikao was terrified. "This has been destined by fate, and it'll be difficult to get out of her trap. But I would rather be a chaste ghost than do anything contrary to my father's teachings. I'll risk my life to admonish her, for it's better to die than live in dishonor," he decided, and addressed Daji seriously, "Your Majesty! If I did as you've suggested, I would be a loathsome beast. Your Majesty is mother to the country, honored by the nobles and people alike, and respected as the head of the fairer sex in the palace. It's most indecorous that under the pretext of learning to play the zither, you should lower yourself to this extent. Should this matter be known beyond the palace walls, how could future generations believe in your chastity? Please don't be so impatient, or people will hold you in contempt."

Daji blushed with shame. At a loss for words, she ordered him to return to his lodgings. She was now filled with hatred for Bo Yikao. "That bloody wretch! How dare he disdain me like this. I offered him my heart, but all he gave me was a mouthful of insults. I won't be satisfied until I've had him torn to pieces and pulverized," she swore angrily before she went back to King Zhou.

The next morning, King Zhou asked her, "Did Bo Yikao teach you well last night?"

Daji seized the opportunity to lie, saying, "I should report to you that Bo Yikao didn't have his mind on teaching me at all but did all he could to seduce me. He uncouthly violated the rites that govern the relationships, between queen and subject."

King Zhou was furious. He got up, dressed and breakfasted, then ordered, "Tell Bo Yikao to see me at once."

Entering the Star Picking Mansion, Bo Yikao knelt down and kowtowed before the king.

"Why were you so slack in teaching last night? Why did you try to prolong the time it will take for the queen to become thoroughly skilled?" King Zhou demanded.

"Patience and sincerity are required to learn the zither. It cannot be learned thoroughly in a short time," Bo Yikao replied.

Daji, who was sitting beside King Zhou, interrupted, "Playing the zither isn't really complicated. If you had given me a detailed explanation, I certainly could have mastered it without any difficulty. It's just that you weren't diligent, and explained nothing clearly. How could I be expected to make good progress?"



言，夜来之事，不好明言，随命邑考：“再抚一曲与朕亲听，看是如何。”邑考受命，膝地而坐，抚弄瑶琴，自思：“不若于琴中寓以讽谏之意。”乃叹纣王一词曰：

“一点忠心达上苍，祝君寿算永无疆。风和雨顺当今福，一统山河国祚长。”

纣王静听琴内之音，俱是忠心爱国之意，并无半点欺谤之言，将何罪于邑考。妲己见纣王无有加罪之心，以言挑之曰：“伯邑考前进白面猿猴，善能歌唱。陛下可曾听其歌唱否？”纣王曰：“夜来听琴有悞，未曾演习；今日命邑考进上楼来，以试一曲，如何？”邑考领旨到馆驿，将猿猴进上摘星楼，开了红笼，放出猿猴。邑考将檀板递与白猿。白猿轻敲檀板，婉转歌喉，音若笙簧，满楼嘹亮，高一声如凤鸣之音，低一声似鸾啼之美，愁人听而舒眉，欢人听而抚掌，泣人听而止泪，明人听而如痴。纣王闻之，颠倒情怀。妲己听之，芳心如醉。宫人听之，为世上之罕有。那猿猴只唱的神仙着意，嫦娥侧耳，就把妲己唱得神荡意迷，情飞心逸，如醉如痴，不能检束自己形体，将原形都唱出来了。这白猴乃千年得道之猿，修的十二重楼横骨俱无，故此善能歌唱；又修成火眼金睛，善看人间妖魅。妲己原形现出，白猿看见上面有个狐狸——不知狐狸乃妲己本相——白猿虽是得道之物，终是个畜类。此猿将檀板掷于地下，隔九龙侍席上，一擡劈面来抓妲己。妲己往后一闪，早被纣王一拳将白猿打跌在地，死于地下。命宫人扶起。妲己曰：“伯邑考明进猿猴，暗为行刺，若非陛下之恩相救，妾命休矣！”纣王大怒，喝左右：“将伯邑考拿下，送入蚕盆！”两边侍御官将邑考拿



King Zhou felt it inconvenient to mention what Daji told him in bed about Bo Yikao, so he ordered, "Play us another tune so I can see how good you really are, Yikao."

Bo Yikao sat on the floor and began to move his fingers across the strings. He was determined to play a tune full of loyal admonitions:

My loyalty reaches to the heavens,  
May His Majesty live forever!  
And be blessed with timely rain and breeze,  
May the kingdom be united and last long.

King Zhou listened attentively and understood that the tune was loyal and patriotic, without a hint of slander or ridicule. It would be groundless to find fault with Bo Yikao.

Daji understood what was in his mind and proposed, "The white-faced monkey can sing very well. Have you ever heard it, Your Majesty?"

"No, I haven't. I was so busy enjoying the zither last night that I didn't have the time. I'll order Bo Yikao to bring it in now and make it sing for us. What do you say to that?"

Bo Yikao and his men carried the monkey upstairs in its red cage. Bo let it out and handed it two hardwood clappers with which to keep time while it sang. The white-faced monkey was really a good musician. It beat the clappers and sang in a bewitching and soothing tone that made every listener forget his anxiety and sorrow. King Zhou forgot his anger and Daji became intoxicated with its beauty.

As the monkey sang on, Daji became so enchanted that she forgot herself, and her spirit flew out in its true form.

Now this was a magic monkey that had cultivated itself for a thousand years. It could not only sing sweetly but could also tell demons and ghosts. As soon as it saw the fox sprite, it threw down the clappers and darted at Daji, attempting to scratch her with its nails. Daji immediately leapt backwards to evade it, and King Zhou knocked it dead to the ground.

As the palace maids helped Daji up, she wept and said, "This is clearly a plot. Pretending to amuse you with the monkey, he intended to murder me. If you hadn't graciously saved my life, I would be dead by now!"

The king was outraged and shouted, "Guards! Take Bo Yikao out and throw him into the serpent pit."

As the palace guards dragged him out, Bo Yikao cried, "I'm wronged. I beg for justice!"





下。邑考厉声大叫“冤枉”不绝。纣王听邑考口称冤枉，命且放回。纣王问曰：“你这匹夫！白猿行刺，众目所视，为何强辩，口称‘冤枉’，何也？”邑考泣奏曰：“猿猴乃山中之畜，虽修人语，野性未退；况猴子善喜果品，不用烟火之物，今见陛下九龙侍席之上，百般果品，心中急欲取果物，便弃檀板而撞酒席；且猿猴手无寸刃，焉能行刺？臣伯邑考世受陛下洪恩，焉敢造次。愿陛下究察其情，臣虽寸磔，死亦瞑目矣。”纣王听邑考之言，暗思多时，转怒为喜，言曰：“御妻，邑考之言是也。猿猴乃山中之物，终是野性，况无刃岂能行刺？”随赦邑考。邑考谢恩。妲己曰：“既赦邑考无罪，你再将瑶琴抚弄一奇词异调，琴内果有忠良之心，便罢，若无倾葵之语，决不赦饶。”纣王曰：“御妻之言甚善。”邑考听妲己之奏，暗想：“这一番谅不能脱其圈套。就将此残躯以为直谏，就死万刃之下，留之史册，也见我姬姓累世不失忠良。”邑考领旨坐地，就于膝上抚弄一曲，词曰：

“明君作兮布德行仁，未闻忍心兮重敛烦刑。炮烙炽兮筋骨粉，蜃盆惨兮肺腑惊，万姓精血竟入酒海，四方膏脂尽悬肉林。机杼空兮，鹿台才满，犁锄折兮巨桥粟盈。我愿明君兮去谗逐淫，振刷纲纪兮天下太平！”



Hearing this, King Zhou had him brought back and swore, "You damned wretch! Everybody saw that monkey try to murder the queen. You deserve to be severely dealt with. Why do you still claim you've been wronged?"

Bo Yikao wept. "Monkeys are wild animals. Though this one is familiar with human beings and can understand us well, it hasn't been completely tamed. Besides, monkeys and apes like to eat fruit and dislike cooked food. When it saw the wonderful fruits on your table, it threw down its clappers and tried to snatch some of them. Moreover, the ape was completely unarmed. How could it murder the queen? Your servant has received great favor from Your Majesty and would never be so ungrateful as to commit murder. If you will consider this matter I can die in peace, though my body is sliced into a thousand pieces."

King Zhou considered his statement for a long and gradually his wrath turned to joy. He said to Daji, "What he said is quite reasonable. Monkeys and apes are wild animals difficult to be fully domesticated. Moreover, there was no knife in its hand, and it couldn't have hurt you."

King Zhou thus pardoned Bo Yikao, who thanked him profusely for his grace.

"Since you've generously forgiven him, let him play the zither again. If he plays a tune expressing loyalty and sincerity, then you can let him off. But if there's any hint of danger in his words, he must on no account be pardoned.

"A brilliant idea, my Queen."

At this proposal, Bo Yikao thought, "It looks as if I won't be able to escape her trap this time. Let me sacrifice my body for my loyalty, and let history record that every generation of the Ji family is loyal and upright."

He sat on the floor and began to play:

A good king's always virtuous,  
Never will he use cruel torture.  
Hot pillars turn flesh to ashes,  
While serpents devour intestines.  
The Wine Sea's full of human blood,  
The Meat Forest's hung with corpses.  
Women's looms are empty,  
But the Happy Terrace is full.  
Men's ploughs are broken,  
Yet royal granaries rot.  
May the king expel minions,  
And restore peace to the nation.



邑考抚罢，纣王不明其音。妲己妖魅，听得琴中之音有毁谤君上之言。妲己以手指邑考骂曰：“大胆匹夫！敢于琴中暗寓毁谤之言，辱君骂主，情殊可恨！真是刁恶之徒，罪不容诛！”纣王问妲己曰：“琴中毁谤，朕尚不明。”妲己将琴中之意，细说一番。纣王大怒，喝左右来拿。邑考奏曰：“臣还有结句一段，试抚于陛下听矣。”词曰：

“愿王远色兮再正纲常，天下太平兮速废娘娘。妖氛灭兮诸侯悦服，却邪淫兮社稷宁康。陷邑考兮不怕万死，绝妲己兮史氏传扬！”

邑考作歌已毕，回首将琴隔侍席打来，只打得盘碟纷飞。妲己将身一闪，跌倒在地。纣王大怒曰：“好匹夫！猿猴行刺，被你巧言说过；你将琴击皇后，分明弑逆，罪不容诛！”喝左右侍驾官：“将邑考拿下摘星楼，送入蚕盆！”众宫人扶起，妲己奏曰：“陛下且将邑考拿下楼去，妾身自有处治。”纣王随听妲己之言，把邑考拿下楼。妲己命左右取钉四根，将邑考手足钉了，用刀碎剁。可怜一身拿下，钉了手足。邑考大叫，骂不绝口：“贱人！你将成汤锦片江山化为乌有。我死不足惜，忠名常在，孝节永存。贱人！我生不能啖汝之肉，死后定为厉鬼食汝之魂！”可怜孝子为父朝商，竟遭万刃剁尸！不一时，将邑考剁成肉酱。纣王命付于蚕盆，喂了蛇蝎。妲己曰：“不可。妾常闻姬昌号为圣人，说他能明祸福，善识阴阳。妾闻圣人不食子肉，今将邑考之肉着厨役用作料，做成肉饼，赐与姬昌。若昌竟食此肉，乃是妄诞虚名，祸福阴阳，俱是谬说，竟可赦宥，以表皇上不杀之仁；如果不食，当速杀姬昌，恐遗后患。”纣王曰：“御妻之言正合朕意。速命厨役，将邑考肉作饼，差官押送羑里，赐与姬昌。”不知西伯性命如何，且听下回分解。



King Zhou did not understand the meaning implicit in the tune, but Daji understood it perfectly. She shouted angrily, "You damned wretch! How dare you insidiously slander His Majesty with your tunes! You're a sly devil and deserve death!"

As she explained the meaning, King Zhou became enraged. "Get hold of him, guards!"

"I haven't finished the final verse," said Bo Yikao calmly. "Please listen to it."

May the king keep from lust,  
And abandon that queen, if only  
For the nation's sake.  
When the evil's gone,  
The nobles will gladly submit.  
When lust is cleansed,  
The kingdom will live in peace.  
I dread not a cruel death,  
But eliminate Daji  
To clear your name.

When he finished, Bo Yikao hurled the zither across the table at Daji sending plates and dishes flying. Daji leapt out of the way and tumbled to the ground.

King Zhou roared, "You damned wretch! Attempting to murder Her Majesty with the zither is an unpardonable capital crime. Guards, take him away and throw him into the serpent pit at once!"

"Your Majesty, wait. Take him downstairs, and let me deal with him myself," Daji begged.

She ordered the executioners to nail Bo Yikao's hands and feet to a board and then had the flesh sliced from him piece by piece. Bo Yikao swore at her until his last breath was spent.

When Bo Yikao's flesh had been minced, the king ordered that it be fed to the serpents. Daji, however, suggested, "Let's test Ji Chang with pies made of his son's flesh. If he eats them, he's none other than an ordinary man. You may set him free and display your kindness. If he won't, he's a real sage. We must then put him to death at once to guard against future trouble."

This suggestion was approved by the king, and Bo's flesh was sent to the kitchen, made into pies and sent to Ji Chang in Youli.

If you want to know what happened to Ji Chang, you must read the next chapter.

## 第二十回

### 散宜生私通费尤

诗曰：

自古权奸止爱钱，构成机彀害忠贤。不无黄白开生路，也要青蚨入锦缠。成己不知遗国恨，遗灾那问有家延。孰知反复原无定，悔却吴钩错倒捻。

且言西伯侯囚于羑里城——即今河北相州汤阴县是也——每日闭门待罪，将伏羲八卦变为八八六十四卦，重为三百八十四爻，内按阴阳消息之机，周天划度之妙，后为“周易”。姬伯闲暇无事，闷抚瑶琴一曲，猛然琴中大弦忽有杀声，西伯惊曰：“此杀声主何怪事？”忙止琴声，慌取金钱占一课，便知分晓。姬伯不觉流泪曰：“我儿不听父言，遭此碎身之祸！今日如不食子肉，难逃杀身之祸；如食子肉，其心何忍！使我心如刀绞，不敢悲啼。如泄此机，我身亦自难保。”姬伯只得含悲忍泪，不敢出声，作诗叹曰：

“孤身抱忠义，万里探亲灾。未入羑里城，先登殷纣台。

抚琴除妖妇，顷刻怒心推。可惜青年客，魂游劫运灰！”

姬昌作毕，左右不知姬伯心事，俱默默不语。话未了时，使命官到，有旨意下。姬伯缟素接旨，口称：“犯臣死罪。”姬昌接旨，开读毕，使命官将龙凤膳盒摆在右面。使命曰：“主上见贤侯在羑里久羈，圣心不忍。昨日圣驾幸猎，打得鹿獐



## Chapter 20

### San Yisheng Bribes the Corrupt Courtiers

Ji Chang had been imprisoned at Youli for seven years. He stayed quietly behind closed doors and did his utmost to repent of his crime. In addition, he studied the theory of the eight diagrams which Fuxi had invented, and expanded it greatly until it became the basis of *The Book of Change*. He multiplied the eight diagrams until they grew into sixty-four. He based them on the *yin* and *yang* theory and modeled them on the zodiac so that they contained 360 explications.

One day, with little else to do, the duke picked up his zither and idly began to play. Suddenly he was alerted by the undertone of death coming from the thickest string. He stopped playing and made a divination by throwing gold coins. Reading the results, he began to weep.

"Ah! My poor son! You failed to obey my instructions," he mourned. "Now if I refuse to eat your flesh, I cannot avoid death either. But how can I bear to devour my own son's flesh! I feel as if my heart's been pierced with a sword, but I mustn't be mournful and weep for I wouldn't be able to protect myself if I let my knowledge of the matter known."

Before long a palace messenger arrived with the king's order. Ji Chang knelt down and listened to it. When the messenger finished reading, he handed Ji Chang the casket of pies.

"As you've been imprisoned here for so long, His Majesty is deeply concerned," he announced. "He shot some deer on a hunt yesterday and ordered that pies be made and presented to you."





之物，做成肉饼，特赐贤侯，故有是命。”姬昌跪在案前，揭开膳盒，言曰：“皇上受鞍马之劳，反赐犯臣鹿饼之享，愿陛下万岁！”谢恩毕，连食三饼，将盒盖了。使命见姬昌食了子肉，暗暗叹曰：“人言姬伯能知先天神数，善晓吉凶，今日见子肉而不知，速食而甘美，所谓阴阳吉凶，皆是虚语！”且说姬昌明知子肉，含忍苦痛，不敢悲伤，勉强精神对使命言曰：“钦差大人，犯臣不能躬谢天恩，敢烦大人与昌转达，昌就此谢恩便了。”姬伯倒身下拜，“蒙皇上之恩光，又普照于羑里。”使命官回朝歌。不题。且说姬伯思子之苦，不敢啼哭，暗暗作诗叹曰：

“一别西岐到此间，曾言不必渡江关。只知进贡朝昏主，莫解迎君有犯颜。年少忠良空惨切，泪多时雨只潸潸。游魂一点归何处，青史名标是等闲。”

姬伯作毕诗，不觉忧忧闷闷，寝食俱废在羑里。不题。

且说使命官回朝复命。纣王在显庆殿与费仲、尤浑弈棋。左右侍驾官启奏：“使命候旨。”纣王传旨：“宣至殿廷回旨。”奏曰：“臣奉旨将肉饼送至羑里，姬昌谢恩言曰：‘姬昌犯罪当死，蒙圣恩赦以再生，已出望外；今皇上受鞍马之劳，犯臣安逸而受鹿饼之赐，圣恩浩荡，感刻无地！’跪在地上，揭开膳盒，连食三饼，叩头谢恩。又对臣曰：‘犯臣姬昌不得面覩天颜。’又拜八拜，乞使命转达天廷。今臣回旨。”纣王听使臣之言，对费仲曰：“姬昌素有重名，善演先天之数，吉凶有准，祸福无差；今观自己子肉食而不知，人言可尽信哉！朕念姬昌七载羑囚，欲赦还国，二卿意下以为如何？”费仲奏曰：“昌数无差，定知子肉。恐欲不食，又遭



Still on his knees, Ji Chang opened the casket. "His Majesty exhausted himself with the rigors of hunting, yet bestows upon his convict minister the pleasure of tasting the fruits of his labor! Long live His Majesty!" he exclaimed.

After expressing his gratitude, he took a pie and ate it appreciatively. He ate a second and then a third, and finally replaced the lid of the casket.

The messenger sighed, "Everyone says that Ji Chang can foretell fortunes, yet he's eaten the flesh of his own son without knowing it. He found it so delicious that he ate three pies in a row! He certainly isn't a prophet. What he says is all nonsense!"

Ji Chang knew well that he had eaten his son's flesh, but he had to hide his sorrow. He dared not show it and pretended delight. "Sir, I'm sorry that I cannot directly offer my gratitude to His Majesty for this special grace," he said. "But I would venture to trouble you to pass my thanks on to him." He knelt down before the messenger. "I thank His Majesty for his great favor. The light of his grace shines brightly over Youli today."

The messenger bade him farewell and returned to Zhaoge. Ji Chang grieved deeply for his son and could not eat or sleep. King Zhou was playing chess with Fei Zhong and You Hun at Celebration Hall when the messenger returned from Youli and requested an audience. When the king gave the order, he entered and knelt before the king.

"By order of Your Majesty, I took the pies to Ji Chang. He immediately expressed his gratitude, saying, 'I should have been put to death for the crime I committed, but I was forgiven and allowed to live by the great kindness of His Majesty. This is more than I could have hoped for. Now, His Majesty is so kind as to grant me another great favor by bestowing upon me these deer pies. His grace is boundless, and my gratitude knows no limits!' Still kneeling on the ground, he opened the casket and ate three pies with great enjoyment. Then he kowtowed in gratitude and said again, 'Your convict minister regrets being unable to thank Your Majesty in person.' After kowtowing again, he begged me to pass his words on to you."

Hearing the account, King Zhou said to Fei Zhong, "Ji Chang is known to all for his virtue and for his accuracy of prediction. But today he's eaten the flesh of his own son without knowing it! His reputation is clearly unfounded. As he's been imprisoned for seven years, I would like now to forgive him and let him return home. What do you think?"

"Ji Chang never makes mistakes in his divinations. He certainly knew he was eating the flesh of his own son, but realized that if he didn't, he





屠戮，只得勉强忍食，以为脱身之计，不得已而为之也。陛下不可不察，误中奸计耳。”王曰：“昌知子肉，决不肯食。”又言：“昌乃大贤，岂有大贤忍啖子肉哉。”费仲奏曰：“姬昌外有忠诚，内怀奸诈，人皆为彼瞒过，不如且禁羑里；似虎投陷阱，鸟困雕笼，虽不杀戮，也磨其锐气。况今东南二路已叛，尚未慑服；今纵姬昌于西岐，是又添一患矣。乞陛下念之。”王曰：“卿言是也。”——此还是西伯侯灾难未满，故有谗佞之阻。有诗为证：

羑里城中灾未满，费尤在侧献谗言。若无西地宜生计，焉得文王返故园。

不说纣王不赦姬昌，且说邑考从人已知纣王将公子醢为肉酱，星夜逃回，进西岐来见二公子姬发。姬发一日升殿，端门官来报：“有跟随公子往朝歌家将候旨。”姬发听报，传令旨，宣众人到殿前。众人哭拜在地。姬发慌问其故。来人启曰：“公子往朝歌进贡，不曾到羑里见老爷，先见纣王。不知何事，将殿下醢为肉酱。”姬发听言，大哭于殿廷，几乎气绝。只见两边文武之中，有大将军南宫适大叫曰：“公子乃西岐之幼主，今进贡与纣王，反遭醢尸之惨。我等主公遭囚羑里，虽是昏乱，吾等还有君臣之礼，不肯有负先王；今公子无辜而受屠戮，痛心切骨，君臣之义已绝，纲常之分俱乖。今东南两路苦战多年，吾等奉国法以守臣节，今已如此，何不统两班文武，将倾国之兵，先取五关，杀上朝歌，剿戮昏君，再立明主。正所谓定祸乱而反太平，亦不失为臣之节！”只见两边武将听南宫适之言，时有四贤、八俊：辛甲、辛免、太颠、闾夭、祁公、尹积，西伯侯有三十六教习



would lose his own life. He forced himself to eat those pies, expecting you to be generous enough to set him free. You'd better consider the matter carefully. Don't be deceived by him," Fei Zhong warned.

"Ji Chang would certainly have refused to eat the pies if he knew they were made of his son's flesh. He's a saint and no saint could bear to eat his son's flesh," King Zhou argued.

"Ji Chang's a hypocrite. Outwardly he's loyal and honest, but inwardly treacherous and dishonest. Everyone's been fooled by him. You don't have to kill him, but you'd better continue to confine him to curb his ambition, much like keeping a tiger in a trap or locking a hawk in a cage. What's more, the rebellions in the east and south haven't yet been suppressed. If you allowed him to return to the west, you would be just bringing more trouble on yourself. I beg you to think it over carefully," Fei Zhong persisted.

"You may be right, Minister," King Zhou agreed at last.

Learning that Bo Yikao had been killed, his entourage fled Zhaoge by night and reached West Qi just as Ji Fa was holding court. When they knelt before him weeping, Ji Fa was greatly startled and asked the reason.

"Our master didn't go to Youli to see the Grand Duke, but first went to present his tribute to King Zhou. For some reason unknown to us, the king cruelly murdered him, mincing his body."

Ji Fa burst into sobs at the news and nearly fainted. "Prince Bo Yikao was the young master of the West Grand Dukedom. How could King Zhou have slayed him so cruelly when he went to offer tribute! Though our old master's been imprisoned for so long, we've remained loyal ministers to the king, despite his tyrannical behavior. Now this butchering's broken the sacred code between king and ministers," Nangong Kuo cried from among the generals. "We can't wait patiently any longer. We must take action as the East Grand Duke and South Grand Duke are doing. We must send an army to Zhaoge and replace this tyrant with a virtuous ruler. This is the only way to restore peace in the country."

"General Nangong Kuo's right," the ranks of generals roared their agreement.



子姓姬叔度等，齐大叫：“南将军之言有理！”众文武切齿咬牙，竖眉睁目，七间殿上，一片喧嚷之声，连姬发亦无定主。只见散宜生厉声言曰：“公子休乱，臣有事奉启！”发曰：“上大夫今有何言？”宜生曰：“公子命刀斧手先将南宫适拿出端门斩了，然后再议大事。”姬发与众将问曰：“先生为何先斩南将军？此理何说？使诸将不服。”宜生对诸将言曰：“此等乱臣贼子，陷主君于不义，理当先斩，再议国事。诸公只知披坚执锐，一勇无谋。不知老大王克守臣节，兢兢不贰，虽在羑里，定无怨言。公等造次胡为，兵未到五关，先陷主公于不义而死，此诚何心。故先斩南宫适，而后再议国是也。”公子姬发与众将听罢，个个无言，默默不语。南宫适亦无语低头。宜生曰：“当日公子不听宜生之言，今日果有杀身之祸。昔日大王往朝歌之日，演先天之数，‘七年之殃，灾满难足，自有荣归之日，不必着人来接。’言犹在耳，殿下不听，致有此祸。况又失于打点，今纣王宠信费、尤二贼，临行不带礼物贿赂二人，故殿下有丧身之祸。为今之计，不若先差官一员，用重赂私通货、尤，使内外相应；待臣修书，恳切哀求。若奸臣受贿，必在纣王面前以好言解释。老大王自然还国，那时修德行仁，俟纣恶贯盈，再会天下诸侯共伐无道。兴吊民伐罪之师，天下自然响应。废去昏庸，再立有道，人心悦服。不然，徒取败亡，遗臭后世，为天下笑耳。”姬发曰：“先生之教甚善，使发顿开茅塞，真金玉之论也。不知先用何等礼物？所用何官？先生当明以告我。”宜生曰：“不过用明珠、白璧、彩缎表里、黄金、玉带，共礼二分：一分差太颠送费仲；一分差闾夭送尤浑。使



They ground their teeth and glared angrily, filling the court with the clamor of their voices. Not even Ji Fa could maintain his composure.

Just then San Yisheng came forward. "Master, please calm down and hear me speak. First of all, you should have General Nangong Kuo beheaded at the gate. Then we can discuss how to deal with this emergency."

"Why do you want to have General Nangong beheaded? You'd better have a good reason to convince our generals," Ji Fa demanded.

"Because what he proposes would endanger the old master. Our generals are very brave, but not thoughtful," San Yisheng began. "They're ignorant of the fact that the old master's always been loyal to the king. He's never complained, even though he's been confined for such a long time. If you take reckless action, he'll certainly be executed before we even reach the five passes. They're all talking nonsense. That's why I say first behead General Nangong Kuo before we discuss the situation."

Ji Fa and his ministers fell silent, and General Nangong also lowered his head, not saying a word.

"Prince Bo Yikao didn't heed my advice and has lost his life. I still remember clearly that on the day of his departure, our old master made a divination and found that he would suffer there for seven years but would return of his own accord as soon as his time was up. He warned us not to send anyone to meet him," San Yisheng continued. "Yet Prince Bo Yikao didn't obey him and met with disaster. Besides, he didn't notice that Fei Zhong and You Hun are the favorites of King Zhou. On his arrival at Zhaoge he should have bribed them. To meet the present situation, I propose that we send two messengers secretly to Zhaoge and bribe the two with valuable presents. That way we'll have secret aid within the court when we try to do something officially from here. I'll write letters to Fei Zhong and You Hun, begging for their help. If they accept our bribes, they'll be sure to speak to King Zhou on our behalf and secure our old master's release. Once he's returned, we can march on the tyrant in alliance with the other dukes. The whole kingdom will naturally support us in our efforts to eliminate the tyrant and enthrone a virtuous ruler. If we act otherwise, we'll be the laughingstock of the country for generations to come."

"You've taught us an excellent lesson today. But tell me, please, what kind of present should we send and who should we entrust with this mission?" Ji Fa inquired.

"We should send pearls, jade, satin, gold, silver and jade belts. I suggest that General Tai Dian go to see Fei Zhong and General Hong Yao go



二将星夜进五关，扮做商贾，暗进朝歌。费、尤二人若受此礼，大王不日归国，自然无事。”公子大喜，即忙收拾礼物。宜生修书，差二将往朝歌来。有诗曰：

明珠白璧共黄金，暗进朝歌贿佞壬。慢道财神通鬼使，果然世利动人心。成汤社稷成残烛，西伯江山若茂林。不是宜生施妙策，天教殷纣自成擒。

且说太颠、闾夭扮做经商，暗带礼物，星夜往汜水关来。关上查明，二将进关。一路上无词，过了界牌关，八十里进了穿云关，又进潼关，一百二十里又至临潼关，过渑池县，渡黄河，到孟津，至朝歌。二将不敢在馆驿安住，投客店歇下，暗暗收拾礼物。太颠往费仲府下书；闾夭往尤浑府下书。

且说费仲抵暮出朝，归至府第无事。守门官启老爷：“西岐有散宜生差官下书。”费仲笑曰：“迟了！着他进来。”太颠来到厅前，只得行礼参见。费仲问曰：“汝是甚人，夤夜见我？”太颠起身答曰：“末将乃西岐神武将军太颠是也。今奉上下大夫散宜生命，具有表礼，蒙大夫保全我主公性命，再造洪恩，高深莫极，每思毫无尺寸相补，以效涓涯，今特差末将有书投见。”费仲命太颠平身，将书拆开观看。书曰：

“西岐卑职散宜生顿首百拜致书于上大夫费公恩主台下：久仰大德，未叩台端，自愧驽骀，无缘执鞭，梦想殊渴。兹启：敝地恩主姬伯，冒言忤君，罪在不赦。深感大夫垂救之恩，得获生全。虽囚羸里，实大夫再赐之余生耳。不胜庆幸，其外又何敢望焉。职等因僻处一隅，未伸衔结，日夜只有望帝京遥祝万寿无疆而已。今



to see You Hun. They must travel secretly in the guise of merchants. If the presents are accepted, our old master will soon return home.”

Ji Fa was overjoyed. When the presents were ready, he immediately sent Tai Dian and Hong Yao to Zhaoge. Disguised as traders, Tao Dian and Hong Yao carried the presents concealed in their luggage and got through all five passes without a hitch. After passing through Mianchi County, they crossed the Yellow River by ferry to Mengjin and soon reached Zhaoge. They dared not stay in the government hostel, taking up lodgings at a small inn.

Fei Zhong returned home from the palace at dusk, and was sitting in his study when the gateman came to report, “A messenger with a letter from San Yisheng, Supreme Minister of the West Grand Dukedom, requests to see you.”

Fei Zhong smiled and said, “It’s just a little late, but bring him in.”

Entering the hall, General Tai Dian greeted Fei Zhong.

“Who are you? Why do you come at this late hour?”

“I’m Tai Dian, General of Divine Prowess of the West Grand Dukedom. At the request of Supreme Minister San Yisheng, I’ve come with a letter and some gifts as a small token of our gratitude for your saving the life of our master. You’ve done us a great favor, yet we’ve done nothing to repay you. I’ve been sent here today bearing our warmest regards,” Tai Dian replied courteously.

Fei Zhong told Tai Dian to rise, then read over the letter from San Yisheng:

Most Gracious Supreme Minister Fei Zhong: I have long had deep admiration for your lofty virtue, but to my regret, have never had the good fortune to meet you and offer my sincere service. Our master Ji Chang tactlessly offended His Majesty, committing an unpardonable error. Nevertheless, due to your kindness, he was granted life, though he is still confined at Youli. You bestowed on him the possibility to live out the natural term of his life. What more could we have hoped for? We are far away and can do nothing to express our profound gratitude, but pray night and day for your good health and longevity. Now we have asked General Tai Dian to present you with two pairs of white jade disks, 2,400 taels of gold and four rolls of satin as an insufficient expression of the gratitude of the people and officials of this grand dukedom. We



特遣大夫太颠，具不觐之仪，白璧二双，黄金百镒，表里四端，少曝西土众士民之微忱，幸无以不恭见罪。但我主公以衰末残年，久羁羑里，情实可矜，况有倚闾老母，幼子孤臣，无不日夜悬思，希图再睹，此亦仁人君子所共怜念者也。恳祈恩台大开慈隐，法外施仁，一语回天，得赦归国，则恩台德海仁山，西土众姓，无不衔恩于后世矣。临书不胜悚栗待命之至！谨启。”

费仲看了书共礼单，自思：“此礼价值万金，如今怎能行事。”沉思半晌，乃分付太颠曰：“你且回去，多拜上散大夫，我也不便修回书。等我早晚取便，自然令你主公归国，决不有负你大夫相托之情。”太颠拜谢告辞，自回下处。不一时闷夭也往尤浑处送礼回至，二人相谈，俱是一样之言。二将大喜，忙忙收拾回西岐去讫。不表。

自费仲受了散宜生礼物，也不问尤浑；尤浑也不问费仲；二人各推不知。一日，纣王在摘星楼与二臣下棋。纣王连胜了二盘，纣王大喜，传旨排宴。费、尤侍于左右，换盏传杯。正欢饮之间，忽纣王言起伯邑考鼓琴之雅，猿猴讴歌之妙，又论：“姬昌自食子肉，所论先天之数，皆系妄谈，何尝先有定数。”费仲乘机奏曰：“臣闻姬昌素有叛逆不臣之心，一向防备。臣于前数日着心腹往羑里探听虚实。羑里军民俱言姬昌实有忠义，每月逢朔望之辰，焚香祈求陛下国祚安康，四夷拱服，国泰民安，雨顺风调，四民乐业，社稷永昌，宫闱安静。陛下囚昌七载，并无一怨言。据臣意，看姬昌真乃忠臣。”纣王言曰：“卿前日言姬昌‘外有忠诚，内怀奸诈’，包藏祸心，非是好人，何今日言之反也？”费仲又



constantly worry about our master, as he is old and weak and has been confined at Youli for such a long time. In addition, he still has an old mother and young children who night and day anxiously await his return. His situation is truly pitiable. We beseech you to show your great compassion and benevolence by speaking to the king on his behalf and secure his release. Such an act of virtue would be remembered by the people of the West Grand Dukedom forever.

“These presents are really valuable, worth 10,000 taels of silver. What can I do for him?” Fei Zhong thought for a while, then instructed Tai Dian, “You’d better return to West Qi straightway. Convey to Supreme Minister San Yisheng my best regards and thanks. It’s not convenient now for me to write a reply, but I’ll take the earliest opportunity to secure your old master’s release and safe return home. I won’t disappoint your supreme minister, I guarantee.”

General Tai Dian thanked Fei Zhong, bade him farewell and returned to his lodgings. Soon afterwards, Hong Yao returned from his visit to You Hun. Exchanging stories, the two found their results had been identical. Delighted with their success, they packed up and returned to the West Grand Dukedom without the least delay.

Though Fei Zhong had accepted San Yisheng’s gifts, he mentioned nothing to You Hun. You Hun likewise kept his gift a secret. One day, King Zhou played chess with Fei Zhong and You Hun at the Star Picking Mansion. Two successive wins put the king in excellent spirits, and he ordered that a feast be given and that the two of them join him. After a few rounds, King Zhou mentioned how skilfully Bo Yikao had played the zither and how sweetly the white-faced monkey had sung.

“Since Ji Chang ate the flesh of his son, it’s obvious that his divinations are simply nonsense. He knows nothing about fate and is no prophet at all,” he remarked.

Fei Zhong seized the chance. “I was always wary of Ji Chang, as I often heard that he was treacherous. Nevertheless, a few days ago I sent some trustworthy men to Youli to find out the truth. They reported that Ji Chang is righteous and loyal. On the first and fifteenth day of every month he burns incense and prays for Your Majesty’s health, for the peace of the nation and for the tribes on the borders to refrain from further disturbances, so that the people can enjoy a better life and the nation can prosper. Though he’s been confined for seven years, he’s never complained once. It seems to me that Ji Chang’s a genuinely loyal minister.”





奏曰：“据人言，昌或忠或佞，人耳难分，一时不辨，因此臣暗使心腹，探听真实，方知昌是忠耿之人。正所谓‘路遥知马力，日久见人心’。”纣王曰：“尤大夫以为何如？”尤浑启曰：“依费仲所奏，其实不差。据臣所言，姬昌数年困苦，终日羈囚，训美里万民，万民感德，化行俗美，民知有忠孝节义，不知妄作邪为，所以民称姬昌为圣人，日从善类。陛下问臣，臣不敢不以实对。方才费仲不奏，臣亦上言矣。”纣王曰：“二卿所奏既同，毕竟姬昌是个好人。朕欲赦姬昌，二卿意下何如？”费仲曰：“姬昌之可赦不可赦，臣不敢主张；但姬昌忠孝之心，致羈美里，毫无怨言，若陛下怜悯，赦归本国，是姬昌以死而之生，无国而有国，其感戴陛下再生之恩，岂有已时。此去必效犬马之劳，以不负生平报德酬恩。臣量姬昌以不死之年忠心于陛下也。”尤浑在侧，见费仲力保，想必也是得了西岐礼物，所以如此，“我岂可单让他做情。我一发使姬昌感激。”尤浑出班奏曰：“陛下天恩，既赦姬昌，再加一恩典，彼自然倾心为国。况今东伯侯姜文焕造反，攻打游魂关，大将窦荣大战七年，未分胜负。南伯侯鄂顺谋逆，攻打三山关，大将邓九公亦战七载，杀戮相半。刀兵竟无宁息，烽烟四起。依臣愚见，将姬昌反加一王封，假以白旄、黄钺，得专征伐，代劳天子，威镇西岐。况姬昌素有贤名，天下诸侯畏服，使东南两路知之，不战自退。正所谓举一人而不肖者远矣。”纣王闻奏大喜，曰：“尤浑才智双全，尤属可爱。费仲善挽贤良，实是可钦。”二臣谢恩。纣王即降赦条，单赦姬昌速离美里。有诗为证：

天运循环大不同，七年方满出雕笼。费尤受赂将言谏，



“But the other day you said that Ji Chang was outwardly loyal and honest, but inwardly treacherous and dishonest. Why do you speak of him so differently today?” King Zhou pointed out.

“People speak of Ji Chang differently; some say he’s dishonest, while others say he’s loyal. That’s why I sent my men to find out the truth. Now I know he’s really loyal and trustworthy. As the proverb says, ‘It takes a long time to know the real moral integrity of a man,’” Fei Zhong replied.

“What do you think, Supreme Minister You Hun?” the king asked.

“I can assure you that Fei Zhong’s report is true,” You Hun replied. “I’ve heard that, though confined for so long, Ji Chang’s been teaching the people of Youli to be loyal to Your Majesty and to refrain from doing anything to harm the country. The people there are virtuous and happy, and honor him as a sage. I dare not lie to you. I would have reported this even if Fei Zhong hadn’t mentioned it just now.”

“Since you two are of the same opinion, Ji Chang must be a good man after all. I would like to pardon him and set him free. What do you think?”

“I dare not express any opinion as to whether Ji Chang should be pardoned or not, but one point is important. Since Ji Chang’s so loyal and filial that he hasn’t murmured a single word of complaint, even though he’s been imprisoned for so long, he would be all the more grateful if you set him free and let him return home. I can assure you that he would serve you faithfully for the rest of his life,” Fei Zhong replied.

Hearing Fei Zhong speak so favorably of Ji Chang, You Hun clearly understood that he too had received generous gifts from the West Grand Dukedom. “I can’t let him do all the favors,” he thought. “I must do something to make Ji Chang even more grateful to me.” He left his seat. “Your Majesty shows great magnanimity in pardoning Ji Chang, but if you bestow further favors on him, you can naturally be even more assured of his loyalty to the country. We’ve been fighting to suppress rebellions by the East and South Grand Dukes for seven years already, and there are uprisings all over the country. Since Ji Chang’s highly respected by the other dukes I suggest that he be granted the title of prince and thus obliged to suppress the rebels on your behalf. Once they know of his appointment, the South and East Grand Dukes would withdraw their forces of their own accord.”

King Zhou was delighted with the suggestion. “I’m so glad to see that You Hun’s both wise and talented, and Fei Zhong’s skilled at selecting outstanding men.”



社稷成汤画饼中。加任文王归故土，五关父子又重逢。

灵台应兆飞熊至，渭水溪边遇太公。

且说使臣持赦出朝歌，众官闻知大喜。使臣竟往羑里而来。不题。

且说西伯侯在羑里之中，闲思长子之苦，被纣王醢尸，叹曰：“我儿生在西岐，绝于朝歌，不听父言，遭此横祸。圣人不食子肉，我为父不得已而咬者，乃从权之计。”正思想邑考，忽一阵怪风，将檐瓦吹落两块在地，跌为粉碎。西伯惊曰：“此又是异征！”随焚香，将金钱搜求八卦，早解其情。姬伯点首叹曰：“今日天子赦至。”唤左右：“天子赦到，收拾起行。”众随侍人等，未肯尽信。不一时，使臣传旨，赦书已到。西伯接赦礼毕。使臣曰：“奉圣旨，单赦姬伯老大人。”姬伯望北谢恩，随出羑里。父老牵羊担酒，簇拥道旁，跪接曰：“千岁今日龙逢云彩，凤落梧桐，虎上高山，鹤栖松柏；七载蒙千岁教训抚字，长幼皆知忠孝，妇女皆知贞洁，化行俗美，大小居民，不拘男妇，无不感激千岁洪恩。今一别尊颜，再不能得沾雨露。”左右泣下。西伯亦泣而言曰：“吾羑囚七载，毫无尺寸美意与尔众民，又劳酒礼，吾心不安。只愿尔等不负我常教之方，自然百事无亏，得享朝廷太平之福矣。”黎民越觉悲伤，远送十里，洒泪而别。西伯侯一日到了朝歌。百官在午门候接。只见微子、箕子、比干、微子启、微子衍、麦云、麦智、黄飞虎八谏议大夫都来见西伯侯。姬昌见众官慌忙行礼，慰曰：“犯官七年未见众位大人，今一旦荷蒙天恩特赦，此皆叨列位大人之福荫，方能再见天日也。”众官见姬昌年迈，精神加倍，彼此慰喜。只



Fei Zhong and You Hun thanked the king, who immediately issued a decree pardoning Ji Chang and freeing him from his confinement. Amid the joyous cries of the ministers, a palace messenger set out for Youli with the royal pardon.

The West Grand Duke was still thinking bitterly about the cruel death of his son when a strange wind arose. It blew with such force that two tiles flew off the roof and smashed on the ground. He realized that it was an omen and immediately burnt incense and made a divination with gold coins. "Today the king will pardon me!"

He had just ordered his attendants to pack up his luggage when the palace messenger arrived. He knelt down as the messenger officially announced the pardon. The duke offered his thanks and then made ready to leave for Zhaoge.

Hearing that the duke was going to leave them, the people of Youli crowded into the streets to present him with wine and mutton as a token of their gratitude.

"Dear Duke, today you're free to return home, like a dragon to the sea, a tiger to the mountains or a phoenix to the forests. You've educated us for seven years on how to be loyal and chaste and taught us good customs and behavior. All of us deeply appreciate your great kindness and are grieved that after our parting today we can no longer receive your guidance," they said weeping.

The duke also wept, "I've been confined here for seven years, and I'm ashamed that I haven't done anything to help you. When I see you send me off with wine and mutton I feel most unworthy. I hope you may all continue to live as I've taught you, so that you may achieve success in all things and enjoy the blessings of peace."

The people escorted him ten *li* from Youli and finally bade him farewell in tears. When the West Grand Duke reached the palace gate at Zhaoge he found Wei Zi, Ji Zi, Bi Gan, Huang Feihu and many other officials waiting there to meet him. He hastily dismounted.

"It's been seven years since we last met. But now, thanks to your kindness and grace, I've been generously forgiven by His Majesty," he said bowing.

All the officials were delighted to find that though the duke had aged, he was still healthy and vigorous. Just then an order arrived from the Dragon Virtue Court summoning Ji Chang to see the king.



见使命回旨。天子正在龙德殿，闻知候旨，命宣众官随姬昌朝见。只见姬昌缟素俯伏，奏曰：“犯臣姬昌，罪不胜诛，蒙恩赦宥，虽粉骨碎身，皆陛下所赐之年。愿陛下万岁！”王曰：“卿在羑里，七载羈囚，毫无一怨言，而反祈朕国祚绵长，求天下太平，黎民乐业，可见卿有忠诚，朕实有负于卿矣。今朕特诏，赦卿无罪。七载无辜，仍加封贤良忠孝百公之长，特专征伐。赐卿白旄、黄钺，坐镇西岐。每月加禄米一千石。文官二名，武将二员，送卿荣归。仍赐龙德殿筵宴，游街三日，拜阙谢恩。”西伯侯谢恩。彼时姬伯换服，百官称庆，就在龙德殿饮宴。怎见得：

擦抹条台桌椅，铺设奇异华筵。左设妆花白玉瓶，右摆玛瑙珊瑚树。进酒宫娥双洛浦，添香美女两嫦娥。黄金炉内麝檀香。琥珀杯中珍珠滴。两边围绕绣屏开，满座重铺销金簟。金盘犀箸，掩映龙凤珍馐，整整齐齐，另是一般气象。绣屏锦帐，围绕花卉翎毛，叠叠重重，自然彩色稀奇。休夸交梨红枣，自有雀舌牙茶。火炮白杏，酱牙红姜。鹅梨、苹果、青脆梅；龙眼、枇杷、金赤橘。石榴盏大，秋柿毬圆。又摆列兔丝、熊掌、猩唇、驼蹄；谁羨他凤髓、龙肝、狮睛、麟脯。漫斟那瑶池玉液，紫府琼浆；且吹他鸾箫凤笛，象板笙簧。正是：西伯夸官先饮宴，蛟龙得水离泥沙。要的般般有，珍馐百味全。一声鼓乐动，正是帝王欢。

话说比干、微子、箕子，在朝大小官员，无有不喜赦姬昌。百官陪宴尽乐。文王谢恩出朝，三日夸官。怎见得文王夸官的好处？但见：



Dressed in white as a convict, Ji Chang kowtowed before the king. "The convict Ji Chang committed a grave fault punishable by death, but Your Majesty has been so kind as to forgive me and grant me life. How can I ever return such a great favor! May Your Majesty live 10,000 years!"

"You accepted your confinement at Youli for seven years without a complaint and prayed only that our kingdom would enjoy lasting peace and the people would live in happiness. You've proven your loyalty. Today I'll not only grant you a pardon, but also appoint you as chief of all the dukes, authorized to undertake military operations in times of need. I bestow on you the yak-tail pennant and yellow axe, crown you prince and increase your monthly allowance of rice by 1,000 piculs. Before you return home in honor, I'll hold a banquet for you at the Dragon Virtue Court and grant you the privilege of parading in the streets for three days," King Zhou announced.

Ji Chang kowtowed again to thank King Zhou for the favors generously bestowed on him. When the king had withdrawn, Ji Chang changed into his official robes and joined the other ministers at a sumptuous banquet, drinking and eating amidst sweet music. Bi Gan, Wei Zi, Ji Zi and all the other ministers were glad to see him out of trouble.

After the banquet, Ji Chang, or Prince Wen, as he was known later on, paraded through the streets and markets to demonstrate his glory before the people. The residents of the capital lined the streets to see him.



前遮后拥，五色旛摇。桶子枪朱纓荡荡，朝天凳艳色辉煌。左边钺斧右金瓜，前摆黄旄后豹尾。带刀力士增光彩，随驾官员喜气添。银交椅衬玉芙蓉，逍遥马饰黄金辔。走龙飞凤大红袍，暗隐团龙妆花绣。彩玉束带，厢成八宝。百姓争看西伯驾，万民称贺圣人来。正是：霭霭香烟声满道，重重瑞气罩台阶。

朝歌城中百姓，扶老携幼，拖男抱女，齐来看文王加官。人人都道：“忠良今日出雕笼，有德贤侯灾厄满。”文王在城中夸官两日，到未牌时分，只见前面旛幢队伍，剑戟森罗，一枝人马到来。文王问曰：“前面是那处人马？”两边启上：“大王千岁：是武成王黄爷看操回来。”文王急忙下马，站立道傍，欠背打躬。武成王见文王下马，即忙滚鞍下骑，称文王曰：“大人前来，末将有失回避大驾，望乞恕罪。”乃曰：“今贤王荣归，真是万千之喜。末将有一闲言奉启，不识贤王可容纳否？”西伯曰：“不才领教。”武成王曰：“此间离末将府第不远，薄具杯酒，以表芹意，何如？”文王乃诚实君子，不会推辞谦让，随答曰：“贤王在上，姬昌敢不领教。”黄飞虎随携文王至王府，命左右快排筵宴。二王传杯欢饮，各谈些忠义之言。不觉黄昏，掌上画烛。武成王命左右且退。黄飞虎曰：“今日大人之乐，实为无疆之福。但当今宠信邪佞，不听忠言，陷坏大臣，荒于酒色，不整朝纲，不容谏本，炮烙以退忠良之心，蜚语以阻谏臣之语。万姓慌慌，刀兵四起。东南两处已反四百诸侯，以贤王之德，尚有羸里困苦之羈，今已特赦，是龙归大海，虎入深山，金鳌脱钓，如何尚不省悟！况且朝中无三日正条，贤王夸什么官，



"The loyal minister's released from his cage at last. The virtuous and worthy duke should be free from all calamity now," they commented.

Late in the afternoon of the second day of his parade, a long procession of pennant-bearers and armed guards suddenly approached from the opposite direction. Prince Wen reined in his horse and asked, "What's that procession in front of us?"

When he was told that it was Prince Huang Feihu returning from the military exercises, he quickly dismounted and bowed at the side of the road. When Huang Feihu saw him standing at the roadside waiting for him, he jumped down from his ox, and taking Ji Chang's hands, said, "I've blocked your path, please forgive me." He then added in a low voice, "I'm delighted that you'll return home in honor. I'd like to have a chat with you in private. My home's not far from here. Would you care to come for a couple of drinks?"

Prince Wen was a sincere and honest man, incapable of making polite refusals, so he said, "Anything Your Highness pleases. I'd be delighted to hear any advice from you."

Reaching Huang Feihu's residence, the two walked arm in arm into the hall. A feast was soon prepared, and the two men drank and talked until dusk fell. Candles were then lit, and ordering his attendants to withdraw, Huang turned to Prince Wen.

"Your Highness! You're blessed with happiness today, but can't you see that King Zhou blindly trusts the minions and ignores the loyal? He spends all his time drinking and lusting. He neglects state affairs and doesn't read any official documents. He sends loyal ministers to the burning pillars and silences admonitors with the serpent pit. The virtuous cannot live in peace, and revolts have broken out all over. Of the 800 marquises, 400 in the east and south have already risen against us. Though you're a virtuous man, you've still had to suffer in prison for seven years. Now that you've been freed by special pardon, you're like a dragon returning to the sea, a tiger going back to the mountains or a turtle getting off a hook. How can you fail to see reality!" Huang Feihu reminded him. "Don't you know that the state is deteriorating day by day? Things will never be put in good order. What





显什么王！何不早早飞出雕笼，见其故土，父子重逢，夫妻复会，何不为美。又何必在此网罗之中，做此吉凶未定之事也。”武成王只此数语，把个文王说的骨解筋酥，起而谢曰：“大王真乃金石之言，提拔姬昌。此恩何以得报！奈昌欲去，五关有阻，奈何？”黄飞虎曰：“不难。铜符俱在吾府中。”须臾，取出铜符令箭，交与文王，随令改换衣裳，打扮夜不收号色，径出五关，并无阻隔。文王谢曰：“大王之恩，实是重生父母，何时能报！”此时二鼓时候。武成王命副将龙环、吴贤，开朝歌西门，送文王出城去了。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



glory and honor can you derive from parading for three days? Why don't you fly from this cage as soon as possible and return to your own dukedom, to your wife, sons, relatives and ministers? There's no need for you to remain in this web where nothing you do can have predictable results!"

Prince Wen felt as if awakening from a dream. He got up from his seat, bowed and thanked Huang Feihu, saying, "Your advice is really valuable. I don't know how I'll ever be able to repay your kindness. But though I would like to leave Zhaoge, I've no way of getting through the five passes. What can I do?"

"That's no problem," replied Huang. "I've all the military tallies here, and I'll give you enough to get through." He took some of the tallies from his office, then added, "Your Highness, take these, and disguise yourself as a royal patrolman. You'll get through the five passes without any trouble."

Prince Wen bowed and thanked Huang Feihu again. "The kindness you've shown me is that of parents giving new life. I don't know how I can thank you enough."

Early that same evening, Huang Feihu ordered Long Huan and Wu Yan to open the west gate of Zhaoge and secretly escort Prince Wen out of the capital.

What became of the West Grand Duke? If you want to know, you must turn to the next chapter.

## 第二十一回

### 文王夸官逃五关



诗曰：

黄公恩义救岐王，令箭铜符出帝疆。尤费谗谋追圣主，云中显化济慈航。从来德大难容世，自此龙飞兆瑞祥。留有吐儿名誉在，至今齿角有余芳。

话说文王离了朝歌，连夜过了孟津，渡了黄河，过了渑池，前往临潼关而来。不题。

且说朝歌城馆驿官见文王一夜未归，心下慌忙，急报费大夫府得知。左右通报费仲曰：“外有驿官禀说，西伯文王一夜未归，不知何往。此事重大，不得不预先禀明。”费仲闻知，命：“驿官且退，我自知道。”费仲沉思：“事干自己身上，如何处治？”乃着堂候官，“请尤爷来商议。”少时，尤浑到费仲府，相见礼毕。仲曰：“不道姬昌，贤弟保奏，皇上封彼为王，这也罢了。孰意皇上准行夸官三日，今方二日，姬昌逃归，不俟主命，必非好意。事干重大；且东南二路，叛乱多年，今又走了姬昌，使皇上又生一患。这个担儿谁担？为今之计，将如之何？”尤浑曰：“年兄且宽心，不必忧闷。我二人之事，料不能失手。且进内庭面君，着两员将官，赶去拿来，以正欺君负上之罪，速斩于市曹，何虑之有！”二人计议停当，忙整朝衣，随即入朝。纣王正在摘星楼赏玩。侍臣启驾：“费仲、尤浑候旨。”王曰：“宣二人上

## Chapter 21

### Flight Through the Five Passes

With the help of Huang Feihu, Prince Wen secretly left Zhaoge and crossed the Yellow River on the same night. He made his way through Mianchi County towards Lintong Pass.

At the hostel, the officials became extremely anxious when he failed to return all night. They hurriedly reported the situation to Fei Zhong.

“What shall I do now? If I’m held responsible, it could cause me a lot of trouble,” Fei Zhong hesitated as he got the news, and then immediately sent for You Hun to discuss the matter. When You Hun arrived he told him of the situation.

“On your recommendation, His Majesty created Ji Chang prince. As a special favor, he was also permitted to parade through the streets for three days. But yesterday, on only the second day, he ran away without the permission of His Majesty. He’s obviously up to no good. This is really serious. We’re already trying to cope with the south and east, and now his flight may mean another crisis. Who’s going to assume responsibility? What shall we do?” Fei Zhong asked.

“Don’t worry, Brother! I don’t think this is any trouble. Let’s talk to His Majesty and advise him to send men after Ji Chang. When he’s brought back, we’ll behead him in the market for insulting the king. We’ve got nothing to worry about.”

Reaching agreement on the matter, Fei Zhong and You Hun went to see King Zhou at the Star Picking Mansion.





楼。”二人见王礼毕。王曰：“二卿有何奏章来见？”费仲奏曰：“姬昌深负陛下洪恩，不遵朝廷之命，欺藐陛下。夸官二日，不谢圣恩，不报王爵，暗自逃归，必怀歹意。恐回故土，以起猖獗之端。臣荐在前，恐后得罪。臣等预奏，请旨定夺。”纣王怒曰：“二卿曾言姬昌忠义，逢朔望焚香叩拜，祝祈风和雨顺，国泰民安，朕故此赦之。今日坏事，皆出二卿轻举之罪！”尤浑奏曰：“自古人心难测，面从背违，知外而不知内，知内而不知心，正所谓‘海枯终见底，人死不知心’。姬昌此去不远，陛下传旨，命殷破败、雷开点三千飞骑，赶去拿来，以正逃官之法。”纣王准奏，“速遣殷、雷二将，点兵追赶。”使命传旨。神武大将军殷破败、雷开领旨，往武成王府来调三千飞骑，出朝歌西门，一路上赶来。怎见得：

旛幢招展，三春杨柳交加；号带飘扬，七夕彩云披日。  
刀枪闪灼，三冬瑞雪弥天；剑戟森严，九月秋霜盖地。  
咚咚鼓响，汪洋大海起春雷；振地锣鸣，马到山前飞霹雳。  
人似南山争食虎，马如北海戏波龙。

不说追兵随后飞云掣电而来。且说文王自出朝歌，过了孟津，渡了黄河，望渑池大道徐徐而行，扮作夜不收模样。文王行得慢，殷、雷二将赶得快，不觉看看赶上。文王回头，看见后面尘土荡起，远闻人马喊杀之声，知是追赶。文王惊得魂飞无地，仰天叹曰：“武成王虽是为我，我一时失于打点，夤夜逃归；想必当今知道，傍人奏闻，怪我私自逃回，必有追兵赶逐。此一拿回，再无生理。如今只得趲马前行，以脱此厄。”文王这一回，似失林飞鸟，漏网惊鱼，那



“What do you have to report to me, Ministers?”

“We must inform Your Majesty that Ji Chang’s so ungrateful that he’s disobeyed your orders and stealthily ran away on just the second day of his celebratory parade. He’s likely to rebel after returning to his dukedom. We wrongly recommended him and must assume responsibility for it. We await your decision,” they reported carefully.

King Zhou was infuriated. “It’s only on your recommendations that I decided to pardon him. What’s happened today is entirely your responsibility!”

“Human hearts have never been easy to fathom. A man may appear obedient, yet nurses treachery in his heart. As the saying goes: ‘When the sea dries up one can see the bottom, but not even when a man dies can one know his heart.’ Ji Chang can’t have gotten very far. Your Majesty may send Generals Yin Pobai and Lei Kai after him. When they bring him back, deal with him according to the law,” You Hun suggested.

King Zhou gave his immediate approval, and in no time at all, Generals Yin and Lei, leading 3,000 hand-picked cavalymen, left the west gate in hot pursuit.

Prince Wen, meanwhile, was taking his time. He was riding leisurely through Mianchi County when he heard the sudden clamor of men and horses behind him. Looking back, he saw a trail of dust rising in the air, and realizing that the king’s men were after him, he was terrified.

He gazed at the heavens. “Though Prince Huang was kind to me, I’ve been careless. The king’s bound to find out that I’ve fled the capital and has sent troops after me. If I’m caught this time, I’ll be a dead man. All I can do is ride as fast as I can and try to escape danger,” he quickly decided.



分南北，孰辨东西。文王心忙似箭，意急如云，正是：仰面告天天不语，低头诉地地无言。只得加鞭纵辔数番，恨不得马足腾云，身能生翅。远望临潼关不过二十里之程，后有追师，看看至近。文王正在危急。按下不题。

且说终南山云中子在玉柱洞中碧游床运其元神，守离龙，纳坎虎，猛的心血潮来。道人觉而有警，掐指一算，早知凶吉：“呀！原来西伯灾厄已满，目下逢危。今日正当他父子重逢，贫道不失燕山之语。”叫：“金霞童儿在那里？你与我后桃园中请你师兄来。”金霞童儿领命，往桃园中来，见了师兄道：“师父有请。”雷震子答曰：“师弟先行，我随即就来。”雷震子见了云中子下拜：“不知师父有何分付？”云中子曰：“徒弟，汝父有难，你可前去救拔。”雷震子曰：“弟子父是何人？”道人曰：“汝父乃是西伯侯姬昌，有难在临潼关；你可往虎儿崖下寻一兵器来，待吾秘授你些兵法，好去救你父亲。今日正当子父重逢之日，后期好相见耳。”雷震子领师父之命，离了洞府，径至虎儿崖下，东瞧西看，各到处寻不出什么东西，又不知何物叫为兵器。雷震子寻思：“我失打点。常闻兵器乃枪、刀、剑、戟、鞭、斧、瓜、锤，师父口言兵器，不知何物，且回洞中，再问详细。”雷震子方欲转身，只见一阵异香扑鼻，透胆钻肝，不知在于何所。只见前面一溪涧下，水声潺潺，雷鸣隐隐。雷震子观看，只见稀奇景致，雅韵幽栖，藤缠桧柏，竹插颠崖，狐兔往来如梭，鹿鹤唳鸣前后，见了些灵芝隐绿草，梅子在青枝，看不尽山中异景。猛然间见绿叶之下，红杏二枚。雷震子心欢，顾不得高低险峻，攀藤捋葛，手扯晃摇，将此二枚红杏摘于



He galloped wildly, not knowing where he was going. He cried out to Heaven for help, but there was no response. He appealed to the earth, but the earth was silent. At about twenty *li* from Lintong Pass, the pursuing troops were almost upon him. Prince Wen was in a critical situation!

But now let's return to Master of the Clouds, who was just then meditating on his Green Touring Bed. All of a sudden he felt a surge of uneasiness pass through him, and he quickly made a divination on his fingers.

"Oh!" he exclaimed. "The West Grand Duke's escaped one calamity only to run into another. I must fulfil the promise I made on Mount Yan and allow father and son to meet again today," he told himself, then shouted, "Where are you, Golden Haze Lad? Go to the peach garden and bring Thunderbolt here at once."

Thunderbolt came and knelt before him. "I await your instructions, Master."

"Disciple! Disaster is about to befall your father. You'd better go and rescue him."

"Who's my father?"

"Ji Chang, the West Grand Duke. He's facing danger now near Lintong Pass. You'd better go to the Tiger Cliff and find yourself a weapon. I'll teach you how to handle it so that you can go to his rescue."

On these orders, Thunderbolt left the Jade Pillar Cave and went straight to the Tiger Cliff. He looked all around but could not find anything that looked like a weapon. "I was careless not to have asked my master for more details. I've heard that there are many kinds of weapons, like spears, cutlasses, swords, halberds, whips, axes and hammers, but I don't know which kind my master meant. I'd better go back and ask him."

As he turned to go, an exotic fragrance suddenly filled his nostrils. He followed the scent and found a stream rushing down a hillside of exquisite beauty. Creepers entwined cypress and pine trees and swaying bamboos covered the slopes. Foxes and hares ran about freely; deer and cranes wandered amongst the trees. Fairy mushrooms peeped out from behind green grass, and tree branches bowed low under the weight of juicy plums.

Although drunk with this lovely scene, he noticed two beautiful red apricots hanging on a leafy bough. The sight filled him with delight and regardless of danger, he struggled up the steep slope clinging to vines and





手中；闻一闻，扑鼻馨香，如甘露沁心，愈加甘美。雷震子暗思：“此二枚红杏，我吃一个，留一个带与师父。”雷震子方吃了一个——“怎么这等香美，津津异味！只是要吃。”不觉又将这个咬了一口。——“呀！咬残了。不如都吃了罢。”方吃了杏子，又寻兵器，不觉左肋下一声响，长出翅来，拖在地下。雷震子吓得魂飞天外，魄散九霄。雷震子曰：“不好了！”忙将两手去拿住翅，只管拔。不防右边又冒出一只来。雷震子慌得没主意，吓得坐在地下。原来两边长出翅来，不打紧，连脸都变了：鼻子高了，面如青靛，发似硃砂，眼睛暴湛，牙齿横生，出于唇外；身躯长有二丈。雷震子痴呆不语。只见金霞童子来到雷震子面前，叫曰：“师兄，师父叫你。”雷震子曰：“师弟，你看我，我都变了。”金霞曰：“你怎的来？”雷震子曰：“师父叫我往虎儿崖寻兵器去救我父亲，寻了半日不见，只寻得二枚杏子，被我吃了。可煞作怪，弄的青头红发，上下獠牙，又长出两边肉翅。教我如何去见师父？”金霞童子曰：“快去！师父等你！”雷震子起来，一步走来，自觉不好看，二翅拖着，如同斗败了的鸡一般，不觉到了玉柱洞前。云中子见雷震子来，抚掌道：“奇哉！奇哉！”手指雷震子作诗：

“两枚仙杏安天下，一条金棍定乾坤。风雷两翅开先辈，变化千端起后昆。眼似金铃通九地，发如紫草短三髡。秘传玄妙真仙诀，炼就金刚体不昏。”

云中子作罢诗，命雷震子：“随我进洞来。”雷震子随师父至桃园中。云中子取一条金棍传雷震子，上下飞腾，盘旋如风雨之声，进退有龙蛇之势，转身似猛虎摇头，起落象蛟



creepers, to pick the fruit. He was tempted by the exotic fragrance.

"I'll eat one of them and take the other to my master," he decided.

But he found the first so delicious that he couldn't resist eating the other as well. He devoured them both.

He was going to resume his search for a weapon when there was a sudden explosion. A long wing grew from under his left armpit and hung to the ground.

"Oh! Woe is me! What shall I do now?" he cried in terror.

He was trying to rip the wing off when another one spray out from under his right arm. At a total loss what to do, he sank to the ground. What terrified him most was not the wings but that his whole body had been transformed. His nose had grown high, his face had turned indigo, his hair had turned red, his eyes had become swollen balls, his teeth had become tusks and his trunk had grown twenty feet tall.

As he sat stupefied, Golden Haze Lad came up and called to him, "Brother, Master orders you to return at once."

"Look at me, Brother! How can I go and see him like this?" Thunderbolt said despondantly.

But Golden Haze Lad shouted, "You'd better come quickly! Master's waiting for you."

Thunderbolt walked back dejectedly, feeling ugly and awkward, his two long wings dragging on the ground like a defeated cock. Master of the Clouds was standing outside the cave. When he saw Thunderbolt, he clapped his hands, exclaiming, "How wonderful! How wonderful!" and then ordered, "Come with me."

Thunderbolt followed him into the peach garden. The Taoist took up a golden cudgel, handed it to him and taught him how to use it. He learned to whirl it until it whistled like the wind, to advance and retreat like a darting serpent, to turn like a savage tiger and to rise like a dragon from the sea. The whirling cudgel filled the air with bright light, and at its flying tip formed beautiful brocades and myriads of dancing flowers.



龙出海，呼呼响，闪灼光明，空中展动一团锦，左右纷纭万簇花。云中子在洞中传的雷震子精熟，随将雷震子二翅左边用一“风”字，右边用一“雷”字，又将咒语诵了一遍。雷震子飞腾，起于半天，脚登天，头望下，二翅招展，空中俱有风雷之声。雷震子落地，倒身下拜，叩谢曰：“师父有妙道玄机，今传弟子，使救父之厄，此乃莫大之洪恩也。”道人曰：“你速往临潼关，救西伯侯姬昌——乃汝之父。速去速来，不可迟延。你救父送出五关，不许你同父往西岐，亦不许你伤纣王军将，功完速回终南，再传你道术。后来你弟兄自有完聚之日。”云中子分付毕，“你去罢！”

雷震子出了洞府，二翅飞起，霎时间飞至临潼关。见一山冈，雷震子落将下来，立在山冈之上，看了一会，不见形迹。雷震子自思：“呀！我失于打点，不曾问吾师父，西伯侯文王不知怎么个模样，教我如何相见？”一言未了，只见那壁厢一人，粉青毡笠，穿一件皂服号衫，乘一骑白马，飞奔而来。雷震子曰：“此人莫非是吾父也？”大叫一声曰：“山下的可是西伯侯姬老爷么？”文王听的有人叫他，勒马抬头观看时，又不见人，只听的声气。文王叹曰：“吾命合休！为何闻声不见人形，此必鬼神相戏。”原来雷震子面蓝，身上又是水合色，故此与山色交加，文王不曾看得明白，故有此疑。雷震子见文王住马停蹄，看一回，不言而又行。又叫曰：“此位可是西伯侯姬千岁否？”文王抬头，猛见一人，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，巨口獠牙，眼似铜铃，光华闪灼，吓的魂不附体。文王自忖：“若是鬼魅，必无人声，我既到此，也避不得了。他既叫我，我且上山，看他如何。”文王打马上



As soon as Thunderbolt had thoroughly mastered the weapon, Master of the Clouds wrote "wind" on his left wing and "thunder" on his right. And when he muttered a magic charm, Thunderbolt spread his wings and soared high into the sky, the beating of his wings producing a roar like thunder.

Dropping back down to the ground, Thunderbolt knelt before Master of the Clouds and thanked him, saying, "Master, I'm so grateful to you for passing on such miraculous skills to me and enabling me to rescue my father. You couldn't have shown me greater kindness."

"You'd better go to Lintong Pass now and rescue your father," replied Master of the Clouds. "Go quickly, and return without delay. You may escort your father through the five passes, but you're not permitted to go to West Qi with him. Neither may you hurt any general or soldier. After fulfilling this mission, you must return to Mount Zhongnan at once and continue to cultivate yourself with me. I'll let you meet your brothers in the near future."

Thunderbolt left the Jade Pillar Cave on wing and reached Lintong Pass in the twinkling of an eye. Alighting on a peak, he looked around carefully, but could not see any sign of his father.

"I was really careless not to have asked my master what my father looks like. How am I going to recognize him?" he wondered. Just then, a man in a black shirt and green felt hat galloped swiftly towards him on a white horse. "Is that the West Grand Duke at the foot of the hill?" he shouted.

Hearing a voice, Prince Wen reined in his horse and looked up, but could see no one. He sighed to himself. "My life's nearly over! Why else would I hear a voice, yet see no one! It must be a ghost or a devil fooling with me."

Since Thunderbolt had a blue face and green body, he blended in with the colors of the mountain, so Prince Wen could not see him at a distance. Thunderbolt saw the man stop his horse, look around, and then continue on his way.

"Is that His Highness the West Grand Duke Ji Chang?" he shouted again.

Prince Wen lifted his head again, and when he caught sight of Thunderbolt's indigo face and red hair, he was scared out of his wits. "If he were a ghost, he wouldn't be able to speak. Since I've no way to evade him, I may as well climb the mountain and find out who he is," he reasoned, and urged his horse up the mountain.



山，叫曰：“那位杰士，为何认的我姬昌？”雷震子闻言，倒身下拜，口称：“父王，孩子来迟，致父王受惊，恕孩儿不孝之罪。”文王曰：“杰士错认了。我姬昌一向无识，为何以父子相称？”雷震子曰：“孩儿乃是燕山收的雷震子。”文王曰：“我儿，你为何生得这个模样？你是终南山云中子带你上山，算将来方今七岁，你为何到此？”雷震子曰：“孩儿奉师法旨，下山来救父亲出五关，退追兵，故来到此。”文王听罢，吃了一惊，自思：“吾乃逃官，已自得罪朝廷；此子看他面色，也不是个善人，他若去退追兵，兵将都被他打死了，与我更加罪恶。待我且说他一番，以止他凶暴。”文王叫：“雷震子，你不可伤了纣王军将——他奉王命而来。——吾乃逃官，不遵王命，弃纣归西，我负当今之大恩。你若伤了朝廷命官，你非为救父，反为害父也。”雷震子答曰：“我师父也曾分付孩儿，教我不可伤他军将之命，只救父亲出五关便了。孩儿自劝他回去。”雷震子见那里追兵卷地而来，旗旛招展，锣鼓齐鸣，喊声不息，一派征尘，遮蔽旭日。雷震子看罢，便把肋下双翅，一声响，飞起空中，将一根黄金棍拿在手里，就把文王吓了一跳，跌在地下。不题。且说雷震子飞在追兵前面，一声响落在地下，用手把一根金棍柱在掌上，大叫曰：“不要来！”兵卒抬头，看见雷震子面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，巨口獠牙。军卒报与殷破败、雷开曰：“启老爷：前有一恶神阻路，凶势狰狞。”殷、雷二将大声喝退。二将纵马向前，来会雷震子。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



“Who’s that hero? How do you know my name?” he asked in return.

Hearing his words, Thunderbolt fell to the ground and kowtowed. “Forgive me, father! I’ve arrived late and caused you great alarm.”

“You’re wrong, hero. I’ve never met you before. Why do you call me father?”

“I’m Thunderbolt, you adopted me on Mount Yan seven years ago.”

“My son, how is it that you’ve grown up to look like this? It’s been exactly seven years since Master of the Clouds took you into his care. How did you come here today?”

“By order of my master, I’ve come here to help you out of trouble. I’ll escort you through the five passes and repel the soldiers for you .”

“I fled the capital and have committed a crime against King Zhou,” Prince Wen thought. “This chap looks pretty rough. If he kills anyone, my crime will become much more serious. I must convince him not to use violence.”

“Thunderbolt, my dear boy! You must be careful not to hurt the generals or soldiers. I fled Zhaoge, expressing gross ingratitude towards His Majesty. Should you hurt any of them, you wouldn’t be saving my life but would place me in a much worse situation.”

“Don’t worry, father!” Thunderbolt assured him. “My master also instructed me not to hurt any of King Zhou’s men. My duty is to rescue you, take you through the five passes, and then go straight back to the mountain. I’ll go now and persuade the troops to return to Zhaoge in peace.”

Thunderbolt discovered that the pursuing troops were close upon them. Their flags fluttered bravely in the air, drums and gongs sounded noisily, and dust filled the sky, blocking out the sun.

With a flap of his wings, Thunderbolt soared into the sky, brandishing his cudgel. Prince Wen was so shocked that he tumbled to the ground. Thunderbolt circled up into the sky and landed right in front of the soldiers. He stood the golden cudgel on the palm of his hand and roared, “Don’t you dare come any further!”

The soldiers were astonished to see him, and rushed back to Yin Pobai and Lei Kai crying, “There’s an evil god blocking the path ahead. He looks a ferocious, brutal fellow.”

Yin and Lei angrily ordered them away, and spurring their horses forward, advanced to engage Thunderbolt.

What became of them? If you want to know, you must read the next chapter.







## 第二十二回

### 西伯侯文王吐子



诗曰：

忍耻归来意可怜，只因食子泪难干。非求度难伤天性，不为成忠贼爱缘。天数凑来谁个是，劫灰聚处若为愆。从来莫道人间事，自古分离总在天。

且说二将匹马当先，只见雷震子怎生模样，有赞为证：

天降雷鸣现虎躯，燕山出世托遗孤。姬侯应产螟蛉子，仙宅当藏不世珠。秘授七年玄妙诀，长生两翅有风雷。桃园传得黄金棍，鸡岭先将圣主扶。目似金光飞闪电，面如蓝靛发如硃。肉身成圣仙家体，功业齐天帝子图。慢道姬侯生百子，名称雷震岂凡夫。

话说殷破败、雷开仗其胆气，厉声言曰：“汝是何人，敢拦阻去路？”雷震子答曰：“吾乃西伯文王第百子，雷震子是也。吾父王乃仁人君子，贤德丈夫，事君尽忠，事亲尽孝，交友以信，视臣以义，治民以礼，处天下以道，奉公守法，而尽臣节；无故而羈囚羑里，七载守命待时，全无嗔怒。今既放归，为何又来追袭，反复无常，岂是天子之所为！因此奉吾师法旨，下山特来迎接我父王归国，使吾父子重逢。你二人好好回去，不必言勇。吾师曾分付，不可伤人间众生，

## Chapter 22

### Return of the Grand Duke

Despite Thunderbolt's appearance, Generals Yin Pobai and Lei Kai bravely advanced, challenging him with "Who are you that dare to block our path?"

"I'm Thunderbolt, the one-hundredth son of Prince Wen. My father's a virtuous gentleman. He serves King Zhou loyally and his parents filially, treats his friends faithfully and his ministers righteously. He rules according to the rites and acts according to the doctrines. He upholds the law and makes all efforts to be a good minister. He was imprisoned for seven years without a word of complaint and waited patiently for His Majesty's pardon. The king has set him free, so why does he send you after him again? His Majesty's dealt with matters most irregularly. Hence, by order of my master, I left Mount Zhongnan to meet my father and help him return to his native dukedom. You may return to Zhaoge in peace. There's no need to display your courage. As my master forbids me to hurt you, you may just go back straightway."





故教汝速退便了。”殷破败大笑曰：“好丑匹夫！焉敢口出大言，煽惑三军，欺吾不勇！”乃纵马舞刀来取。雷震子将手中棍架住，曰：“不要来！你想必要与我定个雄雌，这也可。只是奈我父王之言，师父之命，不敢有违。我且试一试与你看。”雷震子将肋下翅一声响飞起空中，有风雷之声，脚登天，头望下，看见西边有一山嘴，往外扑着，雷震子说：“待我把这山嘴打一棍你看。”一声响，山嘴滚下一半。雷震子转身落下来，对二将言曰：“你的头可有这山结实？”二将见此凶恶，魂不附体。二将言曰：“雷震子，听你之言，我等暂回朝歌见驾，且让你回去。”殷、雷二将见此光景，料不能胜他，只得回去。有诗为证：

一怒飞腾起在空中，黄金棍摆气如虹。霎时风响来天地，顷刻雷鸣遍宇中。猛烈恍如鹏翅鸟，狰狞浑似鬼山熊。从今丧却殷雷胆，束手归商势已穷。

话说殷、雷二将见雷震子这等骁勇，况且肋生双翼，遍体风雷，情知料不能取胜，免得空丧性命无益，故此将机就计，转回人马。不表。

且说雷震子复上山来见文王。文王吓得痴了。雷震子曰：“奉父王之命，去退追兵，赶父王二将殷破败、雷开，他二人被孩儿以好言劝他回去了。如今孩儿送父王出五关。”文王曰：“我随身自有铜符、令箭，到关照验，方可出关。”雷震子曰：“父王不必如此。若照铜符，有悞父王归期。如今事已急迫，恐后面又有兵来，终是不了之局。待孩儿背父王，一时飞出五关，免得又有异端。”文王听罢，“我儿话虽是好，此马如何出得去？”雷震子曰：“且顾父王出关，马



General Yin Pobai burst into laughter. "You ugly beast! How dare you brag so! How dare you deceive my men and denigrate my valor."

He spurred his horse forward and slashed at Thunderbolt with his cutlass.

Thunderbolt parried the blow with his golden cudgel. "Stop, stop! I would be quite happy to have a bout with you, but I must obey the instructions of my master and father. Here, let me show you what I can do so that you can cool off," he said, and soared up into the sky, his wings roaring like thunder. He alighted on a nearby mountain and pointing to a crag protruding from the mountainside to the west, he called to General Yin, "Watch me knock that crag off."

Raising his golden cudgel, Thunderbolt struck half the crag away with a single blow. He then flew back to the two generals.

"Do you think your heads are tougher than that rock?" he demanded.

Witness to his ferocity and miraculous strength, both generals were terrified. They realized that they could not possibly defeat him, and unwilling to lose their lives, they ordered their troops to return to Zhaoge.

When Thunderbolt returned, he found Prince Wen still on the ground in a faint.

"I've repulsed the pursuing troops in peace as you ordered. I persuaded Yin Pobai and Lei Kai with mild words to return to Zhaoge. Now that they're gone, I'll take you through the five passes."

"I have military tallies with me. The pass guards will let me through without any trouble."

"There's no need for you to do that, Father. You're bound to be delayed if you use them, and the situation's still serious. What shall we do if King Zhou sends more troops to pursue us? Let me carry you on my back and we'll fly over the five passes to avoid any further trouble," Thunderbolt urged him.

"You've got a good plan, but what about my horse? How can it get through the passes?" Prince Wen asked.



匹之事甚小。”文王曰：“此马随我患难七年，今日一旦便弃他，我心何忍？”雷震子曰：“事已到此，岂是好为此不良之事，君子所以弃小而全大。”文王上前，以手拍马，叹曰：“马！非昌不仁，舍你出关。奈恐追兵复至，我命难逃。我今别你，任凭你去罢，另择良主。”文王道罢，洒泪别马。有诗曰：

奉敕朝歌来谏主，同吾羑里七年囚。临潼一别归西地，任你逍遥择主投。

且说雷震子曰：“父王快些，不必久羈。”文王曰：“背着我。你仔细些。”文王伏在雷震子背上，把二目紧闭，耳闻风响，不过一刻，已出了五关，来到金鸡岭，落将下来。雷震子曰：“父王，已出五关了。”文王睁开二目，已知是本土，大喜曰：“今日复见我故乡之地，皆赖孩儿之力！”雷震子曰：“父王前途保重！孩儿就此告归。”文王惊问曰：“我儿，你为何中途抛我，这是何说？”雷震子曰：“奉师父之命，止救父亲出关，即归山洞。今不敢有违，恐负师言，孩儿有罪。父王先归家国。孩儿学全道术，不久下山，再拜尊颜。”雷震子叩头，与文王洒泪而别。正是：世间万般哀苦事，无过死别共生离。雷震子回终南山回覆师父之命。不题。

且说文王独自一人，又无马匹，步行一日。文王年纪高迈，跋涉艰难，抵暮，见一客舍。文王投店歇宿。次日起程，囊乏无资。店小儿曰：“歇房与酒饭钱，为何一文不与？”文王曰：“因空乏到此，权且暂记；俟到西岐，着人加利送来。”店小儿怒曰：“此处比别处不同。俺这西岐，撒不



"The horse is not important. You've got to worry about getting yourself through, Father!"

"This horse has served me faithfully for seven years. How can I bear to abandon it now?" Prince Wen said sadly.

"We've got no choice. We have to sacrifice trifles in order to accomplish great deeds," Thunderbolt reasoned.

Prince Wen patted the horse on the head and sighed. "I don't like to be unkind and leave you here, but I'm afraid that the soldiers will come again. Go where you will and find yourself another master," he said beginning to weep. "Hurry, Father! We mustn't delay any longer," Thunderbolt urged him.

"Take care when you're carrying me," Prince Wen exhorted his son.

He climbed up on Thunderbolt's back and closed his eyes tightly. The wind whistled past his ears as they flew swiftly over the five passes to the Golden Chicken Range, where Thunderbolt alighted on firm ground.

"Father, we're arrived beyond the five passes already."

Prince Wen opened his eyes, looked around, and recognizing his native land, cried in delight, "My son! It's all due to your effort that I am home again. I must thank you."

"Take care on the road ahead, Father! I will leave you here."

"But why do you leave me half way, Son?"

"My master instructed me to return straight to Mount Zhongnan once I had carried you beyond the passes. I dare not disobey him. You may return to your dukedom first, and I'll follow when I've obtained greater magic powers," Thunderbolt explained.

He knelt down, kowtowed to Prince Wen, and then tearfully left for Mount Zhongnan.

Having no horse to ride, Prince Wen set out on foot and walked all day long. He was an old man, and the traveling exhausted him. At dusk he put up at an inn, and the next morning when he was about to leave the inn, he discovered that he had no money to pay for his food and lodgings.

"How can you stay at our inn and eat our food without the money to pay for it?" the assistant protested.

"I'm sorry, but I arrived without any money on hand. Could you temporarily give me credit? I'll pay the debt with interest as soon as I reach West Qi City," he begged.

The assistant was angry. "This is West Qi, and no one gets away with dishonesty. You see, the West Grand Duke rules his people with kindness and righteousness. No one picks up articles others have lost on the street,



得野，骗不得人。西伯侯千岁以仁义而化万民，行人让路，道不拾遗，夜无犬吠，万民而受安康，湛湛青天，朗朗舜日。好好拿出银子，算还明白，放你去；若是迟延，送你到西岐，见上大夫散宜生老爷，那时悔之晚矣。”文王曰：“我决不失信。”只见店主人出来问道：“为何事吵闹？”店小儿把文王欠缺饭钱说了一遍。店主人见文王年虽老迈，精神相貌不凡，问曰：“你往西岐来做什么事？因何盘费也无？我又不相识你，怎么记饭钱？说得明白，方可记与你去。”文王曰：“店主人，我非别人，乃西伯侯是也。因囚羑里七年，蒙圣恩赦宥归国；幸逢吾儿雷震子救我出五关，因此囊内空虚。权记你数日，俟吾到西岐，差官送来，决不相负。”那店家听得是西伯侯，慌忙倒身下拜，口称：“大王千岁！子民肉眼，有失接驾之罪！复请大王入内，进献壶浆，子民亲送大王归国。”文王问曰：“你姓甚名谁？”店主人曰：“子民姓申，名杰，五代世居于此。”文王大喜，问申杰曰：“你可有马，借一匹与我骑着好行，俟归国必当厚谢。”申杰曰：“子民皆小户之家，那有马匹。家下止有磨面驴儿，收拾鞍辔，大王暂借此前行。小人亲随伏侍。”文王大悦，离了金鸡岭，过了首阳山，一路上晓行夜宿。时值深秋天气，只见金风飒飒，梧叶飘飘，枫林翠色，景物虽是堪观，怎奈寒鸟悲风，蛩声惨切；况西伯又是久离故乡，觑此一片景色，心中如何安泰，恨不得一时就到西岐，与母子夫妻相会，以慰愁怀。按下文王在路。不表。

且说文王母太姜在宫中思想西伯，忽然风过三阵，风中竟带吼声。太姜命侍儿焚香，取金钱演先天之数，知西伯侯



and no one has to lock up at night. All live in peace and happiness. Pay your bill and I'll let you go. Otherwise, we'll take you to the capital to see Supreme Minister San Yisheng. It'll be too late to be sorry then."

"I won't break my word. Please trust me," Prince Wen begged.

Hearing their quarrel, the innkeeper came out and questioned them, "What's the matter? What are you arguing about?"

When the assistant explained that the guest had no money to pay his bill, the innkeeper noticed that though Prince Wen was old, he had a noble, dignified bearing.

"What brings you to West Qi? Why didn't you bring any money to cover your expenses? As we don't know you, how can we allow you credit! If you explain yourself clearly perhaps we can agree to give you credit and let you go," he said.

"Master! I'm none other than the West Grand Duke. I was confined at Youli for seven years, and on my way home I was pursued by royal troops, but luckily my son Thunderbolt carried me through the five passes. That's why I have no money and must ask you to allow me a few days' credit. I'll send a messenger and pay you as soon as I reach the capital. I promise I'll keep my word."

Hearing that he was the West Grand Duke, the innkeeper knelt down and kowtowed before him, saying, "I beg your forgiveness, Your Highness. My vulgar eyes failed to recognize you. Please come in and have some tea. I'll personally escort you back to the capital."

"What's your name, innkeeper?" Prince Wen asked.

"My name's Shen Jie. My family has lived here for five generations."

Prince Wen was delighted. "Have you a horse here? Lend it to me for my journey, and I'll reward you handsomely when I reach the capital."

"Since no one here is very wealthy, how could we own a horse? All we have is the donkey used to grind flour. I'll saddle it up and go along to look after you," Shen Jie said sincerely.

Filled with joy, Prince Wen left the inn, crossed the Golden Chicken Range and Mount Shouyang, and traveled several more days. He rode by day and put up by night. It was late autumn, and the wind blew chill, leaves falling from the trees. The maples were turning red, and birds chirped sadly at the cold weather setting in. Prince Wen had been away from his native land for seven years, and the desolate autumn scenery made him homesick. He longed for the comfort of his family, and for the happy reunion with his mother and wife.





某日某时，已至西岐。太姜大喜，忙传令百官、众世子，往西岐接驾。众文武与各位公子无不欢喜，人大悦。西岐万民，牵羊担酒，户户焚香，氤氲拂道。文武百官与众位公子，各穿大红吉服。此时骨肉完聚，龙虎重逢，倍增喜气。有诗为证：

万民欢忭出西岐，迎接龙车过九逵。羑里七年今已满，  
金鸡一战断穷追。从今圣化过尧舜，目下灵台立帝基。  
自古贤良周易少，臣忠君正助雍熙。

且说文王同申杰行至西岐山，转过迢迢径路，依然又见故园，文王不觉心中凄惨，想：“昔日朝商之时，遭此大难，不意今日回归，又是七载。青山依旧，人面已非。”正嗟叹间，只见两杆红旗招展，大炮一声，簇拥一队人马。文王心中正惊疑未定，只见左有大将军南宫适，右有上大夫散宜生，引了四贤、八俊、三十六杰，辛甲、辛免、太颠，闾夭、祁恭、尹籍伏于道傍。次子姬发近前拜伏驴前曰：“父王羈縻异国，时月累更，为人子不能分忧代患，诚天地间之罪人，望父王宽恕。今日复睹慈颜，不胜欣慰！”文王见众文武、世子多人，不觉泪下，“孤想今日不胜凄惨。孤已无家而有家，无国而有国，无臣而有臣，无子而有子，陷身七载，羈囚羑里，自甘老死，今幸见天日，与尔等复能完聚，睹此反觉凄惨耳。”大夫散宜生启曰：“昔成汤王亦囚于夏台，一日还国，而有事于天下。今主公归国，更修德政，育养民生，俟时而动，安知今日之羑里，非昔之夏台乎？”文王曰：“大夫之言，岂是为孤之言，亦非臣下事上之理。昌有罪商都，蒙圣恩羈而不杀。虽七载之囚，正天子浩荡洪恩；



Meanwhile, his mother, Tai Jiang, was sitting in her room thinking of her son when three sudden gusts of wind swept through the palace, howling strangely. She quickly burned incense and made a divination, finding to her delight that her son would reach the capital at a certain hour on a certain day. She thereby ordered her grandsons and the ministers to go and meet the grand duke. Everyone was overjoyed by the news. Every household in the city burned incense, and the people prepared mutton and wine to welcome the return of their beloved duke.

Setting foot on his native soil and seeing once more the familiar hills and plains, Prince Wen could not help feeling melancholy.

"It's been seven years since disaster befell me, but now I'm home again. The rivers and mountains remain the same, but the people have all changed," he thought sighing sadly, but then he saw a long procession of men, horses, banners and flags approaching from the opposite direction and heard the ringing of cannon shots. He cheered up at once. "These must be my ministers coming to meet me."

Soon he saw General Nagong Kuo and Supreme Minister San Yisheng as well as Xin Jia, Xin Mian, Tai Dian, Hong Yao, Qi Gong and Yin Ji, all kneeling down before him at the roadside.

Ji Fa came forward, knelt down before the donkey and kowtowed. "You were imprisoned for a long time, but your children did nothing to alleviate your suffering. Our crime is monstrous. We beg your generous forgiveness. Your safe return today makes us unspeakably relieved."

Seeing so many ministers come to meet him, Prince Wen wept. "I'm now home again in my dukedom with all my ministers. This is more than I dared to hope for when I was imprisoned. I never thought that I would have the opportunity to meet you all again. I'm overjoyed but can't help feeling a little sad at the same time," he replied.

"History records that King Tang, the first ruler of this dynasty, was once imprisoned at Xiatai, but as soon as he was set free, he started a revolution to overthrow the old regime. He united the whole country and founded the Shang Dynasty. Now, Master, you're back home again. You can administer the country in a more virtuous way, help the people prosper and take action when the time's ripe. Perhaps today's Youli may become another Xiatai," Supreme Minister San Yisheng tried to comfort him.

"What you've said has no meaning for me, as a proper subject would never act that way. I committed a crime, but His Majesty spared my life and showed great mercy by confining me for only seven years. Now His Majesty has set me free, created me prince, and conferred on me the



虽顶踵亦不能报。后又进爵文王，赐黄钺、白旄，特专征伐，赦孤归国。此何等殊恩！当尽臣节，捐躯报国，犹不能效涓涯之万一耳。大夫何故出此言，使诸文武而动不肖之念也。”诸皆悦服。姬发近前，“请父王更衣乘辇。”文王依其言，换了王服，乘辇，命申杰同进西岐。一路上欢声拥道，乐奏笙簧，户户焚香，家家结彩。文王端坐鸾舆，两边的执事成行，旛幢蔽日。只见众民大呼曰：“七 years 远隔，未睹天颜，今大王归国，万民瞻仰，欲亲觐天颜，愚民欣慰。”文王听见众臣如此，方骑逍遥马。众民欢声大振曰：“今日西岐有主矣！”人人欢悦，各各倾心。文王出小龙山口，见两边文武、九十八子相随，独不见长子邑考，因想其醢尸之苦，美里自啖子肉，不觉心中大痛，泪如雨下。文王将衣掩面，作歌曰：

“尽臣节兮奉旨朝商，直谏君兮欲正纲常。谗臣陷兮囚于美里，不敢怨兮天降其殃。邑考孝兮为父赎罪，鼓琴音兮屈害忠良。啖子肉兮痛伤骨髓，感圣恩兮位至文王，夸官逃难兮路逢雷震，命不绝兮幸济吾疆。今归西土兮团圆母子，独不见邑考兮碎裂肝肠！”

文王作罢歌，大叫一声：“痛杀我也！”跌下逍遥马来，面如白纸。慌坏世子并文武诸人，急急扶起，拥在怀中，速取茶汤，连灌数口。只见文王渐渐重楼中一声响，吐出一块肉羹。那肉饼就地上一滚，生出四足，长上两耳，望西跑去了。连吐三次，三个兔儿走了。众臣扶起文王，乘鸾舆至西岐城，进端门，到大殿。公子姬发扶文王入后宫，调理汤药。也非一日，文王其恙已愈。那日升殿，文武百官上殿朝



privilege to subjugate the rebels. Never in this life shall I turn against him. How can you compare Youli with Xiatai, Supreme Minister! That isn't what I would hope for. I beg you to never speak like that again," Prince Wen refuted him.

All the ministers were convinced by his speech. Ji Fa then moved forward and asked him to change into his official robes and mount a coach. All along the way, the procession was warmly welcomed by the people playing music, burning fragrant incense, cheering, singing and dancing.

As the prince passed by, people cried out, "We haven't seen Your Highness for seven years, but now that you've returned, we're overjoyed and greatly comforted." When he heard this Prince Wen left his coach and rode on horseback. Everyone cheered thunderously, "Now we have a master again!"

When he got to Mount Small Dragon, Prince Wen saw all his civil and military officials and his ninety-eight sons lining the road. Everyone was there except Bo Yikao. He remembered his son's death, and how he had eaten the pies. His tears fell like rain and he covered his face with his sleeve, chanting:

Obeying the summons, I went to court,  
To right his conduct, I advised my lord.  
Framed by minions, I was thrown in jail,  
Without complaint, I suffered my misery.  
Then filial Bo Yikao pleaded my suit,  
Innocent, he died playing the zither.  
Compelled to eat his flesh, my heart broke,  
Till I was set free, and a prince made.  
Fleeing, I lived for Thunderbolt's effort,  
Alive, I happily return to my native land.  
Reunited with my family after many a year,  
It grieves my heart as Bo Yikao's disappeared.

At the end of his song, he screamed in agony and tumbled from his horse onto the ground, his face white as paper. All his sons and ministers rushed up, and raising him from the ground, they gave him some tea. All of a sudden his belly grumbled and he vomited up a piece of meat. As it rolled across the ground, it grew four feet and two long ears. It then ran towards the west and disappeared. Prince Wen threw up three pieces of flesh, which all turned into rabbits and ran west.

The ministers helped him onto the coach and brought him back to the city, where he was examined by the palace doctors and rested several days. When he had fully recovered, he told his ministers how he



贺毕，文王宣上大夫散宜生，拜伏于地。文王曰：“孤朝天子，算有七年之厄，不料长子邑考为孤遭戮，此乃天数。荷蒙圣恩，特赦归国，加位文王，又命夸官三日，深感镇国武成王大德，送铜符五道，放孤出关。不期殷、雷二将，奉旨追袭，使孤势穷力尽，无计可施。束手待毙之时，多亏昔年孤因朝商途中，行至燕山收一婴儿，路逢终南山炼气士云中子带去，起名雷震，不觉七年。谁想追兵紧急，得雷震子救我出了五关。”散宜生曰：“五关岂无将官把守，焉能出得关来？”文王曰：“若说起雷震子之形，险些儿吓杀孤家。七星光景，生得面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，肋生双翼，飞腾半空，势如风雷之状；用一根金棍，势似熊罴。他将金棍一下，把山尖打下一块来，故此殷、雷二将不敢相争，诺诺而退。雷震子回来，背着孤家，飞出五关，不须半个时辰，即是金鸡岭地面，他方告归终南山去了。孤不忍舍。他道：‘师命不敢违，孩儿不久下山，再见父王。’故此他便回去。孤独自行了一日，行至申杰店中，感申杰以驴儿送孤，一路扶持。命官重赏，使申杰回家。”宜生跪启曰：“主公德贯天下，仁布四方，三分天下，二分归周，万民受其安康，百姓无不瞻仰。自古有云：‘克念者，自生百福；作念者，自生百殃。’主公已归西土，真如龙归大海，虎复深山，自宜养时待动。况天下已反四百诸侯，而纣王肆行不道，杀妻诛子，制炮烙、蚕盆，醢大臣，废先王之典，造酒池肉林，杀宫嫔，听妲己之所谗，播弃黎老，昵比罪人，拒谏诛忠，沉酗酒色；谓上天不足畏，谓善不足为，酒色荒淫，罔有俊改。臣料朝歌不久属他人矣。……”言未毕，殿西来一人大呼曰：“今日

had been released from Youli, created prince, and fled back to West Qi with the help of Thunderbolt and the innkeeper Shen Jie. "Shen Jie should be handsomely rewarded before he returns home," Prince Wen concluded.

Supreme Minister San Yisheng knelt down. "Master, your virtue's known throughout the country and your benevolence felt everywhere. Two-thirds of the kingdom have already turned over to us. Your people live in peace and love you dearly. As the proverb says, 'The virtuous are blessed with a hundred happinesses while the wicked plagued with a hundred calamities.' You've returned home, just as a dragon returns to the sea and a tiger to the mountains. We should prepare to take action while the time's ripe. Four hundred marquises have already declared independence in rebellion against King Zhou's atrocities. I should think that Zhaoge will be taken by someone else before long...."

Before he had the chance to finish speaking, General Nangong Kuo added, "My Lord! Now that you're home, you should take action at once to avenge the death of Prince Bo Yikao. We've got 400,000 soldiers and sixty brave generals. We ought to attack and take over the five passes, besiege Zhaoge, and have Fei Zhong and Daji beheaded in the marketplace. We can dethrone the tyrant and set up a good ruler to pacify the people."





大王已归故土，当得为公子报醢尸之仇！况今西岐雄兵四十万，战将六十员，正宜杀进五关，围住朝歌，斩费仲、妲己于市曹，废弃昏君，另立明主，以泄天下之忿！”文王听而不悦曰：“孤以二卿为忠义之士，西土赖以安。今日出不忠之言，是先自处于不赦之地，而尚敢言报怨灭仇之语！天子乃万国之元首，纵有过，臣且不敢言，尚敢正君之过。纵有失，子亦不敢语，况敢正父之失。所以‘君叫臣死，不敢不死；父叫子亡，不敢不亡’。为人臣子，先以忠孝为首，而敢直忤于君父哉。昌因直谏于君，君故囚昌于羑里，虽有七载之困苦，是吾愆尤，怎敢怨君，归善于己。古语有云：‘君子见难而不避，惟天命是从。’今昌感皇上之恩，爵赐文王，荣归西土，孤正当早晚祈祝当今，但愿八方宁息兵燹，万民安阜乐业，方是为人臣之道。从今二卿切不可逆理悖伦，遗讥万世，岂仁人君子之所言也！”

南宫适曰：“公子进贡，代父赎罪，非有逆谋，如何竟遭醢尸之惨，情法难容。故当剿无道以正天下，此亦万民之心也。”

文王曰：“卿只执一时之见，此是吾子自取其死。孤临行曾对诸子、文武有言：孤演先天数，算有七年之灾，切不可以一卒前来问安，候七年灾满，自然荣归。邑考不遵父训，自恃骄拗，执忠孝之大节，不知从权，又失打点，不知时务进退，自己德薄才庸，情性偏执，不顺天时，致遭此醢身之祸。孤今奉公守法，不妄为，不悖德，兢兢以尽臣节，任天子肆行狂悖，天下诸侯自有公论，何必二卿首为乱阶，自持强梁，先取灭亡哉。古云：‘五伦之中，惟有君亲恩最重；百行之本，当存忠孝义为先。’孤既归国，当以化行俗美为先，民丰物阜为



Prince Wen was displeased by their suggestions, "I've always depended on both of you as loyal subjects, but you've spoken most disloyally today. How dare you mention vengeance! The king's the head of the state. Even if he commits errors, a minister should dare not mention it. A minister should be loyal above all else, just as a son should be filial before all things. He must not offend his king or father with thoughtless words," he said, then continued, "I committed the error of admonishing His Majesty. Though I suffered much in those seven years, it was all my own fault. I don't have a word of complaint against His Majesty. As the proverb says, 'A gentleman should be true to his fate and never try to avoid hardship.' I was made a prince and came back home in glory. I'm grateful for this. As a loyal subject, I pray day and night for blessings on His Majesty. I wish only that the rebels might lay down their arms, and that the people may live in prosperity. I earnestly hope that you'll never again say things that violate the ethics and run contrary to commonsense. They'll only make you the subject of ridicule for generations to come."

"But Prince Bo Yikao held no treacherous intentions when he went to redeem his father. How could he have been cut to pieces so cruelly? That is intolerable. We must get rid of the tyrant and put the country back in order as all the people wish," General Nangong Kuo argued.

"My son brought about his own death. Before I left for Zhaoge, I predicted that I would suffer for seven years. I told you all not to send anyone to me, as I would return in glory at the end of the seventh year. Bo Yikao, however, disobeyed my instructions. He acted rashly, not understanding how to deal with the matter and not realizing the paucity of his own virtue and talent. His pride eventually cost him his life. I must deal with things according to the law and do my best to be a loyal and obedient subject. The marquises have already expressed the public opinion on the misconduct of King Zhou. There's no need for us to be the first to stir up the ranks. That would only bring about our own downfall. Now that I've returned to my native land, I should encourage virtue and raise the living standard of the people, so that they can live in security and prosperity. Then we can all enjoy peace and won't have to worry about





务，则百姓自受安康，孤与卿等共享太平。耳不闻兵戈之声，眼不见征伐之事，身不受鞍马之劳，心不悬胜败之扰，但愿三军身无披甲胄之苦，民不受惊慌之灾，即此是福，即此是乐，又何必劳民伤财，糜烂其民，然后以为功哉。”南宮适、散宜生听文王之训，顿首叩谢。文王曰：“孤思西岐正南欲造一台，名曰‘灵台’。孤恐木土之工非诸侯所作，劳伤百姓；然而造此灵台以应灾祥之兆。”散宜生奏曰：“大王造此灵台，既为应灾祥而设，乃为西土之民，非为游观之乐，何为劳民哉。况主公仁爱，功及昆虫草木，万姓无不衔恩。若大王出示，万民自是乐役。若大王不轻用民力，仍给工银一钱，任民自便，随其所欲，不去强他，这也不害于事。况又是为西土人民应灾祥之故，民何不乐为。”文王大喜：“大夫此言方合孤意。”随出示张挂各门。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。

victories and defeats. That is true happiness. We shouldn't burden the people and impoverish the land by provoking a war," Prince Wen said decisively.

Both San Yisheng and Nangong Kuo kowtowed, acknowledging his instructions.

"I wish to build a terrace to the south of the city which could be used to foretell disasters. It would be called the Spiritual Terrace. I'm afraid, however, that it would trouble the people and waste too much money."

"Since the terrace will be used to serve the people and not for pleasure-seeking, I'm sure there will be no trouble. Besides, you're so good to the people that there's no one who's not grateful to you, and they'll certainly be glad to help. If you feel uneasy about it, you may pay them in silver and allow them to come and go as they please," San Yisheng suggested.

Prince Wen was delighted with this idea, and acting on San Yisheng's advice, he issued a notice without delay.

If you want to know what happened next, you must read the next chapter.



## 第二十三回

### 文王夜梦飞熊兆

诗曰：

文王守节尽臣忠，仁德兼施造大工。民力不教胼胝碎，  
役钱常赐锦缠红。西岐社稷如磐石，纣王江山若浪从。  
漫道孟津天意合，飞熊入梦已先通。

话说文王听散宜生之言，出示张挂西岐各门。惊动军民，都来争瞧告示。只见上书曰：

“西伯文王示谕军民人等知悉：西岐之境，乃道德之乡，无兵戈用武之扰，民安物阜，讼减官清。孤因羑里羈縻，蒙恩赦宥归国。因见迩来灾异频仍，水潦失度，及查本土，占验灾祥，竟无坛址。昨观城西有官地一隅，欲造一台，名曰‘灵台’，以占风候，看验民灾。又恐土木工繁，有伤尔军民力役。特每日给工银一钱支用。此工亦不拘日之近远，但随民便：愿做工者即上簿造名，以便查给；如不愿者，各随尔经营，并无逼强。想宜知悉，谕众通知。”

话说西岐众军民人等一见告示，大家欢悦，齐声言曰：“大王恩德如天，莫可图报。我等日出而嬉游，日落而归宿，坐享承平之福，是皆大王之所赐。今大王欲造灵台，尚言给领工钱。我等虽肝脑涂地，手胼足胝，亦所甘心。况且为我百姓占验灾祥之设，如何反领大王工银也。”一郡军民



## Chapter 23

### Dream of a Flying Bear

Prince Wen accepted San Yisheng's proposal and had notices posted on every gate of the city. It read:

Prince Wen hereby declares to both the people and the military that although West Qi is a land of virtue without war and with few lawsuits, and although people live in peace and produce is abundant, floods and droughts have frequently occurred here. As there is no observatory to foretell natural disasters, a piece of government land to the west of the city has been selected, where I wish to build a Spiritual Terrace to forecast the weather and guard against natural disasters. Fearing that corvée labor would be a burden to the people, I have decided to pay every worker one-tenth of a tael of silver per day. Everyone has the right to join the labor force and may quit as they wish. Those who wish to join should register their names immediately for the convenience of payment. Those who do not wish to offer their service may continue to do their own business, free from any compulsion....

Those who read the announcement cried happily in one voice, "The grace of our prince is as great as Heaven. Due to his kindness, we're happily employed during the day and rest at home after sunset. Now that he wishes to construct a Spiritual Terrace, he doesn't conscript us into forced labor but will pay us daily in silver. We'll be glad to work our fingers to the bone for him. Besides, as the terrace will be for the welfare of the people, how could we accept wages for it?"

Everyone was willing to work himself wholeheartedly on the project. When San Yisheng reported the situation to Prince Wen, he said, "Since





无不欢悦，情愿出力造台。散宜生知民心如此，抱本进内启奏。文王曰：“军民既有此意举，随传旨给散银两。”众民领讫。文王对散宜生曰：“可选吉日，破土兴工。”众民用心，着意搬泥运土，伐木造台。正是：窗外日光弹指过，席前花影座间移。又道是：行见落花红满地，霎时黄菊绽东篱。造灵台不过旬月，管工官来报工完。文王大喜，随同文武多官排鸾舆出郭，行至灵台观看，雕梁画栋，台砌巍峨，真一大观也。有赋为证，赋曰：

台高二丈，势按三才。上分八卦合阴阳，下属九宫定龙虎。四角有四时之形，左右立乾坤之象。前后配君臣之义，周围有风云之气。此台上合天心应四时，下合地户属五行，中合人意风调雨顺。文王有德，使万物而增辉；圣人治世，感百事而无逆。灵台从此立王基，验照灾祥扶帝主。正是：治国江山茂，今日灵台胜鹿台。

话说文王随同两班文武上得灵台，四面一观。文王默然不语。时有上大夫散宜生出班奏曰：“今日灵台工完，大王为何不悦？”文王曰：“非是不悦。此台虽好，台下欠缺一池沼以应‘水火既济、合配阴阳’之意。孤欲再开沼池，又恐劳伤民力，故此郁郁耳。”宜生启曰：“灵台之工，甚是浩大，尚且不日而成；况于台下一沼，其工甚易。”宜生忙传王旨：“台下再开一沼池，以应‘水火既济’之意。”说言未了，只见众民大呼曰：“小小池沼，有何难成，又劳圣虑！”众人随将带来锹锄，一时挑挖；内中挑出一付枯骨，众人四路抛掷。文王在台上，见众人抛弃枯骨。王问曰：“众民抛弃何物？”左右启奏曰：“此地掘起一付人骨，众人故此抛掷。”文王急传旨，命众人：“将枯骨取来，放在一处，用匣盛之，埋于高阜之地。岂有因孤开沼而暴露此骸骨，实孤之



both the people and soldiers are glad to contribute to the building of the terrace, issue their wages at once.”

An auspicious day was chosen on which to start the project, and everyone set to work, carrying earth or cutting wood. In less than ten months, the supervisor came to report that the Spiritual Terrace had been completed. Greatly delighted, Prince Wen led the civil and military officials beyond the city on an inspection tour. Looking all around the twenty-foot high terrace, Prince Wen fell silent.

San Yisheng noticed his silence and asked, “Your Highness, we’re all delighted with the terrace, but why are you, on the contrary, so displeased?”

“I’m not displeased at all. It’s just that it needs a pool beside it to meet the requirements of the *yin-yang* theory. I don’t want to trouble the people for extra labor so I’m a little depressed.”

“Though the terrace was a massive project, it was completed in a very short time. It would be a simple matter to add a pool beside it.” San Yisheng told him, and then passed his words onto the people.

“What’s so difficult about digging a little pool! Don’t be distressed, Your Highness. We’ll do it at once,” they cried.

As they dug, they found a skeleton buried in the ground and casually disposed of the bones. Watching them work from the terrace, Prince Wen asked, “What did they throw away over there?”

“The bones of a skeleton,” someone replied.

“Bring the bones here. Put them in a small coffin and bury them on a hill. It would be a crime to leave them exposed just because I’m digging a pool,” Prince Wen ordered.



罪也。”众人听见此言，大呼曰：“圣德之君，泽及枯骨，何况我等人民，不沾雨露之恩。真是广施人意，道合天心，西岐万民获有父母矣！”众民欢声大悦。文王因在灵台看挖沼池，不觉天色渐晚，回驾不及。文王随文武在灵台上设宴，君臣共乐。席散之后，文武在台下安歇。文王台上设绣榻而寝。时至三更，正值梦中，忽见东南一只白额猛虎，肋生双翼，望帐中扑来。文王急叫左右，只听台后一声响唬，火光冲霄，文王惊醒，吓了一身香汗；听台下已打三更。文王自思：“此梦主何凶吉？待到天明，再作商议。”有诗曰：

文王治国造灵台，文武锵锵保驾来，忽见沼池枯骨现，命将高阜速藏埋。君臣共乐传杯盏，夜梦飞熊扑帐开。龙虎风云从此遇，西岐方得栋梁才。

话说次早文武上台，参谒已毕。文王曰：“大夫散宜生何在？”宜生出班见礼曰：“有何宣召？”文王曰：“孤今夜三鼓，得一异梦，梦见东南有一只白额猛虎，肋生双翼，望帐中扑来，孤急呼左右，只见台后火光冲霄，一声响唬，惊醒，乃是一梦。此兆不知主何吉凶？”散宜生躬身贺曰：“此梦乃大王之大吉兆，主大王得栋梁之臣，大贤之客，真不让风后、伊尹之右。”文王曰：“卿何以见得如此？”宜生曰：“昔商高宗曾有飞熊入梦，得傅说于版筑之间；今主公梦虎生双翼者，乃熊也；又见台后火光，乃火煅物之象。今西方属金，金见火必煅；煅炼寒金，必成大器。此乃兴周之大兆。故此臣特欣贺。”众官听罢，齐声称贺。文王传旨回驾，心欲访贤，以应此兆。不题。

且言姜子牙自从弃却朝歌，别了马氏，土遁救了居民，隐于磻溪，垂钓渭水。子牙一意守时候命，不管闲非，日诵“黄庭”，悟道修真。若闷时，持丝纶倚绿柳而垂钓。时时



“What divine virtue! The kindness of our lord extends even to the bones of the dead. His benevolence is felt everywhere, and his every action accords with the will of Heaven. The prince of West Qi truly cares for his people,” everyone commented when they heard the order.

Dusk fell as he watched the excavation work, and as it was too late for him to return home a feast was prepared on the terrace. After he and his officials enjoyed a pleasant meal together, the prince retired to a room on the terrace.

He had a strange dream: a fierce winged tiger with a white forehead suddenly flew up from the southeast and threw itself at the curtains of his bed. Greatly alarmed, Prince Wen began to call for his attendants when there was an explosion at the back of the terrace and brilliant light shot into the sky. He woke up bathed in sweat. As he pondered over the dream, he heard the watchman sounding the third watch and decided to wait until daybreak to discuss the dream with his officials.

When he met them the next morning, he asked, “Where’s Supreme Minister San Yisheng? I would like to see him at once.”

When San Yisheng stepped before him, the prince told him about the dream and asked him what it meant.

San Yisheng bowed. “This dream is a very auspicious omen for you, Your Highness. You’ll get a highly talented minister, the pillar of the government. He’ll serve you like the famed Prime Ministers Feng Hou and Yi Yin of the past.”

“What makes you say that?”

“King Gao Zong of the Shang Dynasty got Prime Minister Fu Yue after he dreamed of a flying bear. What you saw in your dream wasn’t a tiger but a flying bear. The brilliant light you saw behind the terrace signifies the future prosperity of the house of Zhou.”

The ministers burst into applause and offered their congratulations. Prince Wen then gave the order to return to the palace, determined to find the talented assistant as he had dreamed.

But now let’s turn to Jiang Ziya. Leaving the refugees, he went to a hermitage near Panxi Stream, where he spent much of his time fishing. While waiting for his destiny to be fulfilled, he recited Taoist scriptures and strove to become enlightened by the Truth. When he felt bored, he fished, leaning against a willow tree, but his mind was always on his master and he never forgot the Way.





心上昆仑，刻刻念随师长，难忘道德，朝暮悬悬。一日，执竿叹息，作诗曰：

“自别昆仑地，俄然二四年。商都荣半载，直谏在君前。  
弃却归西土，磻溪执钓先。何日逢真主，披云再见天。”

子牙作罢诗，坐于垂杨之下。只见滔滔流水，无尽无休，彻夜东行，熬尽人间万古。正是：惟有青山流水依然在，古往今来尽是空。子牙叹毕，只听得一人作歌而来：

“登山过岭，伐木丁丁。随身板斧，砍劈枯藤。崖前兔走，山后鹿鸣。树梢异鸟，柳外黄莺。见了些青松桧柏，李白桃红。无忧樵子，胜似腰金。担柴一石，易米三升。随时菜蔬，沽酒二瓶。对月邀饮，乐守孤林。深山幽僻，万壑无声。奇花异草，逐日相侵。逍遥自在，任意纵横。”

樵子歌罢，把一担柴放下，近前少憩，问子牙曰：“老丈，我常时见你在此，执竿钓鱼，我和你像一个故事。”子牙曰：“像何故事？”樵子曰：“我与你像一个‘渔樵问答’。”子牙大喜：“好个‘渔樵问答’。”樵子曰：“你上姓？贵处？缘何



One day, as he sat fishing, he sighed to himself and chanted:

Since I left Kunlun,  
Eight years have passed.  
I rebuked the king,  
And had to flee at last.  
Coming to the western land,  
I fish at Panxi Stream.  
When shall I meet a sage king,  
To fulfil my destiny?

He sat under the hanging branches of a willow tree and watched the water flowing endlessly towards the east. He reflected on the transience of human life compared to the mountains and streams, and was sighing to himself when he heard someone singing a song:

Up the slopes and over the peaks,  
The air rings with the sound of my axe.  
I carry it with me all the time,  
To slash down creepers in my way.  
Down the cliff run wild hares,  
Behind the hill young doves croon.  
Over the treetops fly rare birds,  
In the willows sing yellow orioles.  
In pine, cypress, plum and peach trees,  
A merry woodcutter I'll stay!  
I won't be a millionaire anyday.  
Three pints of rice for a load of wood,  
Vegetables galore, and wine that's good.  
The moon's my companion as I drink  
Beneath the trees in the quietude  
Of hills and valleys.  
Exotic plants delight my heart,  
A carefree life is all I want!

When the woodcutter finished his song, he put down his load of firewood and sat down beside Jiang Ziya.

"Venerable elder," he said, "I often see you fishing here. May I have a chat with you?"

"What about?"

"A chat between fishermen and woodcutters like in the old stories."

Jiang Ziya was delighted. "Splendid! A chat between a fisherman and a woodcutter."



到此？”子牙曰：“吾乃东海许州人也。姓姜，名尚，字子牙，道号飞熊。”樵子听罢，扬笑不止。子牙问樵子曰：“你姓甚？名谁？”樵子曰：“吾姓武，名吉，祖贯西岐人氏。”子牙曰：“你方才听吾姓名，反加扬笑者，何也？”武吉曰：“你方才言号飞熊，故有此笑。”子牙曰：“人各有号，何以为笑？”樵子曰：“当时古人，高人，圣人，贤人，胸藏万斛珠玑，腹隐无边锦绣，如风后，老彭、傅说、常桑、伊尹之辈，方称其号；似你也有此号，名不称实，故此笑耳。我常时见你伴绿柳而垂丝，别无营运，守株而待兔，看此清波，无识见高明，为何亦称道号？”武吉言罢，却将溪边钓竿拿起，见线上叩一针而无曲。樵子抚掌大笑不止，对子牙点头叹曰：“有智不在年高，无谋空言百岁。”樵子问子牙曰：“你这钩线何为不曲？古语云：‘且将香饵钓金鳌。’我传你一法，将此针用火烧红，打成钩样，上用香饵，线上又用浮子，鱼来吞食，浮子自动，是知鱼至，望上一拎，钩挂鱼腮，方能得鲤，此是捕鱼之方。似这等钓，莫说三年，便百年也无一鱼到手。可见你智量愚拙，安得妄曰飞熊！”子牙曰：“你只知其一，不知其二。老夫在此，名虽垂钓，我自意不在鱼。吾在此不过守青云而得路，拨阴翳而腾霄，岂可曲中而取鱼乎！非丈夫之所为也。吾宁在直中取，不向曲中求，不为锦鳞设，只钓王与侯。”吾有诗为证：

短杆长线守磻溪，这个机关那个知？只钓当朝君与相，何尝意在水中鱼。

武吉听罢，大笑曰：“你这个人也想王侯做！看你那个嘴脸，不象王侯，你倒象个活猴！”子牙也笑着曰：“你看我的



“What’s your lofty name and your honorable birthplace? Why have you come here?” the woodcutter asked.

“I’m a native of Xuzhou on the shore of the East Sea. My family name’s Jiang, my name’s Shang, and I’m called Ziya. I’ve also got another name, Fei Xiong the Flying Bear.”

The woodcutter burst into loud laughter.

“What’s your name?” Jiang Ziya asked.

“My name’s Wu Ji. I’m a native of West Qi.”

“Why did you burst into laughter when you heard my name?”

“I couldn’t help laughing when I heard ‘Fei Xiong the Flying Bear’.”

“Everyone’s given a second name. What’s there to laugh at?” Jiang Ziya objected.

“Only sages and worthies like Feng Hou, Lao Peng, Yi Yin and Fu Yue, virtuous, talented, and prominent in rank, are qualified to have that name, but you’re a nobody. That’s why I couldn’t help laughing. You do nothing but sit and fish and lean against that tree all day long. You’re like the man who sits waiting by a tree stump in the hope that a rabbit will run into it and knock itself out. You don’t look particularly brilliant to me. How can you call yourself ‘Fei Xiong’?” Wu Ji asked.

He walked over and picked up Jiang Ziya’s fishing rod from the bank. He found that a needle and not a hook was fixed to the end of the line. Clapping and laughing, he shook his head at Jiang Ziya.

“Talent cannot be measured by a man’s years. Some may live to be 100 but have no common sense at all,” He commented. “Why do you fish with a straight needle instead of a hook? Let me show you how to do it: Heat the needle till it’s red hot, and bend it into a hook. Then attach some tasty bait to the hook, and fasten a float to the line. As soon as a fish swallows the bait, you’ll see the float move. You must lift the rod as quickly as possible to catch the fish. If you use your own method you won’t catch a fish in a hundred years. It just shows how stupid you are. How can you have the impudence to call yourself Flying Bear?”

Jiang Ziya remained unperturbed. “You only know half the story. Though I’m ostensibly fishing here, I don’t really care about the fish. I’m merely killing time while I wait for my chance to attain lofty heights. How could I deign to make a hook to catch fish? It’s not what a true man should do. I prefer to achieve success with the straight needle and am unwilling to obtain what I want with the crooked. I’m not really out to catch a fish, but a duke or a king.”

Wu Ji burst into laughter again. “So you want to be a duke or a king as well! You look more like a monkey to me!” He laughed sarcastically.



嘴脸不象王侯，我看你的嘴脸也不甚么好。”武吉曰：我的嘴脸比你好些。吾虽樵夫，真比你快活：春看桃杏，夏玩荷红，秋看黄菊，冬赏梅松。我也有诗：

担柴货卖长街上，沽酒回家母子欢。伐木只知营运乐，放翻天地自家看。

子牙曰：“不是这等嘴脸。我看你脸上的气色不甚么好。”武吉曰：“你看我的气色怎的不好？”子牙曰：“你左眼青，右眼红，今日进城打死人。”武吉听罢，叱之曰：“我和你闲谈戏语，为何毒口伤人！”

武吉挑起柴，径往西岐城中来卖。不觉行至南门，却逢文王车驾往灵台，占验灾祥之兆。随侍文武出城，两边侍卫甲马御林军人大呼曰：“千岁驾临，少来！”武吉挑着一担柴往南门来，市井道窄，将柴换肩，不知塌了一头，番转尖担，把门军王相夹耳门一下，即刻打死。两边人大叫曰：“樵子打死了门军！”即时拿住，来见文王。文王曰：“此是何人？”两边启奏：“大王千岁，这个樵子不知何故打死门军王相。”文王在马上问曰：“那樵子叫甚名字？为何打死王相？”武吉启曰：“小人就是西岐的良民，叫做武吉。因见大王驾临，道路窄狭，将柴换肩，误伤王相。”文王曰：“武吉既打死王相，理当抵命。”随即就在南门画地为牢，竖木为吏，将武吉禁于此间，文王往灵台去了。——纣时画地为牢，止西岐有此事。东、南、北连朝歌俱有禁狱，惟西岐因文王先天数，祸福无差，因此人民不敢逃匿，所以画地为狱，民亦



Jiang Ziya had to smile. "I may not look like a duke or a king, but as far as I can see, your face doesn't augur well for you either."

"Well, at least it's better than yours. Though only a woodcutter, I'm happier than you: I enjoy the peach and apricot flowers in spring, lotus flowers in summer, yellow chrysanthemums in autumn and plum flowers in winter," Wu Ji retorted.

"That's not what I mean. I mean the destiny revealed in your face isn't auspicious."

"How can you tell?"

"Your left eye's greenish and your right red. That means you'll kill a man in the city today," Jiang Ziya explained.

"We were just joking with each other. Why suddenly turn nasty and say such damaging things?" Wu Ji swore in anger.

He immediately shouldered his load of firewood and set off for the city to sell it on the market. He got to the south gate just as Prince Wen was leaving the city for the Spiritual Terrace. The royal guards were shouting "Clear the way! His Highness is coming!"

Wu Ji dodged into a narrow lane. As he swung his carrying pole with its load of firewood from one shoulder to the other, the sharp end of a thick dried branch accidentally struck Wang Xiang, a city guard, in the temple, killing him instantly.

"A woodcutter's killed a city guard," people around him cried out, and Wu Ji was arrested and taken before Prince Wen.

"Who is this man? What has he done?"

"Your Highness! For some unknown reason, this woodcutter just killed the city guard Wang Xiang."

The prince remained seated on his horse. "What's the woodcutter's name? Why did he kill Wang Xiang?"

"Your Highness! I'm a decent citizen of West Qi named Wu Ji. When I saw you coming, I turned into a narrow lane, and Wang Xiang was killed accidentally when I swung my carrying pole from one shoulder to the other."

"Since Wu Ji killed Wang Xiang, he should pay with his life." Prince Wen said.

He had his men draw a large circle on the ground near the south gate and stand a log inside it as a warder. Wu Ji was then imprisoned inside the circle.

Imprisoning convicts in a circle drawn on the ground was only done in West Qi during the reign of King Zhou. As Prince Wen could predict accurately by divination, a convict confined within the circle dared not



不敢逃去。但凡人走了，文王演先天数，算出拿来，加倍问罪。以此顽猾之民，皆奉公守法，故曰“画地为狱”。且说武吉禁了三日，不得回家。武吉思：“母无依，必定倚闾而望；况又不知我有刑陷之灾。”因思母亲，放声大哭。行人围看。其时散宜生往南门过，忽见武吉悲声大痛，散宜生问曰：“你是前日打死王相的。杀人偿命，理之常也，为何大哭？”武吉告曰：“小人不幸逢遇冤家，误将王相打死，理当偿命，安得埋怨。只奈小人有母，七十有余岁。小人无兄无弟，又无妻室。母老孤身，必为沟渠饿殍，尸骸暴露，情切伤悲，养子无益，子丧母亡，思之切骨，苦不敢言。小人不得已，放声大哭。不知回避，有犯大夫，望祈恕罪。”散宜生听罢，默思久之：“若论武吉打死王相，非是斗殴杀伤人命，不过挑柴误塌尖担，打伤人命，自无抵偿之理。”宜生曰：“武吉不必哭，我往见千岁启一本，放你回去，办你母亲衣衾棺木，柴米养身之资，你再等秋后以正国法。”武吉叩头：“谢老爷天恩！”

宜生一日进便殿，见文王朝贺毕，散宜生奏曰：“臣启大王：前日武吉打伤王相人命，禁于南门。臣往南门，忽见武吉痛哭。臣问其故，武吉言有老母七十余岁，止生武吉一人，况吉上无兄弟，又无妻室，其母一无所望，吉遭国法，羈陷莫出，思母必成沟渠之鬼，因此大哭。臣思王相人命，原非斗殴，实乃误伤。况武吉母寡身单，不知其子陷身于狱。据臣愚念，且放武吉归家，以办养母之费，棺木衣衾之资，完毕，再来抵偿王相之命。臣请大王旨意定夺。”文王听宜生之言，随准行：“速放武吉回家。”诗曰：

文王出郭验灵台，武吉担柴惹祸胎。王相死于尖担下，子牙八十运才来。



run away. Any convict who tried to flee could be located by divination and taken back to face more severe punishment, so even the sly and crafty strictly observed the law.

Now Wu Ji had been imprisoned in the circle for three days. "Mother's alone and without support. She must lean on the door looking for me all day long, wondering what's happened to me. She must be terribly worried. What shall I do?"

Thinking of his mother, he burst into loud sobs. Pedestrians were gathering round to look at him when San Yisheng passed by on his way to the Spiritual Terrace. He heard Wu Ji weeping. "Aren't you the one who killed Wang Xiang a few days ago? It's the usual practice for a murderer to pay with his life. Why are you crying so?"

"It was my ill-fortune to meet with this mishap. Wang Xiang was killed by accident. I know I should pay with my life and have no complaint about that. However, I've got an aged mother of over seventy. I'm unmarried and have no brothers. There's no one to look after her while I'm kept here. She'll starve to death and her bones will remain unburied. If the son dies, the mother will perish too. She's raised me in vain. The thought of it breaks my heart, so I can't help crying bitterly. I didn't know of your arrival and failed to suppress my tears. Please forgive me."

"Since Wu Ji didn't kill Wang Xiang on purpose, he shouldn't pay with his life," San Yisheng thought, and said to Wu Ji, "Don't cry. I'll see His Highness about it. I hope he'll set you free to prepare food, clothing, and a coffin in case she dies. You may come back in the autumn to receive your punishment."

Wu Ji immediately kowtowed in gratitude for the kind help.

The following day, San Yisheng reported Wu Ji's case to Prince Wen and suggested, "His mother's a widow. As she cannot survive alone and doesn't know about her son's plight, I think it would be better to let Wu Ji return home temporarily to take care of her and make arrangements for a funeral in case of her death. When everything's been arranged satisfactorily, he may come back to receive punishment for the Wang Xiang case. I beg you to give it your consideration."





话说武吉出了狱，可怜思家心重，飞奔回来。只见母亲倚闾而望，见武吉回家，忙问曰：“我儿，你因甚么事，这几日才来？为母在家，晓夜不安，又恐你在深山穷谷被虎狼所伤，使为娘的悬心吊胆，废寝忘餐。今日见你，我心方落。不知你为何事，今日才回？”武吉哭拜在地曰：“母亲，孩儿不幸前日往南门卖柴，遇文王驾至，我挑柴闪躲，塌了尖担，打死门军王相。文王把孩儿禁于狱中。我想母亲在家中悬望，又无音信，上无亲人，单身只影，无人奉养，必成沟壑之鬼，因此放声大哭。多亏上大夫散宜生老爷启奏文王，放我归家，置办你的衣衾、棺木、米粮之类，打点停当，孩儿就去偿王相之命。母亲，你养我一场无益了！”道罢大哭。其母听见儿子遭此人命重情，魂不附体，一把扯住武吉，悲声咽咽，两泪如珠，对天叹曰：“我儿忠厚半生，并无欺妄，孝母守分，今日有何罪得罪天地，遭此陷阱之灾。我儿，你有差迟，为娘的焉能有命！”武吉曰：“前一日，孩儿担柴行至磻溪，见一老人执竿垂钓，线上拴着一个针，在那里钓鱼。孩儿问他：‘为何不打弯了，安着香饵钓鱼？’那老人曰：‘宁在直中取，不在曲中求。非为锦鳞，只钓王侯。’孩儿笑他：‘你这个人也想做王侯，你那嘴脸，也不象个王侯，到象一个活猴！’那老人看看孩儿曰：‘我看你的嘴脸也不好。’我问他：‘我怎的不好？’那老人说孩儿‘左眼青，右眼红，今日必定打死人’，确确的，那一日打死了王相。我想老人嘴极毒，想将起来可恶。”其母问吉曰：“那老人姓甚，名谁？”武吉曰：“那老人姓姜，名尚，字子牙，道号飞熊。因他说出号来，孩儿故此笑他。他才说出这样破话。”老母曰：“此老善相，莫非有先见之明。我儿，此老人你还去求他救你。此老必是高人。”武吉听了母命，收拾径往磻溪来见子牙。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



Prince Wen approved his proposal and granted Wu Ji temporary freedom. As soon as he was freed, Wu Ji rushed back home, where he found his old mother at the gate watching eagerly for his return. "My dear boy! Where have you been these last few days? I've been terrified that you might have been wounded or killed by wolves and tigers in the high mountains. I've been so worried that I haven't been able to eat or sleep. Only now can I rest at ease. What happened to you?"

When Wu Ji related what had happened in the city, she began to weep and wail and bemoan her fate.

"A few days ago I saw an old man fishing in a stream using not a hook but a straight needle. I asked him why he didn't bend his needle into a hook and attach a piece of tasty bait, and he answered that he would achieve success with straightness, not crookedness. He said he wasn't looking for fish with beautiful scales but for a duke or king. When I said sarcastically that he looked more like a monkey than a duke, he told me my appearance wasn't good, either, because having one green eye and one red, I would kill a man that day. He's wicked and his mouth was poisonous for, sure enough, it was on that day that I killed Wang Xiang."

"What's the old man's name?"

"Jiang Shang or Jiang Ziya, and his alternative name's Fei Xiong the Flying Bear," Wu Ji answered.

"He must be a prophet, a highly talented man. You'd better go and beg him to save you," she said.

On her orders, Wu Ji went to Panxi Stream to look for Jiang Ziya.

If you want to know what happened next, you must read the next chapter.





## 第二十四回

### 渭水文王聘子牙

诗曰：

别却朝歌隐此间，喜观绿水绕青山。《黄庭》两卷消长昼，  
金鲤三条了笑颜。柳内莺声来啾啾，岸傍溜响听潺潺。  
满天华露开祥瑞，赢得文王仙驾扳。

话说武吉来到溪边，见子牙独坐垂杨之下，将鱼竿飘浮绿波之上，自己作歌取乐。武吉走至子牙之后，款款叫曰：“姜老爷！”子牙回首，看见武吉，子牙曰：“你是那一日在此的樵夫。”武吉答曰：“正是。”子牙道：“你那一日可曾打死人么？”武吉慌忙跪泣告曰：“小人乃山中蠢子，执斧愚夫，那知深奥。肉眼凡胎，不识老爷高明隐达之士。前日一语，冒犯尊颜。老爷乃大人之辈，不是我等小人，望姜老爷切勿记怀，大开仁慈，广施恻隐，只当普济群生！那日别了老爷，行至南门，正遇文王驾至，挑柴闪躲，不知塌了尖担，果然打死门军王相。此时文王定罪，理合抵命。小人因思母老无依，终久必成沟壑之鬼，蒙上大夫散宜生老爷为小人启奏文王，权放归家，置办母事完备，不日去抵王相之命。以此思之，母子之命依旧不保。今日特来叩见姜老爷，万望怜救毫末余生，得全母子之命。小人结草衔环，犬马相报，决不敢有负大德！”子牙曰：“‘数定难移’。你打死了人，宜当偿命。我怎么救得你？”武吉哀哭拜求曰：“老爷恩施，昆



## Chapter 24

### From Fisherman to Prime Minister

At Panxi Stream, Wu Ji found Jiang Ziya still fishing under the willow tree. As his bamboo rod floated on the blue ripples, he amused himself by singing a song. Wu Ji walked up behind him.

“Venerable master.”

Looking round, Jiang Ziya asked, “Aren’t you the woodcutter I met here the other day?”

“Yes, sir. I am.”

“Did you kill someone that day?”

Wu Ji fell on his knees, sobbing. “I’m a vulgar man who lives in the mountains. I know only how to use an axe and understand nothing of profound mysteries. I failed to recognize you as a highly cultured recluse. I offended you with my foolish words. I beg you to pardon my ignorance.” he apologized, and went on to relate all that had happened since he left Jiang. He concluded, “In the autumn, I must go back to be punished for Wang Xiang’s death, and the lives of my mother and myself are still in danger. Today I’ve come to pay you my respects and beg you to take pity on us and save us. We’ll never forget your kindness.”

“This is all determined by fate, and fate is difficult to change. Since you caused the death of another person, you have to pay with your life. What can I do to save you?” Jiang Ziya replied.

Wu Ji fell to the ground weeping bitterly. “Have compassion, sir!” he pleaded. “If you save our lives, we will be eternally grateful.”





虫草木，无处不发慈悲，倘救得母子之命，没齿难忘！”子牙见武吉来意虔诚，亦且此人后必有贵，子牙曰：“你要我救你，你拜吾为师，我方救你。”武吉听言，随即下拜。子牙曰：“你既为吾弟子，我不得不救你。如今你速回到家，在你床前，随你多长，挖一坑堑，深四尺。你至黄昏时候，睡在坑内；叫你母亲于你头前点一盏灯，脚头点一盏灯。或米也可，或饭也可，抓两把撒在你身上，放上些乱草。睡过一夜起来，只管去做生意，再无事了。”武吉听了，领师之命，回到家中，挖坑行事。有诗为证，诗曰：

文王先天数，子牙善厌星。不因武吉事，焉能涉帝廷。  
磻溪生将相，周土产天丁。大造原相定，须教数合冥。

话说武吉回到家中，满面喜容。母说：“我儿，你去求姜老爷，此事如何？”武吉对母亲一一说了一遍。母亲大喜，随命武吉挖坑点灯。不题。

且说子牙三更时分，披发仗剑，踏罡布斗，掐诀结印，随与武吉厌星。次早，武吉来见子牙，口称“师父”，下拜。子牙曰：“既拜吾为师，早晚听吾教训。打柴之事，非汝长策。早起挑柴货卖，到中时来讲谈兵法。方今纣王无道，天下反乱四百镇诸侯。”武吉曰：“老师父，反了那四百镇诸侯？”子牙曰：“反了东伯侯姜文焕，领兵四十万，大战游魂关；南伯侯鄂顺反了，领三十万人马，攻打三山关。我前日仰观天象，见西岐不久刀兵四起，离乱发生。此是用武之秋，上心学艺，若能得功出仕，便是天子之臣，岂是打柴了事。古语有云：‘将相本无种，男儿当自强。’又曰：‘学成文武艺，货与帝王家。’也是你拜我一场。”武吉听了师父之



Jiang Ziya knew that Wu Ji had an outstanding future. He relented. "I'll save you from death only if you acknowledge me as your teacher."

Wu Ji immediately knelt down and kowtowed in acknowledgment.

"Now that you're my disciple, I'm obliged to help you. Return home at once and dig a pit before your bed four feet deep and long enough for you to lie in. Sleep in it tonight with lighted lamps at your head and feet. Your mother must scatter a few handfuls of cooked or uncooked rice on your body and cover you with hay. Tomorrow you may get up and go about your business as usual. You'll have no more trouble from then on."

When Wu Ji returned home and told his mother what had happened, she was overjoyed, and immediately directed him to dig the pit and prepare lamps. Late that night, Jiang Ziya loosened his hair, took a sword and walked in a square reciting charms to cover up Wu Ji's star and make it disappear from Heaven.

Early the next morning, Wu Ji came to see him. He knelt down and kowtowed. "Master," he greeted Jiang Ziya.

"Since you're my disciple now, you must always obey my instructions. It's not a good idea to spend all your time cutting wood. You may go to the market and sell firewood before noon and come here in the afternoon for lessons on military theories and strategems. Do you know that four hundred marquises have declared independence and rebelled against King Zhou?"

"Master, which four hundred marquises?"

"Jiang Wenhuan commands 400,000 men and is waging a fierce battle at Youhun Pass. E Shun's attacking Sanshan Pass with 300,000 men. A few days ago I observed the celestial phenomena and saw that West Qi will be affected by war soon. Military talents are needed. You'd better spend your time and effort learning weapon skills and military strategems. If you offer outstanding service on the battlefield, you'll be made a minister in the government. An old proverb says, 'No one is born a general or prime minister, a man must make himself strong and able.' Another proverb says, 'Sell your civil and military talents to the king.' As your teacher, I must help you to have a good future."

On his instructions, Wu Ji studied military techniques diligently day





言，早晚上心，不离子牙，精学武艺，讲习六韬。不表。

话说散宜生一日想起武吉之事，一去半载不来。宜生入内庭见文王，启奏曰：“武吉打死王相，臣因见彼有老母在家，无人养侍，奏过主公，放武吉回家，办其母棺木日费用即来；岂意彼竟欺灭国法，今经半载，不来领罪，此必狡猾之民。大王可演先天数以验真实。”文王曰：“善。”随取金钱，占演凶吉。文王点首叹曰：“武吉亦非猾民，因惧刑自投万丈深潭已死。若论正法，亦非斗殴杀人，乃是悞伤人命，罪不该死。彼反惧法身死，如武吉深为可悯！”叹息良久，君臣各退。

正是撚指光阴似箭，果然岁月如流。文王一日与文武闲居无事，见春和景媚，柳舒花放，桃李争妍，韶光正茂。文王曰：“三春景色繁华，万物发舒，襟怀爽畅，孤同诸子、众卿，往南郊寻青踏翠，共乐山水之欢，以效寻芳之乐。”散宜生近前启曰：“主公，昔日造灵台，夜兆飞熊，主西岐得栋梁之才，主君有贤辅之佐。况今春光晴爽，花柳争妍，一则围幸于南郊，二则访遗贤于山泽。臣等随使，南宫适、辛甲保驾，正尧舜与民同乐之意。”文王大悦，随传旨：“次早南郊围幸行乐。”次日，南宫适领五百家将出南郊，步一围场。众武士披执，同文王出城，行至南郊。怎见得好春光景致：

和风飘动，百蕊争荣：桃红似火，柳嫩成金，萌芽初出土，百草已排新，芳草绵绵铺锦绣，娇花袅袅斗春风。林内清奇鸟韵，树外氤氲烟笼。听黄鹂、杜宇唤春回，徧访游人行乐；絮飘花落，溶溶归棹，又添水面文章。



and night. One day, however, San Yisheng recollected the Wu Ji affair, and wondered why he failed to come back to gaol.

“Though Wu Ji killed Wang Xiang, I set him free temporarily with your approval as he had an old mother unable to live alone at home,” he spoke to Prince Wen. “I told him to return to gaol when he had made the necessary arrangements for her. However, he hasn’t come back to receive the penalty deserved. He must be a sly and deceitful fellow. Perhaps Your Highness should make a divination to determine what’s happened to him.”

“Yes, you’re right,” Prince Wen answered. He picked up his gold coins and made a divination. He groaned as he shook his head. “Wu Ji’s neither sly nor deceitful. Out of fear of punishment, he committed suicide by throwing himself into a deep pool. According to the law, he ought not to be sentenced to death as he didn’t kill Wang on purpose, but he’s lost his life nonetheless. It’s a great pity.”

Sighing deeply, Prince and minister withdrew from the court. Time passed swiftly, and soon spring came again. Flowers blossomed on the willows, and peach and plum trees exploded with color.

“The scenery’s lovely. Everything’s bursting with new life. It’s hard not to feel cheerful and vigorous. Let’s take a trip to the southern outskirts and enjoy a few days of nature,” Prince Wen proposed to his ministers.

San Yisheng came forward. “Your Highness! You dreamed of a flying bear when you slept on the Spiritual Terrace. The dream signifies that West Qi will get a capable man, a pillar of the state, and you’ll gain a talented assistant. We shouldn’t only enjoy the spring scenery but should also try to find him somewhere in the wilderness. We ministers will accompany you, and General Nangong Kuo and General Xin Jia can act as guards. We can enjoy ourselves with the people just as the sage emperors Yao and Shun did.”

Delighted with the idea, Prince Wen announced that they would set off early the following day. The next morning, General Nangong Kuo took five hundred royal guards to the south of the city and closed off a hunting zone there. Prince Wen and his ministers followed on horseback admiring the scenery. Brilliant flowers and fragrant grass waved in the warm gentle breeze. In the forest, orioles and cuckoos welcomed the spring. Young cowherds with bamboo flutes piped merry tunes on the backs of oxen.



见几个牧童短笛骑牛背；见几个田下锄人运手忙；见几个摘桑拎着桑篮走；见几个采茶歌罢入茶筐。一段青，一段红，春光富贵；一园花，一园柳，花柳争妍。无限春光观不尽，溪边春水戏鸳鸯。

人人贪恋春三月，留恋春光却动心。

劝君休错三春景，一寸光阴一寸金。

话说文王同众文武出郊外行乐，共享三春之景。行至一山，见有围场，步成罗网。文王一见许多家将披坚执锐，手持扫杆钢叉，黄鹰猎犬，雄威万状。怎见得：

烈烈旌旗似火，辉辉造盖遮天。锦衣绣袄驾黄鹰，花帽征衣牵猎犬。粉青毡笠，打洒朱缨。粉青毡笠，一池荷叶舞清风；打洒朱缨，开放桃花浮水面。只见：赶獐猎犬，钻天鹞子带红缨；捉兔黄鹰，拖帽金彪双凤翅。黄鹰起去，空中咬坠玉天鹅；恶犬来时，就地拖番梅花鹿。青锦白吉，锦豹花彪。青锦白吉，遇长杆血溅满身红；锦豹花彪，逢利刃血淋山土赤。野鸡着箭，穿住二翅怎能飞；鸬鹚遭叉，扑地翎毛难展挣。大弓射去，青妆白鹿怎逃生；药箭来时，练雀斑鸠难回避。旌旗招展乱纵横，敲响锣鸣声呐喊。打围人个个心猛，与猎将各各欢欣。登崖赛过搜山虎，跳涧犹如出海龙。火炮钢叉连地滚，窝弓伏弩傍空行。长天听有天鹅叫，开笼又放海东青。

话说文王见这样个光景，忙问：“上大夫，此是一个围场，为何设于此山？”宜生马上欠身答曰：“今日千岁游春行乐，共幸春光，南将军已设此围场，俟主公打猎行幸，以畅

Farmers were busy ploughing their fields, while young girls picked tea and mulberry leaves. Mandarin ducks played in pairs on the gentle blue current of a passing stream. The beauty of the spring scenery was indeed a captivating sight!

When Prince Wen reached the hill on which the hunting ground had been enclosed, he saw many guards with iron forks, hawks and hounds. In a very short time, deer, leopards and foxes fell before them as prey, staining the earth red with their blood and filling the air with their death cries.

Prince Wen was distressed by the scene of slaughter. "Why did you establish a hunting zone on this hill?" he asked San Yisheng.

"As Your Highness is taking a spring outing with us here, General Nangong Kuo closed off this area so that Your Highness could enjoy the pleasures of the hunt."

"You're wrong, Minister!" Prince Wen replied solemnly. "In ancient times, Fu Xi was respected as a sage emperor because he never ate meat. Once when his Prime Minister Feng Hou entertained him with meat, he refused to eat it, saying, 'People eat the flesh of animals when hungry and drink their





心情，亦不枉行乐一番，君臣共乐。”文王听说，正色曰：“大夫之言差矣！昔伏羲皇帝不用茹毛，而称至圣。当时有首相名曰风后，进茹毛于伏羲；伏羲曰：‘此鲜食皆百兽之肉，吾人饥而食其肉，渴而饮其血，以之为滋养之道；不知吾欲其生，忍令彼死，此心何忍。朕今不食禽兽之肉，宁食百草之粟。各全生命以养天和，无伤无害，岂不为美。’伏羲居洪荒之世，无百谷之美，尚不茹毛鲜食；况如今五谷可以养生，肥甘足以悦口，孤与卿踏青行乐，以赏此韶华风景，今欲骋孤等之乐，追麋逐鹿，较强比胜，骋英雄于猎较之间，禽兽何辜，而遭此杀戮之惨！且当此之时，阳春乍启，正万物生育之时，而行此肃杀之政，此仁人所痛心者也。古人当生不剪，体天地好生之仁。孤与卿等何蹈此不仁之事哉。速命南宫适，将围场去了！”众将传旨。文王曰：“孤与众卿，在马上欢饮行乐。”观望来往士女纷纭，踏青紫陌，斗草芳丛，或携酒而乐溪边，或讴歌而行绿圃，君臣马上，忻然而叹曰：“正是君正臣贤，士民怡乐。”宜生马上欠背答曰：“主公，西岐之地胜似尧天。”君臣正迤逦行乐，只见那边一伙渔人作歌而来：

“忆昔成汤扫桀时，十一征兮自葛始。堂堂正大应天人，义旗一举民安止。今经六百有余年，祝网恩波将歇息。悬肉为林酒作池，鹿台积血高千尺。内荒于色外荒禽，嘈嘈四海沸呻吟。我曹本是沧海客，洗耳不听亡国音。日逐洪涛歌浩浩，夜观星斗垂孤钓。孤钓不如天地宽，白头俯仰天地老。”

文王听渔人歌罢，对散宜生曰：“此歌韵度清奇，其中必定有



blood when thirsty, but I want them to live. I can't bear to have them killed. I would rather eat grain so that all creatures may live in peace. Isn't that as Heaven would wish?' Fu Xi lived in times less civilized than today. They didn't have the many different grains that we have now, but he still refused to eat meat. We're here to enjoy the spring scenery. How can we hunt down innocent animals? Besides, it's now the beginning of spring when everything's reproducing and growing, and to slaughter is most distressing to a benevolent man. The ancients didn't hunt animals in their periods of reproduction and growth, and neither should we. Make haste and tell General Nangong Kuo to open up the place at once." When the order had been carried out, Prince Wen proposed, "Let's drink and make merry on horseback."

They saw men and women, old and young, coming through the fields and meadows to enjoy the spring scenery, some drinking by the stream and others singing. Both the prince and his ministers were glad to see their people living in contentment as in the days of the sage emperor Yao. Just then, they spotted a group of fishermen singing:

Remember how King Tang felled the tyrant,  
Rose as he did in the town of Ge?  
It's the people's will and Heaven's,  
That he raised the banner and  
Restored peace to the land.  
That was 600 years ago, and the glories  
Are things of the past.  
Wine, women, and atrocities,  
The new tyrant wallows in evil.  
Happy Terrace built in thick blood,  
Lust and pleasure trips all day,  
While his citizens suffer bitterly.  
A hermit among the blue waters,  
I wash my ears clean of  
Anything to do with power and wealth.  
Singing on the surging waves,  
I spend my days fishing,  
And nights observing celestial phenomena.  
Alone, I remain aloof from the world,  
All my life I'll be carefree  
Until my hair turns white.



大贤隐于此地。”文王命辛甲：“与孤把作歌贤人请来相见。”辛甲领旨，将坐下马一磕，向前厉声言曰：“内中有贤人，请出来见吾千岁！”那些渔人齐齐跪下，答曰：“吾等都是‘闲’人。”辛甲曰：“你们为何都是贤人？”渔人曰：“我等早晨出户捕鱼，这时节回来无事，故此我等俱是‘闲’人。”不一时，文王马到。辛甲向前启曰：“此乃俱是渔人，非贤人也。”文王曰：“孤听作歌，韵度清奇，内中定有大贤。”众渔人曰：“此歌非小民所作。离此三十五里，有一磻溪，溪中有一老人，时常作此歌，我们耳边听的熟了，故此随口唱出此歌，实非小民所作。”文王曰：“诸位请回。”众渔人叩头去了。

文王马上想歌中之味，好个“洗耳不听亡国音”。傍有大夫散宜生欠背言曰：“‘洗耳不听亡国音’者何也？”昌曰：“大夫不知么？”宜生曰：“臣愚不知深义。”昌曰：“此一句乃尧王访舜天子故事。昔尧有德，乃生不肖之男；后尧王恐失民望，私行访察，欲要让位。一日行至山僻幽静之乡，见一人倚溪临水，将一小瓢儿在水中转。尧王问曰：‘公为何将此瓢在水中转？’其人笑曰：‘吾看破世情，却了名利，去了家私，弃了妻子，离爱欲是非之门，抛红尘之径，避处深林，齑盐蔬食，怡乐林泉，以终天年，平生之愿足矣。’尧王听罢大喜，‘此人眼空一世，忘富贵之荣，远是非之境，真乃仁杰也。孤将此帝位正该让他。’王曰：‘贤者，吾非他人，朕乃帝尧。今见大贤有德，欲将天子之位让尔，可否？’其人听罢，将小瓢拿起，一脚踏的粉碎，两只手掩住耳朵，飞跑跑至溪边洗耳。正洗之间，又见一人牵一只牛来吃水。其



"That song's written so well that it must be the work of some sage recluse who lives here," Prince Wen commented, and ordered Xin Jia, "Go and ask the ideal man that wrote that song to come and see me."

The general whipped his horse forward. "Will the ideal man please come and see His Highness?"

Misunderstanding him, all the fishermen knelt down and replied, "All of us are idle men."

"How can you all be ideal men?" Xin Jia demanded.

"Because we fish early in the morning and have nothing to do the rest of the day. We're all idle."

Just then Prince Wen came up on his horse.

"Your Highness, they're all ordinary fishermen. There's no ideal man here," Xin Jia told him.

"The song's so excellent that there must be a talented man among you," the prince insisted.

"We didn't write the song, Your Highness. Thirty-five *li* from here is Panxi Stream. This song was composed by an old man who lives there. As we have often heard him sing it, we all became familiar with it as well."

"You may go then. I'm sorry to have troubled you," Prince Wen said with disappointment.

After they had gone, Prince Wen kept thinking about the song, particularly the line "I wash my ears clean of anything to do with power and wealth."

"What does that line mean? Is there any story to it?" San Yisheng asked.

"It refers to the story of how the sage emperor Yao sought out Shun as his successor. Yao was a virtuous ruler, but he had a worthless son. Not to disappoint his people, Yao often made secret trips in an attempt to find a good and talented man to succeed him. One day Yao was walking through some remote mountains when he saw a man twirling a gourd ladle in a stream. He was intrigued and asked, 'Why do you twirl your gourd ladle about in the water?'

"The man smiled and answered, 'I've freed myself from worldly burdens. I've forsaken fame, riches, and family. I wish only to live here in the forests, eating salted vegetables and drinking from the springs. I'll be content to pass my life this way.'

"Yao was delighted with the reply and thought, 'This man dislikes the riches and glories of the world, and distances himself from worldly disputes. He's a man of outstanding caliber, and just the man I should choose as my successor.' He said, 'I'm none other than Emperor Yao. As I can see that you're so virtuous, I would like to abdicate in your favor. Would you accept the throne?'





人曰：‘那君子，牛来吃水了。’那人只管洗耳。其人又曰：‘此耳有多少秽污，只管洗？’那人洗完，方开口答曰：‘方才帝尧让位与我，把我双耳都污了，故此洗了一会，有悞此牛吃水。’其人听了，把牛牵至上流而饮。那人曰：‘为甚事便走？’其人曰：‘水被你洗污了，如何又污吾牛口？’当时高洁之士如此。此一句乃是‘洗耳不听亡国音’。”众官马上俱听文王谈讲先朝兴废，后国遗踪。君臣马上传杯共享，与民同乐，见了些桃红李白，鸭绿鹅黄，莺声嘹唳，紫燕呢喃，风吹不管游人醉，独有三春景色新。君臣正行，见一起樵夫作歌而来：

“风非乏兮麟非无，但嗟治世有隆污。龙兴云出虎生风，世人慢惜寻贤路。君不见耕莘野夫，心乐尧舜与犁锄。不遇成汤三使聘，怀抱经纶学左徒。又不见一傅岩子，萧萧蓑笠甘寒楚。当年不入高宗梦，霖雨终身藏版土。古来贤达辱而荣，岂特吾人终水浒。且横牧笛歌清昼，慢叱犁牛耕白云。王侯富贵斜晖下，仰天一笑俟明君。”

文王同文武马上听得歌声甚是奇异，内中必有大贤。命辛甲：“请贤者相见。”辛甲领命，拍马前来，见一伙樵人，言曰：“你们内中可有贤者？请出来与吾大王相见。”众人放下担儿，俱言：“内中并无贤者。”不一时文王马至。辛甲回复曰：“内无贤士。”文王曰：“歌韵清奇，内中岂无贤士？”中有一人曰：“此歌非吾所作。前边十里，地名磻溪，其中有一老叟，朝暮垂竿。小民等打柴回来，磻溪少歇，朝夕听唱此歌，众人听得熟了，故此随口唱出。不知大王驾临，有失回避，乃子民之罪也。”王曰：“既无贤士，尔等暂退。”众



“Hearing his words, the man immediately stood up, threw his gourd ladle on the ground and stamped on it, smashing it to pieces. Then he covered his ears with his hands and rushed to the stream where he began to wash his ears vigorously.

“As he washed, another man came up, leading an ox to the stream. ‘Sir, I must water my ox,’ the man called, but he just went on washing his ears. Perplexed, the man demanded, ‘How much dirt is in your ears that it takes you this long?’

“It was a long while before he finished washing and finally replied, ‘Emperor Yao asked me to succeed him to the throne and polluted my ears dreadfully. I had to wash them in the stream. I’m sorry I delayed you watering your ox.’

“The man immediately led his ox upstream. ‘Why do you take it up there?’ the ear-washer asked.

“The man replied, ‘By washing your ears, you’ve polluted the water. I don’t want to pollute the mouth of my ox!’

“This story of the lofty and pure is the origin of that line,” Prince Wen concluded the story.

The party continued on its way enjoying the spring scenery. Soon they saw a group of woodcutters coming towards them singing:

There’re certainly phoenixes and unicorns,  
But no ruler’s virtuous enough to see them.  
When the dragon rises clouds appear,  
And with the tiger comes the wind,  
But no one cares to seek out the talented.  
Remember Yi Yin that toiled in the fields,  
He thought of Yao and Shun beside the plough.  
Without the three visits from King Tang,  
He would have remained a recluse like hermit Zuo.  
Look at Fu Yue the mason, unknown and poor,  
Content to brave hardship in his cape of straw.  
Had King Gaozong not dreamed of him that year,  
He would have worked on stone all his life.  
Ever since the ancient times,  
Some have attained glory  
While others remained in obscurity.  
I’m not the only one  
Who might spend his life on  
The banks of a stream.  
I play my flute in the sunshine,  
And urge on the ox under white clouds,  
While kings, dukes, and the powerful,  
All fall as fate decrees.



皆去了。文王在马上只管思念。又行了一路，与文武把盏，兴不能尽。春光明媚，花柳芳妍，红绿交加，妆点春色。

正行之间，只见一人挑着一担柴唱歌而来：

“春水悠悠春草奇，金鱼未遇隐磻溪。世人不识高贤志，只作溪边老钓矶。”

文王听得歌声，嗟叹曰：“奇哉！此中必有大贤。”宜生在马上看那挑柴的好象猾民武吉。宜生曰：“主公，方才作歌者象似打死王相的武吉。”王曰：“大夫差矣！武吉已死万丈深潭之中，前演先天，岂有武吉还在之理。”宜生看的实了，随命辛免曰：“你是不是拿来。”辛免走马向前。武吉见是文王驾至，回避不及，把柴歇下，跪在尘埃。辛免看时，果然是武吉。辛免回见文王，启曰：“果是武吉。”文王闻言，满面通红，见吉大喝曰：“匹夫怎敢欺孤太甚！”随对宜生曰：“大夫，这等狡猾逆民，须当加等勘问。杀伤人命，躲重投轻，罪与杀人等。今非谓武吉逃躲，则先天数竟有差错，何以传世。”武吉泣拜在地，奏曰：“吉乃守法奉公之民，不敢狂悖。只因悞伤人命，前去问一老叟。离此间三里，地名磻溪，此人乃东海许州人氏，姓姜，名尚，字子牙，道号飞熊，叫小人拜他为师，传与小人：回家挖一坑，叫小人睡在里面，用草盖在身上，头前点一盏灯，脚后点一盏灯，草上用米一把撒在上面，睡到天明，只管打柴，再不妨事。千岁爷，‘蝼蚁尚且贪生，岂有人不惜命’。”只见宜生马上欠身贺曰：“恭喜大王！武吉今言此人，道号飞熊，正应灵台之兆。昔日商高宗夜梦飞熊而得传说；今日大王梦飞熊，应得子牙。今大王行乐，正应求贤。望大王宜赦武吉无罪，令武



Unconcerned, I smile on the heavens  
While awaiting an enlightened ruler.

Prince Wen found the song to be extremely well written, and once more thought there must be a talented man among the crowd. He ordered General Xin Jia to go and find him out. Xin Jia rode over. "Is there a talented man among you? If so, please come forward and see my master."

The woodcutters laid their loads on the ground. "Sorry, there's no talented man amongst us, General," they replied.

"They say 'there's no such man among them, Your Highness,'" Xin Jia told Prince Wen.

"How can that be?" Prince Wen asked them. "The song's excellent."

"We didn't write the song, Your Highness," one of the woodcutters replied. "About ten *li* from here at Panxi Stream there's an old man who fishes all day. When we return from woodcutting and rest there, we always hear him sing this song. We didn't realize Your Highness was coming. Please forgive us."

"If that's the case, you may all go," Prince Wen directed.

Riding along, he couldn't let the matter drop from his mind. Then a woodcutter appeared, carrying two loads of firewood on a shoulder-pole. He was singing happily:

Spring waters flow endlessly,  
Spring flowers are gay.  
Meeting no opportunity,  
A hermit I'll stay.  
No one knows my ideals,  
They see a mere fisherman  
Casting his line all day.

Hearing the song, Prince Wen sighed. "This at last must be the worthy man I'm seeking."

But San Yisheng looked at the woodcutter and exclaimed, "Your Highness, he looks just like Wu Ji, the man who killed Wang Xiang!"

"You must be wrong, Minister. My divination showed clearly that Wu Ji committed suicide. How can he still be alive?" Prince Wen objected.

San Yisheng looked at the woodcutter closely and was convinced that it was Wu Ji. He ordered that Wu Ji be arrested at once. Having come so unexpectedly upon the prince, Wu Ji had no time to dodge aside and hide himself. He could only put down his load and kneel before the general. As soon as Xin Mian ascertained his identity, he seized him and brought him before Prince Wen. The prince went scarlet with anger.

"You damned rascal! How dare you practice such deception on me!" he shouted, then said to San Yisheng, "Supreme Minister! Such a dishon-



吉往前林请贤士相见。”武吉叩头，飞奔林中去了。且说文王君臣，将至林前，不敢惊动贤士，离数箭之地，文王下马，同宜生步行入林。

且说武吉赶进林来，不见师父，心下着慌；又见文王进林。宜生问曰：“贤士在否？”武吉答曰：“方才在此，这会不见了。”文王曰：“贤士可有别居？”武吉道：“前边有一草舍。”武吉引文王驾至门首。文王以手抚门，犹恐造次。只见里面走一小童开门。文王笑脸问曰：“老师在否？”童曰：“不在了。同道友闲行。”文王问曰：“甚时回来？”童子答曰：“不定。或就来，或一二日，或三五日，萍梗浮踪，逢山遇水，或师或友，便谈玄论道，故无定期。”宜生在傍曰：“臣启主公：求贤聘杰，礼当虔诚。今日来意未诚，宜其远避。昔上古神农拜常桑，轩辕拜老彭，黄帝拜风后，汤拜伊尹，须当沐浴斋戒，择吉日迎聘，方是敬贤之礼。主公且暂请驾回。”文王曰：“大夫之言是也。”命武吉随驾入朝。文王行至溪边，见光景稀奇，林木幽旷，乃作诗曰：

“宰割山河布远猷，大贤抱负可同谋。此来不见垂竿叟，天下人愁几日休。”

又见绿柳之下，坐石之傍，鱼竿飘在水面，不见子牙，心中甚是悒悒。复作诗曰：

“求贤远出到溪头，不见贤人止见钩。一竹青丝垂绿柳，满江红日水空流。”



est citizen must be sent to court for trial. He's a murderer and has cheated the government. He must be seriously dealt with. He's held my divination in contempt! He must be severely punished as a warning to others."

Wu Ji kowtowed on the ground, weeping. "I've always strictly obeyed the law and have never dared to break it. I killed Wang Xiang accidentally. When I was set free, I went to Panxi Stream about three *li* from here and sought help from an old man called Jiang Shang or Jiang Ziya. His alternative name is Flying Bear. He took me as his disciple, then told me to go home and carry out the instructions he gave me. This freed me from any trouble and allowed me to live and work as usual. Your Highness! Even ants and worms struggle to live as long as they can, and men certainly cherish their lives even more. I beg you to forgive me."

San Yisheng immediately turned to Prince Wen. "I should congratulate you, Your Highness! The Flying Bear that Wu Ji just mentioned is the very same that you dreamed of on the Spiritual Terrace. King Gaozong was blessed with Fu Yue as his prime minister after dreaming of a flying bear. Now you've had a similar dream. I suggest that you forgive Wu Ji and let him lead the way to your new minister."

Prince Wen approved San Yisheng's proposal and set Wu Ji free. Wu Ji kowtowed in gratitude then hurried to the forest in search of Jiang Ziya. When they arrived at the forest, Prince Wen and his party dismounted so as not to startle the worthy recluse whom they were seeking. Accompanied by San Yisheng, Prince Wen continued on into the forest on foot.

Wu Ji grew flustered when he couldn't find his master anywhere.

"Is your master here?" San Yisheng asked.

"He was here just a moment ago, but I can't find him now." "Where does he live?" Prince Wen asked.

"In a cottage not far from here."

Wu Ji led them to the cottage, and Prince Wen knocked gently on the door. A young boy came out to meet them.

"Is your teacher at home," Prince Wen asked with a smile.

"No, he's not. He went out to stroll in the forest with a friend."

"Do you know when he'll be back?"

"He never returns at a definite time. Sometimes he returns in a few minutes, but sometimes he doesn't come back for days. He never has a fixed destination. He tours the lakes and streams or wanders in the deep mountains, or discusses the Way with his teachers and friends. It's impossible to know when he'll be back."

"Your Highness," said San Yisheng, "to engage a worthy man, one must be single-minded and sincere. Today we're on a pleasure trip and



文王犹留恋不舍。宜生复劝，文王方随众文武回朝。抵暮，进西岐，俱到殿前，文王传旨，令百官：“俱不必各归府第，都在殿廷宿斋三日，同去迎请大贤。”内有大将军南宫适进曰：“磻溪钓叟恐是虚名，大王未知真实，而以隆礼迎请，倘言过其实，不空费主公一片真诚，竟为愚夫所弄。依臣愚见，主公亦不必如此费心，待臣明日自去请来。如果才副其名，主公再以隆礼加之未晚。如果虚名，可叱而不用，又何必主公宿斋而后请见哉。”宜生在傍厉声言曰：“将军！此事不是如此说！方今天下荒荒，四海鼎沸，贤人君子多隐岩谷。今飞熊应兆，上天垂象，特赐大贤助我皇基，是西岐之福泽也。此时自当学古人求贤，破拘挛之习，岂得如近日欲贤人之自售哉。将军切不可说如是之言，使诸臣懈怠！”文王闻言大悦，曰：“大夫之言，正合孤意。”于是百官俱在殿廷歇宿三日，然后聘请子牙。后有诗曰：

西岐城中鼓乐喧，文王聘请太公贤。周家从此皇基固，四九为尊八百年。

文王从散宜生之言，斋宿三日。至第四日，沐浴整衣，极其精诚。文王端坐鸾舆，扛抬聘礼。文王摆列军马成行，前往磻溪，来迎子牙。封武吉为武德将军。笙簧满道，竟出



came here only by chance, so naturally we've failed to meet him. As we know from history, when Emperor Shen Nong called on Chang Sang, when Emperor Xuan Yuan called on Lao Peng, when Emperor Huang Di called on Feng Hou and when King Tang called on Yi Yin, they were all sincere and earnest. They abstained from meat, washed themselves thoroughly and chose an auspicious date for the visit. These are the rites that should be observed in order to show due respect to the talented. We had better return home now, choose a lucky date and come back here later."

"You're right, Minister," Prince Wen agreed, then ordered Wu Ji to come with him back to the palace.

When they got back to the stream, he composed a poem:

To rule, I need a long-term plan,  
And the assistance of a talented man.  
Today I've failed to see the sage,  
But when to meet him and end the misery?

When he saw Jiang Ziya's fishing rod still floating on the water, Prince Wen felt even more upset. He chanted:

I expected the sage,  
But I see only his rod.  
The green thread floats  
Beneath the verdant willow,  
And the stream sparkles,  
While its waters flow in vain.

Prince Wen lingered on, unwilling to leave, but San Yisheng finally persuaded him to return to the capital. Arriving at the palace at dusk, Prince Wen ordered that his ministers stay in the palace for three days to purify themselves, in preparation for the second visit.

General Nangong Kuo, however, voiced his disapproval. "The old fisherman may have a false reputation. How can we treat him with honor and glory without ascertaining the truth? If he's not as talented as we've been led to believe, Your Highness will be made a fool. As I see it, there's no need to take such pains. I'll go there tomorrow and ask him to come here to see you. If he's as talented as they say, it still won't be too late then to treat him with honor. Otherwise you may dismiss him. There's no need for you to fast and bathe."

"General! This matter cannot be dealt with like that. The state's in turmoil, and the people cannot live in peace. Many highly talented men have secluded themselves in the mountains. Our master's dream about the flying bear shows clearly that Heaven will bestow upon us a highly talented man to help us in our cause. We must follow the example of the ancient sage emperors and secure his service with exceptional sincerity. At a time like this, no talented man will voluntarily offer his service.





西岐。不知惊动多少人民，扶老携幼，来看迎贤。但见：

旗分五采，戈戟锵锵。笙簧拂道，犹如鹤唳鸾鸣；画鼓咚咚，一似雷声滚滚。对子马人人喜悦，金吾士个个欢忻。文在东，宽袍大袖；武在西，贯甲披坚。毛公遂、周公旦、召公奭、毕公荣，四贤佐主；伯达、伯适、叔夜、叔夏等八俊相随。城内氤氲香满道，郭外瑞彩结成祥。圣主降临西土地，不负五凤立岐山。万民齐享升平日，宇宙雍熙八百年。飞熊仁兆兴周室，感得文王聘大贤。

文王带领众文武出郭，径往磻溪而来。行至三十五里，早至林下。文王传旨：“士卒暂在林外扎住，不必声扬，恐惊动贤士。”文王下马，同散宜生步行，入得林来，只见子牙背坐溪边。文王悄悄的行至跟前，立于子牙之后。子牙明知驾临，故作歌曰：

“西风起兮白云飞，岁已暮兮将焉为？五凤鸣兮真主现，垂竿钓兮知我稀。”

子牙作歌毕。文王曰：“贤士快乐否？”子牙回头，看见文王，忙弃竿一旁，俯伏叩地曰：“子民不知驾临，有失迎候，望贤王恕尚之罪。”文王忙扶住，拜言曰：“久慕先生，前顾不虔，昌知不恭，今特斋戒，专诚拜谒，得睹先生尊颜，实昌之幸也。”命宜生：“扶贤士起。”子牙躬身而立。文王笑容携子牙至茅舍之中。子牙再拜。文王同拜。王曰：“久仰高明，未得相见。今幸接丰标，祇聆教诲，昌实三生之幸矣。”子牙拜而言曰：“尚乃老朽非才，不堪顾问，文不足安邦，武不足定国，荷蒙贤王枉顾，实辱鸾舆，有辜圣德。”宜生在旁曰：“先生不必过谦。吾君臣沐浴虔诚，特申微忱，专心聘请。今天下纷纷，定而又乱。当今天子，远贤近佞，

General, you mustn't say such things and slacken our efforts," San Yisheng refuted him.

Prince Wen was very pleased with San Yisheng's rebuttal and said, "You're quite right. I'm of exactly the same mind."

All the ministers remained in the palace for three days, cleansing their hearts and bodies. On the fourth day, they bathed, dressed in official robes and accompanied Prince Wen in his phoenix carriage at the head of a long caravan.

Wu Ji, now General of Military Virtue, led the whole procession down the streets lined with flute players. The whole city surged out to watch them.

They traveled thirty-five *li* to the forest. Prince Wen ordered his soldiers to halt and wait quietly outside the forest so as not to startle the sage. He himself dismounted and went on foot with San Yisheng. To his great delight, they came upon Jiang Ziya sitting beside the stream. Prince Wen walked up quietly and stood behind him. As he approached, Jiang Ziya deliberately began to sing:

The west wind blows and white clouds fly,  
Where shall I be when the year comes to an end?  
Five phoenixes sing as my true master appears,  
Few realize my talent as I sit here fishing.

When his song was over, Prince Wen asked softly, "Are you happy, my worthy man?"

Looking back and seeing the prince, Jiang Ziya instantly threw his fishing rod aside and knelt down. "Please forgive me. I didn't know Your Highness was approaching and failed to welcome you."

Prince Wen hastily helped him up and bowed. "I've admired you for a long time, but not having shown you sufficient respect, failed to meet you on my first visit. Now I've fasted in order to express my sincerity, and I'm happy that I have the honor to meet you today," he replied.

"I am old and lack talent. I can neither administer the country so that the people may live in peace nor subjugate the frontier tribes with the little knowledge I possess of civil or military affairs. I'm ashamed that you should have wasted your time in coming here."

"You mustn't be so modest," said San Yisheng. "To show our sincerity we've fasted and bathed in the hope that you'll accept an appointment by His Highness. At present the nation's disturbed and divided, and there's no one to bring an end to the chaos. King Zhou distances good ministers and maintains a close relationship with the minions. He wallows in wine and women and treats his subjects brutally. As a result, the marquises have rebelled and the people are unable to live in peace. My master worries about it all the time, unable to eat or sleep properly. He's long admired





荒淫酒色，残虐生民，诸侯变乱，民不聊生。吾主昼夜思维，不安枕席。久慕先生大德，侧隐溪岩，特具小聘，先生不弃，供佐明时，吾王幸甚，生民幸甚。先生何苦隐胸中之奇谋，忍生民之涂炭；何不一展绪余，哀此莪独，出水火而置之升平。此先生覆载之德，不世之仁也。”宜生将聘礼摆开。子牙看了，速命童儿收讫。宜生将鸾舆推过，请子牙登舆。子牙跪而告曰：“老臣荷蒙洪恩，以礼相聘，尚已感激非浅，怎敢乘坐鸾舆，越名僭分。这个断然不敢！”文王曰：“孤预先相设，特迓先生，必然乘坐，不负素心。”子牙再三不敢，推阻数次，决不敢坐。宜生见子牙坚意不从，乃对文王曰：“贤人既不乘舆，望主公从贤者之请。可将大王逍遥马请乘。主公乘舆。”王曰：“若是如此，有失孤数日之虔敬也。”彼此又推让数番，文王方乘舆，子牙乘马。欢声载道，士马轩昂。时值喜吉之辰，子牙时来，年近八十。有诗叹曰：

渭水溪头一钓竿，鬓霜皎皎两云幡。胸横星斗冲霄汉，气吐虹霓扫日寒。养老来归西伯下，避危拚弃旧王冠。自从梦入飞熊后，八百余年享奠安。

话说文王聘子牙，进了西岐，万民争看，无不忻悦。子牙至朝门下马。文王升殿，子牙朝贺毕。文王封子牙为右灵台丞相。子牙谢恩，偏殿设宴，百官相贺对饮。其时君臣有辅，龙虎有依。子牙治国有方，安民有法，件件有条，行行有款，西岐起造相府。此时有报传进五关。汜水关首将韩荣具疏往朝歌，言姜尚相周。不知子牙后事如何，且听下回分解。



your virtue and comes with gifts today in the hope that you'll help him rule the nation. If you accept, Prince Wen and the people will be overjoyed. Why not use your talents to lift the people from their suffering? The future generations will be forever grateful."

San Yisheng laid out the gifts they had brought, and Jiang Ziya accepted them. He expressed his thanks, and told his boy servant to take them to the inner room. San Yisheng drove Prince Wen's carriage to the cottage and invited Jiang Ziya to board it.

Jiang knelt down. "Your Highness, I'm deeply grateful for the great favor you've shown me. How could I dare to exceed the bounds of what's proper for a man of my status and ride in the prince's carriage? I would never dare do such a thing!"

"I arranged the carriage especially for you. You must ride in it so as not to thwart my good intentions," Prince Wen urged him.

But Jiang Ziya still refused to board the coach.

"Since the worthy man won't take your carriage, you may let him ride your horse while you yourself take the coach," San Yisheng suggested.

"That would belie the sincerity I've shown in the last several days," Prince Wen disapproved of the idea.

After more urging and more polite refusals, Prince Wen finally yielded. He took the carriage while Jiang Ziya rode on his horse. Guarded by infantry and cavalry men, Jiang Ziya was warmly greeted all along the way to the palace.

Fortune smiled on Jiang Ziya at the age of eighty. Reaching the palace, King Wen immediately held court. After the exchange of usual courtesies, he appointed Jiang Ziya prime minister of the West Grand Dukedom. Jiang Ziya expressed his thanks and then attended a banquet in his honor. All the ministers offered their congratulations.

Jiang Ziya ruled with discipline, law, and virtue, and the dukedom prospered. Work was begun on a new Prime Minister's mansion in the capital.

News of the developments in West Qi soon reached the five passes, and Commander Han Rong of Sishui Pass immediately sent a messenger to Zhaoge.

If you want to know what became of Jiang Ziya, you must read the next chapter.





## 第二十五回

### 苏妲己请妖赴宴

诗曰：

鹿台只望接神仙，岂料妖狐降绮筵。浊骨不能超浊世，凡心怎得出凡筌。希徒弄巧欺明哲，孰意招尤剪秽羶。惟有昏庸殷纣拙，反听苏氏杀先贤。

话说韩荣知文王聘请子牙相周，忙修本差官往朝歌。非止一日，进城来，差官往文书房来下本。那日看本者乃比干丞相。比干见此本，姜尚相周一节，沉吟不语，仰天叹息曰：“姜尚素有大志，今佐西周，其心不小。此本不可不奏。”比干抱本往摘星楼来候旨。纣王宣比干进见。王曰：“皇叔有何奏章？”比干奏曰：“汜水关总兵官韩荣一本，言姬昌礼聘姜尚为相，其志不小。东伯侯反于东鲁之乡；南伯侯屯兵三山之地；西伯姬昌若有变乱，此时正谓刀兵四起，百姓思乱。况水旱不时，民贫军乏，库藏空虚。况闻太师远征北地，胜败未分，真国事多艰，君臣交省之时。愿陛下圣意上裁，请旨定夺。”王曰：“候朕临殿，与众卿共议。”君臣正论国事，只见当驾官奏曰：“北伯侯崇侯虎候旨。”命传旨：“宣侯虎上楼。”王曰：“卿有何奏章？”侯虎奏曰：“奉旨监造鹿台，整造二年零四个月，今已完工，特来复命。”纣



## Chapter 25

### Banquet for Specters in the Palace

The messenger arrived at Zhaoge a few days later, and presented the report to Bi Gan. As he read, Bi Gan groaned and fell silent. He looked towards Heaven with a sigh.

"Jiang Ziya is so talented and has such great ambitions, he's bound to be a serious threat to us. I must report this to His Majesty at once," he decided. He took the report and went to the Star Picking Mansion. King Zhou summoned him to step forward.

"What do you wish to report, Uncle?" King Zhou asked.

"Han Rong has sent an urgent report that the West Grand Duke Ji Chang has appointed Jiang Shang as his prime minister to realize his treacherous ambitions. The East Grand Duke's already rebelling in East Lu and the South Grand Duke's attacking Sanshan Pass. Should Ji Chang rise in revolt as well, the whole nation would be ravaged by war and the people may be incited to join the uprisings, endangering our safety. Besides, we've been often troubled lately by floods and drought. The people are impoverished, the army is exhausted and the royal treasury is empty. Finally, Grand Tutor Wen is still fighting rebels in the northern district without any notable success. This is a critical moment for the nation, and we should consider things very carefully."

"I shall hold court and discuss matters with all the high officials," King Zhou answered.

Just then a royal attendant reported that "Chong Houhu requests an audience with the king." King Zhou ordered that he be admitted. "What do you have to report, Duke?" King Zhou asked when Chong Houhu entered.

"By your order, I've been overseeing the construction of the Happy Terrace. Now after two years and four months, it's nearly completed. I'm here to tell you the good news," Chong Houhu said proudly.







王大喜，“此台非卿之力，终不能如是之速。”侯虎曰：“臣昼夜督工，焉敢怠玩，故此成工之速。”王曰：“目今姜尚相周，其志不小，汜水关总兵韩荣有本来说；为今之计，如之奈何！卿有何谋，可除姬昌大患？”侯虎奏曰：“姬昌何能！姜尚何物！井底之蛙，所见不大；萤火之光，其亮不远。名为相周，犹寒蝉之抱枯杨，不久俱尽。陛下若以兵加之，使天下诸侯耻笑。据臣观之，无能为耳。愿陛下不必与之较可也。”王曰：“卿言甚善。”纣王又问曰：“鹿台已完，朕当幸之。”侯虎奏曰：“特请圣驾观看。”纣王甚喜，“二卿可暂往台下，候朕与皇后同往。”王传旨：“排銮驾往鹿台玩赏。”有诗为证，诗曰：

鹿台高耸透云霄，断送成汤根与苗。土木工兴人失望，  
黎民怨起鬼应妖。食人无厌崇侯恶，献媚逢迎费仲梟。

勾引狐狸歌夜月，商朝一似水中飘。

话说纣王与妲己同坐七香车，宫人随驾，侍女纷纷，到得鹿台，果然华丽。君后下车，两边扶侍上台。真是瑶池紫府，玉阙珠楼，说甚么蓬壶方丈！团团俱是白石砌就，周围尽是玛瑙妆成。楼阁重重，显雕檐碧瓦；亭台叠叠，皆兽马金环。殿当中嵌几样明珠，夜放光华，空中照耀；左右尽铺设俱是美玉良金，辉煌闪烁。比干随行，在台观看，台上不知费几许钱粮，无限宝玩，可怜民膏民脂，弃之无用之地。想台中间不知陷害了多少冤魂屈鬼。又见纣王携妲己入内庭。比干看罢鹿台，不胜嗟叹。有赋为证，赋曰：

台高插汉，榭耸凌云：九曲栏杆，饰玉雕金光彩彩；千层楼阁，朝星映月影溶溶。怪草奇花，香馥四时不卸；



King Zhou was delighted. "Without your effort, the Happy Terrace could never have been finished so quickly."

"I've been diligent, not permitting the slightest laxation on the part of the workers."

"Han Rong of Sishui Pass has reported that Ji Chang's appointed Jiang Shang as his prime minister. What should I do to eradicate this threat?" the king asked.

"What ability does Ji Chang have? What's Jiang Shang to worry about? They're frogs at the bottom of a well, very limited in their outlook, or glow-worms, capable of only an insignificant glimmer of light. Though Jiang Shang's prime minister, he'll soon be a winter cicada on a withered willow tree. You needn't worry about it. All the nobles in the country would laugh at you should you send your troops. They can do you no harm."

"You're quite right," King Zhou said, then added, "Since the Happy Terrace has been completed, I would like to look it over."

"We're awaiting your inspection."

"You and Bi Gan may both withdraw. My queen and I will go straightway to the terrace."

King Zhou and Daji rode together in the Seven-Fragrance Coach, followed by a long procession of maids and servants. On arrival, they found to their delight that the Happy Terrace was really magnificent. When they alighted and had been helped up to the terrace, they looked round, pleased to find that it was just like the Purple Palace in a fairyland.

Its outer walls were made entirely of marble and agate. Elegant towers and halls with blue-tiled roofs and exquisitely carved eaves led onto gorgeous pavilions and terraces. The center of the ceiling in each hall was inlaid with bright pearls that glowed brilliantly in the dark, turning night into day. All the furniture and ornaments were made of the finest jade and gold.

A member of the inspection party, Bi Gan thought only of the enormous cost of the construction, and how the people had suffered to provide such luxuries. How many ghosts of those who died in its construction must be lingering about the terrace! Watching King Zhou, with Daji on his arm, enter the inner hall, he sighed deeply. The tyrant had forced the whole country to work solely for him. The people suffered merely to satisfy his personal whims.



殊禽异兽，声扬十里传闻。游宴者恣情欢乐；供力者劳瘁艰辛！涂壁脂泥，俱是万民之膏血；华堂采色，尽收百姓之精神。绮罗锦席，空尽织女机杼；丝竹管弦，变作野夫啼哭。真是以天下奉一人，须信独夫残万姓。

比干在台上，忽见纣王传旨奏乐饮宴，赐比干、侯虎筵席。二臣饮罢数杯，谢酒下台。不表。

且说妲己与纣王酣饮。王曰：“爱卿曾言鹿台造完，自有神仙、仙子、仙姬俱来行乐；今台已造完成，不识神仙、仙子，可一日一至乎？”这一句话原是当时妲己要与玉石琵琶精报讎，将此鹿台图献与纣王，要害子牙，故将邪言惑诱纣王；岂知作耍成真，不期今日工完，纣王欲想神仙，故问妲己。妲己只得朦胧应曰：“神仙、仙子，乃清虚有道之士，须待月色圆满，光华皎洁，碧天无翳，方肯至此。”纣王曰：“今乃初十日，料定十四、五夜，月华圆满，必定光辉，使朕会一会神仙、仙子，何如？”妲己不敢强辩，随口应承。此时纣王在台上，贪欢取乐，淫泆无休。从来有福者，福德多生，无福者，妖孽广积。奢侈淫泆，乃丧身之药。纣王日夜纵施，全无忌惮。妲己自纣王要见神仙、仙子之类，着实挠心，日夕不安。其日乃是九月十三日，三更时分，妲己候纣王睡熟，将元形出窍；一阵风声，来至朝歌南门外，离城三十五里轩辕坟内。妲己元形至此，众狐狸齐来迎接。又见九头雉鸡精出来相见。雉鸡精道：“姐姐为何到此？你在深院皇宫受享无穷之福，何尝思念我等在此凄凉！”妲己道：“妹妹，我虽偏你们，朝朝侍天子，夜夜伴君王，未尝不思念你等。如今天子造完鹿台，要会仙姬、仙子；我思一计，想起妹妹与众孩儿们，有会变者，或变神仙，或变仙子、仙姬，去鹿台受享天子九龙宴席；不会变者，自安其命，在家看守。俟其日，妹妹同众孩儿们来。”雉鸡精答道：“我有些需事，不能领席；算将来只得三十九名会变的。”妲己分付停



King Zhou ordered music and a feast and kept Bi Gan and Chong Houhu with them to celebrate. When both men had left, the king continued drinking with Daji. "My dear love! Do you remember telling me that once the Happy Terrace was completed, immortals and fairies would come and enjoy themselves with us? Now the terrace has been finished. Can you tell me when they'll come?"

Daji had said this only to deceive the king and destroy Jiang Ziya in revenge for the Lute specter. She never imagined that he would remember what she had said. All she could do was answer vaguely, "Immortals and fairies are all pure, modest and virtuous. They'll come here only when the moon's full and bright and the sky's clear."

"It's the tenth day of the month. On the fifteenth there'll be a full moon and the night will be bright. Arrange for me to meet them then. How about it, dear?"

Daji dared not argue and promised to arrange it.

King Zhou wallowed in unrestrained sexual pleasure with Daji on the Happy Terrace. Since ancient times, the virtuous have lived long while debauchers have met an early death. King Zhou, however, held no misgivings and spent day and night in the arms of the fox sprite.

But Daji was most uneasy. She had to think of a way to satisfy his desire for beautiful fairies. On the night of the thirteenth day, when King Zhou was sound asleep, she resumed her original form and traveled on a gust of wind beyond the south gate of Zhaoge to the grave mound of Emperor Xuanyuan. She was welcomed by the nine-headed pheasant.

"What makes you come here?" the pheasant specter asked. "You enjoy boundless pleasure in the palace. What made you remember us, desolate and lonely in this bleak place?"

"Oh, Sister! I've never forgotten you all, though I serve the king day and night and enjoy endless pleasures. The king has built a Happy Terrace and wants to meet beautiful fairies there. I've thought of a plan involving all of you. Those of you who can must transform into immortals and fairies and attend the banquet on the Happy Terrace. Those who cannot must be content to stay here."

"I myself can't be there, as I've some important business to attend to. There are only thirty-nine here who will be able to transform themselves," the pheasant specter said.



当，风声响处，依旧回宫，人还本窍。纣王大醉，那知妖精出入，一宿天明。次日，纣王问妲己曰：“明日是十五夜，正是月满之辰，不识群仙可能至否？”妲己奏曰：“明日治宴三十九席，排三层，摆在鹿台，候神仙降临。陛下若会仙家，寿添无算。”纣王大喜。王问曰：“神仙降临，可命一臣斟酒陪宴。”妲己曰：“须得一大量大臣，方可陪席。”王曰：“合朝文武之内，止有比干量洪。”传旨：“宣亚相比干。”不一时，比干至台下朝见。纣王曰：“明日命皇叔陪群仙筵宴，至月上，台下候旨。”比干领旨，不知怎样陪神仙？糊涂不明。仰天叹息：“昏君！社稷这等狼狈，国事日见颠危，今又痴心逆想，要会神仙；似此又是妖言，岂是国家吉兆！”比干回府，总不知所出。

且说纣王次日传旨：“打点筵宴，安排台上，三十九席俱朝上摆列，十三席一层，摆列三层。”纣王分付，布列停妥。纣王恨不得将太阳速送西山，皎月忙升东土。九月十五日抵暮，比干朝服往台下候旨。且说纣王见日已西沉，月光东上，纣王大喜，如得万斛珠玉一般，携妲己于台上，看九龙筵席，真乃是烹龙炮凤珍羞味，酒海肴山色色新。席已完备，纣王、妲己入内坐欢饮，候神仙前来。妲己奏曰：“但群仙至此，陛下不可出见；如泄天机，恐后诸仙不肯再降。”王曰：“御妻之言是也。”话犹未了，将近一更时分，只听得四下里风响。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

妖云四起罩乾坤，冷雾阴霾天地昏。纣王台前心胆战，苏妃目下子孙尊。只知饮宴多生福，孰料贪杯惹灭门。怪气已随王气散，至今遗笑鹿台魂。



After a detailed discussion, Daji returned to the palace on a gust of wind and lay down again beside the king, who was still in a drunken stupor.

The next day, King Zhou remembered Daji's promise. "It'll be fifteenth tomorrow, and the moon will be full. Are you sure the immortals will come?"

"Set thirty-nine seats for the immortals. Your Majesty will enjoy a long life if you meet them."

King Zhou was overjoyed. "Shall we assign an official to serve them?"

"Only a high ranking minister with a large capacity for wine is qualified," Daji replied.

"The only minister who can drink a great deal is Bi Gan," King Zhou said and immediately summoned him. When Bi Gan came to the Happy Terrace, King Zhou told him, "Uncle, I would like you to come here tomorrow evening to meet fairies and immortals. You should be here as soon as the moon rises."

The order left Bi Gan totally bemused. He gazed towards the heavens. "Stupid tyrant! The dynasty's in critical danger and on the brink of collapse, yet he idiotically dreams of meeting fairies! He's been listening to rubbish again. It's not a good omen for the kingdom!"

He sighed, and returned home dejectedly, not knowing what to do.

On the following day, King Zhou ordered, "Prepare for the feast. There should be thirty-nine seats for the fairy guests. They're to be in three rows, thirteen seats each."

When everything was ready, King Zhou was anxious and excited, longing for the sun to set and the moon to rise. At dusk Bi Gan put on his official robes and made his way to the Happy Terrace as the king had ordered. Seeing the moon finally rising in the east, King Zhou was as happy as if he had gained a treasure house of pearls and jade. He took Daji on his arm and ascended the terrace, where the tables were laid with all kinds of delicacies and fine wine. King Zhou and Daji went into the banquet hall to drink and wait for the arrival of the fairies.

"Your Majesty! You shouldn't be present when they arrive. If their divine way is known, they won't visit here again," Daji warned him.

"You're right, Queen."

Just then they heard a great wind howling around them and realized that the immortals had already arrived. The foxes living in the gravemound



这些在轩辕坟内狐狸，采天地之灵气，受日月之精华，或一、二百年者，或三、五百年者，今并化作仙子、仙姬，神仙体象而来。那些妖气，霎时间，把一轮明月雾了。风声大作，犹如虎吼一般。只听得台上飘飘的落下人来。那月光渐渐的现出。妲己悄悄启曰：“仙子来了。”慌的纣王隔绣帘一瞧，内中袍分五色，各穿青、黄、赤、白、黑，内有戴鱼尾冠者，九扬巾者，一字巾者，陀头打扮者，双丫髻者；内有盘龙云髻如仙子、仙姬者。纣王在帘内观之，龙心大悦。只听有一仙人言曰：“众位道友，稽首了。”众仙答礼曰：“今蒙纣王设席，宴吾辈于鹿台，诚为厚赐。但愿国祚千年胜，皇基万万秋！”妲己在里面传旨：“宣陪宴官上台。”比干上台，月光下一看，果然如此，个个有仙丰道骨，人人像不老长生。自思：“此事实难解也！人像两真，我比干只得向前行礼。”内有一道人曰：“先生何人？”比干答曰：“卑职亚相比干，奉旨陪宴。”道人曰：“既是有缘来此会，赐寿一千秋。”比干听说，心下着疑。内传旨：“斟酒。”比干执金壶，斟酒三十九席已完，身居相位，不识妖气，怀抱金壶，侍于侧伴。这些狐狸，俱仗变化，全无忌惮，虽然服色变了，那些狐狸骚臭变不得；比干只闻狐骚臭。比干自想：“神仙乃六根清静之体，为何气秽冲人！”比干叹息：“当今天子无道，妖生怪出，与国不祥。”正沉思之间，妲己命陪宴官奉大杯。比干依次奉三十九席，每席奉一杯，陪一杯。比干有百斗之量，随奉过一回。妲己又曰：“陪宴官再奉一杯。”比干每一席又是一杯。诸妖连饮二杯。此杯乃是劝杯。诸妖自不曾吃过这皇封御酒，狐狸量大者，还招架的住；量小



of Emperor Xuanyuan had absorbed the essences of Heaven, earth, the sun and moon for hundreds of years, and were now capable of assuming the likenesses of immortals. As they traveled through the air, the moon was hidden by their spectral emanations, and a strong wind howled like the cry of an angry tiger. As they floated down onto the terrace one by one, the moon gradually came back into sight.

Daji said quietly, "Look, here come the fairies."

King Zhou became so excited that he couldn't resist peeping at them through the curtain. He heard one of the immortals saying, "Greetings, my Taoist friends."

"Greetings," the others replied. "Today we're honored to attend this banquet, so graciously prepared by King Zhou. May this dynasty last 1,000 years!"

"Bi Gan, mount the terrace," Daji ordered.

Bi Gan went upstairs and looked around under the bright moon. There, sure enough, he saw a crowd of elegant beings with the appearance and demeanor of celestials. He wondered to himself, "This is really very strange. They look like real fairies in human form. I must go forward and greet them."

"Who're you, sir?" one of the Taoists asked Bi Gan.

"I'm Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan. I'm here to serve you."

"Since you're destined to meet us, I'll grant you 1,000 years of life," the Taoist immortal said generously.

Bi Gan poured out wine and toasted each of them. Though he was vice prime minister, he didn't realize that the guests were not fairies but specters. Holding the gold pitcher in his arms, he waited on them.

In human form, the fox sprites moved about freely. But though they were dressed smartly in flowing robes and Taoist coronets, they could find no way of changing the foul smell of their bodies. Bi Gan smelt the vile odor.

"Immortals are always pure in heart, unpolluted by the effects of the six sensations, and their bodies are clean and fragrant. How can these fairies smell so?" he wondered, and sighed inwardly. "The king's unprincipled, and specters are able to appear wherever they like. It's an omen of ill fortune for the state."

As he was deep in thought, Daji ordered him to start the second round





者，招架不住。妖怪醉了，把尾巴都拖下来只是晃。妲己不知好歹，只是要他的子孙吃；但不知此酒发作起来，禁持不住，都要现出原形来。比干奉第二层酒，头一层都挂下尾巴，都是狐狸尾。此时月照正中，比干着实留神，看得明白，已是追悔不及，暗暗叫苦，想：“我身居相位，反见妖怪叩头，羞杀我也！”比干闻狐骚臭难当，暗暗切齿。且说妲己在帘内看着陪宴官奉了三杯，见小狐狸醉将来了，若现出原身来，不好看相。妲己传旨：“陪宴官暂下台去，不必奉酒；任从众仙各归洞府。”比干领旨下台，郁郁不乐；出了内庭，过了分宫楼、显庆殿、嘉善殿、九间殿。殿内有宿夜官员。出了午门上马，前边有一对红纱灯引道。未及行了二里，前面火把灯笼，锵锵士马，原来是武成王黄飞虎巡督皇城。比干上前，武成王下马，惊问比干曰：“丞相有甚紧急事，这时节才出午门？”比干顿足道：“老大人！国乱邦倾，纷纷精怪，浊乱朝廷，如何是好！昨晚天子宣我陪仙子、仙姬宴，果然有一更月上，奉旨上台，看一起道人，各穿青、黄、赤、白、黑衣，也有些仙丰道骨之像。孰知原来是一阵狐狸精。那精连饮两三大杯，把尾巴挂将下来，月下明明的看得是实。如此光景，怎生奈何！”黄飞虎曰：“丞相请回，未将明日自有理会。”比干回府。黄飞虎命黄明、周纪、龙



of toasts. Bi Gan filled each of the thirty-nine cups and once more drained a cup with each fairy. He had a wonderful capacity and drank two rounds without even getting tipsy. But the fox sprites had never before tasted the strong fragrant wine stored in the palace. Those with a good capacity could manage to control themselves, but others could not withstand its effects and began to lose their power of transformation. As they became drunk, their fox tails reappeared, hanging down behind them.

Daji did not realize at first what was happening, and just wanted the members of her family to drink their fill. Bi Gan was serving in the second row and clearly saw the fox tails hanging down from the guests in the first row. He was filled with remorse.

“What a great humiliation! I’m a prime minister but I’ve bowed to these beasts,” he groaned inwardly.

He ground his teeth in shame and anger at the vile stench. From behind the curtain, Daji realized that some of the younger fox sprites were getting drunk and in danger of revealing their true forms.

“Bi Gan may leave the terrace. No more drinking and the immortals may return home as they please,” she ordered hurriedly.

Bi Gan was extremely unhappy. He left the terrace and walked through the heavily guarded palace to the gate, where he mounted his horse and set out behind two attendants carrying lanterns. After about two *li*, he saw a long column of torches and lanterns coming from the opposite direction. It was Prince Huang Feihu on night patrol. As Bi Gan rode forward, Huang Feihu dismounted.

“What urgent matter makes you leave the palace at this late hour?” Prince Huang asked.

Bi Gan stamped his foot, and said with regret, “Your Highness! With the state in chaos and on the point of collapse, specters are making havoc in the palace. What shall we do? I was ordered by His Majesty to serve the so-called immortals on the Happy Terrace. I got there and ascended the terrace as the moon rose in the east. There I saw a number of Taoists dressed in blue, yellow, red, white and black robes. I never guessed that they were all fox specters. But they were not good drinkers, and as they became drunk their tails reappeared. I could see them clearly in the moonlight. What shall we do now?”

“You needn’t worry, Prime Minister. Go home and rest. I’ll deal with it tomorrow,” Huang Feihu answered.



环、吴乾：“你四人各带二十名健卒，散在东、南、西、北地方；看那些道人出那一门，务踪其巢穴，定要真实回报。”四将领命去讫。武成王回府。

且说众狐狸酒在腹内，闹将起来，架不得妖风，起不得朦雾，勉强架出午门，一个个都落下来，拖拖拽拽，挤挤挨挨，三三五五，拥簇而来。出南门，将至五更，南门开了，周纪远远的黑影之中，明明看见。随后哨探：离城三十五里，轩辕坟傍，有一石洞，那些道人、仙子，都爬进去了。次日，黄飞虎升殿，四将回令。周纪曰：“昨在南门，探得道人有三、四十名，俱进轩辕坟石洞内去了。探的是实，请令定夺。”黄飞虎即命周纪：“领三百家将，尽带柴薪，塞住石洞，将柴架起来烧，到下午来回令。”周纪领令去讫。门官报道：“亚相到了。”飞虎迎请到庭上行礼，分宾主坐下。茶罢，黄飞虎将周纪一事说明。比干大喜称谢。二人在此谈论国家事务。武成王置酒，与比干丞相传杯相叙，不觉就至午后。周纪来见，“奉令放火，烧到午时，特来回令。”飞虎曰：“末将同丞相一往如何？”比干曰：“愿随车驾。”二人带领家将，同出南门，三十五里，来至坟前，烟火未灭。黄将军下骑，命家将将火灭了，用挠钩挞将出来。众家将领命。不题。且说这些狐狸吃了酒的死也甘心，还有不会变的，无辜俱死于一穴。有诗为证，诗曰：

欢饮传杯在鹿台，狐狸何事化仙来。只因秽气人看破，惹下焦身粉骨灾。

众家将不一时将些狐狸挞出，而有焦毛烂肉，臭不可闻。比干对武成王曰：“这许多狐狸，还有未焦者，拣选好的，将皮



After Bi Gan departed, Huang Feihu ordered Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Qian, "Each of you take twenty-four men and patrol the districts around the east, west, north and south gates. When those Taoists leave, follow them back to their lair. When you've found where they live, come back and report to me immediately."

Intoxicated with the strong wine, the fox sprites found it difficult to fly on the wind. Though they tried their hardest, they had just passed the palace gate when they dropped to the ground. From there they dragged themselves along, stumbling and bumping into each other, to the south gate, which was opened at dawn.

They were clearly seen there by General Zhou Ji. He followed them and saw them stop at the gravemound of Emperor Xuanyuan. They then crawled one by one into a large hole and disappeared from sight.

The next day when Huang Feihu came to his office, General Zhou Ji reported what he had seen the previous night. He immediately ordered Zhou Ji to take 300 soldiers, each with a load of firewood, to the gravemound, set fire to the hole and then block the entrance. He demanded a report of the results that afternoon.

That same morning Bi Gan called on Huang Feihu. After tea was served, Prince Huang told him what he had ordered Zhou Ji to do. The two men then discussed state affairs and drank together until afternoon. When Zhou Ji came to report the success of his mission, they went together to inspect the scene.

At the gravemound, they found the fire still burning. Prince Huang ordered his men to put out the fire and take out the corpses of the fox sprites. The acrid smell of burnt fur and flesh filled the air.

"Pick out those with unscorched fur and skin them. I'll make a fur robe for His Majesty. It'll be a good warning to Daji and help His Majesty to his senses. It'll show how loyal we are," Bi Gan suggested.

They returned home in high spirits, drank their fill and then parted.

剥下来，造一袍袄献与当今，以惑妲己之心，使妖魅不安于君前，必至内乱；使天子醒悟，或知贬谪妲己，也见我等忠诚。”二臣共议，大悦。各归府第，欢饮尽醉而散。古语云：不管闲事终无事，只怕你谋里招殃祸及身。不知后来凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



There is an old saying, "Mind your own business and you'll remain free from trouble; meddlers bring disaster upon themselves."

If you want to know what happened next, read the next chapter.





## 第二十六回

### 妲己设计害比干

诗曰：

朔风一夜碎琼瑶，丞相乘机进锦貂，只望回心除恶孽，孰知触忌作君妖。刳心已定千秋案，宠妒难羞万载谣。可惜成汤贤圣业，化为流水逐春潮！

且说比干将狐狸皮硝熟，造成一件袍袄，只候严冬进袍。——此是九月。瞬息光阴，一如捻指，不觉时近仲冬。纣王同妲己宴乐于鹿台之上。那日只见：彤云密布，凜冽朔风。乱舞梨花，乾坤银砌；纷纷瑞雪，遍满朝歌。怎见得好雪：空中银珠乱洒，半天柳絮交加。行人拂袖舞梨花，满树千枝银压。公子围炉酌酒，仙翁扫雪烹茶，夜来朔风透窗纱，也不知是雪是梅花。飕飕冷气侵人，片片六花盖地。瓦楞鸳鸯轻拂粉，炉焚兰麝可添绵。云迷四野催妆晚，暖客红炉玉影偏。此雪似梨花，似杨花，似梅花，似琼花：似梨花白；似杨花细；似梅花无香；似琼花珍贵。此雪有声，有色，有气，有味：有声者如蚕食叶；有气者冷浸心骨；有色者比美玉无瑕；有味者能识来年禾稼。团团如滚珠，碎剪如玉屑，一片似凤耳，两片似鹅毛，三片攒三，四片攒四，五片似梅花，六片如六萼。此雪下到稠密处，只见江河一道青。此雪有富，有贵，有贫，有贱：富贵者红炉添寿炭，暖阁饮羊羔；贫贱者厨中无米，灶下无柴。非是老天传敕旨，分明降下杀人刀。凜凜寒威雾气棼，国家祥瑞落纷纭。须臾四野难分辨，顷刻千山尽是云。银世界，玉乾坤，空中隐跃自为群。此雪落到三更后，尽道丰年已十分。



## Chapter 26

### Daji Plots Revenge

Bi Gan had the skins tanned and a robe made. Soon winter came. One day, dark clouds covered the sky and a strong north wind rose up. A heavy snow fell over Zhaoge like silvery pearls or fluffy willow catkins. Pedestrians waved their sleeves to fend off the snowflakes. Nobles sat around a stove or before a fireplace enjoying delicious food.

King Zhou and Daji were drinking happily when an attendant came to report, "Bi Gan requests to see you."

When Bi Gan had offered his respects, King Zhou asked him, "It's snowing so heavily. Why don't you stay indoors, Uncle? What's so urgent that you must see me in this weather?"

"The Happy Terrace's so high that it touches the clouds and must be cold in the winter. I'm worried about your health, and have come to present you this fur robe as a small token of my loyalty."

"You're getting on in years and should keep it for yourself. That you should present it to me is real proof of your loyalty and affection," King Zhou said appreciatively.





纣王与妲己正饮宴赏雪，当驾官启奏：“比干候旨。”王曰：“宣比干上台。”比干行礼毕。王曰：“六花杂出，舞雪纷纭，皇叔不在府第酌酒御寒，有何奏章，冒雪至此？”比干奏曰：“鹿台高接霄汉，风雪严冬，臣忧陛下龙体生寒，特献袍袄，与陛下御冷驱寒，少尽臣微悃。”王曰：“皇叔年高，当留自用；今进与孤，足征忠爱！”命“取来。”比干下台，将朱盘高捧，面是大红，里是毛色。比干亲手抖开，与纣王穿上。帝大悦：“朕为天子，富有四海，实缺此袍御寒。今皇叔之功，世莫大焉！”纣王传旨：“赐酒共乐鹿台。”话说妲己在绣帘内观见，都是他子孙的皮，不觉一时间刀剜肺腑，火燎肝肠，此苦可对谁言！暗骂：“比干老贼！吾子孙就享了当今酒席，与老贼何干？你明明欺我，把皮毛惑吾之心。我不把你这老贼剜出你的心来，也不算中宫之后！”泪如雨下。不表妲己深恨比干。且说纣王与比干把盏。比干辞酒，谢恩下台。纣王着袍进内，妲己接住。王曰：“鹿台寒冷，比干进袍，甚称朕怀。”妲己奏曰：“妾有愚言，不识陛下可容纳否？陛下乃龙体，怎披此狐狸皮毛？不当稳便，甚为褻尊。”王曰：“御妻之言是也。”遂脱将下来贮库。——此乃是妲己见物伤情，其心不忍，故为此语。因自沉思曰：“昔日欲造鹿台，为报琵琶妹子之仇，岂知惹出这场是非，连子孙俱剿灭殆尽……”心中甚是痛恨，一心要害比干，无计可施。

话说时光易度，一日，妲己在鹿台陪宴，陡生一计，将面上妖容彻去，比平常娇媚不过十分中一二。大抵往日如牡丹初绽，芍药迎风，梨花带雨，海棠醉日，艳冶非常。纣王



Bi Gan then went downstairs, collected the tray on which the robe was placed and reascended the terrace holding it high above his head. He then helped the king on with the scarlet satin fox fur-lined robe.

"Though I'm the king and own everything in the country, I have never had such an excellent fur robe for the winter. Uncle, you cannot have done me a greater service," King Zhou praised him with a smile, and asked Bi Gan to sit down to wine.

Peeping out from behind a curtain, Daji realized that all the fur was stripped from her relatives. She felt as if her heart was being pierced by a sword, but could pour out her grief to no one. She hated Bi Gan bitterly.

"You old bastard! What business is it of yours that I entertained my family! You're deliberately insulting me by displaying the fur before my very eyes. If I don't gouge your heart out, I won't remain queen of this palace!" she swore, tears pouring like rain.

After a few drinks Bi Gan thanked the king and then left the palace. King Zhou entered, still wearing his new robe. Daji came out to meet him.

"The Happy Terrace is so cold in winter, and I'm delighted to have this fur robe," the king said with satisfaction.

"I see things differently," said Daji. "I do hope that you'll consider my foolish opinion. Your Majesty's the dragon incarnate. How can you wear a robe of fur stripped from so mean an animal as the fox! This is not suitable and beneath your dignity."

"You're right, Queen," King Zhou said.

He immediately took off the robe and sent it to the royal treasure house. Daji had said this because she could not bear to see the king wearing the skins of her relatives.

"In order to avenge my sister, I proposed the building of the Happy Terrace. How could I have foreseen that it would lead to the slaughter of all my relatives," Daji thought, burning with hatred.

She made up her mind to destroy Bi Gan, but could not think of a way to achieve her aim. One day, Daji was drinking with King Zhou on the Happy Terrace when an idea sprang into her mind. With her magical power of transformation, she greatly reduced her beauty. She had been as beautiful as newly opened peonies or begonia flowers radiant in the morning sun, but now she retained only a fraction of her original beauty.



正饮酒间，谛视良久，见姐己容貌大不相同，不住盼睐。姐己曰：“陛下频顾贱妾残妆何也？”纣王笑而不言。姐己强之。纣王曰：“朕看爱卿容貌，真如娇花美玉，令人把玩，不忍释手。”姐己曰：“妾有何容色，不过蒙圣恩宠爱，故如此耳。妾有一结识义妹姓胡，名曰喜媚，如今在紫霄宫出家。妾之颜色，百不及一。”纣王原是爱酒色的，听得如此容貌，其心不觉欣悦，乃笑而问曰：“爱卿既有令妹，可能令朕一见否？”姐己曰：“喜媚乃是闺女，自幼出家，拜师学道，上洞府名山紫霄宫内修行，一刻焉能得至？”王曰：“托爱卿福庇，如何委曲，使朕一见，亦不负卿所举。”姐己曰：“当时同妾在冀州时，同房针线，喜媚出家，与妾作别，妾洒泪泣曰：‘今别妹妹，永不能相见矣！’喜媚曰：‘但拜师之后，若得五行之术，我送信香与你。姐姐欲要相见，焚此信香，吾当即至。’后来去了一年，果送信香一块。未及二月，蒙圣恩取上朝歌，侍陛下左右；一向忘却。方才陛下不言，妾亦不敢奏闻。”纣王大喜曰：“爱卿何不速取信香焚之？”姐己曰：“尚早。喜媚乃是仙家，非同凡俗；待明日，月下陈设茶果，妾身沐浴焚香相迎，方可。”王曰：“卿言甚是，不可褻渎。”纣王与姐己宴乐安寝。却说姐己至三更时分，现出元形，竟到轩辕坟中。只见雉鸡精接着，泣诉曰：“姐姐！因为你一席酒，断送了你的子孙尽灭，将皮都剥了去，你可知道？”姐己亦悲泣道：“妹妹！因我子孙受此沉冤，无处申报，寻思一计，须……如此如此，可将老贼取心，方遂吾愿。今



The king noticed it. He stared in wonder at her for a long time without uttering a word.

“Why do you stare at me in silence, Your Majesty?” Daji asked.

“Because I find you as lovely as flowers. I long to hold you in my arms and never let you go,” King Zhou said insincerely.

“I’m not as pretty as you say,” protested Daji. “As you love me very much, I appear beautiful in your eyes. But I’ve a sworn sister, Hu Ximei, a nun in the Purple Sky Nunnery. She’s at least a hundred times more beautiful than I.”

King Zhou could never resist women and wine. He was delighted to hear Daji’s description and asked with a smile, “Would you let me have the chance of meeting her, my love?”

“She’s a virgin maid. She’s studied the Way since her childhood with a nun in the Purple Sky Nunnery. It won’t be easy to get her to come here.”

“By your grace, you have to let me meet her once. I won’t be ungrateful for your service, my dear,” King Zhou begged.

“When I was at Jizhou, Hu Ximei and I lived in the same chamber and learned needlework together. When she left home to become a nun, I wept. But she comforted me and said, ‘If I ever learn the art of riding on the five elements, I’ll send some incense to you. Should you wish to see me, just burn the incense and I’ll come to you at once.’ She kept her promise and sent me the incense a year later. Yet I’ve never tried it, as soon after I was granted the divine favor of serving you in the palace. If you hadn’t suggested meeting her, I would never have dared to mention the matter,” Daji told him.

“Why don’t you get the incense and burn it straightway?” King Zhou urged.

“It’s still early. Hu Ximei’s a celestial, not an ordinary woman of this vulgar world. Let me do it tomorrow. I’ll wash my body clean and set tea and fruit on a table in the moonlight. Then I’ll burn the incense.”

“You’re right. We cannot blaspheme her,” King Zhou agreed.

Late that night, King Zhou slept soundly. Daji took the opportunity to resume her true form and went directly to the gravemound of Emperor Xuanyuan. She was met by the pheasant specter.

“Sister! Don’t you know that the royal feast you offered resulted in the slaughter of all your family! Some of them even had their skins stripped off!”



仗妹妹扶持，彼此各相护卫。我想你独自守此巢穴，也是寂寥，何不乘此机会，享皇宫血食，朝暮如常，何不为美。”雉鸡精深谢姐己曰：“既蒙姐姐抬举，敢不如命，明日即来。”姐己计较已定，依旧隐形回宫入窍，与纣王共寝。天明起来，正是纣王欢忭，专候今晚喜媚降临，恨不得把金乌赶下西山，去捧出东边玉兔来。至晚，纣王见华月初升，一天如洗，作诗曰：

“金运蝉光出海东，清幽宇宙彻长空。玉盘悬在碧天上，展放光辉散彩红。”

话说纣王与姐己在台上玩月，催逼姐己焚香。姐己曰：“妾虽焚香拜请，倘或喜媚来时，陛下当回避一时。恐凡俗不便，触彼回去，急切难来。待妾以言告过，再请陛下相见。”纣王曰：“但凭爱卿分付，一一如命。”姐己方净手焚香，做成圈套。将近一鼓时分，听半空风响，阴云密布，黑雾迷空，把一轮明月遮掩。一霎时，天昏地暗，寒气侵人。纣王惊疑，忙问姐己曰：“好风！一会儿翻转了天地。”姐己曰：“想必喜媚踏风云而来。”言未毕，只听空中有环珮之声，隐隐有人声坠落。姐己忙催纣王进里面，曰：“喜媚来矣。俟妾讲过，好请相见。”纣王只得进内殿，隔帘偷瞧。只见风声停息，月光之中，见一道姑穿大红八卦衣，丝绦麻履。况此月色复明，光彩皎洁，且是灯烛辉煌，常言“灯月之下看佳人，比白日更胜十倍”，只见此女肌如瑞雪，脸似朝霞，海棠丰韵，樱桃小口，香脸桃腮，光莹娇媚，色色动人。姐己向前曰：“妹妹来矣！”喜媚曰：“姐姐，贫道稽首了。”二人同至殿内，行礼坐下。茶罢，姐己曰：“昔日妹妹曾言，‘但



Daji wept too. "I shall avenge them, Sister. I've thought of a way to deal with the old bastard. I won't be satisfied until I have the heart taken from his breast. Let's help each other. All you have to do is.... You must be lonely here all by yourself. Why not take this chance to enjoy the pleasures of the palace? We can be together night and day. What could be better?"

"You're doing me a great favor. How could I refuse? I'll be there right on time tomorrow evening," the pheasant specter said gratefully.

Having arranged everything, Daji made her way back to the palace and returned to King Zhou's side without disturbing him. The king got up at daybreak, excited at the thought of meeting Hu Ximei that night. He waited impatiently all day, and when the moon finally rose, he wrote a poem to express his delight:

Over the East Sea shines the moon,  
The universe clear and transparent.  
Like a jade disc hanging in the sky,  
It radiates rainbows of hope and joy.

On the Happy Terrace, King Zhou urged Daji to burn the incense at once. Daji assented, but advised him, "You'd better conceal yourself, for Hu Ximei's a celestial. I'm afraid she might be offended by the presence of a mortal man. She might leave at once and never come here again. I'll have to tell her about you first."

"As you like, my dear love," King Zhou wholly agreed.

Daji then began to complete her trap. She washed her hands and burned the incense. At about the first watch, the wind began to whistle, dark clouds covered the moon and a murky fog filled the air. In an instant, the sky became dim and a bitter chill penetrated every corner of the palace.

"What a dreadful wind! It's creating havoc!" King Zhou cried in alarm.

"It's Hu Ximei riding here on the cloud and wind," Daji explained.

Just then, they heard the sweet tinkling of jade pendants and a thud as if someone was dropping from the air. Daji hurriedly urged King Zhou to conceal himself in the inner chamber. "Here comes Hu Ximei. Let me talk with her first."

King Zhou had no choice but to hide in an inner room, but he peeped out through the curtains. The wind soon dropped, and under the brilliant moon, he saw a Taoist nun, dressed in a pink robe, a silk belt and a pair of hemp shoes.

As the saying goes, "A woman looks much more beautiful under the



欲相会，只焚信香即至。’今果不失前言。得会尊容，妾之幸甚。”道姑曰：“贫道适闻信香一至，恐违前约，故此即速前来，幸恕唐突。”彼此逊谢。且说纣王再观喜媚之姿，复睹妲己之色，天地悬隔。纣王暗想：“但得喜媚同侍衾枕，便不做天子又有何妨。”心上甚是难过。只见妲己问喜媚曰：“妹妹是斋，是荤？”喜媚答曰：“是斋。”妲己传旨：“排上素斋来。”二人传杯叙话。灯光之下，故作妖娆。纣王看喜媚，真如蕊宫仙子，月窟嫦娥。把纣王只弄的魂游荡漾三千里，魄绕山河十万重，恨不能共语相陪，一口吞他下肚，抓耳挠腮，坐立不安，不知如何是好。纣王急得不耐烦，只是乱咳嗽。妲己已会其意，眼角传情，看着喜媚曰：“妹妹，妾有一言奉渎，不知妹妹可容纳否？”喜媚曰：“姐姐有何事分付？贫道领教。”妲己曰：“前者妾在天子面前，赞扬妹妹大德，天子喜不自胜，久欲一睹仙颜；今蒙不弃，慨赐降临，实出万幸。乞贤妹念天子渴想之怀，俯同一会，得领福慧，感戴不胜！今不敢唐突晋谒，托妾先容。不知妹妹意下如何？”喜媚曰：“妾系女流，况且出家，生俗不便相会，二来



soft moon than in the strong sunshine.” The king found her extraordinarily charming: her skin white as snow, her face like a begonia at dawn, her small cherry mouth and peach cheeks alluring, her bearing graceful and her manner sweet.

Daji moved forward and greeted her, “Sister, you’ve come!”

“Elder sister, how are you?” Hu Ximei replied.

Daji led her into an inner chamber. They exchanged courtesies and then sat down.

As they sipped tea, Daji said, “I burned the incense, and you’ve kept your promise. I appreciate it very much.”

“I came as soon as I smelt the incense. I apologize for intruding,” Hu Ximei answered courteously.

Comparing the two, King Zhou saw that Hu Ximei was a divine beauty and Daji a mere pretty mortal. He felt his heart quicken and his blood race.

“If I could sleep with Hu Ximei, I wouldn’t even regret losing my throne,” he said to himself.

“Do you eat vegetables or meat, Sister?” Daji asked.

“I prefer vegetables.”

Daji ordered a vegetarian banquet, and the two gossiped warmly and, knowing the king was watching them, behaved alluringly. The more he watched Hu from behind the curtain, the more the king felt she was a celestial come down from the moon palace. He longed to sit beside her, talk with her and embrace her. He pulled his ears and scratched his cheeks in frustration, unable to sit still for a second. Finally, he lost his patience and coughed meaningfully to indicate to Daji that he could not tolerate the situation any longer.

Daji understood clearly what it meant. She signaled to Hu with her eyes. “I’ve something to ask of you, Sister. I don’t know whether you’ll agree or not.”

“I’ll do whatever you instruct me to, Sister.”

“I’ve mentioned you to His Majesty several times, telling him of your great virtue. His Majesty greatly admires you and would like very much to meet you. Now that you’re here, would you agree to see His Majesty? He didn’t dare intrude without your prior consent and asked me to consult you first. What do you think, Sister?”

“I’m a woman; moreover, I’m a nun. I think it’s indecorous for me to meet a man, especially a stranger. Custom forbids anything to be passed by hand between a man and a woman. How could I meet and sit with him





男女不雅，且男女授受不亲，岂可同筵晤对，而不分内外之礼。”姐已曰：“不然。妹妹既系出家，原是‘超出三界外，不在五行中’，岂得以世俗男女分别而论。况天子系命于天，即天之子，总控万民，富有四海，率土皆臣，即神仙亦当让位。况我与你幼虽结拜，义实同胞，即以姐妹之情，就见天子，亦是亲道，这也无妨。”喜媚曰：“姐姐分付，请天子相见。”纣王闻“请”字，也等不得，就走出来了。纣王见道姑一躬，喜媚打一稽首相还。喜媚曰：“请天子坐。”纣王便傍坐在侧。二妖反上下坐了。灯光下，见喜媚两次三番启朱唇，一点樱桃，吐的是美孜孜一团和气；转秋波，双湾活水，送的是娇滴滴万种风情，把个纣王弄得心猿难按，意马驰缰，只急得一身香汗。姐已情知纣王欲火正炽，左右难捱，故意起身更衣。姐已上前曰：“陛下在此相陪，妾更衣就来。”纣王复转下坐，朝上觑面传杯。纣王灯下以眼角传情，那道姑面红微笑。纣王斟酒，双手奉于道姑；道姑接酒，吐袅娜声音答曰：“敢劳陛下！”纣王乘机将喜媚手腕一捻，道姑不语，把纣王魂灵儿都飞在九霄。纣王见是如此，便问曰：“朕同仙姑台前玩月，何如？”喜媚曰：“领教。”纣王复携喜媚手出台玩月。喜媚不辞。纣王心动，便搭住香肩，月下偎倚，情意甚密。纣王心中甚美，乃以言挑之曰：“仙姑何不弃此修行，而与令姐同住宫院，抛此清凉，且享富贵，朝夕欢娱，四时欢庆，岂不快乐！人生几何，乃自苦如此。仙姑意下如何？”喜媚只是不语。纣王见喜媚不甚推托，乃以手抹着喜媚胸膛，软绵绵，温润润，嫩嫩的腹皮，喜媚半推半就。纣王见他如此，双手抱搂，偏殿交欢，云雨



at the same table? It would surely be a violation of the rites," Hu Ximei refused resolutely.

"Not at all," Daji refuted. "Since you're a nun, you've already transcended the vulgar world. How can you still talk of differences between men and women? Besides, the king's the son of Heaven. He rules over millions of people and owns all the riches in the land. He has the privilege to meet whomever he wishes. As we're sworn sisters, he's your brother-in-law. There's nothing wrong with you meeting a close relative!"

"Then I'll do as you bid. I would be glad to meet His Majesty," Hu Ximei agreed at last.

Hearing that Hu Ximei did not object to meeting him, King Zhou rushed out at once. He bowed to the nun, and she returned his greeting. "Please take a seat, Your Majesty."

King Zhou sat down on the side, letting Daji and Hu Ximei take the seats of honor. In the bright lamplight, King Zhou was bewitched by Hu Ximei's sweet cherry lips and fragrant breath. She gazed at him seductively until he found it difficult to control his passion. Daji saw it all and stood up.

"Your Majesty, please accompany my sister for a while. I must go and change my clothes," she excused herself.

After Daji left, King Zhou poured Hu Ximei a cup of wine, fixing her with an amorous glance while the nun smiled and blushed. When the king passed her the cup, Hu Ximei reached out for it, murmuring, "You're too kind, Your Majesty."

The king immediately seized the chance to fondle her wrist. Hu Ximei said nothing, and the king was ecstatic, his soul soaring to the heavens. As Hu Ximei offered no resistance, he became more audacious and proposed a stroll on the terrace.

"As you wish, Your Majesty."

They walked out arm in arm to enjoy the moon. The king ventured his hand on her shoulder, and she leaned on him enticingly. The king felt encouraged.

"My dear fairy! Won't you forsake your nunnery and live with your sister in the palace? You can enjoy wealth, power, and pleasure all year long and leave your bleak, lonely life behind. As life's so short, don't make yourself suffer like this. What do you think?"

He put out feelers, but Hu Ximei remained silent.

Seeing that she expressed no objection, King Zhou began to stroke her breasts and belly. She still offered no resistance. He seized her in his



几度，方才歇手。正起身整衣，忽见妲己出来，一眼看见喜媚乌云散乱，气喘吁吁，妲己曰：“妹妹为何这等模样？”纣王曰：“实不相瞒，方才与喜媚姻缘相凑。天降赤绳，你妹妹同侍朕左右，朝暮欢娱，共享无穷之福。此亦是爱卿荐拔喜媚之功，朕心嘉悦，不敢有忘。”即传旨重新排宴，三人共饮，至五更方共寝鹿台之上。有诗为证，诗曰：

国破妖氛现，家亡纣主昏。不听君子谏，专纳佞臣言。

先爱狐狸女，又宠雉鸡精。比干逢此怪，目下死无存。

话说纣王暗纳喜媚，外官不知。天子不理国事，荒淫内阙，外廷隔绝，真是君门万里。武成王虽执掌大帅之权，提调朝歌四十八万人马，镇守都城，虽然丹心为国，其如不能面君谏言，彼此隔绝，无可奈何，只行长叹而已。一日，见报说，东伯侯姜文焕分兵攻打野马岭，要取陈塘关，黄总兵令鲁雄领兵十万守把去讫。不表。

且说纣王自得喜媚，朝朝云雨，夜夜酣歌，那里把社稷为重。那日，二妖正在台上用早膳，忽见妲己大叫一声，跌倒在地；把纣王惊骇汗出，吓的面如土色。见妲己口中喷出血水来，闭目不言，面皮俱紫；纣王曰：“御妻自随朕数年，未有此疾。今日如何得这等凶症？”喜媚故意点头叹曰：“姐姐旧疾发了！”帝问：“媚美人为何知御妻有此旧疾？”喜媚奏曰：“昔在冀州时，彼此俱是闺女。姐姐常有心痛之疾，一发即死。冀州有一医士，姓张，名元；他用药最妙，有玲珑心一片煎汤吃下，此疾即愈。”纣王曰：“传旨宣冀州医士张元。”喜媚奏曰：“陛下之言差矣！朝歌到冀州有多少路！一去一来，至少月余。耽误日期，焉能救得？除非朝歌之地，若有玲珑心，取他一片，登时可救；如无，须臾即死。”纣王曰：“玲珑心谁人知道？”喜媚曰：“妾身曾拜师，善能推



arms, carried her to a side court, laid her on a bed and fully indulged his passions. They were straightening their clothes when Daji reappeared, and saw Hu Ximei's dishevelled hair and heaving breast.

"What have you been doing to get yourself into this state?" Daji joked happily.

"I won't deceive you," said King Zhou. "I just made love to Hu Ximei as predestined by Heaven. Henceforth, the two of you will serve me together. I won't forget the great service you've done me by recommending her."

He ordered another banquet, feasted, and then bedded down with them both.

The adultery between the king and Hu Ximei was not known to the ministers beyond the palace. King Zhou cared nothing about his government but devoted himself entirely to Daji and Hu Ximei.

Though Huang Feihu commanded 480,000 soldiers, even he had no chance to see the king. One day news arrived that Jiang Wenhuan was attacking Wild Horse Mountain with the intention of capturing Chentang Pass. He immediately sent General Lu Xiong to reinforce the front with 100,000 soldiers.

Ever since he obtained Hu Ximei, King Zhou spent day and night making love, drinking and singing. One day, they were eating breakfast when Daji shrieked and fell to the ground, spitting blood. Her face turned purple.

"In all her years with me, she's never had such an affliction. What's wrong with her today?" King Zhou cried, frightened to see his love in such a state.

Hu Ximei replied with a sigh, "Oh, how awful it is! The old disease is attacking her."

"How do you know it's an old disease, my beauty?"

"Back in Jizhou, she suffered often from heart attacks and nearly died. The doctor Zhang Yuan cured her with a soup made from a human heart with seven fine outlets."

"Send for Dr. Zhang Yuan at once," the king ordered.

"Oh, that won't do, Your Majesty," cried Hu Ximei. "Jizhou's so far away that it would be at least a month before he could get here. She'll die unless we can find a man in Zhaoge with such a heart."

"How can we do that?"

"I can find him by divination, Your Majesty."



算。”纣王大喜，命喜媚速算。这妖精故意掐指，算来算去，奏曰：“朝中止有一大臣，官居显爵，位极人臣；只怕此人舍不得，不肯救拔娘娘。”纣王曰：“是谁？快说！”喜媚曰：“惟亚相比干乃是玲珑七窍之心。”纣王曰：“比干乃是皇叔，一宗嫡派，难道不肯借一片玲珑心为御妻起沉痾之疾？速发御札，宣比干！”差官飞往相府。

比干闲居无事，正为国家颠倒，朝政失宜，心中筹画。忽堂候官敲云板，传御札，立宣见驾。比干接札，礼毕，曰：“天使先回，午门会齐。”比干自思：“朝中无事，御札为何甚速？”话未了，又报：“御札又至！”比干又接过。不一时，连到五次御札。比干疑惑：“有甚紧急，连发五札？”正沉思间，又报：“御札又至！”持札者乃奉御官陈青。比干接毕，问青曰：“何事要紧，用札六次？”青曰：“丞相在上，方今国势渐衰，鹿台又新纳道姑，名曰胡喜媚。今日早膳，娘娘偶然心疼疾发，看看气绝。胡喜媚陈说，要得玲珑心一片，煎羹汤，吃下即愈。皇上言：‘玲珑心如何晓得？’胡喜媚会算，算丞相是玲珑心。因此发札六道，要借老千岁的心一片，急救娘娘，故此紧急。”比干听说，惊得心胆俱落，自思：“事已如此——”乃曰：“陈青，你在午门等候，我即至也。”比干进内，见夫人孟氏曰：“夫人，你好生看顾孩儿微子德！我死之后，你母子好生守我家训，不可造次。朝中并无一人矣！”言罢泪如雨下。夫人大惊，问曰：“大王何故出此不吉之言？”比干曰：“昏君听信姐已有疾，欲取吾心作羹汤，岂有生还之理！”夫人垂泪曰：“官居相位，又无欺诳，上不犯法于天子，下不贪酷于军民，大王忠诚节孝，素表著



Greatly delighted, King Zhou ordered her to make the divination at once. Hu then moved her fingers as if she were divining.

"There's only one man with such a heart, a high-ranking minister. But I don't think he would be willing to give it up," she told him.

"Who is this man? Tell me quickly," King Zhou demanded.

"Only Vice Prime Minister Bi Gan possesses the heart that can save my sister."

"Bi Gan's my uncle. He should be generous enough to give up a piece of his heart to let my queen live. Send for him immediately," the king ordered.

Bi Gan was at home that day, deliberating the deplorable state of the kingdom when the decree arrived summoning him to see the king. Within a few minutes another four urgent decrees arrived with the same order. Bi Gan was perplexed, and when the sixth royal messenger arrived, he asked him what had happened. The messenger told him the whole story about Hu Ximei and her prescription for Daji's strange illness. Bi Gan was very much frightened, but could not disobey the royal orders. He dismissed the messenger and went to bid farewell to his wife, Madame Meng.

"Wife! Take good care of our children. After my death you must observe the rules I've laid down for the family and do nothing to violate the law. It's a pity that there will be nobody to take my place in the government," he said in tears.

Madame Meng was greatly alarmed. "Why do you speak so inauspiciously, my lord?"

"Daji's ill, and the tyrant wants to use my heart to cure her disease. How can I return home again alive?" Bi Gan replied sadly.

Madame Meng burst into tears. "But you're a loyal prime minister. You've never cheated the king, nor the people, nor the soldiers. You are innocent. How can you be sent to such a cruel death!"

His son You Zi, weeping, comforted him. "Don't worry, Father. Jiang Ziya said you would meet ill fortune and left that note in your study. He said it would help you out of harm in case of emergency."



于人耳目，有何罪恶，岂至犯取心惨刑。”有子在傍泣曰：“父王勿忧。方才孩儿想起，昔日姜子牙与父王看气色，曾说不利，留一筒帖，见在书房，说：‘至危急两难之际，进退无路，方可看筒，亦可解救。’”比干方悟曰：“呀！几乎一时忘了！”忙开书房门，见砚台下压着一帖，取出观之；——上书明白。——比干曰：“速取火来！”取水一碗，将子牙符烧在水里，比干饮于腹中。忙穿朝服上马，往午门来。不表。

且说六札宣比干，陈青泄了内事，惊得一城军民官宰，尽知取比干心作羹汤。话说武成王黄元帅同诸大臣俱在午门，只见比干乘马，飞至午门下马。百官忙问其故。比干曰：“据陈青说……取心一节。吾总不知。”百官随比干至大殿。比干径往鹿台下候旨。纣王立候，听得比干至，命：“宣上台来。”比干行礼毕。王曰：“御妻偶发沉痾心痛之疾，惟玲珑心可愈。皇叔有玲珑心，乞借一片作汤，治疾若愈，此功莫大焉。”比干曰：“心是何物？”纣王曰：“乃皇叔腹内之心。”比干怒奏曰：“心者一身之主，隐于肺内，坐六叶两耳之中，百恶无侵，一侵即死。心正，手足正；心不正，则手足不正。心乃万物之灵苗，四象变化之根本。吾心有伤，岂有生路！老臣虽死不惜，只是社稷丘墟，贤能尽绝。今昏君听新纳妖妇之言，赐吾摘心之祸；只怕比干在，江山在；比干存，社稷存！”纣王曰：“皇叔之言差矣！总只借心一片，无伤于事，何必多言？”比干厉声大叫曰：“昏君！你是酒色昏迷，糊涂狗彘！心去一片，吾即死矣！比干不犯剜心之罪，如何无辜遭此非殃！”纣王怒曰：“君叫臣死，不死不忠。台上



Bi Gan rushed to his study, found the note and hastily read it through. Following the instructions, he burned the charm drawn on it and drank the ashes mixed with water. He then donned his robes and rode on horseback to the palace.

The news spread quickly in the capital, and all the ministers were shocked. Bi Gan was met by Huang Feihu and many other ministers at the palace gate. They besieged him with questions as he dismounted.

"According to the royal messenger," he explained, "His Majesty's in need of my heart to cure Daji. But I don't know the real reason."

On the Happy Terrace, King Zhou told Bi Gan, "Uncle! My queen's suffering from a serious heart disease. She can only be cured by a piece of flesh from a heart with seven fine outlets. As you've got such a heart, you may lend me a piece of it. If she's cured, your merit will be unsurpassed."

"The heart is the major organ of the body. How can I live if my heart's damaged? Your mind is befuddled by wine and sex. If you finish me off, nothing will save the state," Bi Gan shouted angrily.

King Zhou was furious. "When the king demands your death, you must die. If you don't obey my orders, I'll order my guards to take your heart out by force."

"Daji, you cheap hussy! I'll feel no shame when I meet the deceased kings after my death," Bi Gan swore and called for a sword. When it was handed to him, he kowtowed towards the Ancestral Temple and wept. "Royal ancestors! Little did you know that your dynasty would perish at the hand of your twenty-eighth generation descendant! But it's





毁君，有亏臣节！如不从朕命，武士，拿下去，取了心来！”比干大骂：“姐已贱人！我死冥下，见先帝无愧矣！”喝：“左右，取剑来与我！”奉御将剑递与比干。比干接剑在手，望太庙大拜八拜，泣曰：“成汤先王，岂知殷受断送成汤二十八世天下！非臣之不忠耳！”遂解带现躯，将剑往脐中刺入，将腹剖开，其血不流。比干将手入腹内，摘心而出，望下一掷，掩袍不语，面似淡金，径下台去了。且说诸大臣在殿前打听比干之事。众臣纷纷，议论朝廷失政，只听的殿后有脚迹之声。黄元帅望后一观，见比干出来，心中大喜。飞虎曰：“老殿下，事体如何？”比干不语。百官迎上前来。比干低首速行，面如金纸，径过九龙桥去，出午门。常随见比干出朝，将马伺候。比干上马，往北门去了。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。

not because I, your servant, was disloyal. There's nothing I can do anymore."

He loosened his clothes and thrust the sword into his chest, opening a wide cavity. He reached his hand inside, pulled his heart out and threw it on the ground. Not a single drop of blood flowed from the wound. His face ashen, he straightened his robes and left the terrace without a word.

When the ministers waiting in front of the palace heard his footsteps and saw him striding towards them, they were overjoyed. Huang Feihu rushed forward. "Your Highness, how did it go?"

Bi Gan did not reply. As his colleagues came forward to meet him, he lowered his head, passed by them with swift steps and walked rapidly to the palace gate. There he took the reins from his attendant, mounted his horse and rode towards the north gate of the capital.

If you want to know what became of him, you must read the next chapter.



## 第二十七回

### 太师回兵陈十策

诗曰：

天运循环有替隆，任他胜算总无功。方才少进和平策，又道提兵欲破戎。数定岂容人力转，期逢自与鬼神同。从来逆孽终归尽，纵有回天手亦穷。

话说黄元帅见比干如此不言，径出午门，命黄明、周纪：“随看老殿下往何处去。”二将领命去讫。且说比干马走如飞，只闻的风响之声。约走五七里之遥，只听的路傍有一妇人手提筐篮，叫卖无心菜。比干忽听得，勒马问曰：“怎么是无心菜？”妇人曰：“民妇卖的是无心菜。”比干曰：“人若是无心，如何？”妇人曰：“人若无心，即死。”比干大叫一声，撞了马来，一腔热血溅尘埃。有诗为证：

御札飞来实可伤，姐已设计害忠良。比干倚仗昆仑术，卜兆焉知在路傍。

话说卖菜妇人见比干落马，不知何故，慌的躲了。黄明、周纪二骑马，赶出北门，看见比干死于马下，一地鲜血，溅染衣袍，仰面朝天，瞑目无语。二将不知所以然——当时子牙留下筒帖，上书符印，将符烧灰入水，服于腹中，护其五脏，故能乘马出北门耳。见卖无心菜的，比干问其因由，妇人言“人无心即死”，若是回道“人无心还活”，比干亦可不死。比干取心，下台，上马，血不出者，乃子牙符水玄妙



## Chapter 27

### Return of the Grand Tutor

When Bi Gan strode through the palace gate in complete silence, Huang Feihu ordered General Zhou Ji and Huang Ming to follow him.

Bi Gan set off at a fast gallop, the wind whistling in his ears. He had traveled about five *li* when he heard a woman hawker at the side of the road selling heartless cabbages. "The cabbage I'm selling has no heart in it, sir."

"What if a man has no heart?" Bi Gan asked her.

"A man with no heart will die at once," the hawker replied.

Bi Gan uttered a loud cry and fell from his horse, blood pouring from his chest. The woman hawker was terrified and fled the scene immediately. Arriving moments later, Generals Huang Ming and Zhou Ji found Bi Gan lying dead under his horse, his robes stained with blood. They were puzzled, not knowing what had happened.

Before his departure from Bi Gan's residence, Jiang Ziya had written a note, on which a charm was drawn and his seal was stamped. Once Bi Gan drank the ashes, his internal organs were protected from harm. Even when his heart had been removed, Bi Gan was still able to ride out of the north gate. Had the woman hawker replied "A man can live even without a heart," Bi Gan could have continued on his way. It was the miraculous charm that allowed Bi Gan to pull his heart out, leave the palace, and ride out of the north gate without losing a drop of blood.





之功。话说黄明、周纪飞马赶出北门，见如此行径，回至九间殿来，回黄元帅说“见比干……如此而死”，说了一遍。微子等百官无不伤情。内有一下大夫厉声大叫：“昏君无事擅杀叔父，纪纲绝灭！吾自见驾！”此官乃是夏招，自往鹿台，不听宣召，径上台来。纣王将比干心立等做羹汤，又被夏招上台见驾。纣王出见夏招，见招竖目扬眉，圆睁两眼，面君不拜。纣王曰：“夏招，无旨有何事见朕？”招曰：“特来弑君！”纣王笑曰：“自古以来，那有臣弑君之理！”招曰：“昏君！你也知道无弑君之理！世上那有无故侄杀叔父之情！比干乃昏君之嫡叔，帝乙之弟，今听妖妇妲己之谋，取比干心作羹，诚为弑叔父！臣弑昏君，以尽成汤之法！”招把鹿台上挂的飞云剑掣在手，望纣王劈面杀来。纣王乃文武全才，岂惧此一个儒生，将身一闪让过，夏招扑个空。纣王大怒，命：“武士拿下！”武士领旨，方来擒拿。夏招大叫曰：“不必来！昏君杀叔父，招宜弑君，此事之当然。”众人向前。夏招一跳，撞下鹿台。可怜粉骨碎身，死于非命！有诗赞曰：

夏招怒发气当嗔，只为君王行不仁。不惜残躯拚直谏，可怜血肉已成尘！忠心自合留千古，赤胆应知重万钧，今日虽投台下死，芳名常共日华新！

不说夏招死于鹿台之下，且说各文武听得夏招尽节鹿台之下，又去北门外收比干之尸。世子微子德披麻执杖，拜谢百官。内有武成王黄飞虎、微子、箕子，伤悼不已；将比干用棺椁停在北门外，搭起芦棚，扬纸旛安定魂魄。

忽听探马报：“闻太师奏凯回朝。”百官齐上马，迎接十里。至辕门，军政司报太师：“百官迎接辕门。”太师传令：“百官暂回，午门相会。”众官速至午门等候。闻太师乘墨麒麟往北门而进，忽见纸旛飘荡，便问左右：“是何人灵



Huang Ming and Zhou Ji returned to the palace and reported to Huang Feihu what had happened. All the other ministers were heartbroken.

"The tyrant's unjustly killed his uncle, violating both the law and the ethics. I'm going to see him right now," Xia Zhao, a junior minister, cried.

He did not wait for the king's permission but made his way straight onto the Happy Terrace, where King Zhou was waiting anxiously for the heart soup. Xia Zhao approached scowling. He did not kneel down or offer greetings.

"Xia Zhao, why do you intrude without an order for admission?" King Zhou demanded.

"I've come to kill you!" Xia Zhou cried.

King Zhou burst into laughter. "There's never been any provision in the rites for a minister to kill a king."

"You damned tyrant! You know clearly that there's no provision in the rites for a minister to kill a king, but is there any provision in the world for a nephew to kill his uncle without cause? Bi Gan's your uncle, the younger brother of your father. How could you have conspired with that enchantress Daji to have his heart taken out! As you killed your uncle, I will kill you now," Xia Zhao said.

He grabbed the flying-cloud sword that was hanging on the wall and rushed forward to stab King Zhou. The king was highly skilled in martial arts. He dodged to one side, and Xia Zhao's blow landed in mid-air.

"Guards, seize him!"

As the guards ran forward, Xia Zhao yelled: "Don't touch me! The tyrant's killed his uncle, and it's only natural that I kill him."

When the guards were almost on him, Xia Zhao bravely threw himself off the Happy Terrace, dying instantly. Hearing of the tragedy, the ministers were deeply grieved. They had helped bring back Bi Gan's corpse from beyond the north gate, and his relatives began to enact the funeral rites. As the funeral was in progress, news came that Grand Tutor Wen was returning to Zhaoge after a great victory. All the ministers immediately mounted and rode ten *li* out of the capital to meet him.

When they reached the camp gate, Grand Tutor Wen sent word that he would meet his colleagues at the palace gate. They hurried back to the palace gate. Grand Tutor Wen set out too on his pure black unicorn. At the north gate, he caught sight of the paper penants of a funeral procession. "Whose funeral is this?"



枢？”左右答曰：“是亚相比干之枢。”太师惊讶。进城，又见鹿台高耸，光景嵯峨。到了午门，见百官道傍相迎。太师下骑，笑脸答曰：“列位老大人，仲远征北海，离别多年，景物城中尽多变了。”武成王曰：“太师在北，可闻天下离乱，朝政荒芜，诸侯四叛？”太师曰：“年年见报，月月通知，只心悬两地，北海难平。托赖天地之恩，主上威福，方灭北海妖孽。吾恨肋无双翼，飞至都城面君为快。”众官随至九间大殿。太师见龙书案何以生尘，寂静凄凉，又见殿东边黄邓邓大圆柱子。太师问执殿官：“黄邓邓大柱子，为何放在殿上？”执殿官跪而答曰：“此大柱子，所置新刑，名曰炮烙。”太师又问：“何为炮烙？”只见武成王向前言曰：“太师，此刑乃铜造成的，有三层火门。凡有谏官阻事，尽忠无私，赤心为国的，言天子之过，说天子不仁，正天子不义，便将此物将炭烧红，用铁索将人两手抱住铜柱，左右裹将过去，四肢烙为灰烬，殿前臭不可闻。为造此刑：忠良隐遁，贤者退位，能者去国，忠者死节。”闻太师听得此言，心中大怒，三目交辉，只急得当中那一只神目睁开，白光现尺余远近。命执殿官：“鸣钟鼓请驾！”百官大悦。

话说纣王自取比干心作汤，疗妲己之疾，一时全愈，正在台上温存。当驾官启奏曰：“九间殿鸣钟鼓，乃闻太师还朝，请驾登殿。”纣王闻得此说，默然不语，随传旨：“排銮舆临轩。”车御、保驾等官，扈拥天子登九间大殿。百官朝贺。闻太师进礼，山呼毕。纣王秉圭谕曰：“太师远征北海，登涉艰苦，鞍马劳心，运筹无暇，欣然奏捷，其功不小。”太师拜伏于地曰：“仰仗天威，感陛下洪福，灭怪除妖，斩逆



"It's for Bi Gan," they replied.

Grand Tutor Wen was astonished. He entered the capital and saw the gorgeous Happy Terrace towering above the other buildings. His colleagues lined the roadside at the palace gate to meet him. He dismounted.

"Venerable colleagues! I've been away for many years. I find everything's changed here in the capital," he said with a smile.

"Grand Tutor, have you heard about the rebellions and the situation here when you were in the north?" Huang Feihu asked.

"I was well informed from month to month and I read all the reports, but I was occupied on the front. Only by the grace of Heaven and the fortune of His Majesty was I able to destroy the enemy. How I longed to have wings to fly back to the capital and discuss these matters with the king!"

Entering the Grand Hall, Grand Tutor Wen wondered at its bleak silence and the thick dust on the king's desk. He noticed the tall, yellow pillars standing on the east side of the hall.

"What are those big, yellow pillars for? Why are they standing in the royal court?" he asked the guards.

"Grand Tutor, it's a new torture invented by His Majesty. They're burning pillars."

"What's a burning pillar?" Grand Tutor Wen inquired further.

Huang Feihu moved forward. "Grand tutor, the burning pillar's made of brass with three fire channels. Any minister who dares to point out the faults committed by His Majesty is subjected to this torture. Charcoal and wood are used to heat the pillar red hot. Then the victim's bound hand and foot to the pillar and burnt to ashes. This torture makes the loyal retire to hermitage and the good and talented resign their posts. Many have left the capital, and many have sacrificed their lives in vain."

Grand Tutor Wen was greatly enraged. His three eyes flashed angrily, and the divine third eye in the middle of his forehead emitted a powerful white light. He ordered the royal guards: "Strike the bells and ask His Majesty to ascend the throne at once."

The officials were delighted.

After drinking the soup made from Bi Gan's heart, Daji had completely recovered. She was dallying with King Zhou when an attendant came in. "The bells are ringing at the Grand Hall to announce the victorious return of Grand Tutor Wen. He demands your presence."

King Zhou was silent for a long time then ordered: "Prepare the royal carriage. I'll go straightway." After greetings were over, he said: "Grand Tutor Wen! You went through a lot in the North Sea district. You've





剿贼。征伐十五年，臣捐躯报国，不敢有负先王。臣在外闻得内庭浊乱，各路诸侯反叛，使臣心悬两地，恨不得插翅面君。今覩天颜，其情可实？”纣王曰：“姜桓楚谋逆弑朕，鄂崇禹纵恶为叛，俱已伏诛；但其子肆虐，不尊国法，乱离各地，使关隘扰攘，甚是不法，良可痛恨！”太师奏曰：“姜桓楚篡位，鄂崇禹纵恶，谁可以为证？”纣王无辞以对。太师近前复奏曰：“臣征在外，苦战多年；陛下仁政不修，荒淫酒色，诛谏杀忠，致使诸侯反乱。臣且启陛下：殿东放着黄邓邓的是甚东西？”纣王曰：“谏臣恶口忤君，沽忠买直，故设此刑，名曰炮烙。”太师又启：“臣进都城，见高耸青霄是甚所在？”纣王曰：“朕至暑天，苦无憩地；造此行乐，亦观高望远，不致耳目蔽塞耳。名曰鹿台。”太师听罢，心中甚是不平，乃大言曰：“今四海荒荒，诸侯齐叛，皆陛下有负于诸侯，故有离叛之患。今陛下仁政不施，恩泽不降，忠谏不纳，近奸色而远贤良，恋歌饮而不分昼夜，广施土木，民连累而反，军绝粮而散。文武军民，乃君王四肢。四肢顺，其身康健；四肢不顺，其身缺残。君以礼待臣，臣以忠事君。想先王在日，四夷拱手，八方宾服，享太平乐业之丰，受巩固皇基之福。今陛下登临大宝，残虐万姓，诸侯离叛，民乱军怨。北海刀兵，使臣一片苦心，殄灭妖党。今陛下不修德政，一意荒淫，数年以来，不知朝纲大变，国体全无，使臣日劳边疆，正如辛勤立燕巢于朽幕耳。惟陛下思之！臣今回朝，自有治国之策，容臣再陈。陛下暂请回宫。”纣王无言可对，只得进宫阙去了。

且说闻太师立于殿上曰：“众位先生，大夫，不必回府



achieved victory and your service to the state's truly meritorious."

Grand Tutor Wen knelt on the ground and reported: "Thanks to your good fortune, I've been able to eliminate all the rebels in the North Sea district. I was always ready to sacrifice my body for the state to return the kindness shown me by the late king. However, when I was on the front I heard that the palace was in chaos and the dukedoms beyond the capital had rebelled. I was deeply worried and longed to fly back. Now that I'm back, I'm eager to know all the facts."

"Both Jiang Huanchu and E Chongyu were sentenced to death, as Jiang conspired to slay me and E was in a plot to rebel against the government. Moreover, their sons are treacherous and lawless. They've risen in rebellion and threaten our passes," King Zhou explained.

"Who are the witnesses to prove that Jiang Huanchu conspired to seize the throne and E Chongyu plotted to rebel against the government?" Grand Tutor Wen enquired.

King Zhou remained silent, unable to give an answer.

The Grand Tutor went forward and snapped: "When I was fighting the rebels, you didn't reign with virtue. You devoted yourself to wine and women, you slaughtered the loyal. What are those yellow things standing there?"

"The ministers insulted me with wicked lies. I was forced to deal with them with those burning pillars," the king murmured.

The Grand Tutor asked further: "When I entered the city I saw a lofty building. What is it?"

"In the hot summer days I suffered from the heat and had no cool place to rest, so I had to build it. Not only can I relax there, but I can also see into the distance and keep in touch with the outside world. I named it the Happy Terrace for this reason."

Grand Tutor Wen was very upset. "Why is the state in disorder? Why are the numerous nobles in rebellion? You've failed in your duty towards them! You rule without benevolence, and won't listen to them. You associate with the minions and keep away from the loyal. You indulge yourself in wine and women day and night. You make people suffer through large construction projects. You're the cause behind their rebellions! I remember clearly the reign of our late king. All the frontier tribes offered allegiance to us, foreign countries made obeisance and people lived in peace and prosperity. But what have you done? I hope you'll give the



第，俱同老夫到府内共议。吾自有处。”百官跟随，同至太师府，到银安殿上，各依次坐下。太师就问：“列位大夫，诸先生，老夫在外多年，远征北地，不得在朝，但我闻仲感先王托孤之重，不敢有负遗言。但当今颠倒宪章，有不道之事。各以公论，不可架捏。我自有平定之说。”内有一大夫孙容，欠身言曰：“太师在上：朝廷听谗远贤，沉湎酒色，弑忠阻谏，殄灭彝伦，怠荒国政，事迹多端。恐众官齐言，有紊太师清听。不若众位静坐，只是武成王黄老大人从头至尾讲与老太师听。一来老太师便于听闻；百官不致搀越。不识太师意下如何？”闻太师听罢，“孙大夫之言甚善。黄老大人，老夫洗耳，愿闻其详。”黄飞虎欠身曰：“既从尊命，未将不得不细细实陈：天子自从纳了苏护之女，朝中日渐荒乱。将元配姜娘娘剜目烙手，杀子绝伦。诳诸侯入朝歌，戮醢大臣，妄斩司天监太史杜元铣。听妲己之狐媚，造炮烙之刑，坏上大夫梅伯。囚姬昌于羑里七年。摘星楼内设蚕盆，宫娥惨死。造酒池、肉林，内侍遭殃。造鹿台广兴土木之工，致上大夫赵启坠楼而死。肆用崇侯虎监工，贿赂通行，三丁抽二，独丁赴役，有钱者买闲在家，累死百姓，填于台下。上大夫杨任谏阻鹿台之工；将杨任剜去二目，至今尸骸无踪。前者鹿台上有四、五十狐狸化作仙人赴宴，被比干看破，妲己怀恨。今不明不白，内庭私纳一女，不知来历。昨日听信妲己，诈言心疼，要玲珑心作汤疗疾，勒逼比干剖心，死于非命；灵柩见停北门。国家将兴，祯祥自现；国家将亡，妖孽频出。谗佞信如胶漆，忠良视如寇仇，惨虐异常，荒淫无忌。即不才等屡具谏章，视如故纸，甚至上下阻



situation deep thought. Since I've returned to the capital, I'll endeavor to set the country in order. I'll report to you later what I plan to do. Please return to your apartments for the time being, Your Majesty."

The king had nothing to say in his own defence. All he could do was leave the court and return to his apartments.

Grand Tutor Wen, however, remained in his position. "Fellow colleagues! Please don't return home yet. I would like you all to come to my residence," he said.

They all followed him back to his home.

"Fellow colleagues! I've been away from the capital a long time," he addressed them when they were all seated in the Silver Peace Hall. "That's made it impossible for me to pay any attention to state affairs. However, I was entrusted by the late king on his deathbed with the care of his successor. I cannot break my promise. I'm sorry to learn that he rules without law and virtue. I would like all of you to give me the truth so that I can find a way to deal with the situation."

"Grand Tutor!" Su Rong began. "It's not convenient for all of us to speak at the same time. I venture to propose that Prince Huang Feihu tell you the whole story, from beginning to end. Then you may hear it without interruption."

"A good suggestion," Grand Tutor Wen agreed. "General Huang, I'm listening with rapt attention. Please tell me everything,"

Huang Feihu bowed and related in detail all that had happened, from Daji's entry into the palace to the death of Bi Gan. At the end of his report, Grand Tutor Wen let out a roar of anger.



隔。正无可奈何之时，适太师奏凯还国，社稷幸甚！万民幸甚！”黄飞虎这一遍言语，从头至尾，细细说完，就把闻太师急得厉声大叫曰：“有这等反常之事！只因北海刀兵，致天子紊乱纲常。我负先王，有悞国事，实老夫之罪也！众大夫、先生请回。我三日后上殿，自有条陈。”太师送众官出府，唤徐急雨，令封了府门，一应公文不许投递。至第四日面君，方许开门应接事体。徐急雨得令，即闭府门。有诗为证，诗曰：

太师兵回奏凯还，岂知国内事多奸。君王失政乾坤乱，海宇分崩国政艰。十道条陈安社稷，九重金阙削奸顽。山河旺气该如此，总用心机只等闲。

话说闻太师三日内造成条陈十道。第四日入朝面君。文武官员已知闻太师有本上殿。那日早朝，聚两班文武，百官朝毕。纣王曰：“有奏章出班，无事朝散。”左班中闻太师进礼称臣曰：“臣有疏。”将本铺展御案。纣王览表：

“具疏太师臣闻仲上言。奏为国政大变，有伤风化，宠淫近佞，逆治惨刑，大千天变，隐忧莫测事：臣闻：尧受命以天下为己忧，而未常以位为乐也。故诛逐乱臣，务求贤圣，是以得舜、禹、稷、契及咎繇，众圣辅德，贤能佐职，教化大行，天下和洽，万民皆安仁乐义，各得其宜，动作应礼，从容中道，乃‘王者必世而后仁’之谓也。尧在位七十载，乃逊位以禅虞舜。尧崩，天下不归尧子丹朱而归舜。舜知不可避，乃即天子之位，以禹为相，因尧之辅佐，继其统业，是以垂拱无为而天下治。所作韶乐，尽美尽善。今陛下继承大位，



“It’s all because I was away for so long! I’ve let down the late king and ruined the state through my negligence. You may all return home now. I’ll appear before His Majesty in four days’ time and present my memorial for the improvement of state affairs,” he told them, and escorted them out of his mansion.

He then ordered that the gates be sealed for three days, during which time no documents were to be delivered and no visitors admitted. After three days of painstaking work, he completed a memorial containing ten proposals for reform to present to the king in the presence of all the ministers.

On the fourth day, King Zhou ascended the throne. After he was greeted by his ministers, he asked: “Are there any memorials for me to consider? If not, this session can be closed.”

“I have a memorial to be submitted to Your Majesty,” Grand Tutor Wen moved forward.

King Zhou laid it on the desk in front of him and read it over carefully.



当行仁义，普施恩泽，惜爱军民，礼文敬武，顺天和地，则社稷奠安，生民乐业。岂意陛下近淫酒，亲奸佞，亡恩爱，将皇后炮手刺睛，杀子嗣，自剪其后。此皆无道之君所行，自取灭亡之祸。臣愿陛下痛改前非，行仁兴义，远小人，近君子；庶几社稷奠安，万民钦服，天心效顺，国祚灵长，风和雨顺，天下享承平之福矣。臣带罪冒犯天颜，条陈开列于后：

第一件：拆鹿台，安民不乱；

第二件：废炮烙，使谏官尽忠；

第三件：填蚤盆，宫患自安；

第四件：去酒池、肉林，掩诸侯谤议；

第五件：贬妲己，别立正宫，使内庭无蛊惑之虞；

第六件：勘佞臣，速斩费仲、尤浑而快人心，使不肖者自远；

第七件：开仓廩，赈民饥馑；

第八件：遣使命招安于东南；

第九件：访遗贤于山泽，释天下疑似者之心；

第十件：纳忠谏，大开言路，使天下无壅塞之蔽。

闻太师立于龙书案傍，磨墨润毫，将笔递与纣王：“请陛下批准施行。”纣王看十款之中，头一件便是拆鹿台。纣王曰：“鹿台之工，费无限钱粮，成工不毁。今一旦拆去，实是可惜。此等再议。二件，‘炮烙’，准行。三件，‘蚤盆’，准行。五件，‘贬苏后’，今妲己德性幽闲，并无失德，如何便加谪贬？也再议。六件，中大夫费、尤二人，素有功而无罪，何为谗佞，岂得便加诛戮！除此三件，以下准行。”太师奏曰：“鹿台功大，劳民伤财，万民深怨，拆之所以消天下



It enumerated his failings and put forward ten proposals:

- (1) Demolish the Happy Terrace to pacify the people;
- (2) Destroy the burning pillars to encourage the ministers;
- (3) Fill in the Serpent Pit to right the palace of its wrongs;
- (4) Fill in the Wine Pool and destroy the Meat Forest to pacify the nobles;
- (5) Depose Daji to put an end to her conspiracies to ruin the state;
- (6) Behead Fei Zhong and You Hun to warn the flatterers;
- (7) Open the granaries to relieve the poor and the starving;
- (8) Send representatives to the East Grand Dukedom and the South Grand Dukedom for peace negotiations;
- (9) Look for talented hermits in the mountains and forests;
- (10) Encourage freedom of speech, let everyone have the chance to voice opinions publicly without fear.

The Grand Tutor stood beside the royal desk. He ground the ink slab, dipped the writing brush in the ink and handed it to King Zhou. "Your Majesty, please sign your name."

Looking through the ten proposals again, the king found the first one much against his will. "We've spent a great deal of labor and money. It would be a great pity if it were pulled down. This needs further consideration," he said. "Though I agree to destroying the burning pillars, filling in the Serpent Pit and the Wine Pool, and removing the Meat Forest, it won't do to depose Queen Daji. She's virtuous and chaste. This must be discussed further too." He then added: "As for the sixth proposal, it's unjust to execute Fei Zhong and You Hun. They've served me well and committed no crime. How can you call them flatterers? I approve all your proposals, except the first, fifth and sixth."

But Grand Tutor Wen insisted. "The Happy Terrace has wasted much money and the people have suffered greatly for it. They won't stop grum-





百姓之隐恨。皇后谏陛下造此惨刑，神怒鬼怨，屈魂无申，乞速贬苏后，则神喜鬼舒，屈魂瞑目，所以消在天之幽怨。勘斩费仲、尤浑，则朝纲清净，国内无谗，圣心无惑乱之虞，则朝政不期清而自清矣。愿陛下速赐施行，幸无迟疑不决，以误国事，则臣不胜幸甚！”纣王没奈何，立语曰：“太师所奏，朕准七件；此三件候议妥再行。”闻太师曰：“陛下莫谓三事小节而不足为，此三事关系治乱之源，陛下不可不察，毋得草草放过。”君臣立辩，只见中大夫费仲还不识时务，出班上殿见驾。闻太师认不得费仲，问曰：“这员官是谁？”仲曰：“卑职费仲是也。”太师道：“先生就是费仲。先生上殿有甚么话讲？”仲曰：“太师虽位极人臣，不按国体：持笔逼君批行奏疏，非礼也；本参皇后，非臣也；令杀无辜之臣，非法也。太师灭君恃己，以下凌上，肆行殿庭，大失人臣之礼，可谓大不敬！”太师听说，当中神目睁开，长髯直竖，大声曰：“费仲巧言惑主，气杀我也！”将手一拳，把费仲打下丹墀，面门青肿。只见尤浑怒上心来，上殿言曰：“太师当殿殴打大臣，非打费仲，即打陛下矣！”太师曰：“汝是何官？”尤浑曰：“吾乃是尤浑。”太师笑曰：“原来是你！两个贼臣表里弄权，互相回护！”趋向前，只一掌打去，把那奸臣翻觔斗跌下丹墀有丈余远近。唤左右：“将费、尤二人拿出午门斩了！”当朝武士最恼此二人，听得太师发怒，将二人推出午门。闻太师怒冲牛斗。纣王默默无言，口里不言，心中暗道：“费、尤二人不知起倒，自讨其辱。”闻太师复奏请纣王发行刑旨。纣王怎肯杀费、尤二人。纣王曰：“太师奏疏，俱说得是。此三件事，朕俱总行；待朕再商议而行。



bling until you pull it down. Your queen invented the burning pillars, angering Heaven and hell. The ghosts of the innocent weep at the injustices done. Unless she's deposed, neither the gods nor ghosts will be satisfied. Fei Zhong and You Hun must be beheaded so that the court may be cleansed. I hope you'll implement all ten proposals promptly. Any delay would be harmful to the state."

At a loss what to do, King Zhou stood up. "I can only approve seven of the proposals. As to the first, fifth and sixth, we ought to have more time to discuss them before making a final decision."

"Your Majesty," warned Grand Tutor Wen, "Don't regard those three as unimportant. They're closely related to the future of your state. Whether the dynasty revives or falls depends on this decision. Seize the chance and don't let it slip by."

Fei Zhong did not realize the seriousness of the situation. He ignored Grand Tutor Wen and moved forward to speak to King Zhou. Grand Tutor Wen did not know him. "Who are you?"

"I'm Fei Zhong" was the answer.

"Oh! So you're Fei Zhong! What do you wish to say?"

"Though you're higher in rank, you've violated the rites. You're insulting His Majesty by forcing him to give his approval to your proposals. By demanding that His Majesty depose his queen, you're failing to behave as a minister. It's lawless to compel His Majesty to execute innocent officials, and is an insult by an inferior to a superior."

Fei Zhong's words infuriated the Grand Tutor. He glared at Fei Zhong with his divine third eye. "You wretch! How dare you deceive the king with your cunning words!" he cried, and with a blow from his immense fist, he knocked Fei Zhong down the steps.

Seeing Fei Zhong lying on the floor, his face bruised and swollen, You Hun rushed forward. "The Grand Tutor's committed a grave fault by beating a royal minister right before His Majesty's eyes. It's the equivalent of beating His Majesty himself," he said.

"Who're you?" Grand Tutor Wen demanded.

"I'm You Hun" was the reply.

The Grand Tutor burst into laughter. "So it's you! You two mishandle state affairs with your dirty tricks and conspiracies. You're in collusion with each other."

He ran forward, raised his fist again and knocked You Hun down the steps and several yards across the floor. He ordered the guards to seize



费、尤二臣，虽是冒犯参卿，其罪无证，且发下法司勘问，情真罪当，彼亦无怨。”闻太师见纣王再三委曲，反有兢业颜色，自思：“吾虽为国直谏尽忠，使君惧臣，吾先得欺君之罪矣。”太师跪而奏曰：“臣但愿八方绥服，百姓奠安，诸侯宾服，臣之愿足矣，敢有他望哉！”纣王传旨：“将费、尤发下法司勘问。七道条陈限即举行；三条再议妥施行。”纣王回宫。百官各散。

天下兴，好事行；天下亡，祸胎降。太师方上条陈，事已好将来，不防东海反了平灵王。飞报进朝歌来，先至武成王府。黄元帅见报，叹曰：“兵戈四起，八方不宁，如今又反了平灵王，何时定息！”黄元帅把报差官送到闻太师府里去。太师在府正坐。堂候官报：“黄元帅差官见老爷。”太师命：“令来。”差官将报呈上。太师看罢，打发来人，随即往黄元帅府里来。黄元帅迎接到殿上行礼，分宾主坐下。闻太师道：“元帅，今反了东海平灵王，老夫来与将军共议：还是老夫去，还是元帅去？”黄元帅答曰：“末将去也可，老太师去也可，但凭太师主见。”太师想一想，道曰：“黄将军，你还随朝。老夫领二十万人马前往东海，剿平反叛，归国再商政事。”二人共议停当。

次日早朝，闻太师朝贺毕。太师上表出师。纣王览表，惊问曰：“平灵王又反，如之奈何？”闻太师奏曰：“臣之丹心，忧国忧民，不得不去。今留黄飞虎守国；臣往东海，削平反叛。愿陛下早晚以社稷为重，条陈三件，待臣回再议。”纣王闻奏大悦，巴不得闻太师去了，不在面前搅扰，心中甚是清静；忙传谕：“发黄旄、白钺，即与闻太师钱行起



both Fei Zhong and You Hun and take them to the palace gate to await execution.

As he vented his wrath, King Zhou remained completely silent. "They've no idea how to behave in the present situation, and have brought this humiliation on themselves," he thought to himself. When Grand Tutor Wen urged him to behead Fei Zhong and You Hun, he stubbornly refused. "Everything in your memorial's correct. But I can't approve the first, fifth and sixth proposals before I've considered them carefully. Though Fei Zhong and You Hun foolishly offended you, it isn't a serious case. They'll be sent to court and tried according to law. They can't complain about receiving the penalties they deserve."

Observing the king's frightened manner, the Grand Tutor relented. "Though I've acted out of loyalty, to make him frightened of me is a crime," he thought, kneeling down before King Zhou. "I hope only that your state may have peace on all frontiers, that your people enjoy happiness, and that the nobles submit peacefully to us. This is all I desire and nothing else."

"Send Fei Zhong and You Hun to gaol to await trial. The seven proposals are approved but the remaining three are to be carefully discussed and dealt with later," King Zhou ordered, and then dismissed the court.

When a kingdom is in decline, disasters never cease. As Grand Tutor Wen was about to succeed in the effort for political reform, news arrived that King Ping Ling had declared the independence of the East Sea district. On receiving the report, the Grand Tutor left his residence to visit Huang Feihu at once.

After the formal greetings were over, Grand Tutor Wen asked: "General, this rebellion must be quelled at once. But who should head the expedition, You or I?"

"Whatever you think best," Huang answered promptly.

After careful consideration, Grand Tutor Wen said: "You'd better stay here to guard the palace. I'll take 200,000 soldiers to the East Sea district. I'll deal with the state administration after my return."

Early the next morning, Grand Tutor Wen reported the emergency to King Zhou.

"What shall we do? Who's to subdue the rebellion?" the king exclaimed in alarm.



兵。”纣王驾出朝歌东门。太师接见。纣王命斟酒赐与太师。闻仲接酒在手，转身递与黄飞虎，太师曰：“此酒黄将军先饮。”飞虎欠身曰：“太师远征，圣上所赐，黄飞虎怎敢先饮？”太师曰：“将军接此酒，老夫有一言相告。”黄飞虎依言，接酒在手。闻太师曰：“朝纲无人，全赖将军。当今若是有甚不平之事，礼当直谏，不可钳口结舌，非人臣爱君之心。”太师回身见纣王曰：“臣此去无别事忧心，愿陛下听忠告之言，以社稷为重，毋变乱旧章，有乖君道。臣此一去，多则一载，少则半载，不久便归。”太师用罢酒，一声炮响，起兵径往东海去了。眼前一段蹊跷事，惹得刀兵滚滚来。不知胜负如何，听下回分解。

“My loyalty compels me to go personally. General Huang Feihu can stay here to protect the capital. The three proposals can be dealt with after my return from the front,” Grand Tutor Wen replied.

Greatly delighted at the prospect of the Grand Tutor leaving the capital, King Zhou immediately ordered the mobilization of the army. He escorted the Grand Tutor beyond the east gate of Zhaoge. He toasted Grand Tutor Wen with a cup of wine in farewell, but the latter turned and passed the cup on to Huang Feihu. “Let General Huang drink first. I entrust you with the care of state affairs. I ask that you speak frankly about anything improper. To keep one’s mouth shut isn’t the way for a loyal minister to act.”

Huang Feihu could not very well refuse. He emptied the cup in one draught. Grand Tutor Wen then turned to King Zhou. “I hope you’ll pay more attention to the fate of your kingdom, listen to the loyal, and do nothing more to aggravate the situation. I won’t be away long, a year at most.”

After the farewell drinks, Grand Tutor Wen set out to the roar of cannons.

If you want to know how events developed, you must read the next chapter.











## 第二十八回

### 子牙兵伐崇侯虎

诗曰：

崇虎贪残气更臬，剥民膏髓自肥饶。逢君欲作千年调，买窟惟知百计要。奉命督工人力尽，乘机起衅帝图消。子牙有道征无道，国败人亡事事调。

话说纣王同文武欣然回至大殿，众官侍立。天子传旨：“释放费仲、尤浑。”彼时有微子出班奏曰：“费、尤二人，乃太师所参，系狱听勘者。今太师出兵未远，即时释放，似亦不可。”纣王曰：“费、尤二人原无罪，系太师条陈屈陷，朕岂不明？皇伯不必以成议而陷忠良也。”微子不言下殿。不一时，赦出二人，官还原职，随朝保驾。纣王心甚欢悦。又见闻太师远征，放心恣乐，一无忌惮。时当三春天气，景物韶华，御园牡丹盛开。传旨：“同百官往御花园赏牡丹，以继君臣同乐，效虞廷赓歌喜起之盛事。”百官领旨，随驾进园。正是：天上四时春作首，人间最富帝王家。怎见得御花园的好处，但见：

仿佛蓬莱仙境，依希天上仙圃：诸般花木结成攒，叠石琳琅妆就景。桃红李白芬芳，绿柳青萝摇拽。金门外几株君子竹，玉户下两行大夫松。紫巍巍锦堂画栋，碧沉沉彩阁雕檐。蹴球场斜通桂院，秋千架远离花篷。牡丹亭嫔妃来往，芍药院彩女闲游。金桥流绿水，海棠醉轻

## Chapter 28

### Punitive Expedition Against the North Grand Dukedom

King Zhou returned to the Grand Hall in great delight. He held court and immediately ordered that Fei Zhong and You Hun be released from prison.

At this Wei Zi moved forward. "They're awaiting trial. How can they be set free in such a hurry when the Grand Tutor's just left the capital? Please consider the matter, Your Majesty."

"They're innocent. I'm well aware that they were wrongly accused. Don't be so prejudiced against the loyal," King Zhou said.

Wei Zi left the court without another word. Before long Fei Zhong and You Hun entered and were restored to their original ranks. King Zhou was delighted: the Grand Tutor had left the palace for the front, leaving him completely free to enjoy himself, without the slightest misgivings.

It was spring. In the royal garden lovely peonies and other spring flowers were blooming. Thinking that the spring scenery would soon be gone, King Zhou ordered a party for himself and his ministers in the royal garden, as had been done in prosperous times during the reigns of Yao and Shun.

The officials found the royal garden as pretty as the Penglai fairyland. The fragrance of pink peach blossoms and white plum blossoms filled the air, while slender green willow branches trembled in the breeze. Bamboos stood gracefully beside the golden doors, and beneath jade windows grew two rows of majestic pines. The Brocade Hall was purple with exquisitely painted decorative beams and the lofty tower attached to it had carved eaves of a beautiful deep blue. Lovely palace maids walked to and fro by the Peony Pavilion or wandered amongst the begonia beds not far from where green water flowed under a golden bridge. On a





风。磨砖砌就萧墙，白石铺成路径。紫街两道，现出二龙戏珠；阑干左右，雕成朝阳丹凤。翡翠亭万道金光，御书阁十层瑞彩。祥云映日，显帝王之荣华；瑞气迎眸，见皇家之极贵。凤尾竹百鸟来朝，龙爪花五云相罩。千红万紫映楼台，走兽飞禽鸣内院。八哥说话，纣王喜笑欲狂；鹦鹉高歌，天子欢容鼓掌。碧池内金鱼跃水，粉墙内鹤鹿同春。芭蕉影动逞风威，逼射香为百花主。珊瑚树高高下下，神仙洞曲曲湾湾，玩月台层层叠叠，惜花径绕绕迢迢。水阁下鸥鸣和畅，凉亭上琴韵清幽。夜合花开，深院奇香不散；木兰花放，满园清味难消。名花万色，丹青难画难描；楼阁重重，妙手能工焉仿。御园中果然异景，皇宫内真是繁华。花间翻蝶翅，禁院隐蜂衙。亭檐飞紫燕，池阁听鸣蛙。春鸟啼百舌，反哺是慈乌。正是：御园如锦绣，何用说仙家。蓝靛染成千块玉，碧纱笼罩万堆霞。

诗曰：

瑞气腾腾锁太华，祥光霭霭照云霞。龙楼凤阁侵霄汉，玉户金门映翠纱。四时不绝稀奇景，八节常开罕见花。几番雨过春风至，香满城中百万家。

话说百官随驾进御园牡丹亭，摆开九龙设席筵宴，文武依次序坐下，论尊卑行礼。纣王在御书阁陪苏妲己、胡喜媚共饮。且说武成王对微子、箕子曰：“‘筵无好筵，会无好会’。方今士马纵横，刀兵四起，有甚心情宴赏牡丹。但不知天子能改过从善，或边亭烽息，殄逆除凶，尚可望共乐唐虞，享太平之福；若是迷而不返，恐此日无多，忧日转长



white stone path stood two carved dragons and on the balustrades to its left and right were sculptured red phoenixes flying and dancing in the sunshine. The Jadeite Pavilion shone in rays of golden light and over the royal library hung variegated clouds. The king was enraptured by a myna bird that talked like a man and a parrot that sang like a musician. In a clear pool, goldfish frolicked in the water and within a white-walled enclosure deer and cranes lived peacefully together. Little paths wound around enchanting hills of corals, and butterflies danced happily among the flowers. Purple swallows darted in and out under the eaves, frogs croaked at the waterside, and the songs of spring birds could be heard wherever one went.

The banquet was held in the Peony Pavilion, where all the ministers took seats according to rank. King Zhou, however, set his own table in the royal library where Daji and Hu Ximei joined him.

As they ate Prince Huang Feihu said sadly to Wei Zi and Ji Zi, "I haven't the heart to enjoy this grand party today. The country's torn by rebellions. At such a time how can we enjoy the peonies? Should His Majesty repent of his behavior, we may hope to quell the rebels, and live happily as in the days of Yao and Shun. If His Majesty refuses to change his ways I'm afraid the days of this dynasty are numbered!"

Wei Zi and Ji Zi nodded and sighed. The banquet ended at midday.



也。”微子、箕子闻言，点首嗟叹。众官饮至日当正午，百官往御书阁来谢酒。当驾官启奏：“百官谢恩。”纣王曰：“春光景媚，花柳芳妍，正宜乐饮，何故谢恩？传旨，待朕陪宴。”百官听见天子下楼亲陪，不敢告退，只得恭候。但见纣王亲至，牡丹亭上首添一席，同众臣共饮欢笑，乐声齐奏，君臣换盏轮杯，不觉天晚，帝命掌上画烛。笙歌嘹亮，真是欢乐倍常。将近二鼓时分，不说君臣会酒。且言御书阁姐己、胡喜媚带酒酣睡龙榻之上。近三更时候，姐己元形现出来寻人吃。一阵怪风大作。怎见得：

摧花倒树异寻常，灭烛无情尽绝光。穿户透帘侵病骨，妖氛怪气此中藏。

风过了一阵，播土扬尘，把牡丹亭都晃动。众官正惊疑间，只听得侍酒官齐叫：“妖精来了！”黄飞虎酒已半酣，听说有妖精，慌忙起身出席，果见一物在寒露之中而来。但见：

眼似金灯体态殊，尾长爪利短身躯。扑来恍似登山虎，转面浑如捕物猫。妖孽惯侵人气魄，怪魔常噬血头颅。

凝眸仔细观形象，却是山中一老狐！

话说黄飞虎带酒出席，见此妖精扑来，手中无一物可挡，把手挽住牡丹亭栏杆，攀折了一根，望那狐狸一下打去。那妖精闪过，又扑将来。黄飞虎叫左右：“快取北海进来的金眼神莺！”左右忙忙的将红笼开了放出。那神莺飞起，二目如灯，专降狐狸。此莺往下一罩，爪似钢钩，把狐狸抓了一下。那狐狸叫了一声，径往太湖石下攒去了。纣王眼见此事，即唤左右取锹锄望下挖。左右挖下二三尺，见无限的人骨骷髅成堆。纣王着实骇然。纣王因想：“谏官本上，常言



The officials went to the royal library to thank King Zhou and take their leave.

“We should make the most of these pleasant spring days and enjoy ourselves to the fullest. Why are you leaving? I’ll come down and drink with you,” the king said.

As the king had joined them, the ministers had no choice but to remain in their seats. When dusk fell, the king ordered that candles be lit so that the drinking, singing, and dancing could continue.

In the royal library, Daji and Hu Ximei became completely drunk and lay down in the king’s dragon bed. But Daji could control herself no longer. She resumed her true form and rushed out to look for human flesh, flying on a gust of wind that filled the air with dust and rocked the Peony Pavilion. The officials did not understand what was happening until some attendants cried out, “A specter’s coming!”

Hearing the shouts, Huang Feihu, who was half drunk, left his seat hurriedly. He looked around and saw something horrible rushing at him from the ground. Having no weapon, he broke a railing from the pavilion and struck at the fox sprite, which dodged and then turned to make a second attack.

“Hurry! Hurry! Fetch me the hunting hawk with golden eyes,” Huang ordered.

His guards immediately fetched the cage and set out the hawk. It soared high into the sky, fixed its eyes on the fox sprite, then swooped down and clawed the fox specter with its talons. The fox sprite gave a cry of pain and crawled swiftly into the rocks of an artificial hill. Seeing where it had fled, King Zhou ordered his attendants to dig out the stones and earth in the hope of capturing it.

They dug three feet into the earth, and found no fox sprite but a huge pile of half-eaten corpses. The king was horrified. “Many officials have reported that a spectral air permeates the palace and stars of disaster are seen in the sky. I’ve never believed it, yet it’s evident that it must be true,” he thought.



‘妖氛贯于宫中，灾星变于天下’，此事果然是实。”心下甚是不悦。百官起身，谢恩出朝，各归府第。不题。

且说妲己酒后，元形出现，不意被神鸢抓了面门，伤破皮肤；惊醒回来，悔之无及。纣王至御书阁同妲己共寝。睡至天明，纣王忽见妲己面上带伤，急问曰：“御妻脸上为何有伤？”妲己在枕边回曰：“夜来陛下陪百官饮宴，妾往园中稍游，从海棠花下过，忽被海棠枝干吊将下来，把妾身抓了面上，故此带伤。”纣王曰：“今后不可往御园游乐。原来此地真有妖氛。朕与百官饮至三更，果见一狐狸前来扑人。时有武成王黄飞虎攀折栏杆去打他，尚然不退；后放出外国进来金眼神鸢。那鸢惯降狐狸，一爪抓去，那妖带伤走了。鸢爪尚有血毛。”——纣王对妲己说，但不知同着狐狸共寝。且说妲己暗恨黄飞虎：“我不曾惹你，你今来害我，则怕你路逢窄道难回避！”有诗为证，诗曰：

纣王忻然赏牡丹，君臣欢饮鼓三攒，狐狸影现人多怕，  
怪兽威施气更欢。金眼神鸢真可羨，绶尾邪魔已带残。  
私仇断送贞洁妇，才得忠良逐钓竿。

话说妲己深恨黄飞虎放鸢害他，只等他路逢狭道。武成王那里知道？

话分两处。且言西岐姜子牙在朝，一日闻边报，言纣王荒淫酒色，宠任奸佞，又反了东海平灵王，闻太师前去征剿。又见报，崇侯虎蛊惑圣聪，广兴土木，陷害大臣，荼毒万姓，潜通货、尤，内外交结，把持朝政，朋比为奸，肆行不道，钳制谏官。子牙看到切情之处，怒发冲冠：“此贼若不先除，恐为后患！”子牙次日早朝。文王问曰：“丞相昨闻边



He felt extremely unhappy. The ministers got up, thanked the king and returned home. Daji, meanwhile, had been startled out of her intoxication by the hawk, and returned to bed with a badly scratched face, regretting her own folly.

The next morning, the king saw the wound. "My dear queen, how did you hurt yourself like that?" he asked in alarm.

"When you left to drink with the ministers, I went strolling alone in the royal garden. I walked into an overhanging branch and scratched my face badly," she replied, still in bed.

"From now on you mustn't wander about in the royal garden alone. It's true that there are specters hiding in the palace." King Zhou said, and told Daji the whole story, never imagining that he had been sleeping with that same fox sprite for several years.

Daji was now filled with hatred for Huang Feihu. "You damned bastard, Huang Feihu! I've never offended you. Why should you try to hurt me? We're enemies now! You won't find it easy to escape my revenge."

But now let us turn to Jiang Ziya. One day he received the report that King Ping Ling had started a rebellion against King Zhou, that Grand Tutor Wen had been sent to suppress him, and that King Zhou still indulged himself with women and wine and placed his trust in the minions. A second report informed Jiang Ziya how Chong Houhu deceived the king, framed high-ranking ministers, inflicted great suffering on the people and colluded with Fei Zhong and You Hun to manipulate state affairs.

"If we don't get rid of that scoundrel straightway, he'll bring greater disaster on the state!" he thought.

The following morning, Prince Wen asked him, "Prime Minister, did you get any information about Zhaoge from the reports you read yesterday?"

Jiang Ziya moved forward. "According to the reports, King Zhou took





报，朝歌可有甚么异事？”子牙出班启曰：“臣昨见边报，纣王剋比干之心，作羹汤疗妲己之疾；崇侯虎紊乱朝政，横恣大臣，簧惑天子，无所不为，害万民而不敢言，行杀戮而不敢怨，恶孽多端，使朝歌生民日不聊生，贪酷无厌。臣愚不敢请，似这等大恶，假虎张威，毒痛四海，助桀为虐，使居天子左右，将来不知如何结局。今百姓如在水火之中，大王以仁义广施，若依臣愚意，先伐此乱臣贼子，剪其乱政者，则天子左右见无谗佞之人，庶几天子有悔过迁善之机，则主公亦不枉天子假以节钺之意。”文王曰：“卿言虽是，奈孤与崇侯虎一样爵位，岂有擅自征伐之理？”子牙曰：“天下利病，许诸人直言无隐。况主公受天子白旄黄钺，得专征伐，原为禁暴除奸；似这等权奸蛊国，内外成党，残虐生民，以白作黑，屠戮忠贤，为国家大恶。大王今发仁慈之心，救民于水火。倘天子改恶从善，而效法尧、舜之主，大王此功，万年不朽矣。”文王闻子牙之言，劝纣王为尧、舜，其心甚悦，便曰：“丞相行师，谁为主将去伐崇侯虎？”子牙曰：“臣愿与大王代劳，以效犬马。”文王恐子牙杀伐太重，自思：“我去还有酌量。”文王曰：“孤同丞相一往。恐有别端，可以共议。”子牙曰：“大王大驾亲征，天下响应。”文王发出白旄、黄钺，起人马十万，择吉日祭宝纛旛，以南宫适为先行，辛甲为副将，随行有四贤、八俊。文王与子牙放炮起兵。一路上父老相迎，鸡犬不惊。民闻伐崇，人人大悦，个个欢忻。好人马！怎见得：

旛分五色，杀气迷空。明晃晃剑戟枪刀，光灿灿叉锤斧棒。三军跳跃，犹如猛虎下高山；战马长嘶，一似蛟龙



out Bi Gan's heart and used it as medicine to cure Daji of an illness. In addition, Chong Houhu's throwing state affairs into chaos. He insults ministers, deceives the king and tyrannizes the people, yet the victims dare not complain. He's wicked and greedy. If he's permitted to remain at His Majesty's side, he's bound to bring disaster to the dynasty. In my opinion, we must get rid of this rogue and give the king a chance to repent and turn over a new leaf. You're fully authorized by His Majesty to wage punitive expeditions against traitors and rebels and would be letting him down if you don't do so. If you could help His Majesty become a good ruler like Yao or Shun, memory of your great service would last forever."

Prince Wen was delighted to hear that he could help King Zhou become a sage ruler like Yao or Shun. "If we launch an attack against Chong Houhu, who'll be the commander of the army?" he inquired.

"I offer to be the commander of the army on your behalf," Jiang Ziya replied immediately.

But Prince Wen was worried that he might be too severe. "It's better that I go with him," he decided, then said, "I'll go with you to the front so that we can discuss important matters together."

Jiang Ziya was happy with this decision. "If you personally command the expedition, all the nobles of the kingdom will support your cause."

They chose an auspicious date to set out. Prince Wen took the white ox-tail hammer and yellow axe that symbolized the authority bestowed on him by the sovereign and left the capital with 100,000 soldiers. Nangong Kuo was commander of the vanguard and Xin Jia his deputy. Four worthy and eight eminent men were appointed as military attaches.

The army started off amid the roaring of cannons and was cheered by the people all along the way for its perfect discipline. They were de-



离海岛。巡营小校似欢狼，了哨儿郎雄赳赳。先行引道，逢山开路踏桥梁；元帅中军，杀斩存留施号令。团团牌手护军粮，硬弩狂弓射阵脚。此一去：除奸削党安天下，才离磻溪第一功。

话说子牙人马过府、州、县、镇，人人乐业，鸡犬不惊，一路上多少父老迎迓。一日，探马来报中军：“兵至崇城。”子牙传令安营，竖了旗门，结成大寨。子牙升帐，众将参谒。不题。

且说探马报进崇城。此时崇侯不在崇城，正在朝歌随朝。城内是侯虎之子崇应彪，闻报大怒，忙升殿点聚将鼓。众将上银安殿，参谒已毕。应彪曰：“姬昌暴横，不守本分，前岁逃关，圣上几番欲点兵征伐，彼不思悔过，反兴此无名之师，深属可恨！况且我与你各守疆土，秋毫无犯，今自来送死，我岂肯轻恕！”传令：“点人马出城。”随令大将黄元济、陈继贞、梅德、金成：“这一番定擒反叛，解上朝歌，以尽大法。”

却说子牙次日升帐，先令南宫适崇城见首阵。南宫适得令，领本部人马出营，排成阵势，出马厉声叫曰：“逆贼崇侯虎早至军前受死！”言未毕，听城中炮响，门开处，只见一枝人马杀将出来。为头一将乃飞虎大将黄元济是也。南宫适曰：“黄元济，你不必来，唤出崇侯虎来领罪，杀了逆贼，泄神人之忿，万事俱休。”元济大怒，骤马摇刀，飞来直取。南宫适举刀相迎。两马盘旋，双刀并举，一场大战。怎见得：

二将坐鞍鞞，征云透九霄：这一个急取壶中箭；那一个



lighted that the soldiers were advancing on Chong Houhu. The army reached Chong City a few days later and set up camp outside the city walls.

Chong Houhu was away at Zhaoge and Chong City was under the command of his son Chong Yingbiao. When he learned about the arrival of Prince Wen's army, Chong Yingbiao immediately summoned his generals. "Ji Chang acts far beyond the bounds of his duty. He fled Zhaoge a couple of years ago and His Majesty's long intended to punish him. Rather than repenting for his previous mistakes he's come here to attack us, without the least provocation! Since he wants to throw away his life, I don't intend to let him off lightly," Chong Yingbiao exclaimed.

He organized his army with Huang Yuanji, Chen Jizhen, Mei De and Jin Cheng as leaders. "Capture the rebels and take them to Zhaoge," he declared.

On the day after their arrival, Jiang Ziya sent General Nangong Kuo to do the first battle. Nangong Kuo arranged his troops in battle formation. "Chong Houhu, you rogue, come out and meet your death," he challenged.

Before he had a chance to finish, cannons roared, the city gates opened wide, and a contingent of soldiers rushed out, with Flying Tiger General Huang Yuanji at their head.

"Huang Yuanji! There's no need for you to come here. Call Chong Houhu out. I'll put him to death and appease men and Heaven, and then the fighting can stop," Nangong Kuo yelled.

Huang Yuanji angrily urged his horse forward, and brandishing his cutlass, rushed in to attack. Nangong Kuo raised his cutlass to meet the challenge. They fought vigorously, their horses circling close together and their cutlasses ringing with the force of their blows.



忙拔紫金标。这将刀欲诛军将；那将刀直取英豪。这一个平生胆壮安天下；那一个气概轩昂压俊髦。

话说南宫适大战黄元济，未及三十回合，元济非南宫适敌手，力不能支。南宫适是西岐名将，元济怎能胜得他。元济欲要败走，又被南宫适一口刀裹住了，跳不出圈子去，早被南将军一刀挥于马下。军兵枭了首级，掌得胜鼓回营；进辕门来见子牙，将斩的黄元济首级报功。子牙大喜。且说崇城败残军马回报崇应彪，说：“黄元济已被南宫适斩于马下，将首级在辕门号令。”应彪听罢，拍案大呼曰：“好姬昌逆贼！今为反臣，又杀朝廷命官，你罪如太山，若不斩此贼与黄元济报仇，誓不回军！”传令：“明日将大队人马出城，与姬昌决一雌雄！”一宿已过，次早旭日东升，大炮三声，开城门，大势人马杀奔周营，坐名只要姬昌、姜尚至辕门答话。探马报入中军曰：“崇应彪口出不逊之言，请丞相军令定夺。”子牙请文王亲自临阵，会兵于崇城。文王乘骑，四贤保驾，八俊随军。周营内炮响，麾动旗幡。崇应彪见对阵旗门开处，忽见一人，道扮乘马而来；两边排列众将，一对对雁翅分开。崇应彪定睛观看，但见有《西江月》为证：

鱼尾金冠鹤氅，丝绦双结乾坤，雌雄宝剑手中擎，八卦仙衣可衬。元始玉虚门下，包含地理天文，银须白发气精神，却似神仙临阵。

子牙马至阵前言曰：“崇城守将可来见我。”只听得那阵上一骑飞来。怎见得崇应彪妆束：

盘头冠，飞凤结；大红袍，猩猩血。黄金铠甲套连环，护心宝镜悬明月。腰束羊脂白玉厢，九吞八扎真奇绝。



But Huang Yuanji was no match for the famed Nangong Kuo. After thirty rounds he was exhausted. He tried to flee, but was blocked by a blow from Nangong Kuo's cutlass. He tried a second time, and was knocked from his horse. Nangong's soldiers decapitated him, and the victorious general returned to the West Qi camp, where he presented the head to Jiang Ziya.

Learning that Huang Yuanji's head was now hanging over Jiang Ziya's camp gate, Chong Yingbiao pounded his desk in a fury. "You damned traitor, Ji Chang! A rebel, and now you've slain a general appointed by His Majesty. Your crimes are beyond measure. I won't give up until I've cut your head off," he cried, and ordered, "Alert the whole army. Tomorrow we'll engage Ji Chang in mortal combat!"

Early the next morning, the city gate opened wide and a huge army rushed out amidst the roar of cannons. They cried for Ji Chang and Jiang Ziya.

At the request of Jiang Ziya, Prince Wen made his appearance at the battlefield. Behind him, the army arrayed itself for combat.

Chong Yingbiao saw an old man, dressed as a Taoist, ride out among the numerous brave generals. He wore a gold hat and a satin robe embroidered with cranes and carried a shining sword in his hand. His silvery-white hair and long white beard gave him a dignified air, like an immortal coming down from Heaven.

Jiang Ziya shouted, "The commander meet me at once."

Chong Yingbiao, wearing a coiling-dragon hat and gold armor over a scarlet robe, galloped forward. "Who're you that dare to invade my territory?" he yelled.



金妆铜挂马鞍傍，虎尾钢鞭悬竹节。袋内弓弯三尺五，囊中箭插宾州铁。坐下走阵冲营马，丈八蛇矛神鬼怯。父在当朝一宠臣，子镇崇城真英杰。

崇应彪一马当前，见子牙问曰：“汝乃何等人物，敢犯吾疆界？”子牙曰：“吾乃文王驾下首相姜子牙是也。汝父子造恶如渊海，积毒似山岳，贪民财物如饿虎，伤人酷惨似豺狼，惑天子无忠耿之心，坏忠良有摧残之意。普天之下，虽三尺之童，恨不能生啖你父子之肉！今日文王起仁义之师，除残暴于崇地，绝恶党以畅人神，不负天子加以节钺，得专征伐之意。”应彪闻得此言，大喝姜尚曰：“你不过磻溪一无用老朽，敢出大言！”顾左右曰：“谁为吾擒此逆贼？”言还未了，只见一将出马对阵。文王马上大呼曰：“崇应彪少得行凶，孤来也！”应彪又见文王马至，气冲满怀，手指文王大骂：“姬昌！你不思得罪朝廷，立仁行义，反来侵吾疆界！”文王曰：“你父子罪恶贯盈，不必我言；只是你早早下马，解送西岐，立坛告天，除汝父子凶恶，不必连累崇城良民。”应彪大喝：“谁为我擒此反贼？”一将应声而出，乃陈继贞。这壁厢辛甲纵马摇斧，大叫：“陈继贞慢来！休得冲吾阵脚！”两马相交，枪斧并举，战在一处。二将拨马抡兵，杀有二十回合。应彪见陈继贞战辛甲不下，随命金成、梅德助阵。子牙见对阵有助，子牙令毛公遂、周公旦、召公奭、吕公望、辛免、南宫适六将齐出，冲杀一阵。应彪见大势人马催动，自拨马杀进重围，只杀的惨惨征云，纷纷愁雾，喊声不绝，鼓角齐鸣。混战多时，早有吕公望一枪刺梅德于马下；辛免斧劈金成。崇兵大败进城。子牙传令鸣金。众将掌得胜鼓回



"I'm Jiang Ziya, prime minister of His Highness Prince Wen. You extort money from the people, deceive His Majesty and persecute the faithful. Everyone in the country, down to the smallest child, hates you bitterly. My master's here to eradicate this gang of criminals. He's fulfilling his duty to the king, who has authorized him to launch such punitive expeditions."

Chong Yingbiao immediately yelled back, "You're just a useless, decaying old dodderer from Panxi Stream. How dare you brag so much!" He turned to his generals. "Who'll take the old scoundrel for me?"

Prince Wen lost his patience. He galloped forward. "Chong Yingbiao! There's no need for violence, I'm coming now."

Seeing Prince Wen before him, Chong Yingbiao became even more angry. He pointed at him and swore, "Ji Chang! Why don't you behave yourself and serve His Majesty? Don't you realize that you're committing a crime by opposing the government and invading my land!"

"As both you and your father have committed crimes against the people, you'd better get down from your horse at once. We'll bring you back to West Qi, erect an altar, and inform Heaven of our deed, and then have both of you put to death without having to involve the people of Chong City."

Chong Yingbiao yelled, "Who'll take that bloody traitor for me?"

General Chen Jizhen answered the call. He rushed out at Prince Wen but was met by Xin Jia, brandishing his axe. Their two horses in close contact, they wielded lance and axe vigorously against each other. After twenty rounds, Chong Yingbiao realized that Chen Jizhen could not defeat Xin Jia, and immediately sent Jin Cheng and Mei De to join the battle. To meet the situation, Jiang Ziya ordered Sui the Duke of Mao; Dan, the Duke of Zhou; Shi, the Duke of Shao; Wang, the Duke of Lu, Xin Mian and Nagong Kuo to go to Xin Jia's aid. The reinforcements from both sides intensified the battle.

As his men were outnumbered, Chong Yingbiao spurred his horse forward and threw himself into the fray. After a long and bitter fight, the Duke of Lu inflicted a fatal wound on Mei De with his lance. Mei De fell from his horse and died instantly. A blow from Xin Jia's axe finished off Jin Cheng.





营。不表。话说应彪兵败将亡，进城将四门紧闭，在殿上与众将商议退兵之策。众将见西岐士马英雄，势不可当，并无一筹可展，半策可施。且说子牙得胜回营，欲传令攻城。文王曰：“崇家父子作恶，与众百姓无干；今丞相欲要攻城，恐城破玉石俱焚，可怜无辜遭枉。况孤此来，不过救民，岂有反加之以不仁哉。切为不可！”子牙见文王以仁义为重，不敢抗违，自思：“主公德同尧、舜，一时如何取得崇城！只得暗修一书，使南宫适往曹州见崇黑虎，庶几崇城可得。”令南宫适接书，径往曹州来。子牙按兵不动，只等回书。不知崇侯虎性命如何，且听下回分解。



Having lost two generals, Chong Yingbiao hurriedly took flight with his army back into Chong City. Jiang Ziya ordered that gongs and drums be beaten to summon the soldiers back to the Zhou camp.

Back in the city, Chong Yingbiao ordered that the city gates be closed. He then called an urgent meeting to discuss how to repel the enemy forces. However, all could see clearly that the Zhou army was strong and brave. None of them knew what to do. The meeting proved fruitless.

Jiang Ziya wanted to order an immediate attack on Chong City, but Prince Wen opposed the idea. "The people of Chong City are innocent. They've nothing to do with Chong Houhu and his son. If we attack the city, 'jade' and 'stone' would be destroyed together. My purpose is to rescue them. How can we do anything to hurt them? On no account shall we attack the city."

Jiang Ziya realized that Prince Wen placed benevolence before all else, and dared not oppose his wishes. "My master's as virtuous as Yao and Shun and won't permit the use of force. I'd better send Nangong Kuo to Caozhou with a letter to Black Tiger Chong Heihu. We might take over the city with his aid," he decided.

He took no immediate military action and awaited the reply from Black Tiger.

If you want to know what became of Chong Houhu, you must read the next chapter.

## 第二十九回

### 斩侯虎文王托孤

诗曰：

崇虎无谋枉自尤，欺君盗国岂常留。辕门斩首空嗟日，  
挈子悬头莫怨愁。周室龙兴应在武，纣家虎败却从彪。  
孰知不负文王托，八百年来戊午收。

话说南宫适离了周营，径望曹州。一路上晓行夜住，也非一日。来到曹州馆驿安歇。次日至黑虎府里下书。黑虎正坐，家将禀：“千岁，有西岐差南宫适来下书。”黑虎听得是西岐差官，即降阶迎接，笑容满面，让至殿内，行礼，分宾主坐下。崇黑虎欠身言曰：“将军今到敝驿，有何见谕？”南宫适曰：“吾主公文王，丞相姜子牙，拜上大王，特遣末将有书上达。”南宫适取书递与黑虎，黑虎拆书观看：

“岐周丞相姜尚顿首百叩，致书于大君侯崇将军麾下：盖闻：人臣事君，务引其君于当道，必谏行言听，膏泽下于民，使百姓乐业，天下安阜；未有身为大臣逢君之恶，蛊惑天子，残虐万民，假天子之命令，敲骨剥髓，尽民之力肥润私家，陷君不义，忍心丧节，如令兄者。真可谓积恶如山，穷凶若虎，人神共怒，天下恨不食其肉而寝其皮，为诸侯之所弃。今尚主公得专征伐，奉诏以讨不道。但思君侯素称仁贤，岂得概以一族而加之以不义哉。尚不忍坐视，特遣裨将呈书上达。君侯能



## Chapter 29

### Death of Two Grand Dukes

Nangong Kuo left with all speed for Caozhou. When he got there, he took up lodgings in an official hostel, and went to see Black Tiger Chong Heihu the following morning. Chong Heihu was in his office when a guard came in. He immediately went out to meet Nangong Kuo.

“What news do you have, General?” he asked Nangong Kuo.

“By order of Prince Wen and Prime Minister Jiang Ziya, I’m here to pay respects to Your Lordship and bring you a letter.”

Chong Heihu took the letter and began to read:

Dear Chong Heihu:

A minister should serve his king with loyalty, offering him advice so that the people and the state may rest in peace and prosperity. He should not pander to the wickedness of the king, be the cause of suffering to the people, or enrich himself in the name of the king. Yet this is exactly what your brother Chong Houhu has been doing. Due to the crimes he has committed, he is regarded as a fierce tiger and hated by the people and gods. He is forsaken by the nobles of the whole country.

Though my master, the West Grand Duke, is empowered to start a punitive expedition, we are greatly concerned that despite your virtue, you would be involved in this calamity. We have given the matter much consideration and have sent General Nangong Kuo with a letter, in the hope that you will act righteously, seize Chong Houhu and bring him to the Zhou camp as all desire. You may, in this way, distinguish





擒叛逆，解送周营，以谢天下，庶几洗一身之清白，见贤愚之有分。不然，天下之口哓哓，恐昆仑火焰，玉石无分，尚深为君侯惜矣！君侯倘不以愚言为非，乞速赐一语，则尚幸甚，万民幸甚！临楮不胜跂望之至！尚再拜。”

崇黑虎看了书，复连看三五遍，自思点头：“我观子牙之言，甚是有理。我宁可得罪于祖宗，怎肯得罪于天下，为万世人民切齿。纵有孝子、慈孙，不能盖其愆尤。宁至冥下请罪于父母，尚可留崇氏一脉，不致绝灭宗枝也。”南宫适见黑虎自言自语，暗暗点头，又不敢问。只见黑虎曰：“南将军，我末将谨领丞相教诲，不必修回书，将军先回，多多拜上大王、丞相，总无他说，只是把家兄解送辕门请罪便了。”遂设席待南宫适，尽饮而散。次日，南宫适作辞去了。

话说崇黑虎分付副将高定、沈冈，点三千飞虎兵，即日往崇城来。又命子崇应鸾守曹州。黑虎行兵在路无词。一日行至崇城，有探马报与崇应彪。应彪领众将出城，迎接黑虎。应彪马上欠背打躬，口称“王叔”曰：“侄男甲冑在身，不能全礼。”黑虎曰：“贤侄，吾闻姬昌伐崇，特来相助。”崇应彪感谢不尽，遂并马进城，入府上殿。行礼毕，崇黑虎问其来伐原故，应彪答曰：“不知何故，攻打崇城。前日与西伯会兵，小侄失军损将。今得王叔相辅，乃崇门之幸也。”遂设宴款待一宿。次日，黑虎点三千飞虎兵出城，至周营索战。南宫适已回过子牙；子牙正坐，忽报崇黑虎请战。子牙令南宫适出阵。南宫适结束来至阵前，见黑虎怎生妆束：

九云冠，真威武；黄金甲，霞光吐。大红袍上现团龙，勒甲绒绳攒九股。豹花囊内插狼牙，龙角弓湾四尺五。



yourself from the wicked. Otherwise, people will condemn you as they do your brother, without distinguishing the jade from the stone. What a pity that would be! I earnestly hope that you will consider this matter and reply to us at your earliest convenience.

Jiang Shang,  
Prime Minister

Chong Heihu read the letter over and over again, then nodded to himself. "What Jiang Ziya says is certainly correct. I would rather offend my ancestors than the people and be condemned for generations to come. Even a filial son would find it impossible to cover up for my brother. If I turn him in and apologize to my parents after my death, I'll be able to save my own family and save the Chong clan from complete destruction."

He reasoned thus with himself, nodding and muttering. General Nangong dared not utter a word. But then Chong Heihu turned to him. "I'll be glad to comply with the prime minister. There's no need for me to write a reply. Please go back and offer my respects to your prince and prime minister and tell them that I'll seize my brother and place him at their disposal."

He then entertained Nangong Kuo and saw him off the next day. Black Tiger Chong Heihu ordered Gao Ding and Shen Gang to choose 3,000 Flying Tiger soldiers to march with him to Chong City. He told his son Chong Yingluan to guard the city of Caozhou during his absence and then departed. When Chong Yingbiao learned of his arrival, he came out to meet his uncle beyond the city gate.

"Forgive me, Uncle! My armor prevents me from offering you a full salutation," Chong Yingbiao said, greeting Chong Heihu with a bow.

"Worthy nephew! I heard that Ji Chang was attacking Chong City and I've come with reinforcements."

Chong Yingbiao ushered him into the city with gratitude. When they were seated in the main hall, Chong Heihu asked his nephew why Ji Chang had come to attack the city.

"I don't know why. I engaged them once but lost generals and men. It's indeed fortunate that you've come with reinforcements, Uncle."

At dawn the next day Black Tiger Chong Heihu took his 3,000 Flying Tiger soldiers out of the city and challenged the Zhou army.

As General Nangong Kuo had already returned, Jiang Ziya understood the situation. He sent Nangong Kuo to meet the challenge.



坐下火眼金睛兽，鞍上横拖两柄斧。曹州威镇列诸侯，封神南岳崇黑虎。

黑虎面如锅底，海下一部落腮红髯，两道黄眉，金睛双暴，来至军前，厉声大叫曰：“无故恃强犯界，任尔猖狂，非王者之师。”南宫适曰：“崇黑虎，不道汝兄恶贯天下，陷害忠良，残虐善类，古云：‘乱臣贼子，人人得而诛之。’”道罢，举刀直取。黑虎手中斧急架相还。兽马相交，斧刀并起，战有二十回合。马上黑虎暗对南宫适曰：“末将只见这一阵，只等把吾兄解到行营，再来相见。将军坐下阵去罢。”南宫适曰：“领君侯命。”随掩一刀，拨马就走，大叫：“崇黑虎，吾不及你了，休来赶我！”黑虎亦不赶，掌鼓回营。话说崇应彪在城上敌楼观战，见南宫适败走，黑虎不赶，忙下城迎着黑虎曰：“叔父今日会兵，为何不放神鹰拿南宫适？”黑虎曰：“贤侄，你年幼不知事体。你不闻姜子牙乃昆仑山上之客，我用此术，他必能识破，不为可惜；且胜了他再来区处。”二人同至府前下马，上殿坐下，共议退兵之策。黑虎道：“你修一表，差官往朝歌见天子；我修书请你父亲来，设计破敌，庶几文王可擒，大事可定。”应彪从命修本，差官并书一齐起行。且说使命官一路无辞，过了黄河，至孟津，往朝歌来。那一日，进城先来见崇侯虎。两边启：“千岁：家将孙荣到了。”崇侯虎命：“令来。”孙荣叩头。侯虎曰：“你来有甚话说？”荣将黑虎书呈上。侯虎拆书：

“弟黑虎百拜王兄麾下：盖闻：天下诸侯，彼此皆兄弟之国。孰意西伯姬昌不道，听姜尚之谋，无端架捏，言王兄恶大过深，起猖獗之师，入无名之谤，伐崇



On the battlefield, Nangong Kuo saw Chong Heihu in a nine-cloud coronet and gold armor over a scarlet robe embroidered with dragons. Chong Heihu rode on a fiery-eyed monster. His face was as black as the bottom of a cauldron, his eyebrows were yellow, his eyes were golden, and a red beard hung down below his chin. Chong Heihu galloped up, brandishing two short-handled axes. "You've invaded our land without reason. Why are you so savage? You aren't an army of justice at all."

"Chong Heihu! Don't you know that your brother's committed all manner of crimes! He's framed the loyal and maltreated the good. As the old saying goes, everyone has the right to get rid of rogues," Nangong Kuo yelled back.

Without further delay, he lifted his cutlass and slashed at Chong Heihu, who returned the blow with his axes. When they had fought twenty rounds, Chong Heihu said quietly to Nangong, "I'll just fight this one last bout. See you again when I've seized my brother. You may give up ground now as a pretext to end the combat."

"I'll do as you order."

Nangong Kuo made a feint with his cutlass, then pulled his horse round and fled, yelling, "Chong Heihu, I'm no match for you! Don't come after me!"

Chong Heihu did not chase him, but returned to the city. Chong Yingbiao saw from the watchtower that Nangong Kuo had fled but his uncle failed to chase him. Hurrying down the tower, he rushed to meet Chong Heihu.

"Uncle! Why didn't you send your magic eagle to capture him?"

"My dear nephew! You're young and don't know that Jiang Ziya's a well-known sorcerer from Mount Kunlun. He would certainly have destroyed my eagle had I used it today. That would be a great pity. We've won, and we can now work out the next step."

At Yingbiao's office the two men dismounted and entered the main hall to discuss stratagems.

"You'd better report to the king about what's happened. I'll write to your father, asking him to come back." Chong Heihu suggested.

Chong Yingbiao did as his uncle suggested and sent Sun Rong to Zhaoge with the report and the letter. Sun Rong started off at once. After crossing the Yellow River, he passed through Mengjin and rushed directly to Zhaoge. He went to see Chong Houhu first and presented the letter. As





城甚急。应彪出敌，又损兵折将。弟闻此事，星夜进兵，连敌二阵，未见胜负。因差官上达王兄，启奏纣王，发兵剿叛除奸，肃清西土。如今事在燃眉，不可羈滞。弟候兵临，共破西党，崇门幸甚。弟黑虎再拜上陈。”

侯虎看罢，拍案大骂姬昌曰：“老贼！你逃官欺主，罪当诛戮。圣上几番欲要伐你，我在其中，尚有许多委曲。今不思你知感，反致欺侮。若不杀老贼，势不回兵！”遂穿朝服进内殿，朝见纣王。王宣侯虎至，行礼毕。纣王曰：“卿有何奏章？”侯虎奏曰：“逆恶姬昌，不守本土，偶生异端，领兵伐臣，谈扬过恶，望陛下为臣作主。”纣王曰：“昌素有大罪，逃官负孤，焉敢凌虐大臣，殊为可恨！卿先回故地，朕再议点将提兵，协同剿捕逆恶。”侯虎领旨先回。且说崇侯虎领人马三千，离了朝歌，一路而来。有诗为证，诗曰：

三千人马疾如风，侯虎威严自姓崇。积恶如山神鬼怒，  
诱君土木士民穷。一家嫡弟施谋略，拿解行营请建功。  
善恶到头终有报，衣襟血染已成空。

且说崇侯虎人马不一日到了崇城。报马来报黑虎。黑虎暗令高定：“你领二十名刀斧手，埋伏于城门里，听吾腰下剑声响处，与我把大爷拿下，解送周营，辕门会齐。”又令沈冈：“我等出城迎大千岁去，你把大千岁家眷拿到周营，辕门等候。”分付已定，方同崇应彪出城迎接，行三里之外。只见侯虎人马已到。有探马报入行营曰：“二大王同殿下辕门接见。”崇侯虎马出辕门，笑容言曰：“贤弟此来，愚兄不胜欣慰！”又见应彪。三人同行。方进城门，黑虎将腰下剑拔出鞘，一声响，只见两边家将一拥上前，将侯虎父子二人拿下，绑缚其臂。侯虎喊叫曰：“好兄弟！反将长兄拿下者，何也？”黑虎曰：“长兄，你位极人臣，不修仁德，惑乱朝廷，屠害万姓，重贿酷刑，监造鹿台，恶贯天下。四方诸侯欲同



he read the letter, Chong Houhu pounded his desk. "You old scoundrel Ji Chang! You insulted His Majesty, and would have died then! But I was generous. I help you out of trouble every time the king wants to send troops to West Qi. How can you be so ungrateful! I won't return here until I've cut off your head!" he cried.

He dressed in his official robes and went to see King Zhou.

"What do you wish to report to me, Duke?" the king asked.

"Ji Chang's ambitious. Unwilling to live in peace, he's sent a so-called punitive expedition to my land, slandering me with abominable insults. I beg that Your Majesty direct me as how to deal with the case."

"He showed ingratitude fleeing the capital. Now he has the gall to bully my minister. You may return home first. I'll send men soon and help you seize the treacherous rogue," King Zhou reassured him.

Chong Houhu took three thousand men and hurried straight to Chong City, arriving in just a few days. As soon as he learned of his brother's arrival, Chong Heihu gave secret orders, "Gao Ding! Take twenty men and wait in ambush inside the city gate. As soon as you hear the rattling of my sword, seize Chong Houhu and take him to the Zhou army." He then turned to General Shen Gang, "When I leave the city to meet my brother, arrest his family and take them to the Zhou camp."

He then set out with Chong Yingbiao. They came to Chong Houhu's camp about three *li* beyond the city. Delighted that his brother and son had come to meet him, Chong Houhu came out at once to see them. "I'm glad to see you here, Brother," he said with a smile.

Upon entering the city gate with the father and son, Chong Heihu pulled his sword from the scabbard and put it back with a loud rattle. The soldiers immediately rushed out to seize and bind both Chong Houhu and Chong Yingbiao.

"Good brother! Why do you tie us up?" Chong Houhu cried.

"Brother! You're not a virtuous minister. You flatter His Majesty and inflict suffering on the people. You demand huge bribes and put the innocent to death. You're hated by all the kingdom, and the people demand the death of our clan. I'm grateful to Prince Wen. He kindly makes a demarcation between the good and the wicked. I dare not reject his good-



心剿其崇姓；文王书至，为我崇氏分辨贤愚。我敢有负朝廷，宁将长兄拿解周营定罪。我不过只得罪与祖宗犹可，我岂肯得罪于天下，自取灭门之祸。故将兄送解周营，再无他说。”侯虎长叹一声，再不言语。黑虎随将侯虎父子送解周营。至辕门，侯虎又见元配李氏同女站立。侯虎父子见了，大哭曰：“岂知亲弟陷兄，一门尽绝！”黑虎至辕门下骑。探事马报进中军。子牙传令：“请。”黑虎至帐行礼。子牙迎上帐曰：“贤侯大德，恶党剿除，君侯乃天下奇丈夫也！”黑虎躬身谢曰：“感丞相之恩，手札降临，照明肝胆，领命遵依，故将不仁之兄拿献辕门，听候军令。”子牙传令：“请文王上帐。”彼时文王至。黑虎进礼，口称“大王”。文王曰：“呀！原来崇二贤侯，为何至此？”黑虎曰：“不才家兄逆天违命，造恶多端，广行不仁，残虐良善；小弟今将不仁家兄，解至辕门，请令施行。”文王听罢，其心不悦，沉思：“是你一胞兄弟，反陷家庭，亦是不义。”子牙在傍言曰：“崇侯不仁，黑虎奉诏讨逆，不避骨肉，真忠贤君子，慷慨丈夫！古语云：‘善者福，恶者祸。’天下恨侯虎恨不得生啖其肉，三尺之童，闻而切齿；今共知黑虎之贤名，人人悦而心欢。故曰，好歹贤愚，不以一例而论也。”子牙传令：“将崇侯虎父子推来！”众士卒将崇侯虎父子簇拥推至中军，双膝跪下。正中文王，左边子牙，右边黑虎。子牙曰：“崇侯虎恶贯满盈，今日自犯天诛，有何理说？”文王在傍，有意不忍加诛。子牙下令：“速斩首回报！”不一时，推将出去，宝纛旛一展，侯虎父子二人首级斩了，来献中军。文王自不曾见人之首级，猛见献上来，吓得魂不附体，忙将袍袖掩面曰：“骇



will. I'd rather offend the ancestors than hurt the feelings of the people and see the Chong clan face total destruction. I have no other alternative than to take you to Prince Wen," Chong Heihu replied.

Chong Houhu let out a long sigh and remained silent. Father and son were brought to the Zhou army, where Chong Houhu saw his wife and daughter already held there. They wept bitterly.

"Who would have imagined that my brother would be so cruel as to send all my family to death!" Chong Houhu cried.

At the camp gate, Black Tiger Chong Heihu dismounted and was invited into Zhou headquarters.

"Worthy Marquis!" Jiang Ziya greeted him. "You're most noble to sacrifice private relationships in the interests of public welfare. You're the real hero of this country."

Chong Heihu bowed. "I'm grateful for your favor. I've complied with your orders, and my brother's here for your judgment."

Prince Wen was surprised to see Chong Heihu. "What brings you here?"

"My brother's committed crimes against Heaven. I've seized him and brought him here for trial."

Prince Wen was displeased. "He's your elder brother! How can you be so ruthless?"

Jiang Ziya understood what Ji Chang was thinking. "Chong Houhu's ruthless. That Heihu puts aside family ties only shows that he's truly a loyal minister," he put in. "People hate Chong Houhu and demand his death. Even small children gnash their teeth when they hear his name. They may know now that Chong Heihu is virtuous. The virtuous in a family are now distinguished from the wicked." He then ordered, "Bring them over."

Prince Wen took a seat in the middle with Jiang Ziya on his left and Chong Heihu on the right. Chong Houhu and his son were brought in and were forced to kneel down before them.

"Chong Houhu, your crimes are too many to speak of! You should be put to death as a punishment from Heaven today. What do you have to say for yourself?" Jiang Ziya demanded.

Prince Wen, however, had not the least intention of putting them to death. But Jiang Ziya was resolute "Guards! Take them out and cut their heads off," he ordered.



杀孤家!”子牙传令:“将首级号令辕门!”有诗为证,诗曰:

独霸朝歌恃己强,惑君贪酷害忠良。谁知恶孽终须报,  
枭首辕门是自亡。

话说斩了崇家父子,还有崇侯虎元配李氏并其女儿,黑虎请子牙发落。子牙曰:“令兄积恶,与元配无干;况且女生外姓,何恶之有。君侯将令嫂与令侄女分为别院,衣食之类,君侯应之,无使缺乏,是在君侯。今曹州可令将把守,坐镇崇城,便是一国,万无一失矣。”崇黑虎随释其嫂,依子牙之说,请文王进城,查府库,清户口。文王曰:“贤侯兄既死,即贤侯之掌握,何必孤行。姬昌就此告归。”黑虎再三款留不住。子牙回兵。诗曰:

自出磻溪为首相,酬恩除暴伐崇城,一封书到擒侯虎,  
方显飞熊素著名。

话说文王、子牙辞了黑虎,回兵往西岐来。文王自见斩了崇侯虎的首级,文王神魂不定,身心不安,郁郁不乐。一路上茶饭懒餐,睡卧不宁,合眼朦胧,又见崇侯虎立于面前,惊疑失神。那一日兵至西岐,众文武迎接文王入宫。彼时路上有疾,用医调治,服药不愈。按下不表。

话说崇黑虎献兄周营,文王将崇侯虎父子枭首示戮,崇城已属黑虎;北边地方,俱不服朝歌。其时有报到朝歌城。文书房微子看本,看到崇侯虎被文王所诛,崇城尽属黑虎所占,微子喜而且忧:喜者,喜侯虎罪不容诛,死当其罪;忧者,忧黑虎独占崇城,终非良善;姬昌擅专征伐,必欲剪商。“此事重大,不得不奏。”遂抱本来奏纣王。纣王看本,怒曰:“崇侯屡建大功,一旦被叛臣诛戮,情殊痛恨!”



Soon the executioners returned with two heads in their hands to show that the order had been carried out. Prince Wen had never before seen a human head just severed from its body. The sight frightened him so much that he covered his eyes with one of his sleeves. "Horrible! Horrible! I will also surely die!" he cried out.

Jiang Ziya ordered his guards to hang the heads beyond the camp gate as a warning to the wicked. Chong Heihu asked him how to deal with Chong Houhu's wife and daughter.

"The wicked doings of your brother have nothing to do with his wife and daughter. They're innocent. You should show concern for them and supply them with food, clothing and other necessities. You should allow them to live in their own quarters in your residence. You may take command of Chong City."

Black Tiger Chong Heihu did as Jiang Ziya proposed. He released his sister-in-law and asked Prince Wen to inspect Chong City. But Prince Wen refused. "You're head of the city. I needn't go there. I'll bid you farewell without further delay."

Prince Wen felt melancholy on the way back to West Qi. He was in no mood for food or drink and could neither sit nor sleep. Every time he closed his eyes, he seemed to see Chong Houhu standing right before him, demanding his life back. The sight alarmed and distracted him. When the army reached West Qi, all the civil and military officials came out to meet him. Doctors were summoned but all their medicines proved futile.

After the death of Chong Houhu, all his territory was given to Chong Heihu, and as a result became independent of Zhaoge. When news of it reached the secretariat in the capital, Wei Zi felt both pleased and worried at the same time. He was overjoyed at the execution of Chong Houhu, but he was worried that Chong Heihu now had control over all that vast area in the north, and that since Ji Chang had dared to use violence without royal permission, he would one day attack Zhaoge. He decided the matter was serious enough to be reported to King Zhou immediately, and so he requested to see King Zhou.

The king was infuriated by the news. "Chong Houhu served me with outstanding merit on numerous occasions, but he should die at their hands!



传旨：“命点兵将，先伐西岐，拿曹侯崇黑虎等，以正不臣之罪。”傍有中大夫李仁进礼称“臣”，奏曰：“崇侯虎虽有大功于陛下，实荼毒于万民，结大恶于诸侯，人人切齿，个个伤心。今被西伯殄灭，天下无不讴歌。况大小臣工无不言陛下宠信谗佞；今为诸侯又生异端，此言恰中诸侯之口。愿陛下将此事徐徐图之。如若急行，文武以陛下宠嬖幸，以诸侯为轻。侯虎虽死，如疥癣一般，天下东南，诚为重务。愿陛下裁之！”纣王听罢，沉吟良久，方息其念。按下纣王不表。

且说文王病势日日沉重，有加无减，看看危笃。文武问安，非止一日。文王传旨：“宣丞相进宫。”子牙入内殿，至龙榻前，跪而奏曰：“老臣姜尚奉旨入内殿，问候大王，贵体安否？”文王曰：“孤今召卿入内，并无别论。孤居西北，坐镇兑方，统二百镇诸侯元首，感蒙圣恩不浅。方今虽则乱离，况且还有君臣名分，未至乖离。孤伐侯虎，虽斩逆而归，外舒而心实怯非。乱臣贼子，虽人人可诛，今明君在上，不解天子而自行诛戮，是自专也。况孤与侯虎一般爵位，自行专擅，大罪也。自杀侯虎之后，孤每夜闻悲泣之声，合目则立于榻前。吾思不能久立于阳世矣。今日请卿入内，孤有一言，切不可负：倘吾死之后，纵君恶贯盈，切不可听诸侯之唆，以臣伐君。丞相若违背孤言，冥中不好相见。”道罢，泪流满面。子牙跪而启曰：“臣荷蒙恩宠，身居相位，敢不受命。若负君言，即系不忠。”君臣正论间，忽殿下姬发进宫问安。文王见姬发至，便喜曰：“我儿此来，正遂孤愿。”姬发行礼毕。文王曰：“我死之后，吾儿年幼，恐



The matter must be dealt with severely,” he said, and gave the order, “Send troops to West Qi, and bring Ji Chang and Chong Heihu back for trial.”

Li Ren moved forward and knelt down. “Though Chong Houhu served Your Majesty well, he was hated by the people for his cruelty and greediness. Many ministers were dissatisfied with your special favor for him, and to avenge him would be unavoidably opposed by all of them. It might be better to deal with the matter later on. If you take action now, you’ll have to cope with your civil and military officials first. They would think that you favor only the minions and pay no attention to the loyal. The death of Chong Houhu is just like a skin disease, not a serious problem. But the uprisings in the east and south are truly of grave concern. I hope you’ll give the matter careful consideration, Your Majesty.”

King Zhou pondered this advice for a long time and abandoned the idea of attacking Chong Heihu.

Back in West Qi, Prince Wen’s health worsened daily. Lying on his sick bed, he was frequently visited by his ministers asking after his health, but there was no sign of recovery. One day, Jiang Ziya was summoned to the inner apartments.

Kneeling down before the bed, Jiang Ziya asked, “Your aged subject, Jiang Shang, is here at your command. Do you feel better today, Your Highness?”

“I’ve asked you to come and see me as I would like to tell you something very important. I’m deeply grateful for the favor His Majesty showed by creating me West Grand Duke at the head of two hundred marquises. Though there are rebellions, we should maintain harmony with the central government and offer better service to His Majesty. I greatly regret putting Chong Houhu to death without obtaining royal approval. I am clearly in the wrong. I’m too dictatorial, as he and I were of the same rank, I didn’t have the authority to try him. I’m guilty of a serious crime. I often hear him weeping and see him standing before my bed when I close my eyes. I believe that I can’t live long. After my death, you mustn’t listen to the nobles and rise against the king, even though his behavior degenerates daily. Should you ignore what I tell you now, you’ll find it awkward to meet me in the afterworld.”

As he spoke, Prince Wen was so overcome by emotion that tears poured down his face. Still kneeling, Jiang Ziya replied, “It’s by your grace that I was made prime minister. How dare I not to obey your instructions. Should I disobey you, I would prove myself a disloyal minister.”





妄听他人之言，肆行征伐。纵天子不德，亦不得造次妄为，以成臣弑君之名。你过来，拜子牙为亚父，早晚听训指教。今听丞相，即听孤也。可请丞相坐而拜之。”姬发请子牙转上，即拜为亚父。子牙叩头榻前，泣曰：“臣受大王重恩，虽肝脑涂地，碎骨捐躯，不足以酬国恩之万一！大王切莫以臣为虑，当宜保重龙体，不日自愈矣。”文王谓子发曰：“商虽无道，吾乃臣子，必当恪守其职，毋得僭越，遗讥后世。睦爱弟兄，悯恤万民，吾死亦不为恨。”又曰：“见善不怠，行义勿疑，去非勿处，此三者乃修身之道，治国安民之大略也。”姬发再拜受命。文王曰：“孤蒙纣王不世之恩，臣再不能睹天颜直谏，再不能演八卦姜里化民也！”言罢遂薨，亡年九十七岁，后谥为周文王。时商纣王二十年仲冬。

免美文王德，巍然甲众侯。际遇昏君时，小心翼翼求。商都三道谏，姜里七年囚。卦发先天秘，《易传》起后周。飞熊来入梦，丹凤出鸣州。仁风光后稷，德业继公刘。终守仁臣节，不逞伐商谋。万古岐山下，难为西伯俦。

话说西伯文王薨，于白虎殿停丧。百官共议嗣位。太公望率群臣奉姬发嗣西伯之位——后谥为武王。武王葬父既毕，尊子牙为尚父；其余百官各加一级。君臣协心，继志述事，尽遵先王之政。四方附庸之国，皆行朝贡西土。二百镇诸侯，皆率王化。



The king and prime minister were talking when Ji Fa came in to see how his father was.

“My boy! I was just expecting you,” Prince Wen said happily. “After my death, you’ll take my place. You’re still young but must never accept anyone’s advice against King Zhou. Even though he’s not virtuous, as his subject you should never rebel. Come here now and kneel before the prime minister. Bow before him and acknowledge him as your father. You must always listen to his advice.”

Ji Fa asked Jiang Ziya to take the seat of honor, then knelt down and kowtowed before him. Sobbing bitterly, Jiang Ziya turned to kneel at Prince Wen’s bedside. “Even if my brains and innards were smeared on the ground and my bones pulverized, it wouldn’t be enough to return one-thousandth of the favor you’ve shown me. You needn’t feel anxious about me, Your Highness. You should take care of your health and make an early recovery.”

Prince Wen then turned to Ji Fa. “King Zhou lacks virtue, but as subjects we’re obliged to stay loyal. You must carry out the duties of your office, and on no account exceed the bounds of them, lest you be criticized by future generations. Love your brothers, and be kind and helpful to the people. I’ll die in peace if you obey my wishes.” He then warned, “You mustn’t become lax about doing good nor hesitate to act righteously. Abstain from all that’s wrong. This is the proper way to cultivate yourself. It’s the only way to rule.”

Ji Fa kowtowed his acceptance.

“I was favored by King Zhou with special grace. Alas! I’ll never again be able to look on his divine visage and offer my advice. Nor shall I have the chance to make divinations at Youli and educate the people there.”

He stopped speaking and breathed his last. He died at the age of 97 and was posthumously given the title of King Wen of Zhou.

After King Wen’s funeral, a conference was held at the White Tiger Hall, attended by all the ministers. Jiang Ziya, on behalf of his colleagues, proposed that Ji Fa succeed his father as the West Grand Duke and declare himself King Wu (the Military King). King Wu honored Jiang Ziya as “Shangfu” or the Adopted Father and promoted all the officials by one grade. Before long the 200 marquises and frontier tribes of the district all came and paid their obeisance to him.



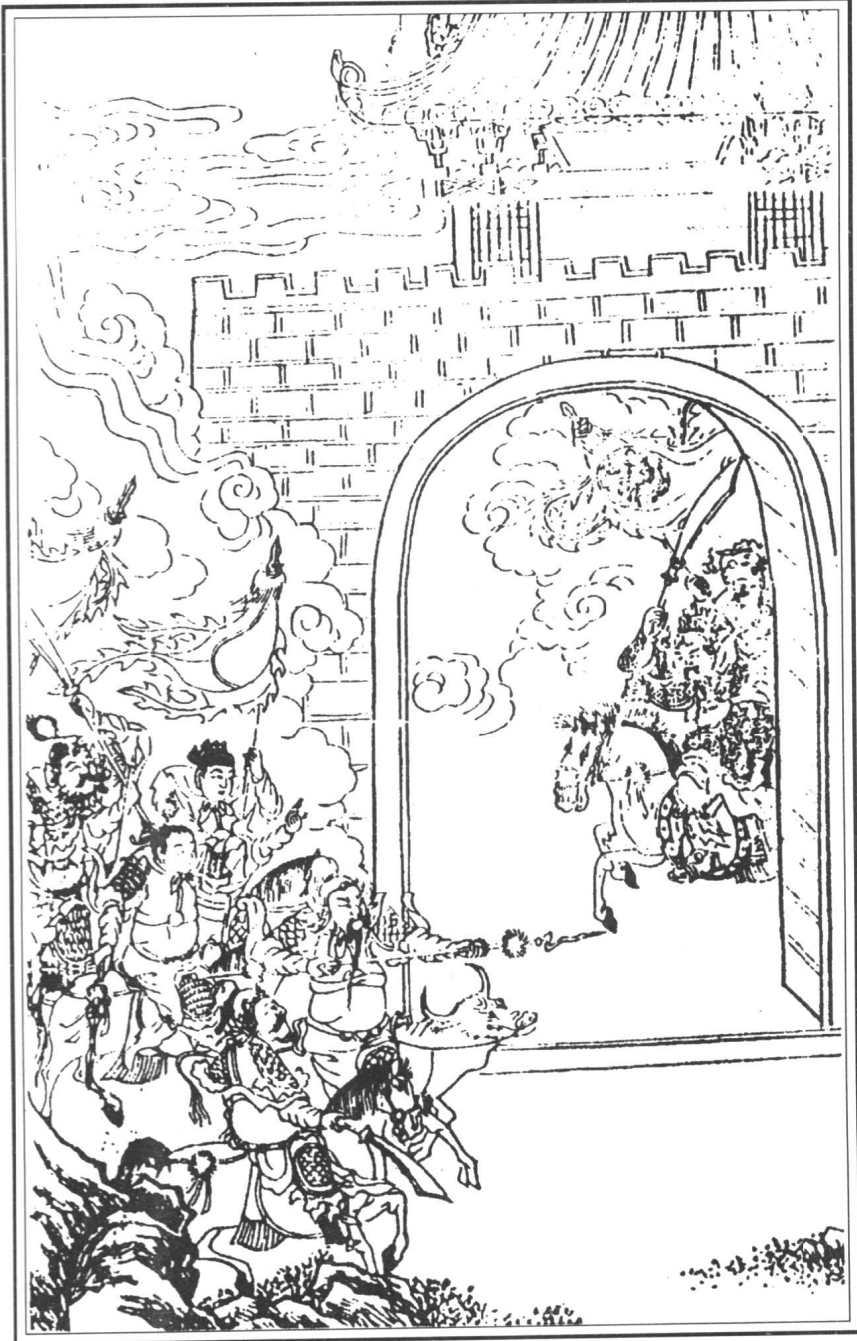
且说汜水关总兵官韩荣见得边报，文王已死，姜尚立世子姬发为武王。荣大惊，忙修本，差官往朝歌奏事。使命一日进城，将本下于文书房。时有上大夫姚中见本，与殿下微子共议：姬发自立为武王，其志不小，意在谋叛，此事不可不奏。微子曰：“姚先生，天下诸侯见当今如此荒淫，进奸退忠，各有无君之心。今姬发自立为武王，不日而有鼎沸山河、扰乱乾坤之时。今就将本面君，昏君决不以此为患，总是无益。”姚中曰：“老殿下，言虽如此，各尽臣节。”姚中抱本往摘星楼候旨。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。

Commander Han Rong of Sishui Pass was surprised to learn that the West Grand Duke had died and Jiang Ziya had made Ji Fa his successor. He sent a messenger to Zhaoge. When the palace secretariat received the report, Minister Yao Zhong consulted Prince Wei Zi about the matter. They realized that Ji Fa was ambitious and would surely rise against the government. The situation was grave. Nevertheless, Prince Wei Zi thought that the tyrant would not consider it urgent, and it would be useless to deliver the report. Yao Zhong, however, motivated by his sense of loyalty, decided that he must see the king, whatever the result might be. He went at once to the Star Picking Mansion.

If you want to know what resulted from the visit, you must read the next chapter.







## 第三十回

### 周纪激反武成王

诗曰：

君戏臣妻自不良，纲常污蔑枉成王。只知苏后妖言惑，不信黄妃直谏匡。烈妇清贞成个是，昏君愚昧落场殃。今朝逼反擎天柱，稳助周家世世昌。

话说姚中上摘星楼见驾毕，纣王曰：“卿有何奏章？”姚中曰：“西伯姬昌已死，姬发自立为武王，颁行四方，诸侯归心者甚多，将来为祸不小。臣因见边报，甚是恐惧。陛下当速兴师问罪，以正国法；若怠缓不行，则其中观望者皆效尤耳。”纣王曰：“料姬发一黄口稚子，有何能为之事？”姚中奏曰：“发虽年幼，姜尚多谋，南宫适、散宜生之辈，谋勇俱全，不可不预为防。”纣王曰：“卿之言虽有理，料姜尚不过一术士，有何作为！”遂不听。姚中知纣王意在不行，随下殿叹曰：“灭商者必姬发矣！”这且不表。

时光迅速，不觉又是年终。次年乃纣二十一年，正月元旦之辰，百官朝贺毕，圣驾回宫。大凡元旦日，各王位并大臣的夫人俱入内朝贺正宫苏皇后。各亲王夫人朝贺毕，出朝。——祸因此起。

且说武成王黄飞虎的元配夫人贾氏，入宫朝贺，——二则西宫黄妃是黄飞虎的妹子，一年姑嫂会此一次，必须款洽半日，故贾夫人先往正宫来。宫人报：“启娘娘：贾夫人候



## Chapter 30

### Incidents Leading to a Rebellion

When Yao Zhong was ushered into the Star Picking Mansion, he kowtowed to the king. "Ji Chang's dead. His son Ji Fa has succeeded him and has given himself the title of King Wu. Many nobles have already acknowledged him. This is going to cause a lot of trouble in the future. I'm extremely worried by this news and suggest that you send a punitive force. If you don't take action in time, the others will follow suit," he warned the king.

"What can Ji Fa do? He's just a young whippersnapper scarcely off his mother's milk," King Zhou said scornfully.

"Though he's young, Jiang Ziya's thoughtful, San Yisheng's highly educated and Nangong Kuo's very brave. We must be on our guard against them," Yao Zhong argued.

"You may be right, but Jiang Ziya's only a sorcerer. He can do nothing," King Zhou said, dismissing his words.

Yao Zhong left the Star Picking Mansion, sighing deeply, 'Ji Fa will surely be the man who brings this dynasty to an end!'

Time passed swiftly, and it was soon New Year's Day of the 21st year of the reign of King Zhou. It was a day of celebration when all the ministers entered the palace to extend their greetings to the king, and their wives offered their greetings to Queen Daji.

When the officials and their wives completed the congratulatory formalities and withdrew from the palace, trouble began.

Lady Jia, wife of Huang Feihu, had entered the palace to offer her greetings to Daji. Huang Feihu's sister was Concubine Huang of the West Palace, and as the two women could only meet this once each year, they always spent several hours talking together. As usual, Lady Jia first went to see Daji before visiting her sister-in-law.

When a palace maid reported, "Your Majesty! Lady Jia's awaiting







旨。”姐已问曰：“那个贾夫人？”宫人：“启娘娘：黄飞虎元配贾夫人。”姐已暗暗点头：“黄飞虎，你恃强助放神莺，抓坏我面门，今日你一般妻子贾氏也入吾圈套！”传旨：“宣。”贾氏入宫行礼，朝贺毕。娘娘赐坐。夫人谢恩。姐已曰：“夫人青春几何？”贾氏：“启娘娘：臣妾虚度‘四九’。”姐已曰：“夫人长我八岁，还是我姐姐。我苏氏与你结为姊妹，如何？”贾氏奏曰：“娘娘乃万乘之尊；臣妾乃一介之妇，岂有彩凤配山鸡之理？”姐已曰：“夫人太谦！我虽椒房之贵，不过苏侯之女；你位居武成王夫人，况且又是国戚，何卑之有。”传旨：“排宴。”款待贾氏。姐已居上，贾氏居下，传杯共饮。酒不过三、五巡，宫宦启娘娘：“驾到！”贾氏着忙，奏曰：“娘娘将妾身置于何地？”姐已曰：“姐姐，不妨，可往后宫避之。”贾氏果进后宫。姐已接驾至殿上。纣王见有筵席，问曰：“卿与何人饮酒？”姐已奏曰：“妾身陪武成王夫人贾氏饮酒。”纣王曰：“贤哉姐已！”传旨：“换席。”纣王与姐已把盏。姐已曰：“陛下可曾见贾氏之容貌乎？”纣王曰：“卿言差矣。君不见臣妻，礼也。”姐已曰：“君故不可见臣妻，今贾氏乃陛下国戚，武成王妹子现在西宫，既为内戚，见亦何妨。外边小民，姑夫、舅母共饮，乃常事耳。陛下暂请出宫，别殿少憩。待妾诓贾氏上摘星楼，那时驾临，使贾氏不能回避。贾氏果然天姿国色，万分妖娆。”纣王大喜，退于偏殿。且说姐已来请贾氏，贾氏谢恩告出。姐已曰：“一年一会，今与姐姐往摘星楼看景一会，何如？”贾氏不敢违命，只得相随往摘星楼来。诗曰：

姐已设计陷忠贞，贾氏楼前命自湮。名节已全清白信，



your permission to enter," Daji asked, "Who's Lady Jia?"

"Lady Jia's the wife of Huang Feihu."

Daji nodded to herself. "Huang Feihu! You set your wild eagle on me and scratched my face, but today your wife will walk straight into my trap!" She ordered, "Admit Lady Jia."

After the greetings, Daji asked Lady Jia to sit down. "How old are you, Lady Jia?"

"I'm thirty-six, Your Majesty."

"You're eight years older than I. You should be my elder sister. Would you agree to becoming my sworn sister?"

"Oh, Your Majesty! How dare I? You're the queen while I'm only an ordinary woman. A peasant in the wilderness certainly cannot be a match for a beautiful phoenix," Lady Jia protested.

"You're too modest, my lady. Although I am queen, I'm only the daughter of Marquis Su Hu, while you're wife of a prince, relative of His Majesty. You're a member of the aristocracy, not an ordinary woman."

She entertained Lady Jia. They had drunk four or five cups of wine when a palace maid reported, "His Majesty approaches."

Lady Jia was flustered. "Where shall I go to avoid him?"

"Don't worry, Sister. You may take cover in the rear hall."

When Lady Jia had hidden herself in the rear hall, Daji welcomed the king in. He saw the cups and dishes on the table. "Who were you drinking with?"

"Lady Jia, wife of Prince Huang Feihu."

The table was cleared and set again. King Zhou toasted Daji, but she asked, "Have you ever seen Lady Jia, Your Majesty?"

"How can you ask such a thing! According to the rites, the king may not see the wife of his subject."

"You're right, Your Majesty. But Huang Feihu's sister is your concubine. Lady Jia's your relative. As her brother-in-law, you may see her without violating the rites. This is quite in keeping with ordinary customs. You may leave here temporarily. I'll induce Lady Jia to ascend the Star Picking Mansion. You can go there and take her by surprise so that she hasn't the chance to avoid you. She's extraordinarily beautiful."

King Zhou retired to a side court in great delight, and Daji called Lady Jia to come out. Lady Jia thanked Daji and bade her farewell, but Daji said very earnestly, "We meet each other only once a year. How can you leave me so soon? Come with me to the Star Picking Mansion and look at the beautiful scenery. Won't you come, Sister?"



简编凛烈有谁伦。

姐已携贾氏上得楼来，行至九曲栏杆，望下一看，只见蛭盆内蛇蝎狰狞，骷髅白骨，堆堆垛垛，着实难看；酒池中悲风凛凛，肉林下寒气侵侵。贾氏对姐已曰：“启娘娘：此楼下设此池沼、坑穴，为何？”姐已曰：“宫中大弊难除，故设此刑，名曰蛭盆。宫人有犯者，剥衣缚身，送下此坑，喂此蛇蝎。”贾氏听罢，魂不附体。姐已传旨：“摆上酒来！”贾氏告辞：“决不敢领娘娘盛意！”姐已曰：“我晓的你还要往西宫去；略饮数杯，也是上楼一番。”贾氏只得依从。且不说贾氏在楼。且说西宫黄妃差官打听，贾夫人入宫朝贺，姑嫂骨肉只此一年一会。黄妃倚宫门而候。差官回覆曰：“贾夫人随苏娘娘上摘星楼去了。”黄妃大惊：“姐已乃妒忌之妇，嫂嫂为何随此贱人？”忙差官往楼下打听。

话说姐已，贾氏正饮酒时，宫人来报：“驾到！”贾氏着忙。姐已曰：“姐姐莫慌，请立于栏杆外边；等驾见毕，姐姐下楼，何必着忙。”果然贾氏立在栏杆外边。纣王上楼，姐已礼毕。纣王坐下，故问曰：“栏杆外立者何人？”姐已曰：“武成王夫人贾氏。”贾氏出笏见礼。姐已曰：“赐卿平身。”贾氏立于一旁。纣王偷睛观看贾氏姿色，果然生成端正，长就娇容。昏君传旨：“赐坐。”贾氏奏曰：“陛下、国母，乃天下之主，臣妾焉敢坐。臣妾该万死！”姐已曰：“姐姐坐下何妨。”纣王曰：“御妻为何称贾氏为姐姐？”姐已曰：“贾夫人与妾一拜姊妹，故称姐姐，——乃是皇姨，便坐下何妨。”贾氏自思：“今日入了苏姐已圈套……”贾氏俯伏奏曰：“臣妾进宫朝贺，乃是恭上；陛下亦合礼下。自古道：



Lady Jia had no choice but to follow Daji to the Star Picking Mansion. As she walked along the upper balcony, Lady Jia looked down and saw the writhing serpents and piles of human skeletons. An eerie wind blew from the wine pool and a chill rose from beneath the Meat Forest. She was scared.

“Your Majesty, what’s that pit down there for?” she asked.

“In order to maintain discipline, I invented this serpent pit as a means of punishment. Anyone who violates the palace discipline is stripped and bound and thrown into the pit to feed the serpents.”

Daji’s explanation frightened Lady Jia. She wanted to leave at once but Daji ordered that wine be brought in.

“I know you’re going to the West Palace to see your sister-in-law, but do sit down and have a few more cups first, and then I’ll see you off.”

Lady Jia could do nothing but comply.

In the West Palace, Concubine Huang had been waiting for her sister-in-law but received word that Lady Jia was being entertained by Daji in the Star Picking Mansion. She was greatly alarmed. “Daji’s an extremely jealous and evil woman. How can my sister be drinking with her?” She wondered and sent her maid to obtain further news.

As Daji and Lady Jia drank, a palace maid announced the arrival of His Majesty. Lady Jia looked around in fright.

“Don’t panic, Sister. Wait for me out on the balcony. As soon as His Majesty’s gone, you may leave. You needn’t worry so much,” Daji soothed her.

The king entered the hall and took a seat at Daji’s side. “Who’s that standing outside by the rail?”

“That is the wife of Prince Huang Feihu,” Daji replied. Forced now to make an appearance, Lady Jia had to bow before King Zhou. The king looked at Lady Jia with his lustful eyes and found her really beautiful.

“Please take a seat,” he ordered.

“Your Majesty,” she replied. “You’re the king. How could I dare sit in your presence!”

“Sister, there’s nothing wrong with you taking a seat,” Daji urged.

“Why do you call her sister?” King Zhou asked.

“Lady Jia’s my sworn sister and your sister-in-law. She can certainly sit down before you,” Daji explained.

Lady Jia could see the situation clearly. “So I’ve fallen into her trap,” she thought. She knelt down and said, ‘I came to the palace to offer my



‘君不见臣妻，礼也。’愿陛下赐臣妾下楼，感圣恩于无极矣！”纣王曰：“皇姨谦而不坐，朕立奉一杯，如何？”贾氏面红赤紫，怒发冲霄，自思：“我的丈夫何等之人！我怎肯今日受辱！”贾氏料今日不能全生。纣王执一杯酒，笑容可掬来奉贾氏。贾氏已无退处，用手抓杯，望纣王劈面打来，大骂：“昏君！我丈夫与你挣江山，立奇功三十余场，不思酬功；今日信苏妲己之言，欺辱臣妻。昏君！你与妲己贱人不知死于何地！”纣王大怒，命左右：“拿了！”贾氏大喝曰：“谁敢拿我！”转身一步，走近栏杆前，大叫曰：“黄将军！妾身与你全其名节！只可怜我三个孩儿，无人看管！……”这夫人将身一跳，撞下楼台，粉骨碎身。有诗为证，诗曰：

朝贺中宫起祸殃，夫人贞洁坠楼亡。纣王失政忘君道，烈妇存诚敢自凉。西伯慢言招国瑞，殷商又道失金汤。三三两两兵戈动，八百诸侯起战场。

话说纣王见贾氏坠楼而死，好懊恼，平地风波，悔之不及。

且说黄妃的差官打听信息，忙报西宫：“启娘娘：其祸不浅！”黄妃曰：“有甚么祸事？”差官报道：“贾夫人坠了摘星楼，不知何故。”黄妃大哭曰：“妲己泼贱！与吾兄有隙，今将吾嫂嫂陷害无辜……”黄妃步行往摘星楼下，径上楼，指定纣王骂曰：“昏君！你成汤社稷亏谁！我兄与你东拒海寇，南战蛮夷。掌兵权，一点丹心，助国家，未敢安枕。我父黄滚镇守界牌关，训练士卒，日夕劳苦。一门忠烈，报国忧民。今元旦，遵守朝廷国礼，进宫朝贺，乃敬上守法之臣。任信泼贱，诬彼上楼。昏君！你爱色不分纲常，绝灭彝伦！你有辱先王，污名简册！”黄妃把纣王骂得默默无言。又见妲己侧



greetings out of respect to my superiors. I beg Your Majesty to observe the rites and allow me to leave here at once.”

“Don’t be so modest, Sister. If you don’t sit down, then I’ll have to stand up and toast you,” King Zhou said encouragingly.

Lady Jia flushed with anger, feeling humiliated. “My husband’s a noble and great man. How can I endure insult from the tyrant like this?” she thought and decided that she could not possibly leave the palace alive.

King Zhou poured a cup of wine and offered it to Lady Jia with an alluring smile. Lady Jia had no room to retreat. She grabbed the cup and threw it straight in the king’s face.

“Tyrant! My husband’s served for your kingdom well, yet without rewarding him, you try to insult his wife!” she cursed. “Tyrant, you and Daji are bound to meet your doom before long.”

In great wrath, King Zhou ordered, “Seize her at once.”

“No one dare touch me!” Lady Jia screamed, then turned and ran to the balcony railings. “Husband! I’ll protect the honor of your name and my chastity with my life. Alas, my poor children. There’ll be no one to take care of you!” she cried and leapt.

King Zhou felt great remorse, but it was already too late. News soon reached the West Palace, and Concubine Huang wept bitterly. “Daji, you cheap bitch! You hate my brother and take revenge on his wife!”

She rushed to the Star Picking Mansion and went straight upstairs to see King Zhou. “You damned tyrant!” she swore, pointing her finger at him. “To whom do you owe the peace and security of your kingdom? My brother’s repulsed the pirates on the sea in the east and subdued the savage tribes in the south. My father Huang Gun’s commander at Jiepai Pass. He trains his troops day and night for the security of your rule. Every member of the Huang family is loyal to you. Today Lady Jia came to the palace to offer her greetings. But you, you tyrant, were encouraged by that cheap hussy to cheat her into coming up here. You’re so lustful that you totally disregard the ethic governing human relationships. You’re a humiliation to your deceased ancestors, and your name’ll be dirt in the history books of the future!”

Concubine Huang’s curses left King Zhou dumbstruck. Seeing Daji beside him, she then pointed her finger at her. “You cheap bitch! You turn the palace into chaos and poison His Majesty’s mind. My sister died tragically as the result of your dirty trick!”



坐，黄妃指妲己骂曰：“贱人！你淫乱深宫，蛊惑天子。我嫂嫂被你陷身坠楼，痛伤骨髓！”赶上一把，抓住妲己，——黄妃原有气力，乃将门之女。把妲己拖翻在地，捺在尘埃，手起拳落，打了二、三十下。妲己虽然是妖怪，见纣王坐在上面，有本事也不敢用出，只叫：“陛下救命！”纣王看着黄妃打妲己，心有偏向，上前劝解。纣王曰：“不管妲己事。你嫂嫂触朕自愧，故投楼下；与妲己无干。”黄妃急攘之间，不暇检点，回手一拳，悞打着纣王脸上，“好昏君！你还来替贱人遮掩！打死了妲己，与嫂嫂偿命！”纣王大怒：“这贱人反将朕打一拳！”一把抓住黄妃后鬓，一把抓住宫衣，拎起来，纣王力大，望摘星楼下一摔，——可怜：香消玉碎佳人绝，粉骨残躯血染衣！纣王摔了黄妃下楼，独坐无言，心下甚是懊恼，只是不好埋怨妲己。

且说贾氏侍儿随夫人往宫朝贺，只在九间殿等候；到夜晚也不见出来。只见一内侍问曰：“你们是那里的侍儿？”答曰：“我们是武成王府里的；随夫人朝宫，在此伺候。”内侍曰：“你夫人坠了摘星楼；黄娘娘为你夫人辨明，反被天子摔下楼，跌得粉骨碎身。你们快去罢！”侍儿听说，急急回王府来。武成王在内殿同弟黄飞彪、飞豹，黄明、周纪、龙环、吴谦，黄天禄、天爵、天祥三子，元旦良辰欢饮。只见侍儿慌张来报：“千岁爷：祸事不小！”飞虎曰：“有什么事，报得这等凶？”侍儿跪禀曰：“夫人进宫，不知何故，坠了摘星楼；黄娘娘被纣王摔下楼来跌死了！”黄天禄——十四岁，天爵——十二岁，天祥——七岁，听得母亲坠楼而亡，放声大哭。有诗为证，诗曰：



She rushed over, seized Daji and struck her. As the daughter of a general, she was very strong. She knocked Daji to the ground, and the punches rained down. Though Daji was a specter and could beat Concubine Huang with ease, she could not do it before King Zhou.

"Help! Help! Your Majesty," she pleaded pitifully.

The king rushed over to mediate. "It had nothing to do with Daji. Your sister offended me so much that she felt scared and killed herself by leaping from the balcony. It's not Daji's fault," he explained.

But in her anger, Concubine Huang acted without thinking and landed a punch in King Zhou's face. "You tyrant!" she screamed. "You're still trying to defend the bitch. I'll beat her to death to pay for the life of my sister."

King Zhou was furious. "How dare you strike me, you wretched woman!"

He grabbed her hair with one hand and her robes with the other, lifted her up and hurled her from the balcony. She died at once. King Zhou then sat down in silence. Though he was filled with remorse, he was unwilling to reproach Daji.

Meanwhile the attendants who had accompanied Lady Jia to the palace were still waiting for her in the Nine Chamber Hall. They waited until dusk, but she failed to return. A maid appeared from the inner palace and asked them who they were.

"We're from the mansion of Prince Huang Feihu. We're waiting for Lady Jia," they replied.

"You'd better return home. Lady Jia's committed suicide by throwing herself from the Star Picking Mansion. Concubine Huang then had an argument with His Majesty, and he threw her off the building too."

Huang Feihu was enjoying the New Year's feast with his brothers Huang Feibiao and Huang Feibao, his generals, Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Qian, and his three sons, Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue and Huang Tianxiang when Lady Jia's attendants returned.

"Your Highness! Disaster's befallen us!" they reported in great fright.

"What happened?" Huang Feihu asked hurriedly.

The attendants knelt down. "We don't know why, but our mistress Lady Jia threw herself from the Star Picking Mansion and Concubine Huang of the West Palace was thrown off the building by His Majesty. Both are dead."

Huang Tianlu, aged fourteen, Huang Tianjue, twelve, and Huang Tianxiang, seven, immediately burst into tears. But Huang Feihu remained silent at the news.





忽闻凶报满门惊，子哭儿啼泪若倾。烈妇有恩虽莫负，忠君无愧更当诚。左观四友俱怀忿，右睹三男苦痛心。回首不堪重悒怏，伤心只有夜猿鸣。

话说飞虎听得此信，无语沉吟；又见三子哭得酸楚。黄明曰：“兄长不必踌躇。纣王失政，大变人伦。嫂嫂进宫，想必昏君看见嫂嫂姿色，君欺臣妻，此事也是有的。嫂嫂乃是女中丈夫，兄长何等豪杰，嫂嫂守贞洁，为夫名节，为子纲常，故此坠楼而死。黄娘娘见嫂嫂惨死，必定向昏君辨明。纣王溺爱偏向，把娘娘摔下楼。此事再无他议。长兄不必迟疑。‘君不正，臣投外国。’想吾辈南征北讨，马不离鞍，东战西攻，人不脱甲，若是这等看起来，愧见天下英雄，有何颜立于人世！君既负臣，臣安能长仕其国。吾等反也！”四人各上马，持利刃，出门而走。飞虎见四人反了，自思：“难道为一妇人，竟负国恩之理。将此反声扬出，难洗清白……”黄飞虎急出府，大叫曰：“四弟速回！就反也要商议往何处地方？投于何主？打点车辆，装载行囊，同出朝歌。为何四人独自前去！”四将听罢，回马，至府下马，进了内殿。黄飞虎持剑在手，大喝曰：“黄明等！你这四贼！不思报本，反陷害我合门之祸！我家妻子死于摘星楼，与你何干！你等口称‘反’字，黄氏一门七世忠良，享国恩二百余年，难道为一女人造反。你借此乘机要反朝歌而图掳掠，你不思金带垂腰，官居神武，尽忠报国，而终成狼子野心，不绝绿林本色耳！”骂的四人默默无语。黄明笑曰：“长兄，你骂得有理。又不是我们的事，恼他怎的！”四人在旁，抬一桌酒吃。四人大笑不止。黄飞虎心下如火燎一般；又见三子哭声不绝，听得四人抚掌欢欣，黄飞虎问曰：“你们那些儿欢喜？”黄明曰：“兄长家下有事挠心，小弟们心上无事。今元旦吉辰，吃



“Don’t hesitate, Brother!” Huang Ming urged him. “The tyrant must have been fascinated by Sister’s beauty and attempted to insult her. She defended her chastity by suicide. Concubine Huang must have learned of her tragic death and protested, so he threw her off the mansion. This is undoubtedly what happened. The old proverb teaches us that ‘Should the monarch rule improperly, his subjects may seek a new master.’ Look! We’re brave and loyal, fighting for the king in the north, south, east, and west. If we remain indifferent to such a serious matter, we’ll be ridiculed by the heroes. Since the king insults his subjects, we can only rebel. There’s no other choice.”

The four generals took up their weapons, mounted their horses and rode out of the mansion. Seeing them leave, ready to take action, Huang Feihu hesitated. “How can I rebel just for a woman’s sake? How will I be able to defend my position when the rebellion is known to all?”

He ran outside and shouted to the four generals, “Come back, Brothers! Let’s discuss what to do and where to go. We’ll have to prepare carts for our baggage. How can you four leave here alone?”

The four generals turned back and went inside with Huang Feihu. Unexpectedly, Huang Feihu raised his sword in his hand. “You rogues! You don’t repay royal favor but take action detrimental to my whole family! What’s the death of my wife got to do with you? Have you ever thought that the Huang family has served the dynasty faithfully for seven generations, enjoying royal favor for more than two hundred years? How can we declare a rebellion against the government just because a woman has died! You’re just using this as an excuse to plunder Zhaoge. You forget that you’re high military officials, wearing the golden belts of office!”

The generals were momentarily dumbstruck, but then General Huang Ming laughed. “Brother! You’re absolutely right. The matter has nothing to do with us at all. Why should we be angry about it?”

They sat down again to the feast, eating, drinking and laughing incessantly. But Huang Feihu’s heart was boiling. His three sons’ bitter sobbing resounded in his ears. “What makes you four so happy?” he demanded.

“Brother! You’re in trouble, we’re not. This is New Year’s Day. We



酒作乐，与你何干？”飞虎气不过，恼曰：“你见我有事，反大笑，这是怎么说？”周纪曰：“不瞒兄说，笑的是你。”飞虎道：“有甚么事与你笑？我官居王位，禄极人臣，列朝班身居首领，披蟒腰玉，有何事与你笑？”周纪曰：“兄长，你只知官居首领，显耀爵禄，身挂蟒袍。知者说仗你平生胸襟，位至尊大；不知者，只说你倚嫂娣姿色，和悦君王，得其富贵。”周纪道罢，黄飞虎大叫一声：“气杀我也！”传家将：“收拾行囊，打点反出朝歌！”黄飞彪见兄反了，点一千名家将，将车辆四百，把细软、金银珠宝装载停当。飞虎同三子、二弟、四友，临行曰：“我们如今投那方去？”黄明曰：“兄长岂不闻‘贤臣择主而仕’，西岐武王，三分天下，周土已得二分，共享安康之福，岂不为美。”周纪暗思：“方才飞虎反，是我说将计反了；他若还看破，只怕不反。不若使他个绝后计，再也来不得……”周纪曰：“此往西岐，出五关，借兵来朝歌城，为嫂娣、娘娘报仇，此还是迟着。依小弟愚见，今日就在午门会纣王一战，以见雌雄。你意下如何？”黄飞虎心下昏乱，随口答应曰：“也是。”——大抵天道该是如此。飞虎金装盔甲，上了五色神牛。飞彪、飞豹同三侄，龙环、吴谦并家将，保车辆出西门。黄明、周纪同武成王至午门。天色已明。周纪大叫：“传与纣王，早早出来，讲个明白。如迟，杀进宫阙，悔之晚矣！”纣王自贾氏身亡，黄妃已绝，自己悔之不及；正在龙德殿懊恼，无可对人言说。直到天明，当驾官启奏：“黄飞虎反了，现在午门请战。”纣王大怒，借此出气，“好匹夫！焉敢如此欺侮朕躬！”传旨：“取披挂！”九吞八扎，点护驾御林军，上逍遥



ought to enjoy ourselves. It has nothing to do with you," Huang Ming replied.

Huang Feihu exploded with rage, "How can you laugh when I'm in such distress?"

"To tell you the truth, Brother, we're all laughing at you," General Zhou Ji said coldly.

"Am I a laughingstock? I'm the highest official in the kingdom. I'm the head of all the ministers. What's there to be laughed at?" Huang Feihu demanded.

"Brother, you're quite right. You enjoy high rank. Those who know, of course, realize that the service you've rendered the kingdom fully qualifies you for such glory. But those who don't would think that your power and riches are only due to the king's appreciation of your wife's beauty," General Zhou Ji answered.

Zhou Ji's acute answer made Huang Feihu boil with rage. He ordered his guards, "Pack up the luggage and get ready to fight our way out of Zhaoge!"

As his elder brother was determined to rebel, Huang Feibiao organized 1,000 soldiers and 400 carts, all loaded with gold, silver, pearls and other valuables in preparation for the journey.

Huang Feihu doubtfully asked his three sons, two brothers and four trusted generals. "But where shall we go?"

"Brother! Don't you know the ancient proverb that the talented choose only a virtuous master? King Wu in West Qi already has political influence over two-thirds of the kingdom. Let's go to him. What could be better?" General Huang Ming suggested, as he thought, "I've incited him to rebel, but he might regret it and change his mind. I must make it impossible for him to turn back." He said, "Revenge for Lady Jia and Concubine Huang will be slow if we wait till we've fought our way through the five passes and asked King Wu for troops. We ought to challenge King Zhou to battle before we leave. What do you think, Brother?"

Huang Feihu agreed without thinking. He put on his armor, mounted his divine ox, and then rode with his brothers and generals to the palace gate. His sons, under the protection of family guards, left the capital through the west gate along with the luggage carts. Dawn was just breaking when they reached the palace gate.

"Tell the tyrant to come out and explain himself without delay," General Zhou Ji shouted. "If he's slow about it, we'll break into the palace. It'll be too late to regret it then."



马，提斩将刀，出午门。怎见得：

冲天盔，龙蟠凤舞；金锁甲，叩就连环。九龙袍，金光  
晃目；护心镜，前后牢拴。红挺带，攒成八宝；鞍鞞挂  
竹节钢鞭。逍遥马追风逐日，斩将刀定国安邦。只因天  
道该如此，至使君臣会战场。

黄飞虎虽反，今日面君，尚有愧色。周纪见飞虎愧色，  
在马上大呼：“纣王失政，君欺臣妻，大肆狂悖！”纵马使  
斧，来取纣王。纣王大怒，手中刀急架相还。黄明走马来  
攻。黄飞虎口里虽不言，心中大恼曰：“也不等我分清理浊，  
他二人便动手杀将起来！”飞虎只得催开神牛。一龙三虎杀  
在午门。怎见得，有诗为证：

虎斗龙争在午门，纣王无道败彝伦，眼前贤士归明主，  
目下黎民叛远村。三略有空空执法，五关无路可留阍。  
忠孝至今传万载，独夫遗臭枉称尊。

君臣四骑，杀三十回合。纣王刀法展开，其势真如虎狼。三  
员大将使开枪斧，纣王抵敌不住，刀尖难举，马往后坐，将  
刀一掩，败进午门。黄明要赶，飞虎曰：“不可。”三骑随出  
西门，来赶家将，一同行走，过孟津。不表。

且说纣王败至大殿坐下，懊悔不及。都城百姓官员已知  
武成王反了，家家闭户，路少人行。又闻天子大战黄飞虎，  
百官忙入朝，见纣王问安，曰：“黄飞虎因何事造反？”天子  
怎肯认错，乃曰：“贾氏进宫朝贺，触忤皇后，自己坠楼而  
死。黄妃倚仗伊兄，恃强殴辱正宫，推跌下楼，亦是误伤。  
不知黄飞虎自己因何造反，杀人午门，深属不道！诸臣为朕  
作速议处！”百官听纣王言说，皆默默无语，莫敢先立意



After the death of Lady Jia and Concubine Huang, King Zhou was filled with remorse. He was sitting alone in the Dragon Virtue Hall when a guard rushed in. "Huang Feihu's rebelled. He challenges you at the palace gate."

King Zhou was furious and took the opportunity to vent his frustration. "The bloody bastard! How dare he!"

He put on his armor, took a cutlass and rode out on his Jaunty Horse, followed by the palace army. Though Huang Feihu was determined to rebel, he felt ashamed to meet him. Zhou Ji read it from his expression.

"Tyrant! You mishandle administration and have insulted the wife of your minister. You're wanton and barbarous," he shouted. Raising his axe, he rode his horse at King Zhou. The king lifted his big cutlass to parry the blow. Without losing any time, Huang Ming urged his horse forward to join the attack.

Huang Feihu said nothing, but he was displeased. "They rushed into fight without giving me a chance to clarify the facts with the king."

He had no choice but to spur his divine ox forward to join the combat. It was like a fight between a dragon and three tigers. King Zhou played his cutlass with skill, but he could not withstand the combined attack of the three generals. After thirty rounds he had to give up ground and flee back through the palace gate. Huang Ming wanted to follow in pursuit, but Huang Feihu stopped him. They left Zhaoe through the west gate, quickly caught up with the rest of the family, and went on together towards Mengjin.

After his defeat, King Zhou fled into the palace and sat in his court brooding remorsefully, but it was too late. At the news of the rebellion of Prince Huang Feihu, the people of the capital closed their doors and few ventured out onto the streets. When the ministers heard about the battle, they appeared before the king to comfort him.

"What made Huang Feihu rebel against Your Majesty?" they asked.

King Zhou was naturally unwilling to admit his guilt. "When Madame Jia entered the palace to offer New Year's Day greetings, she offended my queen and then committed suicide by throwing herself off a balcony. Concubine Huang relied on the power of her brother and tried to get away with insulting Her Majesty. She was accidentally pushed off the



见。正沉思间，探事马报进午门曰：“闻太师征东海奏凯回兵。”百官大喜，齐辞朝上马，出郭迎接。只见人马远远行至，中军官报入营中曰：“启太师：百官辕门迎接。”闻太师曰：“众官请回，午门相会。”众官进城至朝门，见闻太师骑墨麒麟来至，众官躬身。太师曰：“列位请了！”众官同进朝，见天子，行礼毕起身，不见武成王，太师心下疑惑，奏曰：“武成王为何不来随朝？”王曰：“黄飞虎反了。”太师惊问：“为何事反？”纣王曰：“元旦贾氏进宫，朝贺中宫，触犯苏后，自知罪戾，负愧坠楼而死，——此是自取。西宫黄妃听知贾氏已死，忿怒上楼，毁打苏后，辱朕不堪；是朕怒起相攘，误跌下楼，非朕有意。不知黄飞虎辄敢率众杀入午门，与朕对敌，幸而未遭毒手，今已拥众反出西门。朕正在此沉思，适太师奏捷，乞与朕擒来，以正国法！”太师听罢，厉声言曰：“此一件事，据老臣愚见，还是陛下有负于臣子！黄飞虎素有忠君爱国之心，今贾氏进宫朝贺，此臣下之礼，岂有无故而死！况摘星楼乃陛下所居，与中宫相间，贾氏因何上此楼，其中必有主使、引诱之人，故陷陛下于不义。陛下不自详察，而有辱此贞洁之妇。黄娘娘见嫂死无辜，必定上楼直谏，陛下亦不能容受，溺爱偏向，又将黄娘娘摔跌下楼。致贾氏忿怨死，黄娘娘遭冤，实君有负臣子，与臣下何干。况语云：‘君不正则臣投外国。’今黄飞虎以报国赤衷，功在社稷，不能荣子封妻，享久长富贵，反致骨肉无辜惨死，情实伤心。乞陛下可赦黄飞虎一概大罪，待臣追赶飞虎回来，社稷可保，家国太平。”百官在旁，齐言：“太师处之甚明，无不钦服。望陛下速降敕旨，大事定矣！”闻



building. I really don't understand why Huang Feihu has rebelled. Tell me quickly how I should deal with the matter."

The ministers remained silent, no one daring to speak first. As everyone pondered in silence, news came that the Grand Tutor had returned from the East Sea district. Cheered by the news, they left the palace and rode out of the city to meet the Grand Tutor.

As was the usual custom, Grand Tutor Wen asked his fellow colleagues to meet him at the palace gate. Grand Tutor Wen then dismounted from his black unicorn, greeted the ministers and walked to the Nine Chamber Hall. He kowtowed to the king, got up and looked round. There was no sign of Prince Huang Feihu.

"Your Majesty, why's Huang Feihu absent today?" the Grand Tutor asked.

"Huang Feihu's rebelled!"

"How can that be? Why did he rebel?" the Grand Tutor asked in surprise.

King Zhou repeated his version of the story and then added, "I never imagined that Huang Feihu would have the gall to attack me at the palace gate. I was lucky to escape unharmed. Huang Feihu and his gang have already left the capital through the west gate. I hope that you'll bring them back to be dealt with according to the law."

The king's fabrications angered the Grand Tutor. "It seems to me that this has been caused solely by your ill-treatment of him. Huang Feihu's always been loyal and patriotic. Lady Jia entered the palace to offer New Year greetings in fulfillment of the ritual duty of a subject. How could she commit suicide without cause? Moreover, the Star Picking Mansion are your private living quarters, not the central palace. Why did Lady Jia go up there?" he demanded sternly. "Someone must have tricked her into doing so in order to push you into a trap. Why didn't you consider it carefully and refrain from insulting her? Concubine Huang learned that her sister-in-law died so tragically, and must have rushed upstairs to protest to you and Daji. But in your partiality for Daji, you ruthlessly threw her off the balcony. The fault doesn't lie with them! As the proverb says, 'should the monarch rule improperly, his subjects may seek a new master.' Huang Feihu must have felt frustrated. For although he's loyal and has served you with great merit, he's been unable to bring honor and





太师又曰：“此是天子负臣，故当赦宥。若果飞虎有负君之处，只怕老臣一时之见，还有礼当说者，即行商议，不可有误国事。”班中闪一员官，乃下大夫徐荣出见。闻太师曰：“大夫有何议论？”荣曰：“太师所言，虽是天子负臣，黄飞虎也有忤君之罪。”太师曰：“大夫何以见得？”荣曰：“君欺臣妻，天子负臣；不顾恩爱，摔死黄娘娘，也是天子失政。黄飞虎岂得率众杀人午门，声言天子之罪，与天子在午门大战，臣节全无，故武成王也有不是。”闻太师听说，乃对诸大臣曰：“今诸臣朦胧，只谈天子之过，不言飞虎之逆。”乃传令吉立、徐庆：“快发飞檄传临潼关、佳梦关、青龙关三路总兵，不可走了反叛；待老臣赶去拿来，以正大法！”不知凶吉何如，且听下回分解。



happiness to his wife and children. On the contrary, his wife and sister have died tragically! Your Majesty, you should forgive him for all his transgressions. I'll go after him and ask him to return to the capital so that peace may be protected."

When he finished, he was applauded by all the ministers. "Your Majesty! The Grand Tutor's right. We earnestly hope that you'll issue a decree forgiving Huang Feihu and his followers for the sake of the state," they cried in one voice.

Grand Tutor Wen spoke again, "We should forgive Huang Feihu because His Majesty didn't treat him properly. But on the other hand, we ought to consider whether Huang Feihu's committed any crime against His Majesty, lest we make a wrong decision on the matter."

Xu Rong, a junior minister, moved forward. "The king was certainly not right to have insulted the wife of his subject and to have thrown Concubine Huang to her death, but Huang Feihu was wrong to attack the palace gate with his men. He showed gross disrespect for His Majesty."

"You're all dim and dull today, speaking only of the faults committed by His Majesty and not of Huang Feihu's treachery," Grand Tutor Wen reprimanded his colleagues and then ordered General Ji Li and Yu Qing, "Send urgent orders to Lintong, the Good Dream and the Green Dragon passes that they must on no account allow the rebels through. That way I'll have sufficient time to trace them."

How did events develop? If you want to know you must read the next chapter.







## 第三十一回

### 闻太师驱兵追袭

诗曰：

忠良去国运将灰，水旱频仍万姓灾。贤圣太师旋斗柄，  
奸谗妖孽丧盐梅。三关漫道能留辔，四径纷纭唱草莱。  
空把追兵迷白日，彼苍定数莫相猜。

话说闻太师驱兵追赶，出西门，一路上旗旛招展，锣鼓齐鸣，喊声大作。不表。

且说黄家父子、兄弟过了孟津，渡了黄河，行至澠池县。——县中镇守主将张奎。黄飞虎知张奎利害，不敢穿城而走，从城外过了澠池，径往临潼关来。家将徐徐行至白莺林，只听得后面喊声大作，滚滚尘起。飞虎回头一看，却是闻太师的旗号，随后赶来。飞虎俯鞍叹曰：“闻太师兵来，如何抵敌！吾等束手待毙而已。”飞虎见三子天祥——年方七岁，坐在马上。飞虎暗暗嗟叹：“此子幼稚无知，你得何罪，也逢此难。”家将来报：“启千岁：左边有一枝人马到了。”飞彪看时，乃青龙关张桂芳人马。又报：“佳梦关魔家四将从右边来了。又见正中间临潼关总兵官张凤兵来。黄飞虎见四面人马俱来，自思不能逃脱，长吁一声，气冲霄汉。

且说青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君因神仙犯了杀戒，玉虚宫止讲，待子牙封过神方上昆仑，因此闲游五岳。一日往临潼关过，被武成王怨气冲开真人足下祥光。真人拨开云彩，

## Chapter 31

### Flight and Pursuit

Grand Tutor Wen's army left Zhaoge with flags flying and amidst the clamor of gongs and drums, in pursuit of Huang Feihu.

Huang Feihu's party, meanwhile, had passed through Mengjin, crossed the Yellow River and reached Mianchi County. As Commander Zhang Kui of the local garrison was a fierce fighter, Huang Feihu dared not go through the county seat. He skirted around it and made his way directly to Lintong Pass. Near the White Oriole Forest, they heard shouts and saw clouds of dust rising in the air behind them. Huang Feihu looked back. He touched his saddle and sighed.

"Grand Tutor Wen! How can I resist him with this small force! All I can do is wait for my death," he thought. He looked at his youngest son Tianxiang, who was only seven years old, and moaned inwardly. "The boy's so young, yet he'll also meet with disaster."

Just then, a general galloped up and told him that an army had appeared on the left. Looking into the distance, Huang Feihu saw Zhang Guifang of the Green Dragon Pass approaching at the head of his troops. Two more reports arrived soon: the four Mo generals had arrived from the Good Dream Pass on the right, and General Zhang Feng had come from Lintong Pass. Huang Feihu found that he was surrounded on all sides and escape was impossible. He exhaled a sigh so deep that it penetrated far into the heavens above.

But now let us turn to the immortal, Virtue of the Pure Void. As the immortals were going to break the commandment on killing, lectures in the Jade Emptiness Palace were put off until Jiang Ziya finished creating the gods and life had returned to normal. The immortals were thus idle, spending their leisure time touring the sacred mountains.

Today Virtue of the Pure Void was traveling over Lintong Pass when he was stopped by the emanation of anger and despair from Huang Feihu.





往下一观，——“元来是武成王有难，贫道不行护救，谁为拔济！”真人命黄巾力士：“将吾混元旛遮下，把黄家父子移到僻净山中去；待贫道退了朝歌人马，打发他出关。”黄巾力士领法旨，用混元旛一罩，将黄家父子尽移往深山去了，踪迹全无。且说闻太师大兵赶至中途，前哨报：“青龙关总兵官张桂芳听令。”太师传将令：“来。”桂芳行至军前，欠身躬候。太师问曰：“黄飞虎反出朝歌，此必由关隘，你可曾见否？”桂芳答曰：“末将不曾见。”太师曰：“速回，谨防关隘，不得迟误。”桂芳得令，去讫。又报：“佳梦关魔家四将听令。”太师命：“令来。”四天王步行至军前，口称：“太师，甲冑在身，不能全礼。”太师道：“黄飞虎曾往佳梦关来否？”四将答曰：“不曾见。”太师传令：“速回佳梦关守御，协同捉贼。”四将得令，去讫。又报：“临潼关首将张凤听令。”太师命：“令来。”至骑前行礼。太师曰：“老将军，叛贼黄飞虎曾往关上来否？”张凤欠身答曰：“不曾见。”闻太师令回兵，用心防守。张凤得令，去讫。且说太师坐在骑上暗思：“俱道飞虎既出西门，过孟津，为何不见？三处人马撞来，俱言不曾见。异哉！异哉！也罢，待吾将人马住扎在此，看他往那里来？”且说清虚道德真君在空中看闻太师住兵不动，真君曰：“若不把闻仲兵退回去，黄飞虎怎的出得五关？”真人随将葫芦盖去了，倒出神砂一捏，望东南上一洒，——法用先天一气，炉中炼就玄功。少时间，闻太师军政官来报：“启太师：武成王领家将倒杀往朝歌去了。”太师闻报，传令：“回兵。”慌忙赶杀，径奔渑池，一路上果见前边一伙人，簇拥飞走。太师催动三军，赶过了孟津。按下不表。



The immortal pushed open the cloud and looked down. "So, it's Prince Huang Feihu. If I don't rescue him, nobody will." He ordered his yellow-scarved genie, "Wrap them up in my Universe Muddling Pennant and hide them in the mountains. I'll see that the soldiers go back to Zhaoge before I send Prince Huang on through the passes."

The genie immediately carried out the order.

Catching Grand Tutor Wen in hot pursuit, a patrolman from the vanguard rode up. "Commander Zhang Guifang of the Green Dragon Pass awaits your orders."

When Zhang Guifang came alongside, Grand Tutor Wen asked, "Huang Feihu must have fled this way. Have you seen them?"

"No, I haven't"

"Then, you must go back at once and guard your pass carefully," the Grand Tutor ordered.

Before long, a second messenger reported, "The Mo generals await your orders, Grand Tutor."

Soon the four generals approached.

"Has Huang Feihu been to the Good Dream Pass?" Grand Tutor Wen asked.

"No, not yet."

"Alright. You'd better return at once and guard the pass lest the rebels get a chance to flee."

Grand Tutor Wen then asked Commander Zhang Feng of Lintong Pass the same question. Zhang gave the same answer and received the same order.

As he rode along on his pure black unicorn, the Grand Tutor felt puzzled. "Everyone says that Huang Feihu left Zhaoge through the west gate and passed through Mengjin. How can I possibly have missed him? How odd! We came in from all four directions yet none of us has seen him! I must halt my men here and find out the truth."

The immortal watching from the air saw that Grand Tutor Wen had stopped. "If I don't send him back to Zhaoge, how can Huang Feihu get by the five passes? I must do something else," he decided.

He took the lid off his gourd, poured out a handful of magic sand and threw it toward the southeast. A short time later, patrolmen hurried in. "Grand Tutor, Huang Feihu is on his way back to Zhaoge."

Grand Tutor Wen immediately ordered his army to set off in hasty





且说真君在云里命黄巾力士把混元幡移出大道，黄家父子兄弟在马上如醉方醒，如梦方觉，个个马上揉眉擦眼，定睛看时，四路人马去得影迹无踪。黄明叹曰：“吉人自有天相。”飞虎忙问众弟兄：“方才人马俱不知往那里去了，乘此时速行，过临潼关方好。”众将听令，速速策马前行。来至临潼关，见一枝人马扎住团营，阻住去路。黄飞虎令车辆暂停，正要上前打听，只听得炮声响处，呐喊摇旗。飞虎坐在五色神牛上，只见总兵张凤全妆甲冑，八扎九吞。怎见得：

风翅盔，黄金重；柳叶甲挂红袍控。束腰八宝紫金厢，绒绳双叩梅花镜。打将钢鞭如豹尾，百炼锤起寒云迸。斩将刀举似秋霜，马走临崖当取胜。大红幡上树威名，“坐镇临潼将张风”。

话说张凤听报，黄飞虎领众已至关前。张凤上马，来至军前，大呼曰：“黄飞虎出来答话！”武成王乘神牛至营前，欠身，口称：“老叔：小侄乃是难臣，不能全礼。”张凤曰：“黄飞虎，你的父与我一拜之交，你乃纣王之股肱，况是国戚，为何造反，辱没宗祖。今汝父任总帅大权，汝居王位，岂为一妇人而负君德。今日反叛，如鼠投陷阱，无有升腾，即老拙闻知，亦惭愧无地，真是可惜！听我老拙之言，早下坐骑受缚，解送朝歌，百司有本，当殿与你分个清浊，辨其罪戾；庶几纣王姑念国戚，将往日功劳，赎今日之罪，保全一家生命。如迷而不悟，悔之晚矣！”黄飞虎告曰：“老叔在上：小侄为人，老叔尽知。纣王荒淫酒色，听奸退贤，颠倒朝政，人民思乱久矣。况君欺臣妻，逆礼悖伦，杀妻灭义。我兵平东海，立大功二百余场。定天下，安社稷，沥胆披



pursuit. All along the route, he could see a company of armed men rushing swiftly along in front of him. He urged his men on at top speed, but reached Mengjin without being able to catch up with them.

When he saw that Grand Tutor Wen had left, Virtue of the Pure Void ordered the genie to bring Huang Feihu and his men back on to the highway. The party rubbed their eyes as if waking from a dream. Looking around, they found that the pursuing soldiers had completely disappeared.

"The good are certainly blessed by Heaven," Huang Ming commented.

"Brothers," said Huang Feihu. "Since Grand Tutor Wen's gone, let's make haste to get through Lintong Pass."

Close to the pass, Huang Feihu was stopped by Zhang Feng, who had received the report of his arrival and came out to meet him, leading his troops. "Huang Feihu, listen to me. Your father and I are sworn brothers. As an important minister and relative of King Zhou, why do you humiliate your ancestors? Your father's a supreme commander, and you're a prince. How can you turn against your monarch just because of a woman? You're just a rat in my trap. When I heard what you had done I felt ashamed for you. Take my advice, get down from your beast, and let me take you back to Zhaoge. There must be ministers who will ask for mercy for you. Your whole family may be pardoned from the death penalty. If you don't come to your senses now, it'll be too late for you to regret it."

"Uncle!" Huang Feihu replied politely. "You know me well. King Zhou spends all his time lusting and drinking. He listens only to the minions, keeps away from the loyal, and mishandles state affairs. Moreover, he's violated the ethic that governs human relationships. I subdued the



肝；治诸侯，练士卒，神劳形瘁，有所不恤。天下太平，不念功臣，反行不道，而欲使臣下倾心难矣。望老叔开天地之心，发慈悲之德，放小侄出关，投其明主。久后结草衔环，补报不迟。不识尊叔意下何如？”张凤大怒：“好逆贼！敢出此污蔑之言，欺吾老迈！”手起一刀砍来。黄飞虎将手中枪架住，“老叔息怒。我与老叔皆是一样臣子，倘老叔被屈，必定也投他处，总是一般。从来有言：‘君不正，臣投外国。’礼之当然。老叔何苦认真，不行方便。”张凤大喝曰：“好反贼！焉敢巧舌！”又一刀劈来。飞虎大怒，纵骑挺枪。牛马相交，刀枪并举。战三十回合，张风力怯，拨马便走。飞虎逞势赶来。张凤闻脑后铃响，料飞虎赶来，鸟翅环挂下刀，揭开战袍，取百炼锤，将紫绒绳理得停当，发手打来。怎见得好锤：

圆的好：冰盘大，碗口小。神见愁，鬼见怕；伤人心，碎人脑。断筋骨，真稀少。顺手轻持百炼锤，暗带随身人不晓。大将逢着命难逃，着重人亡并马倒。

话说张凤回马一锤打来，黄飞虎见锤将近，用宝剑望上一掠，将绳截为两断，收了张凤百炼锤。张凤败进帅府，黄飞虎也不追赶，命家将将车辆围绕营中，就草茵而坐，与众弟兄商议出关之策。

且说张凤败进关，坐在殿上，自思：“黄飞虎勇贯三军，吾老迈安能取胜。倘然走了，吾又得罪于天子。”叫：“萧银在那里？”萧银上殿，见张凤曰：“末将听令。”张凤曰：“黄飞虎力敌万夫，又收我百炼锤，似不可以力敌。你可黄昏时候，传长箭手三千，至二更时分，领至大营，听梆子响，一



East Sea district, performed more than 200 great feats for him, and brought peace and security to the kingdom. How can he now forget all my merits and insult me, yet expect me to remain loyal? I hope that you'll be kind enough to let us through. We would all greatly appreciate your kindness and be sure to return it in the near future. What do you say, Uncle?"

Zhang Feng was furious. "You traitor! How dare you try to deceive me with your slander."

He raised his cutlass and swung at Huang Feihu, but Huang blocked the blow with his lance.

"Don't be angry, Uncle," Huang pleaded. "We're both ministers under the same ruler. If you had been wronged, you would surely take the same action. As the proverb says, 'Subjects may take asylum elsewhere if their ruler doesn't govern properly.' It's clearly true. Why be so over-conscientious in my case!"

Zhang Feng did not relent. "You rebellious rogue! How dare you try your cunning tongue on me!"

He struck again. At this second blow, Huang Feihu lost his temper and urged his divine ox in to attack. After thirty rounds of bitter fighting, the aged Zhang Feng was exhausted. He turned his horse and fled. Huang Feihu chased after him.

Zhang Feng heard Huang Feihu close behind him. He stealthily hung his cutlass on his saddle and took a small stringed hammer from inside his robes. He swung round suddenly and flung the small, yet deadly, weapon straight at his pursuer. Huang Feihu was an experienced fighter. As fast as lightning, he struck upwards with his sword, cutting the hammer's string and catching the small round hammer in his hand.

Zhang Feng was unnerved and fled back to the pass. Huang Feihu did not pursue him further. He ordered his men to place the luggage carts in a circle around their camp and then sat down with his brothers and generals to discuss how to get through.

Zhang Feng sat alone in his office at this very same time. "I'm old and weak, but Huang Feihu's brave and strong. How can I ever seize him? If he gets through the pass, I'll be guilty and punished. What shall I do now?" he wondered, and then asked, "Where's General Xiao Yin?"

"I await your orders."

"Huang Feihu's a fearsome opponent; he's not only defeated me, but also taken my stringed hammer. We can't beat him by force. Late



齐发箭，射死反贼；将首级献上朝歌请功，方保无虞。”萧银领令出府，乃自忖曰：“黄将军昔在都城，我在他麾下，荷蒙提携，奖荐升用将职，未曾以不肖相看，今点临潼副将。我岂敢忘恩，忍令恩主一门反遭横祸，我心安忍！”萧银随改妆束，暗出行营，黑地潜行，来至黄飞虎营前问曰：“可有人么？”巡营军曰：“你何人？”萧银答曰：“我原是老爷门下萧银，特来报机密重情。”巡营军急进营报知。飞虎命：“速令进见。”萧银黑地参见，下拜曰：“末将乃旧门下萧银，蒙老爷点发临潼关；今日张凤密令末将二更时，带领攒箭手，射死老爷满门，将首级献上朝歌请功。末将自思：岂肯欺心，有伤天道！故此改妆，先来报知。”飞虎听毕，大惊曰：“多感将军盛德！不然黄门老少死于非命矣。实系再生之恩，何时能报。为今之计，事属燃眉，将军何以救我？”萧银曰：“大王速上马，领车辆杀出临潼关，末将开关等候。事不宜迟，恐机泄有误。”飞虎等急忙上骑，各持兵器，喊声杀来，势如虎猛。时方初更，未及二鼓，士卒皆未有备。萧银开了栓锁，黄家众将一拥杀出关门去了。且说张凤正坐厅上，忽报：“黄家众将闯关杀出去了！”张凤厉声叫苦曰：“是我错用了人！萧银乃黄飞虎旧将，今日串同黄飞虎斩关落锁而去，情殊可恨！”张凤急上马提刀来赶飞虎。不防萧银乘马隐在关傍，听得马铃响处，料是张凤来赶，不期果然。张凤走马方出关门，萧银一戟刺张凤于马下。有诗为证，诗曰：

凛凛英才汉，堂堂忠义隆，只因飞虎反，听令发千弓。知恩行大义，落锁放雕笼。戟刺张凤死，辅佐出临潼。

话说萧银杀了张凤，走马来赶，大叫：“黄老爷慢行！末将萧



tonight, take three thousand archers and surround his camp. When I beat the bamboo slats, the archers must shoot simultaneously and kill every one of the rebels. We'll cut their heads off and send them to Zhaoge as evidence," Zhang Feng ordered.

Xiao Yin received the order and left. But he reasoned with himself. "Several years ago I was under the command of Huang Feihu at Zhaoge. He promoted me to general and posted me here as deputy commander. How can I be so ungrateful as to forget his kindness at such a critical moment and see his whole family massacred!"

He disguised himself and secretly made his way through the darkness to Huang Feihu's camp. Huang Feihu ordered his patrol to escort him in.

Xiao Yin knelt. "I used to be under your command. You appointed me here as deputy commander several years ago. Zhang Feng's given me a secret order to surround you with archers and shoot you all late tonight. But to forget the kindness you've shown me would be a crime against Heaven, so I've come here to give you a warning."

Huang Feihu was shocked by the news. "Many, many thanks for your great virtue. If not for you, every member of the Huang family would meet a cruel end. You've saved our lives, and we'll never forget it. But can you do anything to rescue us from this critical situation, General?"

"Mount your divine ox immediately and fight your way through the pass. I'll open the gates and wait for you there. There should be no delay lest word leak out," Xiao Yin answered.

Huang Feihu and his group mounted their steeds and galloped towards the pass roaring ferociously. As it was already dark, the guards at the pass were totally unprepared and had no chance of coping with the emergency. As soon as Xiao Yin opened the gates, Huang Feihu rushed through at once.

Zhang Feng was sleeping when he received the report that Huang Feihu had gotten through the pass. "It was my mistake to have trusted the wrong person. Xiao Yin served under Huang Feihu," he reproached himself.

He immediately mounted his horse and set off in pursuit. But he never imagined that Xiao Yin was waiting for him in the darkness. As Zhang Feng rode through the gates, Xiao Yin caught him off guard and struck him off his horse. When he was sure that Zhang Feng was dead, Xiao



银已刺死了张凤，大王前途保重！末将如今将临潼关扎板下了，命兵卒将土壅塞，恐有追兵赶来，再去了土板，可以羁滞时候，及至来时，大王去之已远。此一别又不知何日再觑尊颜！”飞虎称谢曰：“今日之恩，不知甚日能报！”彼此各分路而别。——后来萧银要会在“十绝阵”内。此是后话。不表。

且说黄飞虎离了临潼，八十余里，行至潼关。潼关守将陈桐有探马报到：“黄飞虎同家将至关，扎住了行营。”陈桐笑曰：“黄飞虎，你指望成汤王位坐守千年，一般也有今日！”传令：“将人马排开，鹿角阻住咽喉。”陈桐全身披挂，结束整齐，打点擒拿飞虎。且说黄飞虎扎住行营，问：“守关主将何人？”周纪曰：“乃是陈桐。”黄飞虎半晌不言，长吁曰：“昔陈桐在我麾下，有事犯吾军令，该枭首级，众将告免，后来准立功代罪；今调任在此，与吾有隙，必报昔日之恨。如何处治？……”正沉思间，只听外边呐喊之声甚急。飞虎上了神牛，提枪至营前。只见陈桐耀武扬威，用戟指曰：“黄将军请了！你昔享王爵，今日为何私自出关？吾奉太师将令，久候多时。乞早早下马，解返朝歌，免生他说。”飞虎曰：“陈将军差矣！盈虚消息，乃世间长情。昔日你在吾麾下，我并无他心，待如手足；后来犯罪，是你自取，吾亦听众人而免你之罪，立功自赎，我亦不为无恩。今当面辱吾，莫非欲报昔日之恨耶？快放马来，你三合赢得我，便下马受缚。”言罢，摇枪直取。陈桐将画戟相迎。二骑相交，双兵共举，一场大战。则杀的——赞曰：

四下阴云惨惨，八方杀气腾腾。长枪闪得亮如银，画戟



Yin galloped after Huang Feihu. "General Huang! Take your time. I've already killed Zhang Feng. I'll go back and block up the pass so that the king's men will be delayed long enough for you to get well out of their reach. I'm sorry that we must part. Who knows when we may meet again!"

"I don't know when I can return the kindness you've shown me today!" Huang Feihu thanked him with great sincerity, and they bade farewell to each other.

When they reached Tongguan Pass, about eighty *li* from Lintong Pass, Huang Feihu's party halted and set up camp. Commander Chen Tong of Tongguan Pass had already learned of his arrival.

"Huang Feihu, you fancied that you could hold your princship for 1,000 years, but you've really come down in the world now," he muttered to himself, smiling sarcastically. He ordered, "Take the soldiers out and confront Huang Feihu."

He donned his armor and made ready for battle.

"Who's the commander here?" Huang Feihu asked.

"Chen Tong," Zhou Ji answered.

Huang Feihu was silent for some time and then said with a sigh. "Chen Tong was under my command. Once when he disobeyed my orders I sentenced him to death, but then pardoned him at the request of other generals. He holds a grudge against me. As commander here, he's sure to seize this opportunity to get revenge. What should we do?"

As he pondered over the problem, he heard a great clamor outside. He mounted his ox and rode out of the camp to find Chen Tong flourishing his weapon in a great display of prowess.

Chen Tong pointed at Huang Feihu with this halberd. "How do you do, General Huang! You used to enjoy a high position, but why do you flee through the passes today? On Grand Tutor Wen's orders, I've been waiting for you here for a long time. Get down from your beast at once, and I'll take you back to the capital. There's no other choice for you."

"You're wrong, General Chen," Huang Feihu replied. "Ups and downs are common in this world. You were once under my command, and I treated you like my own brother. When you were court-martialed I exempted you from capital punishment at the request of other generals. By insulting me today, could you be trying to get revenge on me? Ride forward then. I'll dismount and surrender at once if you can beat me in





旛摇摆动。枪挑前心两肋，戟刺眼角眉丛。咬牙切齿面皮红，地府天关摇动。

话说二将拨马，往来冲突，二十回合。陈桐非飞虎敌手，料不能胜，掩一戟拨马就走。飞虎怒气冲空，大喝一声：“决拿此贼以泄吾恨！”望前赶来。陈桐闻脑后鸾铃响处，料是飞虎赶来，挂下画戟，取火龙标掌在手中，——此标乃异人秘授，出手烟生，百中百发。一标打来，飞虎叫声：“不好！”躲不及，一标从肋下打来。可怜：万丈神光从此灭，将军撞下战驹来。诗曰：

标发飞烟焰，光华似异珍，逢将穿心过，中马倒埃尘。安邦无价宝，治国正乾坤。今日伤飞虎，万死落沉沦。

黄飞虎被火龙标打下五色神牛。黄明、周纪见主将落骑，催马向前，大喝曰：“勿伤吾主，待吾来也！”两骑马、两柄斧飞来直取。陈桐将画戟急架相还。飞彪将飞虎救回时，已是死了。二将战陈桐，恨不得将陈桐碎尸万段。陈桐掩一戟就走。二将为飞虎报仇，催马赶来。陈桐又发标打来，把周纪一标，将颈子打通，落马。陈桐勒回马欲取首级，早被黄明马到，力战陈桐。陈桐见已胜二人，便回军掌鼓进营去了。

且说飞彪把飞虎尸骸救回。三子见父死大哭。黄明将周纪也停在荒郊草地。众家将无不伤感。众将见死了二人，心下无谋，前无所往，退无所归，羊触藩篱，进退两难，正在慌乱之间。不表。

话说青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君正在碧云床运元神，忽心下一惊，道人袖里捏指一算，早知黄飞虎有厄，道人忙命白云童儿：“请你师兄来。”白云童子即时请出一位道童，生



three rounds of combat.”

Huang Feihu raised his lance and charged straight at Chen Tong, who flourished his halberd to meet the challenge. They fought desperately back and forth for more than twenty rounds. Chen Tong was far from being a match for Huang Feihu. He pulled his horse out of the fight and began to flee.

Huang Feihu yelled angrily, “Get hold of that scoundrel; we can’t give him up!”

He set off in hot pursuit, but when he was almost on his opponent, Chen stealthily took the halberd in his left hand and threw out his small, light Fire Dragon Javelin. This was a magic javelin from an immortal, which never missed its mark. Huang Feihu was struck beneath the armpit and toppled from his mount with a sharp cry.

Seeing him fall, Huang Ming and Zhou Ji rushed out. “Don’t you dare to hurt our commander,” they shouted and engaged Chen Tong.

As the battle raged, Huang Feibiao brought his brother back from the battlefield only to find that he was already dead.

Huang Ming and Zhou Ji fought Chen Tong with such ferocity that he was forced to flee again. To avenge their commander, Huang Ming and Zhou Ji galloped after him, determined to chop him to mincemeat.

Hurling the javelin a second time, Chen Tong brought Zhou Ji down from his horse, but when he circled back to decapitate him, Huang Ming intercepted him. As he had won twice, Chen Tong was unwilling to continue the fight with Huang Ming. He left the battlefield and returned to the pass.

When Huang Feibiao returned with their father’s corpse, Huang Feihu’s three sons burst into tears. Huang Ming brought Zhou Ji’s corpse back to the camp as well and laid it on the grass. There was not a single man in the camp who was not filled with grief. Having lost two generals, they knew neither where to go nor what to do next.

Meanwhile, Virtue of the Pure Void was meditating on his Green Cloud Bed when he felt his heart jump in alarm. He made a divination on his fingers and found out that Huang Feihu had suffered a great calamity.



的身高九尺，面似羊脂，眼光暴露，虎形豹走；头挽抓髻，腰束麻绦，脚登草履，至云榻前下拜，口称：“师父，唤弟子那壁使用？”真君曰：“你父亲有难，你可下山走一遭。”黄天化答曰：“师父，弟子父亲是谁？”真君曰：“你父乃武成王黄飞虎是也；今在潼关，被火龙标打死。着你下山，一则救父；二则你父子相逢，久后仕周，共扶王业。”天化听罢曰：“弟子因何到此？”真君曰：“那一年，我往昆仑山来，脚踏祥云，被你顶上杀气冲入云霄，阻我云路。我看时，你才三岁。见你相貌清奇，后有大贵，故此带你上山；今已十三载了。你父亲今日有难，该我救他。我故教你前去。”真君先把花篮儿与天化拿了，又将一口剑付与，分付：“速去救父。”天化方欲问故，真君曰：“若会陈桐，须得……如此如此，方可保你父出潼关。不许你同往西岐，可速回来，终有日相会。”天化领师父严命，叩头下山。出了紫阳洞，捏了一撮土，望空中一撒，借土遁往潼关来，迅速如风。父子相逢，潼关大战。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



“Tell your fellow disciple to come at once,” he ordered White Cloud Lad.

Before long, White Cloud Lad brought in a youth, who was nine feet tall, and had smooth creamy skin, two bright eyes and a powerful body. His hair was coiled and he wore a robe tied with a hemp belt and a pair of straw sandals. The youth bowed before the immortal. “You wish to see me, Master?” he asked the immortal.

“Your father’s in trouble. Go and rescue him.”

“Who’s my father, Master?”

“Your father’s Huang Feihu, a prince of the Shang Dynasty. He’s been killed by a Fire Dragon Javelin at Tongguan Pass. First revive him and then introduce yourself. In the future you’ll serve together in the founding of the Zhou Dynasty.”

“How did I come here?” the youth asked further.

“Thirteen years ago I was riding on a cloud to Mount Kunlun when my path was blocked by a strong beam of light emanating from your skull. I looked down to find you an uncommon child, destined to have a brilliant future. I brought you here as my disciple. Your name’s Huang Tianhua. I’m obliged to save your father from this disaster.”

The immortal gave Huang Tianhua a sword and a flower basket and taught him how to deal with Chen Tong’s magic javelins. He cautioned the youth, “You must return as soon as your father gets out of Tongguan Pass. You’re not to accompany him to West Qi. You’ll meet him again in the future.”

Huang Tianhua knelt down and kowtowed to his master, and then left the Purple Sun Cave. He picked up a handful of dust, threw it in the air and traveled swiftly on it to Tongguan Pass.

If you want to know what happened to Huang Feihu next, you must read the next chapter.

## 第三十二回

### 黄天化潼关会父

诗曰：

五道玄功妙莫量，随风化气涉沧茫，须臾历遍阎浮世，  
顷刻遨游泰岳邙。救父岂辞劳顿苦，诛讐不怕勇心狼。  
潼关父子相逢日，尽是岐周美栋梁。

话说黄天化借土遁，倏尔来至潼关，落下埃尘，时方五更。只见一簇人马围绕，一盏灯高挑空中，又听得悲悲切切哭泣之声。天化走至一簇人前，黑影内有人问曰：“你是何人，来此探听军情？”天化答曰：“贫道乃青峰山紫阳洞炼气士是也；知你大王有难，特来相救。快去通报。”家将闻言，报知二爷。飞彪急出营门，灯下观看，见一道童，着实齐整。怎见得，《西江月》为证：

顶上抓髻灿烂，道袍大袖迎风，丝绦叩结按离龙，  
足下麻鞋珍重。花篮内藏玄妙，背悬宝剑锋凶，潼  
关父子得相逢，方显麒麟有种。

话说黄飞彪出来迎请道童，一见举止色相，恍如飞虎。飞彪忙请里面相见。那道童进得营中，与众将见毕，飞彪问曰：“道者此来，若救得家兄，实乃再生父母！”道童曰：“黄大王在那里？”飞彪引道童来看。走至后营，见飞虎卧在毡毯上，以面朝天，形如白纸，闭目无言。黄天化看见脸黄，暗暗叹曰：“父亲，你名在何方？利在何处？身居王位，一品当





## Chapter 32

### Huang Tianhua Meets His Father

Huang Tianhua arrived Tongguan before dawn. He landed near a crowd of men and horses clustered around a dim lamp hanging on a pole. He could hear bitter weeping. As Huang Tianhua moved nearer to them, someone challenged him through the darkness. "Who are you? A spy?"

"No, I'm a Taoist from the Purple Sun Cave on Mount Green Peak. Your commander's in trouble, and I've come to help him. Go quickly and announce my arrival," Huang Tianhua answered.

At the report, Huang Feibiao hastily went to the camp gate, where he saw a neatly dressed young Taoist, holding an unusual flower basket and carrying a sword on his back. The youth bore a striking resemblance to Huang Feihu.

After the youth had met all the generals and exchanged greetings, Huang Feibiao said, "We greatly appreciate your honorable presence. If you revive my brother, you'll be like a parent giving him new life."

"Where's His Highness?" Huang Tianhua asked.

He was led to the back of the camp and saw his father lying on a carpet, pale and motionless, his eyes tightly closed.

"Oh, Father!" he silently sighed. "Where's your glory now? Where's your power now? You held the highest rank among the ministers, but why are you in such desperate straits now?" He then saw another dead man, and asked, "Who's that?"



朝，为甚来由，这等狼狈！”天化见还有一个睡在旁边，天化问曰：“那一位是谁？”飞彪曰：“是吾结义兄弟，也被陈桐飞标打死的。”天化命：“涧下取水来。”不一时，水到。天化在花篮中取出仙药，用水研开，把剑撬开上下牙关，灌入口内，送入中黄，走三关，透四肢，须臾转八万四千毛窍；又用药搽在伤眼上。有一个时辰，只见黄飞虎大叫一声：“疼杀吾也！”睁开双目，只见一个道童坐在草茵之上。飞虎曰：“莫非冥中相会？如何有此仙童？”飞彪曰：“若非道者，长兄不能回生。”飞虎听罢，随起身拜谢曰：“飞虎何幸，今得道长怜悯，垂救回生！”黄天化垂泪，跪在地上曰：“父亲，吾非别人，是你三岁在后花园不见的黄天化。”飞虎与众人听罢，惊讶曰：“原来是天化孩儿前来救我！不觉又是十有三年。”飞虎问天化曰：“我儿，你在那座名山学道？”天化泣而言曰：“孩儿在青峰山紫阳洞；吾师是清虚道德真君，见孩儿有出家之分，把我带上高山，不觉十有三载。今见三个兄弟，又见二位叔叔，周纪也救得返本還元，一家相聚。”天化前后一看，却不见母亲贾氏。天化元是圣神，性如烈火，一时面发通红，向前对飞虎曰：“父亲，你好狠心！”把牙一咬。飞虎曰：“我儿，今日相逢，何故突发此言？”天化曰：“父亲既反朝歌，兄弟却都带来，独不见吾母亲，何也？他是女流，倘被朝廷拿问，露面抛头，武成王体面何在？”飞虎闻说，顿足泪流，哭曰：“我儿言之痛心！我父亲为何事而反？为你母亲元旦朝贺苏后，因君欺臣妻，你母亲誓守贞洁，辱君自坠摘星楼而死。你姑娘为你母亲直谏，被纣王摔下楼来，跌得粉骨碎身，俱死非命。今苦不胜言。”天化听罢，



“He was our sworn brother. He was also killed by Chen Tong’s javelin,” Huang Feibiao answered.

Huang Tianhua asked for some water from a stream. When the water was brought to him, he took elixir pills from his flower basket and dissolved them in it. He forced open Huang Feihu’s lips with his sword and poured the liquid down his throat. The elixir ran into all his internal organs and limbs and reached every pore.

An hour or two later, Huang Feihu gave a loud cry of pain and opened his eyes. “Is this the afterlife? How did this young immortal get here?” he wondered, when he saw Huang Tianhua.

“If not for him, you couldn’t have been brought back to life,” Huang Feibiao told him.

Huang Feihu immediately got up and thanked Tianhua, saying, “I’m most fortunate that you should take pity on me and restore me to life.”

Huang Tianhua wept and knelt down on the ground. “Father, I’m none other than Huang Tianhua!”

Everyone was greatly astonished. Huang Feihu cried happily, “So it’s you, my son Huang Tianhua! You’ve been missing for thirteen years!” He then asked, “Where are you studying the Way, my son?”

“At the Purple Sun Cave on Mount Green Peak. My master’s Virtue of the Pure Void. When he realized that I was destined to study the Way, he took me to that high mountain. Yes, it’s already been thirteen years. Time’s passed swiftly,” Huang Tianhua answered, still weeping.

He then moved forward to meet his two uncles and three brothers, and when the greetings finished he brought Zhou Ji back to life. He saw everyone except his mother, Lady Jia. He had a fiery temper, and he turned red with anger. “Father! How can you be so hard-hearted?”

“My son! Why do you say such a thing when we’ve just met?”

“You brought your brothers, sons and generals from Zhaoge, but why didn’t you bring my mother? She’s a woman, and if she’s captured by the tyrant and exposed in the streets and markets, all your dignity as prince will be gone!”

Huang Feihu wept and told him of the tragic fate of his mother and aunt. Huang Tianhua uttered a cry of grief and fell to the ground in a faint. When he came to, he wept bitterly. “Father, I won’t return to Mount Green Peak. I’ll fight my way to Zhaoge and take revenge on the tyrant for my mother’s death!” he decided, grinding his teeth and sobbing.





大叫一声，气死在地。慌坏众人，急救苏醒时，天化满眼垂泪，哭得如醉如痴，大叫曰：“父亲！孩儿也不去青峰山上学道，且杀到朝歌，为母亲报仇！”咬牙切齿正哭，忽报：“陈桐在外请战。”飞虎听报，面如土色。天化见父慌张，忙止泪答曰：“父亲出去，有孩儿在此，不妨。”飞虎只得上了五色神牛，金装铠甲，出得营来，叫曰：“陈桐，还吾夜来一标之仇！”陈桐见飞虎宛然无恙，心下大疑，又不敢问，只得大叫曰：“反臣慢来！”飞虎曰：“匹夫！你将标打我，岂知天不绝吾！”纵牛摇枪，直取陈桐。陈桐将戟急架相还。二骑相交，大战十五回合。陈桐拨马便走。飞虎不赶。天化叫曰：“父亲，赶这匹夫，有儿在此，何惧之有！”飞虎只得赶将下来。陈桐见飞虎追赶，发标打来。天化暗将花篮对着火龙标，那标尽投花篮内收将去了。陈桐见收了火龙标，大怒，勒回马复来战飞虎。后一人大叫曰：“陈桐匹夫！我来了！”陈桐见一道童助战，“呀！原来是你收我神标！破吾道术，怎肯干休！”纵马摇戟，来挑天化。天化忙将背上宝剑执在手中，照陈桐只一指。只见剑尖上一道星光，有盏口大小，飞至陈桐面上，陈桐首级已落于马下。有诗单道宝剑好处，诗曰：

非铜非铁亦非金，乃是乾元百炼精，变化无形随妙用，要知能杀亦能生。

话说天化此剑，乃清虚道德真君镇山之宝，名曰：“莫耶宝剑”，光华闪出，人头即落。故陈桐逢此剑自绝。陈桐已死，黄明、周纪众将呐一声喊，斩栓落锁，杀散军兵，出了潼关。黄天化辞父归山，拜曰：“父亲同兄弟慢行，前途保重！”飞虎曰：“我儿，你为何不与我同行？”天化曰：“师命不



“Chen Tong is challenging us,” a messenger came to report.

Huang Feihu turned pale. Seeing that his father was flustered, Tianhua stopped weeping. “Father! Go out and meet the challenge. You needn’t worry. I’ll protect you.”

Huang Feihu put on his armor, mounted his magic ox, and rode from the camp. “Chen Tong, I’m coming to take revenge.”

When he saw Huang Feihu as strong and healthy as before, Chen Tong was puzzled, but he dared not question him. He shouted, “Come on! You rebel!”

“You wretch! Though you hit me with your javelin, Heaven wouldn’t let you end my life,” Huang Feihu swore.

Huang Feihu raised his lance and charged in to attack. Chen Tong returned the blow with his halberd. After fifteen rounds, Chen Tong once more pulled his horse around and ran away. Huang Feihu dared not pursue him.

“Father! Chase the wretch. I’m right here, and you’ve nothing to fear,” Tianhua urged him on.

Seeing Huang Feihu close behind, Chen Tong threw a javelin at him. But Huang Tianhua secretly pointed his flower basket towards the javelin, and it flew harmlessly inside. Before long, all of Chen Tong’s javelins had been caught inside the flower basket. Chen Tong was enraged. He turned his horse and thundered back to re-engage Huang Feihu. Huang Tianhua immediately galloped forward to join the fight.

“You wretch, Chen Tong! I’m coming to deal with you,” he shouted.

Finding a Taoist coming to Huang Feihu’s aid, Chen Tong shouted, “Ah! So it’s you that took my javelins! I won’t let you get away with it.”

Brandishing his halberd, he charged straight at Tianhua. Huang Tianhua hastily drew his sword and pointed it at Chen Tong. A beam of brilliant light as wide as a cup flew out from the tip, and as it struck Chen Tong in the face, his head rolled off and fell to the ground.

Huang Tianhua’s sword was the magic Muye Sword, which Virtue of the Pure Void used to protect Mount Green Peak. Anyone hit by the sword’s magic light would be instantly decapitated.

With Chen Tong out of the way, Huang Feihu and his men charged on the pass. They smashed the locks, broke open the gates and soon left the pass behind. Huang Tianhua then bade farewell to his father, uncles and brothers. “Be careful as you go, and look after yourselves,” he told them.

“My son, why don’t you come with us?” Huang Feihu asked.



敢有违。”必欲回山。飞虎不忍别子，叹曰：“相逢何太迟，别离须恁早！此一别何时再会？”天化曰：“不久往西岐相会。”父子兄弟洒泪而别。

不说天化回山，且说黄家父子离了潼关八十余里，行至穿云关不远。穿云关守将乃陈桐的兄陈梧守把。败军先已报知，陈梧听得飞虎杀了兄弟，急得三尸神暴躁，七窍内生烟，欲点鼓聚将发兵，为弟报仇。内班中一人言曰：“主将不可造次。黄飞虎乃勇贯三军，周纪等乃熊罴之将；寡不敌众，弱不拒强，二爷勇猛，况已枉死。以愚意观之，当以智擒。若要力战，恐不能取胜，尚有不测。”陈梧听偏将贺申之言，乃曰：“贺将军言虽有理，计将安出？”贺申曰：“须得……如此如此。不用张弓只箭，可绝黄氏一门也。”陈梧大喜，依计而行。传令：“如黄飞虎到关，须当速报。”不一时，有探事马报到：“黄家人马来了。”陈梧传令：“掌金鼓，众将上马，迎接武成王黄爷。”只见飞虎在坐骑上，见陈梧领众将，身不披甲，手不执戈迎来，马上欠身，口称：“大王。”飞虎亦欠背言曰：“难臣黄飞虎，罪犯朝廷，被厄出关，今蒙将军以客礼相待，感德如山！昨又为令弟所阻，故有杀伤。将军若念飞虎受屈，此一去倘有得地，决不敢有忘大恩也。”陈梧在马上答曰：“陈梧知大王数世忠良，赤心报国，今乃是君负于臣，何罪之有。吾弟陈桐，不知分量，抗阻行车，不识天时，礼当诛戮。末将今设有一饭，请大王暂停鸾舆，少纳末将虔意，则陈梧不胜幸甚。”黄明马上叹曰：“一母之子，有愚贤之分；一树之果，有酸甜之别。似这等观之，陈将军胜其弟多矣！”黄家众将听得黄明之言，一



"I dare not disobey my master's orders. I must return to Mount Green Peak without delay," Tianhua answered sadly.

Huang Feihu was unwilling to see his son leave. "Our meeting's late, but our separation comes too soon. What a pity it is! When shall we see each other again?"

"We'll meet again in West Qi in the near future. Don't worry, Father."

They parted in tears.

About eighty *li* from Tongguan, Huang Feihu came to Chuanyun Pass. The commander was Chen Wu, Chen Tong's brother. When Chen Wu learned of the fall of Tongguan Pass and the death of his brother, he was furious. He summoned all his generals and advisors to discuss how to beat the enemy and avenge his brother.

General He Shen warned him, "We must be careful, Commander. Huang Feihu is brave and skilful. We should learn a lesson from your brother and take them by cunning, not by force. If we meet them in open battle, we're uncertain of victory and may even run into unforeseen disaster."

"You're right, but tell me what we should do," Chen Wu asked.

"We must .... That way we can get the whole Huang family without using even a single arrow!"

Chen Wu was delighted with the idea. When Huang Feihu arrived, he went out immediately to meet the party, beating drums and gongs. Huang Feihu saw that he wore no armor and carried no arms.

"Welcome, Your Highness," Chen Wu and his men shouted.

Huang Feihu saluted from the back of his ox. "I'm a mere refugee and have committed a crime against the royal government. I deeply appreciate your great kindness, but I'm sorry to say that your brother lost his life as he blocked my path yesterday. If you would let us through, we'll never forget the great favor," he said.

Chen Wu answered courteously from his horse, "I know well that you've been loyal to the king for many generations. It's King Zhou who's mistreated you, and you're totally innocent. My brother was ignorant of the situation and failed to distinguish between justice and injustice. He deserved his death. Won't you have a short rest, Your Highness, and join us at a feast. I would be most honored if you accept."

Huang Ming sighed deeply. "The same mother may give birth to two entirely different sons, just as the same tree may produce fruit sweet and



齐下马。陈梧亦下马，“请黄大王入帅府。”众人相让，至殿行礼，依次序坐。陈梧传令：“摆上饭来。”飞虎谢曰：“难臣蒙将军盛赐，何以克当！此恩此德，不知何日能报万一耳。”众将用罢饭，飞虎起身，谢陈梧曰：“将军若发好生恻隐之心，敢烦开关，以度蚁命。他日衔环，决不有负。”陈梧带笑，欠身而言曰：“末将知大王必往西岐，以投明主；他日若有会期，再图报效。今具有鲁酒一杯，莫负末将芹敬。大王勿疑，并无他意。”黄飞虎曰：“将军雅爱，念吾俱是武臣，被屈脱难，贤明自是见亮。既陈将军设有盛爱，总不敢辞。”陈梧忙传令：“摆设酒席，奏乐。”宾客交欢，不觉日已沉西。黄飞虎出席告辞：“承蒙雅赐，恩同太山。难臣若有寸进，决不忘今日之德。”陈梧曰：“大王放心。末将知大王一路行来，未安枕席，鞍马困倦，天色已晚，草榻一宵，明日早行，料无他意。”飞虎自思：“虽是好意；但此处非可宿之地。”又见黄明道：“长兄，陈将军既有高情，明日去也无妨。”黄飞虎只得勉强应承。陈梧大喜。梧曰：“末将当得再陪几杯。恐大王连日困劳，不敢加劝。大王且请暂歇，末将告退。明早再为劝酌。”飞虎深谢，送陈梧出府，命家将把车辆推进府廊下，堆垛起来。家将掌上画烛，众人安歇去讫。都是一路上辛苦，跋涉勤劳，一个个酣睡如雷，各有鼻息之声。黄飞虎坐在殿上，思前想后，兜底上心，长吁一声，叹曰：“天！我黄氏一门，七世商臣，岂知今日如此而做叛亡之客！我一点忠心，惟天可表！只是昏君欺灭臣妻，殊为痛恨！摔死吾妹，切骨伤心！老天呵！若是武王肯容纳我等借兵，定伐无道！”飞虎把牙一咬，作诗一首，诗曰：



sour. How superior Chen Wu is to his brother Chen Tong!”

Both parties dismounted. Chen Wu invited Huang and his men to the main hall. When all were seated, Chen Wu ordered his men to bring in the meal.

When they had finished eating, Huang Feihu got up. “If you take pity on us, General, I would trouble you to open the pass gate for us. We’ll assuredly return your great kindness in the near future.”

Chen Wu smiled. “I know that you must be going to West Qi to offer your service to a new illustrious master. I’ve already prepared wine as a token of my respect. Do have a few drinks, Your Highness. Please trust my sincerity.”

“We’re all warriors, rough and uncultured,” Huang Feihu replied. “And you must take pity on us, as we’ve been wronged and are fighting for our lives. Please forgive us should we have done anything to displease you. As you’ve prepared wine, how could we dare to refuse!”

As they ate and drank, time flew by, and the sun set before they knew it. Huang Feihu stood up to bid Chen Wu farewell, saying, “Your kindness is as high as Mount Taishan. If I ever have the slightest chance to repay your favor, I’ll certainly not forget to do it.”

“Rest assured, Your Highness. I know you must be exhausted after such a tiring journey. It’s already dark. Won’t you all take a good rest here tonight? You can start off early tomorrow morning. What could be wrong with that?” Chen Wu suggested.

“Though it’s not a bad idea, this is not a good place to spend the night,” Huang Feihu hesitated.

“Since General Chen’s so sincere, there’s no harm if we leave here tomorrow,” Huang Ming put in.

Huang unwillingly agreed.

With great satisfaction, Chen Wu added, “I’ll trouble you no longer. You haven’t slept well for many days and must be tired. I’ll retire now so that you can get sufficient rest before traveling on tomorrow.”

After Chen Wu left the place, Huang Feihu told his men to move the luggage carts into the corridors. After their difficult journey, everyone slept soundly, but Huang Feihu was restless. He could neither sit nor lie down at ease. His thoughts raced at random. “Oh Heaven! The Huang family has served this dynasty loyally for seven generations. How could we expect that today we would end up as rebels! Only Heaven knows



“七世忠良成画饼，谁知今日入西岐。五关有路真颠厄，三战无君岂浪思。飞鸟失林家已破，依人得意念先疑。老天若遂平生志，洗却从前百事奇。”

话说黄飞虎作诗方毕，听得谯楼一鼓，独坐无聊，不觉又是二更催来。飞虎思想：“王府华丽，玩设画堂，锦堆绣阁，何等富贵，岂知今日置身无地。”又听三更鼓打，飞虎曰：“我今日怎的睡不着！”心下一躁，急了一身香汗。忽听丹墀下一阵风响，怎见得好风，诗曰：

无形无影冷然惊，灭烛穿帘太没情。送出白云飞去杳，剪残黄叶落来轻。催骤雨，助舟行，起人愁思恨难平。猛添无限伤心泪，滴向阶前作雨声。

话说飞虎坐在殿上，三更时候，只听得一阵风响，从丹墀下直旋到殿里来。飞虎见了，毛骨耸然，惊得冷汗一声。那旋风开处，见一只手伸出来，把烛光灭了。听的有声叫曰：“黄将军，妾身并非妖魔，乃是你元配妻贾氏相随至此。你眼前大灾到了！目下烈焰来侵，快叫叔叔起来！将军好生看我三个无娘的孩儿。速起来！我去矣！”飞虎猛然惊觉，那灯光依旧复明。飞虎拍案大叫：“快起来！快起来！”只见黄明、周纪等正在浓睡之间，听得喊声，慌忙爬起，问道：“长兄为何大叫？”飞虎把灭灯听贾氏之言说了一遍。飞彪曰：“宁可信有，不可信无。”黄明走至大门前开门时，其门倒锁。黄明说：“不好了！”龙环、吴谦用斧劈开，只见府前堆积柴薪，浑似柴篷塞挤。慌坏周纪，急唤众家将，将车辆推出。众将上马，方才出得府来，只见陈梧领众将持火把，蜂拥而至，——却来迟了些儿。大抵天意，岂是人为。探马报与陈梧



that my heart's loyal. I hate that tyrant for insulting my wife and murdering my sister. If King Wu lends me troops, I'll certainly launch an attack on that wicked tyrant!"

He sat thinking late into the night but still felt no desire to sleep. The first watch sounded and then the second. "Where's my grand mansion now? Where's my finely furnished hall and my lofty towers? Where are my power and riches now?" he thought. Hearing the third watch strike, he wondered, "Why can't I sleep tonight?" He was puzzling over his fate when he heard a strong wind whirl up the steps and straight into the hall. Huang Feihu was so startled that he broke out in a cold sweat. From the center of the whirlwind an arm suddenly appeared and snuffed out his candle.

He heard a voice calling him. "My lord! Don't be afraid! I'm not a specter, but your wife Lady Jia. I've followed you here. You're in danger now! A great fire will be lit to burn all of you to death. Tell everyone to get up. Take care of my three motherless children, my lord. Get up quickly. I'm going now."

As the candle light gleamed bright again, Huang Feihu came to his senses with a start. He pounded a desk and shouted, "Get up everyone! Get up!"

Huang Ming, Zhou Ji and the others woke up instantly and jumped to their feet. "What's the matter, Brother?"

After Huang Feihu had told them of Lady Jia's warning, Huang Feibiao said, "We should believe her."

Huang Ming walked over to the door and found it locked from the outside. He cried out, "Something's wrong here."

Long Huan and Wu Qian broke open the door with axes and found heaps of firewood piled high before it. Long Huan and Zhou Ji immediately ordered that the luggage carts be pushed out of the building. Everyone mounted their horses and quickly left the place. They had not gone far when they saw Chen Wu and his generals carrying torches toward their residence, but it was Heaven's will that he arrived too late.





曰：“黄家众将出了府门，车辆在外。”陈梧大怒，叫众将曰：“来迟了，快纵马向前！”黄飞虎曰：“陈梧，你昨日高情成为流水，我与你何怨何仇，行此不仁？”陈梧知计已破，大骂曰：“反贼！实指望斩草除根，绝你黄氏一脉，孰知你狡猾之徒，终多苟且。虽然如此，谅你也难出地网天罗！”纵马摇枪，来取黄明。黄明手中斧对面交还。夜里交兵，两家混战。黄飞虎催开五色神牛，举枪也来战陈梧。陈梧招架刀斧，抵挡枪戟。黄飞虎战不数合，大怒，吼一声，穿心过，把陈梧挑于马下。众将只杀得关内人叫苦，惊天动地，鬼神愁。彼时斩栓落锁，杀出穿云关。天色已明，打点往界牌关来。黄明在马上曰：“再也不须杀了。前关乃是太老爷镇守的，乃是自家人。”忙催车辆紧行，有八十余里，看看行至离关不远。

却说界牌关黄滚乃是黄飞虎父亲，镇守此关，闻报长子飞虎反了朝歌，一路上杀了守关总兵。黄滚心下懊恼。探事军报来：“大老爷同二爷、三爷来了。”黄滚急传令：“把人马发三千，布成阵势；将囚车十辆，把这反贼总拿解朝歌！”不知黄家众将性命如何，且听下回分解。



Chen Wu was furious when he learned that Huang Feihu and his men had already left their quarters with their luggage carts. He shouted, "We're late. Hurry, hurry! Catch them!"

"Chen Wu!" Huang Feihu addressed him sternly when the soldiers were almost upon them, "The kindness you offered us yesterday was insincere. Why did you act that way when there's no enmity between us?"

Now that his plot was known, Chen Wu swore, "You rebel. I truly hoped to kill you and your whole family, but you were cunning enough to escape my trap. Even so, you won't find it easy to get out of this alive."

He spurred his horse forward, brandishing his lance charged at Huang Ming. Huang Ming struck at him with his axe. In the pitch darkness, they fought up and down with desperate ferocity. Huang Feihu spurred his ox forward to join the combat, and Chen Wu came to meet him. After only a few rounds, Huang Feihu stabbed him through the heart, toppling him from his horse.

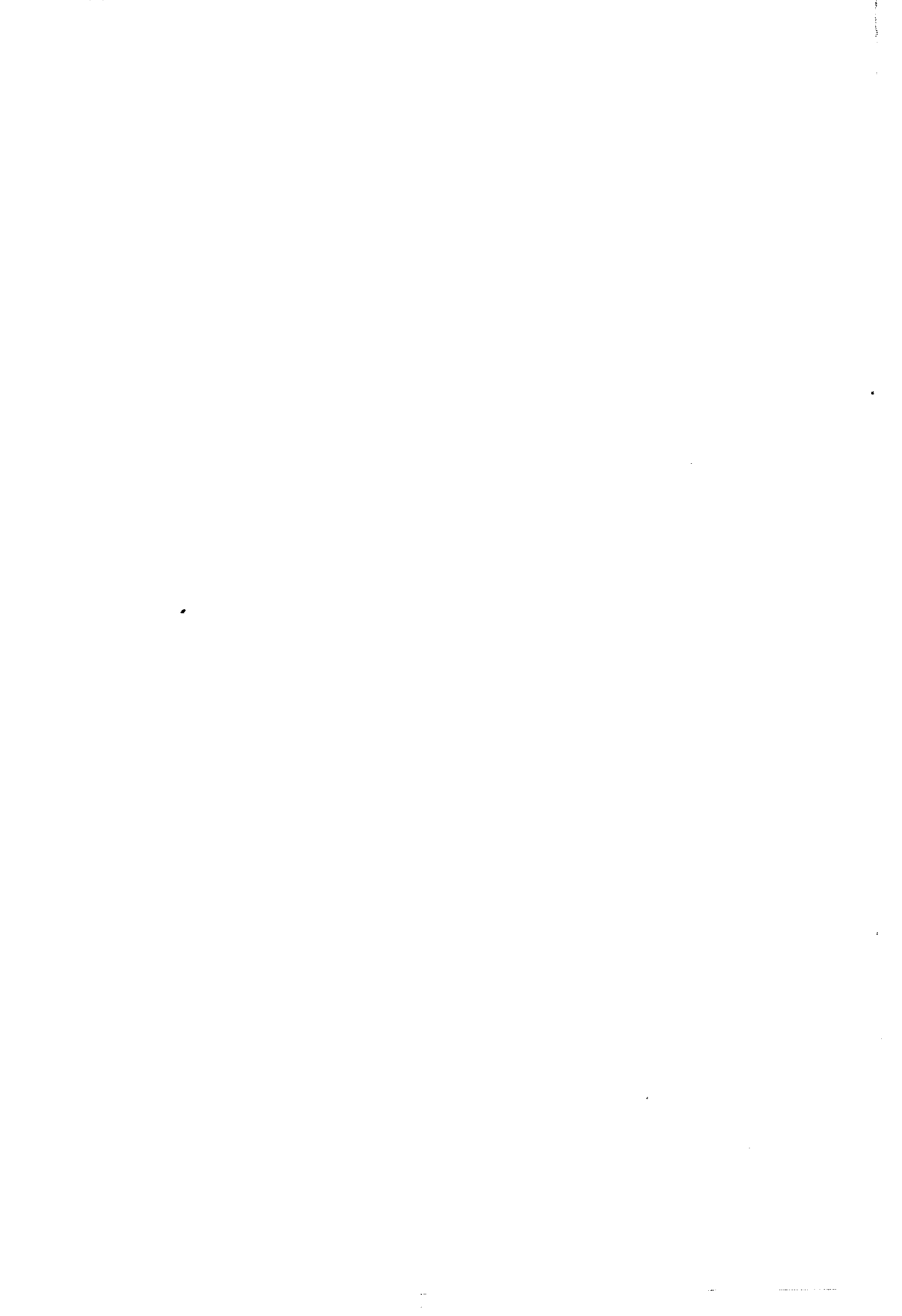
The battle raged desperately until many of the garrison troops were slain. Huang Feihu won a complete victory. Smashing down the gates, they fought their way out of Chuanyun Pass just as dawn was breaking.

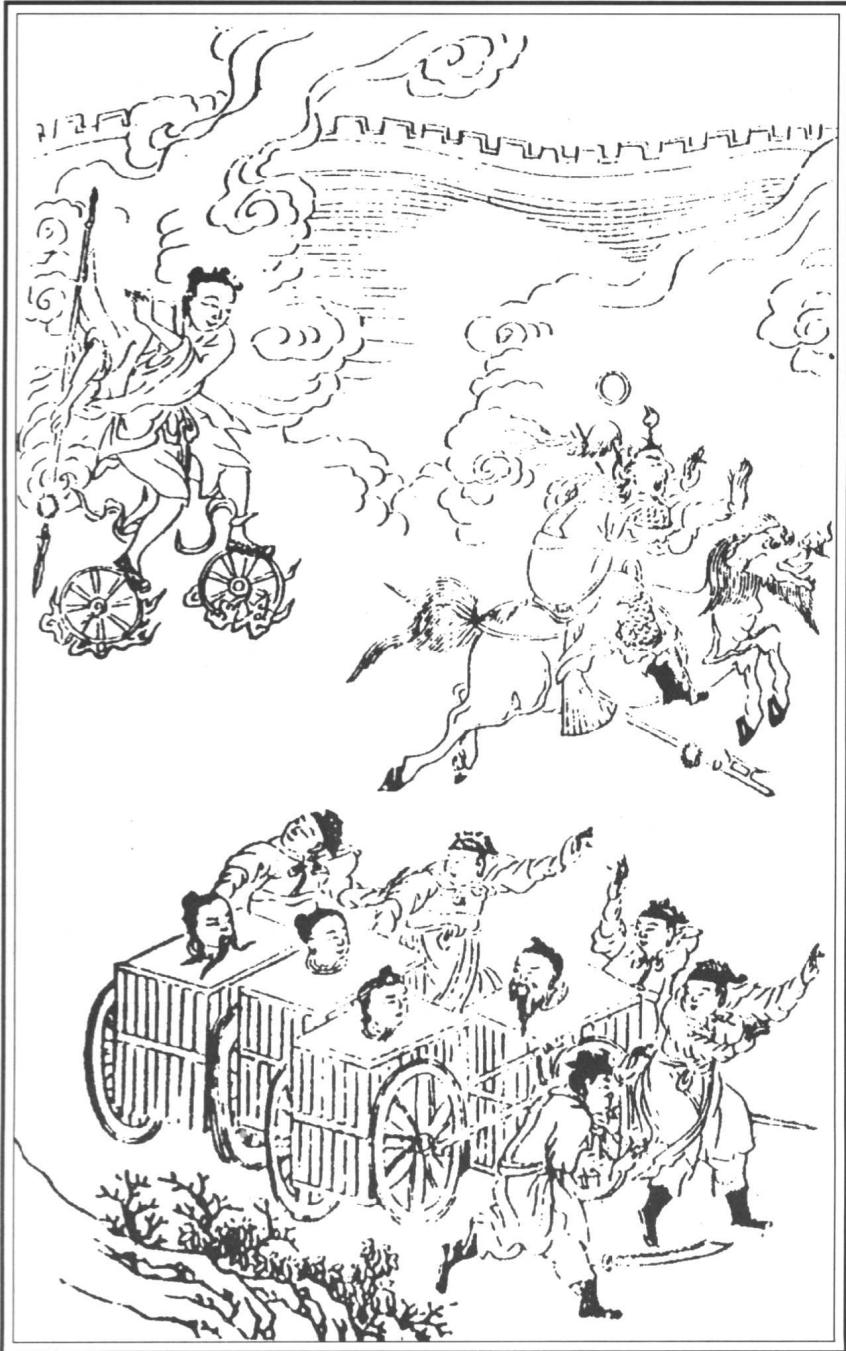
On the way to Jiepai Pass, Huang Ming commented, "We won't have to fight at Jiepai. The commander's old Huang Gun, Huang Feihu's father."

The party hurried eighty *li* before they came to Jiepai Pass.

General Huang Gun had been greatly annoyed by the report that his eldest son, Huang Feihu, had rebelled against the king, fought his way out of Zhaoge, and slaughtered generals and soldiers on his way west. As soon as he received the report that Huang Feihu was approaching, he took 3,000 soldiers out to wait for his arrival. He had ten prison carts prepared, ready to arrest his sons and grandsons and bring them back to Zhaoge.

If you want to learn what happened next to Huang Feihu and his men, you must read the next chapter.







## 第三十三回

### 黄飞虎泗水大战

诗曰：

百难千灾苦不禁，奸臣贼子枉痴心，漫夸幻术能多获，  
不道邪谋可易侵。余化图功成画饼，韩荣封拜有差参。  
总然天意安排定，说道封神泪满襟。

话说黄滚布开人马，等候儿子来。只见黄明、周纪远远望见一枝人马摆开。黄明对黄飞虎曰：“老爷布开人马，又见陷车，这光景不是好消息。”龙环道：“且见了老爷，看他怎么说，再做处治。”数骑向前。飞虎在鞍靳欠身，口称：“父亲，不孝儿飞虎不能全礼。”黄滚曰：“你何人？”飞虎答曰：“我是父亲长子黄飞虎，为何反问？”黄滚大喝一声：“我家受天子七世恩荣，为商汤之股肱，忠孝贤良者有，叛逆奸佞者无。况我黄门无犯法之男，无再嫁之女。你今为一妇人，而背君亲之大恩，弃七代之簪缨，绝腰间之宝玉，失人伦之大体，忘国家之遗荫，背主求荣，无端造反，杀朝廷命官，闯天子关隘，乘机抢掳，百姓遭殃，辱祖宗于九泉，愧父颜于人世，忠不能于天子，孝不尽于父前。畜生！你空为王位，累父餐刀！你生有愧于天下，死有辱于先人！你再有何颜见我！”飞虎被父亲一篇言语说得默默无言。黄滚又曰：“畜生！你可做忠臣、孝子不做忠臣、孝子？”飞虎曰：“父亲此言怎么说？”滚曰：“你要做忠臣、孝子，早早下骑，为父



## Chapter 33

### The Battle at Sishui Pass

As Huang Gun arrayed his troops in front of the pass, Huang Ming said to Long Huan, “Things don’t look optimistic here. Look at the combat formation, and the prison carts!”

“Let’s first see Huang Gun and hear what he has to say,” Long Huan answered.

The Huangs trotted forward and Huang Feihu bowed on the back of his ox. “Father, your unfilial son begs your pardon for being unable to kowtow before you.”

“Who are you?” Huang Gun demanded.

“I’m your eldest son, Huang Feihu. Why do you ask me such a question?”

Huang Gun roared at him, “My family’s been honored by monarchs for seven generations, and all are loyal, filial and just. None are treacherous, deceitful or wicked. No one has ever broken the law and no woman ever remarried after the death of her husband. But what have you done now? Just for a woman’s sake, you’ve forsaken the monarch, abandoned your posts, and rebelled! You’ve committed a capital crime by slaying, plundering, and storming the passes. You’ve humiliated your ancestors in the afterworld and your father in this one. You damned beast! You’ve held a high rank in vain! You only implicate me in this disaster, I wonder that you should dare to face me.”

Huang Feihu was completely dumbstruck.

“Beast! Are you going to be a loyal subject and a filial son or not?” Huang Gun demanded.

“What do you mean, Father?” Huang Feihu asked.

“If you want to be a loyal subject and filial son, just dismount. I’ll take you to Zhaoge. That way I’ll have performed a service of great merit



的把你解往朝歌，使我黄滚解子有功，天子必不害我；我得生全，你死还是商臣，为父还有肖子。畜生！你忠孝还得两全。你不做忠臣、孝子，既已反了朝歌，目中已无天子，自是不忠；你再使开长枪，把我刺于马下，料你必投西土，任你纵横，使我眼不见，耳不闻，我也甘心，你可乐意。庶几不遗我末年披枷带索，死于藁街，使人指曰：‘此某人之父，因子造反而致某于此也！’”飞虎听罢，在神牛上大叫曰：“老爷不必罪我，与老爷解往朝歌去罢！”方欲下骑，傍有黄明在马上大呼曰：“长兄不可下骑！纣王无道，乃失政之君，不以吾等尽忠辅国为念，古语云：‘君使臣以礼，臣事君以忠。’国君既以不正，乱伦反常，臣又何心听其驱使！我等出五关，费了多少艰难，十死一生；今听老将军一篇言语，就死于马下无益。可怜惨死，深冤不能表白于天下！”飞虎听的此言有理，在牛上低首不语。黄滚大骂黄明：“你们这伙逆贼！吾子料无反心，是你们这样无父无君、不仁不义、少三纲、绝五常的匹夫唆使，故做出这等事来。在我面前，况且教吾子不要下骑，这不是你等撮弄他！气杀老夫！”纵马抡刀来取黄明。黄明急用斧架开刀曰：“老将军，你听我讲。黄飞虎等是你的儿子，黄天禄等是你的孙子；我等不是你的子孙，怎把囚车来拿我等？老将军，你差了念头！自古虎毒不食儿，如今朝廷失政，大变伦常，各处荒乱，刀兵四起，天降不祥，祸乱已现。今老将军媳妇被君欺辱，亲女被君摔死，沉冤无伸；不思为一家骨肉报仇，反解儿子往朝歌受戮。语云：‘君不正，臣投外国；父不慈，子必参商。’”黄滚大怒，“反贼，巧言舌辩，气杀我！”把刀望黄明劈来。黄明架



and have the chance to live. You'll die a minister of this dynasty. That would make you both filial and loyal. Otherwise, your rebellion's already shown your disloyalty, and you have only to stab me to prove your unfiliality. I guess then you'll go to West Qi. When I die, you can do as you like, and I'll see and hear nothing. I hope that you won't leave me alive to be shackled and executed in public for your crimes. People would point at me and say 'He's beheaded because his son rebelled.' I'm willing to die under your sword, and I'm sure you must be willing to kill me," Huang Gun said emotionally.

"Don't say anymore, Father. You may take me to Zhaoge now," Huang Feihu cried out and was about to get down from his ox.

"Brother, don't!" Huang Ming stopped him. "King Zhou's a tyrant. Since he's immoral, why should we be loyal? We've braved innumerable hardships to get this far, struggling with death on each occasion. Why commit suicide for the single reason given by the old general? How pitiful it is to die without clearing our names of that great injustice!"

Thinking that what Huang Ming said was right, Huang Feihu sat on his ox, lowered his head and kept silent.

"Huang Ming, you bastard! I'm sure my son had no intention of rebelling against the government. It's unfilial and disloyal wretches like you that incited him to it. How dare you stop him from surrendering to me!" Huang Gun cried.

He spurred his horse forward and slashed at Huang Ming with his cutlass. Huang Ming parried the blow with his axe. "General, listen to me! Huang Feihu's your son and Huang Tianlu your grandson, but I'm neither. You can't expect to get us into your prison carts?" he began. "General, you're wrong. Even a fierce tiger wouldn't devour its own son! How can you be so cruel as to send your own children to death? Your daughter-in-law was insulted by the tyrant and committed suicide and your own daughter was murdered. Why don't you avenge their deaths? As the proverb goes, 'If a ruler isn't virtuous, his subjects may seek a new master; if a father's unkind, his son may oppose him'."

With great wrath, Huang Gun shouted, "Scoundrel! Your sophistry infuriates me!"

He slashed at Huang Ming again. Huang Ming once more parried the blow. "Old chap! Why not get out while the weather holds instead of waiting for it to worsen? As a general, you're totally blind to the current situation. You forget that there are no eyes in my axes and one slip would





刀，大叫：“黄老儿！你‘天晴不肯走，只待雨淋头’！你做一世大帅，不识时务，只管把刀来劈我，独不想吾手中斧无眉少目，万一有伤，把老将军一生英名置于乌有。小侄怎敢！”黄滚大怒，纵马舞刀，飞来直取。周纪曰：“老将军，今日得罪也罢，忍不住了。”黄明、周纪、龙环、吴谦四将，把黄滚围裹核心，斧戟交加，奔腾战马。黄飞虎在傍，见四将把父亲围住，面上甚有怒色，沉思曰：“这匹夫可恶！我在此，尚把老爷欺侮。”只见黄明大叫曰：“长兄，我等将老爷围住，你们不快快出关，还要等请？”飞豹、飞彪、天禄、天爵，一齐连家将车辆，冲出关去。黄滚见儿子撞出关去，气冲肝腑，跌下马来，随欲拔剑自刎。黄明下马，一把抱住，口称：“老爷何必如此？”黄滚醒回，睁目大骂：“无知强盗！你把我逆子放走了，还要在此支吾！”黄明曰：“末将一言难尽，真是有屈无伸。我受你的儿子气，已是无限了。他要反商，我几番苦劝，动不动只要杀我四人。我等没奈何，共议只到界牌关，见了黄将军，设法拿解朝歌，洗我四人一身之怨。末将以目送情，老将军只管说闲话不睬。末将犹恐泄了机会，反为不美。”黄滚曰：“据你怎么讲？”黄明曰：“老将军快上马，出关赶飞虎，只说：‘黄明劝我，‘虎毒不食儿’，你们都回来，我同你往西岐去投见武王。何如？’”黄滚笑曰：“这畜生好言语，反来诱我！”黄明曰：“终不然当真去？此是哄他进关。老将军在府内设饭酒与他吃，我四人打点绳索挠钩，老将军击钟为号，吾等一齐上手，把你三子、三孙俱拿入陷车，解往朝歌。只望老将军天恩，保我等四条金带，感德不浅！”黄滚听罢，叹曰：“黄将军，你



mean the end of your life of fame! How could I dare to do such a thing!"

Even more infuriated, Huang Gun rushed forward to attack him again.

Zhou Ji shouted, "General! I'm afraid I'll have to offend you now. I can't control my temper any longer!"

Instantly, Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Qian surrounded Huang Gun, halberd clashing on axe as the horses sprang in and out of combat. Watching them do battle with his old father, Huang Feihu felt his anger rise. "How dare they insult my father before my very eyes!"

But Huang Ming shouted, "Brother, we've got the old general tied down here. Why don't you get out of the pass as fast as you can? Are you waiting for an invitation?"

Huang Feihu, Huang Feibiao, Huang Feibao, Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue and Huang Tianxiang rushed swiftly out of the pass. When he saw that his sons and grandsons had escaped, Huang Gun toppled from his horse and tried to commit suicide. Huang Ming instantly leapt down and seized his arms.

"Sir! You needn't do that!" he told Huang Gun.

Huang Gun only stared at him. "You stupid bandit. You let them get away. Now you're trying new tricks on me."

"It's hard to explain things briefly," said Huang Ming. "It's really a case of having nowhere to air my grievances. I've been repeatedly insulted by your son. He was determined to rebel and tried more than once to put us to death when we advised him against it. The four of us consulted together and decided to come with him to Jiepai Pass where we could help you take him back to Zhaoge. When we met, I tried to signal to you with my eyes, but you were so engrossed in idle talk that you didn't notice. I couldn't say anything lest our plan be uncovered."

"Then what do you suggest?" Huang Gun asked.

"General! You must go quickly and catch up with Huang Feihu. Tell him 'Huang Ming's right. Even a cruel tiger wouldn't devour its son. You may all come back. I'll come with you to West Qi.' What do you say?"

Huang Gun smiled. "You beast! You talk so sweetly, but how do I know that you're not deceiving me?"

"Of course we won't really go. We'll simply lure him back, and you'll entertain them. We'll get a hold of them as soon as you give us the signal by ringing a bell. Then you may put your three sons and three grandsons in the prison carts and escort them back to Zhaoge to be punished. As for the four of us, we hope only that you would kindly forgive us and keep us in our current ranks."



原来是个好人。”黄滚忙上马，赶出关来，大呼曰：“我儿！黄明劝我，着实有理。我也自思，不若同你往西岐去罢。”飞虎自忖：“父亲为何有此言语？”飞豹曰：“这是黄明的圈套。我等速回，听其指挥，以便行事。”遂进关入府，拜见父亲。黄滚曰：“一路鞍马，快收拾酒饭，你们吃了，同往西岐去便了。”且说两边忙排酒食上来，黄滚相陪，饮了四、五杯酒，见黄明站在傍边，黄滚把金钟击了数下，黄明听见，只当不知。且说龙环来对黄明说：“如今怎样了？”黄明曰：“你二人将老将军资蓄打点上车，收拾干净。你一把火烧起粮草堆来。我们一齐上马。老将军必定问我，我自有话回他。”二人去讫。黄滚见黄明听钟响不见动手，叫到案傍来，问曰：“方才钟响，你怎的不下手？”黄明曰：“老将军，刀斧手不齐，怎么动得手？倘或知觉走了，反为不美。”且说龙环、吴谦二将，把黄老将军家私都打点上车，就放一把火烧将起来。两边来报：“粮草堆火起！”众人齐上马出关。黄滚叫苦：“我中了这伙强盗的计了！”黄明曰：“老将军，实对你讲：纣王无道，武王乃仁明圣德之君。我们此去借兵报仇。你去就去；你不去便是催督不完，烧了仓廩，已绝粮草，到了朝歌，难逃一死。总不如一同归武王，此为上策。”黄滚沉吟长吁曰：“臣非纵子不忠，奈众口难调。老臣七世忠良，今为叛亡之士。”望朝歌大拜八拜，将五十六两帅印挂在银安殿，老将军点兵三千，共家将人等，合有四千余人，救灭火光，离了高关。有诗为证，诗曰：

设计施谋出界牌，黄明周纪显奇才。谁知汜水关难过，怎脱天罗地网灾。余化通玄多奥妙，法施异宝捉将来。



Huang Gun sighed deeply. "General Huang, you're a good man after all!"

He mounted his horse and chased after Huang Feihu. "My sons," he called, "Huang Ming's right. After considering it, I've decided to come with you all to West Qi."

"Why's Father suddenly changed his mind?" Huang Feihu wondered.

"It must be a trick thought up by Huang Ming. We'd better return at once and go along with his plan," Huang Feibiao said perceptively.

Returning to the pass, Huang Feihu kowtowed before his father. Huang Gun said: "You must be weary after your journey. Let's have some food and wine first, and then we'll start off to West Qi together."

When five cups of wine had been downed, Huang Gun struck his gold bell several times, but Huang Ming paid no attention to it. Long Huan secretly asked Huang Ming, "What shall we do now?"

"You two pack all his private belongings on the luggage carts and set fire to the barns and warehouses. Then we'll all mount and leave. I'll answer any questions the old general asks."

When Huang Ming did not respond to his signal, Huang Gun called him over. "Why didn't you make a move when I rang the bell?"

"The men aren't ready yet. It would be dreadful if we acted prematurely and they got away," Huang Ming answered dishonestly.

Meanwhile, Long Huan and Wu Qian packed all the old general's private belongings onto the carts and set the barns and warehouses on fire. When Huang Gun learned of the news, and then saw Huang Feihu's men getting out of the pass, he groaned. "I've been taken in!"

"General!" urged Huang Ming, "Let me tell you the truth. King Zhou's a wicked tyrant, and King Wu's a sage ruler. We're going to ask him for an army to revenge the wrongs we've suffered. We welcome you to join us. If you don't, you'll certainly meet your death in Zhaoge, as your barns have been burnt and taxes lost. You'd better come with us to see King Wu. It's the best path for you to take."

Huang Gun pondered for a while, and then sighed, "I cannot oppose public opinion. My family's been loyal for seven generations, but we are rebels now!"

He knelt down, kowtowed toward Zhaoge eight times, and hung the seal of his office in his Silver Security Court. Then he extinguished the fire, and took 3,000 soldiers and 1,000 guards out of Jiepai Pass.



不是哪吒相接应，焉得君臣破鹿台。

话说黄滚同众人并马而行。黄滚曰：“黄明，我见你为吾子，不是为他，是害了我一门忠义。界牌关外便是西岐，那个不妨；只此八十里至汜水关，守关者乃韩荣，麾下一将余化，此人乃左道，人称他‘七首将军’，此人道法通玄，旗开拱手，马到成功，坐下火眼金睛兽，用方天戟，我们一到，料是个个被擒，决难脱逃。我若解你往朝歌，尚留我老身一命；今日一同至此，真是荆山失火，玉石俱焚。此正天数难逃，吾命所该。”又见七岁孙儿在马上啼哭，又添惨切，不觉失声说道：“我等遭此纆缚；你得何罪于天地，也逢此诛身之厄！”黄滚一路上不绝口叹息，不觉行至汜水关，安下人马，扎了辕门。

却说韩荣探马报到：“黄滚同武成王反出界牌，兵至关前扎营。”韩荣听罢，低首自思：“黄老将军，你官居总帅，位极人臣，为何纵子反商，不谙事体，其实可笑。”命左右：“擂鼓聚将听用。”诸军参谒毕。韩荣曰：“黄滚纵子造反，兵至此地，必须商议，仔细酌量。”众将领令。那韩荣调人马阻塞咽喉。按下不表。

且说黄滚坐在帐里，看着两边子孙，点首曰：“今日齐齐整整，两边侍立；到明日不知先少谁人？”众人听着，各有不忿之意。

且说次日余化领令，布开人马，军前搦战。营门官报入。黄滚问：“你们谁去走走？”只见黄飞虎曰：“孩儿前去。”上了五色神牛，提枪在手，催骑向前。见一将生的古怪形容，怎见得，诗曰：



“Huang Ming! As far as I can see, you offer no help to my son. On the contrary, you’re bringing the whole Huang family to its death. About eighty *li* from here is Sishui Pass under the command of Han Rong. Beneath him there’s Yu Hua, a sorcerer. He’s nicknamed the ‘seven-headed general.’ He rides on a fiery golden-eyed monster and has never lost a battle. If I had taken you all as prisoners to Zhaoge, I could have saved my own life at least, but now we’ll all share the same fate. This must be the will of Heaven, and I must accept my destiny,” Huang Gun told Huang Ming as they rode along. He felt even more grieved when he saw that his seven-year-old grandson was weeping. “What crime have you committed against Heaven that you should suffer the same cruel fate as ours!”

He sighed and groaned all the way to Sishui Pass where the party came to a halt.

When Han Rong learned that Huang Gun and Huang Feihu had arrived at Sishui Pass, he fell silent. “General Huang! What a great pity! As marshal, you’re of the top rank. How could you be so dull as to go along with your son?” He ordered that the drums be beaten to summon his generals. When they all arrived, he announced, “Huang Gun’s joined his son. They’re already here so we must decide what to do.”

They decided to block the pass and prepare for combat. Meanwhile Huang Gun sat in his tent looking at his sons and grandsons. He nodded his head. “You all stand here now, but which one of you will be missing tomorrow?”

The following day, General Yu Hua came out and challenged the Huangs.

“Who would like to answer the first challenge?” Huang Gun asked.

“I’ll go first,” Huang Feihu answered.

He mounted his divine ox, took his lance, and rushed onto the battle-



脸似搽金须发红，一双怪眼度金瞳。虎皮袍衬连环铠，玉束宝带现玲珑。秘授玄功无比赛，人称“七首”似飞熊。翠蓝幡上书名字，余化先行手到功。

话说余化一骑向前，此人自不曾会武成王，见来将仪容异相，五柳长髯，飘扬脑后，丹凤眼，卧蚕眉，提金鳌提芦杵，坐五色神牛。余化问曰：“来者何人？”武成王答曰：“吾乃武成王黄飞虎是也。今纣王失政，弃纣归周。汝乃何人？”余化答曰：“末将未会大王尊颜。大王乃成汤社稷之臣，若论满朝富贵，尽出黄门。何事不足，而作反叛之人？”飞虎曰：“将军之言虽是，各有衷曲，一言难尽。即以君臣之道而论，古云：‘君使臣以礼，臣事君以忠。’普天下尽知纣王无道，羞于为臣。今又乱伦败德，污蔑纪纲，残贼仁义，不恤士民，天下诸侯，皆知有岐周矣。三分天下，周土已得二分，可见天命有归，岂是人力。吾今止借此关一往，望将军容纳。不才感德无涯。”余化叹曰：“大王此言差矣！末将各守关隘，以尽臣职。大王不反，末将自当远迎。大王今系叛亡，末将与大王成为敌国，岂有放大王出关之理！大王难道此理也不知？我劝大王请速下战骑，俟末将关主解往朝歌，请旨定夺。百司自有本章保奏，念大王平日之功，以赦叛亡之罪，或未可知。若想善出此关，大王乃缘木求鱼，非徒无益，而又害之也。”飞虎曰：“五关已出有四，岂在汝这汜水关！敢出言无状，放马来与你见个雌雄。”飞虎举枪，直取余化。余化摇画戟相迎。二兽相交，枪戟并举，一场大战。

二将阵前势无比，立见输赢定生死。狡狴摆尾斗麒麟，



field. Yu Hua had a golden face, red hair, a red beard, and two sparkling eyes. But Yu Hua had never met Huang Feihu. He saw a general with a long five-tufted beard, phoenix eyes and silkworm eyebrows.

“Who’s that coming?” he shouted.

“I’m Prince Huang Feihu. As King Zhou is a wicked tyrant, I’ve abandoned him and will take shelter in West Qi, and who are you, General?”

“I’m Yu Hua. I’m sorry that I’ve never had the opportunity to meet Your Highness before. You were of the top rank. Why did you rebel?”

“It’s difficult to tell the whole story in just a few words. According to the code, a ruler should respect his subjects, while his subjects should be loyal. But now everyone knows that King Zhou is a cruel tyrant and his subjects feel ashamed. All know of the virtue of West Qi, and two-thirds of the Shang kingdom is already under Zhou influence. Man can do nothing to change the will of Heaven. I hope that you’ll be kind enough to let us through. We would appreciate the favor forever.”

Yu Hua sighed. “Your Highness, you’re not right. I’m obliged to fulfill my duty and guard this pass. Were you not a rebel, I would certainly welcome you warmly. But you’re a rebel now, and that makes us enemies, so I can’t possibly let you through. I advise you to dismount, and I’ll take you back to Zhaoge. The ministers are bound to plead on your behalf, and King Zhou may consider your past service and pardon you. It’s absolutely impossible for you to get out of this pass.”

“I’ve gotten through four of the five passes already. What can you do to stop me at this last one? Come forward and let’s see who’ll win the day.”

He raised his lance and charged in to attack. Yu Hua met him with his halberd. Huang fought with such speed and skill that his lance seemed to





却似苍龙搅海水。长枪荡荡蟒翻身，摆动金钱豹子尾。

将军恶战不寻常，不至败亡心不止。

话说武成王展放钢枪，使得性发，似一条银蟒裹住余化，只杀的他马仰人翻。余化掩一戟就走。飞虎赶来。追至两肘之地，余化挂下画戟，揭起战袍，囊中取出一幡，名曰“戮魂幡”。——此物是蓬莱岛一气仙人传授，乃左道傍门之物。——望空中一举，数道黑气，把飞虎罩住，平空拎得去了，望辕门摔下。众士卒将武成王拿了。余化掌得胜鼓回府。旗门小校飞报守将韩荣曰：“余将军今日已擒反臣黄飞虎听令。”韩荣传令：“推来！”众士卒将飞虎推至檐前。飞虎立而不跪。荣曰：“朝廷何事亏你，一旦造反？”飞虎笑曰：“似足下坐守关隘，自谓贵职，不过狐假虎威，借天子之威福以弹压此一方耳。岂知朝政得失，祸乱之由，君臣乖违之故？我今既被你所获，无非一死而已，何必多言！”韩荣曰：“吾既守此关隘，擒拿叛逆，不过尽吾职守，吾亦不与你辩。且送下囹圄监候，俟余党尽获起解。”

且说黄滚在营中闻报说飞虎被擒，黄滚叹曰：“畜生！你不听为父之言，可惜这场功劳，落在韩荣手里！”一宿已过，次日来报：“余化请战。”黄滚问：“何人出去？”黄明、周纪曰：“末将愿往。”二将上马，拎斧出营，大呼曰：“余化匹夫！擒吾长兄，此恨怎消！”纵马舞斧来取。余化画戟急架相还。三骑相交，戟斧并举，一场大战。诗曰：

三将昂昂杀气高，征云霭霭透青霄。英雄勇跃多威武，  
俊杰胸襟胆量豪。逆理莫思封拜福，顺时应自得金鳌。  
从来理数皆如此，莫用心机空自劳。



be a silver python coiling itself around Yu Hua and rendering him helpless. Utterly exhausted, Yu Hua fainted with his halberd and fled.

Huang Feihu gave chase, but as he closed in, Yu Hua opened his robe and drew out the Soul Killing Pennant, a magic weapon from the immortal Primal Ether of Penglai Island. As soon as he raised the pennant in the air, it emitted a black cloud that engulfed Huang Feihu and threw him to the ground. Huang Feihu was taken prisoner and pushed before Han Rong.

“What did the government do that made you rebel?”

Refusing to kneel, Huang Feihu answered with a cold laugh, “A powerful position here, eh? But in fact you just use the awe inspired by the throne to suppress this area. How could you understand why state affairs are in complete disorder, and the ministers in revolt? Now that you’ve got me, I’ll merely be executed and that’ll be the end of it. What’s the point of lengthy explanations?”

“As commander here, I’m merely doing my duty by arresting you rebels. I don’t want to argue with you either. I’ll put you in gaol and take you to Zhaoge when I’ve captured the rest of your gang,” Han Rong said.

Hearing that Huang Feihu had been taken, Huang Gun said, “Beast! You didn’t listen to my advice. What a pity that the merit for capturing you has now fallen into Han Rong’s hands!”

The night passed. The next morning Yu Hua galloped out and challenged again.

“Who’ll go?” Huang Gun asked.

“I’ll go,” Huang Ming and Zhou Ji answered together.

They got on their horses, took their battle-axes, and left the camp. “Yu Hua, we’ll get revenge for our brother,” they shouted.

They raced forward, whirling their axes. Yu Hua defended himself with his halberd. After about thirty rounds Yu Hua pulled his horse around



说话三将交锋，未及三十回合，余化拨马便走。二将赶来。余化依旧将戮魂幡举起如前，把二将拿去见韩荣。韩荣分付：“发下监禁。”不表。

且言探马报入中营：“启元帅：二将被擒。”黄滚低首不言。又报：“余化请战。”黄滚又问：“谁出马？”黄飞彪、飞豹曰：“孩儿愿为长兄报仇。”二将上马，拎枪出营，骂曰：“余化匹夫！以妖法擒吾弟兄三人！”拨马来取。三将又战二十回合。余化拨马败走。飞豹二将亦赶下来。余化也如前法，又把二将拿去见韩荣。也是送下囹圄监候。黄滚闻二将又被擒去，心下十分懊恼。次日又报：“余化请战。”黄滚问曰：“谁再去退战？”帐下龙环、吴谦曰：“终不然畏彼妖法便罢？吾二人愿往。”二将上马，拎戟出营，见余化，气冲斗牛，厉声大叫：“匹夫！将左道之术，擒吾长兄，与贼势不两立！”三马交还，战二十回合，余化依旧败走。二将赶来，亦被余化拿去见韩荣。依旧发下囹圄。余化连四阵捉七员将官。韩荣设酒与余化贺功。不表。

话说黄滚在中军，见两边诸将被擒，又见三个孙儿站立在傍，心下十分不忍，点头泪落：“我儿！你年不过十三四岁，为何也遭此厄？”又报：“余化请战。”只见次孙黄天禄欠身曰：“小孙愿为父、叔报仇。”黄滚分付曰：“是必小心！”黄天禄上马，提枪出营，见余化曰：“匹夫赶尽杀绝，但不知你可有造化受其功禄！”纵马摇枪直取。余化急架忙迎。二马相交，枪戟并举。黄天禄年纪虽幼，原是将门之子，传授精妙，枪法如神，不分起倒，一勇而进。正是“初生之犊猛于虎”。后人看至此，有诗赞曰：



and fled. When Huang Ming and Zhou Ji pursued him, he lifted his Soul Killing Pennant again and took them both. They were put in gaol with Huang Feihu.

Huang Gun lowered his head in silence when he heard of their capture. He then asked again, "Who will go out to meet Yu Hua this time?"

Huang Feibiao and Huang Feibao answered, "We would like to meet him."

They took their lances and galloped out. As before, Yu Hua took flight after twenty rounds and captured both Huang Feibiao and Huang Feibao with his pennant.

When he learned of their capture, Huang Gun was very upset. The following day, Yu Hua challenged again and Long Huan and Wu Qian volunteered, "We're not intimidated by his sorcery. We'll go and meet him."

They galloped onto the battlefield. "You damned wretch! How dare you use your dirty sorcery. We'll knock your block off."

However, after thirty rounds, Long Huan and Wu Qian were also taken, brought before Han Rong, and sent to prison. In four encounters, Yu Hua had taken seven generals. Han Rong held a banquet to honor him.

Meanwhile, Huang Gun sat alone, feeling very discouraged. He looked sadly at his three grandsons standing beside him and shook his head. "My children, you're so young. Why should you have to suffer the same fate as we do?"

Just then a guard reported that Yu Hua had challenged once again. Huang Tianlu, Huang Gun's second grandson, bowed and said, "Your grandson wishes to answer the challenge to avenge my father and uncles."

"You must be very careful," Huang Gun warned him.

Huang Tianlu fought bravely. Though he was young, he was born into a warrior's family and had been well-trained since childhood. His lance



乾坤真个少，盖世果然稀。老君炉里炼，曾敲十万八千槌。磨塌太山昆仑顶，战乾黄河九曲溪。上阵不粘尘世界，回来一阵血腥飞。

话说黄天禄使开枪如翻江怪兽，势不可当。天禄见战不下余化，在马上卖一个名解，唤做“丹凤入昆仑”，一枪正刺中余化左腿。余化负痛，落荒便走。天禄不知好歹，赶下阵来。余化虽败，此术尚存，依旧举幡如前，把黄天禄拿去见韩荣。也发下囹圄监候。黄飞虎屡见将他黄门人拿来，心上甚是懊恼。忽见次子天禄又拿到，飞虎不觉泪流满面。可怜！正是父子关心，骨肉情切。且不说他父子悲咽，有话难言。再表黄滚闻报次孙被擒，心中甚是凄惋。想一想，无策可施，“……如今止存公、孙三人，料难出他地网天罗。往前不得出关，去后一无退步。……”黄滚把案一拍，“罢！罢！罢！”忙传令，命家将等，共三千人马，“你们把车辆上金珠细软之物献与韩荣，买条生路，放你们出关。我公、孙料不能俱生。”众家将跪而告曰：“老爷且省愁烦，‘吉人自有天相’，何必如此？”黄滚曰：“余化乃左道妖人，皆系幻术，我何能抵挡？若被他擒获，反把我平昔英名一旦化为乌有。”又见二孙在傍啼泣，黄滚亦泣曰：“我儿，你也不知可有造化，替你哀告韩荣，亦不知他可肯饶你二人。”黄滚把头上盔除下，摘去腰间玉带，解甲宽袍，腰悬玉玦，领着二孙，径往韩荣帅府门前来。众官见是黄元帅亲自如此，俱不敢言语。黄滚至府前，对门官曰：“烦你通报韩总兵，只说黄滚求见。”军政官报与韩荣。韩荣曰：“你来也无用了。”忙令军卒分排两傍，众将分开左右，韩荣出仪门，至大门口，



darted in and out like lightning and before long he scored a hit, stabbing Yu Hua through the left thigh. Nursing his wound, Yu Hua took flight, and Huang Tianlu plunged after him. Though defeated, Yu Hua still had his magic, and in a wink of the eye, Tianlu was captured and thrown into prison with his father.

Huang Feihu was already distressed to see so many of his men captured and brought to prison. When he saw his son, he could not restrain his tears.

Huang Gun felt utterly desolate when he heard that Huang Tianlu had also been lost, but he could think of no way to deal with the matter. How could they get out of the net that entrapped them? He was too old, and his grandsons were too young.

He pounded his desk heavily. "We're finished, finished!" he cried, and ordered his men, "Present all the jewels, gold and silver on the carts to Han Rong, and he'll allow you to get out of the pass. As for me and my grandsons, we won't live much longer."

His 3,000 soldiers fell on their knees and comforted him, "Don't be so upset. 'Heaven helps good men out of trouble.' You mustn't despair."

"Yu Hua's a sorcerer, skilled in all sorts of magic arts. How can I ever beat him? If I were captured as well, my reputation would be ruined." He wept when he saw his grandsons standing before him with tears in their eyes. "Children, I don't know whether you will be lucky or not. I'll beg Han Rong to show mercy on you and set you free."

He took off his helmet, jade belt and robes, and put on mourning. Then he took his grandsons directly to Han Rong's headquarters. As he had made up his mind to surrender, none of his men dared to say a word.

At Han Rong's headquarters, Huang Gun said to the gatemen, "Would you please report to your commander that Huang Gun requests to see him?"

只见黄滚缟素跪下，后跪黄天爵、天祥。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



Han Rong smiled at the report. "It's already too late. There's no use in you coming to see me now."

He ordered his soldiers to stand on guard to the left and right, and with his generals on either side of him, strode out to the gate. He saw Huang Gun dressed in mourning kneeling at the gate with Huang Tianjue and Huang Tianxiang.

What became of them? If you want to know, read the next chapter.





## 第三十四回

### 飞虎归周见子牙

诗曰：

左道傍门乱似麻，只因昏主起波查。贪淫不避彝伦序，乱政谁知国事差。将相自应归圣主，韩荣何故阻行车。中途得遇灵珠子，砖打伤残枉怨嗟。

话说黄滚膝行军门请罪，见韩荣，口称：“犯官黄滚特来叩见总兵。”韩荣忙答礼曰：“老将军，此事皆系国家重务，亦非末将敢于自专。今老将军如此，有何见谕？”黄滚曰：“黄门犯法，理当正罪，原无可辞；但有一事，情在可矜之列，望总兵法外施仁，开此一线生路，则愚父子虽死九泉，感德无涯矣。”韩荣曰：“何事分付？末将愿闻。”黄滚曰：“子累父死，滚不敢怨。奈黄门七世忠良，未尝有替臣节，今不幸遭此劫运，使我子孙一概屠戮，情实可悯。不得已，肘膝求见总兵，可怜念无知稚子，罪在可宥。乞总兵放此七岁孙儿出关，存黄门一脉。但不知将军意下何如？”韩荣曰：“老将军差矣！荣居此地，自有官守，岂得循私而忘君哉！譬如老将军权居元首，职压百僚，满门富贵，尽受国恩，不思报本，纵子反商，罪在不赦，髻鬣无留。一门犯法，毫不容私。解进朝歌，朝廷自有公论，清白毕竟有分。那时名正言顺，谁敢不服？今老将军欲我将黄天祥放出关隘，吾便与反叛通同，欺侮朝廷，法纪何在！吾与老将军皆不可免，这个





## Chapter 34

### Huang Feihu Meets the Prime Minister

Huang Gun crawled toward Han Rong on his knees, saying humbly “The criminal Huang Gun is here to see Your Excellency.”

Han Rong hurriedly returned his salutation. “Venerable General! This matter’s so important that I cannot make any decision on my own authority. But what do you wish to see me about?”

“For the crimes committed, the Huang family should all be dealt with according to the law. Nevertheless, I beg you to show mercy on just one of us. We would appreciate it even after my sons and I had gone to the netherworld,” Huang Guan pleaded pitifully.

“Tell me what you have in mind, sir,” Han Rong answered politely.

“I’ve no complaints about dying for my son’s crimes. Nevertheless, the Huang family has served the kingdom for seven generations. What a pity it is that all my descendants will be ruthlessly massacred. Here on my knees, I beg you to take pity on my seven year old grandson. Let him out of this pass so that the Huang family may not be extinguished. Would you kindly consider it, General?”

“You’re mistaken, General. As commander here, I’m obliged to carry out my duty and cannot act out of personal consideration. Every member of your family enjoyed wealth and noble status. You’ve received great favor, but you’ve never appreciated it. I must take you all, including your children, to Zhaoge for trial. The court will distinguish the innocent from the guilty. No one should be dissatisfied as it’ll all be done through the lawful channels. Should I comply with your wishes, I would be colluding with you to deceive the king. I would be taking the burden of your crimes onto my own shoulders. I can’t do it.”



决不敢从命。”黄滚曰：“总兵在上：黄氏犯法，一门良眷颇多，料一婴儿有何妨碍，纵然释放，能成何事？这个情分也做得过。‘恻隐之心，人皆有之。’将军何苦执一而不开一线之方便也。想我黄门功积如山，一旦如此，古云：‘当权若不行方便，如入宝山空手回’。人生岂能保得百年常无事。况我一家俱系含冤负屈，又非大奸不道，安心叛逆者；望将军怜念，舍而逐之，生当衔环，死当结草，决不敢有负将军之大德矣。”韩荣曰：“老将军，你要天祥出关，末将除非也附从叛亡之人，随你往西岐，这件事才做得。”黄滚三番四次，见韩荣执法不允，黄滚大怒，对二孙曰：“吾居元帅之位，反去下气求人！既总兵不肯容情，吾公孙愿投陷阱，何惧之有！”随往韩荣帅府，自投囹圄，来至监中。黄飞虎忽见父亲同二子齐到，放声大哭：“岂料今日如老爷之言，使不肖子为万世大逆之人也？”黄滚曰：“事已到此，悔之无益。当初原教你饶我一命，你不肯饶，我又何必怨尤！”不说黄滚父子在囹圄悲泣，且表韩荣既得了黄家父子功勋，又收拾黄家货财珍宝等项，众官设酒，与总兵贺功。大吹大擂，乐奏笙簧，众官欢饮。韩荣正饮酒中间，乃商议解官点谁。余化曰：“元帅要解黄家父子，末将自去，方保无虞。”韩荣大喜，“必须先行一往，吾心方安。”当晚酒散。次日，点人马三千，把黄姓犯官共计十一员，解往朝歌。众官置酒与余化饯别。饮罢酒，一声炮响，起兵往前进发。行八十里至界牌关。黄滚在陷车中，看见帅府厅堂依旧，谁知今作犯官，睹物伤情，不由泪落。关内军民一齐来看，无不叹息流泪。

不说黄家父子在路，且言乾元山金光洞有太乙真人闲坐



“Commander!” Huang Gun pleaded. “Though the Huangs have broken the law, there’re still many good people in the Huang family. What harm could there be in sparing a small child? As the saying goes, ‘every person has a sense of compassion.’ You shouldn’t be so stubborn as to refuse us such a small favor. The ancient proverb says, ‘to withhold help when one has the power to give it is like returning from a treasure mountain empty-handed.’ No one can be certain that nothing will happen to him in his life. Besides, the Huang family has done the king great service, and it’s not been our wish to rebel. We were wronged and forced into it. I beg you to show compassion. We’ll never forget your kindness.”

“General! I couldn’t set him free unless I were to rebel and follow you to West Qi. But that’s out of the question,” Han Rong refused bluntly.

With great wrath, Huang Gun said to his two grandsons, “I’m a marshal. How can I degrade myself so pitifully before him. Since the general refuses to be merciful, let’s throw ourselves fearlessly into his gaol.”

He took the two boys to the gaol and was locked inside. When he saw his father and sons arrive together, Huang Feihu burst into loud sobs. “I never thought that everything you said would come true. I’m the most unfilial son that has ever lived!”

“As things have already reached this stage, feeling sorry isn’t of any use. I begged you to let me live, but you didn’t take me seriously. Why grumble now?” Huang Gun said coolly.

It was such a great feat to have captured Huang Feihu’s entire family as well as his gold, silver and jewels, so his generals held a banquet to offer Han Rong their congratulations. As they drank, they discussed who should escort the prisoners to Zhaoge.

“Only if I go personally can we be assured of security,” Yu Hua said proudly.

“I won’t feel at ease unless you accompany them,” Han Rong replied with satisfaction.

The following day, Yu Hua took 3,000 soldiers and set off for Zhaoge with the eleven prisoners. After traveling eighty *li*, the group reached Jiepai Pass. Huang Gun saw that his headquarters and mansion were in the same condition as before. But he was now a convict in a prison cart. He felt so distressed that he couldn’t restrain his tears.



碧游床，正运元神，忽心血来潮。——看官：但凡神仙，烦恼、嗔痴、爱欲三事永忘，其心如石，再不动摇；心血来潮者，心中忽动耳。真人袖里一掐，早知此事，“呀！黄家父子有厄，贫道理当救之。”唤金霞童儿：“请你师兄来。”童儿至桃园，见哪吒使枪。童子曰：“师父有请。”哪吒收枪，来至碧游床下，倒身下拜，“弟子哪吒有，不知师父唤弟子有何使用？”真人曰：“黄飞虎父子有难，你下山救他一番；送出汜水关，你可速回，不得有悞。——久后你与他俱是一殿之臣。”哪吒原是好动的，心中大悦，慌忙收拾，打点下山；脚登风火二轮，提火尖枪，离了乾元山，望穿云关来。好快！怎生见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

脚踏风轮起在空，乾元道术妙无穷。周游天下如风响，忽见穿云眼角中。

话说哪吒踏风火二轮，霎时到穿云关落下，来在一山岗上，看一会，不见动静，站立多时，只见那壁厢一枝人马，旗幡招展，剑戟森严而来。哪吒想：“平白地怎就杀将起来？必定寻他一个不是处方可动手。”哪吒一时想起，作个歌儿来，歌曰：

“吾当生长不记年，只怕尊师不怕天。昨日老君从此过，也须送我一金砖。”

哪吒歌罢，脚登风火二轮，立于咽喉之径。有探事马飞报与余化：“启老爷：有一人脚立车上，作歌。”余化传令扎了营，催动火眼金睛兽，出营观看。见哪吒立于风火轮上。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

异宝灵珠落在尘，陈塘关内脱真神。九湾河下诛李艮，



In the Golden Light Cave on Qianyuan Mountain, Fairy Primordial was meditating on his bed when he felt his heart pounding abnormally. As a celestial, his heart could only be stirred by events of great significance. He made a divination on his fingers and found that Huang Feihu and his family were in grave danger.

He ordered Golden Haze Lad, "Bring your fellow disciple here at once."

Golden Haze Lad found Nezha practicing the lance in the peach garden and called out to him, "Master wants you to see him at once, Brother."

Nezha put down his lance, went to his master, and bowed. "Master, what orders do you have for your disciple?"

"Huang Feihu and his father are in great trouble. Go down the mountain and rescue them. Just help them get out of Sishui Pass and then return without delay. In the future you'll all be ministers in the same court."

Nezha was an active youth and was delighted to be given the mission. Grasping his Fire-Tip Lance, he sped on his Wind-Fire Wheels towards Chuanyun Pass. He alighted on a mountain near the pass. He waited a long time before he saw an army marching smartly towards him with flags and pennants fluttering gaily and swords and halberds gleaming in the sun.

"How can I go at them without a reason?" Nezha thought. "I must pick a quarrel with them first."

He took up his position on a narrow stretch of the road and began to sing:

So long have I lived that my age I've forgot,  
I answer to my master, but Heaven I fear not.  
Even when monarchs pass this way,  
A fat gold ingot they must pay.

A patrolman reported to Yu Hua, "General, there's a funny fellow standing on two wheels, singing in the middle of the road."

Yu Hua ordered his men to halt and rode out on his fiery golden-eyed monster to find Nezha blocking the way on a pair of Wind-Fire Wheels.



怒发抽了小龙筋。宝德门前敖光服，二上乾元现化身。  
三追李靖方认父，秘授火尖枪一根。顶上揪巾光灿烂，  
水合袍束虎龙纹。金砖到处无遮挡，乾坤圈配混天绦。  
西岐屡战成功绩，立保周朝八百春。东进五关为前部，  
枪展旗开迥绝伦。莲花化身无坏体，八臂哪吒到处闻。

话说余化问曰：“登风火轮者乃是何人？”哪吒答曰：“吾久居此地，如有过往之人，不论官员皇帝，都要留些买路钱。你如今往那里去？乞速送上买路钱，让你好赶路。”余化大笑曰：“吾乃汜水关总兵韩荣前部将军余化。今解反臣黄飞虎等官员往朝歌请功。你好大胆，敢挠路径，作甚歌儿！可速退去，饶你性命。”哪吒曰：“你原来是捉将有功的，今往此处过；也罢，只送我十块金砖，放你过去。”余化大怒，催开火眼金睛兽，摇方天画戟飞来直取。哪吒手中枪急架相还。二将交加，一场大战，往来冲突。一个七孤星，英雄猛虎；一个是莲花化身的，抖搜神威。哪吒乃仙传妙法，比众大不相同，把余化杀的力尽筋舒，掩一戟，扬长败走。哪吒曰：“吾来了！”往前正赶，余化回头，见哪吒赶来，挂下方天画戟，取出戮魂幡来，如前来拿哪吒。哪吒一见，笑曰：“此物是戮魂幡，只何足为奇！”哪吒见数道黑气奔来，哪吒只用手一招，便自接住，往豹皮囊中一塞，大叫曰：“有多少？一搭儿放将来罢！”余化见破了宝物，拨回走兽，来战哪吒。哪吒想：“奉师命下山，来救黄家父子，恐余化泄了机，杀了黄家父子，反为不美。”左手提枪，挡架方天戟，右手取金砖一块，丢起空中，喝声：“疾！”只见五采瑞临天地暗，乾元山上宝生光。那砖落将下来，把余化顶盔上打了一砖，打



“Who’re you?” he asked.

“I’ve lived here for many years. Anyone who passes, whether an official or even an emperor, has to pay me a road toll. Wherever you’re going today, you’d better pay up fast, and I’ll let you continue your journey without delay,” Nezha declared.

Yu Hua burst into laughter. “I’m a general under Han Rong, commander of Sishui Pass. I’m taking the rebels Huang Feihu and his family to Zhaoge. How dare you stop me! Get out of the way if you want to live”

“So, you’ve achieved great merit, capturing a bunch of rebel generals. Okay then, just pay me ten gold ingots and I’ll let you pass.”

Yu Hua was furious. He spurred his mount forward and struck at Nezha with his halberd. Nezha returned the blow with his lance. How could Yu Hua stand up to Nezha, who had been trained by an immortal in martial arts unknown to mortal man? Exhausted, he made a faint at his opponent, then turned and fled. As Nezha pursued him, he waved the Soul Killing Pennant, but Nezha only laughed at the black vapor.

“So this is the Soul Killing Pennant! What’s so extraordinary about it?” he cried mockingly. He beckoned to it and it flew into his hand. He then slipped it into his leopard skin bag. “How many do you have altogether? You’d better give them all to me now.”

As he had lost his magic weapon, Yu Hua turned his mount to engage Nezha.

“My master sent me here to rescue Huang Feihu. If Yu Hua discovers my plan, he may kill them. I can’t delay any longer,” Nezha thought. He parried Yu Hua’s blows with his left hand and took out his gold brick with his right. He tossed it into the sky. “Quick! Quick!”

Shining brilliantly, the gold brick flew high into the air and then dropped down swiftly, striking Yu Hua on the head and knocking him flat across





的俯伏鞍鞞，窍中喷血，倒拖画戟败走。哪吒赶了一程，自思：“吾奉师命，来援黄家父子，若贪追袭，可不悞了大事。”随登转双轮，发一块金砖，打得众兵星飞云散，瓦解冰消，各顾性命奔走。哪吒只见陷车中垢面蓬头，厉声大呼曰：“谁是黄将军？”飞虎曰：“登轮者是谁？”哪吒答曰：“吾乃乾元山金光洞太乙真人门下，姓李，双名哪吒。知将军今有小厄，命吾下山相援。”武成王大喜。哪吒将金砖磕开陷车，将众将放出。飞虎倒身拜谢。哪吒曰：“列位将军慢行。我如今先与你把汜水关取了，等将军们出关。”众人称谢：“多感盛德，立救残喘，尚容叩谢。”各人将短器械执在手中，切齿咬牙，怒冲牛斗，随后而行。

且说余化败回汜水关来，——火眼金睛兽两头见日走千里；穿云关至汜水一百六十里。韩荣在府内，正与众将官饮酒作贺，欢心惬意，谈讲黄家事体。忽报：“先行官余化等令。”韩荣大惊：“去而复反，其中事有可疑。”忙令：“进见。”正是：“入门休问荣枯事，观见容颜便得知。”忙问曰：“将军为何回来，面容失色，似觉带伤？”余化请罪曰：“人马行至穿云关将近，有一人不通姓名，脚登风火二轮，作歌截路。末将会面，要我十块金砖，方肯放行。末将不忿，与他大战一场。那人枪法精奇，末将只得回骑，欲用宝物拿他，方才举宝时，那人用手接去。末将不服，勒回骑与他交兵，见他手动处，不知取何物，只见黄光闪烁，被他把末将颈项打坏，故此败回。”韩荣慌问曰：“黄家父子怎样了？”余化答曰：“不知。”韩荣顿足曰：“一场辛苦，走了反臣，天子知道，吾罪怎脱！”众将曰：“料黄飞虎前不能出



his saddle. Bleeding profusely, he galloped off dragging his halberd behind him.

Nezha followed in pursuit, but then thought better. "My master sent me here to rescue Huang Feihu. If I keep pursuing Yu Hua, I'll just be delaying my mission."

Turning back, he threw his gold brick into the air, sending Yu Hua's men fleeing. He then looked at the dirty, ragged men in the prison carts.

"Which of you is General Huang?" he asked.

"Who's the gentleman riding on the wheels?" Huang Feihu asked in return.

"I'm Nezha, surnamed Li, a disciple of Fairy Primordial. My master realized that you were in trouble and sent me from the mountain to rescue you all." The prince was delighted. Nezha broke open the prison carts and released them. As Huang Feihu prostrated himself in gratitude, Nezha said, "Take your time, General. I'll go first and hold Sishui Pass for you. I'll wait for you all there and help you get through."

Thanking Nezha again and again, they picked up their weapons and started off after Nezha to Sishui Pass.

Han Rong was drinking with his generals when Yu Hua's return was announced. "Something must be wrong," he said with alarm, and asked anxiously when Yu Hua entered the hall. "Why have you returned, General? You look pale. Are you wounded?"

Yu Hua related his encounter with Nezha.

"What about Huang Feihu and his family?"

"I don't know."

Han Rong stamped his foot. "All our hard work has been in vain. If His Majesty learns that I'm responsible for the rebel's escape, he'll never forgive me!"



关，退不能往朝歌，总兵速遣人马，把守关隘，以防众反叛透露。”正议间，探事官来报：“有一人脚登车轮，提枪威武，称名要‘七首将军’。”余化在傍答曰：“就是此人。”韩荣大怒，传诸将上马，“等吾擒之！”众将得令，俱上马出帅府，三军蜂拥而来。哪吒登转车轮，大呼曰：“余化早来见我，说一个明白！”韩荣一马当先，问曰：“来者何人？”哪吒见韩荣戴束发冠，金锁甲，大红袍，玉束带，点钢枪，银合马，答曰：“吾非别人，乃乾元山金光洞太乙真人门下，姓李，名哪吒；奉师命下山，特救黄家父子。方才正遇余化，未曾打死，吾特来擒之。”韩荣曰：“截抢朝廷犯官，还来在此猖獗，甚是可恶！”哪吒曰：“成汤气数该尽，西岐圣主已生。黄家乃西岐栋梁，正应上天垂象；尔等又何违背天命，而造此不测之祸哉。”韩荣大怒，纵马摇枪来取。哪吒登轮转枪相还，轮马相交，未及数合，左右一齐围绕上来。怎见得好一场大战：

咚咚鼓响，杂彩旗摇。三军齐呐喊，众将俱枪刀。哪吒铜枪生烈焰；韩荣马上逞英豪。众将精神雄似虎；哪吒像狮子把头摇。众将如狻猊摆尾；哪吒似搅海金鳌。火尖枪犹如怪蟒；众将兵杀气滔滔。哪吒斩关落锁施威武；韩荣阻挡英雄气概高。天下兵戈从此起，汜水关前头一遭。

话说哪吒火尖枪是金光洞里传授，使法不同，出手如银龙探爪，收枪似走电飞虹，枪挑众将，纷纷落马。众将抵不住，各自逃生。韩荣舍命力敌。正酣战之间，后有黄明、周纪、龙环、吴谦、飞彪、飞豹一齐杀来，大叫曰：“这去必定



"Huang Feihu's still in an impossible situation. He can't get through this pass, and he can't retreat to Zhaoge either. We can just guard the pass and block his advance," a general suggested.

They were still discussing what to do when a scout came in. "A man riding a pair of wheels is here. He wants to challenge the 'Seven-headed General'."

"That's the man who beat me," Yu Hua cried.

Han Rong angrily ordered his men to mount, ready for battle. "I'll personally capture this wretch," he pledged.

When he took his generals out of the pass, he saw Nezha on his wheels, still demanding, "Come out, Yu Hua, I'll finish you off!"

"Who are you?" demanded Han Rong, galloping ahead of his generals.

Nezha looked at Han Rong in his gold helmet, gold armor and red battle robes and answered, "I'm none other than Li Nezha, disciple of Fairy Primordial. By order of my master, I came here to rescue Huang Feihu. Unfortunately, I failed to kill Yu Hua just now. I've come here to get hold of him."

"You released the convicts wanted by the imperial government and still have the gall to come here causing trouble," Han Rong cursed.

"The Shang Dynasty's destined to end soon, and a sage ruler's already appeared in West Qi. Heaven has determined that the Huang family will be a pillar of the rising Zhou kingdom. Why are you so stupid as to act against the will of Heaven and bring disaster on yourselves?"

Han Rong furiously spurred his horse forward and stabbed at Nezha with his lance. Nezha returned the blow with his own. After several rounds, Han's generals joined in, and a fierce battle unfolded.

As disciple of an immortal, Nezha thrust like a pouncing silver dragon and parried like a streak of lightning. As he darted amongst them on his Wind-Fire Wheels, Han Rong's generals were felled from their horses one after another. Unable to withstand the onslaught, they all fled for their lives.

Regardless of the danger, Han Rong resisted with all his strength. As the battle reached a peak, Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan, Wu Qian, Huang Feibao and Huang Feibiao galloped up from behind. "Don't let Han Rong get away! We must take our revenge on him."



拿韩荣报仇！”且说余化没奈何，奋勇催金睛兽，使画杆戟，杀出府来。两家混战。哪吒见黄家众将杀来，用手取金砖丢在空中，打将下来，正中守将韩荣，打了护心镜，纷纷粉碎，落荒便走。余化大叫：“李哪吒勿伤吾主将！”纵兽摇戟来取，哪吒未及三四合，用枪架住画戟，豹皮囊内忙取乾坤圈打来，正中余化臂膊，打得筋断骨折，几乎坠兽，往东北上败走。哪吒取汜水关。黄明等六将，只杀得关内三军乱窜，任意剿除。次日，黄滚同飞虎等齐至，倒把韩荣府内之物一总装在车辆上，载出汜水关，乃西岐地界。哪吒送至金鸡岭作别。黄滚与飞虎众将感谢曰：“蒙公子垂救愚生，实出望外。不知何日再睹尊颜，稍效犬马，以尽血诚。”哪吒曰：“将军前途保重。我贫道不日也往西岐。后会有期，何必过誉。”众人分别。哪吒回乾元山去了。不题。

话说武成王同原旧三千人马并家将，还在一路上晓往夜住，过了些高山凸凹蹊岖路，险水颠崖深茂林。有诗为证，诗曰：

别却朝歌归圣主，五关成败力难支。子牙从此刀兵动，准被四九伐西岐。

话说黄家众将过了首阳山、桃花岭，度了燕山，非止一日，到了西岐山。只七十里便是西岐城。武成王兵至岐山，安了营寨，禀过黄滚曰：“父亲在上：孩儿先往西岐，去见姜丞相。如肯纳我等，就好进城；如不纳我等，再做道理。”黄滚曰：“我儿言之甚善。”黄飞虎缟素将巾，上骑行七十里至西岐。看西岐景致：山川秀丽，风土淳厚，大不相同。只见行人让路，礼别尊卑，人物繁盛，地利险阻。飞虎叹曰：



Yu Hua could not hesitate any longer. He mounted his monster and charged out of the pass to join the fray.

The arrival of Huang Feihu's generals gave Nezha the chance to take out his gold brick and toss it into the air. It dropped down and struck Han Rong directly in the heart, wounding him badly. He fled.

"Li Nezha, don't touch my commander!" Yu Hua cried.

He spurred his monster forward to intercept Nezha. After three or four rounds, Nezha blocked his halberd and took his Universal Ring from the leopard skin bag. With one blow, he broke Yu Hua's arm. Almost falling from his beast, Yu Hua took flight toward the northeast. Nezha took Sishui Pass, while Huang Ming and the other five generals cleaned up the enemy soldiers in the area.

Huang Feihu and Huang Gun arrived the following day. They ordered their men to load the gold, silver, and other valuables from Han Rong's mansion back onto the carts and when all was prepared, they left Sishui Pass. Nezha saw them as far as the Golden Chicken Range and then bade them farewell.

Huang Gun thanked him sincerely. "We deeply appreciate your kindness in rescuing us from death. It was quite beyond our expectations. We're sorry that you must go now. We don't know when we'll meet again and return your great grace!"

"Take care of yourselves, Generals," Nezha replied. "We'll see each other in West Qi in the future."

Nezha returned to Qianyuan Mountain without further delay.

Huang Feihu's party continued on its way, climbing high mountains and crossing deep rivers. They passed Mount Shouyang, Peach Blossom Peak and Mount Yan, and days later reached Mount Qi only seventy *li* from West Qi City. Huang Feihu ordered his men to halt.

"Father, I think I should go alone to West Qi and pay my respects to Prime Minister Jiang. If he accepts us, we can all enter the city. If not, we can discuss the matter further," he suggested.

"You're right, my son," Huang Gun agreed.

Huang Feihu, dressed in plain clothes, rode to West Qi City. He found that the people there were very honest. The pedestrians were polite and treated each other in accordance with the rites. The markets were full of produce, and every household was prosperous.



“西岐称为圣人，今果然民安物阜，的确舜日尧天，夸之不尽。”进了城，问：“姜丞相府在那里？”民人答曰：“小金桥头便是。”黄飞虎行至小金桥，到了相府，对堂候官曰：“借重你禀丞相一声，说朝歌黄飞虎求见。”堂候官击云板，请丞相升殿。子牙出银安殿。堂候官将手本呈上。子牙看罢，——“朝歌黄飞虎乃武成王也。今日至此，有甚么事？”忙传：“请见。”子牙官服，迎至仪门拱候。黄飞虎至滴水檐前下拜。子牙顶礼相还，口称：“大王驾临，姜尚不曾远接，有失迎迓，望乞勿罪。”飞虎曰：“末将黄飞虎乃是难臣，今弃商归周，如失林飞鸟，聊借一枝。倘蒙见纳，黄飞虎感恩不浅！”子牙忙扶起，分宾主序坐。飞虎曰：“末将乃商之叛臣，怎敢列坐丞相之傍？”子牙曰：“大王言之太重！尚虽忝列相位，昔曾在大王治下；今日何故太谦？”飞虎方才告坐。子牙躬身请问曰：“大王何事弃商？”武成王曰：“纣王荒淫，权臣当道，不纳忠良，专近小人，贪色不分昼夜，不以社稷为重，残杀忠良，全无忌惮，施土木陷害万民。今元旦，末将元配朝贺中宫，姐已设计，诬陷末将元配，以致坠楼而死。末将妹子在西宫，得知此情，上摘星楼明正其非，纣王偏向，又将吾妹采宫衣，揪后鬓，摔下摘星楼，跌为齑粉。末将自揣：‘君不正，臣投外国。’此亦礼之当然。故此反了朝歌，杀出五关，特来相投，愿效犬马。若肯纳吾父子，乃丞相莫大之恩。”子牙大喜，“大王既肯相投，竭力扶持社稷，武王不胜幸甚！岂有不容纳之理？”传出去：“请大王公馆少憩；尚随即入内庭见驾。”飞虎辞往公馆。不表。且言子牙乘马进朝，武王在显庆殿闲坐。当驾官启奏：“丞相候



"It really is a land of sages," he thought to himself. "People are happy, and there are abundant supplies. It's just like in the days of Yao and Shun." He asked a passer-by, "Where's the mansion of Prime Minister Jiang located?"

"Near the end of the Lesser Gold Bridge, sir."

When he found the place, Huang Feihu said to the gateman, "Please report to the Prime Minister that Huang Feihu from Zhaoge is here to see him."

"Huang Feihu's a prince. What makes him come here to see me?" Jiang Ziya wondered.

Huang Feihu was ushered in. Jiang Ziya, dressed in his official robes, went out to meet him as an honored guest. When they had exchanged salutations, Jiang Ziya apologized, "Please forgive me for not riding out beyond the city gates to meet Your Highness."

"I'm a poor refugee now. I've forsaken the Shang and hope to take shelter in Zhou. I'm just a bird that has lost its nest and seeks a new branch to perch on. I would greatly appreciate it if you would kindly take me in," Huang Feihu said, kneeling before Jiang Ziya. And when the prime minister tried to help him up and to a seat, he said humbly, "I'm a rebel against the Shang Dynasty. How dare I sit beside you!"

"You're too modest, Your Highness. Though I am prime minister, I was an official under you. Please don't stand on ceremony."

Huang Feihu finally took a seat. Jiang Ziya then bowed and asked, "Why did you forsake the Shang Dynasty?"

Huang Feihu explained the situation in Zhaoge and the reason for his revolt, and then concluded, "I hope to take shelter here and offer you our faithful service. You could do us no greater favor than to accept us."

Jiang Ziya was overjoyed. "King Wu will be delighted to have you assist him. He's sure to accept you. Please rest at the state hostel while I go to see him," he assured Huang Feihu.

He rode to the palace and requested to see the king. When the greetings were finished, the king asked, "What do you wish to see me about, Prime Minister?"





旨。”武王宣子牙进见，礼毕。王曰：“相父有何事见孤？”子牙奏曰：“大王万千之喜！今成汤武成王黄飞虎弃纣来投大王，此西土兴旺之兆也。”武王曰：“黄飞虎可是朝歌国戚？”子牙曰：“正是。昔先王曾说夸官得受大恩，今既来归，礼当请见。”传旨：“请。”不一时，使命回旨：“黄飞虎候旨。”武王命：“宣。”至殿前，飞虎倒身下拜，“成汤难臣黄飞虎愿大王千岁！”武王答礼曰：“久慕将军，德行天下，义重四方，施恩积德，人人瞻仰，真良心君子。何期相会，实三生之幸！”飞虎伏地奏曰：“荷蒙大王提拔，飞虎一门出陷阱之中，离网罗之内，敢不效駉驸之力，以报大王！”武王问子牙曰：“昔黄将军在商，官居何位？”子牙奏曰：“官拜镇国武成王。”武王曰：“孤西岐只改一字罢，便封开国武成王。”黄飞虎谢恩。武王设宴，君臣共饮，席前把纣王失政细细说了一遍。武王曰：“君虽不正，臣礼宜恭，各尽其道而已。”武王谕子牙：“选吉日动工，与飞虎造王府。”子牙领旨。君臣席散。次日，黄飞虎上殿，谢恩毕，复奏曰：“臣父黄滚，同弟飞彪、飞豹，子黄天禄、天爵、天祥，义弟黄明、周纪、龙环、吴谦，家将一千名，人马三千，未敢擅入都城，今住扎西岐山，请旨定夺。”武王曰：“既是有老将军，传旨速入都城，各各官居旧职。”西岐自得黄飞虎，遍地干戈起，纷纷士马兴。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



“Your Highness! Congratulations! Huang Feihu, Prince for National Pacification and of Military Prowess has forsaken King Zhou and is here to offer his service. This is a good omen for this west land,” Jiang told him.

“Is Huang Feihu a relative of the king?”

“Yes, he is. Our late king mentioned the great favor Huang Feihu had shown him. Now that he’s come, we should treat him with great courtesy according to the rites.”

King Wu then sent for Huang Feihu, and when courtesies had been exchanged, he asked Jiang Ziya, “What rank did General Huang hold under the Shang?”

“He was Prince for National Pacification and of Military Prowess.”

“Then I’ll just change his title by one word. I’ll make him Prince for National Founding and of Military Prowess, in the hope that he’ll be one of the founders of the new dynasty.”

Huang Feihu thanked King Wu sincerely, and the king ordered a banquet in his honor. As they ate and drank, Huang Feihu told King Wu and Jiang Ziya of King Zhou’s mismanagement of state affairs.

“Though he doesn’t behave himself, his subjects should still respect and serve him loyally. Let each side try to fulfil his own duty,” King Wu said, and then told Jiang Ziya, “Choose an auspicious day to lay the foundation for Prince Huang’s new mansion.”

The next day, Huang Feihu went to the Celebration Court to see King Wu. “My father Huang Gun, my brothers Huang Feibao and Huang Feibiao, my sons Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue and Huang Tianxiang, my sworn brothers Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan and Wu Qian, 1,000 guards and 3,000 soldiers are all waiting at Mount Qi. They dare not enter the city without your permission. Tell me what to do with them.”

“Please bring them to the city. Each retains his old rank and position without any changes whatsoever,” King Wu replied.

After Huang Feihu went to serve in West Qi, war soon threatened the whole land.

If you want to know how events developed, you must read the next chapter.

## 第三十五回

### 晁田兵探西岐事

诗曰：

黄家出寨若飞鸢，盼至西岐拟到天，兵过五关人寂寂，  
将来几次血涓涓。子牙妙算安周室，闻仲无谋改纣愆。  
纵有雄师皆离德，晁田空自涉风烟。

话说闻太师自从追赶黄飞虎至临潼关，被道德真君一捏神砂退了闻太师兵回。太师乃碧游宫金灵圣母门下；五行大道，倒海移山，闻风知胜败，嗅土定军情，怎么一捏神砂，便自不知？大抵天数已归周主，闻太师这一会阴阳交错，一时失计。闻太师看着兵回，自己迷了。到得朝歌，百官听候回旨，俱来见太师，问其追袭原故，太师把追袭说了一遍，众官无言。闻太师沉吟半晌，自思：“纵黄飞虎逃去，左有青龙关张桂芳所阻；右有魔家四将可拦，中有五关，料他插翅也不能飞去。”忽听得报：“临潼关萧银开栓锁，杀张凤，放了黄飞虎出关。”太师不语。又报：“黄飞虎潼关杀陈桐。”又报：“穿云关杀了陈梧。”又报：“界牌关黄滚纵子投西岐。”又报：“汜水关韩荣有告急文书。”闻太师看过，大怒曰：“吾掌朝歌先君托孤之重，不料当今失政，刀兵四起，先反东南二路；岂知祸生萧墙，元旦灾来，反了股肱重臣，追之不及，中途中计而归，此乃天命。如今成败未知，兴亡怎定，吾不敢负先帝托孤之恩，尽人臣之节，以死报先帝可



## Chapter 35

### The Surrender of Two Generals

When he chased Huang Feihu to Lintong Pass, Grand Tutor Wen was tricked by Virtue of the Pure Void, mistaking his sands for Huang Feihu's party. He rushed back to the capital to protect the palace.

How could he have been so easily deceived? The Grand Tutor was a disciple of Mother Golden Spirit at the Green Touring Palace. He was skilled in the art of riding invisibly on metal, wood, water, fire and earth, and could stir up the seas and move mountains. He could predict victory or defeat by smelling the wind and ascertain a situation by sniffing the ground. It was probably because fate already favored West Qi that he made a critical miscalculation.

When the Grand Tutor returned, the ministers asked him about his pursuit of Huang Feihu. After he told them what had happened, they fell silent.

"Even though Huang Feihu got out of Zhaoge, we've got General Zhang Guifang on the left, the Mo brothers on the right and the five passes in the center. All are strong enough to stop him. It's impossible for him to get through of these passes even if he grows wings," the Grand Tutor thought, though still puzzled over the matter.

Just then, news arrived that Xiao Yin at Lintong Pass had killed Commander Zhang Feng, and Huang Feihu had gotten through. The Grand Tutor did not utter a word.

Soon news came from Tongguan Pass that Huang Feihu had killed Chen Tong and gotten through the second pass as well, and before long it was reported that Huang Feihu had killed Chen Wu and gotten through Chuanyun Pass. This was followed by the report that Huang Gun of Jiepai Pass had joined his son and left for West Qi. Finally a message from Han Rong arrived requesting urgent reinforcements.

As he listened to the reports, Grand Tutor Wen became infuriated. "I was entrusted by the late king to assist the present monarch, but I never





也。”命左右：“擂聚将鼓响。”不一时，众官俱至参谒。太师问：“列位将军，今黄飞虎反叛，已归姬发，必生祸乱，今不若先起兵，明正其罪，方是讨伐不臣。尔等意下如何？”内有总兵官鲁雄出而言曰：“末将启太师：东伯侯姜文焕年年不息兵戈，使游魂关窦荣劳心费力；南伯侯鄂顺，月月三山关，苦坏生灵，邓九公睡不安枕。黄飞虎今虽反出五关，太师可点大将镇守，严备关防，料姬发纵起兵来，中有五关之阻，左右有青龙、佳梦二关，飞虎纵有本事，亦不能有为，又何劳太师怒激。方今二处干戈未息，又何必生此一方兵戈，自寻多事。况如今库藏空虚，钱粮不足，还当酌量。古云：‘大将者，必战守通明，方是安天下之道。’”太师曰：“老将军之言虽是，犹恐西土不守本分，倘生祸乱，吾安得而无准备。况西岐南宫适勇贯三军，散宜生谋谟百出，又有姜尚乃道德之士，不可不防。一着空虚百着空。临渴掘井，悔之何及！”鲁雄曰：“太师若是犹豫未决，可差一二将，出五关打听西岐消息：如动，则动；如止，则止。”太师曰：“将军之言是也。”随问左右：“谁为我往西岐走一遭？”内有一将应声曰：“末将愿往。”来者乃佑圣上将晁田，见太师欠背打躬曰：“末将此去，一则探虚实；二则观西岐进退巢穴，‘入目便知兴废事，三寸舌动可安邦。’”有诗为证：

愿探西岐虚实情，提兵三万出都城。子牙妙策权施展，  
管取将军谒圣明。

话说闻太师见晁田欲往，大悦。点人马三万，即日辞朝，出朝歌。一路上只见：

轰天炮响，震地锣鸣。轰天炮响，汪洋大海起春雷；镇



expected that His Majesty would so maladminister state affairs that trouble breaks out everywhere,” he thought. “First, the East and South dukedoms declared their independence, and now we’ve lost such an important minister. I’m sorry that I wasn’t able to catch up with him and bring him back. It must have been destined by fate. I don’t know whether we will prosper again, or whether this dynasty’s heading toward complete destruction. Nevertheless, I can’t forget the late king’s instructions and must fulfil my duty as a minister even if it means sacrificing my life.” He silently made up his mind.

He ordered that the drums be beaten to summon the generals. “Generals, Huang Feihu has rebelled and defected to Ji Fa,” he announced when all were present. “This is bound to bring disaster upon us. We must take action at once. What do you think we should do?”

General Lu Xiong stood up. “Grand Tutor, Jiang Wenhuan’s been fighting us at Youhun Pass for several years already, and Commander Dou Rong’s exhausted, physically and mentally. E Shun’s likewise waged war against us for years, and General Deng Jiugong never gets a good night’s sleep. Though Huang Feihu has fled to West Qi, we have only to guard the strategic points. Should Ji Fa take any action, we’ve got the five passes in the middle, the Green Dragon Pass on the left and the Good Dream Pass on the right. Even with his great talent, what can Huang Feihu do? You needn’t worry, Grand Tutor. As we’re already coping with wars on two fronts, we mustn’t create another one to make more trouble for ourselves. Besides, our coffers are almost empty. We don’t have sufficient money, food or supplies for a new war. As the old proverb goes, ‘only when a general understands when to advance and when to retreat can he bring peace to the state’.”

“You may be right, General, but I’m afraid that West Qi might be unwilling to live in peace. We have to be well prepared to meet any emergency. West Qi has a courageous general in Nangong Kuo, an experienced strategist in San Yisheng, and Jiang Shang is versed in magic. ‘It’ll be too late to dig the well when we’re thirsty’,” the Grand Tutor argued.

“If you can’t decide what to do, Grand Tutor, you may send one or two generals to find out the real situation in West Qi. If they intend to take action, we’ll attack them at once; otherwise, we should maintain peace for the time being,” General Lu Xiong said again.



地锣鸣，万仞山前飞霹雳。人如猛虎离山，马似蛟龙出水。旗幡摆动，浑如五色祥云；剑戟辉煌，却似三冬瑞雪。迷空杀气罩乾坤，遍地征云笼宇宙。征夫勇猛要争先，虎将鞍鞞持利刃。银盔荡荡白云飞，铠甲鲜明光灿烂。滚滚人行如泄水，滔滔马走似骏马。

话说晁田、晁雷人马出朝歌，渡黄河，出五关，晓行夜住，非止一日。哨探马报：“人马至西岐。”晁田传令：“安营。”点炮静营，三军呐喊，兵扎西门。

且说子牙在相府闲坐，忽听有喊声震地，子牙传出府来：“为何有喊杀之声？”不时有报马至府前：“启老爷：朝歌人马住扎西门，不知何事。”子牙默思：“成汤何事起兵来侵？”传令：“擂鼓聚将。”不一时，众将上殿参谒。子牙曰：“成汤人马来侵，不知何故？”众将曰：“不知。”

且说晁田安营，与弟共议：“今奉太师命，来探西岐虚实，元来也无准备。今日往西岐见阵，如何？”晁雷曰：“长兄言之有理。”晁雷上马提刀，往城下请战。子牙正议，探马报称：“有将搦战。”子牙问曰：“谁去问虚实走一遭？”言未毕，大将南宫适应声出曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。南宫适领一枝人马出城，排开阵势，立马旗门，看时，乃是晁雷。南宫适曰：“晁将军慢来！今天子无故以兵加西土，却是为何？”晁雷答曰：“吾奉天子敕命，闻太师军令，问不道姬发，自立武王，不遵天子之谕，收叛臣黄飞虎，情殊可恨！汝可速进城，禀你主公，早早把反臣献出，解往朝歌，免你一郡之殃。若待迟延，悔之何及！”南宫适笑曰：“晁雷，纣王罪恶深重，醢大臣，不思功绩；斩元铤，有失司天；造炮



"You're right, General, but who will undertake this mission for me?"

"I'll go, Grand Tutor. I'll find out the real situation and attack them if necessary," Chao Tian volunteered.

Grand Tutor Wen gave his consent, and the Chao brothers left for the frontier with 30,000 soldiers that same day. They crossed the Yellow River and marched through the five passes, halting near the west gate of West Qi City.

Jiang Ziya heard the sudden roaring of cannons. Scouts soon returned with the news that an army had arrived from Zhaoge and had camped near the west gate. He was puzzled. Why did King Zhou send an army to West Qi? He ordered that the drums be beaten to summon the generals.

In the Shang camp, Chao Tian and Chao Lei were also engaged in a heated discussion.

"We're here to find out what the leaders of West Qi intend to do, but I'm at a loss where to begin. How about a challenge?" Chao Tian asked.

"That seems reasonable, Brother," Chao Lei agreed.

He mounted his horse, took his cutlass and rode towards the city, shouting his challenge.

Jiang Ziya was still in conference when a guard came in. "A general from their camp has given a challenge."

"Who would like to meet the challenge?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"Let me go, Prime Minister," General Nangong Kuo answered at once.

Nangong Kuo took his men out of the city, discovering the challenger to be General Chao Lei. "Take it easy, General Chao," he called. "Why do you come here?"

"By order of His Majesty and Grand Tutor Wen, I've come here to call Ji Fa to account. He has set himself up as a king without the authority of His Majesty, and he has dared to take in that rebel, Huang Feihu! You'd better return to the city and tell your master to bind up the rebel, and hand him over to me. Otherwise, the people here will all suffer for these crimes and it'll be too late for you to regret it then."

Nangong Kuo smiled. "Chao Lei, don't you know that King Zhou is a wicked tyrant? He slices his ministers to mincemeat, burns them on the





烙，不容谏言；治蚕盆，难及深宫；杀叔父，剖心疗疾；起鹿台，万姓遭殃；君欺臣妻，五伦尽灭；宠小人，大坏纲常。吾主坐守西岐，奉法守仁，君尊臣敬，子孝父慈，三分天下，二分归西，民乐安康，军心顺悦。你今日敢将人马侵犯西岐，乃是自取辱身之祸。”晁雷大怒，纵马舞刀来取南宫适。南宫适举刀赴面相迎。两马相交，双刀并举，一场大战。南宫适与晁雷战有三十回合，把晁雷只杀得力尽筋舒，那里是南宫适敌手！被南宫适卖一个破绽，生擒过马，望下一摔，绳缚二背。得胜鼓响，推进西岐。南宫适至相府听令。左右报于子牙，命：“令来。”南宫适进殿，子牙问：“出战胜负？”南宫适曰：“晁雷来伐西岐，末将生擒，听令指挥。”子牙传令：“推来！”左右把晁雷推至滴水檐前。晁雷立而不跪。子牙曰：“晁雷既被吾将擒来，为何不屈膝求生？”晁雷竖目大喝曰：“汝不过编篱卖面一小人！吾乃天朝上国命臣，不幸被擒，有死而已，岂肯屈膝！”子牙命：“推出斩首！”众人将晁雷推出去了。两边大小众将听晁雷骂子牙之短，众将暗笑子牙出身浅薄。子牙乃何等人物，便知众将之意。子牙谓诸将曰：“晁雷说吾编篱卖面，非辱吾也。昔伊尹乃莘野匹夫，后辅成汤，为商股肱，只在遇之迟早耳。”传令：“将晁雷斩讫来报！”只见武成王黄飞虎出曰：“丞相在上：晁雷只知有纣，不知有周，末将敢说此人归降，后来伐纣，亦可得其一臂之力。”子牙许之。黄飞虎出相府，见晁雷跪候行刑。飞虎曰：“晁将军！”晁雷见武成王至，不语。飞虎曰：“你天时不识，地利不知，人和不明。三分天下，周土已得二分。东南西北，俱不属纣。纣虽强胜一时，乃老健



burning pillars, feeds them to vile serpents; he took the heart from his uncle to cure Daji's disease, built the Happy Terrace, and insulted the wife of his minister. Yet here in West Qi, my benevolent master rules according to the law. He respects his subjects and enables his people to live in peace and prosperity. We've won the support of two-thirds of the kingdom already. You're simply humiliating yourself coming as the king's representative today."

Filled with fury, Chao Lei spurred his horse forward to slash at Nangong Kuo with his cutlass. Nangong met the blow with his weapon. After thirty rounds, Chao Lei was exhausted, and he was taken alive. He was tied up and brought to the city. When he was pushed before Jiang Ziya, Chao Lei defiantly refused to kneel.

"Chao Lei, why don't you kneel and ask for mercy?" Jiang Ziya asked.

Chao Lei glared at him and said sarcastically, "You sold flour and wove bamboo baskets, but I'm a ranking general. I'm unlucky to have been taken, but I'm ready to die. How could I be willing to kneel before you?"

"Take him outside and cut his head off at once," Jiang Ziya ordered.

When Chao Lei ridiculed his origins, the generals standing on either side could not help smiling, but Jiang Ziya understood their reaction. "Chao Lei was telling the truth. We know from history that Yi Yin was once a poor tiller of the fields, yet he became prime minister to the first king of the Shang Dynasty. Fate destines that some achieve greatness early and others late," he explained, and ordered again, "Execute him."

But Huang Feihu moved forward. "Prime Minister, Chao Lei is a loyal minister in that he acknowledges only King Zhou as his master. Let me talk with him and bring him over to our side. He may be useful to us in the future."

Jiang Ziya gave his approval. Huang Feihu hurried over and found Chao Lei kneeling and awaiting his end.

"General Chao," he called.

When he saw that it was Huang Feihu, Chao Lei lowered his head in silence.

"General! Why are you so ignorant of the will of Heaven and the people? Two-thirds of the kingdom already belongs to West Qi. Though King Zhou has the upper hand at the moment, it's just like a cold spell in spring that cannot last long. The whole kingdom knows how wicked he



春寒耳。纣之罪恶得罪于天下百姓，兵戈自无休息。况东南士马不宁，天下事可知矣。武王文足安邦，武可定国。想吾在纣官拜镇国武成王，到此只改一字——开国武成王。天下归心，悦而从周。武王之德，乃尧舜之德，不是过耳。吾今为你，力劝丞相，准将军归降，可保簪缨万世。若是执迷，行刑令下，难保性命，悔之不及。”晁雷被黄飞虎一篇言语，心明意朗，口称：“黄将军，方才末将抵触了子牙，恐不肯赦免。”飞虎曰：“你有归降之心，吾当力保。”晁雷曰：“既蒙将军大恩保全，实是再生之德，末将敢不如命。”且说飞虎复进内见子牙，备言晁雷归降一事。子牙曰：“杀降诛服，是为不义。黄将军既言，传令放来。”晁雷至檐下，拜伏在地，“末将一时卤莽，冒犯尊颜，理当正法。荷蒙赦宥，感德如山。”子牙曰：“将军既真心为国，赤胆佐君，皆是一殿之臣，同是股肱之佐，何罪之有！将军今已归周，城外人马可调进城来。”晁雷曰：“城外营中，还有末将的兄晁田见在营里。待末将出城，招来同见丞相。”子牙许之。

不说晁雷归周，话说晁田在营，忽报：“二爷被擒。”晁田心下不乐，“闻太师令吾等来探虚实，今方出战，不料被擒，挫动锋锐。”言未了，又报：“二爷辕门下马。”晁雷进帐见兄。晁田曰：“言你被擒，为何而返？”晁雷曰：“弟被南宫适擒见子牙，吾当面深辱子牙一番，将吾斩首。有武成王一篇言语，说的我肝胆尽裂。吾今归周，请你进城。”晁田闻言，大骂曰：“该死匹夫！你信黄飞虎一片巧言，降了西土，你与反贼同党，有何面见闻太师也！”晁雷曰：“兄长不知，今不但吾等归周，天下尚且悦而归周。”晁田曰：“天下



is. The country's now ravaged by war, and his future's hopeless. King Wu, on the other hand, is virtuous. Only he can restore peace to the kingdom. I've retained my princship under him with only one word changed in my tittle. It's no exaggeration to say he's as virtuous as Yao and Shun. I did all I could to recommend you to the prime minister and beg him for a pardon. He's agreed to let you retain your old position and rank. Don't hesitate as it may endanger your life," Huang Feihu said earnestly.

Chao Lei knew that he was telling the truth. "But I've gravely offended Jiang Ziya. I'm afraid he won't be willing to pardon me."

"If you agree to come over, I'll guarantee your life."

"As you're showing me such great favor, I don't dare refuse."

Huang Feihu returned to the hall and reported the matter to Jiang Ziya.

"It's wrong to execute one who's surrendered," Jiang Ziya said and ordered that General Chao Lei be set free and ushered in.

Chao Lei came in and knelt down. "I've uncouthly offended you and deserve to be executed. I'm most grateful that you've so generously pardoned me."

"Since you agree to come over, we're all ministers in the same government. Bring in your troops now," Jiang Ziya replied.

"My brother Chao Tian's beyond the city. Let me go and persuade him to join us."

*Jiang Ziya gave his consent.*

Meanwhile, back in their camp, Chao Tian was worrying about his brother. "We're supposed to ascertain the situation, but he's been taken in the very first battle."

He was thus musing when a guard came in with the news of his brother's return.

"How did you get back here, Brother?" Chao Tian asked when Chao Lei entered the tent.

"When I was taken before Jiang Ziya, I didn't yield in the least. I insulted him, and he ordered my execution. But then Prince Huang Feihu came to see me and persuaded me to go over. I've made up my mind to defect to Zhou. Let's go to the city together," Chao Lei explained.

"You damned fool! How can you believe their sweet words? You're a rebel yourself now. How can you face Grand Tutor Wen again!" Chao Tian flew into a rage.



悦而归周，吾也知之；你我归降，独不思父、母、妻、子俱见在朝歌。吾等虽得安康，致令父母遭其诛戮，你我心里安乐否？”晁雷曰：“为今之计奈何？”晁田曰：“你快上马，须当……如此如此，以掩其功，方好回见太师。”晁雷依计上马，进城至相府，见子牙曰：“末将领令，招兄晁田归降，吾兄愿从麾下。只是一件：末将兄说：奉纣王旨意征讨西岐，此系钦命，虽末将被擒归周，而吾兄如束手来见，恐诸将后来借口。望丞相抬举，命一将至营，招请一番，可存体面。”子牙曰：“原来你令兄要请，方进西岐。”子牙问曰：“左右谁去请晁田走一遭？”左有黄飞虎言曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。二将出相府去了。子牙令辛甲、辛免领简帖速行。二将得令。子牙令南宫适领简帖速行。得令去讫。不表。

且说黄飞虎同晁雷出城，至营门，只见晁田辕门躬身欠背，迎迓武成王，口称：“千岁请！”飞虎进了三层围子手，晁田喝声：“拿了！”两边刀斧手一齐动手，挠钩搭住，卸袍服，绳缠索绑。飞虎大骂：“你负义逆贼！恩将仇报！”晁田曰：“‘踏破铁鞋无觅处，得来全不费功夫。’正要擒反叛解往朝歌，你今来的凑巧。”传令：“起兵速回五关！”有诗为证：

晁田设计擒周将，妙算何如相父明。画虎不成类为犬，弟兄捆缚进都城。

话说晁田兄弟忻然而回，炮声不响，人无喊声，飞云掣电而走。行过三十五里，兵至龙山口，只见两杆旗摇，布开人马，应声大叫：“晁田！早早留下武成王！吾奉姜丞相命，在此久候多时了！”晁田怒曰：“吾不伤西岐将佐，焉敢中途抢截朝廷犯官！”纵马舞刀来战。辛甲使开斧，赴面交还。两马



“You don’t know, Brother. I’m not the only one pledging allegiance to Zhou. Most of the kingdom’s already willingly submitted,” Chao Lei replied.

“Of course I know it, but our parents, wives, sons and daughters are all at Zhaoge. We may be safe here, but they’ll be slaughtered. How would you feel then?”

“Then what shall we do?”

“Ride back to the city and.... That way we can return to Zhaoge with feathers in our caps,” Chao Tian said.

Chao Lei entered the city to see Jiang Ziya. “My brother’s willing to come over, but as a general appointed by King Zhou, he demands respect. He hopes you’ll send a general to meet him.”

“So he’ll come over only at my invitation. That can be easily arranged,” Jiang Ziya said happily. He asked, “Who would like to go and bring Chao Tian back here on my behalf?”

“Let me go, Prime Minister,” Huang Feihu volunteered.

As soon as Huang Feihu and Chao Lei had gone, Jiang Ziya gave secret orders to generals Xin Jia, Xin Mian and Nangong Kuo, and they also left immediately.

At the camp of the Shang army, Chao Tian met Huang Feihu and his brother at the gate with a bow of welcome, “Please come in, Your Highness.” But when Huang Feihu entered the gate, he yelled, “Seize him!”

In an instant, the men lying in ambush leapt out, seized Huang Feihu, stripped him of his robes and bound his hands and feet.

“You rogues! So this is how you return my kindness!”

Chao Tian, however, answered slyly, “It’s just as the proverb says, ‘we couldn’t find you even if we wore out iron shoes looking for you, yet now we’ve caught you without expending the least effort’! You came just at the right time. We’ll escort you to Zhaoge at once.”

They left West Qi immediately, traveling in complete silence. No talking was allowed. They traveled thirty-five *li* and had almost gotten to Mount Dragon when they unexpectedly found two generals blocking their way.

“Chao Tian! Release General Huang Feihu at once. On Prime Minister Jiang’s orders, we’ve already been waiting here for you for a long time,” a voice said.

“I didn’t hurt any general or soldier of West Qi. How dare you try to kidnap an important prisoner from us!” Chao Tian said angrily.



相交，刀斧并举，大战二十回合。辛免见辛甲的斧胜似晁田，自思：“既来救黄将军，须当上前。”催马使斧，杀进营来。晁雷见辛免马至，理屈词穷，举刀来战。战未数合，晁雷情知中计，拨马落荒便走。辛免杀官兵逃走，救了黄飞虎。飞虎感谢，走骑出来，看辛甲大战晁田。武成王大怒曰：“吾有义与晁田，这个贼狠心之徒！”纵骑持短兵来战。未及数合，早被黄将军擒下马来，拿绳缠二背。武成王指面大骂曰：“逆贼！你欺心定计擒我，岂能出姜丞相奇谋妙算！天命有在！”解回西岐。不表。且说晁雷得命逃归，有路就走，路径生疏，迷踪失径，左串右串，只在西岐山内。走到二更时分，方上大路，只见前面有夜不收，灯笼高挑。晁雷的马走鸾铃响处，忽听得炮声呐喊，当头一将乃南宫适也。灯光影里，晁雷曰：“南将军，放一条生路，后日恩当重报。”南宫适曰：“不须多言，早早下马受缚！”晁雷大怒，舞刀来战。那里是南将军敌手，大喝一声，生擒下马。两边将绳索绑缚，拿回西岐来。此时天色微明，黄飞虎在相府前伺候。南宫适也回来。飞虎称谢毕。少时间，听得鼓响，众将参谒。左右报：“辛甲回令。”令：“至殿前。”曰：“末将奉令，龙山口擒了晁田，救了黄将军，在府前听令。”令：“来。”飞虎感谢曰：“若非丞相救拔，几乎遭逆党毒手。”子牙曰：“来意可疑，吾故知此贼之诡诈矣，故令三将于二处伺候，果不出吾之所料。”又报：“南宫适听令。”令：“至殿前。”南宫适曰：“奉命岐山把守，二更时分，果擒晁雷，请令定夺。”子牙传令：“来！”把二将推至檐下。子牙大喝曰：“匹夫！用此诡计，怎么瞒得过我！此皆是儿曹之辈！”命：“推



Whirling his cutlass, he charged in to attack, and Xin Jia rose to the challenge. After they had fought twenty vigorous rounds, Xin Mian observed that Xin Jia was gaining the upper hand. "Since I've been sent here to rescue General Huang, I should join the battle at once," he thought. Wielding his axe, he fought his way into the Shang line-up. Chao Lei rushed on him, but after only a few rounds, Chao Lei realized that he was trapped in an ambush. He pulled his horse around and fled into the wilderness. Xin Mian fought on until all of King Zhou's soldiers had dispersed. He then freed Huang Feihu. After a hasty thanks, Huang Feihu leapt on a horse and galloped out of the camp. He saw Chao Tian still fighting with Xin Jia.

"You ungrateful wretch, Chao Tian!" he shouted.

Huang Feihu rushed towards Chao Tian and took him in only a few rounds. "You deceived me, but you never suspected that Prime Minister Jiang was one step ahead of you."

Chao Lei escaped from the battlefield, but he was not familiar with the area. Though he tried the right and then the left, he could not find his way out of West Qi district. Around midnight, he finally found the highway, but saw ahead of him a night patrol carrying lanterns. He heard the sudden firing of cannons and saw a general blocking his path. In the dim light of the lanterns, he found it was General Nangong Kuo.

"General Nangong! Grant me a chance to live. I won't be ungrateful," Chao Lei begged.

"Stop blathering. Get down from your horse and let me bind you up."

Chao Lei plunged into combat, but he was no match for Nangong Kuo. He was taken alive.

It was near dawn when Huang Feihu and Nangong Kuo arrived back at the Prime Minister's mansion. Xin Jia had also returned with his prisoner, Chao Tian.

Huang Feihu moved forward. "If you hadn't saved me, I would have surely died in their hands," he told Jiang Ziya.

"I grew suspicious when Chao Lei told me of his brother's demands. I sent three generals to wait for them at two strategic points. The result was exactly as I had predicted," Jiang Ziya explained.

Then General Nangong Kuo came forward. "By your order, I waited





出斩了!”军政官得令，把二将簇拥推出相府。只听晁雷大叫：“冤枉!”子牙笑曰：“明明暗算害人，为何又称冤枉?”分付左右：“推回晁雷来。”子牙曰：“匹夫!弟兄谋害忠良，指望功高归国，不知老夫豫已知之。今既被擒，理当斩首，何为冤枉?”晁雷曰：“丞相在上：天下归周，人皆尽知。吾兄言，父母俱在朝歌，子归真主，父母遭殃。自思无计可行，故设小计。今被丞相看破，擒归斩首，情实可矜。”子牙曰：“你既有父母在朝歌，与我共议，设计搬取家眷；为何起这等狼心?”晁雷曰：“末将才庸智浅，并无远大之谋，早告明丞相，自无此厄也。”道罢，泪流满面。子牙曰：“你可是真情?”晁雷曰：“末将若无父母，故说此言，黄将军尽知。”子牙问：“黄将军，晁雷可有父母?”飞虎答曰：“有。”子牙曰：“既有父母，此情是实。”传令：“把晁田放回。”二将跪拜在地。子牙道：“将晁田为质，晁雷领简帖，……如此如此，往朝歌搬取家眷。”晁雷领令往朝歌。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



at Mount Qi, and I was able to capture Chao Lei.”

Jiang Ziya ordered that Chao Tian and Chao Lei be brought before him. “You traitors! How could you ever fool me!” He ordered, “Guards, drag them out and cut their heads off.”

As they were being pushed out, Chao Lei cried “This is not justice.”

Jiang Ziya immediately ordered his guards to bring him back. “Why do you complain of injustice?”

“Prime Minister, everyone knows that West Qi’s won the hearts of the people. However, as my brother pointed out, our parents, wives and children are all at Zhaoge. If we pledge allegiance to King Wu, they’re bound to meet with disaster. We were only trying to save ourselves with that paltry trick.”

“Why didn’t you tell me about this earlier? I could have done something to help you. Why did you instead try such a dirty trick?” Jiang Ziya demanded.

“We’re stupid and short-sighted. This wouldn’t have happened if we had reported the problem to you at first,” Chao Lei said with tears on his face.

“Are you telling the truth?”

“If I was lying, General Huang could expose me,” Chao Lei answered.

“General Huang, is it true that their parents are at Zhaoge?” Jiang Ziya asked Huang Feihu.

“Yes, it is, Prime Minister.”

“Then I’ll believe you.” When the Chao brothers knelt before him, Jiang Ziya ordered, “Chao Tian is to be kept here as a hostage. Chao Lei may return to the capital with my secret instructions and bring both your families to West Qi.”

Chao Lei set out for Zhaoge at once.

If you want to know what happened to him, please read the next chapter.





## 第三十六回

### 张桂芳奉诏西征

诗曰：

奉诏西征剖玉符，幡幢飘飏映长途。惊看画戟翻钱豹，  
更羨冰花拂剑凫。张桂擒军称号异，风林打将仗殊殊。  
纵然智巧皆亡败，无奈天心恶独夫。

话说晁雷离了西岐，星夜进五关，过渑池，渡黄河，往朝歌，非止一日，进了都城，先至闻太师府来。太师正在银安殿闲坐，忽报：“晁雷等令。”太师急令至帘前，忙问西岐光景。晁雷答曰：“末将兵至西岐，彼时有南宫适搦战。末将出马，大战三十合，未分胜败，两家鸣金。次日，晁田大战辛甲，辛甲败回。连战数日，胜败未分。奈因汜水关韩荣不肯应付粮草，三军慌乱。大抵粮草乃三军之性命，末将不得已，故此星夜来见太师。望乞速发粮草，再加添兵卒，以作应援。”闻太师沉吟半晌，曰：“前有火牌令箭，韩荣为何不发粮草应付？晁雷，你点三千人马，粮一千，星夜往西岐接济。等老夫再点大将，共破西岐，不得迟误。”晁雷领令，速点三千人马，粮草一千，暗暗来带家小，出了朝歌，星夜往西岐去了。有诗为证：

妙算神机世所稀，太公用计亦深微。当时慢道欺闻仲，  
此后征诛事渐非。



## Chapter 36

### First Expedition Against West Qi

According to Jiang Ziya's instructions, Chao Lei left West Qi and went back to Zhaoge. He went directly to see Grand Tutor Wen. The Grand Tutor was alone in his office when a guard announced that "General Chao Lei begs to see you."

As soon as Chao Lei entered, Grand Tutor Wen asked him anxiously, "What's the situation in West Qi, General Chao Lei?"

"When we arrived, Nangong Kuo challenged us. I went out to meet him, but after thirty rounds neither of us had gained the upperhand. The next day Chao Tian fought Xin Jia and defeated him. The fighting continued for several days without a definite victor. But Commander Han Rong of Sishui Pass refuses to supply us with rations and fodder, and the whole army is beginning to fall into disorder. Without supplies, the army cannot survive. There's nothing we could do to relieve the situation. That's why I've returned in all haste to see you."

When he heard Chao Lei's report, Grand Tutor Wen fell silent, then said, "I commanded Han Rong to supply you with rations and fodder. Why didn't he do as ordered? General Chao, take 3,000 more soldiers and 1,000 piculs of rice and return to the front without delay. I'll send another experienced general to help you."

Following his orders, Chao Lei took the soldiers and rice, and set out for West Qi, secretly taking the entire Chao family with him. Three days





话说闻太师发三千人马，粮草一千，命晁雷去了三四日。忽然想起：“汜水关韩荣为何不肯支应？其中必有缘故！”太师焚香，将三个金钱搜求八卦妙理玄机，算出其中情由，太师拍案大呼曰：“吾失打点，反被此贼诓了家小去了！气杀吾也！”欲点兵追赶，去之已远。随问徒弟吉立、余庆：“今令何人可伐西岐？”吉立曰：“老爷欲伐西岐，非青龙关张桂芳不可。”太师大悦；随发火牌、令箭，差官往青龙关去讫。一面又点神威大将军丘引，交代镇守关隘。

话说晁雷人马出了五关，至西岐，回见子牙，叩头在地：“丞相妙计，百发百中。今未将父母妻子俱进都城。丞相恩德，永矢不忘！”又把见闻太师的话说了一遍。子牙曰：“闻太师必点兵前来征伐，此处也要防御打点，有场大战。”按下不表。

且说闻太师的差官到了青龙关，张桂芳得了太师令箭、火牌。交代官乃神威大将军丘引。张桂芳把人马点十万。先行官姓风，名林，乃风后苗裔。等至数日，丘引来到，交代明白。张桂芳一声炮响，十万雄师尽发；过了些府、州、县、道，夜住晓行。怎见得，有诗为证：

浩浩旌旗滚，翩翩绣带飘。枪缨红似火，刀刃白如镞。  
斧列宣花样，幡摇豹尾脩。鞭铜瓜槌棍，征云透九霄。  
三军如猛虎，战马怪龙裊。鼓擂春雷振，锣鸣地角遥。  
桂芳为大将，西岐事更昭。

话说张桂芳大队人马非止一日。哨探马报入中军：“启总兵：人马已到西岐。”离城五里安营，放炮呐喊，设下宝帐，先行参谒。桂芳按兵不动。



later, Grand Tutor Wen suddenly felt uneasy. Why was Han Rong unwilling to supply the front with food rations? There must be some reason, he mused. He burned incense and made a divination. When he found out the truth, he pounded his desk. "Because of my carelessness, that scoundrel's gotten away with his whole family!"

But it was too late for him to pursue Chao Lei. He asked his disciples Ji Li and Yu Qing, "Whom should I send to West Qi now?"

"As far as we can see, there's no one better than General Zhang Guifang."

The Grand Tutor agreed and immediately sent a messenger to the Green Dragon Pass with the order. He appointed Qiu Yin, General of Divine Dignity, to take over command of the pass.

Meanwhile Chao Lei had crossed the five passes and returned to West Qi. He kowtowed before Jiang Ziya. "Acting on your brilliant instructions, I've successfully brought our parents, wives and children from Zhaoge. We'll never forget this great favor, Prime Minister."

He gave an account of his conversation with the Grand Tutor. "Grand Tutor Wen isn't likely to let us live in peace. War's unavoidable, and we must be well-prepared," Jiang Ziya told his generals.

On Grand Tutor Wen's order, Zhang Guifang handed his post over to Qiu Yin and assumed command of the 100,000-strong army. He appointed Feng Lin commander of the vanguard. When all the preparations had been completed, he set out towards West Qi, reaching the city after several days' march. He camped about five *li* from the south gate of the capital.





话说西岐报马报入相府：“张桂芳领十万人马，南门安营。”子牙升殿，聚将共议退兵之策。子牙曰：“黄将军，张桂芳用兵如何？”飞虎曰：“丞相下问，末将不得不以实陈。”子牙曰：“将军何故出此言？吾与你皆系大臣，为主心腹，何故说‘不得不实陈’者何也？”飞虎曰：“张桂芳乃左道傍门术士，有幻术伤人。”子牙曰：“有何幻术？”飞虎曰：“此术异常。但凡与人交兵会战，必先通名报姓。如末将叫黄某，正战之间，他就叫：‘黄飞虎不下马更待何时！’末将自然下马。故有此术。似难对战。丞相须分付众位将军，但遇桂芳交战，切不可通名。如有通名者，无不获去之理。”子牙听罢，面有忧色。傍有诸将不服此言的，道：“岂有此理！那有叫名便下马的？若这等，我们百员官将只消叫的百十声，便都拿尽。”众将官俱各含笑而已。

且说张桂芳命先行官风林先往西岐见头阵。风林上马，往西岐城下请战。报马忙进相府：“启丞相：有将搦战。”子牙问：“谁见首阵走一遭？”内有一将，乃文王殿下姬叔乾也。此人性如烈火，因夜来听了黄将军的话，故此不服，要见头阵。上马拎枪出来。只见翠蓝幡下一将，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，獠牙生上下。怎见得：

花冠分五角，蓝脸映须红。金甲袍如火，玉带扣玲珑。

手提狼牙棒，乌骓猛似熊。胸中藏锦绣，到处定成功。

封神为吊客，先锋自不同。大红幡上写，首将姓为风。

话说姬叔乾一马至军前，见来将甚是凶恶，问曰：“来将可是张桂芳？”风林曰：“非也。吾乃张总兵先行官风林是也。奉诏征讨反叛。今尔主无故背德，自立武王，又收反臣黄飞



When he learned of the arrival of Zhang Guifang, Jiang Ziya summoned his generals. "General Huang, how do you appraise Zhang Guifang as a commander?" he asked.

"Now that you ask me, I can only tell you the truth," Huang Feihu answered.

"What do you mean, General?" Jiang Ziya asked further.

"Because Zhang Guifang is a sorcerer, and he overcomes his adversaries with witchcraft," Huang Feihu explained. "Before combat, opponents usually exchange their names, but once he learns your name, he'll cry it out during combat, and then say, 'why don't you get down from your horse?' At his cry, you fall from your horse at once and are taken alive. This makes him very difficult to beat. We must remember that we must not tell him our names. Otherwise, not one of us will escape capture."

Jiang Ziya was worried, but many of the generals were unconvinced.

"It's preposterous," one of them said. "How can we fall just because our names are called? If that's the case he only has to call a hundred names and we'll all be his prisoners."

Zhang Guifang, meanwhile, ordered General Feng Lin to give the first challenge. When it was reported, Jiang Ziya asked, "Who would like to fight the first battle?"

Ji Shuqian, one of Prince Wen's sons, was hot-tempered, and he scorned Huang Feihu's warning. He rushed onto the battlefield to meet the general under a blue banner. Dressed in red robes covered with gold armor, the general had an indigo face, red hair, and sharp tusks protruding from his mouth.

"Are you General Zhang Guifang?" Ji Shuqian asked.

"No, I'm not. I'm Feng Lin, commander of the vanguard. By order of His Majesty, we've come here to suppress the rebels. As your master has not only assumed the title of king without authorization but also accepted Huang Feihu, he should offer his neck for us to chop off his head.



虎，助恶成害。天兵到日，尚不引颈受戮，乃敢拒敌大兵！快早通名来，速投棒下！”姬叔乾大怒曰：“天下诸侯，人人悦而归周，天命已是存在；怎敢侵犯西土，自取死亡。今日饶你，只叫张桂芳出来！”风林大骂：“反贼焉敢欺吾！”纵马使两根狼牙棒飞来直取。姬叔乾摇枪急架相还。二马相交，枪棒并举，一场大战。怎见得：

二将阵前各逞，锣鸣鼓响人惊。该因世上动刀兵，不由心头发恨。枪来那分上下，棒去两眼难睁。你拿我，诛身报国辅明君；我捉你，枭首辕门号令。

二将战有三十余合，未分胜败。姬叔乾枪法传授神妙，演习精奇，浑身罩定，毫无渗漏。风林是短家火，攻不进长枪去，被姬叔乾卖个破绽，叫声：“着打！”风林左脚上中了一枪。风林拨马逃回本营。姬叔乾纵马赶来；——不知风林乃左道之士，逞势追赶。风林虽是带伤，法术无损；回头见叔乾赶来，口里念念有词，把口一吐，一道黑烟喷出，就化为一网；里边现一粒红珠，有碗口大小，望姬叔乾劈脸打来。可怜！姬殿下乃文王第十二子，被此珠打下马来。风林勒回马，复一棒打死，枭了首级，掌鼓回营，见张桂芳报功。桂芳令：“辕门号令。”

且说西岐败残人马进城，报于姜丞相。子牙知姬叔乾阵亡，郁郁不乐。武王知弟死，着实伤悼。诸将切齿。次日，张桂芳大队排开，坐名请子牙答话。子牙曰：“不入虎穴，焉得虎子。”随传令：“摆五方队伍。”两边摆列鞭龙降虎将，打阵众英豪。出城，只见对阵旗幡脚下有一将，银盔素铠，白马长枪，上下似一块寒冰，如一堆瑞雪。怎见得：



How is it that he has the gall to resist the punitive army? Tell me your name at once. I'll knock your block off with my wolf tooth clubs."

Shuqian answered with great fury. "Every duke in the kingdom is delighted to join us, and Heaven's on our side too. How dare you invade our land! You're simply bringing about your own end. But I'll let you off today. Just tell Zhang Guifang to come out and meet me."

"You scoundrel! How dare you insult me," Feng Lin cursed angrily.

He rushed forward whirling his wolf tooth clubs, and Shuqian met him with his lance. After thirty rounds, neither had gained a clear advantage. Shuqian was a skilled fighter. He put up a defence so tight that nothing could get through. With only his short clubs, Feng Lin could not get near him. Seizing the first opportunity, Shuqian made a lightning attack and stabbed his opponent through the left calf, compelling him to turn and flee. Shuqian, however, did not know that Feng Lin was also versed in magic arts and set off in hot pursuit.

Feng Lin looked back and saw Shuqian close on his heels. He recited a spell, opened his mouth and spat out a cloud of black smoke that turned into a net containing a red ball as big as a rice bowl. The red ball smashed into Shuqian's face, knocking him from his horse and onto the ground. Feng Lin immediately turned his horse about and beat Shuqian to death with his wolf tooth clubs. He hacked his head off and took it to Zhang Guifang as proof of victory. Zhang Guifang ordered that it be hung at the gate of the camp.

Jiang Ziya was very distressed at the loss, and King Wu deeply grieved. The generals gnashed their teeth in anger over the defeat.

The next day, Zhang Guifang demanded that Jiang Ziya come out to meet him.

"Without entering the tiger's den, how can I catch the tiger cub!" Jiang Ziya said resolutely. "Array the troops for battle."



顶上银盔排凤翅，连环素铠似秋霜。白袍暗现团龙滚，腰束羊脂八宝厢。护心镜射光明显，四面铜挂马鞍傍。银合马走龙出海，倒提安邦白杵枪。胸中炼就无穷术，授秘玄功实异常。青龙关上声名远，纣王驾下紫金梁，素白旗上书大字：“奉敕西征张桂芳”。

话说张桂芳见子牙人马出城，队伍齐整，纪法森严，左右有雄壮之威，前后有进退之法。金盔者，英风赳赳；银盔者，气概昂昂。一对对出来，其实骁勇。又见子牙坐青骢马，一身道服，落腮银须，手提雌雄宝剑。怎见得，有《西江月》为证：

鱼尾金冠鹤氅，丝绦双结乾坤。雌雄宝剑手中拎，八卦仙衣内衬。善能移山倒海，惯能撒豆成兵。仙风道骨果神清，极乐神仙临阵。

张桂芳又见宝纛幡下，武成王黄飞虎坐骑提枪，心下大怒，一马闯至军前；见子牙而言曰：“姜尚，你原为纣臣，曾受恩禄，为何又背朝廷，而助姬发作恶，又纳叛臣黄飞虎，复施诡计，说晁田降周；恶大罪深，纵死莫赎。吾今奉诏亲征，速宜下马受缚，以正欺君叛国之罪。尚敢抗拒天兵，只待踏平西土，玉石俱焚，那时悔之晚矣。”子牙马上笑曰：“公言差矣！岂不闻‘贤臣择主而仕，良禽相木而栖’，天下尽反，岂在西岐！料公一忠臣，也不能辅纣王之稔恶。吾君臣守法奉公，谨修臣节。今日提兵，侵犯西土，乃是公来欺我，非我欺足下。倘或失利，遗笑他人，深为可惜。不如依吾拙谏，请公回兵，此为上策。毋得自取祸端，以遗伊戚。”桂芳曰：“闻你在昆仑学艺数年，你也不知天地间有无



With generals lined up on either side, he left the city and rode onto the battlefield. There below the pennants of the opposition, he saw a general in white robes covered with silver white armor. He wore a silver helmet and rode a white horse. From head to toe, he resembled an ice statue.

Zhang Guifang watched as Jiang Ziya led his well-disciplined army from the city in perfect order. Surrounded by stalwart warriors, Jiang Ziya was riding a black-maned horse. Dressed as a Taoist, he had a flowing silver white beard and carried a pair of swords. Zhang Guifang then saw Huang Feihu on his divine ox under the flying banners.

He was filled with fury and spurred his horse forward. "Jiang Shang, you once received a favor from His Majesty. How can you rebel and help Ji Fa perpetrate evil? How can you accept Huang Feihu, a traitor? How did you deceive Chao Tian and Chao Lei? You deserve death. By order of His Majesty, I've come here to punish you. You'd better get down from your horse and give yourself up and be tried for treason. Should you dare to resist, I'll raze your land to the ground. I don't care if jade is destroyed with the stone. It'll be too late for you to regret it then."

Jiang Ziya laughed coldly. "You're wrong, Commander. Haven't you heard that 'a good minister offers his service to a virtuous master'? The whole kingdom is rising up against King Zhou; we're no exception. You may be loyal, but you shouldn't support King Zhou in his evil ways. We adhere to law and peace and order. It's you who's insulting us. It would really be a pity if you suffered defeat here and became the laughing stock of the country. You'd better take my advice and withdraw to Zhaoge."

"I've been told that you cultivated yourself on Mount Kunlun for many years, yet you don't seem to know that everything between Heaven



穷变化。据你所言，就如婴儿作笑，不识轻重。你非智者之言。”令先行官：“与吾把姜尚拿了！”风林走马出阵，冲杀过来。只见子牙旗门角下一将，连人带马，如映金赤日玛瑙一般，纵马舞刀，迎敌风林，——乃大将军南宫适；也不答话，刀棒并举，一场大战。怎见得：

二将阵前把脸变，催开战马心不善。这一个指望万载把名标；那一个声名留在金銮殿。这一个钢刀起去似寒冰；那一个棒举虹飞惊紫电。自来恶战果蹊跷，二虎相争心胆颤。

话说二将交兵，只杀的征云绕地，锣鼓喧天。且说张桂芳在马上又见武成王黄飞虎在子牙宝纛幡脚下，怒纳不住，纵马杀将过来。黄飞虎也把五色神牛催开，大骂：“逆贼！怎敢冲吾阵脚！”牛马相交，双枪并举，恶战龙潭。张桂芳仗胸中左道之术，一心要擒飞虎。二将酣战，未及十五合，张桂芳大叫：“黄飞虎不下骑更待何时！”飞虎不由自己，撞下鞍鞞。军士方欲上前擒获，只见对阵上一将，乃是周纪，飞马冲来，抡斧直取张桂芳；黄飞彪、飞豹二将齐出，把飞虎抢去。周纪大战桂芳。张桂芳掩一枪就走。周纪不知其故，随后赶来。张桂芳知道周纪，大叫一声：“周纪不下马更待何时！”周纪吊下马来。及至众将救时，已被众士卒生擒活捉，拿进辕门。且说风林战南宫适：风林拨马就走，南宫适也赶去，被风林如前，把口一张，黑烟喷出，烟内现碗口大小一粒珠，把南宫适打下马来，生擒去了。张桂芳大获全胜，掌鼓回营。子牙收兵进城，见折了二将，郁郁不乐。

且说张桂芳升帐，把周纪、南宫适推至中军，张桂芳



and earth undergoes limitless change. You speak nonsense like a child," Zhang Guifang said, then ordered, "Commander of the vanguard, seize Jiang Shang for me at once."

When Feng Lin rushed at Jiang Ziya, he was met by a tall general. They fought like a pair of tigers, neither giving an inch. When he saw Huang Feihu beside Jiang Ziya, Zhang Guifang could not control his anger. As he charged in to attack, Huang urged his divine ox forward to meet him.

"You bloody scoundrel! How dare you attack our line?" Huang Feihu cried.

Their lances clashed and a desperate battle ensued. Zhang Guifang, relying on his witchcraft, made up his mind to take Huang Feihu captive. After only fifteen rounds, he shouted, "Huang Feihu, get down from your beast! What are you waiting for?"

Losing control of himself, Huang fell down from his ox. But before Zhang's men could seize him, Zhou Ji galloped out and slashed at Zhang Guifang with his axe while Huang Feibiao and Huang Feibao snatched Huang Feihu back.

Zhang Guifang deliberately abandoned the fight and retreated. Zhou Ji pursued him. Zhang Guifang also knew his name. "Zhou Ji, why you don't get down? What are you waiting for?" he cried.

Zhou Ji fell from his horse, was seized and bound before his men could rescue him.

Feng Lin also gave up the combat with Nangong Kuo, but Nangong was unwilling to let him go. Feng Lin once more spat out the black smoke and red ball and knocked his pursuer from his horse, taking Nangong Kuo alive. Zhang Guifang returned to his camp in triumph while Jiang Ziya went back to the city, greatly upset.

When Zhou Ji and Nangong Kuo were brought before Zhang Guifang,





曰：“立而不跪者何也？”南宫适大喝：“狂诈匹夫！将身许国，岂惜一死！既被妖术所获，但凭汝为，有甚闲说！”桂芳传令：“且将二人囚于陷车之内，待破了西岐，解往朝歌，听圣旨发落。”不题。次日，张桂芳亲往城下搦战。探马报入丞相府曰：“张桂芳搦战。”子牙因他开口叫名字便落马，故不敢传令，且将“免战牌”挂出去。张桂芳笑曰：“姜尚被吾一阵便杀得‘免战牌’高悬！”故此按兵不动。

且说乾元山金光洞太乙真人坐碧游床运元神，忽然心血来潮，早知其故；命金霞童儿：“请你师兄来。”童儿领命，来桃园见哪吒，口称：“师兄，老爷有请。”哪吒至蒲团下拜。真人曰：“此处不是你久居之所。你速往西岐，去佐你师叔姜子牙，可立你功名事业。如今三十六路兵伐西岐，你可前去辅佐明君，以应上天垂象。”哪吒满心欢喜，即刻辞别下山；上了风火轮，提火尖枪，斜挂豹皮囊，往西岐来。怎见得好快，有诗为证：

风火之声起在空，遍游天下任西东，乾坤顷刻须臾到，  
妙理玄功自不同。

话说哪吒顷刻来到西岐，落了风火轮，找问相府。左右指引：“小金桥是相府。”哪吒至相府下轮。左右报入：“有一道童求见。”子牙不敢忘本，传令：“请来。”哪吒至殿前，倒身下拜，口称：“师叔。”子牙问曰：“你是那里来的？”哪吒答曰：“弟子是乾元山金光洞太乙真人徒弟，姓李，名哪吒；奉师命下山，听师叔左右驱使。”子牙大喜，未及温慰，只见武成王出班，称谢前救援之德。哪吒问：“有何人在此伐西岐？”黄飞虎答曰：“有青龙关张桂芳，左道惊人，连擒二



he demanded, "Why don't you kneel and beg for your lives?"

"We're ready to sacrifice our lives. We're not afraid of death. Just do what you please with us," Nangong Kuo replied.

"Put them in the prison carts. We'll take them to Zhaoge as soon as West Qi's defeated," Zhang Guifang ordered.

Zhang Guifang challenged again the following morning, but Jiang Ziya dared not reply. There was nothing he could do but hang up the board declaring a truce. Zhang Guifang smiled when he saw the board. "Only one encounter, and Jiang Ziya's been forced to seek a truce. We can enjoy a short rest," he decided.

At this, Fairy Primordial was sitting in meditation on his Green Touring Bed when he felt a stir in his heart. He made a divination and ordered Golden Haze Lad to bring Nezha over.

The lad found him in the peach garden and told him, "Brother, Master wants you now."

When Nezha came in, knelt on a cat's-tail mat and kowtowed, the immortal said, "This isn't the place for you to stay long. Hurry on to West Qi to assist your uncle Jiang Ziya. West Qi will face thirty-six invasions. Offer your service there to the new ruler in response to the celestial phenomenon."

Nezha was filled with delight, and after bidding farewell to the immortal, he mounted his Wind-Fire Wheels, took his Fire-Tip Lance, slung his leopard-skin bag over his shoulder and sped off. Reaching West Qi moments later, he got down from his wheels and went to the Prime Minister's mansion at the Lesser Golden Bridge.

When his presence was announced, Jiang Ziya recalled his own Taoist origins and ordered that he be admitted. Nezha entered, knelt down and kowtowed, greeting him respectfully as his uncle.

"Where do you come from?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"I'm a disciple of Fairy Primordial. My name is Li Nezha. By order of my master, I've come to serve you."

Jiang Ziya was delighted, but before he could say anything, Prince Huang Feihu rushed forward. He expressed his gratitude to Nezha as well.

"Who's attacking us?" Nezha asked.

"Commander Zhang Guifang of the Green Dragon Pass. He's a great



将。姜丞相故悬‘免战牌’在外。”哪吒曰：“吾既下山来佐师叔，岂有袖手傍观之理。”哪吒来见了牙曰：“师叔在上：弟子奉师命下山，今悬‘免战’，此非长策；弟子愿去见阵，张桂芳可擒也。”子牙许之；传令：“去了‘免战牌’。”彼时探马报与张桂芳：“西岐摘了‘免战牌’。”桂芳谓先行风林曰：“姜子牙连日不出战，那里取得救兵来了。今日摘去‘免战牌’，你可去搦战。”先行风林领令出营，城下搦战。探马报入相府。哪吒答言曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙曰：“是必小心。桂芳左道，呼名落马。”哪吒答曰：“弟子见机而作。”即登风火轮，开门出城。见一将蓝靛脸，硃砂发，凶恶多端，用狼牙棒，走马出阵，见哪吒脚踏二轮，问曰：“汝是何人？”哪吒答曰：“吾乃姜丞相师侄李哪吒是也。尔可是张桂芳——专会呼名落马的？”风林曰：“非也。吾乃是先行官风林。”哪吒曰：“饶你不死，只唤出张桂芳来！”风林大怒，纵马使棒来取。哪吒手内枪两相架隔。轮马相交，枪棒并举，大战城下。有诗为证：

下山首战会风林，发手成功岂易寻。不是武王洪福大，西岐城下事难禁。

话说二将大战二十回合，风林暗想：“观哪吒道骨稀奇，若不下手，恐受他累。”掩一棒，拨马便走。哪吒随后赶来。——前走一似猛风吹败叶，后随恰如急雨打残花。——风林回头一看，见哪吒赶来，把口一张，喷出一道黑烟，烟里现碗口大小一珠，劈面打来。哪吒笑曰：“此术非是正道。”哪吒用手一指，其烟自灭。风林见哪吒破了他的法术，厉声大叫：“气杀吾也！敢破吾法术！”勒马复战，被哪吒豹皮囊取出



sorcerer and has taken two of our generals. The Prime Minister had to proclaim a truce," Huang Feihu answered despondantly.

"Since I left Mount Qianyuan to aid my uncle, how can I stand by and watch like an idle spectator!" Nezha thought, and spoke before Jiang Ziya again. "Uncle! The board of truce cannot stop this war for long. I'll meet him and take him captive."

Jiang Ziya gave his consent and ordered that the board of truce be removed. When Zhang Guifang learned of it, he summoned Feng Lin. "Jiang Ziya hasn't fought with us for several days. He must have gotten reinforcements from somewhere. Go out and challenge him."

Feng Lin left the camp immediately, rode to the city wall, and gave the challenge. In the Prime Minister's office, Nezha asked for permission to meet Feng Lin.

"Be very careful," Jiang Ziya warned him. "Zhang Guifang can make you fall just by calling your name."

"Don't worry, Uncle. I'll see what I can do."

He mounted his Wind-Fire Wheels and went out of the city. There he saw a hideous general with a savage blue face and red hair, fiercely brandishing a pair of short wolf-tooth clubs.

When he saw Nezha approaching, Feng Lin asked, "Who are you?"

"I'm Li Nezha, nephew of Prime Minister Jiang Ziya. Are you Zhang Guifang, who downs an opponent by calling his name?"

"No. I'm Feng Lin, commander of the vanguard."

"I'll spare your life. Just tell Zhang Guifang to come out and see me," Nezha demanded.

Feng Lin was very angry at the insult and spurred his horse forward, brandishing his short clubs. Nezha fought back with his lance. The two battled back and forth beneath the city wall for twenty rounds.

"Nezha's of uncommon appearance. If I don't make the first move, I'm likely to fall victim," Feng Lin thought.

He made a feint, then sped off with Nezha in hot pursuit. He turned his head, and when Nezha got close enough behind him, he opened his mouth and spat out his magic black smoke. The red ball within it flew straight at Nezha's face.

"This is sorcery, not proper Taoist magic," Nezha commented.

He pointed at the smoke, and it immediately disappeared. When he



那乾坤圈，丢起，正打风林左肩甲，只打的筋断骨折，几乎落马，败回营去。哪吒打了风林，立在辕门，坐名要张桂芳。且说风林败回进营，见桂芳备言前事。又报：“哪吒坐名搦战。”张桂芳大怒，忙上马提枪出营，一见哪吒耀武扬威，张桂芳问曰：“踏风火轮者可是哪吒么？”哪吒答曰：“然。”张桂芳曰：“你打吾先行官，是尔？”哪吒大喝一声：“匹夫！说你善能呼名落马，特来会尔！”把枪一晃来取。桂芳急架相迎。轮马相交，双枪并举，好场杀：一个是莲花化身灵珠子；一个是“封神榜”上一丧门。有赋为证：

征云笼宇宙，杀气绕乾坤！这一个展钢枪，要安社稷；那一个踏双轮，发手无存。这一个为江山以身报国；那一个争世界岂肯轻论？这个枪似金鳌搅海；那个枪似大蟒翻身。几时才罢干戈事，老少安康见太平。

话说张桂芳大战哪吒三四十回合。哪吒枪乃太乙仙传，使开如飞电绕长空，似风声吼玉树。张桂芳虽是枪法精传，也自雄威，力敌不能久战；随用道术，要擒哪吒。桂芳大呼曰：“哪吒不下轮来更待何时？”哪吒也吃一惊，把脚登定二轮，却不得下来。桂芳见叫不下轮来，大惊：“老师秘授之吐语捉将，道名拿人，往常响应，今日为何不准！”只得再叫一声。哪吒只是不理。连叫三声，哪吒大骂：“失时匹夫！我不下来凭我，难道勉强叫我下来！”张桂芳大怒，努力死战。哪吒把枪紧一紧，似银龙翻海底，如瑞雪满空飞，只杀的张桂芳力尽筋舒，遍身汗流。哪吒把乾坤圈飞起来打张桂芳。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



saw that his sorcery was rendered powerless, Feng Lin howled in a fury. He turned back to engage Nezha. But Nezha quickly took the Universal Ring from his leopard-skin bag and hurled it at Feng Lin. It hit him on the left shoulder and broke the bone. Feng Lin almost fell from his horse and hastily withdrew inside the Shang camp. Nezha stood outside the camp gate, demanding that Zhang Guifang come and meet him.

Zhang Guifang heard what had happened, and when he was informed of Nezha's challenge, he burned with rage. He mounted his horse, took his lance, and left the camp. When he saw Nezha swaggering about before him, he demanded, "Is that Nezha riding on the Wind-Fire Wheels?"

"Yes, that's right."

"Is it you that wounded the commander of my vanguard?"

Nezha yelled at him, "Oh, you fool! I hear that you say a man's name and he will fall. I've come here especially to deal with you."

He lunged with his lance, and Zhang Guifang parried the blow with his. The battle continued fiercely for forty rounds. Nezha had been taught by Fairy Primordial and plied his lance like lightning. Though Zhang was skilful and experienced, his strength was quickly exhausted, and he had to resort to sorcery.

"Nezha, get down from your wheels at once! What are you waiting for?" he cried loudly.

Nezha was nervous for a moment, but he kept his feet firmly planted on the wheels.

Zhang Guifang was astonished. "This trick has always worked. Why does it fail today? I must try again until Nezha drops from his wheels!"

He called again and again, but Nezha stood firm and then grew impatient. "What a crazy fool you are, Zhang Guifang! As I'm unwilling to get down from my wheels, what's the use of your howling and barking?"

Zhang Guifang went livid with fury and lunged at Nezha, determined to fight him to the death. But Nezha's strength never slackened, and Zhang was soon exhausted. His whole body was bathed in a sweat. Nezha pulled out his Universal Ring and sent it flying through the air straight at the Shang general.

What became of Zhang Guifang? If you want to know, you must read the next chapter.







## 第三十七回

### 姜子牙一上昆仑

诗曰：

子牙初返玉京来，遥见琼楼香雾开，绿水流残人世梦，青山消尽帝王才。军民有难干戈动，将士多灾异术催。无奈封神天意定，岐山方去筑新台。

话说哪吒一乾坤圈把张桂芳左臂打得筋断骨折，马上晃了三四晃，不曾闪下马来。哪吒得胜进城。探马报入相府。令：“哪吒来见。”子牙问曰：“与张桂芳见阵，胜负如何？”哪吒曰：“被弟子乾坤圈打伤左臂，败进营里去了。”子牙又问：“可曾叫你名字？”哪吒曰：“桂芳连叫三次，弟子不曾理他罢了。”众将不知其故。——但凡精血成胎者，有三魂七魄，被桂芳叫一声，魂魄不居一体，散在各方，自然落马；哪吒乃莲花化身，浑身俱是莲花，那里有三魂七魄，故此不得叫下轮来。

且说张桂芳打伤左臂，先行官风林又被打伤，不能动履，只得差官用告急文书，往朝歌见闻太师求援。不表。

且说子牙在府内自思：“哪吒虽则取胜，恐后面朝歌调动大队人马，有累西土。”子牙沐浴更衣，来见武王。朝见毕，武王曰：“相父见孤，有何紧事？”子牙曰：“臣辞主公，往昆仑山去一遭。”武王曰：“兵临城下，将至濠边，国内无人，相父不可逗留高山，使孤盼望。”子牙曰：“臣此去，多



## Chapter 37

### Jiang Ziya Visits Mount Kunlun

The Universal Ring flew through the air and smashed into Zhang Guifang, breaking his left arm. He swayed perilously in the saddle but managed to keep his seat and fled. Nezha returned to the city.

"How did it go?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"His left arm was wounded by my Universal Ring."

"Did he call your name?"

"Yes, he did a few times, but I simply ignored him," Nezha replied.

All the generals were puzzled as to why Nezha did not fall from his wheels. Mortal beings all possess souls. Zhang Guifang's art was to disperse the soul, so naturally, people fell when he called their names. Nezha, however, had been reincarnated from lotus flowers and had no soul. That was why Zhang Guifang had no power over him.

As both Zhang Guifang and Feng Lin had been seriously wounded, they sent an urgent report to Grand Tutor Wen for reinforcements.

Jiang Ziya had also been pondering over the situation. "Though Nezha scored a victory, what can West Qi do if Zhaoge sends a larger army? We're still in danger," he thought. He took a bath, changed his robes, and went to see King Wu. "I've come to take my leave, Your Highness. I'm going to Mount Kunlun to see my master."

"The army beyond the city poses a grave threat to us, and no one can take your place. Prime Minister, don't be too long," King Wu urged.





则三朝，少则两日，即时就回。”武王许之。子牙出朝，回相府，对哪吒曰：“你与武吉好生守城，不必与张桂芳厮杀；待我回来，再作区画。”哪吒领命。子牙分付已毕，随借土遁往昆仑山来。怎见得，有诗为证：

玄里玄空玄内空，妙中妙法妙无穷。五行道术非凡术，  
一阵清风至玉宫。

话说子牙从土遁到得麒麟崖，落下土遁，见昆仑光景，嗟叹不已。自想：“一离此山，不觉十年。如今又至，风景又觉一新。”子牙不胜眷恋。怎见得好山：

烟霞散彩，日月摇光。千株老柏，万节修篁。千株老柏，带雨满山青染染；万节修篁，含烟一径色苍苍。门外奇花布锦，桥边瑶草生香。岭上蟠桃红锦烂，洞门茸草翠丝长。时闻仙鹤唳，每见瑞鸾翔。仙鹤唳时，声振九皋霄汉远；瑞鸾翔处，毛辉五色彩云光。白鹿玄猿时隐现，青狮白象任行藏。细观灵福地，果乃胜天堂。

子牙上昆仑，过了麒麟崖，行至玉虚宫，不敢擅入；在宫前等候多时，只见白鹤童子出来。子牙曰：“白鹤童儿，与吾通报。”白鹤童子见是子牙，忙入宫至八卦台下，跪而启曰：“姜尚在外听候玉旨。”元始点首：“正要他来。”童儿出宫，口称：“师叔，老爷有请。”子牙台下倒身拜伏，“弟子姜尚愿老师父圣寿无疆！”元始曰：“你今上山正好。命南极仙翁取‘封神榜’与你。可往岐山造一封神台。台上张挂‘封神榜’，把你的一生事俱完毕了。”子牙跪而告曰：“今有张桂芳，以左道傍门之术，征伐西岐。弟子道理微末，不能治伏。望老爷大发慈悲，提拔弟子。”元始曰：“你为人间



"I'll be only two or three days," Jiang Ziya promised and then summoned Nezha. "You and Wu Ji should do everything possible to guard the city during my absence. There's no need to engage Zhang Guifang. I'll make further plans after my return."

He left West Qi and rode invisibly on a dust cloud to the Unicorn Cliff, where he found the scenery there as enchanting as ever.

"It's been ten years, but the scenery is still fresh and new," he sighed.

Looking around, he saw that the clouds and haze in a riot of colors with the sun shining brilliantly behind. Cypress trees covered the mountains in a green cloak, and slender bamboos lay half-hidden in a light mist. Outside the Jade Emptiness Palace, exotic flowers bloomed and delicate grass exuded a sweet fragrance. Upon the peaks, peaches were just ripe, and before the caves, green herbs waved gracefully in the breeze. Fairy cranes could be heard calling high in the sky and phoenixes danced, displaying their colorful feathers. White deer and black monkeys could be seen now and then among the trees while black lions and white elephants roamed over the hillsides. A blessed land. A paradise.

He passed Unicorn Cliff and walked to the Jade Emptiness Palace. He dared not enter but waited there patiently until White Crane Lad chanced to come out.

"White Crane Lad, would you please report my arrival to my master. I would like to see him," he addressed the lad.

White Crane Lad entered the palace and knelt down before Heavenly Primogenitor. "Jiang Shang's waiting outside for your order.

The immortal nodded his head. "I've just been wanting to see him."

When Jiang Ziya entered, he knelt down and greeted his master, "May my master live forever!"

"I'm delighted that you've come. I was telling the Immortal of the South Pole to give you the 'List of Creations'. You must build a Terrace of Creation on Mount Qi and hang the list in it. Your life's mission is to be accomplished there."

But Jiang Ziya remained on his knees. "Zhang Guifang's using his powerful sorcery to lay siege to West Qi. As my learning is negligible, I'm powerless against him. I beg you to show some compassion and help me out of this predicament."

"You're a prime minister now, enjoying wealth and power. How can I concern myself with every aspect of your work! As West Qi's guarded



宰相，受享国禄，称为‘相父’。凡间之事，我贫道怎管得你的尽。西岐乃有德之人坐守，何怕左道傍门。事到危急之处，自有高人相辅。此事不必问我，你去罢。”子牙不敢再问，只得出宫。才出宫门首，有白鹤童儿曰：“师叔，老爷请你。”子牙听得，急忙回至八卦台下跪了。元始曰：“此一去，但凡有叫你的，不可应他。若是应他，有三十六路征伐你。东海还有一人等你，务要小心。你去罢。”子牙出宫，有南极仙翁送子牙。子牙曰：“师兄，我上山参谒老师，恳求指点，以退张桂芳，老师不肯慈悲，奈何，奈何！”南极仙翁曰：“上天数定，终不能移。只是有人叫你，切不可应他，着实要紧！我不得远送你了。”子牙捧定“封神榜”，往前行至麒麟崖，才驾土遁，脑后有人叫：“姜子牙！”子牙曰：“当真有人叫。不可应他。”后边又叫：“子牙公！”也不应。又叫：“姜丞相！”也不应。连声叫三五次，见子牙不应，那人大叫曰：“姜尚！你忒薄情而忘旧也！你今就做丞相，位极人臣，独不思在玉虚宫与你学道四十年，今日连呼你数次，应也不应！”子牙听得如此言语，只得回头看时，见一道人。怎见得，有诗为证：

头上青巾一字飘，迎风大袖衬轻绡。麻鞋足下生云雾，宝剑  
光华透九霄。葫芦里面长生术，胸内玄机隐六韬。跨虎  
登山随地是，三山五岳任逍遥。

话说子牙一看，原来是师弟申公豹。子牙曰：“兄弟，吾不知是你叫我。我只因师尊分付，但有人叫我，切不可应他。我故此不曾答应。得罪了！”申公豹问曰：“师兄手里拿着什么东西？”子牙曰：“是‘封神榜’。”公豹曰：“那里去？”子



by a virtuous ruler, you needn't fear sorcerers at all. In times of emergency, men of great talent will appear of their own accord. There's no need to ask me for help. You may go now," his master replied.

Jiang Ziya dared not make any further request and so left the Jade Emptiness Palace. But he had barely passed the gate when White Crane Lad hurried up from behind, calling, "Uncle, Grand Master asks you to see him again."

Jiang Ziya reentered and knelt down.

"Keep my words in mind. After leaving here, don't answer anybody calling you from behind. If you do, West Qi will suffer from thirty-six invasions. There'll be a man waiting for you in the East Sea district. Be careful. You may go now," the immortal told him.

As he left the palace, the Immortal of the South Pole came to see him off.

"I came here to beg him for help," Jiang Ziya complained. "But he's unwilling to help me. What shall I do now?"

"This is all destined by Heaven. The only thing now is not to answer anyone calling your name. I'm sorry that I can't escort you any further."

Jiang Ziya walked to the Unicorn Cliff holding the "List of Creations" in both hands. He was just about to get onto his dust cloud and ride off when he heard someone calling him from behind.

"Jiang Ziya, Jiang Ziya."

"So someone is calling me from behind. I mustn't answer him," he warned himself.

The man behind called him again, but he still refused to reply.

"Prime Minister Jiang!" the man shouted angrily. "Jiang Shang! So unfeeling as to forget your old friends. Though you're prime minister, how can you ignore me, when we have been together for forty years in the Jade Emptiness Palace! Why don't you answer when I've called so many times?"

Jiang Ziya could not help turning to look. He saw a man wearing a green scarf, a robe with long sleeves, and a pair of hemp sandals. He was carrying a glittering sword in his hand and a dried gourd on his back. It was Shen Gongbao, his fellow disciple at the Jade Emptiness palace.

"Brother, I didn't know that it was you. Master told me not to answer any call from behind. I'm sorry if I've offended you," he explained.

"What's that in your hands?" Shen Gongbao asked.

"It's the List of Creations."

"Where're you going now?"



牙道：“往西岐造封神台，上面张挂。”申公豹曰：“师兄，你如今保那个？”子牙笑曰：“贤弟，你说混话！我在西岐，身居相位，文王托孤，我立武王，三分天下，周土已得二分，八百诸侯，悦而归周，吾今保武王，灭纣王，正应上天垂象。岂不知凤鸣岐山，兆应真命之主。今武王德配尧、舜，仁合天心；况成汤旺气黯然，此一传而尽。贤弟反问，却是为何？”申公豹曰：“你说成汤旺气已尽，我如今下山，保成汤，扶纣王。子牙，你要扶周，我和你掣肘。”子牙曰：“贤弟，你说那里话！师尊严命，怎敢有违？”申公豹曰：“子牙，我有一言奉禀，你听我说，有一全美之法——到不如同我保纣灭周。一来你我弟兄同心合意；二来你我弟兄又不至参商；此不是两全之道。你意下如何？”子牙正色言曰：“兄弟言之差矣！今听贤弟之言，反违师尊之命。况天命人岂敢逆，决无此理。兄弟请了！”申公豹怒色曰：“姜子牙！料你保周，你有多大本领，道行不过四十年而已。你且听我道来。有诗为证：

炼就五行真妙诀，移山倒海更通玄。降龙伏虎随吾意，  
跨鹤乘鸾入九天。紫气飞升千万丈，喜时火内种金莲。  
足踏霞光闲戏耍，肖遥也过几千年。”

话说子牙曰：“你的功夫是你得，我的功夫是我得，岂在年数之多寡。”申公豹曰：“姜子牙，你不过五行之术，倒海移山而已，你怎比得我。似我，将首级取将下来，往空中一掷，遍游千万里，红云托接，复入颈项上，依旧还元返本，又复能言。似此等道术，不枉学道一场。你有何能，敢保周灭纣！你依我烧了‘封神榜’，同吾往朝歌，亦不失丞相之



"To West Qi to build a terrace to put this in."

"Which side are you on, Brother?"

Jiang Ziya smiled. "How can you be so absurd! I'm the prime minister of West Qi. Prince Wen entrusted me with the care of King Wu. Two-thirds of the kingdom belongs to us already, and the 800 marquises are glad to make obeisance to us. I am helping King Wu in his effort to dethrone King Zhou and fulfil the wishes of Heaven. Don't you know that the phoenix singing on Mount Qi is an omen of welcome for the new sage ruler? King Wu is as virtuous as Yao and Shun, and the kingly aura of the Shang Dynasty is fading and will disappear in this generation. But why do you ask me such a peculiar question?"

"In spite of your prediction, I'm going to leave this place right now and do my utmost to protect the Shang Dynasty and King Zhou. Jiang Ziya! I'll do all I can to hinder you if you help West Qi," Shen Gongbao said angrily.

"How can you say that, Brother! We must strictly obey Grand Master's orders. How dare you go against him?"

"Jiang Ziya! Listen to me. You'd better come over and help me destroy West Qi. That way we can remain friends, and there'll be no bad feelings between us. It's the best for both of us, don't you think?"

Jiang Ziya was serious now. "You're wrong, Brother. What you suggest runs contrary to Grand Master's orders and to the will of Heaven. It's absolutely out of the question!"

"Jiang Ziya!" Shen Gongbao grew even angrier. "What powers do you have? You spent a mere forty years here. But listen to what I can do: I can move mountains, stir up the oceans, subdue dragons and tigers, fly on a crane to the Ninth Heaven, plant lotus flowers in fire, and ride on auspicious light for thousands of years."

"There are your achievements, but I've got my own as well. One's success doesn't depend merely on the number of years one's spent," Jiang Ziya objected.

"Jiang Ziya! Your magic doesn't go beyond the five elements. You know only how to move mountains and stir up seas, and that's all. Don't you know that when my head is cut off and thrown up into the air, it can wander for thousands of miles on a piece of red cloud. When it returns to my neck, I become a perfect whole as before. Is that not wonderful?"





位。”子牙被申公豹所惑，暗想：“人的头乃六阳之首，刎将下来，游千万里，复入颈项上，还能复旧，有这样的法术，自是稀罕。”乃曰：“兄弟，你把头取下来。果能如此起在空中，复能依旧，我便把‘封神榜’烧了，同你往朝歌去。”申公豹曰：“不可失信！”子牙曰：“大丈夫一言既出，重若泰山，岂有失信之理。”申公豹去了道巾，执剑在手，左手提住青丝，右手将剑一刎，把头割将下来，其身不倒；复将头望空中一掷，那颗头盘盘旋旋，只管上去了。子牙乃忠厚君子，仰面呆看，其头旋得只见一些黑影。不说子牙受惑，且说南极仙翁送子牙不曾进宫去，在宫门前少憩片时。只见申公豹乘虎赶子牙，赶至麒麟崖前，指手画脚讲论。又见申公豹的头游在空中。仙翁曰：“子牙乃忠厚君子，险些儿被这孽障惑了！”忙唤：“白鹤童儿那里？”童子答曰：“弟子在。”

“你快化一只白鹤，把申公豹的头衔了，往南海走走来。”童子得法旨，便化鹤飞起，把申公豹的头衔着往南海去了。有诗为证：

左道傍门惑子牙，仙翁妙算更无差，邀仙全在申公豹，  
四九兵来乱似麻。

话说子牙仰面观头，忽见白鹤衔去。子牙跌足大呼曰：“孽障！怎的把头衔去了？”不知南极仙翁从后来，把子牙后心一巴掌。子牙回头看时，乃是南极仙翁。子牙忙问曰：“道兄，你为何又来？”仙翁指子牙曰：“你原来是一个呆子！申公豹乃左道之人，此乃些小幻术，你也当真！只用一时三刻，其头不到颈上，自然冒血而死。师尊分付你，不要应人，你为何又应他！你应他不打紧，有三十六路兵马来伐你。方才我在



What can you do? You just brag about helping King Wu. You'd better burn that list and come with me to Zhaoge. You can be prime minister there too."

Jiang Ziya was quite befuddled by Shen's words. "The head is the most vital organ of the body, but he can cut it off, throw it into the air, let it tour for thousands of miles and then have it return to his neck as before!" he thought, and then said to Shen, "Brother, if you cut your head off, and it does return to your neck, I'll burn the list and go with you to Zhaoge."

"You must keep your promise," Shen Gongbao demanded.

"A hero's promise is as weighty as Mount Tai. I won't break my word."

Shen Gongbao took off his scarf. Raising his sword in his right hand, he grasped his hair with his left, and cut his head off. His body remained erect. In a twinkling, he threw his head high up into the air. It whirled round and round and soared higher and higher. Jiang Ziya was naive. He watched in admiration as it disappeared.

The Immortal of the South Pole hadn't returned to the Jade Emptiness Palace straightway. He saw Shen Gongbao chasing Jiang Ziya to the Unicorn Cliff and then talking with him, gesticulating and stamping. Then he saw Shen's head fly high into the sky.

"Jiang Ziya's honest. He's being deceived by that wicked bastard," he thought, and instantly called, "Where's White Crane Lad?"

"Here I am, Master."

"Hurry! Transform yourself into a white crane at once, seize Shen's head, and carry it to the South Sea."

White Crane Lad immediately did as he was instructed.

Watching the sky attentively, Jiang Ziya stamped his feet when he saw what was happening. "What shall we do? A white crane's carried the head away," he cried.

Unexpectedly, the Immortal of the South Pole came up from behind him and slapped him vigorously on the back. He turned and saw the immortal. "Why have you come back again?"

The Immortal of the South Pole pointed at him and scolded, "You really are a fool. He's a sorcerer, but you're so easily taken in. If his head doesn't come back, he'll start bleeding and fall dead in three hours. Grand Master told you not to answer if anyone called you from behind.



玉虚宫门前，看着你和他讲话；他将此术惑你，你就要烧‘封神榜’；倘或烧了此榜，怎么了？我故叫白鹤童儿化一只仙鹤，衔了他的头往南海去，过了一时三刻，死了这孽障，你才无患。”子牙曰：“道兄，你既知道，可以饶了他罢。道心无处不慈悲，怜恤他多年道行，数载功夫，丹成九转，龙交虎成，真为可惜！”南极仙翁曰：“你饶了他；他不饶你。那时三十六路兵来伐你，莫要懊悔！”子牙就说：“后面有兵来伐我，我怎肯忘了慈悲，先行不仁不义。”不言子牙哀求南极仙翁。且说申公豹被仙鹤衔去了头，不得还体，心内焦躁，过一时三刻，血出即死，左难右难。且说子牙恳求仙翁，仙翁把手一招，只见白鹤童子把嘴一张，放下申公豹的头落将下来。不意落忙了，把脸落的朝着脊背。申公豹忙把手端着耳朵一磨，才磨正了。把眼睁开看，见南极仙翁站立。仙翁大喝一声：“把你这该死孽障！你把左道惑弄姜子牙，使他烧毁‘封神榜’，令子牙保纣灭周，这是何说？该拿到玉虚宫，见掌教老师去才好！”叱了一声：“还不退去，姜子牙，你好生去罢。”申公豹惭愧，不敢回言，上了白额虎，指子牙道：“你去！我叫你西岐顷刻成血海，白骨积如山！”申公豹恨恨而去。不表。

话说子牙捧“封神榜”，驾土遁往东海来。正行之际，飘飘的落在一座山上。那山玲珑剔透，古怪崎岖；峰高岭峻，云雾相连，近于海岛。有诗为证：

海岛峰高生怪云，崖傍松柏翠氤氲。峦头风吼如猛虎，拍浪穿梭似破军。异草奇花香馥馥，青松翠竹色纷纷。灵芝结就清灵地，真是蓬莱迥不群。

说话子牙贪看此山景物，堪描堪画，“我怎了却红尘，来到此间团瓢静坐，朗诵《黄庭》，方是吾心之愿。”话未



Why did you answer him? Don't you realize that now you will suffer thirty-six invasions? What would we do if you had burned the list! White Crane Lad has transformed himself into a white crane and carried the head to the South Sea. When Shen Gongbao dies, you'll be out of trouble."

"Brother, forgive him. The most important precept of Taoism is compassion and mercy. Take pity on him, for he's spent so much effort to achieve all this. It's cruel to see him die," Jiang Ziya protested.

"If you forgive him, he won't forgive you! Don't regret it when you suffer from thirty-six invasions," the Immortal of the South Pole warned.

"Even if I suffer at the hands of so many enemies, how can I forget the virtue of mercy?" Jiang Ziya persisted.

All the while Shen Gongbao was anxious to find his head. He knew that he would bleed to death if his head did not return within three hours.

Yielding to Jiang's earnest pleading, the Immortal of the South Pole waved his hand in the air, and the white crane opened its beak. In its haste, the head joined the neck with the face to the back. Shen quickly pulled his ears and turned it around. When he opened his eyes, he was astonished to see the immortal. The immortal rebuked him, "You beast! How dare you fool Jiang Ziya with your sorcery! You should be taken to the Jade Emptiness Palace for trial. Be off with you!" Then he turned to Jiang Ziya. "You may leave now. Be careful on your way."

Shen Gongbao was so humiliated that he dared not say a word to the immortal, but he turned to Jiang Ziya and said, "Go then! I'll turn West Qi into a sea of blood and a mountain of bones. I promise you that!

He stormed off, filling the place with hatred.

Jiang Ziya held the list in both hands and rode his dust cloud to the East Sea. He came to a mountain with exquisite rocks, high peaks, and steep cliffs. Clouds and mist merged together over tiny islands carpeted with exotic flowers and fragrant grass. Pine trees and bamboos covered the slopes. It was just like the Penglai fairyland.

Jiang Ziya was enchanted by the delightful scenery. "I wish I could give up the vulgar world to come here to meditate on a straw mat and recite the Taoist classics!" He thought.



了，只见海水翻波，旋风四起，风逞浪，浪翻雪练；水起波，波滚雷鸣；霎时间云雾相连，阴霾四合，笼罩山峰。子牙大惊曰：“怪哉！怪哉！”正看间，见巨浪分开，现一人赤条条的，大叫：“大仙！游魂埋没千载，未得脱体；前日清虚道德真君符命，言今日今时，法师经过，使游魂伺候。望法师大展威光，普济游魂，超出烟波，拔离苦海。洪恩万载！”子牙仗着胆子问曰：“你是谁，在此兴波作浪？有甚沉冤？实实道来。”那物曰：“游魂乃轩辕黄帝总兵官柏鉴也。因大破蚩尤，被火器打入海中，千年未能出劫。万望法师指超福地，恩同泰山。”子牙曰：“你乃柏鉴，听吾玉虚法牒，随往西岐山去候用。”把手一放，五雷响亮，振开迷关，速超神道。柏鉴现身拜谢。子牙大喜，随驾土遁往西岐山来。霎时风响，来到山前。只听狂风大作。怎见得好风，有诗为证：

细细微微播土尘，无影过树透荆榛，太公仔细观何物，却似朝歌五路神。

当时子牙看，原来是五路神来接。大呼曰：“昔在朝歌，蒙恩师发落，往西岐山伺候；今知恩师驾过，特来远接。”子牙曰：“吾择吉日，起造封神台，用柏鉴监造，若是造完，将榜张挂，吾自有妙用。”子牙分付柏鉴：“你就在此督造，待台完，吾来开榜。”五路神同柏鉴领法语，在岐山造台。

子牙回西岐，至相府。武吉、哪吒迎接，至殿中坐下，就问：“张桂芳可曾来搦战？”武吉回曰：“不曾。”子牙往朝中，见武王回旨。武王宣子牙至殿前，行礼毕。武王曰：“相父往昆仑，事体何如？”子牙只得模糊答应，把张桂芳事掩盖，不敢泄漏天机。武王曰：“相父为孤劳苦，孤心不安。”



As he stood there lost in thought, huge waves suddenly began to lash the shore, and a great wind arose. In an instant, black clouds filled the sky, completely enveloping the mountain. "How strange!" he cried out in alarm.

As he gazed at the churning sea, a huge wave split open and a completely naked man appeared.

"Great immortal! I've been a wandering soul for 1,000 years, never achieving reincarnation. A few days ago Virtue of the Pure Void told me that a great master would come this way today at this time, and he ordered me to attend on you. I beg you to release me from my suffering in this bitter sea. I will never forget your kindness," the man cried.

"Who are you?" Jiang Ziya asked. "Why do you remain here for so long? Tell me honestly."

"I'm none other than the soul of Bai Jian, a general under Xuanyuan. In a battle against Chi You, I was killed by a burning missile and fell into the sea. My soul's been confined here ever since. I beg that you let me enjoy a happy end. I will always be grateful for your kindness."

"So you're Bai Jian. By order of the Jade Emptiness Palace, you must come with me and offer your service to West Qi."

Jiang Ziya flung out his fingers and five peals of thunder roared, releasing Bai Jian's soul from the sea. Bai Jian immediately fell on his knees and kowtowed in gratitude.

With great delight, Jiang Ziya took him along and continued on his way to West Qi. Moments later, they reached their destination only to find a great wind raging through the trees, filling the air with dust. Jiang Ziya found to his surprise that the gods of the five routes had come to welcome him.

They cried in unison, "When we were at Zhaoge, you told us to come to Mount Qi and make ourselves ready to serve you. We knew that you would come this way today and came to meet you."

"I'll choose an auspicious date on which you'll start the construction of a Terrace of Creation. Bai Jian shall supervise the work. As soon as the terrace is completed, I'll come here to conduct the opening ceremony."

Bai Jian and the gods of the five routes acknowledged their orders and began the construction on Mount Qi. When Jiang Ziya returned to his mansion in West Qi City, he met Wu Ji and Nezha and asked them to be seated.

"Did Zhang Guifang challenge us?"

"No, he didn't," Wu Ji replied.



子牙曰：“老臣为国，当得如此，岂惮劳苦。”武王传旨：“设宴。”与子牙共饮数杯。子牙谢恩回府。次日，点鼓聚将，参谒毕。子牙传令：“众将官领简帖。”先令黄飞虎领令箭；哪吒领令箭；又令辛甲、辛免领令箭。子牙发放已毕。

且说张桂芳被哪吒打伤臂膊，正在营中保养伤痕，专候朝歌援兵，不知子牙劫营。二更时分，只听得一声炮响，喊声齐起，震动山岳；慌忙披挂上马。风林也上了马。及至出营，遍地周兵，灯毬火把，照耀天地通红，喊杀连声，山摇地动。只见辕门哪吒，登风火轮，摇火尖枪，冲杀而来，势如猛虎。张桂芳见是哪吒，不战自走。风林在左营，见黄飞虎骑五色神牛，使枪冲杀进来。风林大怒，“好反叛贼臣！焉敢夤夜劫营，自取死也！”纵青鬃马，使两根狼牙棒来取飞虎。牛马相逢，夜间混战。且说辛甲、辛免往右营冲杀，营内无将抵当，任意纵横，只杀到后寨，见周纪、南宫适监在陷车中，忙杀开纣兵，打开陷车救出，二将步行，抢得利刃在手，只杀得天崩地裂，鬼哭神愁，里外夹攻，如何抵敌。张桂芳与风林见不是势头，只得带伤逃归。遍地尸横，满地血水成流。三军叫苦，弃鼓丢锣，自己践踏，死者不计其数。张桂芳连夜败走至西岐山，收拾败残人马。风林上帐，与主将议事。桂芳曰：“吾自来提兵，未尝有败。今日在西岐损折许多人马，心上甚是不乐。”忙修告急本章，打进朝歌，速发援兵，共破反叛。且说子牙收兵，得胜回营。众将欢腾，齐声唱凯。正是：

鞍上将军如猛虎，得胜小校似欢彪。

话说张桂芳遣官进朝歌，来至太师府下文书。闻太师升殿，



Jiang Ziya then went to the palace to see King Wu. "What did you achieve on your trip to Mount Kunlun, Prime Minister?"

Jiang Ziya dared not tell him all the details, as the will of Heaven must be kept a secret. He also said nothing relating to Zhang Guifang.

"You've spared no pains in your service. I feel most uneasy, Prime Minister," King Wu said with concern.

"That's the way I should always serve the nation. Why should I be afraid of hard work!"

The following day, Jiang Ziya had the drums beaten to summon his generals. He issued orders to Huang Feihu, Nezha, Xin Jia, Xin Mian for that night.

Meanwhile Zhang Guifang was anxiously waiting for the reinforcements from Zhaoge. It never occurred to him that Jiang Ziya would make a night raid on his camp. Late that night, hearing the roar of cannons and the shouts of men, he hastily put on his armor, mounted his horse, and rode out of the camp with Feng Lin. In the red glow of hundreds of flaming torches, he saw that the Zhou warriors had completely vanquished his army.

Riding on his Wind-Fire Wheels and wielding his Fire-Tip Lance, Nezha fought his way towards them like a fierce tiger. At the sight of him, Zhang Guifang immediately took flight. Huang Feihu engaged Feng Lin in the left camp while Xin Jia and Xin Mian launched an attack on the right camp. They met little resistance and soon got through to the back camp, where they broke open the prison carts and set Nangong Kuo and Zhou Ji free.

The situation was hopeless. Zhang Guifang and Feng Lin had no choice but to escape while they could. Corpses lying in pools of blood littered the Shang camp, and the army was in tatters. Zhang Guifang took the remnants of his troops and retreated to Mount Qi.

"Never since I became a commander have I lost a battle. But today we've suffered a terrible defeat. I feel devastated!" Zhang Guifang told Feng Lin.

He hastily wrote an urgent report to Zhaoge requesting reinforcements. Jiang Ziya and his men, meanwhile, had returned to the city in triumph, singing and dancing.





聚将鼓响，众将参谒。堂候官将张桂芳申文呈上。太师拆开一看，大惊曰：“张桂芳征伐西岐，不能取胜，反损兵挫锐，老夫须得亲征，方克西土。奈因东南两路，屡战不宁；又见游魂关总兵窦荣不能取胜；方今贼盗乱生，如之奈何！吾欲去，家国空虚；吾不去，不能克服。”只见门人吉立上前言曰：“今国内无人，老师怎么亲征得，不若于三山五岳之中，可邀一二位师友，往西岐协助张桂芳，大事自然可定，何劳老师费心，有伤贵体。”只这一句话，断送修行人两对，封神台上且标名。不知凶吉何如，且听下回分解。

Grand Tutor Wen was holding a conference with his generals and advisors when Zhang Guifang's report arrived. He read it and gasped in astonishment. "I gave Zhang Guifang a big army, but the outcome's pitiful. He's not only unable to win but has suffered terrible losses. We've not been successful in the east or south either. In addition, numerous bands of brigands are staging uprisings all over the kingdom. What shall I do? How can I leave here when the country's so weak? But if I don't go, West Qi cannot be defeated."

Ji Li moved forward. "How can you go to the front and leave no responsible official in the palace? Why don't you invite some of your talented friends from the mountains and ask them to reinforce Zhang Guifang? The matter can then be settled, and you needn't worry about having to go there personally."

As a result of this decision, four Taoists lost their lives, and the first names appeared on the Terrace of Creation.

If you want to know what happened thereafter, just read the next chapter.





## 第三十八回

### 四圣西岐会子牙

诗曰：

王道从来先是仁，妄加征伐自沉沦。趋名战士如奔浪，逐劫神仙似断鳞。异术奇珍谁个是，争强图霸孰为真。不如闭目深山坐，乐守天真养自身。

话说闻太师听吉立之言，忽然想起海岛道友，拍掌大笑曰：“只因事冗杂，终日碌碌，为这些军民事务，不得宁暇，把这些道友都忘却了。不是你方才说起，几时得海宇清平。”分付吉立：“传众将知道：三日不必来见。你与余庆好生看守相府，吾去三两日就回。”太师骑了墨麒麟，挂两根金鞭，把麒麟顶上角一拍，麒麟四足自起风云，霎时间周游天下。有诗为证：

四足风云声响亮，麟生雾彩映金光，周游天下须臾至，方显玄门道术昌。

话说闻太师来至西海九龙岛，见那些海浪滔滔，烟波滚滚。把坐骑落在崖前。只见那洞门外：异花奇草般般秀，桧柏青松色色新。正是：只有仙家来往处，那许凡人到此间。正看玩时，见一童儿出，太师问曰：“你师父在洞否？”此童儿答曰：“家师在里面下棋。”太师曰：“你可通报：商都闻太师相访。”童儿进洞来，启老师曰：“商都闻太师相访。”只见四位道人听得此言，齐出洞来，大笑曰：“闻兄，那一阵风儿吹



## Chapter 38

### Four Holy Men in West Qi

At Ji Li's suggestion, Grand Tutor Wen recollected his old Taoist friends. He clapped his hands in delight and laughed. "I'm so busy all day long that I've completely forgotten my old friends. If you hadn't mentioned then, I don't know when we would have been able to subdue the rebellions," He said. He then ordered, "Generals, don't come and see me for three days. Ji Li and Yu Qing must stay here to guard my headquarters. I'll return in two or three days."

He then mounted his unicorn and clapped his hands on its horn. The beast rose swiftly onto the clouds and winds, enabling the Grand Tutor to traverse the universe in a twinkling. He went to Nine Dragon Island in the West Sea and landed near a cave on a peak. He was just admiring the scenery when he saw a lad coming out of the cave.

"Is your master in?" he asked.

"Yes. He's playing chess with his friends."

"Would you please tell him that Grand Tutor Wen of the Shang Dynasty's here to call on him?"

The four holy men came out of the cave to meet him. They laughed and asked, "Brother Wen! What wind brings you here?" They then ush-



你到此？”闻太师一见四人出来，满面笑容相迎，竟邀至里面，行礼毕，在蒲团坐下。四位道人曰：“闻兄自那里来？”太师答曰：“特来进谒。”道人曰：“吾等避迹荒岛之中，有何见谕，特至此地？”太师曰：“吾受国恩，与先王之托，官居相位，统领朝纲重务。今西岐武王驾下姜尚，乃昆仑门下，仗道欺公，助姬发作反。前差张桂芳领兵征伐，不能取胜。奈因东南又乱，诸侯猖獗，吾欲西征，恐家国空虚，自思无计，愧见道兄。若肯借一臂之力，扶危拯弱，以锄强暴，实闻仲万千之幸。”头一位道人答曰：“闻兄既来，我贫道一往，救援桂芳，大事自然可定。”只见第二位道人曰：“要去四人齐去，难道说王兄为得闻兄，吾等便就不去？”闻太师听罢大喜。——此乃是四圣，也是“封神榜”上之数：头一位姓王，名魔；二位姓杨，名森；三位姓高，名友乾；四位姓李，名兴霸；是灵霄殿四将。看官：大抵神道原是神仙做，只因根行浅薄，不能成正果朝元，故成神道。——且说王魔曰：“闻兄先回，俺们随后即至。”闻太师曰：“承道兄大德，求即幸临，不可羁滞。”王魔曰：“吾把童儿先将坐骑送往岐山，我们即来。”闻太师上了墨麒麟回朝歌。不表。

且说王魔等四人，一齐驾水遁往朝歌来。怎见得，有诗为证：

五行之内水为先，不用乘舟不驾船，大地乾坤顷刻至，  
碧游宫内圣人传。

话说四位道人到朝歌，收了水遁进城。朝歌军民一见，吓得魂不附体：王魔戴一字巾，穿水合服，面如满月；杨森莲子箍，似陀头打扮，穿皂服，面如锅底，须似硃砂，两道黄眉；高友乾挽双孤髻，穿大红服，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，上下獠牙；李兴霸戴鱼尾金冠，穿淡黄服，面如重枣，一部长



ered him inside, and when greetings had been exchanged, they sat down on the round straw cushions.

“Where do you come from, Brother?” they asked.

“I’ve come especially to pay you a visit.”

“We’re refugees on this bleak island. What instructions do you have for us?”

“I was entrusted with the post of grand tutor by the deceased king, but Jiang Shang, a disciple from Mount Kunlun, has been helping Ji Fa rebel. I sent Zhang Guifang to attack him, but he failed. I wish to go to the front myself, but I can’t leave the capital. With no alternative, I’ve come to beg for your help. I’ll greatly appreciate any help you can give me.”

“Brother, I’ll go and help Zhang Guifang,” Wang Mo answered.

Li Xingba said with finality, “We four must go together. How can we let you go alone!”

Grand Tutor Wen was greatly delighted.

The four holy men were to be the four generals under the Jade Emperor, and their names were therefore on the List of Creations. The first of them was Wang Mo, the second Yang Sen, the third Gao Youqian and the fourth Li Xingba. It must be remembered that gods were chosen from inferior immortals who could not achieve the Way.

“Brother Wen, go back at once. We’ll follow you to Zhaoge very soon,” Wang Mo suggested.

“The matter’s urgent. I beg you all to come without the least delay,” Grand Tutor Wen urged.

“I’ll tell my lad to send our saddle beasts to Mount Qi first, then we’ll come straightway,” Wang Mo promised.

Grand Tutor Wen mounted and returned to Zhaoge. The four holy men soon followed on a water cloud to Zhaoge. When they arrived, their appearance frightened the people terribly: Wang Mo wore a long scarf and a grey robe. His face was as round as the full moon. Yang Sen wore a monk’s ring around his head and a purple robe. His face was as black as the bottom of a cauldron, his beard was red as cinnabar and his eyebrows were yellow. Gao Youqian wore his red hair in two coils and was dressed in a scarlet robe. His face was indigo, and tusks protruded from his upper and lower jaws. Li Xingba wore a fish-tail gold coronet and a



髯；俱有一丈五六尺长，晃晃荡荡。众民看见，伸舌咬指。王魔问百姓曰：“闻太师府在那里？”有大胆的答曰：“在正南二龙桥就是。”四道人来至相府，太师迎人，施礼毕，传令：“摆上酒来。”左道之内，俱用荤酒，持斋者少。五位传杯。次日，闻太师入朝见纣王，言：“臣请得九龙岛四位道者，往西岐破武王。”纣王曰：“太师为孤佐国，何不请来相见？”太师领旨。不一时，领四位道人进殿来。纣王一见，魂不附体，“好凶恶像貌！”道人见纣王曰：“衲子稽首了！”纣王曰：“道者平身。”传旨：“命太师与朕代礼，显庆殿陪宴。”太师领旨。纣王回宫。且说五位在殿欢饮。王魔曰：“闻兄，待吾等成了功来，再会酒罢。我们去也。”四位道人离了朝门，太师送出朝歌。太师自回府中。不表。

且说四位道人驾水遁往西岐山来，霎时到了，落下水光，到张桂芳辕门。探马报入：“有四位道长至辕门候见。”张桂芳闻报，出营接入中军。张桂芳、风林参谒。王魔见二将欠身不便，问曰：“闻太师请俺们来助你；你想必着伤？”风林把臂膊被哪吒打伤之事说了一遍。王魔曰：“与吾看一看。……呀！原来是乾坤圈打的。”葫芦中取一粒丹，口嚼碎了搽上，即时全愈。桂芳也来求丹。王魔一样治度。又问：“西岐姜子牙在那里？”张桂芳曰：“此处离西岐七十里。因兵败至此。”王魔曰：“快起兵往西岐城去！”彼时张桂芳传令，一声炮响，三军呐喊，杀奔西岐，东门下寨。

子牙在相府，正议连日张桂芳败兵之事。探事马报来：“张桂芳起兵在东门安营。”子牙与众将官言曰：“张桂芳此来，必求有援兵在营，各要小心。”众将得令。



light yellow robe. His face was as dark as a dried date and he had a long beard. They were all about sixteen feet tall, and they walked through the streets swaying from side to side.

"Where's the mansion of Grand Tutor Wen?" Wang Mo asked some pedestrians.

"It's near the Twin Dragon Bridge, in the central south part of the city," one of the bolder citizens answered.

They soon found the place. Grand Tutor Wen came out to meet them and entertained them in his home. The next day, Grand Tutor Wen took them to the palace to see King Zhou. Grand Tutor Wen first entered the court alone.

"I have invited four sages from Nine Dragon Island to help us in West Qi," he told King Zhou.

"You're of great assistance to me, Grand Tutor. Let me see them," King Zhou answered gladly.

When Grand Tutor Wen led them into the court, King Zhou was terrified by their appearance. "How fearsome and evil they look!" he thought, and ordered that they be entertained. "Grand Tutor Wen may act as host in my place."

When he had returned to his apartments, Grand Tutor Wen and the four holy men ate and drank happily.

"Brother Wen! We must go to the front now. We'll come back here and drink with you again as soon as the rebels are subdued," Wang Mo said.

The four of them immediately left the palace and Grand Tutor Wen saw them off beyond the city of gates. They reached their destination in a minute and requested to see Zhang Guifang. Both Zhang Guifang and Feng Lin came out to meet them and usher them in. When he found that both Zhang and Feng had difficulty moving around, Wang Mo asked. "At the request of Grand Tutor Wen, we've come here to help you. I see you cannot move freely. Are you wounded?"

Feng Lin told them the whole story.

"Show me your wound."

He took a grain of elixir from his gourd, ground it between his teeth and applied it to Feng's wound. It healed instantly. He healed Zhang Guifang the same way.

"Where's Jiang Ziya now?" Wang Mo asked.

"He's in West Qi City, about seventy *li* from here. We retreated after being defeated," Zhang Guifang replied.





且说王魔在帐中坐下，对张桂芳曰：“你明日出阵前，坐名要姜子牙出来。吾等俱隐在旗幡脚下；待他出来，我们会他。”杨森曰：“张桂芳、风林，你把这符贴在你的马鞍鞍上，各有话说。我们的坐骑乃是奇兽；战马见了，骨软筋酥，焉能站立。”二将领命。且说次日，张桂芳全妆甲冑，上马至城下，坐名只要姜子牙答话。报马进相府，报：“张桂芳请丞相答话。”子牙不把张桂芳放在心上，料只如此，传令：“摆五方队伍出城。”炮声响亮，城门大开。只见：

青幡招展，一池荷叶舞青风；素带施张，满苑梨花飞瑞雪。红幡闪烁，烧山烈火一般同；皂盖飘摇，乌云盖住铁山顶。杏黄旗磨动，护中军战将；英雄如猛虎，两边摆打阵众英豪。

话说宝纛幡下，子牙骑青鬃马，手提宝剑。桂芳一马当先。子牙曰：“败军之将，又有何面目至此？”张桂芳曰：“‘胜败军家常事’，何得为愧。今非昔比，不可欺敌！……”言还未毕，只听得后面鼓响，旗幡开处，走出四样异兽：王魔骑狻猊，杨森骑狻猊，高友乾骑的是花斑豹，李兴霸骑的是狰，四兽冲出阵来。子牙两边战将都跌翻下马，连子牙撞下鞍鞵。这些战马经不起那异兽恶气冲来，战马都骨软筋酥。——内中只是哪吒风火轮，不能动摇；黄飞虎骑五色神牛，不曾挫锐；以下都跌下马来。四道人见子牙跌得冠斜袍绽，大笑不止；大呼曰：“不要慌！慢慢起来！”子牙忙整衣冠，再一看时，见四位道人好凶恶之相：脸分青、白、红、黑，各骑古怪异兽。子牙打稽首曰：“四位道兄，那座名山？何处洞府？今到此间，有何分付？”子牙道罢，王魔曰：“姜子



"Bring your troops back to the city," Wang Mo directed.

Amidst the yelling of soldiers and the roaring of cannons, Zhang Guifang's army rushed back to West Qi and camped outside the east gate.

When news got to Jiang Ziya, he said to his generals, "Zhang Guifang must have gotten reinforcements. We must be very careful."

In the Shang camp, Wang Mo was telling Zhang Guifang, "When you give the challenge, demand Jiang Ziya. We'll conceal ourselves among the banners and won't emerge until he comes out."

Yang Sen told Zhang Guifang and Feng Lin, "Stick these charms on your saddles tomorrows. Our strange beasts will fill all the other horses with terror. Without these charms, you might be thrown to the ground."

The next day, Zhang Guifang donned his armor and led his army to the city wall, where he demanded that Jiang Ziya come out and meet him. Jiang Ziya took action at once. Amidst the roar of cannons, his troops came out of the city in five square formations. Jiang Ziya rode out on his black-maned horse under the flags, carrying a sword in his hand. Zhang Guifang galloped forward alone to meet him.

"As a defeated general, aren't you ashamed to meet me again today?" Jiang Ziya greeted him sarcastically.

"Why should I feel ashamed? Don't you know that victory and defeat are commonplace events to a soldier? Things have changed now. Don't try to insult us!" At the beating of drums, four strange animals suddenly appeared behind Zhang Guifang. Wang Mo rode on a monster, Yang Sen on a lion, Gao Youqian on a spotted leopard, and Li Xingba also on a monster with a single horn and several tails. As soon as they appeared, all the horses on the West Qi side leapt and reared in fright, throwing Jiang Ziya and all his generals to the ground. Nezha alone remained on his Wind-Fire Wheels and Huang Feihu on his divine ox. When they saw Jiang Ziya on the ground, hat crooked and robes awry, the four men burst into loud laughter.

"Don't panic! Get up nice and easy now!" they said to him sarcastically.

Jiang Ziya straightened his hat and robes and looked at the four evil-looking Taoists confronting him. He addressed them politely with a bow. "How do you do, Brothers. Where do you come from? What can I do for you?"



牙，吾乃九龙岛炼气士王魔、杨森、高友乾、李兴霸也。你我俱是道门。只因闻太师相招，特地到此。我等莫非与子牙解围，并无他意。不知子牙可依得贫道三件事情？”子牙曰：“道兄分付，莫说三件，便三十件可以依得。但说无妨。”王魔曰：“头一件：要武王称臣。”子牙曰：“道兄差矣。吾主公武王，死是商臣，奉法守公，并无欺上，何不可之有？”王魔曰：“第二件：开了库藏，给散三军赏赐。第三件：将黄飞虎送出城，与张桂芳解回朝歌。你意下如何？”子牙曰：“道兄分付，极是明白；容尚回城，三日后作表，敢烦道兄带回朝歌谢恩，再无他议。”两边举手：“请了！”正是：

且说三事权依允，二上昆仑走一遭。

话说子牙同将进城，入相府，升殿坐下。只见武成王跪下曰：“请丞相将我父子解送桂芳行营，免累武王。”子牙忙忙扶起，曰：“黄将军，方才三件事，乃权宜暂允他，非有他意。彼骑的俱是怪兽，众将未战，先自落马，挫动锐气，故此将机就计，且进城再作他处。”黄将军谢了子牙，众将散讫。子牙乃香汤沐浴，分付武吉、哪吒防守。子牙驾土遁，二上昆仑，往玉虚宫而来。有诗为证：

道术传来按五行，不登雾彩最轻盈。  
须臾直过扶桑径，咫尺行来至玉京。

且说子牙到了玉虚宫，不敢擅入。候白鹤童子出来，子牙曰：“白鹤童儿，通报一声。”白鹤童子至碧游床，跪而言曰：“启老爷：师叔姜尚在宫外候法旨。”元始分付：“命来。”子牙进宫，倒身下拜。元始曰：“九龙岛王魔等四人在



"We're from Nine Dragon Island. We're Wang Mo, Yang Sen, Gao Youqian and Li Xingba, all Taoists, like yourself. We've come here at Grand Tutor Wen's bidding to help you out of trouble. All you have to do is accept our three proposals," Wang Mo said.

"What are they, Brother? Tell me frankly. If they're good, I'll accept even thirty proposals," Jiang Ziya replied promptly.

"First of all, King Wu should know his place as a subject of the Shang Dynasty," Wang Mo said.

"You're mistaken, Brother. King Wu's always been a loyal subject of the Shang Dynasty. He behaves himself strictly according to the law and justice and has never insulted his superiors. He's already fulfilled your requirement."

"The second is that you open all your treasurehouses and distribute everything in them among the Shang soldiers. The third is that you hand over Huang Feihu to Zhang Guifang. What do you say?"

"Your proposals are reasonable. I'll return to the city and write a memorial. I'll trouble you to take it back and thank His Majesty for the favor he's bestowed on us. We've no other considerations," Jiang Ziya answered without hesitation.

The two sides then exchanged courtesies and returned to their own camps, waiting for an armistice. Jiang Ziya returned to the city and sat down in the main hall. Huang Feihu came forward and knelt before him.

"Prime Minister, please bind up my family and send us to Zhang Guifang, lest King Wu suffer because of us," he begged.

Jiang Ziya hurriedly helped him to his feet and explained, "General Huang. I accepted the three demands just now as a matter of expediency. In the face of those strange beasts, all our generals had fallen from their horses before the combat had even begun. How could we fight a battle in such an awkward situation! I had to follow a policy of appeasement so as to return to the city and consider how to deal with the matter."

Huang Feihu thanked Jiang Ziya, and the generals gathered there soon dispersed. Jiang Ziya burned incense, took a bath and then ordered that Wu Ji and Nezha guard his mansion. He set out on his second trip to Mount Kunlun. When he arrived, he dared not enter unauthorized and waited patiently until White Crane Lad appeared. He asked him to report his arrival to Heavenly Primogenitor.

Granted admittance, Jiang Ziya kowtowed before his master respectfully.



西岐伐你。他骑的四兽，你未曾知道。此物乃万兽朝苍之时，种种各别，龙生九种，色相不同。白鹤童子，你往桃园里把我的坐骑牵来。”白鹤童儿往桃园内，牵了四不相来。怎见得，有诗为证：

麟头豸尾体如龙，足踏祥光至九重。四海九州随意遍，  
三山五岳霎时逢。

童儿把四不相牵至。元始曰：“姜尚，也是你四十年修行之功，与贫道代理封神，今把此兽与你骑往西岐，好会三山、五嶽、四渎之中奇异之物。”又命南极仙翁取一木鞭，——长三尺六寸五分，有二十一节；每一节有四道符印，共八十四道符印，名曰“打神鞭”。——子牙跪而接受；又拜恳曰：“望老师大发慈悲！”元始曰：“你此一去，往北海过，还有一人等你。贫道将此中央戊己之旗付你。旗内有简，临迫之际，当看此简，便知端的。”子牙叩首辞别，出玉虚宫。南极仙翁送子牙至麒麟崖。子牙上了四不相，把顶上角一拍，那兽一道红光起去，铃声响亮，往西岐来。正行之间，那四不相飘飘落在一座山上。山近连海岛。怎见得好山：

千峰排戟，万仞开屏。日映岚光轮岭外，雨收岱色冷含烟。藤缠老树，雀占危岩。奇花瑶草，修竹乔松。幽鸟啼声近，滔滔海浪鸣。重重谷壑芝兰绕，处处嶙崖苔藓生。起伏峦头龙脉好，必有高人隐姓名。

话说子牙看罢山，只见山脚下一股怪云卷起。云过处生风，风响处见一物，好生跷蹊古怪。怎见得：

头似驼，狰狞凶恶；项似鹅，挺折枭雄。须似虾，或上或下；耳似牛，凸暴双睛。身似鱼，光辉灿烂；手似



"I already know that the four Taoists from Nine Dragon Island are making trouble in West Qi. The four beasts they ride were born in ancient times when all wild beasts made obeisance to Heaven. Though they were all born of the same dragon, they're different in appearance and nature. White Crane Lad, go to the stable in the peach garden and bring my nondescript to Jiang Shang," the Grand Master ordered.

The immortal's saddle beast had the head of a unicorn, the tail of a wolf and the body of a dragon; hence the name. It was soon brought before them.

"As you achieved great merit in your forty years of study here, I've chosen you to create gods on my behalf. I'm giving you my own saddle beast so that you'll be able to meet all the strange creatures on earth without fear."

The Grand Master then asked the Immortal of the South Pole to fetch a wooden staff. It was three feet and six and a half inches long, had twenty-one joints, and four charms on each joint. It was the Staff for Beating Gods. Jiang Ziya knelt down to receive it from Heavenly Primegenitor and begged for his compassion.

"There'll be a man waiting for you at the North Sea," his master told him. "Use this magic flag to protect yourself. There's a note hidden inside. When you're facing an emergency, take it out and read it, and you'll learn how to cope with the situation."

Jiang Ziya kowtowed, bade his master farewell, and left the mountain. The Immortal of the South Pole escorted him to the Unicorn Cliff, where Jiang Ziya mounted his nondescript. At a light tap on the horn, the beast shot through the air on a ray of red light to the sound of resonant bells. A short while later, it dropped down onto a mountain near an island in the sea. The mountain had a thousand peaks like folding screens that reflected sunlight after the rain. Creepers wrapped around ancient trees, and little birds made their nests on high cliffs. The mountainsides were dotted with rare and fragrant flowers, long bamboos and stout pine trees. Birds chirped their sweet songs, and waves roared below. It would have been an ideal hermitage for a highly cultured man.

Jiang Ziya was admiring the scenery when strange clouds suddenly appeared at the foot of the mountain. As the clouds dispersed a great wind arose, and in its midst a strange creature appeared. It had the head of a camel, the neck of a goose, the body of a fish, a beard like a shrimp, hands like the talons of a hawk, and a single foot like that of a tiger. The creature had absorbed the ethers of Heaven and earth and had been



莺，电灼钢钩。足似虎，钻山跳涧；龙分种，降下异形。采天地灵气，受日月之精。发手运石多玄妙，口吐人言盖世无。龙与豹交真可羨，来扶明主助皇图。

话说子牙一见，魂不附体，吓了一身冷汗。那物大叫一声曰：“但吃姜尚一块肉，延寿一千年！”子牙听罢，“原来是要吃我的。”那东西又一跳将来，叫：“姜尚，我要吃你！”子牙曰：“吾与你无隙无仇，为何要吃我？”妖怪答曰：“你休想逃脱今日之厄！”子牙把杏黄旗轻轻展开，看里面简帖，“……原来如此。”子牙曰：“那孽障，我该你口里食，料应难免。你只把我杏黄旗儿拔起来，我就与你吃；拔不起来，怨命。”子牙把旗望地上一戳。那旗长有二丈有余。那妖怪伸手来拔，拔不起来；两只手拔，也拔不起；用阴阳手拔，也拔不起来；便将双手只到旗根底下，把头颈子挣的老长的，也拔不起来。子牙把手望空中一撒，五雷正法，雷火交加，一声响，吓的那东西要放手，不意把手长在旗上了。子牙喝一声：“好孽障！吃吾一剑！”那物叫曰：“上仙饶命！念吾不识上仙玄妙，此乃申公豹害了我！”子牙听说申公豹的名字，子牙问曰：“你要吃我，与申公豹何干？”妖怪答曰：“上仙，吾乃龙须虎也。自少昊时生我，采天地灵气，受阴阳精华，已成不死之身。前日申公豹往此处过，说：‘今日今时姜子牙过时，若吃他一块肉，延年万载。’故此一时愚昧，大胆欺心，冒犯上仙。不知上仙道高德隆，自古是慈悲道德，可怜念我千年辛苦，修开十二重楼，若赦一生，万年感德！”子牙曰：“据你所言，你拜吾为师，我就饶你。”龙须虎曰：“愿拜老爷为师。”子牙曰：“既如此，你闭了目。”



refined by the essence of the sun and moon. It could throw boulders and rocks with extraordinary speed and accuracy and speak like a man. It had been born of a dragon and a leopard and was destined to support the illustrious ruler in founding a new dynasty.

When he saw this fearsome creature, Jiang Ziya was frightened out of his wits and broke out in a cold sweat. "Jiang Ziya! A piece of your flesh, and I'll live thousands of years," the creature cried.

"Me, for food?!" Jiang Ziya said to himself.

The creature jumped nearer. "Jiang Shang, let me take a bite of your flesh."

"But why? No enmity exists between us!"

"Jiang Ziya, don't imagine that you can escape today," the creature answered harshly.

Jiang Ziya gently opened his Apricot Yellow Flag, took out the note and read it over. He knew now what he had to do. "Beast!" he shouted. "If I'm destined to be your food, I won't be able to escape. Just pull up this flag and I'll let you eat me."

He stuck the flag in the ground, and it grew at once to about twenty feet high. The creature came up and tried to pull it out. First he tried with one hand and then with both hands, but the flag did not move. His hands slipped down to the bottom end of the pole near the ground, and he pulled with his neck stretched straight out. Yet again he failed.

Jiang Ziya then opened his palm towards the sky, invoking lightning and five peals of thunder. The noise so frightened the creature that he tried to let go of the flag pole, but his hands were stuck.

"You fool! It's your end now," Jiang Ziya said sternly.

"Mercy, great immortal! I'm so sorry that I failed to recognize you as a celestial being. Please forgive me. I'm innocent. It's all Shen Gongbao's fault," the creature pleaded.

"You intended to harm me! What's it got to do with Shen Gongbao?"

"Great immortal! I'm Dragon Beard Tiger. I was born during the time of Emperor Shao Hao. Since then I've lived on the essence from the sun and moon. The day before yesterday, Shen Gongbao passed here and told me that you would come this way at this hour today. He said that a piece of your flesh would give me over ten thousand years of life. He fooled me, but I was stupid to believe him. I didn't know that you had such great magic powers. Please show mercy on me, as I've so painstakingly cultivated and refined myself for several thousand years. If you spare my life, I would be eternally grateful."

"I'll only spare your life on the condition that you be my disciple."





龙须虎闭目。只听得空中一声雷响，龙须虎也把手放了，倒身下拜。——子牙北海收了龙须虎为门徒。——子牙问曰：“你在此山，可曾学得些道术？”龙须虎答曰：“弟子善能发手有石。——随手放开，便有磨盘大石头，飞蝗骤雨，打的满山灰土迷天，随发随应。”子牙大喜：“此人用之劫营，到处可以成功。”子牙收了杏黄旗，随带龙须虎，上了四不相，迳往西岐城；落下坐骑，来至相府。众将迎接，猛见龙须虎在子牙后边，众将吓的痴呆了：“姜丞相惹了邪气来了！”子牙见众将猜疑，笑曰：“此是北海龙须虎也，乃是我收来门徒。”众将进到府，参谒已毕。子牙问城外消息，武吉曰：“城外不见动静。”子牙打点一场大战。

且说张桂芳在营五日，不见子牙出城来犒赏三军，把黄飞虎父子解到营里来；乃对四位道人曰：“老师，姜尚五日不见消息，其中莫非有诈？”王魔曰：“他既依允，难道失信与我等！西岐城管教他血满城池，尸成山岳。”又过三日，杨森对王魔曰：“道兄，姜子牙至八日还不出来，我们出去会他，问个端的。”张桂芳曰：“姜尚那日见势不好，将言俯就；姜尚外有忠诚，内怀奸诈。”杨森曰：“既如此，我等出去。若是诱哄我等，我们只消一阵成功，早与你班师回去。”风林传下令去，点炮，三军呐喊，杀至城下，请子牙答话。探事马报入相府。子牙带哪吒、龙须虎、武成王，骑



"I will, sir."

"Then close your eyes," Jiang Ziya ordered.

As soon as Dragon Beard Tiger closed his eyes, a huge thunderbolt roared through the air. Finding his hands free, he knelt down before Jiang Ziya.

"Do you know any Taoist magic arts?"

"I can produce rocks as big as millstones out of thin air with a flick of my hand and throw them out like a plague of locusts or a thunderstorm. When I practice my art, the dust rises all over the mountain and covers the whole sky."

"If we use this man, we'll succeed everywhere," Jiang Ziya thought to himself.

He picked up his flag and took Dragon Beard Tiger with him to West Qi, where he met the generals outside his residence. They were alarmed by Dragon Beard Tiger's appearance. The prime minister's brought an ugly specter back with him, they thought.

Jiang Ziya smiled. "This is Dragon Beard Tiger from the North Sea. He's my new disciple." He then entered the mansion and asked about the situation outside the city.

"Everything's been quiet," Wu Ji answered.

As five days had passed, and Huang Feihu had not yet been brought to him, Zhang Guifang said to the four Taoists, "Masters, don't you think that Jiang Shang's playing some trick on us? We've heard nothing from him in five days."

"Since he's promised us, he can't possibly break his word. Doesn't he fear that we would turn West Qi into a 'lake of blood and mountain of bones'?" Wang Mo said confidently.

Another three days passed. Yang Sen said to Wang Mo, "Brother, this is the eighth day, but Jiang Ziya still hasn't appeared. Let's go out and ask him the reason."

"Jiang Shang may look honest, but he's treacherous at heart. He may have played a trick to fool us when he realized that the situation was unfavorable to him that day," Zhang Guifang put in.

"If that be so, let's go now. If he has deceived us, we'll help you win in a single battle," Yang Sen promised angrily.

Feng Lin then took his army to the city wall amidst the roar of cannons and the savage shouts of his men. A demand was made for Jiang Ziya to come out and meet them.

Jiang Ziya mounted his beast and rode out of the city with Nezha,



四不相出城。王魔一见大怒：“好姜尚！你前日跌下马去，却原来往昆仑山借四不相，要与俺们见个雌雄！”把狻猊一磕，执剑来取子牙。傍有哪吒登开风火轮，摇火尖枪大叫：“王魔少待伤吾师叔！”冲杀过来。轮兽相交，枪剑并举，好场大战！怎见得：

两阵上幡摇摇战鼓，剑枪交加霞光吐。枪是乾元秘授来，剑法冰山多威武。哪吒发怒性刚强；王魔宝剑谁敢阻。哪吒是乾元山上宝和珍；王魔一心要把成汤辅。枪剑并举没遮拦，只杀的两边儿郎寻斗赌。

话说二将大战，哪吒使发了那一条枪与王魔力敌。正战间，杨森骑着狻猊，见哪吒枪来得利害，剑乃短家火，招架不开。杨森在豹皮囊中取一粒开天珠，劈面打来，正中哪吒，打翻下风火轮去。王魔急来取首级，早有武成王黄飞虎催开五色神牛，把枪一摆，冲将过来，救了哪吒。王魔复战飞虎。杨森二发奇珠，黄飞虎乃是马上将军，怎经得一珠，打下坐骑来。早被龙须虎大叫曰：“莫伤吾大将，我来了！”王魔一见大惊，“是个什么妖精出来！”怎见得：

古怪跷蹊相，头大颈子长。独足只是跳，眼内吐金光。  
身上鳞甲现，两手似钩枪。炼成奇异术，发手磨盘强。  
但逢龙须虎，不死也着伤。

话说高友乾骑着花斑豹，见龙须虎凶恶，忙取混元宝珠，劈脸打来，正中龙须虎的脖子，打的扭着头跳。左右救回黄飞虎。王魔、杨森二骑来擒子牙。子牙只得将剑招架，来往冲杀。子牙左右无佐，三将着伤，救回去了。不防李兴霸把劈地珠照子牙打来，正中前心。子牙“噯呀”一声，几乎坠



Dragon Beard Tiger and Huang Feihu. The moment he saw them, Wang Mo flew into a rage. "Damn you, Jiang Shang! You sneaked off to Mount Kunlun for the nondescript!"

He whipped his monster into a gallop and charged at Jiang Ziya with a drawn sword. Nezha intercepted him on his Wind-Fire Wheels, crying, "Wang Mo, you just dare try to hurt my uncle!"

As Wang Mo and Nezha fought fiercely, sword against lance, Yang Sen could see that with his short sword, Wang Mo could get nowhere near his opponent. Nezha was gaining the upper hand. He quickly took a Sky Breaking Pearl from his leopard-skin bag and flung it at Nezha. Nezha was struck a heavy blow and tumbled from his wheels. But as Wang Mo rushed forward to cut his head off, he was intercepted by Huang Feihu. Nezha was saved, and the battle continued between Wang Mo and Huang Feihu.

At the first opportunity, Yang Sen took a second Sky Breaking Pearl from his bag and hurled it at Huang Feihu, knocking him from his ox. But Dragon Beard Tiger came to his rescue, crying, "Don't hurt him! I'm coming!"

Wang Mo was shocked at the sight of Dragon Beard Tiger and gasped. The creature looked so queer: a huge head, a long neck, one foot, golden lights from his round eyes, a body covered with scales and fingers as strong as steel claws.

On his spotted leopard, Gao Youqian saw Dragon Beard Tiger leap savagely at Wang Mo and hurriedly took his Universe Muddling Pearl from his bag. He hurled it at Dragon Beard Tiger and hit him right on the neck. Dragon Beard Tiger hopped wildly with pain, thrashing his head from side to side.

Wang Mo and Yang Sen immediately rushed at Jiang Ziya, attempting to seize him. His three generals wounded, Jiang Ziya was left all alone to face the enemy. He fought valiantly, but was soon caught off guard by Li Xingba, who hit him in the heart with an Earth Spitting Pearl. He uttered a loud cry and almost fell from his saddle. He fled in the direction of the North Sea.

"I'll capture him!" Wang Mo shouted and set off in pursuit like a whirlwind.

Though Jiang Ziya was badly wounded, he could still hear someone chasing him close behind. He patted the horn of the nondescript and it immediately soared into the air.



骑；带四不相望北海上逃走。王魔曰：“待吾去拿了姜尚。”来赶子牙；似飞云风卷，如弩箭离弦。子牙虽是伤了前心，听的后面赶来，把四不相的角一拍，起在空中。王魔笑曰：“总是道门之术！你欺我不会腾云。”把狻狂一拍，也起在空中，随后赶来。——子牙在西岐有七死三灾，此是遇四圣，头一死。——王魔见赶不上子牙，复取开天珠望后心一下，把子牙打翻下骑来，骨碌碌滚下山坡，面朝天，打死了。四不相站在一旁。王魔下骑，来取子牙首级。忽然听的半山中作歌而来：

“野水清风拂柳，池中水面飘花。借问安居何处，白云深处为家。”

话说王魔听歌，看时，乃五龙山云霄洞文殊广法天尊。王魔曰：“道兄来此何事？”广法天尊答曰：“王道友，姜子牙害不得！贫道奉玉虚宫符命在此，久等多时。只因五事相凑，故命子牙下山：一则成汤气数已尽；二则西岐真主降临；三则吾阐教犯了杀戒；四则姜子牙该享西地福禄，身膺将相之权；五则与玉虚宫代理封神。道友，你截教中逍遥自在，无拘无束，为甚么恶气纷纷，雄心赳赳。可知道你那碧游宫上有两句说的好：

紧闭洞门，静诵‘黄庭’三两卷；身投西土，‘封神台’上有名人。

你把姜尚打死，虽死还有回生时候。道友，依我，你好生回去，这还是一月未缺；若不听吾言，致生后悔。”王魔曰：“文殊广法天尊，你好大话！我和你一样规矩，怎言月缺难圆。难道你有名师，我无教主！”王魔动了无明之火，持



Wang Mo laughed. "That's commonplace for a Taoist! You think that I'm unable to fly with the clouds?"

He patted his monster, and it leapt into the air after Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya was destined to die seven times and meet three calamities. This was to be his first death at the hands of the four men.

Wang Mo was left far behind, so he cast his Sky Breaking Pearl at Jiang's back. The pearl hit him with such force that he was knocked from his nondescript. He fell down and rolled onto his back, dying with his face to the sky. The nondescript stood close beside him.

Wang Mo was about to dismount and cut off Jiang Ziya's head when he heard someone approach, singing:

Breezes stir the willows on a pool,  
And petals fall and float on the water.  
Should anyone ask me where I reside,  
My home's in the depths of clouds so white.

Wang Mo looked around and found that the singer was none other than the Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture.

"What brings you here, Brother?" he asked politely.

"Dear friend, don't hurt him. On orders from the Jade Emptiness Palace, I have been waiting here for you a long time. Jiang Ziya is to accomplish his missions and Heaven has determined the following: 1) The Shang Dynasty is destined to end; 2) A sage ruler born in West Qi will rule; 3) Chan Taoism is fated to break the commandment on killing; 4) Jiang Ziya is destined to enjoy wealth and power in the vulgar world; and 5) he is to create gods on behalf of the Jade Emptiness Palace.

"Friend, as a member of Jie Taoism, you're most carefree. Why do you involve yourself in other people's affairs? Don't you remember what your master wrote on the wall of his Green Touring Palace? 'Close your cave door and read the sutras; set foot on western soil and you're on the List of Creations!' You may kill him, but I can still revive him. Friend, take my advice and return to your cave while your moon's still full. If you don't, it'll be too late for regrets," the Heavenly Master said earnestly.

"You brag too much," Wang Mo said. "We're all disciples of Taoism. How can you insult me with warnings about the full moon? Though you've got a powerful master, I've got mine too."



剑在手，睁睛欲来取文殊广法天尊。只见天尊后面有一道童，挽抓髻，穿淡黄服，大叫：“王魔少待行凶，我来了！”——广法天尊门徒金吒是也；拎剑直奔王魔。王魔手中剑对面交还。来往盘旋，恶神厮杀。有诗为证：

来往交还剑吐光，二神斗战五龙岗，行深行浅皆由命，  
方知天意灭成汤。

话说王魔、金吒恶战山下，文殊广法天尊取一物，——此宝在玄门为遁龙桩，久后在释门为七宝金莲。——上有三个金圈，往上一举，落将下来。王魔急难逃脱，颈子上一圈，腰上一圈，足下一圈，直立的靠定此桩。金吒见宝缚了王魔，手起剑落。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。

He raised his sword and rushed angrily at the Heavenly Master. But a young Taoist in a yellow robe with coiled hair stepped out from behind the great immortal. "Wang Mo! Enough of your violence. Here I come! I'm Jinzha, disciple of the Heavenly Master."

He raised his sword to meet the assault from Wang Mo and they fought desperately sword against sword at the foot of the mountain.

As the combat raged on, the Heavenly Master took out his Invisible Dragon Stake. It was to be known as the Seven Treasure Golden Lotus among Buddhists. He had used it to subdue Nezha and save Li Jing.

The Heavenly Master tossed it into the air, and it came down on Wang Mo, binding him to the stake. One ring tightly bound his neck, the second his waist, and the third his feet. He was unable to move an inch. Jinzha rushed forward and aimed a blow at his neck.

What became of Wang Mo? If you want to know, read the next chapter.





## 第三十九回

### 姜子牙冰冻岐山

诗曰：

四圣无端欲逆天，仗他异术弄狂颠。西来有分封神客，北伐方知证果仙。几许雄才消此地，无边恶孽造前愆。雪飞七月冰千尺，尤费颠连丧九泉。

话说金吒一剑，把王魔斩了。——一道灵魂往封神台来；清福神柏鉴用百灵幡引进去了。广法天尊收了此宝，望昆仑下拜：“弟子开了杀戒。”命金吒把子牙背负上山，将丹药用水研开，灌入子牙口内。不一时，子牙醒回，看见广法天尊，曰：“道兄，我如何于此处相会？”天尊答曰：“原是天意，定该如此，不由人耳。”过了一二时辰，命金吒：“你同师叔下山，协助西土。我不久也要来。”遂扶子牙上了四不相，回西岐。广法天尊将土掩了王魔尸骸。不表。

且说西岐城不见姜丞相，众将慌张。武王亲至相府，差探马各处找寻。子牙同金吒至西岐，众将同武王齐出相府。子牙下骑。武王曰：“相父败兵何处？孤心甚是不安！”子牙曰：“老臣若非金吒师徒，决不能生还矣。”金吒参谒武王；会了哪吒，二人自在一处。子牙进府调理。

且说成汤营里杨森见王魔得胜，追赶子牙，至晚不见回来。杨森疑惑：“怎么不见回来？”忙忙袖中一算，大叫一声：



## Chapter 39

### Jiang Ziya Freezes Mount Qi

Jinzha slashed at Wang Mo's neck, severing head from body. Bai Jian, the God of Pure Happiness, collected Wang Mo's soul with his Hundred Soul Pennant into the Terrace of Creation. The Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture put away the stake and bowed towards Mount Kunlun.

"Excuse your disciple for violating the commandment on killing," he prayed.

He then told Jinzha to carry Jiang Ziya up the mountain, and he poured a solution of elixir into his mouth. Jiang Ziya soon revived, and seeing Heavenly Master, asked, "Brother, is it that I meet you here?"

The Heavenly Master just smiled. "It's the will of Heaven and has not been for us to decide." He then ordered Jinzha, "Leave here with your uncle and help him in West Qi. I'll be there too before long."

As Jinzha helped Jiang Ziya on to his nondescript and the two departed, Heavenly Master buried Wang Mo's corpse and returned to his own residence.

Meanwhile, the generals of West Qi were deeply worried about Jiang Ziya. King Wu had gone to the prime minister's residence and sent patrols out to look for him. When Jiang Ziya finally returned with Jinzha, he was heartily welcomed by King Wu and all the generals.

"Where did you go? I've been terribly worried about you," King Wu asked anxiously.

"If it had not been for Jinzha and his master, I wouldn't have returned alive," Jiang Ziya told him.

He introduced Jinzha to King Wu and Nezha, and then returned to his own mansion.

In the Shang camp, Yang Sen had seen Wang Mo defeat and chase Jiang Ziya, but was puzzled that he still had not returned by dusk. He made a divination on his fingers inside his sleeves and let out a cry of



“罢了！”高友乾、李兴霸齐问原由。杨森怒曰：“可惜千年道行，一旦死于五龙山！”三位道人怒发冲冠，一夜不安。次日上骑，城下搦战，只要子牙出来答话。探马报入相府。子牙着伤未愈。只见金吒曰：“师叔，既有弟子在此保护，出城定要成功。”子牙从计上骑，开城，见三位道人咬牙大骂曰：“好姜尚！杀吾道兄，势不两立！”三骑齐出来战。子牙傍有金吒、哪吒二人。金吒两口宝剑，哪吒登开风火轮，使开火尖枪抵敌。五人交兵，只杀得霭霭红云笼宇宙，腾腾杀气照山河。子牙暗想：“吾师所赐打神鞭，何不祭起？”子牙将神鞭丢起，空中只听雷鸣火电，正中高友乾顶上，打得脑浆迸出，死于非命，——魂已入封神台去了。杨森见高道兄已亡，吼一声来奔子牙；不防哪吒将乾坤圈丢起，杨森方欲收此宝，被金吒将遁龙桩祭起，遁住杨森，早被金吒一剑，挥为两段，——一道灵魂也进封神台去了。张桂芳、风林见二位道长身亡，纵马使枪，风林使狼牙棒，冲杀过来。李兴霸骑狰狞，拎方楞铜杀来。金吒步战。哪吒使一根枪，两家混战。只听西岐城里一声炮响，走出一员小将，还是一个光头儿，银冠银甲，白马长枪，——此乃黄飞虎第四子黄天祥。——走马杀到军前，神武耀威，勇贯三军，枪法如骤雨。天祥刺斜里一枪，把风林挑下马来，——魂也进封神台去了。张桂芳料不能取胜，败进行营。李兴霸上帐自思：



horror. Gao Youqian and Li Xingba immediately asked him what had happened.

“What a pity it is! His thousand years of cultivation has all gone to waste. Brother Wang died on Five Dragon Mountain.”

The three holy men could not sleep that night. Early the next morning, they mounted their beasts and rode to the city demanding that Jiang Ziya come out and meet them.

When the report reached Jiang Ziya, he hesitated, as his wounds were not yet completely healed.

“Uncle! Go out and meet them. With us by your side we’re sure to win,” Nezha urged him on.

Encouraged, Jiang Ziya mounted and rode out with Jinzha and Nezha.

“Damn you, Jiang Shang! How can we allow you to live now that you’ve put our brother to death!”

The three holy men urged their beasts forward to attack Jiang Ziya. But Jinzha and Nezha intercepted them. The five fought desperately.

“I should use the Staff for Beating Gods,” Jiang Ziya thought as he watched the battle.

He tossed the staff into the air. There was a flash of lightning and a roar of thunder and the staff struck Gao Youqian on the head, knocking out his brains. He died at once, and his soul flew instantly to the Terrace of Creation.

When he saw that Gao Youqian was dead, Yang Sen let out a cry of fury and charged at Jiang Ziya. But Nezha quickly hurled his Universal Ring at him. As Yang Sen tried to catch it, Jinzha cast up the Invisible Dragon Stake, caught him with the gold rings, and then slashed him in two with his sword. His soul also entered the Terrace of Creation.

Seeing that two were lost, Zhang Guifang, Feng Lin and Li Xingba rushed out to join the combat. As they fought with Jinzha and Nezha, the roar of cannons was suddenly heard from the city, and a smart young general, still a child, galloped onto the battlefield. He wore a silver coronet and silver armor, rode on a white horse and carried a long lance. It was Huang Tianxiang, the fourth son of Huang Feihu. The young general galloped onto the battlefield and threw himself into the fray. His blows fell like rain, and before long he caught Feng Lin unawares and struck him a mortal blow, toppling him from his horse. Feng Lin’s soul was also conducted to the Terrace of Creation.

Zhang Guifang realized that he could not possibly win the day and withdrew to the Shang camp.



“吾四人前来助你，不料今日失利，丧吾三位道兄。你可修文书，速报闻兄，可求救至此，以泄今日之恨。”张桂芳依言，忙作告急文书，差官星夜进朝歌。不表。

且说姜子牙得胜回西岐，升银安殿。众将报功。子牙羨黄天祥走马枪挑风林。金吒曰：“师叔，今日之胜，不可停留，明日会战，一阵成功，张桂芳可破也。”子牙曰：“善。”次日，子牙点众将出城，三军呐喊，军威大振，坐名要张桂芳。桂芳听报大怒，“自来提兵未曾挫锐，今日反被小人欺侮，气杀我也！”忙上马布开阵势，到辕门，指子牙大喝曰：“反贼！怎敢欺侮天朝元帅！与你立见雌雄。”纵马持枪杀来。子牙后面黄天祥出马，与桂芳双枪并举，一场大战：

二将坐雕鞍，征夫马上欢。这一个怒发如雷吼；那一个心头火一攒。这一个丧门星要扶纣主；那一个天罡星欲保周元。这一个舍命而安社稷；那一个弃残生欲正江山。自来恶战不寻常，辕门几次鲜红溅。

话说黄天祥大战张桂芳，三十合未分上下。子牙传令：“点鼓。”——军中之法：鼓进，金止。——周营数十骑，左右抢出伯达、伯适、仲突、仲忽、叔夜、叔夏、季随、季骠、毛公遂、周公旦、召公奭、吕公望、南宫适、辛甲、辛免、太颠、閎夭、黄明、周纪等，围裹上来，把张桂芳围在垓心。好张桂芳，似弄风猛虎，酒醉斑彪，抵挡周将，全无惧怯。且说子牙命金吒：“你去战李兴霸；我用打神鞭助你今日成功。”金吒听命，拽步而来。李兴霸坐在狰狞上，见一道童忽抢来，催开狰狞，提铜就打。金吒举宝剑急架相迎。未及数合，只见哪吒登风火轮，摇枪直刺李兴霸。兴霸用铜



Li Xingba told him, "Four of us came here to help you, but now three have died. You'd better write to Grand Tutor Wen, asking him for reinforcements. We'll get revenge for today's humiliation."

Zhang Guifang did as he suggested and sent an urgent report to Zhaoze. Jiang Ziya returned to the city in triumph and recorded the merits his generals had achieved. He was praising Huang Tianxiang for felling Feng Lin when Jinzha cut in, "Uncle, we shouldn't stop at this victory. We'd better engage Zhang Guifang again tomorrow."

"You're right, General Jinzha," Jiang Ziya said in full agreement.

The following day, Jiang Ziya took his army out of the city and demanded Zhang Guifang.

"I've never been defeated so badly. I cannot bear the insults any longer! I'll meet them myself," Zhang Guifang said angrily on hearing the shouting outside his camp.

He mounted his horse and led his men out. "You rogue! How dare you insult a commander appointed by His Majesty! I'm prepared to fight you to the end."

As he urged his horse forward, Huang Tianxiang sprang out from behind Jiang Ziya and engaged him in fierce combat. After thirty rounds neither side had gained an advantage. Jiang Ziya ordered that the drums be beaten to signal a general offensive. More than twenty brave generals rushed out to join the battle. They encircled Zhang Guifang, who fought like a wild tiger.

"Go and engage Li Xingba so that I'll have the opportunity to get him with my Staff for Beating Gods," Jiang Ziya ordered Jinzha.

Jinzha, who always did battle on foot, ran toward Li Xingba with his sword raised. Li met the attack with his iron staves. After several rounds, Nezha raced over on his Wind-Fire Wheels to help his brother.

Seizing this opportunity, Jiang Ziya drew out his staff, but Li Xingba realized the danger he was in and immediately slapped his beast. It shot into the air and took flight at once. Seeing that Lin Xingba had fled, Nezha rushed over to Zhang Guifang.

"Zhang Guifang! Get down from your horse, and be quick about it. We'll let you live if you surrender. Why not enjoy a happy and peaceful life with us?" Chao Tian and his brother cried.

"You wretches! I'll give up my life to prove my loyalty. I'll never



急架忙还。子牙在四不相上，方祭打神鞭。李兴霸见势不能取胜，把狰犴一拍，那兽四足腾起风云，逃脱去了。哪吒见走了李兴霸，登轮直杀进桂芳垓心来。晁田弟兄二人在马上大呼曰：“张桂芳早下马归降，免尔一死，吾等共享太平！”张桂芳大骂：“叛逆匹夫！捐躯报国，尽命则忠，岂若尔辈贪生而损名节也！”从清晨只杀到午牌时分，桂芳料不能出，大叫：“纣王陛下！臣不能报国立功，一死以尽臣节！”自转枪一刺，桂芳撞下鞍鞦，——一点灵魂往封神台来，清福神引进去了。正是：

英雄半世成何用，留的芳名万载传。

桂芳已死，人马也有降西岐者，也有回关者。子牙得胜进城，入府上殿，各报其功。子牙见今日众将英雄可喜。

且说李兴霸逃脱重围，慌忙疾走。李兴霸乃四圣之数，怎脱得大数。狰犴正行，飘然落在一山，道人见坐骑落下，滚鞍下地，倚松靠石，少憩片时；寻思良久：“吾在九龙岛修炼多年，岂料西岐有失，愧回海岛，羞见道中朋友。如今且往朝歌城去，与闻兄共议，报今日之恨也。”方欲起身，只听得山上有人唱道情而来。道人回首一看，原来是一道童：

“天使还玄得做仙，做仙随处睹青天。此言勿谓吾狂妄，得意回时合自然。”

话言那道童唱着行来，见李兴霸打稽首：“道者请了！”兴霸答礼。道童曰：“老师那一座名山？何处洞府？”兴霸曰：“吾乃九龙岛炼气士李兴霸；因助张桂芳西岐失利，在此少坐片时。道童，你往那里来？”道童暗想道：“这正是‘踏破铁鞋无觅处，得来全不费功夫’。”道童大喜：“我不是别人，我



degrade my honor. I'm not afraid of death the way you are," Zhang shouted back.

Zhang Guifang had been fighting since morning, and it was now noon. He realized that he had no hope of getting out alive. "King Zhou, I can serve you no longer, but I've been a loyal minister to the end," he cried.

He turned his lance about and stabbed himself through the throat. He fell from his saddle, and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation. Their commander dead, most of his soldiers surrendered, and the rest fled back to the passes. Jiang Ziya and his men returned to the city in triumph.

Li Xingba had escaped in a panic, but as one of the four holy men, he was destined to follow his brothers. His beast landed on a mountain, and he dismounted and sat on the ground, leaning on a pine tree. "I didn't expect such a terrible defeat. I'm too ashamed to return to the island and meet my companions. I must go to Zhaoge and see Brother Wen to discuss how to avenge this humiliation," he decided.

He was about to get up when he heard someone singing. He looked round and found a young Taoist coming toward him. The young Taoist bowed and greeted him. "How do you do, Brother." When Li Xingba returned the salutation, he asked further, "Where do you live, Venerable Brother?"

"I'm Li Xingba, a holy man from Nine Dragon Island. I assisted Zhang Guifang against West Qi but was defeated. I'm just taking a rest here. Where do you come from?"

The Taoist was delighted. "I could've worn out iron shoes in my search for you! What luck to meet you here. I'm none other than Muzha, disciple of the Sage of Universal Virtue on Nine Palace Mountain. On my master's orders, I'm going to West Qi to help Uncle Jiang Ziya. Before I left, my master told me, 'If you come across Li Xingba on the way, capture him and take him to Jiang Ziya as a present to mark your first meeting.'"

Li Xingba burst into laughter. "Accursed beast! How dare you insult me like this!"

He struck at Muzha with his staves, but Muzha blocked and returned the blow with his sword. They fought back and forth across the





乃九宫山白鹤洞普贤真人徒弟木吒是也；奉师命往西岐去见师叔姜子牙门下，立功灭纣。我临行时，吾师尊说：‘你要遇着李兴霸，捉他去西岐见子牙为贄见。’岂知恰恰遇你。”李兴霸大笑曰：“好孽障！焉敢欺吾太甚！”拎铜劈头就打。木吒执剑急架忙迎。剑铜相交。怎见得九宫山大战：

这一个轻移道步；那一个急转麻鞋。轻移道步，撒玉靶纯钢出鞘；急转麻鞋，浅金装宝剑离匣。铜来剑架，剑锋斜刺一团花；剑去铜迎，脑后千块寒雾滚。一个是肉身成圣，木吒多威武；一个是凌霄殿上，神将逞雄威。些儿眼慢，目下皮肉不完全；手若迟松，眼下尸骸分两块。

话说木吒大战李兴霸，木吒背上宝剑两口，名曰“吴钩”。——此剑乃“干将”、“镆耶”之流，分有雌雄。——木吒把左肩一摇，那雄剑起去，横在空中，磨了一磨，李兴霸可怜：

千年修炼全无用，血染衣襟在九宫。

木吒将兴霸尸骸掩了，借土遁往西岐来，进城，至相府。门官通报：“有一道童求见。”子牙命：“请来。”木吒至殿前下拜。子牙问曰：“那里来的？”金吒在傍言曰：“此是弟子兄弟木吒，在九宫山白鹤洞普贤真人学艺。”子牙曰：“兄弟三人齐佐明主，简篇万年，史册传扬不朽。”西岐日盛。

话说闻太师在朝歌执掌大小国事，其实有条有法。话说汜水关韩荣报入太师府，闻太师拆开一看，拍案大呼曰：“道兄你却为着何事，死于非命！吾乃位极人臣，受国恩如同泰山，只因国事艰难，使我不敢擅离此地，今见此报，使吾痛入骨髓！”忙传令：“点鼓聚将。”只见银安殿三咚鼓响，一



mountainside. Muzha carried a pair of magic swords on his back named "the Hooks of Wu," one male and the other female. Muzha shook his left shoulder gently. The male sword immediately flew up into the sky, circled a few times then dropped and sliced off Li Xingba's head.

Muzha buried the corpse and rode on a dust cloud to West Qi. When he was admitted to the Prime Minister's mansion, he bowed and greeted Jiang Ziya.

"Where do you come from, young fellow?"

Jinza, who was standing to one side, answered for him, "He's my brother Muzha, Uncle. He's a disciple of Immortal Universal Virtue."

"What a wonder it is to have all three brothers in the same court. Your names will be recorded in history forever," Jiang Ziya said with approval.

During this whole time, Grand Tutor Wen had remained in Zhaoge keeping state affairs in good order. One day, a report arrived from Han Rong of Sishui Pass. As he read, he pounded his desk in anger. "Oh, my dear brothers! What a pity that you should lose your innocent lives. It's only because I hold the highest rank that I dared not leave here at this time of crisis. This report cuts me deeply."

He ordered that the drums be beaten, and soon all the generals arrived. "Several days ago I asked four of my friends from the Nine Dragon Island to help Zhang Guifang," he began. "Unfortunately, three of them have lost their lives, and General Feng Lin has also been killed. I would like to have your opinion as to who should go and reinforce Zhang Guifang."

He had barely finished speaking when Lu Xiong came forward and volunteered, "I would like to go, Grand Tutor."

As General Lu was a white-haired old man, Grand Tutor Wen said, "You're of venerable years, General. It may be difficult for you to achieve success."



千众将参谒太师。太师曰：“前日吾邀九龙岛四道友协助张桂芳，不料死了三位；风林阵亡。今与诸将共议，谁为国家辅张桂芳破西岐走一遭？”言未毕，左军上将军鲁雄年纪高大，上殿曰：“未将愿往。”闻太师看时，左军上将军鲁雄苍髯皓首上殿。太师曰：“老将军年纪高大，犹恐不足成功。”鲁雄笑曰：“太师在上：张桂芳虽是少年当道，用兵恃强，只知己能，显胸中秘授；风林乃匹夫之才，故此有失身之祸。为将行兵，先察天时，后观地利，中晓人和。用之以文，济之以武，守之以静，发之以动；亡而能存，死而能生，弱而能强，柔而能刚，危而能安，祸而能福；机变不测，决胜千里，自天之上，由地之下，无所不知；十万之众，无有不力，范围曲成，各极其妙，定自然之理，决胜负之机，神运用之权，藏不穷之智，此乃为将之道也。未将一去，便要成功。再副一二参军，大事自可定矣。”太师闻言，“鲁雄虽老，似有将才；况是忠心。欲点参军，必得见机明辨的方去得。不若令费仲、尤浑前去亦可。”忙传令：“命费仲、尤浑为参军。”军政司将二臣令至殿前。费仲、尤浑见太师行礼毕。太师曰：“方今张桂芳失机，风林阵亡，鲁雄协助；少二名参军。老夫将二位大夫为参赞机务，征剿西岐；旋师之日，其功莫大。”费、尤听罢，魂魄潜消，“太师在上：职任文家，不谙武事；恐悞国家重务。”太师曰：“二位有随机应变之才，通达时务之变，可以参赞军机，以襄鲁将军不逮，总是为朝廷出力。况如今国事艰难，当得辅君为国，岂可彼此推诿。左右，取参军印来！”费、尤二人落在圈套之中，只得挂印。簪花，递酒，太师发铜符，点人马五万协助



“Grand Tutor, though Zhang Guifang’s young, he acknowledges only his own talent. Feng Lin was vulgar, and the loss of his life was therefore unavoidable. A good general must be able to take advantage of an opportune time, to seize on a favorable situation, and to know how to unite the people. He must take defensive measures calmly but attack with vigor. He must be able to survive destruction, make a weak army strong and a frail one tough. He must turn danger into safety and disaster into good fortune. He must be able to adopt limitless changes of strategy and win a war that takes place a thousand *li* away. He must give full play to every warrior. Those are the requirements of a good commander. With the help of one or two advisors, I’ll be sure to achieve success.”

Listening to him, Grand Tutor Wen thought, “He may be old, but he’s a good commander. Besides, he’s loyal. I’ll find him one or two capable advisors that are quick to adapt to new situations as they arise. Maybe Fei Zhong and You Hun?” When they had been summoned, he told them, “Zhang Guifang’s suffered a defeat and Feng Lin’s lost his life. General Lu Xiong will reinforce the front, and you two will go with him as advisors. You’ll have served the kingdom well when the army returns to Zhaoge.”

Frightened, they hastily made excuses. “Grand Tutor, as civil officials, we know nothing about war. We’ll make disastrous mistakes.”

“Both of you are good at adapting to changing conditions. That is just what the army needs now. You can take care of whatever General Lu Xiong is unable to do. We all must do our best to serve His Majesty. Make no more excuses.”

Fei Zhong and You Hun could do nothing but take the seals of appointment. After a farewell feast, Lu Xiong, Fei Zhong and You Hun took 50,000 soldiers, sacrificing an ox and a horse before the great army banner, and marched off to the firing of cannons.



张桂芳。有诗为证：

鲁雄报国寸心丹，费仲尤浑心胆寒。夏月行兵难住马，  
一笼火伞罩征鞍。只因国祚生离乱，致有妖氛起祸端。  
台造封神将已备，子牙冰冻二谗奸。

话说鲁雄择吉日，祭宝纛旗，杀牛，宰马，不日起兵。鲁雄辞过闻太师，放炮起兵。此时夏未秋初，天气酷暑，三军铁甲单衣好难走，马军雨汗长流，步卒人人喘息。好热天气！三军一路，怎见得好热：

万里乾坤，似一轮火伞当中。四野无云风尽息，八方有热气升空。高山顶上，大海波中。高山顶上，只晒得石烈灰飞；大海波中，蒸熬得波翻浪滚。林中飞鸟，晒脱翎毛，莫想腾空展翅；水底游鱼，蒸翻鳞甲，怎能弄土钻泥。只晒得砖如烧红锅底热，便是铁石人身也汗流。三军一路上：盔滚滚撞天银磬，甲层层盖地兵山。军行如骤雨，马跳似欢龙。闪翻银叶甲，拨转皂雕弓。正是：喊声振动山川泽，大地乾坤似火笼。

话说鲁雄人马出五关，一路行来。有探马报与鲁雄曰：“张总兵失机阵亡，首级号令在西岐东门，请军令定夺。”鲁雄闻报大惊曰：“桂芳已死，吾师不必行，且安营。”问：“前面是什么所在？”探马回报：“是西岐山。”鲁雄传令：“茂林深处安营。”命军政司修告急文书报太师。不表。

且说子牙自从斩了张桂芳，见李姓兄弟三人都到西岐。一日子牙升相府，有报马报入府来：“西岐山有一枝人马扎营。”子牙已知其详。前日清福神来报，封神台已造完，张挂“封神榜”，如今正要祭台。传令：“命南宫适、武吉点五



The summer weather was so hot that, in their armor, the soldiers found it difficult to move. Both men and horses perspired and panted under the burning sun. The sky was cloudless, and there was not a breath of wind to refresh them.

As they left the five passes, a patrolman brought Lu Xiong the news that "Commander Zhang's been killed and his head's hanging on the east gate of West Qi City."

This greatly alarmed Lu Xiong. "As Zhang Guifang's already dead, we'd better halt here," he decided, and ordered, "Camp right here." He asked, "What lies in front of us?"

"That's Mount Qi, sir."

To escape the heat, he ordered that the army camp in the depths of the forest. He wrote a report to Grand Tutor Wen requesting further instructions.

After they had defeated Zhang Guifang, Jiang Ziya withdrew to the city to await further developments. One day, a report came in that a big army had camped at Mount Qi. The report was simple, but Jiang Ziya understood the situation immediately.

A few days before, Bai Jian reported to him that the Terrace of Creation had been completed. A sacrificial ceremony was required to honor the arrival of the List of Creations. Jiang Ziya ordered, "Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji! Take 5,000 soldiers and camp at Mount Qi. Block all communications and allow no troops to pass through."

Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji carried out the order at once. At Mount Qi, they came upon the Shang army and camped directly opposite. But the weather was extremely hot, and they soon found it unbearable.

"Prime Minister ordered us to camp here, but there's no drinking water and there are no trees to provide shade. The men are bound to grumble," Wu Ji said to Nangong Kuo.



千人马，往岐山安营，阻塞路口，不放他人马过来。”二将领令，随即点人马出城。一声炮响，七十里望见岐山一枝人马，乃成汤号色。南宫适对阵安下营寨。天气炎热，三军站立不住，空中火伞施张。武吉对南宫适曰：“吾师令我二人出城，此处安营，难为三军枯渴，又无树木遮盖，恐三军心有怨言。”一宿已过。次日，有辛甲至营相见，“丞相有令：命把人马调上岐山顶上去安营。”二将听罢，甚是惊讶：“此时天气热不可当，还上山去，死之速矣！”辛甲曰：“军令怎违，只得如此。”二将点兵上山。三军怕热，张口喘息，着实难当；又要造饭，取水不便，军士俱埋怨。不题。且言鲁雄屯兵在茂林深处，见岐山上有人安营，绉兵大笑：“此时天气，山上安营，不过三日，不战自死！”鲁雄只等救兵交战。至次日，子牙领三千人马出城，往西岐山来。南宫适、武吉下山迎接，上山合兵一处。八千人马在山上绞起了幔帐。子牙坐下。怎见得好热，有诗为证：

太阳真火炼尘埃，烈石煎湖实可哀。绿柳青松催艳色，  
飞禽走兽尽罹灾。凉亭上面如烟燎，水阁之中似火来。  
万里乾坤只一照，行商旅客苦相挨。

话说子牙坐在帐中，令武吉：“营后筑一土台，高三尺。速去筑来！”武吉领令。西岐辛免催趲车辆许多饰物，报与子牙。子牙令搬进营，散饰物。众军看见，痴呆半晌。子牙点名给散，一名一个棉袄，一个斗笠，领将下去。众军笑曰：“吾等穿将起来，死的快了！”且说子牙至晚，武吉回令：“土台造完。”子牙上台，披发仗剑，望东昆仑下拜，布罡斗，行玄术，念灵章，发符水。但见：



The next day, General Xin Jia arrived with an order from Jiang Ziya, "The camp must be moved to the summit of Mount Qi immediately."

Both Nangong and Wu Ji were astonished. "In such unbearable heat, we'll only die more quickly if we follow this order."

"You've got no choice. You cannot disobey an order," Xin Jia warned.

Marching up the mountain, the Zhou soldiers gasped painfully in the heat. There was no water on the mountain for either cooking or drinking. Everyone began to complain.

The Shang soldiers laughed heartily when they saw them camp on top of the mountain. "In this heat, they'll be dead in three days without even a fight!"

Lu Xiong did nothing but wait. The following day Jiang Ziya took 3,000 soldiers to Mount Qi. He was met by Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji at the foot of the mountain and climbed to the summit with them. It was so hot that the leaves of the willows and pines had withered and died, and thirsty birds and beasts had perished. Nevertheless, Jiang Ziya ordered Wu Ji to build a three-foot high terrace with all speed.

Meanwhile, Xin Mian had arrived from the capital with cart-loads of supplies. When Jiang Ziya ordered that they be distributed among the soldiers, everyone was puzzled. Each man received a padded cotton jacket and a warm cap. "We'll die if we put them on!"

At dusk Wu Ji reported that the terrace had been completed. Jiang Ziya mounted the terrace with his long hair spread over his back and shoulders. He took his sword, bowed toward Mount Kunlun, then recited incantations and sprinkled magic water over the ground. As he muttered his spells, a violent wind swept through the forest, and dust filled the sky, making it difficult for the soldiers to open their eyes. Jiang Ziya was summoning the wind for his own purposes.





子牙作法，霎时狂风大作，吼树穿林。只刮的飒飒灰尘，雾迷世界，滑喇喇天摧地塌，骤沥沥海佛山崩，幡幢响如铜鼓振，众将校两眼难睁。一时把金风彻去无踪影，三军正好赌输赢。

诗曰：

念动玉虚玄妙诀，灵符秘授更无差。驱邪伏魅随时应，  
唤雨呼风似滚沙。

且说鲁雄在帐内见狂风大作，热气全无，大喜曰：“若闻太师点兵出关，正好厮杀，温和天气。”费仲、尤浑曰：“天子洪福齐天，故有凉风相助。”那风一发胜了，如猛虎一般。怎见得好风，有诗为证：

萧萧飒飒透深围，无影无形最骇人；旋起黄沙三万丈，  
飞来黑雾百千尘。穿林倒木真无状，彻骨生寒岂易论。  
纵火行凶尤猛烈，江湖作浪更迷津。

话说子牙在岐山布斗，刮三日大风，凛凛似朔风一样。三军叹曰：“天时不正，国家不祥，故有此异事。”过了一两个时辰，半空中飘飘荡荡落下雪花来。纣兵怨言：“吾等单衣铁甲，怎耐凛冽严威！”正在那里埋怨，不一时，鹅毛片片，乱舞梨花，好大雪！怎见得：

潇潇洒洒，密密层层。潇潇洒洒，一似豆秸灰；密密层层，犹如柳絮舞。初起时，一片，两片，似鹅毛风卷在空中；次后来，千团，万团，如梨花雨打落地下。高山堆叠，獐狐失穴怎能行，沟涧无踪，苦杀行人难进步。霎时间银妆世界，一会家粉砌乾坤。客子难沽酒，苍翁苦觅梅。飘飘荡荡裁蝶翅，叠叠层层道路迷。丰年祥瑞



Lu Xiong was greatly pleased when the wind drove the heat away. "When Grand Tutor Wen's army arrives, it'll be fine weather to do battle."

"His Majesty is blessed by Heaven, which has given us a cool wind," Fei Zhong and You Hun commented.

But the wind blew more and more violently. It blew yellow sand into the air and uprooted big trees. Everyone felt as cold as if it were winter. Jiang Ziya summoned the wind for three continuous days, and on the fourth day, heavy snow began to fall. The weather became colder and colder.

"How can we stand such cold weather in our thin clothes and iron armor," the Shang soldiers groaned.

The snow became steadily heavier, now falling in flakes as big as swan feathers. It soon covered the whole land and lay piled in deep drifts on the ground, turning the earth into a silvery white world.

"It's the seventh month of the year, the hottest season! Where does this heavy snow come from? Never before has this happened!" Lu Xiong complained to Fei Zhong and You Hun.

Lu Xiong was an old man, unable to endure the cold, and even Fei Zhong and You Hun found this an unexpected hardship. The whole army was nearly frozen to death, but in the Zhou camp, the soldiers donned their padded jackets and caps and gratefully thanked their prime minister.



从天降，堪贺人间好事宜。

鲁雄在中军对费、尤曰：“七月秋天，降此大雪，世之罕见。”鲁雄年迈，怎禁得这等寒冷。费、尤二人亦无计可施。三军都冻坏了。且说子牙在岐山上，军士人人穿起棉袄，带起斗笠，感丞相恩德，无不称谢。子牙问：“雪深几尺？”武吉回话：“山顶上深二尺，山脚下风旋下去，深有四五尺。”子牙复上土台，披发仗剑，口中念念有词，把空中彤云散去，现出红日当空，一轮火伞，霎时雪都化水，往山下一声响，水去的急，聚在山凹里。子牙见日色且胜，有诗为证：

真火原来是太阳，初秋积雪化汪洋。玉虚秘授无穷妙，  
欲冻商兵尽丧亡。

话说子牙见雪消水急，滚涌下山，忙发符印，又刮大风。只见阴云布合，把太阳掩了。风狂凛冽，不亚严冬。霎时间把岐山冻作一块汪洋。子牙出营来，看纣营幡幢尽倒；命南宫适、武吉二将：“带二十名刀斧手下山，进纣营，把首将拿来！”二将下山，径入营中。见三军冻在冰里，将死者且多；又见鲁雄、费仲、尤浑三将在中军。刀斧手上前擒捉，如同囊中取钞一般，把三人捉上山来见子牙。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



“What’s the depth of the snow now?” Jiang Ziya asked a few days later.

“On the summit here, it’s about two feet, but down there, it must be four or five feet deep,” Wu Ji answered.

Jiang Ziya mounted the terrace again. He loosened his hair, took his sword, and began to recite new charms. Soon the snow clouds above them dispersed, and the burning sun reappeared. All the snow on the summit melted and rushed down into the valley in roaring torrents.

Then he burned spells written on paper summoning another great wind. The temperature plummeted once more, and before long the whole area around Mount Qi was frozen into a solid ocean of ice.

Jiang Ziya walked out from his camp with some of his generals and stood on a high place overlooking the enemy camp below. The Shang flags and banners were scattered at random on the ground. Neither guards nor patrols could be seen around the camp. There was no sign of smoke from the kitchens. Jiang Ziya ordered Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji to take twenty armed men, enter the Shang camp and seize the officers.

The two generals charged into the Shang camp without meeting any resistance. All about them officers and men were frozen in the ice. They found Lu Xiong, Fei Zhong and You Hun and took them captive as easily as taking money from a purse. The three prisoners were then carried up the mountain to face Jiang Ziya.

What became of them? If you want to know, you must read the next chapter.







## 第四十回

### 四天王遇丙灵公

诗曰：

魔家四将号天王，惟有青云剑异常。弹动琵琶人已绝，  
撑开珠伞日无光。莫言烈焰能焚毙，且说花狐善食强。  
纵有几多稀世宝，丙灵一遇命先亡。

话说南宫适、武吉将三人拿到辕门，通报；子牙命：“推进来。”鲁雄站立；费、尤二贼跪下。子牙曰：“鲁雄，时务要知，天心要顺，大理要明，真假要辨。方今四方知纣稔恶，弃纣归周，三分有二，何苦逆天，自取杀身之祸。今已被擒，尚有何说？”鲁雄大喝曰：“姜尚！尔曾为纣臣，职任大夫；今背主求荣，非良杰也。吾今被擒，食君之禄，当死君之难，今日有死而已，又何必多言。”子牙命且监于后营。复到土台上，布起罡斗，随把彤云散了，现出太阳，日色如火一般，把岐山脚下冰时刻化了。五万人马冻死三二千，余者逃进五关去了。子牙又命南宫适往西岐城，请武王至岐山。南宫适走马进城，来见武王，行礼毕。武王曰：“相父在岐山，天气炎热，陆地无阴，三军劳苦。卿今来见孤，有何事？”南宫适对曰：“臣奉丞相令，请大王驾幸岐山。”武王随同众文武往岐山来。怎见得：有诗为证：

君正臣贤国日昌，武王仁德配陶唐。慢言冰冻擒军死，  
且听台城斩将亡。祭赛封神劳圣主，驱驰国事仗臣良。



## Chapter 40

### West Qi City Under Siege

When Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji took them into the Zhou camp, Lu Xiong staunchly remained on his feet, but Fei Zhong and You Hun knelt before Jiang Ziya, begging for mercy.

“Lu Xiong, you should understand the times, obey the will of Heaven, and distinguish right from wrong. Now all people, high and low, know the wickedness of King Zhou. They’ve forsaken him and make their obeisance to us. We already possess two-thirds of the country. Why are you so dull as to act against Heaven and bring about your own end?” Jiang Ziya demanded.

“Jiang Shang, you once served King Zhou, but now you’re rebelling in search of honor and glory. I’m your captive, but I’m fed and paid by the king, and I’ll die for him. There’s no need for a lot of talk,” Lu Xiong answered defiantly.

“Put them in prison,” Jiang Ziya ordered.

Jiang Ziya mounted the earth terrace and recited incantations to disperse the clouds. The sun reappeared, and the ice at the foot of Mount Qi quickly melted. Of the 50,000 Shang soldiers, about 5,000 had been frozen to death. The survivors fled back through the five passes.

Jiang Ziya sent General Nangong Kuo back to the city to fetch King Wu. When he entered the palace, Nangong was admitted at once.

“The prime minister and his soldiers have been fighting at Mount Qi in blistering heat. There’s no shade in the open wilderness, and they must be exhausted. What do you come to see me about?” King Wu asked.

“On the orders of the prime minister, I’ve come to invite you to Mount Qi.’





古来多少英雄血，争利图名尽是伤。

话说武王同文武往西岐山来，行未及二十里，只见两边沟渠之中冰块飘浮来往。武王问南宫适，方知冰冻岐山。君臣又行七十里，至岐山。子牙迎武王。武王曰：“相父邀孤，有何事商议？”子牙曰：“请大王亲祭岐山。”武王曰：“山川享祭，此为正礼。”乃上山进帐。子牙设下祭文，——武王不知今日祭封神台。子牙只言祭岐山。排下香案，武王拈香。子牙命将三人推来。武吉将鲁雄、费仲、尤浑推至。子牙传令：“斩讫报来！”霎时献三颗首级。武王大惊曰：“相父祭山，为何斩人？”子牙曰：“此二人乃成汤费仲、尤浑也。”武王曰：“奸臣，理当斩之。”子牙与武王回兵西岐。不表。且说清福神将三魂引入封神台去了。

话说鲁雄残兵败卒走进关，逃回朝歌。闻太师在府，看各处报章，看三山关邓九公报：“大败南伯侯。”忽报：“汜水关韩荣报到。”令：“接上来。”拆开看时，顿足叫曰：“不料西岐姜尚这等凶恶！杀死张桂芳，又捉鲁雄号令岐山，大肆猖獗。吾欲亲征，奈东南二处，未息兵戈。”乃问吉立、余庆曰：“我如今再遣何人伐西岐？”吉立答曰：“太师在上：西岐足智多谋，兵精将勇，张桂芳况且失利，九龙岛四道者亦且不能取胜；如今可发令牌，命佳梦关魔家四将征伐，庶大功可成。”太师听言，喜曰：“非此四人不能克此大恶。”忙



Accompanied by civil and military officials, King Wu left the city and set off for Mount Qi. When they had traveled about twenty *li*, King Wu noticed lumps of ice floating in ditches and streams along the road. He asked Nangong Kuo the reason, and Nangong told him how Jiang Ziya had frozen the mountain. Seventy *li* from the city, they arrived at Mount Qi. Jiang Ziya came up to meet the king.

“What do you want to discuss with me?”

“I’ve asked you here to offer sacrifices to Mount Qi, Your Highness,” Jiang Ziya answered.

He did not tell King Wu that the sacrifices were in fact to be offered to the Terrace of Creation.

He wrote an elegy in memory of those who had lost their lives and laid the altar with candles and incense burners. When King Wu burned the incense, he ordered that the three prisoners be brought in. When they arrived, he immediately ordered their execution. The three heads were then presented at the altar.

“Prime Minister! Why cut their heads off while we’re worshipping Mount Qi?” King Wu asked in surprise.

“Those two heads belong to Fei Zhong and You Hun,” Jiang Ziya answered.

“They were minions and deserve death,” King Wu agreed.

When the ceremony was over, Jiang Ziya and King Wu led the army back to West Qi City.

Meanwhile, the remnants of Lu Xiong’s army had fled into the five passes. Han Rong sent an urgent report to Zhaoge. Grand Tutor Wen was reading a report from Sanshan pass that “Deng Jiugong has won a major victory over the South Grand Duke” when it reached his hands. He opened it and read it, then stamped his foot in a rage.

“I never imagined that Jiang Shang would be so difficult. He’s killed both Zhang Guifang and Lu Xiong. I wish that I could go to the front personally! But how can I, when the rebels in the east and south are still running amuck?” he said to himself. He asked Ji Li and Yu Qing, “Who do you think I should send to the front next?”

“Grand Tutor! West Qi has intelligent strategists, audacious generals and well-trained soldiers. Not only was Zhang Guifang defeated, but even the four holy men from Nine Dragon Island failed. In such a serious situation, we cannot but send the Mo brothers. They are certain to succeed,” Ji Li replied.



发令牌；又点左军大将胡升、胡雷交代守关。将令发出，使命领令前行；不觉一日，已至佳梦关，下马报曰：“闻太师有紧急公文。”魔家四将接了文书，拆开看罢，大笑曰：“太师用兵多年，如今为何颠倒！料西岐不过是姜尚、黄飞虎等，‘割鸡焉用牛刀’？”打发来使先回。弟兄四人点精兵十万，即日兴师；与胡升、胡雷交代府库钱粮，一应完毕。魔家四将辞了胡升，一声炮响，大队人马起行，浩浩荡荡，军声大振，往西岐而来。怎见得好人马：

三军呐喊，幡立五方。刀如秋水迸寒光，枪似麻林初出土。开山斧如同秋月，画杆戟豹尾飘飘。鞭铜抓槌分左右，长刀短剑砌龙鳞。花腔鼓擂，催军趲将；响阵锣鸣，令出收兵。拐子马御防劫寨，金装弩准备冲营。中军帐钩镰护守，前后营刁斗分明。临兵全仗胸中策，用武还依纪法行。

话说魔家四将人马，晓行夜住，逢州过府，越岭登山，非止一日，又过了桃花岭。哨马报入中军：“启元帅：兵至西岐北门，请令定夺。”魔礼青传令：“安下团营，扎了大寨。”三军放静营炮，呐一声喊。

且说子牙自兵冻岐山，军威甚盛，将士英雄，天心效顺，四方归心，豪杰云集。子牙正商议军情，忽探马报入相府：“魔家四将领兵住扎北门。”子牙聚将上殿，共议退兵之策。武成王黄飞虎上前启曰：“丞相在上：佳梦关魔家四将乃弟兄四人，皆系异人秘授奇术变幻，大是难敌。长曰魔礼青，长二丈四尺，面如活蟹，须如铜线，用一根长枪，步战无骑。有秘授宝剑，名曰‘青云剑’。上有符印，中分四



The Grand Tutor was delighted. "If anyone can defeat West Qi, it's these four men!"

He immediately issued orders appointing the four Mo generals as commanders on the West Qi front, and Generals Hu Sheng and Hu Lei to replace them at the Good Dream Pass. When the order came, the Mo brothers burst into laughter.

"Grand Tutor Wen's fought numerous battles. Why is he so upset about Jiang Shang and Huang Feihu? Why use a knife for slaughtering oxen to kill a chicken?"

They took 100,000 soldiers and set off to the roar of cannons and the war cries of their men. Their pennants fluttered boldly, and their weapons gleamed in the sun. They marched over mountains until they passed Peach Blossom Peak and arrived at the north gate of West Qi City. There the Mo generals ordered the army to halt.

After the victory at Mount Qi, West Qi's military forces were stronger than ever, and many more areas pledged their allegiance to King Wu. One day, a patrolman came in to report. "The four Mo brothers have arrived at the north gate."

When Jiang Ziya turned to his generals for measures to repulse them, Huang Feihu anxiously moved forward.

"Prime Minister, the Mo brothers have all learned one kind of magic or another. I'm afraid they'll be very difficult to deal with. The eldest one is Mo Liqing. He's twenty feet tall, and he's got a magic Green Cloud Sword, stamped with an 'earth, water, metal, fire and wind' charm. The wind that it invokes is dark and conceals thousands of swords and spears. Anyone caught in it is instantly cut to pieces. It simultaneously produces innumerable flames and a black smoke that covers the sky. Whoever it touches is turned to ashes. The second brother is Mo Lihong. He's got a magic Universe Muddling Umbrella, decorated with jade and



字：‘地、水、火、风’，这风乃黑风，风内有万千戈矛。若人逢着此刃，四肢成为齑粉；若论火，空中金蛇搅绕，遍地一块黑烟，烟掩人目，烈焰烧人，并无遮挡。还有魔礼红，秘授一把伞，名曰‘混元伞’。伞上有祖母禄、祖母印、祖母碧，有夜明珠、碧尘珠、碧火珠、碧水珠、消凉珠、九曲珠、定颜珠、定风珠，还有珍珠穿成四字：‘装载乾坤’。这把伞不敢撑，撑开时，天昏地暗，日月无光；转一转，乾坤晃动。还有魔礼海，用一根枪，背上一面琵琶，上有四条弦，也按‘地、水、火、风’。拨动弦声，风火齐至，如青云剑一般。还有魔礼寿，用两根鞭。囊里有一物，形如白鼠，名曰‘花狐貂’，放起空中，现身似白象，胁生飞翅，食尽世人。若此四将来伐西岐，吾兵恐不能取胜也。”子牙曰：“将军何以知之？”黄飞虎答曰：“此四将昔日在末将麾下，征伐东海，故此晓得。今对丞相，不得不以实告。”子牙听罢，郁郁不乐。

且言魔礼青对三弟曰：“今奉王命，征剿凶顽，兵至三日，必当为国立功，不负闻太师之所举也。”魔礼红曰：“明日俺们兄弟齐会姜尚，一阵成功，旋师奏凯。”其日，弟兄欢饮。次早，炮响鼓鸣，摆开队伍，立于辕门，请子牙答话。探马来报：“魔家四将请战。”子牙因黄飞虎所说利害，恐将士失利，心下犹豫未决。金吒、木吒、哪吒在傍，口称：“师叔，难道依黄将军所说，我等便不战罢。所仗福德在周，天意相祐，随时应变，岂得看住。”子牙猛醒，传令：“摆五方旗号，整点诸将校，列成队伍，出城会战。”怎见得：

两扇门开：青幡招展，震中杀气透天庭；素白纷纭，兑



pearls. The charm 'wrap up Heaven and earth' on it is written with pearls. When it's opened, the sky and earth are plunged into complete darkness. If it is twirled, Heaven and earth tremble. The third one's Mo Lihai, who carries a lute with four strings that represent earth, water, wind and fire. When they're plucked, fire and wind appear much like with the Green Cloud Sword. The youngest of the four is Mo Lishou. He has a magic spotted ermine in his bag. When the animal's released, it immediately transforms itself into a white winged elephant and devours anybody in its path. It won't be easy for us to defeat them."

"How do you know them so well, General Huang?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"Because they were under my command when I fought in the East Sea district. I am telling you the truth."

Jiang Ziya became deeply worried.

A few days later, Mo Liqing said to his three brothers, "By order of His Majesty, we've come here to attack the rebels. It's been three days already, and we must take action now. As Grand Tutor Wen has honored us, we can't let him down."

"Let's meet Jiang Shang tomorrow and destroy him in a single battle," Mo Lihong said assuredly.

They drank happily that day, and the following morning, took their men to the city, demanding that Jiang Ziya come out to meet them.

In view of what Huang Feihu had said, Jiang Ziya hesitated. But Muzha, Jinzha and Nezha said, "Uncle! We can't give up the fight just because of what General Huang said! Heaven is on our side. We must adapt to every change of circumstance and not be cowards!"

Jiang Ziya came to his senses at once and ordered that they march out of the city. He bowed politely. "Are you the four Mo brothers?"



地征云从地起。红幡荡荡，离宫猛火欲烧山；皂带飘飘，坎气乌云由上下。杏黄幡麾，中央正道出兵来。金盔将如同猛虎；银盔将一似欢狼。南宫适似摇头狮子；武吉似摆尾狻猊。四贤、八俊逞英豪；金木二吒持宝剑。龙须虎天生异像；武成王斜跨神牛。领首的哪吒英武，掠阵的众将轩昂。

魔家四将见子牙出兵有法，纪律森严，坐四不相，至军前。怎生打扮，有诗为证：

金冠分鱼尾，道服勒霞绡。童颜并鹤发，项下长银苗。  
身骑四不相，手挂剑锋泉。玉虚门下客，封神立圣朝。

话说子牙出阵前，欠身曰：“四位乃魔元帅么？”魔礼青曰：“姜尚，你不守本土，甘心祸乱，而故纳叛亡，坏朝廷法纪，杀大臣号令西岐，深属不道，是自取灭亡。今天兵至日，尚不倒戈授首，犹自抗拒；直待践平城垣，俱为齑粉，那时悔之晚矣！”子牙曰：“元帅言之差矣。吾等守法奉公，原是商臣，受封西土，岂得称为反叛。今朝廷信大臣之言，屡伐西岐，胜败之事，乃朝廷大臣自取其辱，我等并无一军一卒冒犯五关。今汝等反加之罪名，我君臣岂肯虚服。”魔礼青大怒曰：“孰敢巧言，混称大臣取辱！独不思你目下有灭国之祸！”放开大步，使枪来取子牙。左哨上南宫适纵马舞刀，大喝曰：“不要冲吾阵脚！”用钢刀急架忙迎。步马交兵，刀戟并举。魔礼红绰步展方天戟冲杀而来。子牙队里辛甲举斧来战魔礼红。魔礼海摇枪直杀出来。哪吒登风火轮，摇火尖枪迎住。二将双枪共举。魔礼寿使两根铜似猛虎摇头，杀将过来。这壁厢武吉银盔素铠，白马长枪，接战阵



“Jiang Shang,” replied Mo Liqing rudely. “You don’t keep to your dukedom but take pleasure in creating chaos. You place traitors under your protection and disobey the orders of the government. You beheaded our commanders and hung their heads on your city gates. Now that we’ve arrived, why don’t you lay down your weapons and declare unconditional surrender? It’ll be too late for you to regret it when we’ve leveled your city and destroyed everything!”

“You’re wrong, Commander. We’re ministers appointed by the Shang Dynasty. We obey the law and observe the rites. We aren’t rebels at all, but we’ve been invaded more than once by His Majesty. He’s humiliated himself through the defeats suffered here. We’re not aggressors. We haven’t sent a single soldier to the five passes. We won’t accept the accusations you’ve made,” Jiang Ziya answered calmly.

“How dare you speak such nonsense! Don’t you realize that you’re facing immediate destruction?” Mo Liqing said furiously.

He strode forward to attack Jiang Ziya but was intercepted by Nangong Kuo. Mo Lihong then rushed forward but was met by Xin Jia. When Mo Lihai plunged in, Nezha flew at him on his Wind-Fire Wheels. Mo Lishou also rushed in wielding his staves, but Wu Ji galloped up and intercepted him. The battle raged fiercely from early morning till noon.





前。这一场大战，怎见得：

满天杀气，遍地征云。这阵上三军威武；那阵上战将轩昂。南宫适斩将刀半潭秋水；魔礼青虎头枪似一段寒冰。辛甲大斧犹如皓月光辉；魔礼红画戟一似金钱豹尾。哪吒发怒抖精神；魔礼海生嗔显武艺。武吉长枪，飏飏急雨洒残花；魔礼寿二铜，凛凛冰山飞白雪。四天王忠心佐成汤；众战将赤胆扶圣主。两阵上锣鼓频敲，四哨内三军呐喊。从辰至午，只杀的旭日无光；未末申初，霎时间天昏地暗。

有诗为证：

为国亡家欲尽忠，只徒千载把名封。捐躯马革何曾惜，止愿皇家建大功。

话说哪吒战住了魔礼海，把枪架开，随手取出乾坤圈使在空中，要打魔礼海。魔礼红看见，忙忙跳出阵外，把混元珍珠伞撑开一晃，先收了哪吒的乾坤圈去了。金吒见收兄弟之宝，忙使遁龙桩，又被收将去了。子牙把打神鞭使在空中，——此鞭只打得神，打不得仙，打不得人；四天王乃是释门中人，打不得，后一千年，才受香烟，因此上把打神鞭也被伞收去了。子牙大惊。魔礼青战住南宫适，把枪一掩，跳出阵来，把青云剑一晃，往来三次，黑风卷起，刀刃戈矛。一声响响，怎见得，有诗为证：

黑风卷起最难当，百万雄兵尽带伤。此宝英锋真利害，铜军铁将亦遭殃。

魔礼红见兄用青云剑，也把珍珠伞撑开，连转三四转，咫尺间黑暗了宇宙，崩塌了乾坤。只见烈烟黑雾，火发无情，金



Nezha took out his Universal Ring and threw it at Mo Lihai. When Mo Lihong saw it, he immediately leapt away from Xin Jia, opened his Universe Muddling Umbrella, and shook it slightly. In a twinkling the Universal Ring dropped straight into the umbrella. Jinzha saw what had happened and took out his Invisible Dragon Stake, but it was taken away by the umbrella too. Jiang Ziya then cast his Staff for Beating Gods in the air, but he did not know that it was effective only against gods and not against immortals nor ordinary human beings. As the Mo brothers were to become Buddhist immortals and serve as the four Heavenly Kings one thousand years later, the staff was powerless. It was also taken by the umbrella. Jiang Ziya was deeply alarmed.

Mo Liqing dodged away from Nangong Kuo and seized the chance to shake the Green Cloud Sword on his back three times. It instantly poured forth a heavy black smoke that rang with the noise of thousands of swords, axes and lances. In moments, thousands of Jiang Ziya's men lay dead or wounded.

Seeing that his eldest brother had used the Green Cloud Sword, Mo Lihong opened his Universe Muddling Umbrella again and twirled it three times. Immediately, the sky darkened and fierce flames soared high in the air. A violent fire raged over the battlefield. Mo Lihai plucked the strings of his lute to intensify the attack. When Mo Lishou released his ermine, it transformed into a white elephant, devouring the Zhou soldiers left and right. Jiang Ziya was completely defeated. His men fled, leaving numerous wounded and dead behind.



蛇搅绕半空，火光飞腾满地。好火！有诗为证：

万道金蛇空内滚，黑烟罩体命难存。子牙道术全无用，  
今日西岐尽败奔。

话说魔礼海拨动了地水火风琵琶；魔礼寿把花狐貂放出在空中，现形如一只白象，任意食人，张牙舞爪。风火无情，西岐众将遭此一败，三军尽受其殃。子牙见黑风卷起，烈火飞来，人马一乱，往后败下去。魔家四将挥动人马，往前冲杀。可怜三军叫苦，战将着伤。怎见得：

赶上将，任从刀劈；乘着势，剿杀三军。逢刀的，连肩拽背；遭火的，烂额焦头。鞍上无人，战马拖缰，不管营前和营后；地上尸横，折筋断骨，怎分南北与东西。人亡马死，只为扶王创业到如今；将躲军逃，止落叫苦连声无投处。子牙出城，齐齐整整，众将官顶盔贯甲，好似得智狐狸强似虎；到如今只落得：哀哀哭哭，歪盔卸甲，犹如退翎鸾凤不如鸡。死的尸骸暴露，生的逃窜难回。惊天动地将声悲，嚎山泣岭三军苦。愁云直上九重天，一派残兵奔陆地。

话说魔家四将一战，损周兵一万有余，战将损了九员，带伤者十有八九。子牙坐四不相平空去了。金、木二吒土遁逃回。哪吒风火轮走了。龙须虎借水里逃生。众将无术，焉能得脱。子牙败进城，人相府点众将：着伤大半，阵亡者九名，杀死了文王六位殿下，三名副将。子牙伤悼不已。

且说魔家四将收兵，掌得胜鼓回营，三军踊跃。正是：  
喜孜孜鞭敲金镫响，笑吟吟齐唱凯歌回。

话说魔家四将得胜回营，上帐议取西岐大事。魔礼红曰：“明



In this first battle, the Zhou army lost 10,000 soldiers and nine generals while eight out of every ten survivors was injured. Jiang Ziya fled on his nondescript. Jinzha and Muzha escaped riding dust clouds, and Nezha raced away on his Wind-Fire Wheels. Dragon Beard Tiger fled through water.

Back in the city, Jiang Ziya counted the losses and found that most of his generals were wounded and nine had been killed. Six of them were princes, sons of Prince Wen. He was stricken with grief. At the same time, the Shang army returned to their camp dancing and singing. The four generals immediately held a military conference.

“Surround the city and attack with all our strength until we get hold of Jiang Ziya and King Wu,” Mo Lihong said optimistically.

“You’re absolutely right, Brother,” Mo Liqing said.

The following day they surrounded West Qi City. Jiang Ziya dared not encounter them again. He ordered that the boards of truce be hung on the watch towers and refused to answer any challenge. But Mo Liqing disregarded the boards.

“Put up scaling ladders all round the city walls and use the cannons,” he ordered.

The situation in the city became critical.

Jiang Ziya put up a strong resistance. He mounted the wall with Jinzha, Muzha, Nezha, Huang Feihu, Dragon Beard Tiger and the other unwounded generals. They defended the city with lime bottles, stone balls, burning arrows, and long spears day and night. After three days, the Shang army had suffered heavy losses but had still failed to break through the city defences.



日点人马困城，尽力攻打，指日可破，子牙成擒，武王授首。”魔礼青曰：“贤弟言之甚善。”次日进兵围城，喊声大振，杀奔城下，坐名请子牙临阵。探马报进帅府。子牙传令：“将‘免战牌’挂在城敌楼上。”魔礼青传令：“四面架起云梯，用火炮攻打。”甚是危急。且说子牙失利，诸将带伤，忙领金、木二吒，龙须虎，哪吒，黄飞虎不曾带伤者上城，设灰瓶，炮石，火箭，火弓，硬弩，长枪，千方守御，日夜防备。魔家四将见四门攻打三日不下，反损有兵卒，魔礼红曰：“暂且退兵。”命军士鸣金，退兵回营。当晚兄弟四人商议：“姜尚乃昆仑教下，自善用兵。我们且不可用力攻打，只可紧困；困得他里无粮草，外无援兵，此城不攻自破矣。”礼青曰：“贤弟言之有理。”安心困城。不觉困了两月。四将心下甚是焦躁：“闻太师命吾伐西岐，如今将近两三个月，未能破敌；十万之众，日费许多钱粮，倘太师嗔怪，体面何存。也罢，今晚初更，各将异宝祭于空中，就把西岐旋成渤海，早早奏凯还朝。”魔礼寿曰：“兄长之言妙甚。”各各欢喜。不言兄弟计较停当。且说子牙在相府有事，又见失机，与武成王黄飞虎议退兵之策。忽然猛风大作，把宝纛幡杆一折两段。子牙大惊，忙焚香，把金钱搜求八卦，只吓得面如土色；随即沐浴，更衣拈香，望昆仑下拜。——子牙倒海救西岐。有诗为证：

玉虚秘授甚精奇，玄内玄中定坎离。魔家四将施奇宝，  
子牙倒海救西岐。

话说子牙披发仗剑，倒海把西岐罩了。却说玉虚宫元始天尊知西岐事体，把琉璃瓶中静水望西岐一泼，乃三光神圣，浮



"Withdraw the army," Mo Lihong ordered.

That night, the four brothers discussed the situation again.

"As a disciple on Mount Kunlun, Jiang Shang's well-trained in war tactics. We can't take the city by force, so we'd better besiege them until they run out of supplies. We'll prevent them from getting any reinforcements from outside, and the city will fall of its own accord," Mo Lihong suggested.

"You're right, Brother," said Mo Liqing.

But after two months, and the besieged city was still holding out. They became worried.

"It's been nearly three months, but we still haven't captured the city. What shall we do? We've got 100,000 soldiers, and our expenses are high. We'd be ashamed if Grand Tutor Wen should reprimand us. How about this: We all send our magic weapons into the air tonight and destroy West Qi City in one blow. It seems the only sensible way to go now," Mo Liqing proposed.

"Excellent idea. Let's take action tonight, Brother," Mo Lishou agreed.

Jiang Ziya was discussing with Huang Feihu and the other generals about how to repulse the Shang army when a sudden wind whipped through the hall, snapping the pole of a big banner in two. This strange phenomenon alarmed him. He quickly burned incense and made a divination with gold coins. He read the results, and his face turned pale with fright. He immediately bathed, changed his robes, burned more incense, and kowtowed toward Mount Kunlun. Hair loosened and sword in hand, he moved the whole North Sea over to cover West Qi City.

At the very same time, the Mo brothers' plan had also been discovered by Heavenly Primogenitor. He sprinkled a few drops of Divine Water of the Three Lights from his glazed vase over West Qi City where it floated on the surface of the sea.

Early that night, Mo Liqing waved his Green Cloud Sword, Mo Lihong twirled his umbrella, Mo Lihai plucked the strings of his lute, and Mo Lishou released his ermine. Dark clouds rapidly covered the sky, and a cold fog enveloped the earth. Thunderclaps rang out as if Heaven itself was about to collapse. The four brothers played their magic weapons, expecting to achieve great success and return to the capital in triumph the next day. They did not return satisfied to their camp until dawn.



在海水上面。再说魔礼青把青云剑祭起地、水、火、风；魔礼红祭混元珍珠伞；魔礼海拨动琵琶；魔礼寿祭起花狐貂；只见四下里阴云布合，冷雾迷空，响若雷鸣，势如山倒，骨碌碌天崩，滑喇喇地塌。三军见而心惊，一个个魂迷意怕。兄弟四人各施异术，要成大功，奏凯回朝，则怕你一场空想。正是：

枉费心机空费力，雪消春水一场空。

且说魔家兄弟四人祭此各样异宝，只到三更尽，才收了回营，指望次日回兵。且说子牙借北海水救了西岐，众将一夜不曾安枕。至次日，子牙把海水退回北海，依旧现出城来，分毫未动。且说纣营军校见西岐城上草也不曾动一根，忙报四位元帅：“西岐城全然不曾坏动一角。”四将大惊，齐出辕门看时，果然如此。四人无法可施，一策莫展；只得把人马紧困西岐。

且说子牙倒海救了此危，点将上城看守。非一日，乌飞兔走，不觉又困两月。子牙被困，无法退兵。魔家四将英勇，仗倚宝贝，焉能取胜。忽有总督粮储官见子牙，具言：“三济仓缺粮，止可支用十日。请丞相定夺。”子牙惊曰：“兵困城事小；城中缺粮事大。如之奈何！”武成王黄飞虎曰：“丞相可发告示与居民，富厚者必积有稻谷，或借三四万，或五六万，待退兵之日，加利给还，亦是暂救燃眉之计。”子牙曰：“不可。吾若出示，民慌军乱，必有内变之祸。料还有十日之粮，再作区处。”子牙不行。不觉又过七八日。子牙算止得二日粮，心下十分着忙，大是忧郁。那日，来了两位道童，一个穿红，一个穿青，至相府门上，对



Jiang Ziya sent the water back to the sea at sunrise, and the city reappeared as usual. The Shang soldiers rushed to the camp and reported the news to the four brothers. They were astonished and went to see for themselves. Sure enough, they found the report to be true. They were at a loss what to do next and had no choice but to continue the siege of the city.

Though he had saved the city from disaster that once, Jiang Ziya could not put down his defenses. Time passed swiftly, and another two months elapsed. He still had no way of repulsing the four generals. Then one day the officer in charge of the grain stores reported, "We're running short of food. Our supplies will only last about ten more days."

"What shall we do? This is more serious than if they attacked us," Jiang Ziya murmured, greatly worried.

"Prime Minister, you may demand that the rich open their private granaries and each lend us 50,000 pecks of grain. We'll return it with interest when we've defeated the enemy. That's the only solution now," Huang Feihu suggested.

"That will never do, General. It would create panic among the people and army. Let's consider it more carefully. We still have ten days."

Eight days passed. Jiang Ziya was extremely worried. But then a guard reported, "Two young Taoist lads request to see you."

When they were ushered in, they bowed and greeted Jiang Ziya, "How do you do, Uncle."

"Where do you come from? What instructions do you have for me?" Jiang Ziya asked as he returned their salutations.

"We are disciples of the Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue. My name's Han Dulong, the Poisonous Dragon and he's named Xue Ehu, the Wicked Tiger. By order of our master, we've come here to offer you food supplies."

"Where are they?"

"We're carrying them on us, but I'll show you a short letter from our master first," Han Dulong said.

He took the letter from a silk purse and handed it to Jiang Ziya, who read it carefully.

"My master told me that highly talented men would come to my aid in time of crisis, and your arrival today has proven his word," Jiang Ziya said, delighted.





门官曰：“烦你通报，要见姜师叔。”门官启老爷：“有二位道童求见。”子牙闻道者来，使命：“请来。”二位道童上殿下拜，口称“师叔”。子牙答礼曰：“二位是那座名山？何处洞府？今到西岐，有何见谕？”二道童曰：“弟子乃金庭山玉屋洞道行天尊门下弟子，姓韩，双名毒龙；这位是姓薛，双名恶虎。今奉师命，送粮前来。”子牙曰：“粮在何所？”道童曰：“弟子随身带来。”锦囊中取一筒献与子牙。子牙看筒，大喜曰：“师尊圣谕，事在危急，自有高人相辅，今果如其言。”子牙命道童：“取粮。”道童将豹皮囊中取出碗口大一个斗儿，盛有一斗米，众将又不敢笑。子牙将斗命韩毒龙：“亲送三济仓去，再来回话。”不一时，毒龙回来见子牙，“送去了。”不上两个时辰，管仓官来报：“启丞相：三济仓连气楼上，都淌出米来。”子牙大喜。——今事到急处，自有高人来佐佑，此是武王福大。有诗赞曰：

武王仁德禄能昌，增福神祇来助粮。  
紫阳洞里黄天化，西岐尽灭四天王。

话说子牙粮也足，将也多，兵也广，只没奈魔家四将奇宝伤人，因此上固守西岐，不敢擅动。且说魔家兄弟又过了两个月，将近一年，不能成功；修文书报闻太师，言子牙虽则善战，今又能守。不表。

一日，子牙正在相府，商议军功大事。忽报：“有一道者来见。”子牙命：“请来。”这道人带扇云冠，穿水合服，腰束丝绦，脚登麻鞋，至帘前下拜，口称“师叔”。子牙曰：“那里来的？”道人曰：“弟子乃玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门下，姓杨，名戩；奉师命，特来师叔左右听用。”子牙大喜。见杨



When he asked them for the promised food supply, one of them took a container from his leopard-skin bag. It was full of rice, but could contain no more than a peck at most. The generals held back their laughter with difficulty. But Jiang Ziya asked Han Dulong to take the rice to the city's three granaries. About three hours later, the officer in charge came in. "All the barns are now overflowing with rice."

At this, Jiang Ziya said happily, "A blessing from Heaven on King Wu!"

They now had sufficient food to maintain resistance but were still unable to beat the Mo generals. Jiang Ziya strengthened the city defenses but dared not take any other action.

Another two months passed. As nearly a whole year had gone by, and they had still failed to take the city, the four brothers wrote a report to Grand Tutor Wen, saying that Jiang Ziya was not only good at offense but also skilful at defense, and that was why they had not won even after so many months.

One day, Jiang Ziya was talking with his generals when a guard came in. "A Taoist at the gate wishes to see you."

When the visitor was ushered in, those present saw that he wore a cloud-fanning hat, a robe with a silk belt and a pair of hemp shoes. He bowed at the door and offered his greetings, addressing Jiang as "uncle."

"Where do you come from?"

"I'm a disciple of Jade Tripod. By order of my master, I've come to place myself at your service. My name's Yang Jian." Jiang Ziya was very pleased. He introduced Yang Jian to his generals and then took him to meet King Wu. On their return, Yang Jian asked, "Who are the generals besieging the city?"

Jiang Ziya told him.

"Since I'm here, you can remove the board of truce. I'd like to meet them and try them out. If I don't do battle with them, how can I find out how to cope with them?"

Jiang Ziya agreed and ordered his men to remove the board of truce from the city wall. A scout immediately reported to the Mo brothers that "West Qi's just removed their board of truce from the city wall."

They were delighted and left their camp straightway to give a challenge. Jiang Ziya ordered Yang Jian to meet the challenge with Nezha.



戡超群出类。杨戡与诸门人会了；见过武王，复来问：“城外屯兵者何人？”子牙把魔家四将用的“地、水、火、风”物件说了一遍，“……故此挂‘免战牌’。”杨戡曰：“弟子既来，师叔可去‘免战’二字。弟子会魔家四将，便知端的。若不见战，焉能随机应变。”子牙听言甚喜，随传令：“摘了‘免战牌’。”彼时有探马报入大营：“启元戎：西岐去了‘免战牌’。”魔家四将大喜，即刻出营搦战。探马报入相府。子牙命杨戡出城，哪吒压阵。城门开处，杨戡出马，见四将威风凛凛冲霄汉，杀气腾腾逼斗星。四将见西岐城内一人，似道非道，似俗非俗，带扇云冠，道服丝绦，骑白马，执长枪。魔礼青曰：“来者何人？”杨戡答曰：“吾乃姜丞相师侄杨戡是也。你有什么能，敢来此行凶作怪，仗倚左道害人。眼前叫你知吾利害，死无葬身之地！”纵马摇枪来取。却说魔家四将有半年不曾会战，如今一齐出来，步战杨戡；四将围将上来，把杨戡裹在垓心，酣战城下。且说楚州有解粮官，解粮往西岐，正要进城，见前面战场阻路。此人姓马，名成龙；用两口刀，坐赤兔马，心性英烈，见战场阻路，大喝一声：“吾来了！”那马撞在圈子内，力敌四将。魔礼寿又见一将冲杀将来，心中大怒，未及十合，取出花狐貂祭在空中，化如一只白象，口似血盆，牙如利刃，乱抢人吃。有诗为证：

此兽修成隐显功，阴阳二气在其中。随时大小皆能变，  
吃尽人心若野熊。

却说祭起花狐貂，一声响，把马成龙吃了半节去。杨戡在马上暗喜：“元来有这个孽障作怪！”魔家四将也不知道杨戡有九转炼就元功，魔礼寿又祭花狐貂，一声响，也把杨戡咬了



The Mo brothers saw a general emerge from the city. He wore a cloud-fanning hat and a robe with a silk belt, rode a white horse, and carried a long lance. It was difficult to tell whether he was a Taoist or a layman.

“Who are you?” Mo Liqing asked.

“I’m Yang Jian, nephew of Prime Minister Jiang. How dare you come here hounding the people with your witchcraft! I’ll teach you a lesson, and you’ll die without a place to bury your corpses!”

He galloped forward and stabbed at them with his lance. The brothers had had no chance to fight for half a year and ran out on foot to engage him. They surrounded him and fought fiercely under the city wall.

As they battled, General Ma Chenglong arrived with food supplies from Chuzhou. He found that his path was blocked and spurred his chestnut horse forward.

“Here I come!” he cried.

Whirling his twin cutlasses, he fought into the circle against the Mo generals. When he saw that another Zhou general had joined the battle, Mo Lishou hurriedly released his ermine into the air. It transformed into a huge white elephant and, swooping down, swallowed half of General Ma Chenglong in a single gulp.

Seeing this, Yang Jian was secretly delighted. “So that’s the devil and the cause of all the trouble. I’ll deal with him!”

The Mo generals did not know that Yang Jian had great magic powers. When the spotted ermine flew up into the air again, it swallowed half of Yang Jian. Nezha saw it all, and retreated into the city, rushing to the prime minister’s mansion.

“Yang Jian’s been devoured by the spotted ermine,” he told Jiang Ziya, who became extremely worried.

Returning in triumph, the Mo brothers drank together joyfully. Early that night, Mo Lishou suggested, “Brothers, I’ll send the ermine into the city tonight to devour Jiang Ziya and King Wu. Once that’s done, we can return home victoriously, and we won’t need to waste our time continuing the siege.”



半节去。哪吒见势头不好，进城来报姜丞相，说：“杨戩被花狐貂吃了。”子牙郁郁不乐，纳闷在府。

且说魔家四将得胜回营，治酒，兄弟共饮。吃到二更时分，魔礼寿曰：“长兄，如今把花狐貂放进城里去，若是吃了姜尚，吞了武王，大事定了。那时好班师归国，何必与他死守。”四人酒后，各发狂言。礼青曰：“贤弟之言有理。”礼寿豹皮囊取出花狐貂，叫曰：“宝贝，你若吃了姜尚回来，此功莫大。”遂祭在空中去了。花狐貂乃是一兽，只知吃人，那知道吃了杨戩是个祸胎。——杨戩曾炼过九转元功，七十二变化，无穷妙道，肉身成圣，封清源妙道真君。花狐貂把他吃在腹里。——杨戩听着四将计较，杨戩曰：“孽障，也不知我是谁！”把花狐貂的心一捏，那东西叫一声，跌将下来。杨戩现身，把花狐貂一撑两段。杨戩现元形，有三更时分，来相府门前，叫左右报丞相。守门军士击鼓。子牙三更时，还与哪吒共议魔家四将事，忽听鼓响，报：“杨戩回来。”子牙大惊：“人死岂能复生！”命哪吒探虚实。哪吒至大门首问曰：“杨道兄，你已死了，为何又至？”杨戩曰：“你我道门徒弟，各玄妙不同。快开门！我有要紧事报与师父。”哪吒命开了门。杨戩同至殿前。子牙惊问：“早晨阵亡，为何又至？必有回生之术！”杨戩把魔礼寿放花狐貂进城，“要伤武王、师叔，弟子在那孽障腹中听着，方才把花狐貂弄死了，特来报知师叔。”子牙闻言大喜：“吾有这等道术之客，何惧之有！”戩曰：“弟子如今还去。”哪吒曰：“道兄如何去得？”杨戩曰：“家师秘授，自有玄妙，随风变化，不可思议。有诗为证：



As the four generals were already drunk, they all talked wildly. "You're right, Brother! Do it at once," Mo Liqing agreed readily.

Mo Lishou took the ermine from his bag. "Darling! You can do no greater service than to eat both Jiang Ziya and King Wu." Released into the sky, the ermine flew off and disappeared. But the ermine was a wild animal. How could it realize that by swallowing Yang Jian it had brought disaster on itself? Yang Jian had great magic powers. He could transform into seventy-two different forms and was to become the Divine Immortal of Purity and Decency.

In the belly of the ermine, he heard everything the four generals had said. As the ermine flew toward West Qi, he grabbed its heart and squeezed. The beast fell from the sky with a shrill cry. Yang Jian swelled his body until the ermine split in two; he then jumped out. He returned to Jiang Ziya's mansion later that night and asked to be admitted. Jiang Ziya was still discussing with Nezha how to deal with the Mo brothers when a guard announced his arrival.

Jiang Ziya gasped in astonishment, "How can a dead man return to life!"

He sent Nezha to investigate. Nezha met Yang Jian at the gate. "Brother Yang! You were killed, but how can you come back here?"

"Though we both have magic powers, we're able to do different things, that's why. Hurry! Let me in. I've got something important to tell our uncle."

When Yang Jian entered the hall, Jiang Ziya asked in surprise, "You were killed on the battlefield early this morning. How can you return again? You must possess the art of restoring yourself to life!"

"I was in the belly of the ermine. I heard Mo Lishou telling it to come to the city and devour you and King Wu. But I killed the beast on the way, and I've returned here to report the matter," Yang Jian answered.

"With highly talented men like you, what have we to fear?" Jiang Ziya said happily.

"I must return to the Shang camp," Yang Jian said.

"But how will you get back, Brother?" Nezha asked.

"Don't worry! I've mastered the art of transforming myself into anything I please: a hill, a stream, gold, silver, copper or iron. I can transform myself into any living creature: bird, phoenix, dragon, lion or tiger. I can effect the transformation in the twinkling of an eye," Yang Jian answered.

"Show us one or two of your transformations," Jiang Ziya requested.

Yang Jian gave his body a shake and turned into the spotted ermine.



秘授仙传真妙诀，我与道中俱各别。或山或水或巖崖，  
或金或宝或铜铁。或鸾或凤或飞禽，或龙或虎或狮鸚。  
随风有影即无形，赴得蟠桃添寿节。”

子牙听罢，“你有此奇术，可显一二。”杨戩随身一晃，变成花狐貂满地跳。把哪吒喜不自胜。杨戩曰：“弟子去也！”响一声，才要去。子牙曰：“杨戩，且住！你有大术，把魔家四将宝贝取来，使他束手不能成功。”杨戩即时飞出西岐城，落在魔家四将帐上。礼寿听的宝贝回来，忙用手接住，瞧了一瞧，见不曾吃了人来。将近四鼓时分，兄弟同进帐中睡去。正是酒酣睡倒，鼻息如雷，莫知高下。杨戩自豹皮囊中跳出来，将魔家四将帐上挂有四件宝贝，杨戩用手一端，端塌了，止拿得一把伞。那三件宝贝落地有声。魔礼红梦中听见有响声，急起来看时，“呀！却元来挂塌了钩子，吊将下来！”糊涂醉眼，不曾查得，就复挂在上面，依旧睡了。且说杨戩复到西岐城来见子牙，将混元珍珠伞献上。金木二吒、哪吒都来看伞。杨戩复又入营，还在豹皮囊中。不表。

且说次早中军帐鼓响，兄弟四人，各取宝贝，魔礼红不见混元伞，大惊：“为何不见了此伞！”急问巡内营将校。众将曰：“内营红尘也飞不进来，那有奸细得入。”魔礼红大叫：“吾立大功，只凭此宝；今一旦失了，怎生奈何！”四将见如此失利，郁郁不乐，无心整理军情。……

且说青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君忽然心血潮来，叫金霞童子：“请你师兄来。”童儿领命，少时间请师兄至。黄天化至碧游床前，倒身下拜：“老师父，叫弟子那里使用？”真君曰：“你打点下山。你父子当立功为周主，随我来。”黄天化



He pranced around the floor, filling Nezha with delight. Yang Jian was about to leave when Jiang Ziya stopped him.

“Wait a minute, Yang Jian. Don’t be in such a hurry. As you’ve got the skill, why don’t you steal the weapons from the Mo brothers?”

Yang Jian immediately flew out of the city, entered the Shang camp, and landed on the canopy of the Mo brothers’ tent. Mo Lishou saw it and took it in his hands. He looked at it closely but was disappointed to find no sign of its having devoured anybody.

Late that night, the Mo generals drunkenly entered their tent and collapsed into bed. They were soon asleep and snoring like thunder. Yang Jian saw his opportunity. He jumped out of the bag and tried to get hold of the weapons hanging on the tent frame. As he grabbed the Universe Muddling Umbrella, he knocked the other two weapons onto the floor. The noise roused the four generals, but in their drunken stupor, they assumed the weapons had fallen because their hooks were loose. They carelessly picked them up and hooked them back onto the tent frame then fell back into sleep.

Yang Jian flew to West Qi City and gave the umbrella to Jiang Ziya. Nezha and his brothers came forward to inspect it as Yang Jian returned to the Shang camp. He crawled back into Mo Lishou’s leopard-skin bag.

Early the next morning, the Mo brothers rose at the drum signal, and each went to collect his weapon. When Mo Lihong found his umbrella missing, he cried out in fright and called in his generals to question them.

“How could a spy have got in? The camps are so strictly guarded that even a speck of dust could not get in unnoticed,” the generals replied.

“That is the weapon I have relied on to achieve great victories,” Mo Lihong shouted. “What can I do now without it?”

The four brothers were greatly disheartened by the loss and were in no mood to give any challenges that day.

Meanwhile in the Purple Sun Cave on Mount Green Peak, Virtue of the Pure Void felt a rush of blood to the heart. He ordered Golden Haze Lad, “Tell your fellow disciple to come and see me at once.”

Obedying his orders, Golden Haze Lad brought in Huang Tianhua. When he entered the cave, Huang Tianhua knelt down before the Green Touring Bed on which the immortal was sitting. “Master, what are your orders?”

“You’d better get ready to leave. Go to West Qi and serve King Wu with your father and brothers. But first come with me.”

Following his master to the peach garden, Huang Tianhua was given





随师至桃园中。真君传二柄锤。天化见而即会，精熟停当，无不了然。真君曰：“将吾的玉麒麟与你骑；又将火龙标带去。徒弟，你不可忘本，必尊道德。”黄天化曰：“弟子怎敢？”辞了师父，出洞来，上了玉麒麟，把角一拍，四足起风云之声。——此兽乃道德真君闲戏三山、闷游五岳之骑。黄天化即时来至西岐，落下麒麟，来到相府，令门官通报。“启丞相：有一道童求见。”子牙曰：“请来。”黄天化上殿下拜，口称：“师叔，弟子黄天化奉师命下山，听候左右。”子牙问：“那一座山？”黄飞虎曰：“此童乃青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君门下黄天化，乃未将长子。”子牙大喜：“将军有子出家修道，更当庆幸！”且说黄天化父子重逢，同回王府，置酒父子欢饮。黄天化在山吃斋，今日在王府吃荤，随挽双抓髻，穿王服，带束发冠，金抹额，穿大红服，贯金锁甲，束玉带，次日上殿见子牙。子牙一见天化如此装束，便曰：“黄天化，你元是道门，为何一旦变服？我身居相位，不敢忘昆仑之德。你昨日下午下山，今日变服；还把丝绦束了。”黄天化领命，系了丝绦。天化曰：“弟子下山，退魔家四将，故此如将家装束耳。怎敢忘本！”子牙曰：“魔家四将乃左道之术也，须紧要提防。”天化曰：“师命指明，何足惧哉！”子牙许之。黄天化上了玉麒麟，拎两柄槌，开放城门，至辕门请战。四天王正遇丙灵公。不知胜败如何，且听下回分解。



two hammers as his weapons. Under the immortal's guidance, he soon learned to wield them with amazing skill and dexterity.

"I'll give you my jade unicorn and my Fire Dragon Javelin. However, don't ever forget your Taoist origins and what I've taught you," his master warned him solemnly.

"How could I dare!" Huang Tianhua answered unhesitatingly.

He bade farewell to his master and left the cave on the jade unicorn. At a gentle pat on the horn, the unicorn immediately rose and traveled swiftly on the clouds and wind. He arrived in West Qi in a moment. Huang Tianhua dismounted, asked the gateman to report his arrival to Jiang Ziya, and was ushered in.

He bowed to Jiang Ziya. "Uncle, on my master's orders, I'm here to place myself at your service."

Jiang Ziya was about to ask where he came from when Huang Feihu said, "He is a disciple of Virtue of the Pure Void and my eldest son, Huang Tianhua."

Jiang Ziya was greatly pleased. "General, how lucky you are to have a son that studies the Way with an immortal," he congratulated Huang Feihu.

When he got to his father's home, Tianhua drank happily with his family. He ate only vegetables when he was on Mount Green Peak, but now he feasted on meat. He fixed his hair in two coils, put on a hat, and wore golden armor over a scarlet robe and a jade belt.

The next morning he went to see Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya was surprised to see him dressed as a prince. "Huang Tianhua, you're a Taoist. Why do you ignore this and change your clothing? Though I'm prime minister, I never forget Mount Kunlun and still dress as a Taoist. At least tie this silk cord around your waist."

Huang Tianhua obediently took the silk cord and tied it up as a belt. "As I came for the Mo brothers, I have to dress as a general. I could never forget my Taoist background."

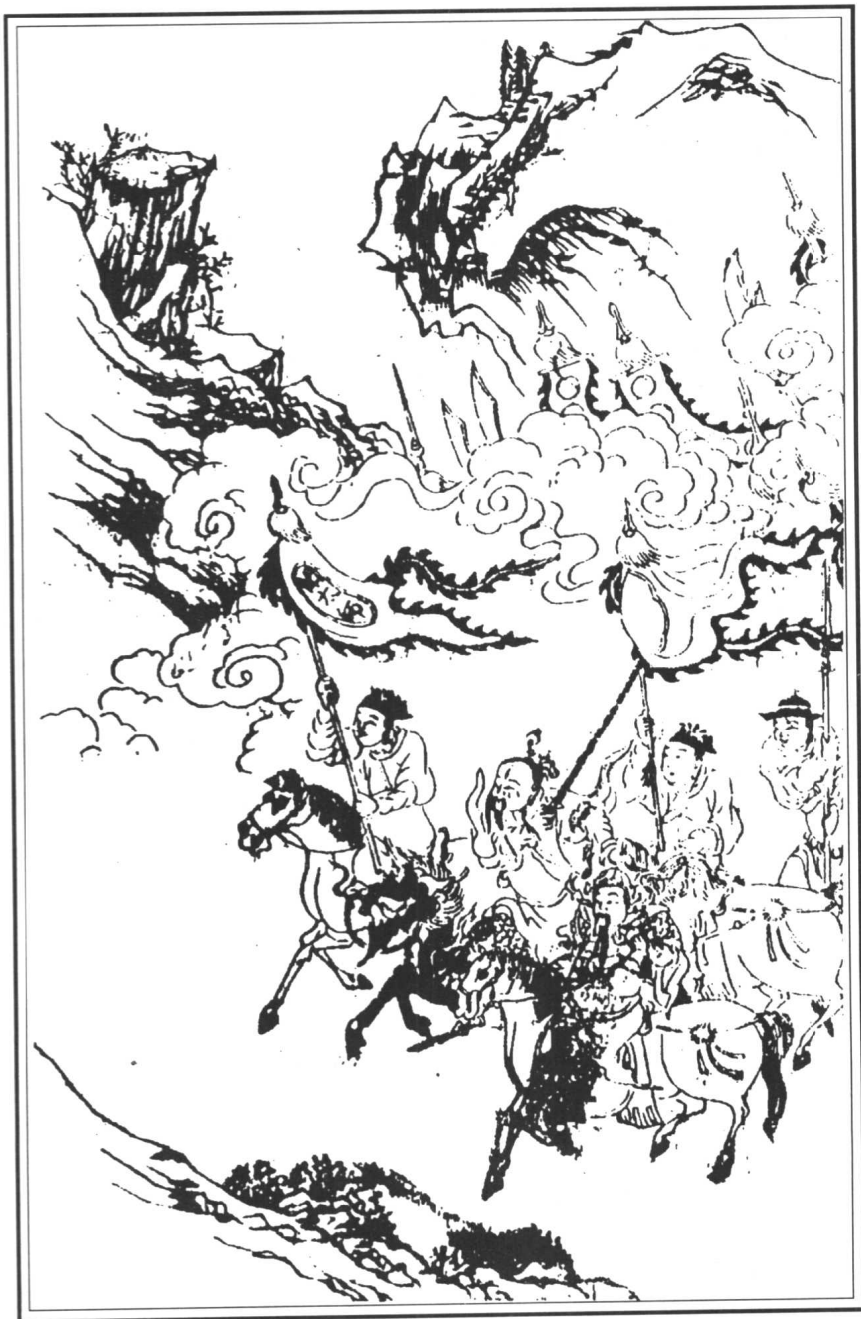
"You must be very careful. They're highly skilled in witchcraft," Jiang Ziya warned him.

"My master gave me clear instructions about how to take care of them. I don't fear them at all."

With Jiang Ziya's approval, Huang Tianhua mounted his jade unicorn and rode out of the city, hammers in hand. Galloping to the gates of the Shang camp, he gave a challenge.

If you want to learn the outcome of that encounter, please read the next chapter.





## 第四十一回

### 闻太师兵伐西岐

诗曰：

太师行兵出故商，西风飒飒送斜阳。君因乱政民多难，臣为摠忠命尽伤。惟知去日宁知返，只识兴时那识亡。四将亦随征进没，令人几度忆成汤。

且说魔礼红不见了珍珠伞，无心整理军情。忽报：“有将在辕门讨战。”四将听说，随点人马出营会战：见一将骑玉麒麟而来。但见怎生打扮，有赞为证：

悟道高山十六春，仙传道术最通灵。潼关曾救生身父，莫耶宝剑斩陈桐。束发金冠飞烈焰，大红袍上绣团龙，连环砌就金锁铠，腰下绒绦左右分，两柄银锤生八楞，稳坐走阵玉麒麟。奉命特来收四将，西岐城外立头功。旗开拱手黄天化，“封神榜”上丙灵公。

魔礼青观看一员小将，身坐玉麒麟，到阵前曰：“来者何人？”天化答曰：“吾非别人，乃开国武成王长男黄天化是也；今奉姜丞相将令，特来擒你。”魔礼青大怒，摇枪拽步来取黄天化。天化手中锤赴面交还。步骑交兵，一场大战。怎见得：

发鼓振天雷，锣鸣两阵催。红幡如烈火，将军八面威。这一个舍命而安社稷；那一个拚残生欲正华夷。自来也见将军战，不似今番枪对锤。



## Chapter 41

### Grand Tutor Wen Attacks West Qi

When they heard that a general from West Qi was challenging them, the brothers hurried out. They saw a young general riding a jade unicorn. He was about sixteen years old and wore a gold helmet and a scarlet robe covered with gold chain mail. He held two silver hammers in his hands.

Mo Liqing moved up. "Who are you?"

"I'm none other than Huang Tianhua, the eldest son of Prince Huang Feihu. By order of Prime Minister Jiang, I've come to take you alive."

Greatly infuriated, Mo Liqing strode up to attack Huang Tianhua. Huang Tianhua fought back with his hammers. After twenty rounds, Mo





话说魔礼青大战黄天化，麟步相交，枪锤并举，来往未及二十回合，早被魔礼青随手带起白玉金刚镯，一道霞光，打将下来，正中后心，只打的金冠倒撞，跌下马来。魔礼青方欲取首级，早被哪吒大叫：“不要伤吾道兄！”登开风火轮，杀至阵前，救了黄天化。哪吒大战魔礼青，双枪共发，杀的天愁地暗。魔礼青二起金刚镯来打哪吒。哪吒也把乾坤圈丢起。乾坤圈是金的，金刚镯是玉的，金打玉，打的粉碎。魔礼青、魔礼红一齐大呼曰：“好哪吒！伤碎吾宝，此恨怎消！”齐来动手。哪吒见势不好，忙进西岐。魔礼海正待用琵琶时，哪吒已自进城去了。魔礼青进营，见失了金刚镯。闷闷不悦。

且说黄天化被金刚镯已自打死了。黄飞虎痛哭曰：“岂知才进西岐，未安枕席，竟被打死！”甚是伤情。只得把天化尸骸停在相府门前。子牙亦是不乐。忽有人报进府来：“启丞相：有一道童求见。”子牙传令：“请来。”道童至殿前下拜。子牙问曰：“那里来的？”童子曰：“弟子是紫阳洞道德真君命弟子来背师兄黄天化回山。”子牙大喜。

白云童子将黄天化背回，至紫阳洞门前放下。道童进洞回覆曰：“师兄已背至了。”真君出洞，看天化面黄不语，闭目无言。真君命童子取水来，将丹药化开，用剑撬开口，将药灌入，随入中黄。不一个时辰，黄天化已是回生，二目睁开，见师父在傍，天化曰：“弟子如何在此相见？”真君曰：“好畜生！下山吃荤，罪之一也；变服忘本，罪之二也。若不看子牙面上，决不救你！”黄天化倒身下拜。真人取出一物，递与天化，曰：“你速往西岐，再会魔家四将，可成大



Liqing hurled his White Jade Ring at Huang Tianhua, striking him heavily on the back, and knocking him from his jade unicorn. As Mo Liqing rushed forward to cut his head off, Nezha flew forward on his Wind-Fire Wheels to intercept him.

“Don’t hurt my brother!” he shouted, and engaged Mo Liqing.

As they fought lance against lance, Mo Liqing hurled his White Jade Ring at Nezha. Without the least hesitation, Nezha tossed up his Universal Ring to meet it. As the Universal Ring was made of gold and the White Jade Ring jade, the gold shattered the jade into pieces.

“Damn you, Nezha! How can I let you live!” Mo Liqing cried.

He and Mo Lihong rushed forward in a joint attack, but Nezha was aware of the danger. He withdrew into the city before Mo Lihai could play his lute.

Huang Feihu was overcome with grief when he saw Huang Tianhua dead. “How could I imagine that you would be killed so soon!”

He lay Huang Tianhua’s corpse in front of Jiang Ziya’s mansion to await burial.

Jiang Ziya was stricken with grief too. He was alone in his mansion when a Taoist lad came to the gate and requested to see him. When the lad was ushered in, he bowed. “I’ve been sent here by Virtue of the Pure Void to carry Huang Tianhua back to the mountain.”

Jiang Ziya was delighted at the news.

The White Cloud Lad carried Huang Tianhua’s corpse to Mount Green Peak and laid it before the Purple Sun Cave. When his master walked out and saw him lying still, he directed the White Cloud Lad to fetch some water. He then dissolve an elixir pill, pried Huang’s mouth open with a sword, and poured the solution down his throat. An hour or two later, Huang Tianhua returned to life. He opened his eyes and saw his master.

“How do I meet you here, Master?” Huang Tianhua asked.

“Brute! It’s a sin to eat meat. It’s a sin to take off your Taoist dress and forget your origins. It’s only for Jiang Ziya’s sake that I brought you back to life!”

Huang Tianhua felt ashamed and kowtowed before his master. The immortal then took something out and handed it to him. “Hurry back to West Qi and meet the brothers again. You’ll score great success with this magic weapon. I’ll be there soon, too.”





功。我不久也要下山。”黄天化辞了师父，借土遁前来，须臾便至西岐，落下遁光，来至相府。门官忙报。子牙命至殿前。黄天化把师父言语说了一遍。飞虎大喜。次日，黄天化上了玉麒麟出城，坐名要魔家四将。军政司报进营：“黄天化请战。”魔家四将听报，忙出营。见天化精神赳赳，大叫曰：“今日定见雌雄！”魔礼青摇枪来刺。天化火速来迎。麒麟步相交，一场大战。未及三五回合，天化便走。魔礼青随后赶来。黄天化回头一看，见魔礼青来赶，挂下双锤，取出一幅锦囊，打开看时，只见长有七寸五分，放出华光，火焰夺目，名曰“攒心钉”。黄天化掌在手中。回手一发；此钉如稀世奇珍，一道金光出掌。怎见得，有诗为证：

此宝今番出紫阳，炼成七寸五分清，  
玄中妙法真奇异，收伏魔家四大王。

话说黄天化发出攒心钉，正中魔礼青前心，不觉穿心而过。只见魔礼青大叫一声，跌倒在地。魔礼红见兄长打倒在地，心中大怒，急忙跑出阵来，把方天戟一摆，紧紧赶来。黄天化收回钉，仍复打来。魔礼红躲不及，又中前心。此钉见心才过，响一声，跌在尘埃。魔礼海大呼曰：“小畜生！将何物伤吾二兄？”急出时，早被黄天化连发此钉，又将魔礼海打中。也是该四天王命绝，正遇丙灵公，此乃天数。只有魔礼寿见三兄死于非命，心中甚是大怒，忙忙走出，用手往豹皮囊里拿花狐貂出来，欲伤黄天化。不知此花狐貂乃是杨戩变化的，隐在豹皮囊里，礼寿把手来拿此物，不知杨戩把口张着，等魔礼寿的手往花狐貂嘴里来，被花狐貂一口，把魔礼寿的手咬将下来。只得一个骨头，怎熬得这般痛疼！又被黄



Huang Tianhua bade farewell to his master, mounted his dust cloud, and got back to West Qi a few moments later. He was admitted to the Prime Minister's mansion and repeated what his master had told him. Huang Feihu was overjoyed to see his son restored to life.

The following day, Huang Tianhua mounted his unicorn, rode out of the city, and once again challenged the Mo generals.

"Today I'll fight you all to the death to determine once and for all who is the best man!" Huang Tianhua cried when they had arrayed themselves before him.

Mo Liqing rushed in to attack with his lance, and Huang met him with his two hammers. After several rounds, Huang Tianhua gave up ground and began to flee on his unicorn. Mo Liqing set off in hot pursuit.

Seeing him close behind, Huang Tianhua quickly hung his hammers on the saddle and took out the silk bag his master had given him. From inside the bag he drew out a shining nail, about seven and a half inches long. It was the Heart Penetrating Nail. He hurled it back at Mo Liqing. With a flash of golden light, the nail struck Mo Liqing in the breast and went right through his heart. With a scream of agony, Mo Liqing fell to the ground.

When he saw his brother dead, Mo Lihong rushed out with his halberd. Huang Tianhua recovered the nail and threw it straight at him. Mo Lihong had no time to dodge, and it went right through him.

"You little brute! What do you use to hit my brothers?" Mo Lihai shouted.

But before he could make a move, his life was also ended by the nail. It was destined by fate that the four Heavenly Kings should lose their lives at the hands of Huang Tianhua, who was later to be created Bing Ling Gong, the Spiritual God.

His three brothers all dead, Mo Lishou put his hand into his bag to release the ermine, but he did not know that the ermine was really Yang Jian in an assumed form. As he reached into the bag, Yang Jian snapped at his hand, biting his fingers off. Mo Lishou screamed in pain, and Huang



天化一钉打来，正中胸前。可怜！正是：

治世英雄成何济，封神台上把名标。

话说黄天化打死魔家四将，方才来取首级，忽见豹皮囊中一阵风儿过处，只见花狐貂化为一人，乃是杨戩。黄天化认不得杨戩，天化问曰：“风化人形者是谁？”杨戩答曰：“吾乃杨戩是也。姜师叔有命在此，以为内应。今见兄长连克四将，正应上天之兆。”正说间，只见哪吒登轮赶来，对黄天化、杨戩言曰：“二兄今立大功，不胜喜悦！”三人彼此庆慰，同进城至相府内，来见子牙。三人将发钉打死四将，杨戩伤手之事，诉说一遍。子牙大喜，命把四将斩首号令城上。

且说魔家人马逃回进关，随路报于汜水关韩荣。韩荣闻报大惊，曰：“姜尚在西周用兵如此利害！”心上甚是着忙；乃作告急表章，星夜打上朝歌去讫。不题。

且说闻太师在相府闲坐，闻报：“游魂关窦荣屡胜东伯侯。”忽然又报：“三山关邓九公有女邓婵玉连胜南伯侯，今已退兵。”太师大喜。又报：“汜水关韩荣有报。”太师命：“令来。”来官将文书呈上。太师拆开一看，见魔家四将尽皆诛戮，号令城头，太师拍案大怒，叫曰：“谁知四将英勇，都也丧于西岐，姜尚有何本领，挫辱朝廷军将！”闻太师当中一目睁开，白光有二尺远近，只气得三尸神暴躁，七窍内生烟。自思自忖道：“也罢！如今东南二处，渐已平定，明日面君，必须亲征，方可克敌。”当日作表。次日朝贺，将出师表章来见纣王。纣王曰：“太师要伐西岐，为孤代理。”命



Tianhua's nail flew through the air for the fourth time, piercing him through the heart.

While Huang Tianhua was busy beheading the four Mo generals, the spotted ermine ran out of the bag and, in a gust of wind, returned to human form. Huang Tianhua did not know him.

"Who are you?"

"I'm Yang Jian. On Uncle Jiang's orders I stayed inside the bag as an ermine to help from within the Shang camp. You did a wonderful job, finishing them all off!"

As they talked, Nezha came over on his Wind-Fire Wheels. "I'm overjoyed, Brothers. You've won a great victory today."

They congratulated one another and returned to the city together. They then entered the prime minister's mansion and reported the victory. Jiang Ziya was delighted and ordered that the heads of the four Mo generals be hung on the city wall as a warning to invaders.

The soldiers that the Mo brothers had brought with them fled back to Sishui Pass. Han Rong was greatly alarmed. "Who would have thought that Jiang Shang would prove such a formidable opponent!"

He hurriedly wrote a report to Zhaoge. Grand Tutor Wen was quite happily reading documents in his office. One report said that "General Dou Rong of Youhun Pass has won several victories over the East Grand Duke." Another report read "General Deng Chanyu, daughter of Commander Deng Jiugong at Sanshan Pass, has repulsed the South Grand Duke." But he froze at the report from Han Rong.

"How dare Jiang Shang insult His Majesty like this! How could I have guessed that the four generals would all lose their lives! Oh, what a haughty devil you are, Jiang Shang!" The eye in the middle of his forehead opened wide, shooting forth a white beam of light about two feet long. He fumed with anger. "Right! The east and south are now gradually being brought under control. Tomorrow I'll see His Majesty and seek permission to go personally to West Qi. Only then can I be assured of defeating the enemy."

The following day, when he presented his report, King Zhou gave his immediate approval. "I appreciate it very much that the Grand Tutor is to punish the rebels on my behalf."



左右：“速发黄旄、白钺，得专征伐。”太师择吉日，祭宝纛旗幡。纣王亲自饯别，满斟一杯，递与闻太师。太师接酒，躬身奏曰：“老臣此去，必克除反叛，清静边隅。愿陛下言听计从，百事详察而行，毋令君臣隔绝，上下不通。臣多不过半载，便自奏凯还朝。”纣王曰：“太师此行，朕自无虑，不久候太师佳音。”命排黄旄、白钺，令闻太师起行。太师饮过数杯。纣王看闻太师上骑。那墨麒麟久不曾出战，今日闻太师方欲骑上，被墨麒麟叫一声，跳将起来，把闻太师跌将下来。百官大惊。左右扶起。太师忙整衣冠。时有下大夫王变，上前奏曰：“太师今日出兵落骑，实为不祥；可再点别将征伐可也。”太师曰：“大夫差矣！人臣将身许国而忘其家，上马抡兵而忘其命，将军上阵，不死带伤；此理之常，何足为异。大抵此骑久不曾出战，未曾演试，筋骨不能舒伸，故有此失。大夫幸勿再言。”随传令：“点炮起兵。”太师复上骑。此一别，正不知何年再会君臣面，只落得默默英魂带血归。太师一点丹心，三年征伐，俱是为国为民。

用尽机谋扶帝业，上天垂象不能成。

话说闻太师提大兵三十万出了朝歌，渡黄河，兵至渑池县。总兵官张奎迎接，至帐前行礼毕。太师问：“往西岐那一条路近？”张奎答曰：“往青龙关近二百里。”太师传令：“往青龙关去。”人马离了渑池县，往青龙关来。一路上旗幡招展，绣带飘飘，真好人马！怎见得，有赞为证：

飞龙幡红缨闪闪；飞凤幡紫雾盘旋。飞虎幡腾腾杀气；  
飞豹幡盖地遮天。挡牌滚滚，短剑辉辉。挡牌滚滚，扫  
万军之马足；短剑辉辉，破千重之狼铤。大杆刀、雁翎



He ordered that Grand Tutor Wen be presented with the yellow scepter and white axes that represented royal authority. On an auspicious date, Grand Tutor Wen sacrificed to the grand banners and started off to West Qi.

Before his departure, King Zhou filled a cup and handed it to him. He received it with a bow. "Your old minister has to exert all his efforts to subdue the rebels and restore peace. During my absence, I earnestly hope that Your Majesty will listen to the loyal, be diligent, and live in harmony with the ministers. I'll be able to return in about half a year."

"I've got no worries about you. I'll be expecting your victorious return, Grand Tutor."

King Zhou saw him to his mount. But the unicorn had been idle for months. It screamed and reared when the Grand Tutor mounted, sending him tumbling to the ground. His attendants helped him up. Grand Tutor Wen was straightening his hat and robe when Wang Bian, a junior minister, came over.

"Grand Tutor, it's not a good omen. It might be better to send someone else."

"Not at all, sir! A subject should work for the king without a thought of his home, and fight on the battlefield without a thought of his own life. To be wounded or even killed is nothing for a general, a quite ordinary experience. The unicorn's long been idle. That's why it threw me. Please don't say anything more about it."

He remounted and set off, taking his 300,000 soldiers across the Yellow River to Mianchi County where he was welcomed by Zhang Kui. Grand Tutor Wen asked, "Which is the shortest route to West Qi, General?"

"You can cut 200 *li* off the march if you go via the Green Dragon Pass."

The big army set off once more, marching through the Green Dragon Pass to the sound of drums and gongs. Beyond the pass, the rugged



刀，排开队伍；鍙金枪、点钢枪，荡荡殊纓。太阿剑、昆吾剑，龙鳞砌就；金装铜、银镀铜，冷气森严。画杆戟、银尖戟，飘扬豹尾；开山斧、宣花斧，一似车轮。三军呐喊撼天关，五色旗摇遮映日。一声鼓响，诸营奋勇逞雄威；数棒锣鸣，众将委蛇随队伍。宝纛幡下，瑞气笼烟；金字令旗，来往穿梭。能报事拐子马紧挨鹿角；能冲锋连珠炮提防劫营。

诗曰：

腾腾杀气滚征埃，隐隐红云映绿苔。十里止闻戈甲响，一座兵山出土来。

话说大兵离了青龙关，一路崎岖窄小，止容一二骑而行，人马甚是难走，跋涉更觉险峻。闻太师见如是艰难，悔之不及。早知如此，不若还走五关，方便许多；如今反耽误了程途。一日，来到黄花山，只见一座大山。怎见得，有赞为证：

远观山，山青叠翠；近观山，翠叠青山。山青叠翠，参天松婆婆弄影；翠叠青山，靠峻岭逼陡悬崖。逼陡涧，绿桧影摇玄豹尾；峻悬崖，青松折齿老龙腰。望上看，似梯似磴；望下看，如穴如坑。青山万丈接云霄，斗涧鹰愁侵地户。此山：到春来如火如荼，到夏来如蓝如翠，到秋来如金如锦，到冬来如玉如银。到春来，怎见得如火如荼：红灼灼夭桃喷火，绿依依弱柳含烟。到夏来，怎见得如蓝如翠：雨来苍烟欲滴，月过岚气氤氲。到秋来，怎见得如金如锦：一攒攒，一簇簇，俱是黄花吐瑞；一层层，一片片，尽是红叶摇风。到冬来，怎见得如玉如银：水晃晃冻成千块玉；雪濛濛堆叠一银山。

mountain paths narrowed, permitting only one horse and rider through at a time. The marching was difficult and risky. He realized it would have been faster to take the route directly through the five passes, but it was already too late for him to regret his decision.

After several days, they got to Yellow Flower Mountain. It was green and lush with pine trees that covered the peaks and cliffs, bordered the streams and shaded the caves. In spring, flowers turned the mountain a fiery red. In summer, the lush vegetation, moistened by the rain and illuminated by bright moonlight, made the mountain look as if it was made of blue jade and emerald. In autumn, yellow flowers and red leaves turned the mountain into a blaze of colors. In winter, when snow drifts lay deep and water froze into crystals, the mountain seemed to be covered with silver and white jade. Winding streams crisscrossed across the hillsides, and beautiful birds sang sweetly in the trees.







山径崎岖，难进难出；水回曲折，流去流来。树梢上生生不已，鸟啼时韵致悠扬。正是：观之不舍，乐坐忘归。有诗为证：

一山未过一山迎，千里全无半里平，莫道牧童遥指处，只看图画不堪行。

话说闻太师看此山险恶，传令安下人马，催开墨麒麟，自上山来观看。见有一程平坦之地，好似一个战场。太师叹曰：“好一座山！若是朝歌宁静，老夫来黄花山避静消闲，多少快乐！”又见依依翠竹，古木乔松，赏玩不尽。正看此山景致，忽听脑后一声锣响，太师急勒转坐骑，原来是山下走阵；走的乃是长蛇阵，阵头一将，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，上下獠牙，金甲红袍，坐下黑马，手使一柄开山斧。闻太师贪看走阵，不觉被山下士卒看见：闻太师身穿红袍，坐骑一兽，用两根金鞭，偷看阵势。士卒竟不走阵，来报主将：“启大王千岁：山上有一人探看吾等巢穴。”那人见说，抬头一看，大怒，速命退了阵，把马一磕，那马飞上山来。闻太师看见一将飞来，甚是英雄，十分勇猛，心中大喜：“收得此人，去伐西岐，乃是用人之际。”心上正自踌躇，不觉那马已到面前。只见来将大呼曰：“你是何人？好大胆！敢来探吾山穴！”闻太师曰：“贫道看此山幽静，欲化此结一茅庵，早晚诵一二卷‘黄庭’；不识将军肯否？”来人大怒，骂道：“好妖道！”催开马，摇手中斧，飞来直取。闻太师用金鞭急架忙迎，鞭斧交加，勇战在高山之上。闻太师征伐多年，不知见过多少豪杰，那里把他放在眼里。见这将使的斧也有些本领，“待吾收了此人往西岐去，虽无大成，亦有小就。”太



As it was steep and perilous, Grand Tutor Wen ordered his army to halt at the foot of the mountain and climbed to the summit by himself. There he found an immense area of flat ground which seemed to have been used as a battlefield.

“How wonderful! Should Zhaoge be blessed with peace, how happy I would be to enjoy my remaining years in this tranquility.”

He was admiring the green bamboos and ancient pine trees when he heard the beating of gongs. He looked back and found that troops were marching up the mountain. There was a general on horseback with an indigo face, cinnabar hair, and a mouth full of long tusks. He wore a red robe and gold armor and carried a huge battle-axe.

As Grand Tutor Wen watched them attentively, his scarlet robe, black unicorn and two gold staves were noticed by a patrolman, “Your Honor, there’s a man on the hillside above spying on us,”

Looking up, the general saw Grand Tutor Wen watching their movements. He angrily spurred his horse up the slope. Grand Tutor Wen felt pleased with his bold ferocity. “We could do with this man at West Qi,” he thought.

As he pondered, the general galloped up before him. “Who are you? How dare you spy on our mountain hideout?”

“I like this quiet place. I wish that I could build a hut here and recite the Taoist scriptures day and night. Would you consent, General?”

The man became angry. “You damned Taoist devil,” he cursed and charged at him with his axe.

The Grand Tutor met the assault with his two gold staves, and the two fought back and forth vigorously.

Grand Tutor Wen was a great warrior. He had experienced hundreds of battles and thousands of warriors, and naturally thought nothing of this opponent. Yet the man could wield his axe quite skilfully. “I really should take this man with me to West Qi. Though not outstanding, he may be useful to me.”

He seized the first chance to pull out of the fight and galloped off towards the east. As soon as he heard the man close behind him, he pointed at the ground with a gold staff, and a high gold wall instantly sprung up around the general, trapping him within. Grand Tutor Wen returned to his original place, dismounted, and sat on a rock with his back against a pine tree, watching for further developments.



师把骑一拨，往东就走。那人赶来。闻太师听脑后铃声响亮，把金鞭一指，平地现出一座金墙，把这一员大将围裹在内，用金遁遁了。太师依旧还往这山上，下了战骑，倚松靠石坐下。太师看有几道杀气隐在山中，默然。不题。

且说小校报上山来：“启二位千岁：有一穿红的道人，把大千岁引入一阵黄气之内，就不见了。”二将急问报事喽罗：“如今在那里？”小校答曰：“如今现在山上坐着。”二人大怒，忙上马持兵，众喽罗齐声呐喊，杀上山来。闻太师看见，慢慢的上了墨麒麟，把金鞭一指，大呼曰：“二将慢来！”二将见闻太师是三只眼的道人，也自惊讶，乃上前喝曰：“你是何人，敢在此行凶，将吾兄长摄在那里去了？好好送还，饶你一命！”闻太师曰：“方才那蓝脸的无知触我，被我一鞭打死了。你二人又来做什么？我非有别意，欲化此黄花山修炼。你二人肯么？”二人大怒，把马催开，一个使枪便取，那一个使双铜打来。闻太师使开金鞭，冲杀上下，三骑交加。闻太师勒转墨麒麟，往南就走。二将赶来。太师把鞭一指，将水遁遁了张天君，木遁遁了陶天君。——此一回乃闻太师收邓、辛、张、陶四天君。——闻太师依旧还坐在山坡之上。且说喽罗来报辛天君。辛天君正在山后收粮，忽见小喽罗来报：“二千岁，祸事不小！”辛环问曰：“有何事？”小校曰：“三位千岁被一道人打死了。”辛环听说，大叫一声：“气杀我也！”忙提锤钻，将肋下双肉翅一夹，飞起空中，一阵风响，只听得半空中声似雷鸣，至山上，大呼曰：“好妖道！将吾兄弟打死，岂可让你独生乎！”闻太师当中眼睁开看时，好凶恶之像，二翅飞来。怎见得，赞曰：



Now this mountain was occupied by a large band of outlaws under four chiefs. When the first was taken, an outlaw hurried back. "The great chief's been drawn inside a yellow vapor by a Taoist and has completely disappeared."

"Where's the Taoist now?" the third and the fourth asked.

"He's sitting on the mountain top."

In a great rage, the two mounted and rushed up the mountain with a battle cry. As they approached, Grand Tutor Wen mounted, pointed at them with his gold staff and shouted, "Don't be in such a hurry, Generals."

The two chiefs were astonished to find that their opponent had three eyes, but they boldly moved closer. "Who are you? How dare you act so barbarously here? What have you done to our eldest brother? Send him back, and we'll spare your life!"

"The fool with an indigo face? He offended me, and I killed him with my staff. What do you two come here for? All I want is this mountain. Would you consent?"

The two chiefs gave a roar of fury and charged at Grand Tutor Wen, one wielding a lance, the other two ridged staves.

As before, Grand Tutor Wen gave up ground after a few rounds and galloped off toward the south. As the two pursued him, he pointed at them with his gold staves. In an instant, Zhang, the third chief, was surrounded by water and Tao, the fourth, was surrounded by a forest.

Grand Tutor Wen once more returned to the tree and sat down.

The second chief was collecting grain at the back of the mountain when some outlaws hurried to him. "Chief! Disaster! The three chiefs have all been killed by a Taoist."

Roaring like thunder, Xin, the second chief, flapped his wings and soared into the air. He hovered over Grand Tutor Wen. "You damned specter! How can I let you live after you've killed all my brothers!"

Grand Tutor Wen looked at him with his middle eye and found him fearsome and evil in appearance: He wore a tiger-head hat and had a face like a jujube with long fangs protruding from his upper jaw. He swooped down to attack Grand Tutor Wen with a pair of hammers.

The Grand Tutor thought with delight, "This is just the heroic man I want!"

As Xin struck at his head with the hammers, the Grand Tutor blocked with his gold staves. After a few rounds, Grand Tutor Wen ran away to



二翅空中响，头戴虎头冠，面如红枣色，顶上宝光寒，锤钻安天下，獠牙嘴上安，一怒无遮挡，飞来势若鸾。话说闻太师见而大喜：“真奇异豪杰！”那人照闻太师顶上一锤打来。太师用鞭急架忙迎。锤鞭骁勇，杀法精奇。太师掩一鞭，望东便走。辛环大呼：“妖道那里去？吾来了！”把以翅一夹，即到顶上。他不知闻太师有多大本领，任意行凶。闻太师自付：“五遁之中，遁不得此人。”且将金鞭照路傍一块山，连指两三指，命黄巾力士：“将此山石把这人压了！”力士得法旨，忙将此山石平空飞起，把辛环挟腰压下来。怎知闻太师：

玄中道术多奇异，倒海移山谈笑中。

刚才把辛环压住了，闻太师勒转墨麒麟，举鞭照顶门上打来。辛环大叫曰：“老师慈悲！弟子不识高明，冒犯天威，望老师救宥。若得再生，感恩非浅！”太师把鞭放在辛环顶上曰：“你认不得我。吾非道者，我是朝歌闻太师是也。因征伐西岐，往此经过。你那蓝脸的人，无故来伤我。你还是欲生乎？欲死乎？”辛环大叫：“太师老爷！小的不知是太师驾过此山，早知，应当远迓。冒犯天颜，万望恕小人死罪。”太师曰：“你既欲生，吾便赦汝。只是要在吾门下，往征西岐。若是有功，不失腰玉之福。”辛环曰：“若是贵人肯提拔下士，未将愿从麾下指挥。”太师把鞭一指，黄巾力士将山石揭去；辛环站不起来，半晌方能站立，拜倒在地。闻太师扶起。太师收了辛环，方倚松靠石坐下。辛环立在一傍。闻太师问曰：“黄花山有多少人马？”辛环答曰：“此山方圆有六十里，啸聚喽罗一万有余，粮草颇多。”太师不觉大喜。辛环



the east. Xin pursued him, crying, "Where are you off to, devil? I won't let you get off!"

"It'll be impossible to capture this man with metal, wood, water, fire or earth," Grand Tutor Wen reasoned quickly. He pointed at a rock beside the path with his staff and ordered a yellow-scarved genie, "Lift this rock and trap that man beneath it."

The genie did as he was told, and in a moment Xin was lying beneath the rock. Grand Tutor Wen raised his staff as if to beat him on the head.

"Mercy! I failed to recognize your talent and offended you. I would be deeply grateful if you would kindly spare my life."

Grand Tutor Wen placed his staff on Xin's head "Of course, you don't know me. I'm not a Taoist, but Grand Tutor Wen of Zhaoge. I've been sent by His Majesty to subdue West Qi and am just passing through. I punished the fellow with the indigo face because he attempted to hurt me without any reason. Now tell me which do you want: to live or to die?"

"Grand Tutor! I didn't know you were passing by this mountain. Otherwise I would have come out to welcome you. I apologize, and beg you to pardon us."

"If you would like to live, you must take me as your teacher. Follow me and place yourself at my disposal when we reach West Qi. If you achieve great merit, you'll be rewarded with a high official position and a jade belt to wear round your waist," Grand Tutor Wen promised.

"If Your Honor's willing to bestow such a favor on me, I'm certainly willing to follow you," Xin Huan replied.

Grand Tutor Wen pointed at the rock with his staff and ordered the genie to remove it. Xin Huan was so exhausted that he could not get up at once, but after a long rest, he staggered to his feet and kowtowed before his conqueror. Grand Tutor Wen helped him up and then sat down on a stone, leaning against a pine tree. Xin Huan stood beside him.

"How many men do you have on Yellow Flower Mountain, Xin Huan?" the Grand Tutor asked.

"This mountain has an area of about sixty square *li*, and we've got more than 10,000 outlaws here with plentiful food and supplies of equipment."

Grand Tutor Wen was greatly pleased. Xin Huan knelt down and pleaded, "I beg you to have mercy on the other three chiefs and spare their lives. They'll certainly do their best to return your kindness."



跪下哀告曰：“前来三将，望太师老爷一例慈悲赦宥。若得回生，愿尽驽骀，以报知遇之恩。”闻太师道：“你还要他来？”辛环曰：“名虽各姓，情同手足。”闻太师曰：“既然如此，你等也是有义气的。站开了！”太师发手，一声雷鸣，振动山岳。且说遁的三将，一时揉眉擦眼：邓天君不见了金墙；张天君不见了大海；陶荣不见了大林。三将走马回山，只见辛环站在那穿红的道人傍边。邓忠大怒，声若巨雷，叫：“贤弟，与吾拿住那妖道！”话还未了，张、陶二将齐叫：“拿妖道！”也不知闻太师性命如何，且听下回分解。

“Why do you beg for mercy on their behalf so earnestly?”

“Though we’re from different families with different surnames, we’re just like real brothers.”

“Since you’re so loyal to your friends, I promise to let all of them live. Now just move a short distance away,” Grand Tutor Wen directed.

The Grand Tutor opened his palm, and there was a clap of thunder that shook the mountain. The three chiefs rubbed their eyes as if waking from a deep sleep. In the twinkling of an eye, the golden wall that enclosed Deng, the water that surrounded Zhang, and the trees that imprisoned Tao had all disappeared. As they returned on their horses, they caught sight of Xin Huan standing beside Grand Tutor Wen.

“Brother! Seize that accursed Taoist at once,” Deng Zhong cried.

“Catch that Taoist devil, Don’t let him get away,” Zhang and Tao echoed him.

What became of Grand Tutor Wen? If you want to know, please read the next chapter.











## 第四十二回

### 黄花山收邓辛张陶

诗曰：

劫数相逢亦异常，诸天神部涉疆场。任他奇术俱遭败，那怕仙凡尽带伤。周室兴隆时共泰，成汤丧乱日偕亡。黄花山下收强将，总向岐山土内藏。

话说三将齐来发怒，辛环急上前忙止曰：“兄弟们不得妄为，快下马来参谒。此是朝歌闻太师老爷。”三将听说“闻太师”，滚鞍下马，拜伏在地，口称：“太师，久慕大名，未得亲觐尊颜；今幸天缘，大驾过此，末将等有失迎迓，致多冒渎，正谓悞犯，望太师老爷恕罪，末将等不胜庆幸。”众将请太师上山。闻太师听说亦喜，随同众将上山。众将请太师上坐，复行参谒。太师亦自温慰；因问四将：“尊姓？何名？今日幸逢，老夫亦与有荣焉。”邓忠曰：“此黄花山；俺弟兄四人，结义多年，末将姓邓，名忠；次名辛环；三名张节；四名陶荣。只因诸侯荒乱，暂借居此山，权且为安身之地，其实皆非末将等本心。”闻太师听罢，“你等肯随吾征伐西岐，候有功之日，俱是朝廷臣子。何苦为此绿林之事，埋没英雄，辜负生平本事。”辛环曰：“如太师不弃，忠等愿随鞭镫。”闻太师曰：“列位既肯出力王室，正是国家有庆。你们可将山上喽罗计有多少？”辛环答曰：“有一万有余。”闻太师曰：“你可晓谕众人：愿随征者，去；不愿随征者，宁释还

## Chapter 42

### Surrender of the Bandit Chiefs

As they charged angrily at Grand Tutor Wen, Xin Huan hurriedly intercepted them. "Brothers, don't be so rude. Get down from your horses and greet Grand Tutor Wen from Zhaoge."

When they learned that it was Grand Tutor Wen, Deng, Zhang and Tao scrambled down from their saddles and knelt on the ground. "Grand Tutor! We've always admired you, but never had the opportunity to meet you. Heaven has willed that you pass by this mountain! But we've offended you and begged your pardon."

Grand Tutor Wen was led to the outlaws' camp, and then he took a seat. "Please tell me your names. I'm honored to have you all with me."

"We're sworn brothers. I'm Deng Zhong, the eldest. This is Xin Huan, the second. The third is Zhang Jie and the youngest Tao Rong. There's been so much unrest in the kingdom that we came here to seek peace. It's not our wish to remain outlaws."

"Come to the front under my command. Once you've achieved success, you'll all be ministers in the government. Why bury your talents here in the greenwood?"

"If you're willing to take us with you, we're most willing to go," Xin Huan answered.

"The state would indeed be fortunate to have your service. How many men do you have?"

"We've got more than 10,000 men here," Xin Huan answered.

"Tell everyone what we're going to do. We'll take all those who're willing, but give money and food to those who wish to go home," Grand Tutor Wen instructed.





家，仍给赏财物，也是他跟随你们一场。”辛环领命，传与众人，有愿去的，有不愿去的，俱将历年所积给与诸人，众人无不悦服。除不去的，尚余七千多人马。粮草计有三万。俱打点停当。烧了牛皮宝帐。闻太师即日起兵，又得四将，不觉大喜。把人马过了黄花山，径往前进，浩浩荡荡，甚是军威雄猛。有诗为证：

烈烈旗幡飞杀气，纷纷战马似龙蛟。西岐豪杰如云集，  
太师亲征若浪抛。

话言闻太师人马正行，忽抬头见一石碣，上书三字，名曰“绝龙岭”。太师在墨麒麟上，默默无言，半晌不语，邓忠见闻太师勒骑不行，面上有惊恐之色。邓忠问曰：“太师为何停骑不语？”闻太师曰：“吾当时悟道，在碧游宫拜金灵圣母为师之时，学艺五十年。吾师命我下山佐成汤，临行，问师曰：‘弟子归着如何？’吾师道：‘你一生逢不得“绝”字。’今日行兵，恰恰见此石碣，上书‘绝’字，心上迟疑，故此不决。”邓忠等四将笑曰：“太师差矣！大丈夫岂可以一字定终身祸福？况且‘吉人天相’，只以太师之才德，岂有不克西岐之理。从古云：‘不疑何卜？’”太师亦不笑不语。众将催人马速行。刀枪似水，甲士如云，一路无词。哨马报入中军：“启太师：人马至西岐南门，请令定夺。”太师传令：“安营。”一声炮响，三军呐一声喊，安下营，结下大寨。怎见得，有赞为证：

营安南北，阵摆东西。营安南北分龙虎，阵摆东西按木金。围子手平添杀气；虎狼威长起征云。拐子马齐齐整整；宝纛幡卷起威风。阵前小校披金甲；传枪儿郎挂锦



Xin Huan did as he was told. Everyone was pleased to receive a share of the accumulated wealth. In the end, there were about 7,000 men and 30,000 piculs of grain and fodder to go with the Grand Tutor.

Grand Tutor Wen, delighted to have obtained four new generals, set off once more with his combined troops. One day he happened to look up to see a stone monument on the roadside inscribed “Dragon Extinction Peak.” He immediately halted, and then sat there in complete silence with fear and alarm on his face.

Not understanding the reason for his fear, Deng Zhong asked, “What’s the matter, Grand Tutor?”

“I studied with Mother Golden Spirit at the Green Touring Palace for fifty years. When she sent me down to help the Shang Dynasty, I asked her about my future. She told me that ‘Disaster will befall you should you see the character ‘extinction’. To come across this character now makes me a little worried.”

Deng and other three generals laughed. “You’re wrong, Grand Tutor. How can the fate of a hero be determined by one character? Heaven favors the good. With your virtue and talent, you’re sure to win the day in West Qi. Remember the old proverb: ‘When there’s no doubt, there’s no need for divination’.”

Grand Tutor Wen neither smiled nor spoke. The army resumed its rapid march, and a few days later, a scout reported, “Grand Tutor, we’ve reached the south gate of West Qi City.”



裙。先行官如同猛虎；佐军官恶似彪熊。定营炮天崩地裂；催阵鼓一似雷鸣。白日里出入有法，到晚间转箭支更。只因太师安营寨，鸦鸟不敢望空行。

不说闻太师安营西岐。只见报马报进相府，报：“闻太师调三十万人马，在南门安营。”子牙曰：“当时吾在朝歌，不曾会闻太师；今日领兵到此，看他纪法何如。”随带诸将上城，众门下相随，同到城敌楼上，观看闻太师行营；果然好人马！怎见得，有赞为证：

满空杀气，一川铁马兵戈；片片征云，五色旌旗缥缈。千枝画戟，豹尾描金五彩幡；万口钢刀，诛龙斩虎青铜剑。密密钺斧，幡旗大小水晶盘；对对长枪，盏口粗细银画杆。幽幽画角，犹如东海老龙吟；灿灿银盔，滚滚冰霜如雪练。锦衣绣袄，簇拥走马先行；玉带征夫，侍听中军元帅。鞭抓将士尽英雄，打阵儿郎凶似虎。不亚轩辕黄帝破蚩尤，一座兵山从地起。

话说子牙观看良久，叹曰：“闻太师平日有将才，今观如此整练，人言尚未尽其所学。”随下城入府，同大小门下众将，商议退兵之策。有黄飞虎在侧曰：“丞相不必忧虑，况且魔家四将不过如此，正所谓国王洪福大，巨恶自然消散。”子牙曰：“虽是如此，民不安生，军逢恶战，将累鞍马，俱不是宁泰之象。”正议间，报：“闻太师差官下书。”子牙传令：“令来。”不一时，开城，放一员大将至相府，将书呈上。子牙拆书观看，上云：

“成汤太师兼征西天保大元帅闻仲，书奉丞相姜子牙麾下：盖闻王臣作叛，大逆于天。今天王在上，赫赫



On the Grand Tutor's orders, the army halted and camped just beyond the city wall. Jiang Ziya immediately received news of their arrival.

"I didn't get the chance to meet Grand Tutor Wen when I was at Zhaoge. Now that he's here, I must go and see how he manages his army," he told his generals.

He mounted the city wall to observe the enemy camp and could not help admiring its awe-inspiring display of weapons and pennants and its ingenious layout. He looked for a long time. "I've often heard that Grand Tutor Wen's a highly talented general, but what I see today exceeds even his reputation!"

He returned to his mansion and summoned all his generals.

"Don't worry, Prime Minister. Even the Mo generals were powerless against us. King Wu's blessed by Heaven, and any evil will disappear of its own accord," Huang Feihu tried to encourage him.

"That may be so, but the people cannot live in peace, and many generals and soldiers will suffer in battle. Peace would be the greatest blessing now," Jiang Ziya mused aloud.

In the midst of discussion, a letter arrived from Grand Tutor Wen. Jiang Ziya broke it open and read:

Wen Zhong, Grand Tutor of the Shang Dynasty and Commander the expeditionary forces, addresses His Excellency Prime Minister Jiang Ziya:  
The rebellion of a minister is a major crime against Heaven. How can





威灵。兹尔西土，敢行不道，不尊国法。自立为王，有伤国体。复纳叛逆，明欺宪典。天子累兴问罪之师，不为俯首伏辜，尚敢大肆猖獗，拒敌天吏，杀军覆将，辄敢号令张威，王法何在！虽食肉寝皮，不足以尽厥罪；纵移尔宗祀，削尔疆土，犹不足以偿其失。今奉诏下征，你若若惜一城之生灵，速至辕门授首，候归期以正国典；如若拒抗，真火焰昆冈，俱为齑粉，噬脐何及？战书到日，速为自裁。不宣。”

子牙看书毕。子牙曰：“来将何名？”邓忠答曰：“末将邓忠。”子牙曰：“邓将军回营，多拜上闻太师，原书批回，三日后会兵城下。”邓忠领命出城，进营回复了闻太师，将子牙回话说了一遍。不觉就是三日。只听得成汤营中炮响，喊杀之声振天。子牙传令：“把五方队伍调遣出城。”闻太师正在辕门，只见西岐南门开处，一声炮响，有四杆青幡招展，幡下四员战将按震宫方位：

青袍青马尽穿青，步将层层列马兵，手挽挡牌人似虎，短剑长枪若铁城。

二声炮响，四杆红幡招展，幡脚下四员战将，按离宫方位：

红袍红马绛红缨，收阵铜锣带角鸣，将士雄赳跨战骑，窝弓火炮列行营。

三声炮响，四杆素白幡招展，幡脚下有四员战将，按兑宫方位：

白袍白马烂银盔，宝剑昆吾耀日辉，火焰枪同金装铜，大刀犹似白龙飞。

四声炮响，四杆皂盖幡招展，幡脚下四员战将，按坎宫



West Qi treacherously enthrone a king? It is unlawful. Even though His Majesty has more than once sent his forces to call you to account, you still refuse to lay down your arms and surrender. On the contrary, you have dared to resist His Majesty's army, inflicting heavy casualties, beheading its generals and insulting them, hanging their heads on the city wall. According to the law, you shall be severely punished for these crimes.

By decree of His Majesty, I have come to this land to subdue your rebellion. I have powerful forces under my command. If you have compassion for the people of your city, come to my camp gate and receive the capital punishment that you deserve. Any resistance will mean your immediate destruction. I await your careful consideration.

Jiang Ziya asked, "What's the name of the general who delivered the letter here?"

"My name's Deng Zhong,"

"General Deng, please return to your camp and convey my best regards to Grand Tutor Wen. Here's my reply: We'll meet on the battlefield in three days' time."

Deng Zhong returned to the Shang camp and reported all that Jiang Ziya had said. Three days later, the roar of cannons and war cries burst out from the Shang camp. Jiang Ziya ordered his men to march out of the city in five square formations.

Standing at his camp gate, Grand Tutor Wen saw that at the first firing of cannons, a formation of soldiers, flying four green pennants, marched out under the command of four generals. All were dressed in green and carried swords and spears.

At the second firing of cannons, a formation flying four red pennants, marched out under four generals dressed in red. They carried bows and arrows and cannons.

At the third firing of cannons, a formation marched out with white pennants and four more generals. All were dressed in white and carried ridged staves and cutlasses. The fourth formation marched out at the fourth firing of cannons, flying four purple pennants and led by another



方位：

黑人黑马皂罗袍，斩将飞翎箭更豪，斧有宣花酸枣槊，  
虎头枪配雁翎刀。

五声炮响，四杆杏黄幡招展，幡脚下四员战将，按戊己宫  
方位：

金盔金甲杏黄幡，将坐中央守一元，杀气腾腾笼战骑，  
冲锋锐卒候辕门。

话说闻太师看见子牙把五方队伍调出，两边大小将官一对对  
整整齐齐：哪吒登风火轮，手提火尖枪，对着杨戩、金吒、  
木吒、韩毒龙、薛恶虎、黄天化、武吉等侍卫两傍。宝纛旗  
下，子牙骑四不相，右手下有武成王黄飞虎坐五色神牛而  
出。只见闻太师在龙凤幡下，左右有邓、辛、张、陶四将。  
太师面如淡金，五柳长髯，飘扬脑后，手提金鞭。怎见得闻  
太师威武：

九云冠金霞缭绕，绛绡衣鹤舞云飞，阴阳绦结束，朝履  
应玄机。坐下麒麟如墨染，金鞭摆动光辉。拜上通天教  
下，三除五遁施为。胸中包罗天地，运筹万斛珠玑。丹  
心贯乎白日，忠贞万载名题。龙凤幡下列旌旗，太师行  
兵自异。

话说子牙催骑向前，欠背打躬，口称：“太师，卑职姜尚不能  
全礼。”闻太师曰：“姜丞相，闻你乃昆仑名士，为何不谙事  
体，何也？”子牙答曰：“尚忝玉虚门下，周旋道德，何敢违  
背天常。上尊王命，下顺军民，奉法守公，一循于道。敬诚  
缉熙，克勤天戒，分别贤愚，佐守本土，不敢虐民乱政。稚  
子无欺，民安物阜，万姓欢娱，有何不谙事体之处？”闻太  
师曰：“你只知巧于立言，不知自己有过。今天王在上，你不  
尊君命，自立武王。——欺君之罪，孰大于此！收纳叛臣黄



four generals dressed in black. They carried axes, lances and cutlasses.

At the fifth firing of cannons a cavalry formation dressed in yellow and flying yellow pennants rode out behind four generals. Grand Tutor Wen saw Jiang Ziya emerge with Nezha, Yang Jian, Jinzha, Muzha, Han Dulong, Xue Ehu, Huang Tianhua, Wu Ji and others on either side of him. Jiang Ziya himself rode on his nondescript beneath a huge banner. Huang Feihu rode beside him.

Under the dragon and phoenix banners, Grand Tutor Wen was flanked on either side by Deng, Xin, Zhang and Tao. Grand Tutor Wen had a pale golden face and a long five-tufted beard. He rode on his pure black unicorn, holding two glistening gold staves.

Jiang Ziya spurred his nondescript forward, bowed and greeted Grand Tutor Wen courteously. "Grand Tutor! Pardon me for not being able to offer you a full salutation."

"Prime Minister Jiang! You're from Mount Kunlun. How can you be so dull as to not understand the situation?" Grand Tutor Wen said as he returned the greetings.

"As a disciple of Mount Kunlun, I do everything with justice and virtue and have never transgressed the will of Heaven. I obey my king's orders, I comply with the will of the people, and handle all things according to law. I respect Heaven and distinguish the good from the bad. Under my administration people are happy and prosperous. How can you say that I am dull?" Jiang Ziya replied.

"You know only how to argue, but don't recognize that you've committed grave errors. You insulted His Majesty by enthroning King Wu without authorization. That's an unpardonable crime. When the punitive army arrived, you didn't plead guilty but beheaded our generals! Huang Feihu is a traitor, yet you gave him shelter. Now I've come. How dare



飞虎，明知欺君，安心拒敌。——叛君之罪，孰大于此！及至问罪之师一至，不行认罪，擅行拒敌，杀戮军士命官。——大逆之罪，孰加于此！今吾自至此，犹恃己能，不行降服，犹自兴兵拒敌，巧言饰非，真可令人痛恨！”子牙笑而答曰：“太师差矣！自立武王，固是吾国未行请奏；然子袭父荫，何为不可。况天下诸侯尽反成汤，也是欺君不成！只是人君先自灭纲纪，不足为万姓之主，因此皆叛背不臣，此其过岂尽在臣也。收武成王，正是‘君不正，臣投外国’，亦是礼之当然。今为人君，尚不自反，乃厚于责臣，不亦羞乎！若论杀朝廷命官士卒，是自到此取死讨辱，尚等并不曾领一军一卒，或助诸侯，或伐关隘。太师名振八方，今又到此，未免先有轻举妄动之意，在尚怎敢抗拒。不若依尚愚意：老太师请暂回鸾辂，各守疆界，还是好颜相看；若太师务任一己之私，逆天行事，然兵家胜负，未可知也。还请太师三思，毋损威重。”闻太师被此数语说得面皮通红；又见黄飞虎在宝纛之下，乃大叫曰：“逆臣黄某，出来见我！”飞虎靛面难回，只得向前欠身曰：“末将自别太师，不觉数载；今日又会，不才冤屈庶可伸明。”闻太师喝曰：“满朝富贵，尽在黄门，一旦负君，造反助恶，杀害命官，逆恶贯盈，还来强辩！”命：“那一员将官先把反臣拿了！”左哨上邓忠大叫曰：“末将愿往。”走马摇斧，来取黄飞虎。飞虎纵五色神牛，手中枪赴面交还。张节使枪也来助邓忠。周营内有大将南宫适敌住。陶荣使铜，飞马前来助战。这壁厢武吉拨马摇枪，抵住陶荣。两阵上六员战将，三对交锋，来来往往，冲冲撞撞，翻腾上下交加，只杀得天愁地暗，日月无光。辛环



you attempt to resist me instead of yielding in unconditional surrender! That's also unpardonable," Grand Tutor Wen said angrily.

Jiang Ziya smiled. "You're wrong, Grand Tutor. Though we didn't obtain permission from Zhaoge, a son's naturally entitled to inherit from his father. What could be wrong with that? Nearly all the nobles have declared rebellion. Are they all guilty of opposition to His Majesty? The fault lies with the monarch! He's no longer fit to be ruler of the people.

"As to giving shelter to General Huang Feihu, that is also right and just. A minister has the right to leave if the ruler's cruel and improper. We've never sent a single soldier to your passes or helped any marquis in his uprising. Those generals lost their lives only because they came here to attack us. They brought humiliation on themselves. You're admired by all, Grand Tutor. It's hard to understand how you could have come here without giving the matter careful consideration. I only hope that you'll withdraw to your own side of the border. Let each side guard his own land. If you attack us, you will violate the will of Heaven. Whether you'll win or lose is uncertain. Think it over carefully. Your dignity and glory may be damaged as a result of hasty action."

Grand Tutor Wen blushed red with shame at Jiang's words, but he grew angry when he saw Huang Feihu standing under a big banner. "You rebel, Huang! Come out here at once!"

Unable to withdraw from the scene, Huang Feihu had no choice but to move forward. He greeted Grand Tutor Wen with a bow. "I haven't seen you for years, Grand Tutor. I hope I can tell you about the injustices I've suffered."

"The power and riches of the kingdom were all in the hands of the Huang family," Grand Tutor Wen cursed. "How could you have rebelled and slayed the officers appointed by the throne! Your wickedness is notorious throughout the land. How dare you defend yourself with sophistry!" He cried, "Who'll seize that rebel for me?"

"I will!" Deng Zhong shouted.

Brandishing his lance, he charged at Huang Feihu, who met him with his own lance. When Zhang Jie raced to join in, he was intercepted by Nangong Kuo. Tao Rong was then met by Wu Ji as he rushed into the fight with his staves. The six generals fought desperately.



见三将不能取胜，把肋下肉翅一夹，飞起半空，手持锤钻，望子牙打来。时有黄天化催开玉麒麟，两柄银锤，抵住辛环。周营众将见成汤营里飞起一人来，虎头冠，面如红枣，尖嘴獠牙，狰狞恶状，惟黄天化战住辛环。闻太师见黄天化坐玉麒麟，知是道德之士，急催开墨麒麟，使两条金鞭，冲杀过来，忙取子牙。子牙忙催动四不相，急架相迎。二兽交加，竟生云雾。这是闻太师头一场西岐大战。怎见得，赞曰：

两下里排门对伍，军政司擂鼓鸣锣。前后军安排赌斗，左右将准备相持。一等等有牙有爪，一等等能走能飞。狻猊、獬豸、狮子、麒麟、欢彪、怪兽、猛虎、蛟龙。狻猊斗，狂风荡荡；獬豸斗，日色辉辉；狮子斗，寒风凛凛；麒麟斗，冷气森森；欢彪斗，来往撺跳；怪兽斗，遍地烟云；蛟龙斗，彩云布合；猛虎斗，卷起狂风。大战一场怎肯休，英雄恶战逞雄赳。若烦解的虫王恨，除是南山老比丘。

且说闻太师鞭法甚利，且有风雷之声，久惯兴师，四方响应，子牙如何敌得住，甚难招架。被闻太师举起雄鞭，飞在空中，——此鞭原是两条蛟龙化成，双鞭按阴阳，分二气。那鞭在空中打将下来，正中子牙肩臂，翻鞍落骑。闻太师方欲来取首级，彼时哪吒登风火轮，摇枪大叫：“勿要伤吾师叔！”照闻太师面上一枪。太师急架枪时，早被辛甲将子牙救回。闻太师与哪吒战三五回合，又举鞭打哪吒。哪吒不曾防备，也被一鞭打下轮来。早有金吒跃步赶来，将宝剑架住金鞭，欲救哪吒。太师大怒，连发双鞭，雌雄不定，或起或落，连打金、木二吒，又打韩毒龙。幸有杨戩在侧，看见闻



Xin Huan saw that the three generals on his side were unable to get the upper hand. He soared into the air and swooped down at Jiang Ziya with his hammers. Huang Tianhua spurred his jade unicorn forward and intercepted him. The generals of the Zhou army were greatly alarmed to see such an evil-looking man, with a red face, a wide mouth and sharp tusks. Huang Tianhua was the only general that could resist him.

When he saw that Huang Tianhua was riding a jade unicorn, Grand Tutor Wen realized that he must be a Taoist. He hurriedly urged his pure black unicorn forward to attack Jiang Ziya with his two gold staves. Jiang Ziya spurred forward his nondescript to meet him, and they battled fiercely. That was the first battle the Grand Tutor fought in West Qi, and he handled his staves with deadly skill. They roared like the wind when he waved them through the air. Besides, he was a great warrior with years of experience in the border areas. This made it difficult for Jiang Ziya to withstand him.

Before long, Grand Tutor Wen sent his male staff flying through the air. His two staves were transformed from two dragons, and they could fly with lethal accuracy. The staff descended directly on Jiang Ziya's shoulder, knocking him from his nondescript. As the Grand Tutor moved forward to behead him, Nezha sped up on his Wind-Fire Wheels.

"Don't touch my uncle, you damned wretch!" Nezha cried, and thrust at Grand Tutor Wen with his lance.

The Grand Tutor had to defend himself with his staves, and as they fought, Xin Jia helped Jiang Ziya to safety. After four or five rounds, Grand Tutor Wen cast up his staff again and knocked Nezha from his wheels. Jinzha quickly jumped forward to rescue his brother and engaged the Grand Tutor with his sword. The Grand Tutor flew into a rage and threw both of his staves into the air, wounding first Jinzha, then Muzha and Han Dulong.





太师好鞭，只打得落花流水，才把银合马飞走出阵，使枪便刺。闻太师见杨戩相貌非俗，心下自忖：“西岐有这些奇人，安得不反！”便把鞭来迎战。数合之内，祭起双鞭，正打中杨戩顶门上，只打得火星迸出，全然不理，一若平常。太师大惊，骇然叹曰：“此等异人，真乃道德之士！”不说闻太师赞叹，且说陶荣战武吉，见诸将都未分胜负，忙把聚风幡取出，连摇数摇，霎时间飞砂走石，播土扬尘，天昏地暗。怎见得好风，只打得众军如风卷残云，丢旗弃鼓；将士尽盔歪甲斜，莫辨东西；败下阵来。有赞为证：

霎时间天昏地暗，一会儿雾起云迷。初起时尘砂荡荡，次后来卷石翻砖。黑风影里，三军乱窜；惨雾之中，战将心慌。会武的刀枪乱法；能文的颠倒慌张。闻太师金鞭龙摆尾；邓忠阔斧似车轮；辛环肉翅世间稀；张节枪传天下少；陶荣奇异聚风旗。这才是雷部神祇施猛烈；西岐众将各逃生。弃鼓丢锣抛满地，尸横马倒不堪题。为国亡身遭剑劈，尽忠舍命定逢伤。闻太师西岐得胜，四天君掌鼓回营。

话说闻太师掌得胜鼓回营，升了帐，众将来贺：“太师头阵之初，挫动西岐锋锐，破此城只在指日矣。”

且说子牙收兵败进城，入府，众将上殿见子牙。子牙曰：“今日着伤诸将：李氏三人、韩毒龙等，尽被闻太师打了。”有杨戩在侧，曰：“丞相且歇息一二日，再与他会战，定胜闻仲。若得胜之时，乘机劫营，先挫其锋，后面势如破竹，闻仲可擒矣。”子牙曰：“善。”只至第三日，西岐炮响，众将出城，安排厮杀。报马报入营来。闻太师见报入



Observing his wonderful skill, Yang Jian fought his way out of the fray and engaged the Grand Tutor. The Grand Tutor noticed his uncommon appearance. "With these remarkable people in its service, how could West Qi fail to revolt!" he thought.

He raised his staves to fight Yang Jian. After several rounds, the Grand Tutor threw his gold staves into the air again and struck Yang Jian repeatedly on the head. Sparks shot forth but Yang Jian was not affected in the least. The Grand Tutor was astonished. "This man's extraordinary. He must have great magic powers!"

Meanwhile Tao Rong was still fighting Wu Ji. When he realized that he and his brothers were gaining no advantage over their opponents, he hurriedly took out his "Wind Collecting Pennant" and waved it several times. A great whirlwind immediately howled over the battlefield, tossing sand into the sky and scattering stones and rocks across the ground. It blew off the soldiers' helmets and tore at their uniforms, darkening the sky and making it impossible to distinguish east from west.

As Tao Rong waved his magic pennant, Grand Tutor Wen plied his staves like lashing dragon tails; Deng Zhong whirled his axe like a cartwheel; Zhang Jie swung his long lance, and Xin Huan soared through the sky, raining down blows with his hammers. In the chaos that resulted, the soldiers and generals of West Qi abandoned their drums and gongs and fled, leaving the corpses of men and horses all over the battlefield. Grand Tutor Wen won a great victory.

As soon as he returned to camp, his generals came up to offer congratulations. "You've won the first battle, Grand Tutor, and have greatly disheartened the enemy. It'll only be a matter of days before we take the city."

Jiang Ziya had meanwhile withdrawn into the city. "Jinzha, Muzha, Nezha, Han Dulong and many others were wounded by Grand Tutor Wen's staves," he said sadly to his generals.

"Rest for a day or two and then fight another battle with Wen Zhong. With the experience gathered today, I'm sure we'll win. Then we'll launch a surprise night raid," Yang Jian suggested.

"That's a very good idea, General," Jiang Ziya said approvingly.



营，随即出阵。左右四将分开，太师至阵前。子牙曰：“今日与太师定决一雌雄。”各不答话，二兽相交，鞭剑并举。子牙左有杨戩，右有哪吒，敌住太师。邓忠走马前来助战；有黄飞虎前来截住厮杀。张、陶二将来助；有武吉、南宫适敌住厮杀。辛环飞来；有黄天化阻住。闻太师酣战之际，又把雌雄鞭起在空中。子牙打神鞭也飞将起来。——打神鞭乃玉虚宫元始所赐，此鞭有三七二十一节，一节上有四道符印，打八部正神。——闻太师鞭往下打，子牙鞭往上迎，鞭打鞭，把闻太师雌鞭一打两断，落在尘埃。闻太师大叫一声：“好姜尚！今把吾宝贝伤其性命，吾与你势不两立！”子牙复祭打神鞭起去。闻太师难逃这一鞭之祸，一声响，把闻太师打下骑来。幸有门下吉立、余庆催马急救，太师借土遁去了。子牙与众将大杀一阵，方收兵进西岐城，入相府。只见杨戩进曰：“今日劫营之事，定是大胜。”子牙曰：“善。众将暂退，午后听令。”正是：

挖下战坑擒虎豹，满天张网等蛟龙。

且说闻太师败兵进营，升帐坐下；四将参谒。闻太师曰：“自来征伐，未尝有败。今被姜尚打断吾雌鞭，想吾师秘受蛟龙金鞭，今日已绝，有何面目再见吾师也！”四将曰：“胜负军



On the third day, they marched out of the city to the roar of cannons. Howling war cries, they gave a challenge to the Shang camp. Grand Tutor Wen immediately appeared with his generals.

When he saw Grand Tutor Wen, Jiang Ziya cried, "Today we'll see which of us is the better man!"

He urged forward his nondescript, and Grand Tutor Wen charged on his black unicorn. They fought fiercely, sword against staves. When he saw that Jiang Ziya was protected by Yang Jian on his left and Nezha on his right, Deng Zong galloped out to help the Grand Tutor but was intercepted by Huang Feihu. As Zhang and Tao raced up, they were met by Wu Ji and Nangong Kuo. Xin Huan swooped down from the sky but was stopped by Huang Tianhua.

In the midst of combat, Grand Tutor Wen seized an opportunity to toss his staves high in the air in an attempt to beat Jiang Ziya again. But Jiang Ziya snatched out his Staff for Beating Gods and hurled it at the Grand Tutor's weapon. Jiang Ziya's staff was from Mount Kunlun. It had twenty-four joints, each inscribed with four charms for punishing gods. As the two collided, the Grand Tutor's female staff broke in two and fell to the ground.

"Jiang Shang, you damned wretch! How dare you break my magic weapon! I cannot tolerate your existence any longer!" Grand Tutor Wen shouted furiously.

Jiang Ziya, however, tossed up his staff again and sent it crashing down on the Grand Tutor, knocking him from his black unicorn. Ji Li and Yu Qing rushed to his rescue, and he fled away on a dust cloud.

Jiang Ziya and his generals followed with a massacre of the remaining troops before they returned to the city. At the military conference that followed, Yang Jian said again, "We'll win another victory if we make a surprise raid tonight."

"An excellent idea," Jiang Ziya approved. "Everyone may rest now and come back in the afternoon."

In the Shang camp, Grand Tutor Wen was also holding a military conference. He sighed deeply, "Never since I started my military career have I suffered defeat, but today Jiang Shang broke the female staff that my master had transformed from a dragon. How can I muster up courage to face her again?"



家常事。”且说子牙掌鼓聚将上殿。子牙令黄飞虎、飞彪、黄明等冲闻太师左营；令南宫适、辛甲、辛免四贤冲右营；令哪吒、黄天化为头对，冲大辕门；木吒、金吒、韩毒龙、薛恶虎为二对，龙须虎、武吉保子牙作三对。令杨戩：“你去烧闻太师行粮；老将军黄滚守城垣。”调遣已定。且说闻太师败兵进营，坐于帐下，郁郁不乐。忽然见杀气罩于中军帐，太师焚香，将金钱一卜，早知其意，笑曰：“今劫吾营，非为奇计。”忙传令：“邓忠、张节在左营敌周将；辛环、陶荣在右营战周将；吉立、余庆守行粮；老夫守中营，自然无虞也。”闻太师安排迎敌。却说子牙把众将发落已毕，只等炮响，各人行事。当日将人马暗暗出城，四面八方，俱有号记，灯笼高挑，各按方位。时至初更，一声炮响，三军呐一声喊，大辕门哪吒、黄天化先杀进来；左营黄家父子，右营乃四贤众将，齐冲进来。这一阵不知胜败何如，且听下回分解。



“Don’t worry too much, Grand Tutor,” his generals comforted him. “Victory and defeat are commonplace to a warrior.”

That afternoon all the generals gathered at the prime minister’s mansion. Jiang Ziya ordered, “Huang Feihu, Huang Feibiao and Huang Ming attack the Shang camp from the left; Nangong Kuo, Xin Jia and Xin Mian from the right. Nezha and Huang Tianhua make the frontal attack; Jinzha, Muzha, Han Dulong and Xue Ehu, you follow them up. Dragon Beard Tiger and Wu Ji, stay with me. Yang Jian, burn the Grand Tutor’s grain supplies, and General Huang Gun, you guard the city.”

Grand Tutor Wen had been sitting alone in his tent, brooding over his defeat, when he noticed an air of violent death hanging over the camp. Puzzled, he instantly burned incense and made a divination. He read the results and smiled.

“Oh, you wretch, Jiang Shang! So you’re going to raid my camp tonight! Don’t imagine you’ll succeed!” He immediately ordered, “Generals Deng Zhong and Zhang Jie, meet the assault from the left; Xin Huan and Tao Rong, meet the assault from the right; Ji Li and Yu Qing, guard the food stores. I’ll protect the central headquarters.”

He thus made thorough preparations.

Jiang Ziya’s men made ready to move into action at the signal of cannon fire. They crept out of the city in total silence and took up their positions. Early in the night, cannons suddenly roared and cries arose. The attack began. Nezha and Huang Tianhua stormed the main gate of the Shang camp, Huang Feihu and his brothers attacked on the left while Nangong Kuo, Xin Jia and Xin Mian attacked on the right.

Did they meet with victory or defeat? If you want to know, please read the next chapter.

## 第四十三回

### 闻太师西岐大战

诗曰：

黑夜交兵实可伤，抛盔弃甲未披裳。冒烟突火寻归路，  
矢志丢魂觅去乡。多少英雄茫昧死，几许壮士梦中亡。  
谁知吉立多饶舌，又送天君入北邙。

话说子牙与众将来劫闻太师行营，势如风火。只见哪吒登风火轮，持火尖枪杀来。闻太师忙上了墨麒麟，拎鞭迎敌。黄天化自恃英勇，持两柄银锤，催动玉麒麟，前来接战，裹住闻太师不放。金木二吒挥宝剑，上前助战。韩毒龙、薛恶虎各持剑左右相攻。杀气纷纷，兵戈闪烁。怎见得一夜好战，有赞为证，赞曰：

黄昏兵到，黑夜军临。黄昏兵到，冲开队伍怎支持；黑夜兵临，撞倒栅栏焉可立。马闻金鼓之声，惊驰乱走；军听喊杀喧哗，难辨你我。刀枪乱刺，那知上下交锋；将士相迎，孰识东西南北。劫营将如同猛虎，踏营军一似欢龙。鸣金小校，擂鼓儿郎。鸣金小校，灰迷二目眼难睁；擂鼓儿郎，两手慌忙槌乱打。初起时，两下抖搜精神；次后来，胜败难分敌手；败了的，似伤弓之鸟，见曲木而高飞；得胜的，如猛虎登崖，闯群羊而弄猛；着刀的，连肩拽背；逢斧的，头断身开；挡剑的，劈开甲冑；中枪的，腹内流红。人撞人，自相践踏；马撞



## *Chapter 43*

### **Grand Tutor Wen Suffers Defeat**

Jiang Ziya's night raid proceeded with speed and violence. Riding on his Wind-Fire Wheels, Nezha rapidly fought his way into the Shang camp. Grand Tutor Wen mounted his unicorn and rushed out to meet the enemy. When Huang Tianhua saw him, he raced over on his jade unicorn and kept him busy with his two silver hammers until Jinzha and Muzha arrived to join the combat. Han Dulong and Xue Ehu fought furiously on the left and right. The Zhou army soon broke into the Shang barracks, and a terrible massacre ensued.







马，遍地尸横。伤残士军，哀哀叫苦；带箭儿郎，感感之声。弃金鼓，幡幢满地；烧粮草，四野通红。只知道奉命征讨，谁知道片甲无存。愁云只上九重天，遍地尸骸真惨切。

话说子牙劫闻太师行营，哪吒等把闻太师围困垓心。黄飞虎父子冲左营，与邓忠、张节大战，杀的乾坤暗暗；南宫适、辛甲等冲右营，与辛环、陶荣接战，俱系夜间，只杀的惨惨悲风，愁云滚滚。正酣战之际，杨戩从闻太师后营杀进去，纵马摇枪，只杀至粮草堆上，放起火来。好火！怎见得，有诗为证：

烈焰冲霄势更凶，金蛇万道绕空中。烟飞卷荡三千里，烧毁行粮天助功。

话说杨戩借胸中三昧真火，将粮草烧着，照彻天地。闻太师正战之间，忽见火起，心中大惊，自思：“粮草被烧，大营难立。”把金鞭架枪、挡剑，无心恋战。又见子牙骑到，把打神鞭祭于空中，闻太师难逃这一鞭之厄，只打的闻太师三昧火喷出三四尺远近。太师把墨麒麟纵出圈子，且战且走；黄飞虎等追袭。邓忠、张节见中军失守，只得保着闻太师夺路而走。南宫适等追赶辛环、陶荣。吉立、余庆见势头不好，护持不下，只得败走。辛环肉翅飞在空中，保着闻太师，退走往岐山。不表。

且说终南山玉柱洞云中子在碧游床，忽然想起闻太师征伐西岐，正是雷震子下山之时，忙命金霞童儿：“请你师兄来。”童子去不多时，将雷震子请至碧游床前，倒身下拜。云中子曰：“徒弟，你可往西岐，去见你兄武王姬发，便可谒



While Nezha and the four other generals encircled Grand Tutor Wen, Huang Feihu and his sons stormed the left camp guarded by Deng Zhong and Zhang Jie, and Nangong Kuo and Xin Jia attacked the right camp where they met in fearsome battle with Xin Huan and Tao Rong. At the height of the battle, Yang Jian fought his way into the rear camp and set fire to the Shang army's store of grain and fodder. It was no ordinary fire that Yang Jian spat out from his breast. Flames from the magic fire soared high into the sky, illuminating the earth like the sun.

Grand Tutor Wen was fighting desperately when he saw the flames. "With the food and fodder destroyed, the whole camp's finished!" he thought. Though he continued to parry lances and swords, his heart was no longer in the fight. When Jiang Ziya rode up and struck him a heavy blow with the Staff for Beating Gods, he leapt out of the encirclement and urged his unicorn into flight. Huang Feihu and his sons set off in hot pursuit.

As the central camp was already lost, Deng Zhong and Zhang Jie abandoned the fight and raced off with Grand Tutor Wen to safety. Nangong Kuo had also put Xin Huan and Tao Rong to flight. When they saw that the situation was hopeless, Ji Li and Yu Qing abandoned the grain supplies and withdrew as well. Xin Huan circled in the air above Grand Tutor Wen's party, protecting them as they retreated to Mount Qi.

Just then, Master of the Clouds thought that as Grand Tutor Wen was now at West Qi, it must be time to send Thunderbolt down from the mountain. He hurriedly ordered Golden Haze Lad to bring him to the cave. Thunderbolt entered and kowtowed before his master. "My disciple, go to West Qi now and see your elder brother King Wu and your uncle Jiang Ziya. Help them deal with King Zhou. If you meet the one that has wings, you can achieve great merit."



见你师叔姜子牙，助他伐纣，你可立功，速去。倘或中途若遇有肉翅之人，便可立功，方不负贫道传你两翅玄功，以助周室。”正是：

两枚仙杏安天下，方保周家八百年。

且说雷震子出洞，把风雷翅一展，脚登天，头往下，二翅腾开，顷刻万里。怎见得，有赞为证：

大雨燕山曾出世，一声雷响现无生。终南秘授先天诀，八卦炉边师训成。七岁临潼曾会父，回山学艺更精明。二枚仙杏分离坎，两翅飞腾有昊盈。洞府传就黄金棍，展动舒开云雾生。奉师法旨离玉柱，方见岐山旧有名。

且说雷震子离了终南，把二翅一夹，有风雷之声；飞至西岐山，远远望见闻太师败兵而来。雷震子大喜：“幸遇败兵，正好用心杀他一阵！”且说太师正挫锋锐，慌忙疾走，猛然抬头，见空中飞有一人，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，獠牙生于上下，好凶恶之像。闻太师叫：“辛环！你看前面飞来一人，甚是凶恶，你可仔细小心！”说犹未了，雷震子大呼曰：“吾来了！”举棍就打。辛环锤钻迎面交还。空中四翅翻腾，锤棍交加响亮。雷震子乃仙传棍法；辛环生就英雄。怎见得，有赞为证：

四翅在空中，风雷响亮冲：这一个杀气三千丈；那一个灵光透九重；这一个肉身成正道；那一个凡体受神封；这一个棍起生烈焰；那一个锤钻逞英雄。平地征云起，空中火焰凶。金棍光辉分上下，锤钻精通最有功。自来也有将军战，不似空中类转蓬。

话说雷震子中途一战，只杀的辛环抵挡不住，抽身望岐山逃走。雷震子自思：“不可追赶。见了师叔、皇兄，料他还来，终久会我。”遂望西岐城相府中来。不题。

只见众人俱在子牙府里报功，劫营得胜，挫了闻太师的锋锐。子牙大喜，慰劳诸将曰：“今日之胜，皆出汝等之力，



Leaving the cave, Thunderbolt stretched out his wind-and-thunder wings and sped through the sky, covering thousands of *li* in a matter of seconds. When he approached Mount Qi, he caught sight of Grand Tutor Wen in retreat. He was delighted. "What luck to meet the defeated troops! I can give them a good thrashing," he thought.

Grand Tutor Wen looked up into the sky, and to his surprise, he saw a man with an indigo face, cinnabar hair, and tusks on his upper and lower jaws flying toward them.

"Look! Xin Huan," he called. "There's an evil-looking man approaching up there. Take care."

Before he had finished speaking, Thunderbolt gave a cry and swooped down on him with his cudgel raised. Xin Huan met the blow with his twin hammers. They fought vigorously, their weapons clashing resoundingly, but as Thunderbolt was trained by the immortal Master of the Clouds, Xin Huan was no match for him. He was soon forced to take flight.

"I shouldn't chase him now. I'll see my uncle and royal brother first. I'm sure to have the chance to meet him again," Thunderbolt decided.

After his victorious return to the city, Jiang Ziya held a conference. "Today's victory is completely due to your efforts, the virtue of our sage ruler, and Heaven's blessing on the people," he said to his generals.



圣主社稷生民之福。”众将答曰：“武王洪福，丞相德政，故使闻仲不识时务，失其利也。”正话间，忽报：“有一道童求见。”子牙传：“请。”少时，雷震子进府下拜，口称：“师叔。”子牙曰：“是那座名山弟子，今至此地？”雷震子答曰：“弟子乃终南山玉柱洞云中子门下雷震子是也；今奉师命下山，一则谒师叔立功，二则见皇兄相会。”子牙曰：“你皇兄是谁？”雷震子曰：“皇兄乃是武王。”子牙问两边站立殿下：“你们可认得么？”众人曰：“认不得。”雷震子曰：“弟子七岁曾救文王出五关，弟子乃燕山雷震子。”子牙方悟，谓诸将曰：“此子——先王曾言，出五关遇雷震子救护。——今日进西岐，乃当今之洪福，得此异人。”遂引雷震子往见武王。子牙至皇城，有执殿官启武王：“丞相候旨。”武王传：“宣。”子牙进殿，行礼毕，奏曰：“大王御弟朝见。”武王曰：“孤弟何人？”子牙曰：“昔日先王在燕山收的雷震子，一向在终南山学艺，今日方归。”武王命：“请来。”雷震子进内庭，倒身下拜，口称：“皇兄。”武王称：“御弟，昔先王曾言贤弟之功，救危出关，复回终南；今日相逢，实为庆幸！”武王见雷震子形像凶恶，不敢命入内庭，恐惊太姬等。武王曰：“相父与孤代劳，相府宴弟。”子牙曰：“雷震子持斋；只随臣府宅，以便立功。”武王甚喜。雷震子彼时辞王回相府。不题。

且说闻太师兵败岐山七十里，收住败残人马，结下营寨查点，损折军兵二万有余。太师升帐，长叹曰：“自来提兵征伐多年，未尝有挫锋锐；今日到此，失机丧师，殊为痛恨！”心下十分不乐。自思无门；欲调别将，各有镇守。太



“Wen Zhong’s suffered defeat because he’s ignorant of the fact that Heaven favors the virtuous King Wu and our talented prime minister,” the generals remarked.

As they talked, a messenger reported, “A Taoist lad is at the gate asking to see the prime minister.”

When Thunderbolt was ushered in, he bowed before Jiang Ziya. “Greetings, Uncle.”

“Where do you come from?” Jiang Ziya asked.

“My name’s Thunderbolt. I’m a disciple of Master of the Clouds. I’ve come here to offer my services and meet my royal brother.”

“Do you know him?” Jiang Ziya asked the princes at his side.

“No, we don’t,” they all answered.

“When I was seven years old, I helped my father Prince Wen escape from the five passes. I’m Thunderbolt from Mount Yan.”

Jiang Ziya immediately realized who he was and said to his generals, “The late Prince Wen told me more than once how this young man rescued him when he was trapped inside the five passes. It must be Heaven’s blessing on our king to have such a remarkable man come to us now.”

He took Thunderbolt to see King Wu straightway. As they entered the palace gate, a guard rushed inside. “The prime minister wishes to see you, Your Highness.”

When Jiang Ziya was admitted, he told the king, “Your younger brother is here to see you.”

“Who’s my younger brother?”

“It’s Thunderbolt that our late master adopted on Mount Yan. He has spent all his time studying on Mount Zhongnan.”

Thunderbolt was invited to enter the court. He knelt and greeted King Wu. “How do you do, royal elder brother?”

“Dear Brother! The late king often told me how you rescued him from the five passes and then returned to Mount Zhongnan. How happy I am that we can meet today,” King Wu replied warmly. But when he observed Thunderbolt’s fearsome appearance, King Wu dared not send him to his mother, Lady Tai Ji, lest she be frightened. “May I trouble you, Prime Minister, to entertain my brother on my behalf?”

“Thunderbolt’s a vegetarian. Let him live with me. I’ll provide him with everything.”

King Wu agreed with delight.



师乃丹心赤胆，恨不能一刻遂平西地，其心才快；岂意如今失机被辱，只急的当中神目睁开，长吁短叹。吉立近前启曰：“太师不必忧虑；况且三山五岳之中，道友颇多，或请一二位，大事自然可成。”太师听说，“老夫着军务烦冗，紊乱心怀，一时忘却。”遂上帐，分付邓、辛二将：“好生看守大营，吾去来。”太师乘了墨麒麟，把风云角一拍，那兽起在空中。正是：

金鳌岛内邀仙友，“封神榜”上早标名。

话说闻太师的墨麒麟周游天下，霎时可至千里，其日行到东海金鳌岛。大师观看大海，青山幽静，因嗟叹曰：“吾因为国事烦琐，先王托孤之重，何日能脱却烦恼，静坐蒲团，参玄悟妙，闲看‘黄庭’一卷，任乌兔如梭，何有与我。”真个好海岛，有无穷奇景。怎见得，有赞为证：

势镇汪洋，威宁摇海。潮涌银山鱼入穴，波翻雪浪蜃离渊。木火方隅高积土，东西崖畔耸危巅。丹岩怪石，峭壁奇峰。丹崖上彩凤双鸣；峭壁前麒麟独卧。峰头时听锦鸾啼，石窟每观龙出入。林中有寿鹿、仙狐；树上有灵禽、玄鸟。瑶草奇花不谢；青松翠柏长春。仙桃常结果，修竹每留云。一条涧壑藤萝密，四面源堤草色新。

正是：百川会处擎天柱，万劫无移大地根。

话说闻太师到了金鳌岛，下了墨麒麟，看了一回，各处洞门紧闭，并无一人，不知往那里去了，静悄悄的。闻太师沉吟半晌，自思：“不如往别处去罢。”上了墨麒麟，方出岛来，后有人叫曰：“闻道兄！往那里去？”闻太师回顾，见来者乃菡芝仙也。忙上前稽首曰：“道友往那里去？”菡芝仙答曰：“特



After the major defeat, Grand Tutor Wen withdraw seventy *li* to Mount Qi. There he gathered the remnants of his troops and set up camp. He found that he had lost 20,000 men.

“Never since I began my military career have I lost a battle and so many men! I don’t know what to do,” he sighed to his generals.

He realized that he could not expect reinforcements from other generals because all of them had been assigned to guard their local districts. He hated himself not only for being unable to quell West Qi, but also for suffering such heavy losses. In his agitation, he opened his divine middle eye, groaning and sighing in despair.

Seeing his distress, Ji Li came forward. “Don’t worry, Grand Tutor. In the sacred mountains there are many holy men living in hermitages. They have great magic powers, and many of them are your friends. If you turn to them for help, you’ll certainly be assured of success.”

“My mind’s been so disturbed that I’ve quite forgotten about them. I’ll go straightway to see what I can do.” He instructed generals Deng Zhong and Xin Huan, ‘I’ll be away for several days. Guard the camp closely while I’m gone.”

He mounted his unicorn, and at a gentle pat on the horn, it soared into the air. Before long Grand Tutor Wen arrived at the East Sea and stopped on the Golden Turtle Island. He contemplated the immense stretch of sea and the quiet green mountain and sighed deeply to himself, “I’m burdened with state affairs. When can I cast them off and retire to a hermitage, not caring how time slips away?”

The scenery was truly magnificent. Waves as high as hills crashed into precipitous red cliffs, and strangely shaped rocks. Beautiful phoenixes danced gracefully on the mountaintop, and beside a sheer rockface a unicorn slept alone. One could hear peacocks singing and frequently see dragons crawling in and out of their caves. Deer and fairy foxes and birds and rare fowls lived in the forest. Green pine trees and blue cypresses towered over a carpet of fragrant grass and flowers. Fairy peach trees were heavy with their sweet fruit. Above the tall bamboos hung a permanent veil of misty clouds.

He wandered about the island for a long time but found that all the doors were locked. He was disappointed; all his Taoist friends had disap-





来会你。金鳌岛众道友为你往白鹿岛去练阵图。前日申公豹来请俺们往西岐助你。我如今在八卦炉中炼一物，功尚未成，若是完了，随即就至。众道友现在白鹿岛；道兄，你可速去。”闻太师听说大喜，遂辞了菡芝仙，径往白鹿岛来，霎时而至。只见众道人：或带一字巾、九扬巾，或鱼尾金冠、碧玉冠，或挽双抓髻，或陀头打扮，俱在山坡前闲说，不在一处。闻太师看见，大呼曰：“列位道友，好自在也！”众道人回头，见是闻太师，俱起身相迎。内有秦天君曰：“闻得道兄征伐西岐，前日申公豹在此相邀助你，吾等在此练十阵图，方得完备。适道兄到临，真是万千之幸！”闻太师问曰：“兄练的那十阵？”秦天君曰：“吾等这十阵，各有妙用。明日至西岐摆下，其中变化无穷。”闻太师看罢，曰：“为何只有九位，却少一位？”秦天君曰：“金光圣母往白云岛去练他的金光阵，其玄妙大不相同，因此少他一位。”董天君曰：“列位阵图可曾完么？”众道人曰：“俱完了。”“既完了，我们先往西岐。闻兄在此等金光圣母同来。你意下如何？”闻太师曰：“既蒙列位道兄雅爱，闻仲感戴荣光万万矣。此是极妙之事。”九位道人辞了闻太师，借水遁先往西岐而来。怎见得，有诗为证：

天下嬉游半月功，倏来倏去任西东，  
仙家妙用无穷际，岂似凡夫驾彩虹。

不说九位道者往西岐山，到了营里。且说闻太师坐在山坡，倚松靠石，未及片时，只见正南上五点斑豹驹上坐一人，带鱼尾金冠，身穿大红八卦衣，腰束丝绦，脚登云履，背一包袱，挂两口宝剑，如飞云掣电而来。望见白鹿岛前不见众



peared from the place. He mounted his unicorn and was ready to leave the island when he heard someone calling him from behind.

“Brother Wen, where are you going?”

He looked around and found Celestial Lotus coming towards him. He moved forward and bowed. “Where’re you going, friend?”

“I came here to meet you. All our friends are on White Deer Island finishing work on the Ten Death Traps. We’re to aid you in West Qi. Shen Gongbao came here a few days ago and asked all of us to help you. Go to White Deer Island first, and I’ll be there as soon as I’ve finished refining my weapon in the eight-diagram furnace.”

Delighted by the news, Grand Tutor Wen bade her farewell and went directly to White Deer Island. There he saw his friends gossiping together on the hillside.

“How carefree you are, dear friends,” Grand Tutor Wen shouted.

“We heard that you were attacking West Qi. Then Shen Gongbao came and asked us to help you, so we came here to prepare the Ten Death Traps. We’ve just finished them. We’re delighted to have you here today,” Heavenly Master Qin greeted him.

“What are these traps?” Grand Tutor Wen asked.

“Each of them has its own power and purpose. We’ll set them up in West Qi tomorrow. They embody unlimited internal changes.”

“Why are there only nine of you here? Who’s missing?”

“Mother Golden Light is preparing her Golden Light Trap on the White Cloud Island.”

“Are you all ready?” Heavenly Master Dong asked.

“Yes, we’re fully prepared,” they answered in one voice.

“Then we’ll go to West Qi first. Brother Wen, you stay here and wait for Mother Golden Light. What do you think?” Heavenly Master Dong suggested.

“That’s wonderful. I feel honored by your kindness,” Grand Tutor Wen replied.

The nine Taoists bade him farewell and made their way to West Qi on a watery cloud. Grand Tutor Wen sat down on a slope and leaned against



人，只见一位穿红、三只眼、黄脸长髯的道者，却原来是闻太师。金光圣母急下坐骑，曰：“闻兄何来？”二人施礼。问：“九位道友往那里去了？”太师曰：“他们先往岐山去，留吾在此等候同行。”二人大喜，齐上坐骑，驾起云光，往岐山而来，霎时便至。到了行营，吉立领众将迎接，上中军帐，与众道人相见。秦天君曰：“西岐城在那里？”闻太师曰：“因吾前夜败兵，退至七十里安营，此处乃是岐山。”众人曰：“我们连夜起兵前去。”闻太师令邓忠前队起兵，整点人马，一声炮响，杀奔西岐城来，安了行营，三军放定营大炮，呐喊传更。

子牙在相府自因得胜，与众将逐日议论天下大事，忽听喊声，子牙曰：“闻太师想必取得援兵至矣。”傍有杨戩答曰：“闻太师新败，去了半月，弟子闻此人乃截教门下，必定别请左道傍门之客，也要仔细防护。”子牙听罢，心下疑惑，乃同哪吒、杨戩等都上城来观看，闻太师行营今番大不相同。子牙见营中愁云惨惨，冷雾飘飘，杀气闪闪，悲风切切；又有十数道黑气，冲于霄汉，笼罩中军帐内。子牙看罢，惊讶不已。诸弟子默默不言。只得下城入府，共议破敌，实是无策。

且说闻太师安了营，与十天君共议破西岐之策。袁天君曰：“吾闻姜子牙昆仑门下。想二教皈依，总是一理，如红尘杀伐，吾等不必动此念头；既练有十阵，我们先与他斗智，方显两教中玄妙。若要倚勇斗力，皆非我等道门所为。”闻太师曰：“道兄之言甚善。”次日，成汤营里炮声一响，布开阵势。闻太师乘墨麒麟，坐名请子牙答话。报进相府。子牙



a pine tree. Before long, he saw a woman, in a gold fish-tail coronet, a red robe and a silk belt, approach swiftly from the south on the back of a leopard. She carried a bundle on her back and two swords at her waist.

Mother Golden Light was surprised to find nobody there except for an old Taoist with three eyes. She looked closely and recognized Grand Tutor Wen. She dismounted and asked, "Where did you come from, Brother? Where are the other nine friends?"

"They've gone ahead to West Qi and left me here waiting for you."

They happily mounted their beasts and soared through the clouds, reaching Mount Qi in the twinkling of an eye. At the Shang camp, they were welcomed by Ji Li and other generals and in the headquarters, they met the nine others.

"Where's West Qi?" Heavenly Master Qin asked.

"This is Mount Qi. I suffered defeat in a night raid and retreated here. It's seventy *li* from West Qi City," Grand Tutor Wen replied.

"Let's go back to the city," all the Taoists proposed.

Grand Tutor Wen ordered that Deng Zhong lead the vanguard. They marched quickly back to West Qi City and set up camp. Jiang Ziya heard war cries and cannon shots outside the city. "Grand Tutor Wen must have returned with reinforcements."

"He's been away for over two weeks. As a member of Jie Taoism, he must have enlisted some friends to aid him with sorcery. We should be on the alert," Yang Jian warned.

Jiang Ziya ascended the city wall with Nezha and Yang Jian. They found to their astonishment that things were very different from before. The enemy camp was enveloped in clouds and fog. Above the central camp more than a dozen columns of black smoke hovered in the air. Jiang Ziya was shocked and the others remained silent. They descended the wall and entered the prime minister's mansion, but no one knew how to deal with the new situation.

In the Shang camp, Grand Tutor Wen was discussing with the ten Heavenly masters how to destroy West Qi.

"I'm told that Jiang Ziya's a disciple from Mount Kunlun," Heavenly Master Yuan said. "As we're all Taoists, let's first have a battle of wits



随调三军，摆出城来，幡分五色，众将轩昂；子牙坐四不相上，看成汤营里布成阵势。只见闻太师坐麒麟，执金鞭在前，后面有十位道者，好凶恶！脸分五色；青、黄、赤、白、红，俱皆骑鹿而来。怎见得，有诗为证：

青丝上搭一纶巾，腹内玄机动万人。无福成仙称道德，  
“封神榜”上列其身。

话说秦天君乘鹿上前，见子牙打稽首，曰：“姜子牙请了！”子牙欠背躬身答曰：“道兄请了。不知列位道兄是那座名山？何处洞府？”秦天君答曰：“吾乃金鳌岛炼气士秦完是也。汝乃昆仑门客，吾是截教门人，为何你倚道术欺侮吾教？甚非你我道家体面。”子牙答曰：“道友何以见得我欺侮贵教？”秦完曰：“你将九龙岛魔家四人诛戮，还深侮吾教。我等今下山，与你见个雌雄。非是倚勇，吾等各以秘授略见功夫。吾等又不是凡夫俗子，恃强斗勇，皆非仙体。”秦完说罢，子牙曰：“道兄通明达显，普照四方，复始巡终，周流上下，原无二致。纣王无道，绝灭纪纲，王气黯然。西土仁君已现，当顺天时，莫迷己性。况鸣凤在岐山，应生圣贤之兆。从来有道克无道，有福催无福，正能克邪，邪不能犯正。道兄幼访名师，深悟大道，岂可不明道理！”秦完曰：“据你所言，周为真命之主，纣王乃无道之君。吾等此来，助纣灭周，难道便是不应天时？——这也不在口中讲。姜子牙，吾在岛中曾练有十阵，摆与子牙过目。不必倚强，恐伤上帝好生之仁，累此无辜黎庶，勇悍儿郎，智勇将士，遭此劫运，而糜烂其肌体也。不识子牙意下如何？”子牙曰：“道兄既有此意，姜尚岂敢违命。”只见十道人俱回骑进营，一两个时



and display what mysteries we know. We shouldn't merely match bravery and strength."

"You're right, Brother," Grand Tutor Wen agreed.

The Shang army marched out the following day. Grand Tutor Wen demanded that Jiang Ziya come to meet him.

Jiang Ziya rode out on his nondescript with his generals, soldiers, banners, and flags. Looking over the Shang army, he saw ten evil-looking Taoists behind the Grand Tutor, all mounted on deer. They had green, yellow, red, white and pink faces.

Heavenly Master Qin moved to the fore and bowed. "Greetings, Jiang Ziya!"

Jiang Ziya returned the bow. "Greetings, Brother! But where do you come from?"

"I'm from Golden Turtle Island. My name's Qin Wan. you're a member of Chan Taoism, and we are of Jie Taoism, but why do you insult us with your witchcraft? That isn't right," Heavenly Master Qin answered.

"Brother, how can you say that?"

"Isn't it an insult to put all the Mo brothers to death? We've come here to decide which of us is the more powerful." Qin Wan then added, "Let's not compete in a test of strength, but rather pit our magic powers against each other. As immortals, we should avoid physical combat."

"Brother, you've achieved much as an immortal. King Zhou's a wicked tyrant and has been forsaken by Heaven. A sage ruler has made his appearance in West Qi. You ought to respect the will of Heaven which has been marked by the singing of a phoenix on Mount Qi. Since ancient times, the kind have always subdued the cruel, those blessed by Heaven have been victorious over the cursed, and the principled have won over the unprincipled. As a disciple of a famous master since your childhood, how can you fail to recognize the truth?" Jiang Ziya replied.

"According to what you say, King Wu is destined by Heaven to be the ruler while King Zhou is an unprincipled overlord. But don't you think that our arrival is also in accordance with Heaven's will? Jiang Ziya, I'll tell you what. We've created the Ten Death Traps. I would like you to



辰，把十阵俱摆将出来。秦完复至阵前曰：“子牙，贫道十阵图已完，请公细玩。”子牙曰：“领教了。”随带哪吒、黄天化、雷震子、杨戩四位门人来看阵。闻太师在辕门与十道人细看，子牙领来四人：一个站在风火轮上，提火尖枪，是哪吒；玉麒麟上是黄天化；雷震子狰狞异相；杨戩道气昂然。只见杨戩向前对秦天君曰：“吾等看阵，不可以暗兵、暗宝暗算吾师叔，非大丈夫之所为也。”秦完笑曰：“叫你等早晨死，不敢午时亡。岂有将暗宝伤你等之理！”哪吒曰：“口说无凭，发手可见。道者休得夸口！”四人保定子牙看阵。见头一阵，挑起一牌，上书“天绝阵”；第二上书“地烈阵”；第三上书“风吼阵”；第四上书“寒冰阵”；第五上书“金光阵”；第六上书“化血阵”；第七上书“烈焰阵”；第八上书“落魄阵”；第九上书“红水阵”；第十上书“红砂阵”。子牙看毕，复至阵前。秦天君曰：“子牙识此阵否？”子牙曰：“十阵俱明，吾已知之。”袁天君曰：“可能破否？”子牙曰：“既在道中，怎不能破？”袁天君曰：“几时来破？”子牙曰：“此阵尚未完全。待你完日，用书知会，方破此阵。请了！”闻太师同诸道友回营。子牙进城，入相府，好愁！真是双锁眉尖，无筹可展。杨戩在侧曰：“师叔方才言



see them right now with your own eyes. Let's not do physical combat, as that would violate the compassionate will of Heaven. What do you think?" Qin Wan asked.

"If that's your wish, I dare not oppose it."

The ten Taoists immediately left the battleline and returned to their camp. Within two hours they had prepared the traps, and Qin Wan came out again. "We're ready. Jiang Ziya, would you like to inspect them now?"

"I'll do as you instruct," Jiang Ziya answered politely.

He moved forward. Nezha, Huang Tianhua, Thunderbolt and Yang Jian followed closely to protect him.

"It would be most cowardly if you try to hurt us with hidden weapons during our inspection," Yang Jian warned Qin Wan.

"We certainly wouldn't do that, we won't, as you'll all meet your doom soon enough anyway," Qin Wan smiled.

"You'd better keep your promise," Nezha put in.

During the inspection, Jiang Ziya read the name of each trap as it was written to one side. The names were: "Heavenly Destruction," "Earthly Fury," "Roaring Typhoon," "Frigid Ice," "Golden Light," "Bleeding Blood," "Vehement Flame," "Soul Snatching," "Red Water" and "Red Sand." After his inspection, Jiang Ziya emerged from the enemy camp.

"Do you know all of them, Jiang Ziya?" Heavenly Master Qin asked.

"Yes, I do."

"Can you break them all?" Heavenly Master Yuan asked.

"Since I know them, of course I can break all of them," Jiang Ziya answered proudly.

"When will you begin then?"

"They are not yet fully prepared. Give me a date as soon as you've completed them."

Grand Tutor Wen returned to camp with his Taoist friends and Jiang Ziya to the city with all his generals. He entered the prime minister's mansion, eyebrows knitted. He was clearly worried.

"You just said that you could break them all. You can, can't you?" Yang Jian asked.



能破此阵，其实可能破得否？”子牙曰：“此阵乃截教传来，皆稀奇之幻法，阵名罕见，焉能破得？”不言子牙烦恼。且说闻太师同十位道者入营，治酒款待。饮酒之间，闻太师曰：“道友，此十阵有何妙用可破西岐？”秦天君开讲十绝大阵。不知有何奥妙，且听下回分解。



“How can I? They were created by Jie Taoist witchcraft, full of mysteries even I can’t comprehend. Their names alone are strange to me,” Jiang Ziya said gloomily.

Back in his camp, Grand Tutor Wen entertained his friends. As they drank, Grand Tutor Wen asked, “What’s so special about these ten traps?”

Heavenly Master Qin then told him about them in detail. If you want to learn about their mysteries, please read the next chapter.



## 第四十四回

### 子牙魂游昆仑山

诗曰：

左道妖魔事更偏，咒诅魔魅古今传。伤人不用飞神剑，索魄何须取命笈。多少英雄皆弃世，任他豪杰尽归泉。谁知天意俱前定，一脉游魂去复连。

话说秦天君讲“天绝阵”，对闻太师曰：“此阵乃吾师曾演先天之数，得先天清气，内藏混沌之几，中有三首旛，按天、地、人三才，共合为一气。若人入此阵内，有雷鸣之处，化作灰尘；仙道若逢此处，肢体震为粉碎。故曰‘天绝阵’也。有诗为证：

天地三才颠倒推，玄中玄妙更难猜。神仙若遇‘天绝阵’，顷刻肢体化成灰。”

闻太师听罢大喜。又问：“‘地烈阵’如何？”赵天君曰：“吾‘地烈阵’亦按地道之数，中藏凝厚之体，外现隐跃之妙，变化多端，内隐一首红旛，招动处，上有雷鸣，下有火起。凡人、仙进此阵，再无复生之理；纵有五行妙术，怎逃此厄！有诗为证：

‘地烈’炼成分浊厚，上雷下火太无情。就是五行乾健体，难逃骨化与形倾。”

闻太师又问：“‘风吼阵’何如？”董天君曰：“吾‘风吼阵’中藏玄妙，按地、水、火、风之数，内有风、火。此风、火



## Chapter 44

### Jiang Ziya's Souls Float Over Mount Kunlun

"The Heavenly Destruction," Qin Wan said, "was invented by my master using pre-creation energies. It has three pennants, representing Heaven, earth, and humanity. In the trap, humans are reduced to ashes while immortals are shaken loose and fall into pieces."

Grand Tutor Wen was delighted. "How about the Earthly Fury?"

"My Earthly Fury contains energies of the earth concentrated in a solid mass," Heavenly Master Zhao answered. "It undergoes endless changes, now appearing, now disappearing. It has a red pennant, and when it waves, thunder roars above and flames spring up from below. Neither humans nor immortals can survive in it."

"What about the Roaring Typhoon?"

"My Roaring Typhoon produces wind and fire," Heavenly Master Dong explained. "But they are not ordinary wind and fire: they existed





乃先天之气，三昧真火，百万兵刃，从中而出。若人、仙进此阵，风、火交作，万刃齐攒，四肢立成齑粉。怕他有倒海移山之异术，难逃身体化成脓。有诗为证：

‘风吼阵’中兵刃窝，暗藏玄妙若天罗，伤人不怕神仙体，消尽浑身血肉多。”

闻太师又问：“‘寒冰阵’内有何妙用？”袁天君曰：“此阵非一日功行乃能炼就，名为‘寒冰’，实为刀山。内藏玄妙，中有风雷，上有冰山如狼牙，下有冰块如刀剑。若人、仙入此阵，风雷动处，上下一磕，四肢立成齑粉。纵有异术，难免此难。有诗为证：

玄功炼就号‘寒冰’，一座刀山上下凝。若是人仙逢此阵，连皮带骨尽无凭。”

闻太师又问：“‘金光阵’妙处如何？”金光圣母曰：“贫道‘金光阵’，内夺日月之精，藏天地之气，中有二十一面宝镜，用二十一根高杆，每一面悬在高杆顶上，一镜上有一套。若人、仙入阵，将此套拽起，雷声震动镜子，只一二转，金光射出，照住其身，立刻化为脓血。纵会飞腾，难越此阵。有诗为证：

宝镜非铜又非金，不向炉中火内寻。纵有天仙逢此阵，须臾形化更难禁。”

闻太师又问：“‘化血阵’如何用度？”孙天君曰：“吾此阵法，用先天灵气，中有风雷，内藏数片黑砂。但人、仙入阵，雷响处，风卷黑砂，些须着处，立化血水。纵是神仙，难逃利害。有诗为证：

黄风卷起黑砂飞，天地无光动杀威。任你神仙闻此气，



before genesis. Millions of swords are concealed therein which emerge as the wind and fire arise. Men and immortals alike will be cut into small pieces when they enter. Nobody can come out alive.”

“How about the Frigid Ice?”

“I invented it after years of assiduous effort. Though it’s called ‘Frigid Ice,’ it’s really a mountain of swords. In the center, there is wind and thunder, above is a mountain of ice cutlasses, and below there are solid ice blocks. Even those with the most extraordinary magic powers will find it difficult to escape fate when the upper and lower sections crash together,” Heavenly Master Yuan explained.

“What about the Golden Light? What wonders does it possess?”

“My Golden Light is made from essence derived from the sun, moon, Heaven, and earth. There are twenty-one magic mirrors, each hung on a high pole by a ring. Any intruder, either man or immortal, is turned into a stream of blood by one touch of the golden light that shoots from the mirrors. No one can escape destruction,” Mother Golden Light replied.

“How about the Bleeding Blood?”

“My trap is full of the forces which existed before genesis. Besides wind and thunder, it contains a vast quantity of black sand. If men or immortals intrude, thunder and wind arise and blow the black sand into the air. Any part of the body that comes into contact with the sand immediately turns to blood and bleeds until the whole body disappears,” Heavenly Master Sun explained.



涓涓血水溅征衣。”

闻太师又问：“‘烈焰阵’又是如何？”白天君曰：“吾‘烈焰阵’妙用无穷，非同凡品：内藏三火，有三昧火、空中火、石中火。三火并为一气。中有三首红幡。若人、仙进此阵内，三幡展动，三火齐飞，须臾成为灰烬。纵有避火真言，难躲三昧真火。有诗为证：

燧人方有空中火，炼养丹砂炉内藏。坐守离宫为首领，  
红幡招动化空亡。”

太师问：“‘落魄阵’奇妙如何？”姚天君曰：“吾此阵非同小可，乃闭生门，开死户，中藏天地厉气，结聚而成。内有白纸幡一首，上存符印。若人、仙入阵内，白幡展动，魄消魂散，顷刻而灭；不论神仙，随入随灭。有诗为证：

白纸幡摇黑气生，炼成妙术透虚盈。从来不信神仙体，  
入阵魂消魄自倾。”

太师又问：“如何为‘红水阵’？其中妙用如何？”王天君曰：“吾‘红水阵’内夺壬癸之精，藏天乙之妙，变幻莫测。中有一八卦台，台上有三个葫芦，任随人、仙入阵，将葫芦往下一掷，倾出红水，汪洋无际，若其水溅出一点粘在身上，顷刻化为血水。纵是神仙，无术可逃。有诗为证：

炉内阴阳真奥妙，炼成壬癸里边藏。饶君就是金钢体，  
遇水粘身顷刻亡。”

闻太师又问：“‘红砂阵’毕竟愈出愈奇，更烦请教，以快愚意。”张天君曰：“吾‘红砂阵’果然奇妙，作法更精。内按天、地、人三才，中分三气，内藏红砂三斗——看似红砂，着身利刃，上不知天，下不知地，中不知人。若人、仙冲入



“What are the wonders of the Vehement Flame?”

“My trap contains three kinds of fire — the divine fire that immortals produce in their stomachs, the fire of air, and the fire of rock. There are three red pennants in the trap. At any intrusion, the three pennants begin to wave and the fires instantly burn the intruder to ashes. Even charms are no help,” Heavenly Master Bai answered.

“And what about your Soul Snatching Trap?”

“In my wonderful trap, I block all the doors of life and open wide all the windows of death,” Heavenly Master Yao answered. “It’s full of the most deadly essence from Heaven and earth. I’ll hold a white paper pennant inscribed with charms, and when the pennant waves, the soul of any intruder is snatched away. Death is immediate.”

“What about the Red Water?” Grand Tutor Wen asked Heavenly Master Wang.

“My Red Water contains the essences of liquid. In the center, there is a platform in the shape of the eight diagrams, and on the platform, there are three dried gourds. At the intrusion of man or immortal, I cast down the gourds and they pour forth red water like a great flood. One drop and the intruder is turned into blood. Death is instant.”

“The Red Sand must be a wonder too. Tell me about it,” Grand Tutor Wen requested Heavenly Master Zhang.

“Yes, it’s indeed a wonder. It’s composed of three different parts, with a peck of sand each, representing Heaven, earth and man. Each





此阵，风雷运处，飞砂伤人，立刻骸骨俱成齑粉。纵有神仙佛祖，遭此再不能逃。有诗为证：

红砂一撮道无穷，八卦炉中玄妙功。万象包罗为一处，方知截教有鸿濛。”

闻太师听罢，不觉大喜：“今得众道友到此，西岐指日可破。纵有百万甲兵，千员猛将，无能为矣。实乃社稷之福也！”内有姚天君曰：“列位道兄，据贫道论起来，西岐城不过弹丸之地，姜子牙不过浅行之夫，怎经得十绝阵起！只小弟略施小术，把姜子牙处死，军中无主，西岐自然瓦解。常言‘蛇无头而不行，军无主而则乱’。又何必区区与之较胜负哉？”闻太师曰：“道兄若有奇功妙术，使姜尚自死，又不张弓持矢，不致军士涂炭，此幸之幸也。敢问如何治法？”姚天君曰：“不动声色，二十一日自然命绝。子牙纵是脱骨神仙，超凡佛祖，也难逃躲。”闻太师大喜，更问详细。姚斌附太师耳曰：“须……如此如此，自然命绝。又何劳众道兄费心。”闻太师喜不自胜，对众道友曰：“今日姚兄施大法力，为我闻仲治死姜尚，尚死，诸将自然瓦解，功成至易。真所谓樽俎折冲，谈笑而下西岐。大抵今皇上洪福齐天，致感动列位道兄扶助。”众人曰：“此功让姚贤弟行之，总为闻兄，何言劳逸。”姚天君让过众人，随入“落魂阵”内，筑一土台，设一香案，台上扎一草人；草人身上写“姜尚”的名字；草人头上点三盏灯，足下点七盏灯，——上三盏名为催魂灯，下七盏名为促魄灯。姚天君在其中，披发仗剑，步罡念咒于台前，发符用印于空中，一日拜三次。连拜了三四日，就把子牙拜的颠三倒四，坐卧不安。

不说姚天君行法，且说子牙坐在相府与诸将商议破阵之策，默默不言，半筹无画。杨戩在侧，见姜丞相或惊或怪，



grain of sand is a sharp sword that will reduce any intruder to powder. Not even an immortal or a Buddha can escape.”

Grand Tutor Wen was extremely pleased. “Now that you’re here to help me, I’ll destroy West Qi in a matter of days. Even if they have millions of soldiers and thousands of generals, they can do nothing to save themselves. The Shang Dynasty must be favored by fortune!”

Heavenly Master Yao, of the Soul Snatching Trap, however, held a different opinion. “Brothers! As I see it, Jiang Ziya’s magic powers are weak, and West Qi City is insignificant. They aren’t worthy of the ten traps. Let me use a much simpler device to put Jiang Ziya to death. West Qi will collapse at the loss of its leader. As the proverb goes, ‘A snake cannot crawl without its head; an army without a commander is reduced to chaos.’ Why fight a battle when it isn’t necessary?”

“Brother,” said the Grand Tutor, “if you can finish him off with your ingenious art, we needn’t even shoot an arrow, and the lives of our soldiers can be saved. But please tell me what device you’ll use.”

“Jiang Ziya will die in just twenty-one days. He’ll find it difficult to escape, even if he were an immortal or Buddha,” Heavenly Master Yao promised.

When Grand Tutor Wen asked him for details, Heavenly Master Yao whispered in his ear. Grand Tutor Wen was overjoyed. “Once he’s dead, his whole army will certainly collapse, and we can subdue West Qi over drink and gossip. It must be Heaven’s blessing on His Majesty!”

“Let Brother Yao render you this service. We’re here with only one purpose: to help Brother Wen,” the Taoists replied in one voice.

Heavenly Master Yao left the others and walked into his Soul Snatching Trap. There he had a platform of earth built on which he set a desk and a straw effigy. On the body of the effigy he wrote the characters “Jiang Shang,” and on its head he hung three lamps to draw out Jiang Ziya’s souls. At the foot of the effigy he put another seven lamps to receive Jiang Ziya’s sub-souls. When everything was ready, he let down his hair, took a sword, and walked in a square before the platform, reciting charms and burning written spells. He did this three times a day.

Three days later, Jiang Ziya began to feel dizzy and restless and could neither sit nor sleep in peace. When he met his generals, he remained silent, as if at his wit’s end. Sometimes he appeared dazed, and at other times irritated, never once offering any suggestions. His complexion had also changed greatly in the last few days.



无策无谋，容貌比前大不相同，心下便自疑惑：“难道丞相曾在玉虚门下出身，今膺重寄，况上天垂象，应运而兴，岂是小可；难道就无计破此十阵，便自颠倒如此！其实不解。”杨戩甚是忧虑。又过七八日，姚天君在阵中把子牙拜吊了一魂二魄。子牙在相府，心烦意躁，进退不宁，十分不爽利，整日不理军情，慵懒常眠。众将、门徒俱不解是何缘故，也有疑无策破阵者，也有疑深思静摄者。不说相府众人猜疑不一。又过了十四五日，姚天君将子牙精魂气魄，又拜去了二魂四魄。子牙在府，不时憨睡，鼻息如雷。且说哪吒、杨戩与众大弟子商议曰：“方今兵临城下，阵摆多时，师叔全不以军情为重，只是憨睡，此中必有缘故。”杨戩曰：“据愚下观丞相所为，恁般颠倒，连日如在醉梦之间；似此动作，不像前番，似有人暗算之意。不然，丞相学道昆仑，能知五行之术，善察阴阳祸福之机，安有昏迷如是，置大事若不理者！其中定有说话。”众人齐曰：“必有缘故。我等同入卧室，请上殿来，商议破敌之事，看是如何。”众人至内室前，问内侍人等：“丞相何在？”左右侍儿应曰：“丞相浓睡未醒。”众人命侍儿请丞相至殿上议事。侍儿忙入室请子牙，出得内室，门外武吉上前告曰：“老师每日安寝，不顾军国重务，关系甚大，将士忧心，恳求老师速理军情，以安周土。”子牙只得勉强出来，升了殿。众将上前，议论军前等事。子牙只是不言不语，如痴如醉。忽然一阵风响，哪吒没奈何，来试试子牙阴阳如何。哪吒曰：“师叔在上：此风甚是凶恶，不知主何凶吉？”子牙掐指一算，答曰：“今日正该刮风，原无别事。”众人不敢抵触。——看官：此时子牙被姚天君拜去了



Yang Jian felt puzzled. "Why does he behave like this? He's a disciple from the Jade Emptiness Palace and bears a great responsibility as prime minister and commander. Moreover, his timely appearance in West Qi was portended by celestial phenomena. Could it be that he's possibly be reduced to this state just because he can't cope with the ten traps? I really don't understand it."

He felt extremely worried.

Seven more days passed. Heavenly Master Yao had already got one soul and three sub-souls from Jiang Ziya. This meant that one-third of his spirit had already left his body. Jiang Ziya became even more irritable. He felt drowsy all the time and frequently lay in bed ignoring state and military affairs. Not one of his generals realized the true cause. Some thought that he was demoralized by his inability to cope with the enemy, while others thought that he was too weary and needed a rest.

Fifteen days passed. Heavenly Master Yao had seized another soul and another three sub-souls. This made Jiang Ziya sleep all day, snoring as loud as thunder. Nezha and Yang Jian discussed the matter with the other generals.

"A huge army is just beyond the walls, waiting for us with the ten traps. Nevertheless, Uncle Jiang sleeps and cares nothing about the present crisis. There must be some reason for it."

"It seems to me that somebody is hurting him with witchcraft. Otherwise, how could one like him sleep all the time? There's something fishy about it!" Yang Jian suggested.

"Yes, there must be some reason. Let's go to his bedroom and ask him to come here. We'll see how he reacts," they echoed.

Arriving in the bed chamber, they asked the attendants, "Where's the prime minister?"

"He's still sleeping."

They told one of the attendants to rouse him. As Jiang Ziya walked out, Wu Ji moved up and said, "Master! Why do you sleep everyday and neglect state and military affairs? We're extremely worried. Won't you discuss things with us now?"

Jiang Ziya went to the conference hall very much against his will and during the discussion remained silent. He seemed to be intoxicated. A sudden gust of wind blew through the hall, and they took the opportunity to test his mental faculties.

"Uncle," Nezha said, "this wind seems to have an evil air about it. Won't you find out whether it portends good or evil?"



魂魄，心中模糊，阴阳差错了，故曰“该刮风”，如何知道祸福。——当日众人也无可奈何，只得各散。言休烦絮，不觉又过了二十日。姚天君把子牙二魂六魄俱已拜去了，止有得一魂一魄，其日竟拜出泥丸宫，子牙已死在相府。众弟子与门下诸将官，连武王驾至相府，俱环立而泣。武王亦泣而言曰：“相父为国勤劳，不曾受享安康，一旦致此，于心何忍，言之痛心！”众将听武王之言，不觉大痛。杨戩含泪，将子牙身上摸一摸，只见心口还热，忙来启武王曰：“不要忙，丞相胸前还热，料不能就死。且停在卧榻。”

不言众将在府中慌乱。单言子牙一魂、一魄，飘飘荡荡，杳杳冥冥，竟往封神台来。时有清福神迎迓，见子牙是魂魄，清福神柏鉴知道天意，忙将子牙魂魄轻轻的推出封神台来。但子牙原是有根行的人，一心不忘昆仑，那魂魄出了封神台，随风飘飘荡荡，如絮飞腾，径至昆仑山来。适有南极仙翁闲游山下，采芝炼药，猛见子牙魂魄渺渺而来，南极仙翁仔细观看，方知是子牙的魂魄。仙翁大惊曰：“子牙绝矣！”慌忙赶上前，一把绰住了魂魄，装在葫芦里面，塞住了葫芦口，径进玉虚宫，启掌教老师。才进得宫门，后面有人叫曰：“南极仙翁不要走！”仙翁及至回头看时，原来是太华山云霄洞赤精子。仙翁曰：“道友那里来？”赤精子曰：“闲居无事，特来会你游海岛，适山岳，访仙境之高明野士，看其着棋闲耍，如何？”仙翁曰：“今日不得闲。”赤精子曰：“如今止了讲，你我正得闲。他日若还开讲，你我俱不得闲矣。今日反说是不得闲，兄乃欺我。”仙翁曰：“我有要紧事，不得陪兄，岂为不得闲之说。”赤精子曰：“吾知你的



Jiang Ziya bent his fingers as if making a divination and answered, "There's nothing abnormal about it. It's just the ordinary wind that ought to blow today."

Because the greater part of his spirit had gone, Jiang Ziya's senses were also dulled. But nobody dared utter a word. The conference dispersed and they left the mansion.

Twenty days passed. Heavenly Master Yao had captured two of his souls and six of his sub-souls. Only one soul and one sub-soul remained, and they, too, soon left his body through his skull. When Jiang Ziya was found dead, all his generals, together with King Wu, stood around the corpse and wept bitterly.

"Father-Prime Minister!" King Wu sobbed. "You worked laboriously for the state, never enjoying a single day of peaceful rest. How grieved I am!"

With tears in his eyes, Yang Jian moved up and touched the body with his hand. To his joy, he found that the breast was still warm. He quickly told King Wu, "Keep calm, Your Highness! His breast is still warm, so he may not yet be dead. Let him lie on the bed and we'll see what happens."

Jiang Ziya's last soul and sub-soul floated through the air and finally arrived at the Terrace of Creation. But Bai Jian recognized them and, knowing the will of Heaven, gently pushed them out of the terrace. As Jiang Ziya was a Taoist with magic powers, he could still remember Mount Kunlun. When his souls left the Terrace of Creation, they floated on the wind to Mount Kunlun.

The Immortal of the South Pole was wandering about Mount Kunlun that day collecting medicinal herbs, when he noticed the souls meandering through the air toward him. With a cry of alarm, he rushed up and stuffed them into his gourd and then quickly covered its mouth with a cork. He hurried over to the Jade Emptiness Palace to see his master, but just as he reached the entrance, he heard somebody calling his name.

He stopped when he saw that that it was Master Pure Essence. "Where did you come from, friend?"

"As I've nothing to do today, I'd like you to come with me to tour the islands and mountains. We'll look for recluses and watch them play chess."

"I'm rather busy today. Please excuse me."

"We've got no lectures at the moment. How can you deceive me?" Master Pure Essence argued.



事：姜子牙魂魄不能入窍之说，再无他意。”仙翁曰：“你何以知之？”赤精子曰：“适来言语，原是戏你。我正为子牙魂魄赶来。我因先到西岐山，封神台上见清福神柏鉴，说：‘子牙魂魄方才至此，被我推出，今游昆仑山去了。’故此特地赶来。方才见你进宫，故意问你。今子牙魂魄果在何处？”仙翁曰：“适间闲游崖前，只见子牙魂魄飘荡而至，及仔细观看方知；今已被吾装在葫芦内，要启老师知之，不意兄至。”赤精子曰：“多大事情，惊动教主。你将葫芦拿来与我，待吾去救子牙走一番。”仙翁把葫芦付与赤精子。赤精子心慌意急，借土遁离了昆仑，霎时来至西岐，到了相府前，有杨戩接住，拜倒在地，口称：“师伯今日驾临，想是为师叔而来。”赤精子答曰：“然也。快为通报！”杨戩入内，报与武王。武王亲自出迎。赤精子至银安殿，对武王打个稽首。武王竟以师礼待之，尊于上坐。赤精子曰：“贫道此来，特为子牙下山。如今子牙死在那里？”武王同众将士引赤精子进了内榻。赤精子见子牙合目不言，仰面而卧。赤精子曰：“贤王不必悲啼，毋得惊慌，只令他魂魄还体，自然无事。”赤精子同武王复至殿上。武王请问曰：“道长，相父不绝，还是用何药饵？”赤精子曰：“不必用药，自有妙用。”杨戩在傍问曰：“几时救得？”赤精子曰：“只消至三更时，子牙自然回生。”众人俱各欢喜。不觉至晚，已到三更。杨戩来请，赤精子整顿衣袍，起身出城。只见十阵内黑气迷天，阴云布合，悲风飒飒，冷雾飘飘，有无限鬼哭神嚎，竟无底止。赤精子见此阵十分险恶，用手一指，足下先现两朵白莲花，为护身根本，后将麻鞋踏定莲花，轻轻起在空中。正是



"I've something urgent to do and really have no time. I'm sorry, but I can't go with you."

"I know why you're busy. It's because Jiang Ziya's souls have left his body!"

"How did you know?"

"I was fooling you just then. Forgive me, please. I went to Mount Qi and met Bai Jian. He told me the last soul and sub-soul of Jiang Ziya arrived there a short while ago. He couldn't accept them and when he pushed them away, they floated here to Mount Kunlun. Where are they now?"

"I was touring about idly when I saw his souls floating toward me, so I put them in my gourd."

"This matter isn't important enough to be reported to the Grand Master. Give me the gourd, and I'll go to rescue Jiang Ziya," Master Pure Essence urged him.

The Immortal of the South Pole handed over the gourd, and Master Pure Essence mounted his cloud, flying to West Qi in a moment.

When he entered the prime minister's mansion, Master Pure Essence met Yang Jian, who bowed and asked, "Uncle! have you come to see the prime minister?"

"Yes. Go quickly and report my arrival!"

King Wu came out in person to meet him and conducted him to the Silver Security Court. He treated the immortal with the courtesy shown a teacher.

"I came here to see about Jiang Ziya. Where's his body now?" Master Pure Essence asked.

King Wu led the immortal to the bed chamber, where Jiang Ziya was lying on his back.

"Your Highness! You needn't worry. He'll revive naturally as soon as his souls and sub-souls are returned to his body," Master Pure Essence assured him.

When they returned to the main hall, King Wu asked, "Sir, what medicine will you use to restore my father-prime minister?"

"There's no medicine involved whatsoever. I'll save him from death by other means."

Late that night, Master Pure Essence put on his coronet, straightened his robes, and left the city. Black smoke billowed and cold fog swirled about in the howling wind over the ten traps.





仙家妙用。怎见得，有诗为证：

道人足下白莲花，顶上祥光五色呈。只为神仙犯杀戒，  
“落魂阵”内去留名。

话说赤精子站在空中，见十阵好生凶恶，杀气贯于天界，黑雾罩于岐山。赤精子正看，只见“落魂阵”内姚斌在那里披发仗剑，步罡踏斗于雷门；又见草人顶上一盏灯，昏昏惨惨，足下一盏灯，半灭半明。姚斌把令牌一击，那灯往下一灭，一魂一魄在葫芦中一进；幸葫芦口儿塞住，焉能迸得出来。姚天君连拜数拜，其灯不灭。——大抵灯不灭，魂不绝。——姚斌不觉心中焦躁，把令牌一拍，大呼曰：“二魂六魄已至，一魂一魄为何不归！”不言姚天君发怒连拜。且说赤精子在空中，见姚斌方拜下去，把足下二莲花往下一坐，来抢草人。不意姚斌拜起抬头，看见有人落将下来，乃是赤精子。姚斌曰：“赤精子，原来你敢入吾‘落魂阵’抢姜尚之魂！”忙将一把黑砂望上一洒。赤精子慌忙疾走；饶着走的快，把足下二朵莲花落在阵里。赤精子几乎失陷落魂阵中；急忙驾遁，进了西岐。杨戩接住，见赤精子面色恍惚，喘息不定。杨戩曰：“老师可曾救回魂魄？”赤精子摇头连曰：“好利害！好利害！‘落魂阵’几乎连我陷于里面！饶我走得快，犹把我足下二朵白莲花打落在阵中。”武王闻说，大哭曰：“若如此言，相父不能回生矣！”赤精子曰：“贤王不必忧虑，料是无妨。此不过系子牙灾殃，如此迟滞，贫道如今往个所在去来。”武王曰：“老师往那里去？”赤精子曰：“吾去就来。你们不可走动，好生看待子牙。”分付已毕，赤精子离了西岐，脚踏祥光，借土遁来至昆仑山。不一时，有南极



Master Pure Essence realized how perilous the situation was. He pointed at his feet, and two white lotus flowers appeared to protect his body. Treading on the flowers, he rose quietly through the air, exuding colored, auspicious light from the top of his head.

When he arrived over the Soul Snatching Trap, he saw Heavenly Master Yao, hair loosened and holding a sword, walking in a square and reciting charms. He also saw a straw effigy with three dim lamps on its head and seven under its feet. When Heavenly Master Yao knocked loudly on the desk with his stick, the lamps went out, but then rekindled when he stopped knocking. Each time he knocked, the souls inside the gourd held by Master Pure Essence struggled to get out, but they were stopped by the cork. Though Heavenly Master Yao bowed and knocked repeatedly, the lamps continued to burn. Jiang Ziya's life was not over yet.

Heavenly Master Yao grew irritated and knocked on the desk more heavily, shouting, "Two souls and six sub-souls have come already! Why do the remaining souls disobey my call?"

Fuming with anger, he bowed and chanted and knocked incessantly.

In the air above, Master Pure Essence saw him bow down and seized the opportunity to descend and snatch the straw effigy. But Yao Bin looked up by chance and saw him dropping from the sky. He recognized Master Pure Essence at once.

"Pure Essence! How dare you intrude here!" he yelled, hurling a handful of black sand at the immortal. Though Master Pure Essence took flight immediately, his two lotus flowers were hit and dropped to the ground. He returned to West Qi City, flurried and gasping for breath.

"Master! Have you brought back our prime-minister's souls?" Yang Jian asked.

"This is truly a dangerous job! I almost fell into the Soul Snatching Trap myself! I fled, but my two lotus flowers were hit by the black sand and taken by Yao Bin."

King Wu burst into sobs. "Alas! There's no hope for my father-prime minister!"

"Don't worry, Your Highness. Jiang Ziya will suffer only for a few more days. I must go now."

"Where are you going, Master?" King Wu asked.



仙翁出玉虚宫而来，见赤精子至，忙问：“子牙魂魄可曾回？”赤精子把前事说了一遍，“……借重道兄，启师尊，问个端的：怎生救得子牙？”仙翁听说，入宫至宝座下，行礼毕，把子牙事细细陈说一番。元始曰：“吾虽掌此大教，事体尚有疑难。你叫赤精子可去八景宫见大老爷，便知始末。”仙翁领命出宫来，对赤精子曰：“老师分付：你可往八景宫去参谒大老爷，便知端的。”赤精子辞了南极仙翁，驾祥云往玄都而来。不一时已到仙山。此处乃大罗宫玄都洞，是老子所居之地；内有八景宫，仙境异常，令人把玩不暇。有诗为证，诗曰：

仙峰巅险，峻岭崔嵬。坡生瑞草，地长灵芝。根连地秀，顶接天齐。青松绿柳，紫菊红梅。碧桃银杏，火枣交梨。仙翁判画，隐者围棋。群仙谈道，静讲玄机。闻经怪兽，听法狐狸。彪熊剪尾，豹舞猿啼。龙吟虎啸，翠落莺飞。犀牛望月，海马声嘶。

异禽多变化，仙鸟世间稀。孔雀谈经句，仙童玉笛吹。怪松盘古顶，宝树映沙堤。山高红日近，涧阔水流低。清幽仙境院，风景胜瑶池。此间无限景，世上少人知。

话说赤精子至玄都洞，见上面一联云：

道判混元，曾见太极两仪生四象；鸿濛传法，又将胡人西度出函关。

赤精子在玄都洞外，不敢擅入。等候一会，只见玄都大法师出宫外，看见赤精子，问曰：“道友到此，有什么大事？”赤精子打稽首，口称：“道兄，今无甚事，也不敢擅入。只因姜



“I’ll be back soon. You just stay here and take care of Jiang Ziya’s body.”

Master Pure Essence rode on a beam of light to Mount Kunlun where he met the Immortal of the South Pole in front of the Jade Emptiness Palace.

“Have you returned Jiang Ziya’s souls yet?” the Immortal of the South Pole asked.

Telling him the whole story, Master Pure Essence said, “Brother, I’ll have to see Grand Master and ask him to show us how to deal with this.”

The Immortal of the South Pole did as he was requested. Entering the palace, he bowed before Heavenly Primogenitor and reported the calamity.

“Though I’m responsible here, I can’t deal with the matter directly. Tell Pure Essence to go to the Eight Landscape Palace and see my elder brother. He’ll help him.”

The Immortal of the South Pole returned and said, “Grand Master asks you to go and see Master Lao Zi.”

Master Pure Essence sped on an auspicious cloud straight to Mount Xuandu. In a few moments, he reached the Eight Landscape Palace in Xuandu Cave. It was a fairyland of landscapes. On the steep slopes grew fairy grass and longevity mushrooms. Green pines, willows, purple chrysanthemums, red plums, pink peaches, yellow apricots, brown dates and luscious pears could be seen everywhere. Immortals sat, enjoying paintings and hermits gathered, playing chess. One could hear the singing of dragons, phoenixes and peacocks. Rhinoceroses admired the moon while happy seals and hippopotami played games in the water. The sun shone over the mountains and water gurgled in the creeks. It was a fairyland unknown to the outside world.

Master Pure Essence dared not enter the cave unauthorized but soon Chief Priest Xuandu came out and saw him there. “What urgent matter brings you here, friend?”

Master Pure Essence bowed before him. “Brother, if it weren’t of



子牙魂魄游荡的事……”细说一番，“特奉师命，来见老  
 爷。敢烦通报。”玄都大法师听说，忙入宫，至蒲团前行  
 礼，启曰：“赤精子宫门外听候法旨。”老子曰：“招他进  
 来。”赤精子入宫，倒身下拜：“弟子愿老师万寿无疆！”老  
 子曰：“你等犯了此劫，‘落魄阵’姜尚有愆，吾之宝‘落魄  
 阵’亦遭此厄，都是天数，汝等谨受法戒。”叫玄都大法  
 师：“取太极图来。”付与赤精子。“将吾此图……如此行  
 去，自然可救姜尚。你速去罢。”赤精子得了太极图，离了  
 大罗宫，一时来至西岐。武王闻说赤精子回来，与众将迎迓  
 至殿前。武王忙问曰：“老师那里去来？”赤精子曰：“今日方  
 救得子牙。”众将听说，不觉大喜。杨戩曰：“老师，还到甚  
 时候？”赤精子曰：“也到三更时分。”诸弟子专专等至三更  
 来请，赤精子随即起身。出城行至十阵门前，捏土成遁，驾  
 在空中，只见姚天君还在那里拜伏。赤精子将老君太极图打  
 散抖开，——此图乃老君劈地开天，分清理浊，定地、水、  
 火、风，包罗万象之宝。化了一座金桥，五色毫光，照耀山  
 河大地，护持着赤精子往下一坠，一手正抓住草人，望空就  
 走。姚天君忽见赤精子二进“落魄阵”来，大叫曰，“好赤  
 精子！你又来抢我草人！甚是可恶！”忙将一斗黑砂望上一  
 泼。赤精子叫一声：“不好！”把左手一放，将太极图落在阵  
 里，被姚天君所得。且说赤精子虽是把草人抓出阵来，反把  
 太极图失了，吓得魂不附体，面如金纸，喘息不定，在土遁  
 内，几乎失利；落下遁光，将草人放下，把葫芦取出，收了  
 子牙二魂六魄，装在葫芦里面，往相府前而来。只见众弟子  
 正在此等候。远远望见赤精子忻然而来，杨戩上前请问曰：



major importance, I wouldn't have come here to see Master Lao Zi. Jiang Ziya's lost his souls to Yao Bin. Heavenly Primogenitor sent me here to see Master Lao Zi. Could you arrange for me to see him?"

Chief Priest Xuandu went back in. "Pure Essence requests to see you."

"Let him in," Lao Zi said.

Master Pure Essence entered and knelt down. "May you live forever!"

"You've all been fated to endure this calamity. The Soul Snatching Trap, the sole cause of Jiang Ziya's suffering, was based on my magic Map of the Eight Diagrams. This has been destined by Heaven. You must all observe the Taoist prohibitions very carefully." He ordered Chief Priest Xuandu to fetch the map. "Rescue Jiang Shang with this. You may go at once."

Master Pure Essence left the Eight Landscape Palace carrying the map and arrived back in West Qi City in a blink of eye. He was warmly welcomed by King Wu and all his generals.

"Where have you been?" King Wu asked eagerly.

"I've obtained the means to save Jiang Ziya's life."

All the generals were overjoyed.

"When will you go again, Master?" Yang Jian asked.

"At the third watch tonight."

At the third watch, all the generals went to see him off. He ascended into the air and flew over the Ten Death Traps.

From up in the air, he could see Heavenly Master Yao still diligently bowing and chanting. He unrolled the magic map, and it turned into a golden bridge that shone brightly in all the colors of the rainbow. It protected him as he raced down and snatched the straw effigy. He then took flight.

"Damn you, Pure Essence! How dare you come again!" Heavenly Master Yao growled, enraged.

He cast a peck of black sand high into the air. Master Pure Essence cried out in fright and in his panic, dropped the map, which was then retrieved by Heavenly Master Yao.

Although Master Pure Essence had gotten away with the effigy, he was frightened out of his wits by the loss of the map. Pale and gasping for breath, he made his way back to West Qi City. He descended into the city, put down the straw effigy, opened the lid of his gourd, and placed the



“老师！师叔魂魄可曾取得来么？”赤精子曰：“子牙事虽完了，吾将掌教大老爷的奇宝失在‘落魄阵’，吾未免有陷身之祸！”众将同进相府。武王闻得取子牙魂魄已至，不觉大喜。赤精子至子牙卧榻，将子牙头发分开，用葫芦口合住子牙泥丸宫，连把葫芦敲了三四下，其魂魄依旧入窍。少时，子牙睁开眼，口称：“好睡！”急至看时，卧榻前武王、赤精子、众门人。子牙跃身而起。武王曰：“若非此位老师费心，焉得相父今生再面！”这会子牙方才醒悟，便问：“道兄何以知之，而救不才也？”赤精子把“十绝阵内有一‘落魄阵’，姚斌将你魂魄拜入草人，腹内止得一魂一魄，天不绝你，魂游昆仑，我为你赶入玉虚宫，讨你魂魄；复入大罗宫，蒙掌教大老爷赐太极图救你；不意失在‘落魄阵’中。”子牙听毕，自悔根行甚浅，不能俱知始末，“太极图乃玄妙之珍，今已悞陷，奈何？”赤精子曰：“子牙且调养身体，待平复后，共议破阵之策。”武王回驾。子牙调养数日，方才全愈。

翌日升殿，赤精子与诸人共议破阵之法。赤精子曰，“此阵乃左道傍门，不知深奥。既有真命，自然安妥。”言未毕，杨戩启子牙：“二仙山麻姑洞黄龙真人到此。”子牙迎接至银安殿，行礼毕，分宾主坐下。子牙曰：“道兄今到此，



two remaining souls and six sub-souls inside it. He then continued on his way to the prime minister's mansion.

The generals were still waiting for him there and were pleased to see him return with a smile on his face. Yang Jian rushed forward. "Master, have you brought back the souls?"

"I have. Jiang Ziya can now be restored to life. But although I was lucky to escape with my life, I lost Lao Zi's map in the Soul Snatching Trap," Master Pure Essence replied.

King Wu and the generals were delighted that Jiang Ziya would be restored to life. Master Pure Essence went to Jiang Ziya's bedside, parted his hair and put the mouth of the gourd against his skull. He patted the gourd three times. As Jiang Ziya's souls entered his body, he opened his eyes.

"What a long sleep I've had!" Jiang Ziya exclaimed.

He looked round and saw King Wu, Master Pure Essence and all his generals standing before his bed.

"Prime Minister! If it hadn't been for this master, you wouldn't have been restored to life!" King Wu told him.

Jiang Ziya fully regained his senses when he heard this and asked Master Pure Essence, "Brother, how did you know that I was in danger of losing my life? How did you save me?"

Master Pure Essence related all that had happened. Jiang Ziya was filled with remorse at the paucity of his own powers and his resulting ignorance of what had taken place.

"The map is a rare thing. What shall we do now that we have lost it?" Jiang Ziya said worriedly.

"Rest well for a few days. We'll discuss how to break the ten traps when you've fully recovered," Master Pure Essence urged.

Jiang Ziya rested for several days and then convened a conference in his mansion to discuss with Master Pure Essence and his generals how to break the ten traps.

"The traps are all sorcery, and their secrets are unknown to us, but we're acting in accordance with the will of Heaven. They cannot harm us," Master Pure Essence reassured them.

During the discussion, Yang Jian announced, "The Yellow Dragon Immortal has arrived."

Jiang Ziya immediately went out to welcome the immortal. After greetings were exchanged, he asked, "Brother, what instructions do you have for me?"





有何事见谕？”黄龙真人曰：“特来西岐，共破十绝阵。方今吾等犯了杀戒，轻重有分；众道友咫尺即来。此处凡俗不便，贫道先至，与子牙议论。可在西门外，搭一芦篷席殿，结彩悬花，以便三山五岳道友齐来，可以安歇。不然，有亵众圣，甚非尊贤之理。”子牙传令：“着南宫适、武吉起造芦篷，安放席殿。”又命杨戩：“在相府门首，但有众老师至，随即通报。”赤精子对子牙曰：“吾等不必在此商议，候造篷工完，篷上议事可也。”话非一日，武吉来报工完。子牙同二位道友、众门人，都出城来听用，止留武成王掌府事。话说子牙上了芦篷，铺毡佃地，悬花结彩，专候诸道友来至。大抵武王为应天顺人，仙圣自不绝而来，先来的是：

九仙山桃园洞广成子，  
太华山云霄洞赤精子，  
二仙山麻姑洞黄龙真人，  
狭龙山飞云洞惧留孙——后人释成佛，  
乾元山金光洞太乙真人，  
崆峒山元阳洞灵宝大法师，  
五龙山云霄洞文殊广法天尊——后成文殊菩萨，  
九功山白鹤洞普贤真人——后成普贤菩萨，  
普陀山落伽洞慈航道人——后成观世音大士，  
玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人，  
金庭山玉屋洞道行天尊，  
青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君。



"I've come to deal with the ten traps. As we're all destined to violate the commandment on killing, some to a slight degree and some to a serious extent, we'll all be gathering here in a short while. But this place is too vulgar for my fellow immortals, and I've come here first to discuss the matter with Jiang Ziya. I propose that you build a reed pavilion outside the west gate and have it decorated with lanterns and flowers. It may be inconvenient for them to come otherwise."

Jiang Ziya ordered Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji to follow the immortal's instructions, and Yang Jian to wait at the gate and report immediately the arrival of any immortal.

"Let's not waste time on strategies now. We'll discuss the matter with the immortals once the reed pavilion is ready," Master Pure Essence advised.

In less than twenty-four hours, Wu Ji reported to Jiang Ziya that the reed pavilion had been completed. When Jiang Ziya inspected it, he ordered that carpets be laid on the floor and the interior be decorated with lanterns and flowers. All the officials except King Wu left the city and gathered in the pavilion to welcome the immortals.

As King Wu was a virtuous ruler, a great number of immortals came to discuss the problem facing West Qi. They were: Master Grand Completion from the Peach Spring Cave on Nine Immortal Mountain; Master Pure Essence from the Exalted Cloud Cave on Mount Taihua; the Yellow Dragon Immortal from the Fairy Maid Cave on Two celestial Mountain; Krakucchanda from the Flying Cloud Cave on Dragon Squeezing Mountain (who later became a Buddha); Fairy Primordial from the Golden Light Cave on Qianyuan Mountain; Master Spiritual Treasure from the Original Yang Cave on Mount Kongtong; Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture from the High Cloud Cave on Five Dragon Mountain (who later became the Bodhisattva of Outstanding Culture); Immortal Universal Virtue from the White Crane Cave on Nine Palace Mountain (who later became the Bodhisattva of Universal Virtue); The Immortal of Merciful Navigation from the Perfumed Wood Cave on Mount Putuo (who later became the Buddhist Goddess of Mercy); The Immortal Jade Tripod from the Golden Haze Cave on Mount Jade Spring; Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue from the Jade House Cave on Mount Golden Courtyard; and Master Virtue of the Pure Void from the Purple Sun Cave on Mount Green Peak.



子牙径往迎接，上篷坐下。内有广成子曰：“众位道友，今日前来，兴废可知，真假自辨。子牙公几时破十绝阵？吾等听从指教。”子牙听得此言，魂不附体，欠身言曰：“列位道兄，料不才不过四十年毫末之功，岂能破得此十绝阵！乞列位道兄怜姜尚才疏学浅，生民涂炭，将土水火，敢烦那一位道兄，与吾代理，解君臣之忧烦，黎庶之倒悬，真社稷生民之福矣。姜尚不胜幸甚！”广成子曰：“吾等自身难保无虞，虽有所学，不能克敌此左道之术。”彼此互相推让。正说间，只见半空中有鹿鸣，异香满地，遍处氤氲。不知是谁来至，且听下回分解。



Jiang Ziya was kept busy receiving his celestial guests and conducting them to the reed pavilion.

When all the immortals had arrived, Master Grand Completion said, "My Taoist friends! With your arrival here today, the rise of the good and just, and the downfall of the wicked and unjust will soon be known to all. Jiang Ziya, when will you take action to break the Ten Death Traps?"

Jiang Ziya got up and replied with a low bow, "Dear Brothers! I studied on Mount Kunlun for only forty years. How can I take command? Please take pity on me, as my powers are weak, and on the people and soldiers, as they are innocent. May I trouble one of you to take my place? I'd appreciate it very much."

"I'm sorry but I doubt whether we can guarantee even our own safety. Our powers aren't sufficient to deal with their witchcraft either!" Master Grand Completion answered, greatly disheartened.

They were still arguing as to who should assume command when they heard the cry of a deer in the sky and smelt an unusual perfume filling the air.

If you want to know who arrived, please read the next chapter.







## 第四十五回

### 燃灯议破十绝阵

诗曰：

“天绝阵”中多猛烈，若逢“地烈”更难堪。

秦完凑数皆天定，袁角遭诛是性贪。雷火烧残今已两，  
捆仙缚去不成三。区区十阵成何济，赢得“封神榜”上谈。

话说众人正议破阵主将，彼此推让，只见空中来了一位道人，跨鹿乘云，香风袭袭。怎见得他相貌稀奇，形容古怪？真是仙人班首，佛祖源流。有诗为证：

一天瑞彩光摇曳，五色祥云飞不彻。鹿鸣空内九皋声，紫芝色秀千层叶。中间现出真人相，古怪容颜原自别。神舞虹霓透汉霄，腰悬宝录无生灭。灵鹫山下号燃灯，时赴蟠桃添寿域。

众仙知是灵鹫山圆觉洞燃灯道人，齐下篷来，迎接上篷，行礼坐下。燃灯曰：“众道友先至，贫道来迟，幸勿以此介意。方今十绝阵甚是凶恶，不知以何人为主？”子牙欠身打躬曰：“专候老师指教。”燃灯曰：“吾此来，实与子牙代劳，执掌符印；二则众友有厄，特来解释；三则了吾念头。子牙公请了！可将符印交与我。”子牙与众人俱大喜曰：“道长之言，甚是不谬。”随将印符拜送燃灯。燃灯受印符，谢过众道友，方打点议破十阵之事。正是：

雷部正神施猛力，神仙杀戒也难逃。

## Chapter 45

### Confronting the Destructive Forces

In the course of their discussion, an immortal riding on a deer descended through the clouds, filling the air with a sweet fragrance. It was Immortal Burning Lamp from the Prime Consciousness Cave on Mount Divine Hawk. All the immortals came out to welcome him.

After greetings had been exchanged, Burning Lamp said, "Sorry I'm so late. Please forgive me." He then asked, "As the traps are so formidable, we need a commander to direct the operations. Have you chosen one yet?"

Jiang Ziya bowed. "We're awaiting your instructions."

"I've come here first, to take over Jiang Ziya's seal of command, and second, to save some of you from doom as we fulfil the will of Heaven. You may give me the seal of office."

Jiang Ziya was delighted. He immediately handed over the seal and saluted him as commander. Burning Lamp thanked everyone and began discussing the ways and means to destroy the ten traps. As they talked,







话说燃灯道人安排破阵之策，不觉心上咨嗟：“此一劫必损吾十友。”

且说闻太师在营中请十天君上帐，坐而问曰：“十阵可曾完全？”秦完曰：“完已多时。可着人下战书，知会早早成功，以便班师。”闻太师忙修书，命邓忠往子牙处来下战书。有哪吒见邓忠来至，便问曰：“有何事至此？”邓忠答曰：“来下战书。”哪吒报与子牙：“邓忠下书。”子牙命：“接上来。”书曰：

“征西大元戎太师闻仲书奉丞相姜子牙麾下：古云：‘率土之滨，莫非王臣。’今无故造反，是得罪于天下，为天下所共弃者也。屡奉天讨，不行悔罪，反恣肆强暴，杀害王师，致辱朝廷，罪亦罔赦。今摆此十绝阵已完，与尔共决胜负。特着邓忠将书通会，可准定日期，候尔破敌。战书到日，即此批宣。”

子牙看罢书，原书批回：“三日后会战。”邓忠回见太师，“三日后会阵。”闻太师乃在大营中设席，款待十天君，大吹大擂饮酒。饮至三更，出中军帐，猛见周家芦篷里众道人顶上现出庆云瑞彩，或金灯贝叶，瓔珞垂珠，似檐前滴水，涓涓不断。十天君惊曰：“昆仑山诸人到了！”众皆骇异，各归本阵，自去留心。不觉便是三日。那日早晨，成汤营里炮响，喊声齐起，闻太师出营，在辕门口，左右分开队伍，乃邓、辛、张、陶四将；十阵主各安方向而立。只见西岐芦篷里，隐隐幡飘，霭霭瑞气，两边摆三山五岳门人。只见头一对是哪吒、黄天化出来；二对是杨戩、雷震子；三对是韩毒龙、薛恶虎；四对是金吒、木吒。怎见得，有诗



he sighed sadly to himself, realizing that he would lose at least ten men in the coming disaster.

Meanwhile, Grand Tutor Wen invited the ten Heavenly Masters to his tent. "Have you all completed your traps?"

"We finished all our arrangements some time ago. You may send a note to Jiang Ziya," they all answered.

Grand Tutor Wen immediately sent Deng Zhong to Jiang Ziya with a written challenge. After reading the note, Jiang Ziya wrote at the bottom, "We will meet you in three days time." Then he returned the note to Deng Zhong and sent him away.

When they received the reply, Grand Tutor Wen entertained the ten Heavenly Masters. As they left his tent at the third watch, they were startled to see auspicious colored clouds over the reed pavilion of the Zhou camp: golden lanterns, linden leaves and strings of pearls shone brilliantly in the sky. They cried out in alarm, "A crowd of celestials from Mount Kunlun have arrived!" Warned by the new development, each then returned to his own trap.

The third day soon arrived. Early in the morning cannons and war cries resounded in the Shang camp. Grand Tutor Wen positioned himself before the camp gate, with Deng, Zhang, Xin and Tao on either side. The ten traps were arrayed across the battlefield.

In the reed pavilion, one could see flags fluttering amidst auspicious vapors as the immortals began to emerge. The Zhou forces were headed by Nezha and Huang Tianhua, and followed by Yang Jian, Thunderbolt, Han Dulong, Xue Ehu, Jinzha and Muzha. Then came the immortals in



为证：

玉磬金钟声两分，西岐城下吐祥云。从今大破十绝阵，  
雷祖英名万载闻。

话说燃灯掌握元戎，领众仙下篷，步行排班，缓缓而行。只见赤精子对广成子；太乙真人对灵宝大法师；道德真君对惧留孙；文殊广法天尊对普贤真人；慈航道人 against 黄龙真人；玉鼎真人对道行天尊；十二代上仙，齐齐整整摆出；当中梅花鹿上坐燃灯道人；赤精子击金钟；广成子击玉磬。只见“天绝阵”内一声钟响，阵门开处，两杆幡摇，见一道人，怎生模样：面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，骑黄斑鹿出阵。但见：

莲子箍，头上着；绛绡衣，绣白鹤。手持四楞黄金铜，  
暗带擒仙玄妙索。荡三山，游五岳，金鳌岛内烧丹药。  
只因烦恼共嗔痴，不在高山受快乐。

且说“天绝阵”内秦天君飞出阵来。燃灯道人看左右，暗思：“并无一个在劫先破此阵之人……”正话说未了，忽然空中一阵风声飘飘，落下一位仙家，乃玉虚宫第五位门人邓华是也；拎一根方天画戟。见众道人，打个稽首，曰：“吾奉师命，特来破‘天绝阵’。”燃灯点首自思曰：“数定在先，怎逃此厄！”尚未回言，只见秦天君大呼曰：“玉虚教下谁来见吾此阵？”邓华向前言曰：“秦完慢来，不必恃强，自肆猖獗！”秦完曰：“你何人，敢出大言？”邓华曰：“孽障！你连我也认不得了！吾乃玉虚门下邓华是也。”秦完曰：“你敢来会我此阵否？”邓华曰：“既奉敕下山，怎肯空回！”提画戟就刺。秦完催鹿相还，步鹿交加，杀在“天绝阵”前。怎见得：



pairs: Master Pure Essence and Master Grand Completion, Fairy Primordial and Master Spiritual Treasure, Master Virtue of the Pure Void and Krakucchanda, Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture and Universal Virtue, Immortal of Merciful Navigation and the Yellow Dragon Immortal, Immortal Jade Tripod and Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue. They filed out in an orderly group led by Burning Lamp. Master Pure Essence rang a gold bell and Master Grand Completion struck jade chimes.

Bells suddenly rang in the Heavenly Destruction Trap, and a Taoist with an indigo face and cinnabar hair appeared between two banners at the entrance. He raced out on a yellow spotted deer.

As Heavenly Master Qin approached, Burning Lamp looked around. "There's no one here destined to be sacrificed," he thought.

As he pondered, there was a rush of wind above and an immortal dropped lightly to the ground. It was Deng Hua, the fifth disciple of the Jade Emptiness Palace.

A halberd in his hand, Deng Hua bowed before the celestials. "By order of my master, I've come here to break the Heavenly Destruction Trap."

Burning Lamp nodded his head, thinking sadly, "How can he escape disaster? It's been destined by fate."

Just then, Heavenly Master Qin yelled loudly, "Which of you will meet me first?"

"Don't get excited, Qin Wan. Don't begin to think that you are omnipotent!" Deng Hua shouted, rushing out to meet him.

"Who are you?"

"You devil! How come you don't know me? I'm Deng Hua, a disciple of the Jade Emptiness Palace."

"Dare you meet me in my trap?" Qin Wan challenged.

"Since I've come for that purpose, why not?"

He rushed at Qin Wan with his halberd, and Qin spurred his deer forward to meet him. They fought bravely before the Heavenly Destruc-



这一个轻移道步；那一个兜转黄斑。轻移道步，展动描金五色幡；兜转黄斑，金铜使开龙摆尾。这一个道心退后恶心生；那一个那顾长生真妙诀。这一个蓝脸上杀光直透三千丈，那一个粉脸上恶气冲破五云端。一个是雷部天君施威仗勇；一个是日宫神圣气概轩昂。正是：封神台上标名客，怎免诛身戮体灾。

话说秦天君与邓华战未及三五回合，空丢一铜，往阵内就走。邓华随后赶来；见秦完走进阵门去了，邓华也赶入阵内。秦天君见邓华赶急，上了板台，——台上有几案，案上有三首幡。秦天君将幡执在手，左右连转数转，将幡往下一掷，雷声交作，只见邓华昏昏惨惨，不知南北西东，倒在地下。秦完下板台，将邓华取了首级，拎出阵来，大呼曰：“昆仑教下，谁敢再观吾‘天绝阵’也！”燃灯看见邓华首级，不觉咨嗟：“可怜数年道行，今日结果！”又见秦完复来叫阵，乃命文殊广法天尊先破此阵，燃灯分付：“务要小心！”文殊曰：“知道。领法牒。”作歌出曰：

“欲试锋芒敢惮劳，凌霄宝匣玉龙号。手中紫气三千丈，顶上凌云百尺高。金阙晓临谈道德，玉京时去种蟠桃。奉师法旨离仙府，也到红尘走一遭。”

文殊广法天尊问曰：“秦完，你截教无拘无束，原自快乐；为何摆此‘天绝阵’陷害生灵。我今既来破阵，必开杀戒。非是我等灭却慈悲，无非了此前因。你等勿自后悔！”秦完大笑曰：“你等是闲乐神仙，怎的也来受此苦恼。你也不知吾所练阵中无尽无穷之妙。非我逼你，是你等自取大厄！”文殊广法天尊笑曰：“也不知是谁取绝命之愆！”秦完



tion Trap. After only three rounds, Qin Wan made a feint and dodged inside the trap. Deng Hua followed on his heels. Qin Wan picked up the three pennants from the desk on the platform and whirled them in the air, finally casting them on the ground. There was a great crash of thunder, and Deng Hua fell to the ground insensible.

Qin Wan leapt down from the platform, cut his head off, and carrying it in his hand, rushed out. "You fellows from Mount Kunlun! Who dares to meet me again in my trap?"

Grieved at the loss of Deng Hua, Burning Lamp asked Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture to enter. "Take great care," he warned.

"I will," replied the Heavenly Master and strode forward singing:

I dare to test the blade of my sword,  
The jade dragon shrieks in fright.  
Purple vapors from my hand rise high.  
Lucky clouds emerge and cover my head.  
I grow longevity peaches in the Jade Palace,  
And discuss the Way in the golden tower.  
By order I left my celestial home,  
And came to this vulgar world, merry and gay.

"Qin Wan, Jie Taoism enjoys untrammelled liberty. Why have you created this trap to harm the world? As I am to break it, I certainly can't observe the commandment on killing. It isn't that we're unkind, but that we must enforce the law of cause and effect. Don't regret it when it's too late," he warned.

Qin Wan laughed. "You're all carefree immortals, but why are you willing to come and suffer here? You certainly know nothing about the mysteries of my trap. It isn't I that will drive you to disaster."

"We'll soon see just who will lose his life," the Heavenly Master smiled.



大怒，执钏就打。天尊道：“善哉！”将剑挡架招隔。未及数合，秦完败走进阵。天尊赶到“天绝阵”门首，见里面飒飒寒雾，萧萧悲风，也自迟疑不敢擅入；只听得后面金钟响处，只得要进阵去。天尊把手往下一指，平地有两朵白莲而出。天尊足踏二莲，飘飘而进。秦天君大叫曰：“文殊广法天尊！纵你开口有金莲，垂手有白光，也出不得吾‘天绝阵’也！”天尊笑曰：“此何难哉！”把口一张，有斗大一朵金莲喷出；左手五指里有五道白光垂地倒往上卷；白光顶上有一朵莲花；花上有五盏金灯引路。且说秦完将三首幡，如前施展，只见文殊广法天尊顶上有庆云升起，五色毫光内有缨络垂珠挂将下来，手托七宝金莲，现了化身。怎见得：

悟得灵台体自殊，自由自在法难拘。三花久已朝元海，  
缨络垂丝顶上珠。

话说秦天君把幡摇了数十摇，也摇不动广法天尊。天尊在光里言曰：“秦完！贫道今日放不得你，要完吾杀戒！”把遁龙桩望空中一撒，将秦天君遁住了。此桩按三才，上下有三圈，将秦完缚得逼直。广法天尊对昆仑打个稽首曰：“弟子今日开此杀戒！”将宝剑一劈，取了秦完首级，拎将出“天绝阵”来。闻太师在墨麒麟上，一见秦完被斩，大叫一声，“气杀老夫！”催动坐骑，大叫：“文殊休走！吾来也！”天尊不理。麒麟来得甚急，似一阵黑烟滚来。怎见得，后人诗赞曰：

怒气凌空怎按摩，一心只要动干戈。休言此阵无赢日，  
纵有奇谋俱自讹。

且说燃灯后面黄龙真人乘鹤飞来，阻住闻太师，曰：“秦完



Flying into a rage, Qin Wan struck at him with his staves. The immortal returned the blow with his sword. After a few rounds, Qin Wan once more ran into his trap, but the Heavenly Master hesitated at the entrance, alarmed by the cold fog that hung in the air.

He heard the gold bell ringing behind him, and he mustered his courage to advance. He pointed at the ground with his fingers, and two white lotus flowers emerged from the earth on which he rode into the trap.

“Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture! Even if you spit golden lotus flowers and produce white light from your fingers, you’ll find it difficult to get out of my trap,” Qin Wan bellowed.

“I don’t think I’ll have any problem,” the Heavenly Master replied with a smile.

He opened his mouth, and a lotus flower, as large as a basin, sprang out. At the same time, five beams of white light shot from the fingers of his left hand high into the air. A lotus flower appeared on the tip of each beam of light, and upon each lotus flower were five golden lamps to light his way forward.

As Qin Wan whirled the three pennants in the air, he saw that the Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture was protected by colored clouds hung with stringed pearls that hovered in the air around him. Though he whirled his pennants repeatedly, the immortal was not hurt in any way.

“Qin Wan, I’m sorry but I can’t allow you to live any longer. I have to act against the commandment on killing.”

The Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture then cast his Invisible Dragon Stake into the air and bound up Qin Wan with the three rings. Then he bowed towards Mount Kunlun and prayed. “Your disciple is going to break the commandment on killing today.” With a single flick of his sword, he decapitated Qin Wan and emerged from the now powerless trap.

When he saw Qin Wan’s head, Grand Tutor Wen gave a cry of rage and urged his unicorn forward. “Don’t go, Outstanding Culture! I’m coming to have it out with you.”

The Heavenly Master paid no attention to him, and the Yellow Dragon Immortal flew out on his crane from behind Burning Lamp and blocked the Grand Tutor’s path. “Brother Deng Hua lost his life in Qin Wan’s





‘天绝阵’坏吾邓华师弟，想秦完身亡，足以相敌。今十阵方才破一，还有九阵未见雌雄；原是斗法，不必恃强。你且暂退！”

只听得“地烈阵”一声钟响，赵江在梅花鹿上作歌而出：

“妙妙妙中妙，玄玄玄更玄。动言俱演道，默语是神仙。在掌如珠异，当空似月圆。功成归物外，直入大罗天。”

赵天君大呼曰：“广法天尊既破了‘天绝阵’，谁敢会我‘地烈阵’么？”冲杀而来。燃灯道人命韩毒龙：“破‘地烈阵’走一遭。”韩毒龙跃身而出，大呼曰，“不可乱行！吾来也！”赵天君问曰：“你是何人，敢来见我？”韩毒龙曰：“道行天尊门下，奉燃灯师父法旨，特来破你‘地烈阵’。”赵江笑曰，“你不过毫末道行，怎敢来破吾阵，空丧性命！”提手中剑飞来直取。韩毒龙手中剑赴面交还。剑来剑架，犹如紫电飞空，一似寒冰出谷。战有五六回合，赵江挥一剑，望阵内败走。韩毒龙随后跟来。赶至阵中，赵天君上了板台，将五方幡摇动，四下里怪云卷起，一声雷鸣，上有火罩，上下交攻，雷火齐发。可怜韩毒龙，不一时身体成为齑粉。——一道灵魂往封神台来，有清福神祇引进了。且说赵天君复上梅花鹿，出阵大呼：“阐教道友，别着个有道行的来见此阵，毋得使根行浅薄之人至此枉丧性命！谁敢再会吾此阵？”燃灯道人曰：“惧留孙去走一番。”惧留孙领命，作歌而来：

“交光日月炼金英，二粒灵珠透室明。摆动乾坤知道力，逃移生死见功成。逍遥四海留踪迹，归在玄都立姓名。直上五云云路稳，紫鸾朱鹤自来迎。”



trap. Now it's just a tooth for a tooth. We've broken only one of your traps but nine still remain. We are competing with our magic arts, not physical strength. You'd better withdraw temporarily."

Just then Heavenly Master Zhao Jiang rode out on his spotted deer to the striking of bells. "Since he's broken the Heavenly Destruction, who dares to meet me in my Earthly Fury?"

Burning Lamp ordered Han Dulong to meet the challenge. The young general leapt forward and shouted, "Don't think you can get away with this! Here I come."

"Who are you?"

"I'm a disciple of Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue. By order of Burning Lamp I've come to break your Earthly Fury."

"You dare to enter my trap, do you? You'll lose your life in vain," Heavenly Master Zhao said with a cold laugh.

He slashed at Han Dulong with his sword, and Han met the attack with his own. When they had fought vigorously for five rounds, Zhao Jiang gave up ground and fled into his Earthly Fury with Han close behind. Zhao rushed to his platform and waved his pennants, invoking strange clouds all around. Surrounded by thunder and fire, Han was turned to powder in seconds. His soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Heavenly Master Zhao rode out of his trap. "Friends! Why don't you send a man with magic powers? Spare the life of mortals. Who has the courage to meet me now?"

"Krakucchanda, you break the Earthly Fury," Burning Lamp ordered.



惧留孙跃步而出，见赵天君纵鹿而来。怎生妆束，但见：

碧玉冠，一点红；翡翠袍，花一丛。丝绦结就乾坤样，  
足下常登两朵云。太阿剑，现七星，诛龙虎，斩妖精。  
九龙岛内真灵士，要与成汤立大功。

惧留孙曰：“赵江，你乃截教之仙，与吾辈大不相同，立心险恶，如何摆此恶阵，逆天行事！休言你胸中道术，只怕你封神台上难逃目下之灾！”赵天君大怒，提剑飞来直取。惧留孙执剑赴面交还，未及数合，依前走入阵内。惧留孙随后赶至阵前，不敢轻进；只听得后有钟声催响，只得入阵。赵天君已上板台，将五方幡如前运用。惧留孙见势不好，先把天门开了，现出庆云保护其身，然后取捆仙绳，命黄巾力士将赵江拿在芦篷，听候指挥。但见：

金光出手万仙惊，一道英风透体生。“地烈阵”中施妙法，平空拎去上芦篷。

话说惧留孙将捆仙绳命黄巾力士拎往芦篷下一摔，把赵江跌的三昧火七窍中喷出，遂破了“地烈阵”。惧留孙徐徐而回。闻太师又见破了“地烈阵”，赵江被擒，在墨麒麟背上，声若巨雷，大叫曰：“惧留孙莫走！吾来也！”时有玉鼎真人曰：“闻兄不必这等。我辈奉玉虚宫符命下世，身惹红尘，来破十阵；才破两阵，尚有八阵未见明白。况原言过斗法，何劳声色，非道中之高明也。”把闻太师说得默默无言。燃灯道人命：“暂且回去。”闻大师亦进老营，请八阵主帅，议曰：“今方破二阵，反伤二位道友，使我闻仲心下实是不忍！”董天君曰：“事有定数。既到其间，亦不容收拾。如今把吾‘风吼阵’定成大功。”与闻太师共议。不题。



Krakucchanda strode out and met Heavenly Master Zhao. “Zhao Jiang! You’re wicked to act against the will of Heaven and hurt people with your evil traps. But don’t rely too much on your witchcraft. You’ll find it difficult to escape today.”

Heavenly Master Zhao angrily rushed at him with his sword and the two fought fiercely. After several rounds, Zhao ran into his Earthly Fury Trap while Krakucchanda hung back, not daring to follow. But at the ringing of the gold bell, he plucked up his courage and plunged inside.

As before, Zhao mounted the platform and waved his pennants. Realizing the danger he was in, Krakucchanda opened the door of his skull, and magic clouds gushed out to protect his head and body. He then threw his Celestial Binding Rope into the air and ordered his yellow-scarved genie to bind Zhao up and throw him into the reed pavilion.

Zhao Jiang landed with such force that fire burst out from his ears, eyes, nostrils, and mouth, and the Earthly Fury Trap was thus destroyed. Krakucchanda emerged and calmly made his way back to the Zhou army.

Seeing that Zhao Jiang had been taken alive, Grand Tutor Wen cried out “Don’t go away, Krakucchanda. I’m coming to finish you off!”

Jade Tripod quickly warned him, “You shouldn’t behave like this, Brother Wen! By order of the Jade Emptiness Palace, we’re here to break the Ten Death Traps. We’ve taken only two of them, but another eight remain. We’re here to compete with our skill in magic, not with physical strength. Don’t get so worked up. Your attitude is not worthy of a Taoist.”

Grand Tutor Wen was shamed into silence. As Burning Lamp left the scene and returned to the reed pavilion, Grand Tutor Wen and his army went back to their own camp. The Grand Tutor held a military conference to discuss the situation with his eight colleagues.

“Two traps have been broken, and we’ve lost two of our fellow Taoists. I’m very worried by the developments,” Grand Tutor Wen said.

“It’s all been destined by fate. Nevertheless, we can’t give up now. I’ll deal with them in my Roaring Typhoon. We’re sure to win with that,” Heavenly Master Dong reassured him.



且说燃灯道人回至篷上，惧留孙将赵江提在篷下，来启燃灯。燃灯曰：“将赵江吊在芦篷上。”众仙启燃灯道人：“‘风吼阵’明日可破么？”燃灯道：“破不得。这‘风吼阵’非世间风也。此风乃地、水、火之风。若一运动之时，风内有万刀齐至，何以抵当？须得先借得定风珠，治住了风，然后此阵方能得破。”众位道友曰：“那里去借定风珠？”内有灵宝大法师曰：“吾有一道友，在九鼎铁叉山八宝云光洞，度厄真人有定风珠。弟子修书，可以借得。子牙差文官一员，武将一员，速去借珠；‘风吼阵’自然可破。”子牙忙差散宜生、晁田——文武二名，星夜往九鼎铁叉山八宝云光洞来取定风珠。二人离了西岐，迳往大道。非止一日，渡了黄河，又过数日，行到九鼎铁叉山。怎见得：

嵯峨矗矗，峻险巍巍。嵯峨矗矗冲霄汉；峻险巍巍碧碍空。怪石乱堆如坐虎，苍松斜挂似飞龙。岭上鸟啼娇韵美，崖前梅放异香浓。涧水潺潺流出冷，巅云黯淡过来凶。又见飘飘雾，凛凛风，咆哮饿虎吼山中。寒鸦拣树无栖处，野鹿寻窝没定踪。可叹行人难进步，皱眉愁脸把头蒙。

话说宜生、晁田二骑上山，至洞门下马，只见有一童子出洞。宜生曰：“师兄，请烦通报老师：西周差官散宜生求见。”童子进里面去；少时出来道：“请。”宜生进洞，见一道人坐于蒲团之上。宜生行礼，将书呈上。道人看书毕，对宜生曰：“先生此来，为借定风珠。此时群仙聚集，会破十绝阵，皆是定数：我也不得不允。况有灵宝师兄华札。只是一路去须要小心，不可失误！”随将一颗定风珠付与宜生。宜生谢了道人，慌忙下山，同晁田上马，扬鞭急走，不顾巖危跋涉。沿黄河走了两日，却无渡船。宜生对晁田曰：“前日



Back in the reed pavilion, Krakucchanda brought Zhao Jiang before Burning Lamp. Burning Lamp ordered, "Hang him up in the pavilion."

"Shall we break the Roaring Typhoon tomorrow?" all the immortals asked.

"How can we? It doesn't use ordinary wind; it's derived from the energies of earth, water and fire and conceals swords and cutlasses. How can we resist it? We'll need the Wind Stopping Pearl first," Burning Lamp replied.

"Where can we get it?" all the immortals asked.

"My friend, Woe Evading Sage, lives in Cloud Light Cave on Mount Nine Tripods and Iron Forks. He's got the pearl, so I can write to him for it. Jiang Ziya, you may send a general and a civil official to deliver the letter and bring back the pearl," Master Spiritual Treasure suggested.

Jiang Ziya sent San Yisheng and General Chao Tian on the mission. They traveled along the highway to cross the Yellow River and arrived at Mount Nine Tripods and Iron Forks several days later. Jagged peaks towered high in the sky, rocks, resembling seated tigers and ancient pines, twisted like flying dragons covered the mountain. Birds sang sweetly on the crags, and plum flowers perfumed the air.

San Yisheng and Chao Tian approached the Cloud Light Cave and asked a lad to report their arrival to the Woe Evading Sage. Offering his greetings, San Yisheng handed the letter to the immortal, who was sitting on a straw cushion. After reading the letter he said, "As Heaven has destined that all the immortals gather in West Qi to break the Ten Death Traps, I must give you my pearl. Besides, you've got a recommendation from Master Spiritual Treasure. But you must be very careful not to lose it on your return journey."

He handed the pearl to San Yisheng, who thanked him and then hurriedly left with Chao Tian. Despite the danger of the mountain path, they galloped at high speed, but when they arrived at the Yellow River, they were perplexed to find no ferries operating. They spent two whole days riding along the bank in search of one.

"There were ferry boats everywhere just a few days ago. Why are there none to be found now?" San Yisheng pondered aloud to General Chao Tian.



来，到处有渡船；如今却无渡船者何也？”只见前面有一人来，晁田问曰：“过路的汉子，此处如何竟无渡口？”行人答曰：“官人不知：近日新来两个恶人，力大无穷，把黄河渡口俱被他赶个罄尽。离此五里，留个渡口，都要从他那里过，尽他措勒渡河钱。人不敢拗他，要多少就是多少。”宜生听说，“有如此事，数日就有变更！”速马前行，果见两个大汉，也不撑船，只用木筏，将两条绳子，左边上筏，右边拽过去；右边上筏，左边拽过来。宜生心下也甚是惊骇：“果然力大；且是爽利。”心忙意急，等晁田来同渡。只见晁田马至面前，他认得是方弼、方相兄弟二人，在此盘河。晁田曰：“方将军！”方弼看时，认得是晁田。方弼曰：“晁兄，你往那里去来？”晁田曰：“烦你渡吾过河。”方弼随将筏牌同宜生、晁田渡过黄河上岸。方相、方弼相见，叙其旧日之好。方弼问曰：“晁兄往那里去来？”晁田将取定风珠之事说了一遍。方弼又问：“此位是何人？”晁田曰：“此是西岐上大夫散宜生。”方弼曰：“你乃纣臣，为甚事同他走？”晁田曰：“纣王失政，吾已归顺武王。如今闻太师征伐西岐，摆下十绝阵。今要破‘风吼阵’，借此定风珠来。今日有幸得遇你昆玉。”方弼自思：“昔日反了朝歌，得罪纣王，一向流落；今日得定风珠抢去，将功赎罪，却不是好，我兄弟还可复职。”因问曰：“散大夫，怎么样的就叫做定风珠？借吾一看，以长见识。”宜生见方弼渡他过河，况是晁田认得，忙忙取出来递与方弼。方弼打开看过了，把包儿往腰里面一塞，“此珠当作过河船资。”遂不答语，径往正南大路去了。晁田不敢拦阻。——方弼、方相身高三丈有余，力大无穷，



Just then they saw a man approaching. Chao Tian asked him, "My good man, why are there no ferryboats around?"

"You don't know it, sir, but two wicked men came here recently. They're very strong and nobody dares to oppose them. They drove all the boatmen away and closed all the ferry jetties, leaving only one open about five *li* from here. They now monopolize the river, demanding any fare that they please. No one dares argue with them."

"How could this have happened? Only a couple of days!" San Yisheng muttered in disbelief.

They continued on their way, and sure enough, they found two giants who used not boats, but rafts that they pulled across the river with ropes. General Chao Tian found that they were none other than Fang Bi and Fang Xiang.

"Where are you going, Brother?" Fang Bi asked.

"May we trouble you to ferry us over?" Chao Tian asked.

As they crossed to the other bank, Fang Bi and Fang Xiang chatted with Chao Tian about old times, and Chao Tian introduced San Yisheng as a senior minister of West Qi.

"You're a general under King Zhou. Why are you traveling with him?" Fang Bi asked.

"As King Zhou has become a tyrant, I've forsaken him for the sage ruler in West Qi. Grand Tutor Wen is now making trouble for us, but we just got hold of the Wind Stopping Pearl to break the Roaring Typhoon," Chao Tian told them frankly.

"We've lived a miserable life. If we seized the pearl and presented it to King Zhou, he'll be sure to pardon us," Fang Bi thought and asked, "Why is it called the Wind Stopping Pearl? Do show us; it sounds fascinating."

As Fang Bi had ferried them across the Yellow River and was a friend of Chao Tian, San Yisheng took the pearl from his pocket without hesitation and handed it to Fang Bi. Fang Bi glanced at it and put it straight into his waist pocket.

"We'll keep this as your fare," he said rudely.

Without a word more, Fang Bi and Fang Xiang left them and made





怎敢惹他！把宜生吓的魂飞魄散，大哭曰：“此来跋涉数千里途程，今一旦被他抢去，怎生是好！将何面见姜丞相诸人！”抽身往黄河中要跳。晁田把宜生抱住，曰：“大夫不要性急。吾等死不足惜，但姜丞相命我二人取此珠破‘风吼阵’，急如风火；不幸被他劫去。吾等死于黄河，姜丞相不知信音，有悞国家大事，是不忠也；中途被劫，是不智也。我和你慨然见姜丞相，报知所以，令他别作良图。宁死刀下，庶几少减此不忠、不智之罪。你我如今不明不白死了，两下担悞，其罪更甚。”宜生叹曰：“谁知此处遭殃！”二人上马往前，加鞭急走。行不过十五里，只见前面两杆旗幡，飞出山口；后听粮车之声。宜生马至跟前，看见是武成王黄飞虎催粮过此。宜生下马。武成王下骑，曰：“大夫往那里来？”宜生哭拜在地。黄飞虎答礼，问晁田曰：“散大夫有甚事，这等悲泣？”宜生把取定风珠，渡黄河遇方弼抢去的事说了一番。黄飞虎曰：“几时劫去？”宜生曰：“去而不远。”飞虎曰：“不妨。吾与大夫取来。你们在此略等片时。”飞虎上了神牛，——此骑两头见日，走八百里。——撒开辔头，赶不多时，已自赶上。只见兄弟二人在前面晃晃荡荡而行。黄千岁大叫曰：“方弼、方相慢行！”方弼回头，见是武成王



their way directly to the southern highway. Chao Tian dared not stop them, as both were more than thirty feet tall and extraordinarily strong. Nobody had the courage to tangle with them.

San Yisheng was frightened out of his wits and cried loudly, "We got the pearl only to lose it again! What shall we do? How can I face Prime Minister Jiang again?"

He rushed to the bank and was about to throw himself into the Yellow River, but Chao Tian pulled him back, saying, "Your Excellency! Don't be rash. We're not afraid of death, but we must remember that Prime Minister Jiang is anxious to have the pearl to break the Roaring Typhoon. If we die, he'll have no idea what happened, and as a result the country may meet with disaster. We would then be condemned by all for disloyalty and stupidity. Let's first see Prime Minister Jiang and report to him all that has happened. It's better to die under the sword than to commit suicide and be cursed by everyone."

"Who would have thought that we would meet such misfortune here?" San Yisheng said with a sigh.

They mounted their horses and whipped them to a fast gallop. They had traveled only fifteen *li* when they saw flags and banners waving before them and heard the creak of grain carts. As San Yisheng drew near, he saw that it was General Huang Feihu bringing grain supplies to West Qi.

San Yisheng dismounted, and Huang Feihu also got down from his ox. "Where are you going, Supreme Minister?"

San Yisheng knelt on the ground and began to sob.

"Why are you so grief-stricken? What has happened, Supreme Minister?" Huang Feihu inquired.

San Yisheng told him the whole story.

"How long ago was it stolen?"

"Not long ago. They can't be far away."

"Don't worry, Supreme Minister. Wait for me here and I'll get the pearl back for you," Huang Feihu said. He mounted his divine ox and sped off like the wind. Before long he caught sight of the Fang brothers swaying down the road before him. "Fang Bi and Fang Xiang! Wait a minute!"



黄飞虎，多年不见，忙在道傍跪下，问武成王曰：“千岁那里去？”飞虎大喝曰：“你为何把散宜生定风珠都抢了来？”方弼曰：“他与我作过渡钱，谁抢他的？”飞虎曰：“快拿来与我！”方相双手献与黄飞虎。飞虎曰：“你二人一向在那里？”方弼曰：“自别大王，我弟兄盘河过日子，苦不堪言。”飞虎曰：“我弃了成汤，今归周国。武王真乃圣主，仁德如尧、舜；三分天下，已有二分。会闻太师在西岐征伐，屡战不能取胜。你既无所归，不若同我归顺武王御前，亦不失封侯之位。不然，辜负你弟兄本领。”方弼曰：“大王若肯提拔，乃愚兄弟再生之恩矣，有何不可。”飞虎曰：“既如此，随吾来。”二人随着武成王，飞骑而来，霎时即至。宜生、晁田见方家弟兄跟着而来，吓的魂不附体。武成王下骑，将定风珠付与宜生，“你二位先行，吾带方弼、方相后来。”且说宜生、晁田星夜赶至西岐篷下，来见子牙。子牙问：“取定风珠的事如何？”宜生把渡黄河被劫之事说了一遍。子牙大喝：“宜生！倘然是此珠，若是国玺，也被中途抢去了！且带罪暂退！”子牙将定风珠上篷，献与燃灯道人。众仙曰：“既有此珠，明日可破‘风吼阵’。”不知胜负若何，且听下回分解。



Turning his head, Fang Bi found to his surprise that it was Huang Feihu. They hadn't seen him for many years and now hastily knelt at the roadside. "Where are you going, Your Highness?"

"Why did you steal the Wind Stopping Pearl?"

"He gave it to me as fare," Fang Bi lied.

"Give it back to me at once," Huang demanded.

Fang Bi obediently handed over the pearl with both hands.

"Where have you been these past few years?" Huang Feihu asked.

"Since we left you, we've made a living by ferrying people across the river," Fang Bi answered.

"I've forsaken the Shang Dynasty. King Wu is a sage ruler, as virtuous as Yao and Shun. He rules two-thirds of the kingdom already. Though Grand Tutor Wen has sent armies to West Qi several times, he cannot win. As you're homeless now, you can't do any better than follow me and serve under King Wu. You'll both be given a high rank. Don't waste your talents in vain," Huang Feihu urged them.

"If you're kind enough to recommend us, we'll be grateful for the rest of our lives," said Fang Bi.

"Come with me then."

They traveled swiftly back to the other men. San Yisheng and Chao Tian were both terrified at the sight of Fang Bi and Fang Xiang, but Huang Feihu dismounted and handed the pearl to San Yisheng. "You go ahead. I'll return with Fang Bi and Fang Xiang later."

San Yisheng and Chao Tian hurried on their way and soon reached the reed pavilion beyond the city wall.

"Have you got the Wind Stopping Pearl?" Jiang Ziya asked urgently.

San Yisheng reported the whole story, but the prime minister said nothing, quickly handing the pearl over to Burning Lamp.

"Now that we've got the pearl, we can deal with the Roaring Typhoon tomorrow," the immortal said.

If you want to know what happened after that, just read the next chapter.



## 第四十六回

### 广成子破金光阵

诗曰：

仙佛从来少怨尤，只因烦恼惹闲愁，恃强自弃千年业，  
用暴须拚万劫修。几度看来悲往事，从前思省为谁仇。  
可怜羽化封神日，俱作南柯梦里游。

话说燃灯道人次日与十二弟子排班下篷，将金钟、玉磬  
频敲，一齐出阵。只见成汤营里一声炮响，闻太师乘骑早至  
辕门，看子牙破“风吼阵”。董天君作歌而来；骑八叉鹿，  
提两口太阿剑。歌曰：

“得到清平有甚忧，丹炉乾马配神牛。从来看破纷纷  
乱，一点灵台只自由。”

话说董天君鹿走如飞，阵前高叫。燃灯观左右无人可先入  
“风吼阵”；忽然见黄飞虎领方弼、方相来见子牙，禀曰：  
“末将催粮，收此二将，乃纣王驾下镇殿大将军方弼、方相  
兄弟二人。”子牙大喜。猛然间，燃灯道人看见两个大汉，  
问子牙曰：“此是何人？”子牙曰：“黄飞虎新收二将，乃是方  
弼、方相。”燃灯叹曰：“天数已定，万物难逃！就命方弼破  
‘风吼阵’走一遭。”子牙遂令方弼破“风吼阵”。可怜！  
方弼不过是俗子凡夫，那里知道其中幻术，便应声：“愿  
往！”持戟拽步如飞，走至阵前。董天君见一大汉，高三丈  
有余，面如重枣，一部落腮髭髯，四只眼睛，甚是凶恶。董

## Chapter 46

### Breaking the Golden Light Trap

Early the next morning, Burning Lamp and his fellow immortals left the pavilion to the ringing of gold bells and jade chimes. Grand Tutor Wen arrived to see how Jiang Ziya would break the Roaring Typhoon. Soon Heavenly Master Dong rode out on his eight forked antler deer, carrying a sword in either hand. He shouted a challenge to the Zhou army.

Burning Lamp looked around but was unable to find anyone destined to enter the Roaring Typhoon first. Just at that moment, Huang Feihu returned with Fang Bi and Fang Xiang.

“On my way back I persuaded Fang Bi and Fang Xiang to join us. They served in King Zhou’s royal guard,” Huang Feihu told Jiang Ziya.

At the sight of the Fang brothers, Burning Lamp groaned. “This is fate, and nobody can escape it!” He ordered, “Fang Bi, go and break the Roaring Typhoon.”

Fang Bi was a mortal without any knowledge of sorcery. He acknowledged the order and strode rapidly to the front, halberd in hand.





天君看罢，着实骇然。怎见得，有赞为证。赞曰：

三叉冠，乌云荡漾；铁掩心，砌就龙鳞。翠蓝袍，团花灿烂；画杆戟，烈烈征云。四目生光真显耀，脸如重枣象虾红。一步落腮飘脑后，平生正直最英雄。曾反朝歌保太子，盘河渡口遇宜生。归周末受封官爵，“风吼阵”上见奇功。只因前定垂天象，显道神封久注名。

话说方弼见董天君大呼曰：“妖道慢来！”就是一戟。董天君那里招架的住，只是一合，便往阵里走了。子牙命左右擂鼓。方弼耳闻鼓声响，拖戟赶来，至“风吼阵”门前，迳冲将进去。他那里知道阵内无穷奥妙。只见董天君上了板台，将黑幡摇动，黑风卷起，有万千兵刃，杀将下来。只听得一声响，方弼四肢已为数段，跌倒在地。——一道灵魂往封神台，清福神柏鉴引进去了。董天君命士卒将方弼尸首拖出阵来。董全催鹿，复至阵前，大呼曰：“玉虚道友！尔等把一凡夫悞送性命，汝心安乎！既是高明道德之士，来会吾此阵，便见玉石也。”燃灯乃命慈航道人：“你将定风珠拿去，破此‘风吼阵’。”慈航道人领法旨。乃作歌曰：

“自隐玄都不记春，几回苍海变成尘。玉京金阙朝元始，紫府丹青悟妙真。喜集化成千岁鹤，闲来高卧万年身。吾今已得长生术，未肯轻传与世人。”

话说慈航道人谓董全曰：“道友，吾辈逢此杀戒，尔等最是逍遥，何苦摆此阵势，自取灭亡！当时金押‘封神榜’，你可曾在碧游宫，听你掌教师尊曾说有两句偈言，帖在宫门：‘净诵《黄庭》紧闭洞，如染西土受灾殃！’”董天君曰：“你阐教门下，自倚道术精奇，屡屡将吾辈藐视，我等方才下



Heavenly Master Dong was terrified at the sight of him. Fang Bi strode up to him, crying, "Not so fast, sorcerer," and lunged at him with his halberd. How could Dong resist him? He ran away after only one round and dodged into his trap. Inspired by the war drums, Fang Bi rushed after him, ignorant of what would happen. Dong mounted the platform, picked up his black pennant and waved it vigorously. All of a sudden, a black wind, revealing thousands of swords, whirled around Fang Bi. Fang Bi was instantly cut into pieces, and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation. His remains were thrown out of the trap.

Dong reappeared. "Shame on you, Immortals!" he cried. "How can you be so heartless as to sacrifice a mortal in my trap? Send someone with magic powers!"

Burning Lamp gave the Wind Stopping Pearl to the Immortal of Merciful Navigation and told him to break the Roaring Typhoon.

Merciful Navigation strode up and said to Heavenly Master Dong, "Friend! You're free to enjoy yourself. Why set up this trap and bring about your own destruction? You were there at the Green Touring Palace when the Taoist leaders signed the List of Creations. Your master's couplet warned you not to come here!"

"You of Chan Taoism are too conceited, thinking that you're superior





山。道友，你是为善好乐之客，速回去，再着别个来，休惹苦恼！”慈航曰：“连你一身也顾不来，还要顾我！”董全大怒，执宝剑望慈航直取。慈航架剑，口称：“善哉！”方才用剑相还。来往有三五回合，董天君往阵中便走。慈航道人随后赶来，到得阵门前，亦不敢擅入里面去；只听得脑后钟声频催，乃徐徐而入。只见董天君上了板台，将黑幡摇动，黑风卷起，犹如坏方弼一般。慈航道人顶上有定风珠，此风焉能得至。不知此风不至，刀刃怎么得来。慈航将清净琉璃瓶祭于空中，命黄巾力士将瓶底朝天，瓶口朝地。只见瓶中一道黑气，一声响，将董全吸在瓶中去了。慈航命力士将瓶口转上，带出“风吼阵”来。只见闻太师坐在墨麒麟身上，专听阵中消息。只见慈航道人出来，对闻太师曰：“‘风吼阵’已被吾破矣。”命黄巾力士将瓶倾下来。怎见得，只见：

丝绦道服麻鞋在，浑身皮肉化成脓。

董全一道灵魂往封神台来，清福神柏鉴引进去了。闻太师见而大呼曰：“气杀吾也！”将麒麟磕开，提金鞭冲杀过来。有黄龙真人乘鹤急止之曰：“闻太师，你十阵方破三阵，何必又动无名，来乱吾班次！”只听得“寒冰阵”主大叫：“闻太师，且不要争先，待吾来也！”乃信口作歌曰：

“玄中奥妙少人知，变化随机事事奇。九转功成炉内宝，从来应笑世人痴。”

话说闻太师只得立住。那“寒冰阵”内袁天君歌罢，大叫：“阐教门下，谁来会吾此阵？”燃灯道人命道行天尊门徒薛恶虎：“你破‘寒冰阵’走一遭。”薛恶虎领命，提剑蜂拥而来。袁天君见是一个道童，乃曰：“那道童速自退去，着你师



in the magic arts. Friend, you're known to be happy and kind. You'd better get out of here quickly and let someone else take your place," Heavenly Master Dong retorted.

"Don't concern yourself about me when you can't even look after yourself," Merciful Navigation answered coldly.

Flying into a rage, Dong Quan stabbed at Merciful Navigation. The immortal breathed an apology to Mount Kunlun then returned the blow with his sword. After five rounds, Dong Quan gave up the fight and ran into his Roaring Typhoon Trap. The immortal pursued him to the doorway, hesitated for a moment, then followed him cautiously inside. Master Dong mounted the platform and waved his black pennant, but Merciful Navigation had already placed the pearl on top of his head, and the black wind would not come.

Merciful Navigation tossed his glazed vase into the air and ordered his genie to turn it upside down. Black vapors poured from it, and with a crash, Dong Quan was sucked inside. Merciful Navigation then ordered his genie to right the vase and carry it out of the Roaring Typhoon. He saw Grand Tutor Wen waiting outside and told him, "I've already broken the Roaring Typhoon."

He ordered the genie to overturn the vase, and Dong Quan's robes, belt and hemp shoes fell out onto the ground. His corpse had already been reduced to a stream of blood and his soul had floated to the Terrace of Creation.

Enraged by the sight, the Grand Tutor spurred his unicorn forward brandishing his gold staves. But the Yellow Dragon Immortal stopped him. "Grand Tutor Wen! Why get so angry? We've broken only three of your traps. Seven more remain untouched."

Just then someone yelled, "Grand Tutor Wen! Leave him to me. Here I come," Heavenly Master Yuan rushed out of his Frigid Ice Trap. "Disciples of Mount Kunlun," he roared. "Which of you will meet me?"

Burning Lamp ordered Xue Ehu to answer the challenge. Xue Ehu immediately ran out with his sword ready. As he was only a youth, Heavenly Master Yuan said contemptuously, "You'd better go back, Taoist lad. Tell your master to come and meet me."



父来!”薛恶虎怒曰：“奉命而来，岂有善回之理!”执剑砍来。袁天君大怒，将剑来迎；战有数合，便走入阵内去了。薛恶虎随后赶入阵来。只见袁天君上了板台，用手将黑幡摇动，上有冰山，——即似刀山一样，往下磕来；下有冰块，——如狼牙一般，往上凑合。任你是甚么人，汤之即为齑粉。薛恶虎一入其中，只听得一声响，磕成肉泥。——一道灵魂径往封神台去了。阵中黑气上升。道行天尊叹曰：“门人两个，今绝于二阵之中!”又见袁天君跨鹿而来，便叫：“你们十二位之内，乃是上仙名士，谁来会吾此阵?乃令此无甚道术之人来送性命!”燃灯道人命普贤真人走一遭。普贤真人作歌而来。歌曰：

“道德根源不敢忘，寒冰看破火消霜。尘心不解遭魔障，堪伤!眼前咫尺失天堂。”

普贤真人歌罢。袁天君怒气纷纷，持剑而至。普贤真人曰：“袁角，你何苦作孽，摆此恶阵!贫道此来入阵时，一则开吾杀戒，二则你道行功夫一旦失却，后悔何及!”袁天君大怒，仗剑直取。普贤真人将手中剑架住，口称：“善哉!”二人战有三五合，袁角便走入阵中去了。普贤真人随即走进阵来。袁天君上了板台，将黑幡招动，上有冰山一座打将下来。普贤真人用指上放一道白光如线，长出一朵庆云，高有数丈；上有八角；角上乃金灯，纓络垂珠，护持顶上；其冰见金灯自然消化，毫不能伤。有一个时辰，袁天君见其阵已



"I'm here on the orders of my commander. How can I return without your head in my hand!" Xue Ehu said furiously.

He hacked at Heavenly Master Yuan with his sword, and the two fought desperately. After several rounds, Heavenly Master Yuan gave up the combat and ran into his trap. As Xue pursued him inside, Yuan mounted his platform and waved his purple pennant. In an instant a mountain of ice with jagged edges like knives fell from the sky and simultaneously a mass of ice blocks as sharp as a wolf's teeth rose to meet it. As they crashed together, Xue Ehu's body was smashed to pieces and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

As the black vapors rose into the sky, Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue sighed sorrowfully. "I've already lost two disciples here. How terrible this is!"

A moment later, Heavenly Master Yuan reappeared. "Why don't you twelve famous celestials come to meet me instead of sending an innocent mortal?" he shouted.

Burning Lamp then ordered Immortal Universal Virtue to go and meet him. The sage strode out singing:

How can I forget the root of the Way?  
The fire can melt the ice and frost.  
A filthy mind fails the test of a demon,  
Paradise will be lost to him.

As Heavenly Master Yuan rushed over, Universal Virtue said to him, "Yuan Jue, why are you so unwise? When I break the commandment on killing, you'll lose all that you've achieved!"

Heavenly Master Yuan furiously attacked him with his sword. The sage fought back with his own. After three rounds, Heavenly Master Yuan ran into his trap, and Universal Virtue plunged inside after him.

Yuan ascended the platform and waved the pennant to summon forth the mountains of ice. But Universal Virtue quickly released a column of white light from his fingers crowned by a brilliant octagonal cloud. A gold lamp hung at each corner. This cloud not only protected the sage but also rapidly melted the terrible ice. Heavenly Master Yuan soon found that his Frigid Ice had been rendered useless. He tried to flee, but Universal



破，方欲抽身；普贤真人用吴钩剑飞来，将袁天君斩于台下。——袁角一道灵魂被清福神引进封神台去了。普贤收了云光，大袖迎风，飘飘而出。闻太师又见破了“寒冰阵”，欲为袁角报仇；只见“金光阵”主，乃金光圣母，撒开五点斑豹驹，厉声作歌而来。歌曰：

“真大道，不多言，运用之间恒自然。放开二目见天元，此即是神仙。”

话说金光圣母骑五点斑豹驹，提飞金剑，大呼曰：“阐教门人谁来破吾‘金光阵’？”燃灯道人看左右无人先破此阵；正没计较，只见空中飘然坠下一位道人，面如傅粉，唇似丹珠。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

道服先天气盖昂，竹冠麻履异寻常。丝绦腰下飞鸾尾，  
宝剑锋中起烨光。全气全神真道士，伏龙伏虎仗仙方。  
袖藏奇宝钦神鬼，“封神榜”上把名扬。

话说众道人看时，乃是玉虚宫门下萧臻。萧臻对众仙稽首，曰：“吾奉师命下山，特来破‘金光阵’。”只见金光圣母大呼曰：“阐教门下谁来会吾此阵？”言未毕，萧臻转身曰：“吾来也！”金光圣母认不得萧臻，问曰：“来者是谁？”萧臻笑曰：“你连我也认不得了！吾乃玉虚门下萧臻的便是。”金光圣母曰：“尔有何道行，敢来会吾此阵？”执剑来取。萧臻撒步，赴面交还。二人战未及三五合，金光圣母拨马往阵中飞走。萧臻大叫：“不要去！吾来了！”径赶入金光阵内，至一台下。金光圣母下驹上台，将二十一根杆上吊着镜子，——镜子上每面有一套，套住镜子。——圣母将绳子拽起，其镜现出，把手一放，明雷响处，振动镜子，连转数次，放出金



Virtue instantly sent his “Hooks of Wu” flying through the air. Yuan’s head was severed from his body, and he fell dead below the platform. His soul flew directly to the Terrace of Creation. Universal Virtue retracted the light from his fingers and walked out with his big sleeves swinging in the breeze.

When the Frigid Ice Trap had been broken, Grand Tutor Wen was about to take his revenge on the sage when Mother Golden Light sped over on her spotted leopard. “You Chan Taoists there, dare you come and break my Golden Light Trap?”

Looking around him, Burning Lamp could not find anyone destined to enter first. He was wondering what to do when a Taoist descended from the air. Observing his dignified bearing, snow-white face and cinnabar lips, the immortals recognized him as Xiao Zhen, a disciple of the Jade Emptiness Palace.

Xiao Zhen bowed before them. “By order of my master, I’ve come here to break the Golden Light Trap.” As Mother Golden Light gave a second challenge, he turned and shouted, “Don’t get so excited! Here I come.”

Not recognizing him, she asked, “Who are you?”

“How can you fail to know me? I’m Xiao Zhen, a disciple of the Jade Emptiness Palace.”

“What powers do you have that you dare to venture into my trap?” she said contemptuously.

She charged at Xiao Zhen with her sword, and he defended himself with his own. After five rounds she pulled out of the fight and sped into her trap.

Xiao Zhen yelled, “Don’t run away!”

As he entered the Golden Light Trap, she dismounted from her leopard and ascended the platform. She pulled the ropes attached to the bamboo poles, shaking her magic mirrors, and a myriad of golden beams shot forth. As they hit Xiao Zhen, he gave a cry of agony and disappeared without a trace.



光，射着萧臻，大叫一声。可怜！正是：

百年道行从今灭，衣袍身体影无踪。

萧臻一道灵魂，清福神柏鉴引进封神台去。金光圣母复上了斑豹驹，走至阵前曰：“萧臻已绝。谁敢会吾此阵？”燃灯道人命广成子：“你去走一遭。”广成子领命，作歌曰：

“有缘得悟本来真，曾在终南遇圣人。指出长生千古秀，生成玉蕊万年新。浑身是口难为道，大地飞尘别有春。吾道了然成一贯，不明一字最艰辛。”

话说金光圣母见广成子飘然而来，大呼曰：“广成子，你也敢会吾此阵？”广成子曰：“此阵有何难破，聊为儿戏耳！”金光圣母大怒，仗剑来取。广成子执剑相迎。战未及三五合，金光圣母转身往阵中走了。广成子随后赶入“金光阵”内，见台前有幡杆二十一根，上有物件挂着。金光圣母上台，将绳子揽住，拽起套来，现出镜子，发雷振动，金光射将下来。广成子忙将八卦仙衣打开，连头裹定，不见其身。金光总有精奇奥妙，侵不得八卦紫寿衣。有一个时辰，金光不能透入其身，雷声不能振动其形。广成子暗将番天印往八卦仙衣底下打将下来，一声响，把镜子打碎了十九面。金光圣母着慌，忙拿两面镜子在手，方欲摇动，急发金光来照广成子；早被广成子复祭番天宝印打来。金光圣母躲不及，正中顶门，脑浆迸出。——一道灵魂早进封神台去了。广成子破了“金光阵”，方出阵门。闻太师得知金光圣母已死，大叫曰：“广成子休走！吾与金光圣母报仇！”麒麟走动如飞。只见“化血阵”内孙天君大叫曰：“闻兄不必动怒，待吾擒他与金光圣母报仇。”孙天君面如重枣，一部短髯，戴虎头冠，



Mother Golden Light mounted her leopard and emerged from her trap. "I've finished him off. Who dares to meet me now?"

Burning Lamp asked Master Grand Completion to answer her challenge. When Mother Golden Light saw the confidence of Master Grand Completion, she was enraged. "So you dare to meet me!"

"There's nothing difficult about this at all. Child's play to me!"

Mother Golden Light could not contain her anger and attacked him with her sword, but after only a few rounds, she once more turned and ran into her trap. Master Grand Completion gave chase. Mother Golden Light leapt onto the platform and pulled the ropes to shake the mirrors. Master Grand Completion, however, immediately spread out his magic robe with eight diagrams and covered himself from head to toe. The golden light could not penetrate his robe, no matter how powerfully they shot through the air.

Master Grand Completion stealthily hurled his Heaven Overturning Stamp from below his magic robe and broke nineteen of the twenty-one mirrors. Mother Golden Light was startled. She hurriedly took the two remaining mirrors in her hands, intending to flash them at him. But he was too quick for her. He hurled his stamp for a second time, and as she had no time to dodge, the heavy blow instantly knocked her brains out. Her soul entered the Terrace of Creation, and Master Grand Completion left the Golden Light Trap.

Grand Tutor Wen yelled angrily, "Don't go away, Grand Completion, I must avenge Mother Golden Light."

But Heavenly Master Sun of the Bleeding Blood Trap stopped him. "Brother Wen! Don't get so angry. Let me revenge Mother Golden Light."

Sun had a date-red face and a short beard. He wore a tiger hat and rode a yellow spotted deer. Burning Lamp looked at everyone around him but could not find the one to make the first entry. Suddenly a Taoist rushed up and bowed before him.

"Please tell us your honorable name," Burning Lamp requested.





乘黄斑鹿，飞滚而来。燃灯道人顾左右，并无一人去得；偶然见一道人，慌忙而至，与众人打稽首，曰：“众位道兄请了！”燃灯曰：“道者何来？高姓，大名？”道人曰：“衲子乃五夷山白云洞散人乔坤是也。闻十绝阵有‘化血阵’，吾当协助子牙。”言未了，孙天君叫曰：“谁来会吾此阵？”乔坤抖搜精神曰：“吾来了！”仗剑在手，向前问曰：“尔等虽是截教，总是出家人，为何起心不良，摆此恶阵？”孙天君曰：“尔是何人，敢来破我‘化血阵’？快快回去，免遭枉死！”乔坤大怒，骂曰：“孙良，你休夸海口，吾定破尔阵，拿你枭首，号令西岐。”孙天君大怒，纵鹿仗剑来取。乔坤赴面交还。未及数合，孙天君败入阵。乔坤随后赶入阵中。孙天君上台，将一片黑砂往下打来，正中乔坤。正是：

砂沾袍服身为血，化作津津遍地红。

乔坤一道灵魂已进封神台去了。孙天君复出阵前，大呼曰：“燃灯道友，你着无名下士来破吾阵，枉丧其身！”燃灯命太乙真人：“你去走一遭。”太乙真人作歌而来。歌曰：

“当年有志学长生，今日方知道行精：运动乾坤颠倒理，转移月日互为明。苍龙有意归离卧，白虎多情觅坎行。欲炼九还何处是，震宫雷动望西成。”

太乙真人歌罢。孙天君曰：“道兄，你非是见吾此阵之士。”太乙真人笑曰：“道友休夸大口，吾进此阵如入无人之境耳。”孙天君大怒，催鹿仗剑直取。太乙真人用剑相还。未及三五合，孙天君便往阵中去了。太乙真人听脑后金钟催响，至阵门，将手往下一指，地现两朵青莲。真人脚踏二花，腾腾而入。真人用左手一指，指上放出一道白光，高有



"I'm Qiao Kun, a hermit from the White Cloud Cave on Mount Wuyi. I heard that Grand Tutor Wen's forces include the Bleeding Blood Trap. I'm here to break it for Jiang Ziya."

Heavenly Master Sun shouted a second challenge.

Qiao Kun courageously answered, "I'll take you on." He strode forward and demanded of Sun, "We're all followers of the same religion. Why have you set up this evil trap?"

"Who are you? Get out of here quickly lest you lose your life," Sun said harshly.

Qiao Kun swore in great anger, "Sun Liang! Don't brag so much. I'll break your trap all right, cut your head off, and hang it on the wall of West Qi City."

Sun spurred his deer forward in a fury to attack Qiao Kun with his sword. They fought desperately for a few rounds, then Sun ran into his trap, pursued closely by Qiao Kun. Sun ascended the platform and cast his black sand at Qiao Kun. Qiao's body instantly turned into a stream of blood, and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Sun reappeared before his trap. "Burning Lamp! Don't send these mortals needlessly to death."

Burning Lamp ordered Fairy Primordial to meet him. When he saw Fairy Primordial, Heavenly Master Sun said contemptuously, "Brother, you're no match for me!"

"Don't boast so much. There's no danger in your trap for me," the immortal answered sarcastically.

Heavenly Master Sun could not control his anger. He spurred his deer forward and attacked Fairy Primordial with his sword. After only a few rounds, he ran once more into his trap. When he got to the gate of the trap, Fairy Primordial pointed at the ground with his right hand, and two green lotus flowers instantly appeared. He stepped onto the flowers and rode inside. Then he pointed toward the sky with his left hand and a column of white light topped by a colored cloud appeared in the air above him protecting his whole body.

Ascending the platform, Heavenly Master Sun grasped a handful of black sand and cast it at the immortal, but as soon as it touched the



一二丈；顶上现一朵庆云，旋在空中，护于顶上。孙天君在台上抓一把黑砂打将下来。其砂方至顶云，如雪见烈焰一般，自灭无踪。孙天君大怒，将一斗黑砂往下一泼。其砂飞扬而去，自灭自消。孙天君见此术不应，抽身逃遁。太乙真人忙将九龙神火罩祭于空中，孙天君合该如此，将身罩住。真人双手一拍，只见现出九条火龙，将罩盘绕，顷刻烧成灰烬。——一道灵魂往封神台去了。闻太师在老营外，见太乙真人又破了“化血阵”，大叫曰：“太乙真人休回去！吾来了！”只见黄龙真人乘鹤而至，立阻闻太师曰：“大人之语，岂得失信！十阵方才破六，尔且暂回，明日再会。如今不必这等恃强，雌雄自有分定。”闻太师气冲斗牛，神目光辉，须发皆竖。回进老营，忙请四阵主人帐。太师泣对四天君曰：“吾受国恩，官居极品，以身报国，理之当然。今日六友遭殃，吾心何忍！四位请回海岛，待吾与姜尚决一死战，誓不俱生！”太师道罢，泪如雨下。四天君曰：“闻兄且自宽慰。此是天数。吾等各有主张。”俱回本阵去了。

且说燃灯与太乙真人回至芦篷，默坐不言。子牙打点前后。

话说闻太师独自寻思，无计可施。忽然想起峨嵋山罗浮洞赵公明，心下踌躇：“若得此人来，大事庶几可定。”忙唤吉立、余庆：“好生守营，我往峨嵋山去来。”二人领命。太师随上墨麒麟，挂金鞭，借风云，往罗浮洞来。正是：

神风一阵行千里，方显玄门道术高。

霎时到了峨嵋山罗浮洞。下了麒麟，太师观看其山，真清幽僻净：鹤鹿纷纭，猿猴来往，洞门前悬挂藤萝。太师问：“有



brilliant cloud, it melted like snow and disappeared. He quickly threw a whole peck of black sand at the immortal, but it disappeared too. His sand rendered powerless, Heavenly Master Sun tried to flee, but Fairy Primordial instantly threw his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet into the air, wrapping up Sun Liang. Fairy Primordial clapped his hands and nine fire dragons coiled around the coverlet. In a moment, the intense fire burned Sun to ashes, and his soul flew to join the others in the Terrace of Creation.

Grand Tutor Wen was desperate. "Don't leave, Primordial! I'm going to knock your brains out!"

The Yellow Dragon Immortal, however, intercepted him on his crane. "You're a great statesman and should not break your word. We've only broken six of your traps. You'd better wait until we meet again tomorrow. There's no need to get violent. The winner will become evident in time."

The Grand Tutor boiled with rage. A brilliant light flashed from his divine third eye and his hair stood on end. Entering his camp, he invited the four remaining Heavenly Masters to convene with him. He wept, "As one on whom the king has bestowed great favors, it should be I that sacrifices myself for the king. But it's unbearable that six of my friends have lost their lives! Return to your island and let me meet Jiang Ziya in a final showdown. I swear that I won't rest till one of us is dead."

His tears fell like rain, and the four Heavenly Masters tried to comfort him. "Set your mind at rest, Brother! This has all been destined by fate. We'll see what we can do when the time comes."

They then returned to their own quarters. Grand Tutor Wen sat alone racking his brains for a way to cope with Jiang Ziya. He then remembered Zhao Gongming, one of his best friends, who lived in Luofu Cave on Mount Emei. "If I can get him here to help me, the matter can undoubtedly be settled in our favor," he thought. He summoned Ji Li and Yu Qing and ordered, "Guard the camp. I'm going to Mount Emei and will return here as soon as possible."

He mounted his unicorn and rode on the wind and clouds directly to Luofu Cave. When he arrived, he dismounted and admired the wonderful mountain scenery. Cranes sang, deer grazed, and apes and monkeys played on the tranquil slopes. Ivy and wistaria hung over the entrance to the cave.

"Is there anybody in?" Grand Tutor Wen called, knocking at the door.



人否？”少时有一童子出来，见太师三只眼，问曰：“老爷那里来的？”太师曰：“你师父可在么？”童儿答曰：“在洞里静坐。”太师曰：“你说商都闻太师来访。”童儿进来，见师父报曰：“有闻太师来拜访。”赵公明听说，忙出洞迎接，见闻太师大笑曰：“闻道兄，那一阵风儿吹你到此？你享人间富贵，受用金屋繁华，全不念道门光景，清淡家风！”二人携手进洞，行礼坐下。闻太师长吁一声，未及开言。赵公明问曰：“道兄为何长吁？”闻太师曰：“我闻仲奉诏征西，讨伐叛逆。不意昆仑教下姜尚，善能谋谟，助恶者众，朋党作奸。屡屡失机，无计可施。不得已，往金鳌岛，邀秦完等十友协助，乃摆十绝阵；指望擒获姜尚，孰知今破其六，反损六位道友，无故遭殃，实为可恨！今日自思，无门可投，忝愧到此，烦兄一往。不知道兄尊意如何？”公明曰：“你当时怎不早来？今日之败，乃自取之也。既然如此，兄且先回，吾随后即至。”太师大喜，辞了公明，上骑，借风云回营。不表。且说赵公明唤门徒陈九公、姚少司：“随我往西岐去。”两个门徒领命。公明打点起身，唤童儿：“好生看守洞府，吾去就来。”带两个门人，借土遁往西岐。正行之间，忽然落下来，是一座高山上。正是：

异景奇花观不尽，分明生就小蓬莱。

赵公明正看山中景致，猛然山脚下一阵狂风大作，卷起灰尘。公明看时，只见一只猛虎来了。笑曰：“此去也无坐骑，跨虎登山，正是好事。”只见那虎剪尾摇头而来。怎见得，有诗为证。诗曰：

咆哮踊跃出深山，几点英雄汗血斑。利爪如钩心胆壮，



Before long, a lad came out, and finding a visitor with three eyes, asked Grand Tutor Wen, "Where do you come from?"

But the Grand Tutor asked again, "Is your master in?"

"He's in mediation, sir."

"Please tell him that Grand Tutor Wen from the capital of the Shang Dynasty has come to visit him."

Zhao Gongming hastily came out and greeted him with a smile. "Brother Wen! What wind blows you here? You enjoy riches and power in the world of men. I was sure you had forgotten me."

They entered the cave hand in hand, exchanged formal greetings, and then sat down. When Grand Tutor Wen heaved a long sigh, Zhao Gongming asked, "What's the matter, Brother?"

The Grand Tutor told him of his defeats and the deaths of the Heavenly masters. "I'm at my wit's end," he went on, "and have come here, filled with deep shame, to seek your help. Would you consider it, Brother?"

"Why didn't you come here earlier?" Zhao reproved him. "You brought defeat on yourself. But what's done is done. Go back first and I'll follow shortly."

Grand Tutor Wen delightfully bade him farewell and flew back to his camp. After his departure, Zhao Gongming told his disciples Chen Jiugong and Yao Shaosi, "Come with me to West Qi." He then turned to his lad, "Take good care of the cave. We'll be back soon."

The three then set out. On the way, they descended upon a high mountain with exquisite scenery. They were admiring the landscape when a strong wind whirled up, and two tigers emerged. Zhao smiled. "I've got no horse, so let one of them be my mount." He was overjoyed when one of the pair, a black tiger, raced straight toward him. "Welcome, friend. I'm in need of your service," he muttered.



钢牙似剑势凶顽。未曾行处风先动，才作奔腾草自扳。  
任是兽群应畏服，敢撻威猛等闲间。

话说赵公明见一黑虎而来，喜不自胜：“正用得着你！”掉步向前，将二指伏虎在地，用丝绦套住虎项，跨在虎背上，把虎头一拍；用符印一道画在虎项上。那虎四足就起风云，霎时间来到成汤营，辕门下虎。众军大叫：“虎来了！”陈九公曰：“不妨！乃是家虎。快报与闻太师：赵老爷已至辕门。”太师闻报，忙出营迎迓。二人至中军帐坐下。有四阵主来相见，共谈军务之事。赵公明曰：“四位道兄，如何摆十绝阵，反损了六位道友？此情真是可恨！”正说间，猛然抬头，只见子牙芦篷上吊着赵江。公明问曰：“那篷上吊的是谁？”白天君曰：“道兄，那就是‘地烈阵’主赵江。”公明大怒：“岂有此理！三教原来总一般，彼将赵江如此之辱，吾辈体面何存！待吾也将他的人拿一个来吊着，看他意下如何！”随上虎提鞭。闻太师同四阵主出营，看赵公明来会姜子牙。不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



He walked up to the tiger and pressed it down with two fingers, drawing a spell on its neck. Then he mounted it and patted its head. It immediately soared into the clouds. When he reached the camp gate, the guards cried out in fear, "Look out! Here comes a tiger!"

"Have no fear, friends. It's a tame tiger," Chen Jiugong assured them. "Hurry, tell Grand Tutor Wen that Zhao Gongming has arrived."

Grand Tutor Wen came out to meet Zhao Gongming. When they returned to the tent, the four remaining Heavenly masters came up to greet him.

"You could have won, but you've lost six friends. It's very regrettable," Zhao Gongming said. He then saw Heavenly Master Zhao hanging in the reed pavilion. "Who's that man there?"

"Alas, Brother! It's Zhao Jiang of the Earthly Fury Trap," Heavenly Master Bai answered.

Zhao Gongming was furious. "That's outrageous!" he roared. "Though there are three religions, they're all equal. How can they insult us like this? I'll capture one of them and hang him here. I'll see how they feel about that!"

He immediately mounted his tiger and rode out of the camp with Grand Tutor Wen and the four Heavenly Masters. He gave a challenge to Jiang Ziya.

If you want to know what happened, please read the next chapter.









## 第四十七回

### 公明辅佐闻太师

诗曰：

异宝虽多莫炫奇，须知盈满有参差。西山此际多夸胜，  
狭路应思失意悲。跨虎有威终属幻，降龙无术转当时。  
堪嗟纣日西山近，无奈匡君欠所思。

话说赵公明乘虎提鞭，出营来大呼曰：“着姜尚快来见我！”哪吒听说，报上篷来：“有一跨虎道者，请师叔答话。”燃灯谓子牙曰：“来者乃峨嵋山罗浮洞赵公明是也。你可见机而作。”子牙领命下篷，乘四不相，左右有哪吒、雷震子、黄天化、杨戩、金、木二吒拥护。只见杏黄旗招展，黑虎上坐一道人。怎见得：

天地玄黄修道德，洪荒宇宙炼元神。虎龙啸聚风云鼎，  
乌兔周旋卯酉晨。五遁三除闲戏耍，移山倒海等闲论。  
掌上曾安天地诀，一双草履任游巡。五气朝元真罕事，  
三花聚顶自长春。峨嵋山下声名远，得到罗浮有几人。

话说子牙见公明，向前施礼，口称：“道友是那一座名山？何处洞府？”公明曰：“吾乃峨嵋山罗浮洞赵公明是也。你破吾道友六阵，倚仗你等道术，坏吾六友，心实痛切！又把赵江高吊芦篷，情俱可恨！姜尚，我知你是玉虚宫门下。我今日下山，必定与你见个高低！”提鞭纵虎来取子牙。子牙仗剑急架忙还。二兽相交。未及数合，公明祭鞭在空中，神光闪



## Chapter 47

### Zhao Gongming Assists the Grand Tutor

Mounted on his tiger, Zhao Gongming left the Shang camp brandishing his staff. "Come out, Jiang Shang. Come out and meet me at once!" he shouted at the Zhou soldiers.

Nezha entered the reed pavilion. "A man riding a tiger demands to meet you, Uncle Jiang."

"It's Zhao Gongming from Luofu Cave on Mount Emei. You should be careful," Burning Lamp advised him.

Jiang Ziya left the pavilion and rode out with Nezha, Thunderbolt, Huang Tianhua, Yang Jian, Jinzha and Muzha on either side. He saw a Taoist riding on a black tiger under the flying pennants. He moved forward, bowed, and greeted him. "Friend, where do you come from?"

"I'm Zhao Gongming from Luofu Cave on Mount Emei. You've broken six of the traps and killed six of my friends. In addition, you insult us by hanging Zhao Jiang over your pavilion. Jiang Shang, I know you're a disciple of the Jade Emptiness Palace. Today I'll fight it out with you to decide which of us is the better man."

He slashed at Jiang Ziya who answered with his own sword. After several rounds, Zhao tossed his staff, glaring like lightning, into the air.



灼如电，其实惊人。子牙躲不及，被一鞭打下鞍鞞。哪吒急来，使火尖枪敌住公明。金吒救回姜子牙。子牙被鞭打伤后心，死了。哪吒使开枪法，战未数合，又被公明一鞭打下风火轮来。黄天化看见，催开玉麒麟，使两柄锤抵住公明。又飞起雷震子，展开黄金棍，往下打来。杨戩纵马摇枪，将赵公明裹在垓心。好杀！只杀得：

天昏地惨无光彩，宇宙浑然黑雾迷。

赵公明被三人裹住了。雷震子是上三路，黄天化是中三路，杨戩暗将哮天犬放起，形如白象。怎见得好犬：

仙犬修成号细腰，形如白象势如泉。铜头铁颈难招架，  
遭遇凶锋骨亦消。

话说杨戩暗放哮天犬，赵公明不防备，早被哮天犬一口把颈项咬伤，将袍服扯碎，只得拨虎逃归进辕门。闻太师见公明失利，慌忙上前慰劳。赵公明曰：“不妨。”忙将葫芦中仙药取出搽上，即时全愈。不表。

且说子牙被赵公明一鞭打死，抬进相府。武王知子牙打死，忙同文武众官至相府来看子牙；只见子牙面如白纸，合目不言，不觉点头叹曰：“‘名利’二字，俱成画饼！”着实伤悼。正叹之间，报：“广成子进相府来看子牙。”武王迎接至殿前。武王曰：“道兄，相父已亡，如之奈何？”广成子曰：“不妨。子牙该有此厄。”叫取水一盏。道人取一粒丹，用手捻开，口撬开，将药灌下十二重楼。有一个时辰，子牙大叫一声：“痛杀吾也！”二目睁开，只见武王、广成子俱立于卧榻之前。子牙方知中伤已死。正欲挣起身来致谢，广成子摇手曰：“你好生调理，不要妄动。吾去芦篷照顾，——恐赵



Having no time to dodge, Jiang Ziya was hit on the back and fell dead to the ground. Nezha took up the fight but was knocked from his Wind-Fire Wheels. Huang Tianhua rushed in on his jade unicorn, Thunderbolt flew up into the air, and Yang Jian spurred his horse forward to attack with his spear. As Zhao Gongming was busy defending himself, Yang Jian set his Sky Barking Hound on him. Taken unawares, Zhao was bitten on the neck, his robe torn to shreds. Zhao hastily turned his tiger and fled back inside the camp gate.

Grand Tutor Wen came up to console him, but Zhao said, "Don't worry. It's nothing at all."

He took out a few pills of elixir from his gourd, mixed them with water, and applied the solution to his wound, which healed instantly.

When Jiang Ziya's corpse was carried into the prime minister's mansion, King Wu and his officials hurried over to see how he was. They saw him lying on his bed, pale and silent.

"Alas, glory and honor are both gone from him now!" King Wu said sorrowfully.

Everyone was lamenting the loss when Master Grand Completion arrived. King Wu went out to meet him and asked, "Brother, the prime minister is dead. What shall I do?"

"Don't worry, Your Highness. He's destined to suffer this calamity," the immortal said calmly.

He ordered that a cup of water be brought and then took a pill of elixir and dissolved it in the water. Prizing Jiang's mouth open, he poured the solution down his throat. In about two hours, Jiang Ziya woke up. "Oh! What agony! I'll die of the pain!"

He opened his eyes to find King Wu, Master Grand Completion, and the others standing before him, and realized that he had died and been restored to life. He tried to get up and thank them, but Master Grand Completion shook his head. "Just lie here quietly and rest. I'll go to see what Zhao Gongming's planning to do next."



公明猖獗。”广成子至篷上，回了燃灯的话：“已救回子牙还生，且在城内调养。”不表。

话说赵公明次日上虎，提鞭出营，至篷下，坐名要燃灯答话。哪吒报上篷来。燃灯遂与众道友排班而出；见公明威风凛凛，眼露凶光，非道者气像。燃灯打稽首，对赵公明曰：“道兄请了！”公明回答曰：“道兄，你等欺吾教太甚！吾道你知；你道吾见。你听我道来：

混沌从来不记年，各将妙道补真全。当时未有星河斗，先有吾党后有天。

道兄，你乃阐教玉虚门下之士；我乃截教门人。你师，我师，总是一师秘授，了道成仙，共为教主。你们把赵江吊在篷上，将吾道藐如灰土。吊他一绳，有你半绳，道理不公。岂不知：

翠竹黄须白笋芽，儒冠道履白莲花。红花白藕青荷叶，三教元来总一家。”

燃灯答曰：“赵道兄，当时金押‘封神榜’，你可曾在碧游宫？”赵公明曰：“吾岂不知！”燃灯曰：“你既知道，你师曾说神中之姓名，三教内俱有弥封无影，死后见明。尔师言得明明白白，道兄今日至此，乃自昧己心，逆天行事，是道兄自取。吾辈逢此劫数，吉凶未知。吾自天皇修成正果，至今难脱红尘。道兄无束无拘，却要强争名利。你且听我道来：

盘古修来不记年，阴阳二气在先天。煞中生气肌肤换，精里含精性命团。玉液丹成真道士，六根清净产胎仙。扭天拗地心难正，徒费工夫落蜚渊。”

赵公明大怒曰：难道吾不如你，且听我道来：



Back in the pavilion, Master Grand Completion reported Jiang's recovery to Burning Lamp. Early the next morning, Zhao Gongming mounted his black tiger, took his staff, and left the Shang camp, demanding that Burning Lamp come out to meet him.

Nezha brought in the challenge. Burning Lamp and the other immortals left the camp and found Zhao Gongming, glaring fiercely, a wicked light rarely seen in a Taoist, shining in his eyes.

Burning Lamp bowed and greeted him.

"Brother," Zhao replied, "you've insulted us too often. You're familiar with our religion as well as I am with yours. Jie Taoism was founded long ago, before the genesis of the sun and the moon and Heaven and earth. Our masters both studied with the same teacher. We have a common origin, yet you hang Zhao Jiang up there, treating us like dirt. Don't you realize that by hanging him, you hang yourselves up too? Don't you know that white shoots and green stems are parts of the same bamboo, and red flowers, white roots and green leaves all belong to the same lotus! Don't you understand that Confucian scholars, Taoists, and Buddhists are really of one family?"

"Brother Zhao! Were you in the Green Touring Palace when the List of Creations was discussed and approved?" Burning Lamp asked.

"Yes, I know all about it."

"Then you must also remember your master telling you that the names of the fated are a secret, only to be known after they die? Why do you come here and make a fool of yourself by opposing the will of Heaven? You are only bringing calamity on yourself. None of us knows what fortune lies ahead. Though I've been an immortal since the beginning of time, it's still difficult for me to escape all worldly fetters. You're privileged. Why do you court disaster?"

Zhao Gongming angrily replied, "Do you imagine that I'm inferior to you in any way? I can reverse the direction of the sun and the moon! As





能使须弥翻转过，又将日月逆周旋。后来天地生吾后，有甚玄门道德仙！”

赵公明道罢。黄龙真人跨鹤至前，大呼曰：“赵公明，你今日至此，也是‘封神榜’上有名的，合该此处尽绝！”公明大怒，举鞭来取。真人忙将宝剑来迎。鞭剑交加。未及数合，赵公明将缚龙索祭起，把黄龙真人平空拿去。赤精子见拿了黄龙真人，大呼：赵公明少得无礼！听吾道来：

会得阳仙物外玄，了然得意自忘筌。应知物外长生路，自是逍遥不老仙。铅与汞，产先天，颠倒日月配坤乾。明明指出无生妙，无奈凡心不自捐。”

话说赤精子执剑来取公明。公明鞭法飞腾。来往有三五合，公明取出一物，名曰定海珠，珠有二十四颗。——此珠后来兴于释门，化为二十四诸天。——公明将此宝祭于空中，有五色毫光。纵然神仙，观之不明，瞧之不见，一刷下来，将赤精子打了一交。赵公明正欲用鞭复打赤精子顶上，有广成子岔步大叫：“少待伤吾道兄！吾来了！”公明见广成子来得凶恶，急忙迎架广成子。两家交兵，未及一合，又祭此珠，将广成子打倒尘埃。道行天尊急来抵住公明。公明连发此宝，打伤五位上仙……玉鼎真人，灵宝大法师五位败回芦篷。赵公明连胜回营。至中军，闻太师见公明得胜大喜。公明命将黄龙真人也吊在幡杆上。把黄龙真人泥丸宫上用符印压住元神，轻容易不得脱逃。营中闻太师一面分付设酒，四阵主陪饮。且说燃灯回上芦篷坐下，五位上仙俱着了伤，面面相觑，默默不语。燃灯问众道友曰：“今日赵公明用的是何物件打伤众位？”灵宝大法师曰：“只知着人甚重，不知是何宝物，看不明切。”五人齐曰：“只见红光闪烁，不知是何物件。”燃灯闻言，甚是不乐；忽然抬头，见黄龙真人吊在幡



I am older than Heaven and earth, there has never been any immortal superior to me.”

The Yellow Dragon Immortal darted forward on his crane. “Zhao Gongming, now that you’re here, your name must be on the list. You’re destined to follow the others!”

This infuriated Zhao Gongming. He rushed at the Yellow Dragon Immortal brandishing his staff. After a few rounds, he threw his Dragon Binding Rope high in the air. It immediately bound up the Yellow Dragon Immortal and took him captive.

“Zhao Gongming! Don’t get carried away!” Master Pure Essence roared.

He stabbed at Zhao Gongming with his sword, and Zhao returned the blow with his staff. After a few rounds, Zhao took a string of twenty-four pearls out of his pocket and cast these Sea Conquering Pearls up into the sky. They shone so brightly that none of the immortals could look up. Master Pure Essence was hit and fell to the ground. As Zhao raced up to kill him, Master Grand Completion strode forward, shouting, “Don’t hurt my brother! Here I come.”

Zhao Gongming swung around, but after only one round, he cast up the pearls again and knocked down Master Grand Completion. The combat was continued by Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue, Jade Tripod, and Master Spiritual Treasure, but they too were knocked down one after another. The five immortals withdrew into the pavilion, and Zhao Gongming returned to see Grand Tutor Wen. He ordered that the Yellow Dragon Immortal be hung high on a flag pole. He also stamped a charm on his head to prevent the immortal from escaping. Filled with delight, Grand Tutor Wen entertained Zhao Gongming and the four Heavenly masters.

When Burning Lamp returned to the pavilion, he asked, “Do you know what weapon he used?”

“I only felt a heavy blow but couldn’t see clearly what hit me,” said Master Spiritual Treasure.

“It shone with such a strong light that we couldn’t see what it was,” the other four immortals said in unison.

Burning Lamp grew worried when he heard their reports. Seeing the



杆上面，心下越觉不安。众道者叹曰：“是吾辈逢此劫厄不能摆脱。今黄龙真人被如此厄难，我等此心何忍！谁能解他愆尤方好。”玉鼎真人曰：“不妨。至晚间再作处治。”众道友不言。不觉红轮西坠，玉鼎真人唤杨戩曰：“你今夜去把黄龙真人放来。”杨戩听命。至一更时分，化作飞蚁，飞在黄龙真人耳边，悄悄言曰：“师叔，弟子杨戩奉命，特来放老爷。怎么样阳神便出？”真人曰：“你将吾顶上符印去了，吾自得脱。”杨戩将符印揭去。正是：

天门大开阳神出，去了昆仑正果仙。

真人来至芦篷稽首，谢了玉鼎真人。众道人大喜。且说赵公明饮酒半酣，正欢呼大悦，忽邓忠来报：“启老爷：幡上不见了道人了！”赵公明掐指一算，知道是杨戩救去了。公明笑曰：“你今日去了，明日怎逃！”彼时二更席散，各归寝榻。

次日，升中军，赵公明上虎，提鞭，早到篷下，坐名要燃灯答话。燃灯在篷上见公明跨虎而来，谓众道友曰：“你们不必出去，待吾出去会他。”燃灯乘鹿，数门人相随，至于阵前。赵公明曰：“杨戩救了黄龙真人来了，他有变化之功，叫他来见我。”燃灯笑曰：“道友乃斗筭之器，此事非是他能，乃仗武王洪福，姜尚之德耳。”公明大怒曰：“你将此言惑乱军心，甚是可恨！”提鞭就打。燃灯口称：“善哉！”急忙用剑招架。未及数合，公明将定海珠祭起。燃灯借慧眼看时，一派五色毫光，瞧不见是何宝物。看看落将下来，燃灯拨鹿便走；不进芦篷，望西南上去了。公明追将下来，往前



Yellow Dragon Immortal hanging on a flag pole made him even more uneasy.

"It's unbearable to see the Yellow Dragon Immortal suffer so. Who can help him?" he asked.

"Don't worry about it. I'll do something to help him this evening," Jade Tripod answered.

As the sun set in the west, Jade Tripod said to Yang Jian, "Go and set the Yellow Dragon Immortal free."

Yang Jian transformed himself into a flying ant and flew close to the captured immortal's ear. He whispered, "Uncle, your disciple Yang Jian's here to set you free. What should I do?"

"Just take the charm off. I can set myself free then," the Yellow Dragon Immortal answered.

Yang Jian did as he was told, and the immortal returned to the reed pavilion to the delight of his companions. When General Deng Zhong reported to Zhao Gongming that the Taoist had disappeared, Zhao made a calculation on his fingers and found that the Yellow Dragon Immortal had been released by Yang Jian. He smiled and said, "You may flee today, but you won't get away again tomorrow!"

The next day he mounted his tiger and rode to the reed pavilion, demanding to see Burning Lamp. Burning Lamp said to his companions, "You needn't go out. Let me deal with him alone."

He mounted his deer and rode out to meet Zhao.

"Yang Jian rescued the Yellow Dragon Immortal. He must be quite conceited about his skill of transformation. Let him meet me today," Zhao called out.

"Why are you so narrow-minded, friend? His talent means nothing, and all is due to Heaven's blessing on King Wu and Jiang Ziya," Burning Lamp replied.

"This is how you deceive the people!"

He lashed at Burning Lamp with his staff, and the latter defended himself with his sword. After a few rounds, Zhao once more cast the string of pearls into the air. Burning Lamp watched with his wisdom-eye, but he could not identify it. As it was about to drop on him, he spurred his deer into flight and sped off to the southwest. Zhao gave immediate chase.



赶有多时，至一山坡。松下有二人下棋，一位穿青，一位穿红，正在分局之时，忽听鹿蹄响亮，二人回顾，见是燃灯道人，二人忙问其故！燃灯把赵公明伐西岐事说了一遍。二人曰：“不妨。老师站在一边，待我二人问他。”且说赵公明虎走如飞驰电骤，倏忽而至。二人作歌曰：

“可怜四大属虚名，认破方能脱死生。慧性犹如天际月，幻身却似水中冰。拨回关捩头头着，看破虚空物物明。缺行亏功俱是假，丹炉火起道难成。”

且说赵公明正赶燃灯，听得歌声古怪，定目观之，见二人各穿青、红二色衣袍，脸分黑、白。公明问曰：“尔是何人？”二人笑曰：“你连我也认不得，还称你是神仙！听我道来：

堪笑公明问我家，我家原住在烟霞。眉藏火电非闲说，手种金莲岂自夸。三尺焦桐为活计，一壶美酒是生涯。骑龙远出游苍海，夜久无人玩物华。

吾乃五夷山散人萧升、曹宝是也。俺弟兄闲对一局，以遣日月。今见燃灯老师被你欺逼太甚，强逆天道，扶假灭真，自不知己罪，反恃强迫袭，吾故问你端的。”赵公明大怒：“你好大本领，焉敢如此！”发鞭来打。二道人急以宝剑来迎。鞭来剑去，宛转抽身。未及数合，公明把缚龙索祭起来拿两个道人。萧升一见此索，笑曰：“来得好！”急忙向豹皮囊取出一个金钱，有翅，名曰“落宝金钱”，也祭起空中。只见缚龙索跟着金钱落在地上。曹宝忙将索收了。赵公明见收了此宝，大呼一声：“好妖孽！敢收吾宝！”又取定海珠祭起于空中，只见瑞彩千团打将下来。萧升又发金钱。定海珠随钱而下。曹宝忙忙抢了定海珠。公明见失了定海珠，气得三尺神



Burning Lamp soon came to a slope and saw two men, one in green and the other in red, playing chess under the shade of a pine tree. They looked up as the deer approached and asked him why he was in such a hurry. Burning Lamp did not know them but related the story about Zhao Gongming's threat to West Qi and the events leading to his flight.

"Never mind, Master. We'll deal with him," they assured Burning Lamp.

When Zhao sped up on his tiger, he saw the two men, one in green with a black face and the other in red with a white face. "Who are you?" he demanded.

"How ridiculous you are, Gongming, to ask who we are!

We live in the beautiful haze,  
And we grow the golden lotus.  
Wine we drink in great pleasure,  
Kolanut we cook with its fire.  
We on a dragon tour the blue seas,  
And enjoy the quiet moon at night.

We're Xiao Sheng and Cao Bao, hermits from Mount Wuyi, and we're greatly displeased to see Burning Lamp being so ruthlessly bullied. It's an act against the will of Heaven. You support the wicked and the ruthless but suppress the kind and virtuous. We can't tolerate it."

"How dare you insult me!" Zhao Gongming screamed furiously and charged at them with his staff.

Xiao Sheng and Cao Bao hurriedly met the assault with their swords. After a few rounds, Zhao cast up the Dragon Binding Rope. Xiao Sheng, however, smiled when he saw it.

"Ah! I was expecting this!" he cried.

He quickly took a gold coin from his leopard skin bag and threw it up into the air. The gold coin was none other than the Treasure Catching Gold Coin, which could bring down any magic weapon from the air. As it rose, Zhao Gongming's rope obediently followed it and dropped to the ground. Cao Bao quickly grabbed the rope.

Zhao Gongming roared like thunder. He cast the Sea Conquering Pearls into the air but lost them in the same manner.



暴跳，急祭起神鞭。萧升又发金钱，——不知鞭是兵器，不是宝，如何落得！——正中萧升顶门，打得脑浆迸出，做一场散淡闲人，只落得封神台上去了。曹宝见道兄已死，欲为萧升报仇。燃灯在高阜处观之，叹曰：“二友棋局欢笑，岂知为我遭如此之苦！待吾暗助他一臂之力。”忙将乾坤尺祭起去。公明不曾提防，被一尺打得公明几乎坠虎，大呼一声，拨虎往南去了。燃灯近前，下鹿施礼，“深感道兄施术之德。堪怜那一位穿红的道人遭迤，吾心不忍！二位是那座名山？何处洞府？高姓？大名？”道者笑曰：“贫道乃五夷山散人萧升、曹宝是也；因闲无事，假此一局遣兴。今遇老师，实为不平之忿；不期萧兄绝于公明毒手，实为可叹！”燃灯曰：“方才公明祭起二物欲伤二位，贫道见一金钱起去，那物随钱而落，道友忙忙收起，果是何物？”曹宝曰：“吾宝名为‘落宝金钱’，连落公明二物，不知何名。”取出来与燃灯观看。燃灯一见定海珠，鼓掌大呼曰：“今日方见此奇珍，吾道成矣！”曹宝忙问其故。燃灯曰：“此宝名‘定海珠’，自元始已来，此珠曾出现光辉，照耀玄都；后来杳然无闻，不知落于何人之手。今日幸逢道友，收得此宝，贫道不觉心爽神快。”曹宝曰：“老师既欲见此宝，必是有可用之处，老师自当收去。”燃灯曰：“贫道无功，焉敢受此？”曹宝曰：“一物自有一主，既老师可以助道，理当受得。弟子收之无



Enraged, Zhao cast his powerful staff high into the air. Xiao Sheng did not know that because it was the mere weapon the gold coin was powerless against it. The staff struck him on the head, and he died in a pool of blood. His soul flew directly to the Terrace of Creation. In revenge for his brother, Cao Bao rushed up and engaged Zhao.

Burning Lamp was watching the scene from a nearby hill. "Those two were enjoying a chess game together. How could I have imagined that one of them would die innocently for me? I must help him," he decided.

He stealthily cast his Universal Ruler into the air. Zhao was caught off guard and it nearly knocked him from his tiger. He uttered a loud cry and fled to the south.

Approaching Cao Bao, Burning Lamp dismounted from his deer and bowed, "I greatly appreciate your kindness in helping me out of trouble. How sorry I am that your friend in red met with disaster! Please tell me your honorable names and where you are from."

"I am Cao Bao, and my friend was Xiao Sheng. We are two hermits from Mount Wuyi. We were glad to help you out of trouble, but I never thought that Brother Xiao would lose his life at the hands of Zhao Gongming!" Cao Bao answered.

"When Zhao Gongming used his magic weapons, your friend threw a gold coin and brought them down. Would you tell me what they all are?"

"The coin is the 'Treasure Catching Gold Coin.' I don't know anything about Zhao Gongming's weapons," Cao Bao replied.

He took out the booty and showed it all to Burning Lamp. The immortal burst into laughter and clapped his hands when he saw the pearls. "Sea Conquering Pearls! Now that I've seen them, I have hopes of attaining the ultimate in all I do. At the beginning of time, they shone on Mount Xuandu, but they've been missing ever since. I feel so relieved to see them in your hands."

"Master! Since you're sure to have a use for them, you may take them," Cao Bao said generously.

"How can I take them from you when I've done nothing of merit?"

"You ought to accept them. They're no use to me," urged Cao.





用。”燃灯打稽首，谢了曹宝，二人同往西岐，至芦篷。众道人起身相见。燃灯把遇萧升一事说了一遍。燃灯又对众人曰：“列位道友被赵公明打伤扑跌在地者，乃是‘定海珠’。”众道人方悟。燃灯取出，众人观看，一个个嗟叹不已。

不说燃灯得宝，话说赵公明被打了一乾坤尺，又失了定海珠、缚龙索，回进大营。闻太师接住，问其追燃灯一事。公明长吁一声。闻太师曰：“道兄为何这等？”公明大叫曰：“吾自修行以来，今日失利。正赶燃灯，偶遇二子，名曰萧升、曹宝，将吾缚龙索、定海珠收去。吾自得道，仗此奇珠。今被无名小辈收去，吾心碎矣！”公明曰：“陈九公、姚少司，你好生在此，吾往三仙岛去来。”闻太师曰：“道兄此去速回，免吾翘首。”公明曰：“吾去速回。”遂乘虎驾风云而起，不一时来至三仙岛下虎，至洞府前，咳嗽一声。少时，一童儿出来，“原来是大老爷来了。”忙报与三位娘娘：“大老爷至此。”三位娘娘起身，齐出洞门迎接，口称：“兄长请入里面。”打稽首坐下。云霄娘娘曰：“大兄至此，是往那里去来？”公明曰：“闻太师伐西岐不能取胜，请我下山，会阐教门人，连胜他几番；后是燃灯道人会我，口出大言，吾将定海珠祭起，燃灯逃遁，吾便追袭。不意赶至中途，偶遇散人萧升、萧宝两个无名下士，把吾二物收去。自思：辟地开天，成了道果，得此二宝，方欲炼性修真，在罗浮洞中以证元始；今一旦落于儿曹之手，心甚不平。特到此间，借金蛟剪也罢，或混元金斗也罢，拿下山去，务要复回此二宝，吾心方安。”云霄娘娘听罢，只是摇头，说道：“大兄，此事不可行。昔日三教共议，金押‘封神榜’，吾等俱



Burning Lamp bowed to express his thanks. They then went together to West Qi where they were welcomed into the reed pavilion by all the other immortals.

“Zhao Gongming hit you with the Sea Conquering Pearls,” Burning Lamp informed them all.

When he took them out and showed them around, they all gasped with admiration. Disheartened, Zhao Gongming had returned to the Shang camp. When Grand Tutor Wen asked him about the outcome of his pursuit, he groaned bitterly.

“Why are you so unhappy, Brother?” Grand Tutor Wen asked.

“I’ve never suffered such a defeat since I became an immortal,” he huffed. “I was chasing Burning Lamp when I came across Xiao Sheng and Cao Bao. They took away my Dragon Binding Rope and Sea Conquering Pearls. It’s heartbreaking.” He then ordered, “Chen Jiugong! Yao Shaosi! You stay here. I’m going to visit the Three Fairy Island.”

“Do return as soon as possible, or else I’ll worry about you all the time,” Grand Tutor Wen begged.

“I’ll come straight back,” Zhao promised.

Riding his tiger, Zhao Gongming traveled swiftly on the clouds and reached the Three Fairy Island a short time later. At the entrance of a cave, he coughed politely and a lad came out to open the gate.

His three sisters lived on the island. The eldest was High Firmament, the second, Green Firmament and the youngest Jade Firmament. All three came out to meet him when he arrived. They conducted him inside, exchanged greetings, and then sat down.

“Where do you come from, Brother?” High Firmament asked.

Zhao Gongming explained the reason for his visit and then went on, “I’ve come here to ask you for either the Golden Dragon Scissors or the Golden Universe Muddling Dipper. I have to recover my own treasures.”

High Firmament shook her head. “Brother, we can’t do that. We were all at the conference when the List of Creations was compiled. As many of our names are on it, we’ve been forbidden to leave our caves. Master warned us that we should be cautious because the names on the list are a secret. Chan Taoism is destined to break the commandment on



在碧游宫。我们截教门人，‘封神榜’上颇多，因此禁止不出洞府，只为此也。吾师有言，‘弥封名姓，当宜谨慎。’宫门又有两句贴在宫外：

紧闭洞门，静诵‘黄庭’三两卷；身投西土，‘封神榜’上有名人。

如今阐教道友犯了杀戒，吾截教实是逍遥。昔日凤鸣岐山，今生圣主，何必与他争论闲非。大兄，你不该下山。你我只等子牙封过神，才见神仙玉石。大兄请回峨嵋山，待平定封神之日，吾亲自往灵鹫山，问燃灯讨珠还你。若是此时要借金蛟剪、混元金斗，妹子不敢从命。”公明曰：“难道我来借，你也不肯？”云霄娘娘曰：“非是不肯，恐怕一时失了，追悔何及！总来兄请回山，不久封神在迩，何必太急。”公明叹曰：“一家如此，何况他人！”遂起身作辞，欲出洞门，十分怒色。正是：

他人有宝他人用，果然开口告人难。

三位娘娘听公明之言，内有碧霄娘娘要借，奈姐姐云霄不从。且说公明跨虎离洞，行不上一二里，在海面上行，脑后有人叫曰：“赵道兄！”公明回头看时，一位道姑，脚踏风云而至。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

髻挽青丝杀气浮，修真炼性隐山丘。炉中玄妙超三界，掌上风雷震九州。十里金城驱黑雾，三仙瑶岛运神飚。若还触恼仙姑怒，翻倒乾坤不肯休。

赵公明看时，原来是菡芝仙。公明曰：“道友为何相招？”道姑曰：“道兄那里去？”赵公明把伐西岐失了定海珠的事说了一遍，“……方才问俺妹子借金蛟剪，去复夺定海珠，他坚



killing, but we are carefree. Besides, a phoenix sang on Mount Qi to announce that a sage ruler was born there. Brother, go back to your cave. Wait until Jiang Ziya has created the gods. As soon as the period of creation is over, I'll go to Mount Divine Hawk and ask Burning Lamp for the pearls. I'm very sorry, but I can't let you have either the Golden Dragon Scissors or the Golden Universe Muddling Dipper. Please forgive me."

"How can you refuse to help me!" Zhao Gongming cried disappointedly.

"It's not that I'm unwilling. I'm just worried that if we're careless, it'll be too late. I beg that you return to your mountain. The creations will take place before long. Don't be too impatient," High Firmament persisted.

"Since my family won't help me, I don't think anyone else will either," Zhao Gongming sighed.

Bidding his sisters farewell, he got up angrily to leave. Green Firmament was inclined to help him, but High Firmament stubbornly refused.

Zhao Gongming was about two *li* from the cave when he heard someone shouting behind him, "Brother Zhao, Brother Zhao!" He looked around and found it was Celestial Lotus.

"What do you want, friend?" Zhao asked.

"Where are you going?"

Zhao Gongming told her how he had lost his Sea Conquering Pearls while pursuing Burning Lamp. He then added, "I went to my younger sisters and asked them for the Golden Dragon Scissors so that I could recover my pearls, but they refused. I'm now going elsewhere for help."

"This is really ridiculous! How can your own sisters refuse to help you! Let's go back and discuss the matter with them again," she said indignantly.

They returned to the cave together and were welcomed by the sisters. Greetings were exchanged and everyone was seated. "You're from



执不允，故此往别处借些宝贝，再作区处。”菡芝仙曰：“岂有此理！我同道兄回去。一家不借，何况外人！”菡芝仙把公明请将回来，复至洞门下虎。童儿禀三位娘娘：“大老爷又来了。”三位娘娘复出洞来迎接。只见菡芝仙同来入内，行礼坐下。菡芝仙曰：“三位姐姐，道兄乃你三位一脉，为何不立纲纪。难道玉虚宫有道术，吾等就无道术。他既收了道兄二宝，理当为道兄出力。三位姐姐为何不允！这是何故？倘或道兄往别处借了奇珍，复得西岐燃灯之宝，你姊妹面上不好看了。况且至亲一脉，又非别人。今亲妹子不借，何况他人哉！连我八卦炉中炼的一物，也要协助闻兄去，怎的你到不肯！”碧霄娘娘在傍，一力赞助：“姐姐，也罢，把金蛟剪借与长兄去罢。”云霄娘娘听罢，沉吟半晌，无法可处；不得已，取出金蛟剪来。云霄娘娘曰：“大兄，你把金蛟剪拿去，对燃灯说：‘你可把定海珠还我，我便不放金蛟剪；你若不还我宝珠，我便放金蛟剪，那时月缺难圆。’他自然把宝珠还你。大兄，千万不可造次行事！我是实言。”公明应诺；接了金蛟剪，离却三仙岛。菡芝仙送公明曰：“吾炉中炼成奇珍，不久亦至。”彼此作谢而别。公明别了菡芝仙，随风云而至成汤大营。旗牌报进营中：“启太师爷：赵老爷到了。”闻太师接入中军坐下。正是：

入门休问荣枯事，观见容颜便得知。

太师问曰：“道兄往那里借宝而来？”公明曰：“往三仙岛吾妹子处，那里借他的金蛟剪来。明日务要复夺吾定海珠。”闻太师大喜，设酒款待，四阵主相陪。当日席散。次早，成汤营中炮响，闻太师上了墨麒麟，左右是邓、辛、



the same family. How can you disregard your brother?" Celestial Lotus began. "Do you think that only those from the Jade Emptiness Palace possess powerful magic arts, and we possess none? Now that they have the Dragon Binding Rope and the Sea Conquering Pearls, you ought to help your own brother. Should he get help from someone else, what shame you would feel! I will even let him have the magic weapon that I'm refining now."

"Sister! Give him the Golden Dragon Scissors," Green Firmament urged.

High Firmament remained silent. She pondered for a long time, then took out the scissors. "Brother, go to see Burning Lamp and say, 'Please return the pearls to me peacefully. If you refuse, I'll cast up my Golden Dragon Scissors and create a terrible havoc.' He's sure to return your pearls at once. I tell you the truth: you must deal with this situation very carefully."

Zhao Gongming promised to follow his sister's wishes. He took the scissors and left the island with great haste.

"I'll be there as soon as my magic weapon is ready," Celestial Lotus told him.

When he arrived back at the Shang camp, Zhao Gongming was met by Grand Tutor Wen. Sitting down together inside, the Grand Tutor asked, "Where have you been, Brother?"

"I've been to the Three Fairy Island to get the Golden Dragon Scissors from my sisters. I must demand the return of my pearls tomorrow," Zhao replied.

Grand Tutor Wen received this news with great delight and entertained him that evening.

The next morning, Grand Tutor Wen mounted his pure black unicorn and with Deng, Xin, Zhang, and Tao and Zhao Gongming on his tiger, they rode out of the Shang camp and gave a challenge to Burning Lamp.

Nezha announced the challenge, but Burning Lamp was already fully aware of the situation. "Zhao Gongming has the Golden Dragon Scissors. You must all remain indoors. I'll see him alone."

He mounted his deer and rode to the front.

"Burning Lamp! You must return my pearls today! Everything can



张、陶。赵公明跨虎临阵，专请燃灯答话。哪吒报上芦篷。燃灯早知其意——“今公明已借金蛟剪来。”——谓众道友曰：“赵公明已有金蛟剪，你们不可出去。吾自去见他。”遂上了仙鹿，自临阵前。公明一见燃灯，大呼曰：“你将定海珠还我，万事干休；若不还我，定与你见个雌雄！”燃灯曰：“此珠乃佛门之宝，今见主必定要取。你那左道傍门，岂有福慧压得住他！此珠还是我等了道证果之珍，你也不必妄想。”公明大叫曰：“今日你既无情，我与你月缺难圆！”燃灯道人见公明纵虎冲来，只得催鹿抵架。不觉鹿虎交加，往来数合。赵公明将金蛟剪祭起。不知燃灯性命如何，且听下回分解。

then be settled between us. If you don't, I'll show you who's the better man."

"The pearls are a Buddhist treasure and have once again found their rightful owner. You are not destined to possess them. They'll help me to attain the ultimate, so don't even dream of getting them back," Burning Lamp replied.

"Since you're so unsympathetic, the rift between us is unredeemable," Zhao shouted and urged his tiger forward.

Burning Lamp met the assault with his sword and they fought together vigorously. After several rounds, Zhao Gongming took out the Golden Dragon Scissors and tossed them into the air.

What became of Burning Lamp? If you want to know, read the next chapter.







## 第四十八回

### 陆压献计射公明

诗曰：

周家开国应天符，何怕区区定海珠。陆压有书能射影；  
公明无计庇头颅。应知幻化多奇士，谁信凶残活独夫。  
闻仲扭天原为主，忠肝留向在龙图。

话说公明祭起金蛟剪——此剪乃是两条蛟龙，采天地灵气，受日月精华，起在空中，挺折上下，祥云护体，头交头如剪，尾交尾如股，不怕你得道神仙，一闸两段。——那时起在空中，往下闸来。燃灯忙拚了梅花鹿，借木遁去了。——把梅花鹿一闸两段。公明怒气不息，暂回老营。不题。且说燃灯逃回芦篷，众仙接着，问金蛟剪的原故。燃灯摇头曰：“好利害！起在空中，如二龙绞结；落下来，利刃一般。我见势不好，预先借木遁走了。可惜把我的梅花鹿一闸两段！”众道人听说，俱各心寒，共议将何法可施。正议间，哪吒上篷来：“启老师：有一道者求见。”燃灯道：“请来。”哪吒下篷对道人曰：“老师有请。”这道人上得篷来，打稽首曰：“列位道兄请了！”燃灯与众道人俱认不得此人。燃灯笑容问曰：“道友是那座名山？何处洞府？”道人曰：“贫道闲游五岳，闷戏四海，吾乃野人也。吾有歌为证，歌曰：

贫道乃是昆仑客，石桥南畔有旧宅。修行得道混元初，  
才了长生知顺逆。休夸炉内紫金丹，须知火里焚玉液。



## Chapter 48

### The Death of Zhao Gongming

After several rounds, Zhao Gongming threw his Golden Dragon Scissors high into the sky. The scissors were really a pair of dragons which lived on the essence of Heaven, earth, the sun and moon. When they were high in the air, their tails locked together, and their bodies could cut man and immortal in two like a pair of scissors.

As they dropped, Burning Lamp hurriedly got down from his deer and rode away on a wooden cloud, but his deer was cut in two. As Zhao Gongming returned to his camp in annoyance, Burning Lamp fled back to the reed pavilion. The other immortals asked him about the scissors.

“They’re terrible! When the scissors rose in the air, they looked like two twisting dragons, but as soon as they dropped, they became a pair of sharp scissors. I fled on a wooden cloud, but my poor deer was cut in two.”

Everyone was frightened by his description. As they talked, Nezha entered. “An Immortal is here asking to see you.”

When the Taoist was admitted, he bowed and greeted everyone. None of the immortals knew him, so Burning Lamp asked with a smile, “Where do you come from, Brother?”



跨青鸾，骑白鹤，不去蟠桃殓寿药，不去玄都拜老君，不去玉虚门上诺。三山五岳任我游，海岛蓬莱随意乐。人人称我为仙癖，腹内盈虚自有情。陆压散人亲到此，西岐要伏赵公明。

贫道乃西昆仑闲人，姓陆，名压；因为赵公明保假灭真，又借金蛟剪下山，有伤众位道兄。他只知术无穷，岂晓得玄中更妙？故此贫道特来会他一会。管教他金蛟剪也用不成，他自然休矣。”当日道人默坐无言。

次日，赵公明乘虎，篷前大呼曰：“燃灯，你既有无穷妙道，如何昨日逃回？可速来早决雌雄！”哪吒报上篷来。陆压曰：“贫道自去。”道人下得篷来，径至军前。赵公明忽见一矮道人，带鱼尾冠，大红袍，异相长须，作歌而来。歌曰：

“烟霞深处访玄真，坐向沙头洗幻尘。七情六欲消磨尽，把功名付水流，任逍遥，自在闲身。寻野叟同垂钓，觅骚人共赋吟。乐陶陶别是乾坤。”

赵公明认不得，问曰：“来的道者何人？”陆压曰：“吾有名，是你也认不得我。我也非仙，也非圣，你听我道来。歌曰：

性似浮云意似风，飘流四海不停踪。或在东海观皓月，或临南海又乘龙。三山虎豹俱骑尽，五岳青鸾足下从。不富贵，不簪纓，玉虚宫里亦无名。玄都观内桃子树，自酌三杯任我行。喜将棋局邀玄友，闷坐山岩听鹿鸣。闲吟诗句惊天地，静里瑶琴乐性情。不识高名空费力，吾今到此绝公明。

贫道乃西昆仑闲人陆压是也。”赵公明大怒：“好妖道！焉敢如此出口伤人，欺吾太甚！”催虎提鞭来取。陆压持剑赴面



"I'm a hermit on Mount West Kunlun. My name is Lu Ya. I've come here because of Zhao Gongming. He borrowed the Golden Dragon Scissors and means harm. He knows only that he's powerful and is ignorant that there's magic more powerful than his. I'll render his scissors useless, and he'll have to die."

Burning Lamp and other immortals maintained a doubtful silence as they listened to him. Early the next morning, Zhao Gongming rode out on his tiger. "Burning Lamp! Since your magic knows no bounds, how could you have so shamefully run away yesterday? Come out here, and we'll see who's the better man," he shouted.

When Nezha reported the challenge inside the pavilion, Lu Ya said, "I'll go to meet him."

Zhao Gongming was surprised when a short, odd but divine-looking man came out, wearing a fish-tail coronet and a red robe. He asked, "Who are you?"

"Zhao Gongming, how can you possibly know me? I'm neither a Taoist nor a sage. Listen to my song:

My nature like clouds, my mind the wind,  
I float wherever I please.  
On the East Sea, a bright moon,  
On the South, I ride a dragon.  
I sit on a tiger in the mountains,  
And fly on a phoenix over the clouds.  
I have neither riches nor power,  
Nor am I known on Mount Kunlun.  
I care not for longevity peaches,  
Three cups of wine, I'll go my own way.  
I sit quietly on the rocks,  
Listen to the deer or play chess.  
I write poems, awing earth and Heaven,  
I play the guitar to amuse myself.  
Your years of effort will all be in vain,  
I've come here to eradicate Zhao Gongming."

"I'm Lu Ya of Mount West Kunlun," he added.

In a fit of anger, Zhao Gongming swore, "You damned sorcerer! How dare you insult me!"

He urged his tiger forward with his staff, and Lu Ya answered with his sword. After about five rounds, Zhao Gongming threw his scissors up



交还。未及三五合，公明将金蛟剪祭在空中。陆压观之，大呼曰：“来的好！”化一道长虹而去。公明见走了陆压，怒气不息，又见芦篷上燃灯等昂然端坐，公明切齿而回。且说陆压逃归，此非是会公明战，实看公明形容，今日观之罢了。

千年道行随流水，绝在钉头七箭书。

且说陆压回篷，与诸道友相见。燃灯问：“会公明一事如何？”陆压曰：“衲子自有处治，此事请子牙公自行。”子牙欠身。陆压揭开花篮，取出一幅书，书写明白，上有符印口诀，“……依此而用，可往岐山立一营；营内筑一台。扎一草人；人身上书‘赵公明’三字，头上一盏灯，足下一盏灯。自步罡斗，书符结印焚化，一日三次拜礼，至二十一日之时，贫道自来午时助你，公明自然绝也。”

子牙领命，前往岐山，暗出三千人马，又令南宫适、武吉前去安置。子牙后随军至岐山，南宫适筑起将台，安排停当，扎一草人，依方制度。子牙披发仗剑，脚步罡斗，书符结印，连拜三五日，把赵公明只拜的心如火发，意似油煎，走投无路，帐前走到帐后，抓耳挠腮。闻太师见公明如此不安，心中甚是不乐，亦无心理论军情。且说“烈焰阵”主白天君进营来，见闻太师，曰：“赵道兄这等无情无绪，恍惚不安，不如且留在营中。吾将‘烈焰阵’去会阐教门人。”闻太师欲阻白天君，白天君大呼曰：“十阵之内无一阵成功，如今若坐视不理，何日成功！”遂不听太师之言，转身出营，走入“烈焰阵”内。钟声响处，白天君乘鹿大呼于篷下。燃灯同众道人下篷排班，方才出来，未曾站定，只见白天君大叫：“玉虚教下，谁来会吾此阵？”燃灯顾左右，无一人答



into the air. Lu Ya glanced up and yelled, "Just as I expected!"

He transformed himself into a rainbow and ran away. As Lu Ya got away, and Burning Lamp sat calmly in the pavilion with other immortals, Zhao Gongming became very angry. He returned to the camp grinding his teeth.

During this encounter, Lu Ya had observed Zhao Gongming and was now ready to carry out his plan. When he returned to the reed pavilion, he told Burning Lamp, "I've got a way to cope with him, but I must trouble Jiang Ziya to cooperate."

"I'll do as you instruct," Jiang Ziya answered promptly.

Lu Ya opened his flower basket and took out a sheet of paper stamped with seals and spells and charms. "Go to Mount Qi and build a platform. Make a straw effigy and write 'Zhao Gongming' on its body. Place one lamp above its head and another beneath its feet. Then worship it three times a day, recite the charms and burn the spells stamped on the paper. At noon on the twenty-first day, I'll come and help you put him to death."

Accordingly, Jiang Ziya went secretly to Mount Qi with 3,000 soldiers. He ordered Nangong Kuo to build a platform and then made a straw effigy on which he wrote Zhao's name. He did everything strictly as instructed. Finally he loosened his hair, took a sword and paced in a square, reciting charms, burning spells, and worshipping over and over again before the straw effigy.

Five days later, Zhao began to feel as if his heart was burning with fire. He walked to and fro and scratched his ears, cheeks and chin. Whatever he did, he felt uncomfortable. Grand Tutor Wen was likewise disturbed to see him in this condition and was unable to concentrate on military affairs.

Heavenly Master Bai appeared and said to the Grand Tutor, "As Brother Zhao's unwell, it would be better to let him rest. I'll meet the Chan Taoists in my Vehement Flame Trap." Grand Tutor Wen tried to stop him, but Heavenly Master Bai grew angry. "None of the ten traps has been successful yet. If we sit quietly all day long like this, when will we ever win?"

He disregarded Grand Tutor Wen's opinion, and rushed into his Vehement Flame Trap. When he completed all the arrangements, he rode out on his deer to the clanging of bells. He approached the reed pavilion and gave a loud challenge.

Burning Lamp and other immortals strode out and heard him yelling,



应。陆压在傍问曰：“此阵何名？”燃灯曰：“此是‘烈焰阵’。”陆压笑曰：“吾去会他一番。”道人笑谈作歌。歌曰：

“烟霞深处运元功，睡醒茅庐日已红。翻身跳出尘埃境，把功名付转蓬。受用些明月清风。人世间，逃名士：云水中，自在翁；跨青鸾游遍山峰。”

陆压歌罢。白天君曰：“尔是何人？”陆压曰：“你既设此阵，阵内必有玄妙处。我贫道乃是陆压，特来会你。”天君大怒，仗剑来取。陆压用剑相还。未及数合，白天君望阵内便走。陆压不听钟声，随即赶来。白天君下鹿，上台，将三首红幡招展。陆压进阵，见空中火，地下火，三昧火，三火将陆压围裹居中。他不知陆压乃火内之珍，离地之精，三昧之灵。三火攒绕，共在一家，焉能坏得此人。陆压被三火烧有两个时辰，在火内作歌，歌曰：

“燧人曾炼火中阴，三昧攒来用意深。烈焰空烧吾秘授，何劳白礼费其心？”

白天君听得此言，着心看火内，见陆压精神百倍，手中托着一个葫芦。葫芦内有一线毫光，高三丈有余；上边现出一物，长有七寸，有眉有目；眼中两道白光反罩将下来，钉住了白天君泥丸宫。白天君不觉昏迷，莫知左右。陆压在火内一躬：“请宝贝转身！”那宝物在白光头上一转，白礼首级早已落下尘埃。——一道灵魂往封神台上去了。陆压收了葫芦，破了“烈焰阵”，方出阵时，只见后面大呼曰：“陆压休走！吾来也！”“落魂阵”主姚天君跨鹿持铜，面如黄金，海下红髯，巨口獠牙，声如霹雳，如飞电而至。燃灯命子牙曰：“你去唤方相破‘落魂阵’走一遭。”子牙急令方相：“你



"You disciples of the Jade Emptiness Palace! Which of you will meet me in my trap?"

Burning Lamp looked round, but no one offered to answer the challenge.

"What's the name of his trap?" Lu Ya asked.

"It's the Vehement Flame Trap."

"I'll take him on," Lu Ya said with a smile and strode forward singing a song.

"Who are you?" Heavenly Master Bai demanded.

"Since you've gone to the trouble of laying a trap here, there must be some mystery to it. I'm Lu Ya and I've come here especially to meet you."

The enraged Heavenly Master Bai attacked Lu Ya with his sword. After they had fought several rounds, Heavenly Master Bai rushed into his trap, climbed up on the platform, and waved his three red pennants. Lu Ya pursued him inside and was instantly surrounded by fires from the sky, from the ground, and from the human world. However, Heavenly Master Bai did not know that Lu Ya had been refined by the fire of fires, so it was impossible to burn him. After four hours, he heard Lu Ya still singing within, and peering through the flames, he saw Lu Ya holding a gourd in his hand. A beam of light thirty feet high shot from the gourd, and above it appeared something with eyes and eyebrows. A white light beamed down from the eyes, and when it hit the top of Heavenly Master Bai's head, he lost consciousness at once.

Inside the fires Lu Ya bowed and said, "Please turn round, my precious." When the white light had turned a full circle, Bai's head fell to the ground, and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

As Lu Ya put away his gourd and left the trap, he heard a cry behind him, "Don't run away, Lu Ya. Here I come."

It was Heavenly Master Yao of the Soul Snatching Trap. He raced up like lightning on his deer, roaring like thunder and brandishing his staves. He had a golden face, a red beard, and massive tusks extending from his huge mouth.

Burning Lamp ordered Jiang Ziya, "Tell Fang Xiang to meet him."





去破‘落魄阵’，其功不小。”方相应声而出，提方天画戟，飞步出阵曰：“那道人，吾奉将令，特来破你‘落魄阵’！”更不答语，一戟就刺。方相身长力大。姚天君招架不住，掩一铜，望阵内便走。方相耳闻鼓声，随后追来。赶进“落魄阵”内，见姚天君已上板台，把黑砂一把洒将下来。可怜方相那知其中奥妙，大叫一声，顷刻而绝。——一道灵魂往封神台去了。姚天君复上鹿出阵，大叫曰：“燃灯道人，你乃名士，为何把一俗子凡夫枉受杀戮？你们可着道德清高之士来会吾此阵。”燃灯命赤精子：“你当去矣。”赤精子领命，提宝剑作歌而来。歌曰：

“何幸今为物外人，都因夙世脱凡尘。了知生死无差别，开了天门妙莫论。事事事通非事事，神神神彻不神神。目前总是常生理，海角天涯都是春。”

赤精子歌罢，曰：“姚斌，你前番将姜子牙魂魄拜来，吾二次进你阵中，虽然救出子牙魂魄，今日你又伤方相，殊为可恨。”姚天君曰：“太极图玄妙也只如此，未免落在吾囊中之物。你玉虚门下神通总高不妙。”赤精子曰：“此是天意，该是如此。你今逢绝地，性命难逃，悔之无及。”姚天君大怒，执铜就打。赤精子口称：“善哉！”招架闪躲，未及数合，姚斌便进“落魄阵”去了。赤精子闻后面钟声，随进阵中。这一次乃三次了，岂不知阵中利害，赤精子将顶上用庆云一朵现出，先护其身；将八卦紫寿仙衣明现其身；光华显耀，使黑砂不粘其身，自然安妥。姚天君上台，见赤精子进阵，忙将一斗黑砂往下一泼。赤精子上有庆云，下有仙衣，黑砂不能侵犯。姚天君大怒，见此术不应，随欲下台，复来



Jiang Ziya passed on the order, and Fang Xiang rushed into battle. Raising his halberd, he yelled, "I'm here with orders to break your Soul Snatching Trap."

He lunged at Heavenly Master Yao, who was defenceless against his overwhelming strength and quickly fled into his trap. When Fang Xiang pursued him inside, Heavenly Master Yao threw black sand down from the platform, killing Fang Xiang instantly. His soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Heavenly Master Yao mounted his deer and shouted, "Burning Lamp! Why are you so cruel as to send a mortal to his death? Send a highly talented man to meet me."

Burning Lamp ordered Master Pure Essence to deal with him. Master Pure Essence strode out singing, sword in hand. "Yao Bin! I entered this trap twice when you snatched Jiang Ziya's souls. Though I rescued him, today you've killed Fang Xiang."

"Even the Map of the Eight Diagrams is powerless against me! It's now in my possession. You disciples of the Jade Emptiness Palace are nothing. You may have some magic powers, but they're really not good enough." Heavenly Master Yao said contemptuously.

"This has all been destined by fate. Now you are to lose your life, but it's already too late to regret it," Master Pure Essence refuted.

Heavenly Master Yao flew into a rage and attacked Master Pure Essence with his ridged staves. The immortal muttered an apology to Mount Kunlun and met the blow with his sword. The two fought vigorously. After a few rounds, Yao Bin ran into his trap, and Master Pure Essence pursued him, entering it for the third time. He knew its power. He first emitted a brilliant cloud from his head to protect his body and then covered himself with a Divine Purple Longevity Robe patterned with the eight diagrams.

Heavenly Master Yao hurriedly mounted the platform and threw a peck of black sand at Master Pure Essence. The immortal was protected, however, by the brilliant cloud and the divine robe.

Disappointed but angry, Heavenly Master Yao was about to descend from the platform and engage his opponent when Master Pure Essence



战争。不防赤精子暗将阴阳镜望姚斌劈面一晃。姚天君便撞下台来。赤精子对东昆仑打稽首曰：“弟子开了杀戒！”提剑取了首级。——姚斌一道灵魂往封神台去了。赤精子破了“落魂阵”，取回太极图，送还玄都洞。

且言闻太师因赵公明如此，心下不乐，懒理军情，不知二阵主又失了机。太师闻报，破了两阵，只急得三尸神暴跳，七窍内生烟，顿足叹曰：“不期今日吾累诸友遭此灾厄！”忙请二阵主张、王两位天君。太师泣而言曰：“不幸奉命征讨，累诸位道兄受此无辜之灾。吾受国恩，理当如此；众道友却是为何遭此惨毒，使闻仲心中如何得安！”又见赵公明昏乱，不知军务，只是睡卧，尝闻鼻息之声。古云“神仙不寝”，乃是清净六根，如何今日六七日只是昏睡！且不说汤营乱纷纷计议不一。且说子牙拜掉了赵公明元神散而不归，——但神仙以元神为主，游八极，任逍遥，今一旦被子牙拜去，不觉昏沉，只是要睡。闻太师心下甚是着忙。自思：“赵道兄为何只是睡而不醒，必有凶兆！”闻太师愈觉郁郁不乐。且说子牙在岐山拜了半月，赵公明越觉昏沉，睡而不醒人事。太师入内帐，见公明鼻息如雷，用手推而问曰：“道兄，你乃仙体，为何只是酣睡？”公明答曰：“我并不曾睡。”二阵主见公明颠倒，谓太师曰：“闻兄，据我等观赵道兄光景，不是好事，想有人暗算他的，取金钱一卦，便知何故。”闻太师曰：“此言有理。”便忙排香案，亲自拈香，搜求八卦。闻太师大惊曰：“术士陆压将钉头七箭书，在西岐山要射杀赵道兄，这事如何处？”王天君曰：“既是陆压如此，



took out his *Yin Yang* Mirror and flashed it in Yao Bin's face. He fell from the platform, and Master Pure Essence bowed in the direction of Mount Kunlun, saying, "Your disciple apologizes for acting against the commandment on killing." He then strode forward and beheaded Heavenly Master Yao. He found the Map of the Eight Diagrams and returned it to Xuandu Cave.

Grand Tutor Wen was worried over Zhao Gongming's condition. When two more traps were broken and their masters killed, he fumed with rage. He kept stamping his foot. "I never imagined that so many of my friends would lose their lives." He sent for the two Heavenly Masters Zhang and Wang and wept before them. "I've been greatly favored by His Majesty and am naturally prepared to sacrifice myself, but how can I feel at ease when my friends are dying here so cruelly!"

Everyone in the Shang camp talked about the health of Zhao Gongming, who had become dull and indifferent to military affairs, sleeping and snoring day and night. An old proverb says, "Celestials never feel sleepy" for they are free from all emotions and sensations. But Zhao Gongming could sleep for seven days on end!

By chanting spells for fifteen days, Jiang Ziya had gradually expelled the primal spirit of Zhao Gongming. The primal spirit was of major importance to an immortal, enabling him to tour freely throughout the universe. But now Zhao Gongming had lost his primal spirit and became drowsy, wanting to sleep all the time.

Grand Tutor Wen's anxiety increased. "Why does Brother Zhao sleep so long and so soundly? There must be some reason!" He entered the inner camp and found Zhao snoring like thunder. He shook Zhao and called, "Brother! You're a celestial. Why do you sleep all the time?"

"I haven't been asleep; I don't feel sleepy," Zhao Gongming said.

When the two Heavenly masters saw that Zhao Gongming's mind was deranged, they said to Grand Tutor Wen, "Brother Wen! From our observation, he's in danger. It seems he's been secretly cursed. Make a divination and find out the truth."

"You're right, Brothers," Grand Tutor Wen answered. He burnt incense and made a divination with gold coins. He exclaimed in alarm, "Lu Ya will shoot the straw effigy with charmed arrows and put him to death. What shall we do now?"



吾辈须往西岐山，抢了他的书来，方能解得此厄。”太师曰：“不可。他既有此意，必有准备，只可暗行，不可明取。若是明取，反为不利。”闻太师入后营，见赵公明，曰：“道兄，你有何说？”公明曰：“闻兄，你有何说？”太师曰：“原来术士陆压将钉头七箭书射你。”公明闻得此言，大惊曰：“道兄，我为你下山，你当如何解救我？”闻太师这一会神魂飘荡，心乱如麻，一时间走投无路。张天君曰：“不必闻兄着急，今晚命陈九公、姚少司二人借土遁暗往岐山，抢了此书来，大事方才可定。”太师大喜。正是：

天意已归真命主，何劳太师暗安排。

话说陈九公二位徒弟去抢箭书。不表。

且说燃灯与众门人静坐，各运元神。陆压忽然心血来潮，道人不语，掐指一算，早解其意。陆压曰：“众位道兄，闻仲已察出原因，今着他二门人去岐山，抢此箭书。箭书抢去，吾等无生。快遣能士报知子牙，须加防备，方保无虞。”燃灯随遣杨戩、哪吒二人：“速往岐山去报子牙。”哪吒登风火轮先行；杨戩在后。风火轮去而且快，杨戩的马慢便迟。且说闻太师着赵公明二位徒弟陈九公、姚少司去岐山，抢钉头七箭书。二人领命，速往岐山来。时已是二更，二人驾着土遁，在空中果见子牙披发仗剑，步罡踏斗于台前，书符念咒而发遣，正一拜下去，早被二人往下一坐，抓了箭书，似风云而去。子牙听见响，急抬头看时，案上早不见了箭书。子牙不知何故，自己沉吟。正忧虑之间，忽见哪吒来至。南宫适报入中军。子牙急令进来，问其原故。哪吒曰：“奉陆压道者命，说有闻太师遣人来抢箭书。此书若是抢



“If that’s so, we must go to Mount Qi and seize the effigy. Only then can this disaster be averted,” Heavenly Master Wang suggested.

“How can we do that? The place is sure to be closely guarded. It can only be done in secret,” Grand Tutor Wen said cautiously. He strode into the back camp to see Zhao Gongming. “Brother Zhao! Do you have anything to say?”

“Do you have something to tell me, Brother Wen?”

“Lu Ya has placed a curse on you and is going to shoot you with his charmed arrows,” Grand Tutor Wen told him frankly.

Zhao Gongming started with fright and said pitifully, “Brother, I left my mountain to help you. How will you save me from this sorcery?”

Grand Tutor Wen was deeply upset and at a complete loss what to do.

“Brother, don’t worry! We’ll order Chen Jiugong and Yao Shaosi to seize the effigy tonight,” Heavenly Master Zhang suggested.

Grand Tutor Wen approved the idea.

As Burning Lamp and other immortals were meditating to refine their spirits, Lu Ya felt a rush of blood to his heart. Without saying a word, he made a divination on his fingers and realized what was about to happen. “Brothers, Wen Zhong has already found out what we’re doing to Zhao Gongming. He’s going to send two disciples to Mount Qi to steal the effigy. If it’s stolen, none of us can live. Warn Jiang Ziya at once so that he’ll be on the alert.”

Burning Lamp immediately sent Yang Jian and Nezha to Mount Qi to see Jiang Ziya. Nezha set off on his Wind-Fire Wheels at high speed while Yang Jian rode a horse, which was comparatively much slower.

Following Grand Tutor Wen’s orders, Chen Jiugong and Yao Shaosi had sped to Mount Qi on the dust early that evening. From the air they could see Jiang Ziya walking in a square, reciting charms and burning spells before the platform. As Jiang kowtowed, Chen and Yao sank quickly through the air, grabbed the effigy on the table and sped away like the wind.

Jiang Ziya heard the noise, looked up and found that the effigy was gone. He had no idea why and was anxiously puzzling it over when Nezha arrived. “According to Lu Ya’s instructions, I’ve come to warn you that Grand Tutor Wen is sending men to steal the effigy. If it’s lost, all of us will die, so you must be very careful.”



去，一概无生。今着弟子来报，令师叔预先防御。”子牙听罢，大惊曰：“方才吾正行法术，只见一声响，便不见了箭书，原来如此。你快去抢回来！”哪吒领令，出得营来，登风火轮便起，来赶此书。不表。且说杨戩马徐徐行至，未及数里，只见一阵风来，甚是古怪。怎见得好风：

嚼碌碌如同虎吼，滑喇喇猛兽咆哮。扬尘播土逞英豪，搅海翻江华嶽倒。损林木如同劈砍，响时节花草齐凋。

催云卷雾岂相饶，无影无形真个巧。

杨戩见其风来得异怪，想必是抢了箭书来。杨戩下马，忙将土草抓一把，望空中一洒，喝一声：“疾！”坐在一边。——正是先天秘术，道妙无穷，保真命之主，而随时响应。且说陈九公、姚少司二人抢了书来大喜，见前面是老营，落下土遁来。见邓忠巡外营，忙然报入。二人进营，见闻太师在中军帐坐定。二人上前回话。太师问曰：“你等抢书一事如何？”二人回曰：“奉命去抢书，姜子牙正行法术，等他拜下去，被弟子坐遁，将书抢回。”太师大喜，问二人：“将书拿来。”二人将书献上。太师接书一看，放于袖内，便曰：“你们后边去回复你师父。”二人转身往后营正走，只听得脑后一声雷响，急回头不见大营，二人站在空地之上。二人如痴如醉。正疑之间，见一人白马长枪，大呼曰：“还吾书来！”陈九公、姚少司大怒，四口剑来取。杨戩枪大蟒一般。夤夜交兵，只杀的天惨地昏，枪剑之声，不能断绝。正战之际，只见空中风火轮响，哪吒听得兵器交加，落下轮来，摇枪来战。陈九公、姚少司那里是杨戩敌手，况又有接战之人。哪吒奋勇，一枪把姚少司刺死；杨戩把陈九公胁下



Jiang Ziya was shocked. "I was kowtowing when I heard a noise. I looked up and found the effigy on the table had disappeared. Hurry, hurry! Try your best to get it back!" he ordered.

Nezha left immediately on his Wind-Fire Wheels. Yang Jian was slowly approaching on his horse. When a violent and strange wind whirled towards him he realized that the effigy must have been stolen. He hastily dismounted, grabbed a handful of earth, and threw it high into the air, shouting, "Quick, quick! There's no time for delay."

He then sat at the roadside to see what would happen. Chen Jiugong and Yao Shaosi were delighted at their success. Spotting the Shang camp not far ahead, they descended from the air and asked General Deng Zhong, who was on patrol, to announce their successful return. When they were summoned, they saw Grand Tutor Wen sitting in a chair.

"How did the raid go?" Grand Tutor Wen asked.

"When we got there we saw that Jiang Ziya was just bowing in worship. We seized the opportunity to snatch the effigy."

The Grand Tutor was delighted. "Give it to me."

Chen Jiugong and Yao Shaosi handed it to him, and the Grand Tutor looked it over, put it in his sleeves, and ordered, "You may go to see your master now and tell him of your success."

As Chen and Yao walked to the back camp, they heard a roar of thunder behind them. They turned to look, and found to their astonishment that the camp had disappeared, leaving them standing in the wilderness. They were trying to puzzle it out when a man appeared on a white horse.

"Give me back the effigy at once!" the man cried.

Chen and Yao rushed furiously at the man, each wielding a pair of swords. Yang Jian hastily defended himself with his halberd. Their weapons clashed resoundingly through the darkness of the night. Before long, Nezha arrived on his Wind-Fire Wheels, and when he saw the fierce fight, he got down and joined in.

Chen and Yao were no match for Yang Jian, and when Nezha joined in, their position was even more hopeless. Within a few minutes, Nezha stabbed Yao Shaosi to death, and Yang Jian penetrated Chen Jiugong's breast. Their souls flew together to the Terrace of Creation.





一枪，——二人灵魂俱往封神台去了。杨戩问哪吒曰：“岐山一事如何？”哪吒曰：“师叔已被抢了书去，着吾来赶。”杨戩曰：“方才见二人驾土遁，风声古怪，吾想必是抢了书来；吾随设一谋，仗武王洪福，把书诳设过来；又得道兄协助，可喜二人俱死。”杨戩与哪吒复往岐山，来见子牙。二人行至岐山，天色已明。有武吉报入营中。子牙正纳闷时，只见来报：“杨戩、哪吒来见。”子牙命入中军，问其抢书一节，杨戩把诳设一事，说与子牙。子牙奖谕杨戩曰：“智勇双全，奇功万古！”又谕哪吒：“协助英雄，赤心辅国。”杨戩将书献与子牙，二人回芦篷。不表。且说子牙日夜用意提防，惊心提胆，又恐来抢。

且说闻太师等抢书回来报喜，等得第二日巳时，不见二人回来；又令辛环去打听消息。少时辛环来报：“启太师：陈九公、姚少司不知何故，死在中途。”太师拍案大叫曰：“二人已死，其书必不能返！”捶胸跌足，大哭于中军。只见二阵主进营，来见太师，见如此悲痛，忙问其故。太师把前事说了一遍，二天君不语，同进后营，来见赵公明。公明鼻息之声如雷。三位来至榻前，太师垂泪叫曰：“赵道兄，”公明睁目见闻太师来至，就问抢书一事。太师实对公明说曰：“陈九公、姚少司俱死。”赵公明将身坐起，二目圆睁，大呼曰：“罢了！悔吾早不听吾妹之言，果有丧身之祸！”公明只吓的浑身汗出，无计可施。公明叹曰：“想吾在天皇时得道，修成玉肌仙体，岂知今日遭殃，反被陆压而死。真是可怜！闻兄，料吾不能再生，今追悔无及！但我死之后，你将金蛟剪连吾袍服包住，用丝绦缚定。我死，必定云霄诸妹来看吾之



"The effigy was robbed, and I was ordered to recover it," Nezha told him.

"I've already got it back, Brother," said Yang Jian happily. "I saw them riding on the dust, raising a strange wind. I thought they might be the robbers and transformed myself into the image of Grand Tutor Wen to deceive them and retrieve the effigy. Thanks to your help, both of them are now dead."

Yang Jian and Nezha went together to see Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya was delighted. "Yang Jian won not only through his bravery but also his wisdom. Nezha's heroic and loyal!" he praised them.

Yang Jian handed over the effigy, and the two returned to the reed pavilion. Late the next morning, Grand Tutor Wen was still waiting for the return of Chen Jiugong and Yao Shaosi. He impatiently ordered Xin Huan to investigate. Before long Xin Huan returned. "Grand Tutor Wen! I found them both dead on the way. I don't know what happened."

Grand Tutor Wen pounded his desk and roared, "Since both of them are dead, it's impossible for us to get the effigy now!"

He beat his breast, stamped his feet and wept loudly. When the two remaining Heavenly Masters entered, they found him weeping bitterly. After they discovered the reason, they went with him to see Zhao Gongming. Zhao was still snoring like thunder.

Nearing his bedside, Grand Tutor Wen shouted, "Dear Brother, wake up!"

Zhao Gongming opened his eyes, and seeing the Grand Tutor, asked about the effigy. When the Grand Tutor told him the truth about what had happened, he immediately sat up. With staring eyes, he cried out, "I'm finished! Oh, why didn't I listen to my sister's advice! I'll lose my life just as she warned!" Sweat poured down his body. "I became an immortal in the epoch of the Heavenly Emperor. How could I have imagined that I would die at the hands of Lu Ya. Brother Wen, it's already too late for remorse. After my death, wrap up the Golden Dragon Scissors with my robe and give them to my three sisters. To see my robe is to see their



尸骸。你把金蛟剪连袍服递与他。吾三位妹妹见吾袍服，如见亲兄！”道罢，泪流满面，猛然一声大叫曰：“云霄妹子！悔不用你之言，致有今日之祸！”言罢，不觉哽咽，不能言语。闻太师见赵公明这等苦切，心如刀绞，只气的怒发冲冠，钢牙剉碎。当有“红水阵”主王变见如此伤心，忙出老营，将“红水阵”排开，径至篷下，大呼曰：“玉虚门下谁来会吾‘红水阵’也？”哪吒、杨戩才在篷上，回燃灯、陆压的话，又听得“红水阵”开了，燃灯只得领班下篷，众弟子分开左右。只见王天君乘鹿而来。好凶恶！怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

一字青纱头上盖，腹内玄机无比赛。“红水阵”内显其能，修炼惹下诛身债。

话说燃灯命：“曹道友，你去破阵走一遭。”曹宝曰：“既为真命之主，安得推辞。”忙提宝剑出阵，大叫：“王变慢来！”王天君认得是曹宝散人，王变曰：“曹兄，你乃闲人，此处与你无干，为何也来受此杀戮？”曹宝曰：“察情断事，你们扶假灭真，不知天意有在，何必执拗。想赵公明不顺天时，今一旦自讨其死。十阵之间已破八九，可见天心有数。”王天君大怒，仗剑来取。曹宝剑架忙迎。步鹿相交，未及数合，王变往阵中就走。曹宝随后跟来，赶入阵中。王天君上台，将一葫芦水往下一摔。葫芦振破，红水平地拥来。一点粘身，四肢化为血水。曹宝被水粘身，可怜！只剩道服丝绦在，四肢皮肉化为津。——一道灵魂往封神台去了。王天君复乘鹿出阵，大呼曰：“燃灯甚无道理！无辜断送闲人！玉虚门下高名者甚多，谁敢来会吾此阵？”燃灯命道德真君：“你去破此阵。”不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



elder brother in person.” With tears pouring down his face, he gave an agonized cry, “Oh, Sister High Firmament! How sorry I am that I didn’t take your advice!”

He wept bitterly and choked with sobs, was unable to speak further.

Watching the tragic scene, Grand Tutor Wen felt as if his heart was being pierced by a dagger. His hair stood on end, and he gnashed his teeth in rage. Wang Bian, the Heavenly Master of the Red Water Trap, could not hold his patience any longer. He rushed vengefully to the reed pavilion and shouted, “Which of you dare meet me in the Red Water Trap?”

Burning Lamp left the pavilion with other immortals. As Heavenly Master Wang approached on his deer, Burning Lamp said to Cao Bao, “Dear friend, would you like to meet him?”

Cao Bao rushed out, shouting, “Calm down there, Wang Bian!”

Heavenly Master Wang recognized Cao Bao. “Brother Cao! You’re a free man. This place has nothing to do with you. Why are you so foolish as to come here and get yourself killed?”

“You act against the will of Heaven by supporting the tyrant against the true ruler. Don’t you see that we’ve broken eight of your traps already. Can’t you perceive the will of Heaven clearly?” Cao Bao replied.

Filled with anger, Wang Bian attacked Cao Bao with his sword, and Cao resisted with his own. After several rounds, Wang Bian ran into his trap, and Cao Bao followed closely on his heels. Wang Bian mounted the platform and splashed down a gourdful of red water. A drop touched Cao Bao’s body, and he instantly dissolved into a stream of blood, his soul flying to the Terrace of Creation.

Heavenly Master Wang rushed out to the front again. “Burning Lamp! Why are you so heartless as to send an innocent man into my trap to meet his death? There are many highly talented people in the Jade Emptiness Palace. Which of you dare to meet me now?”

Burning Lamp turned to Virtue of the Pure Void, “You break the trap.”

To know the outcome of the struggle, please read the next chapter.



## 第四十九回

### 武王失陷红沙阵

诗曰：

一煞真元万事休，无为无作更无忧。心中白璧人难会，  
世上黄金我不求。石畔溪声谈梵语，涧边山色咽寒流。  
有时七里滩头坐，新月垂江作钓钩。

话说道德真君领燃灯命，作罢歌，提剑而来。真君曰：“王变，你等不谙天时，指望扭转乾坤，逆天行事，只待丧身，噬脐何及。今尔等十阵已破八九，尚不悔悟，犹然恃强狂逞！”王天君听得道德真君如此之语，大怒，仗剑来取。道德真君剑架忙还。来往数合，王变进本阵去了。道德真君闻金钟击响，随后赶进阵中。王变上台，也将葫芦如前一样打将下来，只见红水满地。真君把袖一抖，落下一瓣莲花；道德真君双脚踏在莲花瓣上。任凭红水上下翻腾，道德真君只是不理。王天君又拿一葫芦打下来。真君顶上现出庆云，遮盖上面，无水粘身；下面红水不能粘其步履，如一叶莲舟相似。正是：

一叶莲舟能解厄，方知阐教有高人。

道德真君脚踏莲舟，有一个时辰。王变情知此阵不能成功，方欲抽身逃走；道德真君忙取五火七禽扇一搨。——此扇有空中火、石中火、木中火、三昧火、人间火，五火合成此宝；扇有凤凰翅，有青鸾翅，有大鹏翅，有孔雀翅，有白鹤

## Chapter 49

### King Wu in the Red Sand Trap

By order of Burning Lamp, Virtue of the Pure Void rushed to the front. “Wang Bian! As you act against the will of Heaven, you are doomed. Now that eight of your traps have been broken, why don’t you come to your senses!”

Heavenly Master Wang was furious. He raised his sword and struck at the immortal, who replied with his own. After several rounds, Wang Bian ran into his Red Water Trap, with the immortal close on his heels. As before, Wang Bian mounted the platform and emptied his gourd onto the ground, flooding the area with red water.

When he entered, Pure Void waved his right sleeve, and down dropped a lotus flower for the immortal to float about upon the red water. No matter how violently the red waves churned, no water touched the body of the immortal. Heavenly Master Wang then threw the gourd itself at the immortal, but he was protected by a brilliant cloud that had emerged from his skull. He floated about on the lotus for about two hours in perfect safety.

Wang Bian knew that he had lost and tried to run away. Pure Void immediately took out his Five Fire and Seven Fowl Fan. The fan could produce five kinds of fire — fire from air, stone, wood, earth, and man; and was made of the wings of seven kinds of fowls, including that green phoenix, roc, peacock, crane, wild swan, and owl. Each wing was stamped





翅，有鸿鹄翅，有枭鸟翅；七禽翎上有符印，有秘诀。后人有诗单道此扇好处，有诗为证：

五火奇珍号七翎，授人初出乘离荧。逢山怪石成灰烬，  
遇海煎乾少露冷。克木克金为第一，焚梁焚栋暂无停。

王变纵有神仙体，遇扇搨时即灭形。

道德真君把七禽扇照王变一搨。王变大叫一声，化一阵红灰，径进封神台去了。道德真君破了“红水阵”。燃灯回芦篷静坐。且说张天君报入中军：“启太师：‘红水阵’又被西周破了。”闻太师因赵公明有钉头七箭书事，郁郁不乐，纳闷心头，不曾理论军情；又听得破了一阵，更添愁闷。

且说子牙在岐山拜了二十日，七篇书已拜完；明日二十一日，要绝公明，心下甚欢喜。再说赵公明卧于后营，闻太师坐于榻前看守。公明曰：“闻兄，吾与你止会今日。明日午时，吾命已休！”太师听罢，泣而言曰：“吾累道兄遭此不测之殃，使我心如刀割！”张天君进营来看赵公明，正是有力无处使，只恨钉头七箭书。把一个大罗神仙只拜得如俗子病夫一般，可怜讲甚么五行遁术，说不起倒海移山，只落得一场虚话！大家相看流泪。且说子牙至二十一日巳牌时分，武吉来报：“陆压老爷来了。”子牙出营迎接，入帐行礼。序坐毕，陆压曰：“恭喜！恭喜！赵公明定绝今日！且又破了‘红水阵’，可谓十分之喜！”子牙深谢陆压：“若非道兄法力无边，焉得公明绝命。”陆压笑吟吟揭开花篮，取出小小一张桑枝弓，三只桃枝箭，递与子牙，“今日午时初刻，用此箭射之。”子牙曰：“领命。”二人在帐中等至午时，不觉阴阳官来报：“午时牌！”子牙净手，拈弓，搭箭。陆压曰：“先中左目。”子牙依命，先中左目。——这西岐山发箭射草人，



with the seals of charms. It was powerful enough to burn rocks to ashes and boil the sea dry. Pure Void fanned Wang Bian once. Wang emitted a single cry before burning to red ash.

As the Red Water Trap was destroyed, Pure Void, Burning Lamp and all the others returned to the pavilion. Grand Tutor Wen became even more depressed. By now Jiang Ziya had already spent twenty days on Mount Qi and was ready to put Zhao Gongming to death the following day.

In the back camp, Zhao Gongming told Grand Tutor Wen mournfully, "Brother Wen, this is our last meeting. I'll be gone at noon tomorrow."

Grand Tutor Wen wept, "It tortures me that I've brought this disaster upon you."

Soon Heavenly Master Zhang came to see Zhao Gongming. He hated himself for being powerless to save him from death. They wept to see such a great celestial suffer like a mortal because of Lu Ya's curse and were grieved that his centuries of achievements would end in nothing.

At eleven o'clock the next morning, Wu Ji reported to Jiang Ziya that Lu Ya had arrived. Jiang Ziya went out to welcome him, and when they were seated, Lu Ya said, "I should congratulate you: Zhao Gongming will die at noon. What's more, the Red Water Trap has been broken."

Jiang Ziya thanked him sincerely, "How could we have ended Zhao's life today without your help?"

With a smile, Lu Ya opened his flower basket and took out a small mulberry bow and three short peach arrows, which he handed to Jiang Ziya. "Shoot the effigy with the bow and arrows," Lu Ya said. "Shoot his left eye first."

Jiang Ziya did as ordered. As the first arrow hit the left eye of the effigy, Zhao Gongming, lying in the Shang camp, roared in agony and





成汤营里赵公明大叫一声，把左眼闭了。闻太师心如刀割，一把抱住公明，泪流满面，哭声甚惨。——子牙在岐山，二箭射右目，三箭劈心一箭，三箭射了草人。——公明死于成汤营里。有诗为证：

悟道原须灭去尘，尘心不了怎成真。至今空却罗浮洞，  
封受金龙如意神。

闻太师见公明死于非命，放声大哭；用棺椁盛殓，停于后营。邓、辛、张、陶四将心惊胆战，“周营有这样高人，如何与他对敌！”营内只因死了公明，彼此惊乱，行伍不整。且言子牙同陆压回篷，与众道友相见，俱说：“若不是陆压兄之术，焉能使公明如此命绝！”燃灯甚是称羨。

且说张天君开了“红沙阵”，里面连催钟响，燃灯听见，谓子牙曰：“此‘红沙阵’乃一大恶阵，必须要一福人方保无虞。若无福人去破此阵，必须大损。”子牙曰：“老师用谁为福人？”燃灯曰：“若破‘红沙阵’，须是当今圣主方可。若是别人，凶多吉少。”子牙曰：“当今天子体先王仁德，不善武事，怎破得此阵？”燃灯曰：“事不宜迟，速请武王，吾自有处。”子牙着武吉请武王。少时，武王至篷下。子牙迎迓上篷。武王见众道人下拜。众道人答礼相还。武王曰：“列位老师相招，有何分付？”燃灯曰：“方今十阵已破九阵，止得一‘红沙阵’，须得至尊亲破，方保无虞。但不知贤王可肯去否？”武王曰：“列位道长此来，俱为西土祸乱不安，而发此恻隐。今日用孤，安敢不去。”燃灯大喜，“请王解带，宽袍。”武王依其言，摘带，脱袍。燃灯用中指在武王前后胸中用符印一道，完毕，请武王穿袍，又将一符印



closed his left eye. Grand Tutor Wen held him in his arms, sobbing as the tears poured down his cheeks. The second arrow hit the right eye of the effigy, and the third penetrated its heart. Zhao Gongming died at the third arrow.

Seeing that Zhao Gongming was dead, Grand Tutor Wen wailed unrestrainedly. He ordered an grandiose ceremony to mark the encoffining of Zhao's body, and the bier was placed temporarily in the back camp. Zhao's death badly frightened Deng, Zhang, Xin and Tao. With such highly talented men in the Zhou camp, how can we possibly defeat them?" they thought. This affair badly affected the morale of the Shang army.

When Jiang Ziya and Lu Ya returned to the reed pavilion from Mount Qi, all the immortals exclaimed in delight, "Without Brother Lu, how could we have put Zhao Gongming to death so easily?"

Before long, Heavenly Master Zhang gave a challenge to the immortals. "The Red Sand Trap is particularly evil. It will take a man greatly blessed by Heaven to survive it. Otherwise we'll suffer a major loss," Burning Lamp told Jiang Ziya.

"Who can we send, Master?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"It's got to be the sage ruler. Anyone else is sure to meet with disaster."

"Though His Highness is virtuous, he's never learned how to fight. How can he break the trap?" Jiang Ziya said doubtfully.

"We cannot delay! Just ask King Wu to come here. I know how to convince him," Burning Lamp persisted.

Jiang Ziya sent Wu Ji to fetch King Wu. When the king arrived he was met by Jiang Ziya and escorted inside. King Wu bowed to the immortals, who returned the salutation.

"Master, what instructions would you give me?" King Wu asked.

"We've broken nine traps, but the Red Sand, the very last, remains. Only if Your Highness tackles it can we be assured of success. Is Your Highness willing to do it?" Burning Lamp asked.

"You've all come here out of compassion for the people. How could I refuse!" King Wu replied.

Burning Lamp was overjoyed. "Would Your Highness untie your belt and take off your robe," he requested.



塞在武王蟠龙冠内。燃灯又命哪吒、雷震子保武王下篷。只见“红沙阵”内有位道人，戴鱼尾冠，面如冻绿，颌下赤髯，提两口剑，作歌而来。歌曰：

“截教传来悟者稀，玄中大妙有天机：先成炉内黄金粉，后炼无穷白玉霏。红沙数片人心落，黑雾弥漫胆骨飞。今朝若会龙虎地，便是神仙绝魄归。”

“红沙阵”主张绍大呼曰：“玉虚门下谁来会吾此阵？”只见风火轮上哪吒提火尖枪而来。又见雷震子保有一人，戴蟠龙冠，身穿黄服。张绍曰：“来者是谁？”哪吒答曰：“此吾之真主武王是也。”武王见张天君狰狞恶状，凶暴猖獗，唬得战兢兢，坐不住马鞍鞦上。张天君纵开梅花鹿，仗剑来取。哪吒登开风火轮，摇枪赴面交还。未及数合，张天君往本阵便走。哪吒、雷震子保定武王径入“红沙阵”中。张天君见三人赶来，忙上台，抓一片红沙往下劈面打来。武王被红沙打中前胸，连人带马撞下坑去。哪吒踏住风火轮就升起空中。张绍又发三片沙打将下来，也把哪吒连轮打下坑内。雷震子见事不好，欲起风雷翅，又被红沙数片打翻下坑。故此“红沙阵”困住了武王三人。且说燃灯同子牙见“红沙阵”内一股黑气往上冲来，燃灯曰：“武王虽是有厄，然百日可解。”子牙问其详细：“武王怎不见出阵来？”燃灯曰：“武王、雷震子、哪吒三人俱该受困此阵。”子牙慌问：“老师，几时回来？”燃灯曰：“百日方能出得此厄。”子牙听罢，顿足叹曰：“武王乃仁德之君，如何受得百日之苦，那时若有差讹，奈何？”燃灯曰：“不妨。天命有在，周主洪福，自保无事，子牙何必着忙。暂且回篷，自有道理。”子牙进城，报入官



When King Wu had done so, he drew some charms on the king's breast and back with his middle finger. After he had dressed again, Burning Lamp placed another charm inside the king's dragon crown. Finally, the immortal ordered that Nezha and Thunderbolt protect King Wu when he entered the Red Sand Trap.

When they came out, King Wu, Nezha and Thunderbolt saw a Taoist emerge from the Red Sand Trap. He wore a fish-tail coronet and had a face the color of verdigris and a long red beard. Carrying a pair of swords, he rode a deer toward them singing. "Which of you from the Jade Empiness Palace will meet me?" Heavenly Master Zhang Shao demanded. He then saw Nezha and Thunderbolt with a man in a dragon crown, yellow robe, and dragon belt. "Who is that coming?"

"It's the sage ruler, King Wu," Nezha answered.

King Wu trembled at the hideous countenance and ferocious manner of the Heavenly Master, and almost fell from his saddle.

Heavenly Master Zhang spurred his spotted deer forward and attacked Nezha with his sword. Nezha met him with his lance. After a few rounds, Heavenly Master Zhang ran into his Red Sand Trap. Nezha, Thunderbolt and King Wu followed closely on his heels. Heavenly Master Zhang hurriedly mounted his platform, grasped a handful of red sand and threw it directly at them. King Wu was hit on the breast and tumbled into a huge pit with his horse. Though Nezha soared into the air on his Wind-Fire Wheels, he was also caught by the red sand and fell into the pit.

As the odds were against them, Thunderbolt tried to fly away, but it was too late. He was also knocked into the pit, and all three were trapped by the red sand. Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya saw only a column of black air rising into the sky.

"King Wu will be released in 100 days. He, Nezha and Thunderbolt are all destined by fate to suffer this calamity," Burning Lamp reassured Jiang.

Jiang Ziya stamped his foot. "King Wu is virtuous but still a mortal. How can he survive 100 days? What shall we do if something goes wrong!"

"Trust in the will of Heaven. King Wu's blessed and will certainly come through. Don't worry, Jiang Ziya."



中。太姬、太妊二后忙令众兄弟进相府来问。子牙曰：“当今不妨，只有百日灾难，自保无虞。”子牙出城，复上篷见众道友，闲谈道法。不题。话表张天君进营对闻太师曰：“武王、雷震子、哪吒俱陷‘红沙阵’内。”闻太师口虽庆喜，心中只是不乐。——止为公明混闷而死。——张天君在阵内，每日常把红沙洒在武王身上，如同刀刃一般。多亏前后符印护持其体，——真命福人，焉能得绝。

且不说张绍困住武王；只说申公豹跨虎往三仙岛来报信与云霄娘娘姊妹三人。及至洞门，光景与别处大不相同。怎见得：

烟霞娘娘，松柏森森。烟霞娘娘瑞盈门，松柏森森青绕户。桥踏枯槎木，峰巅绕薜萝，鸟衔红蕊来云壑，鹿践芳丛上石苔。那门前时催花发，风送香浮，临堤绿柳转黄鹂，傍岸夭桃翻粉蝶。虽然别是洞天景，胜似蓬莱阆苑佳。

话说申公豹行至洞中下虎，问：“里面有人否？”少时，一女童出来，认得申公豹，便问：“老师往那里来？”公豹曰：“报你师父，说我来访。”童儿进洞，“启娘娘：申老爷来访。”娘娘道：“请来。”申公豹入内相见，稽首坐下。云霄娘娘问曰：“道兄何来？”公豹曰：“特为令兄的事来。”云霄娘娘曰：“吾兄有什么事敢烦道兄？”申公豹笑曰：“赵道兄被姜尚钉头七箭书射死岐山，你们还不知道？”只见琼霄、碧霄听罢，顿足曰：“不料吾兄死于姜尚之手，实为痛心！”放声大哭。申公豹在傍又曰：“令兄把你金蛟剪借下山，一功未成，反被他人所害。临危对闻太师说：‘我死之后，吾妹必定



Jiang Ziya went into the city and reported the matter to the palace. Tai Ji and Tai Ren, mother and wife of the king, sent other princes to see Jiang Ziya in his mansion. Jiang Ziya told them definitely that “King Wu will come to no harm. He’ll merely be trapped in there for about 100 days.”

He then returned to the reed pavilion and discussed the Way with his Taoist friends. Heavenly Master Zhang returned to tell Grand Tutor Wen, “King Wu, Nezha and Thunderbolt are all caught in my trap.”

Though Grand Tutor Wen expressed his delight, he was still deeply grieved at the death of Zhao Gongming. Everyday Heavenly Master Zhang threw red sand on King Wu’s body to make him feel as if knives were being thrust through him. King Wu, however, was well protected by the charms on his breast and back. As he was blessed, he remained unharmed.

Meanwhile Shen Gongbao had gone to the Three Fairy Island to announce Zhao’s death to High Firmament and her sisters. He dismounted when he reached the cave and asked a lass, “Would you please report to your mistress that Shen Gongbao is here?”

When Shen was escorted in, High Firmament asked, “Why are you here, Brother?”

“I’ve come about your brother,” Shen replied.

“What’s so serious that he has to trouble you?”

“Don’t you know he was shot by Jiang Ziya with charmed arrows on Mount Qi?” Shen said with a smile.

Green Firmament and Jade Firmament immediately burst into tears. “Alas, we never thought that he would lose his life at the hands of Jiang Ziya!”

“Even after he got your Golden Dragon Scissors, he couldn’t retrieve his pearls. Before his death, he said to Grand Tutor Wen, ‘My younger



来取金蛟剪。你多拜上三位妹子：吾悔不听云霄之言，反入罗网之厄。见吾道服，丝绦，如见我亲身一般！’言之痛心，说之酸鼻！可怜千年勤劳修炼一场，岂知死于无赖之手！真是切骨之仇！”云霄娘娘曰：“吾师有言：‘截教门中不许下山；如下山者，“封神榜”上定是有名。’故此天数已定。吾兄不听师言，故此难脱此厄。”琼霄曰：“姐姐，你实是无情！不为吾兄出力，故有此言。我姊妹三人就是‘封神榜’上有名也罢，吾定去看吾兄骸骨，不负同胞。”琼霄、碧霄娘娘怒气冲冲，不由分说，琼霄忙乘鸿鹄，碧霄乘花翎鸟出洞。云霄娘娘暗思：“吾妹妹此去，必定用混元金斗乱拿玉虚门人，反为不美。惹出事来，怎生是好！吾当亲去执掌，还可在我。”娘娘分付女童：“好生看守洞府，我去就来。”娘娘跨青鸾，也出洞府；见碧霄、琼霄飘飘跨异鸟而来。云霄娘娘大叫曰：“妹妹慢行！吾也来了！”二位娘娘道：“姐姐，你往那里去？”云霄曰：“我见你们不谙事礼，恐怕多事，同你去，见机而作，不可造次。”三人同行，只见后面有人呼曰：“三位姐姐慢行！吾也来了！”云霄回头看时——“原来是菡芝仙妹子。”问道：“你从那里来？”菡芝仙曰：“同你往西岐去。”娘娘大喜。才待前行，又有人来叫曰：“少待！吾来也！”及看时，乃彩云仙子，打稽首曰：“四位姐姐往西岐去；方才遇着申公豹约我同行，正要往闻道兄那里去，恰好遇着大家同行。”五位女仙往西岐来，顷刻，驾遁光即时而至。正是：

群仙顶上天门闭，九曲黄河大难来。

话说五位仙姑来至营门，命旗门官通报。旗门官报入中军。



sisters are sure to come here for the scissors. Tell them that I regret not following High Firmament's advice. They can see my Taoist robe and silk belt instead of me in person.' What a pity that his thousand years of cultivation was wasted."

"My master forbade us to leave the mountain. Anyone who does is certainly on the List of Creations. This was destined by Heaven. As my brother failed to adhere to these instructions, he was bound to meet with disaster," High Firmament said.

"Dear Sister! You're too heartless! You say this because you don't want to avenge him. As for the two of us, we must go to see his remains, even if it means that our names are on the List of Creations. After all, we are of the same blood," Jade Firmament said angrily.

Without another word, Jade Firmament and Green Firmament left the cave and headed for West Qi, one riding a swan and the other a bird with spotted feathers.

"They're sure to use the Universe Muddling Dipper. That'll only make things worse. What shall we do then? I must go there too to keep things in hand." High Firmament decided.

She ordered her lass to look after the cave then pursued them on her green phoenix. "Wait for me, Sisters. I'm coming too."

"Where're you going, Sister?" they asked.

"As you don't understand how to handle matters properly, I'll come with you to make sure you don't make mistakes."

As the three of them flew on, they heard someone calling from behind, "Not so fast, Sisters. I'm coming, too!" Turning her head, High Firmament found that it was Celestial Lotus. "Where are you going, Sister?"

"I'm going with you all to West Qi."

They had barely started off when someone called again, "Wait for me, Sisters." They found it was Lady Pretty Cloud. The latter bowed. "I see you are on your way to West Qi. I met Shen Gongbao, and he invited me to go there and help Brother Wen. How happy I am to meet you all here! Let's go together."

The five of them traveled on and reached their destination moments later. At the Shang camp, they asked the guards to report their arrival to





闻太师出营迎请至帐内，打稽首坐下。云霄曰：“前日吾兄被太师请下罗浮洞来，不料被姜尚射死。我姊妹特来收吾兄骸骨。如今却在那里？烦太师指示。”闻太师悲咽泣诉，泪雨如珠，曰：“道兄赵公明不幸遭萧升、曹宝收了定海珠去。他往道友洞府借了金蛟剪来，就会燃灯；交战时便祭此剪。燃灯逃遁，其坐下一鹿闸为两段。次日有一野人陆压会令兄，又祭此剪。陆压化作长虹而走。然后两下不曾会战。数日来，西岐山姜尚立坛行术，咒诅令兄，被吾算出。彼时令兄有二门人——陈九公、姚少司，令他去抢钉头七箭书，又被哪吒杀死。令兄对吾说：‘悔不听吾妹云霄之言，果有今日之苦。’他将金蛟剪用道服包定，留与三位道友，见服如见公明。”闻太师道罢，放声掩面大哭。五位道姑齐动悲声。太师起身，忙取袍服所包金蛟剪放于案上。三位娘娘展开，睹物伤情，泪不能干。琼霄切齿，碧霄面发通红，动了无明三昧。碧霄曰：“吾兄棺椁在那里？”太师曰：“在后营。”琼霄曰：“吾去看来。”云霄娘娘止曰：“吾兄既死，何必又看？”碧霄曰：“既来了，看看何妨？”二位娘娘就走，云霄只得同行。来到后营，三位娘娘见了棺木，揭开一看，见公明二目血水流津，心窝里流血，不得不怒。琼霄大叫一声，几乎气倒。碧霄含怒曰：“姐姐不必着急，我们拿住他，也射他三箭，报此仇恨！”云霄曰：“不管姜尚事，是野人陆压，弄这样邪术！一则也是吾兄数尽，二则邪术倾生，吾等只拿陆压，也射他三箭，就完此恨。”又见“红沙阵”主张天君进营，与五位仙姑相见。太师设席与众位共饮数杯。次日，五位道姑出营。闻太师掠阵；又命邓、辛、张、陶护卫前后。



Grand Tutor Wen. The Grand Tutor came out to meet them.

When all were seated inside, High Firmament said, "My brother Zhao Gongming left Luofu Cave to help you here. Unfortunately he was shot by Jiang Ziya. Now we've come to collect his corpse. Would you kindly show us where it is, Grand Tutor?"

Grand Tutor Wen wept bitterly. "Brother Zhao Gongming was unlucky. Before he died, he told me, 'I regret not taking my sister High Firmament's advice. I've brought about my own downfall!' He asked me to put the Golden Dragon Scissors and his robe in a parcel and give it to you so that when you saw it, it would be just like seeing him in person."

As he spoke, Grand Tutor Wen broke down, sobbed loudly and covered his face with one of his sleeves. The five ladies wept with him. Grand Tutor Wen got up from his seat and took out the parcel. Opening it, the three sisters mourned bitterly. Their tears fell like rain. Jade Firmament gnashed her teeth, and Green Firmament flushed with anger.

"Where's my brother's coffin, sir?" Green Firmament asked.

"It's in the back camp," Grand Tutor Wen replied.

"Let me go to look at it," Jade Firmament said.

"Since he's dead, what's the use of looking at his coffin?" High Firmament asked.

"As we're here, why not go and look at it?" Green Firmament persisted.

The two sisters walked to the back camp, and High Firmament had little choice but to follow them. They took the cover off the coffin and stared at the body of their brother. Seeing that Zhao was still bleeding from the eyes and heart, they could not control their anger. Jade Firmament screamed and nearly fainted.

"Sister, don't be agitated. We'll catch the murderer and shoot him with three arrows too, to avenge our brother," Green Firmament said furiously.

"This has nothing to do with Jiang Ziya. It was Lu Ya, as fate had destined. We'll just catch him and shoot him. Then our revenge will be complete," High Firmament put in.

The next day, the five ladies left the Shang camp with Grand Tutor



云霄乘鸾来至篷下，大呼曰：“传与陆压，早来会吾！”左右忙报上篷来：“有五位道姑欲请陆老爷答话。”陆压起身曰：“贫道一往。”提剑在手，迎风大袖飘扬而来。云霄娘娘观看，陆压虽是野人，真有些仙风道骨。怎见得：

双抓髻，云分瑞彩；水合袍，紧束丝绦。仙风道骨气逍遥，腹内无穷玄妙。四海野人陆压，五岳到处名高。学成异术广，懒去赴蟠桃。

云霄对二妹曰：“此人名为闲士，腹内必有胸襟。看他到了面前怎样言语，便知他学识浅深。”陆压徐徐而至，念几句歌词而来：

“白云深处诵《黄庭》，洞口清风足下生。无为世界清虚境，脱尘缘万事轻。叹无极天地也无名。袍袖展，乾坤大；杖头挑，日月明。只在一粒丹成。”

陆压歌罢，见云霄打个稽首。琼霄曰：“你是散人陆压否？”陆压答曰：“然也。”琼霄曰：“你为何射死吾兄赵公明？”陆压答曰：“三位道友肯容吾一言，吾便当说；不容吾言，任你所为。”云霄曰：“你且道来！”陆压曰：“修道之士，皆从理悟；岂仗逆行。故正者成仙，邪者堕落。吾自从天皇悟道，见过了多少逆顺。历代以来，从善归宗，自成正果。岂意赵公明不守顺，专行逆，助灭纲败纪之君，杀戮无辜百姓，天怒民怨。且仗自己道术，不顾别人修持。此是只知有己，不知有人，便是逆天。从古来逆天者亡，吾今即是天差杀此逆士，又何怨于我！吾观道友，此地居不久，此处乃兵山火海，怎立其身？若久居之，恐失长生之路。吾不失忌讳，冒昧上陈。”云霄沉吟，良久不语。琼霄大喝曰：“好



Wen and Deng, Xin, Zhang and Tao. High Firmament rode her green phoenix up to the reed pavilion.

“Tell Lu Ya to come out and meet me,” she demanded.

When the challenge was passed on to him, Lu Ya got up and said, “I’ll go straightway.”

He took his sword and rushed out from the pavilion, his long sleeves billowing in the wind. High Firmament saw that he had the bearing and air of an immortal. She said to her two sisters, “He’s known as a hermit and is sure to possess some ability. We’ll see what he has to say and gauge the true depth of his learning.”

Lu Ya moved toward them slowly, singing a song. He bowed before High Firmament.

“Are you Lu Ya?”

“Yes, I am.”

“Why did you shoot my brother, Zhao Gongming?” Jade Firmament asked.

“I’ll tell you frankly, if you’ve got enough patience. Otherwise you may take action as you please.”

“Go on and tell us,” High Firmament said.

“To achieve enlightenment is the only proper path to follow to the Way. Immortals are those who follow the proper way. I achieved enlightenment in the epoch of the Heavenly Emperor at the beginning of time, and I’ve witnessed the enlightenment of many with my own eyes. Only those who act with virtue progress spiritually. Who could have imagined that Zhao Gongming would commit such an error! He sided with a tyrant who disregards the ethical relationships and slaughters the innocent, evoking the wrath of Heaven and the resentment of the people. He used his magic without regard for anybody else. Whoever acts against the will of Heaven is bound to die, and I was sent by Heaven to put him to death. How can I be blamed for it? My friends! Can’t you see that this is not the place for you? There are only mountains of weapons and oceans of fire here. How can you survive? If you stay here, I’m afraid you’ll lose your chances for everlasting life. I’ve taken the liberty to speak frankly. I beg your pardon if I’ve offended you.”



孽障!焉敢将此虚谬之言,簧惑众听!射死吾兄,反将利口强辩!料你毫末之道,有何能处。”琼霄娘娘怒冲霄汉,仗剑来取。陆压剑架忙迎。未及数合,碧霄将混元金斗望空祭起。陆压怎逃此斗之厄!有诗为证:

此斗开天长出来,内藏天地按三才。碧游宫里亲传授,阐教门人尽受灾。

碧霄娘娘把混元金斗祭于空中,陆压看见,却待逃走;其如此宝利害,只听得一声响,将陆压拿去,望成汤老营一摔。陆压总有玄妙之功,也摔得昏昏默默。碧霄娘娘亲自动手,绑缚起来;把陆压泥丸宫用符印镇住,绑在幡杆上;与闻太师曰:“他会射吾兄,今番我也射他!”传长箭手,令五百名军来射。箭发如雨,那箭射在陆压身上;一会儿,那箭连箭杆与箭头都成灰末。众军卒大惊。闻太师观之,无不骇异。云霄娘娘看见如此,碧霄曰:“这妖道将何异术来惑我等!”忙祭金蛟剪。陆压看见,叫声:“吾去也!”化道长虹,径自走了;来到篷下,见众位道友。燃灯问曰:“混元金斗把道友拿去,如何得返?”陆压曰:“他将箭来射吾,欲与其兄报仇。他不知我根脚;那箭射在我身上,箭咫尺成为灰末。复放金蛟剪时,吾自来矣。”燃灯曰:“公道术精奇,真个可羨!”陆压曰:“贫道今日暂别,不日再会。”不表。

且说次日,云霄共五位道姑齐出来会子牙。子牙随带领诸门人,乘了四不相,众弟子分左右。子牙定睛,看云霄跨青鸾而至。怎见得:

云髻双蟠道德清,红袍白鹤顶朱缨,丝绦束定乾坤结,足下麻鞋瑞彩生。劈地开天成道行,三仙岛内炼真形。



High Firmament sighed deeply and said nothing, but Jade Firmament screamed, "You damned brute! How dare you deceive us with rubbish! You shot my brother and now try to defend yourself with your slick tongue. I guess that your powers are insignificant. What can you do to us?"

Fuming with rage, she rushed up to slash at Lu Ya with her sword. After several rounds, Green Firmament cast her Universe Muddling Dipper high into the sky. It was such a powerful weapon that before Lu Ya had time to flee, it had caught him and threw him to the ground. Despite his great power, he was almost knocked unconscious. Green Firmament bound him tightly, stuck charms on top of his head, and hung him up on a flag pole.

"He shot my brother. I'll shoot him in return," she said.

Five hundred archers were summoned immediately, but though the arrows showered like rain, they dropped to the ground without harming him. As each arrow touched his body, it turned to ashes. Everyone was astonished.

"How can we allow him to fool us like this?" Green Firmament screamed and cast up her Golden Dragon Scissors.

"Sorry! I must be going," Lu Ya shouted.

He transformed himself into a rainbow and disappeared. When he returned to the reed pavilion, Burning Lamp asked him, "You were caught by the dipper. How did you get away?"

"They tried to shoot me, but every arrow turned to ashes as soon as it touched my body. When they cast up their Golden Dragon Scissors, I turned into a rainbow and came back here."

"We all admire your wonderful skill," Burning Lamp said happily.

"I have to leave here for a while. I'll be back soon," Lu Ya told them and took his leave.

The next day, High Firmament went out with her four companions and demanded Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya met them with his disciples on his left and right. He bowed down.



六气三尸俱抛尽，咫尺青鸾离玉京。

话说子牙乘骑向前，打稽首曰：“五位道友请了！”云霄曰：“姜子牙，吾居三仙岛，是清闲之士，不管人间是非；只因你将吾兄赵公明用钉头七箭书射死。他有何罪，你下此绝情，实为可恶！你虽是陆压所使，但杀人之兄，人亦杀其兄，我等不得不问罪与你。况你乃毫末道行，何足为论。就是燃灯道人知吾姊妹三人，他也不敢欺忤我。”子牙曰：“道友此言差矣！非是我等寻事作非，乃是令兄自取惹事。此是天数如此，终不可逃。既逢绝地，怎免灾殃！令兄师命不遵，要往西岐，是自取死。”琼霄大怒曰：“既杀吾亲兄，还借言天数，吾与你杀兄之仇，如何以巧言遮饰！不要走，吃吾一剑！”把鸿鹄鸟催开双翅，将宝剑飞来直取。子牙手中剑急架相还。只见黄天化纵玉麒麟，使两柄银锤冲杀过来。杨戩走马摇枪，飞来截杀。这壁厢碧霄怒发如雷，“气杀我也！”把花翎鸟二翅飞腾。云霄把青鸾飞开，也来助战。彩云仙子把葫芦中戮目珠抓在手中，要打黄天化下麒麟。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



“Greetings, my Taoist friends!”

“Jiang Ziya!” cried High Firmament. “We’re all carefree Taoists living on the Three Fairy Island. We care nothing for the rights and wrongs of this vulgar world. We’ve come here now only because our brother, Zhao Gongming, was cruelly murdered by your charmed arrows. Why did you put him to death so unjustly? How wicked you are! Though we know you’re not the chief culprit, you nevertheless killed him. We cannot but hold you responsible! Your magic powers are too insignificant to be mentioned, and even Burning Lamp wouldn’t dare offend us.”

“You’re wrong,” Jiang Ziya replied. “We had done nothing to offend your brother, but he came here to trouble us, bringing disaster on himself. It was his destiny. He disobeyed the orders of his master.”

Jade Firmament flew into a rage. “You murdered him yet make the excuse that it’s all destiny! How dare you cheat us with your cunning words! I’ll avenge him by giving you a taste of my sword!”

She urged her swan forward to attack Jiang Ziya and he defended himself with his sword. Huang Tianhua and Yang Jian joined in. To counter them, Green Firmament, roaring like thunder, flew in on her bird, and High Firmament also had to help her sisters. Pretty Cloud took the Eye Blinding Pearl from her gourd and knocked Huang Tianhua from his jade unicorn.

What became of him? If you want to know, read the next chapter.









## 第五十回

### 三姑计摆黄河阵

诗曰：

黄河恶阵按三才，此劫神仙尽受灾，九九曲中藏造化，  
三三湾内隐风雷。谩言阆苑修真客，谁道灵台结圣胎。  
遇此总教重换骨，方知左道不堪媒。

话说彩云仙子把戮目珠望黄天化劈面打来，——此珠专伤人目。——黄天化不及堤防，被打伤二目，翻下玉麒麟。有金吒速救回去。子牙把打神鞭祭起，正中云霄，吊下青鸾。有碧霄急来救时，杨戩又放起哮天犬，把碧霄肩膀上一口，连皮带服扯了一块下来。且言菡芝仙见势不好，把风袋打开，好风！怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

能吹天地暗，善刮宇宙昏。裂石崩山倒，人逢命不存。  
菡芝仙放出黑风。子牙急睁眼看时，又被彩云仙子一戮目珠打伤眼目，几乎落骑。琼霄发剑冲杀，幸得杨戩前后救护，方保无虞。子牙走回芦篷，闭目不睁。燃灯下篷看时，乃知戮目珠伤了；忙取丹药疗治，一时而愈。子牙与黄天化眼目好了。黄天化切齿咬牙，终是怀恨，欲报此珠之仇。

且说云霄被打神鞭打重了；碧霄被哮天犬咬了。三位娘娘曰：“吾到不肯伤你，你今番坏吾！罢，罢，罢！妹子，莫言他玉虚门下人，你就是我师伯，也顾不得了！”正是：

不施奥妙无穷术，那显仙传秘授功。

话说云霄服了丹药，谓闻太师曰：“把你营中大汉子选六百名

## Chapter 50

### The Yellow River Trap

Pretty Cloud scored a direct hit with her Eye Blinding Pearl, and Huang Tianhua fell from his unicorn. Jinzha immediately rushed forward and carried him to safety.

Jiang Ziya cast his Staff for Beating Gods up into the air. It hit High Firmament and brought her down from her green phoenix. As Green Firmament went to rescue her sister, Yang Jian set his Sky Barking Hound on her. It bit her on the shoulder, tearing off a piece of her robe.

Celestial Lotus saw it all. She opened her Wind Sack and released a fierce black wind, turning the sky dark, splitting rocks, and shaking mountains. When Jiang Ziya opened his eyes to see what weapon she had used, he was wounded by Pretty Cloud's Eye Blinding Pearl and nearly fell from his nondescript. Yang Jian fended off Jade Firmament and helped Jiang Ziya back to the pavilion. Burning Lamp knew what had hurt Jiang Ziya and Huang Tianhua. He took out two elixir pills, and both were soon cured. Huang Tianhua gnashed his teeth in hatred, swearing to take revenge.

In this first battle, High Firmament was wounded by the God Beating Staff, and Green Firmament was hurt by the Sky Barking Hound.

"I didn't intend to harm them, but that was obviously their purpose. Sisters, from this day on, I'll forgive neither the disciples nor the master of the Jade Emptiness Palace," High Firmament swore. She took some medicine and then told Grand Tutor Wen, "Please pick 600 sturdy warriors to put at my disposal."





来与吾，有用处。”太师令吉立去，即时选了六百大汉前来听用。云霄三位娘娘同二位道姑往后营，用白土画成图式：何处起，何处止。内藏先天秘密，生死机关；外按九宫八卦，出入门户，连环进退，井井有条。人虽不过六百，其中玄妙不啻百万之师。纵是仙人入此，则神消魄散。其阵，众人也演习半月有期，方才走熟。那一日，云霄进营来见闻太师，曰：“今日吾阵已成，请道兄看吾会玉虚门下弟子。”太师问曰：“不识此阵有何玄妙？”云霄曰：“此阵内按三才，包藏天地之妙；中有惑仙丹，闭仙诀，能失仙之神，消仙之魄，陷仙之形，损仙之气，丧神仙之原本，损神仙之肢体。仙人入此而成凡，凡人入此而即绝。九曲曲中无直，曲尽造化之奇，抉尽神仙之秘。任他三教圣人，遭此亦难逃脱。”太师闻说大喜，传令：“左右，起兵出营！”闻太师上了墨麒麟，四将分于左右。五位道姑齐至篷前，大呼曰：“左右探事的！传与姜子牙，着他亲自出来答话。”探事的报上篷来：“汤营有众女将讨战。”子牙传令，命众门人排班出来。云霄曰：“姜子牙，若论二教门下，俱会五行之术。倒海移山，你我俱会。今我有一阵，请你看。你若破得此阵，我等尽归西岐，不敢与你拒敌。你若破不得此阵，吾定为我兄报仇。”杨戩曰：“道兄，我等同师叔看阵，你不可乘机暗放奇宝暗器伤我等。”云霄曰：“你是何人？”杨戩答曰：“我是玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门下杨戩是也。”碧霄曰：“我闻得你有八九元功，变化莫测。我只看你今日也用变化来破此阵，我断不像你等暗用哮天犬而伤人也。快去看了阵来，再赌胜负！”杨戩等各忍怒气，保着子牙来看阵图。及至到了一



When the men had been sent to her, she went to the back camp and drew designs in chalk that showed all the mysteries of life and death. Based on the eight diagrams, the drawings showed windows, entrances, and exits and indicated where to advance and where to retreat. There were only 600 soldiers, but they had the strength of a million. Any intruder, mortal or immortal, would unavoidably lose his life if he ventured inside.

In half a month, the trap was ready, and the men were fully trained. High Firmament went to see Grand Tutor Wen. "My trap's now ready. Would you care to watch while I take them on, Brother?"

"Please explain the mysteries of your trap to me," Grand Tutor Wen said.

"It's based on the principles behind Heaven, earth, and man. Within it, there are pills to stun immortals and spells to confine them. It will take away their spirits, their souls, and their energy, and destroy their bodies. An immortal will degenerate into a mortal and a mortal will lose his life. It contains the secret of secrets, the miracle of miracles. Even the heads of the three religions would find it difficult to escape destruction once inside," High Firmament said proudly.

With great delight, Grand Tutor Wen ordered his army to march out of camp. He rode on his pure black unicorn, followed by his four generals and the five ladies. They approached the reed pavilion.

"Jiang Ziya! Come out and meet us in person!"

When Jiang Ziya marched out with his disciples, High Firmament said, "Jiang Ziya! Both of us are capable of manipulating the five elements and moving mountains and seas. But now I'll show you a trap that requires a far greater level of skill. We'll leave West Qi should you break it, but if you can't, we'll certainly avenge our brother."

"Ladies," said Yang Jian. "Let's make an inspection of it first, but you mustn't use the opportunity for an underhanded attack."

"Who are you?" High Firmament asked.

"I'm Yang Jian, disciple of Jade Tripod."

"I've heard that you have unique magic powers. I'd just like to see you break this trap with your wonderful transformations! We are honest;



阵，门上悬有小小一牌，上书“九曲黄河阵”。士卒不多，只有五六百名。旗幡五色。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

阵排天地，势摆黄河。阴风飒飒气侵人，黑雾弥漫迷日月。悠悠荡荡，杳杳冥冥。惨气冲霄，阴霾彻地。消魂灭魄，任你千载修持成画饼；损神丧气，虽逃万劫艰辛俱失脚。正所谓：神仙难到，尽削去顶上三花；那怕你佛祖厄来，也消了胸中五气。逢此阵劫数难逃；遇他时真人怎躲？

话言姜子牙看罢此阵，回见云霄。云霄曰：“子牙，你识此阵么？”子牙曰：“道友，明明书写在上，何必又言识与不识也。”碧霄大喝杨戩曰：“你今日再放哮天犬来！”杨戩倚了胸襟，仗了道术，催马摇枪来取。琼霄在鸿鹄鸟上执剑来迎。未及数合，云霄娘娘祭起混元金斗。杨戩不知此斗利害，只见一道金光，把杨戩吸在里面，往“黄河阵”里一摔。不怕你：

七十二变俱无用，怎脱“黄河阵”内灾！

却说金吒见拿了杨戩，大喝曰：“将何左道拿吾道兄！”仗剑来取。琼霄持宝剑来迎。金吒祭起捆龙桩。云霄笑曰：“此小物也！”托金斗在手，用中指一指，捆龙桩落在斗中。二起金斗，把金吒拿去，摔入“黄河阵”中。正是此斗：

装尽乾坤并四海，任他宝物尽收藏。

话说木吒见拿了兄长去，大呼曰：“那妖妇将何妖术敢欺吾兄！”这道童狼行虎跳，仗剑且凶，望琼霄一剑劈来。琼霄急架忙迎。未及三合，木吒把肩膀一摇，吴钩剑起在空中。琼霄一见，笑曰：“莫道吴钩不是宝，吴钩是宝也难伤吾！”



we won't do anything unless you set your dog against us. Go quickly now and look it over. Then see if your skills are enough to do anything," Green Firmament said sarcastically.

Controlling their anger, Jiang Ziya, Yang Jian, and others entered the trap. On the gate they saw a small board inscribed with the line "Nine Bends of the Yellow River Trap." There were only about 500 to 600 soldiers in all, standing here and there with their colored pennants. A cold wind howled, and black fogs enveloped the earth. After their inspection, Jiang Ziya exited it with his disciples and returned to where High Firmament was waiting.

"Do you recognize it, Jiang Ziya?"

"You needn't ask me that. Its name is clearly written on the board outside."

Green Firmament cried, "Yang Jian, dare you unleash your Sky Barking Hound again?"

Relying on his magic, Yang Jian urged his horse forward, his lance extended to attack Jade Firmament. From the back of her swan, she met the assault with her sword. After several rounds, High Firmament cast up her Universe Muddling Dipper. Not knowing the power of it, Yang Jian was sucked inside in a flash of golden light and thrown into the Yellow River Trap.

When he saw that Yang Jian had been taken, Jinzha roared, "What devilry do you use!"

He attacked Jade Firmament with his sword, and she returned the blow with her own sword. Before long, Jinzha cast up his Dragon Binding Stake.

"That pathetic little thing!" High Firmament smiled scornfully. Holding her dipper in one hand, she pointed at the stake with the other. In a twinkling, the stake fell into the dipper, and then she cast the dipper at Jinzha and threw him into the Yellow River Trap.

Muzha was enraged. "You witch! How dare you take my brother!"

He leapt at Jade Firmament and slashed at her with his sword. She returned the blow with her own. After about three rounds, Muzha shook his shoulder and sent his Hooks of Wu flying into the air.





云霄用手一招，宝剑落在斗中。云霄再祭金斗，木吒躲不及，一道金光，装将去了，也摔在“黄河阵”中。云霄大怒，把青鸾一纵二翅飞来，直取子牙。子牙见拿了三位门人去，心下惊恐，急架云霄剑时，未及数合，云霄把混元金斗祭起来拿子牙。子牙忙将杏黄旗招展。旗现金花，把金斗敌住在空中，只是乱翻，不得落将下来。子牙败回芦篷，来见燃灯等。燃灯曰：“此宝乃是混元金斗。这一番方是众位道友逢此一场劫数。你们神仙之体有些不祥。入此阵内，根深者不妨，根浅者只怕有些失利。”

且说云霄娘娘回进中营。闻太师见一日擒了三人入阵，太师问云霄曰：“此阵内拿去的玉虚门人怎生发落？”云霄曰：“等我会了燃灯之面，自有道理。”闻太师营中设席款待。张天君“红沙阵”困着三人，又见云霄这等异阵成功，闻太师爽怀乐意。正是：

屡胜西岐重重喜，只怕苍天不顺情。

且说闻太师欢饮而散。次日，五位道姑齐至篷前，坐名请燃灯答话。燃灯同众道人排班而出。云霄见燃灯坐鹿而出。怎见得赞为证，赞曰：

双抓髻，乾坤二色；皂道服，白鹤飞云。仙丰併道骨，霞彩现当身。顶上灵光千丈远，包罗万象胸襟。九返金丹全不讲，修成圣体彻灵明。灵鹫山上客，元觉道燃灯。

且说燃灯见云霄，打稽首，曰：“道友请了！”云霄曰：“燃灯道人，今日你我会战，决定是非。吾摆此阵，请你来看阵。只因你教下门人将吾道污蔑太甚，吾故此才有念头。如今月缺难圆。你门下有着高明之士，谁来会吾此阵？”燃



“Those hooks aren’t magic weapons. Even if they were, they couldn’t hurt me at all,” Jade Firmament scoffed.

High Firmament pointed at the hooks with her finger and collected them in her dipper. Then she cast up her dipper, caught Muzha, and threw him into the Yellow River Trap with the other two.

Now High Firmament angrily flew at Jiang Ziya on her green phoenix and stabbed at him with her sword. Much disheartened by the loss of his three disciples, Jiang Ziya met the challenge with his sword. After a few rounds, High Firmament cast up her dipper, but Jiang Ziya unrolled his Apricot Yellow Flag, from which golden flowers emerged to block the dipper’s descent. The dipper simply turned over and over in the sky, unable to come down.

Jiang Ziya went back to the pavilion, and when he reported what happened, Burning Lamp sighed, “That’s the Golden Universe Mud-dling Dipper. Most of us will suffer from it. It augurs ill fortune even for us immortals. Once thrown into the trap, those who don’t have a good grounding in the Way will suffer the most.”

High Firmament and her sisters returned to the Shang camp. Delighted that they had taken three captives in one day, the Grand Tutor asked, “What will you do with the three disciples you’ve taken today?”

“I’ll think it over after we’ve met Burning Lamp,” High Firmament answered.

Three men had been caught in the Red Sand Trap, and now three more in the Yellow River Trap. Grand Tutor Wen was greatly satisfied. He ordered a feast in honor of the ladies and Heavenly Master Zhang.

The following day, the five ladies rode to the reed pavilion and demanded to see Burning Lamp. Burning Lamp rode out on his deer, with all the immortals following him in rows. He greeted the sisters.

“Burning Lamp! Right and wrong will be settled today. I set up the Yellow River Trap because you’ve insulted us too deeply. Now send a



灯笑曰：“道友此言差矣！金押‘封神榜’，你亲自在宫中，岂不知循环之理，从来造化，复始周流。赵公明定就如此，本无仙体之缘，该有如此之劫。”琼霄曰：“姐姐既设此阵，又何必与他讲什么道德。待吾拿他，看他有何术相抵！”琼霄娘娘在鸿鹄鸟上仗剑飞来。这壁厢恼了众门下。内有一道人作歌曰：

“高卧白云山下，明月清风无价。壶中玄奥，静里乾坤大。夕阳看破霞，树头数晚鸦。花阴柳下，笑笑逢人话；剩水残山，行行到处家。凭咱茅屋任生涯，从他金阶玉露滑。”

赤精子歌罢，大呼曰：“少出大言！琼霄道友，你今日到此，也免不得‘封神榜’上有名。”轻移道步，执剑而来。琼霄听说，脸上变了两朵桃花，仗剑直取。步鸟飞腾，未及数合，云霄把混元金斗望上祭起，一道金光，如电射目，将赤精子拿住，望“黄河阵”内一摔，跌在里面，如醉如痴，即时把顶上泥丸宫闭塞了。——可怜千年功行，坐中辛苦，只因一千五百年逢此大劫，乃遇此斗，装入阵中，总是神仙也没用了。广成子见琼霄如此逞凶，大叫：“云霄休小看吾辈，有辱阐道之仙，自恃碧游宫左道！”云霄见广成子来，忙催青鸾，上前问曰：“广成子，莫说你是玉虚宫头一位击金钟首仙，若逢吾宝，也难脱厄。”广成子笑曰：“吾已犯戒，怎说脱厄？定就前因，怎违天命。今临杀戒，虽悔何及！”仗剑来取。云霄执剑相迎。碧霄又祭金斗。只见金斗显耀，目观不明，也将广成子拿入“黄河阵”内。——如赤精子一样相同，不必烦叙。此混元金斗，正应玉虚门下徒众该削顶上三



man of great power to break it," High Firmament challenged.

"You're wrong to do this. You were present when the List of Creations was signed. How can you fail to understand the philosophy of cycles. Since the beginning of time, everything has operated in cycles. That was the case with Zhao Gongming. He wasn't destined to be an immortal, so he was fated to meet with disaster," Burning Lamp replied with a smile.

"Sister! No more talk about virtue and morality! Let me get hold of him and see what he can do about that!" Jade Firmament yelled.

She flew out on her swan toward Burning Lamp, but Master Pure Essence intercepted her. "Jade Firmament! Don't brag so much. As you're here, your name must be on the list."

They had only fought a few rounds when High Firmament cast up her dipper. With a flash, it caught the immortal and threw him into the Yellow River Trap. He immediately became like a drunkard. Alas, for his thousand years of cultivation! In a moment all his achievements were reduced to nothing.

Master Grand Completion could not bear to see Jade Firmament swaggering so. "High Firmament! How can you insult us and degrade your own Taoism? Don't place too much trust in the witchcraft from the Green Touring Palace!"

High Firmament flew forward to meet him, shouting, "Grand Completion! Even though you're the head disciple, you will find it difficult to escape your fate!"

"I've broken the commandment on killing already. Why should I run away from my fate? If it's destined, how could I do anything against the will of Heaven?" Master Grand Completion answered, smiling.



花；天数如此，自然随时而至，总把玉虚门人俱拿入“黄河阵”，闭了天门，失了道果。只等子牙封过神，再修正果，返本還元。此是天数。话说云霄将混元金斗拿文殊广法天尊，拿普贤真人，拿慈航道人、道德真君，拿清微教主太乙真人，拿灵宝大法师，拿惧留孙，拿黄龙真人：把十二弟子俱拿入阵中；止剩的燃灯与子牙。且说云霄娘娘又倚金斗之功，无穷妙法，大呼曰：“月缺今已难圆，作恶到底！燃灯道人，今番你也难逃！”又祭混元金斗来擒燃灯。燃灯见事不好，借土遁化清风而去。三位娘娘见燃灯走了，暂归老营。闻太师见“黄河阵”内拿了玉虚许多门人，十分喜悦，设席贺功。云霄娘娘虽是饮酒而散，默坐自思：“事已做成，怎把玉虚门下许多门人困于阵中，……此事不好处，使吾今日进退两难。”

且说燃灯逃回篷上，只见子牙上篷相见，坐下。子牙曰：“不料众道兄俱被困于‘黄河阵’中，凶吉不知如何？”燃灯曰：“虽是不妨，可惜了一场功夫虚用了。如今我贫道只得往玉虚宫走一遭。子牙，你在此好生看守，料众道友不得损身。”燃灯彼时离了西岐，驾土遁而行，霎时来至昆仑山麒麟崖；落下遁光，行至宫前，又见白鹤童儿看守九龙沉香辇。燃灯向前问童儿曰：“掌教师尊往那里去？”白鹤童儿口称：“老师，老爷驾往西岐，你速回去焚香静室，迎鸾接驾。”燃灯听罢，火速忙回至篷前，见子牙独坐，燃灯曰：“子牙公，快焚香结彩，老爷驾临！”子牙忙净洁其身，秉香



While he fought High Firmament, Jade Firmament cast the dipper. It scooped him up and threw him into the trap just as it had Master Pure Essence.

In the very same way, High Firmament captured the Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture, Universal Virtue, Merciful Navigation, Virtue of the Pure Void, Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue, Jade Tripod, Fairy Primordial, Krakuchanda and the Yellow Dragon Immortal in her trap. Once inside, the twelve immortals all lost the three divine flowers they had achieved through a thousand years of cultivation and meditation. They would only get them back after Jiang Ziya finished the creations.

Only Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya remained untouched. Feeling her power, High Firmament cried, "Since I've already committed these crimes, why stop here?"

She used the dipper again, intending to take Burning Lamp. But Burning Lamp knew its power, and he transformed himself into a gust of wind and disappeared.

The three sisters returned in triumph. To celebrate the great victory, Grand Tutor Wen held a banquet in their honor. High Firmament, however, was silent. She worried, "What shall I do now that I've taken them? I don't know the right course to follow!"

Burning Lamp fled back to the pavilion where he met Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya said sadly, "I'm sorry that so many brothers have fallen into the trap. I wonder what fate awaits them."

"Though no harm will come to them, all their achievements are lost. I'll go to Mount Kunlun for help. I don't think any of them will die."

He left West Qi for Mount Kunlun, and descending from the sky, approached the palace and saw White Crane Lad beside the Nine Dragon Sandalwood Carriage.

"Where is Grand Master going?" he asked.

"He's going to West Qi. You'd better go back and prepare a quiet, clean chamber. Burn incense to receive him."

Burning Lamp returned to West Qi and entered the reed pavilion. He found Jiang Ziya sitting there alone. "Quickly order your men to decorate the pavilion and burn incense. Grand Master will be here soon."



道傍，迎迓鸾舆。只见霏霏香烟，氤氲遍地。怎见得，有歌为证，歌曰：

混沌从来道德奇，全凭玄理立玄机。太极两仪并四象，天开于子任为之，地丑人寅吾掌教，“黄庭”两卷度群迷。玉京金阙传徒众，火种金莲是我为。六根清静除烦恼，玄中妙法少人知。二指降龙能伏虎，目运祥光天地移。顶上庆云三万丈，遍身霞绕彩云飞。闲骑逍遥四不相，默坐沉檀九龙车。飞来异兽为扶手，喜托三宝玉如意。白鹤青鸾前引道，后随丹凤舞仙衣，羽扇分开云雾隐，左右仙童玉笛吹，黄巾力士听勅命，香烟滚滚众仙随。阐道法扬真教主，元始天尊离玉池。

话说燃灯、子牙听见半空中仙乐，一派嘹亮之音，燃灯秉香，轶道伏地曰：“弟子不知大驾来临，有失远迎，望乞恕罪。”元始天尊落了沉香辇。南极仙翁执羽扇随后而行。燃灯、子牙请天尊上芦篷，倒身下拜。天尊开言曰：“尔等平身。”子牙复俯伏启曰：“三仙岛摆‘黄河阵’，众弟子俱有陷身之厄，求老师大发慈悲，普行救拔。”元始曰：“天数已定，自莫能解，何必你言。”元始默言静坐。燃灯、子牙侍于左右。至子时分，天尊顶上现庆云，有一亩田大；上放五色毫光，金灯万盏，点点落下，如檐前滴水不断。且说云霄在阵中，猛见庆云现出，云霄谓二妹子曰：“师伯至矣！妹子，我当初不肯下山，你二人坚执不从。我一时动了无明，偶设此阵，把玉虚门人俱陷在里面，使我又不好放他，又不好坏他。今番师伯又来，怎好相见，真为掣肘！”琼霄曰：“姐姐此言差矣！他又不是吾师，尊他为上，不过看吾师之



Jiang Ziya washed himself thoroughly, and holding burning incense, waited at the roadside. Before long, Heavenly Primogenitor arrived in his Nine Dragon Sandalwood Carriage. When they heard divine music in the air, Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya knelt on the ground.

Heavenly Primogenitor descended from the carriage. Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya escorted him to the reed pavilion, where they knelt and kowtowed again. Heavenly Primogenitor told them to stand up, but Jiang Ziya remained kneeling on the ground. "Nearly all your disciples have fallen into the Yellow River Trap. I beg for your compassion to rescue them from this calamity as soon as possible," he pleaded.

"This has been destined by Heaven, and nobody can change it. Don't say any more."

The master sat in silence. Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya stood at his side. At midnight, a huge, bright, colored cloud rose from the top of the master's head, and thousands of lamps floated up and down above the pavilion.

High Firmament saw it and said, "Uncle's here. What shall we do? I didn't want to leave the island, but you two insisted. I've taken many disciples of the Jade Emptiness Palace. I can neither set them free nor send them all to death. I'm really in a quandary. Now that Uncle's come, how can I face him?"

"You're wrong, Sister! He isn't our master. We respect him only for the sake of our own master. We can do anything we please, as we aren't his disciples. There's no need to fear him," Jade Firmament reassured her.





面。我不是他教下门人，任凭我为，如何怕他？”碧霄曰：“我们见他，尊他。他无声色，以礼相待；他如有自尊之念，我们那认他甚么师伯！既为敌国，如何逊礼。今此阵既已摆了，说不得了，如何怕得许多！”话说元始天尊次日清晨命南极仙翁：“将沉香辇收拾，吾既来此，须进‘黄河阵’走一遭。”燃灯引道，子牙随后，下篷行至阵前。白鹤童儿大呼曰：“三仙岛云霄快来接驾！”只见云霄等三人出阵，道傍欠身，口称：“师伯，弟子甚是无礼，望乞恕罪！”元始曰：“三位设此阵，乃我门下该当如此。只是一件，你师尚不敢妄为，尔等何苦不守清规，逆天行事，自取违教之律！尔等且进阵去，我自进来。”三位娘娘先自进阵，上了八卦台，看元始进来如何。且说天尊拍着飞来椅，径进阵来；沉香辇下四脚离地二尺许高，祥云托定，瑞彩飞腾。天尊进得阵来，慧眼垂光，见十二弟子横睡直躺，闭目不睁。天尊叹曰：“只因三尺不斩，六气未吞，空用工夫千载！”天尊道心慈悲，看罢方欲出阵。八卦台上彩云仙子见天尊回身，抓一把戮目珠打来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

奇珠出手焰光生，灿烂飞腾太没情。只说暗伤元始祖，  
谁知此宝一时倾。

话说元始天尊看罢“黄河阵”方欲出阵，彩云仙子将戮目珠从后面打来。那珠未到天尊跟前，已化作灰尘飞去。云霄见而失色。且说元始出阵，上篷坐下。燃灯曰：“老师进阵内，众道友如何？”元始曰：“三花削去，闭了天门，已成俗体，即是凡夫。”燃灯又曰：“方才老师入阵，如何不破此阵，将众道友提援出来，大发慈悲。”元始笑曰：“此教虽是贫道



“We’ll respect him if he’s polite to us, but if he’s not, we’ll do as we like. He’s our enemy, and we can’t yield before him. What’s there to worry about now that we’ve already gone this far?” Green Firmament added.

The next day, Heavenly Primogenitor ordered the Immortal of the South Pole, “Get my carriage ready. Now that I’m here, I’ll go to see the trap.”

Burning Lamp led the way, and Jiang Ziya followed behind. Heavenly Primogenitor left the pavilion and rode to the front, where White Crane Lad shouted loudly, “High Firmament! Come out and receive Heavenly Primogenitor.”

High Firmament and her sisters came out. They bowed at the roadside and said, “Uncle! We beg your pardon for being so negligent in the rites.”

“It’s fate that my disciples should suffer. Nevertheless, even your master doesn’t venture against the will of Heaven. Why did you ignore his orders? You’d better go in and I’ll follow right after you.”

The three sisters went back in and mounted the platform to see how the Heavenly Primogenitor would move about inside. Before long, they saw the master flying about the Yellow River Trap in his sandalwood carriage held about two feet above the ground by a bright multi-colored cloud. Looking around with his wisdom eye, the master saw his twelve disciples lying on the ground, their eyes tightly closed. He sighed deeply and said, “Just because they were unable to sever themselves from all desire, they lost all the achievements they had so laboriously attained.”

When he turned to leave the trap, Pretty Cloud threw an Eye Blinding Pearl at him, trying to take him by surprise. But the pearl turned to ashes before it could reach the master. High Firmament turned pale at the sight.

When Heavenly Primogenitor was seated in the pavilion again, Burning Lamp asked, “How are they now?”

“They’ve lost their divine flowers and their divine gates are closed. They’re nothing more than mortals now.”

“Why didn’t you rescue them?”

“Though I am Grand Master, I must first consult my elder brother,”



掌，尚有师长，必当请问过道兄，方才可行。”言未毕，听空中鹿鸣之声，元始曰：“八景宫道兄来矣。”忙下篷迎迓。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

鸿濛剖破玄黄景，又在人间治五行。度得轩辕升白昼，  
函关施法道常明。

话说老子乘牛从空而降，元始远迓，大笑曰：“为周家八百年事业，有劳道兄驾临！”老子曰：“不得自来。”燃灯明香引道上篷，玄都大法师随后。燃灯参拜，子牙叩首毕，二位天尊坐下。老子曰：“三仙童子设一‘黄河阵’，吾教下门下俱厄于此，你可曾去看？”元始曰：“贫道先进去看，正应垂象，故候道兄。”老子曰：“你就破了罢，又何必等我？”二位天尊默坐不言。且说三位娘娘在阵，又见老子顶上现一坐玲珑塔于空中，毫光五色，隐现于上。云霄谓二妹曰：“玄都大老爷也来了，怎生是好？”碧霄娘娘道：“姐姐，各教所授，那里管他！今日他再来，吾不是昨日那样待他，那里怕他？”云霄摇头，“此事不好。”琼霄曰：“但他进此阵，就放金蛟剪，再祭混元金斗，何必惧他？”且说次日，老子谓元始曰：“今日破了‘黄河阵’早回，红尘不可久居。”元始曰：“道兄之言是矣。”命南极仙翁收拾香辇；老子上了板角青牛，燃灯引道，遍地氤氲，异香馥道，满散红霞。行至“黄河阵”前，玄都大法师大呼曰：“三仙姑快来接驾！”里面一声钟响，三位娘娘出阵，立而不拜。老子曰：“你等不守清规，敢行忤慢！尔师见吾且躬身稽首，你焉敢无状！”碧霄



Primogenitor said with a smile. He was speaking when they heard the cry of a deer in the air. "Here he comes now."

All of them went out to meet Lao Zi. As Lao Zi descended from the sky on his ox, Heavenly Primogenitor advanced, laughing loudly, "I've troubled you solely for the sake of the Zhou Dynasty."

"I couldn't but come, Brother," Lao Zi answered with a smile.

Burning Lamp guided him to the pavilion. Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya then kowtowed before him.

"Have you looked at the trap yet?" Lao Zi asked.

"I've been there once. It's just as the celestial phenomena indicated. I've been waiting for you," Heavenly Primogenitor replied.

"You ought to have destroyed it. There's no need to wait for me."

The two masters then sat down and mediated in complete silence. At the sight of a pagoda floating in the air shooting forth colored beams, High Firmament said to her sisters, "The Grand Master from Mount Xuandu is here as well. What shall we do?"

"Dear sister! We've got our own master. Don't worry. If they come here again, I won't treat them as kindly as I did yesterday," Green Firmament said.

"When they enter the trap, we'll cast up both the scissors and the dipper. There's nothing to be afraid of," Jade Firmament decided.

The next day, Lao Zi told his brother, "We'll leave as soon as the trap's broken. We won't linger in the red dust of the vulgar world longer than absolutely necessary."

"You're right, Brother," Heavenly Primogenitor agreed.

Heavenly Primogenitor ordered the Immortal of the South Pole to prepare his carriage while Lao Zi mounted his blue ox. As they went out, a red haze appeared everywhere and an unusual fragrance filled the air. They soon reached the Yellow River Trap.

"You three sisters come out to meet us at once!" Lao Zi demanded.

As bells sounded inside, the three sisters emerged. They stood before the two masters, neither bowing nor offering any greetings.

"How dare you be so insolent! Even your master would bow when meeting us!" Lao Zi reprimanded them.

曰：“吾拜截教主，不知有玄都。上不尊，下不敬，礼之常耳。”玄都大法师大喝曰：“这畜生好胆大，出言触犯天颜！快进阵！”三位娘娘转身入阵。老子把牛领进阵来。元始沉香辇也进了阵。白鹤童儿在后，齐进“黄河阵”来。不知三位娘娘性命如何，且听下回分解。



“We have our own master, and we don’t acknowledge Mount Xuandu. As you don’t show us any respect, we won’t honor you. This is common custom,” Green Firmament replied.

“You brazen beast! Just go in.”

The three sisters turned and entered their trap, followed by Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor. White Crane Lad followed behind.

What became of the three sisters? If you want to know, please read the next chapter.



## 第五十一回

### 子牙劫营破闻仲

诗曰：

昔日行兵夸首相，今逢时数念应差。风雷阵设如奔浪，  
龙虎营排似落花。纵有“黄河”成个事，其如苍赤更堪  
嗟。劝君莫待临龙地，同向灵台玩物华。

话说二位天尊进阵。老子见众门人似醉而未醒，沉沉酣睡，呼吸有鼻息之声。又见八卦台上有四五个五体不全之人，老子叹曰：“可惜千载功行，一旦俱成画饼！”且说琼霄见老子进阵来观望，便放起金蛟剪去。那剪在空中挺折如剪，头交头，尾交尾，落将下来。老子在牛背上看见金蛟剪落下来，把袖口望上一迎，那剪子如芥子落于大海之中，毫无动静。碧霄又把混元金斗祭起；老子把风火蒲团往空中一丢，唤黄巾力士：“将此斗带上玉虚宫去！”三位娘娘大呼曰：“罢了！收吾之宝，岂肯干休！”三位齐下台来，仗剑飞来直取。——难道天尊与他动手，——老子将乾坤图抖开，命黄巾力士：“将云霄裹去了，压在麒麟崖下！”力士得旨，将图裹去。不题。且言琼霄仗剑而来。元始命白鹤童子把三宝玉如意祭在空中，正中琼霄顶上，打开天灵。——一道灵魂往封神台去了。碧霄大呼曰：“道德千年，一旦被你等所伤，诚为枉修功行！”用一口飞剑来取元始天尊，被白鹤童子一如意，把飞剑打落尘埃。元始袖中取一盒，揭开盖，丢起空



## Chapter 51

### Grand Tutor Wen's Disastrous Defeat

In the Yellow River Trap, Lao Zi saw his disciples lying on the ground in a snoring, drunken-like stupor. On the platform were a few mutilated corpses. He sighed. "What a pity it is. Their thousand years of effort has all been in vain."

Jade Firmament watched him walk around the trap and then cast up the Golden Dragon Scissors. As the dragons locked their tails together, the scissors fell snapping through the air. Lao Zi looked up from his ox and waited until they were almost on him. He then held up one of his sleeves, and they disappeared inside without trace, like a mustard seed falling into the ocean.

At this, Green Firmament threw the Universe Muddling Dipper into the air. Lao Zi immediately cast up his fire-and-wind straw cushion and ordered his yellow-scarved genie, "Seize the dipper and take it to the Jade Emptiness Palace."

The three sisters shouted indignantly, "Enough! You can't get away with stealing our magic weapons!"

They leapt down from the platform and attacked Lao Zi with their swords. As it was beneath him to engage the sisters in hand-to-hand combat, Lao Zi unrolled his Map of the Eight Diagrams and ordered his yellow-scarved genie, "Wrap up High Firmament and put her beneath the Unicorn Cliff."

The genie immediately carried out his command.

When Jade Firmament lunged at him, Heavenly Primogenitor ordered White Crane Lad to cast up his Three Treasure Lucky Jade Scepter into the sky. It knocked open Jade Firmament's skull.

Green Firmament screamed bitterly, "All we have achieved is lost! I won't give up!"

As she tried to assault Heavenly Primogenitor, her sword was knocked off by White Crane Lad with the Lucky Scepter. Heavenly Primogenitor







中，把碧霄连人带鸟装在盒内；不一会化为血水。——一道灵魂也往封神台去了。有诗为证：

修道千年岛内成，殷勤日夜炼无明。无端排下“黄河阵”，气化清风损七情。

话说三位娘娘已绝。菡芝仙同彩云仙子还在八卦台上，看二位天尊。元始既破“黄河阵”，众弟子都睡在地上。老子用中指一指，地下雷鸣一声，众弟子猛然惊醒；连杨戩、金木二吒齐齐跃起，拜伏在地。老子乘牛转出，回至篷上。众门人拜毕。元始天尊曰：“今日诸弟子削了顶上三花，消了胸中五气，遭逢劫数，自是难逃。况今姜尚有四九之惊，尔等要往来相佐；再赐尔等纵地金光法，可日行数千里。”又问：“尔等镇洞之宝？”“俱装在混元金斗内。”命：“取来还你等。如今留南极仙翁破‘红沙阵’，我同道兄暂回玉虚宫。白鹤童子，陪你师父同回。”遂命“返驾”。众门人排班送二位天尊回驾。

且说彩云仙子怒气不息。菡芝仙见破了“黄河阵”，退老营来见闻太师，太师已知阵破，玉虚门人都救回去了，心下十分不安，忙具表遣官往朝歌求救；又发火牌，调三山关总兵官邓九公往麾下听用。

且说燃灯在篷上与众道者默坐。南极仙翁打点破“红沙阵”。子牙到九十九日上，来见燃灯，口称：“老师，明日正该破阵。”次日，众仙步行排班，南极仙翁同白鹤童儿至阵前，大呼曰：“吾师来会‘红沙阵’主！”张天君从阵里出来，甚是凶恶，跨鹿提剑，杀奔前来。抬头见是南极仙翁，张绍曰：“道兄，你是为善最乐之士，亦非破阵之流，此阵只



opened a small casket which sucked her in. In a minute she and her bird were reduced to blood. Her soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Though the three sisters were already dead, Celestial Lotus and Pretty Cloud remained on the platform watching the two grand masters break the Yellow River Trap. Lao Zi pointed downwards with one finger, and a peal of thunder burst out of the ground. This startled all the disciples out of their sleep, and even Yang Jian, Jinzha and Muzha jumped up. They all knelt and kowtowed. Lao Zi rode out on his ox and returned to the reed pavilion with Heavenly Primogenitor.

After the disciples had offered their greetings, Heavenly Primogenitor said, "It's a great pity that you've all lost the three divine flowers you so assiduously worked for. But it's been determined by fate and is difficult to avoid. However, there are still many hardships ahead for Jiang Shang, and he will still need your help from time to time. I'll teach you to travel on a golden light beam that'll enable you to cover thousands of *li* a day." He ordered that all the magic weapons in the Universe Muddling Dipper be returned to them and then said, "The Immortal of the South Pole will remain here until he's broken the Red Sand Trap. I'll return to the Jade Emptiness Palace with my brother. White Crane Lad, come back with your master."

Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor then left West Qi and returned to their palaces. As Pretty Cloud fumed with rage, Celestial Lotus went to see Grand Tutor Wen and told him that the Yellow River Trap had been broken. Grand Tutor Wen worried over the situation. He sent a messenger to Zhaoge to request reinforcements and ordered Deng Jiugong at Sanshan pass to come to West Qi.

The next day, the Immortal of the South Pole went out to the front with other immortals. White Crane Lad cried at the top of his voice, "My master's here to meet the creator of the Red Sand Trap."

Heavenly Master Zhang charged out on his deer brandishing his sword. When he found that it was the Immortal of the South Pole, he said, "Brother, you're known for your benevolence and aren't qualified to break this trap. I'm afraid your life will end instantly when you come in contact with the sand."



怕你：

可惜修就神仙体，若遇红沙顷刻休！”

话说南极仙翁曰：“张绍，你不必多言。此阵今日该是我破。料你也不能久立于阳世。”张天君大怒，纵鹿冲来，把剑往仙翁顶上就劈。傍有白鹤童子将三宝玉如意赴面交还。来往未及数合，张天君掩一剑，望阵中就走。白鹤童子随后跟来。南极仙翁同入阵内。张绍下鹿，上台，把红沙抓了数片，望仙翁打来。南极仙翁将五火七翎扇把红沙一搨，红沙一去，影迹无踪。张天君掇起一斗红沙望下一泼。仙翁把扇子连搨数搨，其沙去无影向。南极仙翁曰：“张绍今日难逃此厄！”张绍欲待逃遁，早被白鹤童子祭起玉如意，正中张绍后心，打翻跌下台来。白鹤童子手起一剑，即时血染衣襟。正是：

未曾破阵先数定，怎脱封神台下来。

且说南极仙翁破了“红沙阵”，白鹤童子见三穴内有人。南极仙翁发一雷，惊动哪吒、雷震子，俱将身一跃，睁开眼看见南极仙翁，知是昆仑山师尊来救护。哪吒急来扶武王，武王已是死了。坐下逍遥马，百日都坏了。燃灯在外面见破了“红沙阵”，子牙催骑入阵，来看武王时，已是死了。子牙哭声不止。燃灯曰：“不妨。前日入阵时，有三道符印护其前后心体；武王该有百日之灾，吾自有处治。”命雷震子背负武王尸骸，放在篷下，用水沐浴。燃灯将一粒丹药用水研化，灌入武王口内。有两个时辰，武王睁眼观看，方知回生；见子牙众门人立于左右，王曰：“孤今日又见相父也！”子牙差左右听用官，送武王回宫。



“Zhang Shao, don’t waste your words. This trap is destined to fall in my hands. I don’t think that you’re going to live any longer!”

Zhang Shao spurred his deer forward in anger to attack the immortal with his sword. The immortal did not move but let White Crane Lad resist the attack with the Lucky Jade Scepter. After several rounds, Heavenly Master Zhang ran into the Red Sand Trap, closely pursued by his two opponents.

Zhang Shao dismounted from his deer and ascended the platform. He picked up some red sand and threw it at the Immortal of the South Pole, who fanned it away with his Five Fire and Seven Fowl Fan. Heavenly Master Zhang poured down several pints of red sand but this all disappeared too.

“Zhang Shao,” the Immortal of the South Pole shouted, “you’ll find it difficult to escape today!”

It was already too late for Zhang Shao to run away. White Crane Lad cast up the Lucky Jade Scepter into the air and struck him on the back, knocking him down from the platform. White Crane Lad darted forward and struck off his head, and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

The trap was rendered powerless, and the immortal and White Crane Lad saw that there were three men lying in a pit. The Immortal of the South Pole released a bolt of thunder, which startled Nezha and Thunderbolt out of their sleep. They sprang up, opened their eyes, and saw the Immortal of the South Pole before them. They realized that their master on Mount Kunlun had sent him to rescue them.

Nezha hurriedly bent down to help King Wu stand up, but he was already dead and his horse had already decayed beneath him. Jiang Ziya came up and wept bitterly when he learned of the death of King Wu. Burning Lamp said, “Never mind! I stamped three charms on his breast and back before he entered the Red Sand Trap. He was destined to suffer for 100 days, but now I’ll restore him to life.”

He ordered Thunderbolt to carry the corpse into the reed pavilion. After the body was cleaned, Burning Lamp took a pill of elixir, dissolved it in water, and poured the liquid down King Wu’s throat. After about two hours, King Wu opened his eyes and found Jiang Ziya and his disciples standing before him. “How glad I am to see father-prime minister and the rest of you again!”

Jiang Ziya immediately ordered the attendants to help King Wu back to his palace.



且说燃灯与众道者曰：“列位道友，贫道今破十阵，与子牙代劳已完，众位各归府。只留广成子，你去桃花岭阻闻仲，不许他进佳梦关；又留赤精子，你去燕山阻闻仲，不许他进五关。二位速去！又留慈航道人在此，以下请回。”众道人方才出篷欲去，忽云中子至。——燃灯请上篷，——打稽首曰：“列位道兄请了！”众道者曰：“云中子乃福德之仙也，今不犯‘黄河阵’，真乃大福之士。”云中子曰：“奉敕炼通天神火柱，绝龙岭等候闻太师。”燃灯曰：“你速去，不可迟。”云中子去了。燃灯把印剑交与子牙。燃灯曰：“我贫道也往绝龙岭，助云中子一臂之力。吾今去也！”止留慈航同子牙在篷子。子牙传令：“把麾下众将调来。”南宫适等齐至篷前，见姜子牙行礼毕，立于两傍。子牙传：“明日开队，与闻太师共决雌雄。”众将得令。不题。

且说闻太师见十绝阵俱破，只等朝歌救兵；又望三山关邓九公来助；与彩云仙子、菡芝仙共议。二仙曰：“不料三仙遭厄，两位师伯下山，故有今日之挫。把吾截教不如灰草。”闻太师长吁一声。忽听得周营炮响，喊声大震，来报曰：“姜子牙请太师答话。”闻太师大怒曰：“吾不速拿姜尚报仇，誓不俱生！”遂遣邓、辛、张、陶，分于左右；二女仙齐出辕门。太师跨墨麒麟，如烟火而来。子牙曰：“闻太师，你征战三年有余，雌雄未见。你如今再摆十绝阵否？”传令：“把吊着的赵江斩了！”武吉把赵江斩在阵前。闻太师大叫一



Burning Lamp said to all the immortals, "As we've broken the ten traps, our work on behalf of Jiang Ziya is finished and we may all return to our mountains. Master Grand Completion, you go to Mount Peach Blossom to stop Wen Zhong from entering the Good Dream Pass. Master Pure Essence, you go to Mount Yan to stop him from entering the five passes. Merciful Navigation, you stay here. The rest may leave at once."

As they were all about to leave, Master of the Clouds arrived. Burning Lamp took him inside.

"Master of the Clouds! You're really fortunate not to have suffered in the Yellow River Trap," the immortals said enviously.

"I was ordered to refine the Skyscraper Pillars of Divine Fire and await Grand Tutor Wen at Dragon Extinction Peak," Master of the Clouds explained. "You must go at once," Burning Lamp told him.

After his departure, Burning Lamp returned all the seals of office to Jiang Ziya. "I'll go and help him," he said as he parted.

When only Merciful Navigation was left, Jiang Ziya commanded that all the generals gather for orders. Soon Nangong Kuo and other generals had lined up on either side of him. "We'll have to fight a decisive battle with Grand Tutor Wen tomorrow. Make full preparations," Jiang Ziya ordered.

Filled with despair, Grand Tutor Wen anxiously awaited reinforcements from Zhaoge and General Deng Jiugong at Sanshan Pass. He held a conference with Pretty Cloud and Celestial Lotus.

"We never imagined that the three sisters would meet with disaster! They look upon us as dirt," the two ladies complained.

A depressed Grand Tutor Wen was sighing when he heard the thunder of cannon fire and the roar of war cries. A messenger rushed in. "Jiang Ziya demands to meet the Grand Tutor on the front."

"I can't live much longer if I don't take him alive," Grand Tutor Wen said angrily.

Riding on his pure black unicorn, Grand Tutor Wen rushed out with Deng, Zhang, Xin and Tao at both sides and the two ladies following behind.

"Grand Tutor Wen! It's been three years, yet you still can't get the upper hand. Have you more traps to show us today?" Jiang Ziya asked.

He ordered General Wu Ji to bring over Zhao Jiang, who was still hanging over the reed pavilion, and decapitated him in front of the Grand Tutor.

Grand Tutor Wen roared and rushed at Jiang Ziya with his staves but was met by Huang Tianhua. Celestial Lotus seethed with anger and hatred. She strode out brandishing her sword to help the Grand Tutor but was met by Yang Jian. When Pretty Cloud rushed out with her sword,



声，提鞭冲杀过来。有黄天化催开玉麒麟，用两柄银锤挡住闻太师。菡芝仙在辕门，怒从心上起，恶向胆边生，纵步举宝剑，来助闻太师。这壁厢杨戩纵马摇枪，前来敌住了菡芝仙。彩云仙子见杨戩敌住了菡芝仙，仗剑冲杀过来。哪吒大喝一声：“休冲吾阵！”脚登风火轮，战住了彩云仙子。邓、辛、张、陶四将齐出。这壁厢武成王黄飞虎、南宫适、武吉、辛甲四将来迎。两家这场大战：

两阵咚咚擂战鼓，五色幡摇飞霞舞，长弓硬弩护辕门，铁壁铜墙齐队伍。太师九云冠上火焰生；黄天化金锁甲上霞光吐。女仙是大海波中戏水龙；杨戩似万仞山前争食虎。搜搜刀举，好似金睛怪兽吐征云；恹恹长枪，一似巨角蛟龙争戏水。鞭来锤架，银花响亮迸寒光；枪去剑迎，玉焰生风飘瑞雪。刀劈甲，甲中刀，如同山前猛虎斗狻猊；枪刺盔，盔中枪，一个深潭玉龙降水兽。使斧的天边皓月皎光辉；使铜的万道长虹飞紫电。使枪的紫气照长空，使刀的庆云离顶上。有诗为证：

大战一场力不加，亡人死者乱如麻。只为君王安社稷，不辨贤愚血染沙。

且说子牙大战闻太师。菡芝仙把风袋抖开，一阵黑风卷起。不知慈航道人有定风珠，随取珠将风定住，风不能出。子牙忙祭起打神鞭，正中菡芝仙顶护，打得脑浆迸出，死于非命。——一道灵魂往封神台去了。彩云仙子听得阵后有响声，回头看时，早被哪吒一枪，刺中肩甲，倒翻在地；后加一枪，结果了性命。——也往封神台去了。武成王大战张节，黄飞虎枪法如神，大吼一声，把张节一枪刺于马下。



she was intercepted by Nezha. Deng, Xin, Zhang and Tao ran forward to join in and met Huang Feihu, Nangong Kuo, Wu Ji and Xin Jia. The two sides fought fiercely like tigers and lions.

In the midst of the fighting, Celestial Lotus opened her Wind Sack and released a violent black wind. Merciful Navigation, however, quickly drew out the Wind Conquering Pearl and calmed it to nothing. The enraged Jiang Ziya cast his Staff for Beating Gods into the air and struck Celestial Lotus on the head, smashing her skull. As she died, her soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

When Pretty Cloud heard the noise and turned her head to look, she was stabbed in the shoulder by Nezha. She fell to the ground. Nezha stabbed a second time and she died in a pool of blood. Her soul also flew to the Terrace of Creation. Huang Feihu, wielding his lance with divine skill, pierced Zhang Jie through the heart and sent him tumbling from his horse. His soul, too, wandered off to the Terrace of Creation.

At the death of the ladies and Zhang Jie, Grand Tutor Wen lost heart. He gave up ground and ran back to his camp with Generals Deng Zhong, Xin Huan and Tao Rong in very low spirits.





——一灵也往封神台去了。闻太师力战黄天化，又见折了三人，无心恋战，掩一鞭，暂回老营。止有邓忠、辛环、陶荣三将；见今日又损了张节，四将中少了一人，十分不悦。

且言子牙全胜回兵，慈航作辞回山。子牙进城，陞银安殿，传令：“众将用过午饭，上殿听点。”众将领令。子牙进内室，写柬帖，只至午未未初，银安殿上打聚将鼓响，众将上殿，参谒听令。子牙令黄天化领柬帖、令箭；又命哪吒领柬帖、令箭；雷震子也领柬帖、令箭：“你们三路行，只须……如此如此。”子牙令：“黄飞虎等领兵五千冲左哨；南宫适等领兵五千冲右哨。”又令：“金吒、木吒、龙须虎冲辕门；四贤、八俊随于后队接应。辛甲、辛免、太颠、闷夭、祁恭、尹籍领三千人马，大呼曰：‘归顺西岐有德之君，坐享安康；扶助成汤无道之主，灭伦绝纪。早归周地，不致身亡！’先散开成汤人马，以孤其势。大功只在今晚可成。”又令：“杨戩领三千人马，先烧彼之粮草。彼军不战自乱。你如烧了粮草，截战后，再往绝龙岭助雷震子成功。”杨戩领令去讫。正是：

挖下战坑擒虎豹，满天张网等蛟龙。

不表子牙前来劫营，且言闻太师损兵折将，在帐中独坐无言。猛然当中神目看见，西岐一股杀气直冲中军，太师笑曰：“姜尚今日得胜，乘机劫吾大寨。”急令：“邓忠、陶荣在左哨；辛环在右哨；吉立、余庆领长箭手守后营粮草。吾在中军，看谁进辕门！”太师准备夜战。当时天晚，日落西山。将近一鼓时分，子牙把众将调出，四面攻营。人马暗暗到了成汤大辕门，左右有灯笼为号，一声信炮，三军呐喊，



Merciful Navigation bade farewell to Jiang Ziya and returned to his mountain. Jiang Ziya then entered the city and went to the Silver Security Court. He gave an order, "After lunch everyone must come here to receive orders."

Jiang Ziya then went to his study and prepared written orders until two o'clock in the afternoon when the drums were sounded to summon his generals. He issued the written instructions and tallies. He ordered Huang Tianhua, Nezha, and Thunderbolt to attack from three different directions. He ordered Huang Feihu to attack from the left with 5,000 soldiers and Nangong Kuo from the right with another 5,000 soldiers. Jinzha, Muzha and Dragon Beard Tiger were to lead the frontal attack while the other generals waited, ready to provide reinforcements whenever needed. Finally, he ordered Xin Jia, Xin Mian, Tai Dian, Hong Yao, Qi Gong and Yin Ji to lead 3,000 soldiers before the Shang camp, shouting, "To live in peace and happiness, follow King Wu; if you support the tyrant, you'll destroy yourselves; join us now to save yourselves from death." The Shang army would thus be disheartened and leave Grand Tutor Wen isolated.

Jiang Ziya also ordered Yang Jian to burn the food supplies in the enemy's barns. "After you've finished, make all haste to the Dragon Extinction Peak to help Thunderbolt."

Grand Tutor Wen was sitting alone in his camp when he saw with his middle eye that a strong air of death was hanging over West Qi City. He smiled. "As Jiang Shang won today, he's sure to make a night raid."

He immediately ordered Deng Zhong and Tao Rong to guard the left and Xin Huan the right. Ji Li and Yu Qing were to command the archers and protect the barns in the back camp. Grand Tutor Wen himself would guard the camp gate. Everything was prepared to cope with a night raid.



鼓声大振，杀声齐起。怎见得这场夜战：

征云笼四野，杀气锁长空。天昏地暗交兵，雾惨云愁厮杀。初时战斗，灯笼火把相迎；次后交攻，剑戟枪刀乱刺。离宫不朗，左右军卒乱奔；坎地无光，前后将兵不正。昏昏沉沉，月朦胧，不辨谁家宇宙；渺渺漫漫，灯惨淡，难分那个乾坤。征云紧护，拚命士卒往来相持；战鼓忙敲，舍死将军纷纷对敌。东西混战，剑戟交加；南北相持，旌旗掩映。狼烟火炮，似雷声霹雳惊天；虎节龙旂，如闪电翻腾上下。摇旗小校，黄昏里战战兢兢；擂鼓儿郎，如履冰俱难措手。周兵勇猛，纣卒奔逃。只见：滔滔流血坑渠满，叠叠横尸数里平。有诗为证：劫营功业妙无穷，三路冲营建大功。只为武王洪福广，名垂青史羨姜公。

话说子牙督前军，冲开了七层围子，呐一声喊，杀进大辕门。闻太师忙上了墨麒麟，提鞭冲来，大呼曰：“姜尚，今番与你定个雌雄！”提鞭来取。子牙仗剑交还。金吒在左，木吒在右，龙须虎发手放出石头打将来，如飞蝗骤雨。成汤军卒如何招架得开，多是着伤。闻太师酣战在中军。黄飞虎杀进左营，有邓忠、陶荣大喝曰：“黄飞虎慢来！”黄家父子兵把二将困在左营。邓忠抖精神，使开板斧，陶荣显本事，双铜忙轮，二将大战在左营。南宫适冲进右营，只见辛环大叫：“南宫适休走！”把肉翅飞起。西岐数将战住辛环。灯球火把，照耀如同白昼。黄昏厮杀，黑夜交兵，惨惨阴风，咚咚战鼓。闻太师正征战之间，子牙祭起打神鞭。闻太师当中神目看见，疾忙躲时，早中左肩臂。龙须虎发石乱打，三军



As darkness fell, Jiang Ziya sent out all his generals to take up their positions quietly round the enemy camp. At the roar of a cannon shot, the attack began with the shouts of men and the beating of drums. Jiang Ziya and his vanguard broke through seven defence lines to the camp gate. Hurriedly mounting his pure black unicorn, Grand Tutor Wen rushed forward brandishing his staves. "Jiang Shang, I must fight you to the end!"

With Jinzha on his left and Muzha on his right, Jiang Ziya met the assault with his sword. Dragon Beard Tiger hurled stones and rocks like a plague of locusts, seriously wounding the soldiers of the Shang army. Grand Tutor Wen fought in the central camp. When Huang Feihu was storming the left camp, he met Deng Zhong and Tao Rong. Though Huang Feihu and his sons had them completely surrounded, Deng and Tao resisted desperately.

When Nangong Kuo approached the right camp, Xin Huan flew up into the air, shouting, "Don't run away, Nangong Kuo!" and swooped down to attack him. He was met by several generals of West Qi, carrying torches and lanterns that lit up the battlefield as bright as day.

Grand Tutor Wen was fighting valiantly when Jiang Ziya cast up his Staff for Beating Gods. Though the Grand Tutor saw it with his middle eye, it was already too late for him to dodge, and it struck him on the left shoulder. Meanwhile, the soldiers of the Shang army were finding it impossible to hold their positions against Dragon Beard Tiger. The whole army was thrown into chaos. Shouting war cries, the Zhou army surged forward and encircled their enemy. How could Grand Tutor Wen possibly resist them?

Huang Tianxiang, the fourth son of Huang Feihu, fought with unsurpassable skill. Thrusting his lance like a dragon lashing its tail, he stabbed Tao Rong, throwing him from his horse. Unable to hold his posi-



驻扎不定；大队一乱，周兵呐喊，四面围裹上来。闻太师如何抵挡得住。黄飞虎有四子黄天祥等，年少勇猛，势不可当，展枪如龙摆尾，转换似鳞翻身。陶荣躲不及，早被一枪刺于马下。邓忠挡不住，只得败走。辛环见周兵势甚大，不敢恋战，知锋锐已挫，料不能取胜；又见后营火起，杨戩烧了粮草，军兵一乱，势不可解。只见火焰冲天，金蛇乱舞，周军锣鸣鼓响，只杀得鬼哭神号。闻太师大兵已败，又听得周兵四处大叫曰：“西岐圣主，天命维新。纣王无道，陷害万民。你等何不投西岐受享安康！何苦用力而为独夫，自取灭亡！”成汤军士在西岐日久，又见八百诸侯归周者甚众，兵乱不由主将，呐一声喊，走了一半。闻太师有力也无处使，有法也无处用。只见归降者漫散而去，不降者且战且走。且说周兵赶杀成汤败卒。怎见得：

赶上将连衣剥甲，逞着势顺手夺枪。铜敲鼻凹，锤打当胸。铜敲鼻凹，打的眉眼张开；锤打当胸，洞见心肝肺腑。连肩拽背着刀伤，肚腹分崩遭斧剁。锤打的利害，枪刺的无情。着箭的穿袍透铠，遇弹子鼻凹流红。逢叉俱丧魄，遇鞭碎天灵。愁云惨惨黯天关，急急逃兵寻活路。

闻太师兵败，且战且走。辛环飞在空中，保护太师，邓忠催住后队。一夜败有七十余里，至岐山脚下。子牙鸣金收队。正是：

三军踊跃欢声悦，姜相成功奏凯还。

话说闻太师败至岐山，收住败残人马，点视，止三万有余。太师又见折了陶荣，心中闷闷不语。邓忠曰：“太师，如今兵回那里？”闻太师问：“此处往那里去？”辛环曰：“此处往佳梦



tion, Deng Zhong had no choice but to flee. Sizing up the situation, Xin Huan realized that the Shang army was not only outnumbered but already beaten, and victory was impossible. Looking towards the back camp, he saw fierce flames and black smoke soaring into the air where Yang Jian had set fire to the grain stores. It was clear that the situation was hopeless.

As the Shang army retreated, the Zhou soldiers shouted from all sides, "The king of West Qi is a virtuous sage blessed by Heaven while King Zhou is a cruel tyrant, ruthless towards his people and forsaken by Heaven. Why don't you join us and live in happiness? Why are you still so foolish as to give up your lives for the tyrant?"

The Shang soldiers had been in West Qi for a long time and knew that most of the dukes had already made obeisance to the Zhou leadership. Hearing the shouting, about half of them deserted, and Grand Tutor Wen could do nothing to stop them. Many surrendered, and the rest returned to their homes.

Grand Tutor Wen retreated, fighting all along the way. Xin Huan protected him from the air while Deng Zhong guarded the rear. In the course of the night, he retreated seventy *li* to the foot of Mount Qi. Jiang Ziya ordered his men to stop the pursuit at the mountain, and his army returned in victory to the beating of gongs.

After this fresh defeat, Grand Tutor Wen's army, once 300,000 strong, was now reduced to only 30,000. The Grand Tutor was particularly upset by the loss of General Tao Rong.

"Grand Tutor, where should we go now?" Deng Zhong asked.

"Where does this road lead to?"

"To Good Dream Pass," Xin Huan answered.

"Then we'll march to Good Dream Pass."

Alas for Grand Tutor Wen! His soldiers had been massacred in large numbers. Immortals and generals had been killed. All his dignity and prestige had been lost. As they marched along, they all sighed at their pitiful plight.

In the course of the march, they saw a yellow pennant on Mount Peach Blossom. Under the pennant stood a Taoist, whom Grand Tutor



关去。”太师道：“就往佳梦关去。”催动人马前进。可怜兵败将亡，其威甚挫，着实没兴。一路上人人叹息，个个吁嗟。人马正行间，只见桃花岭上一首黄幡，幡下有一道人，乃是广成子。闻太师向前问曰：“广成子，你在此有甚么事？”广成子答曰：“特为你，在此等候多时。你今违天逆命，助恶灭仁，致损生灵，害陷忠良，是你自取。我今在此，也不与你为仇，只不许你过桃花岭。任凭你往别处去便罢。”闻太师大怒曰：“吾今不幸，兵败将亡；敢欺吾太甚！”催开墨麒麟，提鞭就打。广成子撒步向前，用宝剑急架相还。未及三五合，广成子取番天印祭于空中。太师一见，知印利害，拨转麒麟望西便走。邓忠跟着太师退回。辛环曰：“太师方才怎的怕他，便自退兵？”太师曰：“广成子番天印，吾等招架不住。若中此印，倘或无生，如何是好！且自避他。只如今不得过此岭，却往那里去？”邓忠曰：“不若进五关往燕山去。”太师只得调转人马，往燕山大路而来。太师晓行夜住，不一日，人马行至燕山。猛然抬头，见太华山上竖一首黄幡，赤精子立于幡下。太师催麒麟至前。赤精



Wen identified as Master Grand Completion.

“What are you doing here, Grand Completion?” Grand Tutor Wen asked.

“I’m waiting for you. Don’t you know that you’re acting against the will of Heaven. You help the wicked and destroy the benevolent. You bring suffering to the people. You’ve sown the seeds of your own destruction. I’m here now with no enmity towards you. It’s just that I can’t allow you to pass through Mount Peach Blossom. You’re at liberty to go any other way. Now please leave at once.”

“How dare you insult me so rudely!” Grand Tutor Wen shouted angrily.

He spurred his unicorn forward and attacked the immortal with his staves. The immortal answered with his sword. After five rounds, Master Grand Completion tossed his Heaven Overturning Stamp high into the air.

Grand Tutor Wen knew that the stamp was invincible. He pulled his unicorn round and fled quickly westward.

“Why do you fear him so much, Grand Tutor, that you give up the fight?” Xin Huan asked.

“How can I resist his powerful Heaven Overturning Stamp? All we can do is avoid him so that he can’t harm us. Which way shall we go now?”

“Let’s go to Mount Yan and then on through the five passes,” Deng Zhong suggested.

They traveled by day and rested by night. Several days later, when they approached Mount Taihua, Grand Tutor Wen found to his surprise that there was another yellow pennant on the mountain. Master Pure Essence was standing below. Grand Tutor Wen rode up to him.

“Grand Tutor Wen, you mustn’t go on to Mount Yan. By order of Burning Lamp, I’m here to stop your advance through the five passes. Return where you came from as quickly as possible.”

Grand Tutor Wen was so furious that columns of smoke gushed from





子曰：“来者乃闻太师。你不必往此燕山去。此处非汝行之地。吾奉燃灯命，在此阻你，不许你进五关。原是那里来，还是那里去。”太师只气得三尸魂暴躁，七窍内生烟，大呼曰：“赤精子，吾乃是截教门人，总是一道，何得欺吾太甚！我虽兵败，拚得一死，定与你做一场，岂肯擅自干休！”将麒麟一夹，四蹄登开，使开金鞭，神光灿烂。赤精子抖动麻鞋，挥开宝剑，鞭剑相交。未及五七合，赤精子取阴阳镜出来。不知闻太师性命如何，且听下回分解。

his nostrils and eyes and flames burst from his mouth and ears. He lost his temper. "Pure Essence! I'm a disciple of Jie Taoism. Though you and I are from different sects, our origins are one and the same. How can you insult me so! Though I've suffered defeat, I won't yield now."

Brandishing his staves, he spurred his pure black unicorn into attack. Master Pure Essence met him with his sword. After six rounds, Master Pure Essence took out his *Yin Yang* Mirror, ready to turn it against Grand Tutor Wen.

What became of the Grand Tutor? If you want to know, please read the next chapter.







## 第五十二回

### 绝龙岭闻仲归天

诗曰：

几回奏捷建奇功，纣主荒淫幸女红。入国已无封谏表，  
到山应有泪江枫。岂知魂梦烽烟绝，且听哀猿夜月空。  
纵有丹心成往事，年年杜宇泣东风。

话说闻太师见赤精子拿出阴阳镜，把麒麟一磕，跳出圈子外，往燕山下退去。赤精子也不来赶。太师气得面黄气喘，默默无言。辛环曰：“太师，两条路既不容行，不若还往黄花山，进青龙关去罢。”太师沉吟良久，曰：“吾非不能遁回朝歌见天子，再整大兵，以图恢复。只人马累赘，岂可舍此身行。”只得把人马调回，往青龙关大路而行。未及半日，见前边一枝人马驻扎咽喉之处。闻太师传令：“安营，不意前有伏兵。”营不曾安定，只听得一声炮响，两杆红旗展动，哪吒脚踏风火轮，捻火尖枪，大呼曰：“闻太师休想回去！此处乃是你归天之地！”太师大怒，急得三只眼中射出金光，骂曰：“姜尚欺吾太甚！此处理伏着不堪小辈，欺藐天朝大臣！”提鞭，纵麒麟飞来直取。哪吒火尖枪急架相还。鞭枪并举，一场大战。只见：

阴霾迷四野，冷气逼三阳。这壁厢旌旗耀彩，反令日月无光；那壁厢戈戟腾辉，致使儿郎丧胆。金鞭叱咤闪威风；神枪出没施妙用。闻太师忠心；三太子赤胆。只杀



## Chapter 52

### Grand Tutor Wen's Death

As Master Pure Essence took out his *Yin Yang* Mirror, Grand Tutor Wen quickly spurred his unicorn out of combat and fled the mountain. Master Pure Essence made no attempt to chase him. The Grand Tutor was so angry that his face turned yellow and his breath came in gasps, but he didn't say a word.

"Grand Tutor! As we cannot get through here, let's return to Yellow Flower Mountain and enter through the Green Dragon Pass," Xin Huan suggested.

Grand Tutor Wen pondered his suggestion for a while. "The way is difficult, especially for the whole army. I can easily return to Zhaoge by myself and mobilize a new army. But how can I leave you all behind?"

He had no choice but to set off with his troops for the Green Dragon Pass. After half a day's march, he found an army blocking their path. He halted and gave an order, "There's an ambush ahead. Prepare for combat."

Before they could even array themselves, cannon fire was heard and red flags were seen waving in the air. Nezha sped up on his Wind-Fire Wheels. "Grand Tutor Wen! Don't fancy that you can return home. This is where you'll meet your death!"

Grand Tutor Wen was so furious that a golden light flashed from his three eyes. "Jiang Shang has gone too far this time! How dare he offend me, His Majesty's most supreme minister, with this little whippersnapper!"

Raising his staves, he urged his unicorn forward to attack Nezha, and





得空中无鸟过，山内虎狼奔，飞沙走石乾坤黑，播土扬尘宇宙昏。

话说闻太师与邓忠、辛环、吉立、余庆把哪吒裹在垓心。哪吒那里惧他，使开一条枪，怎见得利害，有赞为证，赞曰：

枪是邠州铁，炼成一段钢，落在能工手，造成丈八长。

刺虎穿胸连树倒，降魔锋利似秋霜，大将逢之翻下马，

冲营蹀阵士俱亡。展放光芒天地暗，吐吞寒雾日无光。

哪吒抖搜神威，酣战五将，大叫一声，把吉立刺于马下；忙把风火轮登出阵来，取乾坤圈祭在空中，正中邓忠肩甲，翻下鞍鞦，被哪吒复一枪，结果了性命，——二道灵魂俱往封神台去了。闻太师见又折了邓忠、吉立二将，十分懊恼，不觉失措，无心恋战，夺路而走。哪吒大杀一阵，截断后面一半人马，“愿降者免死！”众兵齐告曰：“愿归明主。”哪吒得获全胜，回西岐报功。不表。且说闻太师兵败前行，至晚点扎残兵，不足一万余人。太师升帐坐下，愧赧无地。自思曰：“吾自征伐，未尝挫锐。今日西征，致有片甲无存之辱。”辛环在侧曰：“太师且请宽慰，‘胜负乃兵家之常’，何必挂心。俟回朝再整大队人马，以复此仇未迟。太师还当自己保重。”次日，起人马望黄花山进发。行至巳牌时候，猛见前面红旗招展，号炮喧天，见一将金甲红袍，坐玉麒麟上，使两柄银锤，刺斜而来，大呼曰：“奉姜丞相令，等候多时！今兵败将亡，眼见独力难支，天命已定。此处不降，更待何时！”闻太师见黄天化阻住去路，大怒，骂曰：“好反叛逆贼，敢出此言欺吾！”催开墨麒麟，单鞭力战。黄天化鞭锤相架，战在山前。但见：



the latter returned the blow with his lance. Soon Deng Zhong, Xin Huan, Ji Li and Yu Qing came up to help him. The five of them encircled Nezha, who fought with desperate courage. Before long, Nezha stabbed Ji Li, throwing him from his horse, then leapt out of the circle. He cast his Universal Ring into the air and hit Deng Zhong on the shoulder, knocking him from his saddle. He quickly finished him off with a thrust of his lance. The souls of the two flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Grand Tutor Wen was greatly discouraged by the death of his generals. He lost heart and ran away, but the rear of his army was cut off by Nezha.

"Lay down your arms and save yourselves," Nezha and his soldiers shouted.

"We're willing to follow your virtuous king unconditionally," the Shang soldiers cried in one voice.

Nezha returned to West Qi in triumph.

Grand Tutor Wen marched onward with his defeated army. He counted his troops that evening and found that he had only 10,000 soldiers left. He sat alone in his tent, feeling utterly ashamed. "I've never suffered such a terrible defeat!"

"Don't worry, Grand Tutor. Victory and defeat are common in the life of a soldier. Let's return to Zhaoge now. We'll come back to get revenge for this humiliation," Xin Huan said to comfort him.

The next day, Grand Tutor Wen led his men toward Yellow Flower Mountain, but before they had traveled far, an army appeared in front of them. A young general on a jade unicorn rushed out. "By order of Prime Minister Jiang, I've been waiting here for you. You've suffered heavy casualties and can do nothing now with just a handful of men. Your doom is sealed by Heaven. Why don't you surrender?"

Grand Tutor Wen was enraged when he saw Huang Tianhua. "You rebel! How dare you insult me!"

Swinging his staves, he battled in front of the mountain with Huang





两阵鸣锣击鼓，三军呐喊摇旗。红幡招展振天雷，画戟轻翻豹尾。这一个舍命冲锋扶社稷；那一个拚生惯战定华夷。不是你生我死不相离，只杀得日月无光天地迷。

话说二人交锋，约有二三十合，有辛环气冲牛斗，余庆怒发冲冠，二将来助太师。黄天化见二将来助战，把玉麒麟跳出阵外就走。余庆不知好歹，随后追来。黄天化挂下双锤，取火龙标回首一标，打下落马而死。——一魂进封神台去了。辛环见余庆落马，大叫一声：“吾来了！”肉翅飞来，锤钻往顶上打来。辛环是上三路，黄天化锤是短兵器，招架上三路不好挡抵，把玉麒麟跳出圈子就走。——这玉麒麟乃是道德真君坐骑，足有风云，速如飞电。——辛环不见机，赶来。被黄天化将攒心钉发出，正中肉翅。辛环在空中吊将下来。闻太师见辛环失利，忙催动残兵，望东南败走。黄天化连胜二阵，也不追赶，领兵回西岐报功去了。且言闻太师见后无袭兵，领人马徐徐而行；又见折了余庆，辛环带伤，太师十分不乐，一路上思前想后。人马行至晚间，有一座高山在前，但见山景凄凉，太师坐下，不觉兜底上心，自己吟诗嗟叹。诗曰：

“回首青山两泪垂，三军凄惨更堪悲。当时只道旋师返，今日方知败卒疲。可恨天时难预料，堪嗟人事竟何之！眼前颠倒浑如梦，为国丹心总不移。”

话说闻太师作罢诗，神思不宁。三军造饭，辛环整理，次日回兵。将至二更，只听得山顶上响声大振，炮发如雷。闻太师出帐观看，见山上是姜子牙同武王在马上饮酒，左右诸将用手指曰：“山下闻太师败兵在此。”太师听说，性如烈火，上了墨麒麟，提鞭杀上山来。只见一声雷响，一人也不见了。闻太师乃是神目，左右观看，又不见影迹。太师咬牙深



Tianhua. After some twenty rounds, both Xin Huan and Yu Qing joined in. When he saw them, Huang Tianhua immediately turned his unicorn about and ran away. Yu Qing chased after him. As Yu Qing drew near, Huang hung his two hammers on the saddle, took out his Fire Dragon Javelin, and threw it straight at Yu Qing, who fell dead on the ground. His soul wandered to the Terrace of Creation.

Xin Huan roared, "Here I come!"

He soared into the air and attacked Huang from above. Huang Tianhua found it difficult to cope with him and leapt away quickly. Xin Huan chased him at high speed but was unexpectedly hit on the wing by a Heart Penetrating Nail and plummeted to the ground.

With one general dead and another wounded, Grand Tutor Wen fled toward the southeast. Huang Tianhua led his army back to West Qi. When the Grand Tutor saw that Huang Tianhua did not give chase, he slowed down to normal speed. He was angry at this further defeat and could not stop thinking about it as he rode along. At dusk he stopped before a bleak mountain and sat down to rest, his thoughts racing at random through his confused mind. With the help of Xin Huan, he had his soldiers set up camp there for the night. After supper he ordered his men to rest well so that they would be ready to march homeward at daybreak.

Near the second watch that night, however, roars like thunder startled everybody from their sleep. Cannons were being fired on the summit of the mountain. Grand Tutor Wen left the camp and saw King Wu and Jiang Ziya sitting on the mountain drinking happily. Some generals beside them were pointing and scoffing at him. "There he is, fleeing with his defeated army down there," they laughed.

This enraged him. He mounted his unicorn and rushed forward to attack King Wu and Jiang Ziya. But there was a deafening crash of thunder, and the figures on the mountain disappeared. He could not even see them when he looked with his divine third eye.

He gnashed his teeth in anger. He was pondering what to do when he



恨，立骑寻思。忽然山下一声炮响，人马势如云集，围困山下，只叫“休走了闻太师！”太师大怒，催骑杀下山来；及自至山下，一军一卒俱无。太师喘息不定，方欲算卜，又见山顶上大炮响，子牙与武王拍手大笑而言曰：“闻太师今日之败，把数年英雄尽丧于此，有何面目再返朝歌！”闻太师厉声大骂：“姬发匹夫，焉敢如此！”纵骑复杀上山来。将至半山凹里，猛然飞起雷震子。好凶恶！怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

两翅飞腾起怪风，发红脸靛势如熊。终南秘授神仙术，  
辅佐姬周立大功。

闻太师只顾山上，未防山凹里飞起雷震子，一棍照闻太师打来。太师措手不及，叫声“不好！”将身一闪，让个空。不防那金棍正中墨麒麟后胯上，打得此兽竟为两段。太师跌下地来，随借土遁去了。辛环大呼曰：“雷震子不要走！吾来了！”肉翅飞起，来战雷震子。不防杨戩暗祭哮天犬，一口把辛环的腿咬住了。雷震子一棍，正打着辛环顶门，死于非命。——也往封神台去了。雷震子获功回西岐去了。且说闻太师失了坐骑，自思：“不好归国。想吾三十万人马西征，大战三年有余，不料失机，止存败残人马数千，致有片甲无存之诮。连吾坐骑俱死，门人、副将俱绝……”又见辛环已死，只影单形。太师落下土遁，默坐沉吟；半晌，仰天叹曰：“天绝成汤！当今失政，致天心不顺，民怨日生。臣空有赤胆忠心，无能回其万一。此岂臣下征伐不用心之罪也！”太师坐到天明，复起身招集败残士卒，迤迳而行。又无粮草，士卒疲敝之甚，俱有饥色。猛然见一村舍，有簇人家。太师沉吟，饥不可行，乃命士卒：“向前去借他一顿饭，你等



heard cannon fire below him and saw a great army surrounding the foot of the mountain. The soldiers yelled, "Don't let Wen Zhong run away!"

Grand Tutor Wen ran down to meet them, ready to fight a fierce battle. Yet when he reached the foot of the mountain, there was not a single soldier to be seen. Gasping for breath and filled with doubt, he was about to make a divination and find out what had really happened when he once again heard the roar of cannons on the mountaintop. King Wu and Jiang Ziya were clapping their hands and laughing loudly.

"Look at Wen Zhong. He's lost all honor and dignity. How does he have the face to return to Zhaoge?" they taunted him.

"How dare you disdain me like this, you clod Ji Fa!" Grand Tutor Wen swore at the top of his voice.

He raced his unicorn up the mountain, but he had barely reached the middle of the slope when Thunderbolt flew out at him with his cudgel. With no time to defend himself, Grand Tutor Wen uttered a cry of dismay and dodged the blow. He was saved from death, but his unicorn took the whole force of the blow and was cut in two. He tumbled to the ground and fled on a cloud of dust.

"Don't go away, Thunderbolt! Here I come!" Xin Huan cried.

He flew up into the air to engage Thunderbolt but was caught off guard by Yang Jian's Sky Barking Hound, which bit into his thigh. As Xin Huan was distracted, Thunderbolt gave him a mighty blow with his cudgel, breaking open his skull. His soul flew to the Terrace of Creation. Thunderbolt returned victoriously to West Qi to report his success.

At the loss of his unicorn, Grand Tutor Wen was filled with despair. "How can I return to Zhaoge now? I took 300,000 soldiers to West Qi more than three years ago. How could I have imagined that I would lose all but a few thousand of them? All my generals and disciples have been sacrificed. Even my unicorn couldn't escape death!" He felt lonely after Xin Huan died, and sitting down, pondered his next step. After a long time, he raised his face to Heaven and sighed, "Heaven has forsaken the Shang Dynasty. Though I have been loyal, I can do nothing to change things. It's not because I haven't tried my hardest."

He got up at dawn, gathered the remnants of his soldiers, and marched



充饥。”众人向前观看，果然好个所在。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

竹篱密密，茅屋重重。参天野树迎门，曲水溪桥映户。道傍杨柳绿依依，园内花开香馥馥。夕照西沉，处处山林喧鸟雀；晚烟出灶，条条道径转牛羊。正是那：食饱鸡豚眠屋角，醉酣邻叟唱歌来。

话说军士来至庄前，问：“里面有人么？”忽然走出一位老叟，见是些残败军卒，忙问：“众位至小庄有何公干？”士卒曰：“吾等非是别人，乃是跟成汤闻太师老爷，因奉敕伐周，与姜尚交兵，失机而回；借你一饭充饥，后必有补。”那老人听罢，忙道：“快请太师老爷来。”众军士回去，禀太师曰：“前有一老人，专请老爷。”太师只得缓步行至庄前。老人忙倒身下拜，口称：“太师，小民有失迎迓，望乞恕罪。”太师亦以礼相答。老人忙躬身迎请太师里面坐。太师进里面坐下。老人急收拾饭，摆将出来。闻太师用了一餐，方收拾饭与众士卒吃了。歇宿一宵。次日，太师辞老叟，问曰：“你们姓甚么？昨日搅扰你家，久后好来谢你。”老人曰：“小民姓李，名吉。”闻太师分付左右记了。离了此间，同些士卒望青龙关大路而来，不觉迷踪失径。太师命军士站住，观看东、南、西、北。忽听林中伐木之声，见一樵人。太师忙令士卒，向前问那樵子。士卒向前问曰：“樵子，借问你一声。”樵子弃斧在地，上前躬身，口称：“列位有何事呼唤？”士卒曰：“我等是奉敕征西的；如今要往青龙关去。借问那条路近些？”樵子用手一指，“往西南上不过十五里，过白鹤墩，乃是青龙关大路。”士卒谢了樵子，来报与闻太



on along the winding paths. Without food supplies, all were tired and hungry. They soon came upon a village, and Grand Tutor Wen, too hungry to go any further, sent his men to beg for food. An old man came out when the soldiers entered the village. He examined them. "What important business brings you to this small village?"

"We are soldiers in Grand Tutor Wen's army. We've come here after being defeated by Jiang Shang. Would you be kind enough to give us some food? We'll certainly return your favor in the future," some of the soldiers said.

"Please invite Grand Tutor Wen to come here. He's most welcome," the old man promptly answered.

The soldiers returned to where the rest were waiting. "Grand Tutor! An old man living not far from here invites you to his house."

Grand Tutor Wen walked slowly to the village. The old man hastily knelt down. "Pardon me for not coming out earlier to meet Your Excellency."

Grand Tutor Wen returned the greetings and the old man bowed again and asked him to be seated. He set the table and brought in food. Only when the Grand Tutor had finished eating did the soldiers come to sit at the table. They put up in the village for the night. The next morning the Grand Tutor bade farewell to the old man. "What's your name? I'll someday return the kindness you showed me yesterday."

"My name's Li Ji, Your Excellency."

Grand Tutor Wen told his men to put the name on record, and they left the village. They took the highway directly to the Green Dragon Pass but soon lost their way. Grand Tutor Wen ordered his men to halt. They were looking around when they heard someone cutting wood in the forest, so he sent some men to ask the woodcutter for directions.

The woodcutter put down his axe and greeted them, "Welcome, sirs! What can I do for you?"

"We're going to the Green Dragon Pass. Could you tell us the shortest route there?"

The woodcutter pointed. "About fifteen *li* to the southwest is the White Crane Mound. There you'll find the highway to the Green Dragon Pass."

The soldiers thanked him and reported what he said to Grand Tutor Wen. The Grand Tutor ordered his men to march on toward the south-



师。太师命众人往西行，迤逦望前而走。——不知道这樵子乃是杨戩变化的，指闻太师往绝龙岭而来。

且说闻太师行过有二十里，看看至绝龙岭来。好险峻！但见：

巍巍峻岭，峯嶺峰峦。溪深涧陡，石梁桥天生险恶；壁峭崖悬，虎头石长就雄威。奇松怪柏若龙蟠；碧落丹枫如翠盖。云迷雾障，山巅直透九重霄；瀑布奔流，潺湲一泻千百里。真个是鸦雀难飞，漫道是人行避迹。烟岚障目，采药仙童怕险；荆榛塞野，打柴樵子难行。胡羊野马似穿梭，狡兔山牛如布阵。正是：草迷四野有精灵，奇险惊人多恶兽。

话说闻太师行至绝龙岭，方欲进岭，见山势险峻，心下甚是疑惑。猛抬头，见一道人穿水合道服，认的是终南山玉柱洞云中子。闻太师慌忙上前问曰：“道兄在此何干？”云中子曰：“贫道奉燃灯命，在此候兄多时。此处是绝龙岭，你逢绝地，何不归降？”闻太师大笑曰：“云中子，你把我闻仲当作稚子婴儿。怎言吾逢绝地，以此欺吾。你我莫非五行之术，在道通知。你今如此戏我，看你有何法治我！”云中子曰：“你敢到这个所在来？”太师就行。云中子用手发雷，平地下长出八根通天神火柱，高有三丈余，长圆有丈余，按八卦方位：乾、坎、艮、震、巽、离、坤、兑。闻太师站立当中，大呼曰：“你有何术，用此柱困我？”云中子发手雷鸣，将此柱震开，每一根柱内现出四十九条火龙，烈焰飞腾。闻太师大笑曰：“离地之精，人人会遁：火中之术，个个皆能。此术焉敢欺吾！”掐定避火诀，太师站于里面。怎见得好



west. Little did they know, however, that the woodcutter was none other than Yang Jian, who had transformed himself in order to deceive Grand Tutor Wen into taking the road to Dragon Extinction Peak.

After traveling some twenty *li*, Grand Tutor Wen and his men approached Dragon Extinction Peak. The mountain towered high above them, revealing precipitous cliffs and deep valleys. Rocks like the heads of tigers and cypress trees like coiling dragons covered the slopes. Clouds filled the air, and waterfalls rushed down at fantastic speeds. It was truly a daunting prospect for a lonely traveler. This was the home of wild goats and horses. One might find wicked spirits hidden among the grass and wild animals living in the caves where no immortal dared to dwell.

Noting the steep and perilous mountainside, Grand Tutor Wen became suspicious. He looked up, and to his surprise, saw a Taoist standing not far from him. When he recognized him as Master of the Clouds, he hurried over and asked, "Brother, what are you doing here?"

"By order of Burning Lamp, I've been waiting here for you, Brother. This is Dragon Extinction Peak, where you will die. Why don't you surrender at once!"

Grand Tutor Wen burst into laughter. "Master of the Clouds! Do you take me for a baby? You can't deceive me by saying that I'll die. Both of us know how to travel on the five elements. We'll see what you can do to me!"

"Dare you come closer?" Master of the Clouds challenged.

Grand Tutor Wen immediately moved forward, and Master of the Clouds emitted a bolt of thunder from his hand into the ground. Eight Skyscraper Pillars of Divine Fire sprang from the ground. They were arranged in eight directions according to the eight diagrams. Each pillar was thirty feet high and ten feet in circumference. Grand Tutor Wen found himself hemmed in on all sides.

"What kind of magic do you know that can confine me with these pillars!" he taunted.

Master of the Clouds emitted a second thunderbolt from his fingers, and forty-nine fire dragons leaped out from each pillar, shooting fierce





火，有火赞为证，赞曰：

此火非同凡体，三家会合成功。英雄独占离地，运同九转旋风。炼成通中火柱，内藏数条神龙，口内喷烟吐焰，爪牙动处通红。苦海煮干到底，逢山烧得石空，遇木即成灰烬，逢金化作长虹。燧人初出定位，木里生来无踪。石中电火稀奇宝，三昧金光透九重。在天为日通明帝，在地生烟活编氓，在人五脏为心主，火内玄功大不同。饶君就是神仙体，遇我难逃眼下倾。

话说闻太师掐定避火诀，站于中间，在火内大呼曰：“云中子！你的道术也只如此！吾不久居，我去也！”往上一升，驾遁光欲走。不知云中子预将燃灯道人紫金钵盂磕住，浑如一盖盖定。闻太师那里得知，往上一冲，把九云烈焰冠撞落尘埃，青丝发俱披下。太师大叫一声，跌将下来。云中子在外面发雷，四处有霹雳之声，火势凶猛。可怜成汤首相，为国捐躯！——一道灵魂往封神台来，有清福神祇用百灵幡来引太师。——太师忠心不灭，一点真灵借风迳至朝歌，来见纣王，申诉其情。此时纣王正在鹿台与妲己饮酒，不觉一阵昏沉，伏几而卧。忽见太师立于旁边，谏曰：“老臣奉敕西征，屡战失利，枉劳无功，今已绝于西土。愿陛下勤修仁政，求贤辅国；毋肆荒淫，浊乱朝政；毋以祖宗社稷为不足重，人言不足信，天命不足畏，企反前愆，庶可挽回。老臣欲再诉深情，恐难进封神台耳。臣去也！”径往封神台来。——柏鉴引进其魂，安于台内。且说纣王猛然惊醒曰：“怪哉！异哉！”妲己曰：“陛下有何惊异？”纣王把梦中事说了一遍。妲己曰：“梦由心作。贱妾常闻陛下忧虑闻太师西征，故

flames into the air. Grand Tutor Wen laughed scornfully. "How can this witchcraft trouble me? We are all capable of dealing with fire!" He recited charms to protect himself from the flames then shouted, "Master of the Clouds! Your magic techniques are very ordinary. I don't wish to remain here any longer. I'm going now."

He sprang up through the air, riding on a beam of light, but little did he suspect that Master of the Clouds had covered the Skyscraper Pillars of Divine Fire with Burning Lamp's purple-gold alms bowl. His head crashed heavily against the bowl, and his fiery coronet fell. With a sharp cry, he dropped to the ground. Master of the Clouds gave off one thunderbolt after another to fan the flames.

Alas for the Grand Tutor! In a twinkling, he was reduced to ashes. He sacrificed his life for the kingdom. As his loyal heart had not yet died, his soul flew to Zhaoge to see King Zhou.

The tyrant was drinking happily with Daji when he suddenly became drowsy and fell asleep on the table. To his surprise, he saw Grand Tutor Wen standing before him

"By your order, I went to West Qi with a big army. Unfortunately, I was defeated without achieving any merit, and my life was sacrificed there. May Your Majesty be benevolent, trust only the faithful and talented, and abstain from wine and women. Pay close attention to state affairs, accept public opinion, and respect the will of Heaven. Do your best to repent of the faults you've committed in order to save the empire. I must go now, for further delay will make it difficult for me to reach the Terrace of Creation."

The soul of Grand Tutor Wen left the palace and flew directly to the Terrace of Creation, where it was ushered in by Bai Jian, the God of Pure Happiness.

When the King awoke, he uttered, "How strange! How extraordinary!"

"What has startled you, Your Majesty?" Daji asked.

After King Zhou told her what he had seen and heard in the dream, she comforted him, saying, "Dreams are derived from the mind. You had such a dream simply because you worry too much about the expedition



此有这个警兆。料闻太师岂是失机之士。”纣王曰：“御妻之言是矣。”随时就放下心怀。且说子牙收兵，众门人都来报功。云中子收了神火柱，与燃灯二人回山去。不表。

再讲申公豹知闻太师绝龙岭身亡，深恨子牙；往五岳三山，寻访仙客伐西岐，为闻太师报仇。一日游至夹龙山飞龙洞，跨虎飞来，忽见山崖上一小童儿跳耍。申公豹下虎来看，此童儿却是一个矮子：身不过四尺，面如土色。申公豹曰：“那童儿，你是那家的？”土行孙见一道人叫他，上前施礼曰：“老师那里来？”申公豹曰：“我往海岛来。”土行孙曰：“老师是截教，是阐教？”申公豹曰：“是阐教。”土行孙曰：“是吾师叔。”申公豹问曰：“你师是谁？你叫甚名字？”土行孙答曰：“我师父是惧留孙。弟子叫做土行孙。”申公豹又问曰：“你学艺多少年了？”土行孙答曰：“学艺百载。”申公豹摇头曰：“我看你不能了道成仙，只好修个人间富贵。”土行孙问曰：“怎样是人间富贵？”申公豹曰：“据我看，你只好披蟒腰玉，受享君王富贵。”土行孙曰：“怎得能够？”申公豹曰：“你肯下山，我修书荐你，咫尺成功。”土行孙曰：“老师指我往那里去？”申公豹曰：“荐你往三山关邓九公处去，大



against West Qi. I believe that Grand Tutor Wen hasn't lost any battle."

"You're right, my queen!" King Zhou said and promptly put the whole affair out of his mind.

Jiang Ziya had meanwhile returned to West Qi in triumph. His disciples and generals came up one by one to report what they had achieved. Master of the Clouds gathered the pillars back and left West Qi together with Burning Lamp.

When Shen Gongbao learned that the Grand Tutor had lost his life on Dragon Extinction Peak he came to hate Jiang Ziya even more than before. He traveled extensively over the mountains looking for immortals and sorcerers who could help King Zhou against West Qi.

One day he came to the Flying Dragon Cave on Dragon Squeezing Mountain. There he saw a lad jumping about and playing on the mountainside. The lad was a dwarf, about four feet tall, and had a face the color of earth.

"Lad, what family do you belong to?" Shen asked.

Earth Traveler Sun came up and saluted him. "Master! Where do you come from?"

"I come from some island in the sea."

"Which school do you belong to, Chan or Jie?"

"I'm of Chan Taoism."

"Then you're my uncle."

"Who's your master and what's your name?"

"My master is Krakucchanda. I'm Earth Traveler Sun."

"How long have you studied the Way?"

"About 100 years."

Shen Gongbao shook his head. "I can see that you have no hope of becoming an immortal, but you may be able to enjoy riches and power in the world of men."

"What do you mean?"

"I mean that you can wear the dragon robe and jade belt of a minister."

"How could I do that?"



事可成。”土行孙谢曰：“若得寸进，感恩非浅。”申公豹曰：“你胸中有何本事？”土行孙曰：“弟子善能地行千里。”申公豹曰：“你用个我瞧。”土行孙把身子一扭，即时不见。道人大喜。忽见土行孙往土里钻上来。公豹又曰：“你师父有捆仙绳，你要去带下两根去，也成的功。”土行孙曰：“吾知道了。”土行孙盗了师父惧留孙的捆仙绳，五壶丹药，径往三山关来。不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。

“If you’ll leave the mountain, I’ll give you a letter of recommendation, and you may achieve success at once.”

“Where should I go, Master?” Sun asked doubtfully.

“I’ll recommend you to Deng Jiugong, commander of Sanshan Pass. You can easily get a post there.”

“If I am successful in even the smallest way, I’ll be deeply grateful,” Earth Traveler Sun said happily.

“What skills do you possess?” Shen Gongbao asked.

“I can travel 1,000 *li* a day under ground.”

“Would you show me?”

With a twist of his body, Sun disappeared at once into the ground. Shen Gongbao was delighted. When Sun reappeared, he said to him, ‘Your master has the Celestial Binding Ropes. If you take them with you, you’re sure to achieve great success.’

Earth Traveler Sun stole the ropes and five jars of elixir from his master then left the mountain and went directly to Sanshan Pass.

If you want to know how he fared, just read the next chapter.



## 第五十三回

### 邓九公奉敕西征

诗曰：

渭水滔滔日夜流，西岐征战几时休。漫言虎豹才离穴，  
又见貔貅树敌楼。修德每愁糜白骨，荒淫反自咏金瓯。  
岂知天意多颠倒，取次干戈不断头。

话说申公豹说反了土行孙下山，他又往各处去了。

且说当日绝龙岭逃回军士进汜水关，报与韩荣，说知闻太师死于绝龙岭，随修表报进朝歌。有微子看报，忙进偏殿，见纣王行礼称“臣”。王曰：“朕无旨，皇伯有何奏章？”微子把闻太师的事奏启一遍。纣王大惊：“孤数日前，恍惚之中明明见闻太师在鹿台奏朕，言在绝龙岭失利；今日果然如此！”纣王着实伤感。王问左右文武曰：“太师新亡，点那一员官，定要把姜尚拿解朝歌，与太师报仇。”众官共议未决；有上大夫金胜出班奏曰：“三山关总兵官邓九公，前日大破南伯侯鄂顺，屡建大功；若破西岐，非此人不克成功。”纣王传旨：“速发白旄、黄钺，得专征伐。差官即往，星夜不许停留。”使命官王贞，持诏往三山关来，一路上马行如箭，心去如飞，秋光正好，和暖堪行。怎见得：

千山水落芦花碎，几树风扬红叶醉。路途烟雨故人稀，  
黄菊芬菲山色丽，水寒荷破人憔悴。白蘋红蓼满江干，  
落霞孤鹜长空坠。依稀黯淡野云飞，玄鸟去，宾鸿至，





## Chapter 53

### Deng Jiugong Attacks West Qi

Shen Gongbao persuaded Earth Traveler Sun to join in against West Qi and then left in search of other allies. Meanwhile the remnants of Grand Tutor Wen's army had fled back into Sishui Pass and reported to Commander Han Rong that Grand Tutor Wen had lost his life on Dragon Extinction Peak. Han Rong immediately passed on the news to Zhaoge.

Wei Zi read the report in alarm. He took it with him to the palace and found King Zhou in a side court.

"What do you have to report to me, Uncle?" King Zhou asked. "I didn't send for you."

When Wei Zi informed him of the disaster, the king was greatly alarmed. "Several days ago, I dreamed of Grand Tutor Wen. He told me he had lost his life on Dragon Extinction Peak. Now it is confirmed!" He was deeply grieved and asked his ministers, "Who is to avenge the death of the Grand Tutor?"

A long discussion ensued.

"Commander Deng Jiugong of Sanshan Pass has recently defeated E Shun. If you wish to crush West Qi, he's the only man equal to the task," Supreme Minister Jin Sheng suggested.

King Zhou agreed. He issued a decree, appointing Deng Jiugong to command the new expeditionary forces. He granted Deng the white scepter and yellow axe symbolizing military authority.

Wang Zhen, the royal messenger, took the decree and galloped off through the bright, warm autumn weather. Crimson-leafed maples and yellow chrysanthemum flowers decorated the mountainsides. Swans dotted





嘹嘹唳唳惊人寐。

话说天使所过府、州、县、司，不止一日。其日到了三山关，驿内安歇。次日，到邓九公帅府前。邓九公同诸将等焚香接旨，开读。诏曰：

“天子征伐，原为诛逆救民。大将专阃外之寄，正代天行拯溺之权。兹尔元戎邓九公，累功三山关，严出入之防，边烽无警；退鄂顺之反叛，奏捷甚速；懋绩大焉。今姬发不道，纳亡招叛，大肆猖獗。朕累勤问罪之师，彼反抗军而树敌；致王师累辱，大损国威，深为不法，朕心恶之。特敕尔前去，用心料理，相机进剿；务擒首恶，解阙献俘，以正国典。朕决不惜茅土，以酬有功。尔其钦哉。毋负朕托重至意。故兹尔诏。”

邓九公读毕，待天使，等交代。王贞曰：“新总兵孔宣就到。”不一日，孔宣已到。邓九公交代完毕，点将祭旗，次日起兵。忽报：“有一矮子来下书。”邓九公令进帅府。见来人身不过四五尺长，至滴水檐前行礼，将书呈上。邓九公拆书，观看来书，知申公豹所荐，乃是“土行孙效劳麾下”。邓九公见土行孙人物不好，“欲待不留，恐申道友见怪；若要用他，不成规矩。……”沉吟良久，“……也罢，把他催粮应付三军。”邓九公曰：“土行孙，既申道兄荐你，吾不敢负命。后军粮草缺少，用你为五军督粮使。”命太鸾为正印先行；子邓秀为副印先行；赵升、孙焰红为救应使；随带女孩儿邓婵玉，随军征伐。邓元帅调人马离了三山关，往西进发。一路上旗幡荡荡，杀气腾腾。怎见得：

三军踊跃，将士熊罴。征云并杀气相浮，剑戟共旗幡耀



the sky on their southward journey. He traveled for many days and reached Sanshan Pass at night. Putting up in the government hostel, he called at the headquarters the next day.

Deng Jiugong burned incense before the royal messenger read the royal decree. After the ceremony, Deng Jiugong entertained Wang Zhen. As they drank, Wang Zhen told him that Kong Xuan would soon arrive to replace him. When Kong Xuan arrived, Deng Jiugong transferred his duties to the new pass commander. He assembled his generals and sacrificed to the war banners, ready to set off the following day.

Just as they were about to leave, it was announced that a dwarf was at the gate with a letter of recommendation. Deng Jiugong ordered that he be admitted and was surprised to find that the visitor was no more than four feet tall. The dwarf bowed before him under the eaves and gave him the letter.

Deng Jiugong found that it was from Shen Gongbao, asking him to appoint Earth Traveler Sun to a post. But Earth Traveler Sun was ugly and unimposing. He was unwilling to accept him, but nor did he wish to offend Shen Gongbao. He thought about it, and then said, "Earth Traveler Sun! Since Brother Shen recommends you, I'll take you on. I'll appoint you as supervisor of the food supplies."

He then appointed Tai Luan to command the vanguard with his son, Deng Xiu, as deputy. Zhao Sheng and Sun Yanhong were appointed to command the reinforcements, and his daughter, Deng Chanyu, also joined the company.



日。人雄如猛虎，马骤似飞龙。弓弯银汉月，箭穿虎狼牙。袍铠鲜明如绣簇，喊声大振若山崩。鞭梢施号令，浑如开放三月桃花；马摆闪銮铃，恍似摇绽九秋金菊。威风凛凛，人人咬碎口中牙；杀气腾腾，个个睁圆眉下眼。真如猛虎出山林，恰似天王离北阙。

话说邓九公人马在路，也行有个月。一日来到西岐。哨探马报入中军：“启元帅：前面乃西岐东门，请令定夺。”邓九公传令：“安营。”怎见得：

营安八卦，幡列五方。左右摆攒攒簇簇军兵；前后排密密层层将佐。拐子马紧挨鹿角；连珠炮密护中军。正是：刀枪白映三冬雪，炮响声高二月雷。

邓九公安了行营，放炮呐喊。

且说西岐子牙自从破了闻太师，天下诸侯响应。忽探马报入相府：“三山关邓九公人马驻扎东门。”子牙闻报，谓诸将曰：“邓九公其人如何？”黄飞虎在侧，启曰：“邓九公，将才也。”子牙笑曰：“将才好破，左道难破。”且言邓九公次日传令：“那员战将先往西岐见头阵走遭？”帐下先行官太鸾应声：“愿往。”调本部人马出营，排开阵势，立马横刀，大呼搦战。探事马报入相府：“有将请战。”子牙问左右：“谁见头阵？”有南宫适领令，提刀上马，呐喊摇旗，冲出城来；见对阵一将，面如活蟹，海下黄须，坐乌骓马。怎见得，有赞为证：

顶上金冠飞双凤，连环宝甲三锁控。腰缠玉带如团花，手执钢刀寒光迸。锦囊暗带七星锤，鞍鞞又把龙泉纵。大将逢时命即倾，旗开拱手诸侯重。三山关内大先行，

They set off, marching rapidly towards West Qi. They had been on the road for about a month when a patrolman announced. "Ahead lies the east gate of West Qi City. We await your further orders." Deng Jiugong ordered that the army halt and set up camp.

After the defeat of Grand Tutor Wen, many more marquises had risen in support of King Wu. One day a patrolman entered the prime minister's mansion. "Deng Jiugong has arrived outside the east gate."

Jiang Ziya summoned his generals. "What do you know of Deng Jiugong?" he asked.

"He's a highly talented general," Huang Feihu answered.

Jiang Ziya smiled. "It's easier to beat a great general than a great sorcerer."

The next day Deng Jiugong asked, "Who will challenge them first?"

Tai Luan of the vanguard answered, "I will."

Brandishing his cutlass, he approached the city and roared a challenge. When the news was brought to the prime minister's mansion, General Nangong Kuo volunteered to meet him. He galloped out of the city and saw a general with a face like a crab. He had a long yellow beard and wore a gold phoenix hat and chain mail.



四海闻名心胆痛。

话说南宫适大呼曰：“来者何人？”太鸾答曰：“吾乃三山关总兵邓麾下，正印先行太鸾是也；今奉敕西征讨贼。尔等不守臣节，招纳叛亡，无故造反，恃强肆暴，坏朝廷之大臣，藐天朝之使命，殊为可恨。特命六师，剿除叛恶。尔等可下马受缚，解往朝歌，尽成汤之大法，免生民之倒悬。如再执迷，悔之无及。”南宫适笑曰：“太鸾，你知闻太师、魔家四将、张桂芳等只落得焚身，斩首，片甲不归。料尔等米粒之珠，吐光不大；蝇翅飞腾，去而不远。速速早回，免遭屠戮。”太鸾大怒，催开紫骍，手中刀飞来直取。南宫适纵骑，合扇刀急架相还。两马相交，一场大战。来往冲突，撞破花腔战鼓，摇碎锦绣旗幡。来来往往，有三十回合。南宫适马上逞英雄，展开刀势，抖搜精神，倍加气力。太鸾怒发，环眼双睁，把合扇刀卖一个破绽，叫声：“着！”一刀劈将下来。南宫适因小觑了太鸾，不曾在意，见一刀落将下来，南宫适着忙，叫声“不好！”将身急闪过，那刀把护肩甲吞头削去半边，绒绳割断数肘，把南宫适唬得魂飞天外，大败进城。太鸾赶杀周兵，得胜回营，见邓九公，曰：“今逢南宫适大战，被末将刀劈护肩甲吞头，不能枭首，请令定夺。”邓九公曰：“首功居上；虽不能斩南宫适之首，已挫周将之锐。”且说南宫适进城，至相府，回见子牙，具言失利，几乎丧师辱命。子牙曰：“‘胜败军家之常’，为将务要见机，进则可以成功，退则可以保守无虞，此乃为将之急务



“Who’s that general?” Nangong yelled.

“I’m General Tai Luan of the vanguard. As you don’t behave yourselves and harbor traitors, stage uprisings, and massacre the royal soldiers and generals, we’ve come to settle matters with you. You’d better get down from your horse and surrender. If you wait much longer it’ll be too late to regret it.”

Nangong Kuo laughed sarcastically. “Tai Luan! Don’t you know what became of Grand Tutor Wen, the four Mo brothers, and General Zhang Guifang? Some had their heads cut off and others their bodies burnt to ashes. You’re all like pearls the size of rice grains that glow with a feeble light, or like flies that would soar through the sky but cannot get far. You’d better return home at once and save your own life.”

Greatly enraged, Tai Luan spurred his brown steed forward and attacked Nangong Kuo with his cutlass. Nangong resisted the assault with his fan-shaped cutlass. After thirty rounds, Nangong Kuo began to flaunt his courage and skill and attacked with renewed vigor. This further infuriated Tai Luan. He found a weak spot in Nangong’s defense and slashed at him powerfully with his cutlass. Though Nangong dodged rapidly, Tai Luan’s cutlass slashed away half of his shoulder plate, missing the skin by only a hair’s breadth. Nangong was frightened out of his wits and fled back to the city.

Tai Luan returned to his camp in triumph. “I battled with Nangong Kuo. I only regret that I cut off his shoulder plate but not his head.”

“Though you didn’t cut his head off, you’ve demoralized the enemy,” Deng Jiugong praised him.

Nangong Kuo returned to the city, feeling greatly ashamed, but Jiang Ziya comforted him, “Victory and defeat are common in war. A general must be skilled at reading the situation and determining whether to advance or retreat.”



也。”次日邓九公传令，调五方队伍，大壮军威，炮声如雷，三军踊跃，喊杀振天，来至城下，请姜子牙答话。探子马报入相府。子牙分付辛甲：“先调大队人马出城，吾亲会邓九公。”西岐连珠炮响，两扇门开，一簇人马踊出。邓九公定睛观看，只见两杆大红旗，飘飘而出，引一队人马，分为前队；有穿红周将压住阵脚。怎见得人马雄伟，有诗为证，诗曰：

旗分离位列前锋，朱雀迎头百事凶。铁骑横排冲阵将，  
果然人马似蛟龙。

二声号炮，又见两杆青旗，飞扬而出，引一队人马，立于左队；有穿青周将压住阵脚。怎见得人马鹰扬，有诗为证，诗曰：

青龙旗展震宫旋，短剑长矛次第先。更有冲锋窝里炮，  
追风须用火攻前。

三声炮响，只见两杆白旗，飘扬而出，引一队人马，立于右队；有穿白周将压住阵脚。怎见得人马勇猛，有诗为证，诗曰：

旗分兑位虎为头，戈戟森森列敌楼。硬弩强弓遮战士，  
中藏遁甲鬼神愁。

邓九公对诸将曰：“姜尚用兵，真个纪律严明，甚得形势之分，果有将才。”再看时，又见两杆皂旗，飞舞而出，引一队人马，立于后队；有穿黑周将压住阵脚。怎见得人马齐整，有诗为证，诗曰：

坎宫玄武黑旗幡，鞭铜抓锤衬铁辮。左右救应为第一，  
鸣金击鼓任频敲。

又见中央摆列杏黄旗在前，引着一大队人马，攒簇五方八卦旗幡，众门人一对对排雁翅而出；有二十四员战将，俱是金

The next day, to the roar of cannons and shouts of his men, Deng Jiugong took his troops out in five square formations. He rode to the city wall and demanded that Jiang Ziya come out to meet him.

Jiang Ziya ordered Xin Jia, "Take the troops out. I'll meet him in person."

The West Qi army rushed out of the city amidst the thunder of cannons. Deng Jiugong first saw two big red banners and then the vanguard headed by a general in red.

The cannons then sounded three times, and the left flank of the army came out behind two green banners. The general at the head was also in green. The cannons sounded another three times, and the right flank emerged behind two white banners, headed by a general in white.

"Jiang Shang's really a great general, strict in discipline and skilful in organization," Deng Jiugong commented.

They were thus talking when two black banners emerged, followed by a general in black. This was followed by two apricot banners. There came Jiang Ziya's generals in two rows, each in a gold helmet and gold armor over a red robe. Between the two rows rode Jiang Ziya on his







盔，金甲，红袍，画戟，左右分十二骑；中间四不相上，端坐子牙，甚是气概轩昂，兵威严肃。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

中央戊己号中军，宝纛旗开五色云。十二牙门排将士，  
元戎大帅此中分。

话说邓九公看子牙兵按五方而出，左右顾盼，进退舒徐，纪律严肃，井井有条，兵威甚整，真堂堂之阵，正正之旗，不觉点头嗟叹：“果然话不虚传！无怪先来将士损兵折将，真劲敌也！”乃纵马向前言曰：“姜子牙请了！”子牙欠身答曰：“邓元帅，卑职少礼。”邓九公曰：“姬发不道，大肆猖獗。你乃是昆仑山明士，为何不知人臣之礼，恃强叛国，大败纲常，招亡结党，法纪安在！及至天子震怒，兴师问罪，尚敢逆天拒敌，尔必有大败之愆；不守国规，自有戮身之苦。今天兵到日，急早下马受缚，以免满城生灵涂炭。如抗吾言，那时城破被擒，玉石碎焚，悔之晚矣。”子牙笑曰：“邓将军，你这篇言词，真如痴人说梦。今天下归周，人心效顺，即数次主帅，俱兵亡将掳，片甲无回。今将军将不过十员，兵不足二十万，真如群羊斗虎，以卵击石，未有不败者也。依吾愚见，不若速回兵马，转达天听，言姬周并未有不臣之心，各安边境，真是美事。若是执迷不悟，恐蹈闻太师之辙，那时噬脐何及！”邓九公大怒，谓诸将曰：“似此卖面编篱小人，敢触犯天朝元宰，不杀此村夫，怎消此恨！”纵马舞刀，飞来直取。子牙左有武成王黄飞虎催开五色神牛，大呼：“邓九公不得无礼！”邓九公见黄飞虎，大骂曰：“好反贼！敢来见吾！”二骑交加，刀枪并举。黄飞虎枪法如龙；邓九公刀法似虎。二将相交，一场大战。怎见得，有赞为证：



nondescript horse. The scene was awe-inspiring. The Zhou troops had marched out in five square formations, maintaining perfect order and discipline.

“Jiang Ziya certainly lives up to his reputation. It’s not surprising that all the other generals have suffered defeat. He’s certainly a formidable rival,” Deng Jiugong nodded his head and sighed.

He urged his horse forward. “Greetings, Jiang Ziya!”

Jiang Ziya bowed and replied, “Commander Deng, I salute you.”

“Ji Fa is evil,” said Deng Jiugong, “but you’re a Taoist from Mount Kunlun who has accomplished much. How can you be so ignorant of the rites as to help him rebel? You rely on your military strength and disregard law and order. When His Majesty sent punitive forces, you had the gall to resist. You’ll lose in the end and be put to death. For the sake of the people in your city, you’d better get down from your beast and surrender. It’ll be too late for you to regret it when we have taken the city by force.”

Jiang Ziya, however, smiled. “General Deng! You talk like a madman. The whole kingdom supports King Wu. That is why you have all failed. You’ve got only 200,000 soldiers and ten generals at most. Like a lamb against a tiger or an egg against a stone, you’re bound to lose. Take my advice and withdraw as soon as possible. Tell His Majesty honestly that West Qi has neither entertained the intention nor taken any action to rebel against him. Let both sides live in peace. If you refuse to come to your senses, I’m afraid you’ll suffer the same fate as Grand Tutor Wen. Kindly consider it, General.”

Furious, Deng Jiugong said to his generals, “How can we bear such a terrible insult from that flour hawker, that lowly basket weaver? We must put him to death to vent our hatred.”

Whirling his cutlass, he spurred his horse toward Jiang Ziya. Huang Feihu intercepted him, shouting, “Don’t be so rude, Deng Jiugong.”

“You traitor! Dare you face me?”

Huang Feihu lunged at him and parried with his lance like a dragon, but Deng Jiugong fought like a tiger. The two battled back and forth vigorously.



二将恃强无比赛，各守名利夸能会：一个赤铜刀举荡人魂；一个银蟒枪飞惊鬼怪。一个冲营斩将势无伦；一个捉虎擒龙谁敢对。生来一对恶凶神，大战西岐争世界。

话说邓九公战住黄飞虎。左哨哪吒见黄飞虎战邓九公不下，忍不得登开风火轮，摇枪助战。成汤营中邓九公长子邓秀纵马冲来；这壁厢黄天化催开玉麒麟截战。太鸾舞刀冲来；武吉摇枪抵住。赵升使方天戟杀来；这里太颠挡住。成汤营孙焰红冲杀过来；有黄天禄接住。两家混战，好杀！只杀得天昏地暗，旭日光，喙喙战鼓忙敲，咕叮当两家兵器。怎见得，有赋为证，赋曰：

二家混战，士卒奔腾。冲开队伍势如龙，砍倒旗幡雄似虎。兵对兵，将对将，各分头目使深机；枪迎枪，箭迎箭，两下交逢乘不意。你往我来，遭着兵刃命随倾；顾后瞻前，错了心神身不保。只杀得征云黯淡，两家将佐眼难明；那里知怪雾弥漫，报效儿郎寻队伍。正是：英雄恶战不寻常，棋逢敌手难分解。

话说两家大战西岐城下。哪吒用开火尖枪，助黄飞虎协战邓九公。九公原是战将，抖搜神威，展开大刀，精神加倍。哪吒见邓九公勇猛，暗取乾坤圈打来，正中九公左臂上，打了个带断皮开，几乎坠马。周兵见哪吒得胜，呐了一声喊，杀奔过来。太颠不防赵升把口一张，喷出数尺火来，烧得焦头烂额，险些儿落马。两家混战一场，各自收兵。且说九公败进大营，声唤不止，痛疼难禁，昼夜不安。且言子牙进城，回至相府，见太颠带伤，命去调养。不表。

且言邓九公在营，昼夜不安。有女婵玉见父着伤，心下



Nezha saw that Huang Feihu was unable to gain the upper hand. He lost patience and sped out to help, and Deng Xiu, Deng Jiugong's eldest son, also galloped out, but he was intercepted by Huang Tianhua. As Tai Luan rushed forward, Wu Ji met him. Zhao Sheng was engaged by Tai Dian and Sun Yanhong by Huang Tianlu. The two sides clashed fiercely beneath the walls of West Qi City.

Though Nezha helped Huang Feihu, Deng Jiugong was a great fighter and resisted fearlessly. Nezha seized an opportunity, took out his Universal Ring and hurled it at Deng, breaking his left shoulder. Deng Jiugong nearly fell. This encouraged the Zhou soldiers. They let out a great roar and charged fiercely. In the midst of battle, Zhao Sheng caught Tai Dian completely off guard when he opened his mouth and spat flames. Tai Dian was seriously burned on the head and almost fell. After a protracted battle, both sides withdrew and returned to their respective places.

Deng Jiugong was defeated. He returned with a serious wound which pained him day and night. When Jiang Ziya returned to the city, he sent a doctor to General Tai Dian, ordering him to have a good rest and recuperate.

Deng Chanyu was upset to see her father in such a state. The following day, when she asked after his health, she said, "Papa, take good care of yourself. I'll go out and get revenge for you."



十分懊恼。次日，问过父安，禀：“爹爹且自调理，待女孩儿为父亲报仇。”邓九公曰：“吾儿须要仔细。”小姐随点本部人马，至城下请战。子牙坐在银安殿，正与众将议事，忽报：“成汤营有一女将讨战。”子牙听报，沉吟半晌。傍有武成王言曰：“丞相千场大战未尝忧惧；今闻一女将，为何沉吟不决？”子牙曰：“用兵有三忌：道人，陀头，妇女。此三人非是左道，定有邪术。彼仗邪术，恐将士不提防，悞被所伤，深为利害。”哪吒应声出曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙分付：“小心！”哪吒领命，上了风火轮，出得城来，果见一女将滚马而至。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

红罗包凤髻，绣带扣潇湘。一瓣红蕖挑宝镜，更现得金莲窄窄；两湾翠黛拂秋波，越觉得玉溜沉沉。娇姿嫋娜，慵拈针指好轮刀；玉手菁葱，懒傍妆台骑劣马。桃脸通红，羞答答通名问姓，玉粳微狠，娇怯怯夺利争名。漫道佳人多猛烈，只因父子出营来，有诗为证，诗曰：

甲冑无双貌出奇，娇羞嫋娜更多姿。只因悞落凡尘里，致使先行得结褵。

哪吒大呼曰：“女将慢来！”邓婵玉问曰：“来将是谁？”哪吒答曰：“吾乃是姜丞相麾下哪吒是也。你乃五体不全妇女，焉敢阵前使勇！况你系深闺弱质，不守家教，露面抛头，不识羞愧。料你总会兵机，也难逃吾之手；还不回营，另换有名上将出来。”婵玉大怒：“你就是伤吾父亲仇人，今日受吾一刀！”切齿面红，纵马使双刀来取。哪吒火尖枪急架相还。二将往来，战未数合，邓婵玉想：“吾先下手为强。”把马一拨，掩一刀就走，“吾不及你！”哪吒点头叹曰：“果然是个女子，不耐大战。”竟往下赶来。赶未及三五射之地，邓婵玉扭颈回头，见哪吒赶来，挂下刀，取五光石掌在手中，回手一下，正中哪吒脸上。正是：



“Be very careful, my child.”

Deng Chanyu went to the city wall and shouted a challenge.

Jiang Ziya was talking with his generals in the Silver Security Court when he received the report. He pondered silently for a long while.

“Prime Minister, you’ve fought a thousand battles without ever being frightened. Why are you startled at the news of a woman general?” Huang Feihu asked.

“There are three things to be wary of in war: Taoists, Buddhist monks and women. Most are skilled in sorcery. I’m worried that you may be hurt if you don’t guard against their magic,” Jiang Ziya explained.

“Your disciple Nezha is willing to meet her, Master.”

“You may go, Nezha, but you should be very careful,” Jiang Ziya cautioned him.

Nezha mounted his Wind-Fire Wheels and left the city. He saw a beautiful young woman galloping toward him.

“Don’t be in such a hurry, Lady General,” Nezha yelled.

“Who are you?” Deng Chanyu demanded.

“I’m Nezha. You are just a girl, not yet fully developed. How dare you flaunt your courage on the battlefield! As a member of the fairer sex, don’t you feel ashamed to face us? You may know something about warfare, but you won’t find it easy to escape defeat if you battle with me. Return and ask someone else to come in your place.”

“You hurt my father. I’ll make you feel the edge of my cutlass,” Deng Chanyu shouted angrily.

She flushed with rage and gnashed her teeth. She spurred her horse forward and struck at Nezha. Nezha returned her blow with his Fire-Tip Lance. After several rounds, Deng Chanyu thought to herself, “Better to make the first move.” She pulled her horse out of the fight and ran away, calling, “I’m no match for you.”

Nezha nodded to himself. “She’s a girl, after all, and naturally can’t stand up to a long fight.”

He set off in pursuit. Deng Chanyu turned, and when she saw Nezha close behind her, she quickly hung her cutlass on the saddle, took out a shining pebble and hurled it into his face. His nose and eyes were badly



发手五光出掌内，纵是仙凡也皱眉。

话说邓婵玉回手一石，正打中哪吒面上，只打得傅粉脸青紫，鼻眼皆平，败回相府。子牙看见哪吒面上着伤，乃问其故。哪吒曰：“弟子与女将邓婵玉战未数合，那贱人就走；弟子赶去，要拿他成功；不防他回首一道光华，却是一块石头，正中脸上，打得如此狼狈。”子牙曰：“追赶必要小心。”傍有黄天化言曰：“为将之道：身临战场，务要眼观四处，耳听八方。难道你一块石头也不会招架，被他打伤；今恐土星打断，就破了相，一生俱是不好。”把哪吒气得怒冲牛斗，今日失机着伤，又被黄天化一场取笑。

且说邓婵玉进营，见父亲回话，说打伤哪吒一事。邓九公闻言虽是欢喜，其如疼痛难禁。次日，婵玉复来搦战。探马报入相府。子牙问：“谁去走一遭？”黄天化曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙曰：“须是仔细。”天化领令，上了玉麒麟，出城列阵。邓婵玉马走如飞，上前问曰：“来将何名？”黄天化曰：“吾乃开国武成王长男黄天化是也。你这贱人，可是昨日将石打伤吾道兄哪吒？是你么？不要走！”举锤就打。女将双刀劈面来迎。二人锤刀交架，未及数合，拨马就走。婵玉高声叫曰：“黄天化，你敢来赶我？”天化在坐骑上思想：“吾若不赶他，恐哪吒笑话我。”只得催开坐骑，往前赶来。邓婵玉闻脑后有声，挂下双刀，回手一石。黄天化急待闪时，已打在脸上，比哪吒分外打得狠，掩面遽回，进相府来回令。子牙见黄天化脸着重伤，仍问其故：“你如何不提防？”天化曰：“那贱人回马就是一石，故此未及防备。”子牙曰：“且养伤痕。”哪吒在后，听得黄天化失机，从后走出言曰：“为将要



hurt. When Nezha returned to the prime minister's mansion, Jiang Ziya inquired about his wound. He described what had happened.

"Be very careful next time," Jiang Ziya commented.

Huang Tianhua cut in sarcastically, "A general should constantly watch all directions and listen to everything around him. How could you have failed to stop a small stone? The bridge of the nose represents Saturn. Now that you've had your Saturn broken, not only will your appearance be ruined, you'll also have bad fortune throughout your life."

Nezha was furious. Not only was he wounded, but he had also been coldly ridiculed by Huang Tianhua.

Deng Chanyu returned to tell her father that she had defeated Nezha and wounded him with her pebble. Deng Jiugong was delighted at the news but was still in great pain from the wound on his shoulder. The next day Deng Chanyu gave another challenge.

"Who would like to meet her?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"Your disciple Huang Tianhua would like to meet her."

"Be very careful," Jiang Ziya repeated.

Huang Tianhua mounted his jade unicorn and left the city. Deng Chanyu flew forward on her horse and asked, "Who's that general coming?"

"I'm Huang Tianhua, the eldest son of Prince Huang Feihu. Are you the cheap hussy that hurt my brother yesterday? I'll make you pay for it. Don't go away!"

He struck at Deng Chanyu with his hammers, and she resisted him with her cutlass. After several rounds, she once more pulled out of the fight and ran away, shouting, "Dare you chase me?"

"If I don't, Nezha's sure to ridicule me," Huang Tianhua thought and set off in determined pursuit.

Hearing him close behind, Deng Chanyu put her cutlass on the saddle, stealthily took out a pebble, and threw it forcefully at Huang Tianhua. Huang tried to evade it, but it was already too late. He was hit in the face and wounded even more seriously than Nezha. Bleeding profusely, he covered his face with one hand and fled back to the city.





眼观四处，耳听八方。你连一女将如何也失手与他，被他打断山根，一百年还是晦气！”黄天化大怒曰：“你为何还我此言！我出于无心，你为何记其小忿！”哪吒亦怒：“你如何昨日辱我！”彼此争论，被子牙一声喝：“你两个为国，何必如此！”二人各自负愧，退入后寨。不题。

且说邓婵玉得胜回营，见父亲，言：“打了黄天化，败进城去了。”邓九公虽见连日得胜，但臂膊疼痛，度日如年。次日，邓婵玉又来城下请战。探马报入相府曰：“有婵玉在城下搦战。”子牙曰：“谁去走遭？”杨戩在傍，对龙须虎曰：“此女用石打人，师兄可往；吾当掠阵。”龙须虎曰：“弟子愿往；杨戩压阵。”子牙许之。二人出城。邓婵玉一见城里跳出一个东西来，自不曾见的。怎见得，有诗为证：

发石如飞实可夸，龙生一种产灵芽。运成云水归周主，  
炼出奇形助子牙。手似鹰隼足似虎，身如鱼滑鬣如虾。

“封神榜”上无名姓，徒建奇功与帝家。

话说邓婵玉见城内跳出个古怪东西来，诓得魂不附体，问



When Huang Tianhua entered the prime minister's mansion, Jiang Ziya was surprised to find that he too had been seriously wounded. "Why weren't you more careful?"

"That cheap hussy moved so fast that I didn't have the time."

"Rest well and let your wound heal."

In the rear chamber, Nezha heard that Huang Tianhua had returned with a wounded face. He was eager for revenge and went to find Huang Tianhua. "A general should constantly watch all directions and listen to everything around him. Wounded by a weak woman! Fortunetellers regard the bridge of nose as the root of a mountain. To have it broken means bad luck for at least 100 years," he ridiculed Huang Tianhua.

"Why do you repeat what I said to make fun of me? How can you be so petty-minded?" Huang Tianhua said furiously.

"Why did you insult me yesterday?" Nezha refuted angrily.

They quarreled so fiercely that Jiang Ziya had to interfere. "Stop it! Both of you were wounded serving the king. Why carry on like this?"

Nezha and Huang Tianhua felt ashamed. They stopped quarreling and retired to their own chambers.

Deng Chanyu returned to the Shang camp with another victory. Deng Jiugong was pleased that his daughter had won two successive victories, but the pain from his shoulder was still intense, and the days seemed to drag out like years.

The next day, Deng Chanyu rode to the city wall again with a new challenge.

"Who will go to meet her this time?" Jiang Ziya asked.

Yang Jian said to Dragon Beard Tiger, "You're the one to meet this woman. She throws stones just as you do. You confront her, and I'll go along as support."

At his proposal, Dragon Beard Tiger volunteered, "I'll meet her, and Yang Jian will back me up."

With Jiang Ziya's approval, he and Yang Jian left the city at once. Deng Chanyu was startled to see a queer creature leap out from the city.



曰：“来的甚么东西？”龙须虎大怒：“好贱人！吾乃姜丞相门徒龙须虎便是。”婊玉又问：“你来做甚么？”龙须虎曰：“今奉吾师之命，特来擒你。”邓婊玉不知龙须虎发手有石，只见龙须虎把手一放，照着邓婊玉打来，有磨盘大小的石头；两只手齐放，便如飞蝗一般，只打得遍地灰土迸起，甚如霹雳之声。婊玉马上自思：“此石来得利害！若不仔细，便打了马也是不好。”拨回马就走。龙须虎赶来。婊玉回头一看，见龙须虎赶来，婊玉回手一石打来。龙须虎见石光打来，把头往下一躲，颈子长，弯将过来，正中颈子窝儿骨，把龙须虎打的扭着颈子跑。婊玉复又一石，龙须虎独足难立，打了一交。邓婊玉勒转马来，要取龙须虎首级。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



His hands were like the claws of an eagle and his single foot was that of a tiger. His body was covered in scales, and he had a beard like the antennae of a lobster. Frightened out of her wits, she asked, "What kind of creature are you?"

Dragon Beard Tiger replied angrily, "You cheap wench! I'm Dragon Beard Tiger, a disciple of Prime Minister Jiang."

"What are you doing here?"

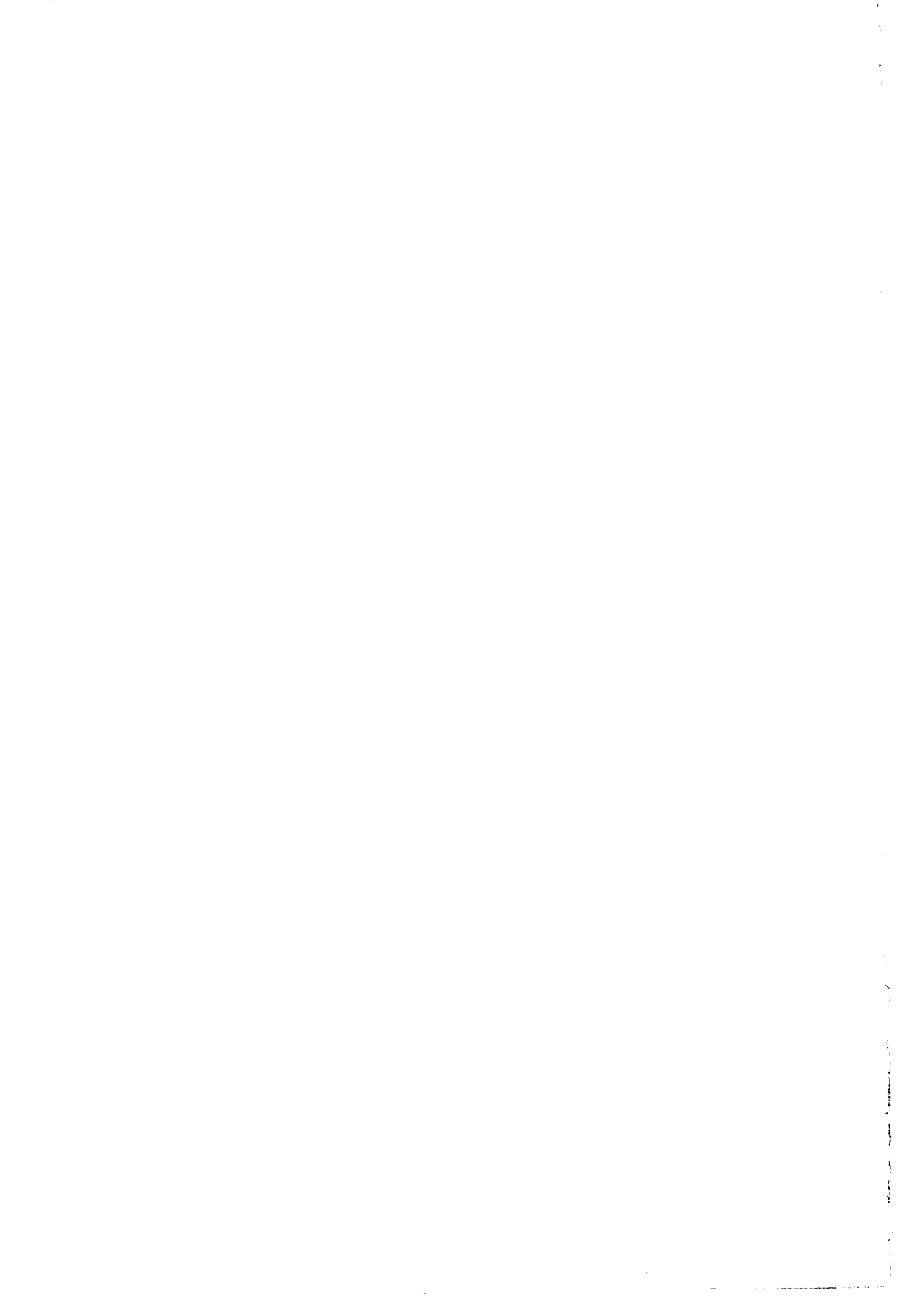
"By order of my master, I've come to do battle with you."

Deng Chanyu did not know that there were rocks concealed in his hands. All of a sudden he opened his palms, and stones and boulders immediately flew out at her like a great swarm of locusts. Sand and dust churned in the air, making a fearful noise.

"These stones are coming thick and fast," Deng Chanyu thought. "If I'm not careful, I'll get hit."

She turned her horse and ran away with Dragon Beard Tiger in pursuit. Deng Chanyu then seized a chance to cast a pebble. Dragon Beard Tiger lowered his head to evade it, but it hit him forcefully on his long neck. Deng Chanyu immediately threw another stone, knocking him to the ground. She then turned her horse around and raced back to cut off his head.

What became of Dragon Beard Tiger? If you want to know, read the next chapter.





## 第五十四回

### 土行孙立功显耀

诗曰：

征西将士有奇才，缩地能令浊土开。劫寨偷营如掣电，  
飞书走檄若轰雷。贪趋相府几亡命，恐失佳期被所媒。  
总是君明天自爱，英谋奇略尽成灰。

话说杨戩见邓婵玉回马飞来要杀龙须虎，杨戩大呼曰：“少待伤吾师兄！”马走如飞，摇枪来刺。婵玉只得架枪。两马相交，未及数合，婵玉便走。杨戩随后赶来。婵玉又发一石，正中杨戩，打的脸上火星迸出，往下愈赶得紧了。他不知杨戩有无限腾挪变化。婵玉见马势赶得甚急，忙发一石，又中杨戩脸上；只当不知。婵玉正是着忙，杨戩祭起哮天犬，把邓婵玉颈子上一口，连皮带肉咬去了一块。婵玉负痛难忍，几乎落马，大败进营，叫痛不止。邓九公又见女儿着伤，心下十分不爽，纳闷在帐，切齿深恨哪吒。且说杨戩救了龙须虎，回见子牙。子牙见龙须虎又着石伤，虽然杨戩哮天犬伤了邓婵玉，子牙心上也自不悦。

当日邓九公父子着伤，日夜煎熬。四将在营商议：“今主帅带伤，不能取胜西岐，奈何？”正议论间，报：“有督粮官土行孙等令。”内帐传出：“令来。”土行孙上帐，不见主帅，问其原故，太鸾备言其事。土行孙进帐来，见邓九公问安。九公说：“被哪吒打伤肩臂，筋断骨折，不能全愈；今奉



## Chapter 54

### Earth Traveler Sun Poses a Threat

When Deng Chanyu turned back to behead Dragon Beard Tiger, Yang Jian shouted loudly, "Wait! Don't touch him."

He rushed over and she could not but defend herself. After several rounds, she once more gave up ground and ran away. As Yang Jian pursued her, she threw a stone into his face, but Yang Jian only chased her more closely as if nothing had happened. Yang Jian had greater magic powers than she had imagined. This worried her, and she threw another stone, hitting him again in the face, but it did not hurt him in the least.

She was wondering what to do next when Yang Jian released his Sky Barking Hound. It bit a piece of flesh from her neck, nearly toppling her from her horse. She fled back to the camp, screaming with pain. Deng Jiugong was grieved to see her return with a serious wound. He gnashed his teeth in hatred.

Though Yang Jian had defeated the woman general, Jiang Ziya was distressed to see that Dragon Beard Tiger had been wounded.

Both Deng Jiugong and his daughter spent day and night in agony. The other generals discussed the situation amongst themselves. "Commander Deng is wounded. It will be impossible for us to defeat West Qi within a short space of time. What shall we do?"

Just then a guard reported that Earth Traveler Sun had arrived. When he was admitted, Sun immediately noticed that the commander was absent. He found out the reason and went to offer his condolences.

"Nezha struck me on the shoulder. Who would have thought my expedition would end like this," Deng Jiugong groaned.







旨来征西岐，谁知如此！”土行孙曰：“主将之伤不难，末将有药。”忙取葫芦里一粒金丹，用水研开，将鸟翎搽上，真如甘露沁心，立时止痛。土行孙又听得帐后有妇女娇怯悲惨之声，土行孙问曰：“里面是何人呻吟？”九公曰：“是吾女婵玉，也被着伤。”土行孙又取出一粒金丹，如前取水研开，扶出小姐，用药敷上，立时止痛，邓九公大喜；至晚，帐内摆酒待土行孙，众将共饮。土行孙请问邓九公：“与姜子牙见了几阵？”九公曰：“屡战不能取胜。”土行孙笑曰：“当时主将肯用吾征时，如今平服西岐多时了。”九公暗想：“此人必定有些本事。他无有道术，申公豹决不荐他。也罢，不若把他改作正印先行。”彼时酒散。次早升帐，九公谓太鸾曰：“将军今把先行印让土行孙挂了，使他早能成功，回师奏凯，共享皇家天禄，无使迁延日月，何如？”太鸾曰：“主帅将令，末将怎敢有违？况土行孙早能建功，岂不是美事。情愿让位。”忙将正印交代。土行孙当时挂印施威，领本部人马，杀奔西岐城下，厉声大呼曰：“只叫哪吒出来答话！”子牙正与诸将商议，忽报：“汤营有将搦战，坐名要哪吒答话。”子牙命哪吒出城。哪吒登风火轮来至阵前，只管瞧，不见将官，只管望营里看。——土行孙其身止高四尺有余，哪吒不曾往下看。土行孙叫曰：“来者何人？”哪吒方往下一看，原来是个矮子，身不过四尺，拖一根宾铁棍。哪吒问曰：“你是什么人，敢来大张声势？”土行孙曰：“吾乃邓元帅麾下先行官土行孙是也。”哪吒曰：“你来作何事？”土行孙曰：“奉令特来擒你。”哪吒大笑不止，把枪往下一戳，土行孙把棍往上迎来。哪吒登风火轮，使开枪，展不开手。土行孙矮，只是前



“Don’t worry, Commander. I’ve got medicine that will heal your wound.”

He took a pill of golden elixir from his gourd, dissolved it in water, then applied it to the wound with a feather. The pain disappeared in an instant. Sun heard a woman shrieking pitifully in the back camp and asked who it was.

“It’s my daughter Deng Chanyu. She’s also been hurt.”

Earth Traveler Sun took another pill from his gourd. As soon as he applied the solution, she too recovered completely. With great joy, Deng Jiugong entertained Sun that evening, inviting all the generals to attend.

“How many battles have you fought with Jiang Ziya, sir?” Sun inquired.

“Several. But we’re unable to win.”

“If you had appointed me to the vanguard, West Qi would have been conquered long ago,” Sun said with a smile.

“This man must be highly talented, otherwise Shen Gongbao wouldn’t have recommended him to me. My best move would be to appoint him general of the vanguard,” Deng Jiugong thought.

The next day he approached General Tai Luan, “General! Yield your post to Sun. If he wins, we can all return that much sooner. What do you think?”

“Who am I to disobey your order? Nothing could be better than an early victory. I’ve got no objection to giving up my post.”

When he received the seal of office, Sun immediately took his men to West Qi City. “Nezha! Come out and meet me at once,” he shouted.

Jiang Ziya was holding a military conference when the challenge arrived. He ordered Nezha to meet the adversary. High on his Wind-Fire Wheels, Nezha looked toward the Shang camp but could not spot any enemy general. Earth Traveler Sun was only four feet tall, and Nezha did not think to look down at his feet.

“Who’s that coming?” Earth Traveler Sun yelled.

Nezha searched for the voice and saw a dwarf carrying an iron cudgel. “Who are you? How dare you come here, making such a big noise?”

“I’m general of the vanguard under Commander Deng. I’m called Earth Traveler Sun.”

“What have you come here for?” Nezha asked again.

“I’m under orders to seize you.”

Laughing uproariously, Nezha stabbed downward with his lance. Sun swung his cudgel to meet the blow. From high on his Wind-Fire Wheels, Nezha had difficulty dodging and aiming at such a small target. Leaping



后跳，把哪吒杀出一身汗来。土行孙战了一回，跳出圈子，大叫曰：“哪吒！你长我矮，你不好发手，我不好用功。你下轮来，见个输赢。”哪吒想一想：“这矮匹夫自来取死。”哪吒从其言，忙下轮来，把枪来挑。土行孙身子矮小，钻将过去，把哪吒腿上打了一棍。哪吒急待转身，土行孙又往后面，又把哪吒膀子上又打两棍。哪吒急了，才要用乾坤圈打他，不防土行孙祭起捆仙绳，一声响，把哪吒平空拿了去，望辕门下一掷，把哪吒缚定，怎能得脱此厄，正是：

飞龙洞里仙绳妙，不怕莲花变化身。

话说土行孙得胜回营，见邓九公回报：“生擒哪吒。”邓九公令：“来。”只见军卒把哪吒抬来，放在丹墀下。邓九公问曰：“如何这等拿法？”土行孙曰：“各有秘传。”邓九公想一想，意欲斩首，但思：“奉诏征西，今获大将，解往朝歌，使天子裁决，更尊天子之威，亦显边戍元戎之勇。”传令：“将哪吒拘于后营。”令军政司上土行孙首功。营中治酒庆功。

且说报马进相府，报说哪吒被擒一事。子牙惊问探马：

“如何擒去？”掠阵官启曰：“只见一道金光，就平空的拿去了。”子牙沉吟：“又是甚么异人来了？”心下郁郁不乐。次日，报：“土行孙请战。”子牙曰：“何人会土行孙？”阶下黄天化应声而出：“愿往。”子牙许之。天化上了玉麒麟，出城看土行孙，大喝曰：“你这缩头畜生，焉敢伤吾道兄！”手中锤分顶门打来。土行孙宾铁棍左右来迎。锤打棍，寒风凛凛；棍进锤，杀气腾腾。战未及数合，土行孙盗了惧留孙师父捆仙绳，在这里乱拿人，不知好歹，又祭起捆仙绳，将黄天化拿了；如哪吒一样，也拘在后营。哪吒一见黄天化也如此拿将



nimbly back and forth, Sun soon had Nezha sweating all over.

Earth Traveler Sun then leapt out of the combat circle. "Nezha! As you're so tall and I'm so short, it's awkward for both of us. Why don't you get down from your wheels and we'll fight it out."

"How can that dwarf escape his doom. He's bound to die anyway," Nezha thought to himself. He quickly got off his wheels and stabbed at Sun. As Sun was so small and short, he slipped beneath Nezha's lance and repeatedly clouted Nezha's thighs. As soon as Nezha turned, he slipped behind him and hit him twice more. Growing anxious, Nezha was about to use his Universal Ring when Sun cast up a piece of Celestial Binding Rope. With a deafening crash, Nezha was bound up and thrown before the gate of the Shang camp. Earth Traveler Sun returned and reported to Deng Jiugong, "I've captured Nezha alive."

Deng Jiugong ordered that Nezha be brought in then asked Sun, "How did you capture him?"

"Each has his own secret method," Sun answered guardedly.

Deng Jiugong's first thought was to have Nezha beheaded on the spot, but then he thought better of it. "I've been sent here by royal decree. I ought to send the captured general to Zhaoge to let the king decide what to do with him."

He ordered that Nezha be held in the back camp and that Sun's victory be put on the record. A celebratory banquet was held in honor.

When he learned that Nezha had been taken alive, Jiang Ziya asked in astonishment, "How was he captured?"

"General Nezha was lifted into the air by a flash of golden light," he was told.

"Someone out of the ordinary must have come," Jiang Ziya pondered silently, deeply worried at the turn of events.

The next day it was reported that "Earth Traveler Sun has given another challenge."

"Who will meet him?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"I'll go," Huang Tianhua volunteered.

When Jiang Ziya gave his consent, Huang Tianhua mounted his jade unicorn and left the city. "You undergrown beast! How dare you hurt my brother?" he swore at Sun.

He raced up whirling his two hammers, and Sun fought back with his iron cudgel. After several rounds, he took Huang Tianhua in the same way that had Nezha.



进来，就把黄天化激得三尸神暴跳，大呼曰：“吾等不幸，又遭如此陷身！”哪吒曰：“师兄不必着急。命该绝地，急也无用；命若该生，且自宁耐。”话说子牙又闻得拿了黄天化，子牙大惊，心下不乐。相府两边乱腾腾的议论。不表。

且言土行孙得了两功，邓元帅治酒庆贺，夜饮至二更，土行孙酒后狂谈，自恃道术，夸张曰：“元帅若早用末将，子牙已擒，武王早缚，成功多时矣。”邓九公见土行孙连胜两阵，擒拿二将，故此深信其言。酒至三更，众将各回寝帐。独土行孙还吃酒。九公失言曰：“土将军，你若早破西岐，吾将弱女赘公为婿。”土行孙听得此言，满心欢喜，一夜踌躇不睡。且言次日邓九公令土行孙：“早早立功，旋师奏凯，朝贺天子，共享千锺。”土行孙领命，排开阵势，坐名要姜子牙答话。报马报进相府来。子牙随即出城，众将在两边，见土行孙跳跃而来，大呼曰：“姜子牙，你乃昆仑之高士，吾特来擒你，可早早下马受缚，无得使我费手。”众将官那里把他放在眼里，齐声大笑。子牙曰：“观你形貌，不入衣冠之内，你有什么能，敢来擒吾？”土行孙不由分说，将铁棍劈面打来。子牙用剑架隔，只是捞不着他。如此往来，未及三五合，土行孙祭起捆仙绳，子牙怎逃此厄，捆下骑来。土行孙士卒来拿，这边将官甚多，齐奋勇冲出，一声喊，把子牙抢进城去了。惟有杨戩在后面，看见金光一道，其光正而不邪，叹曰：“又有些古怪！”且说众将抢了子牙进相府，来解此绳解不开，用刀割此绳，且陷在肉里，愈弄愈紧。子牙曰：“不可用刀割。”早已惊动武王，亲自进相府来看，问相父安；看见子牙这等光景，武王垂泪言曰：“孤不知得有何罪，



When he met Nezha, Huang Tianhua cried in fury, "What cursed luck we've both had!"

"Calm down, Brother. If we're fated to die, there's nothing we can do about it, and if we're fated to live, we must just be patient."

Jiang Ziya was greatly alarmed to learn that Huang Tianhua had also been taken. That evening Deng Jiugong held a banquet in Sun's honor. After hours of drinking, Sun began to boast about his talents. "Commander! Had you appointed me earlier, Jiang Ziya would have been captured and King Wu bound up a long time ago. We would have won without any trouble."

Deng Jiugong believed him, as he had already taken two generals. After the other generals had retired, Earth Traveler Sun and Deng Jiugong continued drinking happily. Deng Jiugong declared carelessly, "General Sun! If you can subdue West Qi, I'll give you my daughter."

Sun was overjoyed at this unexpected promise and could not sleep at all that night. The next day he went to the city wall and demanded Jiang Ziya. The prime minister appeared at once. Sun leapt forward.

"Jiang Ziya! Though you're a disciple of Mount Kunlun, you're bound to fall in my hands. Get down from your horse and bind yourself up so I don't have to take the trouble to do it myself."

Regarding him as a joke, all the Zhou generals burst into laughter.

"Judging by your appearance, you aren't qualified to wear the robes and hat of a ranking official. What can you do to take me alive?" Jiang Ziya mocked.

Without further ado, Sun swung his cudgel at Jiang Ziya's face. Jiang Ziya met the blow with his sword but found it difficult to combat him as he was so short and small. After a few rounds, Sun threw up his magic rope. It was impossible to dodge, and Jiang Ziya was bound up and fell from his nondescript horse. But before the enemy soldiers rushed over, the Zhou generals surged forward, snatched up Jiang Ziya, and carried him back to safety.

Only Yang Jian, standing behind the others, saw the golden light appear in its true form. He sighed. "There's something odd going on here again!"

Back at the prime minister's mansion, his generals tried to release Jiang Ziya, but they found it impossible to cut through the rope with swords and knives. The more they tried, the tighter it became, until he finally had to order, "Don't cut it any more."

The incident alarmed King Wu. He went to the prime minister's mansion to see Jiang Ziya. "I'm ignorant of what crime I've committed that



天子屡年征伐，竟无宁宇，民受倒悬，军遭杀戮，将逢陷阱，如之奈何！相父今又如此受苦，使孤日夜惶悚不安！”杨戩在傍，仔细看这绳子，却似捆仙绳，自己沉吟：“必是此宝。”正虑之间，忽报：“有一道童要见丞相。”子牙道：“请进来。”原来是白鹤童子，至殿前见子牙，口称：“师叔，老爷法牒，送符印将此绳解去。”童儿把符印在绳头上，用手一指，那绳即时落将下来。子牙忙顿首昆仑，拜谢老师慈悯。白鹤童子回宫。不表。且说杨戩对子牙曰：“此绳是捆仙绳。”子牙曰：“岂有此理！难道惧留孙反来害我，决无此说！”正疑惑之间。次日，土行孙又来请战。杨戩应声而出：“弟子愿往。”子牙分付：“小心！”杨戩领令上马，提枪出得城来。土行孙曰：“你何人？”杨戩道：“你将何术捆吾师叔？不要走！”摇枪来取。土行孙发棍来迎。枪棍交加。杨戩先自留心看他端的。未及五七合，土行孙祭捆仙绳来拿杨戩，只见光华灿烂，杨戩已被拿了。土行孙令士卒抬着杨戩，才到辕门，一声响，抬塌了，吊在地下，及至看时，乃是一块石头。众人大惊。土行孙亲眼观见，心甚惊疑。正沉吟不语，只见杨戩大呼曰：“好匹夫！焉敢以此术惑吾！”摇枪来取。土行孙只得复身迎战。两家杀得长短不一。杨戩急把哮天犬祭在空中。土行孙看见，将身子一扭，即时不见。杨戩观看，便骇然大惊曰：“成汤营里若有此人，西岐必不能取胜。”凝思半晌，面有忧色。回进相府，来见子牙。看见杨戩这等面色，问其故。杨戩曰：“西岐又添一患。土行孙善有地行之术，奈何！这到不可不防。这事是件没有遮拦的。若是他暗进城来，怎能准备！”子牙曰：“有这样事？”杨戩曰：



His Majesty sends his armies year after year, making it impossible for us to live in peace. Soldiers have been slaughtered and generals placed in peril. I spend day and night in restless anxiety. What shall we do now?" he said in tears.

Yang Jian examined the rope carefully and found that it closely resembled the Celestial Binding Rope. "It must be that same magic rope," he mused to himself.

In the midst of their anxiety, a Taoist lad arrived, requesting to see the prime minister. When he was admitted, they found that it was White Crane Lad.

He walked into the hall and bowed before Jiang Ziya.

"Uncle! By order of my master, I've brought you a spell to untie the rope."

He placed the written spell on the rope and pointed at it with his finger. The rope loosened and fell to the ground. Jiang Ziya knelt towards Mount Kunlun and thanked his master for showing him mercy.

After White Crane Lad had departed, Yang Jian told Jiang Ziya, "I'm sure that this is the Celestial Binding Rope."

"That's preposterous. I don't believe that Krakucchanda would do me any harm," Jiang Ziya said.

When Earth Traveler Sun demanded another battle the following day, Yang Jian volunteered to answer the challenge. "Let me go to meet him, Master."

Jiang Ziya consented. "Be very careful when you meet that dwarf."

Yang Jian mounted his horse, took up his lance, and left the city. The dwarf asked, "Who are you?"

"What sorcery did you use to bind up my uncle? Don't go away — I'll knock your block off!" Yang Jian shouted.

Yang Jian watched Sun very closely during their combat to see what he was going to do. After seven rounds, the dwarf threw up a glaring piece of rope and bound up Yang Jian. He ordered his soldiers to carry the captive to the Shang camp. But when they reached the camp gate, the load fell down with a great crash and the dwarf was astonished to find that he had, in fact, caught a large rock and not Yang Jian.

As he puzzled this over, Yang Jian reappeared. "You fool! How dare you try your paltry tricks on me."

He lunged at Sun with his lance. Sun had no choice but to turn back and continue the fight. They fought fiercely for a long time. Yang Jian then set his Sky Barking Hound on Sun, but as soon as the dwarf saw it, he twisted his body and disappeared into the ground.

Yang Jian was greatly alarmed. "How can we expect to win the day when they've got men like this!"





“他前日拿师叔，据弟子看，定是捆仙绳。今日弟子被他捆着，我留心着意，仔细定睛，还是捆仙绳，分毫不差。待弟子往夹龙山飞龙洞去探问一番，何如？”子牙曰：“此虑甚远，且防他目下进城。”杨戩亦不敢再说。

且说土行孙回营来见邓九公，问曰：“今日胜了何人？”土行孙把擒杨戩之事说了一遍。九公曰：“但愿早破西岐，旋师奏凯，不负将军得此大功也。”土行孙暗想：“不然今夜进城，杀了武王，诛了姜尚，眼下成功，早成姻眷，多少是好！”土行孙上帐言曰：“元帅不必忧心，末将今夜进西岐，杀了武王、姜尚，找二人首级回来，进朝报功；西岐无首，自然瓦解。”九公曰：“怎得入城？”土行孙曰：“昔日吾师传我有地行之术，可行千里。如进城，有何难事？”邓九公大喜，治酒与土将军贺功，晚间进西岐，行刺武王、子牙。不表。

且言子牙在府，虑土行孙之事；忽然一阵怪风刮来，甚是利害。怎见得，有赞为证：

浙浙萧萧，飘飘荡荡。浙浙萧萧飞落叶，飘飘荡荡卷浮云。  
松柏遭摧折，波涛尽搅浑。山鸟难栖，海鱼颠倒。  
东西铺阁，难保门窗脱落；前后屋舍，怎分户牖倾欹。  
真是：无踪无影惊人胆，助怪藏妖出洞门。

子牙在银安殿上，见大风一阵，刮得来，响一声，把宝纛幡一折两段。子牙大惊；忙取香案，焚香炉内，将八卦搜求吉凶。子牙铺下金钱，便知就里，大惊拍案曰：“不好！”命左右：“忙传请武王驾至相府！”众门人慌问其故。子牙曰：“杨戩之言大是有理！方才风过甚凶，主土行孙今晚进城行刺。”命：“府前大门悬三面镜子，大殿上悬五面镜子，今晚众将不



He returned to the city with a troubled look, and Jiang Ziya asked what was troubling him.

"We're facing a new threat. The dwarf can also travel underground. We'll have to take strict precautions in case he steals into the city from beneath us. But what can we do to stop him?"

"How can we cope with such a situation!" Jiang Ziya was depressed.

"From what I could observe, he's certainly using the Celestial Binding Rope. Today when I was bound up, I looked at it carefully. Let me go to the Flying Cloud Cave and ask about it," Yang Jian proposed.

"That doesn't deal with our present needs. We ought to concentrate on guarding the city against Sun," Jiang Ziya replied.

Yang Jian dared not press the point further. When Sun returned to the Shang camp, Deng Jiugong asked him, "Did you win today? With whom did you fight?"

When Sun told him the story, Deng said encouragingly, "May we win the final victory as soon as possible. When we return, your outstanding service will certainly not be overlooked."

"I'll enter the city secretly tonight and assassinate both King Wu and Jiang Ziya. That way we'll achieve immediate victory and I can consummate my marriage at an early date," Earth Traveler Sun thought. He said, "Commander! Don't worry! I'll enter the city tonight and kill King Wu and Jiang Ziya. Then we can take their heads back to Zhaoge. Without its top leaders, West Qi will collapse of its own accord."

"How can you enter the city?"

"My master taught me how to travel 1,000 *li* a day under ground. I'll have no difficulty entering the city," Sun replied.

With great delight, Deng Jiugong ordered a celebratory banquet to entertain him.

Jiang Ziya was pondering what to do when a strange wind whirled up, breaking trees and churning up the river. Doors and windows were blown from their hinges, and huts and cottages collapsed. With a sudden crash, the thick pole of a big banner outside the Silver Security Court snapped in two. Jiang Ziya quickly burned incense and made a divination. Reading the results, he pounded the table and cried in alarm. "How terrible! What Yang Jian said is right! The dwarf will enter the city tonight to assassinate us."



要散去，俱在府内严备看守，须弓上弦，刀出鞘，以备不虞。”少时，诸将披执上殿。只见门官报入：“武王驾至。”子牙忙率众将接驾至殿内，行礼毕。武王曰：“相父请孤，有何见谕？”子牙曰：“老臣今日训练众将六韬，特请大王筵宴。”武王大喜：“难得相父如此勤劳，孤不胜感激。只愿兵戈宁息，与相父共享安康也。”子牙忙令左右安排筵席，侍武王饮宴；只是谈笑军国重务，不敢说土行孙行刺一节。且说邓九公饮酒至晚，时至初更。土行孙辞邓九公、众将，打点进西岐城。邓九公与众将立起，看土行孙把身子一扭，杳然无迹无踪。邓九公抚掌大笑曰：“天子洪福，又有这等高人辅国，何愁祸乱不平！”且说土行孙进了西岐，到处找寻。来至子牙相府，只见众将弓上弦，刀出鞘，侍立两傍。土行孙在下面立等，不得其便，只得伺候。且说杨戩上殿来，对子牙悄悄道了几句；子牙许之。子牙先把武王安在密室，着四将保驾。子牙自坐殿上，运用元神，保护自己。不题。且言土行孙在下面久等，不能下手，心中焦躁起来，自思：“也罢！我且往宫里杀了武王，再来杀姜子牙不迟。”土行孙离了相府，来寻皇城，未走数步，忽然一派笙簧之音，猛抬头看时，已是宫内。只见武王同嫔妃奏乐饮宴。土行孙见了大喜。正所谓：

踏破铁鞋无觅处，得来全不用功夫。

话说土行孙喜不自胜，轻轻衬在底下等候。只见武王曰：“且止音乐。况今兵临城下，军民离乱，收了筵席，且回宫安寝。”两边宫人随驾入宫。武王命众宫人各散，自同宫妃解衣安寝；不一时，已有鼻息之声。土行孙把身子钻将上来，



He took action at once. He ordered his men to move King Wu to his mansion and had all his generals gather there, swords unsheathed and arrows ready. Three mirrors were hung above the gate and five more over the grand hall. The buildings were to be closely guarded at all times.

All the generals were soon ready, and when King Wu arrived, he asked, "Why did you invite me over, Prime Minister?"

"I've been lecturing the generals on military strategems. We'd like you to join us at a banquet," Jiang Ziya lied to him.

King Wu was delighted. "I greatly appreciate the diligence of your service. May the war be soon over so we can enjoy peace and prosperity together."

Jiang Ziya ordered his men to lay the table. He drank with King Wu, discussing military and state affairs, but he mentioned nothing of Earth Traveler Sun.

Drinking in the Shang camp into the early evening, Sun finally took his leave of Deng and other generals. As they watched, he gave a twist of his body and disappeared into the ground. Deng Jiugong clapped his hands in delight. "It's the great fortune of His Majesty that's given us such a marvelous person. We don't have to worry about West Qi anymore."

Entering West Qi City, Earth Traveler Sun looked here and there until he spotted the prime minister's residence. He saw all the Zhou generals on either side of Jiang Ziya, swords at the ready. He waited patiently underground for a chance to attack.

Then Yang Jian entered the hall and whispered something to Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya immediately asked King Wu to retire to a secret chamber closely guarded by four generals while he himself sat quietly in the hall, protecting himself with his spiritual energy.

After waiting for a long time, the dwarf became impatient. "I'll go and finish King Wu off first. It won't be too late to come back here for Jiang Ziya," he decided.

He left the prime minister's mansion and went to the palace. He heard the sound of beautiful music coming from the inner apartments and saw King Wu drinking happily with his concubines.

The dwarf was overjoyed and waited underground for the right opportunity. Soon he heard King Wu say, "Stop the music. The city is at war. Everyone retire for the night."

Before long, snores could be heard from the bed chamber. Eager to seize this chance, Earth Traveler Sun emerged from the ground and found



此时红灯未灭，举室通明。行孙提刀在手，上了龙床，揭起帐幔，搭上金钩，——武王合眼朦胧，酣然熟睡——土行孙只一刀，把武王割下头来，往床下一掷。只见宫妃尚闭目，鼾睡不醒。土行孙看见妃子脸似桃花，异香扑鼻，不觉动了欲心，乃大喝一声：“你何人，兀自熟睡？”那女子醒来，惊问曰：“汝是何人，夤夜至此？”土行孙曰：“吾非别人，乃成汤营中先行官土行孙是也。武王已被吾所杀。尔欲生乎，欲死乎？”宫妃曰：“我乃女流，害之无益，可怜赦妾一命，其恩非浅。若不弃贱妾貌丑，收为婢妾，得侍将军左右，铭德五内，不敢有忘。”土行孙原是一位神祇，怎忘爱欲，心中大喜：“也罢，若是你心中情愿，与我暂效鱼水之欢，我便赦你。”女子听说，满面堆下笑来，百般应喏。土行孙不觉情逸，随解衣上床，往被里一钻，神魂飘荡，用手正欲抱搂女子，只见那女人双手反把土行孙搂住一束，土行孙气儿也叹不过来，叫道：“美人，略松着些！”那女子大喝一声：“好匹夫！你把吾当谁！”叫左右：“拿住了土行孙！”三军呐喊，锣鼓齐鸣。土行孙及至看时，原来是杨戩。土行孙赤条条的，不能展挣，已被杨戩擒住。——此是杨戩智擒土行孙。——杨戩将土行孙夹着走，不放他沿着地；若是沿着地，他就走了。土行孙自己不好看相，只是闭着眼。且说子牙在银安殿，只闻金鼓大作，杀声振地，问左右：“那里杀声？”只见门官报进相府：“启丞相：杨戩智擒了土行孙。”子牙大喜。杨戩夹着土行孙在府前听令。子牙传令：“进来。”杨戩把土行孙赤条条的夹到檐前来。子牙一见，便问杨戩曰：“拿将成功，这是如何光景？”杨戩夹着土行孙答曰：“这人善能地行之



the chamber still lit brightly by red lamps. Cutlass at the ready, he climbed up onto the dragon bed, hooked back the curtains, and found King Wu sleeping soundly. With a single stroke, he cut off the king's head. As he threw it down from the bed, he noticed King Wu's concubine, still sleeping soundly at his side. She was extremely beautiful. Her face was like a peach blossom, and the fragrance from her body filled his nostrils, stimulating his deepest desires.

"Who are you, sleeping like a log?" he yelled.

"How dare you intrude here so late in the night?" the woman woke up in fright.

"I'm Earth Traveler Sun, general of the vanguard for the Shang army. I've already killed King Wu. So make your choice: Do you want to live or die?"

"I'm only a weak woman. You would gain nothing by killing me. Please have mercy on me. If you don't consider me too ugly, I'm willing to serve you. I'll never forget the favor," the concubine begged him pitifully.

Earth Traveler Sun was filled with lust and was delighted to hear this answer. "OK! I'll spare you, but you've got to sport with me."

The woman smiled sweetly and promised to do anything the dwarf wished. Unable to control his lust, Sun immediately took off his clothes, climbed onto the bed, and slipped under the quilt. He was about to embrace the woman when she suddenly held him tightly in her arms, almost squeezing the breath out of him.

"My beauty! Please loosen your arms a little."

"Damned fool! See who I am," the woman shouted. "Guards! Seize him!"

Earth Traveler Sun looked up and saw no woman but only Yang Jian. Yang Jian carried him out of the palace, careful that he could not touch the ground lest he take the chance to run away through the earth. Humiliated at being caught totally naked, Earth Traveler Sun closed his eyes and made no attempt to resist.

In the Silver Security Court, Jiang Ziya heard the beating of drums and the shouts of the guards. He was about to investigate when the gateman came in. "Prime Minister! Yang Jian has captured the dwarf!"

Jiang Ziya was overjoyed to see Yang Jian with the naked dwarf.



术，若放了他，沿了地就走了。”子牙传令：“拿出去斩了！”杨戩领令，方出府；子牙批行刑箭出。杨戩方转换手来用刀，土行孙往下一挣，杨戩急抢时，土行孙沿土去了。杨戩面面相觑，来回子牙曰：“弟子只因换手斩他，被他挣脱，沿土去了。”子牙听说，默默不语。此时丞相府吵嚷一夜。不表。且说土行孙得生，回至内营，悄悄的换了衣裳，来至营门听令。邓九公传令：“令来。”土行孙至帐前。邓九公问曰：“将军昨晚至西岐，功业如何？”土行孙曰：“子牙防守严紧，分毫不能下手，故此守至天明空回。”邓九公不知所以原故，也自罢了。且说杨戩上殿，来见子牙曰：“弟子往仙山洞府，访问土行孙是如何出处，将捆仙绳问个下落。”子牙曰：“你此去，又恐土行孙行刺；你不可迟悞，事机要紧！”杨戩曰：“弟子知道。”杨戩领令，离了西岐，往夹龙山来。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



“I can’t let him touch the ground because he’ll get away,” Yang Jian explained.

“Take him out and cut his head off,” Jiang Ziya ordered.

Yang Jian took Sun out of the prime minister’s mansion. But as he shifted the dwarf from his right hand to his left so that he could draw his sword, the dwarf struggled with all his strength and touched the ground. He disappeared under the earth before Yang Jian could pull him back.

“I’m sorry to say that the dwarf escaped when I changed hands,” Yang Jian told Jiang Ziya.

Jiang Ziya said nothing. Their efforts that night thus ended in failure. Having escaped with his life, Earth Traveler Sun went back stealthily to his own tent first to dress. He then went to the camp gate to await Deng Jiugong’s orders.

“How did it go?” Deng Jiugong asked when he was admitted.

“The palace and the prime minister’s mansion were so closely guarded I couldn’t get an opportunity to take any action. I had to return at day-break.”

Meanwhile, Yang Jian had gone to see Jiang Ziya. “Let me go to the Flying Cloud Cave to see Krakucchanda and find out about the dwarf. I’ll also ask about his magic ropes.”

“I’m afraid that he’ll come back here tonight. Just don’t be too long.”

“I understand the situation. I’ll be back here as soon as possible. We don’t have to worry about him for the time being,” Yang Jian reassured him.

He left West Qi for Dragon Squeezing Mountain. If you want to know what happened, read the next chapter.







## 第五十五回

### 土行孙归伏西岐

诗曰：

藏身匿影总无良，水到渠成为甚忙。背却天真贪爱欲，有违师训逐疆场。百千伎俩终归正，八九元功自异常。两国始终成好合，认由月老定鸾凰。

话说杨戩借土遁往夹龙山来，正驾遁光，风声雾色，不觉飘飘荡荡落将下来，乃是一座好山。但见：

山顶嵯峨摩斗柄，树梢仿佛接云霄。青烟堆里，时闻谷口猿啼；乱翠阴中，每听松间鹤唳。啸风山魅，立溪边戏弄樵夫；成器狐狸，坐崖畔惊张猎户。八面崔嵬，四围险峻。古怪乔松盘翠岭，槎斫老树挂藤萝。绿水清流，阵阵异香忻馥馥；巅峰彩色，飘飘隐现白云飞。时见大虫来往，每闻山鸟声鸣。麋鹿成群，穿荆棘往来跳跃；玄猿出入，盘溪涧摘果攀桃。伫立草坡一望，并无人走；行来深凹，俱是采药仙童。不是凡尘行乐地，赛过蓬莱第一峰。

话说杨戩落下土遁来，见一座山，真实罕见。往前一望，两边俱是古木乔松，路径幽深，杳然难觅。行过数十步，只见一座桥梁。杨戩过了桥，又见碧瓦雕檐，金钉朱户，上悬一扁——“青鸾斗阙”。杨戩观羨不尽，甚是清幽，不觉立在松阴之下，看玩景致。只见朱红门开，鸾鸣鹤唳之声；又见数对仙童，各执旗幡羽扇；当中有一位道姑，身穿大红白鹤



## Chapter 55

### Surrender of Earth Traveler Sun

On his way to Dragon Squeezing Mountain, Yang Jian landed by mistake on a high mountain. He heard the crying of apes and cranes among the ancient pine and cypress forests. Streams of clear water flowed quietly by and a sweet fragrance filled the air. Tigers wandered here and there. On the peaks lads were busily picking medicinal herbs.

He walked along a path lined with old pine trees. Crossing a bridge, he discovered a magnificent mansion. It had a green tile roof and carved eaves. A board on the vermilion gate read "The Green Phoenix Palace."

He was admiring the pretty scenery from the shade of a pine tree when the gate opened and a beautiful woman came out, walking slowly and gracefully. She was dressed in a red silk robe embroidered with white





绛绡衣，徐徐而来；左右分八位女童，香风袅袅，彩瑞翩翩。怎见得，有赞为证：

鱼尾金冠霞彩飞，身穿白鹤绛绡衣。蕊宫玉阙曾生长，自幼瑶池养息机。只因劝酒蟠桃会，悞犯天条滴翠微。

“青鸾斗阙”权修摄，再上灵霄启故扉。

话说杨戩隐在松林之内，不好出来，只得待他过去，方好起身。只见道姑问左右女童：“是那里有闲人隐在林内？走去看来。”有一女童儿往林中来，杨戩迎上前去，口称：“道兄，方才悞入此山，弟子乃玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门下杨戩是也；今奉姜子牙命，往夹龙山去探机密事，不意驾土遁悞落于此。望道兄转达娘娘，我弟子不好上前请罪。”女童出林见道姑，把杨戩的言语一一回复了。道姑曰：“既是玉鼎真人门下，请来相见。”杨戩只得上前施礼。道姑曰：“杨戩，你往那里去，今到此处？”杨戩曰：“因土行孙同邓九公伐西岐，他有地行之术，前日险些被他伤了武王与姜子牙；如今访其根由，觅其实迹，设法擒他。不知悞落此山，失于回避。”道姑曰：“土行孙乃惧留孙门人，你请他师父下山，大事可定。你回西岐，多拜上姜子牙。你速回去。”杨戩躬身问曰：“请问娘娘尊姓，大名？回西岐好言娘娘圣德。”道姑曰：“吾非别人，乃昊天上帝亲女，瑶池金母所生。只因那年蟠桃会，该我奉酒，有失规矩，悞犯清戒，将我谪贬凤凰山青鸾斗阙。吾乃龙吉公主是也。”杨戩躬身，辞了公主，借土遁而行；未及盞茶时候，又落在低泽之旁。杨戩偏生要行此遁，为何又落，只见泽中微微风起：



cranes and attended by a couple of lads holding feather fans and pennants. The eight lasses at her side filled the forest with alluring fragrance.

Yang Jian hid himself among the pine trees, intending to leave as soon as the lady had gone. But the lady directed her attendants, "Go to that pine grove. There's an idler hiding behind the trees."

When he heard this, Yang Jian moved forward. "How do you do!" he greeted her and exclaimed, "I've come here by mistake. I'm a disciple of Jade Tripod. My name is Yang Jian. By order of Jiang Ziya, I'm on my way to Dragon Squeezing Mountain. Would you kindly explain to your mistress as it would be impolite for me to apologize personally."

When she heard the report about Yang Jian, the lady said, "Since he's a disciple of Jade Tripod, tell him to come see me."

Yang Jian came forward and bowed, and the lady inquired where he was going.

"Earth Traveler Sun is making trouble in West Qi, and King Wu and Jiang Ziya barely escaped assassination yesterday. I'm going to Dragon Squeezing Mountain to make inquiries about him. I'm sorry if I've offended you," Yang Jian replied sincerely.

"Earth Traveler Sun is a disciple of Krakucchanda. The matter can be easily settled if his master goes to West Qi. Please offer my best regards to Jiang Ziya. Hurry on now," the lady urged.

"May I know your honorable name? I'll report your kindness on my return to West Qi," Yang Jian said with a bow.

"I'm the daughter of the Jade Emperor by Golden Mother of the Jade Pond. At the Longevity Peach Banquet I was supposed to serve wine, but I failed to observe the proper etiquette. As punishment I have been exiled to this mountain. I'm Princess Long Ji."

Yang Jian bowed in farewell to the princess and set off. Before long, however, he dropped down again beside a swamp. A storm was rising,



扬尘播土，倒树摧林。海浪如山耸，浑波万叠侵。乾坤昏惨惨，日月暗沉沉。一阵摇松如虎啸，忽然吼树似龙吟。万窍怒号天噎气，飞沙走石乱伤人。

话说杨戩见狂风大作，雾暗天愁，泽中旋起二三丈水头。猛然开处，见一怪物，口似血盆，牙如钢剑，大叫一声：“那里生人气？”跳上岸来，两手捻叉来取。杨戩笑曰：“好孽障！怎敢如此！”手中枪急架相还。未及数合，杨戩发手，用五雷诀，一声响，霹雳交加，那精灵抽身就走。杨戩随后赶来。往前跳至一山脚下，有斗大一个石穴，那妖精往里面钻了去。杨戩笑曰：“是别人不进来；遇我，凭你有多大一个所在，我也走走！”喝声：“疾！”随跟进石穴中来。只见里边黑暗不明。杨戩借三昧火眼，现出光华，照耀如同白昼。原来里面也大，只是一个尽头路。观看左右，并无一物，只见闪闪灼灼，一口三尖两刃刀，又有一包袱扎在上面。杨戩连刀带出来，把包袱打开一看，是一件淡黄袍。怎见得，有赞为证：

淡鹅黄，铜钱厚；骨突云，霞光透。属戊己，按中央。

黄邓邓，大花袍。浑身上下金光照。

杨戩将袍抖开，穿在身上，不长不短；把刀和枪扎在一处，收了黄袍，方欲起身，只听的后面大呼曰：“拿住盗袍的贼！”杨戩回头，见两个童儿赶来。杨戩立而问曰：“那童子，那个盗袍？”童子曰：“是你。”杨戩大喝一声：“吾盗你的袍？把你这孽障！吾修道多年，岂犯贼盗！”二童子曰：“你是谁？”杨戩曰：“吾乃玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门下杨戩是也。”二童听罢，倒身下拜：“弟子不知老师到，有失迎迓。”杨戩曰：“二童子果是何人？”童子曰：“弟子乃五夷山金毛童子是也。”杨



uprooting trees and churning up waves as high as mountains. In the midst of the storm, a water spout rose thirty feet high from the swamp, and at its mouth Yang Jian saw a queer creature: It had a mouth as big as a basin and teeth like swords.

“Where’s the man for me to eat?” the creature cried.

It jumped onto the bank and attacked Yang Jian with a long fork.

“Damned beast! How dare you be so rude!” Yang Jian laughed and replied with his lance. After a few rounds, he evoked thunder and lightning, putting the creature to flight. Yang Jian pursued him closely, but the monster dodged into a large cave at the foot of a hill.

Yang Jian laughed. “Others may hesitate, but not I. No matter what might happen, I’m still going in.”

It was very dark in the cave, but Yang Jian’s eyes gave off two beams of light which lit it up as bright as day. He went to the far end of the cave but found nothing except a double-bladed cutlass with three sharp points laid upon a parcel. He picked up the cutlass and opened the parcel. He found a shining pale yellow gown which, to his delight, fitted him perfectly. He put the gown back, tied his lance and the cutlass together, and was about to walk out of the cave when he heard a voice from behind, “Catch the thief!”

He turned and saw two lads. Standing still, he inquired, “Who’s the thief?”

“You, of course.”

“You little wretches! Am I stealing your gown? I’ve been cultivating myself for many years. How can I be a thief?” Yang Jian scolded them.

“Who are you then?”

“I’m Yang Jian, disciple of Jade Tripod.”

Hearing this, the two lads immediately knelt down and kowtowed, saying, “We beg your pardon, Master, for failing to welcome you.”

“Who are you, lads?”

“We’re the Golden Fleece Lads from Mount Wuyi.”





戩曰：“你既拜吾为师，你先往西岐去，见姜丞相，你说我往夹龙山去了。”金毛童子曰：“倘姜丞相不纳，如何？”杨戩曰：“你将此枪连刀袍都带去，自然无事。”二童辞了师父，借水遁往西岐来了。正是：

玄门自有神仙诀，脚踏风云咫尺来。

话说金毛童子至西岐，寻至相府前，对门官曰：“你报丞相，说有二人求见。”门官进来启丞相：“有二道童求见。”子牙命：“来。”二童入见子牙，倒身下拜，“弟子乃杨戩门徒金毛童子是也。家师中途相遇，为得刀袍，故先着弟子来。师父往夹龙山去了。特来谒叩老爷。”子牙曰：“杨戩又得门人，深为可喜。”留在本府听用。不题。

且说杨戩架土遁至夹龙山飞龙洞，径进洞，见了惧留孙下拜，口称：“师伯。”惧留孙忙答礼曰：“你来做什么？”杨戩道：“师伯可曾不见了捆仙绳？”惧留孙慌忙站起曰：“你怎么知道？”杨戩曰：“有个土行孙同邓九公来征伐西岐，用的是捆仙绳，将子牙师叔的门人拿入汤营，被弟子看破；特来奉请师伯。”惧留孙听得，怒曰：“好畜生！你敢私自下山，盗吾宝贝，害吾不浅！杨戩，你且先回西岐，我随后就来。”杨戩离了高山，回到西岐，至府前，人见子牙。子牙问曰：“可是捆仙绳？”杨戩把收金毛童子事，悞入青鸾斗阙；见惧留孙的事说了一遍。子牙曰：“可喜你又得了门下！”杨戩曰：“前缘有定，今得刀袍，无非赖师叔之大德，主上之洪福耳。”且言惧留孙分付童子：“看守洞门，候我去西岐走一遭。”——童子领命。不题。——道人驾纵地金光法来至西岐。左右报与子牙：“惧留孙仙师来至。”子牙迎出府来。二人携手至



"Now that you acknowledge me as your master, go to see Prime Minister Jiang and tell him that I'm on my way to Dragon Squeezing Mountain," Yang Jian instructed.

"What shall we do if the prime minister doesn't accept us?"

"He'll certainly welcome you if you show him my lance, cutlass and gown."

The two lads bade him farewell and hurried to West Qi on a watery cloud. When they arrived, they were admitted to the prime minister's mansion. They knelt before Jiang Ziya. "We're the Golden Fleece Lads, disciples of Yang Jian. He sent us here to report to you that he's on his way to Dragon Squeezing Mountain."

"I'm delighted that Yang Jian has two disciples!" Jiang Ziya said, and asked them to serve in the prime minister's mansion.

Arriving finally at Dragon Squeezing Mountain, Yang Jian entered the Flying Cloud Cave, knelt before Krakucchanda and hailed him. "Greetings, Uncle!"

"What brings you here?" the immortal asked after he returned the greeting.

"Is your Celestial Binding Rope missing, Uncle?"

"How do you know?" the immortal cried, leaping to his feet.

"There's one Earth Traveler Sun under the command of Deng Jiugong. He's taken some of Jiang Ziya's disciples with your rope. I've come here to report the matter and await your instructions."

Krakucchanda was furious. "That beast! How dare he steal my magic ropes, run away, and degrade my honor! Yang Jian, return to West Qi at once. I'll follow straightway."

Back in West Qi, Yang Jian entered the prime minister's mansion, and Jiang Ziya hurriedly asked, "Is it the Celestial Binding Rope?"

Yang Jian told him how he had met the Golden Fleece Lads, how he had visited the Green Phoenix Palace, and how he had met with Krakucchanda. Jiang Ziya said happily, "Congratulations! You now have your own disciples."

"It's all been destined by fate. It was through your virtue and King Wu's fortune that I obtained the cutlass and gown," Yang Jian replied.

After Yang Jian left, Krakucchanda told his lad, "Keep a close watch on the cave until I return."

He traveled on a golden light beam and soon arrived in West Qi, where he was met by Jiang Ziya. They entered the prime minister's mansion



殿，行礼坐下。子牙曰：“高徒累胜吾军，我又不知；后被杨戩看破，只得请道兄一顾，以完道兄昔日助燃灯道兄之雅。末弟不胜幸甚！”惧留孙曰：“自从我来破十绝阵回去，自未曾检点此宝；岂知是这畜生盗在这里作怪！不妨，须得……如此如此，顷刻擒获。”子牙大喜。次日，子牙独自乘四不相往成汤辕门前后，观看邓九公的大营，若探视之状。只见巡营探子报入中军：“启元帅：姜丞相乘骑在辕门私探，不知何故。”邓九公曰：“姜子牙善能攻守，晓畅兵机，不可不防。”旁有土行孙大喜曰：“元帅放心，待吾擒来，今日成功。”土行孙暗暗走出辕门，大呼曰：“姜尚！你私探吾营，是自送死期，不要走！”举手中棍照头打来。子牙仗手中剑急架来迎。未及三合，子牙拨转四不相就走。土行孙随后赶来，祭起捆仙绳，又来拿子牙。——他不知惧留孙驾着金光法隐在空中，只管接他的。——土行孙意在拿了子牙，早奏功回朝，要与邓婵玉成亲。——此正是爱欲迷人，真性自昧。只顾拿人，不知省视前后一路；只是祭起捆仙绳，不见落下来，也不思忖。只顾赶子牙，不上一里，把绳子都用完了；随手一摸，只至没有了，方才惊骇。土行孙见势头不好，站立不赶。子牙勒转四不相，大呼曰：“土行孙敢至此再战三合否？”土行孙大怒，拖棍赶来。才转过城垣，只见惧留孙曰：“土行孙那里去！”土行孙抬头，见是师父，就往地下一钻。惧留孙用手一指，“不要走！”只见那一块土比铁还硬，钻不下去。惧留孙赶上一把，抓住顶瓜皮，用捆仙绳四马攒蹄捆了，拎着他进西岐城来。众将知道擒了土行孙，齐



arm in arm, exchanged bows, and then sat down.

"I didn't know that it was your honorable disciple. Yang Jian was the one who found out. I've asked you here to fulfill the promise you made to Burning Lamp," Jiang Ziya explained.

"Since my return from the Ten Death Traps, I haven't checked over my treasures. I never imagined that beast would steal the rope and make trouble here. Never mind, I can capture him easily enough," the immortal replied.

Jiang Ziya was overjoyed. The following day he rode out alone on his nondescript horse to the camp gate of the Shang army. A patrolman immediately reported to Deng Jiugong, "Commander! Jiang Ziya's scouting around our camp gate and observing our activities."

"Jiang Ziya is tricky. Be on guard against him," Deng Jiugong warned his generals.

Earth Traveler Sun was pleased to hear the news. "Rest assured, Commander. I'll capture him for you, and we'll win our final victory today."

He rushed out of the camp gate and yelled loudly, "Jiang Ziya! You're simply asking for trouble, coming out alone to spy on us. Don't run away."

He swung his cudgel at Jiang Ziya, who met him with his sword. After only three rounds, Jiang Ziya turned and fled. Sun chased him and cast up a piece of magic rope, little imagining that Krakucchanda was hiding in the clouds.

Earth Traveler Sun thought of nothing but taking Jiang Ziya so that he could consummate his marriage with Deng Chanyu. He threw the ropes into the air one by one, not thinking about why they failed to come down. He reached into his bag one last time and to his surprise, found none left. He pulled up short and stood still.

Jiang Ziya turned his nondescript horse about. "Dwarf! Do you dare to meet me in three more rounds of combat?"

Angered, Sun set off after Jiang again, his cudgel trailing behind him. As he rounded the city wall he heard a voice calling, "Where are you going, Earth Traveler Sun?"

He looked up, and seeing his master before him, quickly stamped his foot in an attempt to enter the ground. Krakucchanda pointed at the ground with his fingers and shouted, "Stop!" The ground on which Sun was standing immediately became harder than iron, making it impossible for the dwarf to descend.

Krakucchanda jumped forward and seized his disciple. He tied him up with a magic rope and told his men to carry him into the city. When they



至府前来看。道人把土行孙放在地下。杨戩曰：“师伯仔细，莫又走了他！”惧留孙曰：“有吾在此，不妨。”复问土行孙曰：“你这畜生！我自破十绝阵回去，此捆仙绳我一向不曾检点，谁知被你盗出。你实说，是谁人唆使？”土行孙曰：“老师来破十绝阵，弟子闲耍高山，偶遇一道人跨虎而来，问弟子叫甚名字，弟子说名与他。弟子也随问他；他说是阐教门人申公豹。他看我不能了道成仙，只好受人间富贵。他教我往闻太师行营成功。弟子不肯。他荐我往三山关邓九公麾下建功。师父，弟子一时迷惑，但富贵人人所欲，贫贱人人所恶，弟子动了个贪痴念头，故此盗了老师捆仙绳，两葫芦丹药，走下尘寰。望老师道心无处不慈悲，饶了弟子罢！”子牙在旁曰：“道兄，似这等畜生，坏了吾教，速速斩讫报来！”惧留孙曰：“若论无知冒犯，理当斩首。但有一说：此人子牙公后有有用他处，可助西岐一臂之力。”子牙曰：“道兄传他地行之术，他心毒恶，暗进城垣，行刺武王与我，赖皇天庇佑，风折旗幡，把吾惊觉，算有吉凶，着实防备，方使我君臣无虞，若是毫厘差迟，道兄也有干系。此事还多亏杨戩设法擒获，又被他狡猾走了。这样东西，留他作甚！”子牙道罢，惧留孙大惊，忙下殿来大喝曰：“畜生！你进城行刺武王，行刺你师叔，那时幸而无虞；若是差迟，罪系于我。”土行孙曰：“我实告师尊：弟子随邓九公征伐西岐，一次仗师父捆仙绳拿了哪吒，二次擒了黄天化，三次将师叔拿了。邓元帅与弟子贺功，见我屡拿有名之士，将女许我，欲赘为婿；被他催逼弟子，弟子不得已，仗地行之术，故有此举。怎敢在师父跟前有一句虚语！”惧留孙低头连想，默算一



learned that Sun had been taken alive, all the Zhou generals came to the prime minister's mansion. When the dwarf was lowered to the ground, Yang Jian said hurriedly, "Be careful, Uncle! He'll run away."

"Now that I'm here, it doesn't matter," the immortal said. Then, he turned to Earth Traveler Sun, "You beast! I never expected that you would steal my ropes. Now tell me the truth! Who incited you to it?"

"When you were away, I was wandering about the mountain when I met a Taoist on a tiger. He asked my name and told me that he was Shen Gongbao, a member of Chan Taoism. He said I had no possibility of becoming an immortal, but could enjoy worldly riches and power. He recommended that I go to Sanshan Pass and offer my service to Deng Jiugong. I couldn't resist the temptation, Master. I was deceived, as riches and power are coveted by all while poverty and lowliness are despised. I thus stole your ropes and two gourds of elixir pills, left the mountain, and joined the army. Please show compassion and forgive me, Master!" Earth Traveler Sun begged.

"Behead him at once. Such a beast is a disgrace to Mount Kunlun," Jiang Ziya exclaimed.

"He deserves death. Nevertheless, he could be useful in the future," the immortal said.

"Though you, my brother, taught him how to travel under the ground, he's wicked at heart. He entered the city to assassinate King Wu and me. Fortunately, Heaven alerted me with a violent wind that broke a flag pole. Though Yang Jian managed to seize him, he slipped away again. What's the use of such a renegade," Jiang Ziya objected.

Astonished, the immortal jumped up from his seat and shouted, "You damned beast! How dare you attempt to assassinate King Wu and your uncle. What would I have done had you hurt them?"

"I must tell you the truth, dear Master. I captured first Nezha and then Huang Tianhua. Commander Deng was so pleased that he held a banquet in my honor. He was even more pleased when I bound up my uncle, and he promised me his daughter's hand if I succeeded in conquering the city. As he repeatedly urged me to achieve great feats, I entered the city as Uncle Jiang stated. That is the true story."



回，不觉嗟叹。子牙曰：“道兄为何嗟叹？”惧留孙曰：“子牙公，方才贫道卜算，这畜生与那女子该有系足之缘。前生分定，事非偶然。若得一人作伐，方可全美。若此女来至，其父不久也是周臣。”子牙曰：“吾与邓九公乃是敌国之讎，怎能得全此事？”惧留孙曰：“武王洪福，乃有道之君。天数已定，不怕不能完全。只是选一能言之士，前往汤营说合，不怕不成。”子牙低头沉思良久，曰：“须得散宜生去走一遭方可。”惧留孙曰：“既如此，事不宜迟。”子牙命左右：“去请上大夫散宜生来商议。”命：“放了土行孙。”不一时，上大夫散宜生来至，行礼毕。子牙曰：“今邓九公有女邓婵玉，原系邓九公亲许土行孙为妻。今烦大夫至汤营作伐，乞为委曲周旋，务在必成，……如此如此，方可。”散宜生领命出城。不表。且说邓九公在营，悬望土行孙回来，只见一去，竟无影响；令探马打听多时，回报：“闻得土先行被子牙拿进城去了。”邓九公大惊曰：“此人捉去，西岐如何能克！”心下十分不乐。只见散宜生来与土行孙议亲。不知吉凶如何，且听下回分解。



Krakucchanda lowered his head in thought, silently made a divination, and then sighed unconsciously.

“Why do you sigh, Brother?” Jiang Ziya asked.

“I’ve just made a divination, Brother. This beast and the girl are destined by fate to be married. Find a good matchmaker to help them complete the event. If we can get the girl as his wife, her father will certainly come over,” the immortal explained.

“How can we hope to arrange a wedding when Deng Jiugong is at war with us?”

“With the good fortune of King Wu we can solve this problem. The matter has already been determined by fate, so we shouldn’t be afraid of failure. Pick an eloquent scholar to approach the Shang camp as a matchmaker.”

Jiang Ziya pondered this for a while and then said, “San Yisheng is the man.”

“He must be dispatched immediately,” the immortal ordered.

Jiang Ziya sent for San Yisheng and set Earth Traveler Sun free.

“Deng Jiugong has promised his daughter to Sun. I must trouble you to go and see him about the match. Do your best to accomplish this mission,” Jiang Ziya told San Yisheng on his arrival.

Deng Jiugong was waiting eagerly for Earth Traveler Sun. When Sun failed to return, he sent his men to find out what had happened. He was greatly alarmed to learn that Sun had been taken. “How can I ever subdue West Qi now that I’ve lost that fellow!”

How did events develop? Please read the next chapter to find out.





## 第五十六回

### 子牙设计收九公

诗曰：

姻缘前定果天然，须信红丝足下牵。敌国不妨成好合，仇讎应自得翩联。子牙妙计真难及，鸾使奇谋任用偏。总是天机难预料，纣王无福镇乾坤。

话说散宜生出城，来至汤营，对旗门官曰：“辕门将校，报与你邓元帅得知：岐周差上大夫散宜生有事求见。”军政官报进中军：“启元帅：岐周差上大夫有事求见。”邓九公曰：“吾与他为敌国，为何差人来见我！必定来下说词，岂可容他进营，惑乱军心。你与他说：‘两国正当争战之秋，相见不便。’”军政官出营，回复散宜生。宜生曰：“‘两国相争，不阻来使。’相见何妨？吾此来奉姜丞相命，有事面决，非可传闻。再烦通报。”军政官只得又进营来，把散宜生言语对九公诉说一遍。九公沉吟。傍有正印先行官太鸾上前言曰：“元帅乘此机会放他进来，随机应变，看他如何说，亦可就中取事，有何不可？”九公曰：“此说亦自有理。”命左右：“请他进来。”旗门官出辕门，对散宜生曰：“元帅有请。”散大夫下马，走进辕门，进了三层鹿角，行至滴水檐前。邓九公迎下来。散宜生鞠躬，口称：“元帅！”九公曰：“大夫降临，有失迎候。”彼此逊让行礼。后人诗单赞子牙妙计，诗曰：

子牙妙算世无伦，学贯天人泣鬼神。纵使九公称敌国，

## Chapter 56

### Deng Jiugong Is Won Over

San Yisheng left the city for the Shang army camp. "Would you please tell Commander Deng that Supreme Minister San Yisheng requests to see him?" he told the guard at the camp gate.

Deng Jiugong was surprised at the report. "We're enemies. Why should Jiang Ziya send someone to see me? This must be a plot to demoralize my army. Tell him I'm not in a position to meet him, as we're still at war with one another."

When this message was relayed, San Yisheng protested. "According to custom, when two parties are at war, their representatives may still meet. What's wrong with my seeing him? By order of Prime Minister Jiang, I must see him about an important matter. Would you ask him again?"

When the guard repeated San Yisheng's words, Deng Jiugong thought the matter over silently, but Tai Luan approached him and said, "Why not let him come in, Commander. Listen to what he has to say and then decide what action we should take. What can be wrong with that?"

"You're quite right. Admit him into the camp."

San Yisheng was conducted in and cordially met by Deng Jiugong under the eaves. They greeted each other politely and sat down.





蓝桥也自结婚亲。

话说二人迺至中军，分宾主坐下。邓九公曰：“大夫，你与我今为敌国，未决雌雄，彼此各为其主，岂得徇私妄议。大夫今日见谕，公则公言之，私则私言之，不必效舌剑唇枪，徒劳往返耳。予心如铁石，有死而已，断不为浮言所摇。”散宜生笑曰：“吾与公既为敌国，安敢造次请见。只有一件大事，特来请一明示，无他耳。昨因拿有一将，系是元帅门婿；于盘问中，道及斯意。吾丞相不忍骤加极刑，以割人间恩爱，故命宜生亲至辕门，特请尊裁。”邓九公听说，不觉大惊曰：“谁为吾婿，为姜丞相所擒？”散宜生说：“元帅不必故推，令婿乃土行孙也。”邓九公听说，不觉面皮通红，心中大怒，厉声言曰：“大夫在上：吾只有一女，乳名婵玉，幼而丧母。吾爱惜不啻掌上之珠，岂得轻意许人。今虽及笄，所求者固众，吾自视皆非佳婿。而土行孙何人，妄有此说也！”散宜生曰：“元帅暂行息怒，听不才拜禀：古人相女配夫，原不专在门第。今土行孙亦不是无名小辈，彼原是夹龙山飞龙洞惧留孙门下高弟；因申公豹与姜子牙有隙，故说土行孙下山，来助元帅征伐西岐。昨日他师父下山，捉获行孙在城，因穷其所事。彼言所以，虽为申公豹所惑，次为元帅以令爱相许，有此一段姻缘，彼因倾心为元帅而暗进岐城行刺，欲速成功，良有以也。昨已被擒，伏辜不枉。但彼再三哀求姜丞相、彼之师尊惧留孙曰：‘为此一段姻缘，死不瞑目。’之语。即姜丞相与他师尊俱不肯赦，只予在傍劝慰：岂得以彼一时之过，而断送人间好事哉！因劝姜丞相暂且留人。宜生不辞劳顿，特谒元帅，恳求俯赐人间好事，曲成儿



“Minister! We’re engaged in an unfinished war. It would be inconvenient for us to talk privately, so please speak here. Your tongue may be a sword and your lips a lance, but my heart is as hard as stone. I cannot be deceived by any sweet talk.”

San Yisheng smiled. “I would have never dared to see you under the present conditions, but this matter is very important. We took one of your generals yesterday, and as the result of our inquiries found surprisingly that he’s your son-in-law. As a merciful man, Prime Minister Jiang hasn’t the heart to disregard your daughter’s love for him. He sent me here to inform you and wait for your decision.”

Deng Jiugong was shocked. “Who’s this son-in-law of mine?”

“Don’t pretend that you don’t know, Commander. Your worthy son-in-law is Earth Traveler Sun.”

Deng Jiugong flushed red. “Listen, my dear minister! I’ve got only one daughter. She lost her mother during childhood. To me she’s a pearl in the palm of my hand. How could I carelessly promise her to anyone? Though many young men have asked for her hand, I don’t regard any of them as good enough for her. How can that fellow dare to speak such nonsense?”

“Please stay calm, Commander, and listen to what I have to say. When our ancestors choose a son-in-law, they don’t always insist that bride and groom be of equal family status. Earth Traveler Sun is by no means a nobody. He’s a prominent disciple of Krakucchanda. Shen Gongbao deceived Earth Traveler Sun in order to harm Jiang Ziya. That’s what Sun told us yesterday before his master. First he was deceived by Shen Gongbao, then he was bewitched by your promise to marry your daughter to him. In order to do his best, he entered the city in an attempt to assassinate King Wu and Jiang Ziya. According to the law, he should be executed, but he begged for mercy, saying that he couldn’t die in peace if he failed to marry Deng Chanyu. His plea was rejected, yet I was in full sympathy with him. I’m unwilling to see their pure love destroyed just because of an error on the part of Earth Traveler Sun. I persuaded Prime Minister Jiang to reconsider the matter, and I suggest



女恩情，此亦元帅天地父母之心。故宜生不避斧钺，特见尊颜，以求裁示。倘元帅果有此事，姜丞相仍将土行孙送还元帅，以遂姻亲，再决雌雄耳。并无他说。”邓九公曰：“大夫不知，此土行孙妄语耳。行孙乃申公豹所荐，为吾先行，不过一牙门裨将；吾何得骤以一女许之哉。彼不过借此为偷生之计，以辱吾女耳。大夫不可轻信。”宜生曰：“元帅也不必固却。此事必有他故。难道土行孙平白兴此一番言语，其中定有委曲。想是元帅或于酒后赏功之际，怜才惜技之时，或以一言安慰其心，彼便妄认为实，作此痴想耳。”九公被散宜生此一句话，买出九公一腔心事。九公不觉答道：“大夫斯言，大是明见！当时土行孙被申公豹荐在吾麾下，吾亦不甚重彼；初为副先行督粮使者，后因太鸾失利，彼恃其能，改为正先行官。首阵擒了哪吒，次擒黄天化，三次擒了姜子牙，被岐周众将抢回。土行孙进营，吾见彼累次出军获胜，治酒与彼贺功，以尽朝廷奖赏功臣至意。及至饮酒中间，彼曰：‘元帅在上：若是早用末将为先行，吾取西岐多时矣。’那时吾酒后失口，许之曰：‘你若取了西岐，吾将婵玉赘你为婿。’一来是奖励彼竭力为公，早完王事；今彼既已被擒，安得又妄以此言为口实，令大夫往返哉？”散宜生笑曰：“元帅此言差矣。大丈夫一言既出，驷马难追。况且婚姻之事，人之大伦，如何作为儿戏之谈？前日元帅言之，土行孙信之；土行孙又言之，天下共信之；传与中外，人人共信，正所谓‘路上行人口似碑’。将以为元帅相女配夫，谁信元帅权宜之术，为国家行此不得已之深衷也。徒使令爱千金之躯作为话柄，闺中美秀竟作口谈。万一不曲全此事，徒使令爱有白



that you also help your daughter and Earth Traveler Sun to happiness. Jiang Ziya would like to set Sun free and send him back to you before any further battle is waged.”

“He was simply talking rubbish. I only took him on as a general. How could I promise my daughter to him in marriage! He has merely used this as a pretext to save his life and insult my daughter at the same time. How can you believe him?”

“There must be some reason why he should say such a thing. He can’t possibly have fabricated the whole story. I think that when you were drunk, you said things to encourage him. He believed that you spoke honestly and became infatuated with the idea of marrying your daughter.”

“You’re right, Minister. You have keen insight into things. When he first came, I merely appointed him to supervise the food supplies. After General Tai Luan was defeated, I appointed Sun general of the vanguard. He took Nezha in the first battle, Huang Tianhua in the second, and bound up Jiang Ziya in the third. I held a dinner party for him, and as we drank, he said, ‘Commander, had you appointed me general of the vanguard earlier, West Qi would have been subdued long ago!’ I was already drunk by that time and carelessly promised him, ‘If you subdue West Qi, I’ll let you marry Deng Chanyu.’ I only said it to encourage him to win an early victory for the king. Now that he’s captured, the promise is naturally rendered invalid. It’s outrageous that he should trouble you to come here to see me.”

“You’re mistaken, Commander. Once a promise is given, it’s very difficult to withdraw. As matrimony is so important ethically, how can you regard it as a child’s game? You made the promise, and he believed you. Since he’s told everybody about it, all the people in the country think that you’ve picked an outstanding young man. No one will understand that you were playing a trick to fool him for the welfare of the state. As



头之叹。吾窃为元帅惜之！今元帅为汤之大臣，天下三尺之童无不奉命；若一旦而如此，吾不知所税驾矣。乞元帅裁之。”邓九公被散宜生一番言语说得默默沉思，无言可答。只见太鸾上前，附耳说：“……如此如此，亦是第一妙计。”邓九公听太鸾之言，回嗔作喜曰：“大夫之言深属有理，未将无不听命。只小女因先妻早丧，幼而失教，予虽一时承命，未知小女肯听此言。俟予将此意与小女商确，再令人至城中回复。”散宜生只得告辞。邓九公送至营门而别。散宜生进城，将邓九公言语从头至尾说了一遍。子牙大笑曰：“邓九公此计，怎么瞒得我过！”惧留孙亦笑曰：“且看如何来说。”子牙曰：“动劳散大夫，俟九公人来，再为商议。”宜生退去。不表。

且说邓九公与太鸾曰：“适才虽是暂允，此事毕竟当如何处置？”太鸾曰：“元帅明日可差一能言之士，说，‘昨日元帅至后营，与小姐商议，小姐已自听允；只是两边敌国，恐无足取信，是必姜丞相亲自至汤营纳聘，小姐方肯听信。’子牙如不来便罢，再为之计；若是他肯亲自来纳聘，彼必无带重兵自卫之理，如此，只一匹夫可擒耳。若是他带有将佐，元帅可出辕门迎接，至中军用酒筵赚开他手下众将，预先埋伏下骁勇将士，俟酒席中击杯为号，擒之如囊中之物。西岐若无子牙，则不攻自破矣。”九公闻说大喜：“先行之言，真神出鬼没之机！只是能言快语之人，临机应变之士，吾知非先行不可。乞烦先行明日亲往，则大事可成。”太鸾曰：“若元帅不以未将为不才，鸾愿往周营叫子牙亲至中军，不劳苦争恶战，早早奏凯回军。”九公大喜。一宿晚景不题。次日，邓九公升帐，命太鸾进西岐说亲。太鸾辞别九公出营，至西岐城下，



a commander and minister of the Shang Dynasty, how can you expose yourself to public ridicule? You must consider this carefully," San Yisheng said with a smile.

Deng Jiugong fell silent, unable to find an answer. General Tai Luan moved forward. "I have an idea. We can deal with the matter like this..." he whispered in his commander's ear.

Deng's anger turned to delight. He said to San Yisheng, "You're right, Minister. I'll do just as you say. But my daughter lost her mother as a child and isn't well-educated. I don't know if she'll obey me. I'll have to discuss it with her before I can give you a final answer."

San Yisheng bade him farewell, and Deng Jiugong saw him off to the camp gate. Back in the city, San Yisheng reported the matter to Jiang Ziya, who burst into laughter. "How can he deceive me with such a poor plot!"

Krakucchanda also laughed heartily. "Let's wait and see what they say to us."

"I'm sorry to trouble you, Minister," Jiang said to San Yisheng. "But we'll discuss this matter again as soon as Deng Jiugong sends word."

"Though I've given a skilful answer to San Yisheng, what shall we do next, General Tai Luan?" Deng asked.

"Commander! Send a capable person to West Qi tomorrow to tell Jiang Ziya, 'Our commander has discussed the question of marriage with his daughter, and she has agreed to keep her father's promise. However, as we're at war, she trusts no one other than Prime Minister Jiang. She requests his presence at the Shang camp to announce the engagement between herself and Earth Traveler Sun.' If Jiang comes here without protection, we can get him easily with just a single ordinary soldier. If he comes with his generals, entertain him, and then signal for our men to rush out. West Qi can be easily conquered without Jiang Ziya."

Deng Jiugong was delighted. "That's an excellent plan. Your wit is on a par with that of ghosts and celestials. We need an eloquent man who can rise to every occasion. Would you go there tomorrow to ensure the success of our plan, General?"

"If you think I'm not lacking in ability, I would be pleased to deliver the message."

General Tai Luan went to West Qi City the next day. He approached





对守门官将曰：“吾是先行官太鸾；奉邓元帅命，欲见姜丞相。烦为通报。”守城官至相府，报与姜丞相曰：“城下有汤营先行官太鸾求见，请令定夺。”子牙听罢，对惧留孙曰：“大事成矣。”惧留孙亦自暗喜。子牙对左右曰：“速与我请来。”守门官同军校至城下，开了城门，对太鸾曰：“丞相有请。”太鸾忙忙进城，行至相府下马。左右通报：“太鸾进府。”子牙与惧留孙降阶而接。太鸾控背躬身言曰：“丞相在上：末将不过马前一卒，礼当叩见；岂敢当丞相如此过爱？”子牙曰：“彼此二国，俱系宾主，将军不必过谦。”太鸾再四逊谢，方敢就坐。彼此温慰毕。子牙以言挑之曰：“前者因惧道兄将土行孙擒获，当欲斩首；彼因再四哀求，言邓元帅曾有牵红之约，乞我少缓须臾之死，故此着散大夫至邓元帅中军，问其的确。倘元帅果有此言，自当以土行孙放回，以遂彼儿女之情，人间恩爱耳。幸蒙元帅见诺，俟议定回我。今将军赐顾，元帅必有教我。”太鸾欠身答曰：“蒙丞相下问，末将敢不上陈。今特奉主帅之命，多拜上丞相，不及写书；但主帅乃一时酒后所许，不意土行孙被获，竟以此事倡明，主帅亦不敢辞。但主帅此女，自幼失母，主帅爱惜如珠。况此事须要成礼；后日乃吉日良辰，意欲散大夫同丞相亲率土行孙入赘，以珍重其事，主帅方有体面，然后再面议军国之事。不识丞相允否？”子牙曰：“我知邓元帅乃忠信之士，但几次天子有征伐之师至此，皆不由分诉，俱以强力相加；只我周这一段忠君爱国之心，并无背逆之意，不能见谅于天子之前，言之欲涕。今天假其便，有此姻缘，庶几将我等一腔心事可以上达天子，表白于天下也。我等后日，亲送土行孙至邓元帅



the city gate and said to the guards, "I'm General Tai Luan of the vanguard. By order of my commander, I've come to see Prime Minister Jiang. Please report this to your leader."

On learning of his arrival, Jiang Ziya said to Krakucchanda, "Our plan is working perfectly."

The immortal felt pleased by the prospect of their success as well.

The city gate was opened immediately, and the visitor was admitted and warmly welcomed by the prime minister and the immortal on the stone steps of the prime minister's reception hall.

General Tai Luan bowed. "Prime Minister! I'm only a soldier, yet you show me such respect! I should kowtow before you."

"As the representative of your army, you're our distinguished guest. Please don't stand on ceremony, General," Jiang Ziya replied.

When they were all seated, Jiang Ziya began, "When Krakucchanda ordered his disciple be put to death, Sun begged to have his death penalty postponed on the grounds that Commander Deng had promised to take him as his son-in-law. We therefore asked San Yisheng to see your commander to arrange the marriage. We'll release Sun so that the two may be married. Your commander generously promised us a definite reply, so we're very happy to have your honorable presence here today."

General Tai Luan bowed politely. "Commander Deng asked me to tell you that he was drunk when he made that promise to Earth Traveler Sun. He never imagined Sun would tell you that secret after his capture, making things very difficult for him. As his daughter lost her mother in childhood, he adores her like a precious pearl. He demands that a solemn ceremony with full rites be held on an auspicious date. He's chosen the day after tomorrow. He would feel greatly honored if Sun were escorted to the wedding by both you and San Yisheng. He would also be pleased to discuss state affairs with you after the ceremony. Would you agree to this proposal, Prime Minister?"

"I know that his offer is sincere. We're loyal to His Majesty, yet we've been unjustly attacked several times by the royal forces without being given the chance to explain. Through this wedding, our loyalty and patriotism may finally be made known to King Zhou. I'll personally accompany Sun to your camp. Would you kindly report all this to your com-



行营，吃贺喜筵席。乞将军善言道达，姜尚感激不尽！”太鸾逊谢。子牙遂厚款太鸾而别。太鸾出得城来，至营门前等令。左右报入营中：“有先行官等令。”邓九公命：“令来。”太鸾至中军。九公问曰：“其事如何？”太鸾将姜子牙应允后日亲来言语，诉说一遍。邓九公以手加额曰：“天子洪福，彼自来送死！”太鸾曰：“虽然大事已成，但防备不可不谨。”邓九公分付：“选有力量军士三百人，各藏短刀利刃，埋伏帐外，听击杯为号，左右齐出；不论子牙众将，一顿刀剁为肉酱！”众将士得令而退。命赵升领一枝人马，埋伏营左；候中军炮响，杀出接应。又命孙焰红领一枝人马，埋伏营右；候中军炮响，杀出接应。又命太鸾与子邓秀在辕门赚住众将。又分付后营小姐邓婵玉领一枝人马，为三路救应使。邓九公分付停当，专候后日行事。左右将佐俱去安排。不表。

且说子牙送太鸾出府归，与惧留孙商议曰：“必须……如此如此，大事可成。”光阴迅速，不觉就是第三日。先一日，子牙命：“杨戩变化，暗随吾身。”杨戩得令。子牙命选精力壮卒五十名，装作抬礼脚夫；辛甲、辛免、太颠、閻夭，四贤、八俊等充作左右应接之人，俱各藏暗兵利刃。又命雷震子领一枝人马，抢他左哨，杀入中军接应。再命南宫适领一枝人马，抢彼右哨，杀入中军接应。金吒、木吒、龙须虎统领大队人马，救应抢亲。子牙俱分付暗暗出营埋伏。不表。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

汤营此日瑞筵开，专等鹰扬大将来。孰意子牙筹画定，  
中军炮响抢乔才。

且说邓九公其日与女婵玉商议曰：“今日子牙送上行孙入赘，



mander, General," Jiang Ziya replied.

After being entertained, General Tai Luan left the city and returned to the Shang camp.

"How did everything go?" Deng Jiugong asked anxiously upon his return.

When Tai Luan told him that Jiang Ziya had agreed to accompany Sun to his camp, Deng Jiugong touched his forehead with his hand and said happily, "By the good fortune of the king, Jiang Ziya will bring about his own end the day after tomorrow."

"Though success is imminent, we should still be on guard against any mishap," General Tai Luan warned.

Deng Jiugong ordered, "Select 300 strong warriors, arm them with daggers and cutlasses, and hide them outside the tent. When I break a cup, they must all rush in and slice Jiang Ziya and his generals to mince-meat."

In addition, Deng Jiugong ordered General Zhao Sheng to wait in the left camp with General Sun Yanhong in the right camp, ready to charge upon hearing cannon fire from the headquarters. He ordered General Tai Luan and his son, Deng Xiu, to meet Jiang Ziya and his generals at the camp gate, and Deng Chanyu to help the ambush. With all preparations made, Deng Jiugong waited patiently for the day to come.

After seeing off General Tai Luan, Jiang Ziya said to Krakucchanda, "We can win if we handle the situation like this...."

Time passed swiftly, and the day of the wedding was already upon them. Jiang Ziya ordered Yang Jian to accompany him secretly, using his power of transformation. He chose fifty strong soldiers to carry the wedding presents and ordered Xin Jia, Xin Mian, Tai Dian, and Hong Yao to act as his attendants, all carrying concealed weapons. He also ordered Thunderbolt to attack the enemy from the left and Nangong Kuo from the right. Jinzha, Muzha and Dragon Beard Tiger were to lead the reinforcements and help seize the bride. The Zhou troops secretly left the city and took up their positions.



原是赚子牙出城，擒彼成功。吾与诸将分割已定；你可将掩心甲紧束，以备抢将接应。”其女应允。邓九公升帐，分付铺毡搭彩，俟候子牙。不题。且说子牙其日使诸将装扮停当，乃命土行孙至前听令。子牙曰：“你同至汤营，看吾号炮一响，你便进后营抢邓小姐，要紧！”土行孙得令。子牙等至午时，命散宜生先行，子牙方出了城，望汤营进发。宜生先至辕门。太鸾接着，报于九公。九公降阶，至辕门迎接散大夫。宜生曰：“前蒙金诺，今姜丞相已亲自压礼，同令婿至此；故特令下官先来通报。”邓九公曰：“动烦大夫往返，尚容申谢。我等在此立等，如何？”宜生曰：“恐惊动元帅不便。”邓九公曰：“不妨。”彼此等候良久，邓九公远远望见子牙乘四不相，带领脚夫一行不上五六十人，并无甲冑兵刃。九公看罢，不觉暗喜。只见子牙同众人行至辕门。子牙见邓九公同太鸾、散宜生俱立候，子牙慌忙下骑。邓九公迎上前来，打躬曰：“丞相大驾降临，不才未得远接，望乞恕罪。”子牙忙答礼曰：“元帅盛德，姜尚久仰芳誉，无缘未得执鞭；今幸天缘，得罄委曲，姜尚不胜幸甚！”只见惧留孙同土行孙上前行礼。九公问子牙曰：“此位是谁？”子牙曰：“此是土行孙师父惧留孙也。”邓九公忙致款曲曰：“久仰仙名，未曾拜识；今幸降临，足慰夙昔。”惧留孙亦称谢毕。彼此逊让，进得辕门。子牙睁睛观看，只见肆筵设席，结彩悬花，极其华美。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

结彩悬花气象新，麝兰香霭衬重茵。屏开孔雀千年瑞，色映芙蓉万谷春。金鼓两傍藏杀气，笙箫一派郁荆榛。孰知天意归周主，十万貔貅化鬼燐。



In the Shang camp, Deng Jiugong told his daughter, "Your marriage to Earth Traveler Sun is only a plot to seize Jiang Ziya. I've already ordered that all our generals take necessary measures. Arm yourself and be ready."

Deng Chanyu did as she was told. Deng Jiugong then ordered his men to lay carpets and decorate the camp for the arrival of Jiang Ziya.

In West Qi City, Jiang Ziya called Earth Traveler Sun over. "I'll take you with me to the Shang camp. As soon as you hear the roar of cannons, enter the back camp and carry Miss Deng away with you. Stay on the alert."

Jiang Ziya waited until noon and then ordered San Yisheng to set out first. The supreme minister immediately left the city and marched directly toward the Shang camp. He was met by General Tai Luan, and at the news of his arrival, Deng Jiugong also came out to welcome him.

"We're pleased that you've agreed to the marriage. Prime Minister Jiang will be here soon with your son-in-law and the wedding presents. I've been sent to inform you of the arrangements." San Yisheng said.

"I must thank you for your unstinting service. If it's all right with you, let's wait here for the prime minister," Deng Jiugong suggested.

"How dare we trouble you, Commander?"

"Oh! It's our pleasure, Minister."

They waited for a long time before Deng Jiugong saw the prime minister on his nondescript horse approaching in the distance with a train of fifty unarmed carriers. He was secretly delighted.

When he saw Deng Jiugong and San Yisheng waiting for him, Jiang Ziya hurriedly dismounted. Deng walked forward to meet him. "Please pardon me for not meeting you further away."

"I've long esteemed your great virtue. I'm most fortunate that Heaven has destined that we meet today," Jiang Ziya reciprocated, returning the bow.

As Krakucchanda moved forward, Deng Jiugong asked, "Who's that gentleman?"

"This is Krakucchanda, Earth Traveler Sun's master," Jiang Ziya answered.

Deng Jiugong bowed. "I'm very pleased to meet you. I've admired you for a long time."

When the courtesies had been completed, they entered the camp gate and took their seats. Jiang Ziya saw that tables had been laid for a feast, and the camp was well decorated with silks and flowers. Nevertheless,



话说子牙正看筵席，猛见两边杀气上冲，子牙已知就里，便与土行孙众将丢个眼色；众人已解其意，俱衬上帐来。邓九公与子牙诸人行礼毕。子牙命左右：“抬上礼来。”邓九公方才接礼单看玩，只见辛甲暗将信香取出，忙将抬盒内大炮燃着。一声炮响，恍若地塌山崩。邓九公吃了一惊，及至看时，只见脚夫一拥而前，各取出暗藏兵器，杀上帐来。邓九公措手不及，只得望后就跑。太鸾与邓秀见势不谐，也往后逃走。只见四下伏兵尽起，喊声振天。土行孙绰了兵器，望后营来抢邓婵玉小姐。子牙与众人俱各抢上马骑，各执兵刃厮杀。那三百名刀斧手如何抵当得住。及至邓九公等上得马出来迎战时，营已乱了。赵升闻炮，自左营杀来接应，孙焰红听得炮响，从右营杀来接应；俱被辛甲、辛免等分投截杀。邓婵玉方欲前来接应，又被土行孙敌住，彼此混战。不意雷震子、南宫适两枝人马从左右两边裹来。成汤人马反在居中，首尾受敌，如何抵得住；后面金吒、木吒等大队人马掩杀上来。邓九公见势不好，败阵而走；军卒自相践踏，死者不计其数。邓婵玉见父亲与众将败下阵走，也虚闪一刀，往正南上逃走。土行孙知婵玉善于发石伤人，遂用捆仙绳祭起，将婵玉捆了，跌下马来，被土行孙上前绰住，先擒进西岐城去了。子牙与众将追杀邓九公有五十余里，方鸣金收军进城。邓九公与子邓秀并太鸾、赵升等直至岐山下方才收集败残人马，查点军卒，见没了小姐，不觉伤感。指望擒拿子牙，孰知反中奸计，追悔莫及。只得暂扎住营寨。不表。

且说子牙与惧留孙大获全胜，进城，升银安殿坐下。诸将报功毕。子牙对惧留孙曰：“命土行孙乘今日吉日良时，与



he could clearly sense an aura of death filling the air. He signaled to Earth Traveler Sun and his generals with his eyes, and they all entered the tent to greet Deng Jiugong.

“Carry the presents in,” Jiang Ziya ordered.

Deng Jiugong received the list of presents and was reading it over when Xin Jia quietly lit the fuse of a large cannon hidden within a box. At the earth-shaking explosion, Deng Jiugong looked up as Jiang’s carriers surged toward the tent, drawing their hidden weapons as they ran. It was already too late to repel them. Deng Jiugong fled with Tai Luan and Deng Xiu close behind him. The Zhou soldiers, lying in ambush on all sides, charged at the camp, their shouts reverberating through the air.

Earth Traveler Sun fought his way to the back camp while Jiang Ziya and his men mounted their horses and plunged into battle. How could Deng’s 300 warriors stand against them? By the time Deng Jiugong had mounted his horse and returned, the camp was already in chaos. Hearing the cannon fire, General Zhao Sheng tried to fight his way over from the left camp and General Sun Yanhong attempted to break through from the right. But they were intercepted by Xin Jia and Xin Mian. Deng Chanyu could not help her father, as she was battling with Earth Traveler Sun. The two sides remained locked in a bitter struggle.

Thunderbolt and Nangong Kuo unexpectedly joined the attack from the left and right, encircling the whole Shang army. When Jinzha and Muzha also joined in, Deng Jiugong realized that his position was hopeless and began to retreat. Deng Chanyu saw her father and his generals flee, and she also took flight to the south. Earth Traveler knew well that she was skilled in throwing stones. He cast a Celestial Binding Rope and bound her up tightly. She fell from her horse and was taken at once.

The Zhou troops chased Deng Jiugong for over fifty *li* before Jiang Ziya ordered that they retire to West Qi City. Deng Jiugong halted at the foot of Mount Qi to gather the remnants of his army and only then found that though Tai Luan, Deng Xiu and Zhao Sheng were still with him, his dear daughter Chanyu was missing. He was filled with deep remorse. He had plotted to catch Jiang Ziya but instead fallen straight into Jiang’s trap.

Back in West Qi City, Jiang Ziya took his seat in the Silver Security Hall. His generals reported one by one their deeds of the day. When the report was over, Jiang said to Krakucchanda, “As it’s an auspicious date





邓小姐成亲，何如？”惧留孙曰：“贫道亦是此意。时不宜迟。”子牙命土行孙：“你将邓婵玉带至后房，乘今日好日子，成就你夫妇美事。明日我另有说话。”土行孙领命。子牙又命侍儿。“搀邓小姐到后面，安置新房内去，好生伏侍。”邓小姐娇羞无那，含泪不语；被左右侍儿挟持往后房去了。子牙命诸将吃贺喜酒席。不题。且说邓小姐搀至香房，土行孙上前迎接。婵玉一见土行孙笑容可掬，便自措身无地，泪雨如倾，默默不语。土行孙又百般安慰。婵玉不觉怒起，骂曰：“无知匹夫，卖主求荣！你是何等之人，敢妄自如此？”土行孙陪着笑脸答曰：“小姐虽千金之躯，不才亦非无名之辈，也不辱没了你。况小姐曾受我疗疾之恩，又是你尊翁泰山亲许与我，俟行刺武王回兵，将小姐入赘。人所共知。且前日散大夫先进营与尊翁面订，今日行聘入赘，丞相犹恐尊翁推托，故略施小计，成此姻缘。小姐何苦固执？”婵玉曰：“我父亲许散宜生之言，原是赚姜丞相之计，不意误中奸谋，落在彀中，有死而已。”土行孙曰：“小姐差矣！别的好做口头话，夫妻可是暂许得的？古人一言为定，岂可失信。况我等俱是阐教门人，只因悞听申公豹唆使，故投尊翁帐下以图报效；昨被吾师下山，擒进西岐，责吾暗进西城行刺武王、姜丞相，有辱阐教，背本忘师，逆天助恶，欲斩吾首，以正军法，吾哀告师尊，姜丞相定欲行刑；吾只得把初次擒哪吒、黄天化，尊翁泰山晚间饮酒将小姐许我，俟旋师命吾入赘，我只因欲就亲事之心急，不得已方暗进西岐。吾师与姜丞相听得斯言，掐指一算，乃曰：‘此子该与邓小姐有红丝系足之缘，后来俱是周朝一殿之臣。’因此赦吾之罪，命散



today, we should marry those two, don't you think?"

"I'm of the same opinion. The matter cannot be delayed."

Jiang Ziya ordered Earth Traveler Sun, "Go with Miss Deng Chanyu to the back chamber. Today you'll become husband and wife. I'll speak with you further tomorrow."

Jiang Ziya told a maidservant to lead Deng Chanyu to the back chamber and attend to all her needs.

Deng Chanyu was overcome with shyness and shed silent tears on her way to the back chamber. Jiang Ziya and his generals meanwhile celebrated the marriage with a wedding feast.

When Miss Deng Chanyu was assisted into the bridal chamber, Earth Traveler Sun went up to meet her. At his pleased smile, she only wept in silence. When Sun tried to comfort her, she swore at him furiously. "You damned fool! You betrayed your master for the sake of personal glory. What kind of man are you!"

Earth Traveler Sun, however, answered gently with a smile, "Though you're worth 1,000 taels of gold, I'm no ordinary man either. It's no degradation for you to marry me. Besides, if you'll remember, I healed your wound. Your father did promise that our wedding was to take place as soon as King Wu had been assassinated and the army returned in victory. That is widely known to all. In order to arrange the marriage, San Yisheng called on your father, and he promised to let us wed today. Afraid that your father might change his mind, Prime Minister Jiang was well-prepared to help us marry as destined by fate. Don't be so obstinate about it, Sister."

"My father's promise was only a trick to deceive the prime minister. Now that the plan has failed, I'm ready to meet my death."

"You're wrong, Sister. How could your father regard our marriage as a joke? You may make a joke of anything, but not the marriage of a man and woman. I'm a member of Chan Taoism, but I was unfortunately deceived by Shen Gongbao. When I was seized by my master, he rebuked me for my attempt to assassinate King Wu and Prime Minister Jiang. They intended to cut my head off, but I told them that your father had promised me your hand, and it was only because of this that I had secretly entered West Qi City as an assassin. My master then made a divination and told the prime minister, 'This fellow's destined by fate to marry Deng Chanyu. They'll both be ministers of the Zhou court in the future.' So they forgave me and sent San Yisheng to see your father to



大夫作伐。小姐，你想：若非天缘，尊翁怎么肯？小姐焉能到此？况今纣王无道，天下叛离，累伐西岐，不过魔家四将、闻太师、十洲三岛仙众皆自取灭亡，不能得志，天意可知，顺逆已见。又何况尊翁区区一旅之师哉！古云：‘良禽相木而栖，贤臣择主而仕。’小姐今自固执，三军已知土行孙成亲。小姐纵冰清玉洁，谁人信哉。小姐请自三思！”邓婵玉被土行孙一席话说得低头不语。土行孙见小姐略有回心之意，又近前促之曰：“小姐自思，你是香闺艳质，天上奇葩；不才乃夹龙山门徒，相隔不啻天渊。今日何得与小姐窥体相亲，情同夙觐？”便欲上前，强牵其衣。小姐见此光景，不觉粉面通红，以手拒之曰：“事虽如此，岂得用强！候我明日请命与父亲，再成亲不迟。”土行孙此时情兴已迫，按捺不住，上前一把搂定；小姐抵死拒住。土行孙曰：“良时吉日，何必苦推，有误佳期。”竟将一手去解其衣。小姐双手推托，彼此扭作一堆。小姐终是女流，如何敌得土行孙过。不一时，满面流汗，喘吁气急，手已酸软。土行孙乘隙将右手插入里衣。婵玉及至以手挡抵，不觉其带已断。及将双手揩住里衣，其力愈怯。土行孙得空，以手一抱，暖玉温香，已贴满胸怀。檀口香腮，轻轻紧搵。小姐娇羞无主，将脸左右闪赚不得，流泪满面曰：“如是恃强，定死不从！”土行孙那里肯放，死死压住。彼此推扭，又有一个时辰。土行孙见小姐终是不肯顺从，乃给之曰：“小姐既是如此，我也不敢用强，只恐小姐明日见了尊翁变卦，无以为信耳。”小姐忙曰：“我此身已属将军，安有变卦之理。只将军肯怜我，容见过父亲，庶成我之节；若我是有负初心，定不逢好死。”土行孙



arrange the marriage. Sister, if it weren't destined by Heaven, how could your father have made the promise, and how could you have been brought here now? In addition, King Zhou is so cruel that everyone is forsaking him for King Wu. In successive expeditions against West Qi, the Mo brothers, Grand Tutor Wen and the immortals from thirteen places have all met death. The will of Heaven is clear, and the right path is obvious. The struggle of your father and his handful of soldiers will be totally in vain. He should follow the ancient proverb that says 'a virtuous minister should choose a good master to serve, just as a bird carefully chooses the tree in which it will roost.' You may be obstinate, but the whole army knows you're already my wife. Please think it over, Sister."

Deng Chanyu lowered her head in silence. Seeing her attitude soften, Earth Traveler Sun moved closer and urged, "Think about it, Sister! You're like an exotic, Heavenly flower of dazzling beauty, while I'm from the Dragon Squeezing Mountain. We were widely separated before but how lucky I am today to get close to you."

He tried to touch her and pull her clothes, but she blushed scarlet and pushed him away. "That may be so, but you can't be so rough. I'll ask my father tomorrow. It won't be too late to consummate the marriage then."

Already highly aroused, Earth Traveler Sun stepped forward. He tried to take her in his arms, but she resisted with all her might.

"It's a lucky hour and lucky day. Don't let it pass in vain," Sun begged.

He tried to loosen her clothes. Deng Chanyu continued to resist, but she had not the strength to fight him off. Before long, she was panting and perspiring, and her aching arms went limp. Sun seized the chance to tuck his right hand under her shirt and break its tie. He grabbed her shirt and held her tightly to him with the other hand so that he could kiss her. Deng Chanyu turned her face left and right to evade him and exclaimed in tears, "If you use force, I'll resist you to the death!"

They struggled for a long time, and Deng Chanyu still refused to yield. Sun said deceptively, "As you're unwilling, I won't force you. I'm just afraid that you'll change your mind after meeting your father tomorrow."

"Since my body already belongs to you, dear General, how could I change my mind? Just have pity on me. Let me see my father first, and then I will perform my duty as your wife. If I break my word, I'll certainly meet a violent death," Deng Chanyu hastily assured him.



曰：“既然如此，贤妻请起。”土行孙将一手搂抱其颈，轻轻扶起。邓婵玉以为真心放他起来，不曾提防，将身起时，便用一手推开土行孙之手。土行孙乘机将双手插入小姐腰里，抱紧了一拎，腰已松了，里衣径往下一卸。邓婵玉被土行孙所算，及落手相持时，已被双肩隔住手，如何下得来！小姐展挣不住，不得已言曰：“将军薄幸！既是夫妻，如何哄我？”土行孙曰：“若不如此，贤妻又要千推万阻。”小姐惟闭目不言，娇羞满面，任土行孙解带脱衣。二人扶入锦被，婵玉对土行孙曰：“贱妾系香闺幼稚，不识云雨，乞将军怜护。”土行孙曰：“小姐娇香艳质，不才饮德久矣，安敢狂逞。”正是：翡翠衾中，初试海棠新血；鸳鸯枕上，漫飘桂蕊奇香。彼此温存，交相慕恋，极人间之乐，无过此时矣。后人有诗单道子牙妙计，成就二人美满前程。诗曰：

妙算神机说子牙，运筹帷幄更无差。百年好事今朝合，  
莫把红丝孟浪夸。

话说土行孙与邓婵玉成就夫妻。一夜晚景已过。次日，夫妻二人起来，梳洗已毕。土行孙曰：“我二人可至前殿，叩谢姜丞相与我师尊抚育成就之恩。”婵玉曰：“此事固当要谢；但我父亲昨日不知败于何地，岂有父子事两国之理！乞将军以此意道达于姜丞相得知，作何区处，方保两全。”土行孙曰：“贤妻之言是也。伺上殿时，就讲此事。”话犹未了，只见子牙升殿，众将上殿参谒毕。土行孙与邓婵玉夫妻二人上前叩谢。子牙曰：“邓婵玉今属周臣，尔父尚抗拒不服。我欲发兵前去擒剿，但你系他骨肉至亲，当如何区处？”土行孙上前曰：“婵玉适才正为此事与弟子商议。恳求师叔开恻隐之



"If that be so, then please get up, dear," Sun said, helping her up gently.

Deng Chanyu thought he was sincere. She got up and pushed his hands away. To her surprise, Sun suddenly grabbed her round the waist and lifted her up so that her arms hung over his shoulders. She was unable to struggle.

"You're so tricky, General. How can you treat your bride like this!"

"If I didn't, you would never stop resisting me, dear wife."

Deng Chanyu closed her eyes and blushed. She did not utter another word but allowed Sun to remove her clothes without further resistance. Lying under the quilt, she said, "General, I'm a virgin and understand nothing of making love. Please take good care of me."

"I've long admired your beauty. How could I dare treat you roughly," Sun reassured her earnestly.

At daybreak, they washed and dressed. Sun said, "Let's go to the front hall and thank Prime Minister Jiang and my master for making us husband and wife. What do you think, my dear?"

"We must certainly thank them, but I wonder where my father is now. How can father and daughter serve different masters? Please consult Prime Minister Jiang about this problem," Deng Chanyu replied.

"I'll talk to him about it."

When they saw Jiang Ziya that morning, the prime minister said, "Though you're now a Zhou general, Deng Chanyu, your father remains our enemy. As you're his daughter, I can't very well send troops. What should we do?"

"Deng Chanyu has just discussed this problem with me. We beg you to show compassion, Uncle, and find a solution satisfactory to both sides," Earth Traveler Sun pleaded.



心，设一计策，两全之美。此师叔莫大之恩也。”子牙曰：“此事也不难。若婵玉果有真心为国，只消得亲自去说他父亲归周，有何难处。但不知婵玉可肯去否？”邓婵玉上前跪而言曰：“丞相在上：贱妾既已归周，岂敢又蓄两意。早晨婵玉已欲自往说父亲降周，惟恐丞相不肯信妾真情，致生疑虑。若丞相肯命妾说父归降，自不劳张弓设箭，妾父自为周臣耳。”子牙曰：“我断不疑小姐反复。只恐汝父不肯归周，又生事端耳。今小姐既欲亲往，吾拨军校随去。”婵玉拜谢子牙，领兵卒出城，望岐山前来。不表。

且说邓九公收集残兵，驻扎一夜；至次日升帐，其子邓秀、太鸾、赵升、孙焰红侍立。九公曰：“吾自行兵以来，未尝遭此大辱；今又失吾爱女，不知死生，正是羊触藩篱，进退两难，奈何，奈何！”太鸾曰：“元帅可差官赍表进朝告急，一面探听小姐下落。”正迟疑间，左右报曰：“小姐领一枝人马，打西周旗号，至辕门等令。”太鸾等惊愕不定。邓九公曰：“令来。”左右开了辕门，婵玉下马，进辕门来，至中军，双膝跪下。邓九公看见如此行径，慌立起问曰：“我儿这是如何说？”婵玉不觉流泪言曰：“孩儿不敢说。”邓九公曰：“你有甚么冤屈？站起来说无妨。”婵玉曰：“孩儿系深闺幼女，此事俱是父亲失言，弄巧成拙。父亲平空将我许了土行孙，勾引姜子牙做出这番事来，将我擒入西岐，强逼为婚。如今追悔何及！”邓九公听得此言，唬得魂飞天外，半晌无言。婵玉又进言曰：“孩儿今已失身为土行孙妻子，欲保全爹爹一身之祸，不得不来说明。今纣王无道，天下分崩。三分天下，有二归周。其天意人心，不卜可知。纵有闻太师、魔



"This isn't such a difficult matter. She may go to see her father and urge him to come over. But I don't know whether Chanyu is willing to go or not," Jiang Ziya said.

Deng Chanyu walked up, knelt down, and said, "Since I belong to Zhou now, how can I waver in my loyalty? If you trust me, I'll be glad to persuade my father to surrender."

"I have no doubt about your loyalty, but I'm afraid your father may not be willing to join us. That would make matters worse. Take an army with you."

Deng Chanyu thanked him then left the city with an army and marched rapidly to Mount Qi.

Deng Jiugong had gathered his defeated soldiers together and was holding a military conference with Deng Xiu, Tai Luan, Zhao Sheng, and Sun Yanhong.

"I've never suffered such a terrible defeat. I've lost my darling daughter and don't even know whether she's dead or alive. Now we're like a goat caught in a fence, unable either to advance or retreat. What shall we do?" Deng Jiugong asked his generals sadly.

"You may report the matter to His Majesty and request reinforcements. We must also find out the whereabouts of your daughter," General Tai Luan suggested.

As they were discussing what course to take, a guard came in to report, "General Deng Chanyu is at the camp gate awaiting your orders. She's here with an army flying the Zhou flags."

When she was admitted, Chanyu knelt before Deng Jiugong. Her father hastily helped her up and asked, "My child, what do you have to say?"

"I dare not tell you, Father," Deng Chanyu answered in tears.

"What's wrong? Just tell me in detail, daughter."

"You thoughtlessly promised me to Earth Traveler Sun. You then induced Jiang Ziya to come to our camp so that he took me away by force and compelled me to marry Earth Traveler Sun. It's already too late for regrets," Deng Chanyu said worriedly.

Deng Jiugong felt deep sorrow and remained silent for a long time.

"As Sun's wife, I've come to see you, Papa, only to help you avoid calamity. Don't you see, Father, King Zhou is so cruel that two-thirds of the kingdom has already turned to West Qi. The will of Heaven is clear.





家四将与十洲三岛真仙，俱皆灭亡。顺逆之道明甚。今孩儿不孝，归顺西岐，不得不以利害与父亲言之。父亲今以爱女轻许敌国，姜子牙亲进汤营行礼，父亲虽是赚辞，谁肯信之！父亲况且失师辱国，归商自有显戮。孩儿乃奉父命归适良人，自非私奔桑濮之地，父亲亦无罪孩儿之处。父亲若肯依孩儿之见，归顺西周，改邪归正，择主而仕；不但骨肉可以保全，实是弃暗投明，从顺弃逆，天下无不忻悦。”九公被女儿一番言语说得大是有理，自己沉思：“欲奋勇行师，众寡莫敌；欲收军还国，事属嫌疑……”沉吟半晌，对婊玉曰：“我儿，你是我爱女，我怎的舍得你！只是天意如此。但我羞入西岐，屈膝与子牙耳。如之奈何？”婊玉曰：“这有何难！姜丞相虚心下士，并无骄矜。父亲果真降周，孩儿愿先去说明，令子牙迎接。”九公见婊玉如此说，命婊玉先行，邓九公领众军归顺西岐。不题。且说邓婊玉先至西岐城，入相府，对子牙将上项事诉说一遍。子牙大喜，命左右：“排队伍出城，迎接邓元帅。”左右闻命，俱披执迎接里余之地，已见邓九公军卒来至。子牙曰：“元帅请了！”九公连在马上欠背躬身曰：“末将才疏智浅，致蒙谴责，理之当然。今已纳降，望丞相恕罪。”子牙忙勒骑向前，携九公手，并警而言曰：“今将军既知顺逆，弃暗投明，俱是一殿之臣，何得又分彼此。况令爱又归吾门下师侄，吾又何敢赚将军哉。”九公不胜感激。二人叙至相府下马，进银安殿，重整筵席，同诸将饮庆贺酒一宿。不题。次日，见武王，朝贺毕。

且不言邓九公归周，只见探马报入汜水关，韩荣听得邓九公纳降，将女私配敌国，韩荣飞报至朝歌。有上大夫张谦看本，见此报大惊，忙进内打听，皇上在摘星楼，只得上楼



Even the Mo brothers, Grand Tutor Wen, and the immortals couldn't escape destruction. I'm not your filial child any more. I've come here as a minister of Zhou to tell you the truth about what's right and wrong, what's just and unjust. Who will ever believe that it was only a ruse to promise me to your enemy and induce Jiang Ziya to enter the Shang camp? Do you think the tyrant will spare your life after you've humiliated the country in this way? I've lawfully married a man on your own orders; I didn't elope with my lover against your will. If you abandon that wicked tyrant and serve a proper and just master, not only will our family be safe but the people of the nation will also rejoice."

As he listened to her arguments, Deng Jiugong became convinced that she was absolutely right. His outnumbered army could not launch another offensive, but if he returned to Zhaoge, he would certainly be suspected of treachery. He pondered for a long time and then said to Deng Chanyu, "My child, I won't give you up. Nevertheless, I would be ashamed to enter West Qi and kneel before Jiang Ziya."

"That's no problem, Father. Prime Minister Jiang is open-minded. If you would really like to come with me to Zhou, I'll leave first and tell him to come out to meet you," Deng Chanyu reassured him.

Jiang Ziya was overjoyed to hear her report. He ordered his attendants, "Line up the men. March out of the city to meet Commander Deng."

He rode more than one *li* from the city and saw Deng Jiugong approaching at the head of his army. Jiang Ziya went up to meet him. "Greetings, Commander."

Deng Jiugong bowed on his horse. "I'm not talented and ignorant. It's only right that you should condemn me. I come here today in complete submission. Will you forgive me, Prime Minister?"

Jiang Ziya rode up and took his hand. "We're now ministers in the same court. Please don't speak like that."

Deng Jiugong was deeply moved by his words. The two former enemies dismounted before the prime minister's mansion, entered the Silver Security Hall, and celebrated at a banquet with all the generals. Deng was led to see King Wu the following morning.

As soon as the news of Deng's surrender reached Sishui Pass, Han Rong sent a report to Zhaoge. Supreme Minister Zhang Qian received it and immediately went to the inner palace to see King Zhou at the Star Picking Mansion.



启奏。左右见上大夫进疏，慌忙奏曰：“启陛下：今有上大夫张谦候旨。”纣王听说，命：“宣上楼来。”张谦闻命上楼，至滴水檐前拜毕。纣王曰：“朕无旨宣卿，卿有何奏章？就此批宣。”张谦俯伏奏曰：“今有汜水关韩荣进有奏章，臣不敢隐匿；虽触龙怒，臣就死无辞。”纣王听说，命当驾官：“即将韩荣本拿来朕看。”张谦忙将韩荣本展于纣王龙案之上。纣王看未完，不觉大怒曰：“邓九公受朕大恩，今一旦归降叛贼，情殊可恨！待朕升殿，与臣共议，定拿此一班叛臣，明正伊罪，方泄朕恨！”张谦只得退下楼来，候天子临轩。只见九间殿上，钟鼓齐鸣。众官闻知，忙至朝房伺候。须臾，孔雀屏开，纣王驾临，登宝座传旨：“命众卿面议。”众文武齐至御前，俯伏候旨。纣王曰：“今邓九公奉诏征西，不但不能伐叛奏捷，反将己女私婚敌国，归降逆贼，罪在不赦；除擒拿逆臣家属外，必将逆臣拿获，以正国法。卿等有何良策，以彰国之常刑？”纣王言未毕，有中谏大夫飞廉出班奏曰：“臣观西岐抗礼拒敌，罪在不赦。然征伐大将，得胜者或有捷报御前，失利者惧罪即归伏西土，何日能奏捷音也。依臣愚见，必用至亲骨肉之臣征伐，庶无二者之虞；且与国同为休戚，自无不奏捷者。”纣王曰：“君臣父子，总系至戚，又何分彼此哉？”飞廉奏曰：“臣保一人，征伐西岐，姜尚可擒，大功可奏。”纣王曰：“卿保何人？”飞廉奏曰：“要克西岐，非冀州侯苏护不可。一为陛下国戚；二为诸侯之长，凡事无有不用力者。”纣王闻言大悦：“卿言甚善。”即令军政官：“速发黄旄、白钺。”使命赍诏前往冀州。不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



“What do you have to report to me, Minister? Tell me quickly,” King Zhou commanded.

“Here’s a report from Han Rong of Sishui Pass. I dare not hide it from you. I beg you to pardon me, Your Majesty,” Zhang Qian said timidly.

“Never mind, Minister. Let me read it now,” King Zhou said.

He ordered his attendants to place the report on his dragon desk, and he began reading. But before he could finish, he flew into a rage, “How dare he! I’ll ascend the throne right now and hold a conference.”

Zhang Qian withdrew and went downstairs. Soon drums and gongs were beaten loudly at the Nine-Chamber Court, summoning all the ministers to gather for a conference. When the king arrived, he ascended his throne and his ministers moved forward and knelt before him, listening attentively.

“By my order, Deng Jiugong led a big army to West Qi. However, he has not only failed to defeat the enemy, but worst of all, he has permitted his daughter to marry an enemy general and surrendered unconditionally. His crime is unpardonable, and he must be arrested and punished according to the law. How shall we go about it?”

Fei Lian, a royal admonitor, left the ranks. “As far as I can see, those who win, of course, feel happy. But those who suffer defeat feel compelled to surrender for fear of punishment. How can we subdue West Qi if things go on this way? This time pick a general closely related to you. Such a man will fight his hardest for you and refuse to surrender in the face of defeat. Such a man would fight until the final victory is his, as his fate is tightly bound to yours.”

“The king and his ministers, like father and sons, are all equally close in their relationship. I’ve never discriminated against my ministers,” King Zhou said.

“Allow me to recommend Su Hu, the Marquis of Jizhou, to Your Majesty. First, he’s an imperial relative, and second, he’s one of the leading noblemen in the country. He would certainly make every effort to win the war,” Fei Lian continued.

The King was overjoyed. “You’re quite right, Minister. I fully agree with you.”

A royal decree, along with the white axe and yellow flag of office was sent to Su Hu, appointing him to command the new expeditionary force.

Did he win or lose? If you want to know, you must continue with the next chapter.



## 第五十七回

### 冀州侯苏护伐西岐

诗曰：

苏侯有意欲归周，纣主江山似浪浮。红日已随山后卸，落花空逐水东流。人情久欲投明圣，世局翻为急浪舟。贵戚亲臣皆已散，独夫犹自卧红楼。

话说天使离了朝歌，前往冀州，一路无词，翌日来至冀州馆驿安下。次日，报至苏侯府内。苏侯即至馆驿接旨。焚香拜毕，展诏开读，诏曰：

“朕闻征讨之命，皆出于天子；闾外之寄，实出于元戎。建立功勋，威镇海内，皆臣子分内事也。兹西岐姬发肆行不道，抗拒王师，情殊可恨。特敕尔冀州侯苏护，总督六师，前往征伐；必擒获渠魁，殄灭祸乱。俟旋师奏捷，朕不惜茅土以待有功。尔其勛哉！特诏。”

话说苏侯开读旨意毕，心中大喜；管待天使，赍送程费，打发天使起程。苏侯暗谢天地曰：“今日吾方得洗一身之冤，以谢天下。”忙令后厅治酒，与子全忠、夫人杨氏共饮，曰：“我不幸生女妲己，进上朝歌。谁想这贱人尽违父母之训，无端作孽，迷惑纣王，无所不为；使天下诸侯衔恨于我。今武王仁德播于天下，三分有二尽归于西周。不意昏君反命吾征伐。吾得遂生平之愿。我明日意欲将满门良眷带在行营，至西岐归降周王，共享太平；然后会合诸侯，共伐无道，使我苏护不得遗笑于诸侯，受讥于后世，亦不失丈夫之所为耳。”

## Chapter 57

### Su Hu Against West Qi

A royal envoy left Zhaoge for Jizhou. When he arrived, he stayed at a hostel for the night. Su Hu met him at the hostel, burnt incense, and kowtowed before the envoy read the royal decree. When he heard the contents, he was delighted. He entertained the royal envoy and saw him off. He thanked Heaven and earth for his good fortune. "Now I have the opportunity to clear myself before the people of the wrongs unjustly attributed to me!" he thought to himself.

Drinking with Su Quanzhong and Madam Yang that evening, he announced, "I never expected that Daji would ignore our teachings, bewitch King Zhou, and harm the innocent. Because of her, the nobles of the country all hold grudges against me. On the other hand, King Wu is known to all as a virtuous ruler. He's already secured loyalty from two-thirds of the kingdom. How lucky I am now to be appointed commander! I have the chance to go over with all my family and enjoy peace and security there. I'll attack that tyrant with the other nobles, so I won't be the laughing-stock of the country anymore. I want to prove that I am a real man."





夫人大喜：“将军之言甚善；正是我母子之心。”且说次日殿上鼓响，众将军参见。苏护曰：“天子敕下，命吾西征。众将整備起行。”众将得令，整点十万人马，即日祭宝纛旗，收拾起兵；同先行官赵丙、孙子羽、陈光、五军救应使郑伦，即日离了冀州，军威甚是雄伟。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

杀气征云起，金锣鼓又鸣。幡幢遮瑞日，剑戟鬼神惊。  
平空生雾彩，遍地长愁云。闪翻银叶甲，拨转皂雕弓。  
人似离山虎，马如出水龙。头盔生灿烂，铠甲砌龙鳞。  
离了冀州界，西土去安营。

苏侯行兵，非止一日。有探马报入中军：“前是西岐城下。”苏侯传令：“安营结寨。”升帐坐下。众将参谒，立起帅旗。

且说子牙在相府，收四万诸侯本，请武王伐纣。忽报马入府：“启老爷：冀州侯苏护来伐西岐。”子牙问黄飞虎曰：“久闻此人善能用兵，黄将军必知其人，请言其概。”黄飞虎曰：“苏护秉性刚直，不似谄媚无骨之夫；名为国戚，与纣王有隙，一向要归周，时常有书至末将处。此人若来，必定归周，再无疑惑。”子牙闻言大悦。且说苏侯三日未来请战。黄飞虎上殿见子牙，曰：“苏侯按兵不动，待末将探他一阵，便知端的。”子牙许之。飞虎领令，上了五色神牛，出得城来，一声炮响，立于辕门，大呼曰：“请苏侯答话！”探马报入中军。苏侯令先行官见阵。赵丙领令，上马提方天戟，径出辕门；认的是武成王黄飞虎。赵丙曰：“黄飞虎，你身为国戚，不思报本，无故造反，致起祸端，使生民涂炭，历年征讨不息。今奉旨特来擒你；尚不下马受缚，犹自支吾！”



"You're right, General. We feel exactly the same way," Madam Yang said with pleasure.

The following morning, Su Hu summoned his generals to gather before him and announced, "By order of His Majesty, I will lead an army to West Qi. Get ready to depart for the front."

He offered sacrifices to the flags and banners and set off with 100,000 soldiers. He appointed Zhao Bing, Sun Ziyu, and Chen Guang to the vanguard and General Zheng Lun to head the reinforcements. They left Jizhou and marched quickly towards West Qi. They had traveled for many days when a scout came to report that "West Qi City is ahead of us, Commander." Su Hu ordered his men to set up camp.

Meanwhile, a conference was being held in the city. The generals and ministers were discussing the proposal from many nobles that King Wu launch an attack on King Zhou when Su Hu's arrival was reported.

"I've heard that General Su Hu is a skilful commander. You must be familiar with him, General Huang. Tell me what you know of him," Jiang Ziya requested.

"He is upright and outspoken. He's no flatterer without a backbone. As a close relative of King Zhou, he's extremely dissatisfied with him and has always wished to come over. He's frequently sent me letters asking me to help him get rid of the tyrant. He'll certainly join Zhou since he's here today," Huang Feihu said promptly.

Jiang Ziya was overjoyed with the news. Three days passed, but Su Hu remained in his camp without giving a challenge. Huang Feihu went to see Jiang Ziya. "Su Hu isn't making a move. Shall I go and test him out?"

Jiang Ziya gave his consent. Huang Feihu immediately mounted his five-colored divine ox and left the city to the roar of cannons. He shouted before Su Hu's camp gate, "Will General Su Hu please come out to see me?"

When he heard the challenge, Su Hu ordered General Zhao Bing of the vanguard to do the first battle.

Zhao Bing mounted his horse, took up his halberd and left the camp. When he saw that his opponent was Huang Feihu, he said sarcastically, "You were a close relative of His Majesty, yet you didn't return his favor. I am here under orders to arrest you. Get down from your ox immediately."





摇戟刺来。黄飞虎将枪架住，对赵丙曰：“你好好回去，请你主将出来答话，吾自有道理。你何必自逞其强也！”赵丙大怒：“既奉命来擒你报功，岂得犹以语言支吾！”又一戟刺将来。黄飞虎大怒：“好大胆匹夫！焉敢连刺吾两戟！”催开神牛，手中枪赴面交还。牛马相交，枪戟并举。怎见得：

二将阵前势无比，拨开牛马定生死。这一个钢枪摇动鬼神愁；那一个画戟展开分彼此。一来一往势无休，你生我活谁能已。从来恶战不寻常，搅海翻江无底止。

话说黄飞虎大战赵丙，二十回合，被飞虎生擒活捉，拿解相府，来见子牙。报入府中。子牙令飞虎进见：“将军出阵，胜负若何？”飞虎曰：“生擒赵丙，听令定夺。”子牙命：“推来。”士卒将赵丙拥至殿前，赵丙立而不跪。子牙曰：“既已被擒，尚何得抗礼？”赵丙曰：“奉命征讨，指望成功；不幸被擒，唯死而已，何必多言！”子牙传令：“暂且囚于禁中。”

且说苏侯闻报，赵丙被擒，低首不语。只见郑伦在傍曰：“君侯在上：黄飞虎自恃强暴，待明日拿来，解往朝歌，免致生灵涂炭。”次日，郑伦上了火眼金睛兽，提了降魔杵，往城下请战。左右报入相府。子牙令：“黄将军出阵走一遭。”飞虎领令出城，见一员战将，面如紫枣，十分枭恶；骑着火眼金睛兽。怎见得，有诗为证。诗曰：

道术精奇别样妆，降魔宝杵世无双。忠肝义胆堪称诵，  
无奈昏君酒色荒。

话说飞虎大呼曰：“来者何人？”郑伦曰：“吾乃苏侯麾下郑伦是也。黄飞虎，你这叛贼！为你历年征伐，百姓遭殃。今天兵到日，尚不免戈伏诛，意欲何为？”飞虎曰：“郑伦，你且回



He stabbed at Huang Feihu with his halberd, but the latter parried the attack with his lance. "You'd better return to your camp. Tell your commander to see me and relay the message for him. Don't think that you're good enough to do battle with me."

"How dare you speak such nonsense!"

"You damned bastard! How dare you!" Huang Feihu shouted in genuine rage.

He began to resist Zhao's assault in earnest. In twenty rounds, he took Zhao Bing alive. When he was brought before Jiang Ziya, Zhao Bing defiantly stood upright, refusing to kneel.

"Why are you so obstinate when you've already been captured?" Jiang Ziya rebuked him.

"You may simply kill me. There's no need to say anything further," Zhao Bing replied courageously.

Jiang Ziya had him sent to gaol. When the news came that Zhao Bing had been taken, Su Hu fell silent. General Zheng Lun approached him. "Marquis! Don't worry about Huang Feihu. I'll seize him for you tomorrow."

The next day, he took up his Demon Subduing Clubs and mounted his golden-eyed monster. He galloped out to the city wall and issued a challenge.

By order of Jiang Ziya, Huang Feihu left the city to meet the new opponent. He saw an evil-looking general with a face the color of a ju-jube. Huang Feihu yelled, "Who's that general coming?"

"I'm Zheng Lun. Huang Feihu, you traitor! Now that we're here, why don't you lay down your arms and surrender?"



去；请你主将出来，吾自有说话。你若是不知机变，如赵丙自投陷身之祸！”郑伦大怒，抡杵就打。黄飞虎手中枪急架相还。二兽相交，枪杵并举，两家大战三十回合。郑伦把杵一摆，他有三千乌鸦兵走动，行如长蛇之势。郑伦窍中两道白光往鼻子里出来。“嗙”的一声响，黄将军正是：

见白光三魂即散，听声响撞下鞍鞦。

乌鸦兵用挠钩搭住，一踊上前，拿翻，剥了衣甲，绳缠索绑。飞虎上了绳子，二目方睁。飞虎点首曰：“今日之擒，如同做梦一般，真是心中不服！”郑伦掌得胜鼓回营，来见苏侯，入帐报功：“今日生擒反叛黄飞虎至辕门，请令发落。”苏侯令：“推来。”小校将飞虎推至帐前。飞虎曰：“今被邪术受擒，愿请一死，以报国恩。”苏侯曰：“本当斩首，且监候，留解朝歌，请天子定罪。”左右将黄飞虎送下后营。

且说报马报入相府，言黄飞虎被擒。子牙大惊曰：“如何擒去？”掠阵官启曰：“苏侯麾下有一郑伦，与武成王正战之间，只见他鼻子里放出一道白光，黄将军便坠骑被他拿去。”子牙心下十分不乐：“又是左道之术！”只见黄天化在傍，听见父亲被擒，恨不得平吞了郑伦。当日晚间不题。次日，天化上帐，请令出阵，以探父亲消息。子牙许之。天化领令，上了玉麒麟，出城请战。探马报入营中：“有将请战。”苏侯曰：“谁去见阵走一遭？”郑伦答曰：“愿往。”上了金睛兽，炮声响处，来至阵前。黄天化曰：“尔乃是郑伦？擒武成王者是你？不要走，吃吾一锤！”一似流星闪灼光辉，呼呼风响。郑伦忙将杵劈面相还。二将交兵，未及十合。郑伦见天化腰束着丝绦，是个道家之士，——“若不先下手，恐反



“Zheng Lun! You’d better go back and ask your commander to see me. I’ve something important to tell him. Look what happened to Zhao Bing when he refused,” Huang Feihu threatened.

In a fury, Zheng Lun swung his clubs at Huang Feihu. Huang met the assault with his lance. After thirty rounds, Zheng Lun held his club horizontally in the air to signal his 3,000 Crow soldiers, who immediately moved into a long, snake-like formation. At the same time, two white beams shot from his nostrils with a crash. Huang Feihu fell unconscious from his divine ox. The Crow soldiers surged forward, seized him with hooks, stripped off his armor and clothes, and bound him up tightly.

When Huang Feihu came to, he found himself a prisoner. He shook his head and sighed, “I can hardly believe it. It’s just like a dream!”

Zheng Lun returned in triumph. “I’ve taken Huang Feihu. He’s now being held at the camp gate,” he told Su Hu.

When he was brought before Su Hu, Huang Feihu spoke courageously, “I’m willing to meet death and return the kindness I’ve received from King Wu.”

“You deserve death, but I’ll put you in prison now and send you to Zhaoge later on,” Su Hu said calmly.

Jiang Ziya was shocked to hear that Huang Feihu had been taken. “How did it happen?”

“A General Zheng Lun fought several rounds with General Huang Feihu. Then he snorted two rays of white light from his nostrils. General Huang fell from his ox and was taken.”

Jiang Ziya was extremely displeased. “More wicked sorcery,” he thought to himself.

The next day, Huang Tianhua asked for permission to challenge Zheng Lun. Jiang Ziya immediately gave his approval. Huang Tianhua mounted his jade unicorn and left the city. He demanded to see Zheng Lun. But he was taken in ten rounds the same way his father had been and was confined in the same gaol.



遭其害。”把杵望空中一摆，乌鸦兵齐至，如长蛇一般。郑伦鼻窍中一道白光吐出，如钟鸣一样。天化看见白光出窍，耳听其声，坐不住玉麒麟，翻身落骑。乌鸦兵依旧把天化绑缚起来。急自睁开眼，不知其身已受绑缚。郑伦又擒黄天化进营来见。郑伦曰：“末将擒黄天化已至辕门等令。”苏侯令：“推至中军。”见天化眼光暴露，威风凛凛，一表非俗，立而不跪。苏侯也命监在后营。黄天化入后营，看见父亲监禁在此。大呼曰：“爹爹！我父子遭妖术成擒，心中甚是不服！”飞虎曰：“虽是如此，当思报国。”按下黄家父子，且说探马报入相府：“黄天化又被擒去。”子牙大惊：“黄将军说苏侯有意归周，不料擒他父子！”子牙心中纳闷。且说郑伦捉了二将，军威甚盛。次日又来请战。探马报入相府。子牙急令：“何人走遭？”言未毕，土行孙答曰：“弟子归周，寸功未立，愿去走一遭，探其虚实，何如？”子牙许之。土行孙方领令出府；傍有邓婵玉上前告曰：“末将父子蒙恩，当得掠阵。”子牙并许之。郑伦听得城内炮响，见两扇门开，旗幡磨动，见一女将飞来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

此女生来锦织成，腰肢一搦体轻盈。西岐山下归明主，留得芳名照汗青。

话说郑伦见城内女将飞马而来，不曾看见土行孙出来。——土行孙生得矮小，郑伦只看了前面，未曾照看面前。——土行孙大呼曰：“那匹夫！你看那里？”郑伦往下一看，见是个矮子。郑伦笑曰：“你那矮子，来此做甚么？”土行孙曰：“吾奉姜丞相将令，特来擒尔！”郑伦复大笑曰：“看你这厮，形似婴儿，乳毛未退；敢出大言，自来送死！”土行孙听见骂他甚是



Jiang Ziya was amazed at Huang Tianhua's capture. "Didn't General Huang tell me that Su Hu was willing to join us? Then why has he taken both Huang Feihu and his son?"

Encouraged by his victories, Zheng Lun gave another challenge the following day. When Jiang Ziya asked, "Who will go to meet Zheng Lun today?" Earth Traveler Sun immediately replied, "I've rendered no service since I joined your ranks. I'll go and see just how powerful he really is."

As he was about to leave, Deng Chanyu moved forward and begged, "For the kindness shown to my father and me, I would like to accompany him to the front."

Jiang Ziya gave his permission. At the roar of cannons, Zheng Lun saw the city gates open and a female general approach. He did not notice Earth Traveler Sun.

"What're you looking at, you damned fool?" Earth Traveler Sun yelled.

Looking down, Zheng Lun saw a dwarf before him. "What do you come here for, dwarf?" he asked with a laugh.

"By order of Prime Minister Jiang, I'm here to seize you," Sun answered roughly.

"You look like a baby not long weaned from the breast of your mother. How dare you boast!" Zheng Lun mocked, laughing heartily.

"You damned fool, how dare you insult me!"

Earth Traveler Sun rolled in on the ground and struck Zheng Lun's



卑微，大叫：“好匹夫！焉敢辱我！”使开铁棍，一滚而来，就打金睛兽的蹄子。郑伦急用杵来迎架，只是捞不着。——大抵郑伦坐的高，土行孙身子矮小，故此往下打费力。——几个回合，把郑伦挣了一身汗，反不好用力，心里焦躁起来，把杵一幌，那乌鸦兵飞走而来。土行孙不知那里帐，郑伦把鼻子里白光喷出，“噙”然有声。土行孙眼看耳听，魂魄尽散，一交跌在地下。乌鸦兵把土行孙拿了，绑将起来。土行孙睁开眼，见浑身上上了绳子，道声：“噫！到有趣！”土行孙绑着，看着邓婵玉走马大呼曰：“匹夫不必逞凶擒将！”把刀飞来直取。郑伦手中杵劈面打来。婵玉未及数合，拨马就走。郑伦不赶。佳人挂下刀，取五光石，侧坐鞍鞞，回手一石。正是：

从来暗器最伤人，自古妇人为更毒。

郑伦“哎呀！”的一声，面上着伤，败回营中来见苏侯。苏侯曰：“郑伦，你失机了？”郑伦答曰：“拿了一个矮子，才待回营；不意有一员女将来战，未及数合，回马就走，末将不曾赶他，他便回手一石，急自躲时，面上已着了伤。如今那个矮子拿在辕门听令。”苏侯传令：“推将进来。”众将卒将土行孙簇拥推至帐下。苏侯曰：“这样将官，拿他何用！推出去斩了！”土行孙曰：“且不要斩，我回去说个信来。”苏侯笑曰：“这是个呆子！推出斩了！”土行孙曰：“你不肯，我就跑了。”众人大笑。正是：

仙家秘授真奇妙，迎风一幌影无踪。

众人一见大惊，忙至帐前来，禀启元帅：“方才将矮子推出辕门，他把身子一扭就不见了。”苏侯叹曰：“西岐异人甚多，无怪屡次征伐，俱是片甲不回，无能取胜。”嗟叹不已。郑



mount a heavy blow with his iron cudgel. Zheng Lun could not reach him as he was high up on his beast. He was soon covered with sweat, and suddenly impatient, he swung his clubs upward and snorted, spurting out two white beams of light. Earth Traveler Sun fell unconscious and was taken by the Crow soldiers. When he came to, he found himself bound by ropes. "How interesting!" he thought.

When she saw that her husband had been taken, Deng Chanyu galloped up. "You wretch! Don't think you can use your mean talents on me!"

She slashed at Zheng Lun with her cutlass, and Zheng swung his clubs at her face. After only a few rounds, Deng Chanyu turned her horse and galloped off. She put down her cutlass, took out a colored pebble, and hurled it at Zheng Lun, hitting him square in the face. Zheng Lun fled back to his camp.

"Were you defeated, Zheng Lun?" Su Hu asked on his return.

"I caught a dwarf and was about to return when a female general rushed up. After a few rounds, she ran away. I didn't pursue her, but she cast a stone into my face. The dwarf is now at the camp gate."

When Earth Traveler Sun was pushed in before him, Su Hu said, "What use is that guy? Take him out and cut his head off."

"No wait! Let me go back and report the matter to my commander. Then I'll return for my execution," Earth Traveler Sun yelled humorously.

"He really is a fool. Take him out and behead him," Su Hu repeated with a laugh.

"If you won't allow me to go, I'll simply leave on my own," the dwarf said, making everyone laugh uproariously.

He twisted his body and disappeared into the earth. Utterly astonished, the guards rushed back to Su Hu. "When we pushed the dwarf outside for execution, he suddenly disappeared!"

"There are many talented men in West Qi. That's why all the expeditions before us have suffered defeat." Su Hu sighed.





伦在傍只是切齿；自己用丹药敷贴，欲报一石之恨。次日，郑伦又来请战，坐名要女将。邓婵玉就要出马。子牙曰：“不可。他此来必有深意。”哪吒应曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。哪吒上了风火轮，出城大呼曰：“来者可是郑伦？”郑伦答曰：“然也。”哪吒不答话，登轮就杀。郑伦急用杵相还。轮兽交兵。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

哪吒怒发气吞牛；郑伦恶性展双眸。火尖枪摆喷云雾；  
宝杵施开转捷稠。这一个倾心辅佐周王驾；那一个有意  
能分纣主忧。二将大战西岐地，海沸江翻神鬼愁。

话说郑伦大战哪吒，恐哪吒先下手，把杵一摆，乌鸦兵如长蛇阵一般，都拿着挠钩套索前来等着。哪吒看见，心下着忙。只见郑伦对着哪吒一声“哼！”哪吒无魂魄，怎能跌得下轮来。郑伦见用此术不能响应，大惊曰：“吾师秘授，随时响应，今日如何不验？”又将白光吐出鼻子窍中。哪吒见头一次不验，第二次就不理他。郑伦着忙，连哼第三次。哪吒笑曰：“你这匹夫害的是甚么病？只管哼！”郑伦大怒，把杵劈头乱打。又战三十回合，哪吒把乾坤圈祭在空中，一圈打将下来。郑伦难逃此厄，正中其背；只打得筋断骨折，几乎坠骑，败回行营。哪吒得胜，回来见子牙，将“郑伦……如此如彼被乾坤圈打伤，败回去……”说了一遍。子牙大喜，上了哪吒功。不表。

且说苏侯在中军，闻郑伦失机来见；苏侯见郑伦着伤，站立不住，其实难当。苏侯借此要说郑伦，乃慰之曰：“郑伦，观此天命有在，何必强为！前闻天下诸侯归周，俱欲共伐无道，只闻太师屡欲扭转天心，故此俱遭屠戮，实生民之



Zheng Lun gnashed his teeth in fury. He treated his wound with medicine and swore that it must be revenged. The next day he challenged Deng Chanyu. Jiang Ziya decided that Deng Chanyu should not answer him but approved Nezha's request to go in her place.

Nezha got on his Wind-Fire Wheels, left the city, and shouted at the Shang camp, "Is that Zheng Lun coming?"

"Yes, it's me."

Without another word, Nezha plunged at him with his lance. Zheng Lun hurriedly met the assault with his clubs, and afraid that Nezha would take action first, he held his club horizontally above his head to signal his soldiers. But Nezha had no soul, and Zheng Lun's snorting had absolutely no effect.

Zheng Lun was astonished when Nezha failed to fall unconscious. "My secret technique has always worked. Why not today?"

He continued his snorting once, twice, thrice, but Nezha only laughed sarcastically, "You stupid wretch! What illness do you have that makes you snort all the time?"

Zheng Lun felt insulted and greatly annoyed. He charged at Nezha, flailing his clubs wildly. After about thirty rounds, Nezha could not keep his patience any longer. He cast his Universal Ring into the air and struck Zheng Lun a mighty blow on the back, breaking many bones. Zheng Lun nearly fell from his mount but still managed to flee back to the Shang camp.

As Zheng Lun was seriously wounded, Su Hu took the chance to talk to him. "General Zheng Lun! This is clearly Heaven's will. Why should we oppose it! I have been told that all the marquises intended to ally with Zhou and march on the tyrant. Grand Tutor Wen was obstinate and brought about not only his own tragic death but also suffering to the people. I was



难。我今奉敕征讨，你得功莫非暂时侥幸耳。吾见你着此重伤，心下甚是不忍。我与你名为主副之将，实有手足之情。今见天下纷纷，刀兵未息，此乃国家不祥，人心、天命可知。昔尧帝之子丹朱不肖，尧崩，天下不归丹朱而归于舜。舜之子商均亦不肖，舜崩，天下不归商均而归于禹。方今世乱如麻，真假可见，从来天运循环，无往不复。今主上失德，暴虐乱常，天下分崩，黯黯气象，莫非天意也。我观你遭此重伤，是上天警醒你我耳。我思：‘顺天者昌，逆天者亡。’不若归周，共享安康，以伐无道。此正天心人意，不卜可知。你意下如何？”郑伦闻言，正色大呼曰：“君侯此言差矣！天下诸侯归周，君侯不比诸侯，乃是国戚；国亡与亡，国存与存。今君侯受纣王莫大之恩，娘娘享宫闱之宠，今一旦负国，为之不义。今国事艰难，不思报效，而欲归反叛，为之不仁。郑伦切为君侯不取也！若为国捐生，舍身报主，不惜血肉之躯以死自誓，乃郑伦忠君之愿，其他非所知也。”苏护曰：“将军之言虽是，古云：‘良禽择木而栖，贤臣择主而事。’古人有行之不损令名者，伊尹是也。黄飞虎官居王位，今主上失德，有乖天意，人心思乱，故舍纣而归周。邓九公见武王、子牙以德行仁，知其必昌，纣王无道，知其必亡，亦舍纣而从周。所以人要见机，顺时行事，不失为智。你不可执迷，恐后悔无及。”郑伦曰：“君侯既有归周之心，我决然不顺从于反贼。待我早间死后，君侯早上归周；我午后死，君侯午后归周。我忠心不改，此颈可断，心不可汙！”转身回帐，调养伤痕。不题。

且说苏侯退帐，沉思良久，命苏全忠后帐治酒。一鼓时



sent here against my will, and I can see that your success so far is only due to chance. It's disturbing to see you so seriously wounded, for though I'm commander, we're like close brothers. Dan Zhu, son of Emperor Yao, was a worthless fellow, so when Yao died, the throne went to Shun instead of his son. In like manner, Shang Jun, son of Emperor Shun, was a good-for-nothing, and when Shun passed away, the throne went not to him but to Yu. Everyone can tell the just from the unjust. Let's join Zhou together and enjoy peace and happiness there. What do you think, General?"

"You're wrong, Commander. Though some marquises have gone over, you're different. As a relative of the king, you share his fate. I can't agree with you. If you dedicate your life to the king, I will sacrifice my body to the cause. I swear to it on my life."

"You may be right, General. But an old proverb says, 'A fine fowl perches only on a fine tree, and a virtuous minister serves only a virtuous master.' In ancient times Yi Yin went over to a virtuous master without damaging his good name. Then there's Prince Huang Feihu. He forsook King Zhou when he found that the king acted tyrannically against the will of Heaven. There's also Deng Jiugong who's realized that King Wu is sure to grow great and powerful while King Zhou will lose his throne. We act according to the situation. Don't hold out until it's too late," Su Hu urged him.

"Though you are inclined to surrender, I regret that I can't follow you. If I die in the morning, you can go to Zhou in the morning; if I die in the afternoon, you can serve Zhou in the afternoon. My head may be severed from my body, but my heart won't change," Zheng Lun stated resolutely.

Su Hu left the tent and went back to his own quarters. He pondered for a



分，命全忠往后营，把黄飞虎父子放了，请到帐前。苏护下拜请罪，言曰：“末将有意归周久矣。”黄飞虎忙答拜曰：“今蒙盛德，感赐再生。前闻君侯意欲归周，使我心怀渴想，喜如雀跃，故末将才至营前，欲会君侯，问其虚实耳。不期被郑伦所擒，有辱君命。今蒙开其生路，有何分付，愚父子惟命是从。”苏护曰：“不才久欲归周，不能得便。今奉敕西征，实欲乘机归顺。怎奈偏将郑伦坚执不允。我将言语开说上古顺逆有归之语，他只是不从。今特设此酒，请大王、公子少叙心曲，以赎不才冒渎之罪。”飞虎曰：“君侯既肯归顺，宜当速行。虽然郑伦执拗，只可用计除之。大丈夫先立功业，共扶明主，垂名竹帛，岂得区区效匹夫匹妇之小忠小谅哉！”酒至三更，苏护起身言曰：“大王、贤公子，出后粮门，回见姜丞相，把不才心事呈与丞相，以知吾之心腹也。”遂送黄飞虎父子回城。飞虎至城下叫门，城上听得是武成王，不敢夤夜开门，来报子牙。子牙听得是三更天气，报：“黄飞虎回来。”忙传令：“开城门。”少时，飞虎至相府，来见子牙。子牙曰：“黄将军被奸恶所获，为何夤夜而归？”黄飞虎把苏护心欲归周所以，一一说了一遍，“……只是郑伦把持，不得遂其初心。再等一两日，他自有处治。”不表飞虎回城，且说苏侯父子不得归周，作何商议。苏全忠曰：“不若乘郑伦身着重伤，修书一封，打入城中，知会子牙前来劫营，将郑伦生擒进城，看他归顺不归宿，任姜丞相处治。孩儿与爹爹早得归周，恐后致生疑惑。”苏护曰：“此计虽好，只是郑伦也是个好人，必须周全得他方好。”全忠曰：“只是不好伤他性命便了。”苏护大喜：“明日



while and then ordered Su Quanzhong to prepare a feast in the back room, set both Huang Feihu and his son free, and invited them over for the meal.

"I've long wished to go over," Su Hu declared when Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua had been seated.

"I came to your camp to see you and clarify the matter, but we were unexpectedly taken. Now that you've set us free, we're glad to listen to you," Huang Feihu replied cordially.

"Though I've long wished to join you, the conditions have always been unfavorable. As commander of the army, I've done my best to realize my wish, but the matter is strongly opposed by Zheng Lun. I've tried to persuade him, but all to no avail. He has refused to cooperate. I have asked you here to explain the situation and beg you to excuse me for offending you."

"If you want to serve Zhou, you must do it at once. Don't worry about Zheng Lun. We can deal with him easily. A hero must first of all render outstanding service to an illustrious ruler and let his name be recorded in annals of history forever. He must not cling to the petty loyalties of common men and women," Huang Feihu exhorted him,

Su Hu got up. "Your Highness, you may leave here now through the back camp. Tell the prime minister what I've said. He'll know my heart."

He accompanied Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua out of the camp and saw them off. Father and son were admitted into the city late that night. At the prime minister's mansion Huang Feihu told Jiang Ziya of Su Hu's strong intention to serve Zhou. He concluded, "Though he's checked by Zheng Lun and isn't at liberty to take action now, he'll be able to fight his way out in a day or two."

When Su Hu discussed the situation with his son, Su Quanzhong said, "Father, don't hesitate any longer. Send a letter to the prime minister and ask him to take this camp along with Zheng Lun on a night raid. If he refuses to submit, Prime Minister Jiang can deal with him as he sees fit."

"Your plan is sound, but Zheng Lun is a good man. We must protect him at all costs."

"We certainly won't hurt him."



准行。”父子计较停当，来日行事。有诗为证，诗曰：

苏护有意欲归周，怎奈门官不肯投。只是子牙该有厄，  
西岐传染病无休。

话说郑伦被哪吒打伤肩背，虽有丹药，只是不好；一夜声唤，睡卧不宁，又思：“主将心意归周，恨不能即报国恩，以遂其忠悃。其如凡事不能就绪，如之奈何！”且说苏护次日升帐，打点行计，忽听得把辕门官旗报入中军：“有一道人，三只眼，穿大红袍，要见老爷。”苏护不是道家出身，不知道门尊大，便叫：“令来。”左右出辕门，报与道人。道人听得叫“令来”，不曾说个“请”字，心下郁郁不乐；欲待不进营去，恐辜负了申公豹之命。道人自思：“且进营去，看他何如。”只得忍气吞声进营，来至中军。苏侯见道人来，不知何事。道人见苏侯曰：“贫道稽首了！”苏侯亦还礼毕，问曰：“道者今到此间，有何见谕？”道者曰：“贫道特来相助老将军，共破西岐，擒反贼，以解天子。”苏侯曰：“道者住居那里？从何处而来？”道人答曰：“吾从海岛而来。有诗为证，诗曰：

弱水行来不用船，周游天下妙无端。阳神出窍人难见，  
水虎牵来事更玄。九龙岛内经修炼，截教门中我最先。  
若问衲子名何姓？吕岳声名四海传。”

话说道人作罢诗，对苏护曰：“衲子乃九龙岛声名山炼气士是也，姓吕，名岳；乃申公豹请我来助老将军。将军何必见疑乎？”苏侯欠身请坐。吕道人也不谦让，就上坐了。只听得郑伦声唤曰：“痛杀吾也！”吕道人问：“是何人叫苦？”苏侯暗想：“把郑伦扶出来，诓他一诓。”苏侯答曰：“是五军大将郑伦，被西岐将官打伤了，故此叫苦。”吕道人曰：“且扶他出



Su Hu agreed with delight. "Then we'll take action tomorrow."

Zheng Lun's wound was extremely painful. Though he treated it with medicine, it showed no sign of getting better. He groaned all night long, finding it impossible to sleep. He lay awake, thinking how his commander was going to surrender and feeling upset that he could not show his loyalty to the king.

The next day, Su Hu was discussing with his generals what action to take when it was announced that a Taoist with three eyes had come to see the commander. Su Hu was not a disciple of Taoism and did not know how to respect those who were. He merely commanded, "Order him in," without even a courteous "please."

The Taoist felt displeased but nevertheless walked in and greeted Su Hu, "I bow to you, Commander."

Su Hu reciprocated the greeting and asked, "What instructions do you have for me, sir?"

"I've come here to help you seize the rebels."

"Where do you come from, sir?"

"I come from an island in the sea. I can travel on water without using a boat, and my soul can move about, invisible to the naked eye. I refined myself on Nine Dragon Island. My name is Lu Yue. Shen Gongbao invited me to come here. Don't be suspicious, Commander," the Taoist answered solemnly.

As he was ushered to a seat, he heard Zheng Lun moaning pitifully. Lu Yue asked, "Who's that crying?"

"Let him be scared. I'll order Zheng Lun to be carried out," Su Hu thought. He replied, "It's General Zheng Lun. He was wounded in battle."





来，待吾看看何如？”左右把郑伦扶将出来。吕道人一看，笑曰：“此是乾坤圈打的，不妨，待吾救你。”豹皮囊中取出一个葫芦，倒出一粒丹药，用水研开，敷于上面，如甘露沁心一般，即时全愈。郑伦今得重伤全愈，正是：

猛虎又生双肋翅，蛟龙依旧海中来。

郑伦伤痕全愈，遂拜吕岳为师。吕道人曰：“你既拜吾为师，助你成功便了。”帐中静坐，不语三日。苏侯叹曰：“正要行计，又被道人所阻，深为可恨！”且说郑伦见吕岳不出去见阵，上帐启曰：“老师既为成汤，弟子听候老师法旨，可见阵会会姜子牙。”吕岳曰：“吾有四位门人未曾来至，但他们一来，管取你克了西岐，助你成功。”又过数日，来了四位道人，至辕门，问左右曰：“里边可有一吕道长么？烦为通报：有四门人来见。”军政官报入中军：“启老爷：有四位道人要见老爷。”吕岳曰：“是吾门人来也。”着郑伦出辕门来请。郑伦至辕门，见四道者脸分青、黄、赤、黑，或挽抓髻，或戴道巾，或似陀头，穿青、红、黄、皂，身俱长一丈六七尺，行如虎狼，眼露睛光，甚是凶恶。郑伦欠背躬身曰：“老师有请。”四位道人也不谦让，迳至帐前，见吕道人行礼毕，口称：“老师。”两边站立。吕岳问曰：“为何来迟？”内有一穿青者答曰：“因攻伐之物未曾制完，故此来迟。”吕岳谓四门人曰：“这郑伦乃新拜吾为师的，亦是你等兄弟。”郑伦从新又与四人见礼毕。郑伦欠身请问曰：“四位师兄高姓大名？”吕岳用手指着一位曰：“此位姓周，名信；此位姓李，名奇；此位姓朱，名天麟；此位姓杨，名文辉。”郑伦也通了名姓，遂治酒管待，饮至二鼓方散。次日，苏侯升帐，又见来了四位



“Carry him out so I can have a look at his wound,” the Taoist requested.

He looked at Zheng Lun’s wound and smiled. “This is from the Universal Ring. Never mind, I’ll take care of it.”

Lu Yue then took a pill of elixir out of his gourd, dissolved it in water, and applied it to the wound. Zheng Lun felt a light dew drop touch him. The pain was gone and the wound cured at once. He bowed and acknowledged Lu Yue as his master. This displeased Su Hu.

Nevertheless, Zheng Lun could not understand why Lu Yue did not go to the front to challenge West Qi. Lu Yue explained, “Four of my disciples will come to join me. We’ll take action once they’re here. There’s no rush!”

Several days later four Taoists arrived at the Shang camp. Zheng Lun went out to meet them, and to his surprise, he found four strange looking men with green, yellow, red, and black faces, dressed in robes of different hues. Their hair was twisted up in double coils or bound by scarves. They were all sixteen or seventeen feet tall and looked as fierce as tigers or wolves.

Admitted into the camp, they bowed before Lu Yue and then stood quietly at his side.

“What took you so long?” Lu Yue asked.

“We were busy preparing the weapons. We beg your pardon,” the one in green answered.

When Zheng Lun asked their names, Lu Yue introduced them in turn, “This is Zhou Xin, that is Li Qi, this is Zhu Tianlin and that is Yang Wenhui.”

Zheng Lun introduced himself, and they all sat down to a banquet and drank until the second watch that night. The following day, Su Hu was highly displeased to see the four of them.

道者，心下十分不悦，懊恼在心。吕岳曰：“今日你四人谁往西岐走一遭？”内有一道者曰：“弟子愿往。”吕岳许之。那道人抖搜精神，自恃胸中道术，出营步行，来会西岐。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



“Which of you would like to do the first battle?” Lu Yue asked.

“I will, Master,” one of his disciples replied. He left the camp and gave a challenge.

What happened next? Please read the next chapter to find out.







## 第五十八回

### 子牙西岐逢吕岳

诗曰：

疫痢瘟瘧几遍灾，子牙端是有奇才，匡扶社稷开基域，  
保护黔黎脱祸胎。劫运方来神鬼哭，兵戈时至士民哀。  
何年得遂清平日，祥霭氤氲万岁台。

话说周信提剑来城下请战。报入相府：“有一道人请战。”子牙闻知连日未曾会战，“今日竟有道人，此来必竟又是异人。”便问：“谁去走一遭？”有金吒欠身而言曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。金吒出城，偶见一个道者，生的十分凶恶。怎见得，有诗为证：

发似硃砂脸带绿，獠牙上下金精目。道袍青色势狰狞，  
足下麻鞋云雾簇。手提宝剑电光生，胸藏妙诀神鬼哭。  
行瘟使者降西岐，正是东方甲乙木。

话说金吒问曰：“道者何人？”周信答曰：“吾乃九龙岛炼气士周信是也；闻尔等仗昆仑之术，灭吾截教，情殊可恨！今日下山，定然与你等见一高下，以定雌雄。”绰步执剑来取。金吒用剑急架相还。未及数合，周信抽身便走。金吒随即赶来。周信揭开袍服，取出一磬，转身对金吒连敲三四下。金吒把头摇了两摇，即时面如金纸，走回相府声唤，只叫：“头疼杀我！”子牙问其详细，金吒把赶周信事说了一遍，子牙不语。金吒在相府，昼夜叫苦。且说次日，又报进相府：“又有一道



## Chapter 58

### Lu Yue, the God of the Plague

Zhou Xin ran to the city wall and gave a challenge. It was reported in to the prime minister.

“They’ve been quiet for days, and now this Taoist; probably another man of unusual talent,” Jiang Ziya wondered. “Who would like to meet him?” he asked.

“I will, Prime Minister,” Jinzha volunteered.

Outside the city, Jinzha saw a wicked looking Taoist with red hair, a green face, tusks, and eyes flashing golden light. “Who are you, Taoist?”

“I’m from Nine Dragon Island. My name is Zhou Xin. You’ve gone a bit too far thinking you’re better than us. I’ve come to decide which of us is more powerful,” Zhou Xin answered furiously.

He struck at Jinzha with his sword, and Jinzha hurriedly met the assault. After a few rounds, Zhou Xin turned and ran away. Unwilling to give him up, Jinzha set off in pursuit. When Jinzha was almost upon him, Zhou Xin took out a set of chimes from beneath his robe and struck it three times.

Feeling dizzy, Jinzha shook his head twice. His face turned as yellow as a sheet of golden paper. He ran back to the prime minister’s mansion, crying, “Oh, how my head aches!”

Jiang Ziya asked what had happened, but Jinzha could only scream in pain over his headache. The next day a second challenge was reported.







人请战。”子牙问左右：“谁去见阵走一遭？”傍有木吒曰：“弟子愿往。”木吒出城，见一道人，挽双抓髻，穿淡黄服，面如满月，三柳长髯。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

面如满月眼如珠，淡黄袍服绣花禽。丝绦上下飘瑞彩，  
腹内玄机海样深。五行道术般般会，洒豆成兵件件精。  
兑地行瘟号使者，正属西方庚辛金。

话说木吒大喝曰：“你是何人，敢将左道邪术困吾兄长，使他头疼？想就是你了！”李奇曰：“非也。那是吾道兄周信。吾乃吕祖门人李奇是也。”木吒大怒：“都是一班左道邪党！”轻移大步，执剑当空来取李奇。李奇手中剑劈面交还。二人步战之间，剑分上下，要赌雌雄：一个是肉身成圣的木吒，施威仗勇；一个是瘟部内有名的恶煞，展开凶光。往来未及五七回合，李奇便走。木吒随后赶来。二人步行，赶不上一射之地，李奇取出一幡，拿在手中，对木吒连摇数摇。木吒打了一个寒噤，不去追赶。李奇也全然不理，径进大营去了。且说木吒一会儿面如白纸，浑身上如火燎，心中似油煎，解开袍服，赤身来见子牙，只叫：“不好了！”子牙大惊，急问：“怎的这等回来？”木吒跌倒在地，口喷白沫，身似炭火。子牙命扶往后房。子牙问掠阵官：“木吒如何这样回来？”掠阵官把木吒追赶，摇幡之事说了一遍。子牙不知其故，“此又是左道之术！”心中甚是纳闷。

且说李奇进营，回见吕岳。道人问曰：“今日会何人？”李奇曰：“今日会木吒，弟子用法幡一展，无不响应，因此得胜，回见尊师。”吕岳大悦，心中乐甚，乃作一歌，歌曰：

“不负玄门诀，工夫修炼来。炉中分好歹，火内辨三才。



Muzha was given permission to meet the opponent. Outside the city, he saw a Taoist with hair twisted in double coils and a face as round as the full moon. He had a long beard and wore a yellowish robe.

“It was you that gave my brother a headache, wasn’t it?”

“No. It was Zhou Xin. I’m Li Qi, a disciple of Lu Yue.”

“You’re all sorcerers,” Muzha said in anger.

He rushed at Li Qi with his sword, and Li defended himself with his own. They fought back and forth on foot. After about five rounds, Li Qi gave up ground, turned, and ran away. When Muzha was within an arrow’s distance, Li Qi took out a pennant and waved it at him several times. Muzha began to shiver violently, but Li Qi ignored him and went straight back to the Shang camp as if nothing had happened.

Muzha’s face turned as white as paper; he felt as if a fire was burning him from within. He took off his clothes and went to see Jiang Ziya completely naked, crying, “Woe is me! I’m finished!”

Jiang Ziya was greatly alarmed. “What happened?” he cried. But Muzha could not speak a word. He fell on the ground, foaming at the mouth. His body seemed scorched by fire. Jiang Ziya ordered that he be sent to the back camp. He then sent for an officer who had just returned from the battlefield and heard his story. He was perplexed. “It must be witchcraft again!”

“Who did you meet today?” Lu Yue asked when Li Qi joyfully returned.

“I met Muzha, and I defeated him.”

Lu Yue was so happy that he began to sing, but Zheng Lun could not



阴阳定左右，符印最奇哉。仙人逢此术，难免杀身灾。”吕岳作罢歌，郑伦在傍，口称：“老师，二日成功，未见擒人捉将；方才闻老师作歌最奇，甚是欢乐，其中必有妙用，请示其详。”吕岳曰：“你不知吾门人所用之物俱有玄功，只略展动了，他自然绝命，何劳持刀用剑杀他。”郑伦听说，赞叹不已。次日，吕岳令朱天麟：“今日你去走一遭，也是你下山一场。”朱天麟领法旨，提剑至城下，大呼曰：“着西岐能者会吾！”有探事的报入相府。子牙双眉不展，问左右曰：“谁去走一遭？”傍有雷震子曰：“弟子愿去。”子牙许之。雷震子出城，见一道人生的凶恶。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

巾上斜飘百合纓，面如紫枣眼如铃。身穿红服如喷火，  
足下麻鞋似水晶。丝绦结就阴阳扣，宝剑挥开神鬼惊。  
行瘟部内居离位，正按南方火丙丁。

话说雷震子大呼曰：“来的妖人，仗何邪术，敢困吾二位道兄也！”朱天麟笑曰：“你自恃狰狞古怪，发此大言，谁来怕你。谅你也不知我是谁，吾乃九龙岛朱天麟的便是。你通名来，也是我会你一番。”雷震子笑曰：“谅尔不过一草芥之夫，焉能有甚道术。”雷震子把风雷翅分开，飞起空中，使起黄金棍，劈头就打。朱天麟手中剑急架相还。二人相交，未及数合，——大抵雷震子在空中使开黄金棍，往下打将来，朱天麟如何招架得住，只得就走。雷震子方才要赶，朱天麟将剑往雷震子一指，雷震子在空中驾不住风雷二翅，响一声落将下来，便往西岐城内跳将进来，走至相府。子牙一见走来之



contain himself. He asked, "Master, though we've won the battles, we haven't taken anybody captive. Why do you sing so happily? There must be a reason. Please tell me the truth."

"Little do you know, but the objects my disciples use are all magic weapons. They only have to wave them before an enemy, and death will come very slowly. We don't need to bother with cutlasses or swords."

Zheng Lun was filled with admiration for his master. The next day Lu Yue ordered Zhu Tianlin, "You go today lest your trip here be in vain."

On his orders, Zhu Tianlin took his sword and ran to the city wall, shouting, "Let only the talented meet me here today."

When the challenge was reported, Jiang Ziya frowned. "Who will meet him?"

Thunderbolt answered the call. When he emerged from the city he saw a ferocious Taoist with a purple face and eyes as big as bells. "What kind of accursed sorcerer are you? You've made my brothers suffer with your dirty witchcraft!"

The Taoist laughed, "You think you can scare me with your hideous looks? Don't you know that I'm Zhu Tianlin from Nine Dragon Island? Tell me your name."

"You're a nobody. What can you do with your witchcraft?" Thunderbolt scoffed.

He flew up into the air and swooped down, swinging his golden cudgel. Zhu parried the blow with his sword but soon found that it was impossible to cope with Thunderbolt's aerial attacks. He turned about and ran away.

Thunderbolt was unwilling to give him up and chased him closely, but Zhu suddenly turned and pointed at him with his sword. Thunderbolt lost his balance and dropped to the ground with a thud. He limped into the prime minister's mansion.



势不好，子牙出席，急问雷震子曰：“你为何如此？”雷震子不言，只是把头摇，一交跌倒在地。子牙仔细定睛，看不出他蹊跷原故，心中十分不乐，命抬进后厅调息。子牙纳闷。且说朱天麟回见吕岳，言如法治雷震子，无不应声而倒。吕道人大悦。次日，又着杨文辉来城下请战。左右报入相府：“今日又是一位道人搦战。”子牙闻报，心下踌躇：“一日换一个道者，莫非又是十绝阵之故事？”子牙心中疑惑。只见龙须虎要去见阵。子牙许之。须虎出城，见一道人面如紫草，发似钢针，头戴鱼尾金冠，身穿皂服，飞步而来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

顶上金冠排鱼尾，面如紫草眼光炜。丝绦彩结扣连环，  
宝剑砍开天地髓。草履斜登寒雾生，胸藏秘诀多文斐。  
封神台上有他名，正按坎宫壬癸水。

话说龙须虎见道人，大呼曰：“来者何人？”杨文辉一见大惊，看龙须虎形相古怪稀奇，问曰：“通个名来。”龙须虎曰：“吾乃姜子牙门人龙须虎是也。”杨文辉大怒，仗剑来取。龙须虎发手有石，只管打将下来。杨文辉不敢久战，掩一剑便走。龙须虎随后赶来。杨文辉取出一条鞭，对着龙须虎一顿转。龙须虎忽的跳将回去，发着石头，尽行力气打进西岐，直打到相府，又打上银安殿来。子牙忙着两边军将：“快与吾拿下去！”众将官用钩连枪钩倒在地，捆将起来，龙须虎口中喷出白沫，朝着天，睁着眼，只不作声。子牙无计可施，不知就理。——这个是瘟部中四个行瘟使者，头一位周信按东方使者，用的磬名曰“头疼磬”；第二位李奇按西方使者，用的幡名曰“发躁幡”；第三位朱天麟按南方使者，用的剑名曰“昏迷剑”；第四位杨文辉按北方使者，用的鞭名曰“散瘟鞭”；故此瘟部之内先着四个行瘟使者，先会门



Jiang Ziya left his seat and asked him hurriedly, "What's the matter with you, Thunderbolt?"

Thunderbolt did not answer, rocking his head unceasingly side to side, then falling to the ground unconscious. Jiang Ziya looked at him closely but could not ascertain the reason. Greatly upset by this new development, he ordered that Thunderbolt be carried to the back hall.

Lu Yue was delighted by their latest victory. He ordered Yang Wenhui to challenge West Qi the following day. Jiang Ziya was amazed at the report. A different Taoist every day; something like the Ten Death Traps? Just then Dragon Beard Tiger came forward, asking for permission to meet the challenge.

Beyond the city, Dragon Beard Tiger saw a purple-faced Taoist dressed in black. "Who's that coming?" he demanded.

Surprised at his appearance, Yang Wenhui returned, "Tell me your name first."

"I'm one of Prime Minister Jiang's disciples."

Yang Wenhui flew into a rage and rushed at him with his sword, but Dragon Beard Tiger hurled volley after volley of rocks at him, forcing him to flee. As Dragon Beard Tiger pursued close behind, Yang took out a whip and waved it back and forth. Dragon Beard Tiger turned and hopped back to the prime minister's mansion, hurling stones at random as he went. Jiang Ziya ordered his generals to seize him, bind him up, and lay him on the ground. White foam gushed from his mouth, and he lay staring blankly in silence. Jiang Ziya was at a loss what to do.

The Taoists were the four Plague Carriers. Zhou Xin spread plagues in the east, using "the Headache Chimes;" Li Qi in the west, used his "Hot Temper Pennant;" Zhu Tianlin in the south, used "the Sword of Unconsciousness;" and Yang Wenhui in the north, employed the "Plague Spreading Whip."



人，此乃子牙一灾又至。姜子牙那里知道？——子牙正在府中，谓杨戩曰：“吾师言三十六路伐西岐，算将来有三十路矣。今又逢此道者，把吾四个门人困住，声叫痛苦，使我心下不忍，如何是好？将奈之何？”正议间，忽门旗官报曰：“有一三只眼道人请丞相答话。”哪吒、杨戩在傍曰：“今连战五日，一日换一个，不知他营中有多少截教门人？师叔会他，便知端的。”子牙传令：“摆队伍出城。”炮声响亮，两扇门开，左右列兴周灭纣英雄，前后立玉虚门下。且说吕岳见子牙出城，兵势严整，果然比别人不同。正是：

果然纪律分严整，不亚当年风后强。

话说子牙见黄幡脚下有一道人，穿大红袍服，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，三目圆睁，骑金眼驼，手提宝剑，大呼曰：“来者可是姜子牙么？”子牙答曰：“然也。”子牙曰：“道兄是那座名山？何处仙府？今往西岐屡败吾门下，道兄何所见而为？今纣主无道，周室兴仁，天下共见；从来人心归顺真主，道兄何必强为！常言‘顺天者存，逆天者亡’。今我周风鸣岐山，英雄间出，似不卜可知。道兄又何得逆天而行其己意哉。况道兄在道门久炼，岂不知‘封神榜’乃三教圣人所主，非吾一己之私。今我奉玉虚符命，扶助真主，不过完天地之劫数，成气运之迁移。今道兄既屡得胜，不过一时侥幸成功，若是劫数来临，自有破你之术者。道兄不得恃强，无贻伊戚。”吕岳曰：“吾乃九龙岛炼气之士，名为吕岳。只因你等恃阐教门人，侮我截教，吾故令四个门人略略使你知道。今



Back in his mansion, Jiang Ziya told Yang Jian, “My master told me that thirty-six expeditions would come to West Qi, and we’ve already expelled thirty of them. But now these Taoists are making my disciples suffer. I can’t bear to hear their groans!”

He was cut short by a guard who reported that, “A Taoist with three eyes demands that you go and speak with him.”

“We’ve engaged them four times but each time with a different Taoist! How many are there altogether? If you go to meet him you may find out,” Nezha and Yang Jian suggested.

Jiang Ziya immediately ordered, “Prepare the army to march out of the city.”

The city gate was opened with a roar of cannons, and Jiang Ziya rode out accompanied by his disciples. The Taoist from the Shang camp sat astride a camel under a yellow pennant. He was dressed in red, had a face like indigo, and hair as red as cinnabar. The Taoist stared at them with his three eyes.

“Is that Jiang Ziya?”

“Yes, it is,” Jiang Ziya replied. “On which prominent mountain do you live? Why have you come here to hurt my disciples? Can’t you see that King Zhou is a cruel tyrant and West Qi is destined to power? This is the will of the people. As the old saying goes, ‘He who follows the will of Heaven lives, while he who acts contrary to it must die.’ Haven’t you heard that the phoenix sings on Mount Qi and numerous outstanding men have already joined our cause? You’ve studied the Way for many years and must be well aware that the List of Creations was approved by all three religions with no selfish considerations involved. I am under orders from the Jade Emptiness Palace to help the true ruler actualize what Heaven has decreed. Brother, though you’ve won a few rounds, your luck can’t last long. When the time is right, someone will appear and counter your sorcery. Don’t create sorrow for yourself!”

“I’m from Nine Dragon Island. My name is Lu Yue. Your Chan Taoism is too great an insult to us. My four disciples have already shown





日特来会你一会，共决雌雄。只是你死日甚近，幸无追悔！你听我道来：

截教门中我最先，玄中妙诀许多言。五行道术寻常事，驾雾腾云只等闲。腹内离龙并坎虎，捉来一处自熬煎。炼就纯阳乾健体，九转还丹把寿延。八极神游真自在，逍遥任意大罗天。今日降临西岐地，早早投戈免罪愆。”

吕岳道罢，子牙笑曰：“据道兄所谈，不过如峨嵋山赵公明，三仙岛云霄、琼霄、碧霄之道，一旦俱成画饼，料道兄此来，不过自取杀身之祸耳。”吕岳大怒，骂曰：“姜尚，你有什么能，敢发如此恶言？”纵开金眼驼，执手中剑，飞来直取。子牙剑急架忙迎。杨戩在傍，纵马摇刀飞来，大呼曰：“师叔，弟子来也！”杨戩不分好歹，照顶上剁来。吕岳手中剑架刀隔剑。哪吒登开风火轮，使开火尖枪，冲杀过来。黄天化在旗门脚下，忍不住心头火起：“虽然是苏侯放归吾父子，难道我不如他们？只要成功，顾不得了！”催开玉麒麟，杀将过来，把吕岳围在当中。且言旗门下郑伦看见黄天化杀将过来，“呀”的一声，几乎坠于兽下，长吁叹曰：“谁知我为纣王擒将立功，元来主将有意归周，反将黄家父子放回去了。”郑伦自思：“这番捉住，即时打死，绝其他念。”急催开金睛兽，大呼“黄天化”曰：“吾来也！”天化见了仇人，拨转麒麟，双锤并起，力战郑伦。哪吒见黄天化敌住了郑伦，恐怕有失，忙登回风火轮，把枪劈心就刺郑伦，大叫曰：“黄公子，你去拿吕岳，吾来杀此匹夫！”郑伦曾被哪吒乾坤圈打过一次，大抵心下十分怯他，纵战俱是不济，先是留心着意，防哪吒动手。且说子牙见杨戩使刀敌住吕岳，又见黄天化助力，土行孙也提宾铁棍滚将进来。邓婵玉在辕门下



you what we can do. Today I have the chance to meet you personally to decide who's the better man. Your death is near! It will soon be too late for regrets."

Jiang Ziya laughed. "From what you've said, I can see you're just like Zhao Gongming from Mount Emei or High Firmament, Jade Firmament, and Green Firmament from the Three Fairy Island. All have gone with the wind, and you, too, will soon follow their path."

Lu Yue was furious. "What ability do you have, Jiang Ziya, that you dare to speak so!"

He urged his camel forward and attacked Jiang Ziya with his sword. Jiang hurriedly met the attack with his own. Yang Jian galloped up to help. He hacked wildly at Lu Yue's head. Nezha also sped up on his Wind-Fire Wheels.

Huang Tianhua soon lost his patience. "Though I was taken once, how can I regard myself as inferior to Yang Jian and Nezha. I must join in as well."

He spurred his jade unicorn into the battle, and the four surrounded Lu Yue in fierce combat.

Zheng Lun was so surprised to see Huang Tianhua that he nearly fell off his mount. "Who would have thought that I captured them only for Su Hu to set them free! He's certainly made up his mind to go over. I'll put those two to death if ever I get them again."

He charged at Huang Tianhua, who turned and met the assault with his two hammers. Afraid that Huang Tianhua was no match for him, Nezha cried, "You get hold of Lu Yue, Brother Huang. I'll finish off this wretch."

Zheng Lun was afraid of Nezha. He fought with caution, ready to bolt if Nezha used his magic weapon again. Yang Jian and Huang Tianhua battled with Lu Yue, and soon Earth Traveler Sun joined in. Lu Yue then



看战。吕岳见周将有增，随将身手摇动，三百六十骨节，霎时现出三头六臂，一只手执形天印，一只手擎住瘟疫钟，一只手持定形瘟幡，一只手执住止瘟剑，双手使剑，现出青脸獠牙。子牙见了吕岳现如此形相，心下十分惧怕。杨戩见子牙怯战，忙将马走出圈子外，命金毛童子拿金丸在手，拽满扣儿，一金丸正打中吕岳肩臂。黄天化见杨戩成功，把玉麒麟跳远了，回手一火龙标，把吕岳腿上打了一标。子牙见吕岳着伤，祭起打神鞭，这一鞭正中吕岳，响一声，坠下金眼驼来，借土遁去了。郑伦见吕岳失机，不能取胜，心下一慌，被哪吒一枪正中肩背，几乎闪下兽来，败进辕门。子牙不赶，鸣金回兵。

且说苏侯父子在辕门见吕岳失机着了重伤，郑伦也着了伤，心中大悦：“这匹夫该当如此！”吕岳回营进中军帐坐定，被打神鞭打的三昧火从窍中而出。四门人来问老师曰：“今日不意老师后被他取了胜。”吕岳曰：“不妨，吾自有道理。”随将葫芦中取药自啖，仍复笑曰：“姜尚，你虽然取胜一时，你怎逃灭一城生灵之祸！”郑伦着伤，吕岳又将药救之。吕岳至一更时，分命四门人，每一人拿一葫芦瘟丹，借五形遁进西岐城。吕岳乘了金眼驼，也在当中，把瘟丹用手抓着，往城中按东、西、南、北，洒至三更方回。不表。且说西岐城中那知此丹俱入井泉河道之中，人家起来，必用水火为急救之物，大家小户，天子文武，士庶人等，凡吃水者，满城尽遭此厄。不一二日，一城中烟火全无，街道上并无人走。皇城人声寂静，止闻有声唤之音；相府内众门人也逢此难。——内有二人不遭此殃，哪吒乃莲花化身，杨戩有元功



shook himself and instantly transformed into a three-headed, six-armed creature, holding the Heaven Shocking Stamp, the Pestilence Bell, the Plague Spreading Pennant, the Plague Sending Sword, and a pair of swords. His face turned green, long fangs protruding over his lips.

Jiang Ziya was terrified. Yang Jian saw this and quickly galloped out of the circle. He ordered the Golden Fleece Lads to bring his bow and gold ball, and he shot Lu full on the shoulder. Huang Tianhua hurled his Fire Dragon Javelin and hit Lu Yue on the thigh. Encouraged, Jiang Ziya cast up his Staff for Beating Gods and struck Lu Yue a heavy blow, bringing him down from his camel. Lu Yue was severely wounded and fled back to his camp on the dust.

Zheng Lun panicked when he saw that Lu Yue had been defeated. Nezha seized the chance and stabbed him in the shoulder, nearly bringing him down from his beast. He fled back inside the camp gate. Jiang Ziya and his generals returned to the city.

Su Hu and his son were delighted to see both Lu Yue and Zheng Lun wounded. Lu Yue sat down in the central camp, seriously hurt by Jiang Ziya's magic staff. When his disciples consoled him over his defeat, he replied unconcernedly, "It doesn't matter. I have my own way of dealing with them."

Lu Yue took out some pills of elixir from his gourd, swallowed them, and said with a smile, "Jiang Ziya, though you've won today, just see if you can escape from the calamity ahead!"

Lu Yue then cured Zheng Lun with his medicine. At the first watch that night, he ordered his four disciples, each carrying a gourd full of plague pills, to secretly enter the city with him on the five elements. They went all over the city, scattering the plague pills into the rivers, streams, creeks, ponds, and wells. They did not return to camp till the third watch.

The following day, everyone who drank the infected water was struck down by the plague. Within a couple of days, smoke no longer rose from the chimneys, nobody walked in the streets, and the air was full of cries and groans. No one could avoid the plague, not even the disciples in the prime minister's mansion. Only two men remained unaffected — Nezha, who was reincarnated from lotus flowers and Yang Jian, who was able to



变化。故此二人见满城如此，二人心下十分着慌。哪吒进内庭看武王；杨戩在相府照顾，又不时要上城看守。二人计议：“城中止有二人，若是吕岳加兵攻打，如之奈何？”杨戩曰：“不妨。武王乃圣明之君，其福不小；师叔该有这场苦楚，定有高明之士来佐。”不言二人在城上商议，且说吕岳散了瘟丹，次日在帐前对苏侯等言曰：“我今一日与汝等成功，不用张弓只箭，六七日之内，西岐一郡生灵尽皆死绝。尔等速速奏凯回兵，不负我下山一遭。”郑伦曰：“连日西岐不见城上有人。”吕岳曰：“一郡众生尽逢大劫，不久身亡。”郑伦曰：“既西岐城人民俱遭困厄，何不调一枝人马杀进城，剪草除根？”吕岳曰：“也使得。”郑伦欣然领了苏侯令，调出人马来，方出汤营。且说杨戩在城上看见郑伦调兵出营，哪吒着慌，问杨戩曰：“人马杀来，我你二人焉能挡抵大众人马？”杨戩曰：“不要忙，吾自有退兵之策。”杨戩连忙把土与草抓了两把，望空中一洒，喝声：“疾！”西岐城上尽是彪躯大汉，往来耀武。郑伦抬头看时，见城上人马反比前不相同，故此不敢攻城。有诗为证，诗曰：

杨戩神机妙术奇，吕岳空自费心机。武王洪福包天地，  
应合姜公遇难时。

话说郑伦见西岐城上人马轩昂骁勇，不敢进兵，徐徐退进营来；见吕岳言曰：“城上有人……”之事，不表。

且说杨戩虽用此术，只过一时三刻，只救眼下之急，不能常久。哪吒正忧烦，听的空中鹤唳之声，元来是黄龙真人跨鹤而来，落在城上。哪吒、杨戩下拜，口称：“老师。”真



do transformations. They were kept busy guarding the city, the palace of King Wu, and the prime minister's mansion.

"There are only the two of us. What shall we do if Lu Yue comes now with his army?" Nezha asked, worried.

"Never mind, Brother. King Wu is a virtuous ruler, and he will surely be blessed by Heaven. Uncle Jiang is fated to suffer in this calamity. I believe that before long someone talented will come to help us out," Yang Jian said assuredly.

After scattering the plague pills, Lu Yue bragged to Su Hu, "With my help you will gain the final victory. There's been no need for either swords or arrows. All of West Qi will be wiped out in just six days, and you can return home the victors, as I anticipated when I left my island.

"If they've all been struck down with the disease, there's no guard on the city wall. Let's take the city now," Zheng Lun urged.

"That's fine with me," Lu Yue agreed.

A delighted Zheng Lun took his men out, ready to storm West Qi City. When he saw Zheng Lun coming, Nezha grew worried. He asked Yang Jian, "How can the two of us fight off a whole army, Brother?"

"Don't worry. I have a way of scaring him off," he replied.

Yang Jian pulled up two handfuls of soil and grass and threw them up into the air, shouting, "Quick! Hurry up!"

In the twinkling of an eye, tall, brave warriors appeared all along the city wall, patrolling to and fro in an impressive show of strength. When Zheng Lun spotted them he pulled up short and dared not approach the city. He returned to camp and reported to Lu Yue, "The city is strongly guarded. We cannot take it by force."

Yang Jian's magic, however, could not last for more than a few hours. They were worrying about what to do next when Nezha heard the sound of a crane in the air. It was the Yellow Dragon Immortal. Nezha and Yang Jian bowed and greeted him.



人曰：“你师父可曾来？”杨戩答曰：“家师不曾来。”黄龙真人至相府来看子牙，又入内庭看过武王，复出皇城，上了城，玉鼎真人方驾纵地金光法而至。黄龙真人曰：“道兄为何来迟？”玉鼎真人曰：“我借金光纵地，故此来迟。今吕岳将此异术治此一郡，众生遭逢大厄。今着杨戩速往火云洞，见三圣大师，速取丹药，可救此愆。”杨戩领师命，径往火云洞来。正是：

足踏五行生雾彩，周游天下只须臾。

话说杨戩借土遁来至火云洞。——此处云生八处，雾起四方，挺生秀柏，屈曲苍松，真好所在！怎见得：

巨镇东南，中天胜岳。芙蓉峰龙耸，紫盖岭巍峨。百草含香味，炉烟鹤唳踪。上有玉虚之宝篆，朱陆之灵台。舜巡、禹禘，玉简金书。楼阁飞青鸾，亭台隐紫雾。地设名山雄宇宙，天开仙境透三清。几树桃梅花正放，满山瑶草色皆舒。龙潜涧底，虎伏崖前。幽鸟如诉语，驯鹿近人行。白鹤伴云栖老桧，青鸾丹凤向阳鸣。火云福地真仙境，金阙仁慈治世公。

话说杨戩不敢擅入；伺候多时，只见一童儿出洞府，杨戩上前稽首曰：“师兄，弟子乃玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门徒杨戩；今奉师命，特到此处，参谒三圣老爷。借师兄转达一声。”童儿曰：“你可知道三圣人是谁？如何以老爷相称？”杨戩欠身曰：“弟子不知。”童子曰：“你不知，不怪你。此三圣乃天、地、人三皇帝主。”杨戩曰：“多感师兄指教，其实弟子不知。”童儿进洞府，少时出来，曰：“三位皇爷命你相见。”杨戩进洞府，见三位圣人：当中一位，顶生二角；左边一位，披叶盖肩，腰围虎豹之皮；右边一位，身穿帝服。杨戩



“Has your master arrived yet?” the immortal asked Yang Jian.

“No, not yet, Uncle,” he replied.

The Yellow Dragon Immortal went to the prime minister’s mansion to see Jiang Ziya and then to the palace to see King Wu. He had just returned to the city wall when Jade Tripod arrived on a flash of golden light.

“Why are you so late, Brother?” the Yellow Dragon Immortal asked.

“The golden light wasn’t as fast as I had expected. Let’s act at once. Yang Jian! Go straight to the Fire Cloud Cave to see the three holy masters and beg them for the elixirs needed to save the people.”

Yang Jian left immediately for the Fire Cloud Cave. Elegant cypresses and ancient pine trees covered the slopes. The scent of fragrant grass filled the air, and cranes chirped in the mist that floated overhead. Green phoenixes flew over lofty mountains, and pleasant pavilions stood half-hidden in the purple haze. Dragons lay submerged in winding streams, and tigers lay idly beneath the cliffs. It was the kind of scenery found only in the abode of celestials.

Yang Jian dared not enter the cave without permission. He waited a long time before a lad appeared. Moving forward with a bow, he said, “I’m a disciple of Jade Tripod. By order of my master, I’ve come to pay my respects to the three holy masters. Would you please report my arrival?”

“Do you know who the three holy men are? How can you refer to them as masters?” the lad asked.

“I’m sorry, but I don’t know.”

“Then I won’t blame you. They’re Emperor Heaven, Emperor Earth, and Emperor Mankind.”

“Thank you for your instruction, Brother.”

When he was admitted, Yang Jian knelt and kowtowed before the three holy men. The one in the middle had two horns on his head. The one on the left had a cape of leaves on his shoulders and tiger skins around his waist. The one on the right was dressed in the robes of an





不敢践越阶次，只得倒身下拜，言曰：“弟子杨戩奉玉鼎真人之命，今为西岐武王因吕岳助苏护征伐其地，不知用何道术，将一郡生民尽是卧床不起，呻吟不绝，昼夜无宁，武王命在旦夕，姜尚死在须臾。弟子奉师命，特恳金容，大发慈悲，救援无辜生灵，实乃再造洪恩，德如渊海！”杨戩诉罢。当中一位圣人乃伏羲皇帝，谓左边神农曰：“想吾辈为君，和八卦，定礼乐，并无祸乱。方今商运当衰，干戈四起，想武王德业日盛，纣恶贯盈，以周伐纣，此是天数。但申公豹扭转天心，助恶为虐，邀请左道，大是可恨。御弟不可辞劳，转济周功，不负有德之业。”神农答曰：“皇兄此言有理。”忙起身入后，取了丹药，付与杨戩，曰：“此丹三粒：一粒救武王宫眷，一粒救子牙诸多门人，一粒用水化开，用杨枝细洒西城。凡有此疾者，名为传染之疫。”杨戩叩首在地，拜谢出洞。神农复叫杨戩，分付曰：“你且站住。”神农出的洞府，往紫芝崖来，寻了一遍，忽然拔起一草，递与杨戩：“你将此宝带回人间，可治传染之疾。若凡世间众生遭此苦厄，先取此草服之，其疾自愈。”杨戩接草，跪而启曰：“此草何名？留传人间急济寒疫。恳乞明示。”神农道：“你听我有偈为证，偈曰：

此草生来盖世无，紫芝崖下用功夫。常桑曾说玄中妙，寒门发表是柴胡。”

话说杨戩得了柴胡草并丹药，离了火云洞，径往西岐而来；早至城上，见师父回话。玉鼎真人问：“取丹药一事如何？”杨戩把神农分付的言语，细细说了一遍。玉鼎真人依法而行，将三粒丹如法制度。果然好丹药！正是：



emperor. Yang Jian recognized Emperor Fu Xi in the middle and Emperor Shen Nong on the left.

“By order of my master, Jade Tripod, I’ve come to pay my respects. King Wu and the people of West Qi have all fallen ill with the plague spread by Lu Yue. The victims lie moaning in their beds day and night. King Wu and Jiang Ziya are both at death’s door. I beg you to show compassion and save them.”

Emperor Fu Xi turned to Emperor Shen Nong and said, “The people lived in peace under our rule, never suffering from any calamity. Now the Shang Dynasty is in decline, and wars are raging all over the country. The Shang is destined to fall to the Zhou, but Shen Gongbao has disregarded the will of Heaven. He has incited wizards to fight West Qi in an effort to help the tyrant. He must be punished. I hope I may trouble you, Imperial Brother, to save the Zhou Dynasty and accomplish a deed of great virtue.”

Emperor Shen Nong immediately replied, “You’re right, Brother.” He got up quickly from his seat, entered his back chamber, and returned with three elixir pills. Handing them to Yang Jian, he said, “Use one for King Wu and his palace, and another for Jiang Ziya and his disciples. The third is to be dissolved in water and spread all over the city.”

Yang Jian kowtowed his thanks and was on his way out of the cave when the emperor stopped him and led him to the Purple Mushroom Cliff. He searched about for a long time before picking an herb. “Take this herb back to the world of men. It can cure infectious diseases when boiled in water.”

Yang Jian knelt on the ground and received the herb. “Please tell me its name so that it may remain in the world.”

“It’s called Sick-leaved Hare’s Ear.”

Yang Jian took the pills and the herb and hurried straight back to West Qi, where he reported to Jade Tripod what had transpired. His master immediately took the pills and following Shen Nong’s instructions, cured the whole city of the plague.



圣主洪福无边远，吕岳何须枉用心！

话说吕岳在营过了七八日，对众门人曰：“西岐人民想已尽绝。”苏侯在中军听得吕道人之言，心下十分不乐。又过了数日，苏侯暗出大营，来看西岐城上，只见幡幢依旧，往来不断人行；看哪吒精神抖搜，杨戩气概轩昂，心下大悦：

“吕岳之言不过愚惑吾等耳。可将言语灭他一番。”遂进中军对吕岳曰：“老师言西岐人民尽绝，如今反有人马往来，战将威武，此事不实了。老师将何法处之？不可以前言为戏。”吕岳闻言，立身曰：“岂有此理！”苏侯曰：“此不才适才经目看将来的，岂敢造次乱言。”吕岳就出营一看，果然如此；掐指一算，不觉失声大叫曰：“原来玉鼎真人往火云洞借了丹药，以救此一城生灵之厄！”忙命四门人郑伦：“你可每门调三千人马，乘他身弱无力支持，杀进城中，尽行屠戮。”郑伦领命，来问苏侯调人马破西岐。苏侯情知吕岳不能破子牙，遂将一万二千人马调出。周信领三千往东门杀来；李奇领三千往西门杀来；朱天麟领三千往南门杀来；杨文辉领三千同吕岳往北门杀来。郑伦在城外打点进城。且说哪吒在城上看见成汤营里发出人马，杀奔城前，忙见黄龙真人曰：“城内空虚，止有四人，焉能护持得来？”黄龙真人曰：“不妨。”命杨戩：“你去东门迎敌，开门让他进来，吾自有道理。哪吒，你在西门，也是如此。玉鼎真人，你在南门。我贫道在北门。把他诓进城来，我自有处治。”且说吕岳把四个门人点出来取西岐城，不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



After eight days had passed, Lu Yue said assuredly to his disciples, "West Qi City must be dead by now."

Su Hu was greatly distressed by the news and secretly left the camp to find out what had happened. To his surprise, he saw the city banners flying as usual and people thronging the streets. He saw both Nezha and Yang Jian in fine health. "What rubbish that sorcerer talks! He's only trying to deceive us. I'll go back and see what he says about this."

He returned to the camp and coldly said to Lu Yue, "You told us that the people of West Qi were all dead. Why are there so many soldiers marching about as smartly as ever? What you said is obviously untrue. How can you play such tricks on me?"

Lu Yue got up with a start. "That's preposterous! How can it be so?"

"Do you think I would lie? I've just been there and seen it with my own eyes."

Lu Yue left the camp and found everything just as Su Hu had described. He made a divination with his fingers and exclaimed, "So Jade Tripod obtained elixirs from the Fire Cloud Cave!"

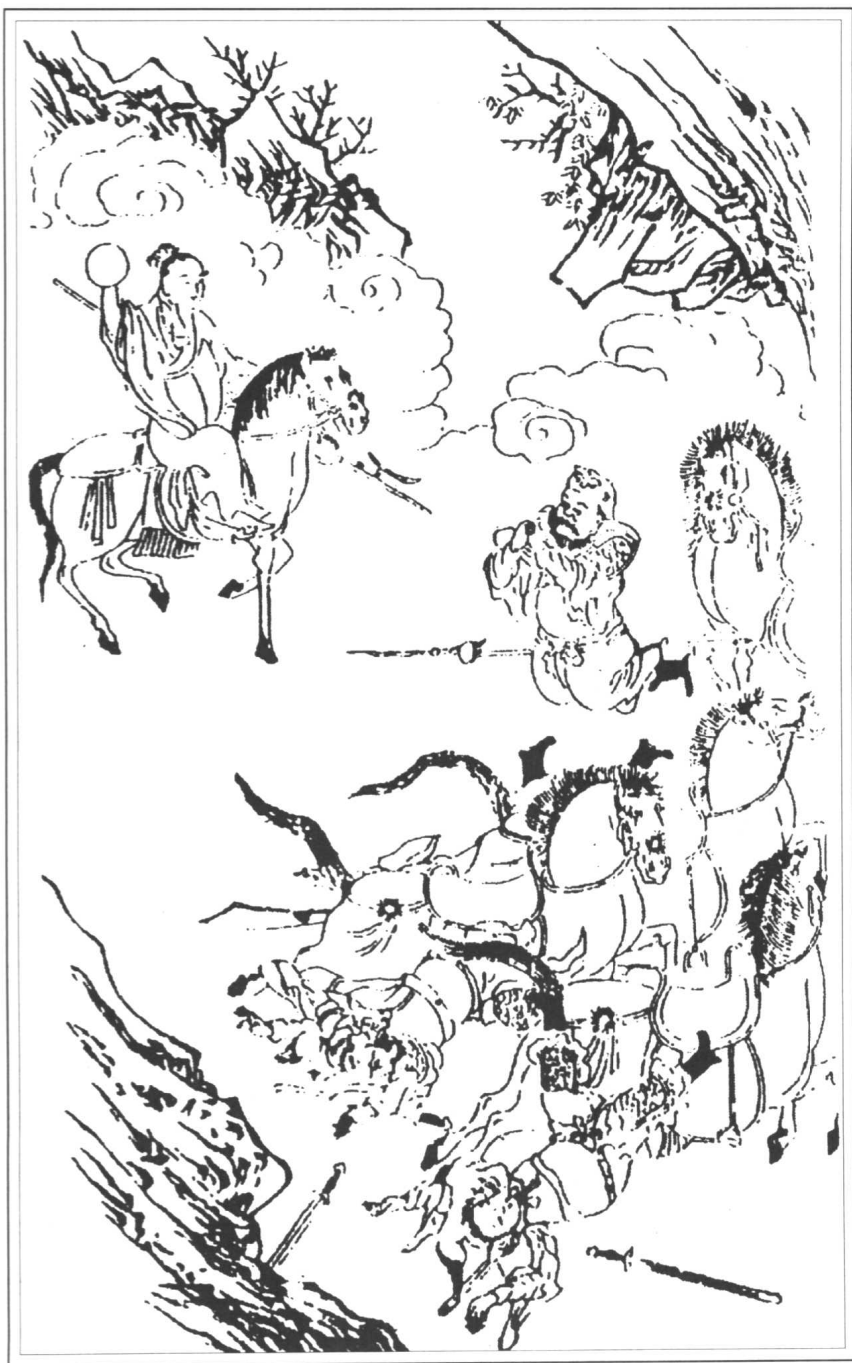
He ordered his four disciples and Zheng Lun to attack the city before Jiang Ziya and his generals could fully recover. Su Hu believed that Lu Yue had no chance of winning. He gave Zhou Xin 3,000 soldiers to attack the east gate, Li Qi 3,000 to storm the west gate, Zhu Tianlin 3,000 to attack the south gate, and Yang Wenhui another 3,000 to attack the north gate.

Nezha saw the enemy troops approaching from all four directions. He turned hastily to the Yellow Dragon Immortal, "How can the four of us withstand them! What shall we do now?"

"Don't worry," the immortal replied and ordered, "Yang Jian, you meet the enemy at the east gate. Open the gate wide and let them in. Nezha, you meet them at the west gate and do the same. Jade Tripod, meet them at the south gate, and I'll take the north. I'm sure we can deal with them once they're inside the city."

If you want to learn what happened in the battle, please read the next chapter.





## 第五十九回

### 殷洪下山收四将

诗曰：

纣王极恶已无恩，安得延绵及子孙；非是申公能反国，  
只因天意绝商门。收来四将皆逢劫，自遇三灾若返魂。  
涂炭一场成个事，封神台上泣啼痕。

话说周信领三千人马杀至城下，一声响，冲开东门，往城里杀来。喧天金鼓，喊声大振。杨戩见人马俱进了城，把三尖刀一摆，大呼：“周信！是尔自来取死，不要走，吃吾一刀！”周信大怒，执剑飞来直取。杨戩的刀赴面交还。话分四路：李奇领三千人马杀进西门；有哪吒截住厮杀。朱天麟领人马杀进南门；有玉鼎真人截住去路。杨文辉同吕岳杀进北门；只见黄龙真人跨鹤，大喝一声：“吕岳慢来！你欺敌擅入西岐，真如鱼游釜中，鸟投网里，自取其死！”吕岳一见是黄龙真人，笑曰：“你有何能，敢出此大言？”将手中剑来取真人。真人忙用剑遮架。正是：

神仙杀戒相逢日，只得将身向火焰。

黄龙真人用双剑来迎。吕岳在金眼驼上，现出三头六臂，大显神通。一位是了道真仙，一位是瘟部鼻祖。不说吕岳在北门，且说东门杨戩战周信，未及数合，杨戩恐人马进满，杀戮城中百姓，随将哮天犬祭在空中，把周信夹颈子上一口咬住不放。周信欲待挣时，早被杨戩一刀挥为两段。——一道



## Chapter 59

### The God of the Plague Is Defeated

Zhou Xin broke open the east gate with his 3,000 soldiers. They rushed into the city with a roar of gongs and drums and war cries. Yang Jian confronted Zhou Xin. "You're bringing about your own end. Don't run away! Have a taste of my cutlass!"

Burning with a rage, Zhou Xin met the assault with his sword. They clashed and fought as fiercely as two tigers. Li Qi broke into the west gate, but his advance was checked by Nezha. Zhu Tianlin was held up by Jade Tripod at the south gate, and as Lu Yue and Yang Wenhui stormed the north gate, the Yellow Dragon Immortal sped forward on his crane. "Halt, Lu Yue! How dare you! You'll meet your death here. You're just like a bird in a net now."

Lu Yue confronted the Yellow Dragon Immortal. "What do you think you can do to me!"

The two battled sword against sword. Lu Yue once again assumed his three-headed, six-armed form. As he fought Zhou Xin, Yang Jian began to worry that the innocent would be slaughtered in great numbers if the battle lasted too long. He released his Sky Barking Hound, which bit into Zhou Xin's neck. As Zhou struggled with the dog, Yang Jian slashed him in two. Zhou's soul flew to the Terrace of Creation, and Yang Jian set







灵魂往封神台去了。杨戩大杀成汤人马，三军逃出城外，各顾性命。杨戩往中央来接应。且说哪吒在西门与李奇大战，交锋未及数合，李奇非哪吒敌手，被哪吒乾坤圈打倒在地，肋下复了一枪，——一灵也往封神台去了。玉鼎真人在南门战朱天麟，杨戩走马接应。只见哪吒杀了李奇，登风火轮赶杀士卒，势如猛虎，三军逃窜。吕岳战黄龙真人，真人不能敌，且败往正中央来。杨文辉大呼：“拿住黄龙真人！”哪吒听见三军呐喊，振动山川，急来看时，见吕岳三头六臂，追赶黄龙真人。哪吒大叫曰：“吕岳不要恃勇！吾来了！”把枪刺斜里杀来。吕岳手中剑架枪大战。哪吒正战，杨戩马到，使开三尖刀，如电光耀目。玉鼎真人祭起斩仙剑，诛了朱天麟，又来助杨戩、哪吒来战吕岳。西岐城内止有吕岳、杨文辉二人。

且说子牙坐在银安殿，其疾方愈，未能全妥。左右站立几个门人：雷震子、金吒、木吒、龙须虎、黄天化、土行孙。只听的喊声振地，锣鼓齐鸣。子牙慌问；众门人俱曰：“不知。”傍有雷震子深恨吕岳，“待弟子看来。”把风雷翅飞起空中一看，知是吕岳杀进城来，忙转身报于子牙：“吕岳欺敌，杀入城来。”金吒、木吒、黄天化闻言，恨吕岳深入骨髓，五人喊声大叫：“今日不杀吕岳，怎肯干休！”齐出相府。子牙阻拦不住。吕岳正战之间，只见金吒大呼曰：“兄弟！不可走了吕岳！”忙把遁龙桩祭在空中。吕岳见此宝落将下



after Zhou's men, who turned and fled for their lives. Yang Jian then went to the center of the city to assist Jade Tripod in his battle with Zhu Tianlin.

After several rounds inside the west gate, Nezha knocked Li Qi from his horse and stabbed him through the armpit, sending his soul flying to the Terrace of Creation. Nezha then drove Li Qi's soldiers away, inflicting heavy casualties.

The Yellow Dragon Immortal found himself no match for Lu Yue. The immortal had to give up ground and fled to the center of the city. Yang Wenhui yelled, "Get hold of the Yellow Dragon Immortal! Quick, quick!"

When Nezha heard this, he raced up on his Wind-Fire Wheels. "Lu Yue! Don't be so anxious. I'm coming now."

He stabbed at Lu Yue, and the latter met the attack with his sword. A violent struggle ensued. In his battle with Zhu Tianlin, Jade Tripod cast up his Immortal Beheading Sword and sliced off Zhu's head. He and Yang Jian joined Nezha against Lu Yue and Yang Wenhui. By now the whole Shang army had fled, leaving only Lu Yue and Yang Wenhui behind.

Jiang Ziya was resting in the Silver Security Hall and talking with Thunderbolt, Jinzha, Muzha, Dragon Beard Tiger, Huang Tianhua, and Earth Traveler Sun when he heard the war cries. He asked the reason, but none of them knew.

"I'll go and find out," Thunderbolt said.

From the air he could see Lu Yue already inside the city. He quickly went back and reported, "Lu Yue holds us in great contempt. He's now in the city."

Jinzha, Muzha, Huang Tianhua, and the others shouted in one voice, "We won't rest until we have the head of Lu Yue!"

Despite Jiang Ziya's protests, they all left the mansion for the center of the city. In the midst of combat, Lu Yue heard Jinzha yell, "Brothers, don't let him run away."



来，忙将金眼驼拍一下，那驼四足就起风云，方欲起去，不防木吒将吴钩剑祭起砍来。吕岳躲不及，被剑卸下一只膀臂，负痛逃走。杨文辉见势不好，亦随师败下阵去。且说众门人等回见子牙。黄龙真人同玉鼎真人曰：“子牙放心，此子今日之败，再不敢正眼觑西岐了。吾等暂回山岳，至拜将吉辰，再来拜贺。”二仙回山。不表。且说郑伦在城外，见败残人马来报：“启爷知道：吕老爷失机走了。”郑伦低首无语，回营见苏侯。苏侯暗喜曰：“今日方显真命圣主。”俱各无语。

且说那日吕岳同门人败走，来至一山，心下十分惊惧；下了坐骑，倚松靠石，少憩片时，对杨文辉曰：“今日之败，大辱吾九龙岛声名。如今往那里去觅一道友来，以报吾今日之恨？”话犹未了，听得脑后有人唱道情而来，歌曰：

“烟霞深处隐吾躯，修炼天皇访道机。一点真元无破漏，拖白虎，过桥西。易消磨天地须臾。人称我全真客，伴龙虎守茅芦，过几世固守男儿。”

吕岳听罢，回头一看，见一人非俗非道，头戴一顶盔，身穿道服，手执降魔杵，徐徐而来。吕岳立身言曰：“来的道者是谁？”其人答曰：“吾非别人，乃金庭山玉屋洞道行天尊门下韦护是也；今奉师命下山，佐师叔子牙，东进五关灭纣。今先往西岐，擒拿吕岳，以为进见之功。”杨文辉闻言大怒，大喝一声曰：“你这厮好大胆，敢说欺心大话！”纵步执剑，来取韦护。韦护笑曰：“事有凑巧，原来此处正与吕岳相逢！”二人轻移虎步，大杀山前。只三五回合，韦护祭起降魔杵。怎见得好宝贝，有诗为证，诗曰：

曾经煅炼炉中火，制就降魔杵一根。护法沙门多有道，文辉遇此绝真魂。

话说此宝拿在手中，轻如灰草；打在人身上，重似泰山。杨



When he saw Jinzha cast up his Invisible Dragon Stake, he patted his camel, telling it to rise from the ground and run away on the wind and clouds. But he was too late to evade Muzha's Hooks of Wu, and one of his arms was cut off. Seriously wounded, he ran away with Yang Wenhui.

They came to a mountain where a shaken Lu Yue got down from his camel and sat on a rock. "This terrible defeat is bound to damage the reputation of Nine Dragon Island. Where can we find someone to help us get revenge?" Lu Yue asked.

Just then they heard somebody approach from behind singing a song. Lu Yue turned his head and saw a man who seemed to be neither a Taoist nor layman. He was dressed in a Taoist robe but wore a warrior's helmet. He walked up slowly, carrying a Monster Subduing Club.

Lu Yue got up and asked, "Who's that Taoist coming?"

"I'm none other than Wei Hu, disciple of the Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue. On my master's orders, I'm going to help Uncle Jiang Ziya conquer the five passes. I'll subdue Lu Yue as a deed of merit with which to meet the prime minister."

Yang Wenhui flew into a rage. "You brazen oaf! How dare you!"

When Yang Wenhui leapt forward to attack him, Wei Hu smiled, "What a coincidence! How lucky I am to find Lu Yue right here!"

Wei Hu and Yang Wenhui fought back and forth over the mountainside like a pair of tigers. After five rounds, Wei Hu threw his club into the air.



文辉见此宝落将下来，方要脱身，怎免此厄，正中顶上。可怜打的脑浆迸出。——一道灵魂进封神台去了。吕岳又见折了门人，心中大怒，大喝曰：“好孽障！敢如此大胆，欺侮于我！”拎手中剑，飞来直取。韦护展开杵，变化无穷。一个是护三教法门全真；一个是第三部瘟部正神。两家来往，有五七回合，韦护又祭起宝杵。吕岳观之，料不能破此宝，随借土遁，化黄光而去。韦护见走了吕岳，收了降魔杵，径往西岐来；早至相府。门官通报：“有一道人求见。”子牙听得是道者，忙道：“请来。”韦护至檐前，倒身下拜，口称：“师叔，弟子是金庭山玉屋洞道行天尊门下韦护是也；今奉师命，来佐师叔，共辅西岐。弟子中途曾遇吕岳，两下交锋，被弟子用降魔杵打死了一个道者，不知何名；单走了吕岳。”子牙闻言大悦。

且说吕岳回往九龙岛，炼瘟瘟伞。不表。

且说苏侯被郑伦拒住，不肯归周，心下十分不乐。自思：“屡屡得罪与子牙，如何是好？”且不言苏护纳闷。……话分两处，且言太华山云霄洞赤精子，只因削了顶上三花，潜消胸中五气，闲坐于洞中，保养天元。只见有玉虚宫白鹤童子持札而至。赤精子接见。白鹤童儿开读御札。谢恩毕，方知姜子牙金台拜将，“请师叔西岐接驾。”赤精子打发白鹤童儿回宫。忽然见门人殷洪在傍，道人曰：“徒弟，你今在此，非是了道成仙之人。如今武王乃仁圣之君，有事于天下，伐罪吊民。你姜师叔合当封拜，东进五关，会诸侯于孟津，灭独夫于牧野。你可即下山，助子牙一臂之力。只是你有一件事掣肘。”殷洪曰：“老师，弟子有何事掣肘？”赤精子



It was impossible for Yang Wenhui to avoid the powerful weapon. He was struck in the head, and his skull broke into pieces. His soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Angered that his last disciple was killed, Lu Yue shouted, "You brutal beast! How dare you!"

He advanced with his sword, but Wei Hu wielded with his club an endless variation of mystical movements. After six rounds, Lu Yue saw Wei Hu cast the club into the air again and took flight on a beam of yellow light.

When Lu Yue fled the scene, Wei Hu retrieved his club and set off for West Qi. He was admitted at once, and kowtowing before Jiang Ziya, he said, "Uncle! I'm Wei Hu, disciple of the Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue. By order of my master, I'm here to help you achieve our common goal. I met Lu Yue on the way, and though Lu Yue himself fled, I managed to knock off the Taoist accompanying him."

Jiang Ziya was greatly pleased to hear this news. Lu Yue had meanwhile returned to Nine Dragon Island to make an umbrella of plagues, and Su Hu was disappointed when Zheng Lun still refused to go over.

"What shall I do? I keep doing things to offend Jiang Ziya," Su Hu worried.

Master Pure Essence was quietly meditating in his cave, recovering his three spiritual flowers and five energies when White Crane Lad arrived with a message from Mount Kunlun. The immortal received him and read the order to attend his Grand Master in West Qi, as a ceremony was to be held to honor Jiang Ziya as commander of the punitive expedition against King Zhou.

He saw White Crane Lad off and was returning to his cave when he met his disciple Yin Hong. "My disciple! You aren't destined to become an immortal. Your uncle Jiang Ziya will soon advance through the five passes to meet all the marquises in Mengjin. Leave now and render what assistance you can. There is only one problem."

"Master! What problem can there be?"



曰：“你乃是纣王亲子，你决不肯佐周。”殷洪闻言，将口中玉钉一铿，二目圆睁：“老师在上：弟子虽是纣王亲子，我与姐已有百世之仇。父不慈，子不孝。他听姐己之言，剜吾母之目，烙吾母二手，在西宫死于非命。弟子时时饮恨，刻刻痛心。怎能得此机会拿住姐己，以报我母沉冤，弟子虽死无恨！”赤精子听罢大悦：“你虽有此意，不可把念头改了。”殷洪曰：“弟子怎敢有负师命？”道人忙取紫绶仙衣、阴阳镜、水火锋，拿在手中，曰：“殷洪，你若是东进时，倘过佳梦关，有一火灵圣母，他有金霞冠戴在头上，放金霞三四十丈，罩着他一身，他看得见你，你看不见他。你穿此紫绶仙衣，可救你刀剑之灾。”又取阴阳镜付与殷洪：“徒弟，此镜半边红，半边白；把红的一晃，便是生路；把白的一晃，便是死路。水火锋可以随身护体。你不可迟留，快收拾去罢！吾不久也至西岐。”殷洪收拾，辞了师父下山。赤精子暗想：“我为子牙，故将洞中之宝尽付与殷洪去了。他终是纣王之子，倘若中途心变，如之奈何？那时节反为不美。”赤精子忙叫：“殷洪！你且回来。”殷洪曰：“弟子既去，老师又令弟子回来，有何分付？”赤精子曰：“吾把此宝俱付与你，切不可忘师之言，保纣伐周。”殷洪曰：“弟子若无老师救上高山，死已多时；岂能望有今日！弟子怎敢背师言而忘之理！”赤精子曰：“从来人面是心非，如何保得到底！你须是对我发个誓来。”殷洪随口应曰：“弟子若有他意，四肢俱成飞灰！”赤精子曰：“出口有愿。你便去罢！”且说殷洪离了洞府，借土遁往西岐而来。正是：

神仙道术非凡术，足踏风云按五行。



“You’re the son of King Zhou. How could you be willing to serve King Wu?”

Gnashing his teeth, Yin Hong cried, “Master! Though I’m the son of King Zhou, Daji is my lifelong enemy. A son isn’t filial if his father isn’t kind. On Daji’s instigation, he gouged out my mother’s eyes and burnt her hands, causing her to die a tragic death. I am only too glad to avenge her, and I’ll do it even if it costs my life.”

The immortal was delighted with his answer. “You may be sure now, but don’t change your mind later,” he warned.

“How dare I do anything against your will.”

The immortal took out his Purple Fairy Longevity Robe, *Yin Yang* Mirror, and Water Fire Sword and gave them all to Yin Hong.

“Yin Hong, you’ll meet Mother Fire Spirit at the Good Dream Pass. She wears a golden-haze coronet and a golden haze forty feet high covers her body. She’ll see you clearly, but you won’t be able to see her at all. But that doesn’t matter because with this Longevity Robe, neither cutlass nor sword can hurt you.” When he handed his mirror to Yin Hong, he said, “This mirror is white on one side and red on the other. When you flash the white side, anyone before you will die, but they will come back to life when you shine the red side.” When the immortal handed over the Water Fire Sword, he explained, “This will protect you at all times. Go now. I will follow soon.” As Yin Hong began to descend the mountain, the immortal thought, “For the sake of Jiang Ziya, I’ve given him everything, but he is, after all, the son of King Zhou. What shall I do if he changes his mind?” He cried, “Come back here, Yin Hong.”

“Why do you call me back, Master?” Yin Hong asked. “What further instructions do you have for me?”

“I’ve given you all my magic weapons. Never forget what I’ve told you,” the immortal said worriedly.

“How dare I? I would have died if you had not rescued me!”

“Men often say one thing but think another. A pleasant face sometimes hides a wicked heart. What guarantee is there that goodness will last to the end? You must take an oath,” the immortal commanded.

“If I change my mind, may my limbs be burnt to ashes,” Yin Hong swore without any hesitation.

“An oath will always hold true. Go now.”

Yin Hong left Master Pure Essence and set off for West Qi. On the





话说殷洪架土遁正行，不觉落将下来。一座古古怪怪的高山，好凶险！怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

顶巅松柏接云青，石壁荆榛挂野藤。万丈崔嵬峰岭峻，  
千层峭险壑崖深。苍苔碧藓铺阴石，古桧高槐结大林。  
林深处处听幽鸟，石磊层层见虎行。涧内水流如泻玉，  
路傍花落似堆金。山势险恶难移步，十步全无半步平。  
狐狸麋鹿成双走，野兽玄猿作对吟。黄梅熟杏真堪食，  
野草闲花不识名。

话说殷洪看罢山景，只见茂林中一声锣响，殷洪见有一人，面如亮漆，海下红髯，两道黄眉，眼如金镀，皂袍乌马，穿一付金锁甲，用两条银装铜，滚上山来，大叫一声，如同雷鸣，问道：“你是那里道童，敢探吾之巢穴？”劈头就打一铜。殷洪忙将水火锋急架忙迎。步马交还。山下又有一人大呼曰：“长兄，我来了！”那人戴虎磕脑，面如赤枣，海下长须，用驼龙枪，骑黄膘马，双战殷洪。殷洪怎敌得过二人，心中暗想：“吾师曾分付，阴阳镜按人生死，今日试他一试。”殷洪把阴阳镜拿在手中，把一边白的对着二人一晃。那二人坐不住鞍鞦，撞下尘埃。殷洪大喜。只见山下又有二人上山来，更是凶恶。一人面如黄金，短发虬须，穿大红，披银甲，坐白马，用大刀，真是勇猛。殷洪心下甚怯，把镜子对他一晃，那人又跌下鞍鞦。后面一人见殷洪这等道术，滚鞍下马，跪而告曰：“望仙长大发慈悲，赦免三人罪愆！”殷洪曰：“吾非仙长，乃纣王殿下殷洪是也。”那人听罢，叩头在地，曰：“小人不知千岁驾临，吾兄亦不知，万望饶恕。”殷洪曰：“吾与你非是敌国，再决不害他。”将阴阳镜把红的半



way he alighted on a precipitous mountain with peaks which towered thousands of feet in the air and which were covered with cypresses, pines, and creepers. Foxes and deer wandered about, and apes and gorillas chattered in the trees.

Yin Hong was enjoying the scenery when a crash of gongs rang out in the thick forest. A man with a long red beard, yellow eyebrows, and gold-plated eyes appeared. Dressed in a black robe, he rode on a black horse. He wore a suit of gold chain mail and held two ridged silver staves. "Where does that bloody Taoist lad come from? How dare he spy on my hide-out?"

He attacked Yin Hong with his silver staves and Yin Hong defended himself with his Water Fire Sword. They were just engaged in combat when another man cried from the foot of the mountain. "Brother, I'm coming!"

A bearded man, wearing a tiger skin cap and with a face like a red date, charged up on a yellow horse and joined the first man against Yin Hong.

How could Yin Hong fight against them alone? "Let me try out the *Yin Yang* Mirror," he thought, taking out the mirror from his bag. He flashed the white side on the two men. They instantly tumbled from their horses and lay motionless in the dust. Just then another two men, even more wicked and horrible in appearance, rushed up the mountain. The first had a golden face, short hair, and a coiled beard. He was dressed in a red robe and silver armor, and he charged up on a white horse while brandishing a big cutlass. Yin Hong was filled with dread. He flashed the white side of his mirror on him, and the man fell from his horse. At the sight of Yin Hong's magic, the second man quickly dismounted, knelt down, and pleaded, "We beg your mercy, great celestial. Please show compassion and forgive the three of them their crimes."

"I'm no celestial but Prince Yin Hong, son of King Zhou!"

The man kowtowed and begged, "Your servants had no knowledge of your honorable presence. I beg you to pardon us all."

"They aren't enemies so I won't hurt them."

He turned the red side of his mirror to the three men. They regained consciousness and stood up at once. "You damned sorcerer! How dare



边对三人一晃。三人齐醒回来，跃身而起，大叫曰：“好妖道！敢欺侮我等！”傍立一人大呼曰：“长兄，不可造次！此乃是殷殿下也。”三人听罢，倒身下拜，口称：“千岁！”殷洪曰：“请问四位，高姓大名？”内一人应曰：“某等在此二龙山黄峰岭啸聚绿林，末将姓庞，名弘；此人姓刘，名甫；此人姓苟，名章；此人姓毕，名环。”殷洪曰：“观你四人，一表非俗，真是当世英雄。何不随我往西岐去助武王伐纣，如何？”刘甫曰：“殿下乃成汤胄胤，反不佐成汤而助周武者何也？”殷洪曰：“纣王虽是吾父，奈他绝灭彝伦，有失君道，为天下所共弃。吾故顺天而行，不敢违逆。你此山如今有多少人马？”庞弘答曰：“此山有三千人马。”殷洪曰：“既是如此，你们同吾往西岐，不失人臣之位。”四人答曰：“若千岁提携，乃贵神所照，敢不如命。”四将随将三千人马改作官兵，打西岐号色，放火烧了山寨，离了高山。一路上正是：

杀气冲空人马进，这场异事又来侵。

话说人马非止一日，行在中途，忽见一道人跨虎而来。众人大叫：“虎来了！”道人曰：“不妨，此虎乃是家虎，不敢伤人。烦你报与殷殿下，说有一道者要见。”军士报至马前曰：“启千岁：有一道人要见。”殷洪原是道人出身，命左右：“住了人马，请来相见。”少时，见一道者飘然而来，白面长须，上帐见殷洪，打个稽首。殷洪亦以师礼而待。殷洪问曰：“道长高姓？”道人曰：“你师与吾一教，俱是玉虚门下。”殷洪欠身，口称：“师叔。”二人坐下。殷洪问：“师叔高姓？大名？今日至此，有何见谕？”道人曰：“吾乃是申公豹也。你如今往那里去？”殷洪曰：“奉师命往西岐，助武王伐纣。”道人正色言



you!” they roared.

The fourth man cried to them, “Brothers! Don’t be rude. This is Prince Yin Hong.”

Hearing this, the three fell down on the ground. “We beg your pardon, Your Highness.”

“Please tell me your names,” Yin Hong requested politely.

“We’re outlaws here. This is the Yellow Peak Range on Mount Two Dragons. I’m Pang Hong. This is Liu Fu, this is Gou Zhang and that’s Bi Huan.”

“From all appearances, you must be brave and heroic. Why don’t you all follow me to West Qi to help King Wu?”

“As a descendant of the Shang, why do you want to help King Wu?” Liu Fu asked.

“Though King Zhou is my father, he’s a tyrant. He’s been forsaken by all the people in the land. I have to obey the will of Heaven. How many men and horses do you have here?”

“Three thousand men and horses,” Pang Hong replied.

“Then all of you come with me to West Qi. You will be honored as ministers there.”

“We appreciate your great kindness. How could we refuse to obey!” the four generals replied in one voice.

They reorganized their 3,000 outlaws under banners bearing the symbol of West Qi, burnt their mountain camp, and set off with Yin Hong. As they marched along, a Taoist riding a tiger approached from the opposite direction. The soldiers noticed the tiger and shouted, “Look out! Here comes a tiger!”

“Don’t worry. It’s domesticated. It won’t hurt you,” the Taoist reassured them, then continued, “Would you please report to Prince Yin Hong I would like to see him?”

At the report, Yin Hong ordered the army to halt and the Taoist to be brought before him. Before long, he saw a Taoist with a white face and a long beard approach.

“What’s your honorable name, sir?” Yin Hong asked after the formal greetings were over.

“Like your master, I’m a disciple of the Jade Emptiness Palace. I’m Shen Gongbao. Where are you going now?”



曰：“岂有此理！纣王是你甚么人？”洪曰：“是弟子之父。”道人大喝一声曰：“世间岂有子助他人，反伐父亲之理！”殷洪曰：“纣王无道，天下叛之。今以天之所顺，行天之罚，天必顺之；虽有孝子慈孙，不能改其愆尤。”申公豹笑曰：“你乃愚迷之人，执一之夫，不知大义。你乃成汤苗裔，虽纣王无道，无子伐父之理。况百年之后，谁为继嗣之人？你倒不思社稷为重；听何人之言，忤逆灭伦，为天下万世之不肖，未有若殿下之甚者！你今助武王伐纣，倘有不测一则宗庙被他人之所坏，社稷被他人之所有。你久后死于九泉之下，将何颜相见你始祖哉？”殷洪被申公豹一篇言语说动其心，低首不语，默默无言；半晌，言曰：“老师之言虽则有理，我曾对吾师发咒，立意来助武王。”申公豹曰：“你发何咒？”殷洪曰：“我发誓说：如不助武王伐纣，四肢俱成飞灰。”申公豹笑曰：“此乃牙疼咒耳！世间岂有血肉成为飞灰之理。你依吾之言，改过念头，竟去伐周，久后必成大业，庶几不负祖宗庙社之灵，与我一片真心耳。”殷洪彼时听了申公豹之言，把赤精子之语丢了脑后。申公豹曰：“如今西岐有冀州侯苏护征伐。你此去与他合兵一处，我再与你请一高人来，助你成功。”殷洪曰：“苏护女姐已将吾母害了，我怎肯与仇人之父共居！”申公豹笑曰：“‘怪人须在腹，相见有何妨。’你成了天下，任你将他怎么去报母之恨，何必在一时自失机会。”殷洪欠身谢曰：“老师之言大是有理。”申公豹说反了殷洪，跨虎而去。正是：

堪恨申公多饶舌，殷洪难免这灾迤。

且说殷洪改了西周号色，打着成汤字号，一日到了西岐，果



“By order of my master, I’m on my way to West Qi to help King Wu, Uncle.”

“That’s preposterous! What’s your relationship to King Zhou?”

“He’s my father.”

The Taoist cried, “Is there any son so foolish as to help other people against his own father!”

“He’s so cruel he’s been forsaken by all the people in the country. Even filial sons cannot avoid the will of Heaven.”

Shen Gongbao laughed. “Oh! You’re a fool, a madman! Though he’s immoral, no son should attack his own father. And who will succeed to the throne after his death? Why do you give up your own right to power? You’ve been deceived, and you’ll be condemned as an unfilial son by future generations. If your ancestral temple is ruined, how could you face your deceased ancestors after your death?”

Yin Hong was deeply moved by his bewitching words. He said nothing, and after a long while, he muttered, “Though you’re right, I swore an oath before my master. How can I break it?”

“What oath did you swear?” Shen Gongbao asked.

“I swore that if I should break my oath, my limbs would turn to ashes!”

Shen Gongbao laughed. “That’s a worthless oath! How can your flesh turn to ashes? Make up your mind now. Remain loyal to your ancestors and accomplish marvelous political deeds. You mustn’t misunderstand my faithful heart.”

Listening to Shen Gongbao, Yin Hong forgot all that his master had told him.

“Su Hu is already there in West Qi. You may go and join him, and I’ll get a highly talented man to help you,” Shen Gongbao added.

“His daughter murdered my mother. How could I stay under the same roof with him?” Yin Hong objected.

Shen Gongbao smiled. “Keep your hatred within your heart. You can avenge your mother as you please once you’re the ruler of the kingdom. Don’t pass up this chance.”

Yin Hong got up and thanked him, saying, “You’re absolutely right, Master.”

Satisfied with their discussion, Shen Gongbao mounted his tiger, bade him farewell and departed. Yin Hong changed all the symbols on his flags



见苏侯大营扎在城下。殷洪命庞弘去令苏侯来见。庞弘不知就里，随上马到营前，大呼曰：“殷千岁驾临，令冀州侯去见！”有探事马报入中军：“启君侯：营外有殷殿下兵到，如今来令君侯去见。”苏侯听罢，沉吟曰：“天子殿下久已湮没，如何又有殿下？况吾奉敕征讨，身为大将，谁敢令我去见？”因分付旗门官曰：“你且将来人令来。”军政司来令庞弘。庞弘随至中军。苏侯见庞弘生的凶恶，相貌跷蹊，便问来者曰：“你是那里来的兵？是那个殿下命你来至此？”庞弘答曰：“此是二殿下之令，命末将来令老将军。”苏侯听罢，沉吟曰：“当时有殷郊、殷洪绑在绞头桩上，被风刮不见了，那里又有一个二殿下殷洪也？”傍有郑伦启曰：“君侯听禀：当时既有被风刮去之异，此时就有一个不可解之理。想必当初被那一位神仙收去。今见天下纷纷，刀兵四起，特来扶助家国，亦未可知。君侯且到他行营，看其真假，便知端的。”苏侯从其言，随出大营，来至辕门。庞弘进营回覆殷洪曰：“苏护在辕门等令。”殷洪听得，命左右：“令来。”苏侯、郑伦至中军行礼，欠身打躬曰：“末将甲冑在身，不能全礼。请问殿下是成汤那一枝宗派？”殷洪曰：“孤乃当今嫡派次子殷洪。只因父王失政，把吾弟兄绑在绞头桩，欲待行刑，天不亡我，有海岛高人将吾提拔。故今日下山，助你成功，又何必问我？”郑伦听罢，以手加额曰：“以今日之遇，正见社稷之福！”殷洪令苏护合兵一处。殷洪进营升帐，就问：“连日可曾与武王会兵以分胜负？”苏侯把前后大战一一说了一遍。殷洪在帐内，改换王服。次日领众将出营请战。有报马报入相府：“启丞相：外有殷殿下请战。”子牙曰：“成汤少嗣，焉能



to those of the Shang Dynasty and hurried on to West Qi. When he saw Su Hu's army near the city wall, he sent Pang Hong to see him.

Pang Hong, ignorant of the true situation, galloped to the camp and announced, "His Highness Prince Yin has arrived. He orders Su Hu to go see him."

Su Hu was puzzled. "Both princes are dead. How can there be a prince here?" He ordered that the messenger be admitted. When he saw Pang Hong's fierce appearance, he asked, "Where do you come from? Which prince do you speak of?"

"The order is from Yin Hong, the second prince. He commands your presence immediately," Pang Hong replied.

Su Hu pondered aloud, "The two princes were blown away by wind and disappeared many years ago. How can the second prince reappear again?"

Zheng Lun said, "Commander! It was a miracle that the princes were blown away by the wind. I think the prince must have been rescued by an immortal, who has sent him here to help. You'd better go to his tent and find out the real story."

Su Hu left his camp for Yin Hong's tent as Zheng Lun advised. He greeted the prince, "I beg your pardon for being unable to offer you a full salutation as I'm clad in armor. Would you tell me, Your Highness, to which branch of the Shang Dynasty do you belong?"

"I'm Yin Hong, the second son of King Zhou. My father ordered our execution, but by the mercy of Heaven, we were rescued by some immortals from the islands. Now I'm here to help you."

Zheng Lun was pleased. He put his palm to his forehead and said joyfully, "It's due to the good fortune of the dynasty."

Su Hu reported to Yin Hong on the latest situation. Yin Hong took off his Taoist robes and put on his princely costume. The following day, he left the camp and gave a challenge to West Qi.





又有殿下提兵？”傍有黄飞虎曰：“当时殷郊、殷洪绑在绞头桩上，被风刮去，想必今日回来，末将认的他，待吾出去，便知真假。”黄飞虎领令出城，有子黄天化压阵。黄天禄、天爵、天祥父子五人齐出城。黄飞虎在坐骑上，见殷洪王服，左右摆着庞、刘、苟、毕四将，后有郑伦为左右护卫使，真好齐整！看殷洪出马，怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

束发金冠火焰生，连环铠甲长征云。红袍上面团龙现，腰束挡兵走兽裙。紫绶仙衣为内衬，暗挂稀奇水火锋。拿人捉将阴阳镜，腹内安藏秘五行。坐下走阵逍遥马，手提方天戟一根。龙凤幡上书金字，成汤殿下是殷洪。

话说黄飞虎出马言曰：“来者何人？”殷洪离飞虎十年有余，不想飞虎归了西岐，一时也想不到。殷洪答曰：“吾乃当今次殿下殷洪是也。你何人，敢行叛乱？今奉敕征西，早早下骑受缚，不必我费心。莫说西岐姜尚乃昆仑门下之人，若是恼了我，连你西岐寸草不留，定行灭绝！”黄飞虎听说，答曰：“殿下，吾非别人，乃开国武成王黄飞虎是也。”殿下暗想：“此处难道也有个黄飞虎？”殷洪把马一纵，摇戟来取。黄飞虎催神牛，手中枪急架来迎。牛马相交，枪戟并举。这一场大战，不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



When the challenge was reported to the prime minister's mansion, Huang Feihu said, "When Princes Yin Jiao and Yin Hong were bound to the execution post, they were blown away by a sudden wind. They might have come back today. I'll go and find out what happened."

Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua, Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue, and Huang Tianxiang left the city. They saw Yin Hong, dressed in princely robes, attended by Pang Hong, Liu Fu, Gou Zhang, and Bi Huan. Behind them was Zheng Lun with a well-ordered army.

Huang Feihu galloped forward. "Who's that coming?"

Yin Hong had not seen him for more than ten years and never imagined that he had gone to West Qi. "I'm Prince Yin Hong. Who are you? How dare you rebel? You'd better get down from your horse and surrender at once. Though Jiang Ziya is a disciple of Mount Kunlun, he cannot save West Qi."

"I'm Prince Huang Feihu."

"How can there be another Huang Feihu here?" Yin Hong wondered.

Yin Hong spurred his horse forward to attack Huang Feihu with his halberd, and Huang Feihu met him with his lance. Lance clashed against halberd in a fearsome encounter.

Who was the victor of the battle? If you want to know please read the next chapter.

## 第六十回

### 马元下山助殷洪

诗曰：

玄门久炼紫真宫，暴虐无端性更残。五厌贪痴成恶孽，  
三花善果属欺漫。纣王帝业桑林晚，周武军威瑞雪寒。  
堪叹马元成佛去，西岐犹自怯心剌。

话说黄飞虎大战殷洪，二骑交锋，枪戟上下，来往相交，约有二十回合。黄飞虎枪法如风驰电掣，往来如飞，抢入怀中。殷洪招架不住。只见庞弘走马来助；这壁厢黄天禄纵马摇枪，敌住庞弘。刘甫舞刀飞来；黄天爵也来接住厮杀。苟章见众将助战，也冲杀过来；黄天祥年方十四岁，大呼曰：“少待！吾来！”枪马抢出，大战苟章。毕环走马，使铜杀来。黄天化举双锤接杀。且说殷洪敌不住黄飞虎，把戟一掩就走。黄飞虎赶来。殷洪取出阴阳镜，把白光一晃。黄飞虎滚下骑来。早被郑伦杀出阵前，把黄飞虎抢将过去了。黄天化见父亲坠骑，弃了毕环，赶来救父。殷洪见黄天化坐的是玉麒麟，知是道德之士，恐被他所算，忙取出镜子，如前一晃。黄天化跌下鞍鞞，也被擒了。苟章欺黄天祥年幼，不以为意，被天祥一枪，正中左腿，败回行营。殷洪一阵擒二将，掌得胜鼓回营。且说黄家父子五人出城，到擒了两个去，只剩三个回来，进相府泣报子牙。子牙大惊，问其原故。天爵等将“镜子一晃，即便拿人”，诉了一遍。子牙十

## Chapter 60

### Ma Yuan Assists Yin Hong

In their twenty rounds of combat, Huang Feihu plied his lance with such skill and speed that he almost stabbed Yin Hong through the breast. Seeing that Yin Hong was in trouble, Pang Hong galloped up to assist him but was met by Huang Tianlu. As Liu Fu sped up on his horse, he was intercepted by Huang Tianjue. Gou Zhang tried to join in the fray, but fourteen year old Huang Tianxiang shouted, "Hold on there! I'm coming!" and engaged him. Finally Bi Huan advanced with his ridged staves, and Huang Tianhua rushed up to meet him. The ten generals fought violently.

Unable to resist Huang Feihu any longer, Yin Hong turned his horse and fled. He took out his *Yin Yang* Mirror and shone it on Huang Feihu. Huang Feihu fell from his ox and was taken captive by Zheng Lun. Huang Tianhua gave up Bi Huan and tried to rescue his father. Yin Hong knew that Huang Tianhua was a Taoist and decided that he'd better make the first move. He flashed his mirror on Huang Tianhua. Huang fell from his jade unicorn and was also taken captive.

Gou Zhang, meanwhile, looked down on Huang Tianxiang as a mere child, and failing to remain on guard, was soon stabbed in the left thigh. He fled back to the Shang camp, but Yin Hong, having captured two generals, returned in triumph.

Of the five Huang generals, two had been taken prisoner and the rest returned to the prime minister's mansion sunk in depression. Jiang Ziya was startled to see their long faces and asked what had happened. Huang Tianjue told him how Yin Hong had flashed a mirror on his father and brother. Jiang Ziya was worried.





分不悦。只见殷洪回至营中，令：“把擒来二将抬来。”殷洪明明卖弄他的道术，把镜子取出来，用红的半边一晃。黄家父子睁开二目，见身上已被绳索捆住；及推至帐前，黄天化只气得三尸神暴跳，七窍内生烟。黄飞虎曰：“你不是二殿下？”殷洪喝曰：“你怎见得我不是？”黄飞虎曰：“你既是二殿下，你岂不认得我武成王黄飞虎？当年你可记得我在十里亭前放你，午门前救你？”殷洪听罢，“呀”的一声：“你原来就是大恩人黄将军！”殷洪忙下帐，亲解其缚；又令放了黄天化。殷洪曰：“你为何降周？”黄飞虎欠身打躬曰：“殿下在上：臣愧不可言。纣王无道，因欺臣妻，故弃暗投明，归投周主。况今三分天下，有二归周；天下八百诸侯无不臣服。纣王有十大罪，得罪天下，醢戮大臣，炮烙正士，剖贤之心，杀妻戮子，荒淫不道，沉湎酒色，峻宇雕梁，广兴土木，天愁民怨，天下皆不愿与之俱生，此殿下所知者也。今蒙殿下释吾父子，乃莫大之恩。”郑伦在傍，急止之曰：“殿下不可轻释黄家父子，恐此一回去，又助恶为衅，乞殿下察之。”殷洪笑曰：“黄将军昔日救我弟兄二命，今日理当报之。今放过一番，二次擒之，当正国法。”叫左右：“取衣甲还他。”殷洪曰：“黄将军，今日之恩吾已报过了；以后并无他说。再有相逢，幸为留意，毋得自遗伊戚！”黄飞虎感谢出营。正是：

昔日施恩今报德，从来万载不生尘。

且说殷洪放回黄家父子，回至城下，放进城来，到相府谒见子牙。子牙大悦；问其故：“将军被获，怎能得复脱此厄？”黄飞虎把上件事说了一遍。子牙大喜：“正所谓‘天相吉人’。”话说郑伦见放了黄家父子，心中不悦，对殷洪曰：“殿下，这



In the Shang camp, Yin Hong took out his mirror again and shone the red side on Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua. They opened their eyes to find themselves bound up as prisoners. Huang Tianhua fumed with anger.

“Aren’t you the second prince?” Huang Feihu asked as they were taken before Yin Hong.

“Why do you suspect that I’m not?” Yin Hong cried.

“If you’re Yin Hong, why don’t you recognize me? I’m Prince Huang Feihu. Don’t you remember that I saved your life at the palace gate and set you free before the Changting Pavilion!”

Yin Hong gave a startled cry, “Oh! It’s you!” He hastily got up, untied Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua, and asked, “Why did you surrender to Zhou?”

Huang Feihu bowed. “Your Highness. I really feel ashamed to tell you the story of my past. King Zhou was wicked. He insulted my wife, compelling me to leave his forces. You could now do us no greater favor than to set us free.”

Zheng Lun protested, “Your Highness, don’t let them go. I’m afraid they’ll only trouble us again if you do.”

Yin Hong smiled. “I’ll return the kindness General Huang showed us many years ago. I’ll set them free but deal with them if they should be taken for the second time.”

He ordered that their armor and robes be returned to them, and he announced, “General Huang, I’ll return your kindness today, but in the future be more careful. There won’t be a second time.”

Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua thanked Yin Hong and left the camp. Zheng Lun was unhappy. He told Yin Hong, “Your Highness! I captured



番再擒来，切不可轻易处治。他前番被臣擒来，彼又私自逃回。这次切宜斟酌。”殿下曰：“他救我，我理当报他。料他也走不出吾之手。”

次日，殷洪领众将来城下，坐名请子牙答话。探马报入相府。子牙对诸门人曰：“今日会殷洪，须是看他怎样个镜子。”传令：“排队伍。”炮声响亮，旗幡招展出城，对子马各分左右，诸门人雁翅排开。殷洪在马上把画戟指定，言曰：“姜尚为何造反？你也曾为商臣，一旦辜恩，情殊可恨！”子牙欠身曰：“殿下此言差矣！为君者上行而下效，其身正，不令而行；其身不正，虽令不从。其所令反其所好，民孰肯信之！纣王无道，民愁天怨，天下皆与为仇，天下共叛之，岂西周故逆王命哉。今天下归周，天下共信之，殿下又何必逆天强为，恐有后悔！”殷洪大喝曰：“谁与我把姜尚擒了？”左队内庞弘大叱一声，走马滚临阵前，用两条银装铜冲杀过来。哪吒登风火轮，摇枪战住。刘甫出马来战；又有黄天化接住厮杀。毕环助战；又有杨戩拦住厮杀。且说苏侯同子苏全忠在辕门，看殷洪走马来战姜子牙，子牙仗剑来迎。怎见得这场恶杀：

扑咚咚陈皮鼓响，血沥沥旗磨碌砂。檠榔马上叫活拿，  
便把人参捉下。暗里防风鬼箭，乌头便撞飞抓。好杀！  
只杀得附子染黄沙，都为那地黄天子驾。

话说两家锣鸣鼓响，惊天动地，喊杀之声，地沸天翻。且说子牙同殷洪未及三四合，祭打神鞭来打殷洪。不知殷洪内衬紫绶仙衣，此鞭打在身上，只当不知。子牙忙收了打神鞭。哪吒战庞弘，忙祭起乾坤圈，一圈将庞弘打下马去，复肋下



them once before, but they got away. Such a thing mustn't be repeated."

"Huang Feihu once saved us from death, and I should repay this deed. I'm sure they won't be able to stay out of my hands forever."

The next day he took all his generals with him and advanced to the city wall, demanding to see Jiang Ziya. At the report, Jiang Ziya said, "When we meet Yin Hong, we must find out about his mirror."

He marched out of the city with a roar of cannons. Yin Hong rode up, pointed at Jiang Ziya with his halberd, and rebuked him, "Why have you rebelled? You were once an official of the Shang Dynasty. How can you be so ungrateful?"

Jiang Ziya bowed. "You are wrong, Your Highness. A king must love his people and listen to his ministers. King Zhou is cruel towards his people and angers Heaven. He's become the common enemy of the people, compelling everyone to rebel. West Qi is certainly no exception. King Wu is supported by all the marquises and controls two-thirds of the kingdom. Your Highness, I advise you to do nothing against the will of Heaven lest you regret it later."

Yin Hong shouted in anger, "Who'll seize him for me?"

From his left, Pang Hong gave a roar and galloped forward with his staves. Nezha met him. Liu Fu ran out to join in, but Huang Tianhua intercepted him. Bi Huan was engaged by Yang Jian.

Su Hu and Su Quanzhong stood at the camp gate watching the scene with great interest. They saw Yin Hong fighting with Jiang Ziya amidst the beating of gongs and drums and war cries on both sides.

After a few rounds, Jiang Ziya threw up his Staff for Beating Gods, but it could not hurt Yin Hong in the least, as he was protected by the magic robe. Jiang Ziya had to hurriedly retrieve his staff.

Nezha lost patience with Pang Hong. He cast up his Universal Ring, knocked his enemy down and stabbed him in an instant. At the sight, Yin





一枪刺死。殷洪见刺杀庞弘，大叫曰：“好匹夫！伤吾大将！”弃了子牙，忙来战哪吒。戟枪并举，杀在虎穴。却说杨戩战毕环，未及数合，杨戩放出哮天犬，将毕环咬了一口，毕环负疼，把头一缩，凑手不及，被杨戩复上一刀，可怜死于非命。——二人俱进封神台去了。殷洪战住哪吒，忙取阴阳镜照着哪吒一晃。哪吒不知那里帐，见殷洪拿镜子照他晃。不知哪吒乃莲花化身，不系精血之体，怎晃的他死？殷洪连晃数晃，全无应验。殷洪着忙，只得又战。彼时杨戩看见殷洪拿着阴阳镜，慌忙对子牙曰：“师叔快退后！殷洪拿的是阴阳镜。方才弟子见打神鞭虽打殷洪，不曾着重，此必有暗宝护身。如今又将此宝来晃哪吒，幸哪吒非血肉之躯，自是无恙。”子牙听说，忙命邓婵玉暗助哪吒一石，以襄成功。婵玉听说，把马一纵，将五光石掌在手上，望殷洪打来。正是：

发手石来真可羨，殷洪怎免面皮青。

殷洪与哪吒大战局中，不防邓婵玉一石打来，及至着伤，打得头青眼肿，“哎哟”一声，拨骑就走。哪吒刺斜里一枪，劈胸刺来，亏杀了紫绶仙衣，枪尖也不曾刺入分毫。哪吒大惊，不敢追袭。子牙掌得胜鼓进城。殷洪败回大营，面上青肿，切齿深恨姜尚：“若不报今日之耻，非大丈夫之所为也！”

且说杨戩在银安殿启子牙曰：“方才弟子临阵，见殷洪所掌，实是阴阳镜。今日若不是哪吒，定然坏了几人。弟子往太华山去走一遭，见赤精子师伯，看他如何说。”子牙沉吟半晌，方许前去。杨戩离了西岐，借土遁到太华山来，随风而至。来到高山，收了遁术，径进云霄洞来。赤精子见杨戩进洞，问曰：“杨戩，你到此有何说话？”杨戩行礼，口称：“师



Hong screamed, "You damned wretch! How dare you!"

He gave up Jiang Ziya and galloped up to Nezha. After several rounds, Yang Jian set his dog on Bi Huan. Badly bitten, Bi Huan reeled backwards and was slashed in two by Yang Jian. The souls of the two Shang generals flew to the Terrace of Creation. Yin Hong tried to use the mirror in his battle with Nezha, but little did he know that Nezha's body was of lotus flowers and not flesh and blood. He shone the mirror on Nezha over and over again, but it was useless. He had no choice but to resort to his halberd.

But Yang Jian had seen the mirror in his hand. "Uncle! You must leave quickly. He has the *Yin Yang* Mirror. Your staff is powerless against him because he's got the magic robe, but he can't harm Nezha as his body isn't flesh and blood," Yang Jian told Jiang Ziya.

Jiang Ziya ordered Deng Chanyu to help Nezha with a stone. Deng Chanyu urged her horse forward, a colored pebble in her hand. She hurled it right into Yin Hong's face.

Caught off guard, Yin Hong was seriously wounded. His forehead bled and his eyes swelled up like apples. He gave a cry of pain and turned to flee. Nezha seized the chance and stabbed him right in the breast, but he was protected by the magic robe; the prince was not injured. This astonished Nezha, who did not dare to chase after him. Jiang Ziya returned to the city in triumph.

Back in the Shang camp, Yin Hong gnashed his teeth in hatred. "I won't be a real man if I don't get revenge for the humiliation I've suffered today," he swore.

In the city, Yang Jian told Jiang Ziya, "I'm sure that he has the *Yin Yang* Mirror from Master Pure Essence. If it weren't for Nezha, we would have lost some men. I'll go to Mount Taihua and see what Master Pure Essence has to say."

Jiang Ziya agreed to his proposal. Yang Jian soon arrived at Mount Taihua and entered the Exalted Cloud Cave. When he saw Yang Jian, Master Pure Essence asked, "Yang Jian, what brings you here?"



伯，弟子来见，来借阴阳镜与姜师叔，暂破成汤大将，随即奉上。”赤精子曰：“前日殷洪带下山去，我使他助子牙伐纣，难道他不说有宝在身？”杨戩曰：“弟子单为殷洪而来。此殷洪不曾归周，如今反伐西岐。”道人听罢，顿足叹曰：“吾错用其人！将一洞珍宝尽付殷洪。岂知这畜生反生祸乱！”赤精子命杨戩：“你且先回，我随后就至。”杨戩辞了赤精子，借土遁回西岐，进相府，来见子牙。子牙问曰：“你往太华山见你师伯如何说？”杨戩曰：“果是师伯的徒弟殷洪。师伯随后就来。”子牙心下焦闷。过了三日，门官报入殿前：“赤精子老爷到了。”子牙忙迎出府前。二人携手上殿。赤精子曰：“子牙公，贫道得罪！吾使殷洪下山，助你同进五关，使这畜生得归故土。岂知负我之言，反生祸乱。”子牙曰：“道兄如何把阴阳镜也付与他？”赤精子曰：“贫道将一洞珍宝尽付与殷洪。恐防东进有碍，又把紫绶仙衣与他护身，可避刀兵水火之灾。这孽障不知听何人唆使，中途改了念头。也罢，此时还未至大决裂，我明日使他进西岐赎罪便了。”一宿不表。次日，赤精子出城至营，大呼曰：“辕门将士传进去，着殷洪出来见我。”话说殷洪自败在营，调养伤痕，切齿痛恨，欲报一石之仇。忽军士报：“有一道人，坐名请千岁答话。”殷洪不知是师父前来，随即上马，带刘甫、苟章，一声炮响，齐出辕门。殷洪看见是师父，便自置身无地；欠背打躬，口称：“老师，弟子殷洪甲冑在身，不能全礼。”赤精子曰：“殷洪，你在洞中怎样对我讲？你如今反伐西岐，是何道理？徒弟，开口有愿，出语受之，仔细四肢成为飞灰也！好好下马，随吾进城，以赎前日之罪，庶免飞灰之祸。如不从我之



“Uncle!” Yang Jian replied. “By order of Jiang Ziya, I’m here to borrow your *Yin Yang* Mirror. We’ll return it as soon as we’ve won the war.”

“Yin Hong’s got it. I told him to help Jiang Ziya. Why hasn’t he told you that he has got it?”

“I’ve come just for this reason. He hasn’t joined our side. On the contrary, he’s helping the Shang army!”

Master Pure Essence stamped his foot and sighed. “I’m sorry that I mistook him for a reliable man. I gave him all my treasures. How could I have known that the beast would betray me?” He commanded Yang Jian, “Go back first, and I’ll be in West Qi right away.”

When Yang Jian returned to West Qi, he told Jiang Ziya, “Yin Hong is a disciple of Pure Essence. The master will be here shortly.”

Three days later, Master Pure Essence arrived. Jiang Ziya went out to meet him, and they returned hand in hand.

“Brother, I must apologize. I never thought that Yin Hong would betray me!” Master Pure Essence said with regret.

“How could you have given him your *Yin Yang* Mirror?”

“Not only that! I gave him all the magic weapons I had in my cave. He has my Longevity Robe too. I don’t know who induced the beast to change his mind. I’ll order him to repent tomorrow.” He went to the Shang camp the next day, shouting, “Tell Yin Hong to come out and see me at once.”

Yin Hong was not aware that his master had arrived. He got on his horse, and leading Liu Fu and Gou Zhang, rushed out of the camp gate. He was surprised and ashamed to see Master Pure Essence, and bowing, he said, “Master! Your disciple cannot offer you a full salutation, as he’s wearing armor.”

“Yin Hong! Remember what you promised me? What do you mean by this rebellion? Keep your oath, or your limbs will turn to ashes. Come with me and redeem your crimes before it’s too late.”



言，那时大难临身，悔无及矣！”殷洪曰：“老师在上，容弟子一言告禀：殷洪乃纣王之子，怎的反助武王。古云：‘子不言父过。’况敢从反叛而弑父哉。即人神仙佛，不过先完纲常彝伦，方可言其冲举。又云：‘未修仙道，先修人道。人道未完，仙道远矣。’且老师之教弟子，且不论证佛成仙，亦无有教人有逆伦弑父之子。即以此奉告老师，老师当何以教我？”赤精子笑曰：“畜生！纣王逆伦灭纪，惨酷不道，杀忠害长，淫酗无忌。天之绝商久矣，故生武周，继天立极。天心效顺，百姓来从。你之助周，尚可延商家一脉；你若不听吾言，这是大数已定，纣恶贯盈，而遗殃于子孙也。可速速下马，忏悔往愆。吾当与你解释此罪尤也。”殷洪在马上正色言曰：“老师请回。未有师尊教人以不忠不孝之事者。弟子实难从命！俟弟子破了西岐逆孽，再来与老师请罪。”赤精子大怒：“畜生不听师言，敢肆行如此！”仗手中剑飞来直取。殷洪将戟架住，告曰：“老师何苦深为子牙，自害门弟？”赤精子曰：“武王乃是应运圣君，子牙是佐周名世，子何得逆天而行暴横乎！”又把宝剑直砍来。殷洪又架剑，口称：“老师，我与你师生之情，你如今自失骨肉而动声色，你我师生之情何在？若老师必执一偏之见，致动声色，那时不便，可惜前情教弟子一场，成为画饼耳。”道人大骂：“负义匹夫！尚敢巧言！”又一剑砍来。殷洪面红火起：“老师，你偏执己见，我让你三次，吾尽师礼；这一剑吾不让你了！”赤精子大怒，又一剑砍来。殷洪发手，赴面交还。正是：

师徒共战抡剑戟，悔却当初救上山。

话说殷洪回手与师父交兵，已是逆命于天。战未及数合，殷



“Master! Please listen to me. As son of King Zhou, how can I help King Wu against my father? As the ancient proverb says, ‘A son should never mention his father’s mistakes.’ How can I go so far as to rebel and attempt to kill him? Even immortals and Buddhas have to act within this ethic. It’s also said that ‘before cultivating oneself as an immortal, it’s important to cultivate oneself as a human being.’ How can a master teach his disciple to murder his father! I hope that you’ll reconsider what you taught me.”

Master Pure Essence laughed and reproached him, “Beast, King Zhou has destroyed the sacred ethic governing relations. He’s put the loyal to death and drinks and lusts without end. He’s hated and forsaken by both man and Heaven. If you serve Zhou, your branch of Shang may survive. But if you don’t, fate will see to it that the Shang line will die out. Get down from your horse and repent. I’ll do my best to beg forgiveness for you.”

“Please go back, Master,” Yin Hong replied sternly. “How can a teacher teach his disciples not to be loyal and filial? It is impossible for me to obey. I’ll come back and apologize after I’ve crushed West Qi.”

Pure Essence was furious. “You beast! How dare you disobey your master!”

He struck at Yin Hong with his sword. Yin Hong parried with his halberd and begged, “Master! How can you hurt your own disciple just for the sake of Jiang Ziya!”

“King Wu is a sage ruler rising to meet the needs of the times, and Jiang Ziya is well known as an outstanding minister. You, however, dare oppose the will of Heaven!”

He slashed at Yin Hong again with his sword, and Yin Hong answered the attack with his halberd. “As disciple and master we’re closely related. Don’t get emotional and destroy the relationship. It would be a pity if your years of instruction be rendered in vain,” Yin Hong cried.

“Ungrateful wretch! How dare you!” the immortal cursed and stabbed again.

Flushed with rage, Yin Hong roared, “Master! As I’m your disciple, I didn’t counter any of your attacks, but now I’ll strike back!”

The immortal again struck furiously. Yin Hong met the attack with his



洪把阴阳镜拿出来，欲晃赤精子。赤精子见了，恐有差讹，借纵地金光法走了，进西岐城，来至相府。子牙接住，问其详细。赤精子从前说了一遍。众门人不服，俱说：“赤老师，你太弱了。岂有徒弟与师尊对持之理！”赤精子无言可对，纳闷厅堂。

且说殷洪见师父也逃遁了，其志自高；正在中军与苏侯共议破西岐之策。忽辕门军士来报：“有一道人求见。”殷洪传令：“请来。”只见营外来一道人，身不满八尺，面如瓜皮，獠牙巨口，身穿大红，颈上带一串念珠，——乃是人之顶骨，——又挂一金镶瓢，——是人半个脑袋，——眼、耳、鼻中冒出火焰，如顽蛇吐信一般。殷殿下同诸将观之骇然。那道人上帐，稽首而言曰：“那一位是殷殿下？”殷洪答曰：“吾是殷洪。不知老师那座名山？何处洞府？今到小营，有何事分付？”道人曰：“吾乃骷髅山白骨洞一气仙马元是也；遇申公豹请吾下山助你一臂之力。”殷洪大喜，请马元上帐坐了，“请问老师吃斋，吃荤？”道人曰：“吾乃吃荤。”殷洪传令，军中治酒，管待马元。当晚已过。次日，马元对殷洪曰：“贫道既来相助，今日吾当会姜尚一会。”殷洪感谢。道人出营，至城下，只请姜子牙答话。报马报入府中：“启丞相：城外有一道人请丞相答话。”子牙曰：“吾有三十六路征伐之厄，理当会他。”传令：“排队伍出城。”子牙随带众将、诸门人出得城来。只见对面来一道人，甚是丑恶。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

发似硃砂脸似瓜，金睛凸暴冒红霞。窍中吐出顽蛇信，上下斜生利刃牙。大红袍上云光长，金叶冠拴紫玉花。



halberd. After a few rounds, he took out the *Yin Yang* Mirror, but the immortal raced back to the city on a beam of golden light. He told Jiang Ziya all that had happened. Everyone was indignant. "You were too soft. How can a disciple be so rude to his master!" Greatly annoyed, the immortal remained silent.

Seeing his master flee, Yin Hong felt extremely proud of himself. He was just discussing with Su Hu about ways to subdue West Qi when a report arrived that a Taoist requested to see him. The Taoist was just about eight feet tall, had a face like the skin of a water melon, and a mouth full of fangs. Dressed in red, he wore a rosary made of parietal bones and around his neck there was a gold-inlaid container made from a skull. Flames leapt from the sockets where his eyes, ears, and nose should have been. Yin Hong and all his generals were filled with dread at the fearsome sight.

The Taoist bowed and asked, "Which of you is His Highness Yin Hong?"

"I am. Where do you come from, Master?"

"I'm Ma Yuan, the First Ether Immortal from the White Bone Cave on Skeleton Mountain. Shen Gongbao asked me to offer my services to you."

With great delight, Yin Hong gave him the seat of honor. "Which do you prefer, meat or vegetables?" he asked.

"I prefer meat," said Ma Yuan.

He was entertained, and the next morning, he said to Yin Hong, "I'll go to meet Jiang Ziya today."

When the challenge was reported, Jiang Ziya said without hesitation, "I'm destined to meet enemies from thirty-six places. I can't evade this ill fortune, so of course I'll go to see him."

He took all his generals with him and left the city. "Who's that Taoist coming?" he asked.





腰束麻绦太极扣，太阿宝剑手中拿。封神榜上无名姓，他与西方是一家。

话说子牙至军前，问曰：“道者何名？”马元答曰：“吾乃一气仙马元是也。申公豹请吾下山，来助殷洪，共破逆天大恶。姜尚，休言你阐教高妙，吾特来擒汝，与截教吐气。”子牙曰：“申公豹与吾有隙，殷洪悞听彼言，有背师教，逆天行事，助极恶贯盈之主，反伐有道之君。道者既是高明，何得不顺天从人，而反其所事哉。”马元笑曰：“殷洪乃纣王亲子，反说他逆天行事。终不然转助尔等，叛逆其君父，方是顺天应人。姜尚，还亏你是玉虚门下，自称道德之士，据此看来，真满口胡言，无父无君之辈！我不诛你，更待何人！”仗剑跃步砍来。子牙手中剑赴面交还。未及数合，子牙祭打神鞭打将来。马元不是“封神榜”上人，被马元看见，伸手接住鞭，收在豹皮囊里。子牙大惊。正战之间，忽一人走马军前，凤翅盔，金锁甲，大红袍，白玉带，紫骍骝，大喝一声：“丞相，吾来也！”子牙看时，乃秦州运粮官、猛虎大将军武荣。因催粮至此，见城外厮杀，故来助战。一马冲至军前，展刀大战。马元抵武荣这口刀不住，真若山崩地裂，渐渐筋力难支。马元默念咒，道声：“疾！”忽脑后伸出一只手来，五个指头好似五个斗大冬瓜，把武荣抓在空中，望下一摔，一脚蹠住大腿，两只手端定一只腿，一撕两块，血滴滴取出心来，对定子牙、众周将、门人，“咽喳喳”，嚼在肚里；大呼曰：“姜尚，捉住你也是这样为例！”把众将吓得魂不附体。马元仗剑，又来搦战。土行孙大呼曰：“马元少待行恶，吾来也！”抡开大棍，就打马元一棍。马元及至看时，



“I’m Ma Yuan, the First Ether Immortal. Shen Gongbao asked me to help Yin Hong against you rebels. Jiang Ziya! Don’t brag about your Chan Taoism. I’ll seize you all to vent the anger of my Jie sect!”

“Shen Gongbao holds a grudge against me, and so he’s induced Yin Hong to rebel against his master. But you’re a talented Taoist. Why don’t you obey the will of Heaven and the wishes of the people?” Jiang Ziya replied courageously.

Ma Yuan laughed. “Yin Hong is the son of King Zhou. How can you accuse him of acting against Heaven when he’s only faithful to his father? Would he be right and just to help you against his own father? Jiang Ziya, you respect neither the monarch nor the status of a father. I’ll execute you now before anyone else has the chance....”

He slashed at Jiang with his sword, and Jiang returned the blow with his own. After a few rounds, Jiang cast up his Staff for Beating Gods, but Ma Yuan was not recorded on the List of Creations. He simply snatched up the staff and put it in his leopard skin bag. Jiang Ziya was astonished.

As the battle raged on, a general, wearing a phoenix-feather helmet and gold chain mail, rushed in. “Here I come, Prime Minister.”

It was Fierce Tiger General Wu Rong, who had just arrived with food supplies from Qinzhou. When he saw the battle raging outside the city, he came to offer his assistance. He lifted his big cutlass and struck heavily at Ma Yuan.

Ma Yuan found it difficult to resist him. He hurriedly muttered an incantation, then cried, “Quick, quick!” A powerful hand, with fingers as large as wax gourds, rose from behind his head. It lifted Wu Rong into the air and threw him down to the ground. Ma Yuan trampled on one of Wu Rong’s thighs and pulled the other violently with both hands, tearing him in two. He then picked out the bleeding heart and devoured it in front of Jiang Ziya and his generals. “If I get you, the same thing will happen,” he told Jiang Ziya.

Everyone was frightened out of their wits.



是一个矮子。马元笑而问曰：“你来做甚么？”土行孙曰：“特来拿你。”又是一棍打来。马元大怒：“好孽障！”绰步撩衣，把剑往下就劈。土行孙身子伶俐，展动棍就势已钻在马元身后，拎着铁棍把马元的大腿连腰，打了七八棍；把马元打得骨软筋酥，招架着实费力。怎禁得土行孙在穴道上打。马元急了，念动真言，伸出那一只神手，抓着土行孙，望下一摔。马元不知土行孙有地行道术，摔在地下，就不见了。马元曰：“想是摔狠了，怎么这厮连影儿也不见了？”正是：

马元不识地行妙，尚将双眼使模糊。

且说邓婵玉在马上见马元将土行孙摔不见了，只管在地上瞧，邓婵玉忙取五光石发手打来。马元未曾提防，脸上被一石头，只打的金光乱冒，“哎呀”一声，把脸一抹，大骂：“是何人暗算打我？”只见杨戩纵马舞刀，直取马元。马元仗剑来战杨戩。杨戩刀势疾如飞电，马元架不住三尖刀，只得又念真言，复现那一只神手，将杨戩抓在空中，往下一摔，也象撕武菜一般，把杨戩心肺取将出来，血滴滴吃了。马元指子牙曰：“今日且饶你多活一夜，明日再来会你。”马元回营。殷洪见马元道术神奇，食人心肺，这等凶猛，心下甚是大悦。掌鼓回营，治酒与大小将校只饮至初更时候。不表。且说子牙进城至府，自思：“今日见马元这等凶恶，把人心活活的吃了，从来未曾见此等异人。杨戩虽是……如此，不知凶吉。”正是放心不下。却说马元同殷殿下饮酒，至二更时分，只见马元双眉紧皱，汗流鼻尖。殷洪曰：“老师为何如此？”马元曰：“腹中有点痛疼。”郑伦答曰：“想必吃了生人心，故此腹中作痛；吃些热酒冲一冲，自然无事。”马元命



"Don't think you can get away with your evil tricks, Ma Yuan. I'm coming now," Earth Traveler Sun yelled.

He ran forward and struck at Ma Yuan with his cudgel. Seeing that he was a dwarf, Ma Yuan laughed. "What are you doing here?"

"I'll get you!" Sun replied and struck again.

Hot with wrath, Ma Yuan slashed at Sun with his sword, but the dwarf was short and nimble. He struck Ma Yuan several heavy blows on the thigh and waist, almost breaking his bones. Agitated, Ma Yuan muttered his incantation, invoked his third hand, grasped the dwarf, and threw him to the ground. Earth Traveler Sun immediately disappeared under the earth. Ma Yuan was amazed.

"I must have thrown him down too heavily. How could the wretch have disappeared like that?" he puzzled.

As he stared at the ground searching for Sun, Deng Chanyu hurled a colored pebble into his face, wounding him severely. He had no time to finish cursing when Yang Jian engaged him. Ma Yuan was no match for Yang Jian and had to cast his spell again. He lifted Yang Jian with his magic hand, threw him on the ground, tore his body in two, and devoured his heart just as he had with Wu Rong. He pointed at Jiang Ziya and warned, "I'll let you live one more night. I'll deal with you tomorrow."

Yin Hong was greatly pleased to have found such an ally and entertained him late into the night. In the city, Jiang Ziya was worried. "I've never seen a man devour the heart of a fellow being before. Though Yang Jian is talented, I cannot but worry about him. I really don't know what's happened to him."

Drinking with Yin Hong, Ma Yuan suddenly knit his brows and began to sweat like rain.

"What's the matter with you, Master?" Yin Hong asked.

"A slight belly ache."

"It's because you ate a raw human heart. It'll get better if you drink more hot wine," Zheng Lun suggested.



取热酒来吃了；越吃越疼。马元忽的大叫一声，跌倒在地下乱滚，只叫：“疼杀我也！”腹中喞喞的响。郑伦曰：“老师腹中有响声，请往后营方便方便，或然无事，也不见得。”马元只得往后边去了。岂知是杨戩用八九元功，变化腾挪之妙，将一粒奇丹，使马元泻了三日，泻的马元瘦了一半。且说杨戩回西岐来见子牙，备言前事。子牙大喜。杨戩对子牙曰：“弟子权将一粒丹使马元失其形神，丧其元气，然后再做处治；谅他有六七日不能得出来会战。”正言之间，忽哪吒来报：“文殊广法天尊驾至。”子牙忙迎至银安殿，行礼毕；又见赤精子，稽首坐下。文殊广法天尊曰：“恭喜子牙公，金台拜将，吉期甚近！”子牙曰：“今殿洪背师言而助苏护征伐西岐，黎庶不安；又有马元凶顽肆虐；不肖如坐针毡。”文殊广法天尊曰：“子牙公，贫道因闻马元来伐西岐，恐悞你三月十五日拜将之辰，故此来收马元。子牙公可以放心。”子牙大喜：“若得道兄相助，姜尚幸甚，国家幸甚！但不知用何策治之？”天尊附子牙耳曰：“如要伏马元，须是……如此如此，自然成功。”子牙忙令杨戩领法旨。杨戩得令，自去策应。正是：

马元今入牢笼计，可见西方有圣人。

话说子牙当日申牌时分，骑四不相，单人独骑，在成汤辕门外若探望样子，用剑指东画西。只见巡哨探马报入中军曰：“禀殿下：有子牙独自一个在营前探听消息。”殷洪问马元曰：“老师，此人今日如此模样，探我行营，有何奸计？”马元



Ma Yuan did as he suggested, but the more he drank, the more serious his bellyache became. With a cry of pain, he fell on the ground and rolled about yelling, "Oh! it's killing me!" A rumbling noise could be heard in his belly.

"Your stomach's rumbling. Better go to the latrine and relieve yourself. Perhaps you'll feel better then," Zheng Lun suggested again.

Ma Yuan went to the latrine behind the camp, little imagining that Yang Jian had tricked him into swallowing a pill that would give him diarrhea for three days and reduce his weight and strength.

Jiang Ziya was delighted when Yang Jian returned and told him of the trick he had played on Ma Yuan. As they chatted together, Nezha came in to report the arrival of Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture. Jiang Ziya went out to meet him and then escorted the immortal into the hall.

After they had exchanged greetings, Outstanding Culture sat down with Jiang Ziya and Master Pure Essence. "Congratulations, Brother. Your day of appointment is near at hand," he said to the prime minister.

"I'm rather worried at the moment as Yin Hong has rebelled, and on top of that, this Ma Yuan kills with wanton cruelty," Jiang Ziya answered.

"Don't worry. I was worried that your appointment might be delayed and came here to deal with Ma Yuan."

Jiang Ziya was delighted. "We are very fortunate to have your help, but how will you deal with him?"

The Heavenly Master whispered what should be done, and Jiang Ziya immediately ordered Yang Jian to carry out the immortal's instructions. At about five o'clock in the afternoon, Jiang Ziya rode out alone on his nondescript horse to the camp gate of the Shang army. There he pointed his sword this way and that as if spying on the enemy. The guards on patrol hurriedly reported in. "Your Highness, Jiang Ziya is outside spying on us."

"What trick do you think he's trying to play on us, Master?" Yin Hong asked excitedly.

曰：“前日悞被杨戩这厮，中其奸计，使贫道有失形之累；待吾走去擒来，方消吾恨。”马元出营，见子牙怒起，大叫：“姜尚不要走！吾来了！”绰步上前，仗剑来取。子牙手中剑急架相还。步兽相交，未及数合，子牙拨骑就走。马元只要拿姜子牙的心重，怎肯轻放，随后赶来。不知马元胜负如何，且听下回分解。



“I was fooled by Yang Jian and consequently have lost vitality. I must get revenge today. I’ll go and deal with Jiang Ziya.”

Outside the camp, he was greatly enraged at the sight of Jiang Ziya. “Don’t go away, Jiang Ziya. Here I come.”

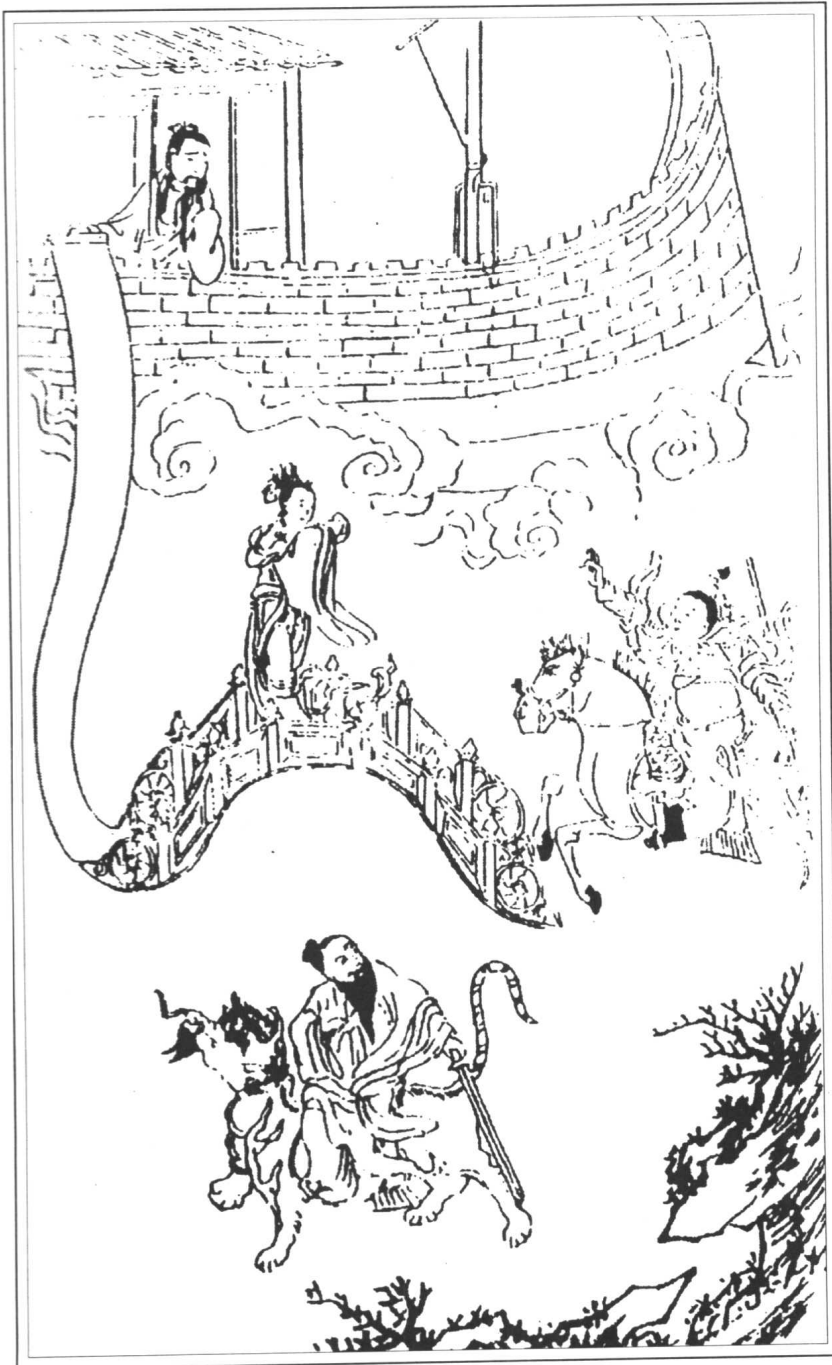
He leaped forward and struck at Jiang Ziya with his sword. Jiang Ziya took up the fight, but before they had fought many rounds, he turned his nondescript horse and ran away as if defeated. Ma Yuan followed close behind.

Was Ma Yuan the victor or the loser? If you want to know, please read the next chapter.









## 第六十一回

### 太极图殷洪绝命

诗曰：

太极图中造化奇，仙凡迥隔少人知。移来幻化真玄妙，  
忤过前非亦浪思。弟子悔盟师莫救，苍天留意地难私。  
当时纣恶彰弥极，一木安能挽阿谁。

话说马元追赶子牙，赶了多时，不能赶上。马元自思：“他骑四不相，我倒跟着他跑？今日不赶他，明日再做区处。”子牙见马元不赶，勒回坐骑，大呼曰：“马元！你敢来这平坦之地与我战三合，吾定擒尔！”马元笑曰：“料你有何力量，敢禁我来不赶？”随绰开大步来追。子牙又战三四合，拨骑又走。马元见如此光景，心下大怒，“你敢以诱敌之法惑我！”咬牙切齿赶来，“我今日拿不着你，势不回军！便赶上玉虚宫，也擒了你来。”只管往下赶来。看看至晚，见前面一座山，转过山坡，就不见了子牙。马元见那山甚是险峻。怎见得，有赞为证：

那山真个好山，细看处色斑斑。顶上云飘荡，崖前树影寒。飞鸟睨睨，走兽凶顽。凛凛松千干，挺挺竹几竿。吼叫是苍狼夺食，咆哮是饿虎争餐。野猿常啸寻鲜果，麋鹿攀花上翠岚。风洒洒，水潺潺，暗闻幽鸟语间关。几处藤萝牵又扯，满溪瑶草杂香兰。磷磷怪石，磊磊峰岩。狐狸成群走，猿猴作对顽。行客正愁多险峻，奈何



## Chapter 61

### Yin Hong Meets His Doom

Ma Yuan chased Jiang Ziya for a long time but was unable to catch him. "How can I? He's on his nondescript horse, and I'm on foot. I'd better give up the chase today and find a way to get him tomorrow."

But as he stopped, Jiang Ziya yelled back at him, "Ma Yuan, I dare you to fight three more rounds on this level ground. I'll take you alive!"

"What can you do?" Ma Yuan laughed mockingly. He strode forward, but after three rounds, Jiang took flight again. Filled with wrath, Ma Yuan gave chase, shouting, "How dare you tease me! I won't give up even if you run to the Jade Emptiness Palace!"

He continued his pursuit, and near dusk, they came to a high mountain, where, rounding a corner, Jiang Ziya disappeared. It was a precipitous mountain with clouds crowning the peaks and birds of prey flying above. Hungry wolves and tigers fought for food below, foxes wandered here and there, and monkeys swung about in the forest.





古道又湾还。

话说马元赶子牙，来至一座高山，又不见了子牙，跑的力尽筋酥；天色又晚了，腿又酸了，马元只得倚松靠石，少憩片时，喘息静坐，存气定神，待明日回营，再做道理。不觉将至二更，只听的山顶炮响。正是：

喊声震地如雷吼，灯毬火把满山排。

马元抬头观看，见山顶上姜子牙同着武王在马上传杯，两边将校一片大叫：“今夜马元已落圈套，死无葬身之地！”马元听得大怒，跃身而起，提剑赶上山来。及至山上来看，见火把一晃，不见了子牙。马元睁睛四下里看时，只见山下四面八方，围住山脚，只叫：“不要走了马元！”马元大怒，又赶下山来，又不见了。把马元往来，跑上跑下两头赶，只赶到天明。把马元跑了一夜，甚是艰难辛苦，肚中又饿了；深恨子牙，咬牙切齿，恨不能即时拿子牙方消其恨。自思：“且回营，破了西岐再处。”马元离了高山，往前才走，只听的山凹里有人声唤叫：“疼杀我了！”其声甚是凄楚。马元听得有人声叫喊，急转下山坡，见茂草中睡着一个女子。马元问曰：“你是甚人，在此叫喊？”那女子曰：“老师救命！”马元曰：“你是什么人？叫我怎样救你？”妇人答曰：“我是民妇；因回家看亲，中途偶得心气疼，命在旦夕，望老师或在近村人家讨些热汤，搭救残喘，胜造七级浮屠。倘得重生，恩同再造。”马元曰：“小娘子，此处那里去寻热汤？你终是一死，不若我反化你一斋，实是一举两得。”女子曰：“若救我全生，理当一斋。”马元曰：“不是如此说。我因赶姜子牙，杀了一夜，肚中其实饿了。量你也难活，不若做个人情，化你与我贫道吃



Ma Yuan was utterly exhausted. As the night deepened, he sat down on a rock against a pine tree, waiting patiently for first light. Late in the night, he heard a sudden roar of cannon fire on the summit, and he saw the glow of lanterns and torches above. Jiang Ziya and King Wu were drinking up there. He heard the Zhou generals taunting him, "Ma Yuan is in the trap now. He'll die without a place to be buried."

He was furious. He jumped up and climbed the mountain, but when he reached the summit, there was a sudden flash of light, and Jiang Ziya disappeared. He looked around in all directions and found the mountain was tightly surrounded from below.

"Don't let Ma Yuan run away!" the soldiers shouted.

In a rage, he rushed down, but when he reached the bottom, no one was in sight. By dawn Ma Yuan was completely exhausted from running up and down the mountain. He was also very hungry. He hated Jiang Ziya and hated himself for not being able to get hold of him. "I'd better go back. I'll deal with him once we've smashed West Qi."

As he walked along, a voice suddenly cried out from the valley below, "Oh! The pain's killing me!"

He went down and found a woman lying on the grass. "Why are you screaming?"

"Help! Help, Master!" the woman cried.

"Who are you? What can I do to help you?"

"Master, I'm a married woman. I was on my way to see my parents when I had a heart attack. It's so serious I think I may die soon. Would you kindly go to the village for some hot water and save me from death. I would greatly appreciate the favor and I won't forget your kindness all my life," the woman begged.

"Oh, dear lady! How and where can I get hot water in this lonely place? Since you're about to die anyway, let me have a meal of you. It would be good for both of us," Ma Yuan replied.

"If you rescue me, I'll certainly give you a meal."

"I don't mean that. I'm really very hungry, as I've been chasing Jiang Ziya all night. Be kind enough to let me eat you," Ma Yuan said more plainly.



了罢。”女人曰：“老师不可说戏话。岂有吃人的理？”马元饿了，那里由分说？赶上去一脚，踏住女人胸膛，一脚踏住女人大腿，把剑割开衣服，现出肚皮。马元忙将剑从肚脐内刺将进去。一腔热血滚将出来。马元用手抄着血，连吃了几口；在女人肚子里去摸心吃。左摸右摸捞不着，两只手在肚子里摸，只是一腔热血，并无五脏。马元看了，沉思疑惑。正在那里捞，只见正南上梅花鹿上坐一道人仗剑而来。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

双抓髻，云分鬋；水合袍，紧束丝绦。仙风道骨任逍遥，腹隐许多玄妙。玉虚宫元始门下，十仙首会赴蟠桃。乘鸾跨鹤在碧云霄，天皇氏修仙养道。

话说马元见文殊广法天尊仗剑而来，忙将双手掣出肚皮，不意肚皮竟长完了，把手长在里面；欲待下女人身子，两只脚也长在女人身上。马元无法可施，莫能挣扎。马元蹲在一堆儿，只叫：“老师饶命！”文殊广法天尊举剑才待要斩马元，只听得脑后有人叫曰：“道兄剑下留人！”广法天尊回顾，认不得此人是谁：头挽双髻，身穿道服，面黄微须。道人曰：“稽首了！”广法天尊答礼，口称：“道友何处来？有甚事见谕？”道人曰：“元来道兄认不得我。吾有一律，说出便知端的。诗曰：

大觉金仙不二时，西方妙法祖菩提。不生不灭三三行，全气全神万万慈。空寂自然随变化，真如本性任为之。

与天同寿庄严体，历劫明心大法师。

贫道乃西方教下准提道人是也。‘封神榜’上无马元名讳；此人根行且重，与吾西方有缘，待贫道把他带上西方，成为正果，亦是道兄慈悲，贫道不二门中之幸也。”广法天尊闻



“Don’t joke with me, Master. How can you possibly eat me?”

Ma Yuan was starving. Without another word, he leapt forward and stood with one foot on her breast and the other on her thigh. He cut open her clothes with his sword and pierced her abdomen. Her warm blood gushed out, and he drank with both palms. He then began to feel for her heart. He pushed his hands through her belly into her breast to pull her heart out. He was surprised to find that both her abdomen and breast were empty. She had neither heart nor lungs nor intestines. He was puzzling over this strange phenomenon when he saw a Taoist on a spotted deer with a sword in his hand approach from the south.

It was Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture. Ma Yuan tried to pull his hands out of the woman’s abdomen, but her skin had healed over, trapping his hands inside. He tried to move his feet, but they appeared to have grown onto her body as well. Unable to move, he could only kneel and begged pitifully, “Master! Master! Have mercy on me.”

As he lifted his sword to behead Ma Yuan, Heavenly Master heard someone shouting behind him, “Brother! Have mercy on the life under your sword.”

He turned and saw a man with a yellowish face and a short beard. The man greeted him politely.

“Where do you come from and what can I do for you, Brother?” Heavenly Master asked as he returned his greeting.

“I’m a Buddha from the Western Region. My name is Candi. Ma Yuan’s name isn’t on the List of Creations because he’s destined to convert himself to Buddhism. Do be compassionate and give him to me. He can then become a proper Buddhist.”





言，满面欢喜，大笑曰：“久仰大法，行教西方，莲花现相，舍利元光，真乃高明之客。贫道谨领尊命。”准提道人向前，摩顶受记曰：“道友可惜五行修炼，枉费功夫！不如随我上西方：八德池边，谈讲三乘大法；七宝林下，任你自在逍遥。”马元连声喏喏。准提谢了广法天尊，又将打神鞭交与广法天尊带与子牙，准提同马元回西方。不表。

且说广法天尊回至相府，子牙接见，问处马元一事如何；广法天尊将准提道人的事详细说了一遍；又将打神鞭付与子牙。赤精子在傍，双眉紧皱，对文殊广法天尊曰：“如今殷洪阻挠逆法，恐悞子牙拜将之期，如之奈何？”正话间，忽杨戩报曰：“有慈航师伯来见。”三人闻报，忙出府迎接。慈航道人一见，携手上殿。行礼已毕，子牙问曰：“道兄此来，有何见谕？”慈航曰：“专为殷洪而来。”赤精子闻言大喜，便曰：“道兄将何术治之？”慈航道人问子牙曰：“当时破十绝阵，太极图在么？”子牙答曰：“在此。”慈航曰：“若擒殷洪，须是赤精子道兄将太极图，须……如此如此，方能除得此患。”赤精子闻言，心中尚有不忍，因子牙拜将日已近，恐悞限期，只得如此；乃对子牙曰：“须得公去，方可成功。”

且说殷洪见马元一去无音，心下不乐，对刘甫、苟章曰：“马道长一去，音信杳无，定非吉兆。明日且与姜尚会战，看是如何，再探马道长消息。”郑伦曰：“不得一场大战，决不能成得大功。”一宿晚景已过。次日早晨，汤营内大炮响亮，杀声大振，殷洪大队人马，出营至城下，大叫曰：“请子牙答话！”左右报入相府。三道者对子牙曰：“今日公出去，我等定助你成功。”子牙不带诸门人，领一枝人马，



With a broad smile, Heavenly Master said happily, "I've long admired your religion and, as you're a highly talented celestial, I must obey your instructions."

Candi walked forward and shaved off Ma Yuan's hair.

"You've spent your time in vain. Follow me to the West Region. You'll study the Way beside the Eight Virtue Pond and enjoy a carefree life in the Forest of Seven Gems."

"Yes! Yes, Master," Ma Yuan replied obediently.

Candi thanked the Heavenly Master, returned Jiang Ziya's Staff for Beating Gods, and left with Ma Yuan. The Heavenly Master returned to the city and told Jiang Ziya all that had happened. He then gave his staff back to him.

Everyone was pleased except Master Pure Essence. Frowning, he said, "What shall I do about Yin Hong? I'm afraid he'll delay Jiang Ziya's inauguration."

Just then Yang Jian announced, "Here comes The Immortal of Merciful Navigation."

When he was ushered in, Jiang Ziya asked, "Brother, what orders do you have for me?"

"I've come here specially to deal with Yin Hong."

"How?" Master Pure Essence asked.

"Do you still have Lao Zi's magic map?"

"Yes, but what can you do with that?"

"Pure Essence, take the map and do the following...."

Though Pure Essence could not bear to see the death of Yin Hong, he had to take action, lest the inauguration be delayed. He asked for Jiang Ziya's help.

When Ma Yuan failed to return, Yin Hong grew upset. He told Liu Fu and Gou Zhang, "That he has completely disappeared is a bad omen. I'll meet Jiang Ziya tomorrow and find out what's happened."

"We should prepare for a major battle," Zheng Lun declared.

The next morning, the cannons of the Shang army roared like thunder, and amidst the war cries of his men, Yin Hong went to the city wall. "Jiang Ziya, come out and meet me!" he shouted.



独自出城，将剑尖指殷洪，大喝曰：“殷洪！你师命不从，今日难免大厄，四肢定成灰飞，悔之晚矣！”殷洪大怒，纵马摇戟来取。子牙手中剑赴面相还。兽马争持，剑戟并举。未及数合，子牙便走，不进城，落荒而逃。殷洪见子牙落荒而走，急忙赶来，随后命刘甫、苟章率众而来。这一回正是：

前边布下天罗网，难免飞灰祸及身。

话说子牙在前边，后随殷洪，过东南，看看到正南上，赤精子看见徒弟赶来，难免此厄，不觉眼中泪落，点头叹曰：“畜生！畜生！今日是你自取此苦。你死后休来怨我。”忙把太极图一抖放开。此图乃包罗万象之宝，化一座金桥。子牙把四不相一纵，上了金桥。殷洪马赶至桥边，见子牙在桥上指殷洪曰：“你赶上桥来，与我见三合否？”殷洪笑曰：“连吾师父在此，吾也不惧；又何怕你之幻术哉。我来了！”把马一拎，那马上了此图。有诗为证，诗曰：

混沌未分盘古出，太极传下两仪来。四象无穷真变化，  
殷洪此际丧飞灰。

话说殷洪上了此图，一时不觉杳杳冥冥，心无定见，百事攢来。心想何事，其事即至。殷洪如梦寐一般，心下想：“莫是有伏兵？”果见伏兵杀来，大杀一阵，就不见了。心下想拿姜子牙；霎时子牙来至，两家又杀一阵。忽然想起朝歌，与父王相会；随即到了朝歌，进了午门，至西宫，见黄娘娘站立，殷洪下拜；忽的又至馨庆宫，又见杨娘娘站立，殷洪口称：“姨母。”杨娘娘不答应。——此乃是太极四象，变化无穷之法；心想何物，何物便见；心虑百事，百事即至。——只见殷洪左舞右舞，在太极图中如梦如痴。赤精子看看他，



When the news reached the prime minister's mansion, the three immortals told Jiang Ziya, "Go to meet him. We'll be there to help you."

Jiang Ziya rode alone out of the city. He pointed his sword at Yi Hong and said, "Yin Hong, you'll find it difficult to escape disaster today. Your limbs will be reduced to ashes, but it's already too late to turn back."

Greatly enraged, Yin Hong spurred his horse forward and struck at Jiang Ziya, and the latter returned the blow with his sword. After a few rounds, Jiang Ziya abandoned the fight and ran away. He did not enter the city but fled into the wilderness. Yin Hong pursued him with Liu Fu and Gou Zhang.

Master Pure Essence watched as Yin Hong chased Jiang Ziya from the southeast. He was saddened, and shaking his head, he sighed, "Beast! You've brought it upon yourself. Don't blame me now."

When Yin Hong approached, Master Pure Essence spread out the map. This magic map could instantly produce any phenomenon one thought of or desired. A golden bridge appeared, and Jiang Ziya spurred his non-descript horse onto it. When Yin Hong reached the bridge, Jiang Ziya pointed at him and taunted, "Yin Hong! I dare you to three more rounds."

Yin Hong laughed. "I'm not afraid. Even if my master were here, you couldn't scare me. Here I come!"

He spurred his horse onto the bridge but became instantly confused, his mind full of fantasies. When he wondered if he was walking into an ambush, men leapt at him from all sides. They disappeared after a fierce battle. When he thought of Jiang Ziya, Jiang Ziya appeared and fought with him. Then he remembered Zhaoge and his father. He entered the palace and found Concubine Huang before him. He knelt down and kowtowed before her, and he then walked to the Fragrant Palace where he saw Concubine Yang. He greeted her, saying, "Auntie! How are you?" But she ignored him.

Master Pure Essence was grieved to see Yin Hong dancing to and fro



师徒之情，数年殷勤，岂知有今日，不觉嗟叹。只见殷洪将到尽头路，又见他生身母亲姜娘娘大叫曰：“殷洪！你看我是谁？”殷洪抬头看时，“呀！元来是母亲姜娘娘！”殷洪不觉失声曰：“母亲！孩儿莫不是与你冥中相会？”姜娘娘曰：“冤家！你不尊师父之言，要保无道而伐有道，又发誓言，开口受刑，出口有愿，当日发誓说四肢成为飞灰，你今日上了太极图，眼下要成灰烬之苦！”殷洪听说，急叫：“母亲救我！”忽然不见了姜娘娘。殷洪慌在一堆。只见赤精子大叫曰：“殷洪！你看我是谁？”殷洪看见师父，泣而告曰：“老师，弟子愿保武王灭纣，望乞救命！”赤精子曰：“此时迟了！你已犯天条，不知见何人叫你改了前盟。”殷洪曰：“弟子因信申公豹之言，故此违了师父之语。望老师慈悲，借得一线之生，怎敢再灭前言！”赤精子尚有留恋之意，只见半空中慈航道人叫曰：“天命如此，岂敢有违。毋得误了他进封神台时辰！”赤精子含悲忍泪，只得将太极图一抖，卷在一处；拎着半晌，复一抖，太极图开了，一阵风，殷洪连人带马，化作飞灰去。——一道灵魂进封神台来了。有诗为证，诗曰：

殷洪任信申公豹，要伐西岐显大才。岂知数到皆如此，  
魂绕封神台畔哀。

话说赤精子见殷洪成了灰烬，放声哭曰：“太华山再无人养道修真。见吾将门下这样如此，可为疼心！”慈航道人曰：“道兄差矣！马元‘封神榜’上无名，自然有救拔苦恼之人；殷洪事该如此，何必嗟叹。”三位道者复进相府。子牙感谢。三位道人作辞：“贫道只等子牙吉辰，再来饯东征。”三位道人别子牙回去。不表。



like an idiot. He was fond of his disciple and hated to see him come to such an end!

Yin Hong came to a dead end and heard a voice calling him, "Yin Hong! Look and see who I am."

He looked up and saw his mother. He cried, "Dear Mother! Are we meeting each other in the afterworld?"

"My beloved son, you disobeyed your master and must now fulfil your own oath. You're in the magic map, and in a few moments you will be turned to ashes."

Yin Hong screamed, "Save me, Mother!" But she disappeared, throwing him into panic.

"Yin Hong! Do you see who I am?" Master Pure Essence shouted.

Yin Hong wept as he pleaded, "Master! Please spare my life! I'm willing to help King Wu eradicate the tyrant."

"It's already too late. You've opposed Heaven and must face the punishment you deserve. Tell me now why you changed your mind."

"I was deceived. Shen Gongbao talked me into rebelling. Have mercy, Master! Give me a chance to live, and I won't break my oath again," Yin Hong begged pitifully.

Seeing Pure Essence hesitate, Merciful Navigation shouted from the air, "Don't oppose Heaven. If you delay any longer, he'll miss his appointed time for the Terrace of Creation."

With his eyes full of tears, Pure Essence flicked the map so that it rolled up. When he unrolled it again, the wind blew, and Yin Hong and his horse were turned into ashes. His soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Pure Essence began to cry, "I've killed my own disciple! Nobody will ever come to Mount Taihua and study with me again!"

"You're wrong, Brother. Ma Yuan wasn't on the list, so naturally there was someone to save him. But Yin Hong was destined to join the others. There's no need to lament like this," Merciful Navigation consoled him.

After they returned and told Jiang Ziya what had happened, the three immortals took their leave. "We'll be back to offer our congratulations on your lucky day."



且言苏侯听得殷洪绝了，又有探马报入营中曰：“禀元帅：殷殿下赶姜子牙，只一道金光就不见了。”郑伦与刘甫、苟章打听，不知所往。且说苏侯暗与子苏全忠商议曰：“我如今暗修书一封，你射进城去，明日请姜丞相劫营，我和你将家眷先进西岐西门，吾等不管他是与非，将郑伦等一齐拿解见姜丞相，以赎前罪。此事不可迟悞！”苏全忠曰：“若不是吕岳、殷洪，我等父子进西岐多时矣。”苏侯忙修书，命全忠夤夜将书穿在箭上，射入城中。那日是南宫适巡城，看见箭上有书，知是苏侯的，忙下城，进相府来，将书呈与姜子牙。子牙拆开观看，书曰：

“征西元戎、冀州侯苏护百叩顿首姜丞相麾下：护虽奉敕征讨，心已归周久矣。兵至西岐，急欲投戈麾下，执鞭役使。孰知天违人愿，致有殷洪、马元抗逆，今已授首；惟佐贰郑伦执迷不悟，尚自屡犯天条，获罪如山。护父子自思，非天兵压寨，不能剿强诛逆。今特敬修尺一，望丞相早发大兵，今夜劫营。护父子乘机可将巨恶擒解施行。但愿早归圣主，共伐独夫，洗苏门一身之冤，见护虔诚至意，虽肝脑涂地，护之愿毕矣。谨此上启，苏护九顿。”

话说子牙看书大喜。次日午时发令：“命黄飞虎父子五人作前队；邓九公冲左营；南宫适冲右营；令哪吒压阵。”且说郑伦与刘甫、苟章回见苏护，曰：“不幸殷殿下遭于恶手，如今须得本上朝歌，面君请援，方能成功。”苏护只是口应：“俟明日区处。”诸人散入各帐房去了。苏侯暗暗打点今夜进西岐。不题。郑伦那里知道？正是：

Su Hu knew that Yin Hong was already dead but still did not know what had become of Zheng Lun, Liu Fu, and Gou Zhang. He told Su Quanzhong, "I'll write a letter. You shoot it into the city on an arrow. I'll tell Prime Minister Jiang to surprise us on a night raid. We'll escort our family into the west gate of the city and seize Zheng Lun to redeem our crimes."

"If it hadn't been for Lu Yue and Yin Hong, we would have gone over long ago!" his son answered.

When the letter was written late that night, Su Quanzhong fixed it to an arrow and shot it into the city. Nangong Kuo found their missive and brought it immediately to the prime minister's mansion. Jiang Ziya read it with great delight. The following day, he issued orders: Huang Feihu and his sons were to make a frontal attack, while Deng Jiugong was to attack from the left and Nangong Kuo from the right. Nezha was to lead the reinforcements.

Zheng Lun, Liu Fu, and Gou Zhang returned to the Shang camp. "We've lost His Highness Yin Hong and now must send an urgent report to Zhaoge for reinforcements," they petitioned.

"We'll see about that tomorrow," Su Hu replied.

Everyone returned to their own tents while Su Hu made preparations







挖下战坑擒虎豹，满天张网等蛟龙。

话说西岐傍晚，将近黄昏时候，三路兵收拾出城埋伏。伺至二更时分，一声炮响，黄飞虎父子兵冲进营来，并无遮挡；左有邓九公，右有南宫适，三路齐进。郑伦急上火眼金睛兽，拎降魔杵往大辕门来，正遇黄家父子五骑，大战在一处，难解难分。邓九公冲左营；刘甫大呼曰：“贼将慢来！”南宫适进右营，正遇苟章，接住厮杀。西岐城开门，发大队人马来接应，只杀得地沸天翻。苏家父子已往西岐城西门进去了。邓九公与刘甫大战，刘甫非九公敌手，被九公一刀砍于马下。南宫适战苟章，展开刀法，苟章招架不住，拨马就走，正遇黄天祥，不及提防，被黄天祥刺斜里一枪挑于马下。——二将灵魂已往封神台去了。众将官把一个成汤大营杀的瓦解星散。单剩郑伦力抵众将。不防邓九公从傍边将刀一盖，降魔杵磕定不能起，被九公抓住袍带，拎过鞍鞅，往地上摔。两边士卒将郑伦绳缠索绑，捆将起来。西岐城一夜闹嚷嚷的，直到天明。子牙升了银安殿，聚将鼓响，众将上殿参谒，然后黄飞虎父子回令。邓九公回令：斩刘甫，擒郑伦。南宫适回令：大战苟章败走，遇黄天祥枪刺而绝。又报：“苏护听令。”子牙传令：“请来。”苏家父子进见子牙，方欲行礼，子牙曰：“请起叙话。君侯大德，仁义素布海内，不是小忠小信之夫，识时务，弃暗投明，审祸福，择主而仕，宁弃椒房之宠，以洗万世污名，真英雄也！不才无不敬羨！”苏护父子答曰：“不才父子多有罪戾，蒙丞相曲赐生全，愧感无地！”彼此逊谢。言毕，子牙传令：“把郑伦推来。”众军校把郑伦蜂拥推至檐前。郑伦立而不跪，睁眼不语，有恨



for that night. At dusk the Zhou army left the city, and at the second watch, a cannon sounded in the night. Huang Feihu fought into the front camp without meeting serious resistance, while Deng Jiugong and Nangong Kuo closed in from the left and right. Zheng Lun hastily mounted his fiery-eyed monster and engaged Huang Feihu and his sons. Liu Fu rushed out to meet Deng Jiugong in the left camp, and Gou Zhang resisted Nangong Kuo in the right. The gate of West Qi City was opened wide to send reinforcements where they were needed and to receive Su Hu and his family.

Liu Fu found himself no match for Deng Jiugong and was soon slashed down from his horse. Gou Zhang turned to flee from Nangong Kuo, but Huang Tianxiang struck him a mortal blow. The souls of both flew to the Terrace of Creation.

The Shang army scattered, leaving only Zheng Lun fighting a valiant battle. With a swing of his cutlass, Deng Jiugong knocked Zheng's club from his hand, dragged him by the belt across his saddle, and threw him on the ground. He was bound up at once.

At dawn Jiang Ziya took his seat in the Silver Security Hall and listened as his generals reported their merits. When Su Hu was ushered in and knelt down, Jiang Ziya said, "Please get up, Marquis. Your virtue is known to all. You're not the type for petty loyalties. You're a real hero to give up your position and cleanse the name of your descendants. We all admire you."

"We're guilty of serious crimes. We feel unworthy of the kindness and generosity you've shown us by granting us our lives." Su Hu and his son answered.

When the courtesies between Jiang Ziya and Su Hu were over, Jiang Ziya ordered, "Bring in Zheng Lun."

Zheng Lun stood upright and refused to kneel down. He glared fiercely at Su Hu without saying a word.



不能吞苏侯之意。子牙曰：“郑伦，谅你有多大本领，屡屡抗拒？今已被擒，何不屈膝求生，尚敢大廷抗礼！”郑伦大喝曰：“无知匹夫！吾与尔身为敌国，恨不得生擒尔等叛逆，解往朝歌，以正国法。今不幸，吾主帅同谋，悞被尔擒，有死而已，何必多言！”子牙命左右：“推去斩讫号令！”众军校将郑伦推出相府，只等行刑牌出。只见苏侯向前跪而言曰：“启丞相：郑伦违抗天威，理宜正法；但此人实是忠义，似还是可用之人。况此人胸中奇术，一将难求，望丞相赦其小过，怜而用之，亦古人释怨用仇之意。乞丞相海涵！”子牙扶起苏侯，笑曰：“吾知郑将军忠义，乃可用之人，特激之，使将军说之耳，易于见听。今将军既肯如此，老夫敢不如命。”苏护闻言大喜，领令出府，至郑伦面前。郑伦见苏侯前来，低首不语。苏护曰：“郑将军，你为何迷而不悟？尝言，识时务者呼为俊杰。今国君无道，天愁民怨，四海分崩，生民涂炭，刀兵不歇，天下无不思叛，正天之欲绝殷商也。今周武以德行仁，推诚待士，泽及无告，民安物阜，三分有二归周，其天意可知。子牙不久东征，吊民伐罪，独夫授首，又谁能挽此愆尤也！将军可速早回头，我与你告过姜丞相，容你纳降，真不失君子见机而作；不然，徒死无益。”郑伦长吁不语。苏护复说曰：“郑将军，非我苦苦劝你，可惜你有大将之才，死非其所。你说‘忠臣不事二君’，今天下诸侯归周，难道都是不忠的？难道武成王黄飞虎、邓九公俱是不忠的？必是君失其道，便不可为民之父母，而残贼之人称为独夫。今天下叛乱，是纣王自绝于天。况古云：‘良禽择木，贤臣择主。’将军可自三思，毋徒伊戚。天子征伐西岐，其艺术高



“Zheng Lun! How can you be so ignorant? Why don’t you kneel down and beg for your life? How dare you be so rude!” Jiang Ziya reprimanded.

“You fool!” Zheng Lun shouted. “We’re enemies. It’s been my bad luck to have been betrayed by my own commander. I’m ready to die. Why all this talk?”

“Take him out and cut his head off,” Jiang Ziya ordered.

As Zheng Lun was pushed out, Su Hu moved forward and knelt before Jiang Ziya. “Prime Minister! Zheng Lun deserves death, but he’s loyal, reliable, and highly skilled. Generals like him are hard to come by. I beg you to pardon him.”

Jiang Ziya raised Su Hu to his feet with a smile, “I know he’s an outstanding general. I only issued the order in the hope that you would talk him over. I’ll set him free as you’ve advised.”

In great delight, Su Hu went out to see Zheng Lun. As he approached, Zheng Lun lowered his head and stood in silence.

“General Zheng! Why can’t you see the situation? An old proverb says, ‘A hero must be quick to analyze the situation.’ The country is split by war, and there’s no one who doesn’t wish to rebel. King Wu already has two-thirds of the kingdom as a clear indication of Heaven’s will. Jiang Ziya will soon march toward the tyrant. General, repent and I’ll ask Prime Minister Jiang to forgive you. Otherwise you’ll only die in vain.”

Zheng Lun heaved a long sigh but still remained silent.

“General Zheng! I’ve done my best. Act as a great general would; do not die in vain. If you’re ashamed to serve a second master, think about Huang Feihu, Deng Jiugong, and all the others who’ve come over to Zhou. Are they all disloyal? No, not at all. When the king becomes so wicked, he’s no longer qualified to rule. If he himself hasn’t rebelled against Heaven, how can the whole nation rebel against him! General! The old saying goes ‘a worthy minister selects the master he’ll serve.’ Think it over carefully. Can’t you see that the generals sent by the tyrant



明之士，经天纬地之才者，至此皆化为乌有，此岂是力为之哉。况子牙门下，多少高明之士，道术精奇之人，岂是草草罢了。郑将军不可执迷，当听吾言，后面有无限受用，不可以小忠小谅而已。”郑伦被苏护一篇言语，说得如梦初觉，如醉方醒，长叹曰：“不才非君侯之言，几悞用一番精神。只是吾屡有触犯，恐子牙门下诸将不能相容耳。”苏护曰：“姜丞相量如沧海，何细流之不纳。丞相门下，皆有道之士，何不见容。将军休得错用念头。待我禀过丞相就是。”苏护至殿前打躬曰：“郑伦被末将一番说肯归降，奈彼曾有小过，恐丞相门下诸人不能相容耳。”子牙笑曰：“当日是彼此敌国，各为其主；今肯归降，系是一家，何嫌隙之有。”忙令左右传令：“将郑伦放了，衣冠相见。”少时，郑伦整衣冠，至殿前下拜。曰：“末将逆天，不识时务，致劳丞相筹画；今既被擒，又蒙赦宥，此德此恩，没齿不忘矣！”子牙忙降阶扶起慰之曰：“将军忠心义胆，不佞识之久矣。但纣王无道，自绝于天，非臣子之不忠心于国也。吾主下贤礼士，将军当安心为国，毋得以嫌隙自疑耳。”郑伦再三拜谢。子牙遂引苏侯等至殿内，朝见武王。行礼称臣毕，王曰：“相父有何奏章？”子牙启曰：“冀州侯苏护今已归降，特来朝见。”武王宣苏护上殿，慰曰：“孤守西岐，克尽臣节，未敢逆天行事；不知何故，累辱王师。今卿等既舍纣归孤，暂住西土。孤与卿等当共修臣节，以俟天子修德，再为商议。相父与孤代劳，设宴待之。”子牙领旨。苏侯人马尽行入城，西岐云集群雄。不题。且言汜水关韩荣闻得此报大惊，忙差官修本赴朝歌城来。不知吉凶如何，且听下回分解。



have all come to nothing? Don't fool yourself any longer, General. You can have a bright future if you listen to my advice."

As he listened, Zheng Lun felt as if he had just awakened from a dream. He sighed, "Without your help, I would have never come to my senses. But I'm afraid the generals under Prime Minister Jiang will object to my joining their forces, as I've offended them too many times."

"Don't worry about that. They're very generous, and they're sure to be pleased by your change of mind. I'll talk to the prime minister at once," Su Hu reassured him.

Su Hu returned to the hall and bowed before Jiang Ziya. "Zheng Lun's willing to surrender, but he's worried that your generals might still hold a grudge against him."

"How can that be? We're now no longer enemies," Jiang Ziya replied with a smile. He ordered that Zheng Lun be ushered in. Zheng Lun entered and apologized on his knees, but Jiang Ziya helped him up. "General! I've long admired your loyalty, courage, and righteousness. We can all forget our past grudges."

He then took Su Hu, Su Quanzhong, and Zheng Lun to the palace. King Wu ordered a grand banquet be held in honor of the newcomers.

The news of Su Hu's surrender greatly alarmed Han Rong. He immediately sent a messenger to Zhaoge.

If you want to know the outcome, please read the next chapter.

## 第六十二回

### 张山李锦伐西岐

诗曰：

抢攘兵戈日不宁，生民涂炭自零星。甘驱苍赤填沟壑，  
忍令脂膏实羽翎。战士有心勤国主，彼苍无意固皇扃。  
只因大劫人多难，致使西岐杀戮腥。

话说差官一路无词，来到朝歌城，至馆驿中歇下。次日，进午门，至文书房。那日是中大夫方景春看本，忽然接着看时，见苏护已降岐周，方景春点首骂曰：“老匹夫！一门尽受天子宠眷，不思报本，今日反降叛逆，真狗彘之不若！”遂抱本入内庭，问侍御官曰：“天子在何处？”左右侍御对曰：“在摘星楼。”方景春竟至楼下候旨。左右启上天子。纣王闻奏，宣上楼，朝贺毕，王曰：“大夫有何奏章？”方景春奏曰：“汜水关总兵官韩荣具本到都城，奏为冀州侯苏护世受椒房之贵，满门叨其恩宠，不思报国，反降叛逆，深负圣恩，法纪安在？具本申奏。臣未敢擅便，请旨定夺。”纣王见奏大惊曰：“苏护乃朕心腹之臣，贵戚之卿，如何一旦反降周助恶，情殊痛恨！大夫暂退，朕自理会。”方景春下楼。纣王宣苏皇后。姐已在御屏后，已听知此事，闻宣，竟至纣王御案前，双膝跪下，两泪如珠，娇声软语，泣而奏曰：“妾在深宫，荷蒙圣上恩宠，粉骨难消。不知父亲受何人唆使，反降叛逆，罪恶通天，法当族诛，情无可赦。愿陛下斩妲己之



## Chapter 62

### Zhang Shan in West Qi

The messenger reached Zhaoge and delivered the report to the royal secretariat. When Fang Jingchun, the minister on duty, read it, he shook his head. "Old wretch! Your whole family's honored by the King. How can you be so ungrateful? You're a beast lower than swine!" He went to the palace and asked the royal guards, "Where's His Majesty now?"

"In the Star Picking Mansion."

When he got there and was admitted upstairs, Fang Jingchun knelt before King Zhou. "Your Majesty! Here's an urgent report from Han Rong. Su Hu has made no effort to return, your grace, but has surrendered to the enemy. What good is the law if he gets away with this!"

In great astonishment, King Zhou cried, "He's the royal father-in-law! How can he forsake us? Withdraw now, and I'll think it over."

Waiting behind a screen, Daji heard every word that had passed between them. She immediately walked up, knelt before King Zhou, and began weeping. "I'm deeply grateful for the kindness you've shown me. I don't know who incited him to do this. He and his family should be severely dealt with. Cut my head off and hang it over the city wall so the







首，悬于都城，以谢天下。庶百官万姓知陛下圣明，乾纲在握，守祖宗成法，不私贵幸，正妾之报陛下恩遇之荣，死有余幸矣。”道罢，将香肌伏在纣王膝上，相偎相倚，悲悲泣泣，泪雨如注。纣王见姐已泪流满面，娇啼婉转，真如带雨梨花，啼春娇鸟，纣王见如此态度，更觉动情，用手挽起，口称：“御妻，汝父反朕，你在深宫，如何得知？何罪之有？赐卿平身，毋得自戚，有损花容。纵朕将江山尽失，也与爱卿无干。幸宜自爱。”姐已谢恩。纣王次日升九间殿，聚众文武，曰：“苏侯叛朕归周，情实痛恨！谁与孤代劳伐周，将苏护并叛逆众人拿解朕躬，以正其罪？”班中闪出一员大臣，乃上大夫李定；进前奏曰：“姜尚足智多谋，知人善使，故所到者非败则降，累辱王师，大为不轨。若不择人而用，速正厥罪，则天下诸侯皆观望效尤，何以惩将来！臣举大元戎张山，久于用兵，慎事虑谋，可堪斯任，庶几不辱君命。”纣王闻奏大喜，即命传诏赉发，差官往三山关来。使命离了朝歌，一路上无词。一日到了三山关馆驿歇下。次日传与管关元帅张山同钱保、李锦等来馆驿，接了圣旨，至府堂上焚香案，跪听开读诏敕。

“诏曰：征伐虽在于天子；功成又在阃外元戎。姬发猖獗，大恶难驱，屡战失机，情殊痛恨！朕欲亲往讨贼，百司谏阻。兹尔张山，素有才望。上大夫李定等特荐卿得专征伐。尔其用心料理，克振壮猷，毋负朕倚托之重。俟旋凯之日，朕决不食言，以吝此茅土之赏。尔其钦哉！特诏。”

钦差官读罢诏旨，众官谢恩毕，管待使臣，打发回朝歌。张



people will realize that you're fair and just and observe the law. I'll be glad to die in order to return your kindness."

Daji placed her soft, fragrant face on King Zhou's lap, her tears falling like rain. Her sobs were bewitching. Aroused, King Zhou lifted her up. "How could you possibly have known your father's mind. You're innocent, my dear. Don't worry about it lest your beauty be affected. I would rather lose my kingdom than you."

Daji thanked him for his generosity. The following day, the king ascended the throne to discuss the situation with his ministers. "Su Hu has rebelled. Who would like to go to West Qi now?"

Supreme Minister Li Deng rushed forward. He knelt before the king and petitioned, "Jiang Ziya is a resourceful strategist. As a result, all the commanders we've sent have either died or surrendered. We need a really talented general this time. I venture to recommend Marshal Zhang Shan. He's also a skilled strategist."

King Zhou accepted the recommendation and immediately sent the decree to Sanshan Pass. Commander Zhang and his generals Qian Bao and Li Jin knelt and accepted the appointment. Zhang Shan then handed



山等候交代官洪锦，交割事体明白，方好进兵。

一日，洪锦到任。张山起兵；领人马十万，左右先行乃钱保、李锦；佐贰乃马德、桑元。一路上人喊马嘶，正值初夏天气，风和日暖，梅雨霏霏，真好光景。怎见得，有诗为证：

冉冉绿阴密，风轻燕引雏。新荷翻沼面，修竹渐扶苏。  
芳草连天碧，山花遍地铺。溪边蒲插剑，榴火壮行图。  
何时了王事，镇日醉呼卢。

话言张山人马一路晚住晓行，也受了些饥冷渴饮，鞍马奔驰。不一日，来到西岐北门。左右报入行营：“禀元帅：前哨人马已至岐周北门。”张山传令：“安营。”一声炮响，三军呐喊，绞起中军帐来。张山坐定，只见钱保、李锦上帐参谒。钱保曰：“兵行百里，不战自疲，请主将定夺。”张山谓二将曰：“将军之言甚善。姜尚乃智谋之士，不可轻敌。况吾师远来，利在速战。今且暂歇息军士，吾明日自有调用。”二将应诺而退。

且言子牙在西岐，日日与众门人共议拜将之期，命黄飞虎造大红旗帜，不要杂色。黄飞虎曰：“旗号乃三军眼目。旗分五色，原为按五方之位次，使三军知左右前后，进退攻击之法，不得错乱队伍。若纯是一色红旗，则三军不知东南西北，何以知进退趋避之方？犹恐不便。或其中另有妙用？乞丞相一一教之。”子牙笑曰：“将军实不知其故耳。红者火也。今主上所居之地乃是西方；此地原自属金，非借火炼，寒金岂能为之有用，此正兴周之兆。然于旗上另安号带，须按青、黄、赤、白、黑五色，使三军各自认识，自然不能乱



his post over to his successor, Hong Jin. He took 100,000 soldiers and set off for the front. He appointed Qian Bao and Li Jin as his vanguard generals and Ma De and Sang Yuan as his seconds.

The lovely summer season was just beginning. The wind was mild and the sun warm. Swallows darted about with their young, while on the surface of ponds, lotuses spread their new green leaves. After many exhausting days, they reached the north gate of West Qi City. When they had set up camp, Qian Bao and Li Jin visited Zhang Shan in his headquarters.

“Commander, as the proverb says, ‘After a march of 100 *li* a day, an army is exhausted without having fought a battle.’ This is our situation now. What shall we do?” Qian Bao asked.

“You’re right, General. We’re compelled to settle the war as quickly as possible, but we’re all too tired now. Rest well tonight, and we’ll take action tomorrow,” Zhang Shan replied.

In the city, Jiang Ziya was busy making preparations for the attack on King Zhou. Huang Feihu was perplexed when Jiang Ziya ordered him to make all the signal flags in red. “Flags are the eyes of an army. They tell soldiers whether to move left or right, advance or retreat, attack or defend. If they are all the same color, the troops will lose their sense of direction. But you must have a reason for the order. Please explain, Prime Minister.”

“Of course there’s a reason. Red represents fire. We’re in need of fire because the west is known for its coldness. We need red to keep out the coldness and encourage the soldiers to fight like fire. We’ll put a small patch of green, yellow, pink, white, or black on the background of



耳。又使敌军一望生疑，莫知其故，自然致败。兵法云：‘疑则生乱。’正此故耳。又何不可之有？”黄飞虎打躬谢曰：“丞相妙算如神！”子牙又令辛甲造军器。只见天下八百诸侯又表上西岐，请武王伐纣，会兵于孟津。子牙接表，与众将官商议：“恐武王不肯行。”众人正迟疑间，只见探事官报入相府，来报子牙曰：“成汤有人马在北门安营，主将乃是三山关总兵张山。”子牙听说，忙问邓九公曰：“张山用兵如何？”邓九公曰：“张山原是末将交代官，此人乃一勇之将耳。”正话之时，又报：“有将请战。”子牙传令：“谁去走遭？”邓九公欠身：“末将愿往。”领令出城；见一员战将，如一轮火车，滚至军前。怎见得打扮骁勇，有赞为证，赞曰：

顶上金盔分凤翅，黄金铠挂龙鳞砌。大红袍上绣团花，  
丝蛮宝带吞头异。腰下常悬三尺锋，打阵银锤如猛鸷。  
擗山跳涧紫骅骝，斩将钢刀生杀气。一心分免纣王忧，  
万古留传在史记。

话说邓九公马至军前，看来者乃是钱保也。邓九公大叫曰：“钱将军，你且回去；请张山出来，吾与他自有话说。”钱保指九公大骂曰：“反贼！纣王有何事负你！朝廷拜你为大将，宠任非轻；不思报本，一旦投降叛逆，真狗彘不若！尚有何面目立于天地之间！”邓九公被数语骂得满面通红，亦骂曰：“钱保！料你一匹夫，有何能处，敢出此大言！你比闻太师何如？况他也不过如此。早受吾一刀，免致三军受苦。”言罢，纵马舞刀，直取钱保。钱保手中刀急架相还。二马盘旋，看一场大战。怎见得：

二将坐鞍鞞，征云透九霄，急取壶中箭，忙拔紫金标。



red to prevent confusion on our side and arouse suspicions on the enemy side.”

Huang Feihu bowed. “Your strategies are as ingenious as those of the Gods.”

Jiang Ziya also ordered General Xin Jia to supervise the manufacture of weapons. The 800 marquises had gathered in West Qi, requesting that King Wu march on Zhaoge and meet them at Mengjin. They were discussing whether King Wu might oppose the plan when Jiang Ziya received the report that Zhang Shan of Sanshan Pass had arrived.

“What do you know about Zhang Shan, General Deng?” Jiang Ziya asked.

“He replaced me as commander of Sanshan Pass. He’s merely a brave general, ignorant of strategems,” Deng Jiugong answered contemptuously.

Just then, a report came in that a general from the Shang army had given a challenge.

“Who would like to meet him?”

Deng Jiugong answered the call and rode out of the city. There he saw a general rolling like a fire wheel and recognized Qian Bao. “General Qian! Go back and tell Zhang Shan to come and see me. I would like to have a chat with him.”

“Traitor! What did King Zhou do that displeased you? He showed you great favor. Why were you so ungrateful? You’re worse than a dog or pig! Aren’t you ashamed to show your face in the world of men?” Qian Bao cried bitterly.

Deng Jiugong flushed scarlet. “Qian Bao, you’re only a vulgar soldier. How dare you! What do you think of Grand Tutor Wen? Can you be greater than he was? Where is he now? I’ll finish you off right now!”

He urged his horse forward and struck at Qian Bao with his cutlass. Qian returned the assault with his own. But Qian was no match for Deng,



这一个兴心安社稷；那一个用意正天朝。这一个千载垂青史；那一个万载把名标。真如一对狻猊斗，不亚翻江两怪蛟。

话说邓九公大战钱保有三十回合，钱保岂邓九公对手，被九公回马刀劈于马下，枭首级进城，来见子牙，请令定夺。子牙大悦，记功宴贺。不表。只见败兵报与张山说：“钱保被邓九公枭首级进城去了。”张山闻报大怒。次日，亲临阵前，坐名要邓九公答话。报马报入相府，言：“有将请战，要邓将军答话。”邓九公挺身而出。有女邓婵玉愿随压阵。子牙许之。九公同女出城。张山一见邓九公走马至军前，乃大骂曰：“反贼匹夫！国家有何事亏你，背恩忘义，一旦而事敌国，死有余辜！今不倒戈受缚，尚敢恃强，杀朝廷命官。今日拿匹夫解上朝歌，以正大法。”邓九公曰：“你既为大将，上不知天时，下不谙人事，空生在世，可惜衣冠着体，真乃人中之畜生耳！今纣王贪淫无道，残虐不仁，天下诸侯不归纣而归周，天心人意可见。汝尚欲勉强逆天，是自取辱身之祸，与闻太师等枉送性命耳。可听吾言，下马归周，共伐独夫，拯溺救焚，上顺天心，下酬民愿，自不失封侯之位。若勉强支吾，悔无及矣。”张山大怒，骂曰：“利口匹夫！敢假此无稽之言，惑世诬民，碎尸不足以尽其辜！”摇枪直取。邓九公刀迎面还来。二将相持，一场赌斗。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

轻举擎天手，生死在轮回。往来无定论，叱咤似春雷。  
一个恨不得平吞你脑袋；一个恨不得活砍你颐腮。只杀得一个天昏地暗没三才，那时节方才两下分开。



and after thirty rounds, he was knocked off his horse and beheaded. Deng returned to the city triumphantly with Qian's head in his hand. Jiang Ziya was delighted and held a banquet in his honor. Zhang Shan was furious when he learned of the loss of Qian Bao. He personally appeared on the battlefield the next day, demanding that Deng Jiugong meet him.

Deng Jiugong rushed to the front with his daughter Deng Chanyu. As Deng approached, Zhang Shan swore, "You bastard! What has the king done that you should give yourself up to the enemy? You deserve to die. Why don't you lay down your arms so we can bind you up? How dare you use force to murder a general appointed by the government! I'll take you alive today and drag you to Zhaoge for trial."

"You're living in vain, like a beast in human dress. King Zhou is so lewd and cruel that all the marquises have forsaken him and joined us. Why don't you recognize the will of Heaven and the intention of the people? If you oppose them, you'll merely bring disaster on yourself and throw away your life as Grand Tutor Wen did. Take my advice; join us against the tyrant and save the people from further hardship. You'll certainly have a bright future then. Don't wait until it's too late," Deng Jiugong exhorted him earnestly.

"You eloquent wretch! How dare you! You deserve to be sliced into a thousand pieces," Zhang Shan replied in a great rage.





话说邓九公与张山大战三十回合，邓九公战张山不下，邓婵玉在后阵，见父亲刀法渐乱，打马兜回，发手一石，把张山脸上打伤，几乎坠马，败进大营。邓九公父女掌得胜鼓进城，入相府报功。不表。

话言张山失机进营，脸上着伤，心上甚是急躁，切齿深恨。忽报：“营外有一道人求见。”张山传令：“请来。”只见一道人，头挽双髻，背缚一口宝剑，飘然而至中军，打稽首。张山欠身答礼，尊帐中坐下。道人见张山脸上青肿，问曰：“张将军面上为何着伤？”张山曰：“昨日见阵，偶被女将暗算。”道人忙取药饵敷搽，即时全愈。张山忙问：“老师从何处而来？”道人曰：“吾从蓬莱岛而至。贫道乃羽翼仙也。特为将军来助一臂之力。”张山感谢道人。次日，早至城下，请子牙答话。报马报入相府：“城外有一道人请战。”子牙曰：“原该有三十六路征伐西岐，此来已是三十二路，还有四路未曾来至，我少不得要出去。”忙传令：“排五方队伍。”一声炮响，齐出城来。羽翼仙抬头观看，只见两扇门开，纷纷绕绕，俱是穿红着绿狼虎将，攒攒簇簇，尽是敢勇当先骁骑兵。哪吒对黄天化；金吒对木吒；韦护对雷震子；杨戩与众门人左右排列保护；中军武成王压阵；子牙坐四不相，走出阵前。见对面一道者，生的形容古怪，尖嘴缩腮，头挽双髻，徐徐而来。怎见得，有赞为证：

头挽双髻，体貌轻扬。皂袍麻履，形异寻常。嘴如鹰鸢，眼露凶光。葫芦背上，剑佩身藏。蓬莱怪物，得道无疆。飞腾万里，时歇沧浪。名为金翅，绰号禽王。

话说子牙拱手言曰：“道友请了！”羽翼仙曰：“请了。”子牙



They fought against each other desperately, and after about thirty rounds, Deng Chanyu saw that her father was having difficulties. She threw a stone into Zhang Shan's face, wounding him seriously. Zhang Shan almost fell from his horse but managed to flee back to the Shang camp. Greatly annoyed, he was grinding his teeth in anger when he received the report that a Taoist requested to see him.

The Taoist wore his hair in double coils and carried a sword on his back. When admitted, he bowed and took a seat. He noticed that Zhang Shan's face was swollen and blue. "How was your face so seriously wounded?"

"A female general threw a stone at me yesterday," he replied.

The Taoist took out a pill of elixir, dissolved it in water, and applied the solution to his wound. The pain stopped, and the wound healed over at once.

"Where do you come from, Master?" Zhang Shan asked.

"From Penglai Island. My name is Winged Celestial. I'm here to help you as much as I can."

Zhang Shan expressed his deep appreciation to the immortal. The next morning, Winged Celestial left the camp and went to the city wall, demanding to see Jiang Ziya.

When he learned that it was a Taoist, Jiang Ziya said, "We're to suffer thirty-six invasions, but there have only been thirty-two so far. We have four more to overcome. I'll go out and meet him."

He took his men out in five square formations. Winged Celestial watched as the gates of the city were opened wide and fierce generals rode out at the head of the bold cavalymen. Nezha and Huang Tianhua, Jinzha and Muzha, Wei Hu and Thunderbolt, Yang Jian and the other disciples strode out in pairs. Jiang Ziya rode on his nondescript horse.

From his side, Jiang Ziya saw a strange-looking Taoist with a mouth like the beak of an eagle, eyes shining with fierce light, and hair in double coils. He carried a gourd on his back and a sword at his side. Dressed in a black robe and a pair of hemp shoes, he had two golden wings.

Jiang Ziya greeted him, saying, "May I know your honorable name?"



曰：“道友高姓何名？今日会尚有何事分付？”羽翼仙答曰：“贫道乃蓬莱岛羽翼仙是也。姜子牙，我且问你：你莫非是昆仑门下元始徒弟，你有什么能，对人骂我，欲拔吾翎毛，抽吾筋骨？我与你无涉，你如何这等欺人？”子牙欠身曰：“道友不可错来怪人。我与道友并未曾会过几次，我知道友根底？必有人搬唆，说有甚失礼得罪之处。我与道友未有半面之交，此语从何而来？道友请自三思。”羽翼仙听得此语，低头暗思：“此言大是有理。”乃谓子牙曰：“你话虽有理，只是此语未必无自而来。但说过，你从今百事斟酌，毋得再是如此造次，我与你不得干休。去罢！”子牙方欲勒骑，哪吒听罢大怒：“这泼道焉敢如此放肆，藐视师叔！”登开风火轮，摇枪就刺。羽翼仙笑曰：“元来你仗这些孽障凶顽，敢于欺人！”彻步持剑相交，枪剑并举。黄天化忙催玉麒麟，使双锤，双战道人。雷震子把风雷翅飞起空中，黄金棍往下刷来。土行孙倒拖宾铁棍，来打下三路。杨戩纵马舞三尖刀，前来助战。把羽翼仙围裹垓心。上三路雷震子，中三路哪吒、杨戩、黄天化，下三路土行孙。且说哪吒见羽翼仙了得，先下手祭乾坤圈打来，正中羽翼仙肩甲。道人把眉头一皱，方欲把身逃走，被黄天化回手一攒心钉，把道人右臂打通；又被土行孙把道人腿上打了数下；杨戩复祭哮天犬把羽翼仙夹颈子一口。羽翼仙四下吃亏，大叫一声，借土遁走了。子牙得胜，众门人相随进城。且说羽翼仙吃了许多的亏，把牙一挫，走进营来。张山接住，口称：“老师今日悞中奸计，老师反被他着伤。”道人曰：“不妨，吾不曾防备他，故此着了他的手。”羽翼仙忙将花篮中取出丹药，用水吞下一二粒，即时全愈。羽翼仙



"I'm Winged Celestial from Penglai Island." Winged Celestial replied. He then demanded, "Tell me, Jiang Ziya, why did you curse me publicly, saying that you would pull off my feathers and break my bones? I've nothing to do with you. Why did you insult me!"

"Oh, no! Let there be no misunderstanding. I've never met you before; how could I have offended you? There must be someone sowing discord between us. I beg you sincerely to think it over," Jiang Ziya answered with a bow.

Winged Celestial lowered his head and thought, "There's truth in what he says." He said, "Though what you say is reasonable, I may not have spoken groundlessly either. Forget about it for now, but just be careful what you say in the future. Don't annoy me. You may go now."

Jiang Ziya was about to turn and leave when Nezha roared angrily, "Bloody Taoist! How dare you insult my uncle!"

He raced up on his Wind-Fire Wheels and stabbed at the immortal with his lance.

"So you're the whippersnapper that insulted me!" Winged Celestial laughed.

He met the assault with his sword. Huang Tianhua spurred his jade unicorn forward, Thunderbolt flew up with his gold cudgel, and Earth Traveler Sun struck at the immortal's feet, legs, and thighs with his iron cudgel. Yang Jian joined in with his three-pointed cutlass. Winged Celestial had to defend himself from all directions.

As the celestial fought with extraordinary skill, Nezha quickly took out his Universal Ring and hurled it at him, hitting him in the shoulder. The immortal frowned with pain and turned to run away, but before he could get very far, Huang Tianhua pierced his right arm with a Heart Penetrating Nail, Earth Traveler Sun struck his thighs heavily with his iron cudgel, and Yang Jian's dog bit his neck. Unable to defend himself, Winged Celestial let out a roar and fled away in the dust.

Zhang Shan met Winged Celestial on his return. "You fell into their trap, Master."

"Never mind. It's just that I didn't guard myself well," the immortal answered unconcernedly. He took out some medicine from his flower



谓张山曰：“我念‘慈悲’二字，到不肯伤众生之命；他今日反来伤我，是彼自取杀身之祸。”复对张山曰：“可取些酒来，你我痛饮。至更深时，我叫西岐一郡化为渤海。”张山大喜，忙治酒相款。不表。

却说子牙得胜进府，与诸门人将佐商议。忽一阵风把檐瓦刮下数片来。子牙忙焚香炉中，取金钱在手，占卜吉凶，只见排下卦来，把子牙唬得魂不附体；忙沐浴更衣，望昆仑下拜。拜罢，子牙披发仗剑，移北海之水，救护西岐，把城郭罩住。只见昆仑山玉虚宫元始天尊早知详细，用琉璃瓶中，三光神水，洒向北海水面之上，又命四偈帝神：“把西岐城护定，不可晃动。”正是：

人君福德安天下，元始先差偈帝神。

话说羽翼仙饮至一更时分，命张山收去了酒，出了辕门，现了本像，乃大鹏金翅鹏。张开二翅，飞在空中，把天也遮黑了半边。好利害！有赞为证。赞曰：

二翅遮天云雾迷，空中响亮似春雷，曾掬四海俱见底，  
吃尽龙王海内鱼。只因怒发西岐难，还是明君福德齐。

羽翼根深归正道，至今万载把名题。

只见大鹏鹏飞在空中望下一看，见西岐城是北海水罩住。羽翼仙不觉失声笑曰：“姜尚可谓腐朽，不知我的利害。我欲稍用些须之力，连四海顷刻掬干，岂在此一海之水！”羽翼仙展两翅，用力连掬有七八十掬。——他不知此水有三光神水在上面，越掬越长，不见枯涸。——羽翼仙自一更时分直掬到五更天气，那水差不多涸着大鹏鹏的脚。这一夜将气力用尽，不能成功；不觉大惊，“若再迟延，恐到天明不好看”，



basket, and in a moment was completely healed. "I didn't want to use violence, but they attacked me first. It's their own fault if they lose their lives. Fetch me some wine so we can drink our fill. I'll turn the whole of West Qi City into a great sea late tonight."

Delighted with his plan, Zhang Shan entertained him with plenty of wine. In the city, a sudden gust of wind blew a few tiles off the roof of the prime minister's mansion. Jiang Ziya hurriedly burnt incense and made a divination. He was greatly frightened by the result. He immediately took a bath, dressed in clean clothes, and kowtowed towards Mount Kunlun. Then he spread his hair over his shoulders, and taking his sword, moved the north sea over to cover up West Qi City.

The danger was discovered at the same time by the Heavenly Primogenitor. He splashed the Divine Water of Three Lights from his glazed vase over the north sea and ordered that the four Divine Chanters of Truth protect the city from any quakes.

At about the first watch, Winged Celestial asked Zhang Shan to take away the wine. He then left the camp and resumed his original form as a giant golden-winged roc. He soared into the air on his outstretched wings, plunging half the sky in total darkness. He looked down to see West Qi City completely covered with water from the north sea. He laughed to himself. "How foolish Jiang Ziya is! He doesn't know my power. I can easily fan the water of the four seas dry. What's the use of using water from one sea only?"

He stretched his giant wings and fanned the city eighty times with all his strength, but the more he fanned, the higher the water rose. He did not know that the water could not be dried up because it was covered with the Divine Water of Three Lights. He fanned continuously from the first watch to the fifth watch, but the water showed no sign of disappearing. It only rose higher and higher until it nearly touched his feet.

He was amazed. "I've worked my hardest the whole night through, but I still can't get rid of the water over the city. I shouldn't stay here any longer. At dawn everybody will see what a fool I've made of myself."



自觉惭愧，不好进营来见张山，一怒飞起来，至一座山洞，甚是清奇。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

高峰掩映，怪石嵯峨。奇花瑶草馨香，红杏碧桃艳丽。崖前古树，霜皮溜雨四十围；门外苍松，黛色参天三千尺。双双野鹤，常来洞口舞清风；对对山禽，每向枝头啼白昼。簇簇黄藤如挂索，行行烟柳似垂金。方塘积水，深穴依山。方塘积水，隐千年未变的蛟龙；深穴依山，生万载得道之仙子。果然不亚玄都府，真是神仙出入门。

话说大鹏鹏飞至山洞前，见一道人靠着洞边默坐。羽翼仙寻思：“不若将此道人抓来吃了，以为充饥，再作道理。”大鹏鹏方欲扑来，道人用手一指，大鹏鹏扑蹋的跌将下地来。道人探眉擦目，言曰：“你好没礼！你为何来伤我？”羽翼仙曰：“实不相瞒，我去伐西岐，腹中饿了，借你充饥，不知道友仙术精奇，得罪了！”道人曰：“你腹中饥了，问吾一声，我自然指你去。你如何就来害我？甚是非礼。也罢，我说与你知道：离此二百里，有一山，名为紫云崖，有三山五岳，四海道人，俱在那里赴香斋。你速去，恐迟了不便。”大鹏鹏谢曰：“承教了。”把二翅飞起，霎时而至，即现仙形。只见高高下下，三五一攒，七八一处，都是四海三山道者赴斋。又见一童儿往来捧东西与众道人吃。羽翼仙曰：“道童请了！贫道是来赴斋的。”那童儿听说，“呀”的一声，答曰：“老师来早些方好，如今没有东西了。”羽翼仙曰：“偏我来就没有东西了？”道童答曰：“来早就有，来迟了，东西已尽与众位师父，安能再有？必至明日方可。”羽翼仙曰：“你拣人布施，我



Feeling deeply ashamed, he did not return to see Zhang Shan but flew until he came to a beautiful mountain. High cliffs, strange rocks, fragrant flowers, and apricot and peach trees spread out peacefully before him. Beyond the entrance to a cave stood ancient pine trees beneath which wild cranes danced and chirped. Within the cave lived an immortal who had been cultivating himself for thousands of years. It was a fairyland unknown to the world.

In front of the cave, the giant roc found a Taoist sitting in meditation, his back resting against the cave wall. Winged Celestial was hungry. "I'll eat him up to fill my stomach!" he decided.

He was about to swoop down on his prey when the Taoist pointed at him with his finger, bringing him crashing to the ground. The Taoist rubbed his eyes and demanded, "Why do you want to hurt me?"

"I'll tell you the truth. I've spent the whole night trying to attack West Qi, and I'm feeling rather hungry. I thought I could have you for my meal. I didn't know you had such magic powers. Please forgive me."

"Why didn't you tell me you were hungry and ask me where to get food instead of trying to hurt me? Well, I'll be generous this time. About 200 *li* from here is the Purple Cloud Cliff. Taoists from all the great mountains go there for delicious vegetarian meals. You must leave quickly, or you'll be late."

"Thank you for the information," the giant roc replied.

Winged Celestial soared away on his giant wings, and alighting on the cliff, he resumed the form of an immortal. He saw Taoists there being served by children.

"Greetings, Taoist lad! I've come here for a meal," Winged Celestial said.

"Oh!" the boy cried, "Master, Why didn't you come here earlier? Everything's gone."

"How can the food be finished just as I get here? I can't believe it!" Winged Celestial said with a frown.

"Sorry, but you really are too late. The other masters have eaten up everything. There's nothing left. Will you come again tomorrow morning?"





偏要吃!”二人嚷将起来。只见一位穿黄的道人向前问曰:“你为何事在此争论?”童儿曰:“此位师父来迟了,定要吃斋。那里有了?故此闲讲。”那道人曰:“童儿,你看可有面点心否?”童儿答曰:“点心还有;要斋却没有了。”羽翼仙曰:“就是点心也罢,快取将来。”那童儿忙把点心拿将来,递与羽翼仙。羽翼仙一连吃了七八十个。那童儿曰:“老师可吃了?”羽翼仙曰:“有,还吃得几个。”童儿又取十数个来。羽翼仙共吃了一百零八个。正是:

妙法无边藏秘诀,今番捉住大鹏鹏。

话说羽翼仙吃饱了,谢过斋,复现本像,飞起往西岐来;复从那洞府过,道人还坐在那里,望着大鹏鹏把手一指,大鹏鹏跌将下来,“哎呀”的一声,“跌断肚肠了!”在满地打滚,只叫:“痛杀我也!”不知大鹏鹏性命如何,且听下回分解。



“How dare you offer charity to the selected few? I must have a meal,” Winged Celestial demanded.

As the two quarreled fiercely, a Taoist in yellow came forward. “What are you fighting about here?”

“This master arrived late. We have nothing left to eat, so he began to quarrel with me.”

“Lad, see if we’ve got any cakes left. He may have some cakes instead of a full meal,” the Taoist suggested.

“We do have some cakes, but no more rice or vegetables.”

“I’m really very hungry. I’ll eat anything; cakes will do. Just bring them here,” Winged Celestial interrupted.

The lad hurried off and came back with a large stack of cakes. Winged Celestial quickly devoured about eighty of them.

“Have you had enough, or shall I bring some more?” the lad asked him.

“A few more.”

The lad fetched some more, and he ate them all, bringing his total consumption to 108 cakes. When he was finally full, Winged Celestial thanked the Taoist and the lad for their charity, resumed his original form, and set off for West Qi. On his way back he flew over the cave again and saw the Taoist still sitting there quietly. The Taoist suddenly pointed at him again with his finger.

The roc crashed to the ground crying pitifully. “Oh! The pain’s killing me! My stomach must have split open!”

He rolled about screaming in agony. If you want to know what happened to him, read the next chapter.

## 第六十三回

### 申公豹说反殷郊

诗曰：

公豹存心至不良，纣王两子丧疆场。当初致使殷洪反，今日仍教太岁亡。长舌惹非成个事，巧言招祸作何忙。虽然天意应如此，何必区区话短长！

话说羽翼仙在地下打滚，只叫：“疼杀我也！”这道人起身，徐徐行至面前，问曰：“你方才去吃斋，为何如此？”大鹏答曰：“我吃了些面点心，腹中作疼。”道人曰：“吃不着，吐了罢。”大鹏当真的去吐，不觉一吐而出，有鸡子大，白光光的，连绵不断，就象一条银索子，将大鹏的心肝锁住。大鹏觉得异样，及至扯时，又扯得心疼。大鹏甚是惊骇，知是坏消息，欲待转身，只见这道人把脸一抹，大喝一声：“我把你这孽障！你认得我么？”——这道人乃是灵鹫山元觉洞燃灯道人。——道人骂曰：“你这孽障！姜子牙奉玉虚符命，扶助圣主，戡定祸乱，拯溺救焚，弔民伐罪，你为何反起狼心，连我也要吃？你助恶为虐！”命黄巾力士：“把这孽障吊在大松树上，只等姜子牙伐了纣，那时再放你不迟！”大鹏忙哀诉曰：“老师大发慈悲，赦宥弟子！弟子一时愚昧，被傍人唆使；从今知过，再不敢正眼窥视西岐。”燃灯曰：“你在天皇时得道，如何大运也不知，真假也不识，还听傍人唆使，情真可恨，决难恕饶！”大鹏再三哀告曰：“可怜我千年功夫，望老师





## Chapter 63

### Yin Jiao's Revolt

As Winged Celestial rolled over and over in agony, the Taoist got up from his seat, and walked over slowly. He asked, "Did you get a meal? What's wrong with you now?"

"I ate some cakes but have got a violent stomachache."

"Throw them up if you can't bear the pain."

Winged Celestial vomited but was astonished to find a string of shining white beads the size of eggs trail from his mouth. He tried to pull it out but felt an intense pain in his heart as if the beads were locked tightly around his heart and liver.

He turned to run away, but the Taoist rubbed his face and shouted, "Vile spawn! Can't you see who I am?"

It was Burning Lamp.

"By order of the Jade Emptiness Palace, Jiang Ziya is helping to put an end to the state of chaos so that people may live in peace. How dare you try to harm him!"

"Bind him and hang him up in that pine tree. Don't release him until Jiang Ziya has overthrown the tyrant," Burning Lamp ordered his yellow-scarved genii.

"Master! Show compassion and forgive me! I was deceived, but I can see my error now. I won't trouble West Qi any longer," the roc begged pitifully.

"You became enlightened in the epoch of the Heavenly Emperor, yet you're ignorant of destiny and confuse right and wrong. You cannot be pardoned."

"Have pity on me, Master, as I've cultivated myself for more than 1,000 years."



怜悯！”燃灯曰：“你既肯改邪归正，须当拜我为师，我方可放你。”大鹏连忙极口称道曰：“愿拜老爷为师，修归正果。”燃灯曰：“既然如此，待我放你。”用手一指，那一百零八个念珠还依旧吐出腹中。大鹏遂归燃灯道人，往灵鹫山修行。不表。

话分两头，且说九仙山桃园洞广成子只因犯了杀戒，只在洞中静坐，保摄天和，不理外务。忽有白鹤童子奉玉虚符命，言子牙不日金台拜将，命众门人须至西岐山饯别东征。广成子谢恩，打发白鹤童儿回玉虚去了。道人偶想起殷郊：“如今子牙东征，把殷郊打发他下山，佐子牙东进五关，一则可以见他家之故土，一则可以捉妲己报杀母之深仇。”忙问：“殷郊在那里？”殷郊在殿后听师父呼唤，忙至前殿，见师父行礼。广成子曰：“方今武王东征，天下诸侯相会孟津，共伐无道，正你报仇泄恨之日。我如今着你前去，助周作前队，你可去么？”殷郊听罢，口称“老师”曰：“弟子虽是纣王之子，实与妲己为仇。父王反信奸言，诛妻杀子，母死无辜，此恨时时在心，刻刻挂念，不能有忘。今日老师大舍慈悲，发付弟子，敢不前往，以图报效，真空生于天地间也。”广成子曰：“你且去桃源洞外狮子崖前，寻了兵器来，我传你些道术，你好下山。”殷郊听说，忙出洞往狮子崖来寻兵器。只见白石桥那边有一洞。怎见得，有《西江月》为证：

门依双轮日月，照耀一望山川。珠渊金井暖含烟，更有许多堪羨。叠叠朱楼画阁，凝凝赤壁青田。三春杨柳九秋莲，兀的洞天罕见。

话说殷郊见石桥南岸有一洞府，兽环朱户，俨若王公第宅。殿下自思：“我从不曾到此，——一过桥去，便知端的。”来



"I'll set you free if you acknowledge me as your master."

"Certainly, I will. You're my teacher now," the roc promised sincerely.

"If it be so, I'll set you free."

He pointed at Winged Celestial and the string of beads was released from his belly through his mouth. The two immortals then returned to Mount Divine Hawk together.

But now let's return to Master Grand Completion. He spent all his time in meditation to preserve his natural energy and paid no attention to affairs beyond his Nine Immortal Mountain. One day White Crane Lad arrived from Jade Emptiness Palace with a decree that he go to Mount Qi on the day that Jiang Ziya was to be made commander of the expeditionary forces. Master Grand Completion expressed his thanks and sent White Crane Lad back to Jade Emptiness Palace.

"As Jiang Ziya will march eastward, I'll send Yin Jiao to help him. Yin Jiao will have the opportunity to return to his native land and avenge his mother," he thought, and called out, "Where's Yin Jiao?"

Hearing his name called, Yin Jiao ran to his master, greeted him, and waited for his instructions.

"Before long King Wu will march eastward to join forces with the marquises of the whole kingdom at Mengjin. The time for you to get revenge is near. I intend to send you to Zhou, and you may serve as a general of the vanguard. Will you go?"

"Though my father is King Zhou, Daji is my great enemy. My father loves and trusts her to such an extent that he not only killed his wife but also tried to kill his sons. The hatred I felt at the death of my innocent mother has never left me. As you've decided, I will certainly go. If I didn't, my life would be in vain."

"Go to the Lion Cliff and find yourself a weapon. I'll teach you some techniques when you return."

Yin Jiao hurriedly left the cave for the Lion Cliff, looking for a weapon. Unexpectedly, he discovered a new cave with two round doors at the far end of a white stone bridge. It was like the residence of a prince, with lofty chambers, green meadows, willow trees, and lotus flowers.

"I've never been here before. I'll go and see what it is," Yin Jiao thought.



至洞前，那门虽两扇不推而自开。只见里边有一石几，几上有热气腾腾六七枚豆儿。殷郊拈一个吃了，自觉甘甜香美，非同凡品，“好豆儿，不若一总吃了罢。”刚吃了时，忽然想起：“来寻兵器，如何在此闲玩？”忙出洞来，过了石桥，及至回头，早不见洞府。殿下心疑，不觉浑身骨头响，左边肩头上忽冒出一只手来。殿下着慌，大惊失色。只见右边又是一只。一会儿忽长出三头，六臂，把殷郊只唬得目瞪口呆，半晌无语。只见白云童儿来前叫曰：“师兄，师父有请。”殷郊这一会略觉神思清爽，面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，上下獠牙，多生一目，恍恍荡荡，来至洞前。广成子拍掌笑曰：“奇哉！奇哉！仁君有德，天生异人。”命殷郊进洞，至桃园内，广成子传与方天画戟，言曰：“你先下山，前至西岐，我随后就来。”道人取出番天印、落魂钟、雌雄剑付与殷郊。殷郊即时拜辞下山。广成子曰：“徒弟，你且住。我有一事对你说。吾将此宝尽付与你，须是顺天应人，东进五关，辅周武，兴吊民伐罪之师，不可改了念头，心下狐疑，有犯天谴，那时悔之晚矣。”殷郊曰：“老师之言差矣！周武明德圣君，吾父荒淫昏虐，岂得错认，有辜师训。弟子如改前言，当受犁锄之厄。”道人大喜。殷郊拜别师尊。正是：

殿下实心扶圣主，只恐傍人起祸殃。

话说殷郊离了九仙山，借土遁往西岐前来。正行之间，不觉那遁光飘飘，落在一座高山。怎见得好山，有赞为证，赞曰：

冲天占地，转日生云。冲天处尖峰矗矗，占地处远脉迢迢。转日的，乃岭头松郁郁；生云的，乃崖下石磷磷。



When he reached the cave, the two doors opened automatically to admit him. Inside he saw a stone table with seven steaming hot beans. He picked up one of them and tasted it. It was sweet and fragrant.

"They're delicious. I'll eat them all," Yin Jiao decided. After eating the beans he thought, "I mustn't remain idle. I was sent to look for a weapon here."

He left the cave, crossed the bridge, and turned to look back. To his astonishment the cave had disappeared. His bones began to rattle, and an arm sprouted from his right shoulder. Before long he had three heads and six arms. He was so frightened that he stood there stupefied until White Crane Lad appeared and called to him, "Brother! Master wants you."

When he recovered his senses, he found himself completely transformed. His face had turned indigo, and his hair was red as cinnabar. Tusks protruded from his mouth, and an extra eye had grown in the center of his forehead. He walked unsteadily into his master's cave.

Master Grand Completion clapped his hands in delight and cried, "What a wonder it is! Thanks to the virtue of the kind king, Heaven has blessed us with an extraordinary man." He led Yin Jiao to the peach garden and taught him how to use a halberd. He then said, "Leave now. I'll come soon."

He then took out his Heaven Overturning Stamp, Soul Dropping Bell, and *Yin Yang* Swords and gave them all to Yin Jiao.

Yin Jiao was about to leave when Master Grand Completion stopped him. "My disciple, wait a moment. I've something really important to say to you. I've given you all my magic weapons. You are to help King Wu through the five passes. Never change your mind and oppose the will of Heaven."

"Master! Don't worry about me. King Wu is a saint, and my father is so cruel. How could I forget your instructions and take the wrong path? If I ever break my promise, may I be executed with a hoe," Yin Jiao replied.

Delighted with his answer, his master saw him off. Yin Jiao left the Nine Immortal Mountain and set off for West Qi riding on a dust cloud. On the way, he landed on a high mountain with towering peaks and cliffs covered with pine trees. Monkeys cried in the forests, and serpents and sprites wandered about in the valley streams. Mountain birds flew overhead, while deer





松郁郁，四时八节常青；石磷磷，万年千载不改。林中每听夜猿啼，涧内常见妖蟒过。山禽声咽咽，走兽吼呼呼。山獐山鹿，成双作对纷纷走；山鸦山雀，打阵攒群密密飞。山草山花看不尽，山桃山果应时新。虽然崎险不堪行，却是神仙来往处。

话说殷郊才看山巅险峻之处，只听得林内一声锣响，见一人面如蓝靛，发似硃砂，骑红砂马，金甲红袍，三只眼，拎两根狼牙棒，那马如飞奔上山来，见殷郊三头六臂，也是三只眼，大呼曰：“三首者乃是何人，敢来我山前探望？”殷郊答曰：“吾非别人，乃纣王太子殷郊是也。”那人忙下马，拜伏在地，口称：“千岁为何往此白龙山上过？”殷郊曰：“吾奉师命，往西岐去见姜子牙。”话未曾了，又一人带扇云盔，淡黄袍，点钢枪，白龙马，面如傅粉，三绺长髯，也奔上山来，大呼曰：“此是何人？”蓝脸的道：“快来见殷千岁。”那人也是三只眼，滚鞍下马，拜伏在地。二人同曰：“且请千岁上山，至寨中相见。”三人步行至山寨，进了中堂。二人将殷郊扶在正中交椅上，纳头便拜。殷郊忙扶起，问曰：“二位高姓大名？”那蓝脸的应曰：“末将姓温，名良；那白脸的姓马，名善。”殷郊曰：“吾看二位一表非俗，俱负英雄之志，何不同吾往西岐立功，助武王伐纣？”二人曰：“千岁为何反助周灭纣者何也？”殷郊答曰：“商家气数已尽，周家王气正盛，况吾父得十罪于天下，今天下诸侯应天顺人，以有道伐无道，以无德让有德，此理之常，岂吾家故业哉。”温良、马善曰：“千岁兴言及此，真以天地父母为心，乃丈夫之所为，如千岁者鲜矣。”温良与马善整酒庆喜。殷郊一面分付喽罗改作



and foxes ran about. Flowers and fruit grew everywhere.

As he looked about, he heard the beating of gongs in the forest. A man with an indigo face, cinnabar hair, and three eyes galloped up the mountain toward him, wielding two wolf tooth clubs. He was dressed in red covered with gold chain mail. When he saw Yin Jiao with his three heads, six arms, and three eyes, the man yelled, "Who's that three-headed guy? How dare you spy on us?"

"I'm Yin Jiao, the crown prince."

The man hastily got down from his horse, knelt on the ground, and asked, "Where are you going, Your Highness?"

"By order of my master, I'm on my way to West Qi to see Jiang Ziya."

As they talked, another man appeared. He wore a driving-the-clouds helmet and a pale yellow robe. Riding on a white dragon-horse and carrying sharp lance, he had a white face and an extra eye in his forehead. He galloped speedily up the mountain. "Who is that man?" he asked.

"Come here and meet His Highness Prince Yin Jiao," the man with the indigo face said.

The white-faced man dismounted, knelt on the ground and said, "Your Highness, please come with us to our camp."

They guided Yin Jiao to the camp and helped him to a seat. The two men then knelt and kowtowed before him again. Yin Jiao hurriedly helped them up and said, "Would you tell me your names?"

The indigo-faced man replied, "My name's Wen Liang and he's Ma Shan."

"You both look brave. Will you two come with me to West Qi to help King Wu?"

"Why do you want to help him, Your Highness?" they asked.

"The Shang Dynasty is doomed to end soon, and the Zhou's fortunes are rising. My father has committed ten great crimes. The marquises of the kingdom will replace him with a virtuous ruler. The reason is quite simple: The kingdom can't remain in my family's hands forever."

"You're right, Your Highness," Wen Liang and Ma Shan said.

At the end of their feast, the outlaws were reorganized as the Zhou army. They burned their tents, left the White Dragon Mountain, and hur-



周兵，放火烧了寨栅，随即起兵。殷郊三人同上了马，离了白龙山，往大路进发，径奔西岐而来。正是：

殷郊有意归周主，只怕苍天不可从。

殷郊正行，喽罗报：“启千岁：有一道人骑虎而来，要见千岁。”殷郊闻报，忙分付左右旗门官，令：“安下人马，请来相见。”道人下虎进帐。殷郊忙迎将下来打躬，口称：“老师从何而来？”道人曰：“吾乃昆仑门下申公豹是也。殿下往那里去？”殷郊曰：“吾奉师命，往西岐投拜姬周，姜师叔不久拜将，助他伐纣。”道人笑曰：“我问你，纣王是你甚么人？”殷郊答曰：“是吾父王。”道人曰：“恰又来！世间那有子助外人而伐父之理！此乃乱伦忤逆之说。你父不久龙归沧海，你原是东宫，自当接成汤之胤，位九五之尊，承帝王之统，岂有反助他人，灭自己社稷，毁自己宗庙，此亘古所未闻者也。且你异日，百年之后，将何面目见成汤诸君于在天之灵哉！我见你身藏奇宝，可安天下，形象可定乾坤，当从吾言，可保自己天下，以诛无道周武，是为长策。”殷郊答曰：“老师之言虽是，奈天数已定，吾父无道，天命人心已离，周主当兴，吾何敢逆天哉！况姜子牙有将相之才，仁德数布于天下，诸侯无不响应。我老师曾分付我下山助姜师叔东进五关，吾何敢有背师言，此事断难从命。”申公豹暗想：“此言犯不动他，也罢，再犯他一场，看他如何。”申公豹又曰：“殷殿下，你言姜尚有德，他的德在那里？”殷郊曰：“姜子牙为人公平正直，礼贤下士，仁义慈祥，乃良心君子，道德丈夫，天下服从，何得小视他。”申公豹曰：“殿下有所不知。吾闻有德不灭人之彝伦，不戕人之天性，不妄杀无辜，不矜



ried on their way to West Qi. One day it was reported to Yin Jiao that “A Taoist on a tiger is here to see you.” Yin Jiao ordered the army to halt and admitted the Taoist. As the Taoist got down from his tiger, Yin Jiao hurried forward to meet him.

“Where do you come from, Master?”

“I’m Shen Gongbao, a disciple from Mount Kunlun. Where are you going, Your Highness?”

“By order of my master, I’m going to West Qi. Uncle Jiang Ziya’s going to march on King Zhou, and we’re going there to help him,” Yin Jiao replied.

“May I ask Your Highness your relationship to King Zhou?”

“He’s my father, of course.”

“How funny it is! What son would assist his enemy to attack his own father? How unfilial you are. If your father died, you would succeed him to the throne. How can you overthrow your own dynasty and help your enemy found a new one? How will you be able to face your ancestors after your death. In my opinion, you can bring peace to the kingdom with your talent and your magic weapons.”

“You may be right, but it’s destined by Heaven. My father ought to give up the throne. I cannot betray my master. I’m sorry that I cannot accept your advice.”

“I can’t move him with this approach. Better try a different angle,” Shen Gongbao thought. He spoke again, “Your Highness! You were talking about Jiang Ziya’s virtue. What do you mean?”

“He’s fair and just. He respects the good and is liked by all.”

“You’re naive, Your Highness. A virtuous man will not destroy families or put the innocent to death and then brag about it. Your father opposes the will of the people, but what about your brother? Don’t you



功自伐。殿下之父亲固得罪于天下，可与为仇；殿下之胞弟殷洪，闻说他也下山助周，岂意他欲邀己功，竟将殿下亲弟用太极图化成飞灰，此还是有德之人做的事，无德之人做的事？今殿下忘手足而事仇敌，吾为殿下不取也。”殷郊闻言大惊曰：“老师，此事可真？”道人曰：“天下尽知，难道吾有诳语。实对你说，如今张山现在西岐住割人马，你只问他。如果殷洪无此事，你再进西岐不迟；如有此事，你当为弟报仇。我今与你再请一高人，来助你一臂之力。”申公豹跨虎而去。殷郊甚是疑惑，只得把人马催动，径往西岐。殷郊一路上沉吟思想：“吾弟与天下无仇，如何将他如此处治，必无此事。若是姜子牙将吾弟果然如此，我与姜尚誓不两立，必定为弟报仇，再图别议。”人马在路，非止一日，来至西岐，果然有一枝人马打商汤旗号在此住割。殷郊令温良前去营里去问：“果是张山否？”话说张山自羽翼仙当晚去后，两日不见回来；差人打探，不得实信。正纳闷间，忽军政官来报：“营外有一大将，口称‘请元帅接千岁大驾’，不知何故，请元帅定夺。”张山闻报，不知其故，沉思：“殿下久已身亡，此处是那里来的？”忙传令：“令来。”军政官出营对来将曰：“元帅令将军相见。”温良进营来见张山，打躬。张山问曰：“将军自何处而来？有何见谕？”温良答曰：“吾奉殷郊千岁令旨，令将军相见。”张山对李锦曰：“殿下久已身亡，如何此处反有殿下？”李锦在傍曰：“只恐是真。元戎可往相见，看其真伪，再做区处。”张山从其言，同李锦出营，来至军前。温良先进营回话，对殷郊曰：“张山到了。”殷郊曰：“令来。”张山进营，见殷郊三首六臂，相貌凶恶；左右立温



know what happened to him? He was also sent down to help King Wu, but Jiang Ziya was jealous of him and reduced him to ashes on the magic map. Would a virtuous man do that? I don't believe that you've no feeling for your brother and would offer your service to his murderer."

"Is that true?" Yin Jiao asked in surprise.

"It's known to all. I wouldn't tell a lie. General Zhang Shan is now fighting West Qi, so you can ask him. It won't be too late to join West Qi if what I say proves false. I'll ask a highly talented man to go and help you."

Shen Gongbao got on his tiger and left, and Yin Jiao continued on to West Qi. "My younger brother had no enmity towards anybody in the country. I don't think Jiang Ziya could have done anything like that," he thought. "Nevertheless, if it be true, I swear that either I or Jiang Ziya must die."

He got to West Qi several days later and found another army flying the Shang flags just as Shen Gongbao had said. Yin Jiao sent his men to confirm that it was under the command of Zhang Shan. Winged Celestial had been gone for two days, and with no news of him, Zhang Shan was very worried. Then a report came in that a general demanded that "Zhang Shan come out and meet His Highness."

Zhang Shan was puzzled. "His Highness, the prince, has recently died. Where does this prince come from?"

He admitted the messenger. Wen Liang came in, bowed, and offered greetings. Zhang Shan asked, "Where do you come from? What do you wish to tell me, General?"

"By order of His Highness, Yin Jiao, I'm here to command you to go and meet him in his tent."

Zhang Shan was still puzzled. He said to Li Jin, "The princes were lost long ago. How can there be another prince here?"

"It may be another true prince. You'd better go and see whether he's real or not," Li Jin replied.

Zhang Shan accepted his advice and left to see Yin Jiao. Wen Liang entered the tent and reported, "Your Highness, General Zhang Shan has arrived."

"Send him in."

Entering the tent, Zhang Shan was terrified by Yin Jiao with his three heads and six arms. On his left and right stood Wen Liang and Ma Shan. All had three eyes.



良、马善，都是三只眼。张山问曰：“启殿下：是成汤那枝宗派？”殷郊曰：“吾乃当今长殿下殷郊是也。”因将前事诉说一番。张山闻言，不觉大悦，忙行礼，口称：“千岁。”殷郊曰：“你可知道二殿下殷洪的事？”张山答曰：“二千岁因伐西岐，被姜尚用太极图化作飞灰多日矣。”殷郊听罢，大叫一声，昏倒在地。众人扶起。放声大哭曰：“兄弟果死于恶人之手！”跃身而起，将令箭一枝折为两段，曰：“若不杀姜尚，誓与此箭相同！”次日，殷郊亲自出马，坐名只要姜尚出来。报马报入城中，进相府报曰：“城外有殷郊殿下请丞相答话。”子牙传令：“军士排队伍出城。”炮声响处，西岐门开，一对对英雄似虎，一双双战马如飞，左右列各洞门人。子牙见对营门一人，三首六臂，青面獠牙；左右二骑乃温良、马善，各持兵器。哪吒暗笑：“三人九只眼，多了个半人！”殷郊走马至军前，叫：“姜尚出来见我！”子牙向前曰：“来者何人？”殷郊大喝曰：“吾乃长殿下殷郊是也！你将吾弟殷洪用太极图化作飞灰，此恨如何消歇！”子牙不知其中缘故，应声曰：“彼自取死，与我何干。”殷郊听罢，大叫一声，几乎气绝，大怒曰：“好匹夫！尚说与你无干！”纵马摇戟来取。傍有哪吒登开风火轮，将火尖枪直取殷郊。轮马相交，未及数合，被殷郊一番天印把哪吒打下风火轮来。黄天化见哪吒失机，催开了玉麒麟，使两柄银锤，敌住了殷郊。子牙左右救回哪吒。黄天化不知殷郊有落魄钟。殷郊摇动了钟；黄天化坐不住鞍鞞，跌将下来。张山走马将黄天化拿了。及至上了绳索，黄天化方知被捉。黄飞虎见子被擒，催开五色神牛来战。殷郊



“Your Highness! May I know which prince you are?” Zhang Shan inquired.

“I’m Yin Jiao, the crown prince.”

When Yin Jiao told him all that had happened to him, Zhang Shan was greatly delighted. He moved forward, kowtowed, and greeted him respectfully.

“Do you know anything about Yin Hong, my brother?” Yin Jiao asked excitedly.

“He fought West Qi but was turned to ashes in the Map of the Eight Diagrams.”

Yin Jiao roared like thunder and fell to the ground in a faint. As soon as he came to, he jumped up and cried, “He was so innocent! I swear to avenge him. I’ll die if I don’t kill Jiang Ziya.”

The next morning, he rode out to the front demanding Jiang Ziya. When the city gates were opened, Jiang Ziya galloped out under the protection of his brave generals and gallant disciples. He saw a man with three heads, six arms, an indigo face, and a mouth full of tusks, attended by Wen Liang on the left and Ma Shan on the right.

Nezha laughed at the strange sight. “It’s extravagant for three men to have nine eyes; that would be enough for four and a half people ordinarily.”

“Jiang Ziya, come forward to see me at once,” Yin Jiao roared as he spurred his horse toward him.

“Who are you?”

“I’m the crown prince Yin Jiao. Why did you put Yin Hong to death so cruelly? I must take revenge!”

Jiang Ziya did not realize what lay behind this. He answered promptly, “He brought about his own death. It had nothing to do with me at all.”

Yin Jiao was furious. “You wretch! Dare you still say it had nothing to do with you?”

He spurred his horse forward and struck at Jiang Ziya, but was met by Nezha. After just a few rounds, Nezha was knocked off his wheels by the Heaven Overturning Stamp.

When he saw that Nezha was in trouble, Huang Tianhua galloped up and engaged Yin Jiao. Other generals took the chance to rescue Nezha. But before long, Yin Jiao shook his Soul Dropping Bell and knocked Huang Tianhua from his saddle. He was immediately seized by Zhang Shan. When Huang Tianhua came to, he found himself bound with ropes.





也不答话，枪戟并举；又战数合，摇动落魂钟，黄飞虎也撞下神牛，早被马善、温良捉去。杨戩在傍见殷郊祭番天印、摇落魂钟，恐伤了子牙，不当稳便，忙鸣金收回队伍。子牙忙令军士进城，坐在殿上纳闷。杨戩上殿奏曰：“师叔，如今又是一场古怪事出来！”子牙曰：“有甚古怪？”杨戩曰：“弟子看殷郊打哪吒的是番天印；此宝乃广成子师伯的，如何反把于殷郊？”子牙曰：“难道广成子使他来伐我？”杨戩曰：“殷洪之故事，师叔独忘之乎？”子牙方悟。

且说殷郊将黄家父子拿至中军。黄飞虎细观不是殷郊。殷郊问曰：“你何人？”黄飞虎曰：“吾乃武成王黄飞虎是也。”殷郊曰：“西岐也有武成王黄飞虎？”张山在傍坐，欠身答曰：“此就是天子殿前黄飞虎；他反了五关，投归周武，为此叛逆，惹下刀兵；今已被擒，正所谓‘天网恢恢，疏而不漏’，是彼自取死耳。”殷郊闻言，忙下帐来，亲解其索，口称：“恩人，昔日若非将军，焉能保其今日。”忙问飞虎曰：“此人是谁？”黄飞虎答曰：“此吾长子黄天化。”殷郊急传令也放了；因对飞虎曰：“昔日将军救吾兄弟二人；今日我放你父子，以报前德。”黄飞虎感谢毕，因问曰：“千岁当时风刮去，却在何处？”殷郊不肯说出根本，恐泄了机密，乃朦胧应曰：“当日乃海岛仙家救我，在山学业；今特下山，来报吾弟之仇。今日吾已报过将军大德；倘后见战，幸为回避。如再被擒，必正国法。”黄家父子告辞出营，至城下叫门。把门军官见是黄家父子，忙开城门放入。父子进相府来见子牙，尽言其事。子牙大喜。次日，探马来报：“有将请战。”



Seeing that his son had been taken, Huang Feihu urged his divine ox forward. Yin Jiao did not utter a word but shook the bell, and Huang Feihu fell and was taken by Wen Liang and Ma Shan.

Yang Jian recognized the stamp and the bell. He feared for Jiang Ziya's safety and ordered the signal to retreat. Back in the city, Yang Jian told Jiang Ziya, "Uncle! Something strange has happened."

"What's that?"

"I saw clearly that he was using Heaven Overturning Stamp. I wonder how he came by it."

"How could Master Grand Completion possibly set Yin Jiao on us?" Jiang Ziya said doubtfully.

"Don't you remember the old story of Yin Hong?"

When Huang Feihu was brought before Yin Jiao, Huang Feihu did not recognize him because of his new appearance. But neither could Yin Jiao recognize him as they had been separated for a long time. So Yin Jiao asked, "Who are you?"

"I'm Prince Huang Feihu."

"Another Prince Huang Feihu here in West Qi!" Yin Jiao wondered aloud.

"It's the same Huang Feihu. He rebelled and broke through the five passes and gave himself up to Zhou. Because of him the war has been raging for years. As the proverb says, 'Though the mesh of the net of Heaven is immense, no fish can slip through.' He must die. It's entirely his own fault," Zhang Shan said.

But Yin Jiao immediately got up and untied Huang Feihu. "My great benefactor! I wouldn't be here now if you hadn't rescued me that day!" He asked, "Who's that other man?"

"He's Huang Tianhua, my eldest son."

"Set him free too," Yin Jiao ordered. He then went on, "I'm deeply grateful to you. I'll set you both free in return for your kindness."

"Where have you been since you were blown away by the wind?" Huang Feihu asked.

Yin Jiao was afraid of revealing his secret and was unwilling to tell him the truth. He answered vaguely, "I was rescued by an immortal from an island. He kept me there to study the Way, but I left to avenge my brother. I'll return your kindness this once, but be very careful next time. If you're taken again, you'll die."

Back at the prime minister's mansion, Huang Feihu and Huang Tianhua told the whole story to Jiang Ziya.



子牙问：“谁人去走一遭？”傍有邓九公愿往。子牙许之。邓九公领令出府，上马提刀，开放城门；见一将白马长枪，穿淡黄袍。怎见得：

戴一顶扇云冠，光芒四射；黄花袍，紫气盘旋；银叶甲，辉煌灿烂；三股绦，身后交加；白龙马追风赶日；杵臼枪大蟒顽蛇。修行在仙山洞府，成道行有正无邪。

话说邓九公大呼曰：“来者何人？”马善曰：“吾乃大将马善是也。”邓九公也不通姓名，纵马舞刀，飞来直取。马善枪劈面相迎。两马往还，战有十二三回合，邓九公刀法如神，马善敌不住，被邓九公闪一刀逼开了马善的枪，抓住腰间绦袍，拎过鞍鞦，往下一摔，生擒进城，至相府来见子牙。子牙问曰：“将军胜负如何？”九公曰：“擒了一将，名唤马善；令在府前，候丞相将令。”子牙命：“推来。”少时，将马善推至殿前。那人全不畏惧，立而不跪。子牙曰：“既已被擒，何不屈膝？”马善大笑，骂曰：“老匹夫！你乃叛国逆贼。吾既被擒，要杀就杀，何必多言！”子牙大怒，令：“推出府斩讫报来！”南宫适为监斩官，推至府前，只见行刑箭出，南宫适手起一刀，犹如削菜一般。正是：

钢刀随过随时长，如同切水一般同。

南宫适看见大惊，忙进相府回令曰：“启丞相：异事非常！”子牙问曰：“有甚话说？”南宫适曰：“奉令将马善连斩三刀，这边过刀，那边长完，不知有何幻术，请丞相定夺。”子牙听报大惊，忙同诸将出府来，亲见动手，也是一般。傍有韦护祭起降魔杵打将下来，正中马善顶门，只打的一派金光，就地散开。韦护收回杵，还有人形。众门人大惊，只叫：“古怪！”子牙无计可施，命众门人：“借三昧真火烧这妖物！”傍有哪



The next morning it was reported that "A general is outside the city challenging us." Jiang Ziya permitted Deng Jiugong to answer the challenge. Outside the city, Deng Jiugong saw a general on a white horse holding a long lance. He was wearing yellow robe and a driving-the-clouds helmet. "Who are you?" he asked.

"I'm Ma Shan."

Deng Jiugong did not say his own name but quickly lunged at Ma Shan. Ma Shan returned the attack with his lance. After ten rounds, Ma Shan proved no match for Deng Jiugong and was taken captive. He was bound up and carried to the prime minister's mansion. When he was brought before Jiang Ziya, Ma Shan remained on his feet, refusing to kneel.

"Why don't you kneel before me?" Jiang Ziya demanded.

"You old bastard! Just put me to death as you please. Why waste words?" Ma Shan replied, roaring with laughter.

In great anger, Jiang Ziya ordered Nangong Kuo to behead him. Outside the prime minister's mansion, Nangong Kuo lifted his cutlass and slashed through Ma Shan's neck, but to his astonishment, the neck remained undamaged as if he had cut through water. He hurried back into the prime minister's mansion and reported to Jiang Ziya, "I used my cutlass to behead Ma Shan three times, but as the blade passed through, the cut closed up instantly. I don't know what kind of sorcery this is."

Alarmed at the news, Jiang Ziya and his disciples went out to see for themselves, but they had the same experience as Nangong Kuo. Then Wei Hu threw up his Monster Subduing Club, hitting Ma Shan so hard on the top of his head that rays of golden light shot forth. When Wei Hu retrieved his club, Ma Shan was unhurt.

At his wit's end, Jiang Ziya ordered his disciples to burn Ma Shan with the true samadhi fire from their breasts. When Nezha, Jinzha, Muzha, Thunderbolt, Huang Tianhua, and Wei Hu directed their true samadhi fire



吒、金木二吒、雷震子、黄天化、韦护，运动三昧真火焚之。马善乘火光一起，大笑曰：“吾去也！”杨戩看见火光中走了马善。子牙心下不乐。各回府中，商议不题。且言马善走回营来见殷郊，尽言擒去，怎样斩他，怎样放火焚他，“未将借火光而回。”殷郊闻言大喜。子牙在府中沉思。只见杨戩上殿，对子牙曰：“弟子往九仙山探听虚实，看是如何。二则再往终南山，见云中子师叔，去借照妖鉴来，看马善是甚么东西，方可治之。”子牙许之。杨戩离了西岐，借土遁径往九仙山来；不一时，顷刻已至桃园洞，来见广成子。杨戩行礼，口称：“师叔。”广成子曰：“前日令殷郊下山，到西岐同子牙伐纣，好三首六臂么？候拜将日，再来嘱他。”杨戩曰：“如今殷郊不伐朝歌，反伐西岐，把师叔的番天印打伤了哪吒诸人，横行狂暴。弟子奉子牙之命，特来探其虚实。”广成子闻言，大叫：“这畜生有背师言，定遭不测之祸！但吾把洞内宝珍尽付与他，谁知今日之变。”叫杨戩：“你且先回，我随后就来。”杨戩离了九仙山，径往终南山来，须臾而至；进洞府，见云中子行礼，口称：“师叔，今西岐来了一人，名曰马善，诛斩不得，水火亦不能伤他，不知何物作怪，特借老师照妖鉴一用；俟除此妖邪，即当奉上。”云中子听说，即将宝鉴付与杨戩。杨戩离了终南山，往西岐来，至相府，参谒子牙。子牙问曰：“杨戩，你往九仙山见广成子，此事如何？”杨戩把上项事情一一诉说一遍；又将取照妖鉴来的事亦说了一遍。令：“明日可会马善。”次日，杨戩上马提刀，来营前请战，坐名只要马善出来。探马报入中军。殷郊命马善出营。马善至军前。杨戩暗取宝鉴照之，乃



upon him, Ma Shan rose up in the flames, roaring with laughter. "I'm going away now. So long, fellows," he cried.

Yang Jian saw Ma Shan escape on the flames and told Jiang Ziya, who was very displeased. Yin Jiao was happy to see Ma Shan back. The latter told him the whole story of his escape. In the prime minister's mansion, Yang Jian suggested, "Uncle! I'll go to the Nine Immortal Mountain and find out about Yin Jiao. I'll then go to Mount Zhongnan to ask Master of the Clouds for his Demon Exposing Mirror. We can then find out what Ma Shan really is, and we'll know how to deal with him."

With Jiang's approval, Yang Jian left West Qi. In a short while, he reached the Peach Spring Cave and was admitted.

"How are you, Uncle?" Yang Jian greeted him.

"I sent Yin Jiao to help Jiang Ziya. How is he doing with his three heads and six arms? I'll see him there when Jiang Ziya is appointed commander."

"Yin Jiao hasn't done as you instructed. He's attacking West Qi instead of Zhaoge. Your Heaven Overturning Stamp has injured Nezha and many others. By order of Jiang Ziya, I'm here to find out the truth of the situation."

"That beast! He shall be punished. I never expected that things would turn out like this! What shall I do? I've given him all my magic weapons," Master Grand Completion cried. He told Yang Jian, "You return first. I'll be there soon."

Leaving the Nine Immortal Mountain, Yang Jian rushed directly to Mount Zhongnan and entered the cave. He bowed to Master of the Clouds. "Uncle," he said, "A man named Ma Shan has come to West Qi. Swords cannot kill him, and neither water nor fire can hurt him. We don't know what kind of demon he is. I've been sent here for your Demon Exposing Mirror. We'll return it as soon as the matter's settled."

When Master of the Clouds gave him the mirror, Yang Jian hurriedly left Mount Zhongnan and returned to West Qi. He reported to Jiang Ziya what Master Grand Completion had told him and showed him the magic mirror.

The next day, Yang Jian mounted his horse, took up his cutlass, and galloped to the Shang camp, demanding Ma Shan. On Yin Jiao's orders,



是一点灯头儿在里面晃。杨戩收了宝鉴，纵马舞刀，直取马善。二马相交，刀枪并举。战有二三十回合，杨戩拨马就走。马善不赶，回营来见殷郊回话：“与杨戩交战，那厮败走，末将不去赶他。”殷郊曰：“知己知彼，此是兵家要诀。此行是也。”

且言杨戩回营进府来。子牙问曰：“马善乃何物作怪？”杨戩答曰：“弟子照马善，乃是一点灯头儿，不知详细。”傍有韦护曰：“世间有三处，有三盏灯：玄都洞八景宫有一盏灯；玉虚宫有一盏灯；灵鹫山有一盏灯。莫非就是此灯作怪？杨道兄可往三处一看，便知端的。”杨戩欣然欲往。子牙许之。杨戩离了西岐，先往玉虚宫而来；驾着土遁而走。正是：

风声响处行千里，一饭功夫至玉虚。

话说杨戩自不曾至昆仑山，今见景致非常，只得玩赏。怎见得：

珍楼玉阁，上界昆仑。谷虚繁地籁，境寂散天香。青松带雨遮高阁，翠竹依稀两道傍。霞光缥缈，彩色飘飘。朱栏碧槛，画栋雕檐。谈经香满座，静闭月当窗。鸟鸣丹树内，鹤饮石泉傍。四时不谢奇花草，金殿门开射赤光。楼台隐现祥云里，玉磬金钟声韵长。珠帘半卷，炉内烟香。讲动“黄庭”方入圣，万仙总领镇东方。

话说杨戩至麒麟崖，看罢昆仑景致，不敢擅入，立于宫外，等候多时；只见白鹤童子出宫来，杨戩上前施礼，口称：“师兄，弟子杨戩借问老爷面前琉璃灯可曾点着？”白鹤童儿答曰：“点着哩。”杨戩自思：“此处点着，想不是这里，且往灵



Ma Shan led an army to the front, ready to do battle with Yang Jian. When Ma Shan approached, Yang Jian looked at him in his mirror and saw only a lamp wick trembling within. He slipped the mirror into his pocket and urged his horse forward to do battle. After about twenty rounds, Yang Jian gave up ground, turned his horse, and ran away. Ma Shan did not pursue him but returned to the Shang camp and told Yin Jiao that “Yang Jian was defeated. He ran away, but I didn’t pursue him.”

“Military theory stresses the importance of knowing both oneself and one’s enemy. You’ve done the right thing,” Yin Jiao said, satisfied with his general’s performance.

On Yang Jian’s return, Jiang Ziya asked anxiously, “What about Ma Shan? What kind of demon is he really?”

“The mirror shows that he’s a piece of lamp wick.”

“As far as I know, there are three magic lamps in the world. There’s one in the Eight Landscape Palace on Mount Xuandu, one in the Jade Emptiness Palace, and a third on Mount Divine Hawk. He may be one of them. Brother, you’ll find out for certain if you go to these three places,” Wei Hu suggested.

With the approval of Jiang Ziya, Yang Jian left immediately for the Jade Emptiness Palace. He had never been to Mount Kunlun before and spent quite a long time enjoying the scenery. He saw mansions built among verdant pine trees at the end of paths bordered with blue bamboos. Cranes were drinking at clear, bubbling springs, and exotic birds darted to and fro among red maples. Auspicious light hung over the gold court and lofty towers rose from behind colored clouds.

Yang Jian waited a long time at the Unicorn Cliff before he saw White Crane Lad. He moved forward, bowed, and asked, “Brother! May I know whether the glazed lamp before Grand Master is burning or not?”

“Yes, it is,” White Crane Lad replied promptly.





鹞山去。”彼时离了玉虚，径往灵鹞山来。好快！正是：

架雾腾云仙体轻，玄门须仗五行行。周游寰宇须臾至，  
才离昆仑又玉京。

杨戩进元觉洞，倒身下拜，口称：“老师，弟子杨戩拜见。”燃灯问曰：“你来做甚么？”杨戩答曰：“老爷面前的琉璃灯灭了。”道人抬头看见灯灭了，“呀”的一声，“这孽障走了！”杨戩把上件事说了一遍。燃灯曰：“你先去，我随即就来。”杨戩别了燃灯，借土遁径归西岐，至相府，来见子牙，将至玉虚见燃灯事说了一遍：“……燃灯老师随后就来。”子牙大喜。正言之间，门官报：“广成子至。”子牙迎接至殿前。广成子对子牙谢罪曰：“贫道不知有此大变，岂意殷郊反了念头，吾之罪也。待吾出去，招他来见。”广成子随即出城，至营前大呼曰：“传与殷郊，快来见我！”不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



"I'd better go on to Mount Divine Hawk now," Yang Jian thought to himself.

He left without delay for his second destination. He knelt on the ground and kowtowed before Burning Lamp, who asked, "What brings you here?"

"The lamp before you is out, Uncle," Yang Jian said.

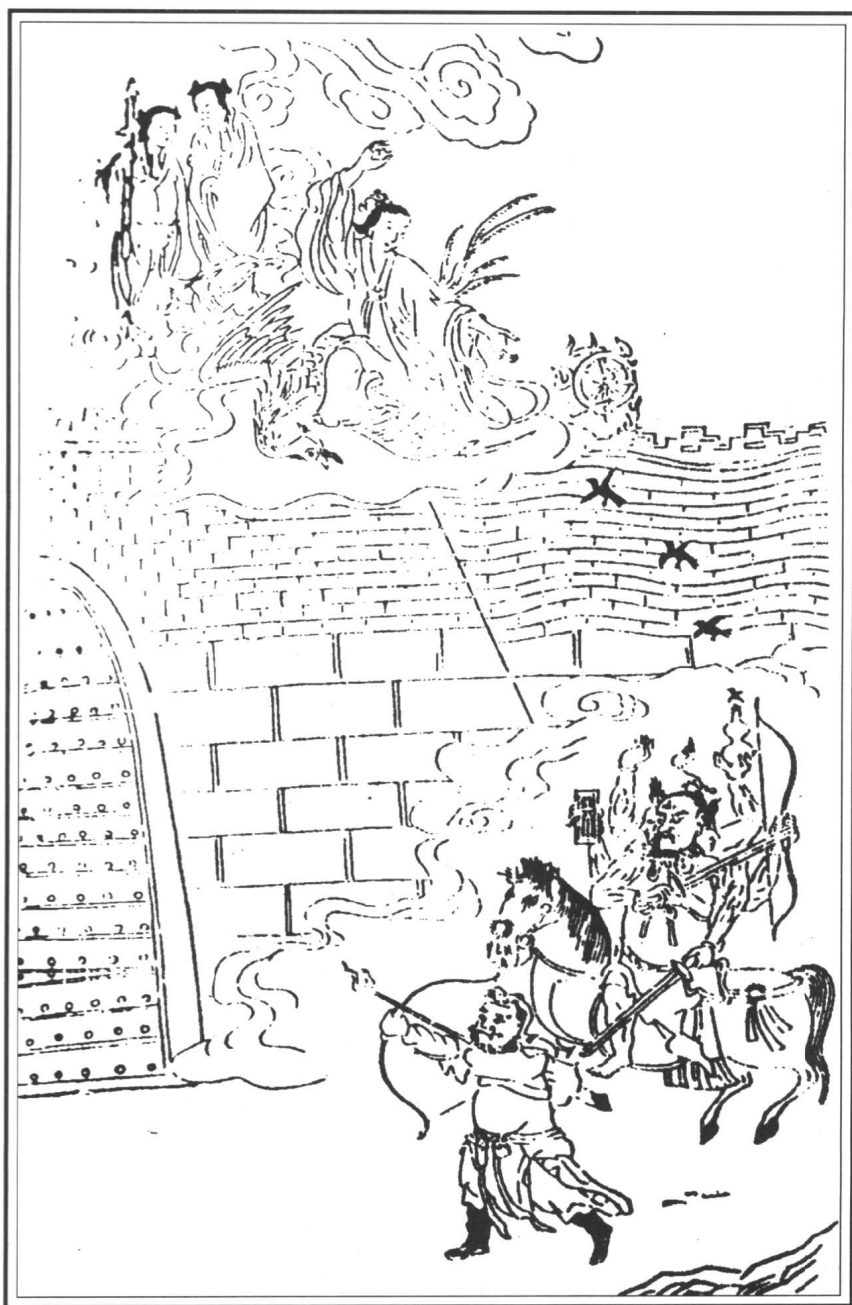
Burning Lamp gave a cry of alarm when he saw his glazed lamp no longer burning. "The little devil has gone!"

When Yang Jian told him all that had happened, the immortal said, "Yang Jian, you go back first. I'll be there right away."

Back in West Qi, Yang Jian told Jiang Ziya that Burning Lamp would arrive shortly. Just then, Master Grand Completion arrived, and Jiang Ziya went out to meet him at the gate. Master Grand Completion apologized, saying, "It's certainly my fault. I never thought that Yin Jiao would rebel. I'll meet him and tell him to come back here with me." He went to the Shang camp and shouted, "Tell Yin Jiao to come out and see me at once."

What happened next? Please read the next chapter.





## 第六十四回

### 罗宣火焚西岐城

诗曰：

离宫原是火之精，配合干支在丙丁。烈石焚山情更恶，流金烁海势偏横。在天列曜人君畏，入地藏形万姓惊。不是罗宣能作难，只因西土降仙卿。

话说探马报入中军：“启千岁：有一道人请千岁答话。”殷郊暗想：“莫不是吾师来此？”随即出营，果然是广成子。殷郊在马上欠身言曰：“老师，弟子甲冑在身，不敢叩见。”广成子见殷郊身穿王服，大喝曰：“畜生！不记得山前是怎样话！你今日为何改了念头？”殷郊泣诉曰：“老师在上，听弟子所陈：弟子领命下山，又收了温良、马善；中途遇着申公豹，说弟子保纣伐周，弟子岂肯有负师言。弟子知吾父残虐不仁，肆行无道，固得罪于天下，弟子不敢有违天命；只吾幼弟又得何罪，竟将太极图把他化作飞灰！他与你何仇，遭此惨死！此岂有仁心者所为，此岂以德行仁之主！言之痛心刺骨！老师反欲我事仇，是诚何心！”殷郊言罢，放声大哭。广成子曰：“殷郊，你不知申公豹与子牙有隙，他是诳你之言，不可深信。此事乃汝弟自取，实是天数。”殷郊曰：“申公豹之言固不可信；吾弟之死，又是天数，终不然是吾弟自走入太极图中去，寻此惨酷极刑。老师说得好笑！今兄存弟亡，实为可惨。老师请回；俟弟子杀了姜尚以报弟仇，再议东





## Chapter 64

### Fires Blaze All Over West Qi City

At the report that a Taoist was demanding to see him, Yin Jiao thought, "Could it be my master?"

He went out and found it really was his master. He bowed to Master Grand Completion from his horse. "Master, I'm sorry but I can't kowtow as I'm in armor."

When he saw that Yin Jiao was dressed as a prince, the immortal said sternly, "You beast! Don't you remember what you said to me before leaving the mountain? Why did you change your mind so quickly?"

"Master! Please listen to me. After I left you, I subdued Wen Liang and Ma Shan and brought them with me. I met Shen Gongbao, and he tried to incite me to help the Shang against Zhou, but I refused. I was unwilling to break my promise to my master, and I dared not oppose the will of Heaven. But my brother Yin Hong was innocent. Why did Jiang Ziya put him to death so brutally! Is this the act of a virtuous man? It seems ridiculous that I should offer my loyalty to him," Yin Jiao said between bitter sobs.

"Yin Jiao! Don't you know that Shen Gongbao holds a grudge against Jiang Ziya? You shouldn't believe him. Your brother brought about his own death," Master Grand Completion explained sincerely.

"If Shen Gongbao is unreliable and the death of my brother was destined by fate, do you mean that my brother was so stupid enough to walk into the magic map and kill himself! That's ridiculous! I'm heartbroken that he's dead and I'm still alive. Please go back, Master. I'll kill Jiang Ziya first in revenge for my brother, then I'll march east."



征。”广成子曰：“你可记得发下誓言？”殷郊曰：“弟子知道。就受了此厄，死也甘心，决不愿独自偷生！”广成子大怒，喝一声，仗剑来取。殷郊用戟架住：“老师，没来由你为姜尚与弟子变颜，实系偏心；倘一时失礼，不好看相。”广成子又一剑劈来。殷郊曰：“老师何苦为他人不顾自己天性，则老师所谓‘天道、人道’，俱是矫强。”广成子曰：“此是天数，你自不悔悟，违背师言，必有杀身之祸！”复又一剑砍来。殷郊急得满面通红，曰：“你既无情待我，偏执己见，自坏手足，弟子也顾不得了！”乃发手还一戟来。师徒二人战未及四五合，殷郊祭番天印打来。广成子着慌，借纵地金光法逃回西岐至相府。正是：

番天印传殷殿下，岂知今日打师尊。

话言广成子回相府，子牙迎着，见广成子面色不似平日，忙问今日会殷郊详细。广成子曰：“彼被申公豹说反。吾再三苦劝，彼竟不从；是吾怒起，与他交战。那孽障反祭番天印来打我；吾故此回来，再做商议。”子牙不知番天印的利害，正说之间，门官报：“燃灯老爷来至。”二人忙出府迎接。至殿前，燃灯对子牙曰：“连吾的琉璃灯也来寻你一番，俱是天数。”子牙曰：“尚该如此，理当受之。”燃灯曰：“殷郊的事大，马善的事小；待吾先收了马善，再做道理。”乃谓子牙曰：“你须得……如此如此，方可收服。”子牙俱依此计。次日，子牙单人独骑出城，坐名“只要马善来见我！”左右报马报入中军：“启千岁爷：姜子牙独骑出城，只要马善出战。”殷郊自思：“昨日吾师出城见我，未曾取胜；今日令子牙单骑出城要马善，必有缘故。且令马善出战，看是何



“Do you still remember your oath?” Grand Completion demanded.

“Yes, I do, but I’m ready to give my life rather than live alone in dishonor,” Yin Jiao replied resolutely.

Master Grand Completion uttered a roar of rage and attacked Yin Jiao with his sword, but Yin Jiao blocked the blow with his halberd. “Master! Why do you attack me because of Jiang Ziya? It’s unfair. I don’t wish to transgress the rites by fighting you.”

When Master Grand Completion aimed a second blow, Yin Jiao yelled, “Master! What you said about Heaven’s way and man’s way is unreasonable.”

“It’s all destined by Heaven. You’ll bring about your own death if you don’t repent,” Master Grand Completion said as he struck again.

Yin Jiao flushed red with anger. “If you hold on to your prejudice and deliberately destroy the harmony between us, I’ll ignore such sensibilities too!”

He struck back at his master with his halberd. After they had fought five rounds, Yin Jiao threw up the Heaven Overturning Stamp. The immortal panicked and fled on a ray of golden light.

Jiang Ziya came out to meet Master Grand Completion when he arrived back at the prime minister’s mansion. He noticed that the immortal looked flustered and asked what had happened.

“Yin Jiao rebelled at the instigation of Shen Gongbao. He refused to listen to me. I became angry and attacked him, but the accursed beast used the stamp. I had to flee back here.”

Then Burning Lamp arrived, and both Master Grand Completion and Jiang Ziya got up from their seats to meet him.

As they approached the hall, Burning Lamp said to Jiang Ziya, “Even my lamp wick has come here to trouble you. It must be fate.”

“I must bear with my destiny,” Jiang Ziya said unperturbedly.

“The matter with Yin Jiao seems more serious than that with Ma Shan. I’ll deal with Ma Shan first,” Burning Lamp said. “We must do this.... That way we can take him easily.”

The next day, Jiang Ziya rode his nondescript horse to the front alone, demanding Ma Shan.

“Even my master lost yesterday. How dare he come alone? What does it mean? Ma Shan, go and find out what’s going on,” Yin Jiao ordered.





如。”马善得令，拎枪上马，出辕门，也不答话，直取子牙。子牙手中剑赴面相迎。未及数合，子牙也不归营，望东南上逃走。马善不知他的本主等他，随后赶来。未及数射之地，只见柳阴之下立着一个道人，让过子牙，当中阻住，大喝曰：“马善！你可认得我？”马善只推不知，就一枪来刺。燃灯袖内取出琉璃望空中祭起，那琉璃望下掉来。马善抬头看见，及待躲时，燃灯忙令黄巾力士：“可将灯焰带回灵鹫山去。”正是：

仙灯得道现人形，反本還元归正位。

话言燃灯收了马善，令力士带上灵鹫山去了。不题。

且说探马来报入中军：“启千岁：马善追赶姜尚，只见一阵光华，止有战马，不见了马善。未敢擅专，请令定夺。”殷郊闻报，心下疑惑，随传令：“点炮出营，定与子牙立决雌雄。”只见燃灯收了马善，方回来与广成子共议：“殷郊被申公豹说反，如之奈何？”正说之间，探马报入相府：“有殷殿下请丞相答话。”燃灯曰：“子牙公，你去得。你有杏黄旗，可保其身。”子牙忙传令，同众门人出城。炮声响亮，西岐门开。子牙一骑当先，对殷郊言曰：“殷郊，你负师命，难免犁锄之厄。及早投戈，免得自悔。”殷郊大怒，见了仇人，切齿咬牙，大骂：“匹夫把吾弟化为飞灰，我与你誓不两立！”纵马摇戟，直取子牙。子牙仗剑迎之。戟剑交加，大战龙潭虎穴。且说温良走马来助；这壁厢哪吒登开风火轮接住交兵。两下里只杀得：

黑霭霭云迷白日，闹嚷嚷杀气遮天。枪刀剑戟冒征烟，闹斧犹如闪电。好勇的成功建业；恃强的努力当先。为



Ma Shan took up his lance, mounted his horse, and rushed out to attack Jiang Ziya. Jiang returned the blow with his sword, but after several rounds, abandoned the fight and ran off toward the southeast. Ma Shan pursued him. Before long, they came upon a Taoist under the shade of a willow tree. He let Jiang Ziya pass then blocked Ma Shan's advance. He shouted, "Ma Shan! Do you recognize me?"

Pretending not to know the immortal, Ma Shan lunged at him with his lance. Burning Lamp immediately took out the glazed lamp from one of his sleeves and threw it high into the air. It dropped to entrap Ma Shan before he had the chance to get away, and he was restored to his original form—a lamp wick burning in the lamp. Burning Lamp ordered his genie to carry the lamp back to Mount Divine Hawk.

Yin Jiao felt puzzled at the report that Ma Shan had disappeared in a flash of light. He ordered his army to prepare for a decisive battle with Jiang Ziya. Burning Lamp returned to the prime minister's mansion and told Jiang Ziya and Master Grand Completion what had happened. Grand Completion was still worried about his disciple. Just then it was reported that "Yin Jiao demands the prime minister."

"Go and meet him. Don't be afraid, as you can use the Yellow Apricot Flag," Burning Lamp told him.

Jiang Ziya ordered that the city gates be opened wide, and he rode out with his generals. He galloped ahead alone and shouted, "Yin Jiao! You're rebelling against the Zhou. It will be difficult for you to escape being beheaded under a hoe. You'd better surrender before it's too late."

Yin Jiao gnashed his teeth in hatred. "You damned wretch! You turned my younger brother to ashes. I can't live with you under the same sky!"

He spurred his horse forward and attacked with his halberd. Jiang Ziya answered with his sword. As they battled violently, Wen Liang lost his patience and urged his horse forward to help. But he was met by Nezha on his Wind-Fire Wheels. The two clashed fiercely. Wen Liang



明君不怕就死；报国恩欲把身捐。只杀得一团白骨见青天，那时节方才收军罢战。

且说温良祭起白玉环来打哪吒，不知哪吒也有乾坤圈，也祭起来；不知金打玉，打得纷纷粉碎。温良大叫一声：“伤吾之宝，怎肯干休！”又战哪吒。被哪吒一金砖正中后心，打得往前一晃，未曾闪下马来；方欲逃回，不意被杨戩一弹子，穿了肩头，跌下马去，死于非命。殷郊见温良死于马下，忙祭番天印打子牙。子牙展开杏黄旗，便有万道金光，祥云笼罩；又现有千朵白莲，谨护其身；把番天印悬在空中，只是不得下来。子牙随祭打神鞭，正中殷郊后背，翻筋斗落下马去。杨戩急上前欲斩他首级，有张山、李锦二骑抢出，不知殷郊已借土遁去了。子牙竟获全胜进城，燃灯与广成子共议曰：“番天印难治。且子牙拜将已近，恐误吉辰，罪归于你。”广成子告曰：“老师为我设一谋，如何除得此恶？”燃灯曰：“无筹可治，奈何！奈何！”

且说殷郊着伤逃回进营，纳闷郁郁不喜。且说辕门外来一道人，戴鱼尾冠，面如重枣，海下赤髯，红发，三目，穿大红八卦服，骑赤烟驹。道人下骑，叫：“报与殷殿下，吾要见他。”军政官报入中军：“启千岁：外边有一道者求见。”殷郊传令：“请来。”少时，道人行至帐前。殷郊看见，忙降堦接见。道人通身赤色，其形相甚恶。彼此各打稽首。殷殿下忙欠身答曰：“老师可请上坐。”道人亦不谦让，随即坐下。殷郊曰：“老师高姓？大名？何处名山洞府？”道人答曰：“贫道乃火龙岛焰中仙罗宣是也；因申公豹相邀，特来助你一臂之力。”殷郊大悦，治酒款待。道人曰：“吾乃是斋，不用



cast up his white jade ring to beat Nezha, but Nezha saw it coming and quickly hurled up his Universal Ring. There was a crash as they met, and the white jade ring shattered to pieces.

“How dare you break my treasure!” Wen Liang roared.

“Don’t think I’ll let you get away with it!”

He began to fight like a mad man, but Nezha struck him squarely on the back, nearly bringing him down from his horse. He tried to flee, but Yang Jian shot a pellet, and he fell dead on the ground.

Yin Jiao hurriedly cast up the stamp, but Jiang Ziya unrolled his Yellow Apricot Flag, and golden light, auspicious clouds and white lotus flowers filled the air, surrounding his body. The stamp rolled in the air, unable to descend. Jiang Ziya then quickly cast up his Staff for Beating Gods, striking Yin Jiao heavily on the back. He fell from his horse, and Yang Jian rushed out to cut his head off, but Zhang Shan and Li Jin rescued him. Yin Jiao fled on the dust.

When they returned to the city, Burning Lamp told Master Grand Completion, “It’s difficult to deal with your stamp. Yet the date of Jiang Ziya’s inauguration is fast upon us.”

“Master, please help me think of a plan to eradicate this evil as soon as possible,” Grand Completion pleaded.

“I don’t know how to deal with it either,” Burning Lamp answered despondantly.

Yin Jiao returned wounded and vexed. Just then a Taoist arrived at the camp gate. He wore a fish-tail coronet and had a face as red as a date, red hair, and a red beard. Dressed in a red robe embroidered with the eight diagrams, he rode on a flame red steed. He dismounted and called out, “Tell Prince Yin that I would like to see him.”

When admitted, the Taoist walked into the tent, and Yin Jiao invited him to take a seat, which he did without standing on ceremony.

“May I know your honorable name, Master?”

“I’m Luo Xuan, the Burning Flame Immortal from Fire Dragon Island. At the request of Shen Gongbao, I’ve come here to help you.”



荤。”殷郊命治素酒相待。不题。一连在军中过了三四日，也不出去会子牙。殷郊问曰：“老师既为我而来，为何数日不会子牙一阵？”道人曰：“我有一道友，他不曾来；若要来时，我与你定然成功，不用殿下费心。”且说那日正坐，辕门官军来报：“有一道者来访。”罗宣与殷郊传令：“请来。”少时，见一道者，黄脸，虬须，身穿皂服，徐步而来。殷郊乃出帐迎接，至帐，行礼尊于上坐。道人坐下。罗宣问曰：“贤弟为何来迟？”道人曰：“因攻战之物未完，故此来迟。”殷郊对道人曰：“请问道长高姓？大名？”道人曰：“吾乃九龙岛炼气士刘环是也。”殷郊传令治酒款待。次早，二位道者出营，来至城下，请子牙答话。探马忙报入相府：“启丞相：有二位道人请丞相爷答话。”子牙随即同众门人出城，排开队伍。只见催阵鼓响，对阵中有一道者，生得甚是凶恶。怎见得：

鱼尾冠，纯然烈焰；大红袍，片片云生。丝绦悬赤色，麻履长红云。剑带星星火，马如赤爪龙。面如血泼紫，钢牙暴出唇。三目光辉观宇宙，火龙岛内有声名。

话说子牙对诸门人曰：“此人一身赤色，连马也是红的！”众弟子曰：“截教门下，古怪者甚多。”话未毕，罗宣一骑马当先，大呼曰：“来者可就是姜子牙？”子牙答曰：“道兄，不才便是。不知道友是何处名山？那里洞府？”罗宣曰：“吾乃火龙岛焰中仙罗宣是也。吾今来会你。只因你倚仗玉虚门下，把吾辈截教甚是耻辱，吾故到此与你见一个雌雄，方知二教自有高低，非在于口舌争也。你那左右门人不必向前；料你等不过毫末道行，不足为能。只我与你比个高下。”道罢，把赤烟驹催开，使两口飞烟剑，来取子牙。子牙手中剑急架相迎。二



In great delight, Yin Jiao entertained Luo Xuan. Three days passed, but Luo Xuan never left the camp.

“Why don’t you challenge Jiang Ziya?” Yin Jiao asked impatiently.

“I’m waiting for another Taoist friend of mine. He’ll help ensure a victory. Don’t worry, Your Highness.”

A few days later another Taoist arrived to see the Burning Flame Immortal and Yin Jiao. This Taoist had a yellow face, a coiled beard, and wore a red robe. He walked slowly into the camp and was met by Yin Jiao, who gave him the seat of honor. Luo Xuan asked, “Why did you come so late, Brother?”

“I was preparing the weapons.”

“Would you please tell me your honorable name?” Yin Jiao asked.

“I’m Liu Huan from the Nine Dragon Island,” he replied.

Early the next morning, the two Taoists left the camp and challenged Jiang Ziya. At the report, Jiang Ziya left the city with his generals and saw an evil-looking Taoist. A strong light glared from his fish-tail coronet, and he wore a red robe tied with a red silk belt and a pair of red hemp shoes. Riding on a red horse, he had a red face with three glowing red eyes.

“That man is red all over,” Jiang Ziya remarked with amazement.

“There are many strange looking people in Jie Taoism,” his disciples replied.

As they talked, Luo Xuan rode forward alone and shouted, “Is that Jiang Ziya coming?”

“Yes, it is. Please tell me from which famous mountain you come.”

“I’m Luo Xuan, the Burning Flame Immortal from Fire Dragon Island. I’ve come to meet you because you’ve insulted our sect of Taoism. We will decide today who is superior. Let’s not waste time talking. Your disciples needn’t take part; their achievements are insignificant. It’s quite enough for the two of us to fight alone.”

When he finished speaking, Luo Xuan urged his red flame steed forward and attacked with two Flying Smoke Swords. Jiang Ziya resisted



兽盘旋，未及数合，哪吒登开风火轮，摇枪来刺。罗宣傍有刘环跃步而出，抵住哪吒。大抵子牙的门人多，不由分说，杨戩舞三尖刀冲杀过来；黄天化使开双锤，也来助战；雷震子展开二翅，飞起空中，将金棍刷来；土行孙使动宾铁棍，往下三路也自杀来；韦护绰步，使降魔杵劈头就打：四面八方，围裹上来。罗宣见子牙众门人不分好歹，一涌而上，抵挡不住，忙把三百六十骨节摇动，现出三首六臂，一手执照天印，一手执五龙轮，一手执万鸦壶，一手执万里起云烟，双手使飞烟剑，好利害！怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

赤宝丹天降异人，浑身上下烈烟熏，离宫炼就非凡品，  
南极熬成迥出群。火龙岛内修真性，焰气声高气似云。  
纯阳自是三昧火，烈石焚金恶煞神。

话说罗宣现了三首六臂，将五龙轮一轮把黄天化打下玉麒麟。早有金、木二吒救回去了。杨戩正欲暗放哮天犬来伤罗宣，不意子牙早祭起打神鞭望空中打来，把罗宣打得几乎翻下赤烟驹来。哪吒战住了刘环，把乾坤圈打来，只打得刘环三昧火冒出，俱大败回营。

张山在辕门观看，见岐周多少门人，祭无穷法宝，一个胜如一个，心中自思：“久后灭纣者必是子牙一辈。”心中甚是不悦。只见罗宣失利回营，张山接住慰劳。罗宣曰：“今日不防姜尚打我一鞭，吾险些儿坠下骑来。”忙取葫芦中药饵，吞而治之。罗宣对刘环曰：“这也是西岐一群众生该当如此，非我定用此狠毒也。”道人咬牙切齿。正是：

山红土赤须臾了，殿阁楼台化作灰。

话说罗宣在帐内与刘环议曰：“今夜把西岐打发他干干净净，



with his single sword. After several rounds, Nezha raced up on his Wind-Fire Wheels but was intercepted by Liu Huan. Then Huang Tianhua charged in and was following by Yang Jian with his triple-pointed halberd. Thunderbolt soared into the air with his gold cudgel. Earth Traveler Sun directed his iron cudgel at the enemy's legs, and Wei Hu used his Monster Subduing Club to attack at the enemy's head.

Luo Xuan found it difficult to cope with their combined attack. He hastily rattled his bones and assumed his three-headed six-armed form. One hand held the Sky Shining Stamp, one the Five Dragon Wheel, one the Ten Thousand Crow Bottle, and the fourth grasped the Cloud Raising Smoke. The other two hands held two Flying Smoke Swords. With steam, smoke, and fire covering his body, he presented a truly terrifying sight.

Thus transformed, Luo Xuan knocked Huang Tianhua down from his jade unicorn with the Five Dragon Wheel, but Huang was rescued by Jinzha and Muzha. As Yang Jian was about to release his Sky Barking Hound, Jiang Ziya cast up his Staff for Beating Gods. Luo Xuan was hit and nearly fell from his red flame steed. Nezha took the opportunity and struck Liu Huan a heavy blow with his Universal Ring. Both Luo Xuan and Liu Huan fled back to camp.

Zhang Shan was watching from the camp gate. He was displeased to see so many talented generals and so many magic weapons on the other side. "It will be Jiang Ziya that brings down King Zhou in the near future," he thought. When Luo Xuan returned, he moved up to comfort him.

"Due to my own carelessness, I was hit by Jiang Ziya's staff and nearly fell from my horse," Luo Xuan said. He took some pills from a gourd and swallowed them to heal his wound. He then said angrily to Liu Huan, "It must be destined by fate that West Qi City is to be destroyed. It's not that I'm ruthless." He gnashed his teeth in hatred. "With West Qi City out of the way, we won't have any more trouble," Luo Xuan told Liu Huan.





免得费我清心。”刘环道：“他既无情，理当如此。”正是子牙灾难至矣，子牙只知得胜回兵，那知有此一节。不意时至二更，罗宣同刘环借着火遁，乘着赤烟驹，把万里起云烟射进西岐城内。此万里起云烟乃是火箭，及至射进西岐城内，可怜东、西、南、北，各处火起，相府、皇城，到处生烟。子牙在府内只听的百姓呐喊之声，振动华岳。燃灯已知道了，与广成子出静室看火。不题。——怎见得，好火：

黑烟漠漠，红焰腾腾。黑烟漠漠，长空不见半分毫；红焰腾腾，大地有光千里赤。初起时，灼灼金蛇；次后来，千千火块。罗宣切齿逞雄威，恼了刘环施法力。燥干柴烧烈火性，说甚么燧人钻木；热油门上飘丝，胜似那老子开炉。正是那无情火发，怎禁这有意行凶。不去弭灾，返行助虐。风随火势，焰飞有千丈余高；火逞风威，灰迸上九霄云外。乒乒乓乓，如同阵前炮响；轰轰烈烈，却似锣鼓齐鸣。只烧得男啼女哭叫皇天，抱女携儿无处躲。姜子牙总有妙法不能施；周武王德政天齐难逃避。门人虽有，各自保守其躯；大将英雄，尽是獐跑鼠窜。正是灾来难避无情火，慌坏青鸾斗阙仙。

话说武王听得各处火起，连宫内生烟，武王跪在丹墀，告祈后土、皇天曰：“姬发不道，获罪于天，降此大厄，何累于民？只愿上天将姬发尽户灭绝，不忍万民遭此灾厄。”俯伏在地，放声大哭。且说罗宣将万鸦壶开了，万只火鸦飞腾入城，口内喷火，翅上生烟；又用数条火龙，把五龙轮架在当中，只见赤烟驹四蹄生烈焰，飞烟宝剑长红光，那有石墙、石壁烧不进去。又有刘环接火，顷刻齐休，画阁雕梁，即时



Jiang Ziya and his men returned in triumph, little imagining that disaster was fast upon them. At the second watch, Luo Xuan and Liu Huan, riding red flame steeds, shot the Cloud Raising Smoke into West Qi City. These were actually flaming arrows that started fires wherever they landed. The whole city was soon on fire. Men and women, old and young, ran through the streets crying for help. There was nowhere for them to take shelter.

Jiang Ziya heard the cries from inside his mansion and realized what had happened. Burning Lamp and Master Grand Completion left their chambers to watch the fire. At the report of the great fire, King Wu knelt down and prayed piously to Heaven, "I have offended you with my unvirtuous behavior and brought about this calamity. I pray to Heaven that my houses be burned down but those of the people be spared, as they are innocent."

He lay prostrate on the ground, sobbing bitterly. But the fire only burned more fiercely than before, as Luo Xuan had opened his Ten Thousand Crow Bottle and set thousands of fire crows flying into the city to spit fire from their beaks. He flung the Five Dragon Wheel into the city and rode about on his red flame steed that shot flames from its hooves, brandishing his Flying Smoke Swords. The violent fire burned down magnificent palaces and grand mansions, even destroying walls built of stone and brick. Liu Huan also raced around, adding to the destruction.



崩倒。正是：

武王有福逢此厄，自有高人灭火时。

话言罗宣正烧西岐，来了凤凰山青鸾斗阙的龙吉公主——乃是昊天上帝亲生，瑶池金母之女；只因有念思凡，贬在凤凰山青鸾斗阙，今见子牙伐纣，也来助一臂之力。正值罗宣来烧西岐。娘娘就假此好见子牙。遂跨青鸾来至。远远的只见火内有千万火鸦，忙叫：“碧云童儿，将雾露乾坤网撒开，往西岐火内一罩。”此宝有相生相克之妙，雾露者乃是真水；水能克火，故此随即息灭，即时将万只火鸦尽行收去。罗宣正放火乱烧，忽不见火鸦。往前一看，见一道姑，戴鱼尾冠，穿大红绛绡衣。罗宣大呼：“乘鸾者乃是何人，敢灭吾之火？”公主笑曰：“吾乃龙吉公主是也。你有何能，敢动恶意，有逆天心，来害明君，吾特来助阵。你可速回，毋取灭亡之祸。”罗宣大怒，将五龙轮劈面打来。公主笑曰：“我知道你只有这些伎俩。你可尽力发来！”乃忙取四海瓶拿在手中，对着五龙轮；只见一轮竟打在瓶里去了。——火龙进入于海内，焉能济事！罗宣大叫一声，把万里起云烟射来。公主又将四海瓶收住去了。刘环大怒，脚踏红焰，仗剑来取。公主把脸一红，将二龙剑望空中一丢。刘环那里经得起，随将刘环斩于火内。罗宣忙现三首六臂，祭照天印打龙吉公主。公主把剑一指，此印落于火内，又将剑丢去。罗宣情知难拒，拨赤烟驹就走。公主再把二龙剑丢起，正中赤烟驹后臂。赤烟驹自倒，将罗宣撞下火来，借火遁而逃。公主忙施雨露，且救了西岐火焰，好见子牙。怎见得好雨，有赞为证：



Just at that time, Princess Long Ji from Mount Phoenix arrived. She wished to help Jiang Ziya and chose this moment so that she could meet him with credit to her name.

When she saw that thousands of fire crows were flying about spreading fire, she ordered, "Green Cloud Lass, spread the Mist Dew Universal Net over West Qi City."

Since both mist and dew are produced from pure water, the net put out all the fire and caught all the fire crows in its mesh. Luo Xuan was busy setting more fires when he found that his fire crows had all disappeared. He looked about to see what had happened and saw before him a Taoist nun, wearing a fish-tail coronet and a red satin robe. "Who's that on the green phoenix? How dare you put out my fire!"

The princess smiled. "I'm Princess Long Ji. What power do you have that you dare violate the will of Heaven and hurt the enlightened ruler? I've come here to help him, you'd better return at once or you'll bring disaster on yourself."

In anger, Luo Xuan hurled the Five Dragon Wheel at her face, but she only smiled. "I know that's all you can do. Go ahead and throw everything at me."

She turned the mouth of her Four Sea Vase toward the Five Dragon Wheel, and the wheel disappeared inside. The fire dragons were ineffective in the great sea. With a loud scream, Luo Xuan shot his fire arrows at the princess, but they were taken by her vase as well. In a rage, Liu Huan rode forward to attack the princess, but she cast up her Double Dragon Sword and sliced his head off. Luo Xuan hurriedly assumed his three headed, six-armed form and attacked the princess with his Sky Shining Stamp, but it fell into the fire when she pointed at it with her Double Dragon Sword.

As it was impossible to resist further, Luo Xuan turned his steed to flee, but the princess cast up her Double Dragon Sword again, stabbing the steed through the rump. The steed fell down and died, throwing him to the ground. He raced away on a burst of flames.



潇潇洒洒，密密沉沉。潇潇洒洒，如天边坠落明珠；密密沉沉，似海口倒悬滚浪。初起时，如拳大小；次后来，瓮泼盆倾。沟壑水飞千丈玉，涧泉波浪万条银。西岐城内看看满，低凹池塘渐渐平。真是武王有福高明助，倒泻天河往下倾。

话说龙吉公主施雨救灭西岐火焰，满城民人齐声大叫曰：“武王洪福齐天，普施恩泽，吾等皆有命也！”合城大小，欢声震地。一夜天翻地沸，百姓皆不得安生。武王在殿内祈祷，百官带雨问安。子牙在相府，神魂俱不附体。只见燃灯曰：“子牙忧中得吉，就有异人至也。贫道非是不知，吾若是来治此火，异人必不能至。”话言未了，有杨戩报入府来：“启师叔：有龙吉公主来至。”子牙忙降堦迎迓上殿。公主见燃灯、广成子在殿上，公主打稽首，口称：“道兄请了！”子牙忙问燃灯曰：“此位何人？”公主忙答曰：“贫道乃龙吉公主，有罪于天；方才罗宣用火焚烧西岐，贫道今特来此间，用些须小法术，救灭此火，特佐子牙东征，会了诸侯，有功于社稷，可免罪愆，得再回瑶池耳，真不负贫道下山一场。”子牙大喜，忙分付侍儿，打点焚香净室，与公主居住。西岐城内这一场嚷闹，大是利害，乃收拾宫阙府第。不表。

且说罗宣败走下山，喘息不定，倚松靠石，默然沉思：“今日把这些宝贝一旦失与龙吉公主，此恨怎消。”正愁恨时，只听得脑后有人作歌而至。歌曰：

“曾做菜羹寒士，不去奔波朝市。宦情收起，打点林泉事。高山采紫芝，溪边理钓丝。洞中戏耍，闲写‘黄庭’字。把酒醺然，长歌腹内诗。识时，扶王立帝基；



The princess then put out the remaining fires with rain, and the people cried, "It's King Wu's good fortune!"

They rejoiced through the night. As King Wu continued his prayers, Jiang Ziya remained in his mansion, not knowing what to do. Burning Lamp consoled him, "Jiang Ziya! You're blessed now with fortune within misfortune. Another immortal will come soon to help you. I knew of this calamity before it happened, but I wasn't in a position to put out the fire, for if I had, that extraordinary person wouldn't be able to come here now."

Soon Yang Jian reported, "Princess Long Ji has arrived."

Jiang Ziya immediately went out to the stone steps and ushered in the princess. When she saw Burning Lamp and Master Grand Completion, Princess Long Ji bowed and greeted them. "I'm Princess Long Ji. I was found guilty in Heaven and have come to atone for my sins. I used some minor Taoist arts to put out Luo Xuan's fire. I'll join you to bring down King Zhou and then return to the Jade Pond."

With great delight, Jiang Ziya ordered a maidservant to prepare a chamber for her and burn incense within. Restoration work on the damage caused by the fire began immediately.

Badly beaten, Luo Xuan fled away, gasping for breath. He sat down on a rock and thought to himself, "I've lost all my magic weapons. How can I ever get revenge!"

As he sat brooding, he heard a man approach up from behind, singing a song:

A poor scholar, I eat vegetables,  
I can't shop, though impoverished.  
I've no desire for a high rank,  
I wish only for forests and springs.  
I repair my fishing hooks by a stream,  
And copy the scriptures in a lonely cave.  
I sing a poem over my wine,  
And help the kind king for a new era.  
I realize that Luo Xuan will meet his doom.

知机，罗宣今日危。”

话说罗宣听罢，回头一看，见个大汉，戴扇云盔，穿道服，持戟而至。罗宣问曰：“汝是何人，敢出大言？”其人答曰：“吾乃李靖是也。今日往西岐见姜子牙，东进五关，吾无有进见之功，今日拿你，权敌一功。”罗宣大怒，跃身而起，将宝剑来取。二人交锋。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



When the song ended, Luo Xuan turned and saw a tall, sturdy man in a cloud-fanning helmet and a Taoist robe approach with a halberd in his hand. "Who are you? How dare you!" he demanded.

"I'm Li Jing. I'm going to West Qi to help Jiang Ziya through the five passes. As I've nothing to offer to him on our first meeting, I'll take you alive as my first deed of merit."

Luo Xuan was furious. He leapt to his feet and slashed at Li Jing with his sword. The two began a desperate battle.

What became of the two men? If you want to know, please read the the next chapter.





## 第六十五回

### 殷郊岐山受犁锄

诗曰：

鞞鼓频催日已西，殷郊此日受犁锄。翻天有印皆沦落，  
离地无旗孰可栖。空负肝肠空自费，浪留名节浪为题。  
可怜二子俱如誓，气化清风魂伴泥。

话说李靖大战罗宣，戟剑相交，犹如虎狼之状。李靖祭起按三十三天黄金宝塔，乃大叫曰：“罗宣！今日你难逃此难矣！”罗宣欲待脱身，怎脱此厄，只见此塔落将下来，如何存立！可怜！正是：

封神台上有坐位，道术通天难脱逃。

话说黄金塔落将下来，正打在罗宣顶上，只打得脑浆迸流。——一灵已奔封神台去了。李靖收了宝塔，借土遁往西岐，时刻而至。到了相府前，有木吒看见父亲来至，忙报与子牙：“弟子父亲李靖等令。”燃灯对子牙曰：“乃是吾门人；曾为纣之总兵。”子牙闻之大喜，忙令相见毕。且说广成子见殷郊阻兵于此，子牙拜将又近，问燃灯曰：“老师，如今殷郊不得退，如之奈何？”燃灯曰：“番天印利害；除非取了玄都离地焰光旗，西方取了青莲宝色旗。如今止有了玉虚杏黄旗，殷郊如何伏得他，必先去取了此旗方可。”广成子曰：“弟子愿往玄都，见师伯走一遭。”燃灯曰：“你速去！”广成子借纵地金光法往玄都来，不一时来至八景宫玄都洞。真好





## Chapter 65

### The Head of Crown Prince Hoed Off

Li Jing and Luo Xuan battled furiously, halberd against sword. Before long, Li Jing threw up his gold pagoda. "Luo Xuan! You've got no hope of escape."

When he saw the danger, Luo Xuan tried to run away, but it was already too late. The pagoda fell right on top of his head, knocking his brains out. His soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Li Jing retrieved his pagoda and went on his way to West Qi. On this arrival, Muzha reported to Jiang Ziya, "Here comes my father, Li Jing, Uncle."

Burning Lamp said in delight to Jiang Ziya, "He's my disciple. He was once a garrison commander under King Zhou."

Jiang Ziya invited Li Jing in to see him. Master Grand Completion asked Burning Lamp, "What shall we do? We still haven't found a way to deal with Yin Jiao."

"Your stamp is really powerful, so we need the four flags: the Soaring Flame from Mount Xuandu, the Green Lotus from the Western Region, the Yellow Apricot from Mount Kunlun, and the White Cloud Bound. But we've got only the Yellow Apricot. We must have the other flags to deal with him."

"I'll go to Mount Xuandu and ask Lao Zi for the Soaring Flame," Master Grand Completion said.

"OK. Go at once."

Master Grand Completion set off on a ray of golden light and soon reached the Eight Landscape Palace on Mount Xuandu. He waited pa-



景致!怎见得,有赞为证:

金碧辉煌,珠玉灿烂。菁葱婆娑,苍苔欲滴。仙鸾仙鹤成群,白鹿白猿作对。香烟缥缈冲霄汉,彩色氤氲绕碧空。雾隐楼台重叠叠,霞盘殿阁紫阴阴。祥光万道临福地,瑞气千条照洞门。大罗宫内金钟响,八景宫开玉磬鸣。开天辟地神仙府,才是玄都第一重。

话说广成子至玄都洞,不敢擅入,等候半晌,只见玄都大法师出来,广成子上前稽首,口称:“道兄,烦启老师,弟子求见。”玄都大法师至蒲团前启曰:“广成子至此,求见老师。”老子曰:“广成子不必着他进来,他来是要离地焰光旗;你将此旗付与他去罢。”玄都大法师随将旗付与广成子,曰:“老师分付,你去罢,不要进见了。”广成子感谢不尽,将旗高捧,离了玄都,径至西岐,进了相府。子牙接见,拜了焰光旗。广成子又往西方极乐之乡来。纵金光,一日到了西方胜境,——比昆仑山大不相同。怎见得,有赞为证,赞曰:

宝焰金光映日明,异香奇彩更微精。七宝林中无穷景,八德池边落瑞璎。素品仙花人罕见,笙簧仙乐耳更清。西方胜界真堪羨,真乃莲花瓣里生。

话说广成子站立多时,见一童子出来,广成子曰:“那童子,烦你通报一声,说广成子相访。”只见童子进去,不一时,童子出来,道:“有请。”广成子见一道人,身高丈六,面皮黄色,头挽抓髻,向前稽首,分宾主坐下。道人曰:“道兄乃玉虚门下,久仰清风,无缘会晤;今幸至此,实三生有缘。”广成子谢曰:“弟子因犯杀戒,今被殷郊阻住子牙拜将日期,今特至此,求借青莲宝色旗,以破殷郊,好佐周王东



tiently outside the palace until he saw Chief Priest Xuandu. He moved forward and greeted him, "Brother, would you kindly report my arrival to Grand Master? I would like to see him."

"Grand Completion requests to see you, Master," Chief Priest Xuandu told Lao Zi.

"He needn't see me. He's come for the Soaring Flame, so let him have it."

Chief Priest Xuandu handed the flag to Master Grand Completion. "By order of my master, I'm giving you the flag. You don't have to see him."

Master Grand Completion expressed his gratitude. He took the flag and returned to West Qi. Jiang Ziya received the flag, and the master set off again for the Western Region. He waited there for a long time before he saw a lad coming out and then walked forward and said, "Would you report to your master that Master Grand Completion is here to see him?"

Once admitted, he saw Buddha before him, about sixteen feet in height, with a yellow face and hair in tight coils. They greeted each other and took their seats as guest and host.

"Brother, I've long admired Mount Kunlun. I'm sorry we haven't had the opportunity to meet before. We're most honored to have you here today," Buddha said courteously.

"We were destined to break the commandment on killing. Now Yin Jiao is giving us trouble, and Jiang Ziya's inauguration is approaching. I've come here for the Green Lotus Flag to subdue him," Master Grand Completion explained.



征。”接引道人曰：“贫道西方乃清静无为，与贵道不同，以花开见我，我见其人，乃莲花之像，非东南两度之客。此旗恐惹红尘，不敢从命。”广成子曰：“道虽二门，其理合一。以人心合天道，岂得有两。南北东西共一家，难分彼此。如今周王是奉玉虚符命，应运而兴，东西南北，总在皇王水土之内。道兄怎言西方不与东南之教同。古语云：‘金丹舍利同仁义，三教元来是一家。’”接引道人曰：“道人言虽有理，只是青莲宝色旗染不得红尘。奈何！奈何！”二人正论之间，后边来了一位道人，乃是准提道人；打了稽首，同坐下。准提曰：“道兄此来，欲借青莲宝色旗，西岐山破殷郊；若论起来，此宝借不得。如今不同，亦自有说。”乃对接引道人曰：“前番我曾对道兄言过：东南两度，有三千丈红气冲空，与吾西方有缘；是我八德池中五百年花开之数。西方虽是极乐，其道何日得行于东南；不若借东南大教，兼行吾道，有何不可。况今广成子道兄又来，当得奉命。”接引道人听准提道人之言，随将青莲宝色旗付与广成子。广成子谢了二位道人，离西方望西岐而来。正是：

只为殷郊逢此厄，才往西方走一遭。

话说广成子离了西方，不一日来到西岐，进相府来见燃灯，将西方先不肯借旗，被准提道人说了方肯的话说了一遍。燃灯曰：“事好了！如今正南用离地焰光旗，东方用青莲宝色旗，中央用杏黄戊己旗，西方少素色云界旗，单让北方与殷郊走，方可治之。”广成子曰：“素色云界旗那里有？”众门人都想，想不起来。广成子不乐。众门人俱退。土行孙来到内里，对妻子邓婵玉说：“平空殷郊伐西岐，费了许多的事，如



“Our emphasis on finding the Way is different from your own. We see the image of ourselves and that of others in lotus flowers. I wouldn’t like to see the flag soiled in the world of mortals. I beg your pardon,” Buddha replied.

“Ours may be two different religions, but the principles are the same. We both agree on the coincidence of the human heart with the will of Heaven, for instance. We belong to one family and we live in the same world. How can you discriminate between our two religions? The old proverb says, ‘The golden pills of life of the Taoist and the luminous stone relics of Buddha represent the same principle of virtue.’ The three religions are really one.”

“You may be right, Brother, but the Green Lotus is not allowed to touch the dust of the vulgar world. What shall I do?”

In the course of their debate, Candi arrived. He sat down and said, “Brother, you’ve come for the Green Lotus. We can’t lend it to you theoretically, but in light of the present circumstances, we’ll make an exception.” He turned to Buddha and said, “As I told you, Brother, twice red light has soared 3,000 feet in the southeast. It’s time the flowers in our Eight Virtue Pond come into full blossom. Though the Western Region enjoys utter happiness, we can’t be selfish. Buddhism must spread to the southeast as soon as possible. We may cooperate with religions there for this purpose. Do grant his request.”

Hearing this, Buddha immediately gave Master Grand Completion the flag. Grand Completion expressed his deep gratitude to the two Buddhas and then returned to West Qi.

On his return, Burning Lamp said, “We’ll hang the Soaring Flame in the south, the Green Lotus in the east, and the White Cloud Bound in the West. We can then force Yin Jiao to flee north and entrap him there.”

“But where can we get the White Cloud Bound?” Master Grand Completion asked.

No one could remember where the flag was kept. Master Grand Completion was worried when the conference ended.

Back home, Earth Traveler Sun said to Deng Chanyu, “Yin Jiao is giving us too much trouble. We’ve got everything ready to deal with him



今还少素色云界旗，不知那里有？”只见龙吉公主在静室中听见，忙起身来问土行孙曰：“素色云界旗是我母亲那里有。此旗一名‘云界’，一名‘聚仙’，但赴瑶池会，将此旗拽起，群仙俱知道，即来赴瑶池胜会，故曰‘聚仙旗’。此旗，别人去不得，须得南极仙翁方能借得来。”土行孙闻说，忙来至殿前，见燃灯道人，曰：“弟子回内室，与妻子商议，有龙吉公主听见。彼言此旗乃西王母处有，名曰聚仙旗。”燃灯方悟，随命广成子往昆仑山来，广成子纵金光至玉虚宫，立于麒麟崖。等候多时，有南极仙翁出来。广成子把殷郊的事说了一遍。南极仙翁曰：“我知道了。你且回去。”广成子回西岐。不表。且说南极仙翁即忙收拾，换了朝服，系了玎珰玉珮，手执朝笏，离了玉虚宫，足踏祥云，飘飘荡荡，鹤驾先行引导。怎见得，有诗为证：

祥云托足上仙行，跨鹤乘鸾上玉京。福禄并称为寿曜，东南常自驻行旌。

话说南极仙翁来到瑶池，落下云头，见朱门紧闭，玉珮无声；只见瑶池那些光景，甚是稀奇。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

顶摩霄汉，脉插须弥。巧峰排列，怪石参差。悬崖下瑶草琪花；曲径傍紫芝香蕙。仙猿摘果入桃林，却似火焰烧金；白鹤栖松立枝头，浑如苍烟捧玉。彩凤双双，青鸾对对。彩凤双双，向日一鸣天下瑞；青鸾对对，迎风跃舞世间稀。又见黄邓邓琉璃瓦叠鸳鸯；明晃晃锦花砖铺玛瑙。东一行，西一行，尽是蕊宫珍阙；南一带，北一带，看不了宝阁琼楼。云光殿上长金



except the White Cloud Bound Flag. No one knows where to get it. What shall we do?"

Princess Long Ji heard him from the next chamber and immediately went over. "Don't worry, Brother. The flag is at my mother's. It has two names — the 'White Cloud Bound Flag' and the 'Flag for Convoking the Immortals'. When a conference is to be held at the Jade Pond, the flag is hoisted high to notify all the immortals. That's how it got its name. No one can get the flag except the Immortal of the South Pole."

Earth Traveler Sun immediately passed this news on to Burning Lamp, and with his approval, Master Grand Completion went to Mount Kunlun. He waited at Unicorn Cliff until the Immortal of the South Pole appeared.

On learning his purpose, the immortal said, "I'll take care of this matter for you. You may return first."

Dressed in his official robes and jade pendants and with an ivory tablet in both hands, the immortal set off for the Jade Pond. He rode a crane, flying through the clouds at high speed. He alighted in a fairyland full of wonderful scenery. There were jade palaces and crystal mansions, their roofs covered with colored glazed tiles and their floors paved with agate bricks.





霞；聚仙亭下生紫雾。正是：金阙堂中仙乐动，方知紫府是瑶池。

话说南极仙翁俯伏金阶，口称：“小臣南极仙翁奏闻金母：应运圣主，鸣凤岐山，仙临杀戒，垂象上天；因三教并谈，奉玉虚符命，按三百六十五度封神八部，雷、火、瘟、斗，群星列宿。今有玉虚副仙广成子门人殷郊，有负师命，逆天叛乱，杀害生灵，阻挠姜尚不能前往，恐悞拜将日期。殷郊发誓，应在西岐而受犁锄之厄。今奉玉虚之命，特恳圣母，恩赐聚仙旗，下至西岐，治殷郊以应愿言。诚惶诚恐，稽首顿首。具疏小臣南极仙翁具奏。”俯伏少时，只听得仙乐一派。怎见得：

玉殿金门两扇开，乐声齐奏下瑶台。凤衔丹诏离天府，玉敕金书降下来。

话说南极仙翁俯伏玉阶，候降敕旨。只闻乐声隐隐，金门开处，有四对仙女高捧聚仙旗，付与南极仙翁，曰：“敕旨付南极仙翁：周武当有天下；纣王秽德彰闻，应当绝灭；正合天心。今特敕尔聚仙旗前去，以助周邦，毋得延缓，有褻仙宝。速往。钦哉！望阙谢恩。”南极仙翁谢恩毕，离了瑶池。正是：

周主洪基年八百，圣人金阙借旗来。

话说南极仙翁离了瑶池，径至西岐。有杨戩报入相府。广成子焚香接敕，望阙谢恩毕。子牙迎接仙翁至殿中坐下，共言殷郊之事。仙翁曰：“子牙，吉辰将至，你等可速破了殷郊，我暂且告回。”众仙送仙翁回宫。燃灯曰：“今有聚仙旗，可以擒殷郊。只是还少两三位可助成功。”话犹未了，哪吒来



He knelt on the gold steps of the palace, kowtowed, and reported, "Golden Mother! I'm your minor servant, the Immortal of the South Pole. I've come to report that the sage king has already appeared, and the singing of a phoenix has been heard at Mount Qi. As the immortals are destined to break the commandment on killing, a conference was held by the three religions at the Jade Emptiness Palace, and a resolution was unanimously passed to create those who died into Gods. But Yin Jiao, disciple of Master Grand Completion, has disobeyed his master's instructions and opposes the will of Heaven. He is attacking West Qi and hindering Jiang Ziya's inauguration. We must see to it that Yin Jiao fulfills his oath to die under a hoe. By order of the Jade Emptiness Palace, I'm here to ask you for the White Cloud Bound Flag to take care of Yin Jiao."

The immortal heard sweet music, and the gold doors opened. Four pairs of celestial maids appeared carrying the White Cloud Bound. Giving it to him, they said, "Her Majesty the Golden Mother decrees, 'King Wu should be blessed with the kingdom while King Zhou, for his cruelty and wickedness, should die. Your actions are in accordance with the will of Heaven so I will give you the flag. You may go now.'"

The Immortal of the South Pole expressed his thanks for her kindness and left the Jade Pond. He went straight to West Qi, where Master Grand Completion burned incense in honor of the flag. Jiang Ziya entertained him in the prime minister's mansion.

"Brother Jiang! Your lucky day will come very soon. First you must get rid of Yin Jiao. I'll return home for the time being," the Immortal of the South Pole said and bade farewell to them all.

"Though we've got all the flags now, we still need a couple of immortals to help us," Burning Lamp said.

He had barely finished speaking when Nezha came in. "Uncle! Master Pure Essence is at the gate."



报：“赤精子来至。”子牙迎至殿前，广成子曰：“我与道兄一样，遭此不肖弟子。”彼此嗟叹。又报：“文殊广法天尊来至。”见了子牙，口称：“恭喜！”子牙答曰：“何喜可贺？连年征伐无休，日不能安食，夜不得安寝；怎能得静坐蒲团，了悟无生之妙也！”燃灯道：“今日烦文殊道友，可将青莲宝色旗往西岐山震地驻扎；赤精子用离地焰光旗在岐山离地驻扎；中央戊己乃贫道镇守；西方聚仙旗须得武王亲自驻扎。”子牙曰：“这个不妨。”随即请武王至相府。子牙不提起擒殷郊之事，只说是：“请大王往岐山退兵；老臣同往。”武王曰：“相父分付，孤自当亲往。”话说子牙掌聚将鼓，令黄飞虎领令箭，冲张山大辕门；邓九公冲左粮道门；南宫适冲右粮道门；哪吒、杨戩在左；韦护、雷震子在右；黄天化在后；金木二吒、李靖父子三人掠阵。正是：

计就月中擒玉兔，谋成日里捉金马。

子牙分付停当，先同武王往岐山，安定西方地位。

且说张山、李锦见营中杀气笼罩，上帐见殷郊，言曰：“千岁，我等驻扎在此，不能取胜，不如且回兵朝歌，再图后举。千岁意下如何？”殷郊曰：“我不曾奉旨而来。待吾修本，先往朝歌，求援兵来至，料此一城有何难破？”张山曰：“姜尚用兵如神，兼有玉虚门下甚众，亦不是小敌耳。”殷郊曰：“不妨。连吾师也惧吾番天印，何况他人！”三人共议至抵暮。有一更时分，只见黄飞虎带领一枝人马，点炮呐喊，杀进辕门；真是父子兵，一拥而进，不可抵挡。殷郊还不曾睡，只听得杀声大振，忙出帐，上马拎戟，掌起灯笼火把。灯光内只见黄家父子杀进辕门。殷郊大呼曰：“黄飞虎，你敢



Jiang Ziya went out to usher in Master Pure Essence. Master Grand Completion came up, saying, "We're unlucky to share the same fate."

They both sighed. A moment later, the Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture arrived. When the immortal congratulated him, Jiang Ziya replied, "I really have nothing worthy of congratulation. As the war drags on, I can't just sit in meditation on a rush cushion to obtain the secrets of immortality."

"Heavenly Master, take the Green Lotus and wait on the east side of Mount Qi. Master Pure Essence, you go to the south with the Soaring Flame. I'll be in the center with the Yellow Apricot, and King Wu will be in the west with the White Cloud Bound. I just don't know if King Wu will help us or not," Burning Lamp said.

"Don't worry, Brother," Jiang Ziya said. When King Wu arrived Jiang Ziya did not mention Yin Jiao. He asked King Wu, "Would Your Majesty come with me to Mount Qi to review our army?"

"As it's your wish, of course I'll go."

Jiang Ziya had the drums beaten to convene his generals. He ordered, "Huang Feihu, attack Zhang Shan's camp gate. Deng Jiugong, take the left camp and Nangong Kuo, the right camp. Nezha and Yang Jian, take up positions on the left and Wei Hu and Thunderbolt, the right. Huang Tianhua, bring up the rear. Li Jing, Jinzha, and Muzha, act as reinforcements."

As the generals left, Jiang Ziya set out with King Wu for Mount Qi. When Zhang Shan and Li Jin observed the unusual military activity within the city, they went to see Yin Jiao. "Your Highness! As we cannot win the day, it would be better for us to withdraw to Zhaoge and make preparations for a new attack in the future. What do you think, Your Highness?"

"Though I didn't come here by royal command, I'll send a report to His Majesty with a request for reinforcements. When they arrive, it won't be difficult to destroy the city," Yin Jiao replied.

"We shouldn't make the situation any worse for ourselves. Jiang Ziya knows his business and has many disciples from the Jade Emptiness Palace to help him. They're formidable enemies," Zhang Shan remarked.

"Don't worry. Even my master is scared of the Heaven Overturning Stamp," Yin Jiao boasted proudly.

They continued the discussion till dusk. At the first watch cannons suddenly roared, and they found Huang Feihu at their camp gate with a strong army. Father and sons fought fiercely, sweeping away all opposi-



来劫营，是自取死耳！”黄飞虎曰：“奉将令，不敢有违。”摇枪直取。殷郊手中戟急架忙迎。黄天禄、黄天爵、黄天祥等一裹而上，将殷郊围在垓心。只见邓九公带领副将太鸾、邓秀、赵升、孙焰红冲杀左营；南宫适领辛甲、辛免、太颠、闷夭直杀进右营；李锦接住厮杀；张山战住邓九公。哪吒、杨戩抢入中军，来助黄家父子。哪吒的枪只在殷郊前后心窝、两肋内乱刺；杨戩的三尖刀只在殷郊顶上飞来。殷郊见哪吒登轮，先将落魂钟对哪吒一晃。哪吒全然不理。祭番天印打杨戩。杨戩有八九玄功，迎风变化，打不下马来。故此殷郊着忙。夤夜交兵，苦杀了成汤士卒！

只因为主安天下，马死人亡满战场。

话说哪吒祭起一块金砖，正中殷郊的落魂钟上，只打得霞光万道。殷郊大惊。南宫适斩了李锦，也杀到中营来助战。张山与邓九公大战，不防孙焰红喷出一口烈火，张山面上被火烧伤，邓九公赶上一刀，劈于马下。九公领众将官也冲杀至中军，重重叠叠把殷郊围住，——枪刀密匝，剑戟森罗，如铜墙铁壁。殷郊虽然是三首六臂，怎经得起这一群狼虎英雄——俱是“封神榜”上恶曜。又经得雷震子飞在空中，使开金棍刷将下来。殷郊见大营俱乱，张山、李锦皆亡，殷郊见势头不好，把落魂钟对黄天化一晃。黄天化翻下玉麒麟来。殷郊乘此走出阵来，往岐山逃遁。众将官鸣锣擂鼓，追赶三十里方回。黄飞虎督兵进城，俱进相府，候子牙回兵。

且说殷郊杀到天明，止剩有几个残兵败卒。殷郊叹曰：“谁知如此兵败将亡！俺如今且进五关，往朝歌见父借兵，再报今日之恨不迟。”因策马前行。忽见文殊广法天尊站立前



tion. Yin Jiao got on his horse, grabbed his halberd, and met the Huangs in the dim light.

“Huang Feihu! You’ll meet your death tonight.”

“We’re here under orders,” Huang Feihu replied.

As Yin Jiao battled with the Huangs, Deng Jiugong, Tai Luan, Deng Xiu, Sun Yanhong, and Zhao Sheng stormed into the left camp, and Nangong Kuo, Xin Jia, Xin Mian, Tai Dian, and Hong Yao attacked the right camp. They met vigorous resistance from Li Jin and Zhang Shan respectively.

Nezha and Yang Jian rushed into the central camp to help Huang Feihu. Nezha’s lance brushed close to Yin Jiao, and Yang Jian’s cutlass missed his head by only inches. Yin Jiao hastily rung his Soul Dropping Bell at Nezha, but it was ineffective, as Nezha was made of lotus flowers. He then cast up the Heaven Overturning Stamp to hurt Yang Jian, but that was ineffective too, as Yang Jian could transform himself. Yin Jiao became flustered.

Nezha cast up his gold brick, hitting the Soul Dropping Bell so hard that red sparks flew in all directions. Yin Jiao became greatly alarmed. By this time, Nangong Kuo had finished off Li Jin. Zhang Shan was burned in the face when Sun Yanhong spat fire at him, and Deng Jiugong struck him dead.

Though Yin Jiao had three heads and six arms, he could not withstand the combined attack from the Zhou generals. He was surrounded by swords, lances, and cutlasses on all sides. With both Zhang Shan and Li Jin dead, he knew that the situation was hopeless. He rang his bell at Huang Tianhua and brought him down from his jade unicorn. He seized the chance and ran away towards Mount Qi. Huang Feihu chased him thirty *li* before he returned to the city.

At dawn Yin Jiao found that only a few soldiers had followed him. He groaned. “Who could have known that I would suffer such a terrible defeat! I must go back to Zhaoge for reinforcements from my father. It won’t be too late for revenge then,” he decided.



面而言曰：“殷郊，今日你要受犁锄之厄！”殷郊欠身，口称：“师叔，弟子今日回朝歌，老师为何阻吾去路？”文殊广法天尊曰：“你入罗网之中，速速下马，可赦你犁锄之苦。”殷郊大怒，纵马摇戟，直取天尊。天尊手中剑急架忙迎。殿下心慌，祭起番天印来。文殊广法天尊忙将青莲宝色旗招展。好宝贝：白气悬空，金光万道，现一粒舍利子。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

万道金光隐上下，三乘玄妙入西方。要知舍利无穷妙，  
治得番天印渺茫。

文殊广法天尊展动此宝，只见番天印不能落将下来。殷郊收了印，往南方离地而来。忽见赤精子大呼曰：“殷郊，你有负师言，难免出口发誓之灾！”殷郊情知不杀一场也不得完事，催马摇戟来刺赤精子。赤精子曰：“孽障！你兄弟一般，俱该如此，乃是天数，俱不可逃。”忙用剑架戟。殷郊复祭番天印就打。赤精子展动离地焰光旗。——此宝乃玄都宝物，按五行奇珍。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

鸿濛初判道精微，产在离宫造化机。今日岐山开展处，  
殷郊难免血沾衣。

赤精子展开此宝，番天印只在空中乱滚，不得下来。殷郊见如此光景，忙收了印，往中央而来。燃灯道人叫殷郊曰：“你师父有一百张犁锄候你！”殷郊听罢着慌，口称：“老师，弟子不曾得罪与众位师尊，为何各处逼迫？”燃灯曰：“孽障！你发愿对天，出口怎免。”殷郊乃是一位恶神，怎肯干休，便气冲牛斗，直取过来。燃灯口称：“善哉！”将剑架戟。未及三合，殷郊发印就打。燃灯展开了杏黄旗。——此宝乃玉虚宫



As he galloped along, the Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture suddenly appeared before him. The immortal called, "Yin Jiao! You shall die under a hoe today!"

"Uncle! Why do you stop me?" Yin Jiao asked with a bow.

"You're already in the trap now. Get down from your horse and surrender, Yin Jiao."

In a great rage, Yin Jiao spurred his horse forward and attacked the immortal with his halberd. The Heavenly Master returned the blow with his sword. Yin Jiao panicked and cast up the stamp, but the Heavenly Master unrolled the Green Lotus, and a luminous stone soared into the sky, shining brightly with a golden light. The stamp floated to and fro, unable to descend. Yin Jiao had to retrieve the stamp and flee towards the south.

"Yin Jiao! You must fulfil your oath," Master Pure Essence yelled. As Yin Jiao urged his horse forward with his halberd, the immortal said, "You damned fool! You two brothers will meet the same fate. It is destined by Heaven."

As Master Pure Essence parried with his sword, Yin Jiao cast the stamp into the air. The immortal instantly unrolled his Soaring Flame, and the stamp could only turn over and over in the air. As before, Yin Jiao had to take the stamp back, and this time he fled toward the center.

"Your master's waiting for you with a hundred hoes, Yin Jiao!" Burning Lamp shouted.

Yin Jiao was filled with fear. "Master! I've never offended you. Why do you attack me from every side?"

"You damned fool! You swore an oath to Heaven. How can you avoid disaster?"

Yin Jiao was destined to be a fierce God. Enraged by the immortal, he attacked with all his might. Burning Lamp met the assault with his sword. After three rounds, Yin Jiao threw up the stamp, but Burning Lamp unrolled the Yellow Apricot. Thousands of golden lotus flowers soared into





奇珍。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

执掌昆仑按五行，无穷玄法使人惊。展开万道金光现，  
致使殷郊性命倾。

殷郊见燃灯展开杏黄旗，就有万朵金莲现出，番天印不得下来，恐被他人收去了，忙收印在手。忽然望见正西上一看，见子牙在龙凤幡下。殷郊大叫一声：“仇人在前，岂可轻放！”纵马摇戟，大呼：“姜尚！吾来也！”武王见一人三首六臂，摇戟而来，武王曰：“谗杀孤家！”子牙曰：“不妨。来者乃殷郊殿下。”武王曰：“既是当今储君，孤当下马拜见。”子牙曰：“今为敌国，岂可轻易相见，老臣自有道理。”武王看：殷郊来得势如山倒一般，滚至面前，也不答话，直一戟刺来有声。子牙剑急架忙迎。只一合，殷郊就祭印打来。子牙急展聚仙旗。——此乃瑶池之宝，只见氤氲遍地，一派异香，笼罩上面，番天印不得下来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

五彩祥云天地迷，金光万道吐虹霓。殷郊空用番天印，  
咫尺犁锄顶上挤。

子牙见此旗有无穷大法，番天印当作飞灰，子牙把打神鞭祭起来打殷郊。殷郊着忙，抽身望北面走。燃灯远见殷郊已走坎地，发一雷声，四方呐喊，锣鼓齐鸣，杀声大振。殷郊催马向北而走。四面追赶，把殷郊赶得无路可投，往前行山径越窄。殷郊下马步行，又闻后面追兵甚急，对天祝曰：“若吾父王还有天下之福，我这一番天印把此山打一条路径而出，成汤社稷还存，如打不开，吾今休矣。”言罢，把番天印打去。只见响一声，将山打出一条路来。殷郊大喜曰：“成汤天下还不能绝。”便往山路就走。只听得一声炮响，两山头俱



the air, preventing the stamp from descending. Fearing that he would lose his weapon, Yin Jiao quickly retrieved it, and took a glance to the west. He was enraged to see Jiang Ziya waiting there under dragon and phoenix banners.

"My enemy's right there. I can't let him get away," he thought urging his horse forward. "Jiang Ziya! Here I come!"

When he saw the creature with three heads and six arms rushing toward them carrying a halberd, King Wu shrieked, "Horrible! Horrible! It'll frighten me to death!"

"Don't worry, Your Highness. That's the crown prince, Yin Jiao," Jiang Ziya explained.

"The crown prince! I must get down from my horse and bow before him," King Wu said.

"No, you can't do that. We're enemies. I'll deal with him."

Yin Jiao swept up with a great force and stabbed at Jiang Ziya without uttering a word. Jiang Ziya had to meet the attack with his sword. After just one round, Yin Jiao impatiently threw the stamp into the air. Jiang Ziya unrolled the White Cloud Bound, forcing the stamp to remain floating above them. Yin Jiao took back the stamp and fled northward.

Just then, Burning Lamp evoked a great peal of thunder that shook the whole sky, and at the beating of drums and gongs, the Zhou army set off in pursuit. As Yin Jiao galloped northward, the path became narrower, and he had to abandon his horse and run on foot.

As the enemy closed in behind him, he prayed to Heaven, "If my father is still to be the ruler of the kingdom, may I knock out a path with my stamp and escape danger. If not, may I die today." He raised his hand and hurled the stamp at the mountain. With a great crash, the mountain split in two, leaving a road wide enough for him to run through. Yin Jiao uttered in great delight, "So the Shang Dynasty will last yet!"

是周兵卷上山顶来，后面又有燃灯道人赶来。殷郊见左右前后俱是子牙人马，料不能脱得此难，忙借土遁，往上就走。殷郊的头方冒出山尖，燃灯道人使用手一合，二山头一挤，将殷郊的身子夹在山内，头在山外。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。

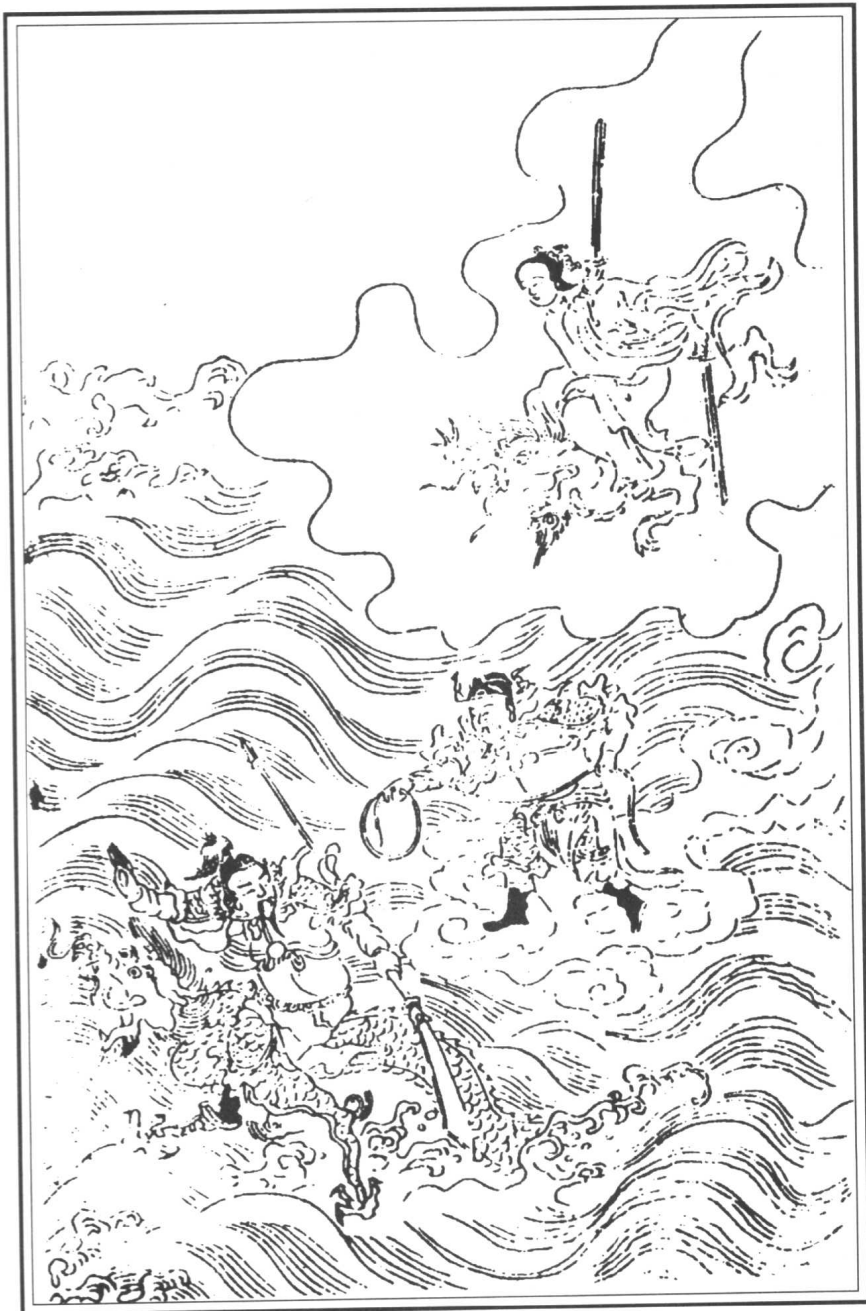


He ran as fast as he could, but with a cannon shot, the Zhou soldiers rushed up both sides of the mountain. Burning Lamp followed close behind. Surrounded on all sides, Yin Jiao knew it would be difficult to evade disaster. He mounted his dust cloud and rose up from the crevice, but the moment his head emerged above the surface of the mountain, Burning Lamp clapped his hands together and the mountain closed up. Yin Jiao's body was trapped inside, with only his head sticking out.

What became of Yin Jiao? If you want to know, you must read the next chapter.









## 第六十六回

### 洪锦西岐城大战

诗曰：

奇门遁术阵前开，斩将搴旗亦壮哉。黑焰引魂遮白日，  
青幡掷地画尘埃。三山关上多英俊，五气崖前有异才。  
不是仙娃能幻化，只因月老作新媒。

话说燃灯合山，挤住殷郊，四路人马齐上山来。武王至山顶上，看见殷郊这等模样，滚鞍下马，跪于尘埃，大呼：“千岁！小臣姬发，奉法克守臣节，并不敢欺君枉上。相父今日令殿下如此，使孤有万年污名。”子牙挽扶武王而言曰：“殷郊违逆天命，大数如此，怎能脱逃。大王要尽人臣之道，行礼以尽主公之德可也。”武王曰：“相父今日把储君夹在山中，大罪俱在我姬发了。望列位老师大开恻隐，怜念姬发，放了殿下罢！”燃灯道人笑曰：“贤王不知天数。殷郊违逆天命，怎能逃脱，大王尽过君臣之礼便罢了。大王又不可逆天行事。”武王两次三番劝止。子牙正色言曰：“老臣不过顺天应人，断不敢逆天而悞主公也。”武王含泪，撮土焚香，跪拜在地，称“臣”泣诉曰：“臣非不救殿下，奈众老师要顺守天命，实非臣之罪也。”拜罢，燃灯请武王下山，命广成子推犁上山。广成子一见殷郊这等如此，不觉落泪。正是：

只因出口犁锄愿，今日西岐怎脱逃。

只见武吉犁了殷郊。——殷郊一道灵魂往封神台来；清福神

## Chapter 66

### Hong Jin Attacks West Qi

Everyone rushed up to the place where Yin Jiao was securely clamped inside the mountain. When he saw Yin Jiao in such an awkward position, King Wu scrambled down from his saddle. "Your Highness! Your minor minister Ji Fa is a law-abiding and faithful servant, never daring to cheat His Majesty in the least. What my prime minister has done today will defile my name for 10,000 years."

Jiang Ziya raised King Wu to his feet. "Yin Jiao has opposed the will of Heaven. He cannot escape the punishment that's been destined by fate. You may salute him, but that's all you can do."

"Father-prime minister! It's all my fault. Have mercy on him and pardon him from death," King Wu begged.

"Your Highness! You don't understand. Yin Jiao has opposed Heaven and cannot be forgiven. You may pay your respects, but don't do anything against the will of Heaven," Burning Lamp put in.

King Wu pleaded again and again for Yin Jiao, but Jiang Ziya said resolutely, "I can only obey the will of Heaven and men. How dare I oppose it?"

King Wu lit incense sticks, knelt down, and sobbed, "I've tried my best, yet all the masters insist that you be punished. Forgive me, for it is not my fault."

When King Wu was finished, they escorted him down the mountain. Then Burning Lamp asked Master Grand Completion to present the hoe. Grand Completion could not help weeping as Yin Jiao lost his head.







祇柏鉴用百灵幡来引殷郊。——殷郊怨心不服，一阵风径往朝歌城来。纣王正与妲己在鹿台饮酒。好风！怎见得，有赞为证：

刮地遮天暗，愁云照地昏。鹿台如泼墨，一派靛妆成。  
先刮时扬尘播土，次后来倒树推林。只刮得嫦娥抱定梭罗树，空中仙子怎腾云。吹动昆仑顶上石，卷得江河水浪浑。

话说纣王在鹿台上正饮酒，听得有人来，纣王不觉昏沉，就席而卧。见一人三首六臂，立于御前，口称：“父王，孩儿殷郊为国而受犁锄之厄。父王可修仁政，不失成汤社稷。当任用贤相，速拜元戎，以任内外大事。不然，姜尚不久便欲东行，那时悔之晚矣！孩儿还要诉奏，恐封神台不纳，孩儿去也！”纣王惊醒，口称：“怪哉！”妲己、胡喜妹、王贵人三人共席欠身，忙问曰：“陛下为何口称‘怪哉’？”纣王把梦中事说了一遍。妲己曰：“梦由心作，陛下勿疑。”纣王乃酒色昏君，见三妖娇态，把盏传杯，遂不在心。只见汜水关韩荣有本进朝歌告急。其本至文书房，微子看本，看见如此，心下十分不乐，将此本抱入内庭。纣王正在显庆殿。当驾官启奏：“微子候旨。”王曰：“宣。”微子至殿前，行礼毕，将汜水关韩荣报本呈上。纣王展看，见张山奉敕征讨失利，又带着殷郊殿下绝于岐山。纣王看毕大怒，与众臣曰：“不道姬发自立武王，竟成大逆；屡屡征伐，损将折兵，不见成功。为今之计，可用何卿为将？若不早除，恐为后患。”班内一臣乃中谏大夫李登，进礼称“臣”曰：“今天下不静，刀兵四起，十余载未宁。虽东伯侯姜文焕、南伯侯鄂顺、北伯侯崇



At the Terrace of Creation, Yin Jiao's soul still felt dissatisfied. It refused to enter but flew to Zhaoge with a violent wind to complain to his father. The great wind turned the day into night, filling the sky with gloomy clouds, uprooting trees, and churning the rivers into waves.

King Zhou was drinking on the Happy Terrace when he heard a voice in the howling wind. He grew drowsy and went to bed, falling asleep immediately. He saw a man with three heads and six arms standing before him, praying, "My dear father. I'm your eldest son, Yin Jiao. My head was cut off with a hoe for the sake of the kingdom. Be virtuous and save the Shang Dynasty. Select a good man as prime minister as soon as possible, or else, Jiang Ziya will march on Zhaoge, and it will be too late for regrets. Though I still have a lot to tell you, I must leave now lest I'm refused admission at the Terrace of Creation. I'm going now, Father."

"What a wonder! How strange!" King Zhou cried, startled out of his sleep. As Daji, Hu Ximei, and Concubine Wang all slept with him in the same bed, they too woke up and asked, "What is it, Your Majesty? What's wrong?"

When King Zhou told them of his dream, Daji said, "This dream is the product of your own mind. Don't believe it, Your Majesty."

King Zhou was deluded by wine and women. He dismissed the dream and continued to amuse himself with his queen and concubines. Before long, an urgent report came from Han Rong of Sishui Pass. After Prince Wei Zi read it, he rushed to the Celebration Court to see King Zhou.

When he heard that both Zhang Shan and Yin Jiao had lost their lives, King Zhou was furious. He announced to his ministers, "Ji Fa has rebelled and set himself up as King Wu. We've sent many generals to attack him but have suffered defeat every time. Who do you recommend as commander this time? We'll have no end of trouble if we don't eradicate this evil."

Supreme Minister Li Deng left his line, moved forward, and knelt before the king. "It's clear now that Jiang Wenhuan, E Shun, and Chong



黑虎，此三路不过癣疥之疾；独西岐姜尚助姬发而为不道，肆行祸乱，其志不小。论朝歌城内，皆非姜尚之敌手。臣荐三山关总兵官洪锦，才术双全，若得此臣征伐，庶几大事可定。”纣王即传旨，赍敕往三山关，命洪锦得专征伐。使命持诏，径往三山关来。一路无词，一日来至三山关馆驿中安下。次日，洪锦待佐贰官接旨，开读毕，交代官乃是孔宣。不日俟孔宣交代明白，洪锦领十万雄师，离了高关，往西岐进发。好人马！怎见得，有赞为证：

一路上：旌旗迷丽日，杀气乱行云。刀枪寒飒飒，剑戟冷森森。弓弯秋月样，箭插点寒星。金甲黄邓邓，银盔似玉钟。锣响惊天地，鼓擂似雷鸣。人是貔貅猛，马似蛟龙雄。今往西岐去，又送美前程。

话说洪锦一路行来，兵过岐山。哨马报入中军：“人马已至西岐了。”洪锦传令：“安营。”立下寨栅。先行官季康、柏显忠上帐参见。洪锦曰：“今奉敕征讨，尔等各宜尽心为国。姜尚足智多谋，非同小敌，须是谨慎小心，不得造次草率。”二将曰：“谨领台命。”次日，季康领令出营，至西岐城下搦战。探马报入相府。子牙大喜：“三十六路征伐，今日已满，可以打点东征。”忙问曰：“那一员将官去走一遭？”南宫适愿往。子牙许之。南宫适领命出城，见季康犹如一块乌云而至。南宫适曰：“来者何人？”季康答曰：“吾乃洪总兵麾下正印官季康是也；今奉敕征伐。尔等叛逆之徒，理当受首辕门，尚敢领兵拒敌，真是无法无君！”南宫适笑曰：“似你这等不堪之类，西岐城也不知杀了百万，又在你这一二人而已！快快回兵，免你一死。”季康大怒，纵马舞刀直取。南宫适



Heihu are insignificant. Only Ji Fa and Jiang Ziya harbor great ambition and want to create chaos. There's no match for Jiang Ziya in the capital. I venture to recommend Commander Hong Jin of Sanshan Pass to command the new punitive forces. He's highly skilled in both military strategy and magic technique. I dare suggest that he could accomplish his mission."

King Zhou approved the recommendation and sent his decree by royal messenger to Sanshan Pass. Hong Jin accepted the new appointment and handed his old one over to Kong Xuan. He marched toward West Qi with 100,000 soldiers.

When they arrived, Hong Jin warned his generals, Ji Kang and Bai Xianzhong, "We must be careful because Jiang Ziya's a shrewd man."

"We'll do as you've ordered," both answered.

The next day, General Ji Kang was sent to the city wall to challenge West Qi. Jiang Ziya was delighted to hear the news. "This is the last invasion; after this we can march eastward." He then asked anxiously, "Who would like to go and meet the challenge?"

Nangong Kuo answered and led his soldiers out of the city. He saw a general racing towards him like a piece of black cloud. "Who's that coming?"

"I'm Ji Kang. We're under royal orders to wipe you out. How dare you resist us!"

"We've slaughtered millions of fools like you. You'd better get out of here if you want to save your life," Nangong Kuo replied with a laugh.

In a rage, Ji Kang urged his horse forward. Nangong Kuo fought



手中刀赴面相迎。二将战有三十回合，季康乃左道傍门，念动咒语，顶上现一块黑云，云中现出一只犬来，把南宫适夹膊子上一口，连袍带甲，扯去半边，几乎被季康刀劈了。南宫适唬得魂不附体，败进城，至相府回话，将咬伤一事诉说了一遍。子牙不乐。只见季康进营，见洪锦，言：“得胜，伤南宫适败进城去了。”洪锦大喜：“头阵胜，阵阵胜。”次日，柏显忠上马，至城下请战。探马报入相府。子牙问：“谁人出马？”有邓九公应曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。邓九公开放西岐城，走马至军前，认得是柏显忠，大呼曰：“柏显忠！天下尽归明主，你等今日不降，更待何时？”柏显忠曰：“似你这匹夫，负国大恩，不顾仁义，乃天下不仁不智之狗彘耳！”邓九公大怒，催开坐骑，使开合扇大刀，直取柏显忠。显忠挺枪刺来。二将交锋，如同猛虎摇头，不亚狮子摆尾，只杀得天昏地暗。怎见得，有赞为证：

这一个顶上金盔飘烈焰；那一个黄金甲挂连环套。这一个猩猩血染大红袍；那一个粉素征袍如白练。这一个大刀挥如闪电光；那一个长枪恰似龙蛇现。这一个胭脂马跑鬼神惊；那一个白龙驹走如银霰。红白二将似天神，虎斗龙争真不善。

二将大战二三十回合，邓九公乃是有名大将，展开刀如同闪电，势不可当。柏显忠那里是九公敌手，被九公卖个破绽，手起一刀，把柏显忠挥于马下。邓九公得胜进城，至相府回话：“斩了柏显忠首级报功。”子牙令：“将首级号令城上。”且说洪锦见折了一将，在中军大怒，咬牙切齿，恨不得平吞了西岐。次日，领大队人马，坐名要子牙答话。哨马报入相府。



back with his own cutlass. After about thirty rounds, Ji Kang recited an incantation, and a layer of black cloud rose from the top of his head. A dog emerged from the cloud, pounced on Nangong Kuo's arm, and bit deeply into the flesh. Taken by surprise, Nangong Kuo was nearly slashed by Ji Kang. He returned to the city and reported to Jiang Ziya what had happened; Jiang Ziya was extremely displeased. Hong Jin was delighted that Ji Kang had won the first battle. He sent General Bai Xianzhong the next day.

With the approval of Jiang Ziya, Deng Jiugong went to meet the challenge. "Listen, Bai Xianzhong! The whole kingdom has pledged allegiance to the enlightened monarch. What are you waiting for? Why don't you join forces with us as well?"

"You old bastard! You show no gratitude for royal kindness. You're as mean and base as a dog or a pig!"

This enraged Deng Jiugong, and he spurred his horse forward. Bai Xianzhong parried with his lance. After twenty rounds, Deng's skill and speed proved too much for Bai. Finding Bai's weak point, Deng Jiugong raised his cutlass and slashed fiercely, bringing him down dead. He then returned with the head of his enemy. Jiang Ziya put his merit on record and hung the head on a pole on top of the city wall as a warning to the enemy.

At the loss of one of his generals, Hong Jin gnashed his teeth in a fury, longing to devour West Qi. The following day he went to the front, demanding Jiang Ziya in person. At the roar of cannons, the city gate opened



子牙闻报，即时排队伍出城。炮声响处，西岐门开，一枝人马而出。洪锦看城内兵来，纪律严整，又见左右归周豪杰，一个个胜似虎狼，那三山五岳门人，飘飘然俱有仙风道骨，两傍雁翅排开。宝纛旗下乃开国武成王黄飞虎。子牙坐四不相，穿一身道服，体貌自别。怎见得，有诗为证：

金冠如鱼尾，道服按东方。丝绦悬水火，麻鞋系玉珰。  
手执三环剑，胸藏百炼钢。帝王师相品，万载把名扬。

话说洪锦走马至军前，大呼曰：“来者是姜尚么？”子牙答曰：“将军何名？”洪锦曰：“吾乃奉天征讨大元戎洪锦是也。尔等不守臣节，违天作乱，往往拒敌王师，法难轻贷。今奉旨特来征讨尔等，拿解朝歌，以正国法。若知吾利害，早早下骑就擒，可救一郡生灵涂炭。”子牙笑曰：“洪锦，你既是大将，理当知机。天下尽归周主，贤士尽叛独夫；料你不过一泓之水，能济甚事。今诸侯八百齐伐无道，吾不久会兵孟津，弔民伐罪，以救生民涂炭，削平祸乱。汝等急急早降，乃归有道，自不失封侯之位耳。尚敢逆天以助不道，是自取罪戾也。”洪锦大骂：“好老匹夫！焉敢如此肆志乱言！”遂纵马舞刀，冲过阵来。傍有姬叔明大呼曰：“不得猖獗！”催开马，摇枪直取洪锦。二将杀在一堆。姬叔明乃文王第七十二子，这殿下心性最急，使开枪势如狼虎，约战有三四十合。洪锦乃左道术士出身，他把马一夹，跳在圈子外面，将一皂旗往下一戳，把刀望上一晃，那旗化作一门，洪锦连人带马径进旗门而去。殿下不知，也把马赶进旗门来。此时洪锦看得见姬叔明；姬叔明看不见洪锦，马头方进旗门，洪锦在旗门里一刀把姬叔明挥于马下。子牙大惊。洪锦收了旗门，依



wide and Hong Jin saw a great army march out in perfect order. There were bold generals that looked like fierce tigers and Taoist disciples with the air of celestials. Prince Huang Feihu rode under a great banner. Dressed in Taoist robes, Jiang Ziya sat astride his nondescript horse with an air different from that of ordinary mortals.

“Is that Jiang Ziya?” Hong Jin asked.

“What’s your name, General?” Jiang Ziya asked instead of giving a direct reply.

“I’m Commander Hong Jin. As you oppose the will of Heaven and resist His Majesty, I’ve been ordered to take you back to Zhaoge for trial. If you know anything about me, you’d better dismount and surrender immediately, otherwise the people of the whole city will suffer for it.”

Jiang Ziya laughed. “If you’re such a great general, how can you be so ignorant of what is happening here! Don’t you see that nearly the whole kingdom has come over to Zhou? All the 800 marquises have agreed to combine their forces and topple the tyrant. We’ll soon be meeting in Mengjin to save the people from further suffering. If you continue to support the tyrant, you’ll simply bring disaster upon yourself.”

Enraged, Hong Jin spurred his horse forward, brandishing a cutlass. He was intercepted by Ji Shuming, the seventy-second son of King Wen. Ji Shuming was hot-tempered and wielded his lance fiercely, but Hong Jin was a great sorcerer. After some thirty rounds, he pulled his horse out of the circle, planted a black flag in the ground, and swung his cutlass before it. The flag turned into a door, and the Shang general raced through.

How could the prince give Hong Jin up? He chased him through the door, never imagining that Hong Jin was hiding inside. As Ji Shuming entered, Hong Jin raised his cutlass and slashed the prince down from his horse, killing him instantly.

Hong Jin folded up his flag and reappeared on the front. “Who would like to meet me next?”





旧现身，大呼曰：“谁来与吾见阵？”傍有邓婵玉走马至军前，大呼：“匹夫！少待恃强！吾来也！”洪锦看见一员女将奔来，金盔金甲，飞临马前。怎见得，有诗为证：

女将生来正幼龄，英风凛凛貌娉婷。五光宝石飞来妙，  
辅国安民定太平。

邓婵玉一马冲至阵前。洪锦已不答话，舞刀直取。佳人手中双刀急架忙迎。洪锦暗思：“女将——不可恋战，速斩为上策。”洪锦依然去把皂幡如前用度，也把马走入旗门里面去了，只说邓婵玉赶他。不知婵玉有智，也不来赶，忙取五光石往旗门里一石打来，听得洪锦在旗门内“哎哟”一声，面已着伤，收了旗幡，败回营去了。子牙回兵进府，又见伤了一位殿下，郁郁不爽，纳闷在府。

且言洪锦被五光石打得面上眼肿鼻青，激得只是咬牙，忙用丹药敷贴，一夜全愈。次日，上马亲至城下，坐名只要女将。哨马报入相府，言：“洪锦只要邓婵玉。”子牙无计，只得着人到后面来说。土行孙见人来报，忙对邓婵玉曰：“今日洪锦坐名要你，你切不可进他旗门。”婵玉曰：“我在三山关大战数年，难道左道也不知？我岂有进他旗门去的理。”二人正议论间，时有龙吉公主听见，忙出净室，问曰：“你二人说甚么？”土行孙对：“成汤有一大将洪锦，善用幻术，将皂旗一面，化一旗门，殿下姬叔明赶进去，被他一刀送了性命。昨与婵玉交战，他又用皂幡，被他不赶，只一石往里面打去，打伤此贼。他今日定要婵玉出马，故此弟子分付他今日切不可赶他。如若不去，使他说吾西岐无人物。”龙吉公主笑曰：“此乃小术，叫做‘旗门遁’。皂幡为内旗门，白幡



"You damned bastard! Don't brag so! Here I come," Deng Chanyu yelled loudly and spurred her horse forward.

Seeing the female general in gold armor, Hong Jin moved into attack without a word. They began to fight back and forth fiercely.

"I won't waste time fighting here. I'd better finish her off as soon as possible," Hong Jin thought.

He repeated his trick. He planted his flag, turned it into a door, and went inside, expecting that Deng Chanyu would follow. He did not realize that Deng Chanyu was far more clever than he. She did not chase him inside but took out a colored pebble and hurled it at the flag. Behind the door, Hong Jin was hit and wounded, and shrieking with pain, he withdrew to his camp. Jiang Ziya returned to the city, unhappy at the loss of the prince.

Hong Jin's eyes became swollen and his nose turned blue. He gnashed his teeth in fury but cured his wound with medicine during the night. The next day he mounted his horse, rode to the city wall, and demanded to see the female general that had hurt him.

At the report that "Hong Jin demands Deng Chanyu," Jiang Ziya sent for her from the back chamber. Earth Traveler Sun became worried. "My dear! Be very, very careful. Don't venture inside the flag door."

"Don't worry. I had years of experience at Sanshan Pass. I can see Hong Jin is a sorcerer, but he can't fool me. I won't chase him beyond the door."

"What are you two talking about?" Princess Long Ji asked, overhearing their conversation.

"There's a General Hong Jin of the Shang army. Yesterday he turned his black flag into a door and killed Prince Ji Shuming, but when he tried the trick on Deng Chanyu, she didn't chase him but wounded him seriously with a stone. He hates her so much that he's challenged her again now. I was warning her not to fall for his trick and chase him inside the door." Earth Traveler Sun told the princess the whole story.

Princess Long Ji smiled. "I know this trick. It's called the 'flag door magic.' There are two doors: The black flag is an inner door, while a white flag forms the outer door. I'll deal with him for you."



为外旗门。既然如此，待吾收之。”土行孙上银安殿，对子牙把龙吉公主的事说了一遍。子牙大喜，忙请公主上殿。公主见子牙，打稽首，曰：“乞借一坐骑，待吾去收此将。”子牙令取五点桃花驹。龙吉公主独自出马，开了城门，一骑当先。洪锦见女将来至，不是邓婵玉。洪锦问曰：“来者乃是何人？”龙吉公主曰：“你也不必问我。我要说出来，你也不知。你只是下马受死，是你本色。”洪锦大笑，骂曰：“好大胆贱人，焉敢如此！”纵马舞刀来取。公主手中鸾飞剑急架忙迎。二骑交锋，只三四合，洪锦又把内旗门遁使将出来。公主看见，也取出一首白幡，往下一戳，将剑一分，白幡化作一门，公主走马而入，不知所往。洪锦及至看时，不见了女将，大惊。——不知外旗门有相生相克之理。龙吉公主从后面赶将出来，公主虽是仙子，终是女流，力气甚少，及举剑望洪锦背上砍来。正中肩甲，洪锦“哎哟”一声，不顾旗门皂幡，往正北上逃走。龙吉公主随后赶来，大叫：“洪锦速速下马受死！吾乃瑶池金母之女，来助武王伐纣。莫说你有道术，便赶你上天入地，也要带了你的首级来！”望前紧赶。洪锦只得舍生奔走。往前久赶，看看赶上，公主又曰：“洪锦莫想今日饶你！吾在姜丞相面前说过，定要斩你方回。”洪锦听罢，心下着忙，身上又痛，自思：“不若下马借土遁逃回，再作区处。”龙吉公主见洪锦借土遁逃走，笑曰：“洪锦这五行之术，随意变化，有何难哉！吾也来！”下马借木遁赶



Earth Traveler Sun immediately went to see Jiang Ziya and told him what Princess Long Ji had said. Delighted at the news, the prime minister invited her to see him.

Bowing before Jiang Ziya, Princess Long Ji said, "Lend me a horse. I'll go to see Hong Jin."

Jiang Ziya gave her a spotted steed and she rode out of the city alone. When Hong Jin saw a different female general from the one he was expecting, he asked, "Who's that coming?"

"You needn't ask. You wouldn't know me even if I told you. What you ought to do now is to get down from your horse and bow to your death."

"You bold hussy! How dare you!"

Hong Jin struck at the princess, who returned the blow with her Phoenix Flying Sword. After three rounds, Hong Jin played his old trick again. Ignoring him, the princess took out a white flag, planted it in the ground, and pointed at it with her sword. It turned into a white door, which she jumped through on her horse. No one knew where she had gone. Hong Jin was greatly astonished when the female general disappeared, then she was right behind him. She slashed at Hong Jin's back with all her strength but only hit the armor near his shoulder. Hong Jin gave a cry of surprise and ran toward the north.

Princess Long Ji chased after him, yelling, "I'm none other than the daughter of Golden Mother at the Jade Pond. I'll chase you through the sky or below the earth till I've got your head in my hand."

Hong Jin ran for his life, but the princess gradually closed in. She shouted from behind, "Don't think that I'm going to give you up! I've promised Prime Minister Jiang that I'll return with your head!"

Her words frightened Hong Jin, and his body began to ache. "I'd better abandon my horse," he thought.

Seeing him mount a dust cloud, the princess smiled. "Hong Jin! I'll get you no matter what element you travel on."



来。——取“木能克土”之意。看看赶至北海，洪锦自思曰：“幸吾有此宝在身，不然怎了？”忙取一物，往海里一丢。那东西见水重生，搅海翻波而来。——此物名曰鲸龙。洪锦脚踏鲸龙，奔入海内而去。龙吉公主赶至北海，只见洪锦跨鲸而去。怎见得，有赞为证：

烟波荡荡，巨浪悠悠。烟波荡荡接天河，巨浪悠悠连地脉。潮来汹涌，水浸湾还。潮来汹涌，犹如霹雳吼三春；水浸湾还，却似狂风吹九夏。乘龙福老，往来必定皱眉行；跨鹤仙童，反覆果然忧虑过。近岸无村舍，傍水少渔舟。浪卷千层雪，风生六月秋。野禽凭出没，沙鸟任浮沉。眼前无钓客，耳畔只闻鸥。海底鱼游乐，天边鸟过愁。

话言龙吉公主赶至北海，见洪锦跨鲸而逃。公主笑曰：“幸吾离瑶池带得此宝而来。”忙向锦囊中取出一物，也往海里一丢。那宝贝见水，复现原身，滑喇喇分开水势，如泰山一般。——此宝名为神鲸；原身浮于海面。公主站立于上，仗剑赶来。此神鲸善降鲸龙。起头鲸龙入海，搅得波浪滔天；次后来神鲸入海，鲸龙无势。龙吉公主看看赶上，祭起捆龙索，命黄巾力士：“将洪锦速拿往西岐去！”黄巾力士领娘娘法旨，凭空把洪锦拎去，拿往西岐，至相府，往阶下一摔。子牙正与众将官共议军情，只见空中摔下洪锦，子牙大喜。不知洪锦性命如何，且听下回分解。



The princess also dismounted from her steed and chased Hong Jin riding on a wooden cloud. Of the five elements, wood can subdue earth. Chased to the North Sea, Hong Jin thought to himself, "How lucky I am to have brought this treasure with me!"

He took out an object and threw it into the sea. As soon as it touched water, it turned into a giant Whale Dragon and swam to Hong Jin through high waves. Hong Jin climbed on its back and rode out to sea, churning up violent waves that crashed like the roar of summer thunder.

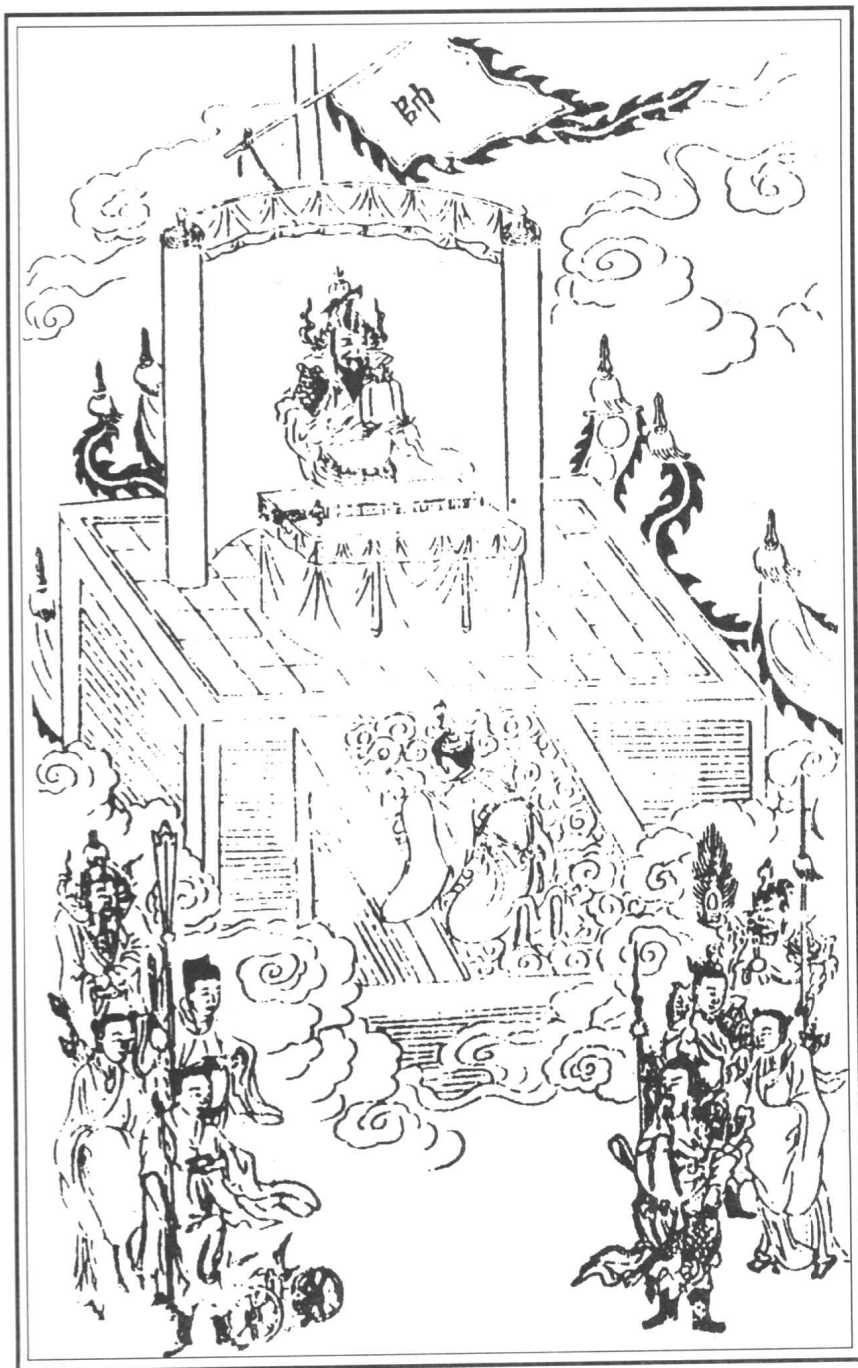
When she saw the Whale Dragon, the princess smiled again. "It's fortunate that I brought this treasure with me when I left the Jade Pond."

She also took out an object from her satin bag and threw it into the sea. As soon as it touched water, it recovered its original form, an enormous, beautiful creature which could float on the surface or glide through the violent waves. It was called the Divine Dolphin and had the power to subdue the Whale Dragon.

The princess stepped onto the back of the Divine Dolphin, and when it entered the sea, the Whale Dragon lost all its strength and floated about wearily. The violent waves grew calm, and the dragon was soon overtaken. The princess cast up her Dragon Binding Rope and took Hong Jin alive. Then she ordered her genii to carry him to West Qi. Jiang Ziya was astonished to see Hong Jin suddenly drop from the air.

If you want to learn what happened to Hong Jin, please read the next chapter.







## 第六十七回

### 姜子牙金台拜将

诗曰：

金台拜将若飞仙，斗大黄金肘后悬。梦入熊罴方实地，  
年登耄耋始朝天。延绵周室承先业，树列齐封启后贤。  
福寿两端人罕及，帝王师相古今传。

话说子牙见捉了洪锦，料知龙吉公主成功。将洪锦放下丹墀。少时，龙吉公主进相府。子牙欠身谢曰：“今日公主成莫大之功，皆是社稷生民之福。”公主曰：“自下高山，未与丞相成尺寸之功，今日捉了洪锦，但凭丞相发落。”龙吉公主道罢，自回净室去了。子牙令左右将洪锦推至殿前，问曰：“似你这等逆天行事之辈，何尝得片甲回去？”命：“推将出去，斩首号令！”有南宫适为监斩，候行刑令下，方欲开刀，只见一道人忙奔而来，喘息不定，只叫：“刀下留人！”南宫适看见，不敢动手，急进相府来，禀曰：“启丞相得知：未将斩洪锦，方欲开刀，有一道人只叫‘刀下留人’。未敢擅便，请令定夺。”子牙传：“请。”少时，那道人来至殿前，与子牙打了稽首。子牙曰：“道兄从何处来？”道人曰：“贫道乃月合老人也；因符元仙翁曾言龙吉公主与洪锦有俗世姻缘，曾绾红丝之约，故贫道特来通报；二则可以保子牙兵度五关，助得一臂之力。子牙公不可违了这件大事。”子牙暗想：“他乃蕊宫仙子，吾怎好将凡间姻缘之事与他讲？”乃令邓婵玉先去见龙



## Chapter 67

### Jiang Ziya as Commander

When he saw Hong Jin, Jiang Ziya knew that Princess Long Ji had won the day. When she returned, Jiang Ziya bowed courteously and thanked her. "Congratulations. This is a blessing for both the state and the people."

"I felt sorry that I had contributed nothing of worth," Long Ji replied.

Jiang Ziya ordered his men to bring Hong Jin before him. He cursed the general, "You dare oppose the will of Heaven! But you can't get away with it!"

He ordered that Hong Jin be put to death, but just as the executioner was lifting his cutlass, a Taoist rushed up panting. "Stop," he cried.

Nangong Kuo ordered the executioner to wait and went to see Jiang Ziya for further orders.

When he was ushered in, the Taoist bowed and greeted Jiang Ziya. The prime minister asked politely, "Where do you come from, Brother?"

"I'm Heavenly Matchmaker. Incantations Immortal told me that Hong Jin and Long Ji were destined to be man and wife. If you spare him, he'll help you when you march on the five passes."

"I can't discuss this further with him because he's from the Jade Pond," Jiang Ziya thought. He asked Deng Chanyu to see Long Ji about the matter.





吉公主，就将月合仙翁之言先禀过，方可再议。邓婵玉径进内庭，请公主出净室议事。公主忙出来，见邓婵玉，问曰：“有何事见我？”邓婵玉曰：“今有月合仙翁言公主与洪锦有俗世姻缘，曾绾红丝之约，该有一世夫妻，现在殿前与丞相共议此事，故丞相先着妾身启过娘娘，然后可以面议。”公主曰：“吾因在瑶池犯了清规，特贬我下凡，不得复归瑶池与吾母子重逢。今下山来，岂得又多此一番俗孽耶。”邓婵玉不敢作声。少时，月合仙翁同子牙至后厅。龙吉公主见仙翁稽首。仙翁曰：“今日公主已归正道，今贬下凡间者，正要了此一段俗缘，自然反本归元耳。况今子牙拜将在途，那时兵度五关，公主该与洪锦建不世之勋，垂名竹帛。候功成之日，瑶池自有旌幡来迎接公主回宫。此是天数，公主虽欲强为，不可得矣。所以贫道受符元仙翁之命，故不辞劳顿，亲自至此，特为公主作伐。不然，洪锦刚赴法行刑，贫道至此，不迟不早，恰逢其时，其冥数可知。公主当依贫道之言，不可误却佳期，罪愆更甚，那时悔之晚矣。公主请自三思！”龙吉公主听了月合仙翁一篇话，不觉长吁一声：“谁知有此孽冤所系！——既是仙翁掌人间婚姻之牒，我也不能强辞，但凭二位主持。”子牙、仙翁大喜，遂放了洪锦，用药敷好剑伤。洪锦自出营招回季康人马，择吉日与龙吉公主成了姻眷。正是：

天缘月合非容易，自有红丝牵系来。

话说洪锦与龙吉公主成了姻亲，乃纣王三十五年三月初三日。西岐城众将，打点东征，一应钱粮，俱各停当，只等子牙上出师表。翌日，武王设聚早朝，王曰：“有奏章出班，无事朝散。”言未毕，有姜丞相捧出师表上殿。武王命接上



“What do you wish to discuss?” the princess asked Deng Chanyu when she entered.

“Heavenly Matchmaker’s here. He told Prime Minister Jiang that you are destined to marry Hong Jin. The prime minister would like to see you.”

“I was sent down to this vulgar world as punishment. How can I burden myself with marriage?” Long Ji said with a sigh.

Deng Chanyu dared not ask any further. She returned and told Jiang Ziya what the princess had said. The prime minister and Heavenly Matchmaker went to see the princess in person.

After the greetings were over, Heavenly Matchmaker said to Long Ji, “Dear princess! Jiang Ziya will soon march through the five passes, and you and Hong Ji are to achieve great merit on this expedition. You can’t resist fate. Had it not been destined, how could I have arrived here just before the execution took place? Princess, take my advice. Don’t make another mistake. Make up your mind before it’s too late.”

Hearing his speech, Long Ji heaved a long sigh. “I never expected that I would become so involved in this vulgar world. Since you’ve got the power over marriages, how can I resist! I must obey your order.”

Both Heavenly Matchmaker and Jiang Ziya were delighted to hear her reply. Hong Jin was set free and treated with medicine. He returned to his own camp, bringing over Ji Kang and the whole army. He wedded Long Ji on a lucky date: the third day of the third month in the 35th year of the reign of King Zhou.

With all its provisions and weapons ready, West Qi was prepared to march eastward. When King Wu held court the next day, Jiang Ziya moved forward to present his memorial, proposing to attack the tyrant with the other nobles.



来。奉御官将表文开于御案上。武王从头看玩：

“进表丞相臣姜尚。臣闻惟天地万物父母，惟人万物之灵。天佑下民，作之君，作之师。惟其克相上帝，宠绥四方，作民父母。今商王受弗敬上天，降灾下民，流毒邦国，剥丧元良，贼虐谏辅，狎侮五常，荒怠不敬，沉湎酒色，罪人以族，官人以世；惟宫室、台榭、陂池、侈服以残害于万姓；遗厥先宗庙弗祀；播弃黎老，昵比罪人；惟妇言是用，焚炙忠良，剝剔孕妇；崇信奸回，放黜师保；屏弃典刑，囚奴正士；杀妻戮子，惟淫酗是图，作奇技淫巧，以悦妇人；郊社不修，宗庙不享。商罪贯盈，天人共怒。今天下诸侯大会于孟津，兴吊民伐罪之师，救生民于水火，乞大王体上天好生之心，孚四海诸侯之念，思天下黎庶之苦，大奋鹰扬，择日出师，恭行天罚，则社稷幸甚，臣民幸甚！乞赐详示施行。谨具表以闻。”

武王览毕，沉吟半晌。王曰：“相父此表，虽说纣王无道，为天下共弃，理当征伐；但昔日先王曾有遗言：‘切不可以臣伐君。’今日之事，天下后世以孤为口实。况孤有辜先王之言，谓之不孝。总纣王无道，君也。孤若伐之，谓之不忠。孤与相父共守臣节，以俟纣王改过迁善，不亦善乎。”子牙曰：“老臣怎敢有负先王；但天下诸侯布告中外，诉纣王罪状，不足以君天下，纠合诸侯，大会孟津，昭畅天威，兴吊民伐罪之师，观政于商，前有东伯侯姜文焕、南伯侯鄂顺，北伯侯崇黑虎具文书知会，如那一路诸侯不至者，先问其违抗之罪，次伐无道。老臣恐悞国家之事，因此上表，请王定

After he finished reading the memorial, King Wu remained silent for a long time. He then said, "Prime Minister! King Zhou has been forsaken by the people, and in this respect it's all right to attack him. Yet our late king, my father, warned us: no matter what, a minister should never attack his king. If I approve your proposal, I'll be criticized by future generations for being unfilial as I will have disobeyed my father. I will also be seen as disloyal. Though he's unkind, King Zhou is the king. We might just wait until he repents. Don't you think that would be much better?"

"How dare I forget the king's last words! But the nobles are going to meet at Mengjin, and if we don't attend, I'm afraid I'll be held responsible. I hope you'll consider this."





夺，愿大王裁之。”武王曰：“既是他三路欲伐成汤，听他等自为。孤与相父坐守本土，以尽臣节：上不失为臣之礼，下可以守先王之命。不亦美乎？”子牙曰：“惟天为万物父母，惟人万物之灵，亶聪明，作元后，元后作民父母。今商王受荼毒生民，如坐水火，罪恶贯盈，皇天震怒，命我先王，大勋未集耳。今大王行吊民伐罪之师，正代天以彰天讨，救民于水火。如不顺上天，厥罪惟均。”只见上大夫散宜生上前奏曰：“丞相之言乃为国忠谋，大王不可不听。今天下诸侯大会孟津，大王若不以兵相应，则不足取信于众人，则众人不服，必罪我国以助纣为虐。倘移兵加之，那时反不自遗伊戚。况纣王信谗，屡征西土，黎庶遭惊慌之苦，文武有汗马之劳，今方安宁，又动天下之兵，是祸无已时。以臣愚见，不若依相父之言，统兵大会孟津，与天下诸侯陈兵商郊，观政于商，俟其自改，则天下生民皆蒙其福，又不失信于诸侯，遗灾于西土；上可以尽忠于君，下可以尽孝于先王，可称万全策。乞大王思之。”武王听得散宜生一番言语，不觉忻悦，乃曰：“大夫之言是也。不知用多少人马？”宜生奏曰：“大王兵进五关，须当拜丞相为大将军，付以黄钺、白旄，总理大权，得专阃外之政，方可便宜行事。”武王曰：“但凭大夫主张；即拜相父为大将军，得专征伐。”宜生曰：“昔黄帝拜风后，须当筑台，拜告皇天、后土、山川、河渚之神，捧毂，推轮，方成拜将之礼。”武王曰：“凡一应事宜，俱是大夫为之。”武王朝散。宜生又至相府恭贺。百官俱各各欣悦。众门人个个喜欢。宜生次日至相府对子牙说，令南宫适、辛甲往岐山监造将台。当时二人至岐山，拣选木植砖石之物，克日兴工。也



“They may do as they please, but you and I should remain loyal ministers, don’t you think?”

“How can we bear to see the poor suffer? It’s a crime if we don’t obey the wishes of Heaven.”

San Yisheng moved forward and said to King Wu, “I hope you’ll listen to him, Your Highness. The people will be disappointed if we don’t act now. Besides, King Zhou has attacked us so many times. We’ll be unable to live in peace if we don’t take things into our own hands. I agree with the prime minister’s suggestion. We can join the nobles in a united front and then wait for the King to repent. In this way, the people of the whole kingdom can enjoy peace and we’ll gain the full trust of the nobles. We’ll remain the filial descendants of our ancestors and faithful ministers of the king. You may consider it in this light, Your Highness.”

King Wu was delighted with this idea and he said, “You’re right, dear Minister. Tell me how large will our army be?”

“If we advance eastward, you must appoint the prime minister as commander; grant him the yellow axe and white scepter and empower him with full authority. He can then manage political affairs on all sides,” San Yisheng replied.

“I’ll do as you suggest and appoint Jiang Ziya commander plenipotentiary.”

“According to the rites, we must build a high terrace which you can use to offer prayers to Heaven, earth, the rivers and mountains. You then must ask the commander to ride in an imperial carriage which you will push to the terrace.”

“Please arrange everything for me, Minister,” King Wu said.

San Yisheng then visited Jiang Ziya to offer his congratulations, and the next day, he ordered Nangong Kuo and Xin Jia to build the terrace.





非一日，将台已完，二将回报子牙。宜生入内庭回武王旨，曰：“臣奉旨监造将台已完，谨择良辰，于三月十五日，请大王至金台，亲拜相父。”武王准旨，俟至日行礼。

且说子牙三月十三日立辛甲为军政司，先将“斩法纪律牌”挂在帅府，使众将各宜知悉。辛甲领令，挂出帅府。

扫荡成汤天宝大元帅姜条约示谕大小众将知悉：  
——只见各款开列于后：

其一

闻鼓不进，闻金不退，举旗不起，按旗不伏，此为慢军；犯者斩。

其二

呼名不应，点视不到，违期不至，动乖纪律，此为欺军；犯者斩。

其三

夜传刁斗，怠而不报，更筹违度，声号不明，此为懈军；犯者斩。

其四

多出怨言，毁谤主将，不听约束，梗教难治，此为横军；犯者斩。

其五

扬声笑语，蔑视禁约，晓谕军门，此为轻军；犯者斩。

其六

所用兵器，克削钱粮，致使弓弩绝弦，箭无羽镞，剑戟不利，旗帜凋敝，此为贪军；犯者斩。



About ten days later, the terrace was completed. San Yisheng went to see King Wu and reported, "As you ordered, we have built the terrace on Mount Qi. We have chosen the 15th day of the third month for you to announce the appointment."

King Wu agreed with the plan, and on the 13th day of the third month Jiang Ziya appointed General Xin Jia as Chief Justice of the military court. He then issued the military regulations and stuck them on the front wall of the court so that they would be known by all.

The military regulations contained the following clauses:

First, those who do not advance when they hear the beating of the drums, do not retreat when they hear the sounding of the gongs, do not rise and go forward when they see that the banner has been raised, or do not lie down when the banner has been lowered are considered slow to act. Those who violate these rules should be sentenced to death.

Second, those who do not react appropriately to others, do not answer the roll call, do not come back to the camp on time or violate discipline are considered cheats. Those who violate these rules should be sentenced to death.

Third, those who are keen on play or fond of drink, do not report wrongdoing and plan activities which violate regulations or convey wrong orders are considered sluggish. Those who violate these rules should be sentenced to death.

Fourth, those who always complain and defame generals, do not obey orders and correct their mistakes are considered rude. Those who violate these rules should be sentenced to death.

Fifth, those who make a loud noise, defy bans or cast abuse are considered frivolous. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Sixth, those who embezzle money and steal cereals causing a shortage of money for the repair of weaponry are considered to be embezzlers. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.



其七

谣言诡语，造捏鬼神，假托梦寐，大肆邪说，鼓惑将士，此为妖军；犯者斩。

其八

奸舌利齿，妄为是非，调拨士卒，互相争斗，致乱行伍，此为刁军；犯者斩。

其九

所到之地，凌侮百姓，逼淫妇女，此为奸军；犯者斩。

其十

窃人财物，以为己利，夺人首级，以为己功，此为盗军；犯者斩。

其十一

军中聚众议事，近帐私探信音，此为探军；犯者斩。

其十二

或闻所谋，及闻号令，漏泄于外，使敌人知之，此为背军；犯者斩。

其十三

调用之际，结舌不应，低眉俯首，面有难色，此为怯军；犯者斩。

其十四

出越队伍，搀前乱后，言语喧哗，不遵禁约，此为乱军；犯者斩。

其十五

托伤诈病，以避征进，捏故假死，因而逃脱，此为奸军；犯者斩。



Seventh, those who create and spread rumors, believe in ghosts and gods, use dreams as a pretext to spread fallacy, or agitate officials and soldiers are considered to be goblins. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Eighth, those who are wicked and crafty, confuse right and wrong, stir up trouble or fight each other are considered untrustworthy. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Ninth, those who insult local residents, or perform obscenities on women by force are considered treacherous. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Tenth, those who steal money or articles belonging to others or denigrate the achievements of others are considered robbers. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Eleventh, those who cause a disturbance in the camp or eavesdrop messages are considered spies. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Twelfth, those who reveal military plans and requirements to the enemy are traitors. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Thirteenth, those who do not accept any changes in their jobs and demonstrate their refusal by their facial expressions are considered timid. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Fourteenth, those who leave their lines, rush backwards and forwards making a noise, or do not obey orders are considered trouble makers. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Fifteenth, those who pretend to be ill or wounded to avoid battle or pretend to be dead so that they may flee away are considered dishonest. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.



### 其十六

主掌钱粮，给赏之时，阿私所亲，使士卒结怨，此为弊军；犯者斩。

### 其十七

观寇不审，探贼不详，到不言到，多则言少，少则言多，此为悞军；犯者斩。

话说子牙将“斩法牌”挂于帅府，众将观之，无不敬谨。

且说宜生至十四日，入内庭见武王，曰：“请大王明日清晨至相府，请丞相登坛。”武王曰：“拜将之道，如何行礼？”宜生曰：“大王如黄帝拜风后，方成拜将之礼。”武王曰：“卿言正合孤意。”次日乃三月十五日吉辰，武王带领合朝文武齐至相府前。只听里面乐声响过三番，军政司令门官：“放炮开门。”只见三声炮响，相府门开。宜生引道，武王随后，至银安殿。军政司忙禀请元帅升殿：“有千岁亲来拜请元帅登辇。”子牙忙从后面道服而出。武王乃欠身言曰：“请元帅登辇。”子牙慌忙谢过，同武王分左右并行至大门。武王欠身打一躬。两边扶子牙上辇。宜生请武王亲扶凤尾，连推三步。后人诗赞子牙末年叨此荣宠，诗曰：

周主今朝列将台，风云龙虎四门开。  
香生满道衣冠引，紫气当天御仗来。  
统领貔貅添瑞彩，安排士马尽崔嵬。  
磻溪今日人龙出，八百开基说异才。

话说子牙排仪仗出城，只见前面七十里俱是大红旗，直摆到西岐山。西岐百姓，扶老携幼，俱来观看。子牙至岐山，将近将台边，有一座牌坊上，有一幅对联：

“三千社稷归周主，一派华夷属武王。”

话说众将分道而行。武王至将台边一看，只见将台高耸，甚



Sixteenth, those who are in charge of money and cereals and award others according to their relationship with them, thus causing complaints from other soldiers are considered cheats. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

Seventeenth, those who are careless when they are scouting the enemy or lie about the information they collect are considered frivolous soldiers. Those who violate these rules and regulations should be sentenced to death.

On the 14th day of the third month San Yisheng went to see King Wu and said, "Would you please go personally to invite the prime minister to the terrace?"

"How should I conduct myself at the appointment?" he asked.

"Remember how the Yellow Emperor appointed Feng Hou as his commander, Your Highness?"

"Yes. I understand exactly what you mean."

The next day King Wu went with all his officials to call on Jiang Ziya. Music and the roar of cannon fire filled the air. San Yisheng strode forward to guide the king.

Entering the Silver Security Court in the prime minister's mansion, San Yisheng and King Wu invited Jiang Ziya to the terrace on Mount Qi. When Jiang Ziya appeared in his Taoist robes, King Wu bowed. "Commander!" he addressed him, "Please ride in my carriage."

Jiang Ziya offered his thanks and they walked together to the gate. King Wu bowed to Jiang Ziya again and helped him into the imperial carriage. Finally, San Yisheng asked King Wu to push the carriage forward three steps.

The highway from the city wall to Mount Qi was marked with red flags and crowded with people. Men and women, young and old had all come out to watch the procession and applaud Jiang for this honor at such an old age.

When they got to Mount Qi, King Wu saw the magnificence of the



是崑崙轩昂。怎见得，但见：

台高三丈，象按三才。阔二十四丈，按二十四气。台有三层：第一层台中立二十五人，各穿黄衣，手持黄旗，按中央戊己土；东边立二十五人，各穿青衣，手持青旗，按东方甲乙木；西边立二十五人，各穿白衣，手持白旗，按西方庚辛金；南边立二十五人，各穿红衣，手持红旗，按南方丙丁火；北方立二十五人，各穿皂衣，手持皂旗，按北方壬癸水。第二层是三百六十五人，手各执大红旗三百六十五面，按周天三百六十五度。第三层立七十二员牙将，各执剑、戟、抓、锤，按七十二候。三层之中，各有祭器、祝文。自一层之下，两边仪仗，雁翅排列。真是衣冠整肃，剑戟森严，从古无两。

只见散宜生至鸾舆前，请武王出舆。武王忙下舆。宜生曰：“大王可至元帅前，请元帅下辇。”武王行至辇前，欠身曰：“请元帅下辇。”子牙忙令中军扶下辇来。宜生引导子牙至台边。散宜生赞礼曰：“请元帅面南背北。”散宜生开读祝文：

“维大周十有三年，孟春丁卯，朔丙子，西周武王姬发遣上大夫散宜生敢昭告于五岳，四渎，名山大川之神曰：呜呼！惟天惠民，惟辟奉天，抚绥众庶，克底于道。今商王受弗敬上天，降灾下民，惟妇言是用，昏弃厥祀弗答，昏弃厥遗王父、母、弟不迪，乃惟四方之多罪，逋逃是崇，是长，是信，是使，是以为大夫卿士，俾暴虐于百姓，以奸宄于商邑。今发夙夜祇惧，若不顺天，厥罪惟均。谨择今日，特拜姜尚为大将军，恭行天讨，伐罪吊民，永清四海。所赖神祇相我众士，以克厥



terrace. It was thirty feet high and square in shape. In the center of the first floor stood twenty-five guards in yellow uniform holding yellow flags. Another twenty-five stood on the east side in green uniform, with the same number on the west in white uniform and in the south in red. The last twenty-five in black uniform stood to the north. There were 365 guards on the second floor arranged in a circle of 365 degrees, and on the third floor stood seventy-two generals, holding swords, halberds, cutlasses, hammers, and other weapons. Ritual utensils and prayer manuscripts were also arranged on every floor.

San Yisheng helped King Wu out of the imperial sedan chair. "Your Highness! You may go to the imperial carriage to help the commander."

King Wu approached the imperial carriage and bowed. "Commander, please dismount. We've arrived at Mount Qi."

As soon as Jiang Ziya stepped from the imperial carriage, he was escorted by San Yisheng to the terrace. San Yisheng then announced, "Commander! Please face south."

Jiang Ziya did as he requested and San Yisheng declared, "King Wu of Zhou has sent San Yisheng, the supreme minister, to pray before the Gods of the five mountains and four rivers: Heaven is kind and allows everyone to live in peace. But now King Zhou of Shang disrespects Heaven and had caused the people to suffer. He is completely deluded by women; he has forsaken his ancestors; he does not respect the ethical codes between his family members, and he trusts only the bootlickers. King Wu, your humble servant, worries about the country day and night. Jiang Ziya is appointed commander to pacify the people and attack the tyrant so that the territories within the four seas can enjoy eternal peace. May all the Gods bless us and help us to victory."





勋。伏惟尚飨！”

话说散宜生读罢祝文，有周公旦引子牙上第二层台。周公旦赞礼曰：“请元帅面东背西。”周公旦开读祝文：

“维大周十有三年，孟春丁卯，上朔丙子，西周武王姬发遣周公旦敢昭告日，月，星辰，风伯，雨师，历代圣帝明王之神曰：呜呼！天有显道，厥类惟彰。今商王受乃夷居弗事上帝神祇，遗厥先宗庙弗祀，沉湎酒色，淫酗肆虐；惟宫室台榭是崇，焚炙忠良，剝剔孕妇，以残害于下民，牺牲粢盛，既于凶盗，乃曰‘吾有民有命’，罔惩其侮。皇天震怒，命发诛之。发曷敢有越厥志。自思：欲济斯民，匪才不克。今特拜姜尚为大将军，取彼凶残，杀伐用张。仰赖神祇翊卫启迪，吐纳风云，嘘咈变化，拯救下民，恭行天罚，克定厥勋，于汤有光。伏惟尚飨！”

周公旦读罢祝文。有召公奭引子牙上第三层台。毛公遂捧武王所赐黄钺、白旄，祝曰：“自今以后，奉天征讨，罚此独夫，为生民除害，为天下造福，元戎往勛之哉！”子牙跪受黄钺、白旄，乃令左右执捧。礼官赞礼曰：“请元戎面北，拜受龙章凤篆。”子牙跪拜。左右歌“中和”之曲，奏“八音”之章，乐声嘹唳，动彻上下。召公奭开读祝文：

“维大周十有三年，孟春丁卯，上朔丙子，西岐武王姬发敢昭告昊天上帝，后土神祇曰：呜呼！天矜于民。民之所欲，天必从之。今商王受狎侮五常，荒怠弗敬，自绝于天，结怨于民，斲朝涉之胫，剖贤人之心，作威杀戮，毒痛四海，崇信奸回，放黜师保，屏弃典刑，囚奴



When he had finished, Ji Dan, Duke of Zhou, led Jiang Ziya to the second floor of the terrace. "Commander!" he addressed him, "Would you please face east?"

The duke then read out another prayer, "King Wu of West Qi has sent his minister, Ji Dan, to offer this prayer to the Gods of the sun, moon, stars, wind, rain, and the spirits of the saint emperors of all generations: Heaven rules the universe according to principle, but King Zhou of Shang has forgotten his ancestors in the imperial temple. He is fond of women and wine and of extravagant palaces and mansions. He burns loyal ministers to death and has caused the people to suffer. Heaven has ordered that the tyrant be punished, and Jiang Ziya is appointed as commander to attack the vicious ruler. May all the Gods bless us and help us toward victory."

When he finished, Ji Shi, Duke of Shao, led Jiang Ziya to the third floor where Ji Sui, Duke of Mao, handed over the yellow imperial axe and the white scepter granted by King Wu to Jiang Ziya. He announced, "Hereafter you are appointed commander of the army. You may use the yellow imperial axe and white scepter to punish the tyrant."

"Commander! Please kneel to the north to receive the dragon and phoenix seals," the master of the ceremonies requested.

With music playing in the background, Jiang Ziya knelt down to receive the seals, and finally, Ji Shi read the last prayer, "Ji Fa, King Wu of West Qi, prays before Heaven and earth: Heaven is always merciful and kind to the people and grants the people their every wish.

"King Zhou of the Shang Dynasty, however, does not respect the five ethical relationships but has severed himself from Heaven and the people. He took out the heart of a faithful minister. He confined a kind and proper grand duke in gaol. He pleases his women with lewd tricks. He has thus been forsaken by all the Gods.



正士，郊社不修，宗庙不享，作奇技淫巧，以悦妇人，无辜吁天，上帝弗顺，祝降时丧。臣发曷敢有越厥志，祇承上帝，以遏乱略，华夏蛮貊，罔不率俾。惟我先王，为国求贤，聘请姜尚以助发；今特拜为大将军，大会孟津，以彰天讨，取彼独夫，永清四海。所赖有神，尚克相予，以济兆民，无作神羞；克成厥勋，诞膺天命，以抚方夏。恳祈照临，永光西土。神其鉴兹。伏惟尚飨！”

召公奭读罢祝文，子牙居中而立。军政司上台，启元帅：“发鼓竖旗。”两边鼓响，拽起宝纛旗来。军政司请元帅戴护顶之宝。军政官用红漆端盘，捧上一顶金盔来。怎见得：

黄邓邓，耀水镜；玲珑花，巧样称。竖三叉，攒四凤。  
六瓣六楞紫金盔，纓络翻，硃砂迸。珊瑚碧玉周围绕，  
玛瑙珍珠前面钉。

军政司将盔捧与子牙戴上。又传令：“取袍甲上台。”军政官高捧袍铠，献在台上。怎见得：

龙吞口，兽吞肩。红似火，赤似烟。老君炉，曾烧炼，  
千锤打，万锤颠。绿绒扣，紫绒穿。进铜锤，扛铁鞭。  
锁子文，甲上悬。披一领，按南方丙丁火，茜草茜，胭脂抹。  
五彩装，花千朵。遍金织就大红袍。系一条四指阔，  
羊脂玉，玛瑙厢，琥珀砌，紫金雀舌八宝攒就白玉带。

话说姜元帅金装甲胄立于台上。军政司传：“取印、剑上台。”军政官捧剑、印上台，又捧一架，架上有三般令天子、协诸侯之物；内有令天子旗，令天子剑，令天子箭。正见印、剑上

“Your servant always does his best to serve the Gods and dares not rebel. I have tried to enable the people within the kingdom and the savages beyond the borders to enjoy peace and prosperity.

“For the nation’s sake, our late king appointed men with virtue and merit to serve the country. Jiang Ziya was entrusted to help me rule the nation. I now appoint him commander of the army to join the nobles and defeat the tyrant. The people will then be freed from trouble. May all the Gods stand on our side and bless us with the victory we pray for.”

After the third prayer was read by Ji Shi, Jiang Ziya stood in the center to listen to the drums and see the great banner hoisted high. A red tray holding a gold helmet covered with coral, blue jade, agate, and pearls was then presented to Jiang Ziya. Jiang put the helmet on.

Soon a robe and armor were carried forward. The robe had a belt inlaid with white jade. Jiang was helped into the robe and armor. A tray was then presented with the imperial flag, imperial seal, and imperial





台来，有诗为证：

黄金斗大掌貔貅，杀伐从来神鬼愁。吕望今朝登台后，  
乾坤一统属西周。

话说军政司将印、剑捧至子牙面前。子牙将印、剑接在手中，高捧过眉。散宜生请武王拜将。武王在台下大拜八拜。武王拜罢，子牙令辛甲把令天子旗将武王请上台来。少时，辛甲执旗大呼曰：“奉元帅将令，请武王上台！”武王随令旗上台。子牙传令：“请开印、剑。”请武王面南端坐。子牙拜谢毕，跪而奏曰：“老臣闻国不可从外而治，军不可从中而御，二心不可以事君，疑志不可以应敌。臣既受命，尊节钺之威，岂敢不效驽骀，以报知遇之恩也。”武王曰：“相父今为大将东征，但愿早至孟津，会兵速返，孤之幸矣。”子牙谢恩。武王下台，众将听候指挥。子牙传令：“军政官与众得知，俱于三日后在教军场听点。今日有三山五岳众道兄与我饯别。”辛甲领命，传与众将知悉。武王同文武百官俱在金台。

子牙离了将台，往岐山正南而来。有哪吒领诸门人来迎接子牙。只见甲冑威仪，十分壮丽。来至芦篷，只见玉虚门下十二弟子拍手大笑而来，对子牙曰：“相将威仪，自壮行色，子牙真人中之龙也！”子牙欠背打躬曰：“多蒙列位师兄抬举，今日得握兵权，皆众师兄之赐也，而姜尚何能哉！”众仙曰：“只等掌教圣人来至，吾辈才好奉酒。”话犹未了，只听得空中一派笙簧，仙乐齐奏。怎见得，有诗为证：

紫气空中绕帝都，笙簧嘹亮白云浮。青鸾丹凤随鸾驾，  
羽扇幡幢傍辘轳。对对金童云里现，双双玉女珮声殊。  
祥光瑞彩多灵异，周室当兴应赤符。



sword, representing supreme power. When Jiang received these things and held them with both hands over his eyebrows, San Yisheng asked King Wu to prostrate himself before the terrace and announce the appointment. King Wu did as he was told. He knelt down and bowed three times to Jiang from below the terrace.

After the ceremony was over, Jiang Ziya ordered Xin Jia to carry the imperial flag and escort King Wu up to the terrace. General Xin Jia descended and with the imperial flag in hand, shouted, "By order of the commander, Your Highness is requested to ascend the terrace." When King Wu arrived, Jiang Ziya ordered, "Would you please, Your Highness, open the caskets and make the seal and sword ready."

King Wu did as he was told. Then Jiang Ziya asked him to sit down facing south. He knelt down and thanked the king for his appointment. "I, your aged servant, have learned that a country cannot enjoy peace, the army cannot defend itself, and the ministers cannot serve their master well, unless they perform their duties wholeheartedly. As you have appointed me as commander and invested me with power, I must do my best to return your grace."

"May you reach Mengjin and meet the nobles as soon as possible. I'll rejoice at your swift return," King Wu replied.

King Wu left the terrace and Jiang Ziya ordered, "Notify all the generals that I'll meet them in three days. I'll be busy until then receiving congratulations from my immortal brothers."

He then left the terrace and went to the south side of Mount Qi. He was met by Nezha and his other disciples, fully clad in armor, looking smart and gallant. The twelve disciples of Jade Emptiness Palace, greeted him with laughter and applause inside a tent. "You're a dignified commander," they said, "Really the dragon among humans and the flower of flowers, dear Brother."

Jiang Ziya bowed and replied, "It's only by favor, Brothers, that I'm now commander. I appreciate your help, but I'm really incompetent."

"We are waiting for Grand Master. When he arrives we'll all offer our congratulations," they told him.

Just then sweet music was heard from the clouds above. Heavenly



话说元始天尊驾临，诸弟子伏道迎接。子牙俯伏，口称：“弟子愿老爷圣寿无疆！”众门人引道，酌水焚香，迎鸾接驾。元始天尊上了芦篷坐下。子牙复拜。元始曰：“姜尚，你四十年积功累行，今为帝王之师，以受人间福祿，不可小视了。你东征灭纣，立功建业，列土分茅，子孙绵远，国祚延长。贫道今日特来饯你。”命白鹤童子：“取酒来。”斟了半杯；子牙跪接，一饮而尽。元始曰：“此一杯愿子成功扶圣主。”又引一杯，“治国定无虞。”又一杯，“速速会诸侯。”子牙吃了三杯，又跪下。元始曰：“子又复跪者何说？”子牙曰：“蒙老爷天恩教育，使尚得拜将东征，弟子此行，不知吉凶如何，恳求指示！”天尊曰：“你此去并无他虞，你谨记一偈，自有验也。偈曰：

界牌关遇诛仙阵，穿云关下受瘟瘟。谨防‘达兆光先德’，过了万仙身体康。”

子牙闻偈，拜谢曰：“弟子敬佩此偈。”元始曰：“我返驾回宫，你众弟子再为饯别。”群仙送出篷来，只见仙风一阵，回了鸾驾。且说众仙来与子牙奉酒，各饮三杯，南极仙翁也奉子牙饯别酒三杯，俱要起身作辞而去。众门人见子牙问师尊前去吉凶，金吒忙向文殊广法天尊问曰：“弟子前去，吉凶如何？”道人曰：“你：

修身一性超山体，何怕无谋进五关。”



Primogenitor had arrived. They all knelt on the ground and said in unison, "Long live Grand Master!" Jiang knelt and kowtowed again when the master had taken a seat.

"Jiang Ziya! You accumulated merit for forty years, and you are now the teacher of the emperor. You are to enjoy all the power and happiness in this world. You'll be granted a dukedom and your sons and grandsons will likewise enjoy happiness. I offer my sincere congratulations." He then added, "Bring the wine, White Crane Lad."

Jiang Ziya knelt down to drink the first cup as the master said, "May this cup help you gain success in serving your virtuous king!"

When he drank the second cup, the master said, "May this cup help you rule the country in peace!"

And when he finished drinking the third cup, the master said, "May this cup help you meet all the nobles with great success!"

After emptying three cups, Jiang Ziya knelt on the ground before the master again.

"Why do you still kneel before me, Jiang Ziya?"

"I've been honored through your grace, but I still wonder about the future."

"There's nothing to worry about there. Here's a riddle for you to remember:

Trap to slaughter immortals at Jiepai Pass;  
Pestilence at Chuanyuan Pass.  
Beware of Da, Zhao, Guang, Xian, and De;  
There's peace after the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap."

Jiang Ziya bowed. "Your disciple will keep this in mind."

"I'll return now. You may all remain here to congratulate Jiang Ziya," Heavenly Primogenitor said.

They escorted him out of the tent, and he returned to his palace on a gust of wind. Then they all toasted Jiang Ziya, and when the immortals were preparing to go, their disciples asked about their future.

"Please tell me, Master, what will happen to me, in the expedition," Jinzha asked Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture.

"You'll become an immortal no matter what happens at the five passes."





哪吒也来问太乙真人曰：“弟子此行，吉凶如何？”真人曰：“你：

汜水关前重道术，方显莲花是化身。”

木吒来问普贤真人曰：“弟子领法旨下山，不知归着如何？”真人曰：“你：

进关全仗吴钩剑，不负仙传在九宫。”

韦护也问道行天尊曰：“弟子佐姜师叔至孟津，可有妨碍？”道行天尊曰：“你比众人不同，岂不知你：

历代多少修行客，独你全真第一人！”

雷震子来问云中子曰：“弟子此去，吉凶如何？”云中子曰：“你：

两枚仙杏安天下，可保周家八百年。”

杨戩也问玉鼎真人曰：“弟子此去如何？”真人曰：“你也比别人不同：

修成八九玄中妙，任尔纵横在世间。”

李靖来问燃灯道人曰：“弟子此行，凶吉如何？”道人曰：“你也比别人不同：

肉身成圣超天境，久后灵山护法台。”

黄天化问清虚道德真君曰：“弟子此行，凶吉何如？”道德真君一见黄天化命运不长，面带绝气，低首不言；然而心中不忍，真是可怜。真君复向黄天化言曰：“徒弟，你问前程之事，我有一偈，你可时时在心，谨记依偈而行，庶几无事。”道人念偈。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



“How about my future? Please tell me, dear Master,” Nezha came forward and asked Fairy Primordial.

“You’ll perform miracles at Sishui Pass.”

Muzha also asked the Immortal of Universal Virtue.

“You should rely fully on your Hooks of Wu and the magic techniques that I taught you,” he replied.

“By your order, I’ll fight for Uncle Jiang at Mengjin. What will happen to me?” Wei Hu asked Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue.

“You’ll stand out from them all and achieve great things.”

“How about me, dear Master? Please tell me about my future,” Thunderbolt moved up to the Master of the Clouds.

“You’ll bring peace to the country with my two apricots and found the new dynasty which will last 800 years.”

“What is my future, Master?” Yang Jian asked Jade Tripod.

“You are also different from others.”

Li Jing asked Burning Lamp, “What is my fate?”

“You’ll ascend to Heaven in your physical form and become the protector of Mount Divine Hawk.”

When Huang Tianhua asked his master about his fate, Virtue of the Pure Void remained silent. He knew that his disciple did not have long to live. Feeling sorry for him, he said, “My disciple! Keep this riddle in mind or you will suffer a calamity.”

To know the riddle, please read the next chapter.

## 第六十八回

### 首阳山夷齐阻兵

诗曰：

首阳芳躅为纲常，欲树千秋叛逆防。数语唤回人世梦，一身表率死生光。求仁自是求仁得，义士还从义士扬。读罢史文犹自泪，空留齿颊有余香。

话说清虚道德真君见黄天化来问前程归着，欲说出所以，恐他不服；欲不说明白，又恐他悞遭陷害。真君没奈何，只得将前去机关作一偈，听凭天命。真君作偈曰：

“逢高不可战，遇能即速回。金鸡头上看，蜂拥便知机。

止得功为首，千载姓名题。若不知时务，防身有难危。”

道人作罢偈。黄天化年少英雄，那里放在心上。只见土行孙也来问惧留孙。惧留孙也知土行孙不好，他还进得关，死于张奎之手，也只得作一偈与土行孙存验，偈曰：

“地行道术既能通，莫为贪嗔错用功。撵出一獐咬一口，崖前猛兽带衣红。”

惧留孙作罢偈，土行孙谢过师尊。

且说众仙与子牙作别，各回山岳而去。子牙同武王、众将进西岐城。武王回宫；子牙回帅府；大小众将俟候三日，下教场听点。子牙次日作本谢恩，上殿来见武王。姜子





## Chapter 68

### Two Hermits Stop the Army

Virtue of the Pure Void found himself in an awkward position when Huang Tianhua asked about his future. It would discourage his disciple should he tell the truth, but disaster would unavoidably fall should he not. He used this riddle as a warning:

Avoid a man named Gao,  
Do not linger with him,  
Atop the Golden Chicken Range,  
Bees fly in a swarm.  
Achieve great things and  
Be remembered for a thousand years.  
Ignore my warning,  
And you'll suffer in the calamity ahead.

The riddle was not the warning the immortal intended, for Huang Tianhua was young, bold, and heroic.

Earth Traveler Sun posed the same question to Krakucchanda. The immortal felt sad, as he knew that his disciple would lose his life at the hand of Zhang Kui. He also recited a riddle:

Skilled in traveling underground,  
You must be careful on the way.  
Before the cliff a pool of blood,  
A beast will bite you to death in surprise.

After Earth Traveler Sun thanked his master, all the immortals bade farewell to Jiang Ziya and returned to their various mountains. King Wu, Jiang Ziya, and all the generals returned to West Qi City to prepare for the expedition in three days.



牙金幞头，大红袍，玉带，将本呈上。只见上大夫散宜生接本，展于御案上。子牙俯伏奏曰：“姜尚何幸，蒙先王顾聘，未效涓埃之报，又蒙大王拜尚为将，知遇之隆，古今罕及。尚敢不效犬马之力，以报深恩也！今特表请驾亲征，以顺天人之愿。”武王曰：“相父此举，正合天心。”忙览表：

“大周十三年，孟春月，扫荡成汤天宝大元帅姜尚言：伏以观时应变，固天地之气运；杀伐用张，亦神圣之功化。今商王受不敬上天，荒淫不德，残虐无辜，肆行杀戮，逆天征伐，天愁民怨，致我西土十载不安；仰仗天威，自行殄灭。臣念此艰难之久，正值纣恶贯盈之时。天下诸侯，共会孟津。蒙准臣等之请，许以东征。万众欢腾，将士踊跃。臣不胜感激，日夜祇惧：才疏德薄，恐无补报于涓埃；佩服王言，实有惭于节钺。特恳大王，大奋乾刚，恭行天讨，亲御行营，托天威于咫尺，措全胜于前筹，早进五关，速会诸侯，观政于商。庶几天厌其秽，独夫授首，不独泄天人之愤，实于汤为有光。臣不胜激切惓望之至！谨具表以闻。”

武王览完表，问曰：“相父此兵何日起程？”子牙曰：“老臣操演停当，谨择吉日，再来请驾起程。”武王传左右：“治宴与相父贺喜。”君臣共饮。子牙谢恩出朝。次日，子牙下教场看操，过名点将。子牙五更时分至教军场，升了将台。军政司辛甲启元帅：“放炮竖旗，擂鼓点将。”子牙暗思：“今人马有六十万，须用四个先行方有协助。”子牙命军政司：“令南宫适、武吉、哪吒、黄天化上台来。”辛甲领令，令四将上台打躬。子牙曰：“吾兵有六十万，用你四将为先行，挂左、右、前、后印。你等各拈一阄，自任其事，毋得错乱。”四将声喏。子牙将四阄与四将各自拈认：黄天化拈着是头队先



The following day, Jiang Ziya went to see King Wu and presented him with a memorial. When King Wu finished reading it, Jiang Ziya bowed and said, "The late king graced me with great honor, and you have treated me likewise. I'll do everything I can to return your favor. We'll soon start on our march eastward, and I would like Your Highness to join us."

"If that is what Heaven expects me to do, I will certainly go," King Wu said. "But when will we start?"

"We must finish our preparations and drill the army. We'll then pick a lucky date to set off; I'll inform you when we know," Jiang Ziya replied.

King Wu entertained him and both drank happily that day. At the fifth watch the next morning, Jiang Ziya went to Mount Qi and ascended the terrace. Cannons were fired and the beat of drums rang out in the early morning. Muster was called.

"We have 600,000 men. We need at least four vanguard generals," Jiang Ziya thought, reviewing the troops. He ordered, "Let Nangong Kuo, Wu Ji, Nezha, and Huang Tianhua come to see me."

When the generals ascended the terrace and bowed before him, he announced, "You four will lead the left, right, front, and rear vanguards. Positions will be decided by lot."

The four generals nodded their agreement. As the result of the lot,



行；南宫适是左哨；武吉是右哨；哪吒是后哨。子牙大喜。令军政官簪花挂红，各领印信。四将饮过酒，谢了元帅。子牙又令杨戩、土行孙、郑伦各拈一阄，作三军督粮官。杨戩是头运；土行孙是二运；郑伦是三运。子牙令军政官取督粮印付与三将，俱簪花挂红，各饮三杯喜酒，三将下台。子牙令军政官取点将簿，先点：

黄飞虎	黄飞彪	黄飞豹	黄明	周纪
龙环	吴谦	黄天禄	黄天爵	黄天祥
辛免	太颠	閔夭	祁恭	尹勋

周之四贤、八俊：

毛公遂	周公旦	召公奭	毕公高	伯达
伯适	仲突	仲忽	叔夜	叔夏
季随	季弼	姬叔乾	姬叔坤	姬叔康
姬叔正	姬叔启	姬叔伯	姬叔元	姬叔忠
姬叔廉	姬叔德	姬叔美	姬叔奇	姬叔顺
姬叔平	姬叔广	姬叔智	姬叔勇	姬叔敬
姬叔崇	姬叔安			

——文王有九十九子，雷震子乃燕山所得，共为百子。文王有四乳，二十四妃，生九十九子，有三十六殿下习武，因纣王屡征西岐，阵亡十六位。

又有归将降佐：

邓九公	太鸾	邓秀	赵升	孙焰红
晁田	晁雷	洪锦	季康	苏护
苏全忠	赵丙	孙子羽		

女将二员：



Huang Tianhua was appointed the front vanguard general, Nangong the left, Wu Ji the right, and Nezha the rear. Jiang Ziya handed each of them a seal and fixed red flowers on their chests. They each drank a cup of wine, thanked Jiang, and left the terrace.

Jiang Ziya then ordered that Yang Jian, Earth Traveler Sun, and Zheng Lun take care of supply transportation. Yang Jian was assigned by lot to the first run, Earth Traveler Sun to the second, and Zheng Lun to the third. Jiang Ziya toasted each with three cups of wine and put red flowers on their chests.

He then called a roll of other generals: Huang Feihu, Huang Feibiao, Huang Feibao, Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan, Wu Qian, Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue, Huang Tianxiang, Xin Mian, Tai Dian, Hong Yao, Qi Gong, Yin Xun, Mao Gongsui, Zhou Gongdan, Shao Gongshi, Bi Gonggao, Bo Da, Bo Shi, Zhong Tu, Zhong Hu, Shu Ye, Shu Xia, Ji Sui, Ji Gua, and twenty or so others.

Including Thunderbolt, King Wen had 100 sons by twenty-four imperial concubines. Thirty-six were trained in military affairs, and sixteen lost their lives on the battlefield.

There were also the generals from King Zhou's camp: Deng Jiugong, Tai Luan, Deng Xiu, Zhao Sheng, Sun Yanhong, Chao Tian, Chao Lei, Hong Jin, Ji Kang, Su Hu, Su Quanzhong, Zhao Bing, Sun Ziyu, Princess Long Ji, and Deng Chanyu.





龙吉公主 邓婵玉

话说子牙点将已毕，传令：“令黄飞虎上台。”子牙曰：“成汤虽是气数已尽，五关之内必有精奇之士，不可不防备。当战者战，当攻者攻，其间军士须要演习阵图，方知进退之法，然后可破敌人。”随令军政官抬十阵牌放在台上：

一字长蛇阵	二龙出水阵	三山月儿阵
四门斗底阵	五虎巴山阵	六甲迷魂阵
七纵七擒阵	八卦阴阳子母阵	九宫八卦阵
十代明王阵	天地三才阵	包罗万象阵

子牙曰：“此阵俱按六韬之内，精演停当，军士方知进退之方。黄将军与邓将军、洪将军，你三位走一字长蛇阵。听炮响变以下诸阵，毋得错乱。”三将领令下台走此阵。正行之际，子牙传令：“点炮，化六甲迷魂阵。”竟不能齐。子牙看见，把三将令上台来，教之曰：“今日东征，非同小可，乃是大敌；若士卒教演不精，此是主将之羞，如何征伐！三位须是日夜操练，毋得怠玩，有乖军政。”三将领令下台，用心教习。子牙传令：“散操。众将打点，收拾东征。”翌日，子牙朝贺武王毕，子牙奏曰：“人马军粮皆一应齐备，请大王东行。”武王问曰：“相父将内事托与何人？”子牙曰：“上大夫散宜生可任国事，似乎可托。”武王又曰：“外事托与何人？”子牙曰：“老将军黄滚历练老成，可任军国重务。”武王大喜：“相父措处得宜，使孤欢悦。”武王退朝，入内宫见太姬，曰：“上启母后知道：今相父姜尚会诸侯于孟津，孩儿一进五关，观政于商，即便回来，不敢有乖父训。”太姬曰：“姜丞相此行，决无差失。孩儿可一应俱依相父指挥。”分付宫中治酒，与武王饯行。

When muster call was over, Jiang Ziya ordered, "Let General Huang Feihu ascend the terrace." When General Huang had bowed before him, he declared, "Though the Shang Dynasty is doomed, we must still proceed cautiously, as there remain generals greatly skilled in magic. General Huang, you will drill the army."

The next day, Jiang went to see King Wu in the palace and said, "We are now ready and will set off soon."

"Who would you trust with internal affairs while we are away?"

"I recommend San Yisheng. He's a very trustworthy minister," Jiang replied.

"And who would you trust with external affairs?"

"General Huang Gun has much experience. I recommend him to deal with all military affairs."

"I'm delighted by your recommendations," King Wu responded.

King Wu retired to the inner palace to see his mother. He reported, "Jiang Ziya is going to meet all the nobles at Mengjin, and I have been requested to join them. I won't be there long."

"It is right that you should go. Just follow the commander's directions," his mother said.

She ordered a farewell dinner to entertain her son. The next day they





翌日，子牙把六十万雄师竟出西岐。武王亲乘甲马，率御林军来至十里亭。只见众御弟排下九龙席，与武王、姜元帅饯行。众弟进酒武王与子牙用罢，乘吉日良辰起兵。此正是纣王三十年三月二十四日。起兵点起号炮，兵威甚是雄壮。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

征云蔽日隐旌旗，战士横戈纵铁骑。飞剑有光来紫电，流星斜挂落金藜。将军猛烈堪图画，天子威仪异所施。漫道吊民来伐罪，方知天地果无私。

话说大势雄兵离了西岐，前往燕山，一路上而来，三军欢悦，百倍精神。行过了燕山，正往首阳山来。大队人马正行，只见伯夷、叔齐二人，宽衫，博袖，麻履，丝绦，站立中途，阻住大兵；大呼曰：“你是那里去的人马？我欲见你主将答话。”有哨探马报入中军：“启元帅：有二位道者欲见千岁并元帅答话。”子牙听说，忙请武王并辔上前。只见伯夷、叔齐向前稽首曰：“千岁与子牙公，见礼了。”武王与子牙欠身曰：“甲冑在身，不能下骑。二位阻路，有何事见谕？”夷、齐曰：“今日主公与元帅起兵往何处去？”子牙曰：“纣王无道，逆命于天，残虐万姓，囚奴正士，焚炙忠良，荒淫不道，无辜吁天，秽德彰闻。惟我先王，若日月之照临，光于四方，显于西土，命我先王肃将天威，大勋未集。惟我西周诞及多方，肆予小子，恭行天之罚。今天下诸侯一德一心，大会于孟津，我武维扬，侵于之疆，取彼凶残，杀伐用张，于汤有光。此予小子不得已之心也。”夷、齐曰：“臣闻‘子不言父过，臣不彰君恶’。故父有诤子，君有诤臣。只闻以德而感君，未闻以下而伐上者。今纣王，君也，虽有不德，何不倾



set off. When King Wu got to the Changting Pavilion, his imperial brothers toasted both him and Jiang Ziya, wishing them success.

The army marched on in high spirits. It was the 24th day of the third month in the 30th year of King Zhou. Passing by Mount Yan and Mount Shouyang, the army was suddenly blocked by two Taoists, Bo Yi and Shu Qi. They stood in the middle of the road to halt the advance of the army. Though they disliked King Zhou, they were not in favor of attacking him and bringing him down.

“Take us to see your commander at once,” they demanded.

Jiang Ziya and King Wu rode forward to greet the two Taoists.

“How do you do, Your Highness, Prime Minister!” they said politely.

Both King Wu and Jiang Ziya bowed. “We beg your pardon that we can’t return your greeting with full salutation as we are in armor. Why do you stop us?”

“Where are you going?” the two asked.

“King Zhou is evil, and so King Wu is going to carry out the punishment as decreed by Heaven. All the nobles have united in this cause,” Jiang Ziya replied.

“A son should never mention his father’s faults and a minister never expose his master’s wickedness. We have never heard of a king being attacked by his subjects. King Zhou now is the supreme ruler. Though he is wicked, we can only try our best to persuade him to repent. Don’t you



城尽谏，以尽臣节，亦不失为忠耳。况先王以服事殷，未闻不足于汤也。臣又闻‘至德无不感通，至仁无不宾服’。苟至德至仁在我，何凶残不化为淳良乎！以臣愚见，当退守臣节，体先王服事之诚，守千古君臣之分，不亦善乎。”武王听罢，停驂不语。子牙曰：“二位之言虽善，予非不知；此是一得之见。今天下溺矣，百姓如坐水火，三纲已绝，四维已折，天怒于上，民怨于下，天翻地覆之时，四海鼎沸之际。惟天矜民，民之所欲，天必从之。况夫天已肃命于我周，若不顺天，厥罪惟均。且天视自我民视，天听自我民听。百姓有过，在予一人。今予必往。如逆天不顺，非予先王有罪，惟予小子无良。”子牙左右将士欲行，见伯夷、叔齐二人言之不已，心上甚是不快。夷、齐见左右俱有犹豫之色，众人挟武王、子牙欲行，二人知其必往，乃跪于马前，揽其辔，谏曰：“臣受先王养老之恩，终守臣节之义，不得不尽今日之心耳。今大王虽以仁义服天下，岂有父死不葬，援及干戈，可谓孝乎？以臣伐君，可谓忠乎？臣恐天下后世必有为之口实者。”左右众将见夷、齐叩马而谏，军士不得前进，心中大怒，欲举兵杀之。子牙忙止之曰：“不可。此天下之义士也。”忙令左右扶之而去，众兵方得前进。——后伯夷、叔齐入首阳山，耻食周粟，采薇作歌，终至守节饿死。至今称之，犹有余馨。此是后事。不表。

且说子牙大势雄师离了首阳山，往前正发。正是：

腾腾杀气冲霄汉，簇簇征云盖地来。

子牙人马行至金鸡岭。岭上有一枝人马，打两杆大红旗，驻扎岭上，阻住大兵。哨马报至军前：“启元帅：金鸡岭有一枝



remember that your late king was his loyal subject and complained not once all his whole life? It is said that 'Great virtue can touch the heart of the wicked and great love can win even the savages along the borders.' If you are virtuous, you can turn the wicked into good. It would be better to remain loyal," Bo Yi and Shu Qi remonstrated.

King Wu remained silent, but Jiang Ziya replied, "I see your point, but it is too short-sighted. No trace of virtue can now be found in the crown. Heaven above is angry, and the people below are murmuring. This crisis is as serious as if the sky were falling, the earth splitting, and the four seas boiling. Heaven does everything as the people wish. We have been entrusted by Heaven with this duty, and we'll be guilty if we do not behave as Heaven expects. We must send our army to settle the matter, or else we'll be apposing both Heaven and the people."

The generals saw that Bo Yi and Shu Qi were talking on like this to delay them. They grew angry, and Bo Yi and Shu Qi could see their displeasure. They grabbed the reins to stop King Wu and Jiang, saying, "We'll return the grace of our late king and do our best as loyal ministers. Your Highness is known for your virtue, but how can you use violence so soon after your father has passed away? You are not a filial son. You are not a loyal minister either, as you are on your way to attack the king. You'll be condemned by later generations."

The generals were enraged to see King Wu and Jiang Ziya held up by these two. They wanted to kill them at once, but Jiang Ziya stopped them. "Don't hurt them; they are righteous men."

He told his guards to set them free. After the army had occupied Zhaohe, Bo Yi and Shu Qi felt ashamed to eat the grain grown in the new Zhou Dynasty; they withdrew to the mountains to live on wild vegetables and grass.

When they reached the Golden Chicken Range, another army with red flags appeared before them on the summit of the mountain. The sentinels reported this to Jiang Ziya.



人马阻住，大军不能前进，请令定夺。”子牙传令：“安下军营。”升帐坐下，着探事军打探：“是那里人马在此处阻军？”话犹未了，只见左右来报：“有一将请战。”子牙不知是那里人马，忙传令问：“谁人见阵走一遭？”有左哨先行南宫适上帐应声曰：“末将愿往。”子牙曰：“首次出军，当宜小心。”南宫适领令上马，炮声大振，一马走出营前。见一将幞头铁甲，乌马长枪。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

将军如猛虎，战骑可腾云。铁甲生光艳，皂服衬龙文。  
赤胆扶真主，忠肝保圣君。西岐来报效，赶驾立功勋。  
子牙逢此将，门徒是魏贲。

南宫适问曰：“你是那里无名之兵，敢阻西岐大军？”魏贲曰：“你是何人？往那里去？”南宫适答曰：“俺元帅奉天征讨而伐成汤，你敢大胆粗心，阻吾大队人马！”大喝一声，舞刀直取。此将手中枪赴面交还。两马相交，刀枪并举，战有三十回合。南宫适被魏贲直杀得汗流脊背，心下暗思：“才出兵至此，今日遇这员大将，若败回大营，元帅必定见责。”南宫适心上出神，不提防被魏贲大喝一声，抓住南宫适的袍带，生擒过马去。魏贲曰：“吾不伤你性命，快请姜元帅出来相见。”又把南宫适放回营来。军政官报入中军：“南宫适听令。”子牙传令：“令来。”南宫适上帐，将“被擒放回，请元帅定夺”说了一遍。子牙听得大怒曰：“六十万人马，你乃左哨首领官，今一旦先挫吾锋，你还来见我？”喝左右：“绑出辕门，斩讫报来！”左右随将南宫适推出辕门来。魏贲在马上，见要斩南宫适，在马上大叫曰：“刀下留人！只请姜元帅相见，吾自有机密相商！”军政官报入帐中：“启老爷：那人在辕门外，



"Tell the army to set up camp here," Jiang ordered. "Find out which army it is that blocks our advance."

"Who would like to meet him?" Jiang Ziya asked, when it was reported then an enemy general had challenged their army.

Nangong Kuo responded, "I will."

"It is our first combat. You must do your best, but be very careful," Jiang warned.

Nangong mounted his horse and rushed from the camp with a roar of cannons. He saw a general in iron armor on a black horse with a long lance.

"Where does your damned army come from? How dare you stop us!" Nangong Kuo roared roughly.

"Who are you? Where are you going?" Wei Ben, the other general, asked.

"By order of Heaven, we're on our way to attack King Zhou, the tyrant. How dare you hinder our advance?" Nangong Kuo yelled loudly. He attacked Wei Ben, but after thirty rounds, he felt exhausted, his back was drenched in sweat. "It's unfortunate to meet this general in the very first battle. I'll be seriously dealt with if I am defeated," he thought to himself.

As he was not concentrating on the battle, Wei Ben had the chance to grab his belt and capture him.

"I won't hurt you. Return and tell Commander Jiang to see me immediately," Wei Ben said.

Jiang Ziya was furious. He yelled, "You are the left vanguard general. Your defeat only boosts the morale of the enemy and discourages our own. You dare to see me shamelessly, a captive set free by the enemy!" He then ordered, "Bind him up and behead him at once."

When he saw that Nangong Kuo was going to lose his head, Wei Ben roared loudly, "Don't hurt him! Let me see Commander Jiang. I have something important to say to him."





叫‘刀下留人，请元帅答话，自有机密相商。’”子牙大骂：“匹夫擒吾将而不杀，反放回来，如今又在辕门讨饶！速传令摆队伍出行营！”炮声响处，大红宝纛旗摇，只见辕门下一对对都是红袍金甲，英雄威猛，先行官骑的是玉麒麟，赳赳杀气；哪吒登风火轮，昂昂眉宇；雷震子蓝面红发，手执黄金棍；韦护手捧降魔杵，俱是片片云光。正是：

盔山甲海真威武，一派天神滚出来。

话说子牙在四不相上问曰：“你是谁人，请吾相见？”魏贲见子牙威仪整饬，兵甲鲜明，知其兴隆之兆，乃滚鞍下马，拜伏道傍，言曰：“末将闻元帅天兵伐纣，特来麾下，欲效犬马微劳，附功名于竹帛耳。因未见元帅真实，末将不敢擅入。今见元帅士马之精，威令之严，仪节之盛，知不专在军威而在于仁德也。末将敢不随鞭坠镫，共伐此独夫，以泄人神之愤耶。”子牙随令进营。魏贲上帐，复拜在地曰：“末将幼习枪马，未得其主，今逢明君与元帅，乃魏贲不负数载功夫耳。”子牙大喜。魏贲复跪而言曰：“启元帅：虽然南将军一时失利，望元帅怜而赦之。”子牙曰：“南宫适虽则失利，然既得魏将军，反是吉兆。”传令：“放来。”左右将南宫适放上帐来。南宫适谢过子牙。子牙曰：“你乃周室元勋，身为首领，初阵失机，理当该斩；奈魏贲归周，乃先凶而后吉。虽然如此，你可将左哨先行印与魏贲，你自随营听用。”即时将魏贲挂补了左哨。彼时南宫适交代印绶毕。子牙传令起兵。不表。

且说只因张山阵亡，飞报至汜水关，韩荣已知子牙三月十五日金台拜将，具本上朝歌。那日微子看本，知张山阵亡，洪锦归周，忙抱本入内庭，见纣王，具奏张山为国捐



Jiang Ziya swore angrily when he heard the report but decided to go out and look for himself.

The generals rode out in pairs under big red banners. "Who are you expecting to see me here?" Jiang Ziya asked.

Admiring Jiang Ziya's dignified stance and the soldiers' strict discipline, Wei Ben realized the greatness of West Qi. He dismounted, knelt on the roadside, and said, "I have come and venture to offer my service in the hope that my name will be recorded in history. I dared not join you straight away, but now I have seen you and your army with my own eyes, I beg you to accept me."

Admitted into the camp, Wei Ben knelt before Jiang Ziya again and said, "I have learned how to wield a lance and ride a horse, yet I have never found a good master. I am happy to meet King Wu and you now, and hope that I may be able to serve you."

Jiang Ziya was delighted. Wei Ben, who was still bowing on his knees, continued, "Please forgive General Nangong Kuo, Commander."

"Though Nangong Kuo was defeated, we are lucky to have General Wei with us now," Jiang said and ordered, "Set the general free."

When Nangong Kuo thanked Jiang for his mercy, the commander said solemnly, "As an old minister and head of the generals, you deserve death for your defeat in the first battle. We forgive you this time because General Wei Ben has joined our force. Let General Wei Ben take your post as the left vanguard general, and you stay with me."

Han Rong, commander of Sishui Pass, had sent an urgent report to Zhaoqe discussing the death of General Zhang Shan and Jiang Ziya's swift march towards the capital. Prince Wei Zi anxiously read the report and then went into the inner palace to see King Zhou.



躯。纣王大骇：“不意姬发猖獗至此！”忙传旨意，鸣钟鼓临殿。百官朝贺。纣王曰：“今有姬发大肆猖獗，卿等有何良谋可除西土大患？”言未毕，班中闪出中大夫飞廉，俯伏奏曰：“姜尚乃昆仑左术之士，非堂堂之兵可以擒剿，陛下发诏，须用孔宣为将。他善能五行道术，庶几反叛可擒，西土可剿。”纣王准奏，遣使命持诏往三山关来，一路无词。正是：

使命马到传飞檄，九重丹诏凤衔来。

话说使命官至三山关传：“接旨意。”孔宣接至殿上。钦差官开读诏旨。孔宣跪听宣读：

“诏曰：天子有征伐之权，将帅有阃外之寄。今西岐姬发大肆猖獗，屡挫王师，罪在不赦。兹尔孔宣，谋术两全，古今无两，允堪大将；特遣使赍尔斧、钺、旌旗，特专征伐。务擒首恶，剿灭妖人，永清西土，尔之功在社稷，朕亦与有荣焉。朕决不惜茅土之封，以赉有功。尔其钦哉！故兹尔诏。”

孔宣拜罢旨意，打发天使回朝歌，连夜下营，整点人马，共是十万。即日拜宝纛旗，离了三山关，一路上晓行夜住，饥餐渴饮。在路行程，也非一日。那日探马报入中军：“有汜水关韩荣接元帅。”孔宣传令：“请来。”韩荣至中军打躬：“元帅此行来迟了。”孔宣曰：“为何迟了？”韩荣曰：“姜子牙三月十五日金台拜将，人马已出西岐了。”孔宣曰：“料姜尚有何能！我此行定拿姬发君臣解进朝歌。”分付：“可速开关。”把人马催动前往西岐大道而来。不一日，至金鸡岭。哨探马来报：“金鸡岭下周兵已至，请令定夺。”孔宣传令：“将大营驻札岭上阻住周兵。”不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



King Zhou was greatly alarmed and immediately held court. He approved Fei Lian's recommendation to appoint Kong Xuan of Sanshan Pass to attack the West Qi forces. Kong Xuan was well trained in magic.

When he received his appointment, Kong Xuan worshiped the great banners, led 100,000 men out of Sanshan Pass, and was soon at Sishui Pass. He was met by Han Rong.

"You're already a little late, Commander," Han Rong said.

"What do you mean by that, General?" Kong Xuan asked.

"Jiang Ziya has already been appointed commander, and his army left West Qi on the 15th day of the third month," Han Rong replied.

"What is he to be afraid of? I'll take him, King Wu, and his generals and drag them all to Zhaoge for trial," Kong Xuan said proudly. He then ordered, "Open your pass gate at once. I'll march westward."

Two days later at the Golden Chicken Range, Kong Xuan discovered that Jiang Ziya had arrived sometime earlier. He ordered his army to set up camp and prepare for the first battle.

If you want to know what happened, please read the next chapter.





## 第六十九回

### 孔宣兵阻金鸡岭

诗曰：

伐罪吊民诛独夫，西周原应玉虚符。自无血战成功易，  
岂有纷争立业殊。孔雀逆天皆孟浪，金鸡阻路尽支吾。  
休言伎俩参玄妙，总是西方接引徒。

话说孔宣人马出关，至金鸡岭，探马报入中军：“前有周兵在岭下，请令定夺。”孔宣令：“在岭上安下营寨，阻住咽喉之路，使周兵不能前进。”不题。只见子牙人马正行，报马报入中军：“禀上元帅：前有成汤大队人马住在岭上。”子牙传令：“安营。”升帐坐下，自思：“三十六路人马俱完，怎么又有这枝兵来？”子牙沉思，掐指算来：“连张山是三十五路，连此一路方是三十六路。此事必又费手。”

且说孔宣在岭上止住了三日，子牙大兵已到。忙传令问：“谁人去周营见头阵走一遭？”有先行官陈庚出位应曰：“末将愿先见头阵。”孔宣许之。陈庚上马下岭，至周营搦战。探马报入中军。子牙问左右：“谁去见此头阵？”有先行官黄天化应曰：“愿往。”子牙分付曰：“务要小心。”黄天化答曰：“不必嘱咐。”忙上了玉麒麟出营。看见来将手提方天戟大呼曰：“反贼何人？”黄天化答曰：“吾非反贼，乃奉天征讨扫荡成汤天宝大元帅麾下，正印先行官黄天化是也。你乃何人？也通个名来。录功簿上好记你的首级。”陈庚大怒：“量你鸡犬小辈，



## Chapter 69

### Trouble at the Golden Chicken Range

At the Golden Chicken Range, when Jiang Ziya heard about the big army before them, he ordered his troops to halt their advance. They camped before the mountain. He sat alone in his tent, thinking, "How strange! There have been thirty-six invasions already."

Counting on his fingers, he discovered that Zhang Shan was really only the thirty-fifth. This one then was really the thirty-sixth.

Kong Xuan asked his generals, "Who would like to challenge for the first combat?"

"I would," answered Chen Geng, the vanguard general.

With the approval of Kong Xuan, Chen Geng rode down from the mountain and challenged the Zhou forces. By order of Jiang Ziya, Huang Tianhua rode out on his jade unicorn and saw a general holding a halberd. The general shouted loudly to him, "Who are you, you rebel?"

"I'm Huang Tianhua, vanguard general under Commander Jiang. Tell me your name so that I can put it in the record book."







敢与天朝元宰相拒哉？”纵马摇戟，直取黄天化。天化手中双锤赴面交还。麟马往来，锤戟并举。有赞为证，赞曰：

二将阵前势无比，颠开战马定生死。盘旋铁骑眼中花，展动旗幡龙摆尾。银锤发手没遮拦，戟刺咽喉蛇信起。自来也见将军战，不似今番无底止。

麟马交还，大战有三十回合，黄天化掩一枪便走。陈庚不知好歹，随后赶来。黄天化闻得脑后鸾铃响，挂下双锤，取火龙标掌在手中，回手一标。正是：

金标发出神光现，断送无常死不知。

话说黄天化回手一标，将陈庚打下马来，兜回马取了首级，掌鼓进营，来见子牙。子牙问：“出阵如何？”黄天化答曰：“未将托元帅洪福，标取了陈庚首级。”子牙大喜，上黄天化首功。子牙方才举笔向砚台上搵墨，不觉笔头吊将下来。子牙半晌不言，从新再取笔，上了黄天化头一功。——此是黄天化只得首功一次，故有此警报。

且说报马报入孔宣营中：“禀元帅：陈庚失机，被黄天化斩了首级，号令辕门。”孔宣笑曰：“陈庚自己无能，死不足惜。”全不在意。次日，又是孙合出马，至周营搦战。子牙传令：“谁去走一遭？”有武吉应曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。武吉出营，见一员将官，金甲红袍，黄马大刀，飞临阵前，大呼曰：“来者何人？”武吉曰：“吾乃姜元帅门下右哨先行官武吉是也。”孙合笑曰：“姜尚乃是一渔翁，你乃是一个樵子。你师徒二人正是一轴画图——‘渔樵问答’。”武吉大怒曰：“匹夫无理！焉敢以言语戏吾！”切齿咬牙，举枪分心就刺。孙合手中刀急架忙迎。两马交锋，一场恶杀。大战有三十回合，未



"You are but a small chick. How dare you fight with a great general of the imperial army?" Chen Geng said furiously.

He attacked Huang Tianhua, and Huang met him with his two hammers. In thirty rounds, Huang Tianhua turned tail and ran away. Chen Geng pursued him. Huang took out a Fire Dragon Javelin, threw it at Chen, and knocked him from his horse. Huang turned back and cut Chen Geng's head off. He then returned in victory.

Delighted at his general's success, Jiang Ziya took up a pen, intending to record his merit, but when he dipped the pen in the ink slab, the nib dropped off. Jiang Ziya said not a word at the inauspicious omen. It seemed that Huang Tianhua would also lose his head soon, and this would be his last merit achieved.

Kong Xuan smiled carelessly at the loss of Chen Geng. He thought to himself, "That's no pity. He had no talent anyway."

The next day Kong Xuan sent General Sun He out to challenge the Zhou army. With the approval of Jiang Ziya, Wu Ji went to answer the challenge. He saw a general, dressed in a pink robe and gold armor, holding a cutlass. The general shouted loudly to him, "Who's that coming?"

"I'm Wu Ji, vanguard general under Commander Jiang."

"Jiang was an old fisherman, and you were a woodcutter. You two make a good pair!" Sun He laughed sarcastically.

Wu Ji swore angrily, "You bastard! How dare you!"

He stabbed at Sun He with his lance, but the latter checked him with his cutlass. After thirty rounds, Wu Ji ran away as if defeated. Su He



分胜负，武吉掩一枪便走，诈败而逃。孙合见武吉败走，知是樵子出身，料有何能，随后赶来。——不知子牙在磻溪传武吉这条枪，有神出鬼没之妙。武吉已知孙合赶来，把马一兜，那马停了一步；孙合马来得太速，一撞个满怀，早被武吉回马枪挑下马来，取了首级，掌鼓进营，见子牙报功。子牙大喜，上了武吉的功。就把哪吒激得抓耳挠腮，恨不得要出营厮杀。且说报马报入成汤营里：“启元帅：孙合失机，被武吉回马枪挑了，枭去首级，号令辕门，请令定夺。”孔宣听报，谓左右曰：“吾今奉诏征讨，尔等随军立功，不期连折二阵，使吾心中不悦。今日谁去见阵走一遭，为国立功？”傍有五军救应使高继能曰：“末将愿往。”孔宣分付曰：“务要小心。”高继能上马提枪，至营前讨战。哨马报入中军。傍有哪吒忙应声曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。哪吒登风火轮，前有一对红旗，如风卷火云，飞奔前来。高继能大呼曰：“哪吒慢来！”哪吒大喜曰：“既知吾名，何不早早下马受死？”高继能对哪吒大笑曰：“闻你道术过人，一般今日也会得你着。”哪吒曰：“你且通名来，功劳簿上好记你的首级。”高继能大怒，使开枪分心刺来。哪吒火尖枪急速忙迎。轮马盘旋，双枪齐举，这场战非是等闲。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

二将交锋在战场，四肢臂膊望空忙。这一个丹心要保真明主；那一个赤胆还扶殷纣王。哪吒要成千载业；继能为主立家邦。古来有福催无福，有道该兴无道亡。

高继能大战哪吒，恐哪吒先下手，高继能掩一枪便走。哪吒自思：“吾此来定要成功！”那里肯舍？随手取乾坤圈望空中祭起。高继能的蜈蜂袋未及放开来，不意哪吒的圈来得快，一



thought of him as only a common woodcutter, not a skilled general, but as he pursued him at high speed, Wu Ji suddenly stopped his horse and stabbed him in the breast. Sun was cut down from his horse. Wu Ji's victory excited Nezha. He scratched his ears and cheeks; he was eager for a fight.

Kong Xuan sighed when he received the report of Sun He's death. He said to his generals, "I had hoped that you would all achieve merit, but now two generals have lost their lives. Who would like to go and fight the next?"

Gao Jineng answered the call. He mounted his horse and holding a spear and ran out to the front. He was met by Nezha.

"No hurry! Take it easy, Nezha," Gao Jineng shouted.

"If you know me, why don't you dismount and surrender?" Nezha said happily.

"I am more than pleased to meet you as I know you are skilled in magic."

"Tell me your name so that I may record it in the book," Nezha said roughly.

In a great rage, Gao Jineng stabbed at Nezha's heart. A fierce battle began. Fearing that Nezha might use his magic, Gao Jineng turned and ran away, but Nezha, determined to win the day, would not give him up.

He took out his Universal Ring and threw it at Gao Jineng. Gao had no time to open his bag full of centipedes and wasps. He was wounded in



圈正打中肩窝，伏鞍而逃。哪吒为不得全功，心下懊恼，回营见子牙曰：“弟子未得全功，请令定夺。”子牙上了哪吒的功。且说高继能被哪吒打伤，败进营来见孔宣，具言前事。孔宣不语，取些丹药与继能敷贴，立时全愈。

孔宣次日命中军点炮，自领大队人马，亲临阵前，对旗门官将曰：“请你主将答话。”探马报入中军：“孔宣请元帅答话。”子牙传令：“摆八健将出营。”大红宝纛旗展处，子牙左右有四个先行官与众门徒，雁翅排开。子牙乘四不相至阵前，看孔宣来历大不相同。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

身似黄金映火，一笼盔甲鲜明。大刀红马势峥嵘，五道光华色映。曾见开天辟地，又见出日月星辰。一灵道德最根深，他与西方有分。

子牙看孔宣背后有五道光华，——按青、黄、赤、白、黑。子牙心下疑惑。孔宣见子牙自来，将马一拎，来至军前，问曰：“来者莫非姜子牙么？”子牙曰：“然也。”孔宣问曰：“你原是殷臣，为何造反，妄自称王，会合诸侯，逆天欺心，不守本土？吾今奉诏征讨，汝好好退兵，敬守臣节，可保家国；若半字迟延，吾定削平西土，那时悔之晚矣。”子牙曰：“天命无常，惟有德者居之。昔帝尧有子丹朱不肖，让位与舜。舜帝有子商均亦不肖，让位与禹。禹有子启贤，能继父志，禹尊禅让，复让与益。天下之朝觐讼狱，不之益而之启。再后传之桀。桀王无道，成汤伐夏而有天下。今传之纣。纣王今淫酗肆虐，秽德彰闻，天怒民怨，四海鼎沸。德在我周，恭行天之罚。将军何不顺天以归我周，共罚独夫也？”孔宣曰：“你以下伐上，反不为逆天，乃架此一段污秽之言，惑乱民心，借此造反，拒逆天兵，情殊可恨！”纵马舞刀来取。子牙后有洪锦走马奔来，大呼：“孔宣不得无礼！吾来也！”孔



the shoulder and ran back to the camp. Nezha was disappointed at his failure to take Gao captive or to cut off his head.

Kong Xuan said nothing but simply treated Gao's wound with medicine. The next day he appeared personally on the battlefield, demanding Jiang Ziya.

Jiang rode out on his nondescript horse. Kong was dressed in gold armor and rode on a red horse. He held a large cutlass and five rays of light green, yellow, red, white, and black soared up from his back. Jiang became suspicious.

Kong Xuan rode forward and asked, "Is that Jiang Ziya?"

"Yes," Commander Jiang replied.

"You were once a minister of the Shang. Why have you rebelled? By order of His Majesty, I've come with a great army. You may keep your land if you withdraw, but if you don't I'll level your cities."

"The will of Heaven is subject to change, and the virtuous will always win out. Don't you see how cruel King Zhou is? Every heart has turned to us. We'll heartily welcome you if you join us, General," Jiang Ziya replied.

"Don't you think it's against the will of Heaven to offend His Majesty?" Kong Xuan yelled. He spurred his horse forward to attack Jiang Ziya with his cutlass.

Hong Jin ran out to meet him. "Don't be so rude, Kong Xuan. Here I come!"



宣见洪锦走马而至，孔宣大骂：“逆贼！你还敢来见我！”洪锦曰：“天下八百诸侯俱已归周，料你一个忠臣，也不能济得甚事。”孔宣大怒，摇刀直取。二马交兵，未及数合，洪锦将旗门遁往下一戳，把刀往下一分，那旗化为一门。洪锦方欲进门，孔宣大笑曰：“米粒之珠，有何光彩？”孔宣兜回马，把左边黄光往下一刷，将洪锦刷去，毫无影响，就如沙灰投入大海之中，止见一匹空马。子牙左右大小将官俱目瞪口呆。孔宣复纵马来取子牙。子牙手中剑急架相迎。傍有邓九公走马来助阵。子牙大战十五六合。子牙祭打神鞭打孔宣，那鞭已落在孔宣红光中去了，似石投水。子牙大惊，忙传令鸣金。两边各归营寨。且说子牙升帐，坐下沉吟，想：“此人后有五道光华，按有五行之状；今将洪锦摄去，不知凶吉，如之奈何？”子牙自思：“不若乘孔宣得胜，今夜去劫他的营，且胜他一阵，再作区处。”子牙令哪吒：“你今夜去劫孔宣的大辕门；黄天化，你去劫他左营；雷震子，你可去劫他右营；先挫动他军威，然后用计破他，必然成功。”三人领令去讫。且说孔宣得胜进营，将后面五色光华一抖，只见洪锦昏迷睡于地下。孔宣分付左右，将洪锦监在后营，收了打神鞭，正欲退后营，只见一阵大风，将帅旗连卷三四卷。孔宣大惊，掐指一算，早已知其就里，忙唤高继能分付：“你在左营门埋伏；周信，你在右营门埋伏。今夜姜子牙要来劫吾营寨。我正要你来，只可惜姜尚不曾亲来！”且说姜子牙营中三路兵暗暗上岭。将近二更，一声炮响，三路兵呐喊一声，



Kong Xuan cursed, "You damned rebel! Dare you come to meet me?"  
"The 800 nobles have sided with us. What can you do all alone?"

Kong Xuan wrathfully attacked Hong Jin. After a few rounds, Hong Jin planted his flag in the ground, moved his cutlass horizontally, and turned the flag into a door. When Hong Jin tried to enter the door, Kong Xuan burst into laughter, "That pearl's worth no more than a grain of rice!"

He turned around and swept the yellow beam of light from his back towards Hong Jin, who disappeared in a flash. Only his horse was left behind. Kong Xuan then turned towards Jiang Ziya, who met the attack with his sword. Deng Jiugong rushed over to help. After fifteen rounds, Jiang took out his Staff for Beating Gods and threw it at Kong Xuan, but the staff disappeared in Kong's beam of red light. Jiang Ziya quickly ordered his troops to withdraw, and both sides returned to their camps.

Back in his tent, Jiang Ziya pondered over the problem. "His five rays of light are somewhat like the five elements, but nothing more is known about him. What shall I do now?" He then thought up a plan, "Having won today, he may relax vigilance tonight. I'll set up a surprise attack and then see what we can do." Calling in his generals, he ordered, "Nezha, you attack the front camp; Huang Tianhua, you attack from the left; and Thunderbolt, you go in from the right. We've got to destroy his confidence first."

In his own camp, Kong Xuan flashed his beams and Hong Jin fell to the floor, unconscious. He was locked up in the back camp. Kong Xuan was about to retire when a sudden wind whipped through the flags. Kong Xuan made a quick prediction with his fingers and found out what was going on. He ordered his generals to prepare for the attack, "Gao Jineng, you ambush them from the left camp, and Zhou Xin, you wait at the door of the right camp. Jiang Ziya will attack us tonight, but he won't come himself."

The three generals from West Qi climbed the mountain after dark and





杀进辕门。哪吒登轮摇枪，冲开营门，杀至中营而来。孔宣独坐帐中，不慌不忙，上了马迎来，大笑曰：“哪吒，你今番劫营，定然遭擒，再休想前番取胜也！”哪吒也不知孔宣的利害，大怒，骂曰：“今日定拿你成功！”举枪来战，杀在中军，难解难分。雷震子飞在空中，冲开右营；周信大战雷震子。雷震子展动风雷二翅，飞在空中，是上三路，又是黄昏夜间，观看不甚明白，周信被雷震子一棍刷将下来，正中顶门，打得脑浆迸出，死于非命。雷震子飞至中营，见哪吒大战孔宣，雷震子大喝一声，如霹雳交加，孔宣将黄光望上一撒，先拿了雷震子。哪吒见如此利害，方欲抽身，又被孔宣把白光一刷，连哪吒撒去，不知去向。且说黄天化只听得杀声大作，不察虚实，催开玉麒麟，冲进左营，忽听炮响，高继能一马当先，黄昏交兵，更不答话，麟马相交，枪锤并举。好黄天化！两柄锤只打的枪尖生烈焰，杀气透心寒。二将乃是夜战，况黄天化两柄锤似流星不落地，来往不沾尘。高继能见如此了得，掩一枪，拨马就走。黄天化催开玉麒麟赶来。高继能展开蜈蚣袋，——夜间，黄天化该如此，——那蜈蚣卷将来，成堆成团而至，一似飞蝗。黄天化用两柄锤遮挡，不防蜈蚣把玉麒麟的眼叮了一下，那麒麟叫了一声，后蹄站立，前蹄直竖，黄天化坐不住鞍鞵，撞下地来，早被高继能一枪正中肋下，死于非命。——魂往封神台去了。可怜下山大破四天王，不曾取成汤寸土。正是：

功名未遂身先死，早至台中等候封。

且说孔宣收兵，杀了一夜，岭头上尸横遍野，血染草梢。孔宣升帐，将五色神光一抖，只见哪吒、雷震子跌下地来。孔



at the second watch, attacked King Zhou's army. Nezha tried to break into the central camp, and Kong Xuan rode out to meet him.

Kong Xuan laughed, "Nezha! You'll be my captive tonight!"

Nezha did not know how terrible Kong Xuan was. He swore at him, "I'll take care of you alright!"

As Nezha fought with Kong Xuan, Thunderbolt flew over to attack Zhou Xin. Zhou Xin was in the right camp. He found it difficult to meet the attack from above for he could not see clearly in the darkness. Before long, he was knocked heavily on the head. He died at once, his skull smashed into pieces.

Thunderbolt then flew to the central camp to help Nezha, but Kong Xuan took him at once with his yellow beam. Nezha had no time to run away for Kong Xuan suddenly turned and swept the white light toward him.

Huang Tianhua forced his way into the left camp. He met Gao Jineng, and the two fought without saying a word. Huang Tianhua played his hammers swiftly, and Gao Jineng had to run away. Huang Tianhua was unwilling to let him go. He patted his jade unicorn to give chase. Gao Jineng opened his bagful of centipedes and wasps. Huang Tianhua defended himself by playing his two hammers, but the eyes of his jade unicorn were seriously stung. The jade unicorn screamed in pain, reared up on its hind legs, and threw Huang down from the saddle. He fell to the ground and was stabbed by Gao Jineng.

The battle lasted through the night; corpses lay piled on the mountain, and the grass was stained red with blood. Kong Xuan locked up his pris-



宣命左右于后营监禁，然后坐下。高继能献功，报斩了黄天化首级。孔宣分付：“号令辕门。”不表。

且言子牙一夜不曾睡，只听得岭上天翻地覆一般。及至天明，报马进营：“启老爷：三将劫营，黄天化首级已号令辕门；二将不知所往。”子牙大惊。黄飞虎听罢，放声大哭曰：“天化苦死！不能取成汤尺寸之土，要你奇才无用！”三兄弟、二叔叔、众将无不下泪。武成王如酒醉一般。子牙纳闷无言。南宫适曰：“黄将军不必如此。令郎为国捐躯，万年垂于青史。方今高继能有左道蜈蚣之术，将军何不请崇城崇黑虎？他善能破此左道之术。”黄飞虎听得此言，上帐来见子牙，曰：“末将往崇城去，请崇黑虎来破此贼，以泄吾儿之恨。”子牙见黄飞虎这等悲切，即许之。黄飞虎离了行宫，径往崇城大道而来。一路上，晓行夜住，饥餐渴饮。在路行程，一日来到一座山，山下有一石碣，上书“飞凤山”。飞虎看罢，策马过山，耳边只闻得锣鼓齐鸣，武成王自思：“是那里战鼓响？”把坐下五色神牛一拎，走上山来。只见山凹里三将厮杀：一员将使五股托天叉；一员将使八楞熟铜锤；一员将使五爪烂银抓；三将大战，杀得难解难分。只见那使叉的同着使抓的杀那使锤的。战了一会，只见使锤的又同着使叉的杀那使抓的。三将杀得呵呵大笑。黄飞虎在坐骑上，自忖曰：“这三人为何以杀为戏？待吾向前问他端的。”黄飞虎走骑至面前。只见使叉的见飞虎丹凤眼，卧蚕眉，穿王服，坐五色神牛，使叉的大呼曰：“二位贤弟，少停兵器！”二人忙停了手。那将马上欠身问曰：“来者好似武成王么？”黄飞虎答曰：“不才便是。不识三位将军何以知我？”三将听得，滚鞍下



oners in the back camp and sat down to record Gao Jineng's merit. He told his soldiers to hand Huang Tianhua's head on a pole to warn the enemy.

Jiang Ziya could not sleep that night with all the noise on the mountain. At dawn it was reported that, "The three generals were all defeated. The head of Huang Tianhua is on a pole and the two other generals are missing."

Jiang Ziya was filled with dread, and Huang Feihu lamented bitterly, "Oh, my son! What good was your talent after all? You couldn't even get anything from the Shang Dynasty!" The other generals also wept at their loss. Huang Feihu was so affected that he lost his senses. Jiang Ziya was worried and said nothing.

"General Huang! Don't go on so. Your boy's name will be recorded in history. Gao Jineng has a bag of magic wasps and centipedes. I suggest you go and see Chong Heihu and ask him to take care of these insects with his magic hawks," Nangong Kuo said to comfort him.

Huang Feihu immediately went to see Jiang Ziya. "I would like to go and see Chong Heihu. He can deal with Gao Jineng. I await your approval."

Jiang Ziya agreed to his proposal. Huang Feihu traveled by day and rested by night. When he got to Mount Flying Phoenix, he urged his divine ox up the mountain and saw three generals engaged in battle. Each held a different weapon: a long-handled fork, a bronze hammer, and a silver talon with five claws. First the fork and the talon fought the hammer, then the hammer and the fork fought the talon. The generals laughing and making fun of each other.

"They're amusing themselves in such a funny way. I'll ask who they are," Huang Feihu thought to himself.

As he moved forward, the general with the fork looked over at him. Huang had the eyes of a pink phoenix and thick, bushy eyebrows; he was wearing a prince's robe and also sat astride a divine rainbow ox. The general yelled, "Brothers, stop!" He then bowed and greeted Huang Feihu, "Prince Huang Feihu?"

"Yes, that's right. How do you know me, General?" Huang asked.



马，拜伏在地。黄飞虎慌忙下骑，顶礼相还。三将拜罢，口称：“大王，适才见大王仪表，与昔日所闻，故此知之。今何幸至此！”邀请上山，进得中军帐，分宾主坐下。黄飞虎曰：“方才三位兄厮杀，却是何故？”三人欠身曰：“俺弟兄三人在此吃了饭，没事干，假此消遣耍子，不期误犯行旌，有失回避。”黄飞虎亦逊谢毕，问曰：“请三位高姓大名？”三人欠身曰：“末将姓文，名聘；此位姓崔，名英；此位姓蒋，名雄。”——这一回正该是“五岳”相会：文聘乃是西岳；崔英乃是中岳；蒋雄乃是北岳；黄飞虎乃是东岳；崇黑虎乃是南岳。表过不题。文聘治酒管待黄飞虎，酒席之间，问曰：“大王何往？”黄飞虎把子牙拜将伐汤，遇孔宣杀了黄天化的事说了一遍，“……如今末将往崇城请崇君侯往金鸡岭，共破高继能，为吾子报仇。”文聘曰，“只怕崇君侯不得来。”飞虎曰：“将军何以知之？”文聘曰：“崇君侯操演人马，要进陈塘关，至孟津会天下诸侯，恐悞了事，决不得来。”黄飞虎曰：“到是遇着三位，不是枉走一遭。”崔英曰：“不然。文兄之言，虽是如此说，但崇君侯欲进陈塘关，也要等武王的兵到。大王且权在小寨草榻一宵，明日俺弟兄三人同大王一往，料崇君侯定来协助，决无推辞之理。”黄飞虎感谢不尽，就在山寨中歇了一宿。次日，四将用罢饭，一同起行。在路无词。一日来至崇城。文聘至帅府。门官来见黑虎，报曰：“启千岁：有飞凤山三位求见。”崇黑虎道：“请进来。”三将至殿前行礼毕，崔英曰：“外有武成王尚在外面等候。”崇黑虎闻言，降阶迎接，口称：“大王，不才不知大王驾临，有失远迎，望大王恕罪。”黄飞虎曰：“轻造帅府，得



All three dismounted and knelt on the ground. "I can tell from your appearance. We are glad to meet you."

They then ushered him to their tent on the summit. Having taken their seats, Huang Feihu asked, "Why were you fighting one another?"

"To pass our time," they replied.

"May I know your honorable names?"

"My name is Wen Ping. He's Cui Ying, and this is Jiang Xiong. May I ask where you are going?"

Huang Feihu told them about the expedition and his son's death. He then added, "I'm going to ask General Chong Heihu to deal with Gao Jineng."

"I'm afraid Chong Heihu might be unwilling to go with you," Wen Ping said.

"How do you know?" Huang Feihu asked.

"He's training his troops now. He'll soon attack Chentang Pass to meet the nobles at Mengjin. If he goes with you, he'll be delayed," Wen Ping concluded.

"I don't think so. Though Brother Wen has made a good point, Chong Heihu must wait in Mengjin for King Wu before he can take any action. Your Highness may stay here overnight, and the three of us will go with you to see him tomorrow. I don't think he will turn us down," Cui Ying said.

The next morning, the four started out for Chong City. When they arrived, they asked the gateman to report to Chong Heihu that the three generals from Mount Flying Phoenix wanted to see him.

When admitted, Cui Ying said, "Prince Huang Feihu is waiting outside the gate."

Chong Heihu hurried to welcome Huang Feihu at the stone steps and said, "Excuse me, Your Highness! I failed to meet you in the proper place because I didn't know of your arrival."



睹尊面，实未将三生之幸。”叙礼毕，分宾主依次而坐。彼此温慰毕，文聘将黄飞虎的事说了一遍。崇黑虎咨叹不语。崔英曰：“仁兄莫非为先要进陈塘关么？今姜元帅阻隔在金鸡岭，仁兄纵先进陈塘关，至孟津，也少不得等武王到，方可会合诸侯。这不是还可迟得？依弟愚见，不若先破了高继能，让子牙进兵，兄再分兵进陈塘关不迟，——总是一事。”崇黑虎曰：“既然如此，明日就行。着世子崇应鸾操练三军，待吾等破了孔宣，再来起兵未晚。”黄飞虎谢罢。崇黑虎乃治酒管待飞虎等四人。次日四鼓时分起马，“五岳”离了崇城，往金鸡岭大道行来。非止一日，“五岳”至子牙辕门听令。探马报入中军：“启元帅：黄飞虎辕门等令。”子牙令至帐前，问曰：“请崇黑虎的事如何？”黄飞虎启曰：“还添有三位，俱在辕门外听令。”子牙传令：“用请旗请来。”崇黑虎等俱遵阍外之令，上帐打躬曰：“元帅在上：吾等甲冑在身，不能全礼！”子牙忙迎下接住曰：“君侯等皆系外客，如何这等罪不才也！”俱彼此逊让，以宾主之礼序过。子牙命设坐；崇黑虎等俱客席，子牙与飞虎主席相陪。子牙曰：“今孔宣猖獗，阻逆大兵，有劳贤侯，途次奔驰，深多罪戾！”崇黑虎谢过，起身对子牙曰：“烦元帅引进，参谒周王。”子牙前行引路，黑虎随后，进后帐与武王见礼。相叙毕，崇黑虎曰：“今大王体上天好生之仁，救民于水火，共伐独夫，孔宣自不度德，敢阻天兵，是自取死耳，随即扑灭。”武王曰：“孤力穷德薄，谬蒙众位大王推许，共举义兵，今初出岐周，便有些阻隔，定是天心未顺耳。孤意欲回兵，自修己德，以俟有道，何如？”崇黑虎曰：“大王差矣！今纣恶贯盈，



"I'm pleased to have the honor of meeting you here," Huang Feihu replied.

After they had all taken their seats, Wen Ping explained the purpose of their visit.

"If you enter Chentang Pass first, you'll still have to wait for King Wu. In my opinion, we should take care of Gao Jineng so that Jiang Ziya's forces can continue onward. We can then go back to break through Chentang Pass," Cui Ying proposed.

"If that be so, we'll start out tomorrow. I'll tell Chong Yingluan to prepare the troops."

Chong Heihu entertained his guests, and they left early the next morning. When they arrived at the Golden Chicken Range, Jiang Ziya expressed his thanks and then said, "Kong Xuan is causing so many problems, we've had to trouble you to come here. Please do whatever you can."

After expressing his thanks, Chong Heihu stood up and said to Jiang Ziya, "Would you please take me to see His Highness King Wu?"

Jiang Ziya led him to the back camp to see the king. After the greetings were over, Chong Heihu said, "Your Highness! You have acted according to the will of Heaven. How dare Kong Xuan try to stop the advance of our army! He's only committing suicide."

"It seems to me that Heaven is not with us at present. Why else would we face such big obstacles? Don't you think I should withdraw and ask for forgiveness?" King Wu asked.

"No, that won't do, Your Highness! Don't discourage all the nobles just because of Kong Xuan, and don't disappoint your generals and soldiers," Chong Heihu said sincerely.





人神共怒，岂得以孔宣疥癬之辈，以阻天下诸侯之心？时哉不可失！大王切不可灰了将士之心。”武王感谢，命左右治酒，与黑虎共饮数盃。黑虎谢酒而出。子牙与崇侯出来，在中军从新治酒，管待四位。正是：

“五岳”共饮金鸡岭，这场大战实惊人。

话说崇黑虎次日上火眼金睛兽，左右有文聘、崔英、蒋雄；上岭来，坐名只要高继能出来答话。孔宣闻报，随命高继能：“速退西兵。”高继能出营，来见崇黑虎，大喝曰：“你乃是北路反叛，为何也来助西岐为恶？这正是你等会聚在一处，便于擒捉，省得费我等心机。”崇黑虎曰：“匹夫！死活不知！四面八方皆非纣有，尚敢支吾而不知天命也！前日斩黄公子是你？”高继能笑曰：“哪吒、雷震子不过如此，你有何能，敢来问吾？”纵马摇枪直取。崇黑虎手中斧赴面相迎。兽马相交，枪斧并举。未及数合，文聘青骢马跑，五股叉摇；崔英催开黄彪马；蒋雄磕开乌骓马；四将把高继能围住当中。好个高继能，一条枪抵住了四件兵器。三军呐喊，数对旗摇。且说黄飞虎在中军帐，子牙听的鼓声大振，对黄飞虎曰：“黄将军，崇君侯此来为你，你可出营助阵方是。”黄飞虎曰：“末将思子，一时昏聩，几乎忘却了。”随上五色神牛，摇枪杀出营来，大呼：“崇君侯，吾来拿杀子仇人也！”把坐下牛一纵，杀入圈子里来。正应着：

“五岳”特来斗“黑杀”，金鸡岭上立奇功。

且说“五岳”将高继能围住在垓心。好高继能，一条枪遮架拦搅。此正是“五岳斗黑杀”。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



King Wu entertained Chong Heihu, and afterwards, Jiang Ziya invited him and the other three generals to dinner in his tent.

The next day, Chong Heihu rode out on his fiery-eyed monster, with Wen Ping, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong flanking him on both sides. They demanded to see Gao Jineng.

By order of Kong Xuan, Gao Jineng rode out to meet them. He yelled, "You are a rebel from the north. Why have you come here to help West Qi? I'll get you all anyway!"

"You damned fool! Did you murder General Huang Tianhua?"

"Even Nezha and Thunderbolt are in our hands. What can you do about it!" Gao Jineng yelled back.

He attacked Chong Heihu with his lance, and Chong met the assault with his axes. After a few rounds, Wen Ping, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong all joined in. They surrounded their enemy in a circle. Hearing the beating of drums, Jiang Ziya said to Huang Feihu, "Chong Heihu has come at your request. Go and give him a hand."

Prince Huang Feihu got on his ox and rushed out of the camp, shouting, "Marquis Chong! Here I come to get that assassin!"

What was the result of this fresh attack? Please read the next chapter to find out.



## 第七十回

### 准提道人收孔宣

诗曰：

准提菩萨产西方，道德根深妙莫量。荷叶有风生色相，  
莲花无雨立津梁。金弓银戟非防患，宝杵鱼肠另有方。  
漫道孔宣能变化，娑婆树下号明王。

话说高继能与“五岳”大战，一条枪如银蟒翻身，风驰雨骤，甚是惊人。怎见得一场大战，有赞为证，赞曰：

刮地寒风如虎吼，旗幡招展红闪烁。飞虎忙施提芦枪；  
继能枪摇真猛恶。文聘使发托天叉；崔英银锤一似流星落。  
黑虎板斧似车轮；蒋雄神抓金纽索。三军喝彩把旗摇，  
正是“黑杀”逢“五岳”。

且说高继能久战多时，一条枪挡不住五般兵器，又不能跳出圈子，正在慌忙之时，只见蒋雄使的抓把金纽索一软，高继能乘空把马一擡，跳出圈子就走。崇黑虎等五人随后赶来。高继能把蜈蚣袋一抖，好蜈蚣！遮天映日，若骤雨飞蝗。文聘拨回马就要逃走，崇黑虎曰：“不妨。不可着惊，有吾在此。”忙把背后一红葫芦顶揭开了，里边一阵黑烟冒出，烟里隐有千只铁嘴神鹰。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

葫芦黑烟生，烟开神鬼惊。秘传玄妙法，千只号神鹰。  
乘烟飞腾起，蜈蚣当作羹。铁翅如铜剪，尖嘴似金针。  
翅打蜈蚣成粉烂，嘴啄蜈蚣化水晶。今朝“五岳”来相

## *Chapter 70*

### **Subjugation of the Peacock**

Gao Jineng could not last long, fighting against five weapons with his single lance. He ran away, and when he saw the five generals close behind, he jerked his bag wide open, releasing swarms of wasps and centipedes. Wen Ping pulled his horse back as if to run away, but Chong Heihu stopped him. "Don't worry! I'm here. Look what I have!"

He opened the gourd on his back, and thick black smoke poured out. Thousands of fierce hawks then flew into the sky and quickly devoured all the wasps and centipedes.





会，“黑杀”逢之命亦倾。

且说高继能蜈蚣尽被崇黑虎铁嘴神鹰翅打嘴吞，一时吃了个干干净净。高继能大怒：“焉敢破吾之术！”复回来又战。五人又把高继能围住。黄飞虎一条枪裹住了高继能。只见孔宣在营中问掠阵官曰：“高将军与何人对敌？”军政司禀曰：“与五员大将杀在垓心。”孔宣前往，出营门掠阵。见高继能枪法渐乱，才待走马出营，高继能早被黄飞虎一枪刺中肋下，翻鞍坠马。枭了首级，才要掌鼓回营，忽听得后边大呼曰：“匹夫少待回兵！吾来也！”五将见孔宣来至，黄飞虎骂曰：“孔宣！你不知天时，真乃匹夫也！”孔宣笑曰：“我也不对你这等草木之辈讲闲话，你且不要走，放马来！”把刀一晃，直取文聘。崇黑虎忙举双斧砍来，一似车轮，六骑交锋，直杀得：

空中飞鸟藏林内，山里狼虫隐穴中。

孔宣见这五员将兵器来得甚是凶猛，“若不下手，反为他所算。”把背后五道光华往下一晃，五员战将一去毫无踪影，只剩得五骑归营。子牙正坐，只见探事官来报：“五将被孔宣华光撒去，请令定夺。”子牙大惊曰：“虽然杀了高继能，到又折了五将！且按兵不动。”话说孔宣进营，把神光一抖，只见五将跌下，照前昏迷。分付左右监在后营。孔宣见左右并无一将，只得自己一个，也不来请战，只阻住咽喉总路，周兵如何过去得。

话说子牙头运粮草官杨戩至辕门下马，大惊曰：“这时候还在此处？”军政官报与子牙：“督运官杨戩听令。”子牙传令：“令来。”杨戩上帐参谒毕，禀曰：“催粮三千五百，不误



Gao Jineng screamed back at him, "How dare you destroy my magic insects!"

He turned his horse and engaged the five generals again. Huang Feihu played his lance wonderfully, missing the Shang general by only inches. Hearing the war cries outside, Kong Xuan asked, "Whom is General Gao fighting against?"

"He is encircled by five generals," an officer answered.

Kong Xuan rushed to the front, intending to help Gao Jineng. But it was already too late. Thoroughly exhausted, Gao was stabbed in the side by Huang Feihu; he fell from his horse, and his head was sliced off.

As they were just about to return, the five generals heard shouting from behind, "You damned fools! Don't run away! I'm coming."

Kong Xuan rushed over, and Huang Feihu swore at him, "You really are a damned fool. You have no idea what's happening here!"

"There's no use talking to you; you're as low as the weeds and grass at my feet. Turn your ox over to me," Kong Xuan replied with a smile.

Facing the five generals, Kong Xuan thought, "I'd better act first. Any delay may mean danger for me."

He took all five generals with one sweep of the five light beams at his back.

Jiang Ziya was astounded when he heard that all five had been taken. He said, "Though we killed Gao Jineng, we've now lost five generals. What shall we do? We must withdraw from the fight for the time being."

Entering his camp, Kong Xuan waved his light beams to release the prisoners. They were locked up with the others in the back. Now that he was alone, Kong Xuan did not challenge the enemy; he just blocked the way.

When Yang Jian arrived with the food supplies, he was surprised to see the army camped before the mountain. "How is it that we haven't moved forward?" he wondered.



限期，请令定夺。”子牙曰：“督粮有功，当得为国。”杨戩曰：“是何人领兵阻在此处？”子牙把死了黄天化，并擒拿了许多将官的事说了一遍。杨戩听得黄天化已死，正是：

道心推在汪洋海，却把无名上脑来。

杨戩曰：“明日元帅亲临阵前，待弟子看他是甚么东西作怪，好以法治之。”子牙曰：“这也有理。”杨戩下帐，只见南宫适、武吉对杨戩曰：“孔宣连拿黄飞虎、洪锦、哪吒、雷震子莫知去向。”杨戩曰：“吾有照妖鉴在此，不曾送上终南山去。明日元帅会兵，便知端的。”次日，子牙带众门人出营，来会孔宣。巡营军卒报入中军。孔宣闻报出来，复会子牙，曰：“你等无故造反，诬谤妖言，惑乱天下诸侯，妄起兵端，欲至孟津会合天下叛贼，我也不与你厮杀，我只阻住你不得过去，看你如何会得成！待你等粮草尽绝，我再拿你未迟。”只见杨戩在旗门下把照妖鉴照着孔宣，看镜里面似一块五彩装成的玛瑙，滚前滚后。杨戩暗思：“这是个甚么东西？”孔宣看见杨戩照他，孔宣笑曰：“杨戩，你将照妖鉴上前来照，那远远照，恐不明白。大丈夫当明白做事，不可暗地里行藏。我让你照！”杨戩被孔宣说明，便走马至军前，举鉴照孔宣，也是如前一般。杨戩迟疑。孔宣见杨戩不言不语，只管照，心中大怒，纵马摇刀直取。杨戩三尖刀急架相还。刀来刀架，两马盘旋，战有三十回合，未分胜负。杨戩见起先照不见他的本像，及至厮杀，又不见取胜，心下十分焦躁，忙祭起哮天犬在空中。那哮天犬方欲下来奔孔宣，不觉自己身轻飘飘落在神光里面去了。韦护来助杨戩，忙祭降魔杵打将下来。孔宣把神光一撒。杨戩见势头不好，知他身



Hearing that Huang Tianhua had been killed and many others captured, Yang Jian began to fume with rage. "Would you please go to the front tomorrow so we can find out what Kong Xuan really is. We can then deal with him accordingly," he said to Jiang Ziya.

Yang Jian went to see Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji. They told him that Huang Feihu, Hong Jin, Nezha, and Thunderbolt had all been taken by Kong Xuan and that their whereabouts were unknown.

"I still have the Demon Exposing Mirror. I can use it on Kong Xuan when Commander Jiang meets him tomorrow," Yang Jian said.

The next day Jiang Ziya left the camp to meet Kong Xuan.

"Rebel, I won't do any battle with you. I'm going only to block your way until you run out of food supplies," Kong Xuan said to Jiang Ziya.

Standing under the banners, Yang Jian used his mirror to take a close look at Kong Xuan. He saw something in variegated colors, like a piece of agate, rolling to and fro.

When he saw that Yang Jian was looking at him in a mirror, Kong Xuan laughed. "Yang Jian! Come closer, so you can see more clearly. A brave warrior mustn't do things stealthily. Look at me straight through the mirror."

Yang Jian moved closer and held the mirror up to look at Kong Xuan, but he only got the same image as before. Yang Jian stared perplexedly until Kong Xuan finally lost his patience. He spurred his horse forward to attack Yang Jian.

Yang Jian grew anxious after thirty rounds, as he could neither find out the identity of this general nor beat him. He released his Sky Barking Hound, but the hound only floated in the air before falling into the light beams at Kong Xuan's back.

Wei Hu appeared to help Yang Jian with his Monster Subduing Club, but it also disappeared into the red light. Realizing the seriousness of the situation, Yang Jian quickly sped away through a golden light beam.





后的神光利害，驾金光走了。只见韦护的降魔杵早落在红光之中去了。孔宣大呼曰：“杨戩，我知道你有八九玄机，善能变化，如何也逃走了？敢再出来会我？”韦护见失了宝杵，将身隐在旗下，面面相觑。孔宣大呼：“姜尚！今日与你定个雌雄！”孔宣走马来战。子牙后有李靖大怒，骂曰：“你是何等匹夫！焉敢如此猖獗！”摇戟直冲向前，抵住孔宣的刀。二将又战在虎穴龙潭之中。李靖祭起按三十三天玲珑金塔往下打来。孔宣把黄光一绞，金塔落去无踪无影。孔宣叫：“李靖不要走！来擒你也！”正是：

红光一展无穷妙，方知玄内有真玄。

话说金木二吒见父亲被擒，兄弟二人四口宝剑飞来，大骂：“孔宣逆贼！敢伤吾父！”兄弟二人举剑就砍。孔宣手中刀急架相迎。只三合，金吒祭遁龙桩，木吒祭吴钩剑，俱祭在空中，总来孔宣把这些宝贝不为稀罕，只见俱落在红光里面去了。金木二吒见势不好，欲待要走，被孔宣把神光复一撒，早已拿去。子牙见此一阵折了许多门人，子牙怒从心上起，恶向胆边生，“吾在昆仑山也不知会过多少高明之士，岂惧你孔宣一匹夫哉！”催开四不相，怒战孔宣。未及三四合，孔宣将青光往下一撒。子牙见神光来得利害，忙把杏黄旗招展，那旗现有千朵金莲，护住身体，青光不能下来。——此正是玉虚之宝，自比别样宝贝不同。孔宣大怒，骤马赶来。子牙后队恼了邓婵玉，用手把马拎回，抓一块五光石打来。正是：

放手红光出五指，流星一点落将来。

孔宣被邓婵玉一石打伤面门，勒转马望本营逃回。不防龙吉



“Yang Jian, even you, with your ability to effect transformations, run in terror! Come back and meet me again!” Kong Xuan shouted loudly.

Li Jing appeared from behind Jiang Ziya with the next attack. Kong met him with his cutlass, and after several rounds, Li Jing threw his gold pagoda up in the air. But this magic pagoda disappeared like all the others when Kong waved the yellow light.

“Don’t go away, Li Jing! I’ve got you now,” Kong Xuan screamed at him.

When they saw their father being taken captive, both Jinzha and Muzha rushed over. “Damn you, Kong Xuan! How dare you hurt our father!”

Kong Xuan turned his cutlass against them. After just three rounds, Jinzha took out his Invisible Dragon Stake and Muzha his Hooks of Wu, but Kong ignored them. Shrugging his shoulders, his red light beam took both the stake and the hooks. The two generals had no time to run away.

Jiang Ziya was furious to have lost so many disciples. He cried, “Kong Xuan, you bastard! I’m not afraid of you; there are many talented people on Mount Kunlun ready to help us.”

He raced up on his nondescript horse to engage Kong Xuan. When Kong Xuan swept his green light at him, he unrolled the Yellow Apricot Flag, which protected him with thousands of golden lotus flowers. Deng Chanyu then grabbed a pebble and threw it at Kong Xuan’s face. Seriously wounded, Kong Xuan pulled his horse around, intending to flee back to camp, but Princess Long Ji stepped in with her Phoenix Sword and stabbed him in the left shoulder. He cried in pain and nearly fell from his horse. Defeated, he ran back to his camp.



公主祭起鸾飞宝剑，从孔宣背后砍来。孔宣不知，左臂上中了一剑，大叫一声，几乎堕马，负痛败进营来；坐在帐中，忙取丹药敷之，立时全愈。方把神光一抖，收了诸般法宝，仍将李靖、金木二吒监禁，切齿深恨。不表。

子牙鸣金收军回营。只见杨戩已在中军。子牙升帐，问曰：“众门人俱被拿去，你如何到还来了？”杨戩曰：“弟子仗师尊妙法，师叔福力，见孔宣神光利害，弟子预先化金光走了。”子牙见杨戩未曾失利，心上还略觉安妥，然而心下甚是忧闷：“吾师偈中说‘界牌关下遇诛仙’，如何在此处有这枝人马阻住许久？似此如之奈何！”正忧闷之间，武王差小校来请子牙后帐议事。子牙忙至后帐，行礼坐下。武王曰：“闻元帅连日未能取胜，屡致损兵折将，元帅既为诸将之元首，六十万生灵俱悬于元帅掌握。今一旦信任天下诸侯狂悖，陡起议论，纠合四方诸侯，大会孟津，观政于商，致使天下鼎沸，万姓汹汹，糜烂其民。今阻兵于此，众将受羈縻之厄，三军担不测之忧，使六十万军士抛撇父母妻子，两下忧心，不能安生，使孤远离膝下，不能尽人子之礼，又有负先王之言。元帅听孤，不若回兵，固守本土，以待天时，听他人自为之，此为上策。元帅心下如何？”子牙暗思：“大王之言虽是，老臣恐违天命。”武王曰：“天命有在，何必强为！岂有凡事阻逆之理？”子牙被武王一篇言语把心中感动，这一会执不住主意，至前营，传令与先行官：“今夜减灶班师。”众将官打点收拾起行，不敢谏阻。二更时，辕门外来了陆压道人，忙忙急急，大呼：“传与姜元帅！”子牙方欲回兵，军政官报入：“启元帅：有陆压道人在辕门外来见。”子牙忙出迎



Safe in his tent, Kong Xuan cured his wounds and released both the captured weapons and generals onto the ground. He put away the magic weapons and ordered that Li Jing, Jinzha and Muzha be put in prison.

Returning to camp, Jiang Ziya found Yang Jian had already returned. "How did you get away?" he asked.

"Kong Xuan's light beams are difficult to cope with, so I fled in a stream of golden light," Yang Jian replied.

Seeing Yang Jian made him feel a little better. But Jiang was still worried. He said to himself, "I remember what my master told me about the Immortal Slaughtering Trap at Jiepai Pass, but now this Kong Xuan has held us up for such a long time. What can I do?"

Just then King Wu's attendant arrived to invite him to the back camp. King Wu said to him, "We've lost many battles here. You are responsible for 600,000 soldiers; they left their parents, wives, and children to fight for West Qi. I have left my mother and am unable to serve her as a filial son, disobeying the wishes of our late king. Commander, don't you think it's better to withdraw and let the other nobles do as they please?"

"You're right, Your Highness. But I am afraid that would be against the will of Heaven," Jiang Ziya answered hesitatingly.

"If Heaven were with us, we wouldn't have had all this trouble!"

Jiang Ziya was moved by King Wu's words and gradually lost his determination to keep up the fight. He returned to his tent and issued the order, "Reduce the cooking stoves tonight."

This simple order alarmed everyone, because it was then clear that the army would withdraw. Everyone began to pack up, but no one dared to discuss why.

At the second watch that night, Lu Ya arrived in a flurry, "I'll see your commander at once," he told the guards.



接。二人携手至帐中坐下。子牙见陆压喘息不定，子牙曰：“道兄为何这等慌张？”陆压曰：“闻你退兵，贫道急急赶来，故尔如此。”乃对子牙曰：“切不可退兵！若退兵之时，使众门人俱遭横死。天数已定，决不差错。”子牙听陆压一番言语，也无主张，故此子牙复传令：“叫大小三军，依旧扎住营寨。”武王听见陆压来至，忙出帐相见，问其详细。陆压曰：“大王不知天意。大抵天生大法之人，自有大法之人可治。今若退兵，使被擒之将俱无回生之日。”武王听说，不敢再言退兵。且说次日，孔宣至辕门搦战。探马报入中军。陆压上前曰：“贫道一往，会会孔宣，看是如何。”陆压出了辕门，见孔宣全装甲冑。陆压问曰：“将军乃是孔宣？”宣答曰：“然也。”陆压曰：“足下既为大将，岂不知天时人事？今纣王无道，天下分崩，愿共伐独夫。足下以一人欲挽回天意耶？甲子之期乃灭纣之日，你如何阻得住？倘有高明之士出来，足下一旦失手，那时悔之晚矣。”孔宣笑曰：“料你不过草木愚夫，识得甚么天时人事！”把刀一晃，来取陆压。陆压手中剑急架忙迎。步马相交，未及五六合，陆压取葫芦欲放斩仙飞刀；只见孔宣将五色神光望陆压撒来。陆压知神光利害，化作长虹而走；进得营来，对子牙曰：“果是利害，不知是何神异，竟不可解。贫道只得化长虹走来，再作商议。”子牙听见，越加烦闷。孔宣在辕门不肯回去，只要“姜尚出来见我，以决雌雄；不可难为三军苦于此地！”左右报入中军。子牙正没奈何处治。孔宣在辕门大呼曰：“姜尚有元帅之名，无元帅之行，畏刀避剑，岂是丈夫所为！”正在辕门百般辱骂子牙，只见二运官土行孙刚至辕门，见孔宣



Jiang Ziya came out to meet him, and they entered the camp hand in hand. When he noticed that Lu Ya was still panting, Jiang Ziya asked, "Why are you in such a hurry?"

"I heard that you were going to withdraw, so I had to come as quickly as possible. You can't retreat; that would only place your disciples in danger. This has all been destined by Heaven," Lu Ya replied.

Jiang Ziya could not decide what to do, even after listening to Lu Ya. Finally he just issued the order, "The army is to remain camped here awaiting for further orders."

King Wu, learning of Lu Ya's arrival, came out anxiously to meet him. He asked his opinion about the matter.

"You don't understand the will of Heaven. For every skilled general, there's another one that can overcome him. Everyone has his vanquisher. Don't worry about Kong Xuan but think about those generals who have been taken captive. They might all die if you leave now," Lu Ya warned.

King Wu dared not mention their plan to withdraw again. The next morning when Kong Xuan came to challenge them, Lu Ya said to Jiang Ziya, "I'll meet him to find out what he really is."

Dressed in full armor, Lu Ya asked, "Are you General Kong Xuan?"  
"Yes, I am."

"You can't stand up to Heaven on your own. It will be too late for regrets when someone more powerful comes along," Lu Ya said.

"You're as stupid as a log. How can you recognize Heaven above or people on the earth?" Kong Xuan answered with a laugh.

He attacked Lu Ya with his cutlass, and Lu returned the blow with his sword. Lu was just about to uncover his gourd to release the Immortal Beheading Sword when he saw that Kong Xuan's beams coming. Lu Ya turned himself into a rainbow and ran away. He returned to camp and reported to Jiang Ziya, "Oh! This is terrible! I don't know what he is either."

Kong Xuan was unwilling to give up the fight. He yelled loudly, demanding to see Jiang Ziya, but Jiang refused to appear.



口出大言，心下大怒：“这匹夫焉敢如此藐吾元帅！”土行孙大骂：“逆贼是谁？敢如此无理！”孔宣抬头，见一矮子，提条铁棍，身高不过三四尺长，孔宣笑曰：“你是个甚么东西，也来说话？”土行孙也不答话，滚到孔宣的马足下来，举棍就打。孔宣轮刀来架。土行孙身子伶俐，左右窜跳，三五合，孔宣甚是费力。土行孙见孔宣如此转折，随纵步跳出圈子，诱之曰：“孔宣，你在马上不好交兵，你下马来，与你见个彼此，吾定要拿你，方知吾的手段！”孔宣原不把土行孙放在眼里，便以此为实，暗想：“这匹夫合该死！不要讲刀砍他，只是一脚也踢做两断。”孔宣曰：“吾下马来与你战，看你如何！”这个正是：

你要成功扶纣王，谁知反中巧中机。

孔宣下马，执剑在手，往下砍来。土行孙手中棍望上来迎。二人恶战在岭下。且说报马报入中军：“启元帅：二运官土行孙运粮至辕门，与孔宣大战。”子牙着忙，恐运粮官被掳，粮道不通，令邓婊玉出辕门掠阵。婊玉立在辕门。不表。且说土行孙与孔宣步战，大抵土行孙是步战惯了的，孔宣原是马上将官，下来步战，转折甚是不疾，反被土行孙打了几下。孔宣知是失计，忙把五色神光往下撒来。土行孙见五色光华来得疾速神异，知道利害，忙把身子一扭，就不见了。孔宣见落了空，忙看地下。不防邓婊玉发手打来一石，喝曰：“逆贼看石！”孔宣听得响，及至抬头时，已是打中面门，“哎呀”一声，双手掩面，转身就走。婊玉乘机又是一石，正中后颈，着实带了重伤，逃回行营。土行孙夫妻二人大喜，进营见子牙，将打伤孔宣，得胜回营的话说了一遍。子



Arriving at the camp gate with his load of food supplies, Earth Traveler Sun also heard the curses. He yelled angrily, "Bloody bastard! How dare you insult my commander!"

Without another word, Earth Traveler Sun ran over and lifted his cudgel to beat Kong Xuan.

At the sight of a dwarf only three feet high, Kong Xuan laughed. "What a funny creature you are, coming to play with me!"

He waved his cutlass at the dwarf. Earth Traveler Sun was small but very quick. He jumped lithely about, wearing out Kong Xuan after just three rounds.

The dwarf general decided to trick his opponent. He leapt away and said, "Kong Xuan, it's difficult for you to fight me from your horse. Why don't you dismount?"

Kong Xuan thought nothing of the dwarf but did believe that he was speaking honestly. He thought, "That poor dwarf is doomed to die; I can just kick him to death."

Jiang Ziya heard the news that they were fighting out front, and fearing that food transportation might be affected, he sent Deng Chanyu out to offer assistance if needed.

As Earth Traveler Sun was used to fighting on foot and Kong Xuan was a general accustomed to fighting on a horse, Kong Xuan was in a difficult position. He was hit by the dwarf general several times, though not seriously, and soon realized that he'd been tricked. He quickly swept his rays of light towards Sun.

When he saw the colored light, Earth Traveler Sun twisted his body and disappeared. Kong was looking for the missing dwarf when Deng Chanyu unexpectedly threw a stone at him and wounded him seriously in the face. As he turned and ran away, Deng Chanyu hit him with another stone in the neck.

Earth Traveler Sun and Deng Chanyu returned in triumph. Back in his





牙亦喜，对土行孙曰：“孔宣五色神光，不知何物，摄许多门人将佐。”土行孙曰：“果是利害，俟再为区处。”子牙与土行孙庆功。不表。

孔宣坐在营中大恼，把脸被他打伤二次，颈上亦有伤痕，心中大怒，只得服了丹药。次日全愈，上马，只要发石的女将，以报三石之仇。报马报入中军。邓婵玉就欲出阵。子牙曰：“你不可出去。你发石打过他三次，他岂肯善与你甘休？你今出去，必有不利。”子牙止住婵玉，分付：“且悬‘免战牌’出去。”孔宣见周营悬挂“免战牌”，怒气不息而回。且说次日，燃灯道人来至辕门。军政官报入中军：“启元帅：有燃灯道人至辕门。”子牙忙出辕门迎接，入帐行礼毕，尊于上坐。子牙口称“老师”，将孔宣之事一一陈诉过一遍。燃灯曰：“吾尽知之。今日特来会他。”子牙传令：“去了‘免战牌’。”左右报于孔宣。孔宣知去了“免战牌”，忙上马提刀，至辕门请战。燃灯飘然而出。孔宣知是燃灯道人，笑曰：“燃灯道人，你是清静闲人，吾知你道行且深，何苦也来惹此红尘之祸？”燃灯曰：“你既知我道行深高，你便当倒戈投顺，同周王进五关，以伐独夫，如何执迷不悟，尚敢支吾也？”孔宣大笑曰：“我不遇知音，不发言语。你说你道行深高，你也不知我的根脚，听我道来：

混沌初分吾出世，两仪太极任搜求。如今了却生生理，不向三乘妙里游。”

孔宣道罢，燃灯一时也寻思不来：“不知此人是何物得道？”燃灯曰：“你既知兴亡，深通玄理，如何天命不知，尚兀自逆天耶？”孔宣曰：“此是你等惑众之言，岂有天位已定，而反以叛



camp, Kong Xuan sat seething in rage. He hated Deng Chanyu for hitting him twice. After he cured his wounds he was eager to take revenge.

Early the next morning, he demanded to see Deng Chanyu. But Jiang Ziya forbade her to answer the challenge, because he knew how much Kong Xuan hated her. He ordered the board of truce be hung on the gate, and Kong could only return to his camp in disappointment.

Burning Lamp arrived the following day and was informed of what Kong Xuan had done.

"I know very well. I've come today to take care of him," Burning Lamp said.

Jiang Ziya ordered his men to remove the board of truce, and Kong Xuan rushed over at once with a challenge.

Burning Lamp went to meet him. Kong Xuan knew the immortal well and said with a smile, "Burning Lamp! Why have you come to get involved?"

"If you knew anything about me, you would lay down your arms and surrender. You ought to accompany King Wu into the five passes."

Kong Xuan burst into laughter. "You may have magic powers, but you know nothing of mine!" he answered derisively.

Burning Lamp did not know what kind of creature he was confronting. He said, "If you are powerful, why have you ignored Heaven's wishes?"

"All that talk is nonsense. How can you rebels be right and the throne which has been destined by Heaven wrong?"



逆为正之理？”燃灯曰：“你这孽障！你自恃强梁，口出大言，毫无思忖，必有噬脐之悔！”孔宣大怒，将刀一摆，就来战燃灯。燃灯口称：“善哉！”把宝剑架刀，才战二三回合，燃灯忙祭起二十四粒定海珠来打孔宣。孔宣忙把神光一摄，只见那宝珠落在神光之中去了。燃灯大惊；又祭紫金钵盂。只见也落在神光中去了。燃灯大呼：“门人何在？”只听半空中一阵大风飞来，内现一只大鹏鹏来了。孔宣见大鹏鹏飞至，忙把顶上盔挺了一挺，有一道红光直冲牛斗，横在空中。燃灯道人仔细定睛，以慧眼观之，不见明白，只听见空中有天崩地塌之声。有两个时辰，只听得一声响亮，把大鹏鹏打下尘埃。孔宣忙催开马，把神光来撒燃灯。燃灯借着一道祥光，自回营来；见子牙陈说利害，“不知他是何物。”只见大鹏鹏也随至帐前。燃灯问大鹏曰：“孔宣是甚么东西得道？”大鹏曰：“弟子在空中，只见五色祥云护住他的身子，也像有两翅之形，但不知是何鸟。”正议之间，军政官来报：“有一道人至辕门求见。”子牙同燃灯至辕门迎接。见此人挽双抓髻，面黄身瘦，髻上戴两枝花，手中拿一株树枝，见燃灯来至，大喜曰：“道友请了！”燃灯忙打稽首曰：“道兄从何处来？”道人曰：“吾从西方来，欲会东南两度有缘者。今知孔宣阻逆大兵，特来渡彼。”燃灯已知西方教下道人，忙请入帐中。那道人见红尘滚滚，杀气腾腾，满目俱是杀运，口里只道：“善哉！善哉！”来至帐前，施礼坐下。燃灯问曰：“贫道闻西方乃极乐之乡，今到东土，济渡众生，正是慈悲方便。请问道兄尊姓大名？”道人曰：“贫道乃西方教下准提道人是也。前日广成子道友在俺西方，借青莲宝色旗，也会



“You beast! You brag too much!” Burning Lamp cursed.

Kong Xuan waved his cutlass against the immortal, and Burning Lamp met the attack with his sword. After just three rounds, Burning Lamp tossed up his Sea Conquering Pearls, but Kong Xuan took them with his light. In astonishment, Burning Lamp threw up his purple-gold alms bowl, but it too fell into the magic light.

Burning Lamp roared, “Where’s my disciple?”

A huge eagle arrived with a whirl of violent wind. When he saw the eagle, Kong Xuan pushed his helmet and a red beam soared up into the sky. Burning Lamp stared at it with his magic eye but still could not uncover the mysterious general’s identity. A great noise, like cracking and rattling, filled the sky, and about two hours later, the eagle fell to the ground with a thud. Kong Xuan spurred his horse forward, and when he flashed his magic light toward Burning Lamp, the immortal turned himself into an auspicious beam and ran away.

Back in the camp, Burning Lamp told Jiang Ziya how terrible the magic light was. When the eagle returned, the immortal asked him, “Do you know what kind of creature he is?”

“I saw only that his whole body is protected by auspicious clouds in five colors. It seems that he also has two wings, but I don’t know what kind of bird he is.”

Just then it was reported that a Buddha was waiting outside the camp gate.

Both Jiang Ziya and Burning Lamp walked out to meet the visitor. He was thin, had a yellow face, two coils of hair, and two flowers on his head. In his hand was a tree branch.

The visitor said, “I am a Buddha from the Western Region. Kong Xuan is blocking your path, and I have come to take him back with me.”

Burning Lamp invited him to enter the camp. The visitor there could feel in every particle of dust the spirit of destruction.

“I hear that the Western Region is really a paradise. It’s very kind of you to come and help the people in this land. May I know your honorable name, Brother?” Burning Lamp inquired.

“My name is Candi. I had the pleasure of meeting Grand Completion when he went to get the Green Lotus Flag. Kong Xuan is predestined to

过贫道。今日孔宣与吾西方有缘，特来请他同赴极乐之乡。”燃灯闻言大喜曰：“道兄今日收伏孔宣，正是武王东进之期矣。”准提曰：“非但东进，孔宣得道，根行深重，与西方有缘。”准提道罢，随出营来会孔宣。不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



be with us, so I've come to invite him to share our happiness in the Western Region."

Burning Lamp said happily, "We'll be able to march on if you can subdue Kong Xuan today."

"That is surely the best for all," Candi said as he went out to meet Kong Xuan.

If you want to know what happened next, please read the next chapter.





## 第七十一回

### 姜子牙三路分兵

诗曰：

丞相兴兵列战车，虎贲将士实堪夸。诸侯鼓舞皆忘我，黎庶歌讴尽弃家。剑戟森罗飞瑞彩，旌旗掩映舞朝霞。须知天意归仁圣，纵有征诛若浪沙。

话说准提道人上岭，大呼曰：“请孔宣答话！”少时，孔宣出营，见一道人来得蹊跷。怎见得，有偈为证，偈曰：

身披道服，手执树枝。八德池边常演道，七宝林下说三乘。顶上常悬舍利子，掌中能写没文经。飘然真道客，秀丽实奇哉。炼就西方居胜境，修成永寿脱尘埃。莲花成体无穷妙，西方首领大仙来。

话说孔宣见准提道人，问曰：“那道者通个名来！”道人曰：“我贫道与你有缘，特来同你享西方极乐世界，演讲三乘大法，无罣无碍，成就正果，完此金刚不坏之体，岂不美哉！何苦与此杀劫中寻生活耶？”孔宣大笑曰：“一派乱言，又来惑吾！”道人曰：“你听我道。我见你有歌为证，歌曰：

功满行完宜沐浴，炼成本性合天真。天开于子方成道，九戒三皈始自新。脱却羽毛归极乐，超出凡笼养百神。洗尘涤垢全无染，返本還元不坏身。”

孔宣听罢大怒，把刀望道人顶上劈来。准提道人把七宝妙树一刷，把孔宣的大杆刀刷在一边。孔宣忙取金鞭在手，复望

## Chapter 71

### The Offensive on Three Routes

Candi climbed up the mountain and shouted, "Kong Xuan! Would you please come out to see me?"

Kong Xuan rushed out and saw a strange-looking Buddha with a twig in hand.

"May I know your name?" Kong Xuan asked.

"I've come to invite you to the Western Region. You'll become an immortal yet. Why go on killing and plundering," Candi replied.

"You're talking sheer nonsense, obviously trying to cheat me again," Kong Xuan said with a smile.

"Listen, Kong Xuan! Take a bath, refine your nature, and you'll shake off your feathers and get out of the cage with full freedom. Clean off all the dirt to protect what's undecayed inside," Candi responded.

In a rage, Kong Xuan attacked the Buddha's head with his huge cutlass, but it was brushed aside by the twig. Kong Xuan then struck at the Buddha with a gold staff, but he waved his twig once and it fell to the ground.







准提道人打来。道人又把七宝妙树刷来，把孔宣的鞭又刷在一边去了。孔宣止存两只空手，心上着急，忙将当中红光一撒，把准提道人撒去。燃灯看红光撒去了准提道人，不觉大惊。只见孔宣撒去了准提道人，只是睁着眼，张着嘴，须臾间，顶上盔，身上袍甲，纷纷粉碎，连马压在地下，只听得孔宣五色光里一声雷响，现出一尊圣像来，十八只手，二十四首，执定璎珞伞盖，花罐鱼肠，加持神杵、宝锉、金铃、金弓、银戟、幡旗等件。准提道人作偈曰：

“宝焰金光映日明，西方妙法最微精。千千璎珞无穷妙，万万祥光逐次生。加持神杵人罕见，七宝林中岂易行。今番同赴莲台会，此日方知大道成。”

且说准提道人将孔宣用丝绦扣着他颈下，把加持宝杵放在他身上，口称：“道友，请现原形！”霎时间，现出一只目细冠红孔雀来。准提道人坐在孔雀身上，一步步走下岭，进了子牙大营。准提道人曰：“贫道不下来了。”欲别子牙。子牙曰：“老师大法无边。孔宣将吾许多门人诸将不知放于何地？”准提问孔宣曰：“道友今日已归正果，当还子牙众将门人。”孔雀应曰：“俱监在行营里。”准提道人对于牙说过，别了燃灯，把孔雀一扑，只见孔雀二翅飞腾，有五色祥云紫雾盘旋，径往西方去了。

且说子牙同韦护、陆压，领众将至孔宣行营，招降兵卒。众兵见无头领，俱愿投降。子牙许之，忙至后营，放众门人。诸将等出来，至本营拜谢子牙、燃灯毕。次日，崇黑虎等回崇城。燃灯、陆压俱各归山。杨戩仍催粮去讫。子牙传令：“催动人马。”大军过了金鸡岭，一路无词，兵至汜水



Kong Xuan had lost all his weapons. He trained his red beam on the Buddha and took him in it. Seeing this, Burning Lamp grew fearful, but before long, Kong Xuan opened his eyes and mouth, as if stunned. In a wink, his helmet and armor lay on the ground, broken into pieces, and even his horse had fallen from beneath him. An explosion rang out from Kong Xuan's light beams, and Buddha Candi appeared on his back with twenty-four heads and eighteen hands, holding a parasol, flower, fish, club, gold bell, gold bow, silver halberd, pennants, and many other interesting objects. Buddha Candi sang this song:

Golden light under the sun,  
The west is the source of the Way.  
Endless wonders and countless gems,  
Everywhere the auspicious ray.  
Rare magic clubs held in hand,  
Happy Forest of Seven Treasures.  
At the Lotus Terrace we meet,  
Glad to see our achievement.

Then Candi tied a silk ribbon around Kong Xuan's neck, rested the magic club on his body, and said, "Would you show us your original form, please?"

A beautiful peacock, with a red comb and slender eyes, suddenly appeared before him. Candi rode the bird slowly down the mountain.

"I must bid you farewell now. Excuse me, as I won't get down from the peacock," Candi said to Jiang Ziya.

"Thank you for your help, but where are my generals and disciples?"

"You are on the proper way now. Return the generals you have captured to Jiang Ziya," Candi said to Kong Xuan.

"They are all in the back camp," the peacock answered.

Candi passed this on to Jiang Ziya, and bidding farewell to Burning Lamp, he patted the peacock. They flew high up into the air and headed directly toward the Western Region.

Accompanied by Lu Ya, Wei Hu, and his other generals, Jiang Ziya went to Kong Xuan's camp to accept their surrender. They set their generals free and got back their captured weapons.

The next day, Burning Lamp and Lu Ya went on their way, and Chong Heihu returned home. Jiang Ziya ordered the army to march on to Sishui



关。探军报入。子牙传令安营，在关下札住大寨。怎见得：  
营安胜地，寨背孤虚。南分朱雀北玄武，东按青龙西白虎。提更小校摇金铃，传箭儿郎擒战鼓。依山傍水结行营，暗伏强弓百步弩。

子牙升帐坐下，将正印金哪吒为先行，把南宫适补后哨，住兵三日。

且说汜水关韩荣闻孔宣失机，周兵又至关下，与众将上城，看子牙人马着实整齐。但见得：

一团杀气，摆一川铁马兵戈；五彩缤纷，列千杆红旗赤帜。画戟森罗，轻飘豹尾描金五彩幡；兵戈凛冽，树立斩虎屠龙纯雪刃。密密钢锋，如列百万大小水晶盘；对对长枪，似排数千粗细冰淋尾。幽幽画角，犹如东海老龙吟；唧唧提铃，酷似檐前铁马响。长弓初吐月，短弩似飞鳧。锦帐团营如密布，旗幡绣带似层云。道服儒巾，尽是玉虚门客；红袍玉带，都系走马先行。正是：  
子牙东进兵戈日，我武惟扬在此行。

韩荣看子牙大营，尽是大红旗，心下疑惑。韩荣下城，在银安殿与众将官修本，差官往朝歌告急；一边点将上城，设守城之法。且说子牙在中军正坐，有先行官哪吒进前言曰：“兵至关下，宜当速战。师叔住兵不战，何也？”子牙曰：“不可。吾如今三路分兵：一路取佳梦关；一路取青龙关；金二位总兵以取二关，非才德兼全、英雄一世者不足以当此任。吾知非黄将军、洪将军不可。”二将至前。子牙曰：“二位可拈一阄，分为左右。”二将应喏。子牙把二阄放在桌上，只见黄飞虎拈的是青龙关；洪锦拈的是佳梦关。二将各挂红簪花，

Pass, where they were to have a three day rest. He appointed Nezha to lead the vanguard and Nangong Kuo to guard the back camp.

Han Rong mounted the pass wall to survey the great West Qi army. He was perplexed that all their flags were red. He sent an urgent report to Zhaoge for reinforcements and mobilized all his generals and soldiers to guard the pass.

Nezha went to Jiang Ziya's tent and said, "We should attack the pass as soon as possible. Why have you stopped us here?"

"We're in danger of being attacked from both the left and right. I'll deal with Sishui Pass, but I need two capable commanders to attack the Good Dream Pass and the Green Dragon Pass. I believe that our only choices are Huang Feihu and Hong Jin," Jiang Ziya replied.

Both Huang Feihu and Hong Jin were willing to take up the new posts. Huang was chosen by lot to attack the Good Dream Pass. Jiang





每一路分兵十万。黄飞虎的先行是邓九公；黄明、周纪、龙环、吴谦、黄飞豹、黄飞彪、黄天禄、黄天爵、黄天祥、太鸾、邓秀、赵升、孙焰红，择吉日祭旗，往青龙关去了。洪锦的先行是季康；南宫适、苏护、苏全忠、辛免、太颠、閔夭、祁恭、尹籍，分兵十万，往佳梦关去了。离了汜水关，一路上浩浩军威，人喊马嘶，三军踊跃，过了些重山重水，县府州衙，哨马报入中军：“前至佳梦关了。”洪锦传令安营。立了大寨。三军呐喊。洪锦升帐，众将参谒。洪锦曰：“兵行百里，不战白疲。俟次日谁先取关走一遭？”季康应声：“愿往。”洪锦许之。季康次日，上马提刀，至关下搦战。佳梦关主将胡升、胡雷、徐坤、胡云鹏正议退兵，只见报马入帅府：“启总兵：周将请战。”胡升问：“谁人退周将走一遭？”傍有徐坤领令，全装甲冑出关。季康认得是徐坤，大呼曰：“徐坤，今日天下尽属周主，汝何为尚逆天命而强战也？”徐坤大骂：“反贼！谅尔不过一走使耳，你有何能，敢出大言！”纵马摇枪直取。季康手中刀赴面交还。两马相交，大战五十余合。季康口中念念有词，只见顶上一道黑气，黑气中现一狗头。正酣战之间，徐坤被狗夹脸一口，徐坤未曾防备，怎经得一口，不觉手中枪法大乱，早被季康手起一刀，挥于马下，枭了首级，掌鼓进营报功。不题。且说报马报与胡升，说徐坤阵亡。胡升心下甚是不乐。次日，左右又报：“有周将讨战。”胡升令胡云鹏走一遭。云鹏领令上马，提斧出得关来，看来将乃是苏全忠。胡云鹏大骂：“反贼！天下反完了，你也不可反。你姐姐是朝阳宠后，这等忘本！你好生坐在马上，待吾来擒你！”二马拨开，枪斧并举，大战龙



Ziya decorated them with red flowers and gave them each 100,000 men. The generals assigned to Huang Feihu were Deng Jiugong, Huang Ming, Zhou Ji, Long Huan, Wu Qian, Huang Feibao, Huang Feibiao, Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue, Huang Tianxiang, Tai Luan, Deng Xiu, Zhao Sheng and Sun Yanhong. The generals assigned to Hong Jin were Ji Kang, Nangong Kuo, Su Hu, Su Quanzhong, Xin Mian, Tai Dian, Hong Yao, Qi Gong, and Yin Ji.

Hong Jin and his army got to the Good Dream Pass several days later. After they had set up camp, he told his generals, "We are exhausted after such a long march. Rest today and we'll do battle tomorrow."

"I will challenge them tomorrow, Commander," General Ji Kang answered quickly.

The next day, Ji Kang rode to the pass wall. Hu Sheng, commander of the Good Dream Pass, was in conference with Hu Lei, Xu Kun, and Hu Yunpeng when the challenge was reported. Xu Kun rode out to meet the challenger.

Ji Kang knew him and yelled, "Xu Kun! The whole kingdom has already turned to Zhou. Why are you so obstinate as to fight against the will of Heaven?"

"You damned rebel!" Xu Kun swore bitterly.

He set his horse towards Ji Kang, who met the attack with his cutlass. After about fifty rounds, Ji Kang murmured something, and black smoke rose from the top of his head. A fierce dog rushed out and bit Xu Kun on the face, sending him into a panic. Ji Kang stabbed him, and when he fell, the Zhou general cut his head off and returned in triumph.

Hu Sheng was greatly displeased to hear of his death. He sent Hu Yunpeng out the next day. Seeing Su Quanzhong before him, he swore, "Damn you, Rebel! Your sister is the queen. How can you be so ungrateful! Don't go away. I'll take care of you."



潭虎穴。战有三四十合，胡云鹏不觉汗流。正是：

征云惨淡遮红日，海沸江翻神鬼愁。

胡云鹏那里是苏全忠对手，只杀得马仰人翻，措手不及，被苏全忠大呼一声，把胡云鹏刺于马下，枭了首级，回营见洪锦报功。哨马又报入关中，报与主将曰：“胡云鹏失机阵亡。”胡升与胡雷曰：“贤弟，今两阵连失二将，天命可知。况今天下归周，非止一处，俺弟兄商议，不若归周，以顺天时，亦不失豪杰之所为。”胡雷曰：“长兄之言差矣！我等世受国恩，享天子高爵厚禄，今当国家多事之秋，不思报本，以分主忧，而反说此贪生之语。常言道：‘主忧臣辱。’以死报国，理之当然。长兄切不可提此伤风败俗之言！待吾明日定要成功。”胡升默然无言可对。各归营中歇息。

次日，胡雷奋勇出关，向周营讨战。报马报入中军，有南宫适出马。胡雷大呼：“南宫适慢来！”胡雷手中刀望南宫适顶门上砍来。南宫适手中刀劈面相迎。两马相交，双刀并举，一场大战。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

二将凶猛俱难并，棋逢对手如枭獍。来来去去手无停，下下高高心不定。一个扶王保驾弃残生；一个展土开疆拼性命。生前结下杀人冤，两虎一伤方得胜。

南宫适与胡雷战有三四十合，被南宫适卖个破绽，胡雷用力一刀砍入南宫适怀里来，马头相交，南宫适让过刀，伸开手把胡雷生擒活捉，拿至军前，辕门下马，径进中军报功。洪锦传令：“推来。”乃至众士卒将胡雷推至帐前，立而不跪。洪锦曰：“既被擒来，何得抗拒？”胡雷大骂曰：“反国逆贼！你不思报国大恩，反助恶成害，真狗彘也！吾恨不能食汝之

After forty rounds, Hu Yunpeng was utterly exhausted. Su Quanzhong stabbed him to death and cut his head off.

Hu Sheng said to Hu Lei, "Brother! We've already lost two generals. I'd like to obey the will of Heaven and surrender."

"No, we can't do that. We have been honored with high posts. We must do our best to return the king's grace. How can we be so ungrateful as to surrender? How can we be so cowardly? Don't bring this up again. I'll meet the enemy tomorrow."

They returned silently to their own quarters, and the next day, Hu Lei rode out to challenge the Zhou army. Nangong Kuo met him. After thirty rounds, Nangong tricked Hu into slashing at him with all his might, but he evaded the blow, grasped Hu, and threw him over his horse. Nangong Kuo carried the captured general before Hong Jin, but Hu Lei refused to kneel.

"As a captive, you have no means of offering resistance," Hong Jin said.







肉！”洪锦大怒，命：“推出去，斩讫报来！”立时将胡雷推出辕门，须臾斩首号令。洪锦方与南宫适贺功。才饮酒，旗门来报：“胡雷又来讨战。”洪锦大怒，传令：“把报事官斩了！为何报事不明？”左右一声，把报事官绑出去。报事官大呼：“冤枉！”洪锦令推回来，问其故：“你报事不明，理当该斩，为何口称冤枉？”报事官曰：“老爷，小人怎敢报事不明，外面果然是胡雷。”南宫适曰：“待末将出营，便知端的。”洪锦沉吟惊异。只见南宫适复上马出营来见，果是胡雷。南宫适大骂曰：“妖人焉敢以邪术惑吾！不要走！”纵马舞刀，二将复战。其如胡雷本事实不如南宫适，未及三十合，依旧擒胡雷下马，掌鼓进营，来见洪锦。洪锦大喜，将胡雷推至军前。洪锦不知何术，两边大小众将纷纷乱议，惊动后营。龙吉公主上中军帐来问其缘故。洪锦将胡雷的事说了一遍。龙吉公主叫把胡雷推至帐前一看，公主笑曰：“此乃小术，有何难哉！”叫把胡雷顶上头发分开，公主取三寸五分乾坤针放在胡雷泥丸宫钉将下去，立时斩了。公主曰：“此乃替身法，何足为奇！”正是：

因斩胡雷招大祸，子牙难免这场非。

话说洪锦斩了胡雷，号令在辕门。有报马报入关中：“启总兵爷：二爷阵亡，号令辕门。”胡升大惊：“吾弟不听吾言，故有丧身之厄。料成汤文武不足镇服天下诸侯。”令中军官，修纳降文书，“速献关寨，以救生民涂炭。”只见左右将纳降文表修理停当，只等差人纳款。

且说洪锦正与众将饮酒贺功，忽报：“佳梦关差官纳款。”洪锦传：“令来。”将差官令至军前，呈上文表。洪锦



"In my eyes, you are but a lowly pig. You received the king's grace but never thought of returning it and you are now fighting against His Majesty. I hate myself because I can't eat your flesh and drink your blood," Hu Lei cursed.

"Take him out and cut his head off," Hong Jin ordered.

Hu Lei was decapitated, and his head hung on a bamboo pole as a warning to the enemy.

Hong Jin and Nangong Kuo were toasting each other when it was reported that "Hu Lei has returned for combat."

In great anger, Hong Jin ordered, "Behead the messenger at once. How dare he give us a false report!"

"Let me go and find out the truth first," Nangong Kuo proposed.

When he rode out, he saw that it really was Hu Lei. The two fought vigorously, and after less than thirty rounds, Hu Lei was taken again. Hong Jin did not know how to deal with him this second time. As the news spread quickly around the camp, Princess Long Ji went to see Hong Jin about the matter. When Hong told her the story, the princess asked him to bring Hu Lei before her. She made a close inspection and said with a smile, "He's used a very simple magic. I can take care of it easily."

She ordered that Hu Lei's hair be parted down the middle and a needle ten centimeters long be nailed in, making his escape impossible. Hu Lei was then beheaded a second time, and he died immediately.

When Hu Lei's death was reported to Hu Sheng, he said, "There is no one to blame as he didn't take my advice. Most of the kingdom has gone over already, and I might as well join them."

He ordered his secretary to write a pledge of surrender, saving the people from further suffering. Hong Jin read the pledge and told the mes-



展开观看：

“镇守佳梦关总兵胡升泊佐贰众将等，谨具降表与奉天讨逆元帅麾下：升等仕商有年，岂意纣王肆行不道，荒淫无度，见弃于天，仇溯土庶，皇天不保，特命我周武王以张天讨。兵至佳梦关，升等不自度德，反行拒敌，致劳元戎奋威，斩将殄兵，莫敢抵当。今已悔过改行，特修降表，遣使纳款，恳鉴愚悃，俯容改过之恩，以启更新之路，正元帅不失代天宣化之心，吊民伐罪之举，则升等不胜感激待命之至。谨表。”

洪锦看罢，重赏差官：“我也不及回书，明日早进关安民便了。”来使回关，见胡升，禀曰：“洪总兵准其纳款，不及回书，明早进关。”胡升令左右将佳梦关上竖起周家旗号，打点户口册，集库藏钱粮，俟明早交割事宜。正打点间，忽报：“府外来有一穿红的道姑，要见老爷。”胡升不知就里，传令：“请来。”少时，道姑从中道而进，甚是凶恶，腰束水火绦，至殿前打稽首。胡升欠身还礼，问曰：“师父至此，有何见谕？”道姑曰：“吾乃是丘鸣山火灵圣母是也。汝弟胡雷是吾徒弟，因死于洪锦之手，吾特下山来为他复仇。汝系他同胞弟兄，不念手足之情，君臣之义，乃心向外人，而反与仇敌共立哉！”胡升听得此语，忙下拜，口称：“老师，弟子实是不知，有失迎迓，望乞恕罪。弟子非是事仇，自思兵微将寡，才浅学疏，不足以当此任；况天下纷纷，俱思归周，纵然守住，终是要属他人，徒令军民日夜辛苦，弟子不得已纳降，不过救此一郡生灵耳，岂是贪生畏死之故。”火灵圣母曰：“这也罢了。只我下山，定复此仇。你可将城上还立起成



senger, "I don't have time to give a written reply. We welcome all of you to join us. Tell your commander that we'll enter the pass tomorrow morning."

After the messenger delivered his report, Hu Sheng rushed around making preparation. He ordered the flags of the Shang Dynasty be taken down and those of the Zhou Dynasty be hoisted high. He also made the census and revenue books available for inspection.

Just then it was reported that a female Taoist had arrived and was waiting outside the gate.

When the visitor was ushered in, Hu Sheng noticed her extremely fierce expression. She moved forward and offered a greeting.

Reciprocating it, Hu Sheng asked, "Dear Master! What can I do for you?"

"I'm Mother Fiery Spirit from Mount Qiuming. Hu Lei was my disciple. I've come to revenge his death, but why do you sympathize with his enemies and not fight back yourself?" Mother Fiery Spirit reprimanded him.

Hu Sheng immediately knelt and said, "Master! Forgive me. I don't wish to serve the enemy, but I only have a handful of soldiers and fewer generals. Furthermore, I'm not qualified for this post. I was compelled to surrender for the sake of the people. I am not afraid to die," Hu Sheng replied.



汤旗号，我自有处。”胡升没奈何，又拽起成汤旗来。洪锦正打点明日进关，只见报马来报：“佳梦关依旧又拽起成汤旗号。”洪锦大怒：“这匹夫敢如此反复戏侮我！等待明日拿匹夫碎尸万段，以泄此恨！”且说火灵圣母问胡升曰：“关中有多少人马？”胡升曰：“马步军卒有二万。”圣母曰：“你挑选三千名出来与我，自下教军场教演，方有用处。”胡升即选三千熊彪大汉。圣母命三千人俱穿大红，赤足，披发，背上帖一红纸葫芦，脚心里俱书写“风火”符印，一只手执刀，一只手执幡，下教场操演。不题。且说次日，洪锦命苏全忠关下讨战。胡升挂“免战牌”。全忠只得回营，见洪锦曰：“胡升挂‘免战’二字，末将只得暂回。”洪锦怒气不息。只见火灵圣母操演人马，至一七方才精熟。那日，火灵圣母命关上去“免战牌”，一声炮响，关中军马齐出。火灵圣母骑金眼驼，与炼成火龙兵，隐在后面；先令胡升在前讨战。胡升得令，一马当先，来至军前，要洪锦出来答话。探马报入关中：“关上有胡升讨战。”洪锦闻报，上马提刀，带左右将官出营。一见胡升，大骂：“逆贼！反复无常，真乃狗彘匹夫！敢来戏侮于我！”纵马舞刀直取。胡升未及还手，只见火灵圣母催开金眼驼，用两口太阿剑，大呼：“洪锦不要走！吾来也！”洪锦仔细定睛，见道姑连人带兽，似一块火光滚来。洪锦问曰：“来者何人？”圣母答曰：“吾乃丘鸣山火灵圣母是也。你敢将吾门下胡雷杀了！吾今特来报仇。你可速速下马受死，莫待吾怒起，连累此十万生灵，死无噍类也。”道罢，将太阿剑飞来直取。洪锦手中大杆刀火速忙迎。未及数合，洪锦方欲用旗门遁以诛火灵圣母，但不知圣母头上戴一



"That's all right. Let's forget about that now, but we must hoist the flags of the Shang Dynasty again. I'll go and see what I can do," Fiery Spirit said.

With no alternative, Hu Sheng had to order that the flags be changed back. When this was reported to Hong Jin, he was seethed with rage. "Bastard! How dare you! I'll slice you to pieces tomorrow," he swore.

"How many men do you have guarding this pass?" Fiery Spirit asked Hu Sheng.

"About 20,000 infantry soldiers," he replied.

"Pick out 3,000 men for special training."

She ordered the 3,000 soldiers to be dressed all in red, barefooted, and to wear their hair loose over the neck and shoulders. They each carried a paper gourd, had the spell "wind and fire" written on their soles, and held a cutlass in one hand and a pennant in the other. They were drilled for seven days.

When everything was ready, Fiery Spirit ordered the removal of the board of truce. She mounted her golden-eyed camel, and with the Fire Dragon troops behind her, she asked Hu Sheng to give a challenge.

Hong Jin mounted his horse and went to meet Hu Sheng. "You bastard! How dare you come and fool me again," Hong Jin cursed.

He attacked Hu Sheng with his cutlass, but before Hu Sheng had the chance to resist, Mother Fiery Spirit suddenly charged with two ancient Tai E Swords. "Hong Jin! Don't run away. Here I come," she shouted.

Mounted her beast, she resembled a ball of fire. Hong Jin asked, "Who are you?"

"I'm Mother Fiery Spirit from Mount Qiuming. I've come to get revenge for my disciple, Hu Lei. You'd better get down to meet your death so the innocent don't have to suffer."



顶金霞冠，冠上有一淡黄包袱盖住，火灵圣母将包袱挑开，现出十五六丈金光，把火灵圣母笼罩当中。他看的见洪锦，洪锦看不见他，早被圣母把洪锦照前甲上一剑砍来。洪锦躲不及，已劈开锁子连环甲。洪锦“哎呀”一声，带伤而逃。火灵圣母招动三千火龙兵冲杀进大营来。好利害！怎见得好火，有赋为证，赋曰：

炎炎烈焰迎空燎，赫赫威风遍地红。却似火轮飞上下，犹如火鸟舞西东。这火不是燧人钻木，又不是老君炼丹，非天火，非野火，乃是火灵圣母炼成一块三昧火；三千火龙兵勇猛，风火符印合五行，五行生化火煎成，肝木能生心火旺，心火致令脾土平，脾土生金金化水，水能生木彻通灵，生生化化皆因火，火燎长空万物荣。烧倒旗门无拦搅，抛锣弃鼓各逃生，焦头烂额尸堆积，为国亡身一旦空。正是：洪锦灾来难躲避，龙吉公主也遭凶。

话说洪锦身着剑伤，逃进大营，不意火灵圣母领三千火龙兵冲杀进营，势不可当。三军叫苦，自相践踏，死者不计其数。龙吉公主在后营，听得一声三军呐喊，急上马拎剑，走出中军，见洪锦伏鞍而逃，洪锦不及对龙吉公主说金光的事，龙吉公主只见火势冲天，烈烟卷起，正欲念咒救火，又见一块金光奔至面前。公主不知所以，忙欲看时，被火灵圣母举剑照龙吉公主劈来。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。

After a few rounds, Hong Jin tried to use his flag gate, but Fiery Spirit only tore off the yellow covering on her golden haze coronet, releasing a ray of golden light 150 feet long. When she hid herself in the light, she was invisible to the outside, and though Hong Jin could not see her, she could see him.

She stabbed at Hong Jin, wounding him, and he turned to run away. Her Fire Dragon soldiers rushed into the Zhou camp, and a violent fire raged all around. Many lives were lost.

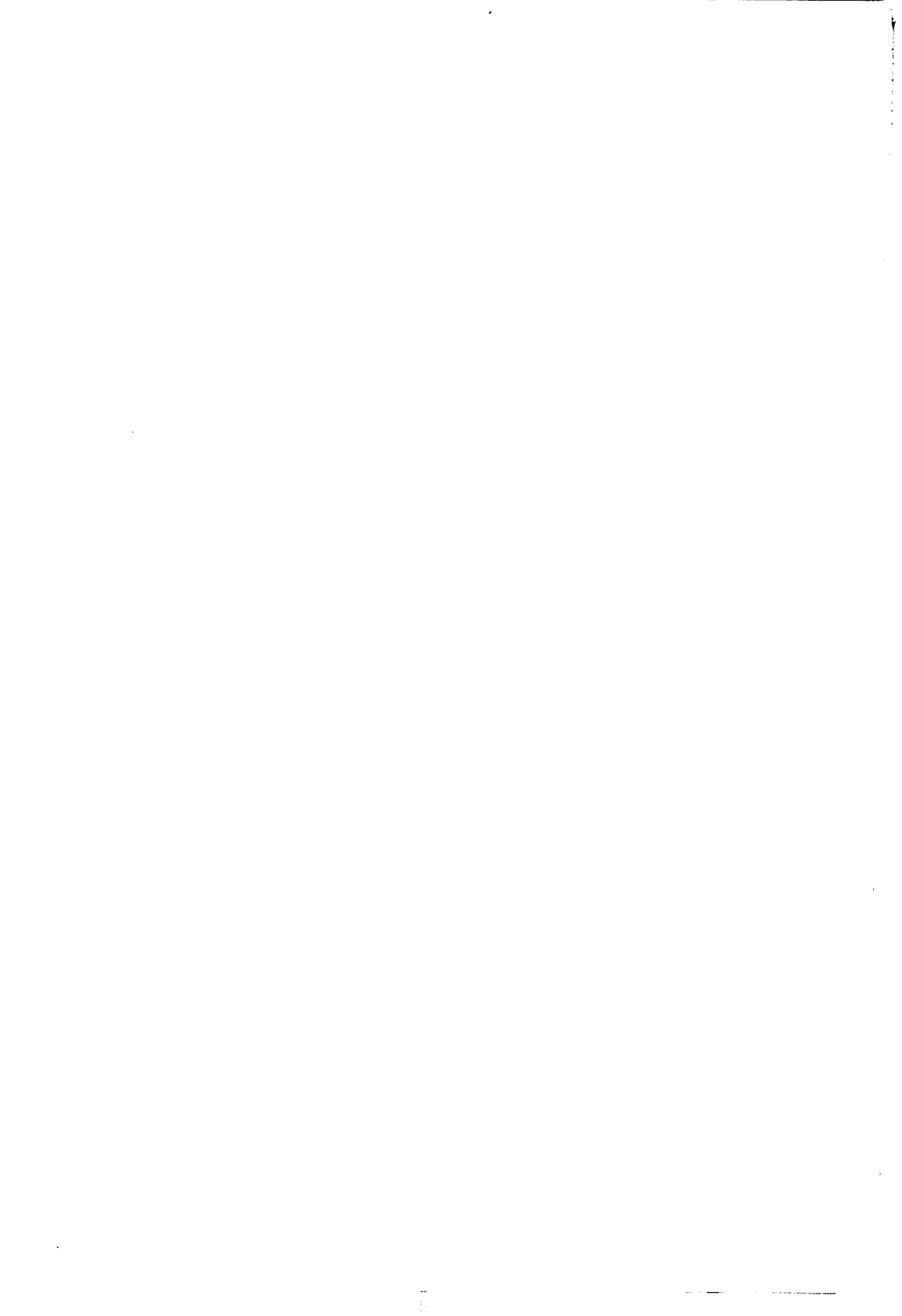
Princess Long Ji was in the back camp when she saw the soldiers running for their lives. She rode quickly into the central camp where she saw her husband crumpled on the saddle, racing away. She was confused by how the fire had started. By then dense smoke already filled the sky.

She was reciting spells to put out the fire when a ball of golden light rolled over. She did not know what it was, but as she looked up, Fiery Spirit suddenly stabbed her.

What became of the princess? Please read the next chapter to find out.











## 第七十二回

### 广成子三谒碧游宫

诗曰：

三叩玄关礼大仙，贝宫珠阙自天然；翔鸾对舞瑶阶下，驯鹿呦游碧槛前。无限干戈从此肇，若多诛戮自今先。周家旺气承新命，又有西方正觉缘。

话说龙吉公主被火灵圣母一剑砍伤胸膛，大叫一声，拨转马望西北逃走。火灵圣母追赶有六七十里方回。这一阵洪锦折兵一万有余。胡升大喜，迎接火灵圣母进关。只见龙吉公主乃蕊宫仙子，今堕凡尘，也不免遭此一剑之厄。夫妻带伤而逃，至六七十里，方才收集败残人马，立住营寨。忙取丹药敷搽，一时即愈。忙作文书申姜元帅求援兵。且说差官非一日至子牙大营。子牙正坐，忽报：“洪锦遣官，辕门等令。”子牙命：“令来。”差官进营叩头，呈上文书。子牙展开，书曰：

“奉命东征佳梦关副将洪锦顿首百拜，奉书谨启大元戎麾下：末将以樗栌之才，谬叨重任，日夜祇惧，恐有不克负荷，有伤元帅之明。自分兵抵关之日，屡获全胜，因获逆命守关裨将胡雷，擅用妖术，被末将妻用法斩之。岂意彼师火灵圣母欲图报仇，自恃道术。末将初会战时，不知深浅，悞中他火龙兵冲来，势不可解，大折一阵。乞元帅速发援兵，以解倒悬。非比寻常可以缓视之也。谨此上书，不胜翘望之至！”

## Chapter 72

### Grand Completion at the Green Touring Palace

Stabbed in the breast, Princess Long Ji screamed, turned her horse, and ran towards the northwest. Fiery Spirit gave up the pursuit after seventy *li*. Hu Sheng was delighted to see Hong Jin defeated and lose thousands of soldiers. He happily received Fiery Spirit back to the pass.

Princess Long Ji and Hong Jin finally stopped running. They gathered their troops together and hurriedly treated their wounds with medicine. They sent a messenger to Jiang Ziya reporting the serious situation and asking for reinforcements.





话说子牙看罢大惊：“这事非我自去不可！”随分付李靖：“暂署大营事务，候我亲去走一遭。尔等不可违吾节制，亦不可与汜水关会兵；紧守营寨，毋得妄动，以挫军威。违者定按军法！等我回来，再取此关。”李靖领令。

子牙随带韦护、哪吒，调三千人马，离了汜水关，一路上滚滚征尘，重重杀气。非止一日，来到佳梦关安营，不见洪锦的行营。子牙升帐坐下。半晌，洪锦打听子牙兵来，夫妻方移营至辕门听令。子牙把洪锦令人中军。夫妻上帐请罪，备言失机折军之事。子牙曰：“身为大将，受命远征，须当见机而作，如何造次进兵，致有此一场大败！”洪锦启曰：“起先俱得全功，不意一道姑名曰火灵圣母，有一块金霞，方圆有十余丈罩住他；未将看不见他，他反看得见我。又有三千火龙兵，似一座火焰山一拥而来，势不可当；军士见者先走，故此失机。”子牙听罢，心下甚是疑惑：“此又是左道之术。”正思量破敌之计。且说火灵圣母在关内连日打探洪锦不见抵关。只见这一日报马报入城来，报：“姜子牙亲提兵至此。”火灵圣母曰：“今日姜尚自来，也不负我下山一场。我必亲会他，方才甘心。”别了胡升，忙上金眼驼，暗带火龙兵出关，至大营前，坐名要子牙答话。报马报入中军：“禀元帅：火灵圣母坐名请元帅答话。”子牙即便带了众将佐，点炮出营。火灵圣母大呼曰：“来者可是姜子牙么？”子牙答曰：“道友，不才便是。道友，你既在道门，便知天命。今纣恶贯盈，天人共怒，天下诸侯，大会孟津，观政于商，你何得助纣为虐，逆天行事，独不思得罪于天耶！况吾非一己之私，奉玉虚符命，以恭行天之罚，道友又何必逆天强为之哉。不



Jiang Ziya grew worried when he heard the news. He decided to go himself and asked Li Jing to act as provisional commander. He ordered, "You must obey my command! Don't go out and do battle with Sishui Pass. Protect the camp with all your might. Anyone who acts against my order is liable to be court-martialed."

Jiang Ziya then took Wei Hu, Nezha, and 3,000 soldiers and left Sishui Pass.

When he arrived at the Good Dream Pass, Hong Jin and Long Ji came to meet him. They admitted their mistakes and asked for forgiveness.

"As commander, you ought to be more careful. Look at this mess," Jiang Ziya reprimanded.

"We won at first, but then Mother Fiery Spirit came. When she hides in her golden light, she is invisible. Besides, she has 3,000 Fire Dragon soldiers who are more dangerous than a mountain of flames," Hong Jin reported.

Fiery Spirit was delighted to hear that Jiang Ziya had arrived. "How lucky I am to meet him!" she sneered.

She mounted her golden-eyed camel and went out to demand to see Jiang Ziya. When Jiang appeared, she asked, "Jiang Ziya, is that you?"

"Yes. You should know the will of Heaven, but you are only offending it by helping King Zhou continue in his evil ways. By order of the Jade Emptiness Palace, I've come here to punish the tyrant. We welcome you to join us."



若听吾之言，倒戈纳降，吾亦体上天好生之仁，决不肯糜烂其民也。”火灵圣母笑曰：“你不过仗那一番惑世诬民之谈，愚昧下民。料你不过一钓叟，贪功网利，鼓弄愚民，以为己功，怎敢言应天顺人之举。且你有多大道行，自恃其能哉！”催开金眼驼，仗剑来取。子牙手中剑火速忙迎。左有哪吒，登开风火轮，使开火尖枪，劈胸就刺；韦护持降魔杵，掉步飞腾；三人战住圣母。正是：

大蟒逞威喷紫雾，蛟龙奋勇吐光辉。

火灵圣母那里经得起三人恶战，枪杵环攻，抽身回走，用剑挑开淡黄袱，金霞冠放出金光，约有十余丈远近。子牙看不见火灵圣母，圣母提剑把子牙前胸一剑。子牙又无铠甲抵挡，竟砍开皮肉，血溅衣襟，拨转四不相望西逃走。火灵圣母大呼曰：“姜子牙！今番难逃此厄也！”三千火龙兵一齐在火光中呐喊。只见大辕门金蛇乱搅，围子内个个遭殃，火焰冲于霄汉，赤光烧尽旌旗，一会家副将不能顾主将。正是：刀砍尸体满地，火烧人臭难闻。且言火灵圣母赶子牙，又赶至无躲无闪之处，前走的一似猛弩离弦；后赶的好似飞云掣电。子牙一来年纪高大，剑伤又疼，被火灵圣母把金眼驼赶到至紧至急之处，不得相离。子牙正在危迫之间，又被火灵圣母取出一个混元锤望子牙背上打来，正中子牙后心，翻斤斗，跌下四不相去了。火灵圣母下了金眼驼，来取子牙首级。只听得一人作歌而来：

“一径松竹篱扉，两叶烟霞窗户。三卷‘黄庭’，四季花开处。新诗信手书，丹炉自己扶。垂纶菱浦，散步溪山处。坐向蒲团调动离龙虎。功夫，披尘远世途，狂



“You speak nonsense! You were only a fisherman, and now you’re greedy for riches!”

Fiery Spirit slashed at Jiang Ziya with her sword. Jiang resisted and was joined by Nezha and Wei Hu. She certainly could not fight against three generals. She turned and ran, removing the cover on her coronet and releasing a golden light about thirty-three meters long. Hidden inside the light, she stabbed Jiang Ziya in the breast. He had no armor and was seriously wounded. Bleeding profusely, he turned and ran westward.

“Jiang Ziya! You can’t escape,” Fiery Spirit shouted after him.

Meanwhile, the 3,000 Fire Dragon soldiers had rushed into the Zhou camp and set it on fire. Flames shot into the sky. Many soldiers were burnt to death, and the ground was littered with corpses. A terrible stench filled the air. Fiery Spirit chased close behind Jiang Ziya. Old and wounded, Jiang could not run fast. As the distance narrowed between them, Fiery Spirit threw a hammer at Jiang, hitting him heavily on the back and knocking him onto the ground. Overjoyed, Fiery Spirit dismounted and approached her victim.





呼，啸傲兔和乌。”

话说火灵圣母方去取子牙首级，只见广成子作歌而至。火灵圣母认得是广成子，大呼曰：“广成子！你不该来！”广成子曰：“吾奉玉虚符命，在此等你多时矣！”火灵圣母大怒，仗剑砍来。这一个轻移道步，那一个急转麻鞋，剑来剑架，剑锋斜刺一团花，剑去剑迎，脑后千团寒雾滚。火灵圣母把金霞冠现出金光来；他不知广成子内穿着扫霞衣，将金霞冠的金光一扫全无。火灵圣母大怒曰：“敢破吾法宝，怎肯干休！”气呼呼的仗剑来砍，恶恨恨的火焰飞腾，复来战广成子。广成子是犯戒之仙，他如今还存甚么念头？忙取番天印祭在空中。正是：

圣母若逢番天印，道行千年付水流。

话说广成子将番天印祭起在空中，落将下来，火灵圣母那里躲得及，正中顶门，可怜打的脑浆迸出。——一灵也往封神台去了。广成子收了番天印，将火灵圣母的金霞冠也收了，忙下山头，涧中取了水，葫芦中取了丹药，扶起子牙，把头放在膝上，把丹药灌入子牙口中，下了十二重楼。有一个时辰，子牙睁开二目，见广成子，子牙曰：“若非道兄相救，姜尚必无再生之理。”广成子曰：“吾奉师命，在此等候多时。你该有此厄。”把子牙扶上四不相，广成子曰：“子牙前途保重！”子牙深谢广成子：“难为道兄救吾残喘，铭刻难忘！”广成子曰：“我如今去碧游宫缴金霞冠去。”

子牙别了广成子，回佳梦关来。正行之际，忽然一阵风来，甚是利害，只见摧林拔树，搅海翻江。子牙曰：“好怪！此风如同虎至一般！”话未了时，果然见申公豹跨虎而来。子牙曰：“狭路相逢这恶人，如何是好？也罢，我躲了他罢。”子



Just then she heard someone singing. It was Master Grand Completion. She yelled furiously, "Grand Completion! You shouldn't be here at this moment!"

"By order of the Jade Emptiness Palace, I've been waiting here just for you," Grand Completion replied.

Fiery Spirit stabbed at Grand Completion with her sword, and the two struggled fiercely. Fiery Spirit let out her golden light, unaware that Grand Completion had on a Haze-Sweeping Shirt. All her light was absorbed.

She stabbed desperately at Grand Completion, but he still had his Heaven Overturning Stamp. Hitting her from above, her skull was broken, and brains and blood splattered everywhere. She died at once, and her soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Grand Completion took her coronet and then went down the slope to get some water from the stream. He mixed the water with some pills of elixir from his gourd, and placing Jiang's head on his own knee, put the solution in his mouth. Jiang Ziya opened his eyes and said, "Brother, you saved me from death."

"By my master's order, I was waiting here for you. You were destined to meet this calamity."

Helping him back onto the nondescript horse, Grand Completion bade him farewell. "Be careful. I'm going to leave you now, Brother. I must go to the Green Touring Palace to return the golden haze coronet," Grand Completion said.

After he had left, Jiang Ziya continued on his way to the Good Dream Pass. Suddenly a violent wind arose, uprooting trees on both sides.

"A tiger must be approaching," Jiang Ziya thought.

In a wink, a tiger, ridden by Shen Gongbao, his deadly enemy, appeared before him.

"I would meet that wicked man right on this narrow path! What shall I do? I best hide myself," Jiang murmured.



牙把四不相一兜，欲隐于茂林之中。不意申公豹先看见了子牙，申公豹大呼曰：“姜子牙！你不必躲，我已看见你了！”子牙只得强打精神，上前稽首，子牙曰：“贤弟那里来？”申公豹笑曰：“特来会你。姜子牙，你今日也还同南极仙翁在一处不好，如今一般也有单自一个撞着我！料你今日不能脱吾之手！”子牙曰：“兄弟，我与你无仇，你何事这等恼我？”申公豹曰：“你不记得在昆仑，你倚南极仙翁之势，全无好眼相看。先叫你，你只是不睬；后又同南极仙翁辱我，又叫白鹤童儿衔我的头去，指望害我。这是杀人冤仇，还说没有！你今日金台拜将，要伐罪吊民，只怕你不能兵进五关，先当死于此地也！”把宝剑照子牙砍来。子牙手中剑架住，曰：“兄弟，你真乃薄恶之人。我与你同一师尊门下，抵足四十年，何无一点情意！及至我上昆仑，你将幻术愚我，那时南极仙翁叫白鹤童儿难你，是我再三解释，你到不思量报本，反以为仇，你真是无情无义之人也。”申公豹大怒：“你二人商议害我，今又巧语花言，希图饶你。……”话未了，又是一剑。子牙大怒：“申公豹！吾让你，非是怕你，恐后人言我姜子牙不存仁义，也与你一般。你如何欺我太甚！”将手中剑来战申公豹。大抵子牙伤痕才愈，如何敌得过申公豹。只见子牙前心牵扯，后心疼痛，拨转四不相，望东就走。申公豹虎踏风云，赶来甚紧。正是子牙：

方才脱却天罗难，又撞冤家地网来。

话说申公豹赶上子牙，打一开天珠来，正中子牙后心。子牙坐不住四不相，滚下鞍鞦。申公豹方下虎来欲害子牙，不防山坡下坐着夹龙山飞龙洞惧留孙道人，——他也是奉玉虚之



He spurred his nondescript horse off the path and tried to hide himself in the thick forest, but it was already too late.

“Jiang Ziya! I have seen you!”

Jiang Ziya could only move forward to greet him, “How are you, Brother? Where have you come from?”

Shen Gongbao smiled. “I’ve come here especially for you. Jiang Ziya, how unlucky you are today to meet me alone! The Immortal of the South Pole cannot possibly come to your aid now. How can you escape!”

“Brother! Why do you hate me so much?”

“Don’t you remember that day on Mount Kunlun? You ignored me when I called your name. You insulted me and ordered White Crane Lad to kill me. Can you deny this? You are the commander now, but I’m afraid you won’t have a chance to enter the five passes. You’ll die here!”

Shen Gongbao slashed at Jiang Ziya, who resisted and argued in return, “Brother! We studied under the same master, eating and sleeping together for over forty years. The Immortal of the South Pole ordered White Crane Lad to punish you, it was I who saved you from death. But now you only repay me with enmity!”

Growing even angrier, Shen Gongbao swore, “It was all a conspiracy between the two of you. Don’t think you can trick me again in the hope that I’ll forgive you!”

Shen Gongbao attacked Jiang Ziya, who responded angrily, “Shen Gongbao! Don’t think that I am afraid of you! I only fear that others will think I’ve wronged you the same way that you have wronged me! Don’t insult me too much.”

Jiang Ziya continued the battle, but he was old and already seriously wounded. He finally had to turn his nondescript horse and run away. Shen chased closely behind him.

Drawing nearer and nearer, Shen Gongbao threw his Sky Breaking Pearl, hitting Jiang on the back and knocking him to the ground.



命在此等候申公豹的，——乃大呼曰：“申公豹少得无礼！我在此！我在此！”连叫两声。申公豹回头看见惧留孙，吃了一惊。他知道惧留孙利害，自思：“不好！”便欲抽身上虎而走。惧留孙笑曰：“不要走！”手中急祭捆仙绳，将申公豹捆了。惧留孙分付黄巾力士曰：“与我拿至麒麟崖去，等吾来发落。”黄巾力士领法旨去讫。且说惧留孙下山，挽扶子牙，靠石倚松，少坐片时；又取粒丹药服之，方才复旧。子牙曰：“多感道兄救我！伤痕未好，又打了一珠，也是吾七死三灾之厄耳。”子牙辞了惧留孙，上了四不相，回佳梦关。不表。且说惧留孙纵金光法往玉虚宫来，行至麒麟崖，见黄巾力士等候。惧留孙行至宫门前，少时，见一对提幡，一对提炉，两行羽扇分开。怎见得元始天尊出玉虚宫光景，有诗为证：

鸿濛初判有声名，炼得先天聚五行。顶上三花朝北阙，胸中五气透南溟。群仙队里称元始，玄妙门庭话未生。漫道香花随辇毂，沧桑万劫寿同庚。

话说惧留孙见掌教师尊出玉虚宫来，俯伏道傍，口称：“老师万寿！”元始天尊曰：“好了！你们也拨开云雾，不久返本還元。”惧留孙曰：“奉老师法旨，将申公豹拿至麒麟崖，听候发落。”元始听说，来至麒麟崖，见申公豹捉在那里。元始曰：“业障！姜尚与你何仇，你邀三山五岳人去伐西岐？今日天数皆完，你还在中途害他，若不是我预为之计，几乎被你害了。如今封神一切事体要他与我代理，应合佐周；你如今只要害他，使武王不能前进。”命黄巾力士：“揭起麒麟崖，将这业障压在此间，待姜尚封过神再放他！”——看官：元始天尊岂不知道要此人收聚“封神榜”上三百六十五位正神，



Just then, Krakucchanda appeared and shouted, "Shen Gongbao! Stop!"

Under orders from the Jade Emptiness Palace, Krakucchanda had been waiting here for Shen Gongbao for some time. Fully aware that there was no way he could deal with the immortal, Shen Gongbao turned and ran.

"Don't go away, Shen Gongbao!" the immortal called after him.

He threw up his Immortal Binding Rope and easily captured Shen.

"Take Shen Gongbao to the Unicorn Cliff for me. I'll deal with him when I get back," Krakucchanda ordered his yellow-scarved genii.

He went back down the mountain and helped Jiang Ziya lean against a pine tree. When he had been treated with elixir, Jiang recovered quickly and said, "Thank you very much, Brother. This must be my fate!"

He then bade farewell to the immortal, got on his nondescript horse, and returned to the Good Dream Pass.

Krakucchanda rode on a golden light beam back to Mount Kunlun. When he arrived, he saw Heavenly Primogenitor leaving the Jade Emptiness Palace with eight attendants, holding pennants, incense burners, parasols, and feather fans. Krakucchanda knelt on the side of the road and cheered, "Long live my dear master."

"Very well, my disciple," Heavenly Primogenitor greeted him.

"As you ordered, I have taken Shen Gongbao. He's being held at the Unicorn Cliff, awaiting your judgment, Master," Krakucchanda reported.

Heavenly Primogenitor and his party went directly to the Unicorn Cliff. "You beast! What grudge do you hold against Jiang Ziya?" he cursed. He then ordered his genii, "Pick up the Unicorn Cliff and put Shen Gongbao inside. Let him go after Jiang Ziya has created the gods."

Heavenly Primogenitor knew that Shen Gongbao was to gather the



故假此难他，恐他又起波澜耳。黄巾力士来拿申公豹要压在崖下。申公豹口称：“冤枉！”元始曰：“你明明的要害姜尚，何言冤枉？也罢，我如今把你压了，你说我偏向姜尚；你如再阻姜尚，你发一个誓来。”申公豹发一个誓愿，只当口头言语，不知出口有愿。公豹曰：“弟子如再要使仙家阻当姜尚，弟子将身子塞了北海眼！”元始曰：“是了。放他去罢。”申公豹脱了此厄而去。惧留孙也拜辞去了。

且说广成子打死了火灵圣母，径往碧游宫来。这个原是截教教主所居之地。广成子来至宫前。好所在！怎见得，有赋为证：

烟霞凝瑞霭，日月吐祥光。老柏青青与山岚，似秋水长天一色；野卉绯绯同朝霞，如碧桃丹杏齐芳。彩色盘旋，尽是道德光华飞紫雾；香烟缥缈，皆从先天无极吐清芬。仙桃仙果，颗颗恍若金丹；绿杨绿柳，条条浑如玉线。时闻黄鹤鸣皋，每见青鸾翔舞。红尘绝迹，无非是仙子仙童来往；玉户常关，不许那凡夫俗女闲窥。正是：无上至尊行乐地，其中妙境少人知。

话说广成子来至碧游宫外，站立多时。里边开讲“道德玉文”。少时，有一童子出来。广成子曰：“那童子，烦你通报一声，宫外有广成子求见老爷。”童儿进宫，至九龙沉香辇下禀曰：“启老爷：外有广成子至宫外，不敢擅入，请法旨定夺。”通天教主曰：“着他进来。”广成子进至里边，倒身下拜：“弟子愿师叔万寿无疆！”通天教主曰：“广成子，你今日至此，有何事见我？”广成子将金霞冠奉上：“弟子启师叔：今有姜尚东征，兵至佳梦关，此是武王应天顺人，吊民伐罪，纣



Gods according to the List of Creations, but he wanted to scare him off doing anything reckless, like trying to murder Jiang Ziya again.

Shen Gongbao screamed in anger, "You can't do that! It's not fair!"

"You've not been wronged in the least. Well, you may say that I'm not fair if I place you under this cliff, but if I set you free, you'll try to hurt Jiang Ziya again. Will you promise to leave him alone?" Heavenly Primogenitor demanded.

Shen Gongbao never imagined that an oath would hold true for all time. He quickly uttered, "If I trouble Jiang Ziya again, may my body be thrown into the North Sea."

Heavenly Primogenitor released Shen and allowed him to go on his way. Krakucchanda then bade farewell to his master and returned to his mountain.

Grand Completion took the magic coronet to the Green Touring Palace, the home of the Grand Master of Heaven. This was the center of Jie Taoism, just as Mount Kunlun was the home of the Chan sect.

Reaching the palace, Grand Completion gazed around at the wonderful scenery. Old cypress, peach, and apricot trees covered the cliff. The songs of yellow orioles and white cranes filled the air.

Grand Completion waited outside the jade gates of the palace for a long time, as a lecture on the doctrines was being given within. At last, a lad opened the gate and walked out of the palace.

"Dear lad! Would you please report to your master that Grand Completion is waiting beyond the gate, begging to pay his respects?" Grand Completion said.

The lad approached the Nine Dragon Lignaloe Platform and reported Grand Completion's arrival.

"Let him in," Grand Master of Heaven ordered.

When admitted, Grand Completion knelt and kowtowed, saying, "Long live my uncle!"

"Why do you come here today, Grand Completion? What news do you have for me?" Grand Master of Heaven asked.

"Master, Jiang Ziya has begun to attack King Zhou, but Fiery Spirit





恶贯盈，理当剿灭。不意师叔教下门人火灵圣母仗此金霞冠，前来阻逆大兵，擅行杀害生灵，糜烂士卒：头一阵剑伤洪锦并龙吉公主；第二阵又伤姜尚，几乎丧命。弟子奉师尊之命，下山再三劝慰。彼仍恃宝行凶，欲伤弟子。弟子不得已，用了番天印，不意打中顶门，以绝生命。弟子特将金霞冠缴上碧游宫，请师叔法旨。”通天教主曰：“吾三教共议封神，其中有忠臣义士上榜者；有不成仙道而成神道者；各有深浅厚薄，彼此缘分，故神有尊卑，死有先后。吾教下也有许多。此是天数，非同小可，况有弥封，只至死后方知端的。广成子，你与姜尚说，他有打神鞭，如有我教下门人阻他者，任凭他打。前日我有谕帖在宫外，诸弟子各宜紧守，他若不听教训的，是自取咎，与姜尚无干。广成子去罢！”广成子出了碧游宫，正行，只见诸大弟子在傍听见掌教师尊分付“凡吾教下弟子不遵训诲，任凭他打”，众弟子心下甚是不服，俱在宫外等他。傍边有最不忿的是金灵圣母、无当圣母，对众言曰：“火灵圣母是多宝道人门下，广成子打死了他，就是打我等一样。他还来缴金霞冠，明明是欺蔑吾教！我等师尊又不察其事，反分付任他打，是明明欺吾等无人物也！”比时恼了龟灵圣母，大呼曰：“岂有此理！他打死火灵圣母，还来缴金霞冠！待吾去拿了广成子，以泄吾等之恨！”龟灵圣母仗剑砍来，大呼：“广成子不要走！我来了！”广成子站住，见他来的势局不同，广成子陪笑迎来，问曰：“道兄有何分付？”龟灵圣母曰：“你把吾教门人打死，还到此处来卖精神，分明是欺蔑吾教，显你等豪强，情殊可恨！不要走！我与火灵圣母报仇！”仗剑砍来。广成子将手中剑架住，言曰：“道



joined the enemy forces and wounded Hong Jin and Princess Long Ji with her golden haze coronet in the first battle and wounded Jiang in the second. By order of my master, I left my mountain to meet her, but disregarding my exhortations, she tried to kill me with her coronet. I was compelled to use my Heaven Overturning Stamp, and I knocked her to her death. I have come to apologize and hand over her coronet to the palace. I now await your orders, Uncle,” Grand Completion reported.

“Many of my disciples are on the List of Creations. Grand Completion, tell Jiang Ziya, he can beat any of my disciples that dare oppose him with his Staff for Beating Gods. I have already warned them so he won’t be held to blame. You may leave now,” Grand Master of Heaven told him.

Emerging from the palace, Grand Completion found nearly all the Grand Master’s disciples waiting for him. They had overheard what their leader had said to him and were ready to make trouble for him.

Extremely annoyed, Mother Golden Spirit and Mother Invincible declared before the crowd, “As Fiery Spirit was a disciple of Multi-Precious Immortal, her death is an outrage to us all. Now Grand Completion comes to add insult to injury, and our master encourages him.”

Mother Spiritual Tortoise shouted loudly, “It’s ridiculous! He killed Fiery Spirit and now dares to come here to return her coronet. I’ll take him and get revenge for our sister.”

Mother Spiritual Tortoise rushed towards the immortal, sword in hand, yelling loudly, “Don’t go away, Grand Completion. I’m coming.”

Grand Completion stopped to greet Mother Spiritual Tortoise and smiling, asked, “Sister! What can I do for you?”

“How dare you insult us! You killed Fiery Spirit, but I’ll get revenge for her now!” Spiritual Tortoise screamed.



友差矣！你的师尊共立‘封神榜’，岂是我等欺他，是他自取。也是天数该然，与我何咎！道友言替他报仇，真是不谙事体！”龟灵圣母大怒曰：“还敢以言语支吾！”不由分说，又是一剑。广成子正色言曰：“我以礼谕你，你还是如此，终不然我怕你不成？纵是我师长，也只好让你两剑。”龟灵圣母又是一剑。广成子大怒，面皮通红，仗宝剑相还。两家未及数合，广成子祭番天印打来。龟灵圣母见此印打下来，招架不住，忙现原身，乃是个大乌龟。——昔苍颉造字而有龟文羽翼之形，就是那时节得道的；修成人形，原是一个母乌龟，故此称为“圣母”。——彼时金灵圣母、多宝道人见龟灵圣母现了原身，各人面上俱觉惭愧之极，甚是追悔。只见虬首仙、乌云仙、金光仙、金牙仙大呼：“广成子，你欺吾教，不是这等！”数人发怒，一齐仗剑赶来。广成子自思：“吾在他家里，身入重地；自古道‘单丝不成线’，反为不美。”广成子又见他们重重围来，“不若还奔碧游宫，见他师尊，自然解释。”乃不等通报，径自投台下来。通天教主曰：“广成子，你又来有甚话说？”广成子跪而启曰：“师叔分付，弟子领命下山。不知师叔门人龟灵圣母同许多门人来为火灵圣母复仇。弟子无门可入，特来见师叔金容，求为开释！”通天教主命水火童儿：“把龟灵圣母叫来！”少时，龟灵圣母至法台下行礼，口称：“弟子在。”通天教主曰：“你为何去赶广成子？”龟灵圣母曰：“广成子将吾教下门人打死，反上宫来献金霞冠，分明是欺蔑吾教！”通天教主曰：“吾为掌



Grand Completion met the assault with his sword and said, "Sister! You're wrong. She was on the List of Creations as agreed to by your master and mine. Her death was destined by fate, by the will of Heaven, and by her own behavior. It's not my fault at all. You would be stupid to seek revenge."

"Dare you speak such nonsense!" Spiritual Tortoise screamed, angrier than before. She slashed again at the immortal.

Grand Completion could not hold back any longer. He resisted the assault with his own sword, and after several rounds, tossed up his Heaven Overturning Stamp. Spiritual Tortoise knew she could not stand up to this powerful weapon and was compelled to transform into her original shape, a big tortoise which had lived since the beginning of time. Mother Golden Spirit and Multi-Precious Immortal were ashamed to see their sister exposed as this ugly female tortoise. Fairy Dragon Head, Fairy Black Cloud, Fairy Golden Light, and Fairy Golden Teeth all roared, "Grand Completion! How dare you insult us like this!"

They all raced after the immortal, who quickly calculated his odds, "How can I fight them here in their own den. As a single thread can't be twisted into a string, I certainly should not take them on alone in this place."

With no other way out, Grand Completion intruded into the Green Touring Palace without waiting to be admitted and knelt before the Grand Master of Heaven again.

"Why have you come back, Grand Completion?"

"By your order, I left this mountain to return home, but before I'd gotten very far, Spiritual Tortoise and your other disciples attacked me in revenge for the death of Fiery Spirit. I've come back to ask for your help, as I don't know how to deal with them," Grand Completion complained.

Grand Master of Heaven immediately ordered Water Lad and Fire Lad to send for Spiritual Tortoise. When she had entered and knelt before him, he asked, "Why did you chase Grand Completion and stir up trouble for him?"

"Grand Completion cruelly killed Fiery Spirit. In cunningly returning her coronet, he clearly came to insult our religion," Spiritual Tortoise replied.



教之主，反不如你等？此是你不守我谕言，自取其祸，大抵俱是天数，我岂不知？广成子把金霞冠缴来，正是尊吾法旨，不敢擅用吾宝，尔等仍是狼心野性，不守我清规，大是可恶！将龟灵圣母革出宫外，不许入宫听讲！”遂将龟灵圣母革出。两傍恼了许多弟子，私相怨曰：“今为广成子，反把自家门弟子轻辱，师尊如何这样偏心？”大家俱不忿，尽出门来。只见通天教主分付广成子：“你快去罢！”广成子拜谢了教主，方才出了碧游宫，只见后面一起截教门人赶来，只叫：“拿住了广成子以泄吾众人之恨！”广成子听得着慌：“这一番来得不善！欲径往前行，不好；欲与他抵敌，寡不敌众；不若还进碧游宫，才免得此厄。”看官：广成子你原不该来！这正应了“三谒碧游宫”。正是：

沿潭撒下钩和线，从今钓出是非来。

话说广成子这一番慌慌张张跑至碧游宫台下，来见通天教主，不知吉凶如何，且听下回分解。



"I'm the head of this religion, but you think you have authority over me! You have disobeyed my instructions and deserve any disaster which falls on your head. Grand Completion behaved himself properly. He honored us by returning the golden haze coronet; he did not keep it for his own body. How rude and savage you are by comparison! You are henceforth dismissed from this palace. You are not permitted to listen to my lectures from this day on," Grand Master of Heaven announced for all to hear.

The dismissal of Mother Spiritual Tortoise for the sake of Grand Completion annoyed the other disciples. They left the palace greatly disappointed.

"You may leave now, Grand Completion," Grand Master of Heaven ordered.

Grand Completion thanked the master and left the Green Touring Palace. Outside, he saw many disciples of Jie Taoism waiting for him. They roared as one, "Catch Grand Completion! Don't let him get away this time. We must get revenge!"

Grand Completion could not fight against so many alone. With no other way out, he had to return to the Green Touring Palace a third time.

Please read the next chapter to find out what happened to Master Grand Completion.



## 第七十三回

### 青龙关飞虎折兵

诗曰：

流水滔滔日夜磨，不知乌兔若奔梭。才看苦海成平陆，  
又见苍桑化碧波。熊虎将军飡白刃，英雄俊杰饮干戈。  
迟蚤只因天数定，空教血泪滴婆娑。

话说广成子三进碧游宫，又来见通天教主，双膝跪下。教主问曰：“广成子，你为何又进我宫来？全无规矩，任你胡行！”广成子曰：“蒙师叔分付，弟子去了；其如众门人不放弟子去，只要与弟子并力。弟子之来，无非敬上之道；若是如此，弟子是求荣反辱。望老师慈悲发付弟子，也不坏师叔昔日三教共立‘封神榜’的体面。”通天教主听说，怒曰：“水火童子快把这些无知畜生唤进宫来！”只见水火童子领法旨出宫来，见众门人，曰：“列位师兄，老爷发怒，唤你等进去。”众门人听师尊呼唤，大家没意思，只得进宫来见。通天教主喝曰：“你这些不守规矩的畜生！如何师命不遵，恃强生事？这是何说！广成子是我三教法旨扶助周武，这是应运而兴。他等逆天行事，理当如此。你等如何还是这等胡为？情实可恨！”直骂得众人们面面相觑，低头不语。通天教主分付广成子曰：“你只奉命而行，不要与这些人计较。你好生去罢！”广成子谢过恩，出了宫，径回九仙山去了。后有诗叹曰：

广成奉旨涉先天，只为金霞冠欲还。不是天心原有意，



## Chapter 73

### Huang Feihu Defeated at the Green Dragon Pass

The third time Grand Completion knelt before the Grand Master of Heaven, the religious leader was slightly annoyed. "Grand Completion! Why do you keep intruding here?" he questioned.

"Your disciples blocked my way again. I came here only thinking of honoring you, but it has led to such a misunderstanding. I beg for mercy and hope that you'll allow me to leave in peace."

"Water Lad and Fire Lad, tell those beasts to come and see me," the Grand Master of Heaven ordered angrily.

"You beasts!" the spiritual leader cried when his disciples had knelt before him. "How dare you disobey my instructions! Grand Completion is obliged to help King Wu. It has been destined by Heaven. Your riot is ridiculous."

They all lowered their heads in silence.

"Grand Completion! You may leave now. Don't mind them," the Grand Master of Heaven ordered.

Grand Completion kowtowed and thanked the master. He left the palace and returned directly to Nine Immortal Mountain.





界牌关下有“诛仙”。

话说通天教主曰：“姜尚乃是奉吾三教法旨，扶佐应运帝王。这三教中都有在‘封神榜’上的。广成子也是犯教之仙。他就打死火灵圣母，非是他来寻事做；这是你去寻他。总是天意。尔等何苦与他做对？连我的训谕不依，成何体面！”众门人未及开言，只见多宝道人跪下禀曰：“老师圣谕，怎敢不依？只是广成子太欺吾教，妄自尊大他的玉虚教法，辱骂我等不堪，老师那里知道？到把他一面虚词当做真话，被他欺逛过了。”通天教主曰：“‘红花白藕青荷叶，三教原来总一般。’他岂不知，怎敢乱说欺弄。你等切不可自分彼此，致生事端。”多宝道人曰：“老师在上，弟子原不敢说，只今老师不知详细，事已至此，不得不以直告。他骂吾教是左道傍门，‘不分披毛带角之人，湿生卵化之辈，皆可同群共处。’他视我为无物，独称他玉虚道法为‘无上至尊’，所以弟子等不服也。”通天教主曰：“我看广成子亦是真实君子，断无是言。你们不要错听了。”多宝道人曰：“弟子怎敢欺逛老师！”众门人齐曰：“实有此语。这都可以面质。”通天教主笑曰：“我与羽毛相并，他师父却是何人？我成羽毛，他师父也是羽毛之类。这畜生这等轻薄！”分付金灵圣母：“往后边取那四口宝剑来。”少时，金灵圣母取一包袱，内有四口宝剑，放在案上。教主曰：“多宝道人过来，听我分付：他既是笑我教不如，你可将此四口宝剑去界牌关摆一诛仙阵，看阐教门下那一个门人敢进吾阵！如有事时，我自来与他讲。”多宝道人请问老师：“此剑有何妙用？”通天教主曰：“此剑有四名：一曰‘诛仙剑’，二曰‘戮仙剑’，三曰‘陷仙剑’，四曰‘绝



“As all three religions have agreed, Jiang Ziya will found the Zhou Dynasty. Each sect is represented on the List of Creations. Grand Completion was destined to break the commandment on killing, but Fiery Spirit’s death was her own fault. Don’t quarrel with him any more,” Grand Master of Heaven reprimanded his disciples.

No one spoke until Multi-Precious Immortal knelt and said, “We dare not disobey your instructions. It’s just that Grand Completion shows no respect for us. He brags about his magic powers and insults us in such a way that we can hardly stand it. How can you believe what he told you?”

“Just as the red flowers, white roots, and green leaves all grow on the same lotus, our three religions have originated from one family. Grand Completion knows that and doesn’t speak wildly. You shouldn’t cause trouble,” the Grand Master of Heaven said.

“Dear Master! I dared not tell you what he said before, but I must tell you the truth now. He says our religion is heretical and pagan, a side-house of the mansion, and your disciples are mostly hatched from eggs, with horns and feathers and long hair all over,” Multi-Precious Immortal said.

“Grand Completion is an honest man. He wouldn’t speak like that. You mustn’t wrong him,” the Grand Master of Heaven replied.

“I dare not lie to you, Master,” Multi-Precious Immortal answered.

“What he says is true. We all stand as his witnesses,” the disciples said in unison.

“If I was born with feathers and horns, what is his master! What a beast to say such things!” the Grand Master of Heaven said, growing angry.

“Fetch the four precious swords from the rear,” he ordered Mother Golden Spirit.

When she returned, he said, “Come here, Multi-Precious. Do as I’ll tell you. Go to Jiepai Pass and set up an Immortal Slaughtering Trap. We’ll just see who in Chan Taoism dares venture in. I’ll take over if there’s any emergency.”

“May we know, Master, why these four swords are called ‘precious’?” Multi-Precious asked.

“Their names are Fairy Slaughtering Sword, Fairy Slaying Sword, Fairy Entrapping Sword, and Fairy Exterminating Sword. Hang them over



仙剑’。此剑倒悬门上，发雷振动，剑光一晃，任从他是万劫神仙，也难逃得此难。”昔曾有赞，赞此宝剑，赞曰：

非铜非铁又非钢，曾在须弥山下藏。不用阴阳颠倒炼，岂无水火淬锋芒？“诛仙”利，“戮仙”亡，“陷仙”到处起红光；“绝仙”变化无穷妙，大罗神仙血染裳。

话说通天教主将此剑付与多宝道人，又与一诛仙阵图，言曰：“你往界牌关去，阻住周兵，看他怎样对你。”多宝道人离了高山，径往界牌关去。不表。

且说子牙自从遇申公豹得脱回佳梦关来。周营内差人四下里打探子牙消息。只见哪吒登风火轮，四下找寻。子牙正策四不相前行，恰好遇着韦护。韦护大喜，上前安慰子牙曰：“自火龙兵冲散人马，急切难以收聚；不意火灵圣母赶师叔去。那些兵原是左道邪术，见没有主将作法驱逐，一时火光灭了，并无有一些手段。被我等收回兵，复一阵杀的他干净。只是不见师叔。如今哪吒等四路去打探，不期弟子在此得遇尊颜，我等不胜幸甚！”有探事官飞奔中军，来报于洪锦。洪锦远迎。子牙进辕门，众将欢喜。收点人马，计算又折了四五千军卒。子牙把火灵圣母、申公豹的事对众军将细说一遍。众人贺喜。子牙分付整顿人马，离佳梦关五十里。住了三日，子牙方整点士卒，一声炮响，复至关下安营。且说胡升在关内不知火灵圣母吉凶，又听得报马来报，子牙兵复至关下，胡升大惊：“姜尚兵又复至，火灵圣母休矣！”急与佐贰官商议：“前日已是降周，平空而来火灵圣母搅扰这场，使吾更变一番，虽然胜了姜子牙二阵，成得甚事！如今怎好相见？”傍有佐贰官王信曰：“如今元帅把罪名做在火灵圣母身



the gate and that will be the end of any intruder." Multi-Precious left the mountain and made his way directly to Jiepai Pass with the swords and a diagram of the trap.

Even since the departure of Jiang Ziya from the Good Dream Pass, an air of anxiety prevailed in the camp of the Zhou army. Sentinels were ordered to look everywhere for Jiang Ziya. One day, Wei Hu was lucky to find the commander.

He rushed up and said, "Dear uncle! Since our army was so scattered by the Fire Dragon troops, we found it difficult to fall in immediately, but when Fiery Spirit left, they lost their magic powers and were wiped out. We have sent out Nezha and many others to look for you as well."

When the happy news reached headquarters, Hong Jin rushed out to meet Jiang. They had won the battle at a high cost, with about 5,000 casualties. Jiang Ziya told his generals what had happened to him, and celebratory feasts were held.

Jiang Ziya reorganized the army and three days later, they marched forward and set up camp before Good Dream Pass once more.

Hu Sheng did not know what had happened to Fiery Spirit, but he knew the situation was serious. He said to Wang Xin, "We submitted our pledge to surrender to Jiang Ziya several days ago, but the negotiations were spoiled by Fiery Spirit. Though she won several battles, that's all absolutely useless now. What shall we do now?"



上，彼自不罪元帅也。这也无妨。”胡升曰：“此言也有理。”就差王信具纳降文书，前往周营来见子牙。有军政官报入中军：“启元帅：关内差官下文书，请令定夺。”子牙传令：“令来。”王信来至中军，呈上文书。子牙展于案上观看，书曰：

“纳降守关主将胡升暨大小将佐等，顿首上书于西周大元帅麾下：不职升谬承司阍，镇守边关，谨慎小心，希图少尽臣节以报主知；孰意皇天不眷，降灾于殷，天愁人叛，致动天下诸侯观政于商。日者元帅率兵抵关，升弟胡雷与火灵圣母不知天命，致逆王师，自罹于祸，悔亦无及。升罪固宜罔赦，但元帅汪洋之度，好生之人，无不覆载。今特遣裨将王信薰沐上书，乞元帅下鉴愚悃，容其纳降，以救此一方民，真时雨之师，万姓顶祝矣。胡升再顿首谨启。”

子牙看书毕，问王信曰：“你主将既已纳款，吾亦不究往事。明日即行献关，毋得再有推阻。”洪锦在傍言曰：“胡升反复不定，元帅不可轻信，恐其中有诈。”子牙曰：“前日乃是他的兄弟违傲，与火灵圣母自恃左道之术故耳。以我观，胡升乃是真心纳降也。公无多言。”随令王信：“回复主将，明日进关。”王信领令，进关来见胡升，将子牙言语尽说一遍。胡升大喜，随命关上军士立起周家旗号。次日，胡升同大小将领率百姓出关，手执降旗，焚香结彩，迎子牙大势人马进关。来至帅府堂上坐下，众将官侍立两傍。只见胡升来至堂前行礼毕，禀曰：“末将胡升一向有意归周，奈吾弟不识天时，以遭诛戮。末将先曾具纳降文表与洪将军，不期火灵圣母要阻天兵，末将再三阻挡不住，致有得罪于元帅麾下，望



“Commander! Don’t worry so much. You were stopped by Fiery Spirit and are not to blame at all.”

“You’re right, Wang Xin,” Hu Sheng said. He sent Wang to submit his pledge to surrender for a second time.

Jiang Ziya approved the pledge. “Since your commander is willing to surrender, I’ll forgive him for the last time, but he must hand over the pass tomorrow. I hope he won’t break his promise again.”

“It may be a trick. We shouldn’t believe him,” Hong Jin advised Jiang.

“He was first opposed by Hu Lei, his brother, and then deluded by the witchcraft of Fiery Spirit. I believe he’s telling the truth. Don’t mention it again,” Jiang Ziya said.

On his return to the pass, Wang Xin reported to Hu Sheng all that Jiang Ziya had said. Hu Sheng ordered his men to hoist the Zhou flags, and the next morning he went out to welcome Jiang Ziya and his army.

Hu Sheng moved up to greet Jiang Ziya and said, “I wished to offer my service to Zhou, but my brother would not allow me. When I sent my pledge for surrender to General Hong, Fiery Spirit interfered. She did everything she could, despite our opposition, to block your great army. We beg your pardon for all our crimes.”



元帅恕末将之罪。”子牙曰：“听你之言，真是反覆不定：头一次纳降，非你本心。你见关内无将，故尔偷生。及见火灵圣母来至，汝便欺心，又思故主。总是暮四朝三之小人，岂是一言以定之君子。此事虽是火灵圣母主意，也要你自己肯为，我也难以准信。留你久后必定为祸。”命左右：“推出斩之！”胡升无言抵塞，追悔无及。左右将胡升绑出帅府。少时，见左右将首级来献。子牙命拿出关前号令。子牙平定了佳梦关，令祁恭镇守。子牙把户口查明，即日回兵至汜水关。李靖领众将辕门迎接。子牙至后营见武王，将取佳梦关一事奏知武王。武王置酒在中军与子牙贺功。不表。

且说黄飞虎领十万雄师往青龙关来，一路浩浩军威，纷纷杀气。一日哨马报入中军：“启总兵：人马已至青龙关，请令安营。”黄总兵传令：“安下行营。”放炮呐喊。话说这青龙关镇守大将乃是丘引，副将是马方、高贵、余成、孙宝等。闻周兵来至，丘引忙升厅坐下，与众将议曰：“今日周兵无故犯界，甚是狂悖，吾等正当效力之时，各宜尽心报国。”众将官齐曰：“愿效死力。”人人俱摩拳擦掌，个个勇往直前。且说黄总兵升帐曰：“今日已抵关隘，谁去见头一阵立功？”邓九公曰：“愿往。”飞虎曰：“将军一往，必建奇功。”邓九公上马出营，至关下搦战。哨探马报入帅府。丘引急令马方：“去见头阵，便知端的。”马方上马提刀，开放关门，两杆旗开，见邓九公红袍金甲，一骑马飞临阵前。马方大呼曰：“反贼慢来！”九公曰：“马方，你好不知天时！方今兵连祸结，眼见成汤亡于旦夕，尔尚敢来出关会战也！”马方大骂：“逆天泼贼，欺心匹夫，敢出妄言，惑吾清听！”纵马



"You are untrustworthy. You only surrendered because you had lost all your generals and were pleased when Fiery Spirit arrived. You change your mind far too easily. If I let you live, we'll only have trouble ahead," Jiang Ziya condemned him and then ordered, "Take him out and put him to death immediately."

Hu Sheng lowered his head without uttering a word. It was too late for remorse.

Jiang Ziya appointed Qi Gong as garrison commander of the pass. He then returned to Sishui Pass, where he was welcomed by Li Jing and the other generals. He went to the back camp and reported everything to King Wu.

Huang Feihu took 100,000 soldiers to Green Dragon Pass. The garrison commander there was Qiu Yin, and under him were Ma Fang, Gao Gui, Yu Cheng, and Sun Bao. When the Zhou army arrived, Qiu Yin called a military conference. "The enemy has arrived," he announced. "We have to do our best to defeat the invaders."

"We'll fight till death," his generals answered as one.

Deng Jiugong went out with the first challenge, and Qiu Yin ordered Ma Fang to meet him.

Ma Fang shouted, "Don't be in such a hurry, you bloody rebel!"

"Ma Fang, can't you see King Zhou's out! Why are you still fighting for him?"

"How dare you speak such nonsense!"





摇枪飞来直取。邓九公手中刀急架忙迎。二马盘旋，大战有三十回合。邓九公乃久经战场上将，马方那里是他的对手，正战间，被九公卖个破绽，大喝一声，将马方劈于马下。邓九公找了首级，掌得胜鼓回营，来见黄飞虎，将马方首级献上。黄总兵大喜，上九公首功，具酒相庆。

且说败兵报进关来：“禀元帅：马方失机，被邓九公枭了首级，号令周营。”丘引听报，只气得三尸神暴跳，七窍内生烟。次日，亲自提兵出关。黄飞虎正议取关一事，见哨马报入中军：“青龙关大队摆开，请总兵答话。”黄飞虎传令：“也把大队人马摆出。”炮声响处，大红旗展，好雄威人马出来！正是：

人是欢彪撑阔涧，马如大海老龙腾。

话言丘引见黄飞虎，左右分开大小将官，一马当先，大叫：“黄飞虎负国忘恩，无父无君之贼！你反了五关，杀害朝廷命官，劫纣王府库，助姬发为恶，今日反来侵扰天子关隘，你真是恶贯满盈，必受天诛！”黄飞虎笑曰：“今天下会兵，纣王亡在旦夕，你等皆无死所！马前一卒，有多大本领，敢逆天兵耶！”飞虎回顾左右：“那一员战将与吾拿了丘引？”后有黄天祥应曰：“待吾来擒此贼！”天祥年方十七岁，正所谓“初生之犊不惧虎”，催开战马，摇手中枪冲杀过来。这壁厢有高贵摇斧接住。两马相交，枪斧并举。黄天祥也是“封神榜”上之人，力大无穷。来来往往，未及十五回合，一枪刺中高贵心窝，翻鞍下马。丘引大呼一声：“气杀吾也！不要走，吾来也！”丘引银盔素铠，白马长枪，飞来直取天祥。黄天祥见丘引自至，心下暗喜：“此功该吾成也！”摇手中枪劈面相还。好杀！怎见得，正是：



Ma Fang attacked Deng Jiugong with his cutlass and Deng met the attack with his own. After thirty rounds, Deng Jiugong proved too much for Ma Fang and slashed him right off his horse. Deng then cut his head off and returned in triumph to the camp.

Huang Feihu delightedly put the first merit on record.

Annoyed, Qiu Yin demanded to see Huang Feihu the next day. Huang marched out to meet him.

“Huang Feihu, your end is near.”

Huang Feihu smiled. “The tyrant will soon fall, and you too will meet your death.” He then turned and asked, “Who’ll get him for me?”

“I will,” Huang Tianxiang answered.

Huang Tianxiang was only seventeen years old and was as brave as a newborn calf before a tiger. He spurred his horse forward and was met by Gao Gui. Huang Tianxiang was destined to be created a God. He fought well, and after fifteen rounds, stabbed Gao Gui right in the heart.

Qiu Yin cried, “Wait, here I come!”

He galloped forward on his white horse, holding a long lance and wearing a silver helmet and silver armor. Huang Tianxiang played his lance swiftly, making it impossible for Qiu Yin to find his weak spot. As



棋逢敌手难藏兴，将遇良才好奏功。

黄天祥使发了这条枪，如风驰雨骤，势不可当。丘引自觉不能胜。天祥今会头阵，如此英勇，枪法更神。有赞为证，赞曰：

乾坤真个少，盖世果然稀。老君炉里炼，曾敲十万八千锤。磨塌太行山顶石，湛乾黄河九曲溪。上阵不沾尘世界，回来一阵血腥飞。

话说黄天祥使开枪，把丘引杀得只有招架之功，更无还兵之力。傍有丘引副将孙宝、余成两骑马，两口刀，杀奔前来助战。邓九公见二将前来协助，邓九公奋勇走马，刀劈了余成，翻鞍落马。孙宝大怒，骂曰：“好匹夫！焉敢伤吾大将！”转回来力敌九公。话说丘引被黄天祥战住，不得闲空，纵有左道之术，不能使出来；又见邓九公走马刀劈了余成，心下急躁。黄天祥卖了个破绽，一枪正中丘引左腿。丘引大叫一声，拨转马就走。黄天祥挂下枪，取弓箭在手，拽满弓弦，往后心射来，正中丘引肩窝。孙宝见主将败走，心下着慌，又被邓九公一刀把孙宝挥于马下，枭了首级。黄飞虎掌鼓进营。正是：

只知得胜回营去，那晓儿男大难来。

话说丘引败进高关，不觉大怒：“四员副将尽被两阵杀绝，自己又被这黄天祥枪刺左腿，箭射肩窝，候明日出阵，拿住此贼，碎尸万段，以泄此恨！”——看官：丘引乃曲鱗得道，修成人形，也善左道之术。此人自用丹药敷搽，即时全愈。到三日后，上马提枪，至周营前，只叫：“黄天祥来见我！”哨马报入中军，黄天祥又出来会战。丘引见了仇人，不答话，



their commander was nearly exhausted, both Sun Bao and Yu Cheng ran out to attack Huang Tianxiang, but they were met by Deng Jiugong. In a few minutes, Yu Cheng was slashed down from his horse.

“You damn bastard! How dare you hurt our general!” Sun Bao cursed.

Qiu Yin had no chance to use his witchcraft. He was frightened and distracted by Yu Cheng’s death. Seeing this, Huang Tianxiang stabbed him in the left thigh. Qiu Yin yelled, turned, and ran. Huang Tianxiang put his lance on the saddle, took his bow, and shot an arrow, which hit him right in the shoulder. Sun Bao was frightened. He could not fight well and was slashed down.

Huang Feihu returned in victory, while Qiu Yin returned in a rage. He said, “I’ll go and take them captive tomorrow. I’ll slice them into pieces then!”

Qiu Yin was really an earthworm refined into human form. He was good at witchcraft and used his elixir pills to cure his wounds in a very short time.

Three days later, he rushed out of the pass and challenged Huang Tianxiang. Clashing together, Huang Tianxiang saw Qiu Yin’s hair glaring through his



摇枪直取天祥。黄天祥手中枪急架忙迎。二马交锋，来往战有三十回合。黄天祥看丘引顶上银盔露出发来，暗想：“此贼定有法术，恐遭毒害。”天祥心生一计，把枪丢了一空。丘引要报前日之仇，乘空一枪刺来，刺了个空，跌在黄天祥怀里来。黄天祥掣出银装铜来——好铜！怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

宝攒玉靶，金叶厢成，绿绒绳穿就护手，熟铜抹就光辉。打大将翻鞍落马，冲行营鬼哭神悲。亚断三环剑，磕折丈八枪。寒凛凛，有甚三冬雪；冷洩洩，赛过九秋霜。

话说丘引被黄天祥一铜，正中前面护心镜上，打得丘引口喷鲜血，几乎落下鞍鞦，败进关内，闭门不出。黄天祥得胜回营，来见父亲，说丘引闭门不出。黄飞虎与邓九公共议取关之策。不表。且说丘引被这一铜打得吐血不止，忙服丹药，一时不能全愈；切齿深恨黄天祥于骨髓，在关内保养伤痕。次日，周兵攻打青龙关，丘引铜伤未愈，上城来亲自巡视，千方百计防设守关之法。大抵此关乃朝歌保障之地，西北藩屏，最是紧要。城高濠深，急切难以攻打。周兵一连攻打三日，不能得下。黄飞虎见此关急切难下，传令：“鸣金。”收回人马，再作良谋。丘引见周兵退去，也下城来，至帅府坐下，心中纳闷，忽报：“督粮官陈奇听令。”丘引令至殿前。陈奇打躬曰：“催粮应济军需，不曾违限，请令定夺。”丘引曰：“催粮有功，总为朝廷出力。”陈奇问：“周兵至此，元帅连日胜负如何？”丘引答曰：“姜尚分兵取关，惟恐吾断他粮道，连日与他会战，不意他将佐骁勇，邓九公杀吾佐贰

silver helmet. He realized Qiu Yin must be a sorcerer and decided to take action first. Knowing Qiu Yin must be eager to avenge his previous defeat, Huang Tianxiang purposely offered him a chance to thrust forward. He struck Qiu with his silver club, smashing Qiu's heart-protecting mirror in pieces and wounding him seriously. Blood gushing from his mouth, Qiu Yin nearly fell from his saddle and fled into the pass. Huang Feihu attacked the city wall the next day. Though his wounds were not yet healed, Qiu Yin put up a stronger defense. The Green Dragon Pass was an important strategic fort in the north-west, with high walls and deep ditches. After three days, Huang Feihu ordered his men to cease the attack.

Qiu Yin went to rest in his headquarters. Suddenly, General Chen Qi, the convoy officer of food supplies, returned. When Chen Qi asked him about the war, Qiu Yin answered angrily, "We've lost four generals and I have been seriously wounded by Huang Tianxiang!"





官，黄天祥枪马强胜，吾被他中枪，箭射，铜打。若是拿住这逆贼，必分化其尸，方泄吾恨！”陈奇曰：“元帅只管放心，等末将拿来，报元帅之恨。”次日，陈奇领本部飞虎兵，坐火眼金睛兽，提手中荡魔杵，至周营搦战。哨马报入中军：“启元帅：关上有将搦战。”黄飞虎问曰：“谁将出马？”邓九公曰：“末将愿领人马。”九公绰兵刃在手，径出营来；一见对阵鼓响，一将当先，提荡魔杵，坐金睛兽，邓九公问曰：“来者何人？”陈奇曰：“吾乃督粮官陈奇是也。你何人？”邓九公答曰：“吾乃西周东征副将邓九公是也。日者丘引失机，闭门不出，你想是先来替死，然而也做不得他的名下！”陈奇大笑曰：“看你这匹夫如婴儿草莽，你有何能！”便催开金睛兽，使开荡魔杵，劈胸就打。邓九公大杆刀赴面交还。兽马交锋，刀杵并举。两家大战三十回合，邓九公的刀法如神，陈奇用的是短兵器，如何抵挡得住。陈奇把荡魔杵一举，他有三千飞虎兵，手执挠钩套索，如长蛇阵一般，飞奔前来，有拿人之状。邓九公不知缘故。——陈奇原是左道，有异人秘传，养成腹内一道黄气，喷出口来，凡是精血成胎者，必定有三魂七魄，见此黄气，则魂魄自散。——九公见此黄气，坐不住鞍鞞，翻身落马，邓九公被飞虎兵一拥上前，生擒活捉，拿进高关，三军呐喊。丘引正坐，左右报入府来：“禀元帅：陈奇捉了邓九公听令。”丘引大悦，令左右：“推来！”邓九公及至醒来，身上已是绳索捆绑，莫能转挫；左右推至丘引面前，九公大骂曰：“匹夫以左道之术擒吾，我就死也不服！今既失机，有死而已。吾生不能啖汝血肉，死后必为厉鬼以杀叛贼！”丘引大怒，令：“推出斩之！”可怜邓九公归周，不能会诸侯于孟津，今日全忠于周主。正是：

功名未遂扶王志，今日逢危已尽忠。



“Take it easy, Commander! I’ll take them for you,” Chen Qi assured him.

The next day, riding his fiery-eyed monster and clutching his Monster Subduing Club, he led 3,000 Flying Tiger soldiers to the Zhou camp. Deng Jiugong galloped out to meet them.

“Who are you?” Deng Jiugong asked when he saw Chen Qi.

“I’m Chen Qi, convoy officer of food supplies. And who are you?”

“I’m Deng Jiugong, deputy commander of the Zhou army. Qiu Yin has nearly been defeated. Why should you die for him?”

Chen Qi burst into laughter. “What can you do? You look as fragile as a baby.”

Without further delay, he slashed at Deng Jiugong with his club, and Deng met the blow with his cutlass. Deng Jiugong played his cutlass wonderfully, making it difficult for Chen Qi to continue the combat.

Chen Qi held his club horizontally, signaling his Flying Tiger soldiers to move in. They ran up in a long line, holding hooks and ropes, ready to catch their prey. Chen Qi snorted a yellow gas from his nose, and Deng Jiugong fell to the ground senseless. He was instantly bound up and carried into the pass.

Delighted at the news, Qiu Yin ordered his men to bring Deng before him. Deng Jiugong swore at him, “You’re no brave, great warrior. You’ve only taken me captive with your dirty witchcraft. I’m ready for death. Though I can’t eat your flesh when I am alive, I shall be a wicked devil and kill you after I die.”

Enraged, Qiu Yin ordered, “Push him out and cut his head off.”





话说丘引发出行刑牌出府，将邓九公首级号令于关上。有哨探马报入中军：“启老爷：邓九公被陈奇口吐黄气，拿了进关，将首级号令城上。”黄飞虎大惊曰：“邓九公乃大将之才，不幸而丧于左道之术。”心中甚是伤感。

话说丘引治酒与陈奇贺功。次日，陈奇又领兵至周营搦战。报马报入中军。傍有九公佐贰官太鸾大怒曰：“末将不才，愿与主将报仇。”黄飞虎许之。太鸾上马出营，与陈奇相对，也不答话，大战二十回合。陈奇把杵一举，后面飞虎兵拥来。陈奇把嘴一张，太鸾依旧落马，被众人擒拿进关见丘引。丘引曰：“此乃从贼，且不必斩他，暂送下囹圄，俟拿了主将，一齐上囚车解往朝歌，以尽国法，又不负汝之功耳。”陈奇大喜。且说黄总兵见又折了太鸾，心下甚是不乐。只见次日来报：“陈奇搦战。”黄将军问左右：“谁去走一遭？”话未了，只见傍边走过三子黄天禄、黄天爵、黄天祥应曰：“不肖三人愿往。”黄飞虎分付：“须要小心！”三人应声曰：“知道。”弟兄三人上马，径出营来。陈奇问曰：“来者何人？”黄天禄答曰：“吾乃开国武成王三位殿下：黄天禄、天爵、天祥是也。”陈奇暗喜：“正要拿这业畜，他恰自来送死！”催开金睛兽，也不答话，使开荡魔杵，飞来直取天禄兄弟。三人三条枪，急架忙迎，四马交锋。怎见得一场好杀：

四将阵前发怒，颠开兽马相持。长枪幌幌闪虹霓，荡魔杵发来峻利。这一个拼命舍死定输赢；那三个为国亡家分轩轻。些儿失手命难存，留取清名传万世。

三匹马裹住了陈奇一匹金睛兽，大战在龙潭虎穴。不知吉凶如何，且听下回分解。

Huang Feihu was astonished that Deng Jiugong was taken and beheaded. He said sadly, "Deng Jiugong was a great general, but how unfortunate it is that he has been killed by witchcraft."

Tai Luan, a general who once served under Deng, uttered angrily, "Let me go. Permit me to avenge General Deng."

With Huang Feihu's approval, Tai Luan rode out to fight Chen Qi. However, after twenty rounds, he was taken by Chen Qi as before.

Qiu Yin said to Chen Qi, "Tai Luan is a small potato. We need not behead him at once. Imprison him, and we'll escort him to Zhaoge with those other rebels later."

Chen Qi felt satisfied and agreed to this plan.

When Chen Qi challenged the next day, Huang Feihu turned to his generals, "Who will meet him today?"

Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue, and Huang Tianxiang, his three sons, answered, "We would like to meet him."

"Be very careful," Huang Feihu warned.

Chen Qi asked the three brothers, "Who are you?"

"We are Huang Tianlu, Huang Tianjue, and Huang Tianxiang."

"I was just looking for you, and now you've all come!"

Chen Qi waved his club and attacked the three Huangs without another word. They fought back desperately.

If you want to know the result of their battle, please read the next chapter.





## 第七十四回

### 哼哈二将显神通

诗曰：

二将相逢各有名，青龙关遇定输赢。五行道术皆堪并，  
万劫轮回共此生。黄气无声能覆将，白光有影更擒兵。  
须知妙法无先后，大难来时命自倾。

话说黄天禄兄弟三人裹住陈奇，忽一枪正中陈奇右腿。陈奇将坐骑跳出圈子外边。黄天禄随后赶来。陈奇虽然腿上有伤，他的道术自在；他把荡魔杵一举，只见飞虎兵蜂拥而来，将腹内炼成黄气喷出，黄天禄滚下鞍鞦，早被飞虎兵挠钩搭住，生擒活捉了，进关来见丘引。丘引分付，也把黄天禄监禁了。话说黄天爵、黄天祥回营见父，言兄被擒。黄总兵十分不乐，遣官打听可曾号令。探事官回报：“启老爷：不曾号令。”话说陈奇腿上有伤，自用丹药敷搽。只见次日，丘引伤痕全愈，要来报仇，乃不戴头盔，顶上戴一金箍，似陀头样，贯甲披袍，上马拎枪，来奔至周营，坐名要黄天祥决战。报马报入营中，天祥便欲出战。飞虎阻挡不住。天祥上马提枪，出营来见是丘引，大叫曰：“丘引，今日定要擒你见功！”催开马，摇手中枪，直刺丘引。丘引枪赴面交还。二马盘旋，双枪并举，大战在关下。黄天祥这根枪如风狂雨骤，势不可当。丘引招架不住，掩一枪，勒回马往关前就走。黄天祥不知好歹，随后赶来。只见丘引顶上长一道白



## Chapter 74

### Combat Between Two Generals

Fighting the three Huangs, Chen Qi was stabbed in the right thigh. He jumped out of the circle, Huang Tianlu pursuing him closely. Though wounded, Chen Qi still has the strength to play his witchcraft. He waved his club horizontally to alert his Flying Tiger soldiers, and with a "ha," spat out a puff of yellow smoke. Huang Tianlu fell from his horse and was captured by the Flying Tiger soldiers.

Qiu Yin ordered his men to throw Huang in jail. Huang Feihu was saddened but slightly comforted to know his son was not executed.

The following day, Qiu Yin's wounds were completely healed. He was eager to take on Huang Tianxiang. He did not wear his helmet, but instead wore a gold ring like a monk. Appearing before the camp of the Zhou army, he demanded Huang Tianxiang. Huang Feihu could not stop his son.

"Qiu Yin! I will get hold of you today!" Huang Tianxiang yelled. He stabbed at Qiu Yin, the two started up a new combat.

Qiu Yin suddenly turned and raced toward the pass with Huang behind. A column of white light rose from Qiu Yin's neck and split in two,





光，光中分开，里面现出碗大一颗红珠，在空中滴溜溜只是转。丘引大叫：“黄天祥，你看吾此宝！”黄天祥不知所以，抬头看时，不觉神魂飘荡，一会儿不知南北西东，昏昏惨惨，被步下军卒生擒下马，绳缚二臂。乃至醒时，已被捉住。丘引大喜，掌鼓进关。正是：

可惜年少英雄客，化作南柯梦里人！

且说丘引拿住黄天祥进关，升堂坐下，传令两边：“把黄天祥推来！”众人将黄天祥推至面前。黄天祥气冲斗牛，厉声大呼曰：“丘引，你这逆贼，敢以妖术成功，非大丈夫也！我死不足惜，当报国恩。若姜元帅兵临，你这匹夫有粉骨碎身之祸！既被你擒，快与我一死！吾定为厉鬼以杀贼！”丘引大怒曰：“你这叛贼，反出语伤人！你箭射、铜打、枪刺，你心下便自爽然。今日被擒，不自求生，又以恶语狂言辱吾！”天祥睁目大骂：“逆贼！我恨不得枪穿你肺腑，铜打碎你天灵，箭射透你心窝，方称我报国忠心！今不幸被擒，自分一死，何必多言，做出那等的模样！”丘引大怒，命左右：“先枭了首级，仍风化其尸，挂在城楼上！”少时，哨马报入周营：“启老爷，四公子被丘引拿去，枭了首级，把尸骸挂城楼上，风化其尸，请军令定夺。”黄飞虎听报，大叫一声，跌倒在地。众将扶起。黄总兵放声大哭曰：“吾生四子，不能为武王至孟津大会诸侯以立功，今方头一座关隘，先丧吾三子！”黄飞虎思子，作诗一首以志感，诗曰：

“为国捐躯赴战场，丹心可并日争光。几番未灭强梁寇，左术擒儿年少亡。”

话说黄总兵见事机如此，忙修告急申文，连夜差使臣往汜水



revealing a huge red pearl, turning round and round in the air.

“Huang Tianxiang! Look at that over your head,” Qiu Yin shouted.

Looking up, Huang Tianxiang suddenly felt dizzy and drowsy. Having lost his sense of direction, he was captured by the enemy soldiers.

When he was brought before Qiu Yin, Huang Tianxiang shouted, “Qiu Yin! You bastard! You’re just a coward for taking me with your witchcraft. I’m not afraid of death, and I’ll die for my nation. Commander Jiang will cut you in a thousand pieces when he gets you. Kill me quickly so I can turn into a demon and get my revenge.”

Qiu roared in anger, “You bastard! You shot me and stabbed me before, and now you dare insult me!”

“I’m ready to die today. You needn’t talk so much!” Huang Tianxiang yelled fearlessly.

Seething with anger, Qiu Yin ordered, “Cut off his head and dry his corpse. Hang both above the city wall.”

When he learned of his son’s cruel death, Huang Feihu screamed, fainted, and fell to the ground. His generals rushed over to hold him up, and he cried bitterly, “My poor three sons! They have failed to do anything great.”

He wrote an urgent report to Jiang Ziya, who was surprised and wor-





关老营中，见子牙求救。

使臣在路，也非一日，来至行营。旗门官报入中军：“启元帅：黄总兵遣官至辕门等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”使臣至帐前行礼，将申文呈上。子牙拆开看毕，大惊曰：“可惜邓九公、黄天祥俱死于非命！”着实伤悼。只见邓婵玉哭上帐来，“禀上元帅：末将愿去为父报仇。”子牙许之；又点先行官哪吒同往。哪吒大喜，领了将令，星夜往青龙关来。哪吒风火轮来的快，便先行；婵玉随营行走。只见哪吒霎时就到青龙关了。正是：

顷刻行千里，须臾至九州。

话说哪吒至营前。报入中军：“有先行官哪吒辕门听令。”黄总兵忙叫：“请来。”哪吒进中军行礼毕，黄总兵曰：“吾奉令分兵至此，不幸子亡兵败，邓九公竟被左术丧身，吾在此待罪请援。今先行官至此，吾辈不胜幸甚！”哪吒曰：“小将军丹心忠义，为国捐躯，青史简篇，永垂不朽，亦不辜负将军教养之功。”次日，哪吒上风火轮，提火尖枪，往关下搦战。猛见黄天祥之尸，大怒曰：“吾拿住丘引，定以此为例！”大叫：“城上报事官！快传与丘引，早来洗颈受戮！”报马报入帅府：“有将请战。”丘引听报，自恃己能，依旧是陀头打扮，竟出关门。看见一人登风火轮而来，大呼曰：“来者莫非是哪吒么？”哪吒大骂曰：“你这匹夫！黄天祥与你不过敌国之仇，彼此为国，不过枭首；又有何罪，你竟欲风化其尸！我今拿住你，定碎醢汝尸，为天祥泄恨！”把火尖枪摆动，直取丘引。丘引以枪急架相还。二马相交，双枪并举。来往战杀二三十合，丘引就走。哪吒赶来，丘引依旧把头上白气升出，

ried at the news. "Both Deng Jiugong and Huang Tianxiang have lost their lives!" he cried.

Nezha led the reinforcements to Green Dragon Pass and was joined by Deng Chanyu.

When they arrived, Huang Feihu told Nezha, "I never expected this to happen. Both my son and General Deng were killed with witchcraft. I am so glad to see you here."

The next day when Nezha saw the corpse of Huang Tianxiang on the pass wall, he shouted angrily, "Tell Qiu Yin to come out and die."

Qiu Yin was still dressed as a monk. He yelled, "Are you Nezha?"

"You bastard! Huang Tianxiang was only your political enemy. Why are you so cruel? I'll mince you up in a thousand pieces to get revenge for him!"





现那一颗红珠出来在空中旋转。丘引把哪吒当做凡胎肉体，不知他是莲花化身，便大叫曰：“哪吒！你看吾之宝！”哪吒抬头看见，大笑曰：“无知匹夫！此不过是个红珠儿，你叫我看他怎的！”丘引大惊：“吾得道修成此珠，捉将擒军，无不效验，今日哪吒看见，如何不昏于轮下！”心中已是着忙，只得勒回马来又战；被哪吒用乾坤圈打来，正中丘引肩窝，打的筋断骨折，伏鞍而逃，败回关去。哪吒得胜回营，来见黄飞虎。不表。

且说土行孙催粮至子牙大营，见元帅回令毕，土行孙下殿，不见邓婵玉，问其故，武吉曰：“黄飞虎求救兵，申文言你岳翁阵亡，你夫人去了。”土行孙听得邓九公已死，着实伤悼，忙忙领子牙催粮箭，督二运径往青龙关来；不一日至辕门。探马报入中军，黄飞虎令：“请来。”土行孙来至帐前行礼毕，黄飞虎曰：“邓九公为左术阵亡；吾子二人被擒，天祥被丘引逆贼风化其尸。今日先行哪吒打丘引一乾坤圈，逆贼未曾授首。”土行孙曰：“待末将今晚且将天祥尸首盗出，用棺木收殓，明日好擒丘引以报此仇。”土行孙下帐来，与邓婵玉等相见。只至到晚，土行孙借地行术，径进关来。先在里边走了一番。乃行到囹圄之中，看见太鸾、黄天禄。时至二更，四下里人声寂静，土行孙钻上来，悄悄的叫：“黄天禄，我来了。你放心，不久就取关了。”黄天禄听的是土行孙声音，大喜曰：“速些才妙！”土行孙曰：“不必分付。”土行孙说了信，径至城楼上，把绳子割断，天祥的尸首吊在关外。周纪收去尸首。黄飞虎看见子尸，放声大哭曰：“年少为国，致捐其躯，真为可惜！”急用棺木收尸。黄飞虎自思想：



Nezha rushed into attack. Qiu Yin fought back with his own lance. After twenty rounds, Qiu Yin released his red pearl and roared, "Look at this precious thing, Nezha."

Nezha stared at the pearl. He said, "You fool! It is only an ordinary pearl," he laughed.

Surprised, Qiu Yin turned his horse back to fight, but Nezha threw up his Universal Ring, hitting him on the shoulder. With his bones nearly broken, Qiu Yin fell over the saddle and ran back to the pass.

When Earth Traveler Sun returned to the headquarters, he asked Wu Ji where his wife had gone. The reply was, "Your father-in-law was killed, and your wife went to avenge him."

Earth Traveler Sun reported to Jiang Ziya that he had brought back food supplies and asked permission to go to Green Dragon Pass. When he arrived, Huang Feihu told him, "Deng Jiugong and Huang Tianxiang were both beheaded. Qiu Yin was wounded by Nezha."

"I'll steal the corpse of General Huang Tianxiang tonight. Then I'll fight Qiu Yin to get revenge." He promised.

When night fell, Earth Traveler Sun wormed his way to the pass. He saw Tai Luan and Huang Tianlu in gaol. At the second watch, all was quiet. He crawled through the earth and said to Huang Tianlu in a low voice, "Huang Tianlu, it's me. Don't worry. We'll take the pass soon."

"The sooner the better," Huang Tianlu answered delightedly.

Earth Traveler Sun mounted the pass, cut the ropes and dropped the corpse of Huang Tianxiang outside.

When he saw the corpse of his son, Huang Feihu wept bitterly. "Of



“吾生四子，今丧三人，今日不若命黄天爵送天祥尸首回西岐去，早晚亦可侍奉吾父，一则不失黄门之后，二则使我忠孝两全。”黄飞虎打发第三子黄天爵押送车回西岐去了。且说丘引被哪吒打伤，次日升厅纳闷。只见巡城军士来报：“黄天祥尸首，夜来不知被何人割断绳子，将尸首盗去。”丘引听报，愈加愁闷。陈奇大怒：“不才出关，拿来为主将报仇！”说罢，领本部飞虎兵至营前搦战。哨马报入中军。黄总兵问：“谁人见阵？”土行孙愿往。邓婵玉欲为父亲报仇，愿随掠阵。夫妻二人出营，见陈奇坐金睛兽，提荡魔杵，滚至阵前。土行孙大骂陈奇曰：“匹夫用左道邪术，杀吾岳丈，不共戴天！今日特来擒你报仇！”陈奇大笑：“谅你这等人，真如朽腐之物，做得出甚么事来！杀你恐污吾手！”催开坐骑，拎杵就打。土行孙手中棍急架忙迎。杵棍并举，未及数合，陈奇见土行孙往来小巧便宜，急切不能取胜，陈奇忙把杵一摆，飞虎兵齐奔前来，陈奇对着土行孙把嘴一张，喷出一道黄气。土行孙站不住，一交跌倒在地。飞虎兵把土行孙拿去。陈奇不防邓婵玉在对面，见拿了他丈夫，发出一块五光石来，正中陈奇嘴上，打得唇绽齿落，“哎哟”一声，掩面而走。婵玉又发一石，夹后心一下，把后心镜打得粉碎。陈奇只得伏鞍而逃。只见土行孙睁开眼，浑身上绳子，笑曰：“到有趣！”陈奇被邓婵玉打伤，逃回关内，来见丘引。丘引看见陈奇鼻青嘴绽，袍带皆松，忙问其故。陈奇曰：“只因拿一不堪匹夫，不防对过有一贱人，用石打伤面门，复一石又打伤脊背，致失机而回。”丘引听说，忙令左右：“将周将拿来！”左右随将土行孙推至阶前。看见土行孙身不满三四



my four sons, two have been killed and one taken captive. I'd better send Huang Tianjue back to West Qi with the coffin. He can take care of my father and carry on the Huang family line," he thought.

He quickly gave this order to Huang Tianjue.

Qiu Yin, wounded by Nezha's Universal Ring, presided unhappily over the military conference the next day. He grew even more displeased when he learned that Huang Tianxiang's corpse was stolen in the night.

Chen Qi was extremely angry. He said, "Let me go and find out who have stolen the corpse and bring the thief to trial."

Both Earth Traveler Sun and Deng Chanyu went out to meet Chen Qi.

At the sight of Chen Qi on a fiery-eyed beast, Earth Traveler Sun cursed, "You murdered my father-in-law. I must take you captive today!"

"What can you do, you mean fellow? It would only soil my hand to kill you with my knife," Chen Qi said.

After several rounds, Chen Qi was compelled to mobilize his Flying Tiger soldiers. When he snorted his yellow gas, Earth Traveler Sun fell on the ground and was taken captive.

Deng Chanyu then threw a big pebble at Chen Qi and hit him right in the mouth, splitting his lips and breaking his teeth. Another stone to the back broke the mirror on his armor to pieces. Chen Qi turned his horse and escaped.

"I had just captured a small, ugly fellow when one stone was hurled in my face and another at my back. My spinal column's been injured by that bitch. I had to return in defeat."

"Bring the captive here at once," Qiu Yin ordered. Earth Traveler Sun was brought before him. Seeing the dwarf, Qiu Yin said contemptu-



尺，便问陈奇曰：“这样东西，拿他何用？”命左右：“推出去斩了号令！”土行孙也不慌不忙，来至关上。左右方欲动手，只见土行孙把身子一扭，杳无踪迹。正是：

地行道术原无迹，盗宝偷关盖世雄。

话说左右见土行孙不见了，只唬得目瞪口呆，慌忙报与丘引。丘引听报，大惊曰：“周营中有此异人，所以屡伐西岐俱皆失利。今日不见黄天祥尸首，就是此人盗去，也未可知。速传令：早晚各要防备关隘。”

且说土行孙回见黄总兵，共议取关。忽哨探马报入中军：“有三运督粮官郑伦来辕门等令。”黄总兵传令：“令来。”郑伦至帐前行礼毕，言曰：“奉姜元帅将令，催粮应付，军前听用。”黄飞虎曰：“多蒙将军催粮有功，俟上功劳簿。”郑伦曰：“俱是为国效用。”郑伦偶见土行孙也在此，忙问土行孙曰：“足下系二运官，今到此何干？”土行孙曰：“青龙关中有一人名唤陈奇，也与你一样拿人，吾岳父被他拿去，坏了性命，特奉元帅将令，来此救援。只他比你不同，他把嘴一张，口内喷出一道黄气来，其人自倒，比你那鼻中哼出白气来大不相同，觉他的便宜。昨日我被他拿去，走了一遭来。”郑伦曰：“岂有此理！当时吾师传我，曾言吾之法盖世无双，难道此关又有此异人？我必定会他一会，看其真实。”且说陈奇恨邓婵玉打伤他头面，自服了丹药，一夜全愈。次日出关，坐名只要邓婵玉出来定个雌雄。哨马报入中军：“启老爷：陈奇搦战。”郑伦出而言曰：“末将愿往。”黄飞虎曰：“你督粮亦是要紧的事，原非先行破敌之役，恐姜丞相见罪。”郑伦曰：“俱是朝廷功绩，何害于理？”黄飞虎只得



ously to Chen Qi, "What use is that wretch? Take him out and cut his head off."

Just as they were about to behead him, Earth Traveler Sun twisted his body and disappeared without a trace. Everyone was frightened and perplexed. Qiu Yin ordered the pass be closely guarded day and night.

As Huang Feihu and Earth Traveler Sun, who had just returned, were discussing how to take the pass, Zheng Lun, convoy officer of food supplies, arrived outside the camp gate.

Escorted in, Zheng Lun reported, "By order of Commander Jiang, I have brought food supplies for the army."

"Thank you for your valuable service. I'll put your merit on record," Huang Feihu replied.

Seeing Earth Traveler Sun, Zheng Lun asked, "Why are you here? You're a convoy official like me!"

"There's a chap called Chen Qi here who can capture anybody with his witchcraft. My father-in-law was taken by him and killed. He lost his life. His trick is the same as yours. When he opens his mouth with a "ha," yellow gas gushes out. It seems his yellow gas is more powerful than that white gas of yours. I was caught by him yesterday but have returned, finding it all very interesting," Earth Traveler Sun told him in detail.

"How can it be? When my master taught me he said there was no match for me in the whole country! I must meet him," Zheng Lun answered emotionally.

Chen Qi rushed out the next day, demanding to see Deng Chanyu.

Zheng Lun answered the call, and after initial opposition by Huang





应允。郑伦上了金睛兽，提降魔杵，领本部三千乌鸦兵出营来。见陈奇也是金睛兽，提荡魔杵，也有一队人马，俱穿黄号色，也拿着挠钩套索。郑伦心下疑惑，乃至军前大呼曰：“来者何人？”陈奇曰：“吾乃督粮上将军陈奇是也。你乃何人？”郑伦曰：“吾乃三运总督官郑伦是也。”郑伦问曰：“闻你有异术，今日特来会你。”郑伦催开金睛兽，摇手中降魔杵，劈头就打。陈奇手中荡魔杵赴面交还。二兽交加，一场大战。怎见得：

二将阵前寻斗赌，两下交锋谁敢阻。这一个似摇头狮子下山岗；那一个不亚摆尾狻猊寻猛虎。这一个兴心定要正乾坤；那一个赤胆要把江山辅。天生一对恶生辰，今朝相遇争旗鼓。

话说二将大战虎穴龙潭：这一个恶狠狠圆睁二目；那一个咯支支咬碎银牙。只见土行孙同哪吒出辕门来看二将交兵，连黄飞虎同众将也在旗门下，都来看厮杀。郑伦正战之间，自忖：“此人当真有此术法。打人不过先下手为妙。”把杵在空一摆，郑伦部下乌鸦兵行如长蛇阵一般而来。陈奇看郑伦摆杵，士卒把挠钩套索似有拿人之状，陈奇摇杵，他那里飞虎兵也有套索钩挠，飞奔前来。正是：

能人自有能人伏，今日哼哈相会时。

郑伦鼻子里两道白光，出来有声；陈奇口中黄光也自进出。陈奇跌了个金冠倒蹶；郑伦跌了个铠甲离鞍。两边兵卒不敢拿人，只顾各人抢各人主将回营。郑伦被乌鸦兵抢回；陈奇被飞虎兵抢回；各自上了金睛兽回营。土行孙同众将笑得腰软骨折。郑伦自叹曰：“世间又有此异人，明日定要与他定个



Feihu, he rode out on his fiery-eyed beast at the head of 3,000 Crow soldiers. He roared, "Who is that coming?"

"I'm Chen Qi, the great general for transportation of food supplies. Who are you?"

"I'm Zheng Lun, the great general for transportation of food supplies on the three routes. I've come to meet you and see your magic," Zheng Lun answered.

Without further delay, Zheng Lun charged forward with his club; Chen Qi resisted the blow. They fought together desperately, and Huang Feihu, Nezha, Earth Traveler Sun, and the other generals all went out to watch the combat.

Having decided to act first, Zheng Lun swung his club to signal his Crow soldiers to rush forward, with hooks and ropes ready, in a long straight line ready to grab the captives. At the very moment, Chen Qi also swung his club over his head, ordering his Flying Tiger soldiers to move in.

Zheng Lun's "*heng*" produced two columns of white light from his nose, and Chen Qi's "*ha*" called forth two columns of yellow light from his throat. Chen Qi fell to the ground, his gold coronet broken in two, and Zheng Lun fell from his saddle, his armor cracked in pieces. The Crow soldiers and Flying Tiger soldiers dared not capture the enemy generals; they merely rescued their own masters and carried them to safety.

Earth Traveler Sun and the other generals could not control their laughter, but Zheng Lun sighed deeply and said, "It's incredible that such a strange man has been born into this world again! I'll fight him tomorrow to determine the victor."



雌雄，方肯罢休。”不表。只说陈奇进关来见丘引，尽言前事。丘引又闻佳梦关失了，心下不安。次日，郑伦关下搦战。陈奇上骑出关，言曰：“郑伦，大丈夫一言已定，从今不必用术，各赌手上工夫，你我也难得会。”催开坐下骑，又杀一日，未见输赢。来见黄飞虎，众将俱在帐上，共议取关之策。哪吒曰：“如今土行孙也在此，不若今夜我先进关，斩关落锁，夜里乘其无备，取了关为上策。”黄飞虎曰：“全仗先行。”正是：

哪吒定计施威武，今夜青龙属武王。

话说丘引在关内，修表进朝歌，遣将来此协同守关，共阻周兵。不觉是一更时分，土行孙先进关里来，暗暗在囹圄中打点放黄天禄、太鸾。二更时分，哪吒登起风火轮，飞进关来，在城楼上祭起砖，把守门军将打散，随撞开拴锁。周兵呐一声喊，杀进城中来，金鼓大作，天翻地覆，城中大乱，百姓只顾逃生。土行孙在囹圄中，听得呐喊，随放了黄天禄、太鸾，杀出本府来。丘引还不曾睡，急忙上马，拎枪出府，只见灯光影里，火把丛中，见金甲红袍，乃武成王黄飞虎。哪吒登风火轮使枪杀来。邓秀、赵升、孙焰红把丘引裹在当中。郑伦杀进城来，正遇陈奇，二将夜兵大战。黄天禄从后面杀出府来。土行孙倒拖宾铁棍，往丘引马下打来。上三路哪吒的枪；中三路黄明、周纪的斧；下三路土行孙的棍；丘引不及提防，被土行孙一棍正打着他马七寸，那马打了个前失，把丘引跌下马来。黄飞虎看见，忙撚枪刺来。丘引已借土遁去了。正是：生死有定，不该绝于此关。且言众将裹住陈奇，被哪吒祭起乾坤圈打中，陈奇伤了臂膊，往左



Chen Qi returned to the pass and reported to Qiu Yin what had happened to him. Qiu Yin was disappointed to learn that Chen Qi had been unable to win the day.

The next morning, Zheng Lun, the general “*heng*,” and Chen Qi, the general “*ha*,” met on the battleground again.

“Let’s fight today without magic, Zheng Lun. Will you honor your word if we so agree? It’s a rare chance for us to meet as such on the battlefield,” Chen Qi proposed. Zheng Lun agreed.

The two generals fought all day long, but neither could get the upper hand.

At their next military conference, Nezha proposed, “We’re lucky to have Earth Traveler Sun with us now. Let’s attack, break through, and occupy the pass. What do you say?”

“I fully agree with you. Will you lead the attack, General?” Huang Feihu approved his suggestion at once.

After supper, Qiu Yin wrote a report to the king on the war situation, asking him to send reinforcements to protect the pass. Earth Traveler Sun was already waiting underground for the time to set Huang Tianlu and Tai Luan free.

Late that night, Nezha flew on his Wind-Fire Wheels to the top of the city wall. He then used his gold brick to knock off the guards and break the locks on the gates so the great Zhou army could fight into the pass. Earth Traveler Sun, meanwhile, released both Huang Tianlu and Tai Luan to join the combat.

Qiu Yin rushed from his headquarters and saw through the dim torch-light Huang Feihu, dressed in gold armor and a red robe, Nezha riding on his Wind-Fire Wheels, and Generals Deng Xiu, Zhao Sheng, and Sun Yanhong. They rushed toward him and encircled him.

Breaking into the pass, Zheng Lun met Chen Qi directly before him. They fought in the darkness. Earth Traveler Sun, Huang Tianlu and Tai Lun fought their way out of the prison and attacked Qiu Yin from the rear. Sun hit Qiu Yin’s horse with his cudgel and the animal reared up on its hind legs, dropping Qiu Yin to the ground. Huang Feihu rushed over



一闪，被黄飞虎一枪刺中肋下，死于非命。杀到天明，黄飞虎收兵查点，只走了丘引。飞虎升厅，出榜安民，查明户口册籍，留将守青龙关。黄总兵回师，先有哪吒报捷。土行孙仍催粮去了。

且说子牙在中军与众将正讲六韬三略，报事官报：“元帅：哪吒等令。”子牙命：“传进来。”哪吒至中军，备言取了青龙关事，说了一遍：“……弟子先来报捷。”子牙大悦，谓众将曰：“吾之先取此二关者，欲通吾之粮道；若不得此，倘纣兵断吾粮道，前不能进，后不能退，我先首尾受敌，此非全胜之道也，——故为将先要察此。今幸俱得，可以无忧。”众将曰：“元帅妙算，真无遗策！”正谈论间，左右报：“黄飞虎等令。”子牙曰：“令来。”飞虎至中军，打躬行礼。子牙贺过功，因不见邓九公、黄天祥在前，心中甚是凄楚，叹曰：“可惜忠勇之士，不得享武王之禄耳！”营中治酒欢饮。次日，子牙差辛甲先下一封战书。

话说汜水关韩荣见子牙按兵不动，分兵取佳梦、青龙二关，速速差人打探。回报：“二关已失。”韩荣对众将曰：“今西周已得此二关，军威正盛，我等正当中路，必须协力共守，毋得专恃力战也。”众将各有不忿之色，愿决一死战。正议间，报：“姜元帅遣官下战书。”韩荣命：“令来。”辛甲至殿前，将书呈上。韩荣接书，展开观看，书曰：

“西周奉天征讨天宝大元帅姜尚，致书于汜水关主将麾下：尝闻天命无常，惟有德者永获天眷。今商王受淫酗肆虐，暴殄下民。天愁于上，民怨于下。海宇分崩，诸侯叛乱，生民涂炭。惟我周武王特恭行天之罚，



and raised his lance to stab him, but Qiu Yin fled away on a dust cloud and completely disappeared.

Surrounded by so many generals, Chen Qi could not resist long. Nezha threw up his Universal Ring, hitting him in the arm and wounding him seriously. As he slumped to the left, his own lance stabbed him in the chest. He died immediately.

At dawn, Huang Feihu ordered his troops to fall in. He had wiped out King Zhou's army, with only Qiu Yin still at large. He issued proclamations to pacify the people and appointed a garrison commander to guard the Green Dragon Pass. He then led his army back to Sishui Pass, with Nezha and Earth Traveler Sun sent ahead to carry the news.

Jiang Ziya was giving a lecture on war theory when Nezha arrived and reported the occupation of the Green Dragon Pass. Pleased by the news, Jiang Ziya turned to his generals, "To ensure availability of food supplies, we had to occupy these two passes. Otherwise, King Zhou's army could easily block our food transportation routes. A great general must always keep an eye on these matters. Now that we have occupied the two passes, we are free to launch offensive operations at once."

"You have considered everything well, covering all aspects of the situation, Commander. You are a great strategist," all the generals praised him.

When Huang Feihu returned from the Green Dragon Pass, Jiang Ziya congratulated him on the great victory, but expressed deep regret over the loss of Deng Jiugong and Huang Tianxiang.

The generals held a feast that night. Jiang Ziya sent Xin Jia to deliver an ultimatum to Sishui Pass the next day. When he finished reading the



所在民心效顺，强梁授首；所有佳梦、青龙二关逆命，俱已斩将搴旗，万民归顺。今大兵到此，特以尺一之书咸使闻知，或战，或降，早赐明决，毋得自误。不宣。”

韩荣观看毕，即将原书批回：“来日会战。”辛甲领书回营，见子牙曰：“奉令下书，原书批回，明日会兵。”子牙整顿士卒，一夜无词。次日，子牙行营炮响，大队摆开出辕门，在关下搦战。有报马报入关来：“今有姜元帅关下请战。”韩荣忙整点人马，放炮呐喊出关，左右大小将官分开，韩荣在马上见子牙号令森严，一对对英雄威武。怎见得，有《鹧鸪天》一词为证，词曰：

杀气腾腾万里长，旌旗戈戟透寒光。雄师手仗三环剑，  
虎将鞍横丈八枪。军浩浩，士忙忙，锣鸣鼓响猛如狼。  
东征大战三十阵，汜水交兵第一场。

话说韩荣在马上见子牙，口称：“姜元帅请了！‘率土之滨，莫非王臣’，元帅何故动无名之师，以下凌上，甘心作商家叛臣，吾为元帅不取也！”子牙笑曰：“将军之言差矣。君正，则居其位；君不正，则求为匹夫不可得。是天命岂有常哉，惟有德者能君之。昔夏桀暴虐，成汤伐之，代夏而有天下。今纣王罪过于桀，天下诸侯叛之。我周特奉天之罚，以讨有罪，安敢有逆天命，厥罪惟钧哉。”韩荣大怒曰：“姜子牙，我以你为高明之士，你原来是妖言惑众之人！你有多大本领，敢出大言！那员将与吾拿了？”傍有先行王虎，走马摇刀，飞奔前来，直取子牙。只见哪吒已登风火轮，举枪忙迎。轮马相交，刀枪并举。两下里喊声不息，鼓角齐鸣。战



ultimatum, Han Rong wrote an answer at the bottom, "We'll meet you on the battlefield tomorrow." He then sent Xin Jia back with the original.

The next day, Jiang Ziya led an army before the wall of the pass, and Han Rong met him with his men. Han Rong spoke first, "How do you do, Commander Jiang! Don't you know the proverb, 'No matter where you are, you are a subject of the empire by birth.' How can you lead an army to topple the Shang Dynasty? What you're doing is wrong, Commander."

Jiang Ziya smiled and said, "It's you that's wrong, General. The king may sit on his throne if he is proper and virtuous, but will fall if he is not. Only the virtuous are blessed by Heaven. History tells us that when King Jie of the Xia Dynasty became a cruel tyrant, he was attacked by King Tang of the rising Shang Dynasty. Can't you see that the crimes committed by the tyrant King Zhou are far more serious than those committed by the tyrant Jie? Every noble in the country is against him. Under the orders of Heaven, West Qi must attack and punish him with a great army."

Han Rong grew angry and swore, "Jiang Ziya! I once thought you were a bright scholar and never expected you would incite the people with your nonsense. Why do you brag so much? Who will take him captive for me, men?"

Wang Hu set his horse forward to attack Jiang Ziya, but Nezha stabbed him and brought him down.





未数合，哪吒奋勇一枪，把王虎挑于马下。魏贲见哪吒得胜，把马一磕，摇枪前来，飞取韩荣。韩荣手中戟赴面交还。魏贲的枪势如猛虎。韩荣见先折了王虎，心中已自慌忙，无心恋战。只见子牙挥动兵将冲杀过来。韩荣抵敌不住，败进关中去了。子牙得胜回营。不表。且说韩荣兵败进关，一面具表往朝歌告急，一面设计守关。正在紧急之时，忽报：“七首将军余化等令。”韩荣听得余化来至，大喜，忙传令：“令来。”余化至殿上行礼，韩荣曰：“自从将军战败去后，此关反被黄飞虎走出去了，不觉数载；岂他养成气力，今反伙同那姜尚，三路分兵，取了佳梦关、青龙关，尽为周有。昨日会兵，不能取胜，如之奈何？”余化曰：“末将被哪吒打伤，败回蓬莱山，见我师尊，烧炼一件宝物，可以复我前仇。纵周家有千万军将，只叫他片甲无存。”韩荣大喜，治酒管待。话说次日，余化至周营讨战。子牙问：“谁去出马？”哪吒应声而出：“弟子愿往。”哪吒道罢，登轮提枪，出得营来，一见余化，哪吒认得他，大叫曰：“余化慢来！”余化见了仇人，把脸红了半边，也不答话，催开金睛兽，摇戟直取哪吒。哪吒的枪赴面交还。轮兽相交，戟枪双举。来往冲杀有二三十合，哪吒的枪乃太乙真人传授，有许多机变，余化不是哪吒对手。余化把一口刀，名曰“化血神刀”祭起，如一道电光，中了刀痕，时刻即死。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

丹炉曾锻炼，火里用功夫。灵气后先妙，阴阳表里扶。透甲元神丧，沾身性命无。哪吒逢此刀，眼下血为肤。



Wei Ben, seeing that Nezha was in a favorable position, spurred his horse forward to attack Han Rong. Han Rong was discouraged at the loss of Wang Hu and could not resist long. He ran back to the pass, followed by Jiang's army.

Returning in defeat, Han Rong sent an urgent report to Zhaoge for reinforcements and discussed with his men how to defend the pass. Just then Yu Hua arrived, and Han Rong greeted him, "Several years have gone by since you were defeated and left the pass, enabling Huang Feihu to get through. He is now stronger than ever and is helping Jiang Ziya attack us on three routes. Both the Good Dream Pass and the Green Dragon Pass have been taken. We lost a battle to them yesterday. What shall we do now?"

"Since I was beaten by Nezha, I fled to Penglai Island to cure my wounds. I called on my master, and he refined a magical and miraculous weapon for me to avenge my defeat. It's powerful enough to wipe out a huge army," Yu Hua said excitedly.

Han Rong happily entertained Yu Hua with a feast. When Yu Hua challenged the next day, he was met by Nezha. They knew each other well as they had been deadly enemies for a long time.

After some twenty rounds, when Yu Hua found it impossible to resist Nezha any longer, he threw up his Blood Converting Dagger. With no time to run, Nezha was hit, but as his body was made of lotus flowers and



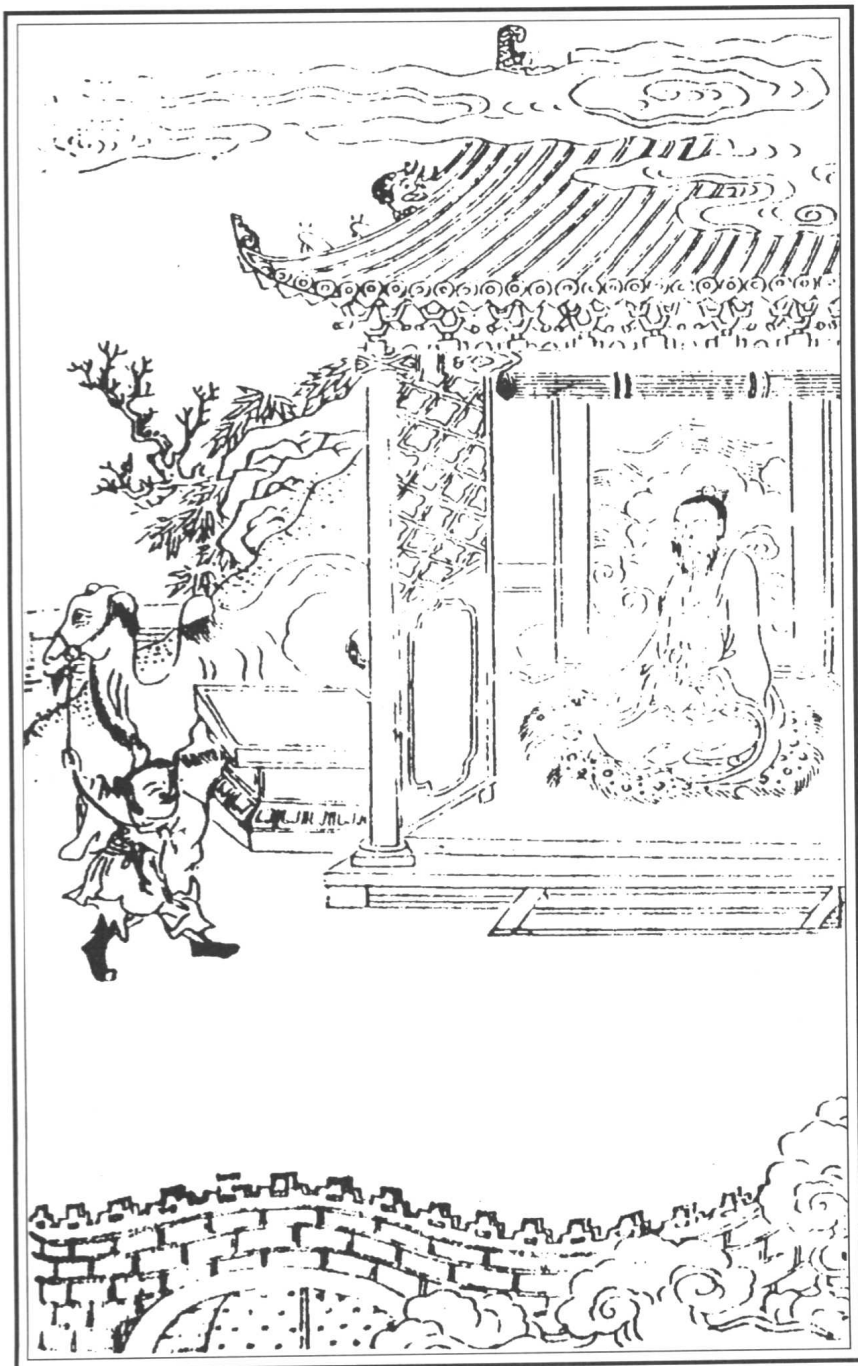
余化将化血刀祭起，那刀来得甚快，哪吒躲不及，中了一刀。大抵哪吒乃莲花化身，浑身俱是莲花瓣儿，纵伤了他，不比凡夫血肉之躯，登时即死，该有凶中得吉。哪吒着刀伤了，大叫一声，败回营中；走进辕门，跌下风火轮来。哪吒着了刀伤，只是颤，不能做声。旗门官报与子牙，子牙令扛抬至中军。子牙叫：“哪吒！”哪吒不答话。子牙心下郁郁不乐。不知哪吒性命如何，且听下回分解。

leaves, he did not die at once. Seriously wounded, he rode back on his Wind-Fire Wheels to camp, and approaching the camp gate, fell down with a loud cry. He then fainted, but his body continued to jerk with spasms. Jiang Ziya ordered his men to carry him into camp. They called his name again and again but to no avail. Jiang Ziya was terribly worried, as he had no idea what to do with him.

Please read the next chapter if you wish to know what became of Nezha.







## 第七十五回

### 土行孙盗骑陷身

诗曰：

余化恃强自丧身，师尊何苦费精神。因烧土行反招祸，为惹惧留致起嗔。北海初沉方脱难，捆仙再缚岂能狗！从来数定应难解，已是封神榜内人。

话说余化得胜回营。至次日，又来周营搦战。探马报入中军。子牙问：“谁人出马？”有雷震子应曰：“愿往。”提棍出营，见余化黄面赤髯，甚是凶恶，问曰：“来者可是余化？”余化大骂：“反国逆贼！你不认得我么！”雷震子大怒，把二翅飞腾于空中，将黄金棍劈头打来。余化手中戟赴面交还。一个在空中用力；一个在兽上施威。雷震子金棍刷来，如泰山一般。余化望上招架费力，略战数合，忙举起化血刀来，把雷震子风雷翅伤了一刀。幸而原是两枚仙杏化成风雷二翅，今中此刀，尚不至伤命，跌在尘埃，败进行营，来见子牙。子牙又见伤了雷震子，心中甚是不乐。次日，有报马报入中军：“有余化搦战。”子牙曰：“连伤二人，若痴呆一般，又不做声，只是寒颤；且悬‘免战牌’出去。”军政官将“免战牌”挂起。余化见周营挂“免战牌”，掌鼓回营。只见次日，有督粮官杨戩至辕门，见挂“免战”二字，杨戩曰：“从三月十五日拜将之后，将近十月，如今还在这里，尚不曾取成汤寸土，连忙挂‘免战牌’，……”心中甚是疑惑，“……”



## Chapter 75

### An Attempted Theft Ends in Failure

Yu Hua challenged the Zhou army again the next day. This time Thunderbolt met him. Yu Hua was very ugly, with a yellow face and red whiskers.

“Are you Yu Hua?”

“You rebel! Don’t you know me?”

Thunderbolt flew into the air to attack Yu Hua, who used his Blood Converting Dagger to stab him in the wing. Luckily, his wings had grown from two fairy apricots, so he did not die at once. He fell down but managed to struggle back to see Jiang Ziya, only adding to Jiang’s anxiety.

Yu Hua came again the next day, but Jiang Ziya ordered the board of truce to be hung up.

Yang Jian arrived the following day. Seeing the board, he wondered to himself, “It’s been nearly ten months but we haven’t even begun to move into Shang territory. What’s wrong here?”







且见了元帅，再做道理。”探马报入中军：“启元帅：有督粮官杨戩候令。”子牙曰：“令来。”杨戩上帐，参谒毕，禀曰：“弟子催粮，应付军需，不曾违限，请令定夺。”子牙曰：“兵粮足矣；其如战不足何！”杨戩曰：“师叔且将‘免战牌’收了，弟子明日出兵，看其端的，自有处治。”子牙在中军与众人正议此事，左右报：“有一道童来见。”子牙曰：“请来。”少时，至帐前，那童子倒身下拜曰：“弟子是乾元山金光洞太乙真人门下。师兄哪吒有厄，命弟子背上山去调理。”子牙即将哪吒交与金霞童子，背往乾元山去了。不表。且说杨戩见雷震子不做声，只是颤。看刀刃中血水如墨。杨戩观看良久，“此乃是毒物所伤。”杨戩启子牙：“去了‘免战牌’。”子牙传令：“去了‘免战牌’。”次日，汜水关哨马报入关中：“周营已去‘免战牌’。”余化听得，随上了金睛兽出关，来至营前搦战。哨马报入中军：“关内有将讨战。”正是：

常胜不知终有败，周营自有妙人来。

话说余化至营搦战，杨戩禀过子牙，忙提三尖刀出营。见余化光景，是左道邪说之人，杨戩大叫曰：“来者莫非余化么？”余化曰：“然也。尔通名来。”杨戩曰：“吾乃姜元帅师侄杨戩是也。”纵马摇三尖刀飞来直取。余化手中戟赴面交还。两马相交，一场大战。未及二十余合，余化祭起化血神刀，如闪电飞来。杨戩运动八九元功，将元神遁出，以左肩迎来，伤了一刀，也大叫一声，败回行营，看是甚么毒物，来见子牙。子牙问曰：“你会余化如何？”杨戩曰：“弟子见他神刀利害，仗吾师道术，将元神遁出，以左臂迎他一刀，毕竟看不

When he reported his arrival with the fresh load of food supplies, Jiang said, "We have enough food here, but it seems that we cannot move forward. What shall we do?"

"Take the board down, Uncle. I'll meet him."

Just then a Taoist lad came to see the commander. He kowtowed and said, "I'm a disciple of Fairy Primordial. I've come to take Nezha back to the mountain for medical treatment."

Jiang Ziya agreed. Looking at Thunderbolt closely, Yang Jian saw that he was shivering constantly. His blood was like thick ink. After a long time, Yang Jian said definitely, "This must be the effect of some poison."

The board was removed, and Yu Hua came again the next day. Yang Jian rode out to meet him and could see at once that he had magic powers. He yelled, "Is that Yu Hua coming?"

"Yes! Tell me your name."

"I'm Commander Jiang's nephew," Yang replied attacking Yu Hua with his cutlass.

After about twenty rounds, Yu Hua attacked with his Blood Converting Dagger, and Yang Jian let himself be hit in the left arm. He returned to



出他的果是何毒。弟子且往玉泉山金霞洞去一遭。”子牙许之。杨戩借土遁往玉泉山来，到了金霞洞，进洞见师父，拜罢，玉鼎真人问曰：“杨戩，你此来有甚么话说？”杨戩对曰：“弟子同师叔进兵汜水关，与守关将余化对敌。彼有一刀，不知何毒，起先雷震子被他伤了一刀，只是寒颤，不能做声；弟子也被他伤了一刀，幸赖师父玄功，不曾重伤，然不知果是何毒物。”玉鼎真人忙令杨戩将刀痕来看，真人见此刀刃，便曰：“此乃是化血刀所伤。但此刀伤了，见血即死。幸雷震子伤的两枚仙杏，你又有玄功，故尔如此；不然，皆不可活。”杨戩听得，不觉大惊，忙问曰：“似此将何术解救？”真人曰：“此毒连我也不能解。此刀乃是蓬莱岛一气仙余元之物。当时修炼时，此刀在炉中，有三粒神丹同炼的。要解此毒，非此丹药，不能得济。”真人沉思良久，乃曰：“此事非你不可。”附耳，“……如此如此方可。”杨戩大喜，领了师父之言，离了玉泉山往蓬莱岛而来。正是：

真人道术非凡品，咫尺蓬莱见大功。

话说杨戩借土遁往蓬莱岛而来，前至东海。好个海岛，异景奇花，观之不尽。怎见得海水平波，山崖锦砌，正所谓蓬莱景致与天阙无差。怎见得好山，有赞为证：

势镇东南，源流四海。汪洋潮涌作波涛，滂渤山根成碧阙。蜃楼结彩，化为人世奇观；蛟孽兴风，又是沧溟幻化。丹山碧树非凡，玉宇琼宫天外。麟凤优游，自然仙境灵胎；鸾鹤翱翔，岂是人间俗骨。琪花四季吐精英，瑶草千年呈瑞气。且慢说青松翠柏常春；又道是仙桃仙果时有。修竹拂云留夜月，藤萝映日舞清风。一溪瀑布

camp but could not make out what kind of poison it was. He then told Jiang Ziya he would go to Mount Jade Spring to see his master for help.

When he got to Golden Haze Cave, Yang Jian knelt before Jade Tripod and kowtowed.

“Yang Jian, what do you have to tell me now?” the immortal asked.

“Yu Hua has a poisonous dagger, but we can’t recognize the poison. He stabbed both Nezha and Thunderbolt, making them cold and unable to speak. Can you tell us what the poison is?”

“Show me your wound.”

Inspecting his arm, Jade Tripod said, “This is from Blood Converting Dagger. Mortals will die at once if hit, but Nezha’s made of lotus flowers and Thunderbolt’s wings are fairy apricots. Without your magic powers you’d have all died by now.”

He then continued, “The dagger’s from Yu Yuan of Penglai Island. Three pills were refined with the dagger and they alone can save you. Only you can carry this out.” He then whispered what to do to Yang.

Delighted at his master’s words, Yang Jian left for Penglai Island,





时飞雪，四面丹崖若列星。正是：百川涇注擎天柱，万劫无移大地根。

话说杨戩来至蓬莱山，看罢蓬莱景致，仗八九元功，将身变成七首将军余化，径进蓬莱岛来。见了一气仙余元，倒身下拜。余元见余化到此，乃问曰：“你来做甚么？”余化曰：“弟子奉师父之命，去汜水关协同韩总兵把守关隘，不意姜尚兵来，弟子见头一阵，刀伤了哪吒，第二阵伤了雷震子，第三阵恰来了姜子牙师侄杨戩，弟子用刀去伤他，被他一指，反把刀指回来，将弟子伤了肩臂，望老师慈悲救拔。”一气仙余元曰：“有这等事？他有何能，敢指回我的宝刀？但当时炼此宝，在炉中分龙虎，定阴阳，同炼了三粒丹药，我如今将此丹留在此间也无用，你不若将此丹药取了去，以备不虞。”余元随将丹递与余化。余化叩头，“谢老师天恩。”忙出洞来，回周营。不表。有诗单赞杨戩玄功变化之妙：

悟到功成道始精，玄中玄妙有无生。蓬莱枉秘通灵药，  
汜水徒劳化血兵。计就腾挪称幻圣，装成奇巧盗英明。  
多因福助周文武，一任奇谋若浪萍。

话说杨戩得了丹药，径回周营。且说一气仙余元把药一时俱与了余化，静坐思忖：“杨戩有多大本领，能指回我的化血刀？若余化被刀伤了，他如何还到得这里？其中定有缘故。”余元掐指一算，大叫曰：“好杨戩匹夫！敢以变化玄功盗吾丹药，欺吾太甚！”余元大怒，上了金眼驼，来赶杨戩。杨戩正往前行，只听得后面有风声赶至，杨戩已知余元来赶，忙把丹药放在囊中，暗祭哮天犬存在空中。余元只顾赶杨戩，不知暗算难防，余元被哮天犬夹颈子一口。正是



where he transformed himself into Yu Hua. When he knelt down, Yu Yuan asked, "What brings you here?"

"By your order, I went to Sishui Pass to help the Shang Dynasty. I first wounded Nezha and then Thunderbolt. When Yang Jian came, he pointed at the dagger with his finger and turned it back on me. I was hit on the shoulder, and so I've come to beg you to save me from death."

Yu Yuan was shocked. "How can this be! I've got some medicine which can take care of the problem. You may have all three pills in case you have another accident."

Yang Jian thanked him and hurriedly left the cave. After his departure, Yu Yuan began to ponder, "How could Yang Jian turn my dagger back? How could Yu Hua have gotten here if he was really seriously wounded?"

When he had made a calculation on his fingers and found out the truth, he roared with anger, "Damn you, Yang Jian! How dare you steal my pills! I'll never forget this insult."

He raced after him on his golden-eyed camel, but when Yang Jian heard the rustling of the wind behind him, he secretly set his Sky Barking Hound into the sky. It bit Yu Yuan's neck, tearing off a big piece of his



此犬：

牙如钢剑伤皮肉，红袍拉下半边来。

余元不曾提防暗算，被犬一口，把大红白鹤衣扯了半边。余元又吃了大亏，不能前进，“吾且回去，再整顿前来，以复此仇。”话说子牙正在营中纳闷，只见左右来报：“有杨戩等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”杨戩至帐前，见子牙，备言前事，“盗丹而回。”子牙大喜，忙取丹药救雷震子；又遣木吒往乾元山，送此药与哪吒调理。次日，杨戩往关下搦战。探事官报入帅府：“周营中有将讨战。”韩荣忙令余化出战。余化上了金睛兽，拎戟出关。杨戩大呼曰：“余化，前日你用化血刀伤我，幸吾炼有丹药，若无丹药，几中汝之奸计也。”余化暗思：“此丹乃一炉所出，焉能周营中也有此丹？若此处有这丹，此刀无用。”催开金睛兽，大战杨戩。二马相交，刀戟并举。二将酣战三十余合。正杀之间，雷震子得了此丹，即时全好了，心中大怒，竟飞出周营，大喝曰：“好余化！将恶刀伤吾。若非丹药，几至不保。不要走，吃我一棍，以泄此恨！”拎起黄金棍，劈头刷来。余化将手中戟架棍。杨戩三尖刀来得又勇，余化被雷震子一棍打来，将身一闪，那棍正中金睛兽，把余化掀翻下地，被杨戩复一刀，结果了性命。正是：

一腔左术全无用，枉做成汤梁栋材。

杨戩斩了余化，掌鼓回营，见子牙报功。不表。

且说韩荣闻余化阵亡，大惊：“此事怎好！前日遣官往朝歌去，命又不下；今无人协同守此关隘，如何是好！”正议间，余元乘了金睛五云驼，至关内下骑，至帅府前，令门官



pink robe. Yu Yuan cried with hatred, "I'll go back for now, but I'll get you soon enough."

Jiang Ziya was delighted to see the pills. They cured Thunderbolt first and then sent Muzha to deliver the elixir to Nezha.

Meeting Yu Hua the next day, Yang Jian bluffed, "Yu Hua, I was wounded the day before yesterday, but luckily I had the pills to save my life."

"The dagger and the pills were refined in the same furnace at the same time. How could he have gotten hold of them? What use is my dagger if it be so?" Yu Hua pondered.

He spurred his golden-eyed beast forward to fight with Yang Jian. After thirty rounds, Thunderbolt flew over, yelling, "Damn you, Yu Hua! Don't go away! I must give vent to my hatred."

Thunderbolt aimed at his head, and Yu Hua resisted with his halberd. Trying to repulse Yang Jian, he had no time to return another blow from Thunderbolt. When he dodged to evade the cudgel, his golden-eyed beast was hit. It jumped and threw Yu Hua to the ground. Yang Jian quickly killed him.

Han Rong was extremely worried at the loss of Yu Hua. He murmured, "The reinforcements haven't arrived. How can we defend the pass?"





通报。众军官见余元好凶恶，忙报韩荣。韩荣传令：“请来。”道人进帅府，韩荣迎接余元。只见他生得面如蓝靛，赤发獠牙，身高一丈七八，凛凛威风，二目凶光冒出。韩荣降阶而迎，口称：“老师。”请上银安殿。韩荣下拜，问曰：“老师是那座名山？何处洞府？”一气仙余元曰：“杨戩欺吾太甚，盗丹杀我弟子余化。贫道是蓬莱岛一气仙余元是也；今特下山，以报此仇。”韩荣闻说大喜，治酒管待。次日，余元上了五云驼，出关至周营，坐名要子牙答话。报马报入中军：“汜水关有一道人请元帅答话。”子牙传令：“摆队伍出营。”左右分五岳门人，一骑当先。只见一位道人，生的十分凶恶。怎见得：

鱼尾冠，金嵌成；大红服，云暗生。面如蓝靛獠牙冒，赤发红须古怪形。丝绦飘火焰，麻鞋若水晶。蓬莱岛内修仙体，自在逍遥得至清。位在监斋成神道，一气仙名旧有声。

话说子牙至军前问曰：“道者请了。”余元道：“姜子牙，你叫出杨戩来见我。”子牙曰：“杨戩催粮去了，不在行营。道者，你既在蓬莱岛，难道不知天意。今成汤传位六百余年，至纣王无道，暴弃天命，肆行凶恶，罪恶贯盈，天怒人怨，天下叛之。我周应天顺人，克修天道，天下归周。今奉天之罚，以观政于商。尔何得阻逆天吏，自取灭亡哉！道者，你不观余化诸人皆是此例，他纵有道术，岂能扭转天命耶！”余元大怒曰：“总是你这一番妖言惑众！若不杀你，不足以绝祸根！”催开五云驼，仗宝剑直取子牙。子牙手中剑赴面交还。左有李靖，右有韦护，各举兵器，前来助战。四人只为



Yu Yuan arrived at this critical moment.

His face was indigo blue, his hair red, and he sported two long tusks. He was seventeen feet tall and strong light beamed from his eyes.

Han Rong went forward to greet Yu Yuan and asked, "Which honorable cave and mountain do you come from, Master?"

"Yang Jian has gone too far this time. He stole my elixir and killed my disciple Yu Hua. I'm Yu Yuan, First Vitality Fairy of Penglai Island. I've come to get revenge for Yu Hua."

Han Rong held a feast to entertain Yu Yuan, who went out the next day to challenge Jiang Ziya.

Jiang Ziya led his troops to the battlefield, where Yu Yuan demanded, "Jiang Ziya! Tell Yang Jian to come out and see me!"

"Yang Jian is not here. He's busy transporting food supplies. As you have studied the Way, you certainly know the will of Heaven. You will die if you hinder our advance. Can't you see what happened to Yu Hua and the others? Jiang Ziya declared.

Yu Yuan roared, "Your nonsense only fools the people. We can't remove the source of trouble if I don't end your life."

He spurred his five-cloud camel forward to attack Jiang, who returned the blow with his sword. Li Jing and Wei Hu rushed in to aid Jiang.



无名火起，眼前要定雌雄。余元的宝剑光华灼灼；子牙剑彩色辉辉；李靖刀寒光灿灿；韦护杵杀气腾腾。余元坐在五云驼上，把一尺三寸金光镗祭在空中，来打子牙。子牙忙展杏黄旗，现出有千朵金莲，拥护其身。余元忙收了金光镗，复祭起来打李靖。不防子牙祭起打神鞭来，一鞭正中余元后背，只打的三昧真火喷出丈余远近。李靖又把余元腿上一枪。余元着伤，把五云驼顶上一拍，只见那金眼驼四足起金光而去。子牙见余元着伤而走，收兵回营。不表。且说土行孙催粮来至，见子牙会兵，他暗暗的瞧见余元的五云驼四足起金光而去，土行孙大喜：“我若得此战骑，催粮真是便益。”当时子牙回营升帐，忽报：“土行孙等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”土行孙至帐前，交纳粮数，不悞限期。子牙曰：“催粮有功，暂且下帐少憩。”土行孙下帐，来见邓婵玉，夫妻共语，说：“余化把刀伤了哪吒，哪吒往乾元山养伤痕去了。”土行孙至晚，对邓婵玉曰：“我方才见余元坐骑，四足旋起金光，如云霓缥缈而去，妙甚，妙甚！我今夜走去，盗了他的来，骑着催粮，有何不可？”邓婵玉曰：“虽然如此；你若要去，须禀知元帅，方可行事，不得造次。”土行孙曰：“与他说没用，总是走去便来，何必又多一番唇舌？”当时夫妻计较停当。将至二更，土行孙把身子一扭，径进汜水关，来到帅府里。土行孙见余元默运元神，土行孙在地下，往上看他，道人目似垂帘，不敢上去，只得等候。却言余元默运元神，忽然心血潮来，余元暗暗掐指一算，已知土行孙来盗他的坐骑。余元把阳神出窍，少刻，鼻息之声如雷。土行孙在地下听见鼻息之声，大喜曰：“今夜定然成功。”将身子钻



Yu Yuan threw up his Golden Light File, but Jiang unrolled his Yellow Apricot Flag to protect himself. Yu Yuan could only turn to attack Li Jing but he was caught unawares by Jiang's Staff for Beating Gods. He was hit on the back, and his samadhi fire was knocked right out of him. He was then stabbed in the thigh by Li Jing. He patted his camel's neck and raced away.

As Earth Traveler Sun was returning with more food supplies, he saw Yu Yuan's camel on its beam of golden light. "If I had that beast, how convenient it would be," he mused.

That evening Earth Traveler Sun said to Deng Chanyu, "I like Yu Yuan's beast very much. I think I'll go and steal it to use as my mount. What do you think?"

"You should report to Commander Jiang first," Deng Chanyu advised.

"It's not necessary to report this. I'll be back very soon," Sun replied.

Near the second watch, he twisted his body into the ground and went directly into Sishui Pass. He entered the headquarters, where he found Yu Yuan in meditation with his eyes closed. He waited there patiently.

Yu Yuan's meditation was suddenly disturbed. He found out with a prediction on his fingers that Earth Traveler Sun was planning to steal his five-cloud camel. He began to snore loudly, and Sun grinned in delight.



了上来，拖着铁棍，又见廊下拴着五云驼。土行孙解了缰绳，牵到丹墀下，挨着马台扒上去，试验试验，然后又扒将下来。将这宾铁棍执在手里，来打余元，照余元耳门上一下，只打得七窍中三昧火冒出来，只是不动；复打一棍，打得余元只不作声。土行孙曰：“这泼道，真是顽皮！吾且回去，明日再做道理。”土行孙上了五云驼，把他顶上拍了一下，那兽四足就起金云，飞在空中。土行孙心下十分欢喜。正是：

欢喜未来灾又至，只因盗物惹非殃。

且说土行孙骑着五云驼，只在关里串，不得出关去。土行孙曰：“宝贝，你还出关去！”话犹未了，那五云驼便落将下地来。土行孙方欲下驼，早被余元一把抓住头发，拎着他，不令他挨地，大叫曰：“拿住偷驼的贼了！”惊动一府大小将官，掌起火把灯毬。韩荣升了宝殿，只见余元高高的把土行孙拎着。韩荣灯光下见一矮子，“老师拎着他做甚么？放下他来罢了。”余元曰：“你不知他会地行之术，但沿了地，他就去了。”韩荣曰：“将他如何处治？”余元曰：“你把俺蒲团下一个袋儿取来，装着这业障，用火烧死他，方绝祸患。”韩荣取了袋儿装起来。余元叫：“搬柴来。”少时间，架起柴来，把如意乾坤袋烧着。土行孙在火里大叫曰：“烧死我也！”好火！怎见得，有诗为证：

细细金蛇遍地明，黑烟滚滚即时生。燧人出世居离位，  
炎帝腾光号火精。山石逢时皆赤土，江湖偶遇尽枯平。  
谁知天意归周主，自有真仙渡此惊。

话说余元烧土行孙，命在须臾。也是天数，不该如此。——



Clutching his iron cudgel, Earth Traveler Sun strode quietly through the corridor till he found the five-cloud camel tied to a post with a rope. He led the camel to a red stepping stone, where he was able to clamber up on its back. He then dismounted and hit Yu Yuan heavily on the head. His samadhi fire was knocked out, but Yu Yuan did not move. Earth Traveler Sun struck another blow, but there was still no reaction.

“That bloody Taoist is crazy. I must return now, but I’ll deal with him tomorrow,” Earth Traveler Sun murmured.

He mounted the five-cloud camel again, and when he patted its neck, golden light shot from its four hooves. It rose and flew lightly into the air. Sun was overjoyed.

Once in the air, Sun hoped to leave the pass at once, but the camel turned and landed back inside the wall. Yu Yuan grabbed him by the hair and shouted, “I’ve caught a thief trying to steal my camel!”

Everybody came running with their torches and lanterns. When Han Rong had seated himself in court, he saw Yu Yuan hurry forward, carrying a dwarf by the hair.

“Why are you carrying him like that? Put him down, Master,” Han Rong said.

“Oh, no. This dwarf can travel underground. He’d be gone at once if I put him down.”

“How should we deal with him, Master?” Han Rong asked.

“Give me that bag under my rush cushion. I’ll put him inside and burn him to death.”

A fire was quickly built, and Yu Yuan ordered, “Hang the Universal Bag over the fire.”

“What a fire! This must be my end!” Earth Traveler Sun screamed.



只见惧留孙正坐蒲团默养元神，见白鹤童子来至曰：“奉师尊玉旨，命师兄去救土行孙。”惧留孙闻命，与白鹤童子分别，借着纵地金光法来至汜水关里。见余元正烧乾坤袋，惧留孙使一阵旋窝风，往下一坐，伸下手来，连如意乾坤袋提将去了。余元看见一阵风来，又见火势有景，余元掐指一算：“好惧留孙！你救你的门人，把我如意乾坤袋也拿了去！我明日自有处治。且说惧留孙将土行孙救出火焰之中，土行孙在内自觉得不热，不知何故。惧留孙来至周营。那夜是南宫适巡外营。时至三更尽，南宫适问曰：“是甚么人？”惧留孙曰：“是我。快通报子牙，我来也。”南宫适向前看，知是惧留孙，忙传云板。子牙三鼓时分起来，外边传入帐中：“有惧留孙在辕门。”子牙忙出迎接，见惧留孙拎着一个袋子，至军前打稽首坐下。子牙曰：“道兄夤夜至此，有何见谕？”惧留孙曰：“土行孙有火难，特来救之。”子牙大惊：“土行孙昨日催粮方回，其灾如何得至？”惧留孙把如意袋儿打开，放出土行孙来，问其详细。土行孙把盗五云驼的事说了一遍。子牙大怒曰：“你要做此事，也该报我知道，如何违背主帅，暗行辱国之事？今若不正军法，诸将效尤，将来营规必乱。传刀斧手，将土行孙斩首号令！”惧留孙曰：“土行孙不遵军令，暗行进关，有辱国体，理宜斩首；只是用人之际，暂且待罪立功。”子牙曰：“若不是道兄求免，定当斩首。”令左右：“且与我放了。”土行孙谢了师父，又谢过子牙。一夜周营中未曾安静。次日，只见一气仙余元出关来至周营，坐名只要惧留孙。惧留孙曰：“他来只为如意乾坤袋。我不去会他。你只须如此，自可擒此泼道也。”惧留孙与子牙计较停当。子牙点炮出营。余元一见子牙，大呼曰：“只叫惧留孙来会



Krakucchanda was in meditation when White Crane Lad arrived to report the urgent situation.

Krakucchanda went immediately to Sishui Pass. He invoked a violent whirlwind, swooped down, and snatched up the Universal Bag.

When his bag disappeared in the whirlwind, Yu Yuan roared, "Bloody Krakucchanda! You've taken my Universal Bag. I'll get even with you tomorrow!"

Krakucchanda went to the Zhou camp and asked for Jiang Ziya. Jiang got up at once and went out to meet him. "What's happened?" he asked.

"I came to rescue Earth Traveler Sun," the immortal replied.

"How can that be! He just got here yesterday with our food supplies," Jiang said in astonishment.

Krakucchanda opened the Universal Bag and set Earth Traveler Sun free. After he told his story, Jiang became very angry. He said, "You ought to have asked my permission. You must be severely dealt with, as a warning to other offenders. Take him out and behead him at once."

"Earth Traveler Sun deserves to be punished, but we still need him. I beg you to forgive him and give him a chance to redeem his crime," Krakucchanda implored the commander.

"I will forgive him at your request, Brother," Jiang replied.

The next day, Yu Yuan rushed over to the Zhou camp, demanding to meet Krakucchanda alone.

"He only wants his Universal Bag. You can meet him and take him captive," Krakucchanda told Jiang and whispered a secret in his ear.

"Let only Krakucchanda come to meet me," Yu Yuan shouted loudly when he saw Jiang Ziya.





我!”子牙曰：“道友，你好不知天命！据道友要烧死那土行孙，自无逃躲，岂知有他师父来救他，正所谓有福之人，纵千方百计而不能加害；无福之人遇沟壑而丧其躯。此岂人力所能哉！”余元大怒曰：“巧言匹夫尚敢为他支吾！”催开五云驼，使宝剑来取。子牙坐下四不相，手中剑赴面相迎。二兽相交，双剑并举，两家一场大战。怎见得，有词为证：

凛凛征云万丈高，军兵擂鼓把旗摇。一个是封神都领袖；一个是监斋名姓标。这个正道奉天灭纣主；那个是无福成仙自逞高。这个是六韬之内称始祖；那个是恶性凶心怎肯饶。自来有福催无福，天意循环怎脱逃。

话说子牙大战余元，未及十数合，被惧留孙祭捆仙绳在空中，命黄巾力士半空将余元拿去，止有五云驼跳进关中。子牙与惧留孙将余元拿至中军。余元曰：“姜尚，你虽然擒我，看你将何法治我！”子牙令李靖：“斩讫报来！”李靖领令，推出辕门，将宝剑斩之；一声响，把宝剑砍缺有二指。李靖回报子牙，备言杀不得之事，说了一遍。子牙亲自至辕门，命韦护祭降魔杵打，只打得腾腾烟出，烈烈火飞。余元作歌曰：

“君不见天皇得道将身炼，修仙养道碧游宫。坎虎离龙方出现，五行随我任心游。四海三江都走遍，顶金顶玉秘修成。曾在炉中仙火煨。你今斩我要分明，自古一剑还一剑。漫道余言说不灵。”

余元作歌罢，子牙心下十分不乐，与惧留孙共议：“如今放不得余元，且将他囚于后营，等取了关再做区处。”惧留孙曰：“子牙，你可命匠人造一铁柜，将余元沉于北海，以除后



“This is all destined by fate and completely out of your power,” Jiang said.

“How dare you bewitch me with such nonsense,” Yu Yuan said furiously.

He rode forward to attack Jiang Ziya with his sword. After about ten rounds, Krakucchanda, who was waiting above in the clouds, captured Yu Yuan with his Immortal Binding Rope, leaving the camel to hop back into the pass alone.

Taken into captivity, Yu Yuan said sarcastically to Jiang Ziya and Krakucchanda, “You can capture me alright, but we’ll just see what you can do to me.”

“Take him out and cut his head off,” Jiang Ziya ordered Li Jing.

Li Jing took Yu Yuan outside, but for the life of him, could make no dent in his neck. When his sword finally broke in two, Li Jing returned to report his failure.

Jiang Ziya then ordered Wei Hu to hit Yu Yuan with his Monster Subduing Club. Sparks flashed and flames flew, but Yu Yuan still sat smiling.

Jiang Ziya consulted Krakucchanda, who suggested, “Make an iron box, lock Yu Yuan inside, and sink it to the bottom of the North Sea.”



患。”子牙命铁匠急造，铁柜已成，将余元放在柜内。惧留孙命黄巾力士抬定了，往北海中一丢，沉于海底。黄巾力士回复惧留孙法旨。不表。

且说余元入于北海之中，铁柜亦是五金之物，况又丢在水中，此乃金水相生，反助了他一臂之力。余元借水遁走了，径往碧游宫紫芝崖下来。余元被捆仙绳捆住，不得见截教门人传与掌教师尊。忽听得一个道童，唱道情而来，词曰：

“山遥水遥，隔断红尘道。粗袍敝袍，袖里乾坤倒。日月肩挑，乾坤怀抱。常自把烟霞啸傲，天地逍遥。龙降虎伏道自高，紫雾护新巢，白云做故交。长生不老，只在壶中一觉。”

话说余元大呼曰：“那一位师兄，来救我之残喘！”水火童儿见紫芝崖下一道者，青面红发，巨口獠牙，捆在那里，童儿问曰：“你何人，今受此厄？”余元曰：“我乃是金灵圣母门下，蓬莱岛一气仙余元是也；今被姜子牙将我沉于北海，幸天不绝我，得借水遁，方能到得此间。望师兄与我通报一声。”水火童儿径来见金灵圣母备言余元一事。金灵圣母闻言大怒，急至崖前。不见还可，越见越怒。金灵圣母径进宫内，见通天教主行礼毕，言曰：“弟子一事启老师：人言昆仑门下欺灭吾教，俱是耳听；今将一气仙余元，他得何罪，竟用铁柜沉于北海；幸不绝生，借水遁逃至于紫芝崖。望老师大发慈悲，救弟子等体面。”通天教主曰：“如今在那里？”金灵圣母曰：“在紫芝崖。”通天教主分付：“抬将来。”少时，将余元抬至宫前。碧游宫多少截教门人，看见余元，无不动气。

When the iron box was ready, they put Yu inside, locked it tight, and ordered their yellow-scarved genii to carry it to the North Sea.

Yu Yuan, however, was not hurt in the least. He used the combination of the elements metal and water to free himself from the box. He then made his way directly to the Green Touring Palace.

When he arrived, still tightly bound with the magic rope, he asked Water-Fire Lad to seek out Mother Golden Spirit. Enraged to see her disciple in such a state, she went immediately to see the Grand Master of Heaven.

The disciples were furious when they saw Yu Yuan being carried into the palace. When their chief arrived, he heard their loud protests and felt





只见金钟声响，玉磬齐鸣，掌教师尊来至，到了宫前，一见诸大弟子，齐言：“阐教门人欺吾教太甚！”教主看见余元这等光景，教主也觉得难堪，先将一道符印对余元身上，教主用手一弹，只见捆仙绳吊下来。古语云：“圣人怒发不上脸。”随命余元：“跟吾进宫。”教主取一物与余元，曰：“你去把惧留孙拿来见我，不许你伤他。”余元曰：“弟子知道。”正是：

圣人赐与穿心锁，只恐皇天不肯从。

话说余元得了此宝，离了碧游宫，借土遁而来。行得好快，不须臾，已至汜水关。有报事马报入关中：“有余道长到了。”韩荣降阶迎接到殿，欠身言曰：“闻老师失利，被姜尚所擒，使末将身心不安。今得睹天颜，韩荣不胜幸甚！”余元曰：“姜尚用铁柜把我沉于北海，幸吾借小术到吾师尊那所在，借得一件东西，可以成功。可将吾五云驼收拾，打点出关，以报此恨。”余元随上骑，至周营辕门，坐名只要惧留孙。报马报入中军：“启元帅：余元搦战，只要惧留孙。”幸而惧留孙不曾回山。子牙大惊，忙请惧留孙商议。惧留孙曰：“余元沉海，毕竟借水遁潜逃至碧游宫，想通天教主必定借有奇宝，方敢下山。子牙，你还与他答话，待吾再擒他进来，且救一时燃眉之急。若是他先祭其宝，则吾不能支耳。”子牙曰：“道兄言之有理。”子牙传令：“点炮。”帅旗展动，子牙至军前。余元大呼曰：“姜子牙，我与你今日定见雌雄！”催开五云驼，恶狠狠飞来直取。姜子牙手中剑赴面交还。只一合，惧留孙祭起捆仙绳，命黄巾力士：“将余元拿下！”只听得一声响，又将余元平空拿去了。正是：

秋风未动蝉先觉，暗送无常死不知。



deeply ashamed. He stamped a seal on Yu Yuan and pointed at him, and in a wink, the magic rope dropped to the ground. He then ordered, "Yu Yuan, come with me. Take this precious weapon and bring Krakucchanda back to see me. You must not hurt him."

"I shall do as you say, Master," Yu Yuan promised. When he reached the pass he was met by Han Rong on the stone steps. Overjoyed at his return, the general welcomed him in and listened to his story.

The next day, Yu Yuan demanded to meet Krakucchanda in front of the Zhou camp. Jiang Ziya went to consult the immortal about the matter.

"We had no idea Yu Yuan could escape from his box under the North Sea. How is it that he dares to come again? He must have secured some strange and powerful weapon from the Grand Master of Heaven. It's better if you meet him, Brother, so I can grab him unawares. We'll have a hard time if we give him the chance to attack first," Krakucchanda said.

"Good idea, Brother," Jiang Ziya approved his plan.

When Jiang Ziya appeared before him, Yu Yuan yelled loudly, "I'll fight you to the death today, Jiang Ziya!"

He galloped forward to attack Jiang Ziya but was immediately taken by Krakucchanda's magic rope.



余元不提防暗中下手。子牙见拿了余元，其心方安；进营，将余元放在帐前。子牙与惧留孙共议：“若杀余元，不过五行之术，想他俱是会中人，如何杀得他？倘若再走了，如之奈何！”正所谓“生死有定，大数难逃”。余元正应“封神榜”上有名之人，如何逃得。子牙在中军正无法可施，无筹可展，忽然报：“陆压道人来至。”子牙同惧留孙出营相接。至中军，余元一见陆压，只唬得仙魂缥缈，面似淡金，余元悔之不及。余元曰：“陆道兄，你既来，还求你慈悲我，可怜我千年道行，苦尽功夫。从今知过必改，再不敢干犯西兵。”陆压曰：“你逆天行事，天理难容；况你是‘封神榜’上之人，我不过代天行罚。正是：

不依正理归邪理，仗你胸中道术高。谁知天意扶真主，  
吾今到此命难逃。

陆压曰：“取香案。”陆压香焚炉中，望昆仑山下拜，花篮中取出一个葫芦，放在案上，揭开葫芦盖；里边一道白光如线，起在空中，现出七寸五分横在白光顶上，有眼有翅。陆压口里道：“宝贝请转身！”那东西在白光之上连转三四转，可怜余元斗大一颗首级落将下来。有诗单道斩将封神飞刀，有诗为证：

先炼真元后运功，此中玄妙配雌雄。惟存一点先天诀，  
斩怪诛妖自不同。

话说陆压用飞刀斩了余元，他一灵已进封神台去了。子牙欲要号令，陆压曰：“不可。余元原有仙体，若是暴露，则非礼矣。用土掩埋。”陆压与惧留孙辞别归山。



Yu Yuan did not expect Krakucchanda to play the same trick again. But although he was captured, Jiang and the immortal did not know what to do with him.

As they sat pondering, Lu Ya arrived unexpectedly. Both Krakucchanda and Jiang Ziya went to welcome him and escort him in.

When he saw Lu Ya, Yu Yuan grew frightened, his face turning a yellowish gold. He regretted everything, but it was already too late.

“Brother Lu! Have mercy on me. I’ve been studying the Way and refining myself for a thousand years. I will repent now and never block the Zhou army again,” Yu Yuan begged pitifully.

“You have opposed the will of Heaven, and your name is on the List of Creations. I must punish you,” Lu Ya replied.

He burned incense and kowtowed towards Mount Kunlun. He then took a gourd from his flower basket and placed it on the table with its lid off. A white light suddenly soared skyward, and at its tip, a dagger about twenty-two centimeters long appeared. It had eyes and wings. The dagger spun around three or four times before dropping and slicing off Yu Yuan’s head. It dropped to the ground, and his soul flew to the Terrace of Creation.

Jiang Ziya intended to hang his head on a post as a warning, but Lu Ya protested and said, “As Yu Yuan was already an immortal, it wouldn’t be right to expose his head or corpse publicly. We should bury him underground.”

Both Krakucchanda and Lu Ya returned to their mountains soon thereafter.





且说韩荣打听余元已死，在银安殿与众将共议曰：“如今余道长已亡，再无可敌周将者。况兵临城下，左右关隘俱失与周家；子牙麾下俱是道德术能之士，终不能取胜。欲要归降，不忍负成汤之爵位；如不归降，料此关难守，终被周人所掳。为今之计，奈何，奈何！”旁有偏将徐忠曰：“主将既不忍有负成汤，决无献关之理。吾等不如将印绶挂在殿庭，文册留与府库，望朝歌拜谢皇恩，弃官而去，不失尽人臣之道。”韩荣听说，俱从其言，随传令众军士：“将府内资重之物，打点上车。”欲隐迹山林，埋名丘壑。此时众将官各自去打点起行。韩荣又命家将搬运金珠宝玩，扛抬细软衣帛。纷纭喧哗，忽然惊动韩荣二子，——在后园中设造奇兵，欲拒子牙。弟兄二人听得家中纷纷然哄乱，走出庭来，只见家将扛抬箱笼，问其缘故，家将把弃关的话说了一遍。二人听罢，“你们且住了，我自有道理。”二人齐来见父亲。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



When he learned what had become of Yu Yuan, Han Rong called his generals together for a military conference. "We face a very serious situation now. Yu Yuan is dead, and we have no one else who can fight the Zhou generals. The passes to our left and right have already been lost, isolating us in the middle. We can neither win, nor are we willing to surrender. What shall we do?" he put the question before them.

"Since we can't defend the pass, and we're not willing to surrender, you should hang your official seal in the court, leave the records and census books in the office, and kowtow towards Zhaoge. We will then desert the place," General Xu Zhang suggested.

Han Rong and the other generals agreed to this suggestion. They all began to collect their private belongings. Gold, silver, jade, and pearls were packed onto carts, ready to be pulled into the mountains.

Han Rong's two sons, Han Sheng and Han Bian, were training in the back garden. When they saw the boxes and trunks being carried outside, they ordered the servants to stop and rushed in to see their father.

What happened after that? If you wish to know, please read the next chapter.

## 第七十六回

### 郑伦捉将取汜水

诗曰：

万刃车凶势莫当，风狂火聚助强梁。旗幡若焰皆逢劫，将士遭殃尽带伤。白昼已难遮半壁，黄昏安可护三乡。谁知督运能催命，二子逢之刻下亡。

话说韩荣坐在后厅，分付将士，乱纷纷的搬运物件，早惊动长子韩升、次子韩变。二人见父亲如此举动，忙问左右曰：“这是何说？”左右将韩荣前事说了一遍。二人忙至后堂，来见韩荣曰：“父亲何故欲搬运家私？弃此关隘，意欲何为？”韩荣曰：“你二人年幼，不知世务，快收拾离此关隘，以避兵燹，不得有误。”韩升听得此语，不觉失声笑曰：“父亲之言差矣！此言切不可闻于外人，空把父亲一世英名污了。父亲受国家高爵厚禄，衣紫腰金，封妻荫子，无一事不是恩德。今主上以此关托重于父亲，父亲不思报国酬恩，捐躯尽节，反效儿女子之计，贪生畏死，遗讥后世，此岂大丈夫举止，有负朝廷倚任大臣之意。古云：‘在社稷者死社稷，在封疆者死封疆。’父亲岂可轻议弃去。孩儿弟兄二人，曾蒙家训，幼习弓马，遇异人，颇习有异术，未曾演熟；连日正自操演，今日方完，意欲进兵，不意父亲有弃关之举。孩儿愿效一死尽忠于国也。”韩荣听罢，点头叹曰：“‘忠义’二字，我岂不知；但主上昏聩，荒淫不道，天命有归，苦守



## Chapter 76

### The Occupation of Sishui Pass

Han Sheng and Han Bian went to see Han Rong. "Are you going to give this pass up, Father?" they asked.

"You are too young, and don't understand current affairs. Hurry up and get ready, or you'll get caught in the war," Han Rong said.

Han Sheng burst into laughter. "Father, don't let anyone hear what you have said! You have been granted with a high post and high pay by the government. Your wife and sons have all been given honorable titles. How can you not return the good favor of His Majesty? How can you be such a coward? An immortal has taught us martial skills since we were children, and our training was completed today. We were just planning how to launch an attack. We're determined to fight to the end for our country!"

"I don't want to prolong the people's suffering. It's better that I give up and make my home in the mountains. There are many great generals under Jiang Ziya. Even Yu Hua and Yu Yuan have lost their lives. What can we do? I'm glad to see how loyal and brave you are, but I don't want it all to end in complete despair," Han Rong replied with a sigh.





此关，又恐累生民涂炭，不若弃职归山，救此一方民耳。况姜子牙门下又多异士，余化、余元俱罹不测，又何况其下者乎！此虽是你弟兄二人忠肝义胆，我岂不喜，只恐画虎不成，终无补于实用，徒死无益耳。”韩升曰：“说那里的话来！食人之禄，当分人之忧。若都是自为之计，则朝廷养士何用。不肖孩儿愿捐躯报国，万死不辞。父亲请坐，俟我兄弟取一物来与父亲过目。”韩荣听罢，心中也自暗喜：“吾门也出此忠义之后。”韩升到书房中取出一物，乃是纸做的风车儿：当中有一转盘，一只手执定中间一竿，周围推转，如飞转盘；上有四首幡，幡上有符有印，又有“地、水、火、风”四字，名为“万刃车”。韩荣看罢，问曰：“此是孩儿家顽耍之物，有何用处？”韩升曰：“父亲不知其中妙用。父亲如不信，且下教场中，把这纸车儿试验试验与老爷看。”韩荣见二子之言甚是凿凿有理，随命下教场来。韩升兄弟二人上马，各披发仗剑，口中念念有词，只见云雾陡生，阴风飒飒，火焰冲天，半空中有百万刀刃飞来，把韩荣唬得魂不附体。韩升收了此车。韩荣曰：“我儿，你是何人传你的？”韩升曰：“那年父亲朝觐之时，俺弟兄闲居无事，在府前顽耍。来了一个陀头，叫做法戒，在我府前化斋。俺弟兄就与了他一斋，他就叫我们拜他为师。我们那时见他体貌异常，就拜他为师。他说道：‘异日姜尚必有兵来，我秘授你此法宝，可破周兵，可保此关。’今日正应我师之言，定然一阵成功，姜尚可擒也。”韩荣大喜，随令韩升收了此宝，仍问曰：“我儿还可用人马，你此车约有多少？”韩升曰：“此车有三千辆，那怕姜尚雄师六十万耶！一阵管教他片甲不存！”韩荣忙点三千



“How can you talk like that, Father? What use are ministers appointed by the government if we only consider our own interests? We are willing to sacrifice our lives for the country. Will you wait here, and we will show you something,” Han Sheng said excitedly.

Han Rong happily said to himself, “I’ve never imagined our family would have such loyal descendants.”

Han Sheng returned to his study and took out a small vehicle made of paper, with a spinning wheel at its center. Four pennants, each stamped with charms and spells and the four characters “earth,” “water,” “fire,” and “wind” were fixed on four sides. This was called the “Ten Thousand Knife Vehicle.”

“That’s just a toy for children! What use is it?” Han Rong said sarcastically.

“Oh, Father! You don’t know its power! If you don’t believe us, we can show you how it works on the drill ground,” Han Sheng replied.

Secretly believing his son, Han Rong agreed and went with them to the drill ground. Both Han Sheng and Han Bian rode up, hair loose over their shoulders and swords in hand. They murmured a spell, and the air was suddenly filled with clouds and fog. Strong winds and a violent fire roared through the place, while millions of flying cutlasses and swords slashed and killed anyone in their path. Han Rong was terribly frightened at the scene.

When they had finished, Han Rong asked, “Who taught you this, my dear sons?”

“One year when we lived in Zhaoge, we were playing in front of the house when a monk, named Fa Jie, came to us, begging for a meal. We gave him food, and before he left, he asked us to honor him as our master. We agreed as we could see he was a heroic sort. He told us, ‘Jiang Ziya will attack your father’s pass in the future, so I will teach you how to use this powerful weapon to beat the enemy and protect the pass.’ Our master’s words have come true. We can surely win the war and take Jiang Ziya captive,” Han Sheng replied.



精锐之兵与韩升兄弟二人，在教场操演三千万刃车。正是：

余元相阻方才了，又是三军屠戮灾。

话说韩升用三千人马，俱穿皂服，披发赤脚，左手执车，右手仗刀，任意诛军杀卒。操练有二七日期，军士精熟。那日，韩荣父子统精兵出关搦战。

话说子牙只因破了余元，打点设计取关，只听得关内炮响。少时探马报入中军，禀曰：“汜水关总兵韩荣领兵出关，请元帅答话。”子牙忙传令与众门人、将士：“统大队出营。”子牙会过韩荣一次，那里知道有这场亏累，去提防他。子牙问曰：“韩将军，你时势不知，天命不顺，何以为将？速速倒戈，免致后悔。”韩荣笑曰：“姜子牙，倚着你兵强将勇，不知你等死在咫尺之间，尚敢耀武扬威，数白道黑也！”子牙大怒：“谁与我把韩荣拿下？”旁有魏贲，纵马摇枪，冲杀过来。韩荣脑后有两员小将，乃韩升、韩变，二人抢出阵来，截住了魏贲。魏贲大呼曰：“来者二将何人？”韩升曰：“吾乃韩总兵长子韩升，吾弟韩变是也。你等恃强，欺君罔上，罪恶滔天，今日乃尔等绝命之地矣！”魏贲大怒，纵马摇枪，飞来直取。韩升、韩变两骑赴面交还。未及数合，韩升拨转马往后就走。魏贲不知是计，往下赶来。韩升回头见魏贲赶来，把顶上冠除了，把枪一摆，三千万刃车杀将出来，势如风火，如何抵当。只见万刃车卷来，风火齐至。怎见得好万刃车，有赞为证：

云迷世界，雾罩乾坤。飒飒阴风沙石滚，腾腾烟焰蟒龙奔。风乘火势，黑气平吞。风乘火势，戈矛万道怯人魂；黑气平吞，目下难观前后土。魏贲中刃，几乎坠下马鞍



Han Rong immediately allotted 3,000 soldiers to his sons. They were all trained how to use the vehicles on the drill ground. Dressed in black and barefooted, they each held a paper vehicle in the left hand and a cutlass in the right. They were trained strictly for a fortnight.

After Yu Yuan had been beaten, Jiang Ziya spent his time planning the occupation of Sishui Pass. Suddenly he heard the roaring of cannon fire outside. When the report that "Han Rong has come to the front with an army, and was demanding to meet our Commander" came, Jiang blithely ordered his generals to go with him to answer the challenge. He had met Han Rong before and had no idea he would suffer a disastrous defeat this time.

After the usual threats, Wei Ben was the first to gallop forward to attack Han Rong. He was met instead by Han Sheng and Han Bian.

"Who are you?" Wei Ben shouted.

"I'm Han Sheng, the elder son of Han Rong, and this is Han Bian, my younger brother. Why do you rebel? You will meet your end today."

Wei Ben, being impatient, charged forward to attack. After several rounds, Han Sheng turned his horse and ran away. Not knowing it was a trick, Wei Ben chased after him. Han Sheng signaled for the 3,000 vehicles to roll out at once. A great slaughter took place, with men and





斡；武吉着刀，险些打了三寸气。滑喇喇风声卷起无情石，黑暗暗刀痕剝坏将和兵。人撞人，哀声惨戚；马蹶马，鬼哭神惊。诸将士慌忙乱走；众门人借遁而行。忙坏了先行元帅；搅乱了武王行营。那里是青天白日，恍如是黑夜黄昏。子牙今日兵遭厄，地覆天翻怎太平。

话说子牙被万刃车一阵只杀的尸山血海，冲过大阵来，势不可当。韩荣低头一想，计上心来，忙传令：“鸣金收军！”韩升、韩变听得金声，收回万刃车。子牙方得收住人马，计伤士卒七八千有余。子牙升帐，众将官俱在帐内，彼此俱言：“此一阵利害，风火齐至，势不可当。”子牙曰：“不知此刃是何名目？”众将曰：“一派利刃，漫空塞地而来，风火助威，势不可敌；非若军士可以力敌也。”子牙心下十分不乐，纳闷军中。不表。且说韩荣父子进关，韩升曰：“今日正宜破周，擒拿姜尚，父亲为何鸣金收军？”韩荣曰：“今日是青天白日，虽有云雾风火，姜尚门人俱是道术之士，自有准备，保护自身，如何得一般尽绝？我有一绝后计，使他不得整备，黑夜里仗此道术，使他片甲不存，岂不更妙！”二子欠身曰：“父亲之计，神鬼莫测！”正是：

安心要劫周营寨，只恐高人中道来。

话说韩荣打点夜劫周营，收拾停当，只等黑夜出关。不表。只见子牙在营纳闷，想：“利刃风火，果是何物，来得甚恶，势如山倒，莫可遮拦？此毕竟是截教中之恶物！”当日已晚，子牙因今日不曾打点，致令众将着伤，心下忧烦，不曾防备今夜劫寨。也是合该如此。众将因早间失利，俱去安歇。且说韩荣父子将至初更，暗暗出关，将三千掌万刃车雄兵杀至



horse alike falling to the ground, their blood mixing and flowing as one. Han Rong suddenly ordered his army to withdraw. Jiang Ziya's army had 8,000 casualties.

At their next military conference, the generals all stood up and yelled, "That battle was really terrible! We were attacked by a violent wind and fire full of knives and swords. The enemy was absolutely undefeatable!"

Returning to the pass, Han Sheng protested to his father, "We should have defeated them and taken Jiang Ziya captive today. Why did you order the withdrawal, Father?"

"As it was daytime and fine weather, in spite of the clouds, fog, wind, and fire. The generals and disciples of Jiang Ziya are all learned Taoists; they could still defend themselves. We couldn't wipe them out under those conditions. I think we can exterminate all of them if we set up a surprise night attack. What do you think?" Han Rong replied.

"Your plan is really excellent, Father," the two sons praised his idea.

Later that evening Jiang Ziya sat anxiously pondering their serious defeat. He didn't think of guarding against something even more serious that night. The generals, who had been wounded and tired after their long day, had all gone to bed early.

At the first watch, Han Rong and his two sons stealthily left the pass



辕门。周营中虽有鹿角，其如这万刃车，有风火助威，刃如骤雨。炮声响亮，齐冲至辕门，谁敢抵当，真是势如破竹。怎见得，正是：

四下里火炮乱响，万刃车刀剑如梭。三军踊跃纵征鼙，马晒人身径过。风起处遮天迷地，火来时烟飞焰裹。军呐喊，天翻地覆；将用法，虎下崖坡。着刀军连声叫苦；伤枪将铠甲难驮。打着的焦头烂额；绝了命身卧沙窝。姜子牙有法难使；金木二吒也自难摹。李靖难使金塔；雷震子止保皇哥。南宫适抱头而走；武成王不顾兵戈。四贤八俊俱无用，马死人亡遍地拖。正是：遍地草梢含碧血，满田低陷叠行尸。

且说韩升、韩变兄弟二人，夜劫子牙行营，喊声连天，冲进辕门。子牙在中军忽听得劫营，急自上骑。左右门人俱来中军护卫。只见黑云密布，风火交加，刀刃齐下，如山崩地裂之势，灯烛难支。三千火车兵冲进辕门，如潮奔浪滚，如何抵当。况且黑夜，彼此不能相顾，只杀得血流成渠，尸骸遍野，那分别人自己。武王上了逍遥马，毛公遂、周公旦保驾前行。韩荣在阵后擂鼓，催动三军，只杀得周兵七零八落，君不能顾臣，父不能顾子。只见韩升、韩变趁势赶子牙，幸得子牙执着杏黄旗，遮护了前面一段；军士将领一拥奔走。韩升、韩变二人催着万刃车往前紧赶，把子牙赶得上天无路。直杀到天明，韩升、韩变大叫曰：“今日不捉姜尚，誓不回兵！”望前越赶，分付三千兵卒曰：“不入虎穴，安得虎子！”子牙见韩升赶至无休，看看至金鸡岭了，只见前面两杆大红旗展，子牙见是催粮官郑伦来至，其心少安。且说郑

to attack the Zhou camp with their army of 3,000.

Jiang Ziya hurriedly got on his nondescript horse and went out under the protection of his generals. The sky was completely covered by black clouds and the earth by fire and wind. The enemy troops held no lamps or candles but only sharp knives, swords, and cutlasses. The vehicles broke into the camp like huge waves. Nothing could stop them. The camp was soon littered with corpses.

King Wu got on his jaunty horse and rushed out of the camp under the protection of Ji Sui, the Duke of Mao and Ji Dan, the Duke of Zhou.

Han Sheng and Han Bian drove the slaughtering vehicles wildly after Jiang Ziya and his troops, making it impossible for them to flee. Jiang unrolled his Yellow Apricot Flag to protect part of his army.

Chased by the enemy nearly as far as the Golden Chicken Range, Jiang Ziya suddenly caught sight of an army marching toward them, two red flags marking their front line. Jiang eased up a bit, when he saw they were Zheng Lun's troops.





伦坐骑出山口，正迎子牙，忙问曰：“元帅为何失利？”子牙曰：“后有追兵，用的是万刃车，又有风火助威，势不可当。此是左道异术，你仔细且避其锐。”郑伦把坐下金睛兽一磕，往前迎来。只见韩升弟兄在前紧赶，三千兵随后，少离半射之地。郑伦与韩升、韩变撞个满怀。郑伦大喝曰：“好匹夫！怎敢追我元帅！”韩升曰：“你来也替不得他！”把枪摇动来刺。郑伦手中杵赴面交还。郑伦知他万刃车利害，只见后面一片风火兵刃拥来，郑伦知其所以，只一合，忙运动鼻子内两道白光，一声响，对着韩升兄弟二人哼了一声，韩升、韩变兄弟二人坐不住鞍鞞，翻下马来，被乌鸦兵生擒活捉，上了绳索。兄弟两个方睁开眼时，见已被擒捉，“呀”的一声叹曰：“天亡我也！”后面三千兵架车前进，见主将被擒，其法已解，风火兵刃，化为乌有，众兵撤回身，就跑奔回来，正遇韩荣任意赶杀周兵，看见三千兵奔回，风火兵刃全无，不见二子回来，忙问曰：“二位小将军安在？”众兵曰：“二位将军赶姜子牙至一山边，只见有一将出来，与二位将军交战，未及一合，不知怎么跌下马来，被他捉去。我等在后，不一时，风火兵刃全无，止有此车而已，只得败回，幸遇老将军，望乞定夺。”韩荣听得二子被擒，心中惶惶，不敢恋战，只得收兵进关。不表。

且说郑伦擒了二将，来见子牙。子牙大喜，押在粮车上，同子牙回军；于路遇着武王、毛公遂等，众门人诸将齐集，大抵是夤夜交兵，便是有道术的也只顾得自己，故此大折一阵。子牙问安，武王曰：“孤几乎谗杀！幸得毛公遂保孤，方得免难。”子牙曰：“皆是尚之罪也。”彼此安慰，治酒压



“An army is pursuing us with slaughtering vehicles. Please do what you can but be very careful. Their witchcraft is extremely powerful,” Jiang said when Zheng Lun came before him.

Zheng Lun spurred his golden-eyed monster at Han Sheng and Han Bian. “You bastards! Dare you chase our commander any further?” he cried.

“You piece of rubbish! You can’t take his place,” Han Sheng replied proudly.

After the first round, Zheng Lun saw the powerful slaughtering vehicles approach. He lifted his club horizontally to mobilize his Crow soldiers and snorted two columns of white light from his nose. The Han brothers fell on the ground and were caught by the Crow soldiers. When they regained consciousness, they found themselves in captivity. They groaned pitifully, “Oh! How awful it is. God has forsaken us!”

When their generals were seized, the 3,000 soldiers lost their magic power. They ran back without their knives, swords, cutlasses, fire, or wind. Han Rong saw his two sons were missing and asked anxiously, “Where are our two young generals?”

“As they were chasing Jiang Ziya near the mountain, a general suddenly rushed out and attacked them. Our two young generals fell off from their horses and were taken at once. Without them, we lost all our weapons.”

Han Rong was terribly worried. He knew he could not carry on the fight and called his army back to the pass.

Zheng Lun took his two captives to Jiang Ziya. Jiang ordered his men to bind them up and put them on a food cart and carry them back to camp. Though there were many casualties, the survivors toasted each other for having made it through the night.



惊。一宿不表。次日，整顿雄师，复至汜水关下扎营，放炮呐喊，声振天地。韩荣听得炮声响，着人打探；来报曰：“启总兵：周兵复至关下安营。”韩荣大惊：“周兵复至，吾子休矣！”亲自上城，差官打听。且说子牙升帐坐下，众将参谒毕，子牙传令：“摆五方队伍，吾亲自取关。”众将官切齿深恨韩升、韩变。子牙至关下叫曰：“请韩总兵答话！”韩荣在城楼上现身，大叫曰：“姜子牙，你是败军之将，焉敢又来至此？”子牙大笑曰：“吾虽误中你的奸计，此关我毕竟要取你的。你知那得胜将军今已被我擒下。”命两边左右：“押过韩升、韩变来！”左右将二将押过来，在马头前。韩荣见二子蓬头跣足，绳缚二臂，押在军前，不觉心痛，忙大叫曰：“姜元帅，二子无知，冒犯虎威，罪在不赦，望元帅大开恻隐，怜而赦之，吾愿献汜水关以报之耳。”韩升大呼曰：“父亲不可献关！你乃纣王之股肱，食君之重禄，岂可惜子之命，而失臣节也！只宜紧守关隘，俟天子救兵到日，协力同心，共擒姜尚匹夫，那时碎尸万段，为子报仇，未为晚也。我二人万死无恨！”子牙听得大怒，令左右：“斩之！”只见南宫适奉令，手起刀落，连斩二将于关下。韩荣见子受诛，心如刀割，大叫一声，往城下自坠而死。可怜父子三人，捐躯尽节，千古罕及。后人诗赞之：

汜水滔滔日夜流，韩荣志与国同休。父存臣节孤猿泣，子尽忠贞老鹤愁。一死依稀酬社稷，三魂缥缈傲王侯。如今屈指应无愧，笑杀当年儿女俦。

话说韩荣坠城而死，城中百姓开关，迎接子牙人马进汜水关。父老焚香迎接武王进帅府，众将官欢喜，查点府库钱粮



The next day Han Rong began to worry when he received a report that the Zhou army had returned to the pass.

“My sons must have met bad luck for the Zhou army to come here again,” Han Rong sighed. He sent men to make inquiries and get further information and then climbed the city wall in person to watch the scene.

Jiang Ziya ordered his army to attack the pass in five square battle formations. He called before the pass wall, “Let Commander Han Rong come and talk to me in person.

Han Rong appeared on the wall and shouted, “Jiang Ziya! You were badly defeated. How dare you come again?”

Jiang Ziya burst into laughter. “I was careless and fooled by your trick, but we have come back to take the pass. Don’t you know that your two invincible generals are now our captives?” He ordered his men, “Bring the two captured generals here.”

When he saw his two sons, with disheveled hair, bare feet, and bound arms, being held by the Zhou generals, Han Rong cried sadly, “Dear Commander Jiang! My two sons have offended your honor and dignity. I beg you to forgive them. I will exchange Sishui Pass for their lives.”

But Han Sheng shouted loudly, “No, Father! You must not give up the pass. You are a high minister of King Zhou, and you must guard it with your life. Wait for the reinforcements to come so you can wipe out the Zhou army and take Jiang Ziya captive. You can then cut him into a thousand pieces to avenge the sacrifice of your sons. We shall be happy to meet our death for this cause.”

Jiang Ziya angrily ordered his men to cut their heads off at once. Nangong Kuo lifted his cutlass, slashed only twice, and the two heads dropped to the ground before the pass.

Han Rong let out a terrible roar and jumped from the wall.

After Han Rong’s death, the people opened the gates to welcome Jiang Ziya and his army. The two elders met King Wu and provided accommodation for him in the headquarters. Everyone was happy. The





停妥，出榜安民。武王命厚葬韩荣父子。子牙传令，治酒款待有功人员，在关上住了三四日。

且说乾元山金光洞太乙真人在碧游床静坐，忽金霞童儿来报：“有白鹤童儿至此。”太乙真人出洞，见白鹤童儿手执玉札降临，言曰：“请师叔下山，同会诛仙阵。”太乙真人望昆仑谢恩毕，白鹤童子回玉虚。不表。且说太乙真人分付：“叫哪吒来。”慌忙来至，见师父行礼毕，真人曰：“你如今养的伤痕全愈，你可先下山，我随后就来，共破诛仙阵也。”哪吒领师命，方欲下山，真人曰：“你且站住。当日玉虚宫掌教天尊也曾赠子牙三杯酒；你今下山，我也赠你三杯如何？”哪吒感谢。真人命金霞童儿斟酒过来，赠哪吒头一杯酒；哪吒谢过，一饮而尽。真人袖内取了一枚枣儿递与哪吒过酒。哪吒连饮三杯，吃了三枚红枣。真人送哪吒出洞府，看哪吒上了风火轮，真人方进洞去。哪吒提火尖枪，方欲驾土遁前行，只见左边一声响，长出一只臂膊来。哪吒大惊曰：“怎的了？”还不曾说得完，右边也长出一只臂膊来。哪吒唬得目瞪口呆。只听得左右齐响，长出六只手来，共是八条臂膊；又长出三个头来。哪吒着慌，无可奈何，自思：“且回去，问我师父来。”只得登回风火轮，方至洞门，只见太乙真人也至门首，拍掌大笑曰：“奇哉！奇哉！”有诗为证：

琼浆三盏透三关，红枣频添壮士颜。  
八臂已成神妙术，三头莫作等闲看。  
须臾变化超凡圣，顷刻风雷任往还。  
不是西岐多异士，只因天意恶奸谗。

话说哪吒回来见太乙真人，曰：“弟子长出这些手，丫丫叉叉，怎好用兵？”真人曰：“子牙行营有许多异士，然而有双翼



officials under Jiang checked the treasure house and barns and issued a proclamation to pacify the people. King Wu ordered the burial of Han Rong and his two sons, and Jiang Ziya ordered that victory feasts be held to celebrate the day. The party rested there for three days.

Sitting on his green touring bed in deep meditation, Fairy Primordial received a report that White Crane Lad had come to see him.

White Crane Lad greeted him and said, "Uncle! You are invited to attend a conference on how to break the Immortal Slaughtering Trap."

The immortal knelt and kowtowed toward Mount Kunlun, and White Crane Lad returned to Jade Emptiness Palace.

Soon thereafter, Fairy Primordial ordered his lad, "Tell Nezha to come and see me."

As Nezha was bowing before his master, the latter said, "Since you've completely recovered, you may leave here first. I'll come later to break the Immortal Slaughtering Trap with you all." He then added, "When Jiang Ziya left Mount Kunlun, our Grand Master toasted him with three cups. Let me toast you too."

Nezha thanked him, and the immortal ordered Golden Haze Lad to bring in some wine. Fairy Primordial poured the wine for Nezha. He took out three dates from his sleeve and gave them to Nezha one by one to eat after each cup. Finally, Nezha bade farewell to his master and rode away on his Wind-Fire Wheels. Suddenly, there was a loud noise and a long arm grew from his left shoulder. "What the hell is that!" Nezha uttered in surprise.

But before he could finish, another long arm burst from his right shoulder. Nezha was stupefied. Arms were exploding all over his body. Soon he had eight arms altogether, including his original two. In addition, he now had two extra heads, a total of three.

Not knowing what to do, he returned to see his master, and reaching the cave, saw the immortal waiting for him at the door. Fairy Primordial clapped his hands and burst into laughter when he saw Nezha, saying, "How wonderful it is!"

"Look, Master! What can I do with all these hands and arms? They're so inconvenient, like ugly branches on a tree," Nezha complained.



者，有变化者，有地行者，有奇珍者，有异宝者，今着你现三头八臂，不负我金光洞里所传。此去进五关，也见周朝人物稀奇，个个俊杰。这法隐隐现现，但凭你自己心意。”哪吒感谢师尊恩德。太乙真人传哪吒隐现之法，哪吒大喜，一手执乾坤圈，一手执混天绫，一手执金砖，两只手擎两根火尖枪，还空三手。真人又将九龙神火罩，又取阴阳剑，共成八件兵器。哪吒拜辞了师父下山，径往汜水关来。正是：

余化刀伤归洞府，今朝变化更神通。

且说姜元帅在汜水关计点军将，收拾取界牌关，忽然想起师尊偈来：“‘界牌关下遇诛仙’，此事不知有何吉凶。且不可妄动。”又思：“若不进兵，恐悞了日期。”正在殿上忧虑，忽报：“黄龙真人来至。”子牙迎接至中堂，打稽首，分宾主坐下。黄龙真人曰：“前边就是诛仙阵，非可草率前进。子牙可分付门人，搭起芦篷席殿，迎接各处真人异士，伺候掌教师尊，方可前进。”子牙听毕，忙令南宫适、武吉起盖芦篷去了。且说哪吒现了三首八臂，登风火轮，面如蓝靛，发似朱砂，丫丫叉叉，七八只手，走进关来。军校不知是哪吒现此化身，着忙飞报子牙：“禀元帅：外面有一个三头八臂的将官，要进关来，请令定夺。”子牙命李靖：“去探来。”李靖出府，果见三头八臂的人，甚是凶恶，李靖问曰：“来者何人？”哪吒见是李靖，忙叫：“父亲，孩儿是三太子哪吒。”李靖大惊，问曰：“你如何得此大术？”哪吒把火枣之事说了一遍。李靖进殿回子牙，备言前事。子牙大喜，传令：“令来。”哪吒进殿，拜见元帅。众将观之，无有不悦，俱来称贺。不表。只见次日南宫适来回报曰：“禀元帅：芦篷俱已完



"Haven't you noticed that in Jiang Ziya's army there are many curious and talented generals? Some have two wings, others can travel underground, and some can transform themselves into different shapes and sizes. Now you have something special too, to show the others what our Golden Light Cave can do. In the attack on the five passes, you will prove yourself heroic and gallant. You can transform yourself into your original appearance or this form with three heads and eight arms as you wish."

Delighted with his master's words, Nezha picked up the Universal Ring with one hand, the Sky Muddling Damask in another, his gold brick in the third, and two Fire-Tip Lances in the fourth and fifth, leaving three hands empty.

Fairy Primordial then gave him the Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet for his sixth hand and the two *Yin Yang* Swords for the seventh and eighth. Nezha returned directly to Sishui Pass after thanking his master.

While planning the attack on Jiepai Pass, Jiang Ziya suddenly remembered what this master told him about the Immortal Slaughtering Trap. Just then he received a report on the arrival of Yellow Dragon Immortal. Jiang went out to welcome him and escort him into the central hall. After their greetings, Yellow Dragon Immortal said, "The Immortal Slaughtering Trap is not far away. You can't march forward carelessly, Brother. You'd better set up a pavilion to receive immortals and Buddhas from all over. We can't move forward until our master arrives."

Jiang Ziya did as he was told. He sent Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji to prepare everything.

Nezha rode on his Wind-Fire Wheels to the pass, but with his three heads, eight arms, indigo face, and cinnabar hair, the guards could not recognize him. They quickly reported the matter to Jiang Ziya, who sent Li Jing to investigate.

"Who are you, visitor?" Li asked.

"Dear Father, I'm Nezha, your third son," he replied.

Li Jing asked in astonishment, "What happened to you?"

Nezha told his father about the wine and the red dates he ate. He then related all that his master had told him.

Jiang Ziya happily welcomed Nezha in. Everyone was pleased to see him back.



备。”黄龙真人曰：“如今只是洞府门人去得，以下将官一概都去不得。”子牙传下令来：“诸位官将保武王紧守关隘，不得擅离。我同黄龙真人与诸门弟子前去芦篷，伺候掌教师尊与列位仙长，会诛仙阵。如有妄动者，定按军法。”众将领命去讫。子牙进后殿来见武王，曰：“臣先去取关，大王且同众将住于此处。俟取了界牌关，差官来接圣驾。”武王曰：“相父前途保重。”子牙感谢毕，复至前殿，与黄龙真人同众门弟子离了汜水关，行有四十里，来至芦篷。只见悬花结彩，叠锦铺氍。黄龙真人同子牙上了芦篷坐下。少时间，只见广成子来至；赤精子随至。次日，惧留孙、文殊广法天尊、普贤真人、慈航道人、玉鼎真人来至；随后有云中子、太乙真人、清虚道德真君、道行天尊、灵宝大法师俱陆续来至。子牙一一上下迎接，俱至芦篷坐下。少时，又是陆压道人来至，稽首坐下。陆压曰：“如今诛仙阵一会，只有万仙阵再会一次，吾等劫运已满，自此归山，再图精进，以正道果。”众道人曰：“师兄之言正是如此。”众皆默坐，专候掌教师尊。不一时，只听得空中有环珮之声，众仙知是燃灯道人来了，众道人起身，降阶迎上篷来，行礼坐下。燃灯道人曰：“诛仙阵只在前面，诸友可曾见么？”众道人曰：“前面不见甚么光景。”燃灯曰：“那一派红气罩住的便是。”众道友俱起身，定睛观看。不表。

且说多宝道人已知阐教门人来了，用手发一声掌心雷，把红气展开，现出阵来。芦篷上众仙正看，只见红气闪开，阵图已现，好利害：杀气腾腾，阴云惨惨，怪雾盘旋，冷风习习，或隐或现，或升或降，上下反覆不定。内中有黄龙真



When Nangong Kuo reported the next day on the completion of the reed pavilion, the Yellow Dragon Immortal said, "Let all the disciples go there with us. The generals may remain here to await further orders." Jiang Ziya issued a strict order for all generals to protect King Wu and guard Sishui Pass. They then went to the pavilion to wait for Grand Master and the other immortals.

The reed pavilion was beautifully decorated with flowers and silk of all colors. Grand Completion and Pure Essence arrived first, and the next day, Krakucchanda, Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture, Immortal Universal Virtue, Merciful Navigation, and Jade Tripod joined the group. Soon thereafter, Master of the Clouds, Fairy Primordial, Virtue of the Pure Void, Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue, and Master Spiritual Treasure arrived.

When Lu Ya arrived, he bowed and said, "We're glad to have the opportunity to come together to break the Immortal Slaughtering Trap. After this, we shall have another chance to meet at the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap. When that work is complete, our vulgar worldly troubles will be over. We will return to our mountains to study the Way and thence have no further chance to meet."

Before long, sweet tinkling sounds were heard in the air. Knowing that Burning Lamp had arrived, everyone went outside to meet him.

"Have you seen the trap yet?" Burning Lamp asked when he had sat down.

"There's nothing before us," they all answered.

"Can't you see that red cloud over there? It's just inside," Burning Lamp said.

They all looked in the direction indicated by Burning Lamp, and sure enough, saw a huge red cloud.

Multi-Precious Immortal knew that all the Chan Taoist immortals had arrived. With a clap of his hands, a burst of thunder pushed away the red cloud, exposing the trap completely.

From the roof of the pavilion, the immortals could make out the dull gray clouds and sad fogs. Freezing winds blew without pause, filling the trap with an air of death.



人曰：“吾等今犯杀戒，该惹红尘，既遇此阵，也当得一会。”燃灯曰：“自古圣人云：

只观善地千千万，莫看人间杀伐临。”

内中有十二代弟子到有八九位要去。燃灯道人阻不住，齐起身下了芦篷，诸门人也随着来看此阵。行至阵前，果然是惊心骇目，怪气凌人。众仙俱不肯就回，只管贪看。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。

“We are destined to break the commandment on killing in this vulgar world. As long as we have this trap before us, we might as well go and look at it,” the Yellow Dragon Immortal said.

“An ancient saint once said, ‘Look at the good places a thousand times, but don’t glance once at a place of evil’,” Burning Lamp said with a sigh.

As the twelve immortals all wanted to go and take a look at the trap, Burning Lamp was powerless to stop them. When they got close, they realized how terrible it really was. Filled with fear, they stared on and on, disregarding any imminent danger.

What happened after that? Please read the next chapter if you wish to find out.





## 第七十七回

### 老子一气化三清

诗曰：

一气三清势更奇，壶中妙法贯须弥。移来一木还生我，  
运去分身莫浪疑。诛戮散仙根行浅，完全正果道无私。  
须知顺逆皆天定，截教门人枉自痴。

话说众门人来看诛仙阵，只见正东上挂一口诛仙剑，正南上挂一口戮仙剑，正西上挂一口陷仙剑，正北上挂一口绝仙剑，前后有门有户，杀气森森，阴风飒飒。众人贪看，只听得里面作歌曰：

“兵戈剑戈，怎脱诛仙祸；情魔意魔，反起无明火。今日难过，死生在我。玉虚宫招灾惹祸，穿心宝锁，回头才知往事讹。咫尺起风波。这番怎逃躲。自倚才能，早晚遭折挫！”

话说多宝道人在阵内作歌，燃灯曰：“众道友，你们听听作的歌声，岂是善良之辈！我等且各自回芦篷，等掌教师尊来，自有处治。”话犹未了，方欲回身，只见阵内多宝道人仗剑一跃而出，大呼曰：“广成子不要走，吾来也！”广成子大怒曰：“多宝道人，如今不是在你碧游宫，倚你人多，再三欺我；况你掌教师尊分付过，你等全不遵依，又摆此诛仙阵。我等既犯了杀戒，毕竟你等俱入劫数之内，故造此业障耳。正所谓‘阎罗注定三更死，怎肯留人到五更’！”广成子仗剑



## Chapter 77

### Transformation Into Three Fairies

Looking carefully, the immortals saw the Fairy Slaughtering Sword hanging in the east, the Fairy Slaying Sword in the south, the Fairy Entrapping Sword in the west, and the Fairy Exterminating Sword in the north. As they looked on, they heard someone singing:

You can't flee from the slaughter,  
As emotions burn in your heart.  
To die or to live is up to me,  
Like the Jade Emptiness Palace,  
You know as the heart is pierced,  
Self-conceit brings only your end.

Burning Lamp said, "Do you hear what he is singing? How can he be a good man? Let's go back and wait for our master to tell us what to do."

Just as they were about to leave, Multi-Precious Immortal rushed out and roared, "Grand Completion! Don't go away. Here I come."

Grand Completion turned and said angrily, "Multi-Precious! This is not the Green Touring Palace. You are destined to see your end soon."





来取多宝道人。道人手中剑赴面交还。怎见得：

仙风阵阵滚尘沙，四剑忙迎影乱斜。一个是玉虚宫内真人辈；一个是截教门中根行差。一个是广成不老神仙体；一个是多宝西方拜释迦。二教只因逢杀运，诛仙阵上乱如麻。

话说广成子祭起番天印，多宝道人躲不及，一印正中后心，扑的打了一跌，多宝道人逃回阵中去了。燃灯曰：“且各自回去，再作商议。”众仙俱上芦篷坐下。只听得半空中仙乐齐鸣，异香缥缈，从空而降。众仙下篷来，迎掌教师尊。只见元始天尊坐九龙沉香辇，馥馥香烟，氤氲遍地。正是：

提炉对对烟生雾，羽扇分开白鹤朝。

话说燃灯众人明香引道，接上芦篷。元始坐下，诸弟子拜毕，元始曰：“今日诛仙阵上，才分别得彼此。”元始上坐，弟子侍立两边。至子时正，元始顶上现出庆云，垂珠瓔珞，金花万朵，络绎不断，远近照耀。多宝道人正在阵中打点，看见庆云升起，知是元始降临，自思：“此阵必须我师尊来至，方可有为；不然，如何抵得过他？”

次日，果见碧游宫通天教主来了。半空中仙音响亮，异香袭袭，随侍有大小众仙，来的是截教门中师尊。怎见他的好处，有诗为证：

鸿钧生化见天开，地丑人寅上法台。炼就金身无量劫，碧游宫内育多才。

话说多宝道人见半空中仙乐响亮，知是他师尊来至，忙出阵拜迎进了阵，上了八卦台坐下，众门人侍立台下，有上四代弟子，乃多宝道人、金灵圣母、无当圣母、龟灵圣母；又有

Grand Completion and Multi-Precious flew into battle, and before long, Grand Completion hit Multi-Precious right on the back with his Heaven Overturning Stamp. He ran away. "Let's return for the time being. We can discuss how to deal with the trap later," Burning Lamp urged.

Back in the pavilion, sweet music and a wonderful fragrance slowly filled the air. Heavenly Primogenitor was coming. The immortals went to meet their master, who was descending from the sky in his Nine Dragon Lignaloe Carriage.

At midnight, auspicious clouds, hung with pearls, jade necklaces, and thousands of golden flowers, appeared over the pavilion. Multi-Precious realized Heavenly Primogenitor had arrived. He said, "We must have our master here too. Otherwise, we won't be able to stand against them."

The next day, the Grand Master of Heaven arrived from the Green Touring Palace. His entourage was also accompanied by a wonderful fragrance.

Multi-Precious went to welcome him. Entering the trap, the Grand Master of Heaven mounted the Eight Diagram Terrace and took the seat of honor. He was attended by his disciples: Multi-Precious, Mother Golden Spirit, Mother Invincible and Mother Spiritual Tortoise, Fairy Golden Light,





金光仙、乌云仙、毘芦仙、灵牙仙、虬首仙、金箍仙、长耳定光仙相从在此。通天教主乃是掌截教之鼻祖，修成五气朝元，三花聚顶，也是万劫不坏之身。至子时，五气冲空。燃灯已知截教师尊来至。次日天明，燃灯来启曰：“老师，今日可会诛仙阵么？”元始曰：“此地岂吾久居之所？”分付弟子：“排班。”赤精子对广成子；太乙真人对灵宝大法师；清虚道德真君对惧留孙；文殊广法天尊对普贤真人；云中子对慈航道人；玉鼎真人对道行天尊；黄龙真人对陆压；燃灯同子牙在后；金、木二吒执提炉；韦护与雷震子并列；李靖在后；哪吒先行。只见诛仙阵内金钟响处，一对旗开，只见奎牛上坐的是通天教主，左右立诸代门人。通天教主见元始天尊，打稽首曰：“道兄请了！”元始曰：“贤弟为何设此恶阵？这是何说？当时在你碧游宫共议‘封神榜’，当面弥封，立有三等：根行深者，成其仙道；根行稍次，成其神道；根行浅薄，成其人道，仍随轮回之劫。此乃天地之生化也。成汤无道，气数当终；周室仁明，应运当兴，难道不知，反来阻逆姜尚，有背上天垂象。且当日‘封神榜’内应有三百六十五度，分有八部列宿群星，当有这三山五岳之人在数，贤弟为何出乎反乎，自取失信之愆。况此恶阵，立名便自可恶。只‘诛仙’二字，可是你我道家所为的事！且此剑立有‘诛’、‘戮’、‘陷’、‘绝’之名，亦非是你我道家所用之物。这是何说，你作此过端？”通天教主曰：“道兄不必问我，你只问广成子，便知我的本心。”元始问广成子曰：“这事如何说？”广成子把三谒碧游宫的事说了一遍。通天教主曰：“广成子，你曾骂我的教下不论是非，不分好歹，纵羽毛禽兽亦不择而教，



Fairy Black Cloud, Fairy Adjoining Reed, Fairy Spiritual Teeth, Fairy Dragon Head, Fairy Gold Headring, and Fairy Light With Long Ears.

The Grand Master of Heaven was the founder of Jie Taoism. At midnight, a spiritual light appeared over his head. Burning Lamp realized that the Grand Master of Heaven had arrived.

The next day, Heavenly Primogenitor ordered his disciples to make the first move. They approached the trap in pairs: Pure Essence and Grand Completion; Fairy Primordial and Master Spiritual Treasure; Virtue of the Pure Void and Krakucchanda; Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture and Universal Virtue; Master of the Clouds and Merciful Navigation; Jade Tripod and Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue; Yellow Dragon Immortal and Lu Ya; Burning Lamp and Jiang Ziya; Jinzha and Muzha, each holding an incense burner; Wei Hu and Thunderbolt; with Li Jing taking up the rear and Nezha at the head.

The Grand Master of Heaven appeared on a fairy ox accompanied by his disciples. He bowed and said, "How do you do, Brother!"

"Dear Brother, why have you set up such a wicked trap? When the conference was held at your Green Touring Palace, we finalized List of Creations publicly. Why do you wish to oppose the will of Heaven and hinder Jiang Ziya? How can you break your promise? As Taoists, we do not like to hear the word 'slaughter' at all. You have acted hastily."

"You need not ask me, Brother. Ask Grand Completion to find out why we have come," the Grand Master of Heaven replied.

"Tell me!" Heavenly Primogenitor ordered his disciple.

Grand Completion told his master all that had happened.

"Grand Completion! You said that our disciples are feathered fowl and horned animals. As our three religions originate from the same source



一体同观。想吾师一教传三友，吾与羽毛禽兽相并；道兄难道与我不是一本相传？”元始曰：“贤弟，你也莫怪广成子。其实，你门下胡为乱做，不知顺逆，一味恃强，人言兽行。况贤弟也不择是何根行，一意收留，致有彼此搬斗是非，令生灵涂炭。你心忍乎！”通天教主曰：“据道兄所说，只是你的门人有理，连骂我也是该的？不念一门手足罢了。我已是摆了此阵，道兄就破吾此阵，便见高下。”元始曰：“你要我破此阵，这也不难，待吾自来见你此阵。”通天教主兜回奎牛，进了戮仙门；众门人随着进去。且看元始进来破此阵。正是：

截阐道德皆正果，方知两教不虚传。

话说元始在九龙沉香辇上，扶住飞来椅，徐徐行至正东震地，乃诛仙门。门上挂一口宝剑，名曰诛仙剑。元始把辇一拍，命四揭谛神撮起辇来，四脚生有四枝金莲花；花瓣上生光；光上又生花。一时有万朵金莲照在空中。元始坐在当中，径进诛仙阵门来。通天教主发一声掌心雷，震动那一口宝剑一晃，好生利害！虽是元始，顶上还飘飘落下一朵莲花来。元始进了诛仙门，里边又是一层，名为诛仙关。元始从正南上往里走，至正西，又在正北坎地上看了一遍。元始作一歌以笑之，歌曰：

“好笑通天有厚颜，空将四剑挂中间。枉劳用尽心机术，独我纵横任往还。”

话说元始依旧还出东门而去。众门人迎接，上了芦篷。燃灯请问曰：“老师，此阵中有何光景？”元始曰：“看不得。”南极仙翁曰：“老师既入阵中，今日如何不破了他的，让姜师弟好



and the same master, we are really of one body. Should I be classified with such beasts, you too cannot escape this distinction,” the Grand Master of Heaven stated.

“Brother! Don’t blame him. Many of your disciples are ill-natured. They speak like human beings but act like wild beasts. Besides, you do not choose your disciples carefully. You allow them to sow discord between us, causing the people to suffer. How can you feel right about this situation!”

“You mean to say that your disciples are always right, even to curse me! You obviously do not regard me as your brother. This trap is already set up. See if you can break it and prove you are really better than me!” the Grand Master of Heaven replied angrily.

“Certainly. Let me go in first and see what it is,” Heavenly Primogenitor said.

The Grand Master of Heaven, followed by his disciples, turned his fairy ox toward the Fairy Slaying Gate.

Heavenly Primogenitor then followed in his Flying Chair. He patted the carriage and ordered four Gods to carry it on golden lotus flowers. An auspicious light filled the air around his carriage with more brightly shining golden lotus flowers.

When the leader of Chan Taoism was passing under the archway, the Grand Master of Heaven clapped his hands, causing thunder to shake the sword above. It slashed down a golden lotus flower over Heavenly Primogenitor’s head, but he continued on his tour of the trap.

When he returned, he was welcomed by all his disciples. After he had taken a seat, Burning Lamp asked, “How was the trap, Master?”

Their leader sighed, “Oh, it’s terrible! You shouldn’t go to see it.”

“Why didn’t you break it, so that Brother Jiang can march eastward,”





东行？”元始曰：“古云：‘先师次长。’虽然吾掌此教，况有师长在前，岂可独自专擅？候大师兄来，自有道理。”说话未了，只听得半空中一派仙乐之声，异香缥缈，板角青牛上坐一圣人，有玄都大法师牵住此牛，飘飘落下来。元始天尊率领众门人前来迎接。怎见得，有诗为证：

不二门中法更玄，汞铅相见结胎仙。未离母腹头先白，  
才到神霄气已全。室内炼丹搀戊己，炉中有药夺先天。  
生成八景宫中客，不记人间几万年。

话说元始见太上老君驾临，同众门人下篷迎接，二人携手上篷坐下，众门人下拜，侍立两旁。老子曰：“通天贤弟摆此诛仙阵，反阻周兵，使姜尚不得东行，此是何意？吾因此来问他，看他有甚么言语对我。”元始曰：“今日贫道自专，先进他阵中走了一遭，未曾与他较量。”老子曰：“你就破了他的罢了。他肯相从就罢；他若不肯相从，便将他拿上紫霄宫去见老师，看他如何讲。”二位教主坐在篷上，俱有庆云彩气上通于天，把界牌关照耀通红。至次日天明，通天教主传下法旨，令众门人排班出去，“大师兄也来了，看他今日如何讲！”多宝道人同众门人击动了金钟玉磬，径出诛仙阵来，请老子答话。哪吒报上篷来。少时，芦篷里香烟霭霭，瑞彩翩翩，你看老子骑着青牛而来。怎见得，有诗为证：

骑牛远远过前村，短笛仙音隔陇闻。辟地开天为教主，  
炉中炼出锦乾坤。

话说老子至阵前，通天教主打稽首曰：“道兄请了。”老子曰：“贤弟，我与你三人共立‘封神榜’，乃是体上天应运劫数。你如何反阻周兵，使姜尚有违天命？”通天教主曰：



the Immortal of the South Pole asked him.

“An ancient proverb says, ‘Let the master and other elders walk first.’ I can’t do things on my own. I’ll wait for my elder brother to see what he will do with it,” Heavenly Primogenitor replied.

Before he could finish his sentence, a saint on a blue fairy ox flew into their midst. Master Lao Zi attended by Priest Xuandu, had arrived to join the gathering.

“Why has the Grand Master of Heaven, our younger brother, set up that trap for the Zhou army? I’ve come to solve this problem,” Lao Zi said.

“I entered the trap today without your instruction, but I did not take any action,” Heavenly Primogenitor said.

“You might break his trap then. Forgive him if he is willing to confess his mistakes, but if he’s not, take him to see our master at the Purple Heaven Palace,” Lao Zi said.

That night auspicious clouds filled the sky with a bright red light. At dawn the next day, the Grand Master of Heaven ordered his disciples to go out in orderly columns, saying, “My eldest brother has come. See what he has to say to me.”

Lao Zi rode forward on his blue fairy ox, and the Grand Master of Heaven greeted him, “How are you, dear eldest brother?”

“Dear youngest brother! We made the List of Creations to deify those who sacrificed their lives in the war. All three of us agreed unanimously on the resolution passed at the conference. Why have you set up such a trap to block the Zhou army?” Lao Zi reproached his brother.



“道兄，你休要执一偏向。广成子三进碧游宫，面辱吾教，恶语詈骂，犯上不守规矩。昨日二兄坚意只向自己门徒，反灭我等手足，是何道理？今兄长不责自己弟子，反来怪我，此是何意？如若要我释怨，可将广成子送至我碧游宫，等我发落，我便甘休；若是半字不肯，任凭长兄施为，各存二教本领，以决雌雄！”老子曰：“似你这等说话，反是不偏向的？你偏听门人背后之言，彻动无名之火，摆此恶阵，残害生灵；莫说广成子未必有此言语，便有，也罪不致此。你就动此念头，悔却初心，有逆天道，不守清规，有犯嗔痴之戒。你趁早听我之言，速速将此阵解释，回守碧游宫，改过前愆，尚可容你还掌截教；若不听吾言，拿你去紫霄宫，见了师尊，将你贬入轮回，永不能再至碧游宫，那时悔之晚矣！”通天教主听罢，须弥山红了半边，修行眼双睛烟起，大怒，叫曰：“李聃！我和你一体同人，总掌二教，你如何这等欺灭我，偏心护短，一意遮饰，将我抢白，难道我不如你！吾已摆下此阵，断不与你甘休！你敢来破我此阵？”老子笑曰：“有何难哉！你不可后悔！”正是：

元始大道今舒展，方显玄都不二门。

老子复又曰：“既然要我破阵，我先让你进此阵，运用停当，我再进来，毋令得你手慌脚乱。”通天道人大怒曰：“任你进吾阵来，吾自有擒你之处！”道罢，通天道人随兜奎牛进陷仙门去，在陷仙阙下，等候老子。老子将青牛一拍，往西方兑地来；至陷仙门下，将青牛催动，只见四足祥光白雾，紫气红云，腾腾而起。老子又将太极图抖开，化一座金桥，昂然入陷仙门来。老子作歌，歌曰：



“Dear eldest brother! Don’t be so unfair. Grand Completion intruded three times into the Green Touring Palace, insulting and humiliating our religion with slander and nonsense. He offended his superior horribly, but elder brother did nothing. He did not reproach his disciple, but only blamed me. What does he mean by that? If you wish to solve this problem, send Grand Completion to my Green Touring Palace and let me deal with him. Otherwise, we will just have to see which of our two religions is right,” the Grand Master of Heaven argued back.

“Do you think you are being fair? You believe your disciples’ slander and lies. Grand Completion would not speak so recklessly. Even if he did, this punishment hardly fits the ‘crime’. How can you break your oath and run counter to the will of Heaven? You should dissolve this trap as soon as possible and return to your Green Touring Palace with repentance in your heart. You then have a chance to remain head of your religion. If you don’t do as I say, I’ll take you to see our master at the Purple Heaven Palace to transmigrate you into an ordinary human being. It’ll be too late for regrets then,” Lao Zi said frankly.

His face reddening and eyes smoking, the Grand Master of Heaven roared, “Li Er, how can you insult me like this! We are both leaders. How can you humiliate me by defending your disciple? Do you think I’m inferior to you? I won’t stop now! I dare you come and break this trap!”

“That’s no problem, but you must not regret it later,” Lao Zi answered casually. “You may go first to get everything ready.”

The Grand Master of Heaven was enraged. “You may enter the trap at any time and under any condition you like. I’ll get you no matter what!” he roared.

The Grand Master of Heaven waited for Lao Zi at the Fairy Entrapping Gate. When he got there, Lao Zi patted his blue ox, and auspicious light and white mist sprang from its feet. Purple and red clouds filled the air. At the same time, he unrolled the Map of the Eight Diagrams and turned it into a golden bridge. He crossed over the bridge and thus easily passed through the Fairy Entrapping Gate.



“玄黄外兮拜明师，混沌时兮任我为。五行兮在吾掌握，大道兮度进群迷。清静兮修成金塔，闲游兮曾出关西。两手包罗天地外，腹安五岳共须弥。”

话说老子歌罢，径入阵来。且说通天教主见老子昂然直入，却把手中雷放出。一声响亮，震动了陷仙门上的宝剑。这宝剑一动，任你人仙首落。老子大笑曰：“通天贤弟，少得无礼，看吾扁拐！”劈面打来。通天教主见老子进阵，如入无人之境，不觉满面通红，遍身火发，将手中剑火速忙迎。正在战间，老子笑曰：“你不明至道，何以管立教宗？”又一扁拐照脸打来。通天教主大怒曰：“你有何道术，敢逆诛我的门徒？此恨怎消！”将剑挡拐，二圣人战在诛仙阵内，不分上下，敌斗数番。正是：

邪正逞胸中妙诀，水清处方显鱼龙。

话说二位圣人战在陷仙门里，人人各自施威。方至半个时辰，只见陷仙门里八卦台下，有许多截教门人，一个个睁睛竖目，那阵内四面八方雷鸣风吼，电光闪烁，雾气昏迷。怎见得，有赞为证：

风气呼嚎，乾坤荡漾；雷声激烈，震动山川。电掣红绡，钻云飞火；雾迷日月，大地遮漫。风刮得沙尘掩面，雷惊得虎豹藏形，电闪得飞禽乱舞，雾迷得树木无踪。那风只搅得通天河波翻浪滚；那雷只震得界牌关地裂山崩；那电只闪得诛仙阵众仙迷眼；那雾只迷得芦篷下失了门人。这风真是推山转石松篁倒；这雷真是威风凛冽震人惊；这电真是流天照野金蛇走；这雾真是潏潏漫漫蔽九重。



The Grand Master of Heaven released thunder from his hands and shook the miraculous sword from the Fairy Entrapping Gate. But Lao Zi only burst out laughing and said, "Oh, dear brother! Don't be so rude. Look at my walking stick."

Lao Zi raised his walking stick to hit the Grand Master of Heaven, who turned and attacked him with his sword. The two religious leaders kept up the fight for over an hour, when many of the Jie Taoist disciples, who were standing beside the Eight Diagram Terrace, lost their patience. They jumped into the circle of combat to join the battle with a rush of thunder, wind, and lightning.

Lao Zi used a miraculous pagoda floating in the air above his head to repulse all attacks.

"Let me play a trick on him. He knows common Taoist magic, but he pays little attention to the study of the Way. I'll show him and his disciples what wonders Mount Xuandu can perform," Lao Zi thought.

Lao Zi suddenly pulled in his rein and jumped out of the combat circle. He pushed his fish-tail coronet to the side, and three columns of gas released from his head transformed into three fairies, all named "Purity".



话说老子在陷仙门大战，自己顶上现出玲珑宝塔在空中，那怕他雷鸣风吼。老子自思：“他只知仗他道术，不知守己修身，我也显一显玄都紫府手段与他的门人看看！”把青牛一拎，跳出圈子来；把鱼尾冠一推，只见顶上三道气出，化为三清。老子复与通天教主来战。只听得正东上一声钟响，来了一位道人，戴九云冠，穿大红白鹤绛绡衣，骑白猿而来；手仗一口宝剑，大呼曰：“李道兄！吾来助你一臂之力！”通天教主认不得，随声问曰：“那道者是何人？”道者答曰：“吾有诗为证：

混元初判道为先，常有常无得自然。紫气东来三万里，  
函关初度五千年。”

道人作罢诗曰：“吾乃上清道人是也。”仗手中剑来取。通天教主不知上清道人出于何处，慌忙招架。只听得正南上又有钟响，来了一位道者，戴如意冠，穿淡黄八卦衣，骑天马而来；一手执灵芝如意，大呼曰：“李道兄！吾来佐你共伏通天道人！”把天马一兜，仗如意打来。通天教主问曰：“来者何人？”道人曰：“我也认不得，还称你做截教之主？听吾道来。诗曰：

函关初出至昆仑，一统华夷属道门。我体本同天地老，  
须弥山倒性还存。

吾乃玉清道人是也。”通天教主不知其故，“自古至今，鸿钧一道传三友；上清、玉清不知从何教而来？”手中虽是招架，心中甚是疑惑。正寻思未已，正北上又是一声玉磬响，来了一位道人，戴九霄冠，穿八宝万寿紫霞衣；一手执龙须扇，一手执三宝玉如意，骑地吼而来，大呼：“李道兄！贫道来



The first, who appeared from the east with a ringing of bells, shouted loudly, "Elder Brother Li! I'm coming to help you."

The Grand Master of Heaven asked the stranger, "Who are you, Taoist?"

The fairy replied with a poem:

In the beginning, Tao was the only one.  
To appear and disappear is the natural way.  
The purple air comes from the east,  
Since Hanguan Pass, it's been five thousand years.

The Taoist of Upper Purity attacked the Grand Master of Heaven with a sword, and the master, who did not recognize him, had to resist him as best he could.

Bells were heard from the south, and another Taoist, wearing a S-shaped coronet and a yellowish eight diagram robe, suddenly appeared.

When he attacked the Grand Master of Heaven, the master asked, "Who are you?"

"How can you fail to recognize me, as the head of Jie Taoism? Listen to my song and then I will tell you my name:

Reaching Mount Kunlun from Hanguan Pass,  
The Taoist crosses both foreign and Chinese soil.  
My body is immortal like Heaven and earth,  
I remain even if Mount Xumi collapses.

I'm the Taoist of Jade Purity."

The Grand Master of Heaven could not understand what he was talking about. "Taoism has been taught by three branches since the beginning of time. How can there be Taoists of Upper Purity and Jade Purity? Where do they come from?" he wondered silently.

Although in full combat with the two fairies and Lao Zi himself, the Grand Master of Heaven was preoccupied by these questions. Suddenly the sound of jade chimes was heard from the north, and a third fairy, wearing a Nine Heaven coronet and a purple haze robe, appeared on a lion.





辅你共破陷仙阵也!”通天教主又见来了这一位苍颜鹤发道人，心上不安，忙问曰：“来者何人？”道人曰：“你听我道来。诗曰：

混沌从来不计年，鸿濛剖处我居先。参同天地玄黄理，  
任你傍门望眼穿。

吾乃太清道人是也。”四位天尊围住了通天教主，或上或下，或左或右，通天教主止有招架之功。且说截教门人见三位来的道人身上霞光万道，瑞彩千条，光辉灿烂，映目射眼，内有长耳定光仙。暗思：“好一个阐教，来得毕竟正气！”深自羡慕。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。

Noticing his robust appearance and white hair, the Grand Master of Heaven felt even more uneasy. He asked hurriedly, "Who's that coming?"

"First listen to my song:

I never count the years since time began,  
I've lived the ages through.  
I know the philosophy of Heaven and earth,  
Let all the pagans feel surprise.

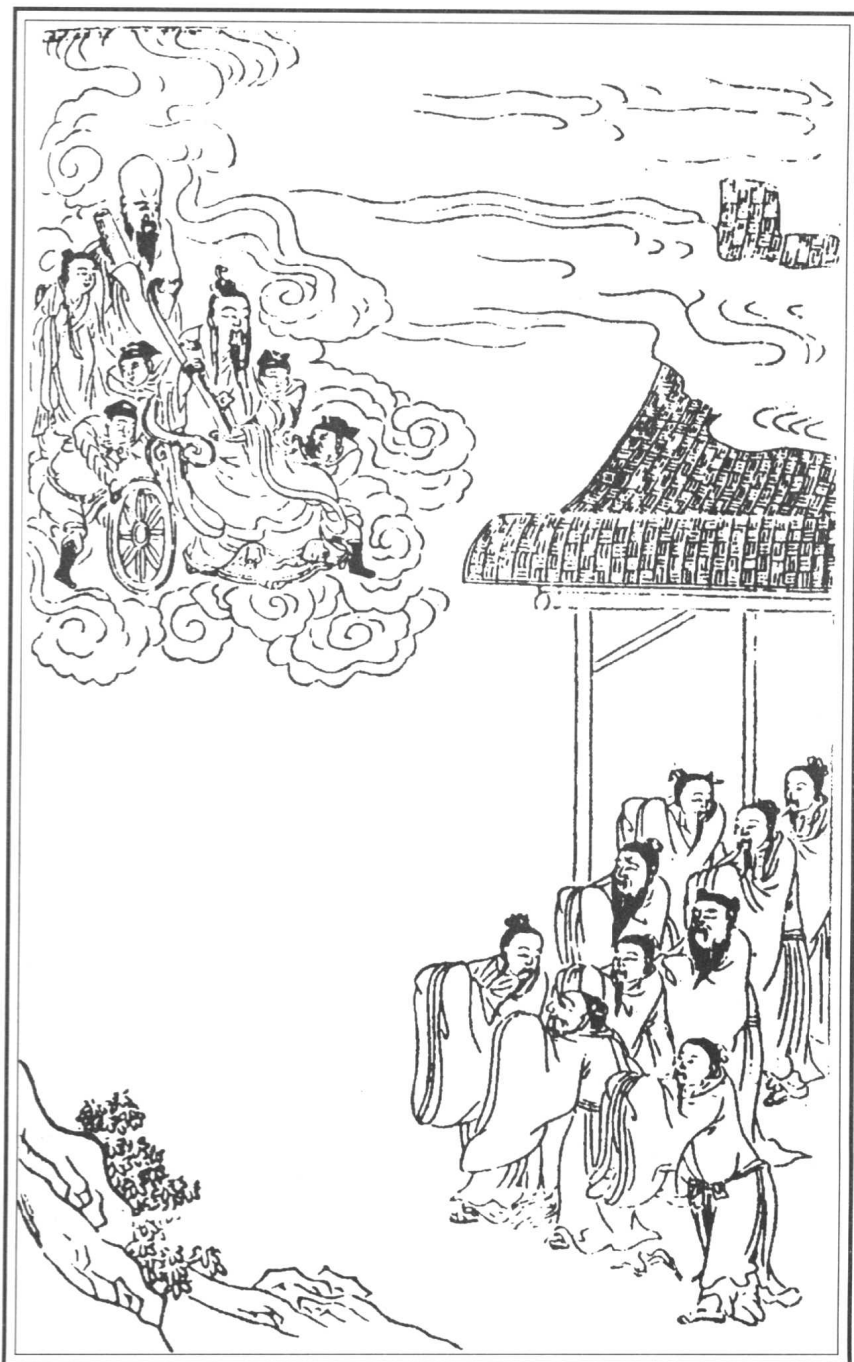
I'm the Taoist of Extreme Purity."

Attacked from all four sides, the Grand Master of Heaven could only do his best to defend himself. The disciples of Jie Taoism, watching on, were all very impressed by the fairies. Fairy Light with Long Ears thought, "How wonderful they are! The Chan sect must be very proper and just."

If you want to know what happened next, please read the next chapter.









## 第七十八回

### 三教会破诛仙阵

诗曰：

诛仙恶阵四门排，黄雾狂风雷火偕。遇劫黄冠遭劫运，  
堕尘羽士尽尘埋。剑光徒有吞神骨，符印空劳吐黑霾。  
纵有通天无上法，时逢圣主应多乖。

话说老子一气化的三清，不过是元气而已，虽然有形有色，裹住了通天教主，也不能伤他。——此是老子气化分身之妙，迷惑通天教主，竟不能识。老子见一气将消，在青牛上作诗一首，诗曰：

“先天而老后天生，借李成形得姓名。曾拜鸿钧修道德，方知一气化三清。”

话说老子作罢诗，一声钟响，就不见了三位道人。通天教主心下愈加疑惑，不觉出神，被老子打了二三扁拐。多宝道人见师父受了亏，在八卦台作歌而来。歌曰：

“碧游宫内谈玄妙，岂忍吾师扁拐伤；只今舒展胸中术，且与师伯做一场！”

歌罢，大呼：“师伯！我来了！”好多宝道人！仗剑飞来直取。老子笑曰：“米粒之珠，也放光华！”把扁拐架剑，随取风火蒲团祭起空中，命黄巾力士：“将此道人拿去，放在桃园，俟吾发落！”黄巾力士将风火蒲团把多宝道人卷将去了。正是：

## Chapter 78

### Breaking the Trap

The three fairies made from Lao Zi's energy were not real and could not last long. Though they encircled the Grand Master of Heaven, they could not hurt him. As the energy outside his body was about to disperse, Lao Zi began to sing, and suddenly the three Taoists disappeared with the ringing of bells. Distracted by the strange development, the Grand Master of Heaven received three blows from Lao Zi's walking stick.

Multi-Precious rushed over from the Eight Diagram Terrace with a shout, but Lao Zi took him with his wind-and-fire straw cushion and ordered his yellow-scarved genii to put him in the peach garden to be dealt with later.





从今弃邪归正道，他与西方却有缘。

且说老子用风火蒲团把多宝道人拿往玄都去了，老子竟不恋战，出了陷仙门，来至芦篷。众门人与元始迎接坐下。元始问曰：“今日入阵，道兄见里面光景如何？”老子笑曰：“他虽摆此恶阵，急切也难破他的；被吾打了二三扁拐。多宝道人被吾用风火蒲团拿往玄都去了。”元始曰：“此阵有四门，得四位有力量的方能破得。”老子曰：“我与你只顾得两处，还有两处，非众门人所敢破之阵。此剑你我不怕，别人怎么经得起？”正议论间，忽见广成子来禀曰：“二位老师，外面有西方教下准提道人来至。”老子、元始二人忙下篷迎接，请上篷来，叙礼毕，坐下。老子笑曰：“道兄此来，无非为破诛仙阵来，收西方有缘；只是贫道正欲借重，不意道兄先来，正合天数，妙不可言！”准提道人曰：“不满道兄说，我那西方：花开见人人见我。因此贫道来东南两土，未遇有缘；又几番见东南二处有数百道红气冲空，知是有缘，贫道借此而来，渡得有缘，以兴西法，故不辞跋涉，会一会截教门下诸友也。”老子曰：“今日道兄此来，正应上天垂象之兆。”准提道人问曰：“这阵内有四口宝剑，俱是先天妙物，不知当初如何落在截教门下？”老子曰：“当时有一分宝岩，吾师分宝镇压各方；后来此四口剑就是我通天贤弟得去，已知他今日用此作难。虽然众仙有厄，原是数当如此。如今道兄来的恰好；只是再得一位，方可破此阵耳。”准提道人曰：“既然如此，总来为渡有缘，待我去请我教主来。正应三教会诛仙，分辨玉石。”老子大喜。准提道人辞了老子，往西方来请西方教主接引道人，共遇有缘。正是：



Lao Zi returned to the pavilion and was met there by the immortals. He sat down to rest with Heavenly Primogenitor.

“What happened to you in the trap, Brother?” Heavenly Primogenitor asked.

“Though that evil trap can’t be broken at once, I gave him two or three strokes with my walking stick, and I took Multi-Precious with my wind-and-fire straw cushion. He’s being kept on Mount Xuandu,” Lao Zi replied with a smile.

“There are four gates in the trap. We need four powerful immortals to break them,” Heavenly Primogenitor said.

“You and I can break two gates, but none of our disciples are strong enough to handle those swords hung in the trap.”

Just then it was reported that Candi from the Western Region had arrived. The two immortals went out to welcome their esteemed visitor.

Lao Zi spoke first, “Brother! Your honorable visit must have some aim. We welcome you and thank you for your arrival at the right time. It must be destined by Heaven,” Lao Zi said with a smile.

“I speak the truth, Brothers. Our westland is a paradise of peace where flowers bloom and people come happily. I’ve come east and south before, looking for those predestined to join us, but to my disappointment, I’ve not found anyone. Recently I’ve seen red light here, and so I’ve ventured to come again. I hope I may have the opportunity to meet the disciples of Jie Taoism,” Candi replied.

“Your honorable arrival today coincides with the phenomena in the sky,” Lao Zi said happily.

“The four precious swords hanging in this trap were all around before the beginning of time. I wonder how the Jie sect got them,” Candi asked.

“There was once a hidden crag where miraculous weapons and other precious articles were kept. When our master divided the treasures to subdue demons and monsters, these four swords were bestowed on the Grand Master of Heaven. It was predicted at that time that he would use them to trouble us. Brother, you’ve come at the right time, but we still need one more person to break this evil trap,” Lao Zi said.

“If that be so, let me invite the religious leader of the Western Region to join us. The three religions will be united on one front to break the trap, to distinguish right from wrong, jade from stone,” Candi said sincerely.





佛光出在周王世，兴在明章释教开。

且说准提来至西方，见了接引道人，打稽首坐下。接引道人曰：“道友往东土去，为何回来太速？”准提道人曰：“吾见红光数百道俱出阐、截二教之门。今通天教主摆一诛仙阵，阵有四门，非四人不能破。如今有了三位，还少一位。贫道特来请道兄去走一遭，以完善果。”西方教主曰：“但我自未曾离清净之乡，恐不谙红尘之事，有误所委，反为不美。”准提曰：“道兄，我与你俱是自在无为，岂有不能破那有象之阵！道兄不必推辞，须当同往。”接引道人如准提道人之言，同往东土而来。只见足踏祥云，霎时而至芦篷。广成子来禀老子与元始曰：“西方二位尊师至矣。”老子与元始率领众门人下篷来迎接。见一道人，身高丈六。但见：

大仙赤脚枣梨香，足踏祥云更异常。十二莲台演法宝，八德池边现白光。寿同天地言非谬，福比洪波语岂狂。修成舍利名胎息，清闲极乐是西方。

话说老子与元始迎接接引、准提上了芦篷，打稽首，坐下。老子曰：“今日敢烦，就是三教会盟，共完劫运，非吾等故作此孽障耳。”接引道人曰：“贫道来此，会有缘之客，也是欲了冥数。”元始曰：“今日四友俱全，当早破此阵，何故在此红尘中扰攘也！”老子曰：“你且分付众弟子，明日破阵。”元始命玉鼎真人、道行天尊、广成子、赤精子：“你四人伸手过来。”元始各书了一道符印在手心里，“明日你等见阵内雷响，有火光冲起，齐把他四口剑摘去，我自有妙用。”四人领命，站过去了。又命燃灯：“你站在空中；若通天教主往上走，你可把定海珠往下打，他自然着伤。一来也知我阐教

Lao Zi was pleased at this new development. Candi bade them farewell and left to invite Buddha, the religious leader of the Western Region.

When the two returned, Lao Zi, Heavenly Primogenitor, and all the disciples went out to meet them. Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor escorted the two Buddhas inside.

When they were seated, Lao Zi began, "We're sorry that we must trouble you to join us in a united front, but we've been destined to face this calamity together."

"I've come hoping to find those who are to join us later. This must have been decided by fate too," Buddha said.

Then Heavenly Primogenitor told Jade Tripod, Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue, Grand Completion, and Pure Essence to stretch out one of their arms. He stamped a spell on each palm and ordered, "As soon as you see flames in the sky and hear thunder within the trap, all of you are to rush to the gates and take down one sword each. You must then wait for my next order."

Heavenly Primogenitor then ordered Burning Lamp, "You are to wait in the air above the trap tomorrow. If you see the Grand Master of Heaven, you may surprise him with the Sea Conquering Pearls."





道法无边。”元始分付毕，各自安息。不言。只等次日黎明，众门人排班，击动金钟、玉磬。四位教主齐至诛仙阵前，传令命左右：“报与通天教主，我等来破阵也。”左右飞报进阵。只见通天教主领众门人齐出戮仙门来，迎着四位教主。通天教主对接引、准提道人曰：“你二位乃是西方教下清净之乡，至此地意欲何为？”准提道人曰：“俺弟兄二人虽是西方教主，特往此处来遇有缘。道友，你听我道来：

身出莲花清净台，三乘妙典法门开。玲珑舍利超凡俗，  
瓔珞明珠绝世埃。八德池中生紫焰，七珍妙树长金苔。

只因东土多英俊，来遇前缘结圣胎。”

话说接引道人说罢，通天教主曰：“你有你西方，我有我东土，如水火不同居，你为何也来惹此烦恼。你说你莲花化身，清净无为，其如五行变化，立竿见影。你听我道来：

混元正体合先天，万劫千番只自然。渺渺无为传大法，  
如如不动号初玄。炉中久炼全非汞，物外长生尽属乾。

变化无穷还变化，西方佛事属逃禅。”

话说准提道人曰：“通天道友，不必夸能斗舌。道如渊海，岂在口言。只今我四位至此，劝化你好好收了此阵，何如？”

通天教主曰：“既是四位至此，毕竟也见个高下。”通天教主说罢，竟进阵去了。元始对西方教主曰：“道兄，如今我四人各进一方，以便一齐攻战。”接引道人曰：“吾进离宫。”老子曰：“吾进兑宫。”准提曰：“吾进坎地。”元始曰：“吾进震方。”四位教主各分方位而进。且说元始先进震方，坐四不相径进诛仙门。八卦台上通天教主手发雷声，震动诛仙宝剑。那剑晃动。元始顶上庆云迎住，有千朵金花，瓔珞垂



At dawn the next day, the immortals arrayed themselves in a line, and the four religious leaders rushed up to the trap, shouting, "Let the Grand Master of Heaven know we are coming to break this evil trap now."

The Grand Master of Heaven appeared with his disciples to meet the four religious leaders. "You two should be happy to live peacefully in your Western Region. Why do you come here?" the Grand Master of Heaven asked the two Buddhas.

"We've come to look for those predestined to have close relations with us. There are many, heroic and highly talented gods, in this eastland who we welcome as fellow disciples," Candi replied.

"You have your west, and we have our east. The two of us are like fire and water which can never exist in the same place at the same time. Why have you come here to make trouble for yourselves? You said you were born from lotus flowers, so pure, quiet, and idle. But you don't know what I am. I was born at the beginning of time and have lived through numerous natural disasters. I am familiar with the changes of the five essences," the Grand Master of Heaven stated.

"Dear Brother! You need not brag so. An understanding of the Way can hardly be expressed by words. We four have come to ask you to break this trap peacefully with your own hands. What do you think?" Candi suggested.

"As long as you're all here, let's see who can come out on top," retorted the Grand Master of Heaven, who quickly ducked back into the trap.

"Brothers! Let us each take one of the gates and attack at the same time," Heavenly Primogenitor said.

"I'll attack from the south at the Fairy Slaying Gate," Buddha volunteered.

"I'll attack from the west at the Fairy Entrapping Gate," said Lao Zi.

"I'll attack from the north through the Fairy Exterminating Gate," said Candi.

"And I'll attack from the east at the Fairy Slaughtering Gate," Heavenly Primogenitor said.

As Heavenly Primogenitor rode on his nondescript horse towards the Fairy Slaughtering Gate, the Grand Master of Heaven shook the Fairy Slaughtering Sword with a great clap of thunder from the Eight Diagram



珠，络绎不绝，那剑如何下得来。元始进了诛仙门，立于诛仙阙。只见西方教主进离宫，乃是戮仙门。通天教主也发雷声震那宝剑。接引道人顶上现出三颗舍利子，射住了戮仙剑。那剑如钉钉一般，如何下来得。西方教主进了戮仙门，至戮仙阙立住。老子进西方陷仙门。通天教主又发雷震那陷仙剑。只见老子顶上现出玲珑宝塔，万道光华，射住陷仙剑。老子进了陷仙门，也在陷仙阙立住。准提道人进绝仙门，只见通天教主发一声雷，震动绝仙剑。准提道人手执七宝妙树，上边放出千朵青莲，射住了绝仙剑，也进了绝仙门来，到了绝仙阙。四位教主，齐进阙前。老子曰：“通天教主，吾等齐进了你诛仙阵，你意欲何为？”老子随手发雷，震动四野，诛仙阵内一股黄雾腾起，迷住了诛仙阵。怎见得，

腾腾黄雾，艳艳金光。腾腾黄雾，诛仙阵内似喷云；艳艳金光，八卦台前如气罩。剑戟戈矛，浑如铁桶；东西南北，恰似铜墙。此正是截教神仙施法力，通天教主显神通。晃眼迷天遮日月，摇风喷火撼江山。四位圣人齐会此，劫数相遭岂易逢。

且说四位教主齐进四阙之中，通天教主仗剑来取接引道人。接引道人手无寸铁，只有一拂尘架来。拂尘上有五色莲花，朵朵托剑。老子举扁拐纷纷的打来。元始将三宝玉如意架剑乱打。只见准提道人把身子摇动，大呼曰：“道友快来！”半空中又来了孔雀明王。准提现出法身，有二十四首，十八只手，执定了璎珞、伞盖、花贯、鱼肠、金弓、银戟、加持神杵、宝锉、金瓶，把通天教主裹在当中。老子扁拐夹后心就一扁拐，打的通天教主三昧真火冒出。元始祭三宝玉如意来



Terrace. But an auspicious cloud protected the immortal's head with flowers, jade necklaces, and precious pearls. Heavenly Primogenitor was able to pass through the gate and enter the Fairy Slaughtering Court.

When Buddha approached the Fairy Slaying Gate and met the same sort of onslaught, he released three Buddhist relics from the top of his head, nailing the sword to the wall above. He then entered and waited inside the Fairy Slaying Court.

Lao Zi used his exquisite gold pagoda to hold off the attack at the Fairy Entrapping Gate, rendering the sword powerless in the air above his head. He entered the gate with ease, and stopped and waited before the Fairy Entrapping Court.

When Candi was attacked in the same way, he lifted his branch to stop the sword with a thousand green lotus flowers. He also entered through the gate and waited in the Fairy Exterminating Court.

When they were all inside the trap, Lao Zi challenged the Grand Master of Heaven, "What will you do with us now, Brother? We are all here before you."

Lao Zi sent a crash of lightning across the field, and a yellow fog spread everywhere, covering up the trap completely.

When the Grand Master of Heaven attacked, Buddha, waved his dust whisk, and lotus flowers of various colors stopped his sword. Heavenly Primogenitor then charged in with his jade S-shaped weapon and Lao Zi with his walking stick.

In the meantime, Candi gave himself a shake and shouted, "Come on, quick!" In a wink, a peacock king appeared in the air. Candi then transformed himself into a figure with twenty-four heads and eighteen arms, holding a jade necklace, a bundle of flowers, a sword, a gold bow, a silver halberd, a godly club, a precious file, a gold bottle, and many other precious objects. They all surrounded the Grand Master of Heaven in a fighting circle.



打通天教主。通天教主方才招架玉如意，不防被准提一加持杵打中，通天教主翻鞍滚下奎牛，教主就借土遁而起。不知燃灯在空中等候，才待上时，被燃灯一定海珠又打下来。阵内雷声且急，外面四仙家各有符印在身，奔入阵中，广成子摘去诛仙剑，赤精子摘去戮仙剑，玉鼎真人摘去陷仙剑，道行天尊摘去绝仙剑。四剑既摘去，其阵已破。通天道人独自逃归；众门人各散去了。且说四位教主破了诛仙阵，元始作诗以笑之，诗曰：

“堪笑通天教不明，千年掌教陷群生。仗伊党恶污仙教，番聚邪宗枉横行。宝剑空悬成底事，元神虚耗竟无名。不知顺逆先遭辱，犹欲鸿钧说反盈。”

话说四位教主上了芦篷坐下。元始称谢西方教主曰：“为我等门人犯戒，动劳道兄扶持，得完此劫数，尚容称谢！”老子曰：“通天教主逆天行事，自然有败而无胜。你我顺天行事，天道福善祸淫，毫无差错，如灯取影耳。今此阵破了，你等劫数将完，各有好处。姜尚，你去取关；吾等且回山去。”众门人俱别过姜子牙，随四位教主各回山去了。

子牙送别师尊，自回汜水关来会武王；众将官来见。元帅至帅府，参见武王。王曰：“相父远破恶阵，谅有众仙，孤不敢差人来问候。”子牙谢恩毕，对曰：“荷蒙圣恩，仰仗天威，三教圣人亲至，共破了诛仙阵，前至界牌关了，请大王明日前行。”武王传旨治酒贺功。不表。

又说通天教主被老子打了一扁拐，又被准提道人打了一加持宝杵，吃了一场大亏，又失了四口宝剑，有何面目见诸大弟子！自思：“不若往紫芝崖立一坛，拜一恶幡，名曰‘六



Soon Lao Zi hit the Grand Master of Heaven on his back, knocking out his true samadhi fire. As Heavenly Primogenitor threw up his jade S-shaped weapon, the Grand Master of Heaven hurriedly resisted with his sword, but he was unexpectedly hit by Candi's miraculous club. Seriously wounded, he fell off his fairy ox. He flew up into the air in an attempt to escape, but Burning Lamp, who was waiting for him in the sky, hit him with the Sea Conquering Pearls. He fell to the ground again.

When thunder roared throughout the trap, the four immortals with spells stamped on their palms ran inside to dismantle the swords. Grand Completion took the Fairy Slaughtering Sword, Pure Essence the Fairy Slaying Sword, Jade Tripod the Fairy Entrapping Sword, and Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue the Fairy Exterminating Sword. Without the four swords, the trap was immediately broken, and the Grand Master of Heaven fled away alone, his disciples scattering in all directions.

Returning to the tent, Heavenly Primogenitor thanked Buddha and Candi. Lao Zi turned to Jiang Ziya and told him to move forward to take the pass. Finally, all the immortals left with the four religious leaders to return to their mountains. Jiang Ziya, after seeing them off, returned to Sishui Pass and reported everything to King Wu.

"I dared not send anyone to see you, as you were too busy with the operations to break that wicked trap," King Wu said.

"Due to the dignity of Heaven and your honor, and thanks to the support from the leaders of the three religions and their disciples, we have broken the trap and are able to advance on Jiepai Pass." Jiang Ziya replied and asked, "Will you start your journey tomorrow?"

Wounded by Lao Zi's walking stick and by Candi's miraculous club, and having lost his four swords, the Grand Master of Heaven was ashamed to meet his disciples again. He went to the Purple Mushroom Cliff to build a terrace. There he erected the "Six Soul Pennant," its six tails





魂幡’。”——此幡有六尾，尾上书接引道人、准提道人、老子、元始、武王、姜尚六人姓名，早晚用符印，俟拜完之日，将此幡摇动，要坏六位的性命。正是：

左道凶心今不息，枉劳空拜六魂幡。

不表通天道人拜幡，后在万仙阵中用。且说界牌关徐盖升了银安殿，与众将商议曰：“方今周兵取了汜水关，驻兵不发。前日来的那多宝道人摆甚诛仙阵，也不知胜败。如今且修本，差官往朝歌去取救兵来，共守此关。”只见差官领了本章往朝歌来，一路无词，渡了黄河，进了朝歌城，至午门下马，到文书房。那日是箕子看本，见徐盖的本大惊：“姜尚兵进汜水关，取左右青龙关、佳梦关，兵至界牌关，事有燃眉之急！”箕子忙抱本来见纣王，往鹿台来。当驾官奏知：“箕子候旨。”纣王曰：“宣来。”箕子上台，拜罢，将徐盖本进上。纣王览本，惊问箕子曰：“不道姜尚作反，侵夺孤之关隘，必须点将协守，方可阻其大恶。”箕子奏曰：“如今四方不宁，姜尚自立武王，其志不小；今率兵六十万来寇五关，此心腹大患，不得草草而已，愿皇上且停饮乐，以国事为本，社稷为重，愿皇上察焉！”纣王曰：“皇伯之言是也。朕与众卿共议，点官协守。”箕子下台。纣王闷闷不悦，无心欢畅。忽妲己、胡喜妹出殿见驾，行礼坐下。妲己曰：“今日圣上双锁眉头，郁郁不乐，却是为何？”王曰：“御妻不知，今日姜尚兴师，侵犯关隘，已占夺三关，实是心腹之大患；况四方刀兵蜂起，使孤心下不安，为宗庙社稷之虑，故此忧心。”妲己笑而奏曰：“陛下不知下情，此俱是边庭武将，钻刺网利；架言周兵六十万来犯关庭，用金贿赂大臣，诬奏陛



inscribed with six names: Buddha, Candi, Lao Zi, Heavenly Primogenitor, King Wu, and Jiang Ziya. He worshiped the pennant day and night and stamped spells on it everyday to prepare it for use in the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap to be set up later.

Xu Gai, the garrison commander of Jiepai Pass, held a military conference with his generals to discuss the grave situation. He decided to send a report to Zhaoge to ask for reinforcements to protect the pass.

Ji Zi, the minister on duty that day, received the urgent report from Jiepai Pass. He immediately rushed to the Happy Terrace to report to King Zhou.

“There is no peace left in the kingdom. Jiang Ziya has set up Ji Fa as King Wu, the warring king. They have started their attack with 600,000 soldiers and now have occupied some of our passes. We must not treat this situation casually. I beg Your Majesty to stop drinking and to pay more attention to state affairs so that we may save the kingdom,” Ji Zi admonished the King.

“You are right, Uncle. We must discuss this with all the ministers and send a powerful army and troops against the enemy,” King Zhou agreed.

When he had gone, King Zhou was in no mind to enjoy his usual pleasures. Daji and Hu Ximei found him in this state.

“Why are you so unhappy today, Your Majesty?” Daji asked.

“Don’t you know, my queen, that Jiang Ziya is leading an army against us and has already taken three passes? There are wars all over the kingdom. I’m worrying about the future of our dynasty,” King Zhou replied.

But Daji only smiled and said, “Don’t worry, Your Majesty. The generals on the frontier are only trying to get rich. They’ve spread this rumor and bribed the ministers to lie to you so that you’ll send reinforce-



下，陛下必发钱粮支应；故此守关将官冒破支消，空费朝廷钱粮，实为有私，何常有兵侵关。正为里外欺君，情实可恨！”纣王闻奏，深信其言有理，因问妲己曰：“倘守关官复有本章，何以批发？”妲己曰：“不必批发，只将贲本官斩了一员，以警将来。”纣王大喜，遂传旨：“将贲本官枭首，号令于朝歌。”正是：

妖言数句江山失，一统华夷尽属周。

话说纣王信妲己之言，忙传旨意：“将界牌关走本官即时斩首号令！”箕子知之，忙至内庭，来见纣王：“皇上为何而杀使命？”王曰：“皇伯不知，边庭钻刺，诈言周兵六十万，无非为冒支府库钱粮之计；此乃是内外欺君，理当斩首，以戒将来。”箕子曰：“姜尚兴兵六十万，自三月十五日金台拜将，天下尽知，非是今日之奏。皇上杀界牌关走使，不致紧要；失边庭将士之心。”王曰：“料姜尚不过一术士耳，有何大志？况且还有四关之险，黄河之隔，孟津之阻，岂一旦而被小事所惑也。皇伯放心，不必忧虑。”箕子长吁一声而出；看着朝歌宫殿，不觉潸然泪下，嗟叹社稷丘墟。箕子在九间殿作诗以叹之，诗曰：

“忆昔成汤放桀时，诸侯八百尽归斯。谁知六百余年  
后，更甚南巢几倍奇！”

话言箕子作罢诗回府。不表。

且说姜元帅在汜水关点人马进征，来辞武王。子牙见武王曰：“老臣先去取关，差官请驾。”武王曰：“但愿相父早会诸侯，孤之幸矣。”子牙别了武王，一声炮响，人马往界牌关进发。——只离八十里，来之甚快。正行间，只见探马报



ments with food supplies and financial support. Don't believe it, Your Majesty; they're all lies. They're just cheating you."

The king then asked, "If that is so, what shall I do in response to this report, my dear queen?"

"You needn't make any written comment, but you may cut off the messenger's head to warn them all," Daji replied.

King Zhou ordered that the messenger from Jiepai Pass be decapitated and his head be hung over the city wall as a warning.

When he heard about the king's order, Ji Zi rushed to the inner court. "Why have you ordered the beheading of the messenger, Your Majesty?" he asked hurriedly.

"Dear Uncle, they are just trying to cheat me and squeeze money from the national treasury. The messenger must be executed as a warning," King Zhou answered.

"Jiang Ziya was appointed commander on the fifteenth day of the third month. His army is 600,000 strong. Everybody in the country knows this. If you put the messenger from Jiepai Pass to death, you will only discourage the border generals," Ji Zi protested.

"Don't worry, dear Uncle! Jiang Ziya is just a common sorcerer. Moreover, we still have our four strong passes and the natural barriers of the Yellow River and Mengjin. What can he do? Oh, do cheer up, Uncle," King Zhou laughed.

Ji Zi withdrew and wept to think of the dynasty's eventual collapse. He wrote a sorrowful poem and returned to his home.

After he had reorganized his army at Sishui Pass, Jiang Ziya went to see King Wu. "I shall leave to attack Jiepai Pass and send someone for you as soon as it is safe."

"Will you meet all the dukes at the conference as soon as possible? May Heaven help you," King Wu replied.

The army marched east and camped outside Jiepai Pass. The next



入中军：“已至界牌关下。”子牙传令：“安营。”点炮呐喊。话说徐盖已知关外周兵安营，随同众将上城来看，周兵一派尽是红旗，鹿角森严，兵威甚肃。徐盖曰：“子牙乃昆仑羽士，用兵自有调度，只营寨大不相同。”旁有先行官王豹、彭遵答曰：“主将休夸他人本领，看末将等成功，定拿姜尚，解上朝歌，以正国法。”言罢，各自下城，准备厮杀。只见次日，子牙问帐下：“那员将官关下见头功？”帐下应声而出，乃魏贲曰：“末将愿往。”姜子牙许之。魏贲上马，提枪出营，至关下搦战。有报马报入关上曰：“启主帅：关下有周兵讨战。”徐盖曰：“众将官在此，我等先议后行。纣王听信谗言，杀了差官，是自取灭亡，非为臣不忠之罪。今天下已归周武，眼见此关难守，众将不可不知。”彭遵曰：“主将之言差矣！况吾等俱是纣臣，理当尽忠报国，岂可一旦忘君徇私？古云：‘食君禄而献其他，是不忠也。’末将宁死不为！愿效犬马，以报君恩。”言罢，随上马出关；见魏贲连人带马，浑如一块乌云。怎见得：

幞头纯墨染，抹额衬纓红。皂袍如黑漆，铁甲似苍松。

钢鞭悬塔影，宝剑插冰峰。人如下山虎，马似出海龙。

子牙门下客，骁将魏贲雄。

话说彭遵见魏贲，大呼曰：“周将通名来！”魏贲曰：“吾乃扫荡成汤天保大元帅姜麾下左哨先锋魏贲是也。你乃何人？若是知机，早献关隘，共扶周室；如不倒戈，城破之日，玉石俱焚，悔之晚矣！”彭遵大怒，骂曰：“魏贲，你不过马前一匹夫，敢出大言！”摇枪催马直取。魏贲手中枪赴面相迎。两马相交，双枪并举，一场大战。好魏贲！枪力勇猛，战有

day, Jiang Ziya asked, "Who would like to go out for the first combat?"

"I will, Commander," Wei Ben answered the call at once.

With Jiang's approval, General Wei Ben mounted his horse and rushed out of the camp to challenge the enemy.

Receiving a report to this effect, Xu Gai, the garrison commander of the pass, announced, "Dear generals! Let's think this over before we act. King Zhou only believes the bootlickers. He madly cut off the head of our messenger. He's destroying himself, and the nation is as good as King Wu's already. It will be difficult to guard this pass. You all must realize our situation."

"You're wrong, Commander! We are ministers under King Zhou. We must be faithful and loyal to him and our dynasty. I'll do my best to return the king's grace even if it means my life," Peng Zun protested. He got on his horse and rushed out of the pass.

Peng Zun met Wei Ben outside and the two clashed in a terrible fight. After about thirty rounds, Peng Zun could not stand Wei Ben's onslaught.





三十回合，彭遵战不过魏贲，掩一枪往南败走。魏贲见彭遵败走，纵马赶来。彭遵回顾，见魏贲赶下阵来，忙挂下枪，囊中取出一物，往地下撒来。此物名曰菡萏阵，按三才八卦方位，布成一阵。彭遵先进去了。魏贲不知，将马赶进阵来。彭遵在马上发手一个雷声，把菡萏阵震动，只见一阵黑烟迸出，一声响，魏贲连人带马震得粉碎，彭遵掌得胜鼓进关。报马报入中军：“启元帅：魏贲连人带马震为齑粉。”子牙听罢，叹曰：“魏贲忠勇之士，可怜死于非命，情实可悯！”子牙着实伤悼。彭遵进关，来见徐盖，将坏了魏贲得胜事说了一遍。徐盖权为上了功绩。次日，徐盖对众将曰：“关中粮草不足，朝廷又不点将协守，昨日虽则胜了他一阵，恐此关终难守耳。”正议之间，报：“有周将搦战。”王豹曰：“末将愿往。”上马，提戟，开关，见一员周将，连人带马纯是一片青色。王豹曰：“周将何名？”苏护曰：“吾乃冀州侯苏护是也。”王豹曰：“苏护，你乃天下至无情无义之夫！你女受椒房之宠；身为国戚，满门俱受皇家富贵，不思报本，反助武王逆叛，侵故主之关隘，你有何面目立于天地之间！”催开马，摇戟来取苏护。苏护手中枪赴面来迎。二马相交，枪戟并举。苏护正战王豹，有苏全忠、赵丙、孙子羽三将一齐上来，把王豹围在垓心。王豹如何敌得住，自料寡不敌众，把马跳出圈子就走。赵丙随后赶来。正赶之间，被王豹回手一个劈面雷，打在脸上，可怜随驾东征，未曾受武王封爵之赏，赵丙翻下鞍鞞。孙子羽急来救时，王豹又是一个雷放出，此劈面雷甚是利害，有雷就有火，孙子羽被雷火伤了面门，跌下马来，早被王豹一戟一个，皆被刺死。苏



He gave up and fled away, but as Wei Ben chased him, Peng Zun took something out of his bag and threw it on the ground. A Lotus Trap sprang up, into which Peng Zun disappeared, with Wei Ben close on his heel. Thunder roared in the trap, and Wei Ben was ground into powder, leaving only a long column of black smoke.

When Peng Zun returned to report his victory over Wei Ben, Xu Gai praised him and put his merit on the record.

The next day, Xu Gai called his generals together, "We don't have enough food supplies and there's no chance of getting anything from the capital. Though luckily we won the battle yesterday, I still think we can't defend this pass much longer."

Just then it was reported that a Zhou general had arrived outside the gate. Wang Bao quickly volunteered to meet the challenge.

"What's your name, General?" Wang Bao asked when he saw the general in green outside.

"I'm Su Hu, the Marquis of Jizhou," Su Hu replied.

"Su Hu, you are the most damned ungrateful fellow in the world. Your daughter is the queen, and you are a close relative of His Majesty, with riches and powers granted to your whole family. But now you are rebelling against the king and supporting King Wu in an attack against the passes belonging to your old master. How can you hold up your head?" Wang Bao cursed. He rushed in to attack Su Hu with his halberd.

When Su Hu met the assault with his lance, Su Quanzhong, Zhao Bing, and Sun Ziyu all rushed up to surround Wang Bao.

Realizing that it was impossible for him to keep up the fight alone against several generals, Wang Bao spurred his horse out of the circle. Zhao Bing was unwilling to give him up and chased swiftly after him.

Wang Bao suddenly turned and hit Zhao Bing in the face with a thunderbolt from his hands. Zhao dropped from his saddle and stumbled on the ground. Sun Ziyu rushed forward to rescue him. Wang Bao struck him with a similar bolt to the face. Wang Bao seized the chance to stab





家父子不敢向前。王豹也知机，掌鼓进关，回见徐盖，连诛二将，得胜回兵庆喜。不表。且说苏护父子进营来见子牙，备言损了二将。子牙曰：“你父子久临战场，如何不知进退，致损二将？”苏全忠曰：“元帅在上：若是马上征战，自然好招架；今王豹以幻术发手，有雷有火，打在脸上，就要烧坏面门，怎经得起，故此二将失利。”子牙曰：“悞丧忠良，实为可恨！”次日，子牙曰：“众门人谁去关下走一遭？”言未毕，有雷震子曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。雷震子出营，至关下搦战。报马报入关中。徐盖问：“谁去见阵走一遭？”彭遵领令出关，见雷震子十分凶恶，面如蓝靛，巨口，赤发，獠牙上下横生，彭遵大呼曰：“来者何人？”雷震子曰：“吾乃武王之弟雷震子是也。”彭遵不知雷震子肋有双翅，摇手中枪催开马，来取雷震子。雷震子把风雷翅飞起，使开黄金棍，劈头来打。彭遵那里招架得住，拨马就走。雷震子见他诈败，忙将翅飞起，赶来甚急，劈头一棍，彭遵马迟，急架时，正中肩窝上，打翻马下，枭了首级，进营来见子牙。子牙上了雷震子功绩簿。且说探马报入关中：“彭遵阵亡，将首号令辕门。”徐盖曰：“此关终是难守，我知顺逆，你们只欲强持。”王豹听说：“主将不必性急，待我明日战不过时，任凭主将处治。”徐盖默然无语。王豹竟回私宅去了。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



Sun Ziyu to death. He then turned and, with another stroke of his lance, brought down Zhao Bing. The two generals sacrificed their lives for King Wu.

Su Hu and his son returned to their camp and reported to Jiang Ziya what had happened in battle.

“How sad it is to lose two loyal and brave generals!” Jiang Ziya mourned.

The next morning, Thunderbolt went out with a challenge and Peng Zun answered the call.

Seeing Thunderbolt’s indigo face, pink hair, and two tusks, Peng Zun shouted, “Who’s that coming?”

“I’m Thunderbolt, the younger brother of King Wu,” Thunderbolt replied.

Unaware that his opponent had two wings, Peng Zun set his horse forward to stab at Thunderbolt, who flew up into the air and tried to knock Peng Zun’s head with his gold cudgel. Unable to keep up the fight, Peng Zun turned his horse and ran away in defeat.

Believing that Peng Zun was feigning defeat, Thunderbolt followed him and knocked him on the head with his gold cudgel. He fell from his horse, and his head was cut off.

Thunderbolt returned to camp in triumph. He reported what happened to Jiang Ziya, and his merit was written into the record.

Xu Gai received the report of Peng Zun’s death and said to his generals, “It’s really difficult to defend this pass. I understand what’s happening here, but you have no idea.”

“Oh, Commander! Don’t get excited. I’ll fight them again tomorrow and I shall certainly win the day. You may punish me if I don’t,” Wang Bao argued.

If you want to know what happened next, please read the next chapter.



## 第七十九回

### 穿云关四将被擒

诗曰：

一关已过一关逢，法宝多端势更凶。法戒引魂成往事，  
龙安酥骨又来江。几多险处仍须吉，若许能时总是空。  
堪笑徐芳徒逆命，枉劳心思竟何从！

话说徐盖当晚默默退归后堂。不题。只见次日王豹也不来见主将，竟领兵出关，往周营搦战。报马报入中军。子牙问：“谁人见阵走一遭？”哪吒应曰：“我愿往。”子牙许之。哪吒登风火轮，提火尖枪，奔出营来。王豹见一将登风火轮而来，忙问曰：“来者莫非哪吒么？”哪吒答曰：“然也。”摇枪就刺。王豹的画戟急架忙迎。王豹知哪吒是阐教门下，自思：“打人不过先下手。”正战间，发一劈面雷来打哪吒。不知这雷只好伤别人；哪吒乃是莲花化身之客，他见雷声至，火焰来，把风火轮一登，轮起空中，雷发无功。哪吒祭起乾坤圈去，正中王豹顶门，打昏落马；哪吒复一枪刺死；枭了首级，号令回营，来见子牙，备言前事。子牙大喜。且说徐盖闻报王豹阵亡，暗思：“二将不知时务，自讨杀身之祸。不若差官纳降，以免生民涂炭。”正忧疑之际，忽报：“有一陀头来见。”徐盖命：“请来。”道人进府，至殿前打稽首曰：“徐将军，贫道稽首。”徐盖曰：“请了！道者至此，有何见谕？”道人曰：“将军不知，吾有一门徒，名唤彭遵，丧于雷震子之

## Chapter 79

### Four Generals in Captivity at Chuanyun Pass

The following day Wang Bao challenged the Zhou army directly. Jiang Ziya sent Nezha to the front.

The two fought for several rounds before Wang Bao decided to make the first move. But Wang's thunderbolt had no effect on Nezha, as his body was made from lotus flowers.

Nezha threw out his Universal Ring and hit Wang Bao on the head. Wang fell to the ground, and Nezha cut his head off with a single slash.

Just as Xu Gai was about to surrender to Jiang Ziya, it was reported that a monk wished to see him. When the monk was escorted in, Xu Gai asked, "Dear Monk, what can I do for you?"

"Commander! You know that my disciple, Peng Zun, was killed by Thunderbolt, and I have to come here to avenge him."





手；特至此为他报仇。”徐盖曰：“道者高姓？大名？”道人曰：“贫道姓法，名戒。”徐盖见道人有些仙风道骨，忙请上坐。法戒不谦，欣然上坐。徐盖曰：“姜子牙乃昆仑道德之士，他帐下有三山五岳门人，恐不能胜他。”法戒曰：“徐将军放心，我连姜尚俱与你拿了，以作将军之功。”徐盖曰：“若如此，乃是老师莫大之恩。”忙问：“老师是素，是荤？”法戒曰：“持斋。我不用甚东西。”一夕无词。次日法戒提剑在手，径至周营，坐名要请姜子牙答话。探马报入中军：“有一陀头请元帅答话。”子牙传令，带众门人出营，来会这陀头。只见对面并无士卒，独自一人。怎见得：

赤金箍，光生灿烂；皂盖服，白鹤朝云。丝绦悬水火，顶上焰光生。五遁三除无比赛，胸藏万象包成。自幼根深成大道，一时应堕红尘。封神榜上没他名，要与子牙赌胜。

子牙把四不相催至军前见法戒，曰：“道者请了！”法戒道：“姜子牙，久闻你大名，今日特来会你。”子牙曰：“道者姓甚？名谁？”法戒曰：“我乃蓬莱岛炼气士姓法，名戒。彭遵是吾门下，死于雷震子之手。你只叫他来见我，免得你我分颜！”雷震子在旁，听得舌尖上丢了一个“雷”字，大怒，骂曰：“讨死的泼道！我来也！”把风雷二翅飞在空中，将黄金棍劈面打来。法戒手中剑急架忙迎。两下里大战有四五回合，法戒跳出圈子去，取出一幡，对着雷震子一幌。雷震子跌在尘埃。徐盖左右军士将雷震子拿了；虽然捆将起来，只是闭目不知人事。法戒大呼曰：“今番定要擒姜尚！”旁有哪吒大怒，骂曰：“妖道用何邪术，敢伤吾道兄也！”登开风火



“May I know your honorable name, sir?”

“Fa Jie,” was the reply.

Xu Gai invited Fa Jie to take the seat of honor.

The next day, Fa Jie went to the Zhou camp, demanding Jiang Ziya. Jiang led all his disciples out to meet him. The monk had a glaring gold ring around his head, and he wore a black gown embroidered with a white crane. Jiang Ziya spurred his nondescript horse forward and said, “Please tell me your name.”

“I know who you are. I’m Fa Jie of Penglai Island. Peng Zun was my disciple, so I’ve come to see Thunderbolt. Please send him forward.”

Thunderbolt answered furiously, “You damned monk. Here I am!”

He flew up to attack with his gold cudgel, but after four or five rounds, Fa Jie took out a pennant and waved it before him. Thunderbolt fell on the ground unconscious. He was immediately bound up by Xu Gai’s soldiers and taken away.

“We must get Jiang Ziya today!” Fa Jie roared.

“How dare you hurt my brother with sorcery,” Nezha shouted an-



轮，摇开火尖枪，来战法戒。法戒未及三四回合，忙把那幡取出来也愧哪吒。哪吒乃莲花化身，却无魂魄，如何愧得动他。法戒见哪吒在风火轮上安然不能跌将下来，已自着忙。哪吒见法戒拿一首幡在手内愧，知是左道之术，不能伤己，忙祭乾坤圈打来。法戒躲不及，打了一交。哪吒方欲用枪来刺，法戒已借土遁去了。子牙收兵回营，见折了雷震子，心下甚恼，纳闷在中军。且说法戒被哪吒打了一圈，逃回关内。徐盖见法戒着伤而回，便问：“老师，今日初阵如何失机？”法戒曰：“不妨，是我误用此宝。他原来是灵珠子化身，原无魂魄，焉能擒他。”忙取丹药，吃了一粒，即时全愈；分付左右：“把雷震子抬来！”法戒对雷震子将幡右转两转。雷震子睁开眼一观，已被擒捉。法戒大怒，骂曰：“为你这厮，又被哪吒打了我一圈！”命左右：“拿去杀了！”徐盖在旁解曰：“老师既来为我末将，且不可斩他，暂监在囹圄之中，候解往朝歌，俟天子发落，表老师莫大之功，亦知末将请老师之微功耳。”——看官：此是徐盖有意归周，故假此言遮饰。——法戒听说，笑曰：“将军之言甚是有理。”正是：

徐盖有意归周主，不怕陀头道术高。

话说法戒次日出关，又至周营搦战。军政官报与子牙。子牙随即出营会战，大呼曰：“法戒！今日与你定个雌雄！”催开四不相，仗剑直取。法戒手中剑赴面迎来。战未及数合，旁有李靖纵马摇画杆戟来助子牙。子牙祭起打神鞭来打法戒。不知此宝只打得神，法戒非封神榜上之人，正是：

封神榜上无名字，不怕昆仑鞭一条。

话说子牙祭鞭来打法戒，不意被法戒将鞭接去；子牙着忙。



grily. He stabbed at Fa Jie with his Fire-Tip Lance, and Fa Jie waved his pennant as before. But to his complete surprise, Nezha remained standing firmly on his Wind-Fire Wheels.

Seeing the monk's consternation, Nezha threw up his Universal Ring and knocked Fa Jie to the ground. Nezha stabbed at him, but it was already too late, as Fa Jie was able to escape on a dust cloud.

Fa Jie returned to the pass and was met by Xu Gai.

"I'm sorry to see you wounded, Master," he said to the monk.

"Oh, never mind. I used my weapon in the wrong place. I couldn't hurt Nezha with my pennant because he was born from the pearl spirit and is soulless," Fa Jie replied. He took out a pill and swallowed it to restore his health.

"Bring Thunderbolt here," Fa Jie ordered. He took out the pennant and turned it from right to left two times to bring Thunderbolt.

"Because of you, I was hit by Nezha," Fa Jie swore wrathfully. He ordered, "Push him out and cut his head off."

Xu Gai stopped him and said, "Since you are here to help me, you should not kill him. I'll escort him to Zhaoge with the others. Let His Majesty try him so as to prove our merit."

Xu Gai intended to join the Zhou Dynasty, so he tricked Fa Jie with this lie to save Thunderbolt's life.

"You are right, Commander," Fa Jie agreed.

The next day Fa Jie challenged again, and Jiang Ziya rode out on his nondescript horse to fight him with his sword. After several rounds, Li Jing ran up to help Jiang Ziya, and Jiang had time to toss up his Staff for Beating Gods. But it was absolutely useless against Fa Jie, who was not on the List of Creations. The staff was easily taken by Fa Jie.





忽然土行孙催粮到营前；见法戒将打神鞭接去，土行孙大怒，走向前大呼曰：“吾来也！”法戒见个矮子用条铁棍打来，法戒仗剑迎战。三人正杀在一处，不意杨戩也催粮来至，见土行孙大战陀头，走马舞三尖刀亦来助战。子牙见杨戩来至，心中大喜。两员运粮官双战法戒。正是天数不由人，不意郑伦催粮也到；郑伦见土行孙、杨戩双战道人，郑伦自思曰：“今日四人战这陀头不下，毕竟是左道之人。我也是督粮官，他成得功，我也成得功！”将金睛兽催开，冲杀过来，就把子牙喜不自胜。子牙兜回四不相，传令军士：“擂鼓助战！”法戒被三运督粮官裹在垓心，不得落空，纵有法宝，如何使用？只见土行孙宾铁棍在下三路上打了几棍；法戒意欲逃走；郑伦见土行孙成功，恐法戒逃循，忙将鼻窍中两道白光哼出来。法戒听得，不知是甚么东西响，忙抬头一看，看见两道白光。正是：

眼见白光出鼻窍，三魂七魄去无踪。

话说法戒跌倒在地，被乌鸦兵生擒活捉绑了。子牙用符印镇住了法戒的泥丸宫，掌得胜鼓回营。法戒方睁开眼，见浑身上了绳索，叹曰：“岂知今日在此地误遭毒手！”追悔无及。只见子牙升帐坐下，三运官来见子牙。子牙曰：“三运得功不小！”奖谕三运官曰：

“运督军需，智擒法戒。玄机妙算，奇功莫大！”

子牙奖谕毕。三员官称谢子牙。子牙传令：“推法戒来。”众军卒将法戒推至中军。法戒大呼曰：“姜尚，你不必开言。今日天数合该如此，正所谓‘大海风波见无限，谁知小术反擒吾。’可知是天命耳。速将军令施行！”子牙曰：“既知天命，



Jiang Ziya was very upset to lose his Staff for Beating Gods. Just then, Earth Traveler Sun arrived with fresh food supplies, and seeing Fa Jie with the staff, he shouted, "Look, here I come!"

The dwarf struck at him with a long iron cudgel, and Fa Jie hit back with his sword. It was not long before Yang Jian arrived and joined in as well.

When Zheng Lun galloped forward to attack Fa Jie, Jiang Ziya happily left the combat circle and ordered the beating of drums to encourage his generals.

Fa Jie had no chance to use his witchcraft and before long, he was hit by Earth Traveler Sun. When he tried to flee, Zheng Lun instantly gave out two columns of white light. Fa Jie fell to the ground and was taken by the Crow soldiers.

Fearing that Fa Jie would run away, Jiang Ziya stamped some spells on his head, and they all returned to camp.

Jiang praised the three convoy officers. Then he ordered his men to bring Fa Jie before him. Fa Jie shouted in his face, "Jiang Ziya! You need not say a word to me. I had destined bad luck today. A great man, experienced through many storms on the sea, has been taken captive by a small potato. This must be the will of Heaven. You may deal with me according to military law as quickly as possible."



为何不早降？”命左右：“推出去斩了！”众军士把法戒拥至辕门，方欲行刑，只见一道人作歌而来，歌曰：

“善恶一时忘念，荣枯都不关心。晦明隐现任浮沉，随分饥飧渴饮。静坐蒲团存想，昏聩便有魔侵。故将恶念阻明君，何苦红尘受刃。”

歌罢，大呼曰：“刀下留人，不可动手！你与我报知元帅，说准提道人来见。”杨戩忙报与子牙曰：“有西方准提道人来至。”子牙同众门人迎接至辕门外，请准提道人进中军。准提曰：“不必进营。贫道有一言奉告：法戒虽然违天阻逆元帅，理宜正法；但封神榜上无名，与吾西方有缘。贫道特为此而来，望子牙公慈悲。”子牙曰：“老师分付，尚岂敢违。”传令：“放了。”准提上前，扶起法戒曰：“道友，我那西方绝好景致，请道兄皈依：

西方极乐真幽境，风清月朗天籁定。白云透出引祥光，流水潺潺如谷应。猿啸鸟啼花木奇，菩提路上芝兰胜。松摇岩壁散烟霞，竹拂云霄招彩凤。七宝林内更逍遥，八德池边多寂静，远列巅峰似插屏，盘旋溪壑如幽磬，昙花开放满座香，舍利玲珑超上乘。昆仑地脉发来龙，更比昆仑无命令。”

话说准提道人道罢西方景致，法戒只得皈依，同准提辞了众人，回西方去了。——后来法戒在舍卫国化祁它太子，得成正果，归于佛教；至汉明、章二帝时，兴教中国，大阐沙门。此是后事。不表。

且说界牌关主将见法戒被擒，忙命左右，将囹圄中雷震子放了，开关，同雷震子至营门纳降。探马报入中军：“启元



“If you knew the will of Heaven, why didn’t you surrender earlier?” Jiang Ziya asked then ordered his guard, “Take him out and cut his head off at once.”

As Fa Jie was being taken out, a Buddha appeared, singing:

Forgetting what is good and what is bad,  
Caring not about glory, wealth or poverty,  
To eat when hungry and drink when thirsty,  
Let fortunes and misfortunes float about,  
Quietly in meditation on a straw cushion,  
Devils induce you, out of your caution,  
Why do you oppose the kind and good king,  
And meet the sword in this vulgar world.

The Buddha then shouted, “Mercy! Mercy! Save that life beneath the sword. Tell your commander that Candi is here to see him.”

Jiang Ziya and his disciples went out to meet Candi at the camp gate. Candi said, “Excuse me, I won’t go in, but I have something important of beg you. Fa Jie is not on the List of Creations. He is predestined to our religion. I beg you to have mercy on him.”

“How dare I disobey your instructions, Master,” Jiang Ziya said and immediately ordered, “Set Fa Jie free at once.”

Candi held Fa Jie by the arm, singing:

So quiet and tranquil is the happy westland,  
Bright moon, pleasant air, and mild wind,  
White clouds lead the auspicious light,  
Water sounds sweetly to please the mountain,  
Apes call, birds chirp, and flowers bloom,  
By the linden way the orchids grow,  
Pine trees sweep away the smoke,  
Bamboo branches flirt with pretty phoenixes,  
A merry land in the forest of seven treasures,  
A quiet pond of eight virtues,  
The distant cliff as a screen,  
The winding stream flows like music,  
Cereus flowers give off fragrance,  
Buddhist relics shine brightly everywhere,  
Mount Kunlun has all things wonderful,  
But ours are the most supreme.



帅：雷震子辕门等令。”子牙大喜，忙命：“令来。”雷震子至帐前对子牙曰：“徐盖久欲归周，屡被众将阻挠；今特同弟子献关纳降，不敢擅入，在辕门外听令。”子牙传令：“令来。”徐盖缟素进营，拜倒在地，启曰：“末将有意归周，无奈左右官将不从，致羈行旌，屡获罪戾，纳款已迟，死罪，死罪！望元帅海宥。”子牙曰：“徐将军既知天命归周，亦不为迟，何罪之有？”忙令请起。徐盖谢过，请子牙进关安抚军民。子牙传令：“催人马进关。”子牙升银安殿，一面迎请武王，一面清查户口、库藏。次日，武王驾进界牌关。众将迎接武王上银安殿，参谒毕，王曰：“相父劳心远征，使孤不得与相父共享升平，孤心不安。”子牙曰：“老臣以天下诸侯为重，民坐水火之中，故不敢逆天以图安乐。”子牙领徐盖拜见武王，武王曰：“徐将军献关有功，命设宴犒赏三军。”一宵已过。次日，子牙传令：“起兵前取穿云关。”放炮起程，三军呐喊，不过八十里一关，前哨探马报入中军：“前军已抵穿云关下。”子牙传令：“放炮安营。”正是：

战将东征如猛虎，营前小校似欢狼。

话说穿云关主将徐芳乃是徐盖兄弟。徐芳闻知兄长归周，只急得三尸神暴跳，口鼻内生烟，大骂：“匹夫不顾父母妻子，失身反叛，苟图爵位，遗臭万年！”忙点聚将鼓。众将俱上殿参谒。徐芳曰：“不幸吾兄忘亲背君，苟图富贵，献了关隘，已降叛臣。但我一门难免戮身之罪。为今之计，必尽擒贼臣，以赎前罪方可。”只见先行官龙安吉曰：“主将放心，待末将先拿他几员贼将解往朝歌请罪，然后俟擒渠魁，以赎前愆，以显忠荩；则主将满门良眷自然无事矣。”徐芳



Fa Jie was thus converted into Buddhism and, bidding farewell to all, he followed Candi to the west. He became a prince of a small state and then a prominent Buddha. He returned to China during the Han Dynasty to develop Buddhism.

Xu Gai, having been informed that Fa Jie was taken captive, set Thunderbolt free. He left the pass and went to the Zhou camp to surrender.

“Xu Gai wanted to join us long ago, but he was hindered by some of his generals. He has now come to hand over the pass and is waiting outside the gate for your order,” Thunderbolt reported to Jiang Ziya.

Jiang invited him in and welcomed him to join their forces. They then marched into the pass and Jiang sent for King Wu. When he arrived, His Highness said happily, “General Xu has done a great deed by peacefully surrendering the pass.”

Jiang Ziya ordered that the whole army advance to Chuanyun Pass. The garrison commander there was Xu Fang, the younger brother of Xu Gai. Learning of his brother’s surrender, Xu Fang angrily swore, “You damned fool! Why do you disregard the safety of your parents, wife and children?”

He announced to his generals, “It is unfortunate that my elder brother, ignoring the safety of his parents and relatives, has rebelled against His Majesty to seek riches and power. We are guilty and our whole family is liable to be punished with death. We must do our best to capture the rebels and thus seek forgiveness from His Majesty.”

“Don’t worry, Commander! I’ll take their leader to show that we are loyal and to enable your family to live in peace,” said Long Anji, the vanguard general.



曰：“此言正合吾意。只愿先行与诸将协力同心，以剿叛逆，上报主恩，是吾之愿也，其他亦非所顾忌。”众将商议。不表，且说次日，子牙升帐，问曰：“谁取穿云关去走一遭？”徐盖应声曰：“启元帅：穿云关主将乃是末将之弟，不用张弓只箭，末将说舍弟归周，以为进身之资。”子牙大喜曰：“将军若肯如此，真为不世之奇功，岂止进身而已！”徐盖上马至关下，大呼曰：“左右，开关！”守关军卒不敢擅自开关，忙报入帅府：“启主帅：有大老爷在关下叫关。”徐芳大喜：“快令开关，请来！”把关军士去了。徐芳分付左右：“埋伏刀斧手，两旁伺候。”不一时，左右开关。徐盖不知亲弟有心拿他，徐盖进关，来至府前下马，径至殿前。徐芳也不动身，问曰：“来者何人？”徐盖大笑曰：“贤弟为何见我至此，而犹然若不知也？”徐芳大喝一声，命：“左右，拿了！”两边跑出刀斧手，将徐盖拿下绑了。徐芳曰：“辱没祖宗匹夫！你降反贼，也不顾家眷遭殃。今日你自来至此，正是祖宗有灵，不令徐门受屠戮也！”徐盖大骂曰：“你这不知天时的匹夫！天下尽已归周，纣王亡在旦夕，何况你这弹丸之地，敢抗拒弔民伐罪之师！你要做忠臣，你比苏护、黄飞虎何如？洪锦、邓九公何如？我今被你所擒，死固无足惜；但不知何人擒你，以泄吾忿也！”徐芳传令：“把这逆命的匹夫且监候，俟拿了周武、姜尚，一齐解往朝歌正罪。”左右将徐盖监了。徐芳问：“谁为国讨头阵走一遭？”一将应声而出，乃正印先行官神烟将军马忠愿往。徐芳许之。马忠领令开关，炮声响处，杀至周营。报马报入中军：“启元帅：穿云关有将搦战。”子牙曰：“徐盖休矣！”忙令哪吒去取关，就探徐盖消



The following day, Jiang Ziya asked, "Who would like to challenge first?"

"Commander! The garrison commander is my younger brother. We need neither bows nor arrows. I'll go and persuade him to join us," Xu Gai volunteered.

"If you can achieve this, you will be remembered for generations," Jiang Ziya said with a smile of satisfaction.

Xu Gai approached the pass and shouted, "Open the gate."

The guards dared not open the gate on their own. They ran to the headquarters and reported, "Commander! Your elder brother has arrived. What shall we do?"

"Open the gate," Xu Fang said happily. He ordered his executioners to hide on either side of the court. When his brother entered, Xu Fang roared, "Guards, grab him!" In a wink, the executioners rushed out from both sides of the court and bound up Xu Gai.

"You damned rebel! You've humiliated our ancestors and disregarded our family. The spirit of our ancestors must have sent you here today to save the whole Xu family from extermination," Xu Fang yelled at him.

Xu Gai swore back at him, "You're a damned fool! Can't you see that the whole kingdom has joined Zhou? How can you stand against the great army? Look at Su Hu and Huang Feihu if you wish to be a loyal minister. And what about Hong Jin and Deng Jiugong? I'm not afraid of death, but I'm sure there will be someone to revenge me."

Xu Fang ordered, "Send this bloody fool to gaol. I'll take him to Zhaoge with King Wu and Jiang Ziya later."

Xu Fang then asked his generals, "Who would like to take the first combat?"

"I will, Commander," answered Ma Zhong, the vanguard general.

Ma Zhong rode to the pass and challenged the Zhou army.

Jiang Ziya sighed, "Woe to Xu Gai. What else can we do?"





息。哪吒领令，上了风火轮，出得营来，见马忠金甲红袍，威风凛凛。哪吒走至军前，马忠曰：“来者莫非哪吒否？”哪吒曰：“然也。你既知我，为何不倒戈纳降？”马忠大怒曰：“无知匹夫！你等妄自称王，逆天反叛，不守臣节，侵王疆土，罪在不赦。不日拿住你等，粉骨碎身；尚自不知，犹且巧言饶舌！”哪吒笑曰：“吾看你等好一似土蛙、腐鼠，顷刻便为齏粉，何足与言！”马忠怒起，摇手中枪，飞来直取。哪吒的枪闪灼光明。轮马相交，双枪并举，杀至穿云关下。正是：

马忠神烟无敌手，只恐哪吒道德高。

马忠知哪吒是道德之士，手段高强，自思：“我若不先下手，恐他先弄手脚，却是不美。”马忠把口一张，只见一道黑烟喷出，连人带马都不见了。哪吒见马忠黑烟喷出口，迷住一块，忙将风火轮登起，把身子一摇，现出八臂三头。蓝脸獠牙，起在空中。马忠在烟里看不见哪吒，急收神烟，正欲回马，只听得哪吒大叫：“马忠休走！吾来了！”马忠抬头，见哪吒三头八臂，蓝面獠牙，在空中赶来，马忠唬得魂不附体，拨马就走。哪吒忙将九龙神火罩抛来，罩住马忠，复把手一拍，罩里现出九条火龙围绕，霎时间，马忠化为灰烬。怎见得，有诗为证：

乾元玄妙授来真，秘有灵符法更神。火枣琼浆原自异，  
马忠应得化微尘。

话说哪吒烧死马忠，收了神火罩，得胜回营，来见子牙，备言烧死马忠一事。子牙大喜，庆功。不表。

只见报马报入关中：“启主帅：马忠被哪吒烧死。”徐芳



He sent Nezha out to meet the challenge. Nezha got on his wind-fire wheels and rushed outside, where he saw Ma Zhong dressed in red robe and gold armor. The two clashed bitterly.

Finding Nezha to be highly talented, Ma Zhong thought, "If I don't get him first, all will be lost."

He opened his mouth, and a column of black smoke gushed out, making both himself and his horse invisible. Nezha immediately flew up, and with a shake, transformed himself into his second shape.

When Ma Zhong lost sight of Nezha, he abandoned his black smoke and turned toward the pass. But then he heard Nezha shouting from behind, "Don't run away, Ma Zhong! Here I come again!"

Ma Zhong was nearly frightened to death when he saw Nezha with his three heads, eight arms, and indigo face. He ran away as quickly as possible, but Nezha took out his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet and covered him up. He then clapped his hands, and the nine dragons burned Ma Zhong into ashes.



大怒。旁边转过龙安吉曰：“马忠不知浅深，自恃一口神烟，故有此败。待末将明日成功，拿几员反将，解往朝歌请罪。”次日，龙安吉上马出关，前来搦战。哨马报入中军。子牙问：“谁人出马？”只见武成王黄飞虎上帐曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。黄飞虎上了五色神牛，提枪出营。龙安吉见一员周将，——怎见得，有诗为证：

惯战能争气更扬，英雄猛烈性坚强。忠心不改归周主，  
铁面无回弃纣王。青史名标真义士，丹台像列是纯良。  
至今伐纣称遗迹，留得声名万古香。

龙安吉大呼曰：“来者何人？”飞虎曰：“吾乃武成王是也。”龙安吉曰：“你就是黄飞虎？反叛成汤，酿祸之根，今日正要擒你！”催开马摇手中斧来取。黄飞虎手中枪急架忙迎。二将相交，枪斧并举，大战五十余合。二将真是“棋逢敌手，将遇作家”。龙安吉见黄飞虎的枪法毫无渗漏，心下暗思：“莫与他卖弄精神。”把枪一挑，锦囊中取出一物，望空中一丢，只听得有叮咣之声，龙安吉曰：“黄飞虎，看吾宝贝来也！”黄飞虎不知何物，抬头一看，早已跌下鞍鞦。关内人马呐一声喊，将黄飞虎生擒活捉，绳缠索绑，拿进穿云关去了。报马报入中军：“黄飞虎被擒。”子牙大惊曰：“是怎么样拿了去的？”掠阵官回曰：“正战之间，只见龙安吉丢起一圈在空中，有叮咣之声，黄将军便跌下坐骑，因此被擒。”子牙听说不悦：“此又是左道之术！”且说龙安吉将黄飞虎拿进穿云关来见徐芳，黄飞虎站立言曰：“吾被邪术拿来，愿以一死报国恩也。”徐芳骂曰：“真是匹夫！舍故主而投反叛，今反说‘欲报国恩’，何其颠倒耶！且监在监中。”徐盖见黄飞虎

Xu Fang swore in anger to hear the news of his general's death, but Long Anji comforted him and volunteered to go out the next day. Huang Feihu rode out on his divine ox to meet Long Anji. Long Anji shouted, "Who is that coming?"

"I'm Prince Huang Feihu."

"Oh, that is you, Huang Feihu? You rebelled against the Shang Dynasty and have created all this trouble. I must take you captive today!" Long roared.

Long Anji attacked Huang Feihu, and Huang resisted with his lance. Long Anji thought, "I won't waste any time fighting with him."

He took something from his silk bag and threw it up into the air. It tinkled sweetly like music. Long shouted, "Huang Feihu! Look at my miraculous weapon!"

Huang Feihu looked up, and in a moment, fell from his saddle. He was taken captive and led before Xu Fang.

"You are a damned fool! You forsook your old master," Xu Fang swore. He ordered, "Take him away and put him in gaol."





来至，忙慰曰：“不才恶弟，不识天时，恃倚邪术，不意将军亦遭此罗网之厄。”黄飞虎点头无语，惟有咨嗟而已。话说徐芳治酒，与龙安吉贺功。次日又至周营搦战。子牙问：“谁敢出马？”只见洪锦出马，来至阵前，看见是龙安吉，——龙安吉曾在洪锦帐下为偏将——洪锦曰：“龙安吉，你今见故主，为何不下马纳降，尚敢支吾耶？”龙安吉笑曰：“反将洪锦，何得多言！我正欲拿你等，解进朝歌，以正国法，尔何不知进退，尚敢巧言也。”发马就杀，刀斧并举。龙安吉祭起一圈，起在空中。不知此圈两个，左右翻覆，如太极一般，扣就阴阳连环双锁，此圈名曰“四肢酥”。此宝有叮当之声，耳听眼见，浑身四肢，骨解筋酥，手足齐软。当时洪锦听见空中响，抬头一看，便坐不住鞍鞞，跌下马来，又被龙安吉拿了进关。洪锦自思：“此贼昔在吾帐下，我就不知他有这件东西，悞陷匹夫之手！”左右将洪锦推至殿前，来见徐芳。徐芳大喜曰：“洪锦，你奉命征讨，如何反降逆贼？今日将何面目又见商君也！”洪锦曰：“天意如此，何必多言！吾虽被擒，其志不屈，有死而已！”徐芳传令：“且送下监去。”黄飞虎见洪锦也至监中，各各嗟叹而已。子牙又听得探马报进营来，言洪锦被擒，子牙心下十分不乐。次日，报：“龙安吉又来搦战。”子牙问：“谁去见阵？”只见南宫适出马，与龙安吉战有数合，被龙安吉仍用四肢酥拿进关来见徐芳。徐芳分付：“也送下监中。”只见报马报与子牙。子牙大惊。旁有正印先行哪吒言曰：“这龙安吉是何等妖术，连擒数将；待未将见阵，便知端的。”不知龙安吉性命如何，且听下回分解。



When Huang was brought in, Xu Gai came up to comfort him. "My wicked brother is stupid and relies only on his sorcery. I'm sorry that you have also been caught in his net."

Huang Feihu nodded and sighed without saying a word. Xu Fang held a feast for Long Anji, and Long rode out again the next day.

Hong Jin rode out to the front, and when he saw Long Anji, who used to be a general under his command, he said, "Long Anji! Why don't you dismount and greet your old commander?"

"Oh, Hong Jin! You needn't talk so much," Long Anji said, smiling coldly.

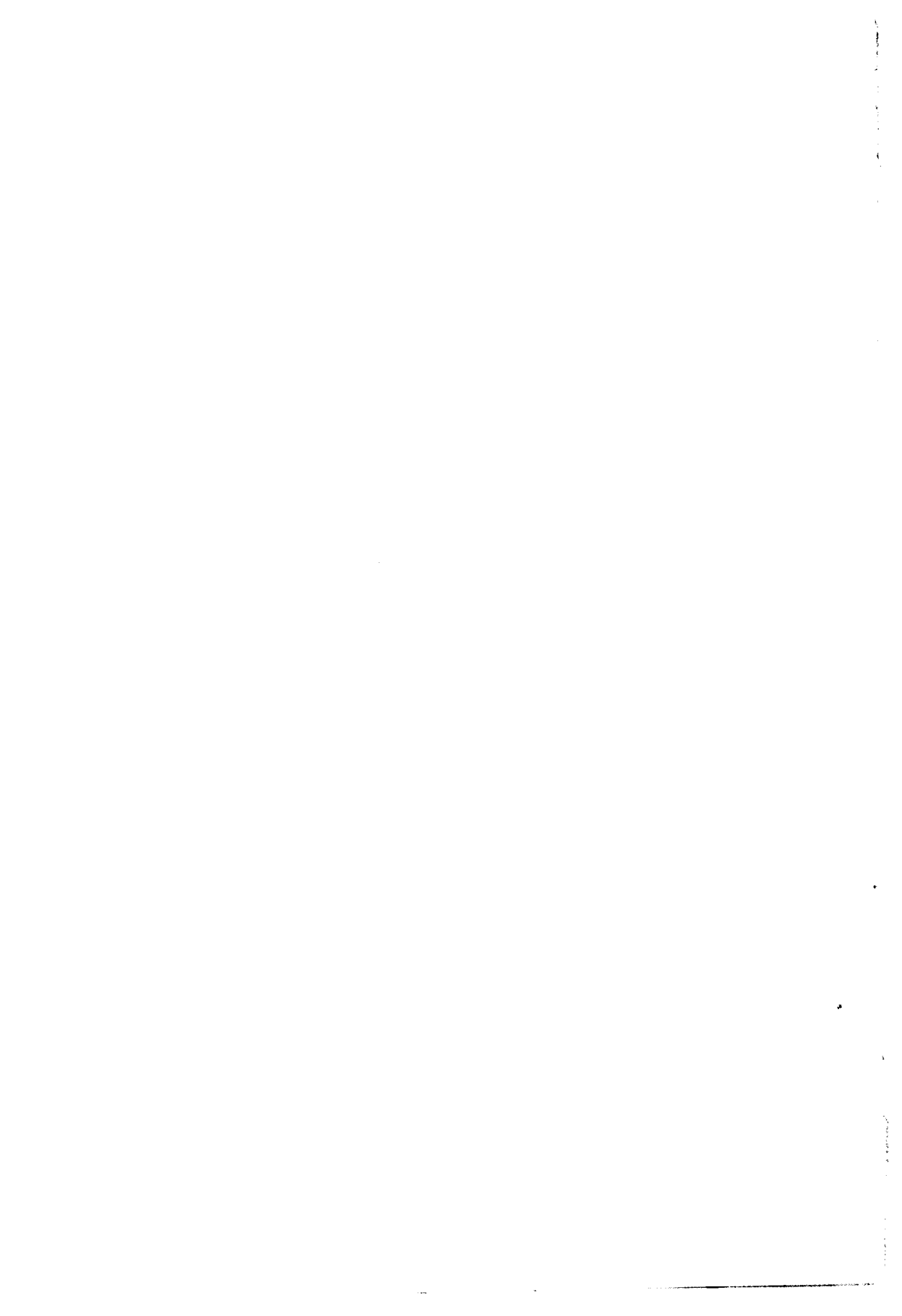
After only a few rounds, Long Anji threw up his two rings, which spun around and tinkled together in the air. They were called the "Paralyzing Rings," because when they played over in the air, anyone below, either seeing them or hearing them, would fall to the ground senseless. Bones were dislocated, muscles paralyzed, limbs numbed, and the whole body was disable. Hong Jin fell from his horse and was carried to the pass a captive.

When he recovered, Hong Jin thought, "I never knew he had that weapon when he was under my command!"

Xu Fang ordered his men to put Hong Jin in gaol. Huang Feihu could only groan when he saw the next captured general.

When Nangong Kuo was taken captive the next day, Jiang Ziya began to worry. Nezha saw this and said, "Let me meet him and find out what sort of sorcery he's using."

Please read the next chapter to find out what happened next.







## 第八十回

### 杨任下山破瘟司



诗曰：

瘟瘟伞盖属邪巫，疫疠阎浮尽若屠。列阵凶顽非易破，  
着人狂躁岂能苏。须臾遍染家家尽，顷刻传尸户户殂。  
只为子牙灾未满，穿云关下受崎岖。

话说哪吒上了风火轮，前来关下搦阵，大呼曰：“左右的！传与你主将，叫龙安吉出来见我！”徐芳闻报，命龙安吉出阵。龙安吉领命，出得关来，见哪吒在风火轮上，心下暗思：“此人乃是道术之士，不如先祭此宝，易于成功。”龙安吉至军前问曰：“来者可是哪吒么？”道罢，哪吒未及答应，就是一枪。哪吒的枪赴面相迎。轮马交还，只一合，龙安吉就祭四肢酥丢在空中，大叫：“哪吒！看吾宝贝！”哪吒抬头看时，只见阴阳扣就如太极环一般，有叮当之声。龙安吉不知哪吒是莲花化身，原无魂魄，焉能落下轮来。倏然此圈落在地下。哪吒见圈落下，不知其故。龙安吉大惊。正是：

鞍鞞慌坏龙安吉，岂意哪吒法宝来。

话说哪吒又现出三头八臂，祭起乾坤圈，大呼曰：“你的圈不如我的，也还你一圈！”龙安吉躲不及，正中顶门，打下马来。哪吒复加上一枪，结果了性命。哪吒枭了首级，进营来见子牙：“取了龙安吉首级。”子牙大喜。

且说报马报知徐芳，徐芳大惊。只见左右无将，朝廷又

## Chapter 80

### Collapse of the Pestilence Trap

Nezha challenged Long Anji the next day. When Long appeared, he thought, "Nezha must be familiar with magic. I should take action first."

He stabbed at Nezha with his lance. After just one round, Long threw up his Paralyzing Rings and yelled, "Look at my precious weapon, Nezha!"

Nezha saw the two rings locking each other, but they were powerless against him. The weapon dropped to the ground to the astonishment of Long.

Nezha then transformed into his second shape and threw up his Universal Ring. He roared, "How can your ring match with mine!"

Nezha's ring knocked Long Anji on the head. Long fell down and was stabbed to death. Nezha returned in triumph with Long's head.

Xu Fang was alarmed at the news. He was writing to the king for





不点官来协守，止得方义真一人而已，——“如之奈何？”忙修本遣官，赍赴朝歌。不表。忽见左右来报：“府前有一道人要见老爷。”徐芳忙传令：“请来。”少时，见一道人，三只眼，面如蓝靛，赤发獠牙，径进府来。徐芳降阶迎接，请上殿，与道人打稽首，徐芳尊道人上坐。徐芳问曰：“老师是那座名山？何处洞府？”道人曰：“贫道乃九龙岛炼气士，姓吕，名岳。吾与姜尚有不世之仇，今特来至此，借将军之兵，以复昔日之仇。”徐芳大喜：“成汤洪福天齐，又有高人来助！”治酒相待。一宿晚景不题。却说次日，吕岳出关至营前，请子牙答话。报马报入中军：“启元帅：有一道人请元帅答话。”子牙不知是吕岳，分付：“点炮出营。”来至营前，看见对阵乃是吕岳，不觉可笑。岂意子牙两边众门人一见吕岳，人人切齿，个个咬牙。子牙曰：“吕道友，你不知进退，尚不愧颜！当日既得逃生而去，今日又为何复投死地也。”吕岳曰：“我今日来时，也不知谁死谁活！”只见雷震子大吼一声，骂曰：“不知死的匹夫！吾来了！”展开二翅，飞在空中。好黄金棍，夹头打来。吕岳手中剑急架忙迎。金吒步行，用双剑劈头砍来。木吒厉声大骂：“泼道！不要走！也吃吾一剑！”李靖、韦护、哪吒众门人一齐拥上前来，将吕岳困在垓心。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

杀气迷空透九重，一千神圣逞英雄。这场大战惊天地，  
海沸江翻势更凶。

话说众门人围住了吕岳，吕岳现出三首六臂，祭起列瘟印，把雷震子打将下来。众门人齐动手救回。子牙把打神鞭祭起空中，正中吕岳后背，打得三昧真火迸出，败回穿云关来。



reinforcements when a Taoist arrived. The Taoist had three eyes, an indigo face, red hair, and tusks protruding beyond from his mouth. Xu Fang met the Taoist on the stone steps outside. He asked, "May I know who you are and where you come from?"

"I'm Lu Yue from Nine Dragon Island. Jiang Ziya is my enemy, and I've come to seek revenge, General."

Lu Yue was entertained warmly that night, and the next day, he left the pass and demanded to see Jiang Ziya. Jiang was a little amused when he saw Lu Yue, but his disciples were furious.

Jiang said sarcastically, "You obviously have no sense of shame. Why have you come here?"

"Who will die today, you or I?"

Jiang's disciples surrounded Lu Yue, who had turned into a creature with three heads and six arms. Jiang hit him on the back with his Staff for Beating Gods, and Lu Yue raced back to the pass.



吕岳进关，徐芳接住，安慰曰：“老师，今日会战，其实利害。”吕岳曰：“今日出去早了，等吾一道友来，再出去，便可成功。”话说子牙进营，见雷震子着伤，心下又有些不满。且自不题。

只见吕岳在关上，一连住了几日。不一日，来了一位道者，至府前对军政官曰：“你与主将说，有一道人求见。”军政官报入，吕岳曰：“请来。”少时，一道人进府，与吕岳打了稽首，与徐芳行礼坐下。徐芳问吕岳曰：“此位老师高姓大名？”吕岳曰：“此是吾弟陈庚，今日特来助你，共破子牙，并擒武王。”徐芳称谢不尽，忙治酒款待。吕岳问陈庚曰：“贤弟前日所炼的那件宝贝，可曾完否？”陈庚答曰：“为等此宝完了，方才赶来，所以来迟；明日可以会姜尚耳。”正是：

炼就奇珍行大恶，谁知海内有高明。

一宿晚景无词。只至次日，吕岳命徐芳选三千人马，出关来会子牙，徐芳亲自掠阵。不表。且说子牙升帐，与众门人曰：“今日吕岳又来阻吾之兵，你们各要仔细。”正议间，左右来报：“杨戩辕门等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”杨戩来至帐前行礼毕，言曰：“奉令催粮无误。”子牙曰：“如今吕岳又来阻住穿云关。”杨戩曰：“吕岳乃是失机之士，何敢又阻行旌？”话犹未了，只见军政官来报：“吕岳会战。”子牙忙传令出营，率领众将，与诸门人随子牙来至营前。吕岳曰：“姜子牙，吾与你有势不两立之仇！若论两教作为，莫非如此，且你系元始门下道德之士。吾有一阵，摆与你看，但你认得，吾便保周伐纣；若是认不得，我与你立见高低。”子牙



Xu Fang comforted him by saying, "You had a hard fight today, Master."

"I hadn't expected to fight today. I must wait for one of my friends so we can be sure of victory," Lu Yue said.

After several days, a Taoist arrived, asking to see the commander. When he was invited in, he greeted Lu Yue and sat down. Xu Fang asked, "What is the master's honorable name?"

"This is my younger brother, Chen Geng. He is here to help you defeat Jiang Ziya and take King Wu captive" Lu Yue replied.

"Did you finished the project you've been working on?" Lu Yue turned to Chen Geng.

"I was late for just that reason. But we are all ready now to meet Jiang Ziya tomorrow," Chen Geng replied.

The next day, when Lu Yue challenged the Zhou army, Jiang Ziya went out with all his disciples.

"Jiang Ziya! We can't live in the same world at the same time. I've set up a trap which can settle once and for all this dispute between us!" Lu Yue shouted.



曰：“道友，你何不自守清净，往往要作此业障，甚非道者所为。你既摆阵，请摆来我看。”吕岳同陈庚进阵，有半个时辰，摆成一阵；复至军前，大呼曰：“姜子牙请看吾阵！”子牙同哪吒、杨戩、韦护、李靖上前来。杨戩曰：“吕道长，吾等看阵，不可发暗器伤人。”吕岳曰：“尔乃小辈之言。我自堂堂之阵，正正之旗，岂有用暗器伤你之理！”子牙同众人往前后看了一遍，浑然一阵，又无字迹，如何认得。子牙心中焦躁：“此必是不可攻伐之阵，又是左道之术。”子牙忽然想起元始四偈：“界牌关下遇诛仙，穿云关底受瘟瘟。”“此莫非是瘟瘟阵？”乃对杨戩曰：“此正应吾师元始之言，莫非是瘟瘟阵么？”杨戩曰：“待弟子对他说。”二人商议停当，回至军前。吕岳曰：“子牙公识此阵否？”杨戩答曰：“吕道长，此乃小术耳，何足为奇！”吕岳曰：“此阵何名？”杨戩笑曰：“此乃瘟瘟阵。你还不曾摆全；俟摆全了，吾再来破你的。”吕岳闻杨戩之言，如石投大海，半晌无言。正是：

炉中玄妙全无用，一片雄心付水流。

话说杨戩言罢，同众人回营。子牙升帐坐下，众门人齐赞杨戩利齿伶牙。子牙曰：“虽然一时回得他好看，终不知此阵中玄妙，如何可破？”哪吒曰：“且答应他一时，再作道理。况且十绝恶阵与诛仙这样大阵，俱也破了，何况此小小阵图，不足为虑。”子牙曰：“虽然如此，不可不慎。古人云：‘人无远虑，必有近忧。’岂可因其小而忽略。”众门人齐曰：“元帅之言甚善。”正议间，左右来报：“终南山云中子来见。”众门人曰：“武王洪福天齐，自有高人来济此阵之急也。”子牙忙迎出辕门，接住云中子。二人携手，行至帐中坐下。子



"No good Taoist would set up such a wicked trap, but show it to me if you must," Jiang Ziya replied.

As Jiang Ziya, Nezha, Yang Jian, Wei Hu and Li Jing moved forward, Yang Jian yelled, "You mustn't attack us with some secret weapon while we are inspecting your trap!"

"How ridiculous you are! I certainly wouldn't do that," Lu Yue answered back.

Jiang Ziya walked around and around but couldn't figure out anything about the trap. Suddenly he remembered his master had told him he would find the Pestilence Trap at Chuanyun Pass.

They left the trap and Lu Yue asked anxiously, "You don't know this trap, do you, Jiang Ziya?"

"It's trivial witchcraft, nothing new," Yang Jian answered on behalf of Jiang.

"Then tell me its name." Lu Yue demanded.

"It's the Pestilence Trap, not yet fully prepared. We'll come again once it's set up," Yang Jian answered with a smile.

Lu Yue said nothing, obviously discouraged, and everyone returned to the camp. When they were all back, Jiang Ziya said sadly, "Though Yang Jian gave the right answer, we really know nothing about that trap. What shall we do now?"

Just as they were discussing their options, Master of the Clouds arrived at the camp gate.





牙曰：“道兄此来，必为姜尚遇此瘟瘟阵也。”云中子笑曰：“特为此阵而来。”子牙欠身谢曰：“姜尚屡遭大难，每劳列位道兄动履，尚何以消受。”因请教：“此阵中有何秘术？当用何人可破？”云中子曰：“此阵不用别人，乃是子牙公百日之灾。只至灾满，自有一人来破。吾与你代掌帅印，调督军事。其余不足为虑。”子牙曰：“但得道兄如此，姜尚便一死又何足惜，况未必然乎！”子牙欣然，就将剑、印付与云中子掌管。只见左右传与武王，武王闻知云中子说子牙有百日之灾，忙至中军。左右来报。云中子与子牙迎接上帐，行礼坐下。武王曰：“闻相父破阵，孤心不安。往往争持，致多苦恼，孤想不若回军，各安疆界，以乐民主，何必如此？”云中子曰：“贤王不知，上天垂象，天运循环，气数如此，岂是人为，纵欲逃之不能。贤王放心。”武王默然无语。

且不言云中子与子牙商议破敌，且说吕岳进关，同陈庚将二十一把瘟瘟伞安放在阵内，按九宫八卦方位，摆列停当；中立一土台，安置用度符印，打点擒拿周将。正与陈庚在阵内调度，见左右来报：“有一道人要见吕老爷。”吕岳曰：“是谁？与我请来。”少时，那道人飘然而至。吕岳一见李平来至，忙迎住，喜曰：“道兄此来，必是来助我一臂之力，以灭周武、姜尚也。”李平曰：“不然。我特来劝你。吾在中途，闻你摆瘟瘟阵以阻周兵，我故此特地前来，相劝道兄。今纣王无道，罪恶贯盈，天下共叛，此天之所以灭商汤也。武王乃当世有德之君，上配尧舜，下合人心，是应运而兴之君，非草泽乘奸之辈。况凤鸣岐山，王气已钟久矣。道兄安得以一人扭转天命哉。子牙奉天征讨，伐罪吊民，会诸侯于



Jiang Ziya went to greet the immortal. "Brother! You have surely come for my sake to help us break the Pestilence Trap," Jiang Ziya spoke first.

"Yes, that's right," Master of the Clouds answered frankly. "This trap is really nothing, but you must suffer for 100 days. When the time is up, someone will naturally come to break the trap. Let me take your place as commander temporarily," he added.

Jiang Ziya handed over the seals and swords of office, representing his power and authority, to Master of the Clouds.

Lu Yue and Chen Geng began to set up the trap. They put up twenty-one Pestilence Umbrellas in the pattern of the eight diagrams. In the center was a platform for charms and seals.

A Taoist arrived in the middle of their preparations. It was Lu Yue's friend, Li Ping. Lu Yue greeted him happily, "Brother! You must have come to help me."

"Oh, no! I've come to get you to change your mind. I heard you would set up this trap to stop the Zhou army. I hope you won't do anything to oppose the will of Heaven. King Zhou is wicked, but King Wu is as virtuous as Yao and Shun. The auspicious omen of the new dynasty is known by all. How can you go against Heaven all alone? If you trust me,



孟津，正应灭纣于甲子。难道我李平反为武王，不为截教，来逆道兄之意？道兄若依我劝，可撤去此阵，但凭武王与子牙征伐取关。我们原系方外闲人，逍遥散淡，无束无拘，又何名缰利锁之不能解脱耶。”吕岳笑曰：“李兄差矣！我来诛逆讨叛，正是应天顺人。你为何自己受惑，反说我所为非也！你看我擒姜尚、武王，令他片甲不回。”李平曰：“不然。姜尚有七死三灾之厄，他也过了；遇过多少毒恶之人，十绝、诛仙恶阵，他也经过；也非容易至此。古云：‘前车已覆，后车当鉴。’道兄何苦执迷如此？”李平五次三番劝不醒吕岳，此正是：

三部正神天数尽，李平到此也难逃。

话说吕岳不听李平之劝，差官下书，知会姜尚，来破此阵。使命赍战书至子牙行营，来至辕门。左右报入中军。子牙命：“令来。”使命至中军，朝上见礼毕，呈上战书。子牙接开展玩，书曰：

“九龙岛炼气士吕岳致书于西岐元帅姜子牙麾下：窃闻物极必返，逆天必罚。尔西岐不守臣节，以臣伐君，以下凌上，有干纲常，得罪天地；况且以党恶之象，屡抗敌于天兵，仗阐教之术，复屠城而杀将，恶已贯盈，人神共愤。故上天厌恶，特假手于吾，设此瘟瘟阵。今差使致书，早早批宣，以决胜负。如自揣不德，急早倒戈，尚待尔不死。战书至日，速乞自裁。”

且说子牙看罢书，将原书批回：“明日决破此阵。”来使领书，回见吕岳。不表。次日，云中子在中军请子牙上帐，用三道符印，——前心一道，后心一道，冠内一道；又将一粒

demolish your trap at once and let King Wu and Jiang Ziya occupy the pass. We don't belong in this vulgar world. Let us live free from the chains of honor and power," Li Ping said sincerely.

Lu Yue smiled. "You're wrong, Brother! Heaven and the people are on my side. I'll take both King Wu and Jiang Ziya."

Disregarding Li Ping, Lu Yue sent his men to notify Jiang Ziya that the trap was ready. The next day, Master of the Clouds stamped spells and





丹药与子牙揣在怀中。打点停当，只听得关外炮响，报马报进营来：“有吕岳在营前搦战。”子牙上了四不相，武王同众将诸门下齐至军前掠阵。真好瘟瘟阵！怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

杀气漫空，悲风四起。杀气漫空，黑暗暗俱是些鬼哭神嚎；悲风四起，昏邓邓尽是那雷轰电掣。透心寒，怎禁他冷气侵人；解骨酥，难当他阴风扑面。远观似飞砂走石，近看如雾卷云腾。瘟疫气阵阵飞来，火水扇翩翩乱举。瘟瘟阵内神仙怕，正应姜公百日灾。

话说子牙至阵前曰：“吕岳，你今设此毒阵，与你定决雌雄。只怕你祸至难逃，悔之晚矣。”吕岳忙催开金眼驼，仗剑飞来直取。子牙手中剑急架忙迎。二人战未及数合，吕岳掩一剑，径入阵去了。子牙催开四不相，随后赶进阵来。吕岳上了八卦台，将一把瘟瘟伞往下一盖，昏昏黑黑，如红纱黑雾罩将下来，势不可当。子牙一手执定杏黄旗架住此伞。可怜！正是：

七死三灾扶帝业，万年千载竟留芳。

话说吕岳将子牙困于阵中，复出阵前大呼曰：“姜尚已绝于吾阵，叫姬发早早受死！”武王在辕门闻吕岳之言，慌问云中子曰：“老师，相父若果绝于阵中，真痛杀孤家也！”云中子曰：“不妨，此是吕岳谬言。子牙该有百日之灾。”只见后边哪吒、杨戩、金木二吒、李靖、韦护、雷震子一齐大呼：“拿这妖道碎尸万段，以泄我等之恨！”吕岳、陈庚二人向前迎敌，大战在一处。只杀的阴风飒飒，冷雾迷空。怎见得：



charms on Jiang's breast, back, and head. He then put one pill of elixir under his shirt.

When everything was ready, Jiang Ziya got on his nondescript horse and rushed out to meet the challenge. King Wu and all his disciples went with him to watch the combat.

Jiang Ziya ran forward with a shout, "Lu Yue! I've come to break your wicked trap!"

Lu Yue uttered not a word. He spurred his golden-eyed camel forward to attack Jiang Ziya with his sword. Jiang met the attack with his own. After several rounds, Lu Yue turned his camel into the trap, and Jiang Ziya chased him in.

Lu Yue climbed up onto the Eight Diagram Terrace, picked up one of the Pestilence Umbrellas, opened it, and waved it around. The air turned dark and a fog swept forward. Pestilence sand rushed in a whirlwind around Jiang Ziya. He opened his Yellow Apricot Flag to protect himself.

With Jiang Ziya detained inside, Lu Yue rushed out again and yelled loudly, "Jiang Ziya has been finished off already. Let Ji Fa come to meet his death."

King Wu anxiously turned to Master of the Clouds, "I don't know what I would do should the prime minister lose his life!"

"Never mind, Your Highness! He's only lying. Jiang Ziya is destined to suffer 100 days inside the trap."

Nezha, Yang Jian, Jinzha, Muzha, Li Jing, Wei Hu, and Thunderbolt were enraged at the Taoist's words. They all rushed out to attack Lu



这几个赤胆忠良名誉大；他两个要阻周兵心思坏。一低一好两相持，数位正神同赌赛。降魔杵，来得快，正直无私真宝贝。这一边哪吒、杨戩善腾挪；那一边吕岳、陈庚多作怪。刀枪剑戟往来施，俱是玄门仙器械。今日穿云关外赌神通，各逞英雄真可爱。一个凶心不息阻周兵；一个要与武王安世界。苦争恶战岂寻常，地惨天昏无可奈！

话说众人把吕岳、陈庚困在垓心，哪吒现了三首八臂，把乾坤圈祭起，正中陈庚肩窝上。杨戩祭哮天犬，把吕岳头上咬了一口。二人径败进瘟瘟阵去了。众门人也不赶他，同武王进营。武王不见子牙，心中甚是不乐，问云中子曰：“相父受困于阵内，几时方能出来？”云中子曰：“不过百日之厄，灾满自然无事。”武王大惊曰：“百日无食，焉能再生？”云中子曰：“大王可记得在红沙阵内，也是百日，自然无事？古云：‘有福之人，千方百计莫能害他；无福之人，遇沟壑也丧性命。’大王不必牵挂。”且不讲武王纳闷在帐内，度日如年，双眉频锁。且说吕岳自困住了子牙，甚是欢喜，每日入阵内三次，用伞上之功，将瘟瘟来毒子牙。可怜子牙全仗昆仑杏黄旗撑住瘟瘟伞，阵内常放金花千百朵，或隐或现，保护其身。话说吕岳进关来，徐芳接住曰：“老师，今将姜尚困于阵内，不知他何日得死？周兵何日得剿？”吕岳曰：“吾自有法取之。”徐芳曰：“如今且把擒获周将解往朝歌请罪，吾另外再作一本，称赞老师功德，并请益兵防守。”吕岳曰：“不必言及吾等。你乃纣臣，理当如此；我是道门，又不受他爵禄，言之无用。只是不可把反臣留在关内，提防不测，这到



Yue and Chen Geng, Nezha got Chen Gong with his Universal Ring on the shoulder, and Yang Jian's Sky Barking Hound bit Lu Yue on the face. They fled back into their trap, and the winning generals returned to camp with King Wu.

King Wu waited sadly for the 100 days to pass; each day seemed like a year. Lu Yue went to his trap three times daily to wave his Pestilence Umbrellas. Jiang had to protect himself with the Yellow Apricot Flag, relying on the thousands of golden flowers to surround and cover him.

Xu Fang went to see Lu Yue. "Master! When can we wipe out the Zhou army completely?" he asked anxiously.

"Oh, don't get so excited. I can deal with this," Lu Yue replied assuredly.

"I think we should escort our captives to Zhaoge to beg for the king's mercy. I'll praise your work and ask His Majesty to send us more reinforcements," Xu Fang said.

"Please don't mention us, General. That's your duty as a minister appointed by King Zhou, but I am a Taoist. It's not a good idea, however,





是紧要事；并请兵协守，再作理会。”徐芳领命，忙忙把四将点名，上了囚车，差方义真押解往朝歌请罪。正是：

指望成功扶帝业，中途自有异人来。

话说方义真押解四将往潼关来，算只有八十里，不一日就到。且按下不表。

话说青峰山紫阳洞清虚道德真君闲暇无事，往桃园中来，见杨任在傍，真君曰：“今日正该你去穿云关以解子牙瘟瘴阵之厄，并释四将之愆。”杨任曰：“老师，弟子乃是文臣出身，非是兵戈之客。”真君笑曰：“这有何难，学之自然得会；不学虽会也疏。”真君随入后洞，取出一根枪，名曰“飞电枪”，在桃园里，传与杨任，有歌为证，歌曰：

君不见；此枪名号为“飞电”。穿心透骨不寻常，刺虎降龙真可羨。先天铅汞配雌雄，炼就坎离相眷恋。也能飞，也能战，变化无穷随意见。今日与你破瘟瘴，吕岳逢之鲜血溅。

话说杨任乃是封神榜上之神，自然聪慧，一见真君传授，须臾即会。真君曰：“我把云霞兽与你骑。还有一把五火神焰扇，你带了下山；若进阵中，须是……如此如此，自然破他瘟瘴阵，何愁吕岳不灭耳！还有黄飞虎四将，有难在中途，你先可救他在关内，以为接应；破阵后，里外夹攻，定然成功。”杨任拜辞师父下山，上了云霞兽，把顶上角拍了一把，那骑四蹄自然生起云彩，望空中飞来。正是：

莫道此兽无好处，曾赴蟠桃四五番。

且说杨任霎时已至潼关，离城有三十里远，只见方义真解着犯官前进，旗幡上大书“解岐周反将黄飞虎、南宫适……”



to keep so many rebels here; it would be better to escort them to Zhaoge,” Lu Yue replied.

Xu Fang put the four captured generals in the prisoners’ cart and sent Fang Yizhen along to escort them to Zhaoge. It was only about eighty *li* to Tongguan Pass, and they arrived there in one or two days.

Just about this time, Virtue of the Pure Void had idly gone into the peach garden, where he spotted Yang Ren. He said, “It’s time for you to go to Chuanyun Pass to rescue Jiang Ziya and set the four generals free.”

“Oh, Master! I was a civil official, and I never learned how to use weapons,” Yang Ren said.

“That’s no problem at all. You will be able to use the weapon if you want to learn how, and you certainly won’t be able to use it if you don’t want to learn,” the fairy said with a smile.

The immortal then picked up the “Flying Lightning Lance” and taught Yang Ren how to use it.

Yang Ren was to be a God, with his name on the List of Creations, so he was able to learn this martial skill in a very short time.

Virtue of the Pure Void then gave Yang Ren the cloud-haze beast and the Five Fire Divine Flame Fan. He told his disciple how to break the Pestilence Trap and send Lu Yue to his death.

Yang Ren bade farewell to his master, and left the mountain. He patted the horn of the cloud-haze beast, and it flew up into the air on clouds from its four hooves to Chuanyun Pass.



等名字。杨任落下兽来，阻住去路，大呼曰：“来将那里去？”军士一见杨任，生的古怪跷蹊，眼眶里长出两只手来，手心里反有两只眼睛，骑着一匹神兽，五柳长髯，飘扬脑后，军士见之，无不骇然，飞报与方义真：“启上将军：前边来了个古怪异人阻住了路。”方义真仗自己胸襟，把马一夹，走出车前，见杨任如此行状，从来也不曾有这样的相貌，心中也自着惊，大呼曰：“来者何人？”杨任终是文官出身，言语自然轻柔，乃应曰：“不须问我，吾乃上大夫杨任是也。将军，天道已归明主，你又何必逆天行事，自取灭亡也。”方义真曰：“吾奉主将命令，押解周将往朝歌请功，你为何阻住去路？”杨任曰：“吾奉师命下山，来破瘟瘟阵，今逢将军押解周将，理宜救护。我劝将军不若和我归了武王，正所谓应天顺人，不失封侯之位，有何不可。”方义真见杨任低言悄语，不把杨任放在心上，把手中枪一举，大喝曰：“逆贼休走，吃吾一枪！”杨任忙用手中枪急架相还。两家大战，未及数合，杨任恐军士伤了被擒官将，忙用五火神焰扇照着方义真一扇搨去。杨任不知此扇利害，一声响，怎见得，可怜！有诗为证，诗曰：

烈焰腾空万丈高，金蛇千道逞英豪。黑烟卷地红三尺，  
煮海翻波咫尺消。

话说杨任把扇子一搨，方义真连人带马化一阵狂风去了。众军士见了，呐一声喊，抱头弃兵，奔走回关。且说黄飞虎等



Yang Ren caught sight of Fang Yizhen and a prisoners' cart about thirty *li* from Tongguan Pass. He dismounted to block the way and shouted, "Whither do you go?"

Surprised at Yang Ren's strange appearance, his two small hands protruding from his eye-sockets and two eyes in the palms of the hands, the soldiers rushed back to report to Fang Yizhen, "A strange man is blocking our way."

Thinking himself as strong as a giant, Fang Yizhen spurred his horse forward. He roared, "Who is that?"

Yang Ren was a civil official and his speech refined and gentle. "I'm Yang Ren, the supreme minister. General, this world already belongs to the kind and bright ruler. You really need not act against Heaven," he replied.

"By order of my commander, I am escorting the captives to Zhaoge to present them to His Majesty. Why do you block our way?" Fang Yizhen screamed.

"By order of my master, I've come down from the mountain to break the Pestilence Trap. I am also obliged to rescue the Zhou generals," Yang Ren tried to persuade him.

As Yang Ren spoke so mildly, Fang Yizhen thought him weak and timid. He lifted up his lance and yelled, "Try my lance, treacherous rebel! Don't go away!"

Yang Ren answered the assault with his own lance, and the two fought several rounds. Afraid that the captives might be hurt by the enemy soldiers, Yang Ren hurriedly took out his Divine Flame Fan and fanned Fang Yizhen, turning both man and horse into ashes in a wink. The ashes were quickly blown away by a terrible wind, and the enemy soldiers scattered in all directions.



见杨任这等相貌，知是异人，忙在陷车中问曰：“来者是那一位尊神？”杨任认得是黄飞虎，——俱是一殿之臣，——忙下了云霞兽，口称：“黄将军，我非别人，不才便是上大夫杨任。因纣王失政，起造鹿台，我等直谏，昏君将吾剜去二目。多亏道德真君救吾上山，将两粒仙丹纳放目中，故此生出手中之眼耳。今特着我下山，来破瘟瘟阵，先救将军等，故效此微劳耳。”随放了四将。四将谢过了杨任，只是咬牙深恨。杨任曰：“四位将军且不必出关，且借住民家，待吾破了瘟瘟阵，那时率众取关，公等可作内应。只听炮声为号，不可有悞。”黄飞虎等感谢杨任，自投关内民家去了。且说杨任上了云霞兽，出穿云关，来至周营，下了云霞兽。军政官见了大惊。杨任曰：“早报于武王，吾非反臣也。”报马报入中军：“有异人求见。”云中子知是杨任来了，忙传令：“请进中军。”诸将见了，各自骇然。杨任见云中子下拜，曰：“师叔在此，料吕岳何能为患。”云中子安慰，谢毕请起，与众门人相见。杨任来见武王。武王大惊，问其原故；杨任把纣王剜目之事又说了一遍。武王大喜，命治酒款待。杨任又将救了四将事表过，“……吾师特命不才来破瘟瘟阵耳。”云中子曰：“你来的正好。还差三日，正是百日之厄完满。”众门人见又添杨任，各有欢喜之色，不觉过了三日。次日清晨，周营炮响，大队齐出，一千周将与众门人并武王、云中子齐至辕门，看杨任破瘟瘟阵。杨任至阵前大呼曰：“吕岳何不早来见我！”只见阵内吕道人现了三首六臂，手拎宝剑而出，见杨任相貌异常，心下也自惊骇，忙问曰：“你是何人？通个名来！”杨任曰：“吾乃道德真君门下杨任是



Huang Feihu asked from the prisoners' cart, "Which respectful God has come to rescue us?"

"I'm Yang Ren, the former supreme minister. When the tyrant started to build the Happy Terrace, I admonished him, and offended, he had my two eyes taken out. Virtue of the Pure Void came to rescue me and helped me recover my sight by putting two pills of elixir in my eye-sockets," Yang Ren answered.

Yang Ren set the four generals free, and they all thanked him deeply.

"Generals! Don't leave this side of the pass. Stay inside till I have broken the Pestilence Trap, and when the time comes, you may attack from within. Be careful," Yang Ren added.

Huang Feihu and the three other generals thanked him and went to find a place to hide in the villages. Yang Ren mounted his cloud-haze beast and flew to the Zhou camp.

Yang Ren was escorted in, and Master of the Clouds introduced him to all generals and disciples. He then took Yang Ren to see King Wu. Yang Ren told the king his story and reported the rescue of the four generals. King Wu ordered a feast to entertain him.

"You have come at the right time; there are only three more days until the hundredth day," Master of the Clouds said.

On the third day, King Wu, Master of the Clouds, and all generals and disciples went out to watch Yang Ren deal with the trap.

Lu Yue rushed out with three heads and six arms. He saw Yang Ren and demanded, "Who are you?"

"I'm Yang Ren, disciple of Virtue of the Pure Void. I've come to break your trap and wipe out your whole army," Yang Ren replied.



也；今奉师命下山，特来破你瘟瘟阵。”吕岳笑曰：“你不过一小童耳，敢出大言！”仗剑来取。杨任飞电枪急架相迎。二兽相交，枪剑并举。战未三合，吕岳掩一剑望阵中而走。杨任大呼：“吾来也！”杨任进阵，不知吉凶如何，且听下回分解。

“You are just a baby. How dare you brag so ridiculously!” Lu Yue said coldly.

Lu Yue rushed in to attack, and after three rounds, turned about and ran into the Pestilence Trap. Yang Ren chased after him with a roar, “Here I come! Watch out!”

If you want to know who came out the victor, please read the next chapter.





## 第八十一回

### 子牙潼关遇痘神

诗曰：

痘疹恶疾胜疮疡，不信人间有异方。疱紫毒生追命药，  
浆清气绝索魂汤。时行户户应多难，传染人人尽着伤。  
不是武王多福荫，枉教军士丧疆场。

话说吕岳去进阵去，杨任赶进阵来。吕岳上了八卦台，  
将瘟瘟伞撑起来，往下一罩。杨任把五火扇一扇，那伞化作  
灰烬，飘扬而去；又连扇了数扇，只见那二十把伞尽成飞  
灰。当有瘟部神祇李平进阵来，指望劝解吕岳，不要与周兵  
作难，也是天数该然，恰逢其会，当被杨任一扇子扇来，李  
平怎能逃脱。可怜！正是：

一点诚心分邪正，反遭一扇丧微躯。

李平误被杨任一扇子扇成灰烬。陈庚大怒，骂曰：“何处来的  
妖人，敢伤吾弟！”举兵刃飞取杨任。杨任把扇子连扇数  
扇，莫说是陈庚一人，连地都扇红了。吕岳在八卦台上见势  
头凶险，捏着避火诀，指望逃走，不知杨任此扇乃五火真  
性，攒簇而成，岂是五行之火可以趋避。吕岳见火势愈炽，  
不能镇压，撒身往后便走，被杨任赶上前，连扇数扇，把八  
卦台与吕岳俱成灰烬。——三魂俱赴封神台去了。有诗为  
证，诗曰：

九龙岛内曾修炼，得道多年根未深，今日遭逢神火扇，



## *Chapter 81*

### **The God of Smallpox at Tongguan Pass**

With Yang Ren close behind, Lu Yue mounted the Eight Diagram Terrace and opened the Pestilence Umbrellas. Yang Ren swept his fan at them, burning them to ashes. Li Ping had meanwhile entered the camp in another attempt to stop Lu Yue, and was also unfortunately burned to a crisp.

Chen Geng raised his weapon to attack Yang Ren, but he too was burned up, the earth below fanned bright red.

Lu Yue recited spells to evade the fire, but as it was produced from the five elements, there was nothing he could do. He tried to run away, but it was already too late. He and the terrace below were burned up before he could move. The souls of the three Taoists flew to the Terrace of Creation.





可知天意灭嗔心。

话说杨任破了瘟癘阵，只见子牙在四不相上伏定，手执着杏黄旗，左右金花发现，拥护其身。诸门人看见，齐来搀住。子牙也不言语，面如淡金。只见四不相一跃而起。武王在辕门见武吉背负子牙而来，武王垂泪言曰：“相父不过为国为民，受过苦中之苦！”随将子牙背至中军，放在卧榻之上。云中子用丹药灌入于子牙口中，送下丹田。少时，子牙睁目，见众将官立于左右，乃言曰：“有劳列位苦心。”武王大喜曰：“相父且自安心，仔细调理。”子牙在军中安养了数日，只见云中子曰：“子牙且自宽心，只有万仙阵，我等再来助你，今日且奉别。”子牙不敢强留，云中子回终南山去了。子牙打点取关，只见杨任上前言曰：“前日不才已暗放了四将在内，元帅可作速调遣。”子牙见杨任说有四将在内，须得里外夹攻，方可取关。子牙传令，点众将攻关。且说徐芳又见破了瘟癘阵，左右来报：“方义真已死，四将不知所往。”心下十分着忙。只见门外杀声振地，锣鼓齐鸣，喊声不止，如天崩地塌之状。徐芳急上关来守御，只见周兵大势人马，四面架起云梯火炮，攻打甚急。有雷震子大怒，飞在空中，一棍刷在城敌楼上，把敌楼打塌了半边。徐芳禁持不住，急下城来。雷震子已站于城上。哪吒登起风火轮，也上城来。守城军士见雷震子这等凶恶，一齐走了。哪吒下城，斩落了锁钥，周兵一拥而入。徐芳见周营大势人马进关，只得纵马摇枪前来抵当，被周营大小众将把徐芳围困在当中，彼此混战。且说黄飞虎、南宫适、洪锦、徐盖听得关内喊杀，知是周兵成功，四将步行，赶至关前，见周兵已将徐芳



Yang Ren saw Jiang Ziya lying on his nondescript horse, the Yellow Apricot Flag in his hand. His disciples approached, but he did not utter a word, his face a yellowish-gold. Wu Ji carried him to the camp on his back.

Master of the Clouds took care of Jiang Ziya, who gradually recovered. When he opened his eyes, he said, "You've done so much for me. I must thank you!"

A few days later, Master of the Clouds said to Jiang, "Rest easy, Brother. I must go now. But I'll come again when you get to the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap."

Soon thereafter Jiang Ziya ordered his generals to attack the pass. Xu Fang was worried. The Pestilence Trap had been broken, Fang Yizhen was dead, and the captured generals were missing.

With a mighty offensive force the Zhou army rushed in to attack. Thunderbolt knocked the pass tower over with one blow of his cudgel, and Nezha flew up wall. The Shang soldiers fled, and Nezha cut the lock on the gate, letting in the Zhou army to surround Xu Fang.

Huang Feihu, Nangong Kuo, Hong Jin, and Xu Gai rushed over on foot. Huang Feihu slashed at Xu Fang and cut his horse's head off. He



围住，黄飞虎大叫曰：“徐芳休走，吾来也！”徐芳正在着忙之际，又见黄飞虎等四人冲杀前来，不觉吃了一惊，措手不及，被黄飞虎一剑砍来，徐芳望后一闪，那剑竟砍落马首，把徐芳撞下鞍鞞，被士卒生擒活捉，拿缚关下。众将收了军卒，迎姜元帅进关，升厅坐下，出榜安民毕。有黄飞虎、南宫适等来见子牙。子牙曰：“将军等身受陷阱之苦，幸皇天庇祐，转祸为福，此皆将军等为国忠心，感动天地耳。”众将在穿云关安置已定，子牙分付：“把徐芳推来。”左右将徐芳拥至阶前，徐芳立而不跪。子牙骂曰：“徐芳，你擒兄已绝手足之情，为臣有失边疆之责，你有何颜尚敢抗礼？此乃人中之禽兽也！速推出斩首！”众军士把徐芳推出斩首，号令在穿云关。武王设宴与众将饮酒，犒赏三军。翌日，子牙传令起兵。行有八十里，兵至潼关，安营炮响，立下寨棚。子牙升帐，众将官参谒毕，商议取关。

且言潼关主将余化龙有子五人，乃是余达、余兆、余光、余先、余德，惟余德一人在海外出家，不在潼关，连余化龙只有父子五人守此关隘。忽听关外炮响，探事报知：“周兵抵关下寨。”余化龙谓四子曰：“周兵此来，一路屡屡得胜，今日至此，亦是劲敌，须是要尽一番心力。”四子齐曰：“父亲放心，料姜尚有多大本领，不过偶然得胜，谅他可能过得此关！”不言余化龙父子商议，再言子牙次日升帐，问左右：“谁去取此关见阵一遭？”傍有太鸾应声曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。太鸾出营，至关下搦战，哨马报入关中。余化龙命长子余达出关。余达领令出关。太鸾见潼关内有一将，银甲红袍，真个齐整，滚出关来。怎见得，有赞为证，

was thrown to the ground and taken captive.

Jiang Ziya took the pass, and when all other arrangements were completed, he ordered his men to bring Xu Fang before him. Xu Fang would not bow to Jiang Ziya.

“Xu Fang, you put your own brother in prison. You are really a beast! Take him out and cut his head off at once!” Jiang Ziya ordered.

The next day, Jiang Ziya marched to Tongguan Pass. Yu Hualong, the commander there, had five sons: Yu Da, Yu Zhao, Yu Guang, Yu Xian, and Yu De. The youngest was not at Tongguan.

Yu Hualong told his sons, “The Zhou army has had many victories. They are strong opponents, so we must deal with them carefully.”

“Pa! Don’t worry. What can Jiang Ziya do with his meager talent? He can’t get through here,” his four sons answered in unison.

The next day General Tai Luan volunteered to take the first battle. Yu Hualong sent Yu Da to meet him.





赞曰：

紫金冠，名束发；飞凤额，雉尾插。面如傅粉一般同，大红袍罩连环甲。狮鸾宝带现玲珑，打将钢鞭如铁塔。银合马跑白云飞，白银枪杵鞍上拉。大红旗上书金字：潼关首将名余达。

话说太鸾大呼曰：“潼关来将何名？”余达曰：“吾乃余元帅长子余达是也；久闻姜尚大逆不道，兴兵构怨，不守臣节，干犯朝廷关隘，是自取灭亡耳。”太鸾曰：“吾元帅乃奉天征讨，东进五关，吊民伐罪，会合天下诸侯，观政于商；五关进之有三，尔尚敢拒逆天兵哉。速宜倒戈，免汝一死；若候关破之日，玉石俱焚，追悔何及！”余达大怒，摇枪直取。太鸾手中刀赴面来迎。二将大战，二三十合，余达拨马便走。太鸾随后赶来。余达闻脑后马至，挂下枪，取出撞心杵，回手一杵，正中太鸾脸上。太鸾翻下鞍鞦。可怜为将官的，正是：

祸福随身于顷刻，翻身落马项无头。

余达把太鸾一杵打下马来，复一枪结果了性命，枭了首级，掌鼓进关，见父请功，将首级号令于关上。败兵回见子牙报知，子牙闻太鸾已死，心下不乐。次日，子牙升帐，只见苏护上帐，欲去取关，子牙许之。苏护上马，至关下讨战。哨马报知。余化龙命次子余兆出关对敌。苏护问曰：“来者何人？”余兆曰：“吾乃余元帅次男余兆是也。尔是何名？”苏护曰：“吾非别人，乃冀州侯苏护是也。”余兆曰：“老将军，末将不知是老皇亲。老将军身为贵戚，世受国恩，宜当共守王土，以图报效，何得忘椒房之宠，一旦造反，以助叛逆，切

“Who are you?” Tai Luan asked.

“I’m Yu Da, the eldest son of Commander Yu Hualong. We have heard Jiang Ziya’s treachery. He will meet his end soon.”

“My commander is following the will of Heaven. How dare you resist us!”

Yu Da attacked Tai Luan, but after about thirty rounds, he turned and ran. With Tai Luan close behind, Yu Da took out his Knocking Heart Club and struck him in the face. Yu Da returned with his head.

Jiang Ziya was greatly upset. Su Hu requested to go out next day, and Yu Zhao came to meet him.







为将军不取!一旦武王失恃,那时被擒,身弑国亡,遗讥万世,追悔何及。速宜倒戈,尚可转祸为福耳。”苏护大怒:“天下大势,八九已非商土,岂在一潼关也!”纵马摇枪,直取余兆。余兆手中枪急架忙迎。二马来往,未及十合,余兆取一杏黄幡一展,咫尺似一道金光一晃,余兆连人带马就不见了。苏护不知所往,急自左右看时,脑后马至;慌忙转马,早被余兆一枪刺中肋下,苏护翻鞍落马——一魂已往封神台去了。余兆取了首级,进关来见父报功,将首级号令,庆喜。不表。且说子牙又见折了苏护,着实伤悼。苏护长子苏全忠闻报痛哭。上帐欲报父仇;子牙不得已,许之。苏全忠领令,至关下搦战。哨马报进关来,余化龙令第三子余光出关对敌。苏全忠见关中一少年将来,切齿咬牙,大喝曰:“你可是余兆?快来领死!”余光曰:“非也。吾乃是余元帅三子余光是也。”苏全忠大怒,纵马摇戟,冲杀过来。二马相交,戟枪并举,大战有二十余合,余光拨马便走。苏全忠因父亲被害,怒发如雷,大骂曰:“不杀匹夫,誓不回兵!”赶下阵来。余光按下枪,取梅花标,回首一标,有五根一齐出手。全忠身中三标,几乎坠于马下,败回周营。余光得胜,进关见父回令:“标打苏全忠败回。”余化龙曰:“明日待吾亲会姜尚,设谋共破周兵,必取全胜。”次日,关中点炮呐喊,余总兵带四子出关,至周营搦战。哨马报进营来。子牙与众将出营拒敌,左右军威甚齐。余化龙见子牙出兵,叹曰:“人言子牙善于用兵,果然话不虚传。”余化龙看罢,一骑当先:“姜子牙请了!”子牙答礼曰:“余元帅,不才甲冑在身,不能全礼。不才奉天征讨独夫,以除不道,吊民伐罪,



The two began to battle furiously, and after several rounds, Yu Zhao unrolled his Apricot Yellow Pennant. Both Yu Zhao and his horse suddenly disappeared in a golden beam of light. Su Hu was looking around when Yu Zhao stealthily stabbed him in the right side. Su fell to the ground and died. Yu Zhao returned with his head, which was hung on a bamboo pole for all to see.

Su Quanzhong then asked to go and avenge his father's death. He rode out and was met by Yu Guang.

Su Quanzhong gnashed his teeth. "Is that Yu Zhao?"

"No, I'm Yu Guang, the third son of Commander Yu Hualong."

Su Quanzhong angrily attacked him, and once again, after about twenty rounds, Yu Guang turned and ran. Filled with the wrath of his father's death, Su Quanzhong would not give him up. "I shall not return without the head of that bloody bastard!" he swore.

Seeing him close behind, Yu Guang took out his Plum Flower Javelins and hit his opponent three times. Su Quanzhong nearly fell from his horse but managed to ride back to the camp.

When Yu Guang reported his victory, Yu Hualong said ambitiously, "I'll meet Jiang Ziya in person tomorrow."

The next day, they all rode out of the pass and demanded Jiang Ziya. The Zhou army appeared, with Jiang at their head, and Yu Hualong asked his sons to make the first challenge.



所以望风纳降，俱得保全富贵；所有逆命者，随则败亡，国家尽失。元帅不得以昨日三次侥幸之功，认为必胜之策。倘执迷不悟，一时玉石俱焚，悔之何及？请自三思，毋贻伊戚。”余化龙笑曰：“似你出身浅薄，不知天高地厚戴载之恩，只知妖言惑众，造反叛主，以逞狂为；今日逢吾，只教你片甲无存，死无葬身之地矣。”大叫：“左右！谁与我拿姜尚见头一功？”只见左右四子冲杀过来。苏全忠战住余达；余兆敌住武吉；邓秀抵住余光；余先战住黄飞虎；余化龙压住阵脚。四对儿交兵，这场大战，怎见得好杀，有赞为证，赞曰：

两阵上旗幡齐磨，四对将各逞英豪。长枪阔斧并相交，短剑斜挥闪耀。苏全忠英雄赳赳；余达似猛虎头摇；武吉只教活拿余兆；邓秀喊捉余光滚刀；黄飞虎恨不得枪挑余先下马；众儿郎助阵似潮涌波涛。咫尺间天昏地暗，杀多时鬼哭神嚎。这一阵只杀得尸横遍野血凝膏，尚不肯干休罢了。

八员战将，各要争先，余达拨马就走；苏全忠随后赶来，被余达回手一杵，正中护心镜上，打得纷纷粉碎，苏全忠翻身落马；余达勒回马，挺枪来刺；早有雷震子展开双翅，飞来且快，使开黄金棍，当头刷来；余达只得架棍。周营内早有偏将祁恭将全忠救回。话说余化龙见雷震子敌住余达，自纵马舞刀来取子牙；傍有哪吒登风火轮挺枪来刺，来往冲突，两军杀在虎穴之中。正酣战间，却有杨戩催粮至营，见子牙间对交兵，杨戩立马横刀，看十人对敌，不分胜负。杨戩自思曰：“待我暗助他等一阵。”远远将哮天犬祭起。余化龙那里

A terrible battle ensued between the four Yu brothers and Su Quanzhong, Wu Ji, Deng Xiu, and Huang Feihu, Yu Hualong galloped forward to attack Jiang Ziya, but he was immediately met by Nezha. Yang Jian also joined in and set his hound on Yu Hualong. Nezha hit Yu





知道，被哮天犬一口咬了颈子，连盔都带去了。哪吒见余化龙着伤，急祭起乾坤圈，一圈正中余先肩窝，大败而走。周兵挥动人马，冲杀一阵；只杀得尸横遍野，血淋草稍。子牙掌鼓回营。正是：

眼前得胜欢回寨，只恐飞灾又降临。

话说余化龙被哮天犬所伤，余先又打伤肩臂，父子二人呻吟一夜；府中大小俱不能安。不一日，余德回家探父，家将报知：“五爷来了。”余化龙尚自呻吟不已；只见余德走近卧榻之前，见父亲如此模样，急忙请问。余化龙将前事备述一遍。余德曰：“不妨，这是哮天犬所伤。”忙取丹药，用水敷之，即时全愈。又用药调治兄长余先。当日晚景休题。次日，余德出关至周营，只要姜子牙答话。哨马报入中军，子牙随出大营，见一道童，头挽抓髻，麻鞋道服，仗剑而来。子牙曰：“道者从那里来？”余德曰：“吾乃余化龙第五子余德是也。杨戩用哮天犬咬伤吾父；哪吒用圈打伤吾兄；今日下山，特为父兄报仇。吾与汝等，共显胸中道术，以决雌雄。”撒步仗剑，来取子牙。傍有杨戩舞刀忙迎。哪吒提枪，现出三首八臂；雷震子、韦护、金吒、木吒、李靖一齐上前迎敌，口称：“拿此泼道，休得轻放！”众门人一齐上前，把余德围在垓心，总有奇术，不能使用。杨戩见余德浑身一团邪气裹住，知是左道之术，把马跳出圈子去，取弹弓在手，发出金丸，正中余德。余德大叫一声，借土遁走了。子牙回营，杨戩见子牙曰：“余德乃左道之士，浑身一团邪气笼罩，防他暗用妖术。”子牙曰：“吾师有言：‘谨防达兆光先德。’莫非就是此余德也？”傍有黄飞虎曰：“前日四将轮战



Xian with his Universal Ring, and the Zhou army charged forward. Corpses piled up in hills and blood flowed down streams.

Yu Hualong and his son, Yu Xian, lay in pain through the night. Several days later, Yu De, the fifth son, returned to visit his family. With one look at his wounded father and brother, Yu De said, "Never mind! It's only the dog and the Universal Ring. I will cure them at once."

He gave them some medicine and they quickly recovered. The next day Yu De went out to see Jiang Ziya.

"Who are you?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"I'm Yu De, the fifth son of Commander Yu Hualong. I have come to get revenge for my father and brother!"

Just as he was rushing in to attack, Yang Jian jumped forward with his cutlass. Nezha joined in with his three heads and eight arms, and Thunderbolt, Wei Hu, Jinzha, Muzha, and Li Jing encircled Yu De, giving him no chance to use his witchcraft.

Yang Jian could see that Yu De was a great sorcerer, so he left the battle circle and shot him with a gold ball. Yu De let out a loud cry and escaped on a dust cloud.

Returning to camp, Yang Jian said to Jiang Ziya, "Yu De must be a great sorcerer because there's an air of witchcraft covering his body. We must be very careful."

"My master told me that we must watch out for those named 'Da,' 'Zhao,' 'Guang,' 'Xian,' and 'De.' Does Yu De belong to one of them?" Jiang Ziya said.



四日，果然是余达、余兆、余光、余先、余德。”子牙大惊，忧容满面，双锁眉梢，正寻思无计。

且说余德着伤，败回关上，进府来，用药服了；不一时，身体全愈。余德切齿深恨曰：“我若留你一个，也不是有道之士！”彼时至晚，余德与四兄曰：“你们今夜沐浴静身，我用一术，使周兵七日内，叫他片甲无存。”四人依其言，各自沐浴更衣。至一更时分，余德取出五个帕来，按青、黄、赤、白、黑颜色，铺在地下。余德又取出五个小斗儿来，一人拿着一个，“叫你抓着洒，你就洒；叫你把此斗往下泼，你就泼。不用张弓射箭，七日内死他干干净净。”兄弟五人，俱站在此帕上。余德步罡斗法，用先天一气，忙将符印祭起。好风！有诗为证，诗曰：

萧萧飒飒竟无踪，拔树崩山势更凶。莫道封夷无用处，  
藏妖影怪作先锋。

话说余德祭起五方云来至周营，站立空中，将此五斗毒痘四面八方泼洒，至四更方回。不表。且说周营众人俱肉体凡胎，如何经得起，三军人人发热，众将个个不宁。子牙在中军也自发热。武王在后殿，自觉身疼。六十万人马俱是如此。三日后，一概门人、众将，浑身上下俱长出颗粒，莫能动履；营中烟火断绝。止得哪吒乃莲花化身，不逢此厄；杨戩知道余德是左道之人，故此夜间不在营中，各自运度；因此上不曾浸染。只见过了五六日，子牙浑身上俱是黑的。此痘形按五方：青、黄、赤、白、黑。哪吒与杨戩曰：“今番又是那年吕岳之故事。”杨戩曰：“吕岳伐西岐，还有城郭可依；如今不过行营寨栅，如何抵挡。倘潼关余家父子冲杀出



Huang Feihu interrupted and said, "The four other brothers are named Yu Da, Yu Zhao, Yu Guang and Yu Xian."

This only served to add worry to Jiang's face.

Yu De treated his wound with medicine and was soon better. He gnashed his teeth and said wrathfully, "Should I leave one person alive, I'm not a man." He then turned to his brothers and said, "Take a bath tonight, as I will prepare to destroy every last man in the Zhou army. They will all die within seven days."

They did as they were told. They took baths and put on clean clothes that night. At the first watch, Yu De took out five handkerchiefs, in green, yellow, red, white and black. He put them on the ground and took out five small containers. He gave each of his brothers one of the containers and told them to do as he instructed, either to shake the container, stir the substance within, or turn it over and splash it on the ground. They used no weapons whatsoever.

With each of the five brothers standing on a handkerchief, Yu De walked in a square and recited charms. A violent wind arose. Trees were uprooted and hills turned upside down.

Yu De and his four brothers then rode on the pentagon clouds over the Zhou army. They emptied the five small containers from the sky, spreading the variola bacteria all over the Zhou camp. They returned at the fourth watch.

Soon everyone in the Zhou army had a high fever. Jiang Ziya and King Wu lay moaning in bed; all 600,000 men were caught up in the disaster.

After three days, blisters formed all over the fallen men. They couldn't even walk. There was no more smoke from the cooking fires.

Nezha was not affected because his body was made of lotus flowers, and Yang Jian, believing Yu De to be a wicked sorcerer, did not stay in the camp that night. He too was saved from the disease.

Five days later, Jiang Ziya's skin had all turned black, and the others were either green, yellow, red, or white.





来，如何济事！”二人心下甚是焦闷。且说余化龙父子六人在潼关城上来看，周营烟火全无，空立旗幡寨栅，余达曰：“乘周营诸将有难，吾等领兵下关，一齐杀出，只此一阵成功，却不为美！”余德曰：“长兄，不必劳师动众，他自然尽绝，也使傍人知我等妙法无边。——不动声色，令周兵六十万余人自然灭绝。”父子五人齐曰：“妙哉！妙哉！”——看官：此正是武王有福，不然，若依余达之言，则周营兵将死无噍类。正是：

洪福已扶仁圣主，徒令余德逞奇谋。

话说杨戩见子牙看看病势危急，心下着慌，与哪吒共议曰：“师叔如此狼狈，呼吸俱难，如之奈何。”话犹未了，只见半空中黄龙真人跨鹤而来。杨戩、哪吒迎接黄龙真人至中军坐下。真人曰：“杨戩，你师父可曾来？”杨戩答曰：“不曾来。”真人曰：“他原说先来，如今该会万仙阵了。”话未绝时，又听得玉鼎真人自空中来至。杨戩迎迓，拜罢；玉鼎真人起身，入内营来看子牙，见子牙如此模样，真人点首叹曰：“虽是帝王之师，好容易！正是你：

七死三灾今已满，清名留在简篇中。”

玉鼎真人叹息不已，随命杨戩：“你再往火云洞走一遭。”杨戩领命，借着土遁往火云洞而来，如风云一样。看看来至山脚下，好山，真无限的景致，有奇花馥馥，异草依依。怎见得，有赋为证，赋曰：

势连天界，名号火云。青青翠翠的乔松，龙鳞重垒；猗猗挺挺的秀竹，凤尾交加；蒙蒙茸茸的碧草，龙须柔软；古古怪怪的古树，鹿角丫叉。乱石堆山，似大大小



Nezha and Yang Jian were terribly worried and anxiously discussed what they should do. Yu Hualong and his sons climbed the pass wall to look out over the scene below. They couldn't see any smoke from stoves or even lights in the camp. All that moved were the Zhou flags and pennants waving quietly in the wind.

"Let's attack them now. The final victory will be ours with just one strike," Yu Da suggested.

"My eldest brother! We needn't go to so much trouble; they will all perish in a few days. Let all the people know that we can exterminate 600,000 soldiers without lifting a finger," Yu De argued in return.

"Well, well! What an excellent plan," the father and his four sons applauded the youngest.

Their decision was certainly a blessing for King Wu. If they had attacked, the entire Zhou army would have been wiped out.

Nezha and Yang Jian were worrying over what to do when they caught sight of the Yellow Dragon Immortal riding on his crane. They rushed out to meet him and escorted him into the central camp.

"Yang Jian, has your master arrived?" the Yellow Dragon Immortal asked.

"Oh, no! Not yet, Uncle," Yang Jian replied.

"He should have been here before me. We still have the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap before us," the Yellow Dragon Immortal said.

Just then Jade Tripod arrived from the sky, and they all went in to see Jiang Ziya. Gazing sadly, Jade Tripod ordered, "Yang Jian, go to the Fire Cloud Cave once more to ask the saints there to save us from the disaster."



小的伏虎；老藤挂树，似湾湾曲曲的腾蛇。丹壁上更有些分分明明金碧影；低涧中只见那香香馥馥的瑞莲华。洞府中锁着那氤氲氤氲的雾霭；青峦上笼着那烂烂熳熳的烟霞。对对彩鸾鸣，浑似那咿咿哑哑的律吕；双双丹凤啸，恍疑是嘹嘹亮亮的笙箫。碧水跳珠，点点滴滴从玉女盘中泄出；虹霓流彩，闪闪灼灼自苍龙岭上飞斜。真个是：福地无如仙景好，火云仙府胜玄都。

话说杨戩看罢景致，不敢擅入；少时，见一水火童子出来，杨戩上前稽首曰：“敢烦师兄借传一语，杨戩求见。”童子认得杨戩，忙回礼曰：“师兄少待。”童子回言毕，进洞府来，“启老爷：外面有杨戩求见。”伏羲圣人曰：“着他进来。”童子复至外面：“杨戩进见。”杨戩至蒲团前，倒身下拜：“弟子杨戩愿老爷圣寿无疆！”拜罢，将书呈上。伏羲展玩，书曰：

“弟子黄龙真人、玉鼎真人薰沐顿首，谨书上启辟天开地昊上帝宝座下：弟子仰仗三教，演习灵文，自宜默守蒲团，岂敢冒言渎奏。但弟子等运逢劫数，杀戒已临，襄应运之天子，伐无道之独夫。路至潼关，突遭余德以左道之幻术，暗毒害于生灵。兹有元戎姜尚暨门徒将士兵卒六十余万，骤染颗粒之疮，莫辨为痛为毒，恹恹待尽，至呼吸以难通，旦夕垂亡，虽水浆而莫用。自思无奈，仰叩仁慈，恳祈大开恻隐，怜继天立极之圣君，拯无辜之性命，早施雨露，以慰倒悬。临启不胜待命之至！”

伏羲看罢书，谓神农曰：“今武王有事于天下，乃是应运之

Yang Jian rushed to the cave as fast as lightning. He waited patiently outside until Water Fire Lad appeared. He then moved forward, bowed, and said, "May I trouble you to report that Yang Jian wishes to see the saints?"

Water Fire Lad reported his arrival and reappeared to lead Yang Jian into the cave. Yang Jian knelt down, kowtowed, and said, "Your disciple Yang Jian wishes Your Majesty ten thousand years longevity!"

Yang Jian then presented a letter written by the two immortals back in the camp. After reading the letter, Saint Emperor Fu Xi said to Shen Nong, "King Wu is the next ruler chosen by Heaven. Though he was destined to meet this hardship, I think we should support him to some extent. Don't you think so, Brother?"





君，数当有此厄难，吾等理宜助一臂之力。”神农曰：“皇兄之言是也。”遂取三粒丹药付与杨戩。杨戩得了丹药，跪而启曰：“此丹将何用度？”伏羲曰：“此丹：一粒可救武王；一粒可救子牙；一粒用水化开，只在军前四处洒过，此毒气自然消灭。”杨戩又问曰：“不知此疾何名？”伏羲曰：“此疾名为痘疹，乃是传染之病；若少救迟，俱是死症。”杨戩又启曰：“倘此疾后日传染人间，将何药能治？乞赐指示。”神农曰：“你随我出洞至紫云崖来。”杨戩随了神农来至崖前，寻了一遍；神农拔一草递与杨戩：“你往人间，传与后世，此药能救痘疹之患也。”杨戩又跪恳曰：“此草何名？”神农曰：“你听我道来：此草有诗为证，诗曰：

紫梗黄根八瓣花，痘疮发表是升麻。常桑曾说玄中妙，  
传与人间莫浪夸。”

话说杨戩求了丹药，又传下升麻，以济后人，离了火云洞，径至周营，来见玉鼎真人，备言：“……求得丹药，并升麻之草，可救痘疹之厄。”黄龙真人忙将丹药化开，先救武王；玉鼎真人来治子牙；杨戩与哪吒用水化开此丹，用杨枝洒起四处来。霎时间，痘疹之毒一时全消。正是：

痘疹毒害从今起，后人遇着有生亡。

周营内被杨戩、哪吒在四面洒遍。只三山五岳门人，与凡夫不同，俱是腹内有三昧真火的，又会五行之术，不觉俱先好了；人人切齿，个个咬牙。次日，子牙见众门人脸上俱有疤痕，子牙大怒，与众人共议取潼关泄恨。众人齐厉声大叫曰：“今日不取潼关，势不回军！”不知余化龙父子性命如何，且听下回分解。



“You are absolutely right, Brother,” Saint Emperor Shen Nong replied. He took out three pills and gave them to Yang Jian, saying, “Give one pill to King Wu, another to Jiang Ziya, and put the last in water to spread throughout your camp. You can thus eradicate the poison and save all the disciples, generals, and soldiers,” Saint Emperor Shen Nong replied.

“Would you kindly tell me the name of this poisonous disease, Saint Emperor?” Yang Jian asked again.

“It’s called variola or smallpox. It’s highly infectious and will kill if not treated in time,” Saint Emperor Shen Nong replied.

“What medicine can we use to cure it, Saint Emperor? Please tell me, so that we can keep it under control if it appears again,” Yang Jian begged earnestly.

The two went together to the Purple Cloud Cliff and looking about there, Saint Emperor Shen Nong picked herb and handed it to Yang Jian. “When you return to your world, you may tell the people to use this to cure smallpox,” he said.

“What’s the name of this herb, Saint Emperor?” Yang asked again.

“This herb has yellow roots, purple leaves, and eight-petaled flowers. It’s called *sheng ma*, or *cimicifuga foetida* L.,” Saint Emperor Shen Nong answered.

Yang Jian then said goodbye and left the Fire Cloud Cave with the pills of elixir and the herb to cure smallpox. On his return, he reported the whole story to Yellow Dragon Immortal and Jade Tripod. They quickly revived King Wu and Jiang Ziya with the elixir, and Yang Jian and Nezha dissolved the last pill in water and use willow branches to spread the solution all over the camp. The smallpox was exterminated at once, and everyone recovered in a short while.

The next day, when they were all on their feet again, Jiang Ziya saw that everybody had ugly scars on their faces. They all gnashed their teeth in rage. “We must take Tongguan Pass today. We won’t give up until we’ve beaten them all.”

If you want to know the outcome of the battle, please read the next chapter.







## 第八十二回

### 三教大会万仙阵

诗曰：

万仙恶阵列山隈，飒飒寒风劈面催。片片祥光笼斗柄，  
纷纷杀气透灵台。鱼龙此际分真伪，玉石从今尽脱胎。  
多少修持遭此劫，三尸斩去五云开。

话说余化龙与余达等俱听了余德言语，不以周兵为意，逐日饮酒，只等周营兵将自己病死。那一日不觉就是第八日，余化龙对诸子言曰：“今日已是八日，不见探事官来报，我们可上城一看。”五子齐曰：“上城看看才是。”那时离了帅府，上得城来，只见周营比起初三四日光景不同：起先营中毫无烟火；今日周营中反觉腾腾杀气，烈烈威风，人人勇敢，个个精神，旌旗严整，金鼓分明，重重戈戟，叠叠枪刀。余化龙忙问余德曰：“这几日周营中已有复旧光景，此事如何？”余达从傍埋怨曰：“兄弟，你不从吾言，致有今日。岂有人是自家会死得尽的？”余德默然不言，暗思：“吾师传我此术，响应随时，岂有不准之理？其中必有原故。”乃对父兄言曰：“事已至此，迟疑无益。此必有人在暗中解了。谅他一时身弱，也不能争战。不若乘其不备，一战可以成功；迟则有变。”余化龙听说，只得领五子杀出关来，径奔周营，欺周将身弱，余德穿道服仗剑在前，如风驰雨骤而来，喊声大振。姜子牙与众门人诸将正要出营，恰逢其时，杨戩



## *Chapter 82*

### **At the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap**

On the eighth day, Yu Hualong and his sons went up on the city wall to survey the Zhou camp. They were surprised to see the soldiers marching about with their weapons and flags. A brisk air filled the camp.

“What shall we do?” Yu Hualong asked Yu De anxiously.

“You didn’t take my advice,” Yu Da murmured.

Yu De said, “Someone must have helped them. They can’t have completely recovered yet, so we’ll launch a surprise attack.”

Believing that the men in the Zhou army were still weak and invalids, they rushed out to attack. Jiang Ziya shouted from his nondescript horse, “Yu Hualong, you will meet your end today.”





曰：“此匹夫恃强欺敌，是自取死也。”子牙坐四不相，哪吒引道，众门人左右拥护，一齐杀出营来，大呼曰：“余化龙！今日是汝父子死期至矣！”金、木二吒气冲牛斗；杨任腹内生烟；雷震子声如霹雳；韦护咬碎钢牙；李靖欲平吞他父子；龙须虎足踏水云，奋勇争先。余家父子迎上前来。周营中众门人裹住了余家父子。未及数合，哪吒现了三首八臂，登起风火轮，先在潼关城上。军士见哪吒三首八臂，一声喊，散了个干净。余化龙父子见哪吒上关，身子被众人裹住，不得跳出圈子，因此上出了神，被雷震子一棍，正中余光顶上，翻下马来。余达大呼曰：“匹夫！伤吾之弟，势不两立！”来战雷震子；又被韦护祭起降魔杵把余达打死，倒在尘埃。杨任将扇子一扇，余先、余兆二人化作飞灰而散。余德见弟兄已死四人，心中大怒，直奔子牙杀来。子牙身体方才好，谅战不过，急祭打神鞭于空中，正中余德，打翻在地，早被李靖一戟刺死。雷震子见哪吒上城，也飞进城来。余化龙见五子阵亡，潼关已归西土，在马上大呼曰：“纣王！臣不能尽忠扶帝业，为主报深仇，臣今拼一死而报君恩也！”余化龙仗剑自刎而亡。后人单道余化龙父子一门死节，后人诗吊之，诗曰：

铁骑驰驱血刃红，潼关力战未成功。一门尽节忠商主，  
万死丹心泣晓风。苟禄真能惭素位，捐生今始识英雄。  
清风耿耿流千载，岂在渔樵谈笑中。

话说余化龙自杀，子牙驱人马进关，出榜安民，清查库藏。子牙怜余化龙父子一门忠烈，命左右收尸厚葬。凡军士未得平复的，俱放在潼关调理。子牙方分割已定，只见黄龙真



Jinzha, Muzha, Yang Ren, Thunderbolt, Li Jing, and Dragon Beard Tiger, surrounded Yu Hualong. Nezha flew over the pass wall and drove the soldiers away.

Before long, Yu Guang's head was smashed open by Thunderbolt. Yu Guang fell and died at once.

"You bastard! How dare you hurt my brother! I won't let you get away!" Yu Da yelled.

As he turned to attack Thunderbolt, Wei Hu knocked him to death with his Demon Subduing Club. Yang Ren fanned at Yu Xian and Yu Zhao, turning both to ashes.

Seeing that all his brothers had been killed, Yu De was filled with rage. He charged at Jiang Ziya, who took out his Staff for Beating Gods and knocked him to the ground. Li Jing rushed forward and stabbed him to death.

Realizing he'd been completely defeated, Yu Hualong yelled, "Your Majesty King Zhou! Please forgive me, I'll die to return your grace!" He then cut his own throat.

Jiang Ziya entered Tongguan Pass and issued proclamations to pacify the people. Showing pity on Yu Hualong and his sons, he ordered their corpses to be respectfully buried. The soldiers who had not yet fully recovered were ordered to remain at the pass.



人、玉鼎真人与子牙议曰：“前面就是万仙阵了，可请武王也暂歇在此关；我等领人马往前面，要路上先命人造起芦篷席殿，迎迓三教师尊。我等只此一举，以完劫数，了此红尘之杀运也。”子牙不觉大喜，忙命杨戩、李靖去造芦篷。二人领令去讫。周营众将自从遭痘疹之厄，人人身弱，个个狼狈，俱在关上将息。又过了数日，只见李靖回令：“芦篷俱已完备。”黄龙真人曰：“芦篷既完，只是众门人去得；余者俱离四十里远，扎下团营，俟破阵后，方许起程。”众将得令，就此驻扎。不表。

且说子牙同二位真人，与诸门人弟子，前至芦篷上。但见悬花结彩，香气氤氲，迎接玉虚门下之客，今日万仙阵总会一面，满其红尘杀戒，再去返本還元。不一时这三山五岳众道人齐齐拍手大笑而来：广成子、赤精子、文殊广法天尊、普贤真人、慈航道人、清虚道德真君、太乙真人、灵宝大法师、道行天尊、惧留孙、云中子、燃灯道人，众道人见子牙稽首，曰：“今日之会，正完其一千五百年之劫数。”正是：

元满皈依从正道，静心定性诵“黄庭”。

子牙迎接上篷坐下，先论破阵原故。燃灯曰：“只等师长来，自有道理。”众皆默然端坐。且说金灵圣母在万仙阵中，见燃灯道人顶上现了三花，冲上空中，已知玉虚门下众道者来了；随发一个雷声，振开万仙阵，一块烟雾撒开，现出万仙阵来。芦篷上众仙一见，睁目细看数番，见截教中高高下下，攒攒簇簇，俱是五岳三山四海之中云游道客，奇奇怪怪之人。燃灯点头对众道人叹曰：“今日方知截教有这许多人



The Yellow Dragon Immortal and Jade Tripod said to Jiang Ziya, "The Ten Thousand Immortal Trap is before us; King Wu must remain here where it is safe. We should build a reed pavilion on the road ahead for the immortals. It will be the last time we will be involved in killing in this vulgar world."

Jiang Ziya ordered Yang Jian and Li Jing to go ahead and build the pavilion. When Li Jing returned to report on its completion, the Yellow Dragon Immortal said, "All the disciples may go, but the rest of the generals must stay here."

Jiang Ziya led all the Taoist disciples to the pavilion. It was decorated with flowers and satins and full of sweet fragrance. Soon the other immortals arrived: Master Grand Completion, Pure Essence, Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture, Universal Virtue, Merciful Navigation, Virtue of the Pure Void, Fairy Primordial, Spiritual Treasure, Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue, Krakucchanda, Master of the Clouds, and Burning Lamp.

Jiang Ziya entertained them, and they discussed how to break the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap.

Mother Golden Spirit saw the three flowers soaring in the air above Burning Lamp's head. She knew that all the immortals from the Jade Emptiness Palace had arrived, and trying to entice them, she invoked thunder to drive away the fog and thus expose her trap. The immortals could see many strange figures within.



品。吾教不过屈指可数之人。”正是：

玄都大法传吾辈，方显清虚不二门。

内中有黄龙真人曰：“众位道友，自元始以来，为道独尊，但不知截教门中一意滥传，遍及匪类，真是可惜工夫，苦劳心力，徒费精神；不知性命双修，枉了一生作用，不能免生死轮回之苦，良可悲也！”道行天尊曰：“此一会，正是我等一千五百年之劫，难逢难遇。今我等先下篷看看，如何？”燃灯曰：“吾等不必去看，只等师尊来至，自有会期。”广成子曰：“我等又不与他争论，又不破他的阵，远观何妨？”众道人曰：“广成子言之甚当。”燃灯阻不住众人，只得下篷，一齐来看万仙阵。只见门户重叠，杀气森然。众仙摇首曰：“好利害！人人异样，个个凶形，全无办道修行意，反有争持杀伐心。”燃灯对众人曰：“列位道兄，你看他们可是神仙了道之品！”众仙看罢，方欲回篷，只听万仙阵中一声钟响，来了一位道人作歌而出，歌曰：

“人笑马遂是痴仙，痴仙腹内有真玄。真玄有路无人走，惟我蟠桃赴几千。”

马遂歌罢，大呼曰：“玉虚门下，既来偷看吾阵，敢与我见个高低？”燃灯曰：“你们只贪看恶阵，致多生此一段是非。”黄龙真人上前曰：“马遂，你休要这等自恃。如今吾不与你论高低，且等掌教圣人来至，自有破阵之时。你何必倚仗强横，行凶灭教也。”马遂跃步，仗剑来取。黄龙真人手中剑急忙来迎。只一合，马遂祭起金箍，把黄龙真人的头箍住了。真人头疼不可忍，众仙急救真人，大家回芦篷上来。真人急忙除金箍，除又除不掉，只箍得三昧真火从眼中冒出；



"Jie Taoism preaches carelessly to such base creatures. They labor in vain," the Yellow Dragon Immortal remarked.

"We'd better get a close look," Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue suggested.

"Oh, no! We can see it when our masters arrive," Burning Lamp argued.

"We won't quarrel with them or attack the trap; we'll just look at it from a distance," Grand Completion added.

"Grand Completion is quite right," all the other immortals agreed.

As Burning Lamp could not stop them, he went along as well. They could see strange beings inside the trap; an air of death hung heavily, filling the immortals with dread.

Just as they were about to return, they heard bells ringing. A Taoist appeared from within and shouted, "I'm Ma Sui. Dare you do battle with me?"

"Here comes trouble now," Burning Lamp sighed.

The Yellow Dragon Immortal met him. "Ma Sui, you're not so great. We won't fight with you now, but we'll break your trap easily enough as soon as our leaders have arrived."

Ma Sui attacked him with his sword, and after only one round, threw a gold hoop around the immortal's head. The Yellow Dragon Immortal writhed in pain but was quickly rescued and brought back to the pavilion.





大家闹在一处。不表。且说元始天尊来会万仙阵，先着南极仙翁持玉符先行。南极仙翁跨鹤而来，云光缥缈。马遂抬头，见是南极仙翁，急架云光至半空中来，阻住去路。仙翁笑曰：“马遂，你休要猖獗，掌教师尊来了。”马遂正欲争持，只见后面仙乐一派，遍地异香，马遂知不可争持，按落云头，回归本阵。南极仙翁先至芦篷，率众仙迎鸾接驾，上篷坐下。众门人拜毕，侍立两傍。元始曰：“黄龙真人有金箍之厄。”忙叫：“过来。”黄龙真人走至面前；元始用手一指，金箍随脱。真人谢毕，元始曰：“今日你等俱该圆满此厄，各回洞府，守性修心，斩却三尸，再不惹红尘之难。”众门人曰：“愿老师圣寿无疆！”正静坐间，忽听得空中有一阵异香仙乐，飘飘而来。元始已知老子来至，随同众门人迎候。老子下了板角青牛，携手上篷。众门人礼拜毕，老子拍掌曰：“周家不过八百年基业，贫道也到红尘中来三番四转；可见运数难逃，何怕神仙佛祖。”元始曰：“尘世劫运，便是物外神仙都不能免，况我等门人，又是身犯之者，我等不过来了此一番劫数耳。”二位师尊言过，端然默坐。至二更时分，只见各圣贤顶上现有瓔珞庆云，祥光缭绕，满空中有无限瑞霭，直冲霄汉。且不言二位掌教师尊与众门人默坐芦篷。不表。

且说金灵圣母在万仙阵内，见瑞霭祥云，知二位师伯已至，自思曰：“今日掌教师伯已来，吾师也要早至方可。”及至天明，只听的半空中仙乐盈空，珮环之声不绝，群仙随通天教主离了碧游宫，亲至万仙阵来。金灵圣母得知，率领众仙，迎接教主，进了阵门，上了八卦台坐下。万仙叩谒毕，



The Yellow Dragon Immortal tried to take the hoop off his head but found it was impossible. It was so tight the true samadhi fire went out of his eyes.

The Immortal of the South Pole came in to announce Heavenly Primogenitor's arrival. The religious leader entered the pavilion and said, "The Yellow Dragon Immortal was destined to be caught in this gold hoop. Come here and let me help you."

He pointed at the gold hoop, and it dropped to the ground. After the Yellow Dragon Immortal had thanked him, Heavenly Primogenitor continued, "When we have broken this trap, you must all return to your caves and concentrate there on severing yourselves from all vulgar desires."

"May our master live for ten thousand years!" the immortals hailed him.

Just then soft fairy music and sweet fragrance filled the air. Heavenly Primogenitor led the immortals outside to greet Lao Zi. After all the immortals had respectfully greeted Lao Zi, he said, "For the 800 years of the coming Zhou Dynasty, I have ventured into this vulgar world once more. Fate is difficult to avoid, even for Buddhas and immortals."

From her Ten Thousand Immortal Trap, Mother Golden Spirit could see the auspicious clouds and light over the reed pavilion. She thought, "Since their masters have already arrived, ours will surely be here soon too."

At dawn, sweet music was heard, the Grand Master of Heaven and his disciples were met in front of the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap by Mother Golden Spirit. She reported to her master, "Our two uncles have already arrived."



金灵圣母曰：“二位师伯俱已至此。”通天教主曰：“罢了！如今是月缺难圆。既摆此万仙阵，必定与他见个雌雄，以定一尊之位。今日是万仙统会，以完劫数。”随命长耳定光仙：“你且去芦篷上，见你二位师伯，下这一封书。”定光仙领命，径至芦篷下，见杨戩等俱在左右站立。哪吒问曰：“来者何人？”长耳定光仙曰：“吾是奉命下书，来见师伯的。借你通报。”哪吒上前启知。老子曰：“命来。”哪吒下篷说知。定光仙上得篷来，见左右立着十二代门人，定光仙拜伏于地，将书呈上。老子看书毕，谓定光仙曰：“吾知道了。明日来破万仙阵也。”定光仙下篷至万仙阵，回复通天教主。且说次日，二位教主领众门徒来看万仙阵，下得篷来，至阵前一见，好万仙阵！怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

一团怪雾，几阵寒风。彩霞笼五色金光，瑞云起千丛艳色。前后排山岳修行道士与全真；左右立湖海云游陀头并散客。正东上：九华巾，水合袍，太阿剑，梅花鹿，都是道德清高奇异人；正西上：双抓髻，淡黄袍，古定剑，八叉鹿，尽是驾雾腾云清隐士；正南上：大红袍，黄斑鹿，昆吾剑，正是五遁三除截教公；正北上：皂色服，莲子箍，宾铁铜，跨麋鹿，都是倒海移山雄猛客。翠蓝幡，青云绕绕；素白旗，彩气翩翩；大红旗，火云罩顶；皂盖旗，黑气施张；杏黄幡下千千条古怪的金霞，内藏着天上无、世上少、辟地开天无价宝。又是乌云仙、金光仙、虬首仙神光赳赳；灵牙仙、毘芦仙、金箍仙气概昂昂；七香车坐金灵圣母，分门别户；八虎车坐申公豹，总督万仙；无当圣母法宝随身；龟灵圣母包

The Grand Master of Heaven ordered Fairy Light with Long Ears to deliver a letter to the leaders of Chan Taoism in the reed pavilion. Escorted in, the Jie Taoist disciple knelt as Lao Zi read the letter. "We shall meet you to break the trap tomorrow," he said when he had finished.

The next day, the two masters left the pavilion to inspect the trap. As they were looking around, the Grand Master of Heaven appeared, followed by 3,000 disciples. Lao Zi could see by his fierce expression that he meant business.





罗万象。金钟响，翻腾宇宙；玉磬敲，惊动乾坤；提炉排，袅袅香烟龙雾隐；羽扇摇，翩翩彩凤离瑶池。奎牛上坐的是混沌未分、天地玄黄之外、鸿钧教下通天截教主。只见长耳仙持定了神书奥妙道德无穷兴截灭阐六魂幡。左右金童随圣驾，紫雾红云离碧游。通天教主身心变，只因一怒结成仇。两教生克终有损，天翻地覆鬼神愁。昆仑正法扶明主，山河一统属西周。

话说老子同元始来看万仙阵，老子一见万仙阵，与元始曰：“他教下就有这些门人！据我看来，总是不分品类，一概滥收，那论根器深浅，岂是了道成仙之辈。此一回玉石自分，浅深互见。遭劫者，可不枉用工夫，可胜叹息！”话犹未了，只见通天教主从阵中坐奎牛而出，穿大红白鹤绛绡衣，手执宝剑而来。老子看通天教主全无道气，一脸凶光。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

辟地开天道理明，谈经论法碧游京，五气朝元传妙诀，  
三花聚顶演无生。顶上金光分五彩，足下红莲逐万程。  
八卦仙衣飞紫气，三锋宝剑号青蕨。伏虎降龙为第一，  
擒妖缚怪任纵横。徒众三千分左右，后随万姓尽精英。  
天花乱坠无穷妙，地拥金莲长瑞祯。度尽众生成正果，  
养成正道属无声。对对幡幢前引道，纷纷音乐及时鸣。  
奎牛稳坐截教主，仙童前后把香焚。霭霭沉檀云雾长，  
腾腾杀气自氤氲。白鹤唳时天地转，青鸾展翅海山澄。  
通天教主离金阙，来聚群仙百万名。

话说通天教主见二位教主，对面打稽首，曰：“二位道兄请了！”老子曰：“贤弟可谓无赖之极！不思悔过，何能掌截教之

The Grand Master of Heaven greeted them, "How do you do, Brothers."

"You are so shameless, Brother. How can you be the head of Jie Taoism? You should have asked forgiveness after the Immortal Slaughtering Trap. How can you be so wicked as to set up this new one?" Lao Zi reproached him.





主?前日诛仙阵上已见雌雄,只当潜踪隐迹,自己修过,以忤往愆,方是掌教之主;岂得怙恶不改,又率领群仙布此恶阵。你只待玉石俱焚,生灵戕灭殆尽,你方才罢手,这是何苦定作此业障耶!”通天教主怒曰:“你等谬掌阐教,自恃己长,纵容门人,肆行猖獗,杀戮不道,反在此巧言惑众。我是那一件不如你?你敢欺我!今日你再请西方准提道人将加持杵打我就是了。不知他打我即是打你一般。此恨如何可解!”元始笑曰:“你也不必口讲,只你既摆此阵,就把你胸中学识舒展一二,我与你共决雌雄。”通天教主曰:“我如今与你仇恨难解,除是你我俱不掌教,方才干休!”通天教主道罢,走进阵去;少时,布成一个阵势,乃是一个阵结三个营垒,攒簇而立。通天教主至阵前问曰:“你二人可识吾此阵否?”老子大笑曰:“此乃是吾掌中所出,岂有不知之理。此是太极两仪四象之阵耳!有何难哉!”通天教主曰:“可能破否?”元始曰:“你且听吾道来:

混元初判道为尊,炼就乾坤清浊分。太极两仪生四象,如今还在掌中存。”

老子问曰:“谁去破此太极阵走一遭?”赤精子大呼曰:“弟子愿会此阵!”作歌而出,歌曰:

“今朝圆满斩三尸,复整菩提在此时。太极阵中遇奇士,回头百事自相宜。”

赤精子跃身而出。只见太极阵中一位道人,长须黑面,身穿皂服,腰束丝绦,跳出阵前,大呼曰:“赤精子,你敢来会吾阵么?”赤精子曰:“乌云仙,你不可恃强,此处是你的死地了!”乌云仙大怒,仗剑来取。赤精子手中剑赴面交还。未



“Don’t think you’re better than me! You can ask Buddha Candi to beat me again today with his club, but don’t you know that we are really one? Didn’t you feel pain when I was hit by the Buddha? I’ll never forget it,” the Grand Master of Heaven said angrily.

He then went back into his trap and set up another trap inside. When he returned, he asked, “Do you know the name of the trap I just set up?”

Lao Zi burst into laughter. “Of course. It was my own invention. It uses the four bearings of two polarities in a diagram of the cosmos. There’s nothing difficult about that at all.”

“Are you sure you can break it?” the Grand Master of Heaven asked again.

Lao Zi turned to the immortals. “Who will go and break that trap?”

“Let me go,” Pure Essence replied.

He leapt forward and saw a Taoist with a black beard wearing a black robe blocking his way “Fairy Black Cloud, you have no talent. You will die right here,” Pure Essence said.

Black Cloud waved his sword, and Pure Essence returned the blow. After about three rounds, Black Cloud pulled out his Universe Muddling





及三四个回合，乌云仙腰间掣出混元锤就打，一声响，把赤精子打了一跤。乌云仙才待下手，有广成子大呼曰：“少待伤吾道兄，吾来了！”仗剑抵住了乌云仙。二人大战，未及数合，乌云仙又是一锤把广成子打倒在地。广成子爬将起来，往西北上走了。通天教主命乌云仙赶去，“定然拿来！”乌云仙领法旨，随后赶来。广成子前走；乌云仙后赶。看看赶上，广成子正无可奈何，转过山坡，只见准提道人来至。让过了广成子，准提阻住了乌云仙，笑容满面，口称：“道友请了！”乌云仙认得是准提道人，大叫曰：“准提道人，你前日在诛仙阵上伤了吾师，今又阻吾去路，情殊可恨！”仗宝剑望准提道人顶上劈来。道人把口一张，有一朵青莲托住了剑。言曰：

“舌上青莲能托剑，吾与乌云有大缘。”

准提曰：“道友，我与你是有缘之客，特来化你归吾西方，共享极乐，有何不美？”乌云仙大呼曰：“好泼道！欺吾太甚！”又是一剑。准提用中指一指，一朵白莲托剑。准提又曰：“道友，

掌上白莲能托剑，须知极乐在西方。二六莲台生瑞彩，波罗花放满园香。”

乌云仙大呼曰：“一派胡说！敢来欺我！”又是一剑。准提将手一指，一朵金莲托住。准提曰：“乌云仙友，吾乃是大慈大悲，不忍你现出真相，若是现时，可不有辱你平昔修炼工夫，化为乌有。我如今不过要与你兴西方教法，故此善善化你，幸祈急早回头。”乌云仙大怒，又是一剑砍来。准提将拂尘一刷，乌云仙手中剑只剩得一个靶儿。乌云仙大怒，拎



Hammer and knocked Pure Essence to the ground. Before Black Cloud could slay him, Grand Completion shouted loudly, "Don't hurt my brother! Here come I!"

After several rounds, Black Cloud struck out with Universe Muddling Hammer again. But Grand Completion got up quickly and fled towards the northwest.

"Don't let him get away! Take him captive!" the Grand Master of Heaven ordered.

Just when it seemed Black Cloud was about to catch him, Grand Completion saw Candi coming his way.

Candi stopped Fairy Black Cloud. He smiled and said, "How do you do?"

Fairy Black Cloud roared, "Oh, Buddha Candi! You hurt my master not long ago in the Immortal Slaughtering Trap. How dare you stop me today."

As Fairy Black Cloud slashed at him with his sword, Buddha Candi opened his mouth, and a green lotus flower popped out to block his attack. He said, "We are destined to be friends. I have come to convert you to Buddhism. You will enjoy happiness in the Western Region."

"You bloody Buddha! You've gone too far this time," Black Cloud yelled wildly, slashing again with his sword.

Candi pointed his finger, and a white lotus flower stopped his advance as before. He said again, "Can't you see the white lotus flower in my palm holding back your sword? Don't you realize the most happy land is the Western Region? Lotus flowers and the scent of pineapples fill the garden there."

"Don't try to trick me, talking all this nonsense!" Fairy Black Cloud screamed loudly.

"Black Cloud, in my mercy and kindness I will take pity on you. I won't suppress you and force you to return to your original shape. You would lose the vitality you've gained through so many years of hard work. I have come to you in goodwill and hope you will turn your mind toward the bright light without further delay," Buddha Candi said sincerely.

起混元锤打来。准提就跳出圈子去了。乌云仙随后赶来。准提曰：“徒弟在那里？”只见了一个童儿来，身穿水合衣，手执竹枝而来。不知乌云仙凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



Fairy Black Cloud grew even more furious. He lifted his sword to slay Candi, but the Buddha brushed it away with his dust whisk.

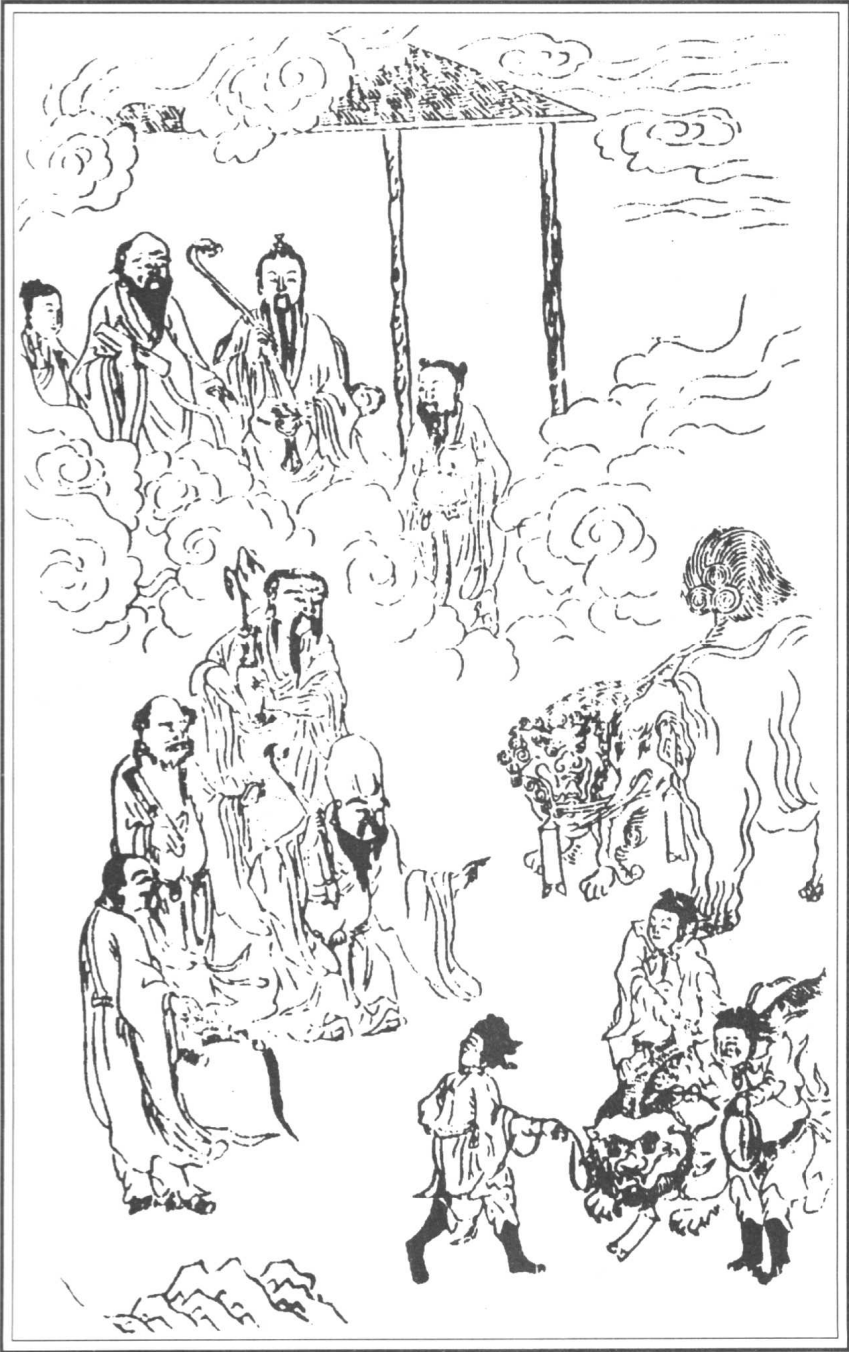
Seething with anger, Fairy Black Cloud had to rely on his Universe Muddling Hammer. But when he attacked again, Candi jumped out of the circle and cried, "Where's my disciple?"

The Water and Fire Lad, holding a bamboo pole, suddenly appeared.

What became of Black Cloud? Please read the next chapter to find out.







## 第八十三回

### 三大师收狮象狻

诗曰：

一钩明月半轮秋，三点如星仔细求。狮象有名缘相立，  
慈航无着借形修。朝元最忌贪嗔败，脱骨须知挂碍仇。  
总为诸仙逢杀劫，披毛带角尽皆休。

话说准提道人命水火童子：“将六根清静竹，来钓金鳌。”童子向空中将竹枝垂下，那竹枝就有无限光华异彩，裹住了乌云仙；乌云仙此时难逃现身之厄。准提叫曰：“乌云仙，你此时不现原形，更待何时！”只见乌云仙把头摇了一摇，化作一个金须鳌鱼，剪尾摇头，上了钓竿。童子上前，按住了乌云仙的头，将身骑上鳌鱼背上，径往西方八德池中受享极乐之福去了。正是：

八德池中闲戏耍，金莲为伴任逍遥。

话说准提道人收了金鳌，赶至万仙阵前。通天教主看见准提，怒冲面上，眼角俱红，大呼曰：“准提道人，你今日又来会吾此阵，吾决不与你干休！”准提道人曰：“乌云仙与吾有缘，被吾用六根清静竹钓去西方八德池边，自在逍遥，无罣无碍，真强如你在此红尘中扰攘也。”通天教主听罢大怒，正欲与准提厮杀，只听得太极阵中一人作歌而出，歌曰：

“大道非凡道，玄中玄更玄。谁能参悟透，咫尺见先天。”



## Chapter 83

### Subjugation of Lion, Elephant and Jaguar

Water Fire Lad stood before Black Cloud with his bamboo fishing rod. A bright light flashed on the fairy.

“Black Cloud, why are you still unwilling to expose your true form?” Buddha Candi asked.

With a shake of his head, Black Cloud turned into a great turtle with a golden beard. He reached up and bit the hook Water Fire Lad held before him.

Water Fire Lad then climbed its back and returned on the turtle to the Eight Virtue Pond. Candi went to the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap, where catching sight of him, the Grand Master of Heaven shouted angrily, “Buddha Candi, you won’t get away this time!”

“I caught Black Cloud with my bamboo pole and put him in the Eight Virtue Pond to enjoy happiness in the Western Region. He is far better off than you, free from all the troubles in this vulgar world,” Buddha Candi said.







话说太极阵中虬首仙提剑而出：“谁人敢进吾阵中来，共决雌雄？”准提道人曰：“文殊广法天尊，借你去会此位有缘之客。”准提道人把文殊广法天尊顶上一指，泥丸复开，三光迸出，瑞气盘旋。元始天尊递一幡与文殊，名曰盘古幡，“可破此太极阵。”文殊广法天尊接幡作偈而出，偈曰：

“混元一气此为先，万劫修持合太玄。莫道此中多变化，汞铅消尽福无边。”

文殊广法天尊歌罢，虬首仙大呼曰：“今日之功，各显其教，不必多言！”仗手中剑砍来。文殊广法天尊手中剑急架相还。未及数合，虬首仙便往阵中而去。文殊广法天尊纵步赶来。虬首仙进阵，便祭起符印，只见阵中如铁壁铜墙一般，兵刃如山。文殊广法天尊将盘古幡展动，镇住了太极阵，广法天尊现出一法身来。怎见得，有赞为证：

面如蓝靛，赤发红髯。浑身上五彩呈祥，遍体内金光拥护。降魔杵滚滚红焰飞来；金莲边腾腾霞光乱舞。正是：太极阵中皈依大法现威光，朵朵祥云笼八面。

虬首仙见广法天尊现出一位化身，甚是奇异，只见香风缥缈，瓔珞缠身，莲花托足。虬首仙无法可治，正欲回避；文殊忙将捆妖绳祭起，命黄巾力士：“拿去芦篷下，听候发落。”广法天尊收了法像，徐徐出阵，上篷来见元始，曰：“弟子已破太极阵矣。”元始命南极仙翁：“去芦篷下，将虬首仙打出原身。”仙翁领命至篷下，见虬首仙缚住一团。南极仙翁对虬首仙口中念念有词，道声：“疾！还不速现原形，更待何时！”只见虬首仙把头摇了两摇，就地一滚，乃是一个青毛狮子，剪尾摇头，甚是雄伟。南极仙翁回复元始天尊



Before the Grand Master of Heaven had a chance to attack Candi, Fairy Dragon appeared in front of the Cosmological Scheme Trap. "Who dares enter this trap?" he challenged them all.

"Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture! You go next. He's destined to be yours," Candi ordered.

He pointed at Outstanding Culture's head and three beams of light covered him with an auspicious aura. Heavenly Primogenitor then gave him the Pangu Pennant.

Outstanding Culture and Dragon Head fought several rounds before Dragon Head gave up ground and ducked into the trap.

Dragon Head threw up his stamp, enclosing the trap with iron walls and brass partitions. Cutlasses, swords, and lances filled the space between. Outstanding Culture waved his Pangu Pennant to fend off the evil forces and then transformed himself into a strange figure scented with fragrant breezes and covered with pearls, jade, and lotus flowers. He then threw up his Sprite Binding Rope and ordered his yellow-scarved genii to carry Dragon Head back to the pavilion.

Heavenly Primogenitor ordered the Immortal of the South Pole to beat Dragon Head into his original shape. The immortal went outside and found Dragon Head wrapped up in a bundle. He recited some charms and then shouted, "Quick! What are you waiting for! Change back to what you once were!"

Dragon Head shook his head twice. He rolled on the ground and changed into a lion with a green mane. Heavenly Primogenitor ordered



命令。元始分付：“就命广法天尊坐骑，仍于项下挂一牌，上书虬首仙名讳。”次日，老子与元始亲临阵前，问：“通天教主何在？”左右报与通天教主，径出阵前。老子命文殊骑了青狮至前面，老子指与通天教主看，曰：“你的门下，长有此等之物，你还要自逞道德清高，真是可笑！”就把个通天教主羞红满面，大怒曰：“你再敢破吾两仪阵么？”老子尚未及回言，只见两仪阵内灵牙仙大呼而出曰：“谁敢来破吾两仪阵么？”正是：

袖里乾坤翻上下，两仪阵内定高低。

灵牙仙径出阵来，问：“谁敢来见吾此阵？”元始命普贤真人曰：“你去破此阵走一遭。”遂将太极符印付与普贤真人。真人至阵前曰：“灵牙仙，你若行成形，为何不守本分，又来多此一番事也。只怕你咫尺间现了原形，那时悔之晚矣。”灵牙仙大怒，仗二剑飞来直取。普贤真人仗手中剑火速忙迎。未及数合，灵牙仙便往两仪阵中而去；普贤真人赶入阵内。灵牙仙祭动两仪妙用，逞截教玄功，发动雷声，来困普贤真人。只见普贤真人泥丸宫现出化身，甚是凶恶。怎见得，有赞为证：

面如紫枣，巨口獠牙。霎时间红云笼顶上，一会家瑞彩罩金身。瓔珞垂珠挂遍体，莲花托足起祥云。三首六臂持利器，手内降魔杵一根。正是：有福西方成正果，真人今日已完成。

话说普贤真人现出法身，镇住灵牙仙，仍用长虹索，命黄巾力士：“将灵牙仙拿去芦篷下，听候指挥。”普贤真人破了两仪阵，径至芦篷上，参见老子。老子命南极仙翁：“速现灵

Outstanding Culture to use the lion as a saddle beast. Lao Zi then told the immortal to ride the green lion to the front with them.

“How ridiculous you are to boast of your high and pure virtue with disciples like this!” Lao Zi said sarcastically, pointing at the lion.

Blushing red, the Grand Master of Heaven shouted back furiously, “Dare you come to break my Two Polarity Trap?”

Without waiting for Lao Zi’s answer, Fairy Spiritual Teeth rushed out from the trap and yelled, “Who dares to enter?”

Heavenly Primogenitor ordered, “Universal Virtue, you may go.”

Spiritual Teeth attacked Universal Virtue with his sword but gave up ground after several rounds and ran into the trap, chased by the immortal. Spiritual Teeth then produced thunder with the force from the trap, but Universal Virtue quickly transformed himself into a creature with three heads and six arms. His faces were purple, his wide mouths full of tusks, and he rode on lotus flowers. His whole body was covered with pearls and jewel necklaces.

He threw up his long Rainbow Cord and ordered his yellow-scarved genii to carry Spiritual Teeth back to the pavilion. Lao Zi ordered the





牙仙原身。”南极仙翁领令，将三宝玉如意把灵牙仙连击数下。灵牙仙就地一滚，现出原形，乃是一只白象。老子分付：“将白象颈上也挂一牌，上书灵牙仙名讳，与普贤真人为坐骑。”复至阵前。通天教主见青狮在左，白象在右，不觉大怒，正欲上前，只见四象阵中金光仙大呼曰：“阐教门人不要逞强，吾来也！”乃作歌而出，歌曰：

“妙法广无边，身心合汞铅。今领四象阵，道术岂多言。二指降龙虎，双眸运大玄。谁人来会我，方是大罗仙。”

元始见金光仙出得四象阵来，勇猛莫敌，忙分付慈航道人曰：“你将如意执定，进四象阵去，直须……如此如此，就变化无穷，何愁此阵不破也；此是你有缘之骑。”慈航道人作歌而出，歌曰：

“普陀崖下有名声，了劫归根返玉京。今日已完收四象，梦魂犹自怕临兵。”

慈航歌罢，金光仙跃身而出，大呼曰：“慈航道人，你口出大言，肆行无忌，好个‘今日已完收四象’，只怕你死于目前！不要走，正要拿你！”仗手中剑飞来直取。慈航道人手中剑急架忙迎。未及三合，金光仙便入四象阵去了。慈航赶入阵中。金光仙将四象阵符印发开，内有无穷法宝，来治慈航道人。正是：

四象阵遇金毛犼，潮音洞里听谈经。

话说慈航道人见四象阵中变化无穷，忙将头上一拍，有一朵庆云笼罩，盖住顶上，只听得一声雷响，现出一位化身，怎见得：

Immortal of the South Pole to beat the fairy into his original shape. Spiritual Teeth rolled on the ground and changed into a white elephant. Lao Zi ordered Universal Virtue to take it as his mount.

The Grand Master of Heaven was furious when he saw the green lion and white elephant on either side of his enemies. But before he could move, Golden Light roared from the Four Bearings Trap, "Here I come! You'd better watch out now, you disciples of Chan Taoism."

Heavenly Primogenitor ordered Merciful Navigation to take him with his S-shaped weapon. The immortal ran out to meet Golden Light, who leapt forward and attacked him.

After three rounds, Golden Light ran into his trap and tried to stop the immortal with his charms and magic weapons. But as before, Merciful Navigation turned himself into a three-headed being, protected from above by an auspicious cloud and from below by a golden turtle. He held a club and the S-shaped weapon.





面如傅粉，三首六臂。二目中火光焰里见金龙；两耳内朵朵金莲生瑞彩。足踏金鳌，霭霭祥云千万道；手中托杵，巍巍紫气彻青霄。三宝如意擎在手，长毫光灿灿；杨柳在肘后，有瑞气腾腾。正是：普陀妙法庄严，方显慈航道行。

且说金光仙看见阐教内门人这等化身，自叹曰：“真好一个玉虚门下，果然气宇不同！”欲待逃回，早已被慈航道人祭起三宝玉如意，命黄巾力士：“把此物拿去篷下，听候发落。”少时，力士平空把金光仙拿至芦篷下。南极仙翁在篷下等候，忽见空中丢下金光仙来，南极仙翁见金光仙跌下篷来，遵老子命令，将金光仙颈上连拍几下：“这业障还不速现原形，更待何时！”金光仙情知不能逃脱，就地一滚，现出原形，乃是一只金毛猿。仙翁至芦篷回覆法旨。元始分付：“也与他颈上挂一牌，书金光仙名讳，就与慈航为坐骑。”仙翁一一如命施为。慈航骑了，复出阵前。——此乃是三大师收伏狮、象、猿；后兴释门，成于佛教，为文殊、普贤、观音，是三位大士；此是后话，表过不题。——且说通天教主见如此光景，心中大怒，方欲仗剑前来，以决雌雄，忽听得后面一门人大呼曰：“老师不要动怒，吾来也！”通天教主观之，乃是龟灵圣母，身穿大红八卦衣，仗手中宝剑，作歌而来，歌曰：

“炎帝修成大道通，胸藏万象妙无穷。碧游宫内传真诀，特向红尘西破戎。”

只见龟灵圣母欲来拿广成子报仇，这壁厢有惧留孙迎上前来曰：“那业障慢来！”老子、元始、准提道人三位教主是慧



Golden Light had no time to escape. He was carried, like his fellow fairies, to the pavilion. When the Immortal of the South Pole patted his neck and yelled, "Why don't you recover your original form? What are you waiting for, you poor beast?" Golden Light rolled on the ground and turned into a jaguar with golden fur. Merciful Navigation took this animal as his riding beast.

Not long thereafter, Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture became the Bodhisattva of Outstanding Culture, Universal Virtue became the Bodhisattva of Universal Virtue, and Merciful Navigation became *Guanyin*, the Buddhist Goddess of Mercy.

Faced with such humiliation, the Grand Master of Heaven seethed in anger, but once again, he was stopped by a loud voice from behind, "Don't be angry, dear Master. Here come I!"

It was Mother Spiritual Tortoise. Knowing that she wanted to take Grand Completion captive in revenge for their past dispute, Krakucchanda rushed forward to meet her.





眼，看见龟灵圣母行相，元始笑曰：“二位道兄，似这样东西，如何也要成正果，真个好笑！”——你道他如何出身，有赞为证：

根源出处号帮泥，水底增光独显威。世隐能知天地性，  
灵惶偏晓鬼神机。藏身一缩无头尾，展足能行即自飞。  
苍颉造字须成体，卜筮先知伴伏羲。穿萍透苻千般俏，  
戏水翻波把浪吹。条条金线穿成甲，点点装成玳瑁齐。  
九宫八卦生成定，散碎铺遮绿羽衣。生来好勇龙王幸，  
死后还驼三教碑。要知此物名何姓，炎帝得道母乌龟。

且说龟灵圣母仗剑出来，与惧留孙大战，未及三五合，急祭起日月珠打来。惧留孙不识此宝，不敢招架，转身往西而败走。通天教主大呼曰：“速将惧留孙拿来！”龟灵圣母飞赶前来。惧留孙——乃是西方有缘之客，久后入于释教，大阐佛法，兴于西汉。——正往西上逃走，只见迎头来了一人，头挽双髻，身穿水合道袍，徐徐而来，让过惧留孙，阻住龟灵圣母，大呼曰：“不要赶吾道友。你既修成人体，礼当守分安居，如何肆志乱行，作此业障。若不听吾之言，那时迫悔何及！你可速回，吾乃西方教主，大展沙门，今来特遇有缘，非是无端惹事。”正是：

“若是有缘当早会，同上西方极乐天。”

龟灵圣母大呼曰：“你是西方客，当守你巢穴，如何敢在此妖言乱语，惑吾清听！”也不及交手，急祭日月珠劈面打来。接引道人指上放一白毫光，光上生一朵青莲，托住此珠。西方教主曰：“青莲托此物，众生那得知。”龟灵圣母原非根深行满之辈，不知进退，依旧用此珠打来。接引道人曰：“既到

After three rounds, Mother Spiritual Tortoise tossed up her Sun-and-Moon Pearl. Not daring to meet it, Krakucchanda had to turn and run westward. Mother Spiritual Tortoise chased after him at her master's order.

Krakucchanda was destined to become a Buddha, so he soon met a man coming from the west, his hair done up in double coils and wearing a loose robe. The man stopped Mother Spiritual Tortoise, and the latter tried to attack him again and again with her Sun-and-Moon Pearl. Buddha was finally compelled to throw up his bead roll. The fairy was knocked to the ground, where she immediately turned into a huge female tortoise.





此间，也免不得行此红尘之事；非是我不慈悲，乃是气数使然，我也难为自主。我且将此宝祭起，看他如何。”西方教主将念珠祭起，龟灵圣母一见，躲身不及，那念珠落下，正打在龟灵圣母背上，压倒在地，现出原身，乃是一个大龟，只见压得头足齐出。惧留孙方欲仗剑斩之，西方教主急止之曰：“道友不可杀他，若动此念，转劫难完，相报不已。”教主呼：“童子在那里？”西方教主言未毕，只见一童走至面前，西方教主曰：“我同此位道友去会有缘之客；你可将此畜收之。”接引道人同惧留孙赴芦篷来。不表。

且说西方白莲童子将一小小包儿打开，欲收龟灵圣母，不意走出一件好东西，甚是利害，声音细细，映日飞来。怎见得，有诗为证：

声若轰雷嘴若针，穿衾度幔更难禁。贪餐血食侵人体，畏避烟熏集茂林。炎热愈威偏聒噪，寒风才动便无情。龟灵圣母因逢劫，难免群锋若聚簪。

话说白莲童子打开包裹，放出蚊虫，那蚊虫闻得血腥气，俱来叮在龟灵圣母头足之上，及至赶打，如何赶得彻；未曾赶得这里，那里又宿满了。不一时，把龟灵圣母吸成空壳。白莲童子急至收时，他也自四散飞去，一翅飞往西方，把十二品莲台食了三品。——后来西方教主破了万仙阵回来，方能收住，已是少了三品莲台，追悔无及。正是：

九品莲台登彼岸，千年之后有沙门。

不表蚊虫之事，且说西方教主同惧留孙来至万仙阵前，见了紫雾红云，黄光缭绕，有准提道人见师兄来至，老子与元始忙迎上前，打稽首曰：“道友请了！”对面通天教主看见，大

Krakucchanda was about to cut off her head when the Buddha stopped him, saying, "Don't kill her. Disaster will only befall you if you endlessly seek revenge."

Buddha then ordered his lad to take the creature away while he and Krakucchanda returned to the pavilion. The lad took out a small bag for the tortoise and was trying to fit it in when a huge swarm of insects flew over and covered the sky in a black mass.

These were ugly, blood-sucking mosquitoes, which landed all over the head and feet of the tortoise, stinging and sucking its blood faster than the lad could drive them away. In no time at all, only Spiritual Tortoise's shell remained, its meat sucked and eaten away. White Lotus Lad came to the rescue, but it was already too late, as the devil mosquitoes had flown away to the west. In the Western Region, they devoured the lotus flowers in three of the twelve ponds and were only stopped after Buddha returned.

When the Grand Master of Heaven saw Buddha standing with Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor, he screamed loudly, "Buddha Usher! You





呼曰：“接引道人，你前番可恶，破吾诛仙阵；今又来此！吾与你见个高下！”道罢，把奎牛催开，用剑来取。西方教主也不动手，只见泥丸宫舍利子升起三颗，或上或下，反覆翻腾，遍地俱是金光。通天教主宝剑架隔，不能近身。通天教主大怒，复用渔鼓打来。准提用手一指，一朵金莲架住，亦不能近身。老子与元始请曰：“二位道兄暂回，今日且不要与他较量。”赤精子听罢，忙鸣金钟；广成子又击玉磬。四位教主皆回。通天教主又不能阻拦，心中大怒，曰：“今日且让他暂回，明日决要会你等，以见高下！”老子曰：“你且回去，不要性急。”

只见四位教主回至芦篷上坐下，元始曰：“二位道兄此来共佐周室，若明日破阵，必尽除此教，以绝彼之虚妄。只是难为后来访道修真之人，绝此一种耳。”接引道人曰：“贫道此来，单只为渡有缘之客。据吾观，万仙阵中邪者多而正者少，没办法，只得随缘相得，不敢勉强耳。”老子曰：“吾等门人今已满戒，明日速破此阵，让他早早返本還元，以全此辈根行，也不失我等解脱一场。”元始随命姜尚过来，问曰：“前日破诛仙阵，那四口宝剑在否？”子牙曰：“此剑俱在弟子处。”元始曰：“取来。”子牙随取出四口剑献上元始，乃“诛”、“戮”、“陷”、“绝”之剑。元始乃命广成子、赤精子、玉鼎真人，道行天尊四人过来，分付曰：“你四人但看明日吾等进阵之时，阵里面八卦台前有一座宝塔升起，你四个先冲进重围之中，祭起此剑。原是他的宝剑，还绝他的门人，非吾等故作此恶业也。”又谓子牙曰：“明日会阵之际，但凡吾门下见者，皆可进阵，以完劫数。”子牙领了法旨，



wickedly broke my Immortal Slaughtering Trap. How dare you come again!"

He attacked Buddha with his sword. Without moving his hands, Buddha fended off the blows with three luminous Buddhist relics which had burst from his head. They danced about as the blows fell, spreading golden light all around.

The Grand Master of Heaven then attacked Candi with a Fishing Drum, but it was blocked by a golden lotus flower from Buddha Candi's finger.

Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor said to the Buddhas, "Let's not trouble ourselves further today. We should go back and rest for awhile, Brothers."

Returning to the tent, Heavenly Primogenitor said, "Dear Buddhist Brothers, we thank you heartily for coming in support of the Zhou Dynasty. We must exterminate all those mean creatures tomorrow."

"I've come to look for those who will join our religion, but it seems there are only few decent ones left in that Ten Thousand Immortal Trap. I can only try my best, and never daring act against the will of Heaven," Buddha replied.

"It's nearly time to free our disciples from this disaster. We ought to break the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap tomorrow so that they can recover their original vitality and resume their study of the Way," Lao Zi remarked.

Heavenly Primogenitor then asked Jiang Ziya to bring in the swords which had been taken from the Immortal Slaughtering trap.

When the swords were presented, Heavenly Primogenitor called over Grand Completion, Pure Essence, Jade Tripod and Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue. "Tomorrow when a pagoda rises in the air, you four are to fight your way into the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap with these swords. Use the swords to destroy them all. Let their own weapons do the work against them," he ordered.

"All the disciples may join the battle as destined," Heavenly Primogenitor said to Jiang Ziya.



来至芦篷下，分付众门人曰：“明日共破万仙阵，尔等俱入阵中，各见雌雄，以完劫数。”众门人听说，喜不自胜。不表。

且说潼关众将听得破万仙阵，俱在关内，一个个心痒难抓，恨不得也来看看。内有洪锦与龙吉公主曰：“我也是截教，况你又是瑶池仙子，理合去会万仙阵，如何在此不行？”龙吉公主曰：“我们明日早去无妨。”夫妻计议停当。次日，来见武王曰：“臣辞大王，要去会万仙阵，以完劫数，特听姜元帅调遣。”武王曰：“卿去固好，当佐相父破敌也。”武王大喜，奉酒饯行。洪锦夫妇告别起行。——也是合该如此。正是：

万仙阵内夫妻绝，天数安排不得差。

且说元始次日下篷，分付众门人，鸣动金钟、玉磬。三教圣人率诸门人共破万仙阵。只见通天教主分付长耳定光仙曰：“但吾与你师伯共西方二位道人会战，吾叫你将六魂幡磨动，你可将幡磨动，不得有悞！”长耳定光仙曰：“弟子知道。”通天教主打点会战。且说长耳定光仙自思：“我前只见师伯左右门人，总共十二代弟子，俱是道德之士；昨日又见西方教主，三颗舍利子顶上光华，真是道法无边。”先自有三分退怯。正是：

从来心上修仙道，邪正方知成大宗。

话说通天教主至阵前，见老子、元始四人一至，大呼曰：“今日定要与你等见个高低，断不草率干休！”话犹未了，只见洪锦走马至阵前，与龙吉公主也不听约束，举刀刃直冲杀过去。子牙拦阻不住。——看官：此正是这二位星官该绝于此，天数使然，故不由分说，直杀过去耳。——洪锦把刀一



Jiang Ziya went outside and told the disciples, "We shall break the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap tomorrow. You may all join in."

When the news reached Tongguan Pass, all the generals grew excited, hoping to watch or join in. Hong Jin said to Princess Long Ji, "I am a member of Jie Taoism and you are a fairy from the Jade Pond. We should join the battle but we can do nothing so long as we're confined here. What shall we do?"

The princess agreed that they should go, and the next morning both went to request permission from King Wu to join the disciples at the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap. He agreed heartily with their proposal and toasted them before they set off for the front.

When all was prepared, Heavenly Primogenitor ordered his disciples to ring the golden bell and sound the jade pieces as a signal ready to attack the trap.

The Grand Master of Heaven ordered Fairy Light with Long Ears to wave the Six Soul Pennant on his order. The fairy prepared to do as he was told, but at the same time, he was thinking, "My uncles' disciples have all learned the Way well. I was impressed yesterday by the three luminous Buddha relics above the heads of the two Buddhist leaders."

Seeing the four religious leaders before him, the Grand Master of Heaven shouted loudly, "I will fight you all to the last. I'll not stop until we have the true winner."

Suddenly Hong Jin and Princess Long Ji rushed forward to attack the trap; Jiang Ziya had no time to stop them, but they were destined to lose their lives anyway in the trap.





摆，两骑马冲进阵中。万仙阵不曾提防有此冲突之患，被龙吉公主祭起瑶池内白光剑，伤了数位仙家。夫妻二人正冲杀间，只见乱腾腾杀气迷空，黑靄靄阴风晦昼，正遇金灵圣母在七香车上布阵，忽报：“龙吉公主冲进阵来。”金灵圣母急下车看时，公主已杀至面前。圣母绰步，提飞金剑抵敌。未及数合，圣母祭起四象塔打来。公主不知此宝，躲不及，一塔正打中顶上，跌下马来，被众仙杀之。洪锦见公主已绝，大叫一声：“休伤吾公主！”把刀来取圣母。圣母又祭起龙虎如意，正中洪锦顶上。可怜！自归周土，屡得奇功，今日夫妻阵亡，以报武王。——二位清魂俱往封神台去了。元始正欲与通天教主答话，只见洪锦夫妻已亡，元始叹谓西方教主曰：“方才绝者乃是瑶池金母之女。天数合该如此，可见非人力所为。”只听得万仙阵门里有一竿翠蓝旗摇，隐隐调出一位道者，乃是按二十八宿之星，正应万仙阵而出。元始见翠蓝旗摇动，来了四位道人，俱穿青色衣。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

一字青纱脑后飘，道袍水合束丝绦。元神一现群龟灭，  
斩将封为角木蛟。九扬纱巾头上盖，腹内玄机无比赛。  
降龙伏虎似平常，斩将封为斗木豸。三柳髭须一尺长，  
炼就三花不老方。蓬莱海岛无心恋，斩将封为奎木狼。  
修成道气精光焕，巨口獠牙红发乱。碧游宫内有声名，  
斩将封为井木犴。

元始又见一声钟响，一杆大红旗摇，又来了四位道人，俱穿大红绛绡衣，好凶恶！怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

碧玉霞冠形容古，双手善把天地补。无心访道学长生，



Caught off guard by their attack, several fairies in the trap were wounded or killed when the two fought their way inside.

Mother Golden Spirit was busy setting up her trap when she learned that Princess Long Ji had broken her way in. Rushing over in her Seven Fragrance Coach, she saw the princess before her. The two began a fierce battle, and after several rounds, Golden Spirit hit the princess right on the neck with her Pagodas of Four Bearings. She fell from her saddle and was stabbed to death.

A witness to the sacrifice of his wife, Hong Jin yelled madly and attacked Golden Spirit with his cutlass. She threw her S-shaped jade Dragon Tiger weapon at him, smashing his head to pieces. He died instantly, and both their souls flew to the Terrace of Creation.

“They were fated to die here,” Heavenly Primogenitor said to the Buddhist leaders with a long sigh.

Waiting before the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap, the four religious leaders could see a green flag with four Taoist fairies dressed in green behind. They were to be the Gods of the four stars Wood Insect, Wood Flood Dragon, Wood Wolf, and Wood Elk.

A red flag appeared with another four Taoist fairies in red. Ugly and fierce, these four were to be the Gods of stars Fire Tiger, Fire Swine, Fire Snake, and Fire Monkey.



斩将封为尾火虎。截教传来炼玉枢，玄机两济用工夫。  
丹砂鼎内龙降虎，斩将封为室火猪。秘授口诀伏妖邪，  
顶上灵云天地遮。三花聚顶难成就，斩将封为翼火蛇。  
不恋荣华止自修，降龙伏虎任悠游。空为数载丹砂力，  
斩将封为紫火猴。

老子见万仙阵中一杆白旗摇动，又言四位道人出来，身穿大白衣，体态凶顽，各有妖氛气概，因谓元始曰：“似这等业障都来枉送性命，你看出来的都是如此之类。”怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

五岳三山任意游，访玄参道守心修。空劳炉内金丹汞，  
斩将封为牛金牛。腹内珠玑贯八方，包罗万象道汪洋。  
只因杀戒难逃躲，斩将封为鬼金羊。离龙坎虎相匹遇，  
炼就神丹成不朽。无缘顶上现三花，斩将封为娄金狗。  
金丹炼就脱樊笼，五遁三除大道通。未灭三尸吞六气，  
斩将封为亢金龙。

四位教主又见通天教主把手中剑望东、西、南、北指画，前后又是钟鸣，阵门开处，又有四位道人出来，真好稀奇！有诗为证，诗曰：

自从修炼玄中妙，不恋金章共紫诰。通天教主是吾师，  
斩将封为箕水豹。出世虔诚悟道言，勤修苦行反离魂。  
移山倒海随吾意，斩将封为参水猿。簪冠道服性聪敏，  
炼就白气心无损。只因无福了长生，斩将封为轸水蚓。  
五行妙术体全殊，合就玄中自丈夫。悟道成仙无造化，  
斩将封为壁水獬。

元始曰：“此俱是截教门中，并无一人有根行之士，俱是无福

A white flag was raised and another four Taoist fairies, all dressed in white, with wicked faces and a demonish air, rushed out. These four were to be the Gods of the stars Golden Ox, Golden Goat, Golden Dog, and Golden Dragon.

The four religious leaders watched as the Grand Master of Heaven pointed the four directions with his sword. Bells rang noisily through the air. Another four fairies appeared, they were the future Gods of the stars Water Leopard, Water Ape, Water Earthworm, and Water Beaver.





修为，该受此劫数也，深为可悲！”又见皂盖幡摇，出来四位道人。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

跨虎登山观鹤鹿，驱邪捉怪神鬼哭。只因无福了仙家，  
斩将封为女土蝠。顶上祥光五彩气，包含万象多伶俐。  
无分无缘成正果，斩将封为胃土雉。采炼阴阳有异方，  
五行攒簇配中黄。不归阐教归截教，斩将封为柳土獐。  
赤发红须情性恶，游尽三山并五岳。包罗万象枉徒劳，  
斩将封为氏土貉。

元始与老子同西方教主共言曰：“你看这些人，有仙之名，无仙之骨，那里做得修行办道之品！”四位教主正谈论之间，只见旗门开处，又来了四位道人。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

修成大道真潇洒，妙法玄机有真假。不能成道却凡尘，  
斩将封为星日马。铁树开花怎得齐，阴神行乐跨虹霓。  
只因无福为仙侣，斩将封为昴日鸡。面如蓝靛多威武，  
赤发金睛恶似虎。呼风唤雨不寻常，斩将封为虚日鼠。  
三昧真火空中露，霞光前后生百步。万仙阵内逞英雄，  
斩将封为房日兔。

话说通天教主在阵中调出第七对来，展一杆素白幡，幡下有四位道者，凶凶恶恶，凛凛赳赳，手提方楞铜出来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

道术精奇盖世无，修真炼性握兵符。长生妙诀贪尘劫，  
斩将封为毕月乌。发似朱砂脸似靛，浑身上下金光现。  
天机玄妙总休言，斩将封为危月燕。面如赤枣落腮胡，  
撒豆成兵盖世无。两足登云如掣电，斩将封为心月狐。

“Not one disciple in Jie Taoism has a deep understanding of the doctrines. They will all lose their lives. What a pity it is,” Heavenly Primogenitor sighed.

Another four Taoist fairies appeared under a black pennant. In the future they would be the four Gods of the stars Earth Bat, Earth Pheasant, Earth Roebuck, and Earth Jackal.

This whole time Lao Zi and the other leaders were commenting among themselves, “Look at those chaps! They’re called fairies but they haven’t an immortal bone to stand on. How can they ever make progress in the doctrines?”

The trap doors opened once more, and another four Taoist fairies rushed out. These would soon be made into the four Gods of the stars Sun Horse, Sun Cock, Sun Rat, and Sun Hare.

The last group appeared behind a white pennant with ridged clubs in their hands. They looked savage and wicked. Like the others, they would be deified as Gods of the stars Moon Crow, Moon Swallow, Moon Fox, and Moon Deer.



腹内玄机修二六，炼就阴阳超凡俗。谁知五气未朝元，  
斩将封为张月鹿。

话说通天教主把九曜二十八宿调将出来，按定方位。只见四七二十八位道者，齐齐整整，左右盘旋，簇拥而出。但见了些飞霞红气，紫电青光，有多少者层层密密，凶凶顽顽，真是个杀气腾腾，愁云惨惨，好生利害！不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



With deep hatred and great wrath, the Grand Master of Heaven directed these twenty-eight fairies, representing the future Gods of the twenty-eight constellations, into position around him. An air of death hung about in the thick layers of red haze and the bright light of purple lightning.

If you wish to know what happened in this battle, please read the next chapter.







## 第八十四回

### 子牙兵取临潼关

诗曰：

幽魂幡下夜猿啼，壮士纷纷急鼓鞮。黑雾弥漫人魄散，妖氛笼罩将星低。只知战胜歌刁斗，不认奸邪悔噬脐。屈死英雄遭血刃，至今城下草萋萋。

话说通天教主率领众仙至阵前，老子曰：“今日与你决定雌雄，万仙遭难。正应你反覆不定之罪。”通天教主怒曰：“你四人看我今番怎生作用！”遂催开奎牛，执剑砍来。老子笑曰：“料你今日作用也只如此！只你难免此厄也！”催开青牛，举起扁拐，急架忙迎。元始天尊对左右门人曰：“今日你等俱满此戒，须当齐入阵中，以会截教万仙，不得错过。”众门人听此言，不觉欢笑，呐一声喊，齐杀入万仙阵中。正是：

万仙阵上施玄妙，都向其中了劫尘。

文殊广法天尊骑狮子，普贤真人骑白象，慈航道人骑金毛犼；三位大士各现出化身，冲将进去。灵宝大法师仗剑而来，太乙真人持宝锉进阵，惧留孙、黄龙真人、云中子、燃灯道人齐往万仙阵来。后面又有姜子牙同哪吒等众门人亦大呼曰：“吾等今日破万仙阵，以见真伪也！”话未了时，只见陆压道人从空飞来，撞入万仙阵内，也来助战。看这场大战，正是万劫总归此地，神仙杀运方完。只见：

## *Chapter 84*

### **Occupation of Lintong Pass**

When the Grand Master of Heaven led his disciples out, Lao Zi said, "Ten thousand fairies will suffer today! And you have led them to it."

"Just see what I will do with you," the Grand Master of Heaven replied angrily, charging forward to attack.

Heavenly Primogenitor turned to his disciples, "This is your final chance. Don't miss it!"

Everyone was greatly encouraged, and they fought bravely into the trap. Lu Ya flew down from the sky and threw himself into the battle.





老子坐青牛，往来跳跃；通天教主纵奎牛，猛兽来攻。三大士催开了青狮、象、狴；金灵圣母使宝剑飞腾。灵宝大法师面如火热；无当圣母怒气冲空。太乙真人动了心中三昧；毗芦仙亦显神通。道德真君来完杀戒；云中子宝剑如虹。惧留孙把捆仙绳祭起；金箍仙用飞剑来攻。阵中玉磬铮铮响，台下金钟朗朗鸣。四处起团团烟雾，八方长飒飒狂风。人人会三除五遁，个个晓倒海移峰。剑对剑，红光灿灿；兵迎宝，瑞气溶溶。平地下鸣雷震动，半空中霹雳交轰。这壁厢三教圣人行正道；那壁厢通天教主涉邪宗。这四位教主也动了嗔痴烦恼；那通天教主竟犯了反覆无终。正克邪，始终还正；邪逆正，到底成凶。急嚷嚷天翻地覆，闹炒炒华岳山崩。姜子牙奉天征讨，众门人各要立功；杨戩刀犹如闪电；李靖戟一似飞龙；金吒跃开脚步，木吒宝剑齐冲；韦护祭起降魔宝杵；哪吒登开风火轮，各自称雄；雷震子二翅半空施勇；杨任手持五火扇扇风。又来了四仙家，祭起那“诛”、“戮”、“陷”、“绝”四口宝剑，这般兵器难当其锋，咫尺间斩了二十八宿，顷刻时九曜俱空。通天教主精神减半；金灵圣母口内喁喁；毗芦仙已无主意；无当圣母战战兢兢。一时间又来了西方教主，把乾坤袋举在空中，有缘的须当早进，无缘的任你纵横。霎时间云愁雾惨，一会家地暗难穷。从今惊破通天胆，一事无成有愧容。

话说老子与元始冲入万仙阵内，将通天教主裹住。金灵圣母被三大士围在当中，只见三大士面分蓝、红、白，或现三首

Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor fought the Grand Master of Heaven. Mother Golden Spirit was surrounded by Heavenly Master of Outstanding Culture, Universal Virtue and Merciful Navigation. The three immortals assumed shapes with either three heads and six arms, five heads and eight arms, or ten heads and eight arms. Their bodies were covered, from head to foot, with bright light, gold lamps, white lotus flowers, precious pearls, and necklaces. Golden Spirit fought so vigorously that her gold coronet fell off and her hair flew about wildly. Burning Lamp suddenly threw up his Sea Conquering Pearls, and Golden Spirit was struck on the head. She died at once.





六臂，或现八首六臂，或现三首八臂，浑身上下俱有金灯、白莲、宝珠、璎珞、华光护持，金灵圣母用玉如意招架三大士多时，不觉把顶上金冠落在尘埃，将头发散了，这圣母披发大战，正战之间，遇着燃灯道人祭起定海珠打来，正中顶门。可怜！正是：

封神正位为星首，北阙香烟万载存。

燃灯将定海珠把金灵圣母打死。广成子祭起诛仙剑，赤精子祭起戮仙剑，道行天尊祭起陷仙剑，玉鼎真人祭起绝仙剑，数道黑气冲空，将万仙阵罩住，凡封神台上有名者，就如砍瓜切菜一般，俱遭杀戮。子牙祭打神鞭，任意施为。万仙阵中又被杨任用五火扇扇起烈火，千丈黑烟迷空，可怜万仙遭难，其实难堪。哪吒现三首八臂，往来冲突。玉虚一千门下，如狮子摇头，狻猊舞势，只杀得山崩地塌。通天教主见万仙受此屠戮，心中大怒，急呼曰：“长耳定光仙快取六魂幡来！”定光仙因见接引道人白莲裹体，舍利现光，又见十二代弟子玄都门人俱有璎珞、金灯、光华罩体，知道他们出身清正，截教毕竟差讹，他将六魂幡收起，轻轻的走出万仙阵，径往芦篷下隐匿。正是：

根深原是西方客，躲在芦篷献宝幡。

话说通天教主大呼：“定光仙快取幡来！”连叫数声，连定光仙也不见了。教主已知他去了，大怒，欲待无心恋战，又见万仙受此等狼狈；欲待上前，又有四位教主阻住；欲要退后，又恐教下门人笑话；只得勉强相持，又被老子打了一拐。通天教主着了急，祭起紫电锤来打老子；老子笑曰：“此物怎能近我！”只见顶上现出玲珑宝塔，此锤焉能下



Grand Completion threw up the Fairy Slaughtering Sword, Pure Essence the Fairy Slaying Sword, Heavenly Master of Divine Virtue the Fairy Entrapping Sword, and Jade Tripod the Fairy Exterminating Sword. The whole trap was immediately covered with black clouds. Everyone whose name was recorded on the List of Creations was slaughtered like meat on the chopping block.

“Hurry! Hurry! Give me the Six Soul Pennant, Fairy Light with Long Ears,” the Grand Master of Heaven roared when he saw his disciples falling to the ground about him.

Seeing Buddha’s white lotus flowers and the Mount Xuandu disciples’ gold lanterns and necklaces, Fairy Light with Long Ears realized they were all proper immortals, far superior than those in Jie Taoism. He bundled up the Six Soul Pennant, stealthily left the trap, and took cover in the pavilion.

“Fairy Light! Bring me the pennant! Hurry!” the Grand Master of Heaven shouted again and again, but Fairy Light did not appear.

The Grand Master of Heaven was enraged to find that Fairy Light had fled, but he had no mind to continue the combat. He tried to move over and rescue his fairies, but he was checked by the four religious leaders. He could not flee for he would then be held in contempt by his disciples. He had to continue the combat although his heart wasn’t in it.

When Lao Zi struck him with his stick, the Grand Master of Heaven was so excited that he threw up his Purple Lightning Hammer. Lao Zi immediately turned and an exquisite pagoda soared up from his head to block the hammer.



来。通天教主正出神，不防元始天尊又一如意，打中通天教主肩窝，几乎落下奎牛。通天教主大怒，奋勇争战。只见二十八宿星官已杀得看看殆尽，止丘引见势不好了，借土遁就走，被陆压看见，惟恐追不及，急纵至空中，将葫芦揭开，放出一道白光，上有一物飞出，陆压打一躬，命：“宝贝转身。”可怜丘引头已落地。陆压收了宝贝，复至阵中助战。且说接引道人在万仙阵内将乾坤袋打开，尽收那三千红气之客，——有缘往极乐之乡者，俱收入此袋内。准提同孔雀明王在阵中现三十四头，十八只手，执定璎珞、伞盖、花贯、鱼肠、金弓、银戟、白钺、幡幢、加持神忤、宝锉、银瓶等物来战通天教主。通天教主看见准提，顿起三昧真火，大骂曰：“好泼道！焉敢欺吾太甚，又来搅吾此阵也！”纵奎牛冲来，仗剑直取。准提将七宝妙树架开。正是：

西方极乐无穷法，俱是莲花一化身。

且说通天教主用剑砍来，准提将七宝妙树一刷，把通天教主手中剑打的粉碎。通天教主把奎牛一拎，跳出阵去了。准提道人收了法身，老子与元始也不赶他。群仙共破了万仙阵，鸣动金钟，敲响玉磬，俱回芦篷上来。老子与元始看见定光仙，问曰：“你是截教门人定光仙，为何躲在此处也？”定光仙拜伏在地曰：“师伯在上：弟子有罪，敢禀明师伯。吾师炼有六魂幡，欲害二位师伯并西方教主、武王、子牙，使弟子执定听用。弟子因见师伯道正理明，吾师未免偏听逆理，造此业障，弟子不忍使用，故收匿藏身于此处。今师伯下问，弟子不得不以实告。”元始曰：“奇哉！你身居截教，心向正宗，自是有根器之人。”随命跟上芦篷。四位教主坐下，共



Watching the pagoda as if in a trance, the Grand Master of Heaven was hit seriously on the shoulder by Heavenly Primogenitor's S-shaped weapon. He nearly fell from his ox.

Buddha opened his Universal Bag to collect 3,000 disciples who were destined to enter the Western Region. Candi assumed a shape with twenty-four heads and eighteen hands to fight the Grand Master of Heaven.

The Grand Master of Heaven swore loudly, "Well, well! You bloody Buddha, dare you insult me again!"

He attacked Candi with his sword, but the Buddha brushed it away with a tree branch, breaking it into pieces. The Grand Master of Heaven had to pull in the rein of his ox and run away. They did not chase him but returned to the pavilion with a ringing of gold bells and tinkling of jade pieces.

Lao Zi discovered Fairy Light with Long Ears inside the pavilion. "You are a disciple of Jie Taoism. Why are you hiding here?" he asked.

Fairy Light knelt on the ground and replied, "Dear Uncles, I am guilty. My master made the Six Soul Pennant to hurt you two uncles, the two Buddhist leaders, King Wu, and Jiang Ziya. He told me to use it on his order, but he acts so improperly I couldn't give it to him. I had to hide here."

"What a surprise! Though you're a member of Jie Taoism, you know the proper way. This is the foundation for a successful study of the Way," Heavenly Primogenitor said happily. He told Fairy Light to stay with them in the pavilion.





论今日邪正方分。老子问定光仙曰：“你可取六魂幡来。”定光仙将幡呈上。西方教主曰：“此幡可摘去周武、姜尚名讳，将幡展开，以见我等根行如何。”准提随将六魂幡摘去“武王”、“姜尚”名讳，命定光仙展布。定光仙依命，将幡连展数展。只见四位教主顶上各现奇珍：元始现庆云，老子现塔，西方二位教主现舍利子，保护其身。定光仙见了，弃幡倒身下拜，言曰：“似此吾师妄动嗔念，陷无万生灵也！”西方教主曰：“吾有一偈，你且听着：

极乐之乡客，西方妙术神。莲花为父母，九品立吾身。  
池边分八德，常临七宝园。波罗花开后，遍地长金珍。  
谈讲三乘法，舍利腹中存。有缘生此地，久后幸沙门。”

西方教主曰：“定光仙与吾教有缘。”元始曰：“他今日至此，也是弃邪归正念头，理当皈依道兄。”定光仙遂拜了接引、准提二位教主。子牙在篷下与哪吒等曰：“今日万仙阵中许多道者遭殃，无辜受戮，其实痛心。”门人之内，个个欢喜。不表。

且说通天教主被四位教主破了万仙阵，内中有成神者，有归西方教主者，有逃去者，有无辜受戮者。彼时无当圣母见阵势难支，先自去了；申公豹也走了；毗芦仙已归西方教主，后成为毗芦佛，此是千年后才见佛光。当日通天教主领着二三百名散仙，走在一座山下，少憩片时，自思：“定光仙可恨将六魂幡窃去，使吾大功不能成！今番失利，再有何颜掌碧游宫大教。左右是一不做，二不休，如今回宫，再立‘地水火风’，换个世界罢！”左右众仙俱各各赞襄。通天

When the pennant was brought out and shown to the religious leaders, Buddha said to Fairy Light, "We will remove the names of King Wu and Jiang Ziya. You may then unroll it to see what it can do to us."

Fairy Light did as he was told, but the pennant had no effect whatsoever. Auspicious clouds hovered above Heavenly Primogenitor, a pagoda floated above Lao Zi, and luminous Buddhist relics protected the two Buddhas.

Seeing the miracles before him, Fairy Light gave up the Six Soul Pennant, fell on the ground, kowtowed, and said, "It is clear that my master is wrong."

"Fairy Light must be destined to join our religion," Buddha said.

Fairy Light immediately kowtowed before the two Buddhas.

During the battle, many fairies died to become Gods. Some were converted to Buddhism. Some ran away and some did in vain. Mother Invincible, realizing it was nearly hopeless to maintain the trap, left the scene first. Shen Gongbao also fled.

The Grand Master of Heaven fled to a mountain with 200 fairies.





教主见左右四个切己门徒俱丧，切齿深恨：“不若往紫霄宫见吾老师，先禀过了他，然后再行此事。”正与众散仙商议，忽见正南上祥云万道，瑞气千条，异香袭袭，见一道者，手执竹杖而来。作偈曰：

“高卧九重云，蒲团了道真。天地玄黄外，吾当掌教尊。盘古生太极，两仪四象循。一道传三友，二教阐截分。玄门都领秀，一气化鸿钧。”

话说鸿钧道人来至，通天教主知是师尊来了，慌忙上前迎接，倒身下拜曰：“弟子愿老师圣寿无疆！不知老师驾临，未曾远接，望乞恕罪。”鸿钧道人曰：“你为何设此一阵，涂炭无限生灵，这是何说！”通天教主曰：“启老师：二位师兄欺灭吾教，纵门人毁骂弟子，又杀戮弟子门下，全不念同堂手足，一味欺凌，分明是欺老师一般。望老师慈悲！”鸿钧道人曰：“你这等欺心！分明是你自己作业，致生杀伐，该这些生灵遭此劫运；你不自责，尚去责人，情殊可恨！当日三教共金‘封神榜’，你何得尽忘之也！名利乃凡夫俗子之所争，嗔怒乃儿女子之所事，纵是未斩三尸之仙，未赴蟠桃之客，也要脱此苦恼；岂意你三人乃是混元大罗金仙，历万劫不磨之体，为三教元首，为因小事，生此嗔痴，作此邪欲。他二人原无此意，都是你作此过恶，他不得不应耳。虽是劫数使然，也都是你约束不严，你的门徒生事，你的不是居多。我若不来，彼此报复，何日是了？我特来大发慈悲，与你等解释冤愆，各掌教宗，毋得生事。”随分付左右散仙：“你等各归洞府，自养天真，以俟超脱。”众仙叩首而散。鸿钧道人命通天教主先至芦篷通报。通天教主不敢有违师



Finding his four close disciples all dead, he said angrily, "I shall go to the Purple Heaven Palace to see my master. After I tell him the whole story, I will decide what action to take."

Just then auspicious clouds and a strong fragrance drifted toward them from the south. Looking up, they saw a Taoist with a bamboo walking stick.

Sleeping in the Ninth Heaven,  
Studying on a straw cushion,  
Beside the earth and sky so grand,  
I'm honored as head of my religion.  
Taoism divided into two,  
Leader of leaders I am.

The Grand Master of Heaven hurriedly knelt down and kowtowed before his master Hongjun. "May my old master live for ten thousand years!" he greeted him.

"Why did you set up such a trap to cause so much suffering? What made you do it?" Hongjun demanded.

"I must report to you, Master, My two brothers have insulted me and tried to destroy my religion by sending their disciples to swear at me and slay my own. This is really an insult to you! I hope you will show mercy, Master!" the Grand Master of Heaven pleaded.

"You are really dishonest. You have been the root of all this suffering. Anger and annoyance are emotions of the ordinary people. Even a fairy who has not yet severed all desire and has not yet been invited to attend the longevity-peach feast should do everything to be rid of those temptations. You provoked this dispute over a trifle. They had done nothing to offend you. You must take responsibility for the troubles caused by your disciples. If I had not come here, this quarrel would go on endlessly."

"You may all return to your caves to refine yourselves. Do not stir up any more trouble." Hongjun ordered all the fairies to leave.

He then told the Grand Master of Heaven to go first to report his arrival to the religious leaders in the pavilion.



命，只得先往芦篷下来，心中自思：“如何好见他们？”不得已，腆面而行。话说哪吒同韦护等俱在芦篷下，议论万仙阵中那些光景，忽见通天教主先行，后面跟着一个老道人扶笻而行，只见祥云缭绕，瑞气盘旋，冉冉而来，将至篷下。众门人与哪吒等各各惊疑未定。只见通天教主将近篷下，大呼曰：“哪吒可报与老子、元始，快来接老爷圣驾！”哪吒忙上篷来报。话说老子在篷上与西方教主正讲众弟子劫数之厄，今已圆满，猛抬头见祥光瑞霭，腾跃而来，老子已知老师来至，忙起身谓元始曰：“师尊来至！”急率众弟子下篷。只见哪吒来报：“通天教主跟一老道人而来，呼老爷接驾，不知何故。”老子曰：“吾已知之。此是我等老师，想是来此与我等解释冤愆耳。”遂相率下篷迎接，在道傍俯伏曰：“不知老师大驾下临，弟子有失远接，望乞恕罪。”鸿钧道人曰：“只因十二代弟子运逢杀劫，致你两教参商。吾特来与你等解释愆尤，各安宗教，毋得自相背逆。”老子与元始声喏曰：“愿闻师命。”遂至篷上，与西方教主相见。鸿钧道人称赞：“西方极乐世界真是福地。”西方教主应曰：“不敢！”教主请鸿钧道人拜见。鸿钧曰：“吾与道友无有拘束。这三个是吾门下，当得如此。”接引道人与准提道人打稽首坐下。后面就是老子、元始过来拜见毕，又是十二代弟子并众门人俱来拜见毕，俱分两边侍立。通天教主也在一傍站立。鸿钧道人曰：“你三个过来。”老子、元始、通天三个走近前面。道人问曰：“当时只因周家国运将兴，汤数当尽，神仙逢此杀运，故命你三个共立‘封神榜’，以观众仙根行浅深，或仙，或神，各成其品。不意通天弟子轻信门徒，致生事端，虽是劫



Daring not disobey his master's order, the Grand Master of Heaven led the way to the pavilion, thinking, "How can I face them again in such an awful condition?"

But with no alternative, he kept on, until approaching the tent, to the surprise of all, he yelled loudly, "Hurry! Tell Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor to come out and meet our master, the great saint!"

Lao Zi was inside talking to Buddha when he saw auspicious clouds in the sky. He was just getting ready to go out and meet his leader when Nezha came in and excitedly reported, "The Grand Master of Heaven has come with an old Taoist and demands you all to go out to meet them."

"Yes, I know. Our master has come to settle this dispute," Lao Zi said.

"We beg your pardon. We didn't know of your honorable arrival, so we failed to meet you at a distance," the two religious leaders said as they kowtowed.

"I have come to make peace and settle your dispute, so you can all live together as brothers," Hongjun said.

"We'll obey your instruction unconditionally, Master," Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor replied.

When he entered the pavilion to meet the Buddhist leaders, they offered their thanks and asked him to sit down so they could kneel before him.

"We are equal. Those three are my disciples and should treat me like this, but you should not," Hongjun said.

Both Buddha and Candi bowed and took their seats. Soon Lao Zi, Heavenly Primogenitor, and all the disciples came in, knelt down, and kowtowed before Hongjun.

"Come over here before me, you three," Hongjun ordered. He then said, "I didn't expect the Grand Master of Heaven to cause so much trouble, though it was destined by fate. He broke the agreement of our alliance and many fairies were innocently massacred. I do not blame you, my elder disciples."



数难逃，终是你不守清静，自背盟言，不能善为众仙解脱，以致俱遭屠戮，罪诚在你，非是我为师的有偏向，这是公论。”接引与准提齐曰：“老师之言不差。”鸿钧曰：“今日我与你讲明，从此解释。大徒弟，你须让过他罢。俱各归仙阙，毋得戕害生灵。况众弟子厄满，姜尚大功垂成，再毋多言。从此各修宗教。”鸿钧分付：“三人过来跪下。”三位教主齐至面前，双膝跪下。道人袖内取出一个葫芦，倒出三粒丹来，每一位赐他一粒：“你们吞入腹中，吾自有话说。”三位教主俱皆依师命，各吞一粒。鸿钧道人曰：“此丹非是却病长生之物，你听我道来：

此丹炼就有玄功，因你三人各自攻。若有先将念头改，腹中丹发即时薨！”

鸿钧道人作罢诗，三位教主叩首：“拜谢老师慈悲！”鸿钧道人起身，作辞西方教主，命通天三弟子：“你随我去。”通天教主不敢违命。只见接引道人与准提俱起身，同老子、元始率众门人同送至篷下。鸿钧别过西方二位教主，老子与众门人等又拜伏道傍，俟鸿钧发驾。鸿钧分付：“你等去罢。”众人起立拱候。只见鸿钧与通天教主驾祥云冉冉而去。西方教主也作辞回西去了。老子、元始与子牙曰：“今日来，我等与十二代弟子俱回洞府，候你封过神，从新再修身命，方是真仙。”正是：

从修顶上三花现，返本還元又是仙。

子牙与元始众仙下得芦篷，姜子牙伏于道傍，拜求掌教师尊曰：“弟子姜尚蒙师尊指示，得进于此地，不知后会诸侯一事如何？”老子曰：“我有一诗，你谨记有验。诗曰：



“You are right, old honorable Master,” both Buddha and Candi said.

“Let me act as your mediator. There should be no more enmity between you from now on. You must all return to your mountains, and you mustn’t quarrel any more. All our disciples have suffered what they must, and Jiang Ziya is now ready accomplish his great political work. You should all do your best in your religious studies,” Hongjun added.

“You three come here and kneel before me,” Hongjun then ordered.

He took out a small gourd from one of his sleeves and shook out three pills. He gave one to each and said, “Take this medicine. It will not bring you good health and longevity, but it will help you live together peacefully. If you have any idea to break the union, this pill will revolt inside the stomach and lead to immediate death,” Hongjun warned them gravely.

The three religious leaders kowtowed and said, “We thank you for your great mercy. We’ll obey your teaching forever.”

Hongjun then got up to leave and said, “Grand Master of Heaven, will you come with me?”

The Buddhist leaders, Lao Zi, Heavenly Primogenitor, and all the disciples went to see Hongjun off.

Buddha and Candi left next, and Lao Zi and Heavenly Primogenitor prepared to go as well. Jiang Ziya knelt on the ground as they descended from the pavilion. “With your guidance and support, I’ve been blessed to lead the army this far. I wonder what will happen at the conference of the nobles,” he implored them.

Lao Zi replied, “Here is a poem concerning your near future. You may learn it by heart:

Dangers will fall again and again,  
The future should come like this since then,  
Hail to the conference of 800 marquises,  
Complete victory will come after the Creation.”





险处又逢险处过，前程不必问如何。诸侯八百看看会，只待封神奏凯歌。”

老子道罢，与元始各回玉京去了。广成子与十二代仙人，俱来作别曰：“子牙，吾等与你此一别，再不能会面也！”子牙心下甚是不忍分离，在篷下恋恋不舍。子牙作诗以送之，诗曰：

“东进临潼会万仙，依依回首甚相怜。从今别后何年会？安得相逢诉旧缘。”

话说群仙作别而去，惟有陆压握子牙之手曰：“我等此去，会面已难，前途虽有凶险之处，俱有解释之人，只还有几件难处之事，非此宝不可，我将此葫芦之宝送你，以为后用。”子牙感谢不已。陆压随将飞刀付与，也自作别而去。

话分两头，单表元始驾回玉虚。申公豹只因破了万仙阵，希图逃窜他山，岂知他恶贯满盈，跨虎而遁；只见白鹤童子看见申公豹在前面，似飞云掣电一般奔走，白鹤童子忙启元始天尊曰：“前面是申公豹逃窜。”元始曰：“他曾发一誓，命黄巾力士将我的三宝玉如意把他拿在麒麟崖伺候。”童子接了如意，递与力士。力士赶上前大呼曰：“申公豹不要走！奉天尊法旨拿你去麒麟崖听候！”祭起如意，平空把申公豹拿了往麒麟崖来。且说元始天尊驾至崖前，落下九龙沉香辇，只见黄巾力士将申公豹拿来，放在天尊面前。元始曰：“你曾发下誓盟，去塞北海眼，今日你也无辞。”申公豹低首无语。元始命黄巾力士：“将我的蒲团卷起他来，拿去塞了北海眼！”力士领命，将申公豹塞在北海眼里。有诗为证：

堪笑阐教申公豹，要保成汤灭武王。今日谁知身塞海，



Lao Zi then went on his way with Heavenly Primogenitor.

Grand Completion and the other immortals came next to bid farewell to Jiang Ziya. "After this we're afraid we'll have no chance to meet again. What a terrible pity!"

Unwilling to see them all go, Jiang Ziya wrote a poem at their departure:

Moving east of Tongguan to meet the immortals,  
Now to sadly say "Goodbye" so soon,  
What year shall we happily meet,  
To talk again about the old time.

When they had all gone, Lu Ya held Jiang Ziya's hand and said, "It will be difficult for us to meet again. Though there are still dangers ahead, there will be many to help you in your time of need. I'll give you this gourd to use in the near future."

Jiang Ziya thanked him, and he left like the others.

Shen Gongbao had run away on his tiger when the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap was broken.

White Crane Lad saw him ahead and reported to Heavenly Primogenitor, "Shen Gongbao is in flight before us."

"He must fulfil his oath. Tell my yellow-scarved genii to take him captive with my S-shaped weapon and lock him up at the Unicorn Cliff," Heavenly Primogenitor ordered.

When he reached the cliff, Heavenly Primogenitor descended from his Nine Dragon Lignaloe Carriage and told his yellow-scarved genii to bring Shen Gongbao before him.

"You swore that you should be thrown into the North Sea if you caused any more trouble. Today you must fulfil your oath!"

Shen Gongbao could only lower his head in silence. Heavenly Primogenitor then ordered, "Wrap him up with my reed cushion and throw him into the hole of the North Sea!"



不知红日几沧桑。

话说黄巾力士将申公豹塞了北海，回元始法旨，不表。

且说子牙领众门徒回潼关来见武王，武王曰：“相父今日回来，兵士俱齐，可速进兵，早会诸侯，孤之幸也。”子牙传令，起兵往临潼关来。只八十里，早已来至关下，安下行营。且说临潼关守将欧阳淳闻报，与副将卞金龙、桂天禄、公孙铎共议曰：“今姜尚兵来，止得一关，焉能阻挡周兵？”众将言曰：“主将明日与周兵见一阵，如胜则以胜而退周兵，如不胜，然后坚守，修表往朝歌去告急，俟援兵协守，此为上策。”欧阳淳曰：“将军之言是也。”次日，子牙升帐，传下令去：“谁去取临潼关走一遭？”傍有黄飞虎曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。飞虎领本部人马，一声炮响，至关下搦战。报马报入帅府：“启主帅：有周将搦战。”欧阳淳曰：“谁去走一遭？”只见先行官卞金龙领令，出关来见黄飞虎，大呼曰：“来将何名？”飞虎曰：“吾乃武成王黄飞虎是也。”卞金龙大骂：“反贼不思报国，反助叛逆！吾乃临潼关先行卞金龙是也。”黄飞虎大怒，纵骑摇枪，飞来直取。卞金龙手中斧急架忙迎。牛马相交，枪斧并举。战未三十合，黄飞虎卖个破绽，吼一声，将卞金龙刺下马来，枭了首级，掌鼓回营，来见姜元帅。子牙大喜，上了黄将军功绩。不表。且说报马报入帅府，欧阳淳大惊，只见卞金龙家将报入本府，卞金龙妻子胥氏听说，放声大哭，惊动后园长子卞吉。卞吉问左右：“太太为何啼哭？”左右把家主阵亡事说了一遍。卞吉怒发冲冠，随换了披挂，来见母亲曰：“母亲不须啼哭，俟儿为父亲报仇。”胥氏只是啼哭，也不管卞吉的事。卞吉上



Thus did Shen Gongbao's life come to an end.

Jiang Ziya led his disciples back to Tongguan Pass. Lintong Pass was only eighty *li* away. They arrived soon and set up camp.

The garrison commander of Lintong Pass, Ouyang Chun, held a military conference to discuss the urgent situation with his generals Bian Jinlong, Gui Tianlu, and Gongsun Duo.

"We are the last pass. How can we stop Jiang Ziya's army?" worried General Ouyang Chun.

"Oh, General! Let's fight them tomorrow. We can hold them off if we win, and we can send to Zhaoge for reinforcements if we are defeated. What do you say, General?" his assistants suggested.

"You are right, Generals," Ouyang Chun agreed.

The following day, Huang Feihu made the first challenge. He was met by Bian Jinlong.

"Who is that coming?" Bian Jinlong roared.

"I'm Prince Huang Feihu," Huang Feihu replied.

"You bloody rebel! You don't know how to be faithful to your country! I'm Bian Jinlong, the vanguard general."

Huang Feihu attacked Bian Jinlong with his lance, and Bian parried the attack with his axe. After about thirty rounds, Huang Feihu stabbed him from his horse and cut off the Shang general's head. He returned in victory.

General Ouyang Chun was surprised to hear that Bian Jinlong had sacrificed his life. And when Bian's wife heard the news, she cried so bitterly that Bian Ji, Bian Jinlong's eldest son, became deeply alarmed. He asked his attendants, "Why does my mother cry so?"

When he was told that his father had been killed, Bian Ji flew into a rage, his hair standing on end. He dressed in steel armor and went to see his mother. "Dear Mother! Don't cry! I'm going to get revenge for Father's death right now." Hearing not a single word he said, she continued to cry on and on.



马，至帅府前。左右报入殿庭：“启元帅：卞先行长子听令。”欧阳淳命：“令来。”卞吉上殿，行礼毕，含泪启曰：“末将父死何人之手？”欧阳淳曰：“尊翁不幸，被反贼黄飞虎枪挑下马，丧了性命。”卞吉曰：“今日已晚，明日拿仇人为父泄恨。”卞吉回至家中，令家将扛抬一个红柜，随领军出关。卞吉率领军士至关外，竖立一根大幡杆，将红柜打开，拎出一首幡，挂将起来，悬于空中，有四五丈高。好利害幡！怎见得，有诗为证：

万骨攒成世罕知，开天辟地最为奇。周王不是多洪福，  
百万雄师此处危。

话说当日卞吉将幡杆竖起，一马竟至周营辕门前搦战。哨马报入中军：“启元帅：关内有将请战。”子牙问：“谁人出马？”只见南宫适领命出营。见一员小将，生的面貌凶恶，手持方天画戟，大呼曰：“来者何人？”南宫适笑曰：“似你这等黄口孺子，定然不认得，吾是西岐大将南宫适。”卞吉曰：“且饶你一死回去，只叫黄飞虎出来！他杀我父，吾与他有不共戴天之仇。我不拿你这将生替死之辈。”南宫适听罢大怒，纵马舞刀，直取卞吉。卞吉手中戟急架忙迎。二马相交，戟刀并举。二将大战，正是棋逢对手，将遇作家。卞吉与南宫适战有二三十合，卞吉拨马便走。南宫适随后赶来。卞吉先往幡下过去。南宫适不知详细，也往幡下来，只见马到幡前，早已连人带马跌倒，南宫适不醒人事，被左右守幡军士将南宫适绳缠索绑，拿出幡来。南宫适方睁开二目，乃知堕入他左道之术。卞吉进关来见欧阳淳，把拿了南宫适的话说了一遍。欧阳淳命左右：“推来。”至殿前，南宫适站立不跪。欧阳淳骂曰：“反国逆贼！今已被擒，尚敢抗礼！”命：“速斩首号令！”傍有公孙铎曰：“主将在上：目今奸佞当道，



Bian Ji went to see General Ouyang Chun in person and asked through his tears, "Who killed my father? Please tell me, Commander."

"Your father was unfortunately stabbed to death by Huang Feihu," Ouyang Chun replied.

"It is too late today, but I will return to take him tomorrow!" Bian Ji yelled.

Returning home, Bian Ji took out a pennant and ordered the soldiers to hoist it beyond the pass. The pennant was about fifty feet high and blew in the wind with a powerful force.

The next day, Bian Ji rushed out of the pass on a horse and challenged the Zhou army.

With the approval of Jiang Ziya, General Nangong Kuo rode out and saw a young fierce-looking general with a halberd in hand. "Who is that coming?" he roared.

Nangong Kuo smiled and said, "How could such a small kid like you know me? I'm Nangong Kuo, the great general of West Qi."

"I'll forgive you and spare your life, but you must tell Huang Feihu to meet me. He killed my father, and I must get revenge. I won't take you in his place."

Nangong Kuo angrily attacked with his cutlass, and Bian returned the blow with his halberd. After thirty rounds, Bian Ji purposely gave up ground, turned his horse, and ran beneath the flying pennant. Nangong Kuo was unwilling to let him go and took up the chase immediately. But when he approached the pennant, he fainted and fell from his horse. He was bound up and taken captive by the Shang soldiers, and when he recovered his senses, he found himself inside the pass headquarters. He stood defiantly before Ouyang Chun.

"You bloody rebel! You're our captive now, and you still dare be so rude before me! Take him out and cut his head off!" Ouyang Chun screamed.

"Commander! The bootlickers and flatterers are so influential in the royal court that the king believes the pass generals are only greedy for



言我等守关将士俱是架言征战，冒破钱粮，贿买功绩，凡有边报，一概不准，尚将赍本人役斩了。依末将愚见，不若将南宫适监候，俟捉获渠魁，解往朝歌，以塞奸佞之口，庶知边关非冒破之名。不知主将意下若何？”欧阳淳曰：“将军之言正合吾意。”遂将南宫适送在监中。不表。且说子牙闻报，南宫适被擒，心中大惊，闷坐中军。次日，卞吉又来搦战，坐名要黄飞虎。飞虎带黄明、周纪出营来。见卞吉飞马过来，大呼曰：“来者何人？”黄飞虎曰：“吾乃武成王黄飞虎是也。”卞吉闻言大怒，骂曰：“反国逆贼，擅杀吾父，不共戴天之仇。今日拿你碎尸万段，以泄吾恨！”展戟来刺。黄飞虎急拨枪来迎。战有三十回合，卞吉诈败，竟往幡下去了。黄飞虎不知，也赶至幡下，亦如南宫适一样被擒。黄明大怒，摇斧赶来，欲救黄飞虎，不知至幡下，也跌翻在地，也被擒了。卞吉连擒二将，进关来报功，欲将黄飞虎斩首，以报父仇。欧阳淳曰：“小将军虽要报父之仇，理宜斩首，只他是起祸渠魁，正当献上朝廷正法，一则以泄尊翁之恨，一则以显小将军之功，恩怨两伸，岂不为美？且将他监候。”卞吉不得已，只得含泪而退。

话说周纪见黄明又失利，不敢向前，只得败进营来见子牙。子牙闻说黄飞虎被擒，大惊，问周纪曰：“他如何擒去？”周纪曰：“他于关外立有一幡，俱是人骨头穿成，高有数丈。他先自败走，竟从幡下过去；若是赶他的，只至幡下，便身连马倒了。黄明去救武成王，也被擒去。”子牙大



silver and rations from the government. Some of the messengers sent by the garrison commanders have already been executed. I venture to propose Nangong Kuo be put in gaol temporarily. When the more important ringleaders have been captured, escort them to Zhaoge all at once. The bootlickers will have nothing to say, and the king will realize our loyalty. What do you think, Commander?" Gongsun Duo suggested.

"You are right, General. I agree with you completely," said Commander Ouyang Chun.

Jiang Ziya was worried when he heard of Nangong Kuo's capture.

The next day Bian Ji appeared on the front again, demanding to see only Huang Feihu.

Huang Feihu appeared, accompanied by Huang Ming and Zhou Ji, and Bian Ji swore at the top of his lungs, "You treacherous rebel! You killed my father! I can't let you live any longer. I will slice you into a hundred thousand pieces in revenge for my father!"

Bian Ji rushed to attack, but after about thirty rounds, ran away as if defeated. Like General Nangong, Huang Feihu was also taken captive when he ran under the pennant.

Huang Ming tried to rescue Huang Feihu, but he too fainted and was taken captive like the others.

Returning to the pass in victory, Bian Ji demanded Huang Feihu's head be cut off in revenge for his father's death.

"Though you have your own reasons, Huang Feihu is the head of the rebels. He should be taken to Zhaoge and sentenced to death by His Majesty. In this way, you will not only get revenge, but you can also have your merit recorded by the king. Don't you agree? Put them away," Commander Ouyang Chun ordered.

Bian Ji could do nothing. He withdrew in tears.

When Zhou Ji saw both Huang Feihu and Huang Ming being taken captive, he returned to camp and made a report to Jiang Ziya. "Not far from the pass wall is a pennant made of human skeletons. When anyone follows Bian Ji under the pennant they faint and are taken prisoner at once. Huang Ming and Prince Huang were both taken captive this way."





惊：“此又是左道之术！待吾明日亲自临阵，便知端的。”次日，子牙与众将门人出营来，看见此幡，悬于空中，有千条黑气，万道寒烟。哪吒等仔细定睛，看那白骨上俱有硃砂符印，对子牙曰：“师叔可曾见上面符印么？”子牙曰：“吾已见了。此正是左道之术。你等今后交战，只不往他幡下过便了。”只见报马报入关内，欧阳淳也亲自出关，来会子牙。欧阳淳不往幡下过，往傍边走来。子牙看见欧阳淳转将出来，对门人曰：“你看主将也不从此处过。”众将皆点头会意。子牙迎上前来，问曰：“来将莫非守关主将么？”欧阳淳曰：“然也。”子牙曰：“将军何不知天命耶？五关止此一城，尚欲抗拒天兵哉。”欧阳淳大怒：“匹夫敢出此言！”回顾卞吉曰：“与吾拿此叛贼！”卞吉催开马，摇手中戟飞奔过来。傍有雷震子大呼曰：“贼将慢来，有吾在此！”展开二翅，举棍打来。卞吉见雷震子凶悍，知是异人，未及数合，就往幡下败走。雷震子自忖：“此幡既是妖术，不若先打碎此幡，再杀卞吉未迟。”雷震子把二翅飞起，望幡上一棍打来。不知此幡周围有一股妖气迷住，撞着他就自昏迷，雷震子一棍打来，竟被妖气冲着，便翻下地来，不醒人事。两边守幡家将，把雷震子捆绑起来。这壁厢韦护大怒，急祭起降魔杵来打此幡。此杵虽能镇压邪魔外道之人，不知打不得此幡。只见那杵竟落幡下。正是：

休言韦护降魔杵，怎敌幽魂百骨幡。

话说韦护见此杵竟落于幡下，不觉大惊。众门下俱彼此看住。只见卞吉复至军前，大呼曰：“姜尚可早早下骑归降，免你一死！”哪吒听得大怒，登开风火轮，现出三首八臂，大



"It must be witchcraft again. I'll go to the front to find out," Jiang Ziya said.

The next day Jiang Ziya led his disciples out of the camp. They saw the pennant high on a bamboo pole, issuing black smoke and cold fog.

Nezha said to Jiang Ziya, "Dear Uncle! Can you see the spells and charms in cinnabar stamped on each of the white bones?"

"Yes, it's the witchcraft alright. You all must be careful not to run under it in combat," Jiang Ziya said.

Wishing to meet Jiang Ziya, Ouyang Chun rushed to the front with his generals. He did not take the path under the pennant but circled clear around.

Jiang Ziya moved up and asked, "Are you the garrison commander of this pass?"

"Yes, I am," Ouyang Chun replied.

"Why don't you realize the will of Heaven? This is the last pass left in our way. How can you alone resist such a strong army?" Jiang challenged.

"How does that bloody bastard dare speak so recklessly?" Ouyang Chun ground his teeth and said to Bian Ji, "Take that bastard captive for me."

Bian Ji spurred his horse forward to attack Jiang but was met by Thunderbolt.

Thinking that he could knock down the pennant and thus break its magic, Thunderbolt flew directly for it, but as soon as he got close, he was caught up in its witchcraft and fainted. He fell on the ground and was taken captive at once.

Wei Hu angrily threw his Demon Subduing Club at the pennant, but it was absolutely ineffective. The club fell as if it were an ordinary weapon.

Bian Ji rushed at them again, shouting loudly, "Jiang Ziya! You may live only if you dismount and surrender this moment!"

Furious at the insult, Nezha rode forward on his Wind-Fire Wheels. He appeared with his three heads and eight arms, roaring like thunder, "Don't get so excited, you bloody bastard!"



喝曰：“匹夫慢来！”摇火尖枪飞来直取。卞吉见哪吒如此形状，先自吃了一惊。未及数合，被哪吒一乾坤圈把卞吉几乎打下马来，回身败进关去了。子牙后有李靖催马摇戟来战。欧阳淳傍有桂天禄舞手中刀抵住了李靖。未及数合，被李靖一戟刺于马下。欧阳淳大怒，摇手中斧来战李靖。子牙命左右擂鼓助战。只见阵后冲出辛甲、辛免四贤，毛公遂、周公旦、召公奭无数周将，把欧阳淳围在当中，又有周纪、龙环、吴谦三将也来助战，把欧阳淳杀得只有招架之功，更无还兵之力。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。

Bian Ji was terrified at the attack. After several rounds, Nezha hit Bian Ji with his Universal Ring. Nearly falling from his horse, Bian Ji raced back to the pass.

Li Jing then challenged Ouyang Chun with his halberd but was met by Gui Tianlu. After only a few rounds, Li Jing stabbed his opponent and Gui lost his life in a wink.

When Ouyang Chun galloped up to fight Li Jing, Jiang Ziya ordered his men to beat the drums, as a signal for all his generals to join the battle. Generals Xin Jia, Xin Mian, the Duke of Mao, the Duke of Shao, and the Duke of Zhou rushed in and surrounded Ouyang Chun. Soon, Zhou Ji, Long Huan, and Wu Qian joined their circle, rendering Ouyang Chun powerless to fight back.

If you want to know the result of their battle, please read the next chapter.





## 第八十五回

### 邓芮二侯归周主

诗曰：

西山日落景寥寥，大厦将倾借小条。卞吉无辜遭屈死，  
欧阳热血染霞绡。奸邪用事民生丧，妖孽频兴社稷摇。  
可惜成汤先世业，轻轻送入往来潮。

话说欧阳淳被一干周将围在垓心，只杀得盔甲歪斜，汗流浹背，自料抵挡不住，把马跳出圈子，败进关中去了，紧闭不出。子牙在辕门又见折了雷震子，心下十分不乐。且说欧阳淳败进关来，忙升殿坐下，见卞吉打伤，分付他且往私宅调养，一面把雷震子且送下监中，修告急文书往朝歌求救。差官在路上，正是春尽夏初时节，怎见得一路上好光景，有诗为证，诗曰：

清和天气爽，池沼芰荷生。梅逐雨余熟，麦随风景成。  
草随花落处，莺老柳枝轻。江燕携雏习，山鸡哺子鸣。  
斗南当日永，万物显光明。

话说差官在路，不分晓夜，不一日进了朝歌，在馆驿安歇。次日，将本赍进午门，至文书房投递。那日是中大夫恶来看本。差官将本呈上。恶来接过手，正看那本，只见微子启来至，恶来将欧阳淳的本递与微子看，微子大惊：“姜尚兵至临潼关下，敌兵已临咫尺之地，天子尚高卧不知。奈何！奈何！”随抱本往内庭见驾。纣王正在鹿台与三妖饮饷，当驾

## *Chapter 85*

### **The Rebellion of Two Marquises**

Ouyang Chun fought desperately until, helmetless and armor torn, he couldn't resist any longer and he had to fight his way out of the circle and race back to the pass. Jiang Ziya was displeased that Thunderbolt had been taken captive.

Ouyang Chun ordered Bian Ji to return home to rest, and he sent Thunderbolt to gaol. He then wrote to Zhaoge for reinforcements.

It was the beginning of summer, with lotus growing in the ponds, wheat dancing in the fields, orioles singing in the willow trees and swallows flying under the eaves. The messenger reached Zhaoge several days later and delivered the report to the secretariat. Wei Ziqi, a supreme minister, immediately went to see King Zhou, who was drinking with Daji and the other concubines on the Happy Terrace.





官启驾：“有微子启候旨。”纣王曰：“宣来。”微子至台上见礼毕，王曰：“皇兄有何奏章？”微子奏曰：“姜尚造反，自立姬发，兴兵作叛，纠合诸侯，妄生祸乱，侵占疆土，五关已得四关，大兵见屯临潼关下，损兵杀将，大肆狂暴，真纍卵之危，其祸不小。守关主将具疏告急，乞陛下以社稷为重，日亲政事，速赐施行，不胜幸甚！”微子将表呈上。纣王接表，看罢，大惊曰：“不意姜尚作难肆横，竟克朕之四关也。今不早治，是养痍自患也。”随传旨上殿。左右当驾官施設龙车凤辇，“请陛下发驾。”只见警蹕传呼，天子御驾早至金銮宝殿。掌殿官与金吾大将忙将钟鼓齐鸣，百官端肃而进，不觉威仪一新。只因纣王有经年未曾临朝，今一旦登殿，人心鼓舞如此。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

烟笼凤阁，香霭龙楼。光摇月戾动，云拂翠华流。侍臣灯，宫女扇，双双映彩；孔雀屏，麒麟殿，处处光浮。静鞭三下响，衣冠拜冕旒。金章紫绶垂天象，管取江山万万秋。

话说纣王设朝，百官无不庆幸。朝贺毕，王曰：“姜尚肆横，以下凌上，侵犯关隘，已坏朕四关，如今屯兵于临潼关下。若不大奋乾刚，以惩其侮，国法安在！众卿有何策可退周兵？”言未毕，左班中闪出一位上大夫李通，出班启奏曰：“臣闻‘君为元首，臣为股肱’。陛下平昔不以国事为重，听谗远忠，荒淫酒色，屏弃政事；以致天愁民怨，万姓不保，天下思乱，四海分崩。陛下今日临轩，事已晚矣。况今朝歌岂无智能之士，贤俊之人，只因陛下平日不以忠良为重，故今日亦不以陛下为重耳。即今东有姜文焕，游魂关昼



After the greetings, King Zhou asked, "What do you have to say, Uncle?"

"Jiang Ziya has taken four of our five passes. He's now at Lintong Pass, and several of our generals have been killed. The commander at Lintong Pass has sent a report for reinforcements. We beg you to pay close attention to this critical situation and deal with this danger at once," Wei Ziqi reported emotionally.

Greatly alarmed, King Zhou read the report and then ordered a conference in the golden royal court. With drums beating and gongs clashing, he rode in his dragon-phoenix coach to court, stirring up the ministers who had not been called to a conference for more than a year.

King Zhou announced before them, "Jiang Ziya's at Lintong Pass. If we don't punish him, what good is the law! Have you any ideas to repulse his army, dear Ministers?"

Li Tong, a supreme minister, knelt down and said, "It's a little late to consider it at this conference. It's not that there aren't talented persons who can deal with this grave situation; it's just that they don't show much concern for you, as you pay no attention to them. At this moment,





夜无宁；南有鄂顺，三山关攻打甚急；北有崇黑虎，陈塘关旦夕将危；西有姬发，兵叩临潼关，指日可破：真如大厦将倾，一木焉能扶得。臣今不避斧钺之诛，直言冒渎天听，乞速加整饬，以救危亡。如不以臣言为谬，臣举保二臣，可先去临潼关，阻住周兵，再为商议。愿陛下日修德政，去谗远佞，谏行言听，庶可少挽天意，犹不失成汤之脉耳。”王曰：“卿保举何人？”李通曰：“臣观众臣之内，止有邓昆、芮吉素有忠良之心，辅国实念，若得此二臣前去，可保无虞也。”纣王准奏，随宣邓昆、芮吉上殿。不一时宣至殿前，朝贺毕，王曰：“今有上大夫李通奏卿忠心为国，特举卿二人前去临潼关协守。朕加尔黄钺、白旄，特专阍外。卿当尽心竭力，务在必退周兵，以擒罪首。卿功在社稷，朕岂惜茅土以报卿哉。当领朕命。”邓昆、芮吉叩首曰：“臣敢不竭驽骀之力以报陛下知遇之恩也。”纣王传旨：“赐二卿筵宴，以见朕宠荣至意。”二臣叩头，谢恩下殿。须臾，左右铺上筵席，百官与二侯把盏。微子、箕子二位殿下也奉酒与二侯，哽咽言曰：“二位将军，社稷安危，在此一行，全仗将军扶持国难，则国家幸甚！”二侯曰：“殿下放心。臣平日之忠肝义胆，正报国恩于今日也，岂敢有负皇上委托之隆，众大夫保举之恩也。”酒毕，二人谢过二位殿下与众官，次日起兵离了朝歌，径往孟津渡黄河而来。按下不表。

且说土行孙催粮至辕门，看见一首幡，幡下却是韦护的降魔杵，雷震子的黄金棍。土行孙不知其故，自思：“他二人兵器如何丢在此幡下？我且见了元帅，再来看其真实。”报马报入中军：“启元帅：二运督粮官等令。”子牙传令：“令



we have Jiang Wenhuan in the east, E Shun in the south, Chong Heihu in the north and Ji Fa as near as Lintong Pass. It's like a single pillar trying to support a big building. I beg Your Majesty to rectify your behavior so that you can save yourself and your dynasty. If you think what I say is true, I'll recommend two talented ministers to repulse the Zhou army."

"Whom would you recommend, dear Minister?" King Zhou asked.

"Among all the ministers, I believe Deng Kun and Rui Ji to be the most loyal. Our territory would be well defended if you appoint them as commanders to reinforce the front," Li Tong replied.

The recommendation was approved by King Zhou and the two generals were ordered to appear at court to see the king at once. They arrived in no time and after receiving their orders, kowtowed and said, "We thank Your Majesty for our appointment to such a glorious post. We will do our best to return your grace."

King Zhou entertained them, and they left Zhaoge the next day.

Arriving with more food supplies, Earth Traveler Sun saw the Demon Subduing Club and Thunderbolt's gold cudgel under the pennant. He wondered how they could leave their weapons in such a place but decided to go and see Jiang first to find out what happened.



来。”土行孙来至中军，见子牙行礼毕，问曰：“弟子适才督粮至辕门外，见那关前竖一首幡，那幡下却有韦护、雷震子两件兵器在那幡下，不知何故？”子牙把卞吉的事说了一遍。土行孙不信：“岂有此理？”哪吒曰：“卞吉被吾打了一圈，这几日俱不曾出来。”土行孙曰：“待吾去便知端的。”哪吒曰：“你不可去，果是那幡利害。”土行孙只是不信。那时天色将晚，土行孙径出营门，一头往幡下来。方至幡下，便一交跌倒，不知人事。周营哨马报于子牙。子牙大惊。正无可计较，只见关上军士见幡下睡着一个矮子，报与欧阳淳。欧阳淳命：“开关拿来。”——不知若要拿人，只是卞吉的家将拿的，其余别人皆拿不得，到不得幡下去。——彼时几个军士走至幡下，俱翻身跌倒，不醒人事。关上军士看见，忙报主将。欧阳淳亦自惊疑，忙叫左右：“去请卞吉来。”卞吉此时在家调养伤痕，闻主帅来呼唤，只得勉强进府中。欧阳淳将前事告诉一遍。卞吉曰：“此小事耳。”命家将：“去把那矮子拿来，将众人放了。”家将出关，将土行孙绑了，把众军士拖出幡外。众人如醉方醒，各各揉眼擦面。一时将土行孙扛进关来，拿进府中。欧阳淳问曰：“你是何人？”土行孙曰：“我见幡下有一黄金棍，拿去家里耍子，不知就在那里睡着了。”卞吉在傍边骂曰：“你这匹夫！怎敢以言语来戏弄我？”命左右：“拿去斩了！”众军士拿出前门，举刀就斩，只见土行孙一扭，就不见了。正是：

地行妙术真堪羨，一晃全身入土中。

众军士忙进府中来报曰：“启元帅：异事非常！我等拿此人，方才下手，那矮子把身一晃，就不见了。”欧阳淳与卞吉



When he heard the story about Bian Ji, Earth Traveler Sun said, "Let me go and see what it is."

"Oh, no! The pennant is really terrible," Nezha warned him.

Not heeding their advice, Earth Traveler Sun left the camp at dusk and headed straight for the pennant. Passing underneath, he immediately lost consciousness.

The guards on the pass wall saw the dwarf and reported the matter to Ouyang Chun. He ordered his men to bring him in, but they too fainted when they approached the pennant. Ouyang Chun then sent for Bian Ji, who was still resting at home. Bian Ji's men carried the dwarf in and pulled their guards safely out of the way. They immediately came to.

Ouyang Chun questioned Earth Traveler Sun, "Who are you, dwarf?"

"When I saw that gold cudgel, I wanted to take it to play with at home. I don't know why I fell asleep there," Earth Traveler Sun replied humorously.

"You fool! Dare you play a joke on me?" Bian Ji cried angrily and ordered, "Take him out and cut his head off."

Pushed outside, Earth Traveler Sun immediately twisted his body into the ground and disappeared. The guards rushed back in and told the commander what happened.



曰：“这个就是土行孙了，倒要仔细。”彼此惊异。不表。土行孙回营，来见子牙，曰：“果然此幡利害，弟子至幡下就跌倒了，不知人事，若非地行之术，性命休矣。”次日，卜吉伤痕全愈，领家将出关，至军前搦战。哨马报入子牙。子牙问：“谁人出马？”哪吒愿往，登风火轮，摇火尖枪出营来。卜吉见了仇人，也不答话，摇画杆戟，劈面刺来。哪吒火尖枪分心就刺。一场大战。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

战鼓杀声扬，英雄临战场。红旗如烈火，征夫四臂忙。  
这一个展开银杆戟；那一个发动火尖枪。哪吒施威武；  
卜吉逞刚强。忠心扶社稷，赤胆为君王。相逢难下手，  
孰在孰先亡。

话说卜吉战哪吒，又恐他先下手，把马一拨，预先往幡下走来。——看官：若论哪吒要往幡下来，他也来得；他是莲花化身，却无魂魄，如何来不得。只是哪吒天性乖巧，他犹恐不妙，便立住脚，看卜吉往幡下过去了，他便登回风火轮，自己回营。不表。

且说卜吉进关来见欧阳淳，言曰：“不才欲诓哪吒往幡下来，他狡猾不来赶我，自己回营去了。”欧阳淳曰：“似此奈何？”正议间，忽探马报：“邓、芮二侯奉旨前来助战，请主将迎接。”欧阳淳同众将出府来迎接。二侯忙下马，携手上银安殿。行礼毕，二侯上坐，欧阳淳下陪。邓昆问曰：“前有将军告急本章进朝歌，天子看过，特命不才二人与将军协守此关。今姜尚猖獗，所在授首，军威已挫，似全不在战之罪也。今临潼关乃朝歌保障，与他关不同，必当重兵把守，方保无虞。连日将军与周兵交战，胜负如何？”欧阳淳曰：



Ouyang turned to Bian Ji, "That must have been Earth Traveler Sun. We've got to keep an eye out for him."

Earth Traveler Sun returned to the camp and reported to Jiang Ziya, "That pennant is really terrible. I would have lost my life if I didn't know how to travel underground."

The next day Bian Ji challenged the Zhou army. He was met by Nezha. The two fought lance against halberd violently without uttering a word.

Fearing that Nezha would strike again with the Universal Ring, Bian Ji ran quickly under the pennant. But Nezha did not chase after him, though he knew that for him there was no danger. He lagged behind with a thoughtful expression.

Bian Ji was relating the outcome of their battle when it was reported that two marquises had arrived. They went out to welcome them.

After the exchange of greetings, Deng Kun said, "As soon as your report reached Zhaoge, we were appointed to come here. Lintong Pass is crucial for the protection of Zhaoge. We cannot lose it. What's the situation now?"



“初次副将卞金龙失利，幸其子卞吉有一幡，名曰幽魂白骨幡，全仗此幡，以阻周兵，一次拿了南宫适，二次拿了黄飞虎、黄明，三次拿了雷震子。”邓昆曰：“拿的可是反五关的黄飞虎？”欧阳淳曰：“正是他了。”欧阳淳此回正是：

无心说出黄飞虎，咫尺临潼属子牙。

话说邓昆问：“可是武成王黄飞虎？”欧阳淳曰：“正是。”邓昆冷笑曰：“他今日也被你拿了，此将军莫大之功也。”欧阳淳谦谢不已。邓昆暗记在心。原来黄飞虎是邓昆两姨夫，众将那里知道。欧阳淳治酒管待二侯，众将饮罢，各散。邓昆至私宅，默思：“黄飞虎今已被擒，如何救他？我想天下八百诸侯，尽已归周，此关大势尽失，料此关焉能阻得他！不若归周，此为上策。但不知芮吉何如？且待明日会过一战，见机而作。”次日，二侯上殿，众将参谒。芮吉曰：“吾等奉旨前来，当以忠心报国。速传令，把人马调出关会姜尚，早定雌雄，以免无辜涂炭。”欧阳淳曰：“将军之言甚善。”令卞吉等关中点炮呐喊，人马一齐出关。邓、芮二侯出了关外，见了幽魂白骨幡高悬数丈，阻住正道。卞吉在马上曰：“启上二位将军：把人马从左路上走，不可往幡下去。此幡不同别样宝贝。”芮吉曰：“既去不得，便不可走。”军士俱从左路至子牙营前，对左右探马曰：“请武王、子牙答话。”哨马报入中军：“启元帅：关中大势人马排开，请武王、元帅答话。”子牙曰：“既请武王答话，必有深意。”命中军官速请武王临阵。子牙传令：“点炮呐喊。”宝纛旗磨动，辕门开处，鼓角齐鸣，周营中人马齐出。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：



“In the first battle, we lost Bian Jinlong, but luckily Bian Ji, his son, has taken Nangong Kuo, Huang Feihu, Huang Ming, and Thunderbolt with his White Bone Pennant,” Ouyang Chun reported.

“Is that Huang Feihu who rebelled against the government and fought his way out of the five passes?” Deng Kun asked.

“Yes, that’s him,” Ouyang Chun replied.

“You really have achieved great merit,” Deng Kun said with a cold smile.

Deng Kun said nothing about his relationship with Huang Feihu. The two were brothers-in-law, but no one else knew of this close tie.

That night Deng Kun sat alone in his room thinking. “How can I rescue Huang Feihu? All the nobles in the country have already recognized Zhou. It would be best for me to join them as well, but I don’t know what Rui Ji thinks about this state of affairs. I’ll see what I can do tomorrow on the battlefield.”

The next day Rui Ji and Deng Kun led the entire army out of the pass. They saw the white Bone Pennant directly before them, but Bian Ji warned them to march in a wide circle around. They approached the Zhou camp and demanded to see both Jiang Ziya and King Wu.





红旗闪烁出军中，对对英雄气吐虹。马上将军如猛虎，步下士卒似蛟龙。腾腾杀气冲霄汉，霭霭威光透九重。金盔凤翅光华吐，银甲鱼鳞瑞彩横，幞头灿烂红抹额，束发冠摇雉尾雄。五岳门人多骁勇，哪吒正印是先锋。保周灭纣元戎至，杀法森严姜太公。

话说邓、芮二侯在马上见子牙出兵，威风凛凛，杀气腾腾，别是一般光景；又见那三山五岳门人，一班儿齐齐整整；又见红罗伞下，武王坐逍遥马，左右有四贤、八俊，分于两傍，怎见得武王生成的天子仪表非俗，有诗为证，诗曰：

龙凤丰姿迥出群，神清气旺帝王君。三停匀称金霞绕，五岳朝归紫雾分。仁慈相继同尧舜，吊伐重光过夏殷。八百十年开世业，特将时雨救如焚。

话说邓、芮二侯在马上大呼曰：“来者可是武王、姜子牙么？”子牙曰：“然也。”因而问之：“二公乃是何人？”邓昆曰：“吾乃邓昆、芮吉是也。姜子牙，你想西周不以仁义礼智辅国四维，乃擅自僭称王号，收匿叛亡，拒逆天兵，杀军覆将，已罪在不赦；今又大肆猖獗，欺君罔上，忤逆不道，侵占天王疆土，意欲何为！独不思‘率土之滨，莫非王臣’，而敢簧惑天下后世之人心哉。”芮吉又指武王曰：“你先王素称有德，虽羈囚羑里七年，更无一言怨尤，克守臣节，蒙纣王怜赦归国，加以黄钺、白旄，特专征伐，其洪恩德泽，可为厚矣。尔等当世世酌报，尚未尽涓涯之万一；今父死未久，深听姜尚妄语，寻事干戈，兴无名之师，犯大逆之罪，是自取覆宗灭祀之祸，悔亦何及！今听吾言，速反其干戈，



In no time at all, they appeared at the head of the Zhou army. King Wu rode a jaunty horse under a red silk parasol. He was attended by ministers on both sides and looked like an emperor sent directly from Heaven.

The two marquises yelled loudly from their horses, "Are you King Wu and Jiang Ziya?"

"Yes, we are, and who are you?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"We are Deng Kun and Rui Ji. Jiang Ziya! You have committed unpardonable crimes. You must remember that the land in this country belongs to the king. How can you behave like this?" Deng Kun criticized him severely.

"The deceased duke was so virtuous that he complained not once in his seven years of confinement. He always behaved as a very loyal subject. It's a pity that Jiang Ziya tricked you so soon after your father's death. Listen to me: withdraw your troops, return all the passes and territories you have occupied, and surrender all the rebels and traitors for trial. You may then be pardoned. Otherwise, His Majesty will lead his great army against you and destroy all without mercy," Rui Ji said, pointing at King Wu.



退其关隘，擒其渠魁，献俘商郊，尔自归待罪，尚待尔以不死；不然，恐天子大奋乾刚，亲率六师，大张天讨，只恐尔等死无噍类矣。”子牙笑曰：“二位贤侯只知守常之语，不知时务之说。古云：‘天命无常，惟有德者居之。’今纣王残虐不道，荒淫酗暴，杀戮大臣，诛妻弃子，郊社不修，宗庙不享，臣下化之，朋家作仇，戕害百姓，无辜吁天，秽德彰闻，罪盈恶贯。皇天震怒，特命我周恭行天之讨，故天下诸侯相率事周，会于孟津，观政于商郊。二侯尚执迷不悟，犹以口舌相争耶。以吾观之，二侯如寄寓之客，不知谁为之主；宜速倒戈，弃暗投明，亦不失封侯之位耳。请自速裁。”邓昆大怒，命卜吉：“拿此野叟！”卜吉纵马摇戟，冲杀过来。傍有赵昇使双刀前来抵住。二人正接战间，芮吉持刀也冲将过来。这边孙焰红使斧抵住。只见武吉推开马杀来助战。傍边恼了先行哪吒，登开风火轮，现三首八臂，冲杀过来，势不可当。邓昆见哪吒三头八臂，相貌异常，只吓得神魂飞散，急忙先走，传令鸣金收兵，众将各架住兵器。正是：

人言姬发过尧舜，云集群雄佐圣君。

话说邓昆回兵进关，至殿前坐下，欧阳淳、卜吉等俱说姜尚  
用兵有法，将勇兵骁，门下又有许多三山五岳道术之士，难以  
取胜，俱各咨嗟不已。欧阳淳只得治酒管待。至夜，各自归于  
卧所。且说邓昆至更深，自思：“如今天时已归西周，纣王荒淫  
不道，谅亦不久；况黄飞虎又是两姨，被陷在此，使吾掣肘，如  
之奈何！且武王功德日盛，有龙凤之姿，天日之表，真是应运  
之主。子牙又善用兵，门下又是些道术之



Jiang Ziya smiled. "You two marquises speak in ordinary terms, ignoring conditions and dialectics. An ancient proverb says, 'The will of Heaven is subject to change but will always favor the most virtuous.' You two are like servants who don't know your master. You should forsake the darkness and throw yourselves into the light as soon as possible. You still have time to make up your minds."

Angry at his words, Deng Kun ordered Bian Ji, "Take that wild old man captive for me at once!"

Bian Ji rushed in to attack with his halberd, and Zhao Sheng ran to meet the blow with his double cutlasses. When Rui Ji moved to join in, Sun Yanhong parried with his axe. Finally, Wu Ji and Nezha joined the fight.

When Nezha transformed himself into his second shape, Deng Kun grew frightened and ordered his army to withdraw.

Returning to his chamber after their feast that night Deng sat thinking again, "Now, the will of Heaven and the people's hearts are completely with West Qi. King Zhou is lewd and cruel; he won't last long. King Wu looks as wonderful as a dragon or a phoenix, as bright as the sun or full moon. He must be destined as the new ruler of the nation. Jiang Ziya is a great strategist with heroic generals, wonderful disciples, and brave sol-



客，此关岂能为纣王久守哉。不若归周，以顺天时。只恐芮吉不从，奈何！且俟明日以言挑他，看他意思何如，再为道理。”就思想了半夜。不说邓昆已有意归周，且表芮吉自与武王见阵进关，虽是吃酒，心上暗自沉吟：“人言武王有德，果然气宇不同。子牙善能用兵，果然门下俱是异士。今三分天下，周有其二，眼见得此关如何守！不若献关归降，以免兵革之苦。只不知邓昆心上如何？且慢慢将言语探他，便知虚实。”两下里俱各有意。不题。

只见次日，二侯升殿坐下，众将官参谒毕，邓昆曰：“关中将寡兵微，昨日临阵，果然姜尚用兵有法，所助者又是些道术之士。国事艰难，如之奈何？”卞吉曰：“国家兴隆，自有豪杰来佐，又岂在人之多寡哉！”邓昆曰：“卞将军之言虽是，但目下难支，奈何？”卞吉曰：“今关外尚有此幡，阻住周兵，料姜尚不能过此。”芮吉听了他二人说话，心中自忖：“邓昆已有意归周。”不觉至晚，饮了数杯，各散。邓昆令心腹人密请芮侯饮酒。芮吉闻命，欣然而来。二侯执手至密室相叙。左右掌起烛来。二侯对面传杯。正是：

二侯有意归真主，自有高人送信来。

且不言二侯正在密室中饮酒，欲待要说心事，彼此不好擅出其口。只见子牙在营中运筹取关，又多了那首幡，阻在路上，欲别寻路径，又不知他关中虚实，黄飞虎等下落，无计可施。忽然想起土行孙来，随唤土行孙分付：“你今晚可进关去，……如此如此，探听，不得有误。”土行孙得令，把精神抖擞，至一更时分，径进关来。先往禁中，来看南宫适等三人。土行孙见看守的尚未曾睡，不敢妄动，却往别处行



diers. We won't be able to hold this pass for long. I want to join them, but Rui Ji may oppose this idea. What will I do then?" Deng Kun pondered on until midnight.

After seeing King Wu on the front, Rui Ji began to entertain thoughts similar to his fellow marquis. But unaware of Deng Kun's thinking, he determined to wait and find out what he could do through their talks.

The two marquises did not realize that their intentions were the same until the military conference the next day. After the greetings were over, Deng said, "We only have a few generals and a small number of soldiers in this pass, but Jiang Ziya, as we have seen, has an enormous army of brave generals and disciples. It will be difficult for us to hold out much longer. What shall we do?"

"Heroes and other brave warriors will certainly come to support us. We shouldn't worry about the numbers," Bian Ji said unreservedly.

"Though you are right theoretically, what specific plan do you have, General?" Deng Kun continued.

"We still have the pennant blocking the Zhou army. I don't think Jiang Ziya can leap over this pass." Bian Ji would not give in.

Listening to their debate, Rui Ji could sense Deng Kun's true purpose. That night Deng Kun returned to his room and sent one of his own men to invite Rui Ji over for a drink.

Jiang Ziya sat thinking alone that night. Blocked by the pennant, they could not enter the pass, but neither could they skirt around because Huang Feihu, Huang Ming, Nangong Kuo, and Thunderbolt were locked inside. He suddenly thought of Earth Traveler Sun and decided to send him over to spy out the situation.

Filled with excitement, Earth Traveler Sun left at the first watch. He wanted to enter the jail first, in the hope of seeing Huang Feihu and the other generals in captivity, but the warders were still on duty, and if he were discovered he thought it would be most inconvenient. He had to wander elsewhere.



走。只见来至前面，听得邓、芮二侯在那厢饮酒。土行孙便躲在地下听他们说些甚么。只见邓昆屏退左右，笑谓芮吉曰：“贤弟，我们说句笑话。你说将来还是周兴，还是纣兴？你我私议，各出己见，不要藏隐，总无外人知道。”芮侯亦笑曰：“兄长下问，使弟如何敢尽言。若说我等的识见洪远，又有所不敢言；若是模糊应答，兄长又笑小弟是无用之物，弟终讷于言。”邓昆笑曰：“我与你虽为各姓，情同骨肉；此时出君之口，入吾之耳，又何本心之不可说哉。贤弟勿疑！”芮吉曰：“大丈夫既与同心之友谈天下政事，若不明目张胆倾吐一番，又何取其能担当天下事，为识时务之俊杰哉。据弟愚见，你我如今虽奉敕协同守关，不过强逆天心民意，是岂人民之所愿者也！今主上失德，四海分崩，诸侯叛乱，思得明主，天下事不卜可知。况周武仁德播布四海，姜尚贤能，辅相国务，又有三山五岳道术之士为之羽翼，是周日强盛，汤日衰弱，将来继商而有天下者，非周武而谁。前者会战，其规模气宇已自不同。但我等受国厚恩，惟以死报国，尽其职耳。承兄长下问，故敢以实告，其他非我知也。”邓昆笑曰：“贤弟这一番议论，足见洪谋远识，非他人所可及者，但可惜生不逢时，遇不得其主耳。将来纣为周掳，吾与贤弟不过徒然一死而已。愚兄固当与草木同朽，只可惜贤弟不能效古人所谓‘良禽择木而栖，贤臣择主而仕’，以展贤弟之才。”言罢，咨嗟不已。芮吉笑曰：“据弟



He went next to the study, where he could make out the marquises, Deng Kun and Rui Ji, talking above his head. He stopped there under their feet to listen the conversation.

After his attendants had left the room, Deng Kun said to Rui Ji with a smile, "Dear Brother! Let's talk freely and openly with one another. What do you think will happen in the near future? Who will rise to Heaven and who will fall into hell? We should speak honestly for there is no one else to hear."

Rui Ji replied with a smile, "My dear elder brother, I dare not keep my mouth shut and refuse to answer the questions put before me. But here is my trouble: I can neither venture to speak frankly, nor am I willing to go on like a fool, with half uttered thoughts and fuzzy ideas. Your questions are very troubling, Brother."

"Though our surnames are different, we are as close as real brothers. Your words to me will not leave this room. You may speak boldly and freely. You needn't worry in the least, dear Brother," Deng Kun said again with a reassuring smile.

"When a great warrior has the opportunity to discuss national politics with an intimate friend, he should pour out his heart to reveal his innermost feelings. As far as I can see, we are acting against the will of Heaven and the people so long as we guard and protect this pass. Our king has caused the whole nation to split, and every duke has revolted against him. Everyone is praying for a good and bright ruler. King Wu's kindness and virtue are well-known, Jiang Ziya, who is both learned and highly talented, leads an army of brave generals and disciples. It is clear that the Zhou Dynasty will soon have its day. But as we have enjoyed national grace for generations, we must serve our nation to the very end. I have spoken the truth, Brother, and I know nothing else," Rui Ji said frankly.

"You are really thoughtful and far-sighted, but what a pity we were not born at a time we could serve a good master. We should be ready to sacrifice our lives when King Zhou meets his end. I am ready to go, but you, Brother, will have no opportunity to demonstrate your talent before a bright master as you have dreamed," Deng Kun said with a sigh.





察兄之意，兄已有意归周，故以言探我耳。弟有此心久矣。果长兄有意归周，弟愿随鞭镫。”邓昆忙起身慰之曰：“非不才敢蓄此不臣之心，只以天命人心卜之，终非好消息，而徒死无益耳。既贤弟亦有此心，正所谓‘二人同心，其利断金’，只吾辈无门可入，奈何？”芮吉曰：“慢慢寻思，再乘机会。”二人正商议绸缪，已被土行孙在地下听得详细，喜不自胜，思想：“不若乘此时会他一会，有何不可？也是我进关一场。引进二侯归周，也是功绩。”正是：

世间万事由天数，引得贤侯归武王。

话说土行孙在黑影里钻将上来，现出身子，上前言曰：“二位贤侯请了！要归武王，吾与贤侯作引进。”道罢，就把邓、芮二侯唬得半晌无言。土行孙曰：“二侯不要惊恐，吾乃是姜元帅麾下二运督粮官土行孙是也。”邓、芮二侯听毕，方才定神，问曰：“将军为何夤夜至此？”土行孙曰：“不瞒贤侯说，奉姜元帅将令，特来进关探听虚实。适才在地下听得二位贤侯有意归周，恨无引进，故敢轻冒，致惊大驾，幸无见罪。若果真意归周，不才预为先容。吾元帅谦恭下士，决不致有辜二侯之美意也。”邓、芮二侯听说，不胜欣喜，忙上前行礼曰：“不知将军前来，有失迎迓，望勿见罪。”邓昆复挽土行孙之手，叹曰：“大抵武王仁圣，故有公等高明之士为之辅弼耳。不才二人昨日因在阵上，见武王与姜元帅俱是盛德之士，天下不久归周，今日回关，与芮贤弟商议，不意为将军得知，实吾二人之幸也。”土行孙曰：“事不宜迟。将军可修书一封，俟我先报知姜元帅，候将军乘机献关，以便我等接应。”邓昆急忙向灯下修书，递与土行孙，曰：“烦将军报知姜元帅，设法取关。早晚将军还进关来，以便商议。”土行孙领命，把身子一晃，无影无形去了。二侯看了，目瞪口呆，咨嗟不已。有诗赞之，诗曰：



Rui Ji smiled again. "I can see, Brother, that you want to join Zhou and would like to know my mind. I have had the same idea for a long time, and if you wish to go, I will follow you, even as your horse boy, running along behind."

Deng Kun quickly got up to thank Rui Ji. He said, "I dare not be disloyal, but fate is so awful to us. We should not die in vain. As an old proverb says, 'The union of two with one mind is a sharp sword that can cut metal to pieces.' Our difficulty now is to find a way out. Do you have any ideas?"

Earth Traveler Sun heard all of this. He was glad to get such valuable information and decided to reveal himself to the two marquises. He suddenly popped from the earth and addressed the two, "How do you do! Let me act as your guide to meet King Wu!"

Seeing their utter astonishment, he continued, "Don't worry, dear Marquises! I'm Earth Traveler Sun, the convoy officer for transportation of food supplies under Jiang Ziya. I have come by order of Commander Jiang to obtain military information. I know you would like to join Zhou but don't know how. Excuse me if I startled you by appearing so suddenly before you. I'll report to our commander at once if you are really sincere about joining our forces. He is modest and amiable and would welcome you wholeheartedly."

Hearing this, Deng Kun and Rui Ji bowed low and said, "It is a pleasure to have you come. Forgive us for not greeting you sooner."

"We must move quickly. Write a letter which I can deliver to Commander Jiang. You may take over the pass when the time is right, and we will attack from the outside," Earth Traveler Sun said hurriedly.

When the letter was finished and they bade farewell, Earth Traveler Sun twisted his body into the ground and disappeared. The marquises gasped in astonishment.



暗进临潼察事奇，二侯共议正逢时。行孙引进归明主，  
不负元戎托所知。

话说土行孙来至中军，刚有五鼓时分，子牙还坐在后帐中等土行孙消息。忽然土行孙立于面前，子牙忙问其“进关所行事体如何？”土行孙曰：“弟子奉命进关，三将还在禁中，因看守人不曾睡，不敢下手，复行至邓、芮二侯密室，见二人共议归周，恨无引进，被弟子现身见他，二侯大悦，有书在此呈上。”子牙接书，灯下观看，不觉大喜：“此真天子之福也！再行设策，以候消息。”令土行孙回帐。不表。

且说邓、芮二侯次日升殿坐下，众将来见。邓昆曰：“吾二人奉敕协守此关，以退周兵，昨日会战，未见雌雄，岂是大将之所为。明日整兵，务在一战以退周兵，早早班师以复王命，是吾愿也。”欧阳淳曰：“贤侯之言是也。”当日整顿兵马，一宿晚景。不题。次日，邓昆检点士卒，炮声响处，人马出关，至周营前搦战。邓昆见幽魂白骨幡竖在当道，就在这幡上发挥，忙令卞吉：“将此幡去了。”卞吉大惊曰：“贤侯在上：此幡是无价之宝，阻周兵全在于此；若去了此幡，临潼关休矣。”芮吉曰：“吾乃是朝廷钦差官，反走小径；你为偏将，倒行中道，周兵观之，深为不雅。纵有常胜，亦不为武。理当去了此幡。”卞吉自思：“若是去了此幡，恐无以胜敌人；若不去，彼为主将，我岂可与之抗礼。今既为父亲报仇，岂惜此一符也。”卞吉马上欠身曰：“二位贤侯不必去幡，请回关中一议，自然往返无碍耳。”邓、芮二侯俱进了关，卞吉忙画了三道灵符，邓、芮二侯每人一道，放在幞头里面。欧阳淳一道放在盔里，复出关来，数骑往幡下过，



Earth Traveler Sun returned at the fifth watch and reported everything to Jiang Ziya. Jiang Ziya then read the letter and said happily, "His Majesty will be very pleased." He ordered Earth Traveler Sun to retire and get a good rest.

At the military conference the next day, Deng Kun and Rui Ji announced, "By order of His Majesty, we have come to guard this pass. We met the enemy two days ago, but there was no conclusive victor. We must win tomorrow so that we may return to Zhaoge victorious."

"You're exactly right, Marquises," Ouyang Chun agreed.

The next day Deng Kun led his army out of the pass but halted before the White Bone Pennant. He turned and ordered, "General Bian Ji! Would you please take that pennant away at once?"

"Dear Marquises! How can we do that? This pennant is our most precious and powerful weapon. We would lose the pass if that pennant were taken down," Bian Ji protested.

"We are commanders appointed by His Majesty. It is a dishonor for us to ride on that narrow path, but you, only a general, are privileged to march smartly down the highway. We would be a laughing-stock even if we win the war. There's no reason you shouldn't take it away," Rui Ji argued.

Bian Ji thought it over for a while. "If the pennant's removed, we certainly can't stand up to the enemy, but he's our commander and I mustn't disobey. I will give them the spells to protect them so they may pass under as well."

Bian Ji then bowed and said, "We don't need to touch the pennant. Let's go back and I'll give you something to free you from its magic."

Back in the pass, Bian Ji hurriedly drew spells on three sheets of paper and gave one each to Deng Kun, Rui Ji, and Ouyang Chun. He told them to put the paper inside their helmets. When they were all ready, the



就如寻常。二侯大喜；及至周营，对军政官曰：“报你主将出来答话。”探马报入中军，子牙即忙领众将出营。邓昆大呼曰：“姜子牙，今日与你共决雌雄也！”拍马杀入中阵来。只见子牙背后有黄飞彪、黄飞豹二马冲出，接住邓、芮二侯厮杀。四骑相交，正在酣战之下，卞吉看不过，大呼曰：“吾来助战，二侯勿惧！”武吉出马，接住大战。只见卞吉拨马往幡下就走；武吉不赶。子牙见只有邓、芮二侯相战，忙令鸣金，两边各自回军。子牙看见邓、芮四将往幡下径自去了，心中着实迟疑；进营坐下，沉吟自思：“前日只是卞吉一人行走得，余则昏迷；今日如何他四人俱往幡下行得？”土行孙曰：“元帅迟疑，莫不是为着那幡下他四人都走得么？”子牙曰：“正为此说。”土行孙曰：“这有何难，候弟子今日再往关内去走一遭，便知端的。”子牙大喜曰：“当宜速行。”当晚初更，土行孙进关，来至邓、芮二侯密室。二侯见土行孙来至，不胜大喜曰：“正望公来！那幡名唤幽魂白骨幡，再无法可治。今日被我二人刁难他，他将一道符与我们顶在头上，往幡下过，就如平常，安然无事。足下可持此符献与姜元帅，速速进兵，吾自有献关之策也。”土行孙得符，辞了二侯，往大营来，见子牙备言前事。子牙大喜，取符一看，子牙已识得符中妙诀，取硃砂书符，分付众将。不知卞吉吉凶如何，且听下回分解。



three commanders rode out again and marched directly under the pennant without a bit of trouble.

Reaching the Zhou camp, Deng Kun roared, "We will fight you to the last today."

Deng Kun and Rui Ji rushed forward and were met by Huang Feibiao and Huang Feibao. Bian Ji couldn't hold his patience any longer. "Never mind, Marquises. Here I come!" he roared.

When Wu Ji rushed to meet him, Bian Ji gave up ground and ran directly toward his pennant, but Wu Ji was careful and did not pursue him.

Before long, Jiang Ziya ordered his army to return to camp. He was surprised to see Deng Kun, Rui Ji, and Ouyang Chun riding directly under the pennant, and agreed to send Earth Traveler Sun into the pass a second time to see the two marquises.

When Earth Traveler Sun popped up before them in the study that night, the two marquises said happily, "We were just waiting for you. We induced Bian Ji to write out the spell for us. Tucked into our helmets, we could ride under the pennant in complete safety. You may take this paper to Commander Jiang. When your troops attack the pass from outside, we'll surprise them from within."

Earth Traveler Sun hastily returned to camp and gave Jiang Ziya the sheet of paper with the spell written on it. Jiang looked it over and immediately realized its secret. He ground cinnabar ink and wrote the spell over and over in preparation for the battle ahead.

If you want to know what happened next, please read the next chapter.







## 第八十六回

### 澠池县五岳归天

诗曰：

澠池小县亦屏商，主将英雄却异常。吐雾神驹真鲜得，  
地行妙术更难量。二王年少因他死，五岳奇谋为尔亡。  
惟有智多杨督运，腾挪先杀老萱堂。

话说子牙将所用之符画完，分付军政官擂鼓，众将上帐参见。子牙曰：“你众将俱各领符一道，藏在盔内，或在发中亦可。明日会战，候他败走，众将先赶去，抢了他的白骨幡，然后攻他关隘。”众将听毕，领了符命，无不欢喜。次日，子牙大队而出，遥指关上搦战。探马报知，邓、芮二侯命卞吉出马。卞吉领令出关，可怜：

丹心枉作千年计，死到临头尚不知。

卞吉上马出关，径往幡下来，大呼曰：“今日定拿你成功也！”纵马摇戟，直奔子牙。只见子牙左右一千大小将官冲杀过来，把卞吉围在垓心，锣鼓齐鸣，喊声四起，只杀得烟雾迷空。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

杀气漫漫锁太华，戈声响亮乱交加。五关今属西岐主，  
万载名垂赞子牙。

话说卞吉被众将困在垓心，不能得出，忽然一戟刺中赵丙肩窝，赵丙闪开，卞吉乘空跳出阵来，径往幡下逃去。周营一千众将随后赶来。卞吉那知暗里已漏消息，尚自妄想拿人。



## *Chapter 86*

### **The Fall of Generals and Princes**

When Jiang Ziya had finished writing, he summoned his generals and announced, "Generals, I am going to give you each a sheet with a spell written on it. Put it inside your helmet or under your hair. With this protection, the White Bone Pennant cannot harm you, and the pass will soon be ours."

Jiang Ziya challenged the next day. Under orders from Deng Kun, Bian Ji ran out to attack Jiang Ziya. But the Zhou generals circled him with war cries and the roar of gongs and drums. Bian Ji frantically fought his way out and rushed over to his pennant, expecting the enemy to fall like flies at his feet.





卞吉复兜回马，伺候家将拿人，只见数将赶过幡下，径杀奔前来。卞吉大惊曰：“此是天丧成汤社稷，如何此宝无灵也！”不敢复战，随败进关来，闭门不出。子牙也不赶他，命诸将先将此幡收了。韦护取了降魔杵，又将雷震子黄金棍取了，掌鼓回营。且说卞吉进关来，见邓、芮二侯。不知二侯已自归周，就要寻事处治卞吉。忽报：“卞吉回见。”行至阶下，芮吉曰：“想今日卞将军擒有几个周将。”卞吉曰：“今日未将会战，周营有十数员大将围裹当中，未将刺中一将，乘空败走，引入幡下，以便擒拿他几员；不知何故，他众将一拥前来，俱往幡下过来。此乃天丧成汤，非未将战不胜之罪也。”芮吉笑曰：“前日擒三将，此幡就灵验；今日如何此幡就不准了？”邓昆曰：“此无他说，卞吉见关内兵微将寡，周兵势大，此关难以久守，故与周营私通，假输一阵，使众将一拥而入，以献此关耳。幸军士随即紧闭，未遂贼计，不然，吾等皆为掳矣。此等逆贼，留之终属后患。”喝令两边刀斧手：“拿下枭首示众！”可怜！正是：

一点丹心成画饼，怨魂空逐杜鹃啼。

卞吉不及分辨，被左右拿下，推出帅府，即时斩了首级号令。欧阳淳不知其故，见斩了卞吉，目瞪口呆，心下茫然。邓、芮二侯谓欧阳淳曰：“卞吉不知天命，故意逗留军机，理宜斩首。我二人实对将军说：方今成汤气数将终，荒淫不道，人心已离，天命不保；天下诸侯久已归周，只有此关之隔耳。今关中又无大将，足抵周兵，终是不能拒守。不若我等与将军将此关献于周武，共伐无道。正所谓‘顺天者昌，逆天者亡’。且周营俱是道术之士，我等皆非他的对手。固



When they chased him straight through without blinking an eyelash, Bian Ji gasped in astonishment and cried, "Heaven has forsaken us."

He then turned and escaped within the pass. Jiang Ziya did not let his army continue the chase. He ordered his men to take the pennant down and let Wei Hu retrieve his club and Thunderbolt's gold cudgel.

"How many captives did you take today, General?" Rui Ji asked purposely when he saw Bian Ji return in defeat.

"I'm sorry to say that I was defeated. Heaven is not with us. The pennant had no effect, whatsoever," Bian Ji complained.

"You took four generals a few days ago. What happened today?" Rui Ji asked with a smile.

"It must be that Bian Ji realized the strength of the Zhou army and pretended defeat to let the enemy rush in behind him. If our soldiers at the gate hadn't been so quick, they would have all been taken as prisoners. This treachery cannot be treated lightly," Deng Kun said harshly. "Take him out and cut his head off at once," he ordered.

Bian Ji had no chance to defend himself. He was bound up, taken out, and swiftly executed.

Ouyang Chun was stunned when he saw what had happened.

Deng Kun began to explain. "We will tell you the truth. The Shang Dynasty is near its end. All the nobles have joined Zhou in a united front, and this is the last pass protecting the king in his capital. Let's hand it over to Zhou and attack the despot with King Wu. We are no match for the Zhou army. Think it over, General."



然我与你俱当死君之难，但无道之君，天下共弃之，你我徒死无益耳。愿将军思之。”欧阳淳大怒，骂曰：“食君之禄，不思报本，反欲献关，甘心降贼，屈杀卞吉，此真狗彘之不若也！我欧阳淳其首可断，其身可碎，而此心决不负成汤之恩，甘效辜恩负义之贼也！”邓、芮二侯大喝曰：“今天下诸侯尽已归周，难道俱是负成汤之恩者；止不过为独夫残虐生民，万姓涂炭。周武兴吊民伐罪之师，汝安得以叛逆目之。真不识天时之匹夫！”欧阳淳大呼曰：“陛下误用奸邪，反卖国求荣，吾先杀此逆贼，以报君恩！”仗剑来杀邓、芮二侯。二侯亦仗剑来迎，杀在殿上，双战欧阳淳。欧阳淳如何战得过，被芮吉吼一声，一剑砍倒欧阳淳，枭了首级。正是：

为国亡身全大节，二侯察理顺天心。

话说二侯杀了欧阳淳，监中放出三将。黄飞虎上殿来，见是姨丈邓昆，二人相会大喜，各诉衷肠。芮吉传令：“速行开关。”先放三将来大营报信。三将至辕门，军政官报入中军，子牙大喜，忙令进帐来。三将至中军见礼毕，子牙问其详细，只见左右报：“邓昆、芮吉至辕门听令。”子牙传令：“令来。”二侯至中军，子牙迎下座来，二侯下拜，子牙搀住，安慰曰：“今日贤侯归周，真不失贤臣择主而仕之智！”二侯曰：“请元帅进关安民。”子牙传令，催人马进关。武王亦起驾随行。大军就地欢呼，人心大悦。武王来至帅府，查过户口册籍；关中人民父老，俱牵羊担酒，迎迓王师。武王命殿前治宴，管待东征大小众将，犒赏三军。住了数日，子牙传令：“起兵往澠池县。”好人马！一路上怎见得，有诗赞



Seething with fury, Ouyang Chun swore loudly, “You may cut my head off and slice me in a thousand pieces, but I will never be so ungrateful as to rebel!”

Both Deng Kun and Rui Ji yelled back at him, “Are all the nobles on the united front rebels? Are they ungrateful to the Shang Dynasty? They have been forced into this position because they want to save the people. You understand nothing!”

Ouyang Chun screamed, “Your Majesty! You mistakenly appointed these two traitors as commanders. I’m a loyal minister, so I must put them to death.”

He leaped forward to attack the two nobles, and they fought back as one. How could Ouyang Chun fight alone? He was soon slashed to death by Rui Ji.

The two nobles then ordered that the four captives be set free. Huang Feihu entered the headquarters and happily greeted Deng Kun, his brother-in-law. The four generals returned to report to Jiang Ziya, and soon thereafter, Deng Kun and Rui Ji arrived outside the camp gate.

Jiang Ziya went out to meet them and said, “Wisely you have come to us today. Good ministers must find a good master.”

The two nobles invited Jiang to enter the pass, and so he immediately ordered his army to move forward. They marched through the streets, the crowds cheering and clapping on both sides.

After the treasure houses and population records were checked over, King Wu ordered a big banquet to entertain generals and issued rewards to all the soldiers.



之，诗曰：

杀气迷空千里长，旌旗招展日无光。层层铁钺锋如雪，  
对对钢刀刃似霜。人胜登山豺虎猛，马过出水蟒龙刚。

渑池此际交兵日，“五岳”齐遭剑下亡。

话说子牙人马在路前行，不一日，探马报曰：“启元帅：前至渑池县了，请令定夺。”子牙传令：“安营。”点炮呐喊。话说渑池县总兵官张奎听得周兵来至，忙升帅府坐下。左右有二位先行官，乃是王佐、郑椿，上厅来见张奎。奎曰：“今日周兵进了五关，与帝都止有一河之隔，幸赖吾在此，尚可支撑。”张奎打点御敌。且说姜元帅次日升帐，命将出军，忽报：“有东伯侯差官下书。”子牙传令：“令来。”差官至军前行礼毕，将书呈上。子牙拆书观看。子牙看书毕，问左右曰：“如今东伯侯姜文焕求借救兵，我这里必定发兵才是。”傍有黄飞虎答曰：“天下诸侯皆仰望我周，岂有坐视不救之理。元帅当得发兵救援，以安天下诸侯之心。”子牙传令，问：“谁去取游魂关走一遭？”傍有金、木二吒欠身曰：“弟子不才，愿去取游魂关。”子牙许之，分一枝人马与二人去了。不表。且说子牙分付：“谁去渑池县取头一功？”南宫适应声愿往，领令出营，至城下搦战。张奎闻报，问左右先行：“谁人出马？”有王佐愿往，领兵开放城门，来至军前。南宫适大呼曰：“五关皆为周有，止此弹丸之地，何不早献，以免诛身之祸。”王佐骂曰：“无知匹夫！你等叛逆不道，罪恶贯盈，今日自来送死也！”纵马舞刀来取。南宫适手中刀拍面交还。战有二三十回合，被南宫适手起刀落，早把王佐挥为两段。南宫适得胜回营报功，子牙大喜。只见报马报进

Several days later, the Zhou army marched on to Mianchi County, a strategic area close to Zhaoge.

Zhang Kui, the garrison commander of Mianchi County, held a military conference to discuss the situation with his two vanguard generals, Wang Zuo and Zheng Chun.

“There’s only a river between us and Zhaoge. It’s lucky I’m here to take care of them,” Zhang Kui said with a smirk.

The next day Jiang Ziya received a letter from Jiang Wenhuan, the East Grand Duke, asking for reinforcements. Jinzha and Nezha volunteered to go, and Jiang approved their immediate departure.

Nangong Kuo went first to challenge at Mianchi County, and Wang Zuo came out to meet him.

After only twenty rounds, General Nangong slashed the Shang warrior in two.







城来。张奎闻报，王佐失机，心下十分不快。次日，又报：“周将黄飞虎搦战。”郑椿出马，与黄飞虎大战二十合，被黄飞虎一枪刺于马下，枭了首级回营。子牙大喜。话说张奎又见郑椿失利，着实烦恼。子牙见连日斩他二将，命左右军士一齐攻城。众将率领军士，放炮呐喊，前来攻城。城上士卒来报张奎，张奎在后厅闻报，与夫人高兰英商议：“如今孤城难守，连折二将，如之奈何？”高兰英曰：“将军有此道术，况且又有坐骑可以成功，何惧贼兵哉？”奎曰：“夫人不知，五关之内多少英雄，俱不能阻逆，一旦至此，天意可知。今主上犹荒淫如故，为臣岂能安于枕席。”夫妻正议，又报：“周兵攻城甚急。”张奎即时上马提刀，夫人掠阵；开放城门，一骑当先。只见子牙门下众将左右分开，张奎大呼曰：“姜元帅慢来！”子牙上前曰：“张将军，你可知天意？速速早降，不失封侯之位；若自执迷不悟，与五关为例。”张奎笑曰：“你逆天罔上，侥幸至此，量你今日死无葬身之地矣。”子牙笑曰：“天时人事，不问可知，只足下迷而不悟耳。此去朝歌不过数百里，一河之隔，四面八方，天下诸侯云集，谅你区区弹丸之地，投鞭可实，何敢拒吾师哉！此正所谓大厦将倾，一木安能支撑，徒自取灭亡耳！”张奎大怒，催开马，使手中刀，飞来直取子牙。后面姬叔明、姬叔昇二殿下走马大呼：“少冲吾阵！”两条枪急架忙迎。好张奎！使开刀力战二将。有诗为证：

臂膊抡开好用兵，空中各自下无情。吹毛利刃分先后，  
刺骨尖锋定死生。恶战止图麟阁姓，苦争只为史篇名。  
张奎刀法真无比，到处成功定太平。



When Huang Feihu challenged the next day, Zhang Kui sent out Zheng Chun, but he was quickly stabbed to death.

Zhang Kui began to worry after losing two generals, and Jiang Ziya, jubilant with his successes, ordered his whole army to attack the city wall in one wild rush.

Zhang Kui discussed this serious situation with his wife, Gao Lanying, in the back chamber.

“Don’t worry, my dear,” she comforted him, “You’re good at magic, and you have a wonderful riding beast. You shouldn’t fear those treacherous bandits.”

“Don’t you know that there were many heroes and great generals at each of the five passes? None of them could stop the Zhou army. The situation is extremely serious, but all His Majesty does is drink and take pleasure in women. How can we sleep soundly while this is going on?” Zhang Kui groaned.

When they heard that the city wall had been attacked, Zhang Kui and his wife got on their horses and rushed out to the front.

Seeing Jiang Ziya before him, accompanied by all his generals, Zhang Kui yelled across, “How do you do, Commander Jiang.”

Jiang moved forward and said, “Dear General Zhang! Don’t you realize the will of Heaven? Surrender now and you will be made a duke. If you plan to hold out, look at what happened at each of the five passes.”

“You act against the will of Heaven and offend the honor of His Majesty. You have won by chance and will meet your end today,” Zhang Kui replied with a smile.

“How can you be blind to what’s happening before you? It’s only a few hundred *li* from here to the capital. What can you do with such a small piece of land? How can you stand against such a great army? A single log cannot support a huge building that’s about to collapse. Think it over,” Jiang Ziya smile back.

Zhang Kui furiously spurred his horse forward to attack Jiang Ziya. He was checked by Ji Shuming and Ji Shusheng, two younger brothers of King Wu.



话说姬叔明等二将见战张奎不下，二位殿下掩一枪，诈败而走，指望回马枪挑张奎；不知张奎的坐骑甚奇，名为“独角乌烟兽”，其快如神。张奎让二将去有三四射之地，他把马上角一拍，那马如一阵乌烟，似飞云掣电而来。姬叔明听得有人追赶，以为得计时，不意张奎已至后面，措手不及，被张奎一刀挥于马下。姬叔昇见其兄落马，及至回马，又被张奎顺手一刀，也是两段。可怜金枝玉叶，一旦遭殃！子牙大惊，急鸣金收兵。张奎也掌鼓进城。子牙见折了二位殿下，收军回营，心下不乐。武王闻知丧了二弟，掩面而哭，进后营去了。张奎连斩二将，心中甚喜。夫妻二人商议，具表进朝歌。不题。

且言子牙闷坐帐上，谓诸将曰：“料渑池不过一小县，反伤了二位殿下！”只见众将齐说：“张奎的马有些奇异，其快如风，故此二位殿下措手不及，以致丧身。”众将正猜疑时，忽报：“北伯侯崇黑虎至辕门求见。”子牙传令：“请来。”崇黑虎同文聘、崔英、蒋雄上帐来，参谒子牙。子牙忙下帐，迎接上帐，各叙礼毕，子牙曰：“君侯兵至孟津几时了？”黑虎曰：“不才自起兵取了陈塘关，人马已至孟津扎营数月矣。今闻元帅大兵至此，特来大营奉谒，愿元帅早会诸侯，共伐无道。”子牙大喜。有武成王与崇黑虎相见，感谢黑虎曰：“昔日蒙君侯相助，擒斩高继能，此德尚未图报，时刻不敢有忘，铭刻五内。”彼此逊谢毕。子牙分付营中治酒，管待崇黑虎等。正是：

死生有数天生定，“五岳”相逢绝渑池。

当日酒散。次日，子牙升帐，众将参谒。忽报：“张奎搦



After a few rounds, the two princes turned and gave up ground purposely to induce Zhang Kui to chase after them. They had no idea that Zhang Kui's riding beast, called the Black Smoke Single-Horned Beast, could run as fast as lightning.

Zhang Kui patted the horn of his Black Smoke Beast and overtook the princes in a few strides. They had no time to even turn around before Zhang Kui raised his long-handled cutlass and slashed the two to death.

Jiang Ziya was surprised to lose the two princes so suddenly. He ordered his men to withdraw immediately. When King Wu heard the news, he mourned the loss of his two younger brothers.

As the generals sat discussing what to do, it was reported that Chong Heihu, the North Grand Duke, had arrived. Chong and his three generals, Wen Ping, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong, were invited in.

"How long have you been in Mengjin, dear duke?" Jiang Ziya asked after the greetings were over.

Chong Heihu replied, "We first took Chentang Pass and then set up camp in Mengjin. We've been there several months already and have come to pay our respects, as we heard you had recently arrived. Will you be able to meet the dukes as soon as possible so that we can attack the tyrant as a united front?"

Jiang Ziya immediately ordered a great feast for Black Tiger Chong Heihu and his party.



战。”哨马报入中军，子牙问：“今日谁人战张奎走一遭？”崇黑虎曰：“末将今日来至，当得效劳。”只见文聘、崔英、蒋雄三人也要同去。子牙大喜。四将同出大营，领本部人马摆开，崇黑虎催开了金睛兽，举双板斧，飞临阵前，大呼曰：“张奎！天兵已至，何不早降，尚敢逆天，自取灭亡哉！”张奎大怒，骂曰：“无义匹夫！你乃是弑兄图位，天下不仁之贼，焉敢口出大言！”催开马，使手中刀飞来直取。崇黑虎举双斧，急架忙迎。文聘大怒，发马摇叉，冲杀过来。崔英八楞锤一似流星；蒋雄的抓绒绳飞起；一齐上前，把张奎裹在当中。却说子牙在帐上见黄飞虎站立在傍，子牙曰：“黄将军，崇侯今日会战，你可去掠阵助他，也不负昔日崇侯曾为将军郎君报仇。”黄飞虎领令出营，见四将与张奎大战；黄飞虎自思：“吾在此掠阵，不见我之情分，不若走骑成功，何不为美。”黄飞虎将五色神牛催开，大呼曰：“崇君侯，吾来也！”此正是“五岳逢七杀”，大抵天数已定，毕竟难逃。只见五将裹住张奎，这场大战。怎见得，有赞为证：

只杀得愁云惨淡，旭日昏尘，征夫马上抖精神。号带飘扬，千条瑞彩满空飞；剑戟参差，三冬白雪漫阵舞。崇黑虎双板斧纷纭上下；文聘的托天叉左右交加；崔英的八楞锤如流星荡漾；蒋雄的五爪抓似蒺藜飞扬；黄飞虎长枪如大蟒出穴；好张奎，敌五将，似猛虎翻腾。刀架斧，斧劈刀，叮咣响嘹；叉迎刀，刀架叉，有叱咤之声；锤打刀，刀架锤，不离其身；抓分顶，刀掠处，全凭心力；枪刺来，刀隔架，纯是精神。五员将鞍鞞上各施巧妙，只杀得刮地寒风声拉杂，荡起征尘飞铠甲，浑



At the military conference the next day, Jiang asked, "Who would like to meet Zhang Kui in combat?"

"As we are here today, let me, Wen Ping, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong take him on," Chong Heihu volunteered.

With Jiang Ziya's approval, the four generals rode from the camp with an army. Chong Heihu let out a roar when they reached the front. "Zhang Kui! Why don't you surrender in the face of such a great army? You will only destroy yourself."

Zhang Kui swore wildly, "You bloody bastard! You murdered your own brother to usurp his high post. You're a wild and barbarous beast!"

Zhang Kui attacked Black Tiger Chong Heihu with his cutlass, and Chong met him with his double axes. Wen Ping joined in with his long-handled fork, Cui Ying with his ridged hammers, and Jiang Xiong with his woolen grasping rope. They surrounded Zhang Kui in violent combat.

Noticing Huang Feihu standing aside, Jiang Ziya said, "General Huang! Duke Chong Heihu and his three generals are fighting Zhang Kui now. You should go out to the front to help them and revenge your son's death."

Huang Feihu left the camp on his divine ox with a shout, "Duke Chong, here I come!"



池城下立功勋，数定“五岳”逢“七杀”。

话说五将把张奎围在垓心，战有三四十回合，未分胜负。崇黑虎暗思：“既来立功，又何必与他恋战。”把坐下金睛兽一兜，跳出圈子，诈败就走，好放神鹰。四将知机，也便拨马跟黑虎败走。他不知张奎坐骑其快如风，——也是“五岳”命该如此，——只见张奎等五将去有三二箭之地，把马顶上角一拍，一阵乌烟，即时在文聘背后，手起一刀，把文聘挥于马下。崇黑虎急用手去揭葫芦盖，已是不及，早被张奎一刀砍为两段。崔英勒回马来时，张奎使开刀又战三将。忽然桃花马走，一员女将用两口日月刀，飞出阵来，乃是高兰英来助张奎。这妇人取出个红葫芦来，祭出四十九根太阳金针，射住三将眼目，观看不明，早被张奎连斩三将下马。可怜五将一阵而亡！有诗为证，诗曰：

五将东征会渑池，时逢“七杀”数应奇。忠肝化碧犹啼血，义胆成灰永不移。千古英风垂泰嶽，万年裡祀祝嵩尸。五方帝位多隆宠，报国孤忠史册垂。

话说张奎连诛五将，哨马报与子牙，子牙大惊：“如何就诛了五将？”掠阵官备言张奎的马有些利害，故此五将俱措手不及，以致失利。子牙见折了黄飞虎，着实伤悼。正寻思之间，忽报：“杨戩催粮至辕门等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”至中军，参谒毕，禀曰：“弟子督粮已进五关，今愿缴督粮印，随军征伐立功。”子牙曰：“此时将会孟津，也要你等在中军协助。”杨戩立在一旁，听得武成王黄将军已死，杨戩叹曰：“黄氏一门忠烈，父子捐躯，以为王室，不过留清芬于简编耳！”又问：“张奎有何本领，先行为何不去会他？”哪吒



The five generals circled around Zhang Kui, but even after thirty or forty rounds, there was no decisive victor. Chong Heihu then spurred his fiery-eyed beast out of the circle and ran away as if defeated. Realizing that Duke Chong meant to release his hawk, the four other generals also turned and ran.

When he was two or three bow shots away, Zhang Kui patted the horn of his beast and in a wink was at the back of Wen Ping. General Zhang then lifted his cutlass and slashed him in two. Black Tiger Chong Heihu was cut to pieces in the same way, and had no time to open his gourd to release the magic hawk.

When they saw that both Chong Heihu and Wen Ping had been slashed to death, Huang Feihu, Cui Ying and Jiang Xiong ran back to attack Zhang Kui once again. Suddenly, a woman general appeared on a peach-colored pony. It was Gao Lanying, Zhang Kui's wife. After several rounds, she took a red gourd from her bag and picked out forty-nine Sun needles. When she threw them into the air, the three generals were blinded by the bright light, and in no time at all, slashed to bits by Zhang Kui.

Five Zhou generals, Huang Feihu, Chong Heihu, Wen Ping, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong, lost their lives in this battle. They were deified soon thereafter as the five Gods of the five famous mountains in China (Mt. Song, Mt. Tai, Mt. Hua, and two Heng Mountains).

Jiang Ziya was much alarmed to hear that all five generals had been lost in combat. As he sat pondering, Yang Jian suddenly returned with more food supplies. After he greeted the commander, Yang Jian begged, "I've been transporting food for so long. May I have the chance to serve on the front in combat?"

"Yes, we need you now, as we will reach Mengjin very soon," Jiang Ziya said happily.

When he learned that Huang Feihu had sacrificed his life on the battlefield, Yang Jian sighed and said, "The whole Huang family is so loyal. Both father and sons have given their lives for the dynasty. What makes





曰：“崇君侯意欲见功，不才先要让他，岂好占越，不意俱遭其害。”正言间，只见左右来报：“张奎搦战。”有黄飞彪愿为长兄报仇，子牙许之，杨戩掠阵。黄飞彪出营，见张奎也不答话，挺枪直取。张奎的刀急架忙迎。两马相交，一场大战，约有二三十合。黄飞彪急于为兄报仇，其力量非张奎对手，枪法渐乱，被张奎一刀挥于马下。杨戩掠阵，见张奎把黄飞彪斩于马下，又见他的马顶上有角，就知此马有些原故，“待吾除之！”杨戩纵马摇刀，大呼曰：“张奎休走！吾来也！”张奎问曰：“你是何人，也自来取死？”杨戩答曰：“你这匹夫，屡以邪术坏吾诸将，吾特来拿你，碎尸万段，以泄众将之恨！”举三尖刀劈面砍来。张奎手中刀急架相还。二马相交，双刀并举。怎见得一场大战，有赞为证，赞曰：

二将棋逢敌手，阵前各逞豪强。翻来覆去岂寻常，真似一对虎狼形状。这一个会腾挪变化；那一个会搅海翻江。刀来刀架两无妨，两个将军一样。

话说张奎与杨戩大战，有三十回合，杨戩故意卖个破绽，被张奎撞个满怀，伸出手抓住杨戩腰带，拎过鞍鞞。正是：

张奎今日擒杨戩，眼见丧了黑烟驹。

张奎活捉了杨戩，掌鼓进县，升厅坐下，令：“将周将推来！”左右将杨戩拥至厅前，杨戩站立。张奎大喝曰：“既被吾擒，为何不跪？”杨戩曰：“无知匹夫！我与你既为敌国，今日被擒，有死而已，何必多言！”张奎大怒，命左右：“推出斩首号令！”只见左右将杨戩斩讫，持首级号令。张奎方欲坐下，不一时，只见管马的来报：“启老爷得知：祸事不小！”



Zhang Kui so terrible? What can he do really? Why didn't you fight him first, Nezha? You're one of the vanguard generals." Yang Jian asked Nezha seriously.

"I had to let Duke Chong have the chance to achieve merit on the battlefield. I never expected they would all be sacrificed," Nezha replied.

Just then, it was reported that Zhang Kui had come to challenge again. Eager to revenge his elder brother, Huang Feibiao rushed in to beg Jiang Ziya to allow him to fight. Jiang approved his request and ordered Yang Jian to accompany him to the front.

Huang Feibiao attacked Zhang Kui without a word, but after twenty or thirty rounds, was already dead tired. Frantic with his desire to get revenge, he'd spent all his energy and was easily slashed down by Zhang Kui.

Yang Jian saw how Huang Feibiao was killed, and he noticed the horn on Zhang Kui's beast. He knew that the animal was their real enemy.

"You bloody bastard!" he called, "You've hurt many of our generals with your witchcraft, but I'll get you now and slice you into a hundred thousand pieces for the deaths of our colleagues!"

Yang Jian and Zhang Kui fought fiercely, cutlass against cutlass. After about forty rounds, Yang Jian purposely let Zhang Kui bump him and take him captive.

Yang Jian was carried into the city, and when he refused to kneel before Zhang Kui, he was swiftly executed.

It was soon reported that Yang Jian's head had been hung on a bamboo pole as a warning to the enemy, but moments later, Zhang Kui's horse boy came running in with fresh news. "Your riding beast's head suddenly dropped to the ground. It died instantly. We're completely baffled," the horse boy cried.



张奎大惊：“甚么祸事？”管马的曰：“老爷的马好好的吊下头来。”张奎听得此言，不觉失色，顿足曰：“吾成大功，全仗此乌烟兽，岂知今日无故吊下头来！”正在厅上急得三尸神暴跳，七窍内烟生，忽报：“方才被擒的周将又来搦战。”张奎顿然醒悟：“吾中了此贼奸计！”随即换马，提刀在手，复出城来；一见杨戩，大骂：“逆贼擅坏吾龙驹，气杀我也！怎肯干休？”杨戩笑曰：“你仗此马伤吾周将，我先杀此马，然后再杀你的驴头！”张奎切齿大骂曰：“不要走！吃吾一刀！”使开手中刀来取。杨戩的刀急架相迎。又战二十合，杨戩又卖个破绽，被张奎又抓住腰内丝绦，轻轻拎将过去，二次擒来。张奎大怒曰：“这番看你怎能脱去！”正是：

张奎二次擒杨戩，只恐萱堂血染衣

张奎捉了杨戩进城，坐在厅上。忽报，后边夫人高兰英来至面前，因问其故？张奎长吁叹曰：“夫人，我为官多年，得许大功劳，全仗此乌烟兽；今日周将杨戩用邪术坏吾龙驹，这次又被我擒来，还是将何法治之？”夫人曰：“推来我看。”传令：“将杨戩推来。”少时，推至厅前，高兰英一见，笑曰：“吾自有处治。将乌鸡黑犬血取来，再用尿粪和匀，先穿起他的琵琶骨，将血浇在他的头上，又用符印镇住，然后斩之。”张奎如法制度。夫妻二人齐出府前，看左右一一如此施行。高兰英用符印毕，先将血粪往杨戩头上浇，手起一刀，将首级砍落在地。夫妻大喜，方才进府来到厅前，忽听得后边丫环飞报出厅来，哭禀曰：“启老爷，夫人：不好了！老太太正在香房，不知那里秽污血粪把太太浇了一头，随即就吊下头来，真是异事惊人！”张奎大叫曰：“又中了杨戩妖



Zhang Kui paled with fright. He stamped his feet and pondered what might have caused his beast to lose its head. When it was reported that the Zhou general they had just executed was waiting again outside the city wall, he suddenly knew what had happened. "That bloody rascal tricked me!" he cried with hatred.

Zhang Kui rode out on a new steed with his long-handled cutlass. He cursed Yang Jian, "You damned rascal! You cruelly slaughtered my beast! I can't let you live any longer!"

"You got so many of our generals with your wonderful beast, so I had to take care of it first. I'll get you soon enough," Yang Jian said with a smile.

They fought again for twenty rounds until Yang Jian allowed himself to be captured a second time. Back in the city, Zhang Kui told his wife the story of his beast and how Yang Jian had fooled him. "I've captured him again, but what shall we do with him this time?" Zhang Kui asked Gao Lanying.

"Let me see him with my own eyes," Gao said.

When he was brought before her, Gao Lanying smiled and said, "I know how to deal with this sorcerer. Kill a black cock and a black dog. Mix their blood with human urine and feces, and after you've tied him up with a strong cord through his collar bone, we pour the dirty mixture over his head and body. You must stamp charms and spells first so he cannot escape with his witchcraft. You may finally cut his head off, and he will bother you no more."

Zhang ordered his men to follow her instructions precisely. Gao stamped the spells herself, and when the executioner raised his sword and Yang's head fell with a thud, husband and wife smiled in delight at their success.

Just as they were about to return to their quarters for a rest, a maid-servant rushed up. "Oh, General and Madam! Something terrible has happened! A few minutes ago, our old Madam was resting in her chamber when blood mixed with urine and feces suddenly poured from the air all over her head and body. Her head fell off, and she died at once," she cried excitedly.



术!”放声大哭，如醉如痴一般。自思：“老母养育之恩未报，今因为国，反将吾母丧命，真个痛杀我也！”忙取棺槨收殓。不表。且说杨戩径进中军，来见子牙，备言：“……先斩其马，后杀其母，先惑乱其心，然后擒张奎不难矣。”子牙大喜曰：“此皆是你不世之功。”且说张奎思报母仇，上马提刀，来周营搦战。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。

“We’ve been tricked by Yang Jian again!” Zhang Kui roared. He then broke down and cried bitterly like a madman. “My dear mother! She died for my sake—it’s all my fault! Oh, woe is me.”

Zhang Kui ordered a big funeral for his mother. He buried her in an expensive coffin.

Yang Jian returned to camp to see Jiang Ziya and reported that he had slaughtered Zhang Kui’s Black Smoke Beast and his mother, in the hope of driving the enemy crazy. Jiang Ziya listened to the news with delight.

Zhang Kui was eager to revenge his mother’s death and soon challenged the Zhou camp.

If you want to know what happened to him, please read the next chapter.



## 第八十七回

### 土行孙夫妻阵亡

诗曰：

地行妙术法应玄，谁识张奎更占先。猛兽崖前身已死，  
渑池城下妇归泉。许多功业成何用，几度勋名亦枉然。  
留得两行青史在，从来成败总由天。

话说子牙在中军正议进兵之策，忽报：“张奎搦战。”哪吒曰：“弟子愿往。”登风火轮而出，现出八臂三首，来战张奎，大呼曰：“张奎若不早降，悔之晚矣！”张奎大怒，催开马，仗手中刀来取。哪吒使手中枪劈面迎来。未及三五合，哪吒将九龙神火罩祭起去，把张奎连人带马罩住。用手一拍，只见九条火龙一齐吐出烟火，遍地烧来。——不知张奎会地行之术，如土行孙一般。——彼时张奎见罩落将下来，知道不好，他先滚下马，就地下去了。哪吒不曾有心看，几乎误了大事，只是烧死他一匹马。哪吒掌鼓回营，见子牙，说：“张奎已被烧死。”子牙大喜。不表。且说张奎进城，对妻子曰：“今日与哪吒接战，果然利害，被他提起火龙罩将我罩住，若不是我有地行之术，几乎被他烧死。”高兰英曰：“将军今夜何不地行进他营寨，刺杀武王君臣，不是一计成功，大事已定，又何必与他争能较胜耶！”张奎深悟曰：“夫人之言甚是有理。只因被杨戩可恶，暗害吾老母，惑乱吾心，连日神思不定，几乎忘了。今夜必定成功。”张奎打点



## Chapter 87

### Death of Earth Traveler Sun and His Wife

When Zhang Kui's challenge was reported, Jiang Ziya sent out Nezha, who transformed himself and then met the enemy on the front. After only three rounds, Nezha tossed his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet over both Zhang Kui and his horse. He patted the coverlet to start a raging fire beneath, but Zhang Kui, like Earth Traveler Sun, could travel underground. When he saw the coverlet descending upon him, Zhang quickly dismounted and disappeared into the earth. His horse was burned to ashes, but Zhang escaped unharmed, unbeknownst to Nezha. Nezha returned and reported that Zhang Kui had been burnt to death.

On his return to the city, Zhang Kui told his wife what happened. She listened to his story and then proposed, "General! Why don't you assassinate King Wu and his high ministers tonight? Victory would then be ours and we would not need to waste our time on the battlefield."

With this sudden realization, Zhang Kui said happily, "Thank you, my dear! You are quite right. I'd forgotten all about that. When Yang Jian murdered my mother, I nearly lost my mind. I'll do it tonight."







收拾，暗带利刃进营。正是：

武王洪福过尧舜，自有高人守大营。

话说子牙在帐中，闻得张奎已死，议取城池。至晚，发令箭，点练士卒，至三更造饭，四更整饬，五鼓登城，一鼓成功。子牙分付已毕。这也是天意，恰好是杨任巡外营。那是将近二更时分，张奎把身子一扭，径往周营而来，将至辕门，适遇杨任来至前营。不知杨任眼眶里长出来的两只手，手心里有两只眼，此眼上看天庭，下观地底，中看人间千里。彼时杨任忽见地下有张奎提一口刀径进辕门，杨任曰：“地下是张奎，慢来！有吾在此！”张奎大惊：“周营中有此等异人，如何是好！”自思：“吾在地下行得快，待吾进中军杀了姜尚，他就来也是迟的。”张奎仗刀径入，杨任一着急，将云霞兽一磕，至三层圈子内，击云板，大呼曰：“有刺客进营！各哨仔细！”不一时，合营齐起。子牙急忙升帐，众将官弓上弦，刀出鞘，两边火把灯球，照耀如同白昼。子牙问曰：“刺客从哪里来？”杨任进帐启曰：“张奎提刀在地下径进辕门。弟子故敢击云板报知。”子牙大惊曰：“昨日哪吒已把张奎烧死，今夜如何又有个张奎？”杨任曰：“此人还在此听元帅讲话。”子牙惊疑未定，傍有杨戩曰：“候弟子天明再作道理。”就把周营里乱了半夜。张奎情知不得成功，只得回去。杨任一双眼只看得地下张奎走出辕门，杨任也出辕门，只送张奎至城下方回。当时张奎进城，来至府中，高兰英问曰：“功业如何？”张奎只是摇头道：“利害！利害！周营中有许多高人，所以五关势如破竹，不能阻挡。”遂将进营的事细细说了一遍。夫人曰：“既然如此，可急修本竟往朝歌，



That evening Zhang Kui took a sharp dagger and traveled underground to the Zhou camp.

Believing Zhang Kui to be dead, Jiang Ziya issued orders to attack Mianchi County. He ordered that they take a meal at the third watch, march out at the fourth watch, and mount the city wall at the fifth watch.

Yang Ren was on night patrol. The two eyes held by the hands in his eye-sockets could see everything in the sky and below the earth. He clearly saw Zhang Kui beneath him with his sharp dagger. "Halt!" he cried, "Go no further!"

Zhang Kui stopped short in astonishment and said to himself, "What shall I do now! They have such a wonderful man in the Zhou army." He then decided, "I can move quickly under the earth. I'll enter the camp and slay Jiang Ziya first. He won't be able to stop me."

But Yang Ren had already spurred his cloud-haze beast to the inner part of the camp. He beat the alarm plank and yelled, "Patrolmen! Be on the alert! An assassin has entered the camp."

Jiang Ziya hurriedly called his men in for a conference. Every general drew his sword or stood with bow and arrow ready. The lamps and torches burned brightly.

"Where is the assassin now? How did he get in?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"I saw Zhang Kui traveling underground towards the camp with a sharp knife. I beat the alarm plank when I realized he meant to come in," Yang Ren reported.

Greatly frightened, Jiang Ziya gasped, "How can that be? He was burned to death. Can there be another Zhang Kui?"

"Be careful. He's listening to us now," Yang Ren warned.

"Don't worry. I'll deal with him at dawn," Yang Jian assured Jiang Ziya.

Zhang Kui had no chance to move in as he had hoped. He returned to the city in disappointment. Yang Ren watched Zhang Kui leave the camp and followed him as far as the city wall. He returned alone.

When Zhang Kui got home, he told Gao Lanying the whole story. "They've got some remarkable people on their side," he concluded, referring to Yang Ren and his hand-eyes.



请兵协守；不然，孤城岂能阻挡周兵？”张奎从其言，忙修本差官往朝歌。不表。

且说天明，杨戩往城下来，坐名叫：“张奎出来见我！”张奎闻报，上马提刀，开放城门，正是仇人见了仇人，大骂曰：“好匹夫！暗害吾母，与你共戴天！”杨戩曰：“你这逆天之贼，若不杀你母，你也不知周营中利害。”张奎大叫：“我不杀杨戩，此恨怎休！”舞刀直取杨戩。杨戩手中刀赴面交还。两马相交，双刀并举。未及数合，杨戩祭起哮天犬来伤张奎。张奎见此犬奔来，忙下马，即时就不见了。杨戩观之，不觉咨嗟。正是：

张奎道术真伶俐，赛过周营土行孙。

话说杨戩回营来见子牙，子牙问曰：“今日会张奎，如何？”杨戩把张奎会地行道术说了一遍，“真好似土行孙！夜来杨任之功莫大焉！”子牙大喜，传令：“以后只令杨任巡督内外，防守营门。”彼时张奎进城至府，见夫人高氏曰：“今会杨戩，料周营道术之士甚多，吾夫妻不能守此城也。依吾愚见，不若弃了渑池，且回朝歌，再作商议。你的意下如何？”夫人曰：“将军之言差矣！俺夫妻在此镇守多年，名扬四方，岂可一旦弃城而去。况此城关系不浅，乃朝歌屏障，今一弃此城，则黄河之险与周兵共之，这个断然不可！明日待我出去，自然成功。”次日，高兰英出城，至营前搦战。子牙正坐，忽报：“有一女将请战。”子牙问：“谁可出马？”有邓婵玉应声曰：“末将愿往。”子牙曰：“须要小心。”邓婵玉曰：“末将知道。”言罢上马，一声炮响，展两杆大红旗出营，大呼曰：“来将何人？快通名来！”高兰英观看，见是一员女



“We must send an urgent report to Zhaoge asking for reinforcements,” she suggested. “Otherwise, this isolated city will not hold up long.”

Zhang Kui immediately followed through on her proposal.

At dawn the next day, Yang Jian rode out to the city wall, demanding Zhang Kui.

Zhang Kui rushed out to meet his old deadly enemy. “You damned bastard!” he screamed. “You killed my old mother in cold blood. I can’t live with you under the same sky.”

They fought cutlass against cutlass, and after several rounds, Yang Jian released his Sky Barking Hound. Zhang Kui quickly got off his horse and escaped through the ground.

Yang Jian reported what happened to Jiang and said, “Zhang Kui is exactly like Earth Traveler Sun. He can move about freely under the earth. We were lucky to have Yang Ren last night!”

Jiang Ziya ordered Yang Ren to stay on night patrol to watch out for Zhang Kui.

Returning to the city, Zhang Kui went to see his wife. He said, “Yang Jian is really terrible, but besides him, there are so many great generals in the Zhou army. We can’t defend this city with only the two of us. Why don’t we give up, retreat to Zhaoge, and think of what can be done there. Don’t you agree, my dear?”

“No, General. This city has its strategic importance. We can’t back down now. Let me go to the front tomorrow. I’ll see what I can do,” Gao Lanying answered resolutely.

She rode out the next day and was met by Deng Chanyu. “Who is that general? Tell me at once!” Deng roared.



将，心下疑惑，忙应曰：“吾非别人，乃镇守渑池张将军夫人高兰英是也。你是谁人？”邓婵玉曰：“吾乃是督运粮储土将军夫人邓婵玉是也。”高兰英听说，大骂：“贱人！你父子奉敕征讨，如何苟就成婚，今日有何面目归见故乡也！”邓婵玉大怒，舞双刀来取。高兰英一身缟素，将手中双刀急架来迎。二员女将，一红，一白，杀在城下。怎见得，有赞为证：

这一个顶上金盔耀日光；那一个束发银冠列凤凰。这一个黄金锁子连环铠；那一个千叶龙鳞甲更强。这一个猩猩血染红衲袄；那一个素白征袍似粉装。这一个是赤金映日红玛瑙；那一个是白雪初施玉琢娘。这一个似向阳红杏枝枝嫩；那一个似月下梨花带露香。这一个似五月榴花红似火；那一个似雪里梅花靠粉墙。这一个腰肢袅娜在鞍鞞上；那一个体态风流十指长。这一个双刀幌幌如闪电；那一个二刃如锋劈面扬。分明是：广寒仙子临凡世，月里嫦娥降下方。两员女将天下少，红似银朱白似霜。

话说邓婵玉大战高兰英有二十回合，拨马就走。高兰英不知邓婵玉诈败，便随后赶来。婵玉闻脑后鸾铃响处，忙取五光石回手一下，正中高兰英面上，只打得嘴唇青肿，掩面而回。邓婵玉得胜进营，来见姜元帅，说高兰英被五光石打败进城。子牙方上功劳簿，只见左右官报：“二运官土行孙辕门等令。”子牙传令：“来。”土行孙上帐参谒：“弟子运粮已完，缴督粮印，愿随军征伐。”子牙曰：“今进五关，军粮有天下诸侯应付，不消你等督运，俱随军征进罢了。”土行孙下帐，来见众将，独不见黄将军，忙问哪吒，哪吒曰：“今渑池不过一小县，反将黄将军、崇君侯五人一阵而亡。昨张奎善有地行之术，比你分外精奇。前日进营，欲来行刺，多亏

Seeing the woman general, Gao Lanying answered, "I'm none other than Gao Lanying, wife of Zhang Kui. Who are you?"

"I'm Deng Chanyu, wife of Earth Traveler Sun."

"You bitch!" Gao swore. "How could you marry the enemy when you and your father were appointed by royal decree to subdue them?"

Greatly enraged, Deng Chanyu attacked with her double cutlasses.

After about twenty rounds, Deng turned and ran away. Gao Lanying pursued her closely, and when she was almost upon her, Deng threw a colored pebble straight at Gao's face. Gao's lips and nose puffed up. Blood poured down her neck. She ran back with her hands covering her face.

Just as Jiang Ziya was putting her merit on the record, the arrival of Earth Traveler Sun was reported. "I have been a convoy officer for so long. I hope that you will kindly let me fight on the front like my colleagues," he requested.

"Permission granted, General. As we have already occupied the five passes, we shall have enough food supplies from the nobles in the area. We welcome you back to the front line," Jiang Ziya said warmly.

Leaving his commander, Sun went to see the other generals. Nezha explained to him all that had happened and told him about Zhang Kui's ability to travel underground. "We're stuck here, blocked by Zhang Kui and his wife," he concluded with a groan.





杨任救之。故此阻住吾师，不能前进。”土行孙听罢：“有这样事！当时吾师传吾此术，可称盖世无双，岂有此处又有异人也？待吾明日会他。”至后帐来问邓婵玉：“此事可真？”邓婵玉曰：“果是不差。”土行孙踌躇一夜。次早，上帐来见姜元帅，“愿去会张奎。”子牙许之。傍有杨戩、哪吒、邓婵玉俱欲去掠阵。土行孙许之。来至城下搦战。哨马报与张奎，张奎出城，见一矮子，问曰：“你何人？”土行孙曰：“吾乃土行孙是也。”道罢，举手中棍滚将来，劈头就打。张奎手中刀急架来迎。二人大战，往往来来，未及数合，哪吒、杨戩齐出来助战。哪吒忙提起乾坤圈来打张奎。张奎看见，滚下马就不见了。土行孙也把身子一扭来赶张奎。张奎一见大惊：“周营中也有此妙术之人！”随在地底下，二人又复大战。大抵张奎身子长大，不好转换；土行孙身子矮小，转换伶俐，故此或前或后，张奎反不济事，只得败去。土行孙赶了一程，赶不上，也自回来。那张奎地行术一日可行一千五百里，土行孙止行一千里，因此赶不上他，只得回营，来见子牙，言：“张奎果然好地行之术。此人若是阻住此间，深为不便。”子牙曰：“昔日你师父擒尔用指地成钢法，今欲治张奎，非此法不可。你如何学得此法以治之？”土行孙曰：“元帅可修书一封，待弟子去夹龙山，见吾师，取此符印来，破了渑池县，遂得早会诸侯。”子牙大喜，忙修书付与土行孙。土行孙别了妻子，往夹龙山来。可怜！正是：



“How can that be! When my master taught me to travel under the earth, he said that there would be no one in the world who would be my match. Let me meet him tomorrow!” said Earth Traveler Sun.

Restless the whole night, Earth Traveler Sun got up early the next morning and went to see Jiang Ziya. “I’d like to meet Zhang Kui today. Permit me to fight with him now, Commander,” he begged.

Yang Jian, Nezha, and Deng Chanyu accompanied Sun to the front. When Zhang Kui rushed out to answer the challenge, he saw a dwarf before him. “Who are you?” he asked.

“I’m Earth Traveler Sun,” was the answer. Sun raised his cudgel to attack Zhang Kui at once. After several rounds, both Nezha and Yang Jian rushed out to join the combat.

Zhang Kui rolled from his horse and disappeared into the ground when Nezha threw his Universal Ring into the air. Earth Traveler Sun rushed into the earth and chased after him at once.

With great astonishment, Zhang Kui cried, “How could I have guessed that there is another man like me in the Zhou army!”

The two generals fought desperately underground. Zhang Kui was so tall that he had a hard time moving about, while Earth Traveler Sun was small and swift. Before long, Zhang Kui was utterly exhausted and had to flee toward the city.

Earth Traveler Sun was unwilling to give Zhang up. He chased after him but could not overtake him, as Zhang could travel 1,500 *li* a day, while Sun could only travel 1,000 *li* a day underground. So he returned to his camp to see Jiang Ziya and reported, “Zhang Kui really knows how to travel underground. He will make it very difficult for us to move forward.”

“Don’t you remember how your master took you captive by turning the earth into steel? You may deal with Zhang Kui in the same way,” Jiang Ziya suggested.

“Would you write a letter for me, Commander? I will go and see my master and get the spells from him,” Earth Traveler Sun replied.

Jiang Ziya wrote the letter at once. Sun bade farewell to his wife and took the letter to Dragon Squeezing Mountain.





丹心欲佐真明主，首级高悬在渑池。

土行孙径往夹龙山去。且说张奎被土行孙战败回来，见高兰英，双眉紧皱，长吁曰：“周营中有许多异人，如何是好？”夫人曰：“谁为异人？”张奎曰：“有一土行孙，也有地行之术，如之奈何！”高兰英曰：“如今再修告急表章，速往朝歌取救，俺夫妻二人死守此县，不必交兵，只等救兵前来，再为商议破敌。”夫妻正议，忽然一阵怪风飘来，甚是奇异。怎见得好风，有诗为证：

走石飞砂势更凶，推云拥雾乱行踪。暗藏妖孽来窥户，  
又送孤帆过楚峰。

风过一阵，把府前宝纛旗一折两断。夫妻大惊曰：“此不祥之兆也。”高兰英随排香案，忙取金钱，排下一卦，已解其意。高兰英曰：“将军可速为之！土行孙往夹龙山取指地成钢之术，来破你也！不可迟误！”张奎大惊，忙忙收拾，结束停当，径往夹龙山去了。土行孙一日止行千里；张奎一日行一千五百里；张奎先到夹龙山，到个崖畔，潜等土行孙。等了一日，土行孙来至猛兽崖，远远望见飞龙洞，满心欢喜：“今日又至故土也！”不知张奎豫在崖傍，侧身躲匿，把刀拎起，只等他来。土行孙那里知道，只是往前走。也是数该如此，看看来至面前，张奎大叫曰：“土行孙不要走！”土行孙及至抬头时，刀已落下，可怜砍了个连肩带背。张奎割了首级，径回渑池县来号令。后人诗叹土行孙归周未受茅土之封，可怜无辜死于此地，有诗为证：

忆昔西岐归顺时，辅君督运未愆期。进关盗宝功为首，  
劫寨偷营世所奇。名播诸侯空啧啧，声扬宇宙恨丝丝。



Zhang Kui returned in defeat to see Gao Lanying and said with a deep sigh, "What shall we do? There are so many talented people in the Zhou army!"

"What do you mean?" Gao Lanying asked him.

"They have one person, named Earth Traveler Sun, who can travel underground like me. What shall we do with him?"

"We must ask Zhaoge for reinforcements again. We'll do all we can to defend the city for the time being and consider offensive operations as soon as the reinforcements arrive," Gao Lanying proposed.

Just then, a turbulent wind blew wildly through the city. Rocks and sand flew into the air, and a banner pole violently broke in two.

"It must be a bad omen," Gao Lanying said in alarm. She told her attendants to set an incense burner on the desk and burn incense for divination with gold coins.

"You must move as quickly as possible, General. Earth Traveler Sun is now on his way to Dragon Squeezing Mountain to learn how to turn the earth into steel," Gao Lanying said excitedly.

Zhang Kui immediately got ready and left for the mountain. He could run faster underground than Earth Traveler Sun, so he arrived first and hid beside the cliff, waiting for the dwarf.

A full day later, Earth Traveler Sun reached the Fierce Beast Cliff. He could see the Flying Cloud Cave ahead and said excitedly, "I'm so happy to see my old native place again!"

He had no idea that Zhang Kui had arrived first and was hiding beside the cliff. As soon as Earth Traveler Sun rushed near, Zhang Kui let out a sudden roar. "Sun, go no further!" Sun looked up to see who it was, and the cutlass slashed down, slicing his head off.



夹龙山下亡身处，反本還元正在兹。

话说张奎非止一日来至渑池县，夫妻相见，将杀死土行孙一事说了一遍，夫妻大喜，随把土行孙的首级号令在城上。只见周营中探马见渑池县里号令出头来，近前看时，却是土行孙的首级，忙报入中军：“启元帅：渑池县城上号令了土行孙首级，不知何故，请令定夺。”子牙曰：“他往夹龙山去了，不在行营，又未出阵，如何被害？”子牙掐指一算，拍案大呼曰：“土行孙死于无辜，是吾之过也！”子牙甚是伤感。不意帐后惊动了邓婵玉，闻知丈夫已死，哭上帐来，“愿与夫主报仇！”子牙曰：“你还斟酌，不可造次。”邓婵玉那里肯住，啼泣上马，来至城下，只叫：“张奎出来见我！”哨马报入城中：“有女将搦战。”高兰英曰：“这贱人！我正欲报一石之恨，今日合该死于此地！”高兰英上马提刀，先将一红葫芦执在手中，放出四十九根太阳神针，先在城里提出。邓婵玉只听得马响，二目被神针射住，观看不明，早被高兰英手起一刀，挥于马下，可怜！正是：

孟津未会诸侯面，今日夫妻丧渑池。

话说高兰英先祭太阳神针，射住婵玉二目，因此上斩了邓婵玉，进城号令了。哨马报入中军，备言前事。子牙着实伤悼，对众门人曰：“今高兰英有太阳神针，射人二目，非同小可，诸将俱要防备。”故此按兵不动，再设法以取此县。南宫适曰：“这一小县，今损无限大将，请元帅着人马四面攻打，此县可以蹶为平地。”子牙传令，命：“三军四面攻打！”架起云梯火炮，三军呐喊，攻打甚急。张奎夫妻千方百计看守此城。一连攻打两昼夜，不能得下。子牙心中甚恼，且



Zhang Kui happily carried Sun's head to Mianchi County and had it hung on a pole as a public warning.

When Jiang Ziya heard about this, he quickly made a divination with his fingers. "It's all my fault that Earth Traveler Sun died so innocently," he lamented.

The news reached Deng Chanyu in the back camp. Knowing that her husband had lost his life for the nation, Deng went to see Jiang Ziya in tears and swore that she would revenge her husband's death. Jiang Ziya tried to calm her. "You mustn't act rashly," he said, but she did not accept his advice. She rode weeping to the city wall and screamed, "Zhang Kui, come and see me at once!"

When Gao Lanying heard that it was Deng Chanyu, she said with hatred, "That bitch must be destined to die today. I'll meet her to make sure of it."

She rode out with a long-handled cutlass in one hand and a red gourd in the other and put the forty-nine golden Sun Needles at the city gate. Deng Chanyu could hear the approach of the horse, but she was blinded by the needles and became helpless before her opponent. Gao Lanying quickly sliced her head off and returned to the city in triumph.

On hearing the news, Jiang Ziya broke down in tears. He said before his generals, "Gao Lanying's Sun Needles are a great danger to us. We must be more careful. Let's rest well for now and attack the city when we are fully prepared."

But Nangong Kuo countered with another idea, "We have unfortunately paid with the lives of many great generals here in this small county. I propose we surround it and in one mighty attack, level it to the ground."

Jiang Ziya agreed and ordered his men to attack from all directions. The soldiers used scaling ladders and cannons to attack the wall, but even after two days, could not make any headway. Jiang Ziya finally ordered his army to withdraw temporarily.



命：“暂退，再为设计；不然徒令军士劳苦无益耳。”众将鸣金收军回营。

且说张奎又修本往朝歌城来。差官渡了黄河，前至孟津，有四百镇诸侯驻扎人马。差官潜踪隐迹，一路无词，至馆驿中，歇了一宵。次日，将本至文书房投递。那日看本乃是微子。微子接本看了，忙入内庭，只见纣王在鹿台宴乐。微子至台下候旨，纣王宣上鹿台。微子行礼称臣毕，王曰：“皇伯有何奏章？”微子曰：“武王兵进五关，已至浞池县，损兵折将，莫可支撑，危在旦夕。请陛下速发援兵，早来协守。不然，臣惟一死，以报君恩。何况此县离都城不过四五百里之远，陛下还在此台宴乐，全不以社稷为重，孟津现有南方、北方四百诸侯驻兵，候西伯共至商郊，事有燃眉之急；今见此报，使臣身心如焚，莫知所措。愿陛下早求贤士，以治国事，拜大将以剿反叛，改过恶而训军民，修仁政以回天变，庶不失成汤之宗庙也。”纣王闻奏大惊曰：“姬发反叛，而今已侵陷孤之关隘，覆军杀将，兵至浞池，情殊可恨！孤当御驾亲征，以除大恶。”中大夫飞廉奏曰：“陛下不可！今孟津有四百诸侯驻兵，一闻陛下出军，他让过陛下，阻住后路，首尾受敌，非万全之道也。陛下可出榜招贤，大悬赏格，自有高名之士应求而至。古云：‘重赏之下，必有勇夫。’又何劳陛下亲御六师，与叛臣较胜于行伍哉？”纣王曰：“依卿所奏。速传旨，悬立赏格，张挂于朝歌四门，招选豪杰，才堪督府者，不次铨除。”——四外哄动，就把个朝歌城内万民日受数次惊慌。只见一日来了三个豪杰，来揭榜文。守榜军士随同三人先往飞廉府里来参谒。门官报入中



Zhang Kui's messenger had already crossed the Yellow River by ferry and was soon in Mengjin, where he had to go undercover, for there were already 400 nobles and their troops waiting there. When he got to Zhaoge, he put up at the government hostel for the night.

The next morning, the messenger went to the secretariat. Wei Zi read the report and immediately hurried to see King Zhou; the king was drinking with his women on Happy Terrace.

"King Wu and his army have already taken over our five passes and are in Mianchi County. The situation is critical. Your Majesty is requested to send reinforcements at once. Mianchi is only five hundred *li* away. How can you still spend your time drinking? Four hundred nobles have gathered in Mengjin and are waiting for King Wu and his army to join them in a march against Zhaoge. May Your Majesty turn your attention to the dynasty and allow good ministers to guide the nation. If you appoint great generals to attack the rebels, love the people, and please Heaven with good behavior, we can maintain the ancestral temples of the Shang Dynasty," Wei Zi exhorted him.

"How awful Ji Fa is! I'll lead an army to attack them myself," King Zhou said quickly.

"Oh no, Your Majesty! There are 400 nobles and their troops at Mengjin. If they knew you were planning on leading an army to counter-attack West Qi at Mianchi, they would gladly let you pass but would blockade your way back. You would be attacked from both sides. I advise you to post proclamations for recruitment with the promise of high rewards. Well-learned scholars and brave military men will answer your call, and you need not degrade yourself in a fight with the rebels." Fei Lian, one of the ministers, suggested.

"I'll follow your advice. Post the proclamations for recruitment on all the gates. Those who can gain victory for us will be granted riches and high rank," King Zhou said gladly.

The proclamations sent a buzz of excitement through the capital. Three days later, three men came to Fei Lian's office to offer their services.



堂，飞廉道：“有请。”三人进府，与飞廉见礼毕，言曰：“闻天子招募天下贤士，愚下三人自知非才，但君父有事，愿捐躯敢效犬马。”飞廉见三人气宇清奇，就命赐坐。三人曰：“吾等俱是闾阎子民。大夫在上，子民焉敢坐。”飞廉曰：“求贤定国，聘杰安邦，虽高爵重禄，直受不辞，又何妨于一坐耶。”三人告过，方才坐下。飞廉曰：“三位姓甚？名谁？住居何所？”三人将一手本呈上，飞廉观看，原来是梅山人氏，一名袁洪，一名吴龙，一名常昊。——此乃“梅山七圣”；先是三人投见，以下俱陆续而来。袁洪者乃白猿精也；吴龙者乃蜈蚣精也；常昊者乃长蛇精也；俱借“袁”、“吴”、“常”三字取之为姓也。——飞廉看了姓名，随带入朝门，来朝见纣王。飞廉入内庭，天子在显庆殿与恶来弈棋，当驾官启奏：“中大夫飞廉候旨。”王曰：“宣来。”飞廉见驾，奏曰：“臣启陛下：今有梅山三个杰士，应陛下求贤之诏，今在午门候旨。”纣王大悦：“传旨宣来。”少时，三人来至殿下，山呼拜毕，纣王赐三人平身，三人谢恩毕，侍立两傍。王曰：“卿等此来，有何妙策可擒逆贼？”袁洪奏曰：“姜尚以虚言巧语，纠合天下诸侯，鼓惑黎庶作反；依臣愚见，先破西岐，拿了姜尚，则八百诸侯望陛下降诏招安，赦免前罪，天下不战而自平也。”纣王闻奏，龙心大悦，封袁洪为大将，吴龙、常昊为先行，命殷破败为参军，雷开为五军总督，使殷成秀、雷鹞、雷鹏、鲁仁杰等俱随军征伐。纣王传旨，嘉庆殿排宴，庆赏诸臣。内有鲁仁杰自幼多读，广识英雄，见袁洪行事不按礼节，暗思曰：“观此人行事不是大将之才，且看他操演人马，便知端的。”当日宴散，次日谢



Finding them gallant and elegant, Fei Lian politely asked them to be seated and read over their applications. Their names were Yuan Hong, Wu Long, and Chang Hao, and they were all from Mount Plum. They were really three of the seven sprites from that mountain; Yuan Hong was an ape sprite, Wu Long a centipede sprite, and Chang Hao was a long snake sprite. Four others were soon to come.

Fei Lian immediately took them to see King Zhou, who was playing chess with Minister E Lai in the Celebration Court. The king admitted them with delight, and the three knelt down and kowtowed before him.

King Zhou told them to get up and asked, "How will you defeat Jiang Ziya and take him captive?"

"Jiang Ziya has tricked the nobles with sweet words and has induced them and the people to rebel. As the ringleader, he must be dealt with seriously. According to my humble opinion, we must attack the West Qi forces and capture Jiang Ziya first. You may then bring the nobles back to your side and generously forgive them all. In this way, the country will enjoy peace again and we need not prolong the war," Yuan Hong said.

King Zhou was delighted with his speech and immediately appointed Yuan Hong the great general, with Wu Long and Chang Hao as the vanguard generals. Yin Pobai was made staff officer, Lei Kai the supervisor of the five armies, and Yin Chengxiu, Lei Kun, Lei Peng, and Lu Renjie became generals. A great feast was held to entertain them.

Lu Renjie was a clever general and had learned from many heroes. Observing Yuan Hong's inexperience with the rites, he silently pondered, "It seems he is not the great general he makes himself out to be. I will watch him closely on the drill ground later."





恩。三日后下教场，操演三军。鲁仁杰看袁洪举动措置，俱不如法，谅非姜子牙敌手，但此时是用人之际，鲁仁杰也只得将机就计而已。次日，袁洪朝见纣王，王曰：“元帅可先领一支人马，往澠池县佐张奎以阻西兵，元帅意下如何？”袁洪曰：“以臣观之，都中之兵不宜远出。”纣王曰：“如何不宜远去？”袁洪奏曰：“今孟津已有南北二路诸侯驻扎，以窥其后，臣若往澠池，此二路诸侯拒守孟津，阻臣粮道，那时使臣前后受敌，此不战自败之道。况粮为三军生命，是军未行而先需者也。依臣之计，不若调二十万人马，阻住孟津之咽喉，使诸侯不能侵搅朝歌，一战成功，大事定矣。”纣王大悦：“卿言甚善，真乃社稷之臣！依卿所奏施行。”袁洪随调兵二十万，吴龙、常昊为先行。殷破败为参赞，雷开为五军都督，使殷成秀、雷鹄、雷鹏、鲁仁杰随军征伐，往孟津而来。不知胜负如何，且听下回分解。



The next day during the drills, Lu Renjie saw that Yuan Hong was no match for Jiang Ziya but he could do nothing, as he was only a general. He could only watch in silence.

When they were ready to go, King Zhou said, “You may send an army to Mianchi County to help Zhang Kui to repulse the West Qi army first. What do you think, Commander?”

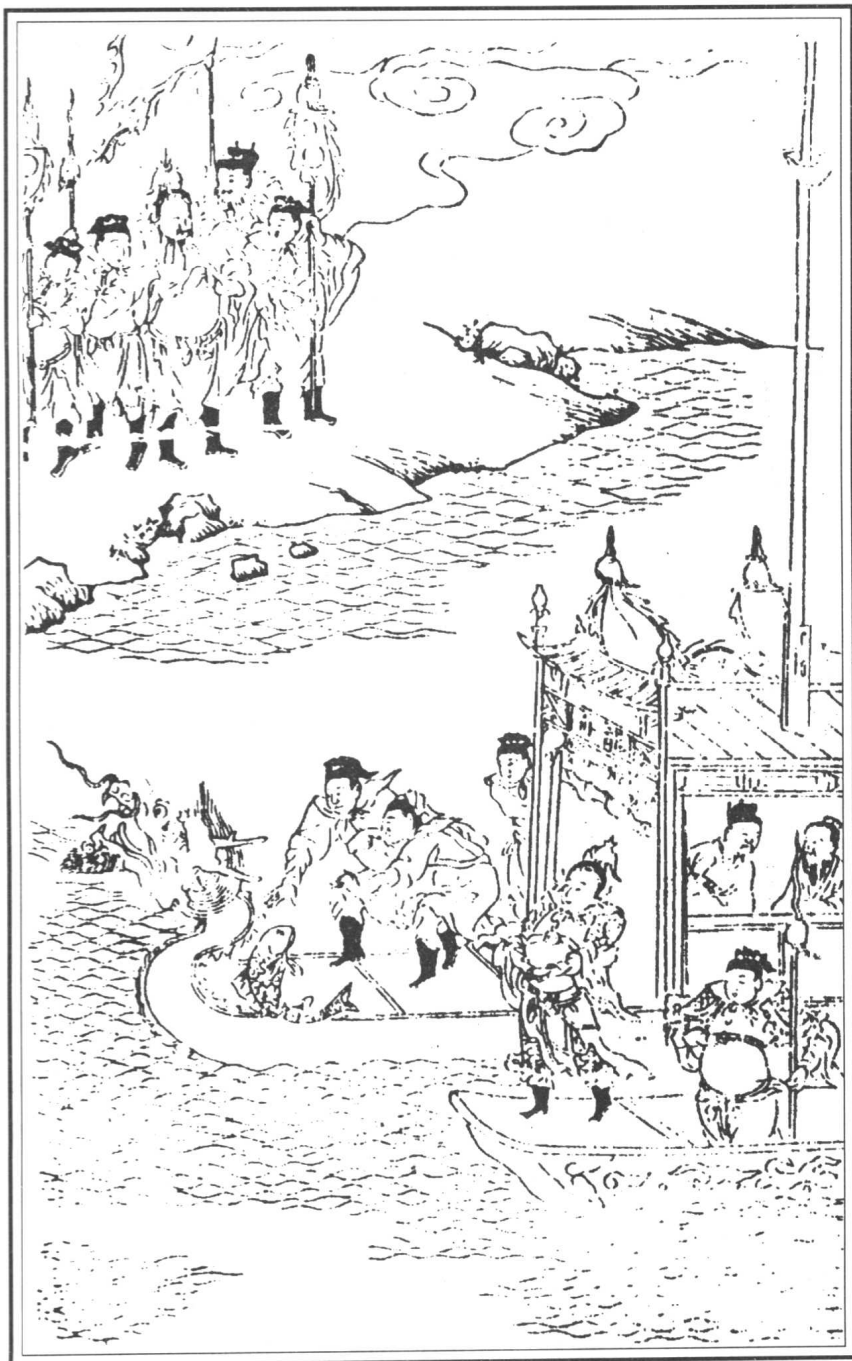
“There are already armies from two dukedoms camped in Mengjin. If we march to Mianchi County, they will raid the food supplies, and we shall be attacked from Mianchi in the front and Mengjin in the rear. According to my plan, it would be better to send an army of 200,000 to Mengjin, which is regarded as the throat of Zhaoge. In this way, the nobles’ armies cannot invade Zhaoge, and we can settle the matter with one sweeping victory,” Yuan Hong said.

His idea pleased King Zhou so much that he said, “You are perfectly right, Commander. You may carry out the military operations just as you have outlined.”

Yuan Hong consequently led 200,000 soldiers to Mengjin to deal with the nobles and their armies.

Please read the next chapter to find out what happened next.





## 第八十八回

### 武王白鱼跃龙舟

诗曰：

白鱼吉兆喜非常，预肇周家应瑞昌。八百诸侯称硕德，  
千年师帅颂匡襄。堂堂阵演三三叠，正正旗门六六行。  
时雨师临民甚悦，成汤基业已消亡。

话说袁洪调兵往孟津驻扎，以阻诸侯咽喉。不表。且说渑池县张奎日夕望朝歌救兵，忽有报马报入府来：“天子招了新元帅袁洪，调兵二十万驻扎孟津，以阻诸侯；未见发兵来救渑池。”张奎闻报大惊曰：“天子不发救兵，此城如何拒守！况前有周兵，后有孟津，四百诸侯前后合攻，此取败之道。今反舍此不救，奈何？”忙与夫人高兰英共议。夫人曰：“料吾二人也可阻得住周兵。今袁洪拒住孟津，则南北诸侯也不能抄我之后。只打听袁洪得胜，若破了南北二侯，我再与你去合兵共破周武，再无有不胜之理。俺们如今只设法守城，不要与周将对敌；待他粮尽兵疲，一战成功，无有不克。此万全之道也。”张奎心下狐疑不定。且说子牙见渑池一个小县，攻打不下，反阵亡了许多将官，纳闷在中军，暗暗点首嗟叹：“可怜这些扶主定国英雄，沥胆披肝，止落得遗言在此，此身皆化为乌有！”子牙正在那里伤悼，忽辕门官来报：“有一道童求见。”子牙传令：“请来。”少时，只见一道童至帐下行礼曰：“弟子乃夹龙山飞龙洞惧留孙的门人。因师



## Chapter 88

### Crossing the Yellow River

Waiting day and night for the reinforcements from Zhaoge, Zhang Kui finally received the report that Yuan Hong had gone to Mengjin with 200,000 soldiers. Filled with alarm, he quickly went to consult with Gao Lanying, but she only said, "Even two of us can stand against the Zhou army, and now with Yuan Hong in Mengjin, it will be impossible for the nobles to attack us from behind. Should Yuan Hong repulse the two grand dukes, we can join him to beat the Zhou army. We must now do our best to guard the city, and as soon as they are exhausted and short of food, we can win the day with just one battle."

Jiang Ziya was pondering over their many losses when it was reported that a Taoist lad had arrived to see him. He said, "I'm a disciple of Krakucchanda. Earth Traveler Sun was destined to be assassinated by





兄土行孙在夹龙山猛兽崖被张奎所害，家师已知应上天之数，这是救不得的；只是过渑池须有原故。家师特着弟子来此下书，师叔便知端的。”子牙接上书来，展开观看，书曰：

“道末惧留孙致书于大元帅子牙公麾下：前者土行孙合该于猛兽崖死于张奎之手，理数难逃，贫道只有望崖垂泣而已，言之可胜长叹！今张奎善于守城，急切难下，但他数亦当终。子牙公不可迟悞，可令杨戩将贫道符印先在黄河岸边，等杨任、韦护追赶至此擒之。取城只用哪吒、雷震子足矣。子牙公须是亲自用调虎离山计，一战成功。此去自然坦夷。只候封神之后，再图会晤。不宣。”

子牙看罢书，打发童子回山。当日子牙传令：“哪吒领令箭，雷震子领令箭前去，……如此而行。杨戩、杨任领柬帖前去，……如此。韦护领柬帖前去，……如此。”子牙俱分付已毕。至晚间，周营中炮响，三军呐喊，杀奔城下而来。张奎急上城，设法守护，百计千方防御，急切难下。子牙知张奎善于守城，且暂鸣金收兵。次日午未未初，请武王上帐相见：“今日请大王同老臣出营，看看渑池县城池，好去攻取。”武王乃忠厚君子，随应曰：“孤愿往。”即时同子牙出营，至城下周围看了。用手指曰：“大王若破此城，须用轰天大炮，方能攻打；此城一时可破也。”子牙与武王指画攻城，只见渑池城上哨探士卒报与张奎：“启老爷：姜子牙同一穿红袍的在城下探看城池。”张奎听报，即上城来看时，果是子牙同武王在城下，周围指画。张奎自思曰：“姜尚欺吾太甚！只因连日吾坚守此城，不与他会战，他便欺我，至吾城



Zhang Kui at the Fierce Beast Cliff. My master has sent me with this letter to help you get into Mianchi County.”

The letter said:

“Earth Traveler Sun was destined to be assassinated by Zhang Kui at the Fierce Beast Cliff. I could not help him, but only weep, as I looked at the cliff in the distance. Though Zhang Kui is skilful, he will not last long. Give Yang Jian this sheet of spells and tell him to wait on the bank of the Yellow River. Order Yang Ren and Wei Hu to chase him there. Let Nezha and Thunderbolt attack the county and you will score a great victory with just one battle. I’ll see you again after the Creation.”

After reading the letter, Jiang Ziya ordered the whole army to attack Mianchi County. But when Zhang Kui mounted the city wall, Jiang quickly ordered his troops to withdraw.

At two o’clock the next day, Jiang Ziya invited King Wu to accompany him on an inspection of the city wall to discuss the strategy for attacking the enemy. King Wu was an honest gentleman, and he immediately gave his consent. They rode out to the city wall and looked at it carefully.

“We must use large cannons to break through at this point....” Jiang Ziya said to King Wu, pointing at the wall.

The guards quickly reported the matter to Zhang Kui, who climbed up himself and saw the two talking below. “How can Jiang Ziya insult me so?” he pondered. “We’ve had some battles with him, but he acts as if he owns the place!”





下，肆行无忌，藐视吾无人物也。”随下城与夫人曰：“你可用心坚守此城，待我出城走去杀来，以除大患。”夫人上城观战。张奎上马拎刀，开了城门，一马飞来，大呼曰：“姬发、姜尚！今日你命难逃也！”正是：

计就月中擒玉兔，谋成日里捉金乌。

子牙同武王拨马向西而走。张奎赶来，周营中一将也不出来接应，张奎放心赶来。看看赶有三十里，只听得金鼓齐鸣，炮声响亮，三军呐喊，震动天地，周营中大小将官齐出营来，杀奔城下。高兰英在城上全装甲冑守护城池，忽听周营中又是炮响，不知其故。忽城上落下哪吒来，现三首八臂，脚踏风火轮，摇火尖枪杀来。高兰英急上马，用双刀抵住了哪吒。二人在城上不便争持，高兰英走马下城，哪吒随后赶来。雷震子又早展开二翅，飞上城来，使开黄金棍，把城上军士打开，随斩关落锁，周兵进城。高兰英见事不好，正欲取葫芦放太阳神针，早已不及，被哪吒一乾坤圈，打中顶上，翻下马来，又是一枪，死于非命，早往封神台去了。有诗为证，诗曰：

孤城死守为成汤，今日身亡实可伤。全节全忠名不朽，女中贞烈万年扬。

话说雷震子、哪吒进了滏池县，军士见打死了主母，俱伏地请降。哪吒曰：“俱免汝死，候元帅来安民。”哪吒复向雷震子曰：“道兄且在城上拒住，吾还去接应师叔与武王，恐怕惊了主公。”雷震子曰：“道兄不可迟疑，当速行为是。”好哪吒！把风火轮登开，往正西上赶来。只见张奎正赶子牙有二十里远近，只听得炮声四起，喊声大振，心下甚是惊疑，也



Zhang went to see his wife. "You guard the city carefully, and I will go and take care of Jiang Ziya and Ji Fa. Our troubles will be solved once and for all," he told her.

He then rode from the city straight for the king and Jiang Ziya, roaring threats and curses. Jiang and King Wu turned and ran westward, unprotected by any Zhou general. After some twenty *li*, Zhang heard the sound of gongs, drums, and cannons behind. The Zhou generals had rushed from their camp and were leading the army on a massive attack against the city.

Gao Lanying, in full armor, led the defensive force. Nezha suddenly dropped onto the city wall with his three heads and eight arms, and Gao Lanying struggled against him with her double cutlasses. Finding it difficult to keep up the fight, Gao rushed downward to firmer footing, pursued closely by Nezha.

Thunderbolt flew up with his gold cudgel and dispersed the soldiers guarding the gate. He smashed the locks and opened the gate to let the Zhou army rush through.

Finding herself in such a dilemma, Gao Lanying tried to use her golden Sun Needles, but it was already too late. She was knocked down by the Universal Ring and stabbed quickly by Nezha. She died at once.

When Gao died, all the guards surrendered.

"Brother, you'd better finish up here. I'll go to protect King Wu and our uncle, lest they meet any harm," Nezha said to Thunderbolt. He rushed in a westerly direction after him.

When the sound of cannons and war cries filled the air, Zhang Kui



不去赶子牙。子牙在后面大呼曰：“张奎！你滹池已失，何不归降？”张奎心慌，情知中计，勒转马望旧路而来；天色又黑，正遇哪吒现三首八臂迎来。哪吒大骂曰：“逆贼！你今日还不下马受死，更待何时！”张奎大怒，摇刀直取。哪吒手中枪急架相还。未及数合，哪吒复祭起九龙神火罩罩来。张奎知此术利害，把身子一扭，往地下去了。哪吒见张奎预先走了，因想起土行孙的光景，心上不觉悲悼，往前来迎武王。张奎急走至城下，见雷震子立于城上，知城池已陷，夫人不知存亡，自思：“不若往朝歌，与袁洪合兵一处，再作道理。”话说哪吒上前迎接武王与子牙，一同回滹池县来，将大军进城屯扎，又将城上周将首级收殓，设祭祀之，仍于高阜处安葬。不表。只见张奎全装甲冑，纵地行之术，往黄河大道而走，如风一般，飞云掣电而来。话说杨任远远望见张奎从地底下来了，杨任知会韦护曰：“道兄，张奎来了。你须是仔细些，不要走了他。你看我手往那里指，你就往那边祭降魔杵镇之。”韦护曰：“谨领尊命。”且说张奎正走，远远看见杨任骑云霞兽，手心里那两只神光射耀眼往下看着他，大呼曰：“张奎不要走！今日你难逃此厄也！”张奎听得，魂不附体，不敢停滞，纵着地行法，“刷”的一声，须臾就走有一千五百里远。杨任在地上催着云霞兽，紧紧追赶。韦护在上头只看着杨任；杨任只看着张奎在地底下；如今三处看着，好赶！正是：

上边韦护观杨任，杨任生追“七杀神”。

话说张奎在地下见杨任紧紧跟随在他头上：如张奎往左，杨任也往左边来赶；张奎往右，杨任也往右边来赶。张奎无



pulled up in astonishment. Jiang Ziya shouted back at him, "Zhang Kui, your Mianchi County is already taken. Why don't you surrender?"

When he realized he'd been tricked, Zhang turned to go back, but before long Nezha appeared with his three heads and eight arms. "You rascal! Get off your horse and surrender. What are you waiting for?" Nezha swore.

Zhang Kui attacked Nezha with his cutlass, and after several rounds, Nezha threw up his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet. Zhang immediately twisted into the earth and disappeared.

When he got to the city wall, Zhang saw Thunderbolt guarding the gate. He realized that the county must have been lost but had no idea what had happened to his wife. He decided to return to Zhaoqe and then meet up with Yuan Hong.

King Wu, Jiang Ziya, and Nezha returned to the city. They collected the corpses on the city wall and buried them with funeral rites.

Zhang Kui set out fully armored underground toward the Yellow River. Yang Ren spotted him in the distance and warned Wei Hu and Yang Jian.

Running underground, Zhang Kui could see Yang Ren above on his cloud-haze beast, the two hand-eyes following his every movement. He was greatly frightened but dared not hesitate for even a second. He pushed on faster than before, but Yang Ren followed him all the way to the



法，只是往前飞走。看着行至黄河岸边，前有杨戩奉柬帖在黄河岸边专等杨任。只见远远杨任追赶来了，杨任也看见了杨戩，乃大呼曰：“杨道兄！张奎来了！”杨戩听得，忙将三昧火烧了惧留孙指地成钢的符篆，立在黄河岸边。张奎正行，方至黄河，只见四处如同铁桶一般，半步莫动，左撞左不能通，右撞右不能通，撤身回来，后面犹如铁壁。张奎正慌忙无措，杨任用手往下一指；半空中韦护把降魔杵往下打来。此宝乃镇压邪魔护三教大法之物，可怜张奎怎禁得起。有诗为证，诗曰：

金光一道起空中，五彩云霞协用功。鬼怪逢时皆绝迹，  
邪魔遇此尽成空。皈依三教称慈善，镇压诸天护法雄。

今日黄河除“七杀”，千年英气贯长虹。

话说韦护祭起降魔杵，把张奎打成齑粉，——一灵也往封神台去了。三位门人得胜，齐来见子牙，备言打死张奎，追趕至黄河之事，说了一遍。子牙大喜，在浞池县住了数日，择日起兵。

那日，整顿人马，离了浞池县，前往黄河而来。时近隆冬天气，众将官重重铁铠，叠叠征衣，寒气甚胜。怎见得好冷，有赞为证：

重衾无暖气，袖手似揣冰。败叶垂霜蕊，苍松挂冻铃。  
地裂因寒甚，池平为水凝。鱼舟空钓线，仙观没人行。  
樵子愁柴少，王孙喜炭增。征人须似铁，诗客笔如零。  
皮袄犹嫌薄，貂裘尚恨轻。蒲团僵老衲，纸帐旅魂惊。  
莫讶寒威重，兵行令若霆。

话说子牙人马来至黄河，左右报至中军。子牙分付：“借办民

Yellow River on his cloud-haze beast. When they approached the river, Yang Ren yelled out to Yang Jian, who quickly burned Krakucchanda's spells with his own real samadhi fire. Pointing at the ground, he then turned the earth to steel, trapping Zhang Kui with copper walls and iron partitions. Wei Hu quickly cast his club into the air, reducing Zhang Kui to powder.

Yang Ren, Yang Jian, and Wei Hu then returned to the city and reported their feat to Jiang Ziya. Jiang ordered his army to rest for a few days and then picked a lucky date to march on to the Yellow River. It was a cold winter, and everyone was dressed in heavy cotton clothes and iron armor to fend off the chill winds.

When they got to the river, Jiang ordered that boats be rented from the people at half a tael of silver each. A large dragon boat was also prepared for King Wu and Jiang Ziya. The people were pleased because the army paid for his passage across.

King Wu and Jiang Ziya boarded their dragon boat and sat in the middle cabin with the boatmen on either side. The wind was strong and the waves high, and the dragon boat rocked about wildly.





舟。”每只俱有工食银五钱，并不白用民船一只，万民乐业，无不欢呼感德，真所谓“时雨之师”。子牙传令，另备龙舟一只，装载武王。子牙与武王驾坐中舱，左右鼓棹，向中流进发。只听得黄河内泼浪滔天，风声大作，把武王龙舟泊在浪里颠播。武王曰：“相父，此舟为何这样掀播？”子牙曰：“黄河水急，平昔浪发，也是不小的；况今日有风，又是龙舟，故此颠播。”武王曰：“推开舱门，俟孤看一看，何如？”子牙同武王推舱一看，好大浪！怎见得黄河叠浪千层，有诗为证：

洋洋光侵月，浩浩影浮天。灵派吞华嶽，长流贯百川。  
千层凶浪滚，万叠峻波颠。岸口无渔火，沙头有鹭眠。  
茫然浑似海，一望更无边。

话说武王一见黄河，白浪滔天，一望无际，吓得面如土色。那龙舟只在浪里，或上，或下。忽然有一旋窝，水势分开，一声响亮，有一尾白鱼跳在船舱里来，就把武王吓了一跳。那鱼在舟中，左迸右跳，跳有四五尺高。武王问子牙曰：“此鱼入舟，主何凶吉？”子牙曰：“恭喜大王！贺喜大王！鱼入王舟者，主纣王该灭，周室当兴，正应大王继汤而有天下也。”子牙传令：“命庖人将此鱼烹来，与大王享之。”武王曰：“不可。”仍命掷之河中。子牙曰：“既入王舟，岂可舍此，正谓‘天赐不取，反受其咎’，理宜食之，不可轻弃。”左右领子牙令，速命庖人烹来。不一时献上，子牙命赐诸将。少顷，风恬浪静，龙舟已渡黄河。

只见四百诸侯知周兵已至，打点前来迎接武王。子牙知武王乃仁德之主，岂肯欺君；恐众诸侯尊称武王，以致中



“Why does the boat toss about so, Prime Minister?” King Wu asked.

“The river current is rapid and strong and the waves are usually violent even on ordinary days. It’s very windy today and the boat is rather small,” Jiang Ziya explained.

“Would you open the cabin window to let me have a look at the Yellow River?” King Wu asked.

Jiang Ziya pushed the cabin window open for a full view of the river. The waves were high and boundless. King Wu paled, frightened by the scene before him.

The dragon boat was suddenly caught in a whirlpool, and with a great crash, a big white fish leaped high into the air and landed on the deck, startling King Wu. The fish continued to thrash about wildly all over the deck.

“I should congratulate you, Your Highness,” Jiang addressed King Wu. “This is a sign that King Zhou’s days are numbered, and the Zhou Dynasty will soon replace the Shang. Tell the cook to prepare fish for His Highness,” Jiang Ziya ordered his men.

“Oh, no! Don’t hurt it! Throw it back in the river,” King Wu protested.

“As it’s already jumped on board, why should we give it up? An ancient proverb says, ‘If one neglects what Heaven endows, one will face condemnation.’ We should eat the fish as a gift from Heaven,” Jiang Ziya argued back.

Before long, the fish arrived on a platter, and Jiang invited all the generals on board to join them for lunch. Soon the wind subsided and the waves calmed. The dragon boat crossed the Yellow River safely and reached the other side.

The 400 nobles were already prepared to welcome King Wu. Jiang Ziya knew that King Wu was a virtuous ruler and was unwilling to dishonor King Zhou by being addressed by the dukes as His Majesty the King. Complications would arise if the problem were not well consid-





馁，则大事去矣。须是预先分付过，然后相见，庶几不露出圭角；俟破纣之后，再作区处。乃对武王曰：“今舟虽抵岸，大王还在舟中，俟老臣先上岸，陈设器械，严整军威，以示武于诸侯，立定营栅，然后来请大王。”武王曰：“听凭相父设施。”子牙先上了岸，率大队人马至孟津，立下营寨。众诸侯齐至中军，来见子牙。子牙迎接上帐，相叙礼毕，子牙曰：“列位君侯见武王不必深言其伐君吊民之故，只以观政于商为辞，俟破纣之后，再作商议。”众诸侯大喜，俱依子牙之言。子牙令军政官与哪吒、杨戩前去迎请武王。后面又有西方二百诸侯随后过黄河，同武王车驾而进。真个是天下诸侯会合，自是不同。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

今日诸侯会孟津，纷纷杀气满红尘。旌旗向日飞龙凤，  
剑戟迎霜泣鬼神。士卒赳赳歌化日，军民济济庆仁人。  
应知世运当亨泰，四海讴吟总是春。

且说武王同西方二百诸侯来至孟津大营，探马报入中军帐，子牙率领南、北二方四百诸侯，又有数百小诸侯，齐来迎接。武王径进中军。先有：

南伯侯鄂顺	东南扬侯鍾志明
北伯侯崇应鸾	西南豫州侯姚楚亮
左伯宗智明	东北兖州侯彭祖寿
远伯常信仁	夷门伯武高逵
邠州伯丁建吉	右伯姚庶良
近伯曹宗	

众诸侯进营，止有东伯侯姜文焕未曾进游魂关，乃序武王上帐。武王不肯。彼此固逊多时，武王同众诸侯交相下拜。天



ered. Jiang knew he must discuss this with the nobles first, lest anything unfavorable were to happen. So he said to King Wu, "Though we've already arrived, it would be better for Your Highness to rest here. I'll go on shore first to supervise the army. When we have set up camp, I will invite you ashore."

"As you like, Prime Minister," King Wu replied.

Jiang Ziya led the army to Mengjin and set up camp. When the nobles came to meet him, they were warmly welcomed. After the exchange of greetings, Jiang said, "Dear Nobles! I must request that when you meet King Wu, please do not mention our plan to attack the tyrant. You may just say that we are going to observe the political situation of Shang at Mengjin. We can discuss the matter further when the tyrant's been defeated."

All the nobles readily agreed. Jiang Ziya then sent Nezha, Yang Jian, and some other military officers to invite King Wu to the camp. Two hundred nobles went along to welcome King Wu, and some accompanied him in the coach. Jiang Ziya led another 400 nobles from the north and south to welcome King Wu at the camp gate.

King Wu entered the camp, followed by E Shun, the South Grand Duke; Chong Yingluan, the North Grand Duke; Zhang Zhiming, Marquis of Yang; Yao Chuliang, Marquis of Yuzhou; Peng Zushou, Marquis of Yanzhou; Wu Gaokui, Count of Yimen; Zong Zhiming, the Left Count; Yao Shuliang, the Right Count; Chang Xinren, the Distant Count; Cao Zong, the Near Count; and Ding Jianji, the Count of Binzhou. Everyone was there except Jiang Wenhuan, the East Grand Duke, who was still blocked at Youhun Pass.

All the dukes, marquises and counts invited King Wu to take the presiding seat, but he politely refused. After the greetings were over, the nobles knelt before King Wu and said, "Your honorable presence brings glory and virtue to our humble gathering. Your dignity and wisdom are



下诸侯俯伏曰：“今大王大驾特临此地，使众诸侯得睹天颜，仰观威德，早救民于水火之中，天下幸甚！万民幸甚！”武王深自谦让曰：“予小子发，嗣位先王，孤德寡闻，惟恐有负前列；谬蒙天下诸侯传檄相邀，特拜相父东会列位贤侯，观政于商。若曰予小子冒昧兴师，则予岂敢，惟望列位贤侯教之！”内有豫州侯姚楚亮对曰：“纣王无道，杀妻诛子，焚炙忠良，杀戮大臣，沉湎酒色，弗敬上天，郊庙不祀，播弃黎老，昵比罪人。皇天震怒，绝命于商。子等奉大王恭行天之罚，伐罪吊民，拯万姓于水火，正应天顺人之举，泄人神之愤，天下无不咸悦。若予等与大王坐视不理，厥罪惟均，望大王裁之。”武王曰：“纣王虽不行正道，俱臣下蔽惑之耳。今只观政于商，擒其孽幸，令人君改其敝政，则天下自平矣。”彭祖寿曰：“天命靡常，惟有德者居之。昔尧有天下，因其子不肖，而禅位于舜。舜有天下，亦因其子之不肖，而禅位于禹。禹之子贤，能承继父业，于是相传至桀而德衰，暴虐夏政，天人怨之；故汤得行天之罚，放桀于南巢，伐夏而有天下。贤圣之君六七作，至于纣，罪恶贯盈，毁弃善政，戕贼不道，皇天震怒，降灾于商，爰命大王以代殷汤，大王幸毋固辞，以灰诸侯之心。”武王谦让未遑。子牙曰：“列位贤侯，今日亦非商议正事之时，俟至商郊，再有说话。”众诸侯僉曰：“相父之言是也。”武王命营中治酒，大宴诸侯。不表。

且说袁洪在营中，只见报马启曰：“今有武王兵至孟津下寨，大会诸侯，请元帅定夺。”殷破败听得，忙上前言曰：“周武乃天下叛逆元首，自兴兵至此，所在获捷；军威甚



admired by all. The people would be blessed to have you to rescue them from their suffering.”

“I am but a humble son who has inherited a title from my ancestors. I am poor in virtue and shallow in learning, but by the grace of the nobles, I have been gloriously invited to accompany our prime minister to observe the politics of the Shang Dynasty. I dare not assume any leadership, and only hope that you will generously teach me how to serve the people,” King Wu answered.

“King Zhou is not virtuous. He has furiously enraged Heaven, which is resolutely bent on ending his dynasty. We all support you in punishing the tyrant as Heaven wishes and save the suffering people from further disaster. Heaven will be pleased and our people will appreciate your struggle for justice. We would be condemned by all if we disregarded this problem and showed indifference. Please consider it carefully, Your Highness,” Yao Chuliang, Marquis of Yuzhou, said emotionally.

“All King Zhou’s ministers were influenced by his bad ministers. Let’s seize the bootlickers and advise the king to rectify his improper behavior. The nation will then soon be restored to good order and will enjoy peace again,” King Wu answered at once.

“The will of Heaven is always subject to change and always those who are virtuous are fit to rule. In ancient times, though Yao was a good emperor, he unfortunately had a bad son, so he let Shun take the throne before his death. Emperor Shun succeeded Yao, but he, like Yao, did not have a good son either, so he had to enthrone Yu as his successor. Unlike Yao and Shun, Yu had a good son and good grandsons who were able to carry on the royal line, but Jie, the last emperor of the Xia Dynasty, poor in virtue, cruel, and unkind, was opposed by the people and abandoned by Heaven. He was overthrown and expelled to Nanchao by Tang, the first ruler of the Shang Dynasty. The dynasty came under six or seven good rulers in succession, but now Zhou has failed to do anything good in politics and has wallowed endlessly in evil ways. May you take it as your duty to punish him and not let the nobles down!” Peng Zushou, Marquis of Yanzhou encouraged him.



锐，元帅不可轻忽，务要严兵以待。”袁洪曰：“参军之言固善，料姜尚不过一磻溪村夫，有何本领，此皆诸关将士不用心，以致彼侥幸成功。参军放心，看吾一阵令他片甲不回。”次日，子牙升帐，众诸侯上帐参见，有夷门伯武高逵言曰：“启元帅：诸侯六百驻兵于此，俱未敢擅于用兵，止在此拒住，只候武王大驾来临，以凭裁夺。今日若不先擒袁洪，则匹夫尚自逞强，犹不知天吏之不可战也。望元帅早赐施行。”子牙曰：“贤侯之言甚善。吾必先下战书，然后会兵孟津，方可以示天下之恶惟天下之德可以克之。”众皆大喜。子牙忙修书，差杨戩往汤营内来下战书。杨戩领命，往成汤营前下马，大呼曰：“奉姜元帅将令，来下战书！”探事小校报与中军，袁洪听得周营来下战书，忙命左右：“令来。”只见军政官来至营门，令杨戩进见。杨戩至中军帐见袁洪，呈上战书。袁洪观看毕，乃曰：“吾不修回书，约定明日会兵便了。”杨戩回至中军，见子牙，言明日会兵。子牙传令与众诸侯：“明早会兵。”俱各各准备去了。次日，周营炮响，子牙调出大队人马，有六百诸侯齐出，当中是子牙人马，俱是大红旗；左是南伯侯鄂顺，右是北伯侯崇应鸾，尽是五色幡幢，真若盩山甲海，威势如彪，英雄似虎。布成阵势，三军呐喊，冲至军前。哨马报与袁洪，袁洪与众将出营观看子牙大兵队伍，只见天下诸侯雁翅排开，分于左右，当中是元帅姜尚，左有鄂顺，右有崇应鸾。有诗为证，诗曰：

诸侯共计破朝歌，正是神仙遇劫魔。百万雄师兴宇宙，奇功立在孟津河。姜尚东征除虐政，诸侯拱手尊号令。妖氛滚滚各争先，杨戩梅山收七圣。



Noticing King Wu's hesitation, Jiang Ziya said, "Dear Nobles! Let us not discuss this problem today. I suggest we bring it up later when we have reached the outskirts of Zhaoge."

"You are right, Prime Minister," they all agreed.

King Wu ordered a grand feast to entertain all the nobles.

Just about this time, Yuan Hong learned of the big conference in Mengjin. The staff officer, Yin Pobai, moved up and said, "King Wu is the leader of these rebels and has won every battle so far. His army is strong. We must be well prepared, Commander."

"You are not entirely wrong, but Jiang Ziya was only a fisherman at Panxi Stream. He can't be very talented. He was only able to occupy our passes and territories because our generals did not fight wholeheartedly. Don't worry, I'll smash them to pieces in just one combat," Yuan Hong replied proudly.

At the nobles' military conference the next day, Wu Gaokui, Count of Yimen, moved up and said to Jiang Ziya, "Commander, though we have 400 nobles here, we have not dared to fight without receiving your orders. We have only taken up defensive positions, waiting for the honorable arrival of King Wu. But we should not delay any longer. If we don't move quickly, they will remain unaware of our invincible strength. We hope that you will deal with this as soon as possible."

"You're absolutely right, Count. I'll send them a note for combat and then have all our forces concentrated at Mengjin to meet them," Jiang Ziya replied accordingly.

Jiang Ziya sent Yang Jian to deliver the note to Yuan Hong directly, and Yuan promised in return to meet the Zhou army the following day.

Early the next morning, cannons fired loudly in the Zhou camp, and Jiang Ziya led out his whole army, accompanied by 600 nobles. Yuan Hong had his generals and soldiers rush to the front, where they saw Jiang Ziya on his nondescript horse, attended by his disciples, and King Wu on his jaunty horse, followed by the dukes and counts.



话说袁洪在马上见姜子牙身穿道服，乘四不相，来至军前，左右排列有众位门人，次后武王乘逍遥马，南北分列众位诸侯。只见袁洪银盔素铠，坐下白马，使一条宾铁棍，担在鞍鞞，英雄凛凛。怎见得袁洪好处，有赞为证：

银盔素铠，缨络红凝。左插狼牙箭，右悬宝剑锋。横担宾铁棍，白马似神行。幼长梅山下，成功古洞中。曾受阴阳诀，又得天地灵。善能多变化，玄妙似人形。梅山称第一，保纣灭周兵。

话说子牙向前问曰：“来者莫非成汤元帅袁洪么？”袁洪曰：“你可就是姜尚？”子牙曰：“吾乃奉天征讨扫荡成汤天保大元帅。今天下归周，商纣无道，天下离心离德，只在旦夕受缚，料你一杯之水，安能救车薪之火哉！汝若早早倒戈纳降，尚待汝以不死；如若不肯，旦夕一朝兵败，玉石俱焚，虽欲求其独生，何可及哉。休得执迷，徒劳伊戚。”袁洪笑曰：“姜尚，你只知磻溪捕鱼，水有深浅，今幸而五关无有将才，让你深入重地，你敢于巧言令色，惑吾众听耶！”回顾左右先行曰：“谁与吾拿此鄙夫，以泄天下之愤？”傍有一人大呼曰：“元帅放心，待我成功！”走马飞临阵前，摇手中枪直取姜子牙。傍有右伯侯姚庶良纵马摇手中斧，大呼曰：“匹夫慢来，有吾在此！”也不答话，两马相交，枪斧并举，一场大战。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

征云荡荡透虚空，剑戟兵戈扰攘中。今日姜公头一战，孟津血溅竹梢红。

话说姚庶良手中斧转换如飞，不知常昊乃是梅山一个蛇精，姚庶良乃是真实本领，那里知道，只要成功。常昊不觉败下阵去，姚庶良便催马赶来。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



“Are you Jiang Ziya?” Yuan Hong asked.

“Yes. Nearly the whole kingdom belongs to Zhou now. The king has lost the support of the people and will soon be taken captive. You are merely a cup of water trying to extinguish the raging fire. You may save yourself if you surrender immediately, but a moment’s hesitation will end your life,” Jiang Ziya stated frankly.

Yuan Hong smiled and replied, “Jiang Ziya! You only know how to fish beside a stream but have no idea about the depth of the water. You’ve been lucky to get here, but dare you go on so with your stirring words?” Yuan Hong looked at the generals beside him and shouted, “Who will get that bloody fool for me and for the sake of the people?”

“Don’t worry, Commander. Let me take him!” a general beside Yuan Hong roared. He raced forward on his horse to attack Jiang Ziya.

Yao Shuliang, the Right Count, rocked his long-handled axe. “Don’t be in such a hurry, bastard! Here I am,” he yelled.

Chang Hao and Yao Shuliang fought desperately, lance against axe. Yao Shuliang was an ordinary person, and Chang Hao was a snake sprite from Mount Plum. He was no match for Yao Shuliang. He ran away exhausted, with Yao hot on his heels.

Please read the next chapter to find out what happened next.



## 第八十九回

### 纣王敲骨剖孕妇

诗曰：

纣王酷虐古今无，淫酗贪婪听美姝。孕妇无辜遭恶劫，行人有难罹凶途。遗讥简册称残贼，留与人间骂独夫。天道悠悠难究竟，且将浊酒对花奴。

话说姚庶良随后赶来，常昊乃是蛇精，纵马，脚下起一阵旋风，卷起一团黑雾，连人带马罩住，方现出他原形，乃是一根大蟒蛇；把口一张，吐出一阵毒气。姚庶良禁不起，随昏于马下。常昊便下马取了首级，大呼曰：“今拿姜尚如姚庶良为例！”众诸侯之内，不知他是妖精，有兖州侯彭祖寿纵马摇枪，大呼曰：“匹夫敢伤吾大臣！”时有吴龙在袁洪右边，见常昊立功，忍不住使两口双刀，催开马，飞奔前来，曰：“不要冲吾阵脚！”也不答语，两骑相交，刀枪并举，杀在阵前。六百镇诸侯俱在左右，看着二将交兵。战未数合，吴龙掩一刀败走；彭祖寿随后赶来。吴龙乃是蜈蚣精，见彭祖寿将近，随现出原形；只见一阵风起，黑云卷来，妖气迷人，彭祖寿已不知人事，被吴龙一刀挥为两断。众诸侯不知何故，只见将官追下去就是一块黑云罩住，将官随即绝命。子牙傍边有杨戩对哪吒曰：“此二将俱不是正经人，似有些妖气。我与道兄一往，何如？”只见吴龙跃马舞刀，飞奔军前，大呼曰：“谁来先啖吾双刀？”哪吒登开风火轮，使火尖



## Chapter 89

### Cutting Open the Bellies of Pregnant Women

With Yao Shuliang in pursuit, Chang Hao called up a whirlwind, covering himself and his horse with a dense black smoke. He transformed himself back into his original being, a snake, and spat poisonous gas from his mouth. Yao fell from his horse, and Chang Hao cut his head off. He ran back, shouting, "I'll get Jiang Ziya the same way!"

Peng Zushou galloped out. "How dare you hurt our great minister!" he yelled back.

Seeing that Chang Hao had won the combat, Wu Long could no longer remain patient. He spurred his horse forward with a shout. "Halt! Don't go further away!"

Peng Zushou and Wu Long fought violently until, after several rounds, Wu Long ran away as if defeated. When Peng Zushou chased after him, Wu Long recovered his original shape, a large centipede, in a burst of wind and black clouds. Peng Zushou was slashed in two when he fainted in the poisonous air.

The nobles did not know what had happened. They could only see the black smoke surrounding the enemy and were all very puzzled.

Standing beside Jiang Ziya, Yang Jian said to Nezha, "As far as I can see, they are not human beings. They look like goblins or sprites. Let's see what they really are."

Wu Long ran back. "Who would like to taste my cutlass next?" he shouted.



枪，现三首八臂迎来。吴龙曰：“来者是谁？”哪吒曰：“吾乃哪吒是也。你这业畜，怎敢将妖术伤吾诸侯！”把枪一摆，直刺吴龙。吴龙手中刀急架交还，未及三四合，被哪吒祭起九龙神火罩，响一声，将吴龙罩在里面。吴龙已化道青光去了。哪吒用手一拍，及至罩中现出九条火龙时，吴龙去之久矣。常昊见哪吒用火龙罩罩住吴龙，心中大怒，纵马持枪，大呼曰：“哪吒不要走！吾来也！”只见杨戩使三尖刀，纵银白马，同哪吒双战常昊。常昊见势不好，便败下阵去。杨戩也不赶他，取弹弓在手，随手发出金丸，照常昊打来。只见那金丸不知落于何处。哪吒后祭起神火罩，将常昊罩住；也似吴龙化一道赤光而去。袁洪见二将如此精奇，心下甚是欢喜，传令：“三军擂鼓！”袁洪纵马冲杀过来，大呼曰：“姜子牙！我与你见个雌雄！”傍有杨任见袁洪冲来，急催开了云霞兽，使开云飞枪，敌住袁洪；战有五七回合，杨任取出五火扇，照袁洪一搨，袁洪已预先走了，止烧死他一匹马。子牙鸣金，将队回营，升帐坐下，叹曰：“可惜伤了二路诸侯！”心下不乐。杨戩上帐曰：“今日弟子看他三人俱是妖怪之相，不似人形。方才哪吒祭神火罩，杨任用神火扇，弟子用金丸，俱不曾伤他，竟化青光而去。”只见众诸侯也都议论常昊、吴龙之术，纷纷不一。

且说袁洪回营，升帐坐下，见常昊、吴龙齐来参谒，袁洪曰：“哪吒罩儿，杨任的扇子，俱好利害！”吴龙笑曰：“他那罩与扇子只好降别人，那里奈何得我们。只是今日指望拿了姜尚，谁知只坏了他两个诸侯，也不算成功。”袁洪一面修本往朝歌报捷，宽免天子忧心。且说鲁仁杰对殷成秀、雷



Nezha appeared with three heads and eight arms to answer the challenge. He attacked Wu Long, and after three rounds, threw up his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet. Wu Long turned into a beam of green light and ran away.

Chang Hao ran out again. "Don't go away, Nezha! Here I come," he yelled.

When Yang Jian joined the battle, Chang Hao ran away. Yang Jian didn't give chase but shot a gold ball at him with his bow. He missed, and Nezha tried again with his coverlet. Chang Hao then turned himself into a beam of red light and flew away.

Yuan Hong was greatly pleased at his general's magic. He ran out with a shout, "Let's decide who's the winner, Jiang Ziya!"

Yang Ren met him, and after five rounds, took out his Five-Fire Divine Flame Fan and fanned at Yuan Hong. But Yuan raced away, leaving his horse to be burnt to death.

Jiang Ziya finally ordered the gongs to be struck, signaling the withdrawal of the army. "What a pity that we lost two nobles today," he sighed.

Returning to their camp, Yuan Hong said, "How terrible are their magic weapons!"

Wu Long only smiled. "The coverlet and the fan can do nothing to us. I'm disappointed that we got only two nobles today. We didn't even take Jiang Ziya. I feel very dissatisfied."

Yuan Hong sent a report to King Zhou on his victory. Lu Renjie said to



鹏、雷鹏曰：“贤弟，今日你等见袁洪、吴龙、常昊与子牙会兵的光景么？”众人曰：“不知所以。”鲁仁杰曰：“此正所谓‘国家将兴，必有祯祥；国家将亡，必有妖孽’。今日他三将俱是些妖孽，不似人形。今天下诸侯会兵此处，正是大敌；岂有这些妖邪能拒敌成功耶。”殷成秀曰：“长兄且莫忙说破，看他后来如何。”鲁仁杰曰：“总来吾受成汤三世之恩，岂敢有负国恩之理；惟一死以报国耳！”话说差官往朝歌，来至文书房内，飞廉接本观看，见袁洪报捷，连诛大镇叛逆诸侯彭祖寿、姚庶良，心中大喜，忙持着本上鹿台来见纣王。当驾官上台启曰：“有中大夫飞廉候旨。”纣王曰：“宣来。”左右将飞廉宣至殿前，参拜毕，俯伏奏曰：“今有元帅袁洪领敕镇守孟津，以逆天下诸侯；初阵斩兖州侯彭祖寿，右伯侯姚庶良，军威已振，大挫周兵锋锐。自兴师以来，未有今日之捷。此乃陛下洪福齐天，得此大帅，可计日奏功，以安社稷者也。特具本奏。”纣王闻奏大悦：“元帅袁洪连斩二逆，足破敌人之胆，其功莫大焉。传朕旨意，特敕奖谕，赐以锦袍、金珠，以励其功；仍以蜀锦百匹，宝钞万贯，羊、酒等件以犒将士勤劳。务要用心料理，剿灭叛逆，另行分列茅土，朕不食言。钦哉！故谕。”飞廉顿首谢恩，领旨打点解犒赏往孟津去。不表。

且言妲己闻飞廉奏袁洪得胜奏捷，来见纣王曰：“妾苏氏恭喜陛下又得社稷之臣也！袁洪实有大将之才，永堪重任。似此奏捷，叛逆指日可平。臣妾不胜庆幸，实皇上无疆之福以启之耳。今特具觞为陛下称贺。”纣王曰：“御妻之言正合朕意。”命当驾官于鹿台上治九龙席，三妖同纣王共饮。此



Yin Chengxiu, Lei Peng, and Lei Kun, "Brothers! Did you see our three generals fighting today?"

"Yes, but we don't quite understand what happened," they answered.

"It's just as the proverb says, 'Good omens will appear when the nation is going to be prosperous; and sprites will appear when the nation is nearing its end.' I believe those three generals of ours are all sprites. We are facing the troops of West Qi and the nobles of the whole country. How can those sprites resist them?"

"You should keep this a secret, Brother. Let's see what will develop in the next few days," said Yin Chengxiu.

"By the grace of this dynasty, I must do my best to serve my country. I'm always ready to dedicate my life to His Majesty," Lu Renjie said.

Yuan Hong's messenger arrived in Zhaoge with the report to the palace secretariat. Fei Lian received and read the report. He was delighted to learn that Yuan Hong had won a great victory in the first combat and immediately took the report to King Zhou.

The king was extraordinarily pleased with the report and said, "I'll reward him with a suit of satin, gold, pearls, 100 rolls of Sichuan silk piece goods, and 10,000 strings of cash. Let his generals and soldiers feast on wine and mutton. They should continue to exert their best and wipe out all the rebels. I shall keep my promise to grant them titles and land."

Fei Lian kowtowed again to thank the king, as Yuan Hong had been recommended by him.

Hearing that Fei Lian had delivered a triumphant report from Yuan Hong, Daji went over to see King Zhou and said, "I should congratulate you, Your Majesty. Yuan Hong is really a talented general. With such a great victory behind us, it should be easy to wipe out the rebels in no time at all. It's really a great blessing. I've come to celebrate with you and toast you with wine."

The king ordered a feast on the Happy Terrace to celebrate with his three women. It was the middle of winter, and as they sat there drinking,



时正值仲冬天气，严威凛冽，寒气侵人。正饮之间，不觉彤云四起，乱舞梨花。当驾官启奏曰：“上天落雪了。”纣王大喜曰：“此时正好赏雪。”命左右暖注金罇，重斟杯斝，酣饮交欢。怎见好雪，有赞为证：

彤云密布，冷雾缤纷。彤云密布，朔风凛凛号空中；冷雾缤纷，大雪漫漫铺地下。真个是：六花片片飞琼，千树株株倚玉。须臾积粉，顷刻成盐。白鸚浑失素，皓鹤竟无形。平添四海三江水，压倒东西几树松。却便似：战败玉龙三百万；果然是：退鳞残甲满空飞。但只见：几家村舍如银砌，万里江山似玉图。好雪！真个是：柳絮满桥，梨花盖舍。柳絮满桥，桥边渔叟挂蓑衣；梨花盖舍，舍下野翁煨榾柮。客子难沽酒，苍头苦觅梅。洒洒潇潇裁蝶翅，飘飘荡荡剪鹅衣。团团滚滚随风势，飐飐冷气透幽帟。丰年祥瑞从天降，堪贺人间好事宜。

话说纣王与妲己共饮，又见大雪纷纷，忙传旨，命：“卷起毡帘，待朕同御妻、美人看雪。”侍驾官卷起帘幔，打扫积雪。纣王同妲己、胡喜妹、王贵人在台上，看朝歌城内外似银装世界，粉砌乾坤。王曰：“御妻，你自幼习学歌声曲韵，何不把按雪景的曲儿唱一套，俟朕漫饮三杯。”妲己领旨，款启朱唇，轻舒莺舌，在鹿台上唱一个曲儿。真是：婉转莺声飞柳外，笙簧嘹亮自天来。曲曰：

才飞燕塞边，又洒向城门外。轻盈过玉桥去，虚飘临闾苑来。攘攘挨挨，颠倒把乾坤玉载。冻的长江上鱼沉雁杳，空林中虎啸猿哀。凭天降，冷祸胎，六花飘堕难禁耐，砌漫了白玉阶。宫帟里冷侵衣袂，那一时暖烘烘红

dark clouds filled in the sky. Snow flakes, like white plum flowers, fell softly to the ground. "Your Majesty! It's snowing," the chief guard announced.

"It's perfect for us to enjoy this wonderful scenery," King Zhou said happily.

He ordered his attendants to bring more gold cups with warm wine, and they drank again and again. He then ordered the curtains to be opened so all could enjoy the lovely scene outside. The whole city seemed decorated in silver.

"My dear queen! You've studied singing and dancing since childhood. Won't you sing a song about the dancing snow for me? I'll salute you with three cups when you've finished," King Zhou urged.

On his order, Daji opened her pink lips and a bewitching song floated out over the terrace. King Zhou was so pleased he emptied three cups at once. In a short while, it stopped snowing and the sun shone brightly over them.







日当头晒，扫彤云四开，现青天一派，瑞气祥光拥出来。

姐已唱罢，余韵悠扬，袅娜不绝。纣王大喜，连饮三大杯。一时雪俱止了，彤云渐散，日色复开。纣王同姐已凭栏，看朝歌积雪。忽见西门外，有一小河，——此河不是活水河，因纣王造鹿台，挑取泥土，致成小河，适才雪水注积，因此行人不便，必跣足过河，——只见有一老人跣足渡水，不甚惧冷，而行步且快。又有一少年人，亦跣足渡水，惧冷行缓，有惊怯之状。纣王在高处观之，尽得其态，问于姐已曰：“怪哉！怪哉！有这等异事！你看那老者渡水，反不怕冷，行步且快；这年少的反又怕冷，行走甚难，这不是反其事了？”姐已曰：“陛下不知，老者不甚怕冷，乃是少年父母，精血正旺之时交姤成孕，所秉甚厚，故精血充满，骨髓皆盈，虽至末年，遇寒气犹不甚畏怯也。至若少年怕冷，乃是末年父母，气血已衰，偶尔姤精成孕，所秉甚薄，精血既亏，髓皆不满，虽是少年，形同老迈，故遇寒冷而先畏怯也。”纣王笑曰：“此惑朕之言也！人秉父精母血而生，自然少壮，老衰，岂有反其事之理？”姐已又曰：“陛下何不差官去拿来，便知端的。”纣王传旨：“命当驾官至西门，将渡水老者、少者俱拿来。”当驾官领旨，忙出朝赶至西门，不分老少，即时一并拿来。老少民人曰：“你拿我们怎么？”侍臣曰：“天子要你去见。”老少民人曰：“吾等奉公守法，不欠钱粮，为何来拿我们？”侍臣曰：“只怕当今天子有好处到你们，也不可知。”正是：

平白行来因过水，谁知敲骨丧其生！



Leaning on the rail, King Zhou and Daji looked out over the snowy landscape. There was a large ditch to the west which had been dug up to make the foundation of the Happy Terrace. It was full of freezing stagnant water and difficult to cross. The tyrant and Daji saw an old man cross the canal barefooted. He seemed to ignore the cold and ran swiftly. And then came a young man who also crossed the canal barefooted, but he walked slowly and sluggishly, obviously afraid of the cold. King Zhou turned to Daji. "What a surprise! Did you see, my dear, how the old chap ran quickly across, but the young man just dragged through the cold? It seems quite contrary to reason. Don't you think so, my dear?" he asked her.

Daji answered at once, "Can't you see, Your Majesty, that the old man was conceived when his father and mother were young, their love-making passionate, and the sperm highly fertile. The old chap was born strong with good blood circulation and rich bone marrow. Even now, he does not fear the cold and can run quickly through the snow. But the young man must have been conceived when his parents were old and his father's sperm was thin and weak. He is consequently weak and has poor bone marrow. That's why he walks so slowly through the cold."

King Zhou smiled and said, "Everyone is fertilized by the father's sperm and nourished by the mother's blood, and everyone is strong in their youth and weak in their old age. How can it be that the old man is stronger and healthier than the young man. You are fooling me, my dear!"

"You may order your guards to bring them here for our study and investigation, Your Majesty," Daji proposed.

The king was delighted with her idea and sent his guards after the two men.

"Why do you want to stop us?" the two protested.

"His Majesty wants to see you," the guards replied.

"Don't arrest us. We always obey the law and pay our taxes," they protested again.

"You may be lucky and get something out of a meeting with His Majesty," the guards comforted them.



纣王在鹿台上专等渡水人民。却说侍驾官将二民拿至台下回旨：“启陛下：将老少二民拿至台下。”纣王命：“将斧砍开二民胫骨，取来看验。”左右把老者、少者腿俱砍断，拿上台看，果然老者髓满，少者髓浅。纣王大喜，命左右：“把尸拖出！”可怜无辜百姓，受此惨刑！后人诗叹之，诗曰：

败叶飘飘落故宫，至今犹自起悲风。独夫只听谗言妇，目下朝歌社稷空。

话说纣王见妲己如此神异，抚其背而言曰：“御妻真是神人，何灵异若此！”妲己曰：“妾虽系女流，少得阴符之术，其勘验阴阳，无不奇中。适才断胫验髓，此犹其易者也。至如妇人怀孕，一见便知他腹内有几月，是男，是女，面在腹内，或朝东、南、西、北，无不周知。”纣王曰：“方才老少人民断胫验髓，如此神异，朕得闻命矣；至如孕妇，再无有不妙之理。”命当驾官传旨：“民间搜取孕妇见朕。”奉御官往朝歌城来。正是：

天降大殃临孕妇，成汤社稷尽归周。

话说奉御官在朝歌满城寻访，有三名孕妇，一齐拿往午门来。只见他夫妻难舍，抢地呼天，哀声痛惨，大呼曰：“我等百姓又不犯天子之法，不拖欠钱粮，为何拿我等有孕之妇？”子不舍母，母不舍子，悲悲泣泣，前遮后拥，扯进午门来。只见箕子在文书房共微子、微子启、微子衍、上大夫孙荣正议“袁洪为将，退天下诸侯之兵，不知何如”，只听得九龙桥闹闹嚷嚷，呼天叫地，哀声不绝。众人大惊，齐出文书房来，问其情由。见奉御官拉着两三个妇女而来。箕子问曰：“这是何故？”民妇泣曰：“吾等俱是女流，又不犯天子之法，为何拿我女人做甚么？老爷是天子之臣，当得为国为民，救我等蚁命！”言罢哭声不绝。箕子忙问奉御官。奉御官答曰：“皇上夜来听娘娘言语，将老少二民敲骨验髓，分别



When the guards returned with the two innocent citizens, the king ordered, "Cut off their legs and bring them here immediately."

When the legs were presented, the king could see the difference in bone marrow between the two men. He patted Daji's back and said, "My dear queen, you really are like a Goddess. You know about everything!"

"Although I'm a woman, I've learned enough about the philosophy of positives and negatives that I can see things with great accuracy. It's not at all difficult to survey bone marrow. I can also tell you the sex of fetus, the length of pregnancy, and the position of the infant within a mother's womb," Daji answered.

"Since your vision of the bone marrow was so accurate, I certainly believe you could visualize pregnant women correctly," King Zhou said. He then gave an order, "Find some pregnant women in Zhaoge and bring them here."

After searching the whole capital, the guards found three pregnant women and brought them to the palace gate by force. Weeping bitterly, they cried, "We are pregnant women and decent citizens of Zhaoge. We have done nothing against the law, and all our taxes are paid. Why are you bringing us to the palace?"

Their children and husbands clung to them, unwilling to give them up. Everyone was crying and holding one another tightly, but at last the women were dragged into the palace.

Ji Zi, Wei Zi, Wei Ziqi, Wei Ziyang, and Sun Rong were sitting in the secretariat's office talking about Yuan Hong's appointment. When they suddenly heard all the commotion, they rushed out to see what was the matter. Ji Zi moved forward and asked the women, "Why are you being dragged in here?"

The women wept and answered, "We all live in the capital. We've done nothing against the law. Why have we been dragged here? What will you do with such poor women? You are a high minister of His Majesty. You should serve the people and nation faithfully. We beg you to save our lives, though we are lower than the ground you walk on."

Ji Zi immediately asked the chief guard why they'd been brought in, and he replied by telling the story of the bone marrow and the queen's claim to be able to see in a pregnant woman's belly. "So, he ordered us



浅深，知其老少生育，皇上大喜。娘娘又奏，尚有剖腹验胎，知道阴阳。皇上听信斯言，特命臣等取此孕妇看验。”箕子听罢，大骂：“昏君！方今兵临城下，将至濠边，社稷不久丘墟，还听妖妇之言，造此无端罪业！左右且住！待吾面君谏止。”箕子怒气不息，后随着微子等俱往鹿台来见驾。且说纣王在鹿台专等孕妇来看验，只见当驾官启曰：“有箕子等候旨。”王曰：“宣。”箕子至台上，俯伏大哭曰：“不意成汤相传数十世之天下，一旦丧于今日，而尚不知警戒修省，造此无辜恶业，你将何面目见先王之灵也！”纣王怒曰：“周武叛逆，今已有大帅袁洪足可御敌，斩将覆军，不日奏凯。朕偶因观雪，见朝涉者，有老少之分，行步之异，幸皇后分别甚明，朕得以决其疑，于理何害。今朕欲剖孕妇以验阴阳。有甚大事，你敢当面侮君，而妄言先王也！”箕子泣谏曰：“臣闻人秉天下之灵气以生，分别五官，为天地宣猷赞化，作民父母；未闻荼毒生灵，称为民父母者也。且人死不能复生，谁不爱此血躯，而轻弃以死耶。今陛下不敬上天，不修德政，天怒民怨，人日思乱；陛下尚不自省，犹杀此无辜妇女，臣恐八百诸侯屯兵孟津，旦夕不保。一旦兵临城下，又谁为陛下守此都城哉。只可惜商家宗裔为他人所掳，宗庙被他人所毁，宫殿为他人所居，百姓为他人之民，府库为他人



to bring three women here for another experiment,” the guard concluded.

When he had finished, Ji Zi swore angrily, “You damned tyrant! The enemy troops are just outside the capital. They will be here soon and our dynasty will meet its end. How can you still be deluded by that lewd woman?”

“Don’t take them any further,” he ordered. “I’m going to admonish the king at once.”

Ji Zi, enraged and furious, was followed by Wei Zi and others to the Happy Terrace.

Ji Zi knelt on the ground and cried loudly before King Zhou. He admonished him saying pitifully, “How can the dynasty end so tragically after this many generations? Why can’t you treat this critical situation as a warning? You still behave sinfully and like a criminal. How can you face your ancestors in Heaven!”

“We now have Yuan Hong,” replied King Zhou angrily. “He’s defeated the enemy and killed their generals and numerous soldiers. He will win a complete victory very soon. I was looking at the snow yesterday when I spotted two men, one young and one old, who moved very differently through cold water. I was lucky to have my queen, who could tell the reason why. She helped to expel my doubts with an experiment. There was no harm done at all. Now, I wish to try another experiment on some pregnant women. Their bellies shall be cut open to see if the queen’s vision is correct. This is not a serious matter. How dare you insult me like this! How dare you use the names of my ancestors so recklessly!”

But Ji Zi still wept and said, “Everyone is created with the spirit and vitality of both Heaven and earth. We are given the five senses to appreciate the greatness of the universe. As a ruler, the king is honored as the people’s father. How can he so cruelly and savagely cause his people to suffer? Moreover, once dead, life does not return. Everyone loves one’s body and abhors death. But you disdain Heaven and ignore good administration. The people are rising up against you, but you do not repent and now wish to slaughter those innocent women. Do you realize that 800 nobles have their troops at Mengjin? Do you realize that once Mengjin is taken and the enemy troops march on Zhaoge, there is no one to protect the capital for you? All our families will be taken captive. Our Ancestral Temple will be ruined, our palaces occupied, and our people will become



之有，陛下还不自悔，犹听妇女之言，敲民骨，剔孕妇，臣恐周武人马一到，不用攻城，朝歌之民自然献之矣！军民与陛下作仇，只恨周武不能早至，军民欲箪食壶浆以迎之耳。虽陛下被掳，理之当然；只可怜二十八代神主，尽被天下诸侯之所毁，陛下此心忍之乎？”纣王大怒曰：“老匹夫！焉敢觑面侮君，以亡国视朕，不敬孰大于此！”命武士：“拿去打死！”箕子大叫曰：“臣死不足惜，只可惜你昏君败国，遗讥万世，纵孝子慈孙不能改也！”只见左右武士扶箕子方欲下台，只见台下有人大呼曰：“不可！”微子、微子启、微子衍三人上台，见纣王俯伏，呜咽不能成语，泣而奏曰：“箕子忠良，有功社稷。今日之谏，虽则过激，皆是为国之言。陛下幸察之！陛下昔日剖比干之心，今又诛忠谏之口，社稷危在旦夕，而陛下不知悟，臣恐万姓怨愤，祸不旋踵也。幸陛下怜赦箕子，褒忠谏之名，庶几人心可挽，天意可回耳。”纣王见微子等齐来谏诤，不得已，乃曰：“听皇伯、皇兄之谏，将箕子废为庶民！”妲己在后殿出而奏曰：“陛下不可！箕子当面辱君，已无人臣礼；今若放之在外，必生怨望。倘与周武构谋，致生祸乱，那时表里受敌，为患不小。”纣王曰：“将何处治？”妲己曰：“依臣妾愚见，且将箕子剃发囚禁，为奴宫禁，以示国法，使民人不敢妄为，臣下亦不敢渎奏矣。”



the subjects of another king. But you are still deluded by your woman. I'm afraid that when King Wu's army gets here, the people will happily present this capital to him. There will be no need to attack the city. The people and the soldiers will make you their common enemy, and this dynasty of twenty generations will completely collapse. How could I bear it, Your Majesty?"

The king wrathfully swore back at him, "You damned old fool! Dare you insult me like this! Dare you disdain me as a ruler losing his kingdom! I cannot take this humiliation." He then ordered his guards, "Take him out and flog him to death at once."

But Ji Zi kept on shouting, "No one should pity my death, but all must pity you who will destroy the nation. This humiliation will be recorded in history forever, and no one, even your filial descendants, will be able to rectify your name."

When the palace guards were about to pull Ji Zi from the Happy Terrace, shouts were suddenly heard from below: "No! Don't! Don't!" Wei Zi, Wei Ziqi, and Wei Ziyang rushed up to the terrace, knelt down, and wept bitterly. "Ji Zi is loyal and faithful and has done great things for this dynasty. Though he spoke rashly, he has only the welfare of the nation in mind. We beg Your Majesty to consider it carefully. You have cut open the breast of Bi Gan and taken out his heart. How can you slay the minister who has a faithful mouth today? We beg you to generously forgive Ji Zi to encourage his loyalty and please the people and Heaven at the same time." they pleaded.

King Zhou finally yielded and said, "I accept your admonitions, Uncles. I'll forgive him, but I have to degrade him to the status of a common plebeian."

Daji unexpectedly ran out from the back court and said to the king, "Oh! You can't do that, Your Majesty. Ji Zi has insulted you. He's ignored all the rites as your minister. Should you drive him out beyond the palace, he would not forget his hatred and surely throw himself into King Wu's camp. We would be attacked from both outside and inside."

"What shall we do with him then?" King Zhou asked.

"Shave his head and imprison him as a slave according to the law. The people won't dare act against you and the ministers won't speak





纣王闻奏大喜，将箕子竟囚之为奴，微子见如此光景，料成汤终无挽救之日，随即下台，与微子启，微子衍大哭曰：“我成汤继统六百年来，今日一旦被嗣君所失，是天亡我商也，奈之何哉！”微子与微子启兄弟二人商议曰：“我与你兄弟可将太庙中二十八代神主负往他州外郡，隐姓埋名，以存商代裡祀，不令同日绝灭可也。”微子启含泪应曰：“敢不如命！”于是三人打点收拾，投他州自隐。——后孔圣称他三人曰：“微子去之；箕子为之奴；比干谏而死。”谓“殷有三仁”是也。后人诗赞之：

鸞啖商郊百草新，成汤宫殿已成尘。为奴岂是存商祀，去国应知接后裡。剖腹丹心成往事，割胎民妇又遭迍。朝歌不日归周主，可惜成汤化鬼磷！

话说微子三人收拾行囊，投他州去了。纣王将三妇人拿上鹿台，姐已指一妇人：“腹中是男，面朝左肋。”一妇人：“也是男，面朝右肋。”命左右用刀剖开，毫厘不爽。又指一妇人：“腹中是女，面朝后背。”用刀剖开，果然不差。纣王大悦：“御妻妙术如神，虽龟筮莫敌！”自此肆无忌惮，横行不道，惨恶异常，万民切齿。当日有诗为证：

大雪纷纷宴鹿台，独夫何苦降飞灾！三贤远遁全宗庙，孕妇身亡实可哀。

话说当日割剔孕妇，天昏地暗，日月无光。次日，有探事军报上台来：“有微子等三位殿下，封了府门，不知往何处去了。”纣王曰：“微子年迈，就在此，也是没用之人；微子启弟兄两人，就留在朝歌，也做不得朕之事业；他去了，又省朕许多烦絮。即今元帅袁洪屡见大功，料周兵不能做得甚事。”遂日日荒淫宴乐，全不以国事为重。在朝文武不过具



recklessly any more.”

King Zhou listened with delight and then ordered his guards to put Ji Zi in prison as a slave. Wei Zi knew it was hopeless to rescue the Shang Dynasty. He sadly left the terrace with Wei Ziqi and Wei Ziyan. They consulted one another and decided to take the spirit tablets of all twenty generations from the Ancestral Temple to a place faraway. They wished to live as hermits in memory of the dying dynasty. Saint Confucius, not long thereafter, honored them as three prominent ministers in the Shang Dynasty.

When his three ministers had left the terrace, King Zhou ordered his guards to carry in the pregnant women. Daji pointed at one and said, “She has a boy, and it’s facing left.” She looked at another and said, “She also has a boy, but it’s facing right.”

King Zhou ordered his guards to cut open the pregnant women and take the babies out. They were both boys and both facing in the direction that Daji had visualized.

Daji then pointed at the third woman and said, “She has a girl, and it’s facing backwards.” When her belly was cruelly cut open, everything was exactly as Daji had said. King Zhou was greatly pleased. He praised her, saying, “My dear queen! You are really very wonderful. You are far greater than a Goddess or any fortune-teller!”

When these three pregnant women cruelly died, Heaven and earth turned dull, and the sun and moon lost their brightness. The next morning, a report reached King Zhou that Wei Zi, Wei Ziqi, and Wei Ziyan had sealed up their residences and gone away. The king said joyfully, “Wei Zi was old and useless. Even Wei Ziqi and Wei Ziyan, his brothers, weren’t too much help to me. Let them go, and I won’t be troubled any longer. Yuan Hong is fighting so well for us, the Zhou army must be greatly discouraged.”

King Zhou thus continued to devote all his energy to his women and pleasures. He did not care for politics in the least.



数而已，并无可否。

那日招贤榜篷下，来了二人，生得相貌甚是凶恶：一个面如蓝靛，眼似金灯，巨口獠牙，身躯伟岸；一个面似瓜皮，口如血盆，牙如短剑，发似朱砂，顶生双角，甚是怪异，往中大夫府谒见。飞廉一见，甚是畏惧。行礼毕，飞廉问曰：“二位杰士是那里人氏？高姓？何名？”二人欠身曰：“某二人乃大夫之子民，成汤之百姓。闻姜尚欺妄，侵天子关隘，吾兄弟二人愿投麾下，以报国恩，决不敢望爵禄之荣，愿破周兵，以洗王耻。子民姓高，名明；弟乃高觉。”通罢姓名，飞廉领二人往朝内拜见纣王，进午门径往鹿台见驾。纣王问曰：“大夫有何奏章？”飞廉奏曰：“今有二贤高明、高觉，愿来报效，不图爵禄，敢破周兵。”纣王闻奏大悦，宣上台来。二人倒身下拜，俯伏称“臣”。王赐平身，二人立起。纣王一见相貌奇异，甚是骇然：“朕观二士真乃英雄也！”随在鹿台上俱封为神武上将军。二人谢恩。王曰：“大夫与朕陪宴。”二人下台冠带了，至显庆殿待宴，至晚谢恩出朝。次日旨意下，命高明、高觉同钦差解汤羊、御酒往孟津来。不知凶吉如何，且听下回分解。



One day, two fierce and ugly men presented themselves at Fei Lian's residence. One had an indigo-blue face, two eyes as big as golden lamps, a wide mouth full of tusks, and a robust physique. The other had a face like a melon, a mouth as large as a basin with teeth like short swords, skin of cinnabar, and two horns growing from his head. Fei Lian was startled to see them and asked, "Who are you, heroes?"

"We are your people. We want to return the grace of the nation. When we heard that Jiang Ziya had occupied our passes and land, we decided to go to the front and beat him. We do not care about rank or honor. We are brothers. My name is Gao Ming, and my younger brother is Gao Jue."

Fei Lian immediately took the two to see King Zhou, who was also startled at their strange appearance but liked them because they looked like real warriors. He immediately appointed them as two conquering Generals.

They were entertained at a feast held in the Celebration Court and later sent to Mengjin. They took large jars of wine with them to comfort Yuan Hong's soldiers.

If you wish to know what happened on the battlefield, please read the next chapter.



## 第九十回

### 子牙捉神荼郁垒

诗曰：

眼有明兮耳有聪，能于千里决雌雄。神机才动情先泄，密计方行事已空。轩庙借灵凭鬼使，棋山毓秀仗桃丛。谁知名载封神榜，难免降魔杵下红。

话说高明、高觉同钦差官往孟津来，行至辕门，传：“旨意下！”旗门官报入中军，袁洪与众将接旨，进中军开读，诏曰：

“尝闻：将者乃三军之司命，系社稷之安危。将得其人，国有攸赖；苟非其才，祸遂莫测，则国家又何望焉。兹尔元帅袁洪，才兼文武，学冠天人，屡建奇功，真国家之柱石，当代之人龙也！今特遣大夫陈友解汤羊、御酒、金帛、锦袍，用酬戍外之劳，慰朕当宁之望。尔当克勤克恭，扑灭巨逆，早安边疆，以靖海宇；朕不惜茅土重爵，以待有功。尔其钦哉！特谕。”

袁洪谢恩毕，款待天使；又令高明、高觉进见。高明、高觉上帐参谒袁洪。行礼毕，袁洪认得他是棋盘山桃精、柳鬼；高明、高觉也认得袁洪是梅山白猿。彼此大喜，各相温慰，深喜是一气同枝。正是：

不是武王洪福大，焉能“七圣”死梅山。

高明、高觉在营中与众将相见，各各致意。次日，袁洪修谢

## *Chapter 90*

### **The Subjugation of Two Sprites**

Reaching Mengjin, Gao Ming and Gao Jue asked the guards to report their arrival to Yuan Hong. Yuan Hong went to welcome them outside the camp with his other generals, and there he received the royal reward. He expressed his thanks, entertained the royal messenger, and invited Gao Ming and Gao Jue to join him at a conference. Yuan Hong knew they were the peach sprite and willow sprite from Mount Chessboard, and they could tell he was the white ape sprite from Mount Plum. They laughed and enjoyed themselves together, as they were all of the same origin.

Gao Ming and Gao Jue were then introduced to the other generals. Yuan Hong wrote a report to thank King Zhou and sent the royal messenger back to Zhaoge the next day.





恩本，打发天使回朝歌。不表。当日，袁洪命高明、高觉二将往周营搦战。二人慨然出营，至周营，大呼曰：“着姜尚来见我！”哨马报入中军，子牙问左右：“谁去走一遭？”傍有哪吒曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。哪吒领令出营，忽见二人步行而来，好凶恶！怎见得：

一个面如蓝靛腮如灯；一个脸似青松口血盆。一个獠牙凸暴如钢剑；一个海下胡须似赤绳。一个方天戟上悬豹尾；一个加钢板斧似车轮。一个棋盘山上称柳鬼；一个得手人间叫高明。正是：神荼郁垒该如此，要阻周兵闹孟津。

话说哪吒大呼曰：“来者何人？”高明答曰：“吾乃高明、高觉是也；今奉袁洪将军将令，特来擒拿反叛姜尚耳。你是何人，敢来见我？”哪吒大喝曰：“好孽畜，敢出大言！”摇手中火尖枪，直取二将。高明、高觉举戟、斧劈面迎。三将交兵，大战在龙潭虎穴。哪吒早现出三头八臂，祭起乾坤圈，正中高觉顶门上，打得个一派金光，散漫于地。哪吒复祭九龙神火罩，把高明罩住，用手一拍，即现九条火龙，须臾烧罢。哪吒回营来见子牙，言圈打高觉，罩住高明一事，子牙大喜。不表。且说高明等二人进营，来见袁洪曰：“姜尚所仗无他，俱倚的是三山五岳门人，故此所在，侥幸成功，不曾遇着我等奥妙之人，莫说是姜尚几个门人，何怕你有通天彻地手段，岂能脱得吾辈之手也！”众人俱各欢喜。次日，高明、高觉又往周营搦战。哨马报入中军：“启元帅：高明、高觉请元帅答话。”子牙问哪吒曰：“你昨日回我灭了二将，今日又来，何也？”哪吒曰：“想必高明二人有潜身小术，请师



One morning, Yuan Hong sent Gao Ming and Gao Jue to challenge the enemy. They rushed before the camp of the Zhou army and shouted, "Let Jiang Ziya come to meet us!"

After receiving the patrolman's report, Jiang Ziya asked, "Who would like to go to meet them?"

"I will, Master," Nezha answered.

With Jiang's approval, Nezha rushed from the camp to meet the two men. They looked wicked, one playing a ridged halberd and the other a long-handled axe as big as a wheel.

"Who are you?" Nezha roared.

"We are Gao Ming and Gao Jue. By order of Commander Yuan Hong, we've come to arrest Jiang Ziya, the rebel chief. Who are you that dares to meet us?" Gao Ming replied.

"You damn beast! How dare you brag like this," Nezha swore, he flew into attack, and they met him with halberd and axe, fighting violently.

Nezha transformed himself and threw his Universal Ring at Gao Jue, smashing him into golden light which radiated all over the ground. He then threw up his Nine Dragon Divine Fire Coverlet, covering Gao Ming. He patted it with his hand and the nine dragons burned wildly.

Nezha returned and reported to Jiang Ziya that he had smashed Gao Jue with his Universal Ring and decimated Gao Ming with his coverlet. Jiang Ziya was delighted to hear this news.

Returning to their camp, Gao Ming and Gao Jue reported to Yuan Hong. "Jiang Ziya has achieved success by depending on his disciples, but he has not yet met talented men like us. They are certainly not our match, as we have the power to deal with those who can break through Heaven and turn the earth upside-down."

Everyone was pleased to hear this, and the following day, both Gao Ming and Gao Jue rushed out again, demanding to meet Jiang Ziya in person.

Jiang Ziya was puzzled by the report. He turned to Nezha. "Didn't you report yesterday that you had finished off Gao Ming and Gao Jue? How could they have returned?"





叔亲临，吾等便知真实。”子牙传令，六百诸侯齐出，看子牙用兵。高明对弟高觉曰：“哪吒言吾等有潜身小术，俱出来一看吾等真实。”言未了，只听炮响，见周营大队排开，似盔山甲海，射目光华。子牙乘四不相，来至军前，看见二将相貌凶恶，丑陋不堪，大喝曰：“高明、高觉，不顺天时，敢勉强而阻逆王师，自讨杀身之祸也！”高明大笑曰：“姜子牙，我知你是昆仑之客，你也不管会我等这样高人。今日成败定在此举也。”道罢，二将使戟、斧冲杀过来。这边李靖、杨任二骑冲出，也不答话，四处兵器交加。正是四将赌斗，怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

四将交锋在孟津，人神仙鬼孰虚真。从来劫运皆天定，纵有奇谋尽堕尘。

话说杨戩在傍，见高明、高觉一派妖气，不是正人，仔细观看，以备不虞。只见杨任取出五火扇来，照高明一搨，只听得“呼”的一声，化一道黑光而去。李靖也祭起黄金塔来，把高觉罩在里面，一时也不见了。袁洪同众将正在辕门看高明兄弟二人大战周兵，见杨任用五火扇子搨高明，又见李靖用塔罩高觉，忙命吴龙、常昊接战。二将大叫曰：“周将不必回营，吾来也！”哪吒登风火轮来战吴龙；杨戩使三尖刀敌住常昊；四将大战。袁洪心下自思曰：“今日定要成功，不可错过。”把白马催开，使一条宾铁棍来战子牙。傍有雷震子、韦护二人截住袁洪相杀。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

凛凛寒风起，森森杀气生。白猿使铁棒；雷震棍更雄。

韦护降魔杵，来往势犹凶。舍命安天下，拚生定太平。

话说雷震子展风雷翅，飞在空中，那条棍从顶上打来。韦护



“They may know witchcraft and have thus escaped. Would you, dear Uncle, go to the front with us today, so we can find out what happened.” Nezha answered.

Jiang Ziya ordered all 600 nobles to go to front. The camp gates were opened with a roar of cannons, and Jiang rode out in front. He yelled loudly, “Gao Ming and Gao Jue, how dare you resist our great army? You will only meet your end.”

Gao Ming burst into laughter and said, “I know you’re from Mount Kunlun, but I don’t think you’ve ever met the likes of us. We’ll let you know what we are soon enough!”

Gao Ming and Gao Jue ran up with halberd and axe and were met by Li Jing and Yang Ren. They fought desperately.

Yang Jian, standing nearby, could see the sprite-like air around the two Gaos. They were undoubtedly troublemakers. He kept close watch on them, and soon, he saw Yang Ren take out his five fire fan. Gao Ming turned himself into a beam of black light and disappeared when Yang Ren tried to fan him. Li Jing threw up his gold pagoda, but Gao Jue also forced his way out.

Yuan Hong saw that both Gao Ming and Gao Jue had been defeated. He immediately sent Wu Long and Chang Hao to join the combat. They rushed out with shout, “Don’t go away, you Zhou generals! We’re coming now.”

Nezha and Yang Jian met the two, and Yuan Hong impatiently spurred his white horse forward to attack Jiang Ziya. He was quickly met by Thunderbolt, who flew up into the air and hit Yuan Hong on the head with



祭起降魔杵，此杵岂同小可，如须弥山一般打将下来。袁洪虽是得道白猿，也经不起这一杵，袁洪化白光而去，止将鞍马打得如泥。杨戩祭哮天犬咬常昊；常昊乃是蛇精，狗也不能伤他。常昊知是仙犬，先借黑气走了。哪吒祭起神火罩，罩住吴龙；吴龙也化青气走了。总是一场虚话

子牙鸣金回营。杨戩上帐曰：“今日会此一阵，俱为无用。当时弟子别师尊时，师父曾有一言分付弟子说：‘若到孟津，谨防梅山七圣阻隘。’教弟子留心。今日观之，祭宝不能成功，俱化青黑之气而走。元帅宜当设计处治，方可成功。若是死战，终是无用。”子牙曰：“吾自有道理。”当日至晚，子牙帐中鼓响，众将官上帐听令。子牙命李靖领柬帖：“你在八卦阵正东上，按震方，书有符印，用桃桩，上用犬血，……如此而行。”又命雷震子领柬帖：“你在正南上，按离方，亦有符印，也用桃桩，上用犬血，……如此而行。”命哪吒领柬帖：“在正西上，按兑方，也用桃桩，上用犬血，……如此而行。”又命杨任：“在正北上，按坎方，也用桃桩，上用犬血，……如此而行。杨戩，你可引战，用五雷之法，望桃桩上打下来。韦护，你用瓶盛乌鸡、黑狗血，女人尿尿和匀，装在瓶内，见高明、高觉赶上我阵中，你可将瓶打下，此秽污浊物厌住他妖气，自然不能逃走。此一阵可以擒二竖子也。”众门人听令而去。子牙先出营，布开八卦，暗合九宫，将桃桩钉下。正是：

设计要擒桃柳鬼，这场辛苦枉劳神。

子牙安置停当。且说高明听着子牙传令安八卦方位，用乌鸡、黑狗血，钉桃桩拿他兄弟，二人大笑不止：“空费心机！看你怎样捉我二人！”次日，子牙亲临辕门搦战。袁洪命高



his cudgel. Wei Hu threw up his Demon Subduing Club, which was very heavy, and as Yuan Hong was only a white ape, he could not bear such a powerful weapon. He turned himself into a beam of white light and fled, leaving his horse to be smashed into clay.

Yang Jian then sent out his Sky Barking Hound after Chang Hao. As he could not resist the fairy hound, he too was compelled to turn himself into black smoke so that he could run away. When Nezha tried to cover up Wu Long, Wu likewise turned himself into green smoke and completely disappeared.

Returning to camp, Yang Jian said, "We have fought in vain today. My master warned me, 'At Mengjin there will be seven sprites from Mount Plum to block your way.' As we could see today, our magic weapons were powerless against them. Commander, we must rely on our wits instead of physical strength."

"You're right. I have a way to deal with them," Jiang Ziya replied.

That night, the drums were beaten and all the generals assembled at the headquarters to wait for orders. Jiang Ziya issued a written note to Li Jing which said, "Set up peach tree log pillars in the east. Spread dog blood over them and write these spells...." Jiang then ordered Thunderbolt to do the same in the south, Nezha in the west, and Yang Ren in the north. Jiang Ziya turned to Yang Jian, "You are to induce the enemy into the trap and strike the pillars with lightning." And he finished up with Wei Hu, "Mix the blood of black chickens and black dogs in these bottles with human urine and feces. When Gao Ming and Gao Jue are inside the trap, throw the bottles at them. Once polluted, they cannot run away and we can then take them captive."

Everyone immediately set about their assigned task, and Jiang Ziya also rushed from the camp to set up his trap.

Gao Ming and Gao Jue heard every word of the conference from their camp. The two had super-vision and super-hearing. They laughed like a couple of hyenas and mocked Jiang Ziya. "You shall still be disappointed! Just see if you can catch us tomorrow."

The next day, Jiang challenged in person, and Yuan Hong sent Gao Ming and Gao Jue out to meet him.



明、高觉出营，大呼曰：“姜子牙，你自称扫荡成汤大元帅，据吾看，你不过一匹夫耳！你既是昆仑之士，理当遣将调兵，共决雌雄；为何钉桃桩，安符印，周围布八卦，按九宫，用门人将乌鸡、黑狗血秽污之物厌我二人。吾非鬼魅精邪，岂惧你左道之术也！”二人道罢，放步摇斧、举戟，直取子牙。子牙左右有武吉、南宫适二马齐出，急架忙迎。四将交兵，枪刀共举。高明逞精神，如同猛虎；南宫适使气力，一似欢龙；高觉戟刺摆长幡；武吉枪来生杀气。四将酣战。子牙催四不相，仗剑也来助战；未及数合，便往阵中败走。高明笑曰：“不要走！吾岂惧你安排，吾来也！”兄弟二人随后赶入阵来。刚入得八卦方位，东有李靖，南有雷震子，西有哪吒，北有杨任，四面发起符印，处处雷鸣；韦护空中将一瓶秽污之物往下打来，那些鸡犬秽血，溅得满地。高明、高觉化阵青光，早已不见了。众门人亲自观见，莫知去向。子牙收兵回营，升帐坐下，大怒曰：“岂知今日本营先有奸细私透营内之情，如此何日成功也！将吾机密之事尽被高明知道，此是何说！”杨戩在傍曰：“师叔在上：料左右将官自在西岐共起义兵，经过三十六路征伐，今进五关，经过数百场大战，苦死多少忠良，今日至此，克成汤只在目下，岂有这样之理。据弟子观之，此二人非是正人，定有些妖气，那光景大不相同。望师叔详察。今弟子往一所在去来，自知虚实。”子牙曰：“你往那里去？”杨戩曰：“机不可泄，泄则不能成功也。”子牙许之。杨戩当晚别子牙去讫。且说高明、高觉来见袁洪，言子牙用八卦阵，将钉桃桩的事说了一



“Jiang Ziya! You boast about yourself, but to us you’re only a bloody fool! As a scholar from Mount Kunlun, you should send your generals to fight us properly on the battlefield. How could you set up a trap. We are neither sprites nor ghosts. We do not fear your base and mean witchcraft,” Gao Ming and Gao Jue roared in unison.

When they rushed forward to attack Jiang Ziya, General Wu Ji and Nangong Kuo galloped out to meet them. Jiang then joined the combat with his sword. After several rounds, he pretended to be defeated and ran back into his battle formation.

Gao Ming laughed wildly. “Don’t run so fast! We know what you’re up to, but we’re not afraid.”

When the two Gaos chased Jiang Ziya right into the trap, Li Jing attacked from the east, Thunderbolt from the south, Nezha from the west, and Yang Ren from the north. Wei Hu attacked them from the air with the bottles full of blood and stink. But Gao Ming and Gao Jue had already gone in a beam of green light, and no one could find them.

Returning to camp, Jiang Ziya said angrily, “How could we have known that there are spies working in our own army? They reported all our secrets to Gao Ming and Gao Jue. What are we to do now?”

“Oh, dear Uncle! I can’t agree with you. Our generals have been with us since the beginning in West Qi. They have fought through the attacks of the thirty-six routes and taken part in several hundred battles in this expedition against the tyrant. We have occupied the five passes and the whole nation of the Shang Dynasty will be subdued in a very short time. Many have lost their lives in this war of justice. They are loyal. None of them could have committed the crime that you suspect. As far as I can see, those two people, Gao Ming and Gao Jue, are not ordinary human beings. I think they are sprites like the others. I hope you will consider this and allow me to go and find out,” Yang Jian said.

“Where do you plan to go?” Jiang Ziya asked eagerly.

“I must keep that a secret. If the secret is leaked out, our struggle will certainly fail. Please excuse me, Uncle.” Yang Jian replied.

With Jiang Ziya’s approval, Yang Jian left the camp that night.

Returning to meet Yuan Hong, Gao Ming and Gao Jue reported what



遍。袁洪具表往朝歌报捷。高觉听的周营子牙与杨戩共议，杨戩要往一所在去，又听见杨戩不肯说，兄弟二人曰：“凭你怎样寻吾根脚，料你也不能知道！”二人又大笑一回。不表。

且说杨戩离了周营，借土遁往玉泉山金霞洞来，正是：  
遁中道术真玄妙，咫尺青风万里程。

话说杨戩来至金霞洞，见洞门紧闭，杨戩洞外敲门。少时，一童子出来，见是师兄，忙问曰：“师兄何来？”杨戩曰：“烦贤弟通报。”童子进洞内，见玉鼎真人，启曰：“师兄杨戩在洞府外求见。”真人起身分付曰：“着他进来。”杨戩来至碧游床前下拜。真人曰：“你今到此为何？”杨戩把孟津事说了一遍。真人曰：“此业障是棋盘山桃精、柳鬼。桃、柳根盘三十里，采天地之灵气，受日月之精华，成气有年。今棋盘山有轩辕庙，庙内有泥塑鬼使，名曰千里眼、顺风耳；二怪托其灵气，目能观看千里，耳能详听千里；千里之外，不能视听也。你可叫姜子牙着人往棋盘山去，将桃、柳根盘掘挖，用火焚尽，将轩辕庙二鬼泥身打碎，以绝其灵气之根；再用一重雾常锁营寨，……如此如此，则二鬼自然绝也。”杨戩受命，离了玉泉山，复往周营而来。军政官报与子牙，子牙令人中军，问杨戩曰：“此去如何？”杨戩摇头不语，犹恐泄机。子牙曰：“你今日为何如此？”杨戩曰：“弟子今日不敢言，且随弟子行之。”子牙并依杨戩，不去阻挡。杨戩执定令旗下帐，把后队大红旗二千杆令三军磨旗；又令一千名军士擂鼓鸣锣，恍然有惊天动地之势。子牙见杨戩如此，不知



1905

had happened with the peach log pillars. Yuan Hong regarded it as a victory and reported it to Zhaoge.

Listening in on the conversation between Jiang Ziya and Yang Jian, Gao Ming and Gao Jue laughed and said, "No matter what you do and no matter where you go, you'll never find us out."

When he got to Mount Jade Spring, Yang Jian found the door of the Golden Haze Cave tightly closed, but when he knocked, a lad came out and asked, "Where have you come from, Brother?"

"Would you please report to our master that I have come to see him," Yang Jian replied.

When he was admitted, Yang Jian knelt down before Jade Tripod, who had been in meditation.

"Why have you come here, Yang Jian?"

Yang Jian reported what had happened to them at Mengjin, and Jade Tripod said, "Those two bloody devils are the peach sprite and willow sprite from Mount Chessboard. They each have roots covering thirty square *li*, and they can pick up the spirits of Heaven and earth and the essence of the sun and moon for thousands of years. Besides this, on Mount Chessboard in Emperor Xuan Yuan's Temple, these are two idols made of clay; one is the One Thousand *li* Eye and the other the Favorable Wind Ear. Relying on the spirit of these two idols, Gao Ming can see everything within 1,000 *li* and Gao Jue can hear all within the same radius. You may tell Jiang Ziya to send some of his men to Mount Chessboard to dig up their roots and destroy them by fire. He should also send someone to Emperor Xuan Yuan's Temple to destroy the two clay idols. Lastly, cover your camp with thick fog, and they will be powerless against you."

When he returned to camp, Jiang Ziya asked him what had happened, but Yang Jian just shook his head in silence.

"Why are you behaving like this today?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"I'm sorry, but I can't say anything. Please allow me to do what I must, Uncle," Yang Jian replied.

Jiang Ziya agreed, and Yang left the camp with a flag of command in his hand. He ordered 2,000 soldiers to each wave a red flag quickly through the air and another 1,000 to strike the gongs and beat the drums, suddenly setting up a huge roar which shook the earth all around.





1906

其故。杨戩方来对子牙曰：“高明、高觉二人乃是棋盘山桃精、柳鬼。他凭托轩辕庙二鬼之灵，名曰千里眼、顺风耳。如今须用旗招展不住，使千里眼不能观看；锣鼓齐鸣，使顺风耳不能听察。请元帅命将往棋盘山，掘挖此根，用火焚之；再令将官去把轩辕庙里二鬼打碎；然后用大雾一重，常锁行营，此怪方能除也。”子牙听说：“既然如此，吾自有治度。”子牙令李靖：“领三千人马，速往棋盘山，去挖绝其根。”又令雷震子：“去打碎泥塑鬼使。”后人有诗叹之，诗曰：

虎斗深山渊斗龙，高明高觉逞邪踪。当时不遇仙师指，  
难灭轩辕二鬼风。

话说子牙安排已定，只等二门人来回令。且说高明、高觉只听得周营中鼓响锣鸣不止，高觉曰：“长兄，你看看怎样？”高明曰：“一派尽是红旗招展，连眼都晃花了。兄弟，你且听听看。”高觉曰：“锣鼓齐鸣，把耳朵都震聋了，如何听得见一些儿？”二人急躁，不表。只见李靖人去掘桃、柳的根盘；雷震子去打泥塑的鬼使；子牙在帐内望二人回来，方好用计破之。次日，子牙在中军，忽报：“雷震子回来。”子牙令至中军，问其“打泥鬼如何？”雷震子曰：“奉令去打碎了二鬼，放火烧了庙宇，以绝其根，恐再为祟；待周王伐纣功成，再重修殿宇未迟。”子牙大悦，随在帐前令哪吒、武吉在营布起一坛，设下五行方位，当中放一钵，四面八方俱镇压符印，安治停当。只见李靖掘桃、柳鬼根盘已毕，来至中军回话。子牙大喜。正是：

李靖掘根方至此，袁洪举意劫周营。

话说子牙在中军共议：“东伯侯还不见来？”忽报：“三运督粮



Jiang Ziya watched Yang Jian in astonishment. He had no idea what he was up to. But Yang soon came back and explained all that he knew about the two sprites. "Red flags make it impossible for Gao Ming to see what we are doing, and the gongs and drums make it impossible for Gao Jue to hear our words," he concluded. He then told Jiang his master's instructions for dealing with the sprites.

Jiang Ziya immediately ordered Li Jing to lead 3,000 soldiers to Mount Chessboard to dig up the roots of the two sprites and burn them in a huge fire. He ordered Thunderbolt to smash the two clay idols in the temple.

When he heard the roar of gongs and drums, Gao Jue turned to Gao Ming, "What can you see now in the Zhou camp, Elder Brother?"

"Nothing at all, except thousands of red flags like great moving sea. How about you? What can you hear, Brother?" Gao Ming asked.

"I can only hear the deafening noise of gongs and drums," Gao Jue said.

They grew very worried. Jiang Ziya could not take any action before Li Jing and Thunderbolt got back. The next day, Thunderbolt arrived and reported that he not only smashed the clay idols but also set the temple on fire and burned it to the ground. "We can rebuild it after the tyrant's downfall," he suggested.

Jiang Ziya was pleased to hear the news. He ordered Nezha and Wu Ji to build a terrace in the camp, positioned according to the five elements — metal, wood, water, fire, and earth. They placed a pot in the center stamped with charms and spells on all sides. When everything was ready, it was reported that Li Jing had returned.

Jiang Ziya held a military conference to discuss the situation. "Why hasn't the East Grand Duke come yet?" he asked.



官郑伦来至。”子牙令至帐前，郑伦回令毕，交纳粮印。郑伦听得土行孙已死，着实伤悼。不表。且说袁洪在营中自思：“今与周兵屡战，未见输赢，枉费精神，虚费日月。”令左右暗传与常昊、吴龙：“令高明、高觉冲头阵，今夜劫姜尚的营。”又令：“参军殷破败、雷开为左右救应，殷成秀、鲁仁杰为断后；务要一夜成功。”众将听令，只等黄昏行事。话说子牙在中军，忽见一阵风从地而起，卷至帐前。子牙见风色怪异，掐指一算，早知其意。子牙大喜，传令：“中军帐钉下桃桩，镇压符印，下布地网，上盖天罗，黑雾迷漫中军。令各营俱不可轻动。李靖拒住东方；杨任拒住西方；哪吒拒住南方；雷震子拒住北方；杨戩、韦护在将台左右保护。”子牙令南宫适、武吉、郑伦、龙须虎等：“各防守武王营寨。”众将得令而去。子牙沐浴上台，等候袁洪来劫营寨。诗曰：

子牙妙算世无双，动地惊天势莫当。  
二鬼有心施密计，三妖无计展疆场。  
遭殃杨任归神去，逃死袁洪免丧亡。  
莫说孟津多恶战，连逢劫杀捐忠良。

话说袁洪当晚打点人马劫营，大破子牙，以成全功。才至二更时分，高明、高觉为头一队，袁洪为二队。鲁仁杰对殷成秀曰：“贤弟，据我愚见，今夜劫营，不但不能取胜，定有败亡之祸。况姜子牙善于用兵，知玄机变化，且门下又多道德



It was just then reported that Zheng Lun had arrived. When he heard about Earth Traveler Sun's death, Zheng wept bitterly.

Yuan Hong pondered unhappily over their situation. "We've had so many battles with the enemy, but we still haven't beaten them. We're just wasting our time." He ordered Chang Hao and Wu Long, "Launch a surprise raid tonight with Gao Ming and Gao Jue. Keep Yin Pobai and Lei Kai as reinforcements on the left and right, and let Yin Chengxiu and Lu Renjie attack the enemy from the rear. Make this attack our final victory."

His generals all prepared for action that night. Jiang Ziya was sitting in the central camp when a strong whirlwind suddenly whipped around, blowing violently at the tent. Jiang quickly calculated on his fingers what was about to happen.

Delighted with the result of his divination, he called his generals in. "Set up peach log pillars in the central camp. Stamp them with charms and hang invisible nets from the sky to the earth. All troops must guard their positions closely. No reckless action is permitted. Let Li Jing resist the attacks from the east, Yang Ren from the west, Nezha from the south, and Thunderbolt from the north. Yang Jian and Wei Hu shall protect the commander's terrace, and General Nangong Kuo, Wu Ji, Zheng Lun, and Dragon Beard Tiger shall protect King Wu's camp," he ordered.

When everything was ready, Jiang Ziya took a bath to cleanse his body and piously purify his heart. He mounted the terrace to wait for Yuan Hong's attack.

At the second watch the two Gaos and their troops were sent in as the first contingent. Yuan Hong and his army held back to launch a surprise attack. Lu Renjie said to Yin Chengxiu, "Dear Brother, I think there is no hope of winning the raid tonight. I'm afraid we'll be badly beaten, as Jiang Ziya is experienced and skilled in war techniques. He knows about the philosophy of changes, and his disciples are all extremely tal-



之士，此行岂无准备。我和你且在后队，见机而作。”殷成秀曰：“兄长之言甚善。”不说他二人各自准备，且说高明、高觉来至周营，点起大炮，响一声喊杀进营来。袁洪同常昊、吴龙从后接应。子牙在将台上披发仗剑，踏罡布斗，霎时四下里风云齐起，这正是子牙借昆仑之妙术，取神荼、郁垒。不知凶吉何如，且听下回分解。

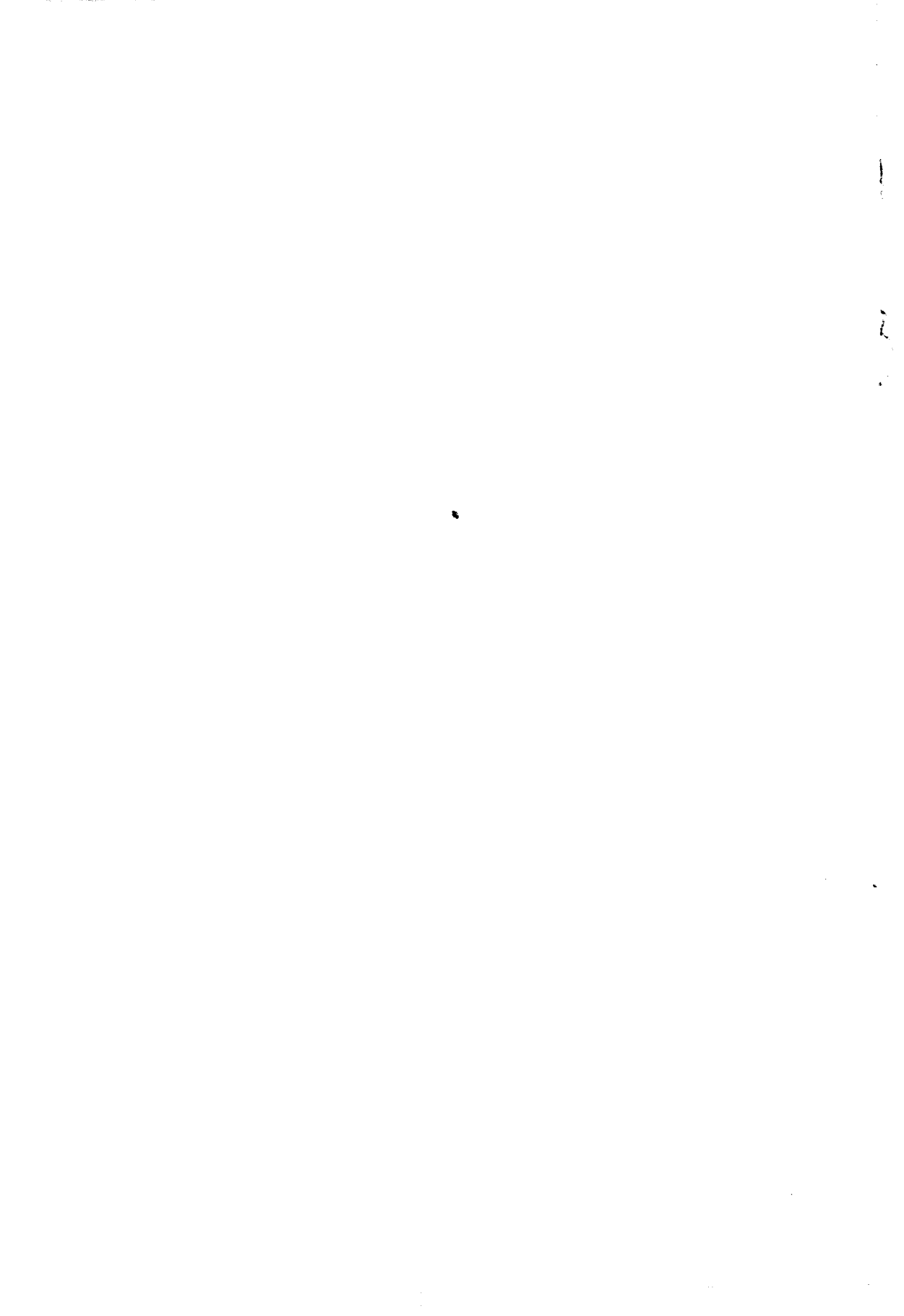
ented. They are certainly well-prepared to meet us. We'd better wait behind to see what we can do."

"You are entirely right, Brother," Yin Chengxiu replied.

With a roar of cannon fire, Gao Ming and Gao Jue broke into the Zhou camp followed by Yuan Hong, Chang Hao, and Wu Long. Jiang Ziya was waiting for them on the terrace. With his hair loose over his shoulders and a sword in hand, he recited prayers and spells, calling forth clouds, fog, and wind to cover the sky.

If you want to know what he did next, please read on.









## 第九十一回

### 蟠龙岭烧邬文化

诗曰：

力大排山气吐虹，手拖扒木快如风。行舟陆地谁堪及，  
破敌营门孰敢同。擒虎英名成往事，食牛全气化崆峒。  
总来天意归周主，空作蟠龙岭下红。

话说子牙在将台上作法，只见风云四起，黑雾弥漫，上有天罗，下有地网，昏天惨地，罩住了周营。霹雳交加，电光驰骤，火光灼灼，冷气森森，雷响不止，喊声大振。各营内鼓角齐鸣，若天崩地塌之状。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

风雾濛濛电火烧，雷声响亮镇邪妖。桃精柳鬼难逃躲，  
早把封神名姓标。

话说高明、高觉闯进周营，杀进中军，只见鼓声大振，三军呐喊。一声炮响，东有李靖，西有杨任，南有哪吒，北有雷震子，左有杨戩，右有韦护，一齐冲将出来，把高明等围住。台上有子牙作法。台下四个门人，齐把桃桩震动。上有天罗，下有地网，上下交合。子牙祭起打神鞭打将下来，高明、高觉难逃此难，只打得脑浆迸流。——一灵已往封神台去了。且说袁洪同常昊、吴龙在后面催军，杀进周营，被哪吒等接住大战。此时夤夜交兵，两军混战。韦护祭起降魔杵来打吴龙；吴龙早化青光去了。哪吒也祭起九龙神火罩来罩常昊；常昊化一道青气不见了。袁洪乃是白猿得道，变化多



## *Chapter 91*

### **Fire Attack on Mount Coiling Dragon**

Black clouds and fog filled the sky, with the Heavenly net spread above and earthly net below. Thunder and lightning crashed amidst the beating of drums and war cries.

Gao Ming and Gao Jue attacked first and were immediately met by Yang Ren, Nezha, Thunderbolt, Yang Jian, and Wei Hu. The two Gaos was surrounded. Jiang Ziya used his Staff for Beating Gods to smash their brains out.

Yuan Hong, Chang Hao and Wu Long were met by Nezha and Wei Hu in the darkness of the night. Wei Hu threw up his club, but Wu turned himself into a beam of green light and fled. Then Nezha threw up his Nine Dragon Coverlet, and like his brother, Chang Hao also disappeared.





端，把元神从头上现出。杨任正欲取五火扇搦袁洪，不意袁洪顶上白光中元神手举一棍打来，杨任及至躲时，已是不及，早被袁洪一棍打中顶门，可怜！自穿云关归周，才至孟津，未受封爵而死。后人诗叹之，诗曰：

自离成汤归紫阳，穿云关下破“瘟瘟”。孟津尽节身先丧，俱是南柯梦一场。

话说杨任被袁洪打死，两军混战，至天明，子牙鸣金，两下收兵。子牙升帐，点视军将，已知杨任阵亡，着实嗟叹不已。杨戩上帐言曰：“今夜大战，虽然斩了高明、高觉，反折杨任一员大将。据弟子见袁洪等俱是精灵所化，急切不能成功。大兵阻于此地，何日结局。弟子今往终南山，借了照妖鉴来，照定他的原身，方可擒此妖魅也，不然终无了期。”子牙许之。杨戩离了周营，借土遁往终南山而来。不多时，早至玉柱洞前，按落遁光，至洞门听候云中子。少时，只见金霞童子出来，杨戩上前稽首曰：“师兄，借烦通报，有杨戩要见师伯。”童子忙还礼曰：“师兄少待，容吾通报。”童子进洞对云中子曰：“有杨戩在外面候见。”云中子命童子：“着他进来。”童子出洞云：“师父请见。”杨戩见云中子，行礼毕，禀曰：“弟子今到此，欲求师伯照妖鉴一用。目今兵至孟津，有几个妖魅阻住周师，不能前进；虽大战数场，法宝难治。因此上奉姜元帅将令，特地至此，拜求师伯。”云中子曰：“此乃梅山七怪也。只你可以擒获。”忙取宝鉴付与杨戩。杨戩辞了终南，借土遁径往周营内来见子牙，备言：“此是梅山七怪，明日俟弟子擒他。”话说袁洪在营中与常昊、吴龙众将议退诸侯之策，殷破败曰：“明日元戎不大杀一场以



Yuan Hong released a spirit from the top of his head, and just as Yang Ren was lifting his fan, this spirit, hidden by white light, raised a cudgel against him. It was too late for Yang Ren. The spirit hit him on the head and he died at once. It had not been long since he joined the Zhou forces at Chuanyun Pass; his life was already sacrificed for the dynasty.

At dawn Jiang Ziya ordered a cease-fire. He was terribly upset by the loss of Yang Ren.

“Yuan Hong, Chang Hao, and Wu Long are sprites in human form. Let me go to Mount Zhongnan to borrow the Demon Exposing Mirror so we can find out what they really are,” proposed Yang Jian.

With the approval of Jiang Ziya, Yang Jian left for Mount Zhongnan and before long, reached the Jade Pillar Cave. He dropped down from the sky and waited at the doorway to see Master of the Clouds. When Golden Haze Lad came out, he approached him and said, “Brother! Would you please report to your master that Yang Jian is here to see him?”

When he was admitted, Yang Jian bowed low and begged, “I’ve come to ask for your magic mirror. Our army is being held up by several sprites at Mengjin, and Jiang Ziya has ordered me here to seek your support.”

“They are the sprites from Mount Plum. You may use the mirror to deal with them,” Master of the Clouds replied.

Yang Jian swiftly returned to his camp and reported what the master had said to Jiang Ziya.

Yuan Hong called a military conference to discuss how to defeat the Zhou army and repulse the dukes.



1918

树威，使天下诸侯知道利害，则彼皆不能善解。与他迁延日月，恐师老军疲，其中有变，那时反为不美。”袁洪从其言。次日，整顿军马，炮声大振，来至军前。子牙亦带领众诸侯出营。两下列成阵势。袁洪一马当先。子牙谓袁洪曰：“足下不知天命久已归周，而何阻逆王师，令生民涂炭耶。速早归降，不失封侯之位。如若不识时务，悔无及矣。”袁洪大笑曰：“料尔不过是磻溪一钓叟耳，有何本领，敢出此大言！”回顾常昊曰：“与吾将姜尚擒了！”常昊纵马挺枪，飞来直取子牙。傍有杨戩催马舞刀，抵住厮杀。二马往来，刀枪并举，只杀得凛凛寒风，腾腾杀气。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

杀气腾腾锁孟津，梅山妖魅乱红尘。须臾难遁终南鉴，  
取次摧残作鬼磷。

话说两人大战，未及十五合，常昊拨马便走。杨戩随后赶来，取出照妖鉴来照，原来是条大白蛇。杨戩已知此怪，看他怎样腾挪。只见常昊在马上忽现原身，有一阵怪风卷起，播土扬尘，愁云霭霭，冷气森森，现出一条大蛇。怎见得，有诗为证：

黑雾漫漫天地遮，身如雪练弄妖邪。神光闪烁凶顽性，  
久与梅山是旧家。

话说杨戩看见白蛇隐在黑雾里面来伤杨戩，杨戩摇身一变，化作一条蜈蚣，身生两翅飞来，钳如利刃。怎见他的模样，有诗为证：

二翅翩翩似片云，黑身黄足气如焚。双钳竖起挥双剑，  
先斩顽蛇建首勋。



“Commander! We must fight tomorrow to smash the enemy and prove ourselves to the dukes. We must show our strength or else our men will go soft with the waiting,” said Yin Pobai.

Yuan Hong was pleased to hear General Yin Pobai’s proposal. The next day, he led his army straight towards the Zhou camp. Jiang Ziya and numerous nobles rode out to meet them.

When he saw Yuan Hong before him, Jiang Ziya called out, “Don’t you know, General, that the will of Heaven favors the Zhou Dynasty? How can you still resist? Surrender now, or you will lose your chance to become a duke.”

Yuan Hong burst into laughter and replied, “You were only a fisherman at Panxi Stream. How dare you brag so wildly!” He turned to Chang Hao, “Go and take him!” he ordered.

Chang Hao set his horse forward to attack Jiang but was met by Yang Jian. After about fifteen rounds, Chang Hao gave up ground and Yang chased close behind. Looking through the magic mirror, Yang saw that he was really a great white snake.

Yang Jian was prepared for anything. As he was looking through the mirror, a strange wind blew up dust and sand, and a large snake appeared in a black fog. Yang Jian quickly transformed into a giant winged centipede, and landing on the snake’s neck, cut off its head with his two big



1920

杨戩变做一条大蜈蚣，飞在白蛇头上，一剪两断。那蛇在地下挺折扭滚。杨戩复了本相，将此蛇斩做数断，发一个五雷诀，只见雷声一响，此怪震作飞灰。袁洪知白蛇已死，大怒，纵马使一根棍，大呼曰：“好杨戩！敢伤吾大将！”傍有哪吒登风火轮，现三头八臂，使火尖枪，抵住了袁洪。轮马相交，未及数合，哪吒祭起九龙神火罩，将袁洪连人带马罩住；哪吒用手一拍，现出九条火龙，将袁洪盘旋周绕焚烧。不知袁洪有七十二变玄功，焉能烧的着他，袁洪早借火光去了。吴龙见哪吒施勇，使两口双刀来战哪吒。哪吒翻身复来，接战吴龙。杨戩在傍，忙取照妖鉴照看，原来是一条蜈蚣。杨戩纵马舞刀，双战吴龙。吴龙料战不过，拨马便走。哪吒登风火轮就赶。杨戩曰：“道兄休赶，让吾来也。”哪吒听说，便立住了风火轮，让杨戩催马追赶。吴龙见杨戩赶来，即现原形，就马脚下卷起一阵黑雾，罩住自己。怎见得，有诗为证：

黑雾阴风布满天，梅山精怪法无边。谁知治克难相怨，  
千岁蜈蚣化罔然。

吴龙见杨戩追赶，即现原形，影在黑雾之中，来伤杨戩。杨戩见此怪飞来，随即摇身一变，化作一只五色雄鸡。怎见得，诗曰：

绿耳金睛五色毛，翅如钢剑嘴如刀。蜈蚣今遇无穷妙，  
即丧原身怎脱逃。

杨戩化做一只金鸡，飞入黑雾之中，将蜈蚣一嘴，啄作数断，又除一怪。子牙与众将掌鼓进营。不表。

却说殷破败，雷开与诸将亲自看见今日光景，不觉笑

pincers. While the dying snake was still writhing on the ground, Yang recovered his original shape and cut it into several pieces with his sword. A flash of lightning burned the snake corpse to ashes.

Yuan Hong was furious at Chang Hao's death. He spurred his horse forward and screamed, "You damned Yang Jian! How dare you hurt my general!"

Yuan Hong was met by Nezha with his three heads and eight arms. After several rounds, Nezha threw up his coverlet, but Yuan Hong could transform himself into seventy-two different forms, and quickly escaped through the light of fire.

Wu Long then rushed up with his double cutlasses to attack Nezha, who quickly turned to meet the assault. Yang Jian looked at Wu Long through the mirror and saw that he was a centipede. He set his horse forward to join the combat, and Wu Long ran away when he realized he couldn't fight them together.

When Yang Jian took up pursuit, Wu Long raised a beam of black fog from his horse's hooves. Hidden by the thick fog, he recovered his original being, a large centipede, and turned to attack Yang Jian. But Yang quickly transformed into a big cock and pecked the centipede to pieces.







曰：“国家不祥，妖孽方兴，今日我们两员副将，岂知俱是白蛇、蜈蚣成精，来此惑人。此岂是好消息！不若进营与主将商议何如。”随进营来，见袁洪在中军闷坐，俱至帐前参谒。袁洪见众将来见，也觉没趣，乃对众将曰：“吾就不知常昊、吴龙乃是两个精灵，几乎被他误了大事。”众将曰：“姜子牙乃昆仑道德之士，麾下又有这三山五岳门人相随，料吾兵不能固守此地，请元帅早定大策，或战，或守，可以预谋，毋令临期掘井，一时何及。眼见我兵微将寡，力敌不能，依不才等愚见，不如退兵，固守城都，设防御之法，以老其师。此‘不战能屈人之兵’者，不知元帅尊意如何？”袁洪曰：“参军之言差矣！奉命守此地方，则此地为重；今舍此不守，反欲退拒城都，此为‘临门御寇’，未有不败者也。今姜尚虽有辅佐之人，而深入重地，亦不能用武。看吾在此地破敌，吾自有妙策，诸将勿得多言。”各人下帐。鲁仁杰与殷成秀曰：“方今时势，也都见了，料成汤社稷终属西岐。况今日朝廷不明，妄用妖精为将，安有能成功之理。但我与贤弟受国恩数代，岂可不尽忠于国；然而就死，也须是死在朝歌，见吾辈之忠义，不可枉死于此地，与妖孽同腐朽也。不若乘机讨一差遣，往而不返可也。”二将议定。忽有总督粮储官上帐来禀袁洪曰：“军中止有五日行粮，不足支用，特启元帅定夺。”袁洪命军政司修本，往朝歌催粮。傍有鲁仁杰出而言曰：“末将愿往。”袁洪许之。鲁仁杰领令，往朝歌去催粮。不表。

且说朝歌城来了一个大汉，身高数丈，力能陆地行舟，顿餐只牛，用一根排扒木，姓邬，名文化；揭招贤榜投军。



1923

Watching the scene before them, Yin Pobai, Lei Kai, and the other generals laughed and said, "The nation is certainly ill fated to have sprites on our side. This must mean trouble. Let's go and discuss the matter with our chief."

When he saw that the generals were coming to see him, Yuan Hong felt ashamed and said, "I had no idea Chang Hao and Wu Long were sprites. We've been deluded all along."

"It's too late to dig a well now that we are thirsty. We'd better withdraw and defend the capital. The enemy troops will be slowly beaten down and defeated without an attack from us. What do you think?" the generals suggested.

"You're wrong, Generals. We've been ordered to defend this county. If we give it up and retreat to Zhaoge, it would just mean we must resist the bandits at our doorway. We would be bound to commit suicide if defeated. Even though Jiang Ziya has many talented generals, he's so far from his base, he must find it difficult to supply his troops. Be patient, Generals, and I will smash the enemy before long," Yuan Hong replied.

When they left the headquarters, Lu Renjie said to Yin Chengxiu, "The whole nation is bound to be taken by the Zhou sooner or later. If our king is so dull as to appoint sprites to lead the army, it's a sure sign that this dynasty can't last long. Though we ought to be loyal to our nation, we must not die in vain here with the sprites. We should fight for Zhaoge. Let's look for a chance to leave here as soon as possible."

Not long thereafter, it was reported that the food supply would last only five more days. Yuan Hong ordered his secretary to write an urgent report and Lu Renjie moved forward and said, "I would like to deliver the report, Commander." He was immediately sent to Zhaoge for the food supplies.

Several days ago, a giant had appeared in Zhaoge. He stood dozens of feet high and could push a boat or any vessel up on land with a single effort. He could devour a calf in one meal and used a bundle of logs as his weapon. His name was Wu Wenhua. He had recommended himself



1924

朝廷差官送邬文化至孟津营听用。来至辕门，左右报与袁洪。袁洪命：“令来。”邬文化同差官至中军，见礼毕，通名站立。袁洪见邬文化一表非俗，恍似金刚一般，撑在半天里，果是惊人。袁洪曰：“将军此来，必怀妙策。今将何计以退周兵？”邬文化曰：“末将乃一勇鄙夫，奉圣旨赍送元帅帐下调用，听凭指挥。”袁洪大喜：“将军此来，必定首建大功，何愁姜尚不授首也！”邬文化次日清晨上帐领令，出营搦战，倒拖排扒木，行至周营，大呼曰：“传与反叛姜尚，早至辕门洗颈受戮！”话说子牙在中军帐，猛听战鼓声响，抬头观看，见一大汉竖在半天里，惊问众将曰：“那里来了一个大汉子？”众人齐来观看，果是好个大汉子，众皆大惊。正欲寻问，只见军政官报入中军来：“有一大汉，口出大言，请令定夺。”有龙须虎出曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之，分付曰：“你须仔细！”龙须虎领令出营来。邬文化低头往下一看，大笑不止：“那里来了一个虾精？”龙须虎抬头看邬文化，怎生凶恶，但见有诗为证，诗曰：

身高数丈体榔头，口似窑门两眼抠。丈二苍须如散线，  
尺三草履似行舟。生成大力排山岳，食尽全牛赛虎彪。  
陆地行舟人罕见，蟠龙岭上火光愁。

邬文化大呼曰：“周营中来的是个什么东西？”龙须虎大怒，骂曰：“好匹夫！把吾当作甚么东西！吾乃姜元帅第二门徒龙须虎是也。”邬文化笑曰：“你是一个畜生，全无一些人相，难道也是姜尚门徒！”龙须虎曰：“村匹夫快通名来，杀你也好上功劳簿。”邬文化骂曰：“不识好歹业畜！吾乃纣王御前袁元帅麾下威武大将军邬文化是也。你快回去，叫姜尚来受



in reply to the royal proclamation and was immediately sent to Mengjin.

Wu Wenhua went directly to see Yuan Hong. Yuan was amazed at the enormous warrior before him. "General! You must have a plan to wipe out the Zhou army now that you are here," he addressed the giant.

"I'm only raw stuff, brave but not well-cultured. By order of His Majesty, I've been sent here to follow your commands and render service on your orders," Wu Wenhua replied honestly.

Delighted with his answer, Yuan Hong said again, "You will surely achieve great merit here, General. Jiang Ziya is near his end."

The next day, Wu Wenhua was ordered to call for the first challenge. Dragging his weapon, he rushed towards the Zhou camp on foot. "Tell Jiang Ziya to wash his neck and come to receive his death!" he roared.

Jiang Ziya caught a glimpse of the giant from his tent. The patrolmen on duty ran in and reported, "A giant has come to challenge us." Everyone was alarmed.

Dragon Beard Tiger offered to go and meet him, and Jiang Ziya consented, saying, "You must be very careful."

Dragon Beard Tiger rushed out, and Wu Wenhua looked down and gave an enormous laugh. "What is this prawn sprite?" he roared with laughter.

Dragon Beard Tiger said furiously, "You damned bastard! What do you think I am? I'm Dragon Beard Tiger, the second disciple of Jiang Ziya."

Wu Wenhua, however, only smiled and said, "You look nothing like a human being. How can you be a disciple of Jiang Ziya!"

"You damned fool! Tell me your name so I can put it on the record after you die!" Dragon Beard Tiger yelled loudly.

"You're only a beast without a brain. I'm called Wu Wenhua. You'd better get out of here and tell Jiang Ziya to see me right away," Wu Wenhua said contemptuously.



死，饶你一命。”龙须虎大怒，骂曰：“今奉令特来擒你，尚敢多言！”发手一石打来。邬文化一排扒木打下来，龙须虎闪过，其钉打入土有三四尺深；急自拽起钉扒来，到被龙须虎夹大腿连腰上打了七八石头；再转身，又打了五六石头；只打得是下三路。邬文化身大，转身不活，不上一个时辰，被龙须虎连腿带腰打了七八十下，打得邬文化疼痛难当，倒拖着排扒木望正东上走了。龙须虎得胜回营，来见子牙，备言其事。众将俱以为大而无用，子牙也不深究所以，彼此相安不察。且说邬文化败走二十里，坐在一山崖上，擦腿摸腰，有一个时辰，乃缓缓来至辕门。左右报入中军曰：“启元帅：邬文化在辕门等令。”袁洪分付：“令来。”邬文化来至帐前，参谒袁洪。袁洪责之曰：“你今初会战，便自失利，挫动锋锐，如何不自小心！”邬文化曰：“元帅放心。末将今夜劫营，管教他片甲不存，上报朝廷，下泄吾恨。”袁洪曰：“你今夜劫营，吾当助尔。”邬文化收拾打点，今夜去劫周营。此是子牙军士有难，故有此失。正是：

一时不察军情事，断送无辜填孟津。

话说子牙不意邬文化今夜劫营。将至二更时分，成汤营里一声炮响，喊声齐起，邬文化当头，撞进辕门。那是黑夜，谁人抵敌。冲开七层鹿角，撞翻四方木栅、挡牌，邬文化把排扒木只是横扫两边。也是周营军士有难，可怜被他冲杀得尸横遍野，血流成河，六十万人马在中军呼兄唤弟，冤子寻爷。又有袁洪协同，黑夜中袁洪放出妖气，笼罩住营中，惊动多少大小将官。子牙听得大汉劫营，急上了四不相，手执杏黄旗，护定身子，只听得杀声大振，心下着忙。又见大汉



"I've been sent here to take you captive. Dare you go on so!" Dragon Beard Tiger swore and threw a stone at him.

Wu Wenhua lifted his weapon to hit Dragon Beard Tiger, but he missed and the nails in his weapon stuck one meter into the earth. As he was pulling the weapon up to prepare for another blow, the stones rained hard and fast, and as he turned around, he was struck again and again. After about seventy or eighty stones, all to his thighs and loin, he couldn't stand the pain any longer. He had to drag his weapon away and run towards the east.

Dragon Beard Tiger returned to the camp and reported what had happened. All the generals thought that though Wu Wenhua was tall and strong, he was nonetheless absolutely useless. Jiang Ziya didn't think he was worth much either.

Wu Wenhua ran about twenty *li* and then sat on a rock to gently stroke his thighs and loin. He got up after a while and returned to see Yuan Hong.

"You shouldn't have been defeated in the first combat," Yuan Hong reprimanded him.

"Don't worry, Commander. Let me attack the enemy in a surprise night raid tonight. I'll smash them all to pieces and leave no one alive for the sake of His Majesty and for my own revenge," Wu Wenhua said emotionally.

"That's a very good plan, General. I will help you with my own magic," Yuan Hong said happily.

At the second watch that night, Wu Wenhua rushed over to the Zhou camp with a roar of cannons and war cries. Jiang Ziya had no idea that there would an attack. It was a pitch dark night and all were sleeping



二目如两盏红灯，众门人各不相顾，只杀得孟津血水成渠。有诗为证，诗曰：

姜帅提兵会列侯，袁洪赌智未能休。朝歌遣将能摧敌，周寨无谋是自蹂。军士有灾皆在劫，元戎遇难更何尤。可惜英雄徒浪死，贤愚无辨丧荒丘。

话说邬文化夤夜劫周营，后有袁洪助战；周将睡熟，被邬文化将排扒木两边乱扫，可怜为国捐躯，名利何在！袁洪骑马，仗妖术冲杀进营，不辨贤愚，尽些些少肩无臂之人，都做了破腹无头之鬼。武王有四贤保驾奔逃；子牙落荒而走；五七门徒借五遁逃去；只是披坚执锐之士，怎免一场大厄！该绝者难逃天数；有生者躲脱灾殃。且说邬文化直冲杀至后营，来到粮草堆根前。此处乃杨戩守护之所，忽听得大汉劫营，姜元帅失利，杨戩急上马看时，见邬文化来得势头凶，欲要迎敌，又顾粮草，心生一个计，且救眼下之厄，忙下马，念念有词，将一草竖立在手，吹口气，叫声：“变！”化了一个大汉，头撑天，脚踏地。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

头有城门大，二目似披缸。鼻孔如水桶，门牙扁担长。胡须似竹笋，口内吐金光。大呼“邬文化”，与吾战一场！

话说邬文化正尽力冲杀，灯光影里见一大汉，比他更觉长大，大呼曰：“那匹夫慢来！吾来也！”邬文化抬头看见，唬得魂不附体；“我的爷来了！”倒拖排扒木，回头就走，也不管好歹，只是飞跑。杨戩化身随后赶来一程，正遇袁洪。杨戩大呼曰：“好妖怪，怎敢如此！”使开三尖刀，飞奔杀来。袁



soundly, so that when Wu Wenhua got to the camp gate, there was no one to resist his onslaught. He smashed the abatis and barricades with his huge weapon and swung at everyone and anything he met. Many soldiers were pounded to death. Their corpses piled high and their blood flowed to the ground. Yuan Hong had completely covered the Zhou camp in sprite clouds, protecting the giant during his attack.

When he heard the giant attacking his camp, Jiang Ziya hurriedly got on his nondescript horse, clutching close the Apricot Yellow Flag to protect himself. Excited by the war cries, he fled into the wilderness. King Wu had also run under the protection of four generals, and the disciples had escaped on the clouds of various elements.

Wu Wenhua stormed through to the back camp to attack the food supply barn. Yang Jian hurriedly got on his horse to meet the giant, but, realizing he could not protect the food and fight against Wu at the same time, he decided to play a trick to fool his opponent. He hastily dismounted, recited some spells, threw a blade of grass into the air, and uttered, "Transform! Transform at once!"

The grass changed into a mountainous giant, its head scraping Heaven, its two eyes as big as water jars, its nostrils like water buckets, its front teeth as long as bamboo poles, its beard as strong as bamboo shoots, and a head as big as the gate of a city wall. It spat out a golden light and shouted like thunder, "Come on, Wu Wenhua! Have a fight with me!"

Throwing about his weapon at random, Wu Wenhua suddenly caught sight of the huge giant, much taller and stronger than he himself. He was greatly frightened, and with a single shout, "Here comes my dad!" he turned and ran, dragging his weapon behind. Jian and his giant chased him until they met up with Yuan Hong.

"You damned sprite! How dare you go on like this!" Yang Jian shouted and whipped out his three-pointed cutlass to attack Yuan Hong.





1930

洪使棍抵住。大战一回，杨戩祭哮天犬时，袁洪看见，化一道白光，脱身回营。且说孟津众诸侯闻袁洪劫姜元帅的大营，惊起南北二镇诸侯，齐来救应。两下混战，只杀到天明。子牙会集诸门人，寻见武王，收集败残人马，点算损折军兵有二十余万；帐下折了将官三十四员；龙须虎被邬文化排扒木绝其性命。——军士有见龙须虎的头挂在排扒木上，因此报知。子牙闻龙须虎被乱军中杀死，子牙伤悼不已。众诸侯上帐，问武王安。杨戩来见子牙，备言：“邬文化冲杀，是弟子……如此治之，方救得行粮无虞。”子牙曰：“一时误于检点，故遭此厄，无非是天数耳。”心下郁郁不乐，纳闷中军。

且说袁洪得胜回营，具本往朝歌报捷：“邬文化大胜周兵，尸塞孟津，其水为之不流。”群臣具贺：“自征伐西岐，从未有此大胜。”纣王大喜，日日纵乐，全不以周兵为事。且说杨戩来见子牙曰：“如今先将大汉邬文化治了，然后可破袁洪。”子牙曰：“须得……如此，方可绝得此人。”杨戩领令，去到孟津哨探路径。走有六十里，至一所在，地名蟠龙岭。此山湾环如蟠龙之势，中有空阔一条路，两头可以出入。杨戩看罢，心下大喜曰：“此处正好行此计也！”忙回见子牙，备言：“蟠龙岭地方可以行计。”子牙听说大喜，在杨戩耳边备说：“……如此如此，可以成功。”杨戩遂自去了。正是：

计烧大将邬文化，须得姜公用此谋。

话说子牙令武吉、南宫适：“领二千人马，往蟠龙岭去埋伏引火之物，中用竹筒引线，暗埋火炮、火箭各项等物，岭上下俱用柴薪引火干燥物件，预备停当，只等邬文化来至，便可



1931

The two fought fiercely until Yuan Hong turned himself into a ray of white light and ran away. Yang Jian sent his Sky Barking Hound after him.

When they heard that Jiang Ziya's camp had been smashed by Yuan Hong in a surprise night raid, all the nobles were alarmed. The north and south grand dukes joined the battle, and the two sides fought until dawn.

When Jiang Ziya gathered together all his disciples and located King Wu, he found he had lost 200,000 soldiers and thirty-four generals. Dragon Beard Tiger had been smashed to death by the giant's huge weapon. While Jiang grieved over the death of Dragon Beard Tiger, many nobles came in to comfort King Wu. Yang Jian also came to report how he had repulsed Wu Wenhua and saved the food supplies from damage.

"Though our defeat was destined by fate, it's entirely my fault that I wasn't more careful about that bloody giant Wu Wenhua. I wrongly disdained him as many others did," Jiang lamented.

Yuan Hong wrote a report to Zhaoge, boasting of their great victory and claiming that the corpses of 200,000 Zhou soldiers completely blocked the river. The news greatly cheered the ministers and delighted King Zhou, who fell more deeply into pleasure with his wine and women and showed not a bit of concern for Jiang Ziya and his army.

Yang Jian went to see Jiang Ziya about their next plan of action. With Jiang's approval, he left to wander about in the wilderness around Mengjin, trying to familiarize himself with the surrounding landscape. After covering sixty *li* or so, he arrived at a long and wide ravine which cut through a mountain. It was called Mount Coiling Dragon after the shape of the summit which wound about like a long dragon.

Pleased to find such an ideal location, Yang Jian hurried back to camp and reported to Jiang Ziya.

Jiang smiled and quietly told Yang Jian about his plan to burn Wu Wenhua to death. He then called in Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji. "Take 2,000 soldiers to Mount Coiling Dragon and hide on both sides of the wide path there. Prepare dried grass and logs and other inflammable stuff, and when Wu Wenhua chases us into the ravine, you must be ready with your cannons and arrows," he ordered.



行之。”二将领令去讫。话说邬文化得了大功，纣王差官赍袍、带、表礼等物奖谕，袁洪、邬文化二将谢恩，打发天使回朝歌。不表。袁洪对邬文化曰：“荷蒙天子恩宠奖谕，邬将军，我等当得尽忠竭力，以报国恩，不负吾辈名扬于天下也。”邬文化曰：“末将明日使姜尚无备，再杀他个片甲无存，早早奏凯。”袁洪大喜，设宴庆赏。正谈笑间，探事马报入中军：“启元帅：今有姜子牙与武王在辕门闲看吾营，不知有何原故，请令定夺。”袁洪听报，即令邬文化：“暗出大营，抄出子牙之后擒之，如探囊取物耳。”邬文化领令，忙出右营门，撒开大步，拖排扒木，如飞云掣电而来，大呼曰：“姜尚休走！今番吾定擒你成功也。速速下骑受死，免吾费力。”子牙与武王见邬文化追来，拨转坐骑，望西南而逃。邬文化见子牙、武王落荒而走，放心追来。子牙回顾，诱邬文化曰：“邬将军，你放我君臣回营，得归故国，再不敢有犯边疆，吾群臣感将军洪恩不浅矣。”邬文化曰：“今番错过，千载难逢。”拚命赶来，那里肯舍。望前赶了一个时辰。姜子牙与武王是有脚力的；邬文化步行，又当得他是急急追赶，一气赶了五六十里，邬文化气力已乏，立住脚不赶了。子牙回头看时，见邬文化不赶，子牙勒转坐骑，大呼曰：“邬文化，你敢来与吾战三合么？”邬文化大怒曰：“有何不敢？”回身又望前赶来。子牙勒转四不相又走，看看赶至蟠龙岭了，子牙君臣进山口去了。邬文化大喜：“姜尚进山，似鱼游釜中，肉在几上！”随后追进山口。不知邬文化性命如何，且听下回分解。



To reward Yuan Hong and Wu Wenhua for their great victory, King Zhou sent his messenger with presents of robes, belts, satin, and gold. They knelt down to thank the ruler, and after the messenger had left, Yuan Hong said to Wu Wenhua, "As we are so highly honored and favored by His Majesty, we must return the grace of the nation and let our names be known to all."

"I shall attack Jiang Ziya again tomorrow for our final victory. I will wipe them all out," promised Wu Wenhua.

Yuan Hong immediately ordered a feast to toast Wu, and as they sat drinking, it was reported that Jiang Ziya and King Wu were spying about the camp gate. Yuan ordered Wu to leave the camp by the back gate to surprise the two, and the giant quickly raced out, dragging his weapon behind and roaring like thunder. "Don't go, Jiang Ziya! I'll get you today. Dismount and receive your death at once!" he yelled.

When they saw Wu Wenhua after them, Jiang Ziya and King Wu turned their horses towards the southwest. The giant lunged after them with huge strides.

"General Wu! Set us free and let us return to our native land peacefully. We dare not intrude here again. We shall remember your generosity and kindness forever," Jiang Ziya turned and begged pitifully.

"How can I let this chance go by? It's a golden opportunity, Jiang Ziya," The giant answered roughly.

Wu Wenhua kept up the chase for fifty or sixty *li*, but he could not overtake them, as he was on foot and they were on their horses. He was utterly exhausted and finally had to stop for a rest.

"Dare you fight a few rounds?" Jiang Ziya incited Wu Wenhua.

"You'll never get away," Wu shouted in fury and chased after them again.

When Jiang Ziya and King Wu got to Mount Coiling Dragon, they plunged quickly into the ravine.

"Ha! Now that they're in the mountain, they're just fish in the cauldron and meat on the chopping block!" Wu Wenhua thought happily, racing after them into the mountain.

What became of giant? Please read the next chapter to find out.





1935





1936

## 第九十二回

### 杨戩哪吒收七怪

诗曰：

梅山七怪阻周兵，逞异夸能苦战争。狗宝虽凶谁独死，  
牛黄纵恶自戕生。朱贞伏地先无项；杨显纵横后亦薨。  
堪笑白猿多惹事，千年道行等闲倾。

话说武吉、南宫适望见子牙引邬文化进山，先让过子牙与武王，用木石叠断前山。只见邬文化赶进山口，不见了子牙、武王，立住了脚，迟疑四望，竟无踪迹。正欲回身出山，只听得两边炮响，杀声振地，山上用滚木大石叠断山口，军士用火弓、火箭、火炮、干柴等物望山下抛放，只见四下里火起，满谷烟生。怎见得好火，赞曰：

腾腾烈焰，滚滚烟生。一会家地塌山崩；霎时间雷轰电掣。须臾绿树尽沾红，顷刻青山皆带赤。那怕你铜墙铁壁，说甚么海阔河宽，汤着他烁石流金，遇着时枯泉辙涸。风乘火势逞雄威，火借风高拚恶毒。休说邬文化血肉身躯，就是满山中披毛带角的皆逢其劫。

话说邬文化见后面火起，叠断归路，抽身转奔进山来。那山脚下地炮、地雷发作，望上打来。可怜顶天立地大汉，陆地行舟的英雄，只落得顷刻化为灰烬！后人诗叹之：

夜劫周营立大功，孟津河下逞英雄。姜公妙算驱杨戩，  
火化蟠龙一阵风。

## Chapter 92

### The Subjugation of Seven Sprites

Nangong Kuo and Wu Ji let Jiang Ziya and King Wu rush past them out of the ravine. They then blocked the path with rocks, stones, and logs.

Wu Wenhua could not find Jiang Ziya or King Wu. They had completely disappeared. He stood still looking around, and then turned to leave. But just then cannon fire from the mountain top broke the silence and the roar of war cries filled the ravine. The passage was barricaded with huge logs and rocks, and he could see no other way out.

Soldiers on the mountainside shot burning arrows and cannon balls at the giant. They threw down hay and logs to set the path on fire. Suffocating smoke filled the air, and the whole mountain turned red.

Ignited by the heat, the mines buried under his feet exploded violently, sending rocks crashing all around. The giant was smashed to death and burned to ashes.







话说杨戩、武吉、南宫适见烧死了邬文化，俱回来见姜子牙，备言前事。子牙大喜；又谓杨戩曰：“只是袁洪此怪未除，如之奈何？”杨戩曰：“此怪乃梅山得道白猿，最是精灵，俟徐徐除之。”子牙曰：“且等东伯侯来至，诸侯方可进兵。”

话说袁洪闻报，知道烧死了邬文化，心中不乐，正独坐纳闷，忽报：“辕门外有一陀头求见。”袁洪传令：“请来。”少时，陀头至中军，打稽首曰：“元帅，贫道稽首了。”袁洪曰：“道者请了。道者从何处来？有何见谕？”陀头曰：“吾亦在梅山地方居住，与元帅相隔不远，姓朱，名子真。今知元帅为纣王出力，特来助一臂之力。不识元帅肯容纳否？”袁洪听说大喜，邀请陀头上坐。朱子真再三谦让，就席而坐。傍有参军殷破败、雷开二将听得又是梅山之土，乃相谓叹曰：“此又是常昊、吴龙一党。”袁洪命治酒管待朱子真。一宵不表。次日，朱子真提宝剑在手，率左右行至周营，坐名请元帅答话。军政官报入中军。子牙听见有道者，忙传令南北二处诸侯齐出辕门，排开队伍，自己亲率诸众弟子出辕门，列成阵势。见成汤旗门脚下，来一陀头。怎见得，有赞为证：

面如黑漆甚跷蹊，海下髭髻一剪齐。长唇大耳真凶恶，眼露光华扫帚眉。皂服丝绦飘荡荡，浑身冷气浸人肌。

梅山猪怪逢杨戩，不久周营现此躯。

话说朱子真步行至前，见子牙簇拥而至。子牙曰：“道者何人？”朱子真曰：“吾乃梅山炼气士朱子真是也。”姜子牙曰：“你不守分安居，来此何干？是自寻死亡也。”朱子真大笑曰：“成汤相传数十世，尔等世受国恩，无故造反，侵夺关



Yang Jian, Wu Ji, and Nangong Kuo returned to see Jiang Ziya and report what happened. Delighted at the news, Jiang Ziya said to Yang Jian, "Though we got Wu Wenhua, we still have to deal with Yuan Hong. What shall we do?"

"Yuan is the spirit of a white ape. He has refined himself well on Mount Plum and is the most talented of the sprites. We may need more time to deal with him," Yang Jian replied.

"We should also wait for the East Grand Duke before we march any further," Jiang Ziya added.

Hearing of Wu Wenhua's demise, Yuan Hong felt sad and worried. As he was sitting alone in the camp, it was reported that a monk had arrived to see him. The monk greeted Yuan Hong and said, "I am from Mount Plum, too. My home is not far from yours. My name is Zhu Zizhen. When I heard that you were serving King Zhou, I decided to come and support you. Won't you accept me, Commander?" the monk said.

Greatly pleased, Yuan Hong asked Zhu Zizhen to take the seat of honor, but Zhu declined modestly. When they heard of the latest arrival from Mount Plums, Yin Pobai and Lei Kai sighed and said, "He must be in the same gang as Chang Hao and Wu Long."

Yuan Hong entertained Zhu Zizhen, and the next day the newcomer went to the Zhou camp, demanding Jiang Ziya.

Jiang Ziya led his disciples out and was flanked by nobles from the north and south. Before him stood a monk with a pitch-black face, short whiskers, large ears and long lips, sweeping eyebrows, and sparkling eyes. He wore a black robe and his whole body exuded a chilly air.

Jiang Ziya asked, "Who are you, monk?"

"I'm Zhu Zizhen, the hermit from Mount Plum."

"What have you come here for?"



1940

隘，反言天命人心，真是妖言惑众，不忠不孝之夫！吾今日到此，快快下马纳降，各还故土，尚待你等以不死；如有半字不然，那时拿住，定碎尸万段，悔无及矣。”子牙大骂曰：“无知匹夫！你死在目前，尚不自知，犹自饶舌也！”朱子真仗剑来取子牙。只见傍有南伯侯麾下副将余忠——此人不信道术——使狼牙棒，面如紫枣，三柳长髯，飞马大呼曰：“此功留与我来取！”子牙见左哨来了余忠，一马当先，也不答话，使开棒夹头就打。朱子真手中剑劈面交还。步马相交，剑棒并举。未及二十合，朱子真转身就走。余忠随后赶来。子牙传令：“擂鼓呐喊，以助军威。”余忠追来，未及一里之余，——朱子真乃是妖魅，足下阴风簇拥，一派寒雾笼罩，故马亦追之不上。——朱子真把身子立住，余忠马看看至近，子真回头，把口一张，一道黑烟喷出，笼罩其身，现出本相，一口把余忠咬了半段，余忠尸骸倒于马下。朱子真复现元身，回奔而来，大呼曰：“姜子牙敢与吾立见雌雄么？”杨戩在傍，用照妖宝鉴一照，原来是一个大猪。杨戩把马催开，使三尖刀从后面大喝曰：“好业障少来！有吾在此！”使开刀，分顶门砍来。朱子真手中剑急架忙迎。步马相交，刀剑并举。未及数合，朱子真抽身就走。杨戩随后赶来。朱子真如前，复现原身，将杨戩一口吃去。子牙见杨戩如此，传令回兵进营。朱子真得胜，来见袁洪，袁洪大喜，治酒管待朱子真贺功。正饮之间，忽报：“辕门有一杰士求见。”袁洪传令：“令来。”少时，见一人面如傅粉，海下长髯，顶生二角，戴一顶束发冠，至帐下行礼毕，袁洪问曰：“杰士何方人氏？”其人答曰：“末将姓杨，名显，祖居梅山人



"You'd better surrender. If you refuse, we'll slice you into a thousand pieces!" Zhu Zizhen yelled.

"You damned fool! You'll meet your end right now if you keep up with that nonsense," Jiang Ziya swore loudly.

Zhu Zizhen rushed forward to attack Jiang Ziya, but Yu Zhong, under the South Grand Duke, waved his wolf tooth club to meet the assault. Yu Zhong, with a face as purple as a date and a beard in three long tufts, did not believe in witchcraft.

After about twenty rounds, Zhu Zizhen turned and ran. Yu Zhong chased after him, encouraged by the sound of drums from behind.

Zhu Zizhen was a sprite and could run very fast. A cold wind whirled around him and a freezing fog covered him completely. No horse could overtake him. He suddenly stopped, turned his head and spat out a cloud of black smoke. Zhu then reappeared in his original shape, and Yu Zhong fell from his horse. When he had transformed himself back into his human body, Zhu ran back and yelled, "Jiang Ziya! Dare you fight with me?"

Yang Jian looked at Zhu through the magic mirror and saw that he was really a big pig. He then spurred his horse forward and shouted, "Don't be so rough! Look, here I come."

After several rounds, Zhu Zizhen gave up ground, turned, and ran. He then transformed himself into his original being, opened his mouth, and devoured Yang Jian in one bite. Yuan Hong was greatly delighted to see Zhu Zizhen return in victory. He entertained him and toasted his merits. As they sat drinking, it was reported that another general had come to see the commander.

A man with a face as white as powder, a long beard and two horns growing from his head walked in. A coronet covered his hair. After they had greeted one another, Yuan Hong asked, "Where do you come from, hero?"

"My name is Yang Xian, and I have lived on Mount Plum for many



氏。”——此杰士乃是羊精也，借“羊”成姓，也是梅山一怪，俱是袁洪一起。只恐傍人看破，故此陆续而来，托姓借名，以掩众人耳目。——当日袁洪留在军中，赐坐饮酒。杨显与朱子真各自夸能斗胜，晓晓不休。殷破败自思：“此又是袁洪等一党妖孽耳！”默对雷开不语。只见大小将官正饮酒，方到二更时分，听得朱子真腹内有人言曰：“朱道人！你可知道吾是谁？”朱子真惊得魂不附体，忙问曰：“你是谁？你实在那里？”杨戩在腹内答曰：“吾乃玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门徒杨戩是也。今已在你腹内。你只知贪吃血食，不知在梅山吃了多少众生，今日你这业障罪恶贯盈，我把你的肝肠弄一弄！”把手在他心肝上一搯，朱子真大叫一声：“痛杀我也！”口称：“大仙饶了小畜罢！”杨戩曰：“你是欲生，欲死？”朱子真曰：“望大仙慈悲！小畜在梅山也不知费几许辛苦，采天地灵气，吸日月精华，方能修成人形；今不知分量，干犯天威，望乞恕饶，真再生之德也！”杨戩曰：“你既要全生，你可速现原身，跪伏周营，吾当饶你性命；如不依吾言，我把你的心、肝、肺、腑都摘下你的来！”朱子真没奈何，有法也无处使，只得苦苦哀告。杨戩大叫曰：“如若迟了，吾就动手！”朱子真只得随现原形，是一个大猪，晃晃荡荡，走出辕门，就把袁洪急得抓耳挠腮，杨显恼得一天火发，有力也无有用处，只得听之而已。话说猪精走至周营辕门前跪伏，此时南宫适巡营，刚才四更，巡至辕门，只见一猪伏着，南宫适曰：“此是民间豢养的，怎走至此间来？等到天明，叫原人领去。”杨戩在猪腹内大呼曰：“南将军，报与姜元帅得知，此是梅山猪怪。今早见阵，是吾钻入他腹里，



1943

generations," he answered. Yang was really a goat sprite and a good friend of Yuan Hong's, but the two had to appear to be strangers in order to mislead all the people there. The three drank together joyfully.

They were still drinking at the second watch when they heard a voice from inside Zhu Zizhen's belly. "Zhu Zizhen! Don't you know who I am?" the voice asked.

Zhu Zizhen was nearly frightened to death. "Who are you and where are you?" he asked in return.

"I'm Yang Jian, and I'm in your belly now. You are a greedy beast. You devoured many people on Mount Plum and must pay your debt today. Just watch what I'll do with your liver and intestines."

Yang Jian grasped Zhu's heart and liver and shook them violently. Zhu cried out in pain, "Oh! Oh! I shall die. Forgive me, Great fairy!"

"What do you want — to live or to die?"

"Have mercy, great fairy! I've worked hard on Mount Plum to refine myself from a pig into a man by absorbing the essence of the sun and moon, Heaven and earth. I beg you to pardon me. Mercy! Mercy! Let me live," Zhu Zizhen prayed pitifully.

"If you want to live, you must change back into your original shape, walk out of this place, and kneel before the camp of the Zhou army. Otherwise, I'll pull out your heart, liver, lungs, and intestines with one yank," Yang Jian demanded.

Zhu Zizhen didn't know what to do. He couldn't use his witchcraft, with which he was familiar, and so he begged again for mercy.

"If you wait any longer, it'll be too late." Yang Jian roared.

As there was no way out, Zhu Zizhen had to change back into his pig shape. He wobbled on his four legs out of the camp gate and over to the Zhou army. Yuan Hong tweaked his ears and scratched his cheeks in great anxiety. Yang Xian was also furious, but they couldn't do a thing.

It was about the fourth watch and Nangong Kuo was on duty when he suddenly saw a big pig approach the camp gate. "How could this be? Let the owner take it away at daybreak," he decided.

"General Nangong!" Yang Jian called from the pig's belly. "Please go and tell Commander Jiang that this is the pig sprite from Mount Plum.



1944

特来擒伏至此，快请元帅来辕门发落！”南宫适方悟，知是杨戩变化在他肚里，不觉大喜，忙进营门，至中军外帐，将云板敲响，请元帅升帐议事。内使传与子牙，子牙忙升帐。南宫适上帐启元帅曰：“杨戩收服梅山猪精，已在营门，请元帅发落。”子牙传令，命众将：“掌上灯球火把出营。”不一时，一声炮响，子牙率领众诸侯齐出辕门，看时，果是一口大猪，跪伏在地。子牙问曰：“你这业障，没来由，何苦自取杀身之祸！”杨戩在腹内应曰：“请元帅施行，斩除此怪，以绝后患。”子牙传令：“命南宫适行刑。”南宫适手起一刀，将猪头斩落在地。杨戩借血光而出，现了自己真身。众诸侯无不欣羡。子牙命将猪头挂在辕门号令。俱回营寨。不表。

只见袁洪谓杨显曰：“似此露出本相，成何体面！把吾辈在梅山千年道术，一代英名，俱成画饼，岂不愧哉！誓不与姜尚干休！”杨显曰：“杨戩他恃自己有变化之术，不意朱子真悞中奸计，若不复此恨，岂能再立于人世！”二人正彼此痛恨，忽辕门官报入中军：“启元帅：有天使至，请令定夺。”袁洪忙出辕门，迎接天使。天使曰：“奉天子敕，命送一贤士至军前听用。”袁洪接了旨意，打发天使去了，复至中军坐下，命左右：“令来将参谒。”来将至中军参拜毕，袁洪亦问曰：“将军何名？”来者答曰：“末将姓戴，名礼，梅山人氏；闻纣主招贤，故不辞千里之远，特来效劳于麾下。”——此怪也是梅山之狗精，恐怕被人识破，故此陆续而来，若为不知耳。——袁洪与众将曰：“今日又添一贤士，定然与他决一雌雄。”随传令：“放炮呐喊。”三军排队出营，请子牙答话。周营军政司报入中军：“启元帅：有袁洪搦战。”



I entered his belly when he devoured me yesterday morning, and he is now my captive. Ask Commander Jiang to deal with him at once.”

Nangong Kuo, happy to know that it was Yang Jian inside the pig, hastily entered the camp and reported to Jiang Ziya, “Yang Jian has subdued the pig sprite and is waiting for your instructions.”

Jiang led his generals to the gate under torch light where they saw a big pig crouching pitifully on the ground. “You damned beast! What made you come here to receive your death?” Jiang Ziya swore at the creature.

Yang Jian called back from within its belly, “Won’t you order its execution at once, lest it trouble us again?”

Jiang Ziya ordered Nangong Kuo to be the executioner. When General Nangong lifted his cutlass and cut off the pig’s head, Yang Jian flushed out through the blood stream and recovered his original appearance as a human being. All the nobles applauded Yang Jian’s wonderful feat. Jiang Ziya issued an order to hang the pig’s head atop a bamboo pole by the camp gate.

“How can we take this humiliation? It’s a great blow to our glory. We can’t let Jiang Ziya live in peace,” Yuan Hong said to Yang Xian angrily.

“Yang Jian is good at transformation, but Zhu Zizhen shouldn’t have let himself be taken in by his dirty trick. We must get revenge if we are to remain in this world,” Yang Xian replied.

It was just then reported that a royal messenger had come from Zhaoge with a new general for their army. “I’m Dai Li, a native of Mount Plum,” he introduced himself. “When I heard that King Zhou was looking for heroes, I traveled this great distance to offer my service on the front under you, Commander.”

He was a dog sprite from Mount Plum. Afraid that others would find out the truth, the sprites had come one at a time and pretended they did not know each other.

“Another hero has arrived to help us today. We must engage them in decisive combat right now,” Yuan Hong said to his generals.

Yuan ordered the cannons to be fired, and he led his troops out to demand Jiang Ziya. Jiang appeared with all his disciples and generals.





1946

子牙随带诸将出营。见袁洪走马至军前，子牙曰：“袁洪，你不知时务，眼见覆军杀将，天意可知。今纣恶贯盈，人神共怒，谅尔不过区区螳臂，敢与天下诸侯相拒哉！”袁洪笑曰：“你偶尔得胜，便自矜夸，量你今日断然无生回之理。”问左右曰：“谁与吾捉此反臣也？”左有杨显大呼曰：“俟末将擒此反贼！”子牙看来将白面长须，顶生二角。怎见得，有赞曰：

顶上金冠生杀气，柳叶甲挂龙鳞砌。头生双角气峥嵘，白面长须声更细。梅山妖孽号羊精，也至孟津将身毙。从来邪正到头分，何苦身投罗网地。

话说杨显走马摇戟，冲杀过来。杨戩在旗门下用照妖鉴一照，却是一只羊精。杨戩收鉴，走马舞三尖刀，也不答话，接住厮杀。刀戟并举，杀在虎穴龙潭。二将正战之间，只见成汤营里一将，使两口刀，飞奔前来，大叫曰：“杨兄弟，吾来助你一臂之力！”子牙傍有哪吒登风火轮，使开火尖枪迎上来。怎见的此怪，有诗为证：

嘴尖耳大最蹊跷，遍体妖光透九霄。七怪之中他是首，千年得道一神獠。

话说哪吒用枪阻住，大呼曰：“匹夫慢来！通名来，好记功劳簿。”来将答曰：“吾乃袁洪副将戴礼是也。”哪吒使开枪，劈胸就刺。戴礼双刀急架相还。轮马相交，刀枪并举，大战在一处。且说杨戩战杨显有二三十合，杨显拨马便走。杨戩赶来。杨显在马上吐出一道白光，连马罩住，现原身来伤杨戩。杨戩化一只白额斑斓猛虎。杨显见杨戩变了一只猛虎，已克治了他，急欲逃走，早被杨戩一刀砍为两段。杨戩割下

“Yuan Hong! Can’t you realize the will of Heaven? You’re like the leg of a praying mantis, without a chance of resisting the nobles from the whole kingdom.”

Yuan Hong just smiled and replied, “You shouldn’t boast so. You won merely by chance and won’t live much longer today. Who will take that rebel captive for me?” he then asked, turning to his generals.

“I’ll get him!” Yang Xian yelled.

Seeing his two horns, white face, and long beard, Yang Jian discovered through the mirror that he was a goat sprite. He spurred his horse forward to meet him.

They hadn’t fought long when another general from the Shang army rushed forward with a loud shout, “Brother Yang! Let me help you!”

Nezha rode on his wheels to meet the general, and the two clashed together desperately. After about twenty rounds between Yang Jian and Yang Xian, the latter turned and ran away. He spat out a beam of white light and recovered his original shape, but Yang Jian quickly changed himself into a fierce tiger with a white head and striped body. The goat was frightened and tried to run away, but it was already too late. Yang Jian slashed him in two and then cut his head off.





1948

羊头，大叫曰：“启元帅：弟子又杀了梅山一怪也！”戴礼与哪吒正酣战间，戴礼口内吐出一粒红珠，有碗口大小，望哪吒顶门打来。哪吒见势头凶凶，谅不能治伏，只得闪一枪败下阵来。杨戩见哪吒失机，走马大呼曰：“业障不得无礼！吾来也！”使开三尖刀来战戴礼。二人大战二十余合，戴礼拨马便走。杨戩纵马赶来。戴礼又吐出一粒红珠，现出光华，来伤杨戩。杨戩祭起哮天犬，飞在空中。此犬乃是仙犬，看见此珠，十分凶恶，竟让过他的珠来奔戴礼。戴礼见仙犬奔来，正欲抽身逃走，早被哮天犬一口咬住，不能挣挫。杨戩手起一刀，挥于马下。有诗为证，诗曰：

梅山狗怪逞猖狂，炼宝伤人势莫当。岂意仙犬能伏怪，  
红尘血染命空亡。

话说杨戩又杀了狗怪，掌鼓回营。子牙升帐，见杨戩屡破诸怪，大喜，庆贺杨戩。不表。

且说袁洪回至中军，又见戴礼被戮，现出原形，心下甚是不乐。众将交头接耳，纷纷议论，十分没趣。忽辕门官来报：“启元帅：辕门外有一大将求见。”袁洪传令：“令来。”少时，令至帐前，见一人身高一丈六尺，顶生双角，卷嘴，尖耳，金甲，红袍，全身甲冑，十分轩昂，戴紫金冠，近前施礼。袁洪问曰：“将军高姓？大名？”来将答曰：“末将姓金，双名大升，祖贯梅山人氏。”——此来者又是牛怪，用三尖刀，力大无穷，今来助袁洪，俱是梅山七怪之数。袁洪故问，以遮众人耳目。——袁洪乃设酒管待。次日，金大升上了独角兽，提三尖刀，至周营搦战。哨马报入中军：“启元帅：成汤营有一大将请战。”子牙对众将问曰：“谁见阵走一



1949

In the combat between Nezha and Dai Li, Dai spat out a large red pearl, the size of a bowl, aimed right at Nezha's head. Nezha could not withstand it and ran away. But just then Yang Jian galloped forward and shouted, "Don't be so rough, beast! Here I come."

After twenty rounds, Dai Li ran away, and when he saw that Yang Jian was chasing after him, he spat out his shining red pearl. Yang Jian quickly released his Sky Barking Hound in counterattack. As it was a fairy hound, it could evade the red pearl. It ran directly toward Dai Li, who, unable to get away, was slashed in two by Yang Jian.

Jiang Ziya returned in victory. He praised Yang Jian for his subjugation of so many sprites. Yuan Hong was very discouraged that Yang Xian had been found to be a goat and Dai Li a dog and this had been seen by all on the front. He felt terribly ashamed when he saw his generals whispering to each other, but then it was reported that a big general had arrived to see him.

The general stood about sixteen feet tall, had two horns, twisted lips, and pointed ears.

"What's your honorable name, General?" Yuan Hong asked.

"I'm Jin Dasheng, a native of Mount Plum, Commander," he replied.

Jin Dasheng was a buffalo sprite from Mount Plum. Yuan Hong knew him well but pretended that he was a stranger for the first time. He entertained the newcomer. The next day, Jin Dasheng rode out on his single-horn beast with his three-pointed cutlass to challenge the Zhou army.



1950

遭？”言未毕，傍有郑伦出而言曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。郑伦上了金睛兽，拎降魔杵，出了营门，见对面一将，生的异怪雄伟，郑伦问曰：“来者何人？”金大升答曰：“吾乃袁洪麾下副将金大升是也。尔是何人？快通名来。”郑伦答曰：“吾乃总督五军上将军郑伦是也。吾观你异相非人，焉敢阻时雨之师，有逆天之罪！早早归周，共破独夫，以诛无道。如不知机，自取辱身之祸。”金大升大怒，催开独角兽，使三尖刀砍来。郑伦手中杵劈面相迎。二兽相交，大战数合。金大升乃是牛怪，腹内炼成一块牛黄，有碗口大小，喷出来，如火电一般。郑伦不及提防，正中脸上，打伤鼻孔，腮绽唇裂，倒撞下兽去，被金大升手起一刀，挥为两段。可怜！正是：

胸中奇术成何用，只落名垂在史篇。

话说金大升斩了郑伦，掌鼓回营。报马报入中军：“启元帅：郑伦被汤营大将金大升所伤，请令定夺。”子牙闻报，着实伤悼，叹曰：“郑伦屡建大功，自从苏侯归周，一路督粮，有功王室，岂知至此丧于无名下将之手，情实可伤！”子牙泪下如雨。有诗以吊之，诗曰：

胸中妙术孰能班，岂意遭逢丧此间！惟有清风常作伴，  
忠魂依旧返家山。

话说子牙次日令下：“谁为郑伦报恨走一遭？”傍有杨戩应声答曰：“弟子愿往。”子牙许之。杨戩随即上马提刀，至成汤营前，坐名要金大升出来答话。少时，见成汤营内炮声响处，只见金大升坐独角兽，来至军前，大呼曰：“来者通名！”杨戩曰：“吾乃杨戩是也。你就是金大升么？”大升曰：



Zheng Lun volunteered to meet the tall general, and with Jiang Ziya's approval, left the camp. Seeing a gallant general before him, Zheng Lun asked, "Who is that coming?"

"I'm Jin Dasheng. Who are you? Tell me quickly."

"I'm Zheng Lun. You look so strange, not at all like a human being. How can you resist our army and act against the will of Heaven? You'd better join us against the tyrant. If you don't, you will soon meet your own end."

Seething with fury, Jin Dasheng spurred his single-horn beast forward to attack Zheng Lun, and Zheng returned the assault with his club. They fought desperately for several rounds until Jin Dasheng spat out a bezoar, as big as a bowl with a force like thunder. It hit Zheng Lun on the face, and blood poured from his lips, nose, and cheeks. Zheng was then slashed in two when he fell from his beast. Jin Dasheng returned in victory.

When he heard that Zheng Lun had lost his life, Jiang Ziya wept and said, "Zheng Lun has achieved many great merits for the Zhou. Since he joined our forces with Su Hu, he has spent all his time and energy transporting food supplies. He has rendered useful and important service to the nation. How terrible it is that he should lose his life to such a vulgar enemy."

The next day, Jiang Ziya asked for a general to go revenge Zheng Lun's death. Yang Jian immediately volunteered, and with Jiang's approval, ran over to the Shang army and demanded Jin Dasheng. Soon Jin appeared. "Report your name before the combat," he roared.

"I'm Yang Jian. Are you Jin Dasheng?"



1952

“然也。”杨戩舞刀直取。金大升手中三尖刀赴面来迎。二将俱是三尖刀，往来冲突，一场大战，有三十余合，杨戩先未曾用照妖鉴照他，不防金大升喷出牛黄——此宝犹如火块飞来。杨戩见来得太急，化一道金光，往正南而走。金大升随后赶来。大升的独角兽来的快，杨戩忙取照妖鉴出来照时，却原来是个水牛。杨戩回身，正欲变化拿他，忽然前面一阵香风缥缈，异味芳馨，氤氲遍地，有五彩祥云，隐隐中一对黄幡飘荡，当中有一位道姑，跨青鸾而至；傍有女童三四对，应声叫曰：“杨戩早来见娘娘圣驾！”杨戩听说，乃向前抄手施礼曰：“弟子杨戩参见娘娘。”那道姑曰：“杨戩，吾非别神，乃女娲娘娘是也。今见成汤数尽，周室当兴，吾特来助你降伏梅山之怪。”令杨戩立于一傍，乃命青云女童：“将此宝去把那业障牵来。”青云女童接宝在手，只见金大升足踏阴云，提刀赶来。青云女童上前拦住，大呼曰：“那业障！娘娘圣驾在此，休得无礼！今奉娘娘法旨，特来擒你！”金大升大怒，将刀往上一举，劈面砍来。青云女童将伏妖索祭起空中，只见黄巾力士将金大升穿起鼻子来，用铜锤把金大升脊背上打了三四锤，一声雷响，金大升现出原身，乃是一匹水牛。杨戩向前倒身下拜：“弟子杨戩愿娘娘圣寿无疆！”女娲曰：“杨戩，你且将牛怪带回周营发落；我还助你收伏白猿精怪也。”杨戩别了女娲娘娘，把牛牵着回来。且说子牙在中军，听报到：“杨戩化一道金光往正南上去了。这大将赶去，不知凶吉。”子牙惊疑不定。哪吒曰：“杨戩自有运用，元帅何必惊疑？”子牙曰：“方今东伯侯人马未至，况有梅山七怪阻住吾师，使吾心下不能安然。”言未毕，只见



1953

Both Yang Jian and Jin Dasheng used cutlasses. After about thirty rounds, Jin Dasheng spat out his bezoar, and finding it very powerful, Yang Jian had to turn himself into a beam of golden light to run away.

The single-horn beast could run very rapidly. Yang Jian hurriedly looked back at Jin Dasheng through the magic mirror and discovered that he was a buffalo sprite. He was just about to transform himself when a strangely scented breeze suddenly filled his nostrils. Clouds of various colors floated before his eyes. Four Taoist lasses appeared under a couple of flying yellow pennants and called loudly "Come, Yang Jian, to meet Her Highness."

Yang Jian quickly advanced, bowed, and greeted the lady on the green phoenix.

"Yang Jian! I'm none other than Nu Wa. As I know that the Shang Dynasty will soon fall and the Zhou will rise, I've come to help you subdue the sprites from Mount Plum."

Nu Wa then told Yang Jian to stand beside her. She turned to Green Cloud Lass. "Take that beast captive with this magic weapon and bring it before me," she ordered.

Green Cloud Lass rushed up to Jin Dasheng and shouted, "Beast! Her Highness is here. Don't be so rude. She has ordered me to arrest you."

Jin Dasheng furiously lifted his cutlass to chop off her head, but the lass tossed up the Sprite Subduing Cord and let the yellow-scarved genii tie him up through the nose. After a couple of heavy thumps across the back with a brass hammer, there was a thunderous crash and Jin Dasheng assumed his original shape, that of a water buffalo.

"Yang Jian, you may take this water buffalo back and deal with him in your camp. I'll help you to subdue the white ape sprite next," Nu Wa said.

Yang Jian thanked Nu Wa, bade her farewell, and returned to his camp leading the water buffalo.

Ever since Yang Jian had turned himself into a beam of golden light and fled, Jiang Ziya had sat waiting and worrying in the camp headquarters. No news had come to relieve his anxiety. As he was just wondering what to do next, it was reported that Yang was back.





1954

报马来报：“启元帅：杨戩回来。”子牙令至帐前，问其原故。杨戩把女娲娘娘收伏牛怪之事说了一遍，“……今至辕门，请元帅发落。”子牙传令：“请众诸侯齐至大营门，看吾号令此怪。”少时，众诸侯齐至辕门。子牙命捧过牛怪，用缚妖索将此怪缚在地下，令南宫适行刑。南宫适手起一刀，将牛头斩下。孟津河八十万人马齐声喝采。子牙命将牛头挂在旗竿上号令，掌鼓回营。却说袁洪已知梅山众弟兄俱被子牙所灭，欲前而不能进，欲后而不能退，着实无计，事属两难，心下甚是忧疑。不表。

只见子牙回营升帐，问杨戩曰：“梅山绝了几怪？”杨戩掐指一算：“启元帅：已灭了六怪。”子牙曰：“今晚传与众诸侯：二更时分齐劫成汤大营。”又令杨戩：“你可单劫袁洪，取巧降伏此怪，大事可定。”杨戩答曰：“弟子同哪吒双去建功，更觉易于为力。”子牙许之，仍将众将分派已定。不表。却说袁洪在营中与参军殷破败、雷开二将议曰：“今主上命吾等在此守御，此处周兵虽多，能者甚少，况连日朝歌不曾见有救兵，亦不曾见吾捷报，恐天子忧心，深属不便。”命中军具疏往朝歌，请天子速发援兵前来接应。中军官具表求救。且说子牙亲乘坐骑，时至二更，一声炮响，周兵呐一声喊，齐杀进成汤营里去。正是：

黑夜冲营无准备，三军无故受灾殃。

话说南伯侯鄂顺领二百诸侯，一齐奋勇当先；北伯侯崇应鸾冲杀进左营；李靖、韦护、雷震子冲杀进右营；杨戩、哪吒杀入大营，进中军来战袁洪。且说袁洪听得周将劫营，忙上马，使一根铁棍，方出中军，恰逢杨戩，也不答话，二马相



Yang Jian told his commander all that had happened, and Jiang Ziya gave an order. "Invite all the nobles to the camp gate for the execution of the buffalo sprite."

Before long, when all had gathered, Jiang Ziya ordered his men to bind up the water buffalo with the Sprite Subduing Cord and appointed Nangong Kuo to act as executioner. Nangong lifted his cutlass high and slashed off its large head with one blow. The nobles cheered loudly, and Jiang ordered the head to be hung on a bamboo pole at the camp gate as a warning to the enemy. All returned happily to the beat of drums.

Well aware all his brothers from Mount Plum had been exterminated, Yuan Hong found himself in an awkward position. He could neither march forward nor retreat. He did not know what to do.

Jiang Ziya asked Yang Jian, "How many sprites from Mount Plum have we taken care of?" Yang Jian counted on his fingers and replied, "Dear Commander! We've already got six of them."

"Tell the nobles that we shall attack the Shang army at the second watch tonight," Jiang Ziya ordered. "You may go for Yuan Hong and finish him off once and for all."

"It will be easier for me with Nezha by my side," Yang Jian suggested. Jiang Ziya agreed. He then gave each general their assignment for that night.

At the Shang military conference, Yuan Hong said to Yin Pobai and Lei Kai, "Our forces are weak now, and Zhaoge has not sent any reinforcements. We have not sent any report of victory and His Majesty must be worried. What shall we do?"

With no other outstanding suggestions, Yuan Hong could only order his secretary to write another urgent request to Zhaoge for more reinforcements.

At the second watch that night, Jiang Ziya led his whole army against the Shang camp with a roar of cannons. E Shun, the South Grand Duke, headed 200 nobles. Chong Yingluan, the North Grand Duke, was to attack the left camp, while Li Jing, Wei Hu, and Thunderbolt were to attack and break into the right camp. Yang Jian and Nezha were to attack the central camp and finish off Yuan Hong.

When he realized the Zhou army had come on a night raid, Yuan Hong quickly mounted his horse, grabbed his iron cudgel, and rushed out



1956

交，只杀得愁云荡荡，惨雾纷纷。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

夜劫汤营神鬼惊，喊声齐发鼓锣鸣。军兵奋勇谁堪敌，  
将士施威孰敢撻。破败无心贪恋战，雷开有意奔途程。  
梅山七怪从今灭，扫荡妖氛宇宙清。

话说众诸侯齐杀入成汤营里，只杀的尸横绿野，血满沟渠，哀声惨切，不堪听闻。只见杨戩大战袁洪，袁洪现出原身，起在半空，将杨戩劈头一棍，打得火星迸出。杨戩有七十二变，随化一道金光，起在空中，也照袁洪顶上一刀劈将下来。这袁洪也有八九工夫，随刀化一道白气，护住其身。杨戩大喝曰：“梅山猴头，焉敢弄术！拿住你定要剥皮抽筋！”袁洪大怒曰：“你有多大本领，敢将吾兄弟尽行杀害，我与你势不两立！必擒你碎尸万段，以报其恨！”他二人各使神通，变化无穷，相生相克，各穷其技，凡人世物件、禽兽，无不变化，尽使其巧，俱不见上下。袁洪暗思：“此时其兵已攻破大营，料不能支，且将他诳上梅山，入吾巢穴，使他不能舒展，那时再擒他不难。”遂弃了大营，往梅山逃去。不表。且说众诸侯追杀成汤残败人马，杀到天明，子牙鸣金收兵，众诸侯各自回营。正是：

诸侯鞭敲金镫响，子牙全胜进辕门。

话说杨戩见袁洪纵祥光前去，乃弃了马，亦纵步借土遁紧紧追赶。只见袁洪随变一块怪石立在路傍。杨戩正赶，忽然不见了袁洪，即运神光，定睛观看，已知袁洪化为怪石；随即



to meet the intruders. He met up with Yang Jian and attacked without a word.

The duke's battle with the Shang army resulted in the ruthless massacre of thousands of innocent soldiers. The battlefield was littered with their corpses, and their pitiful cries for help saddened both Heaven and the people.

Yang Jian and Yuan Hong, meanwhile, were engaged in desperate combat. Yuan Hong turned into an ape and rose up in the air to smash at Yang Jian with his cudgel. But Yang Jian was a master at transformation. He turned himself into a beam of golden light, soared up higher in the air, and slashed at Yuan Hong's head with his cutlass. At this critical moment, Yuan Hong protected himself by covering himself up with a beam of white light.

"You damned ape sprite from Mount Plum! Dare you play tricks like this? I'll pull out your sinews and peel your skin away," Yang Jian shouted loudly.

"What can you do even at your best? How dare you recklessly murder my brothers? I can't live with you on this world at the same time. I must slice you up into thousand pieces to appease my hatred," Yuan Hong roared in fury.

The two fought on with all their strength and used every magic technique they knew, but neither could get the upper hand. "The Zhou army must have broken into our camp and completely defeated my soldiers. It's clear I can do nothing with him here. I must induce him to go to Mount Plum so I can take him captive," Yuan Hong thought.

Yuan Hong pretended to give up and ran back to Mount Plum. The battle ended at dawn when the entire Shang army was wiped out. Gongs were struck ordering the Zhou troops to return to their camp in victory.

When he saw Yuan Hong flee in a beam of auspicious light, Yang Jian gave up his horse and chased him on a dust cloud. Yuan Hong suddenly disappeared, transformed into an odd rock by the road.

Yang Jian paused and used his spiritual sight to visualize where Yuan Hong had gone. He soon discovered that Yuan was that queer rock lying beside the road in front of him. Yang then turned himself into a stone



1958

变一石匠，手执锤钻，上前锤他。袁洪知他识破，便化阵清风往前去了。如此两家各使神通，看看赶上梅山，忽的又不见了袁洪。杨戩上得梅山，果然好景。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

梅山形势路羊肠，古柏乔松两岸傍。飒飒阴风云雾长，  
妖魔假此匿行藏。

话说杨戩上了梅山，四面观望一遍，忽听得崖下一声响，窜出千百小猴儿，手执棍棒，齐来乱打杨戩。杨戩见众小猢猻左右乱打，情知不能取胜，“不若脱身下山。”杨戩化道金光去了。方才转过一坡，只听一派仙乐之音，满地祥云缭绕，又见女娲娘娘驾临。杨戩俯伏山下，叩首曰：“弟子杨戩不知娘娘圣驾降临，有失回避，望娘娘恕罪！”女娲曰：“你虽是玉泉山金霞洞玉鼎真人门徒，善会八九变化，不能降伏此怪。吾将此宝授你，可以收伏此恶怪也。”杨戩叩首拜谢。女娲娘娘自回宫去了。杨戩将此宝展开看时，心中甚是欢喜。——此宝乃“山河社稷图”。——杨戩一一依法行之，悬于一大树上。杨戩复上梅山，依旧找寻原路。话说袁洪见杨戩复上梅山，乃大呼曰：“杨戩，你此来是自送死也！”杨戩大笑曰：“你今日谅无生理！”使开刀，直取袁洪。袁洪也使开棍劈面交还。二人大战一会，杨戩转身就走。袁洪随后赶来。杨戩下了梅山，往前又走，忽见前面一座高山，杨戩径上了山。袁洪随赶上山来。不知此山乃女娲娘娘赐的“山河社稷图”变化的。袁洪赶上山来，入于圈套，再不能下山。杨戩将身一纵，下了“山河社稷图”，只见袁洪在山上左撞右跳。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



1959

cutter with an auger in his left hand and a hammer in his right. He moved forward to break the rock into pieces. When he saw that he had been discovered, Yuan turned himself into a light breeze and flew on to Mount Plum.

When he got to the mountain, Yang Jian looked around and found the place to be really beautiful. All of a sudden, thousands of small monkeys, each holding a small cudgel, leapt off a cliff and charged him. Unsure of what to do with so many monkeys, Yang Jian turned himself into beam of golden light and ran away. Rounding a slope, Yang Jian suddenly heard sweet music and saw auspicious clouds in the air. It was Nu Wa again.

Yang Jian immediately knelt down, kowtowed, and said, "I'm sorry I didn't welcome you earlier. I wasn't aware that you had arrived."

"Although you are a disciple of Jade Tripod and have mastered many transformations, you are not quite powerful enough to subdue that ape sprite. I give you this magic weapon which will enable you to subdue Yuan Hong with ease," Nu Wa said.

Yang Jian kowtowed again to thank her, and the goddess immediately returned to her palace. Yang Jian was delighted when he saw that the precious weapon was the "Topographical Diagram of the Kingdom." He hung it on a large tree, as the goddess had instructed, and returned to Mount Plum to look for Yuan Hong.

When he saw Yang Jian had returned, Yuan Hong shouted, "Yang Jian! You've come back to meet your death now!"

"You won't live much longer today, Yuan Hong." Yang Jian burst into laughter.

Yang Jian attacked with his cutlass, and Yuan Hong resisted with his cudgel. After a short while, Yang Jian turned to run away, and Yuan Hong chased close behind. Yang Jian ran down the mountain and quickly up the side of another, with Yuan Hong still hot on his heels.

The mountain Yang Jian led him to was, in fact, not real. It had been produced by the "Topographical Diagram of the Kingdom," and once Yuan Hong was inside it, he could not escape. He could only run around and around looking for Yang Jian, who had already leapt out of the place.

Please read the next chapter if you wish to know what happened to Yuan Hong.



1960

## 第九十三回

### 金吒智取游魂关

诗曰：

斗柄看看又向东，窦荣枉自逞雄风。金吒设智开周业，  
彻地多谋弄女红。总为浮云遮晓日，故教杀气锁崆峒。  
须知王霸终归主，枉使生灵泣路穷。

话说袁洪上了“山河社稷图”，如四象变化有无穷之妙，思山即山，思水即水，想前即前，想后即后，袁洪不觉现了原身。忽然见一阵香风扑鼻，异样甜美，这猴儿爬上树去一望，见一株桃树，绿叶森森，两边摇荡，下坠一枝红滴滴的仙桃，颜色鲜润，娇嫩可爱。白猿看见，不觉忻羨，遂攀枝穿叶，摘取仙桃下来，闻一闻，扑鼻馨香，心中大喜，一口吞而食之。方才倚松靠石而坐，未及片时，忽然见杨戩仗剑而来。白猿欲待起身，竟不能起。不知食了此桃，将腰坠下，早被杨戩一把抓住头皮，用缚妖索捆住，收了“山河社稷图”，望正南谢了女娲娘娘，将白猿拎着，径回周营而来。有诗单赞女娲授杨戩秘法，伏梅山七怪，诗曰：

悟道投师在玉泉，秘传九转妙中玄。离龙坎虎分南北，  
地户天门列后先。变化无端还变化，坤乾颠倒合坤乾。  
女娲秘授真奇异，任你精灵骨已穿。

话说杨戩擒白猿来至辕门，军政官报入中军：“启元帅：杨戩等令。”子牙命：“令来。”杨戩来至中军，见子牙，曰：“弟

## Chapter 93

### Occupation of Youhun Pass

Trapped within the "Topographical Diagram of the Kingdom," Yuan Hong was deluded by fantasies. Anything he thought of appeared before his eyes. He thought of a river, and a river appeared before him; he thought of a mountain, and suddenly he saw one. He could see and have anything he pleased. He forgot himself and unconsciously turned back into an ape. A sweet alluring fragrance drifted on the breeze. He climbed up a tree to find out what it was and saw a peach tree not far away. A big, red fairy peach hung there, so tender looking and attractive. His mouth began to water, and swinging through the trees, he made his way to the peach tree, plucked the peach, and ate it with relish. He then sat down on a rock and leaned against a pine tree to rest. But before long, he saw Yang Jian coming toward him with a sword.

Yuan Hong tried to get up but discovered that he had absolutely no strength. The peach had sapped it from him. Yang Jian bound up the ape with the Sprite Binding Rope, rolled up the diagram, and knelt down toward the south to thank Nu Wa. He then took the white ape and returned to camp, where he reported in to Jiang Ziya.







1962

子追赶白猿至梅山，仰仗女娲娘娘秘授一术，已将白猿擒至辕门，请元帅发落。”子牙大喜，命：“将白猿拿来见我。”少时，杨戩将白猿拥至中军帐。子牙观之，见是一个白猿，乃曰：“似此恶怪，害人无厌，情殊痛恨！”令：“推出斩之！”众将把白猿拥至辕门，杨戩将白猿一刀，只见猴头落下地来，他项上无血，有一道清气冲出，颈子里长出一朵白莲花来；只见花一放一收，又是一个猴头。杨戩连诛数刀，一样如此，忙来报与子牙。子牙急出营来看，果然如此。子牙曰：“这猿猴既能采天地之灵气，便会炼日月之精华，故有此变化耳。这也无难……”忙令左右排香案于中，子牙取出一个红葫芦，放在香几之上，方揭开葫芦盖，只见里面升出一道白线，光高三丈有余。子牙打一躬：“请宝贝现身！”须臾间，有一物现于其上，长七寸五分，有眉，有眼，眼中射出两道白光，将白猿钉住身形。子牙又一躬：“请法宝转身！”那宝物在空中，将身转有两三转，只见白猿头已落地，鲜血满流。众皆骇然。有诗赞之，诗曰：

此宝昆仑陆压传，秘藏玄理合先天。诛妖杀怪无穷妙，  
一助周朝八百年。

话说子牙斩了白猿，收了法宝，众门人问曰：“如何此宝能治此巨怪也？”子牙对众人曰：“此宝乃在破万仙阵时，蒙陆压老师传授与我，言后有用他处，今日果然。大抵此宝乃用宾铁修炼，采日月精华，夺天地秀气，颠倒五行，至工夫圆满，如黄芽白雪，结成此宝，名曰‘飞刀’。此物有眉，有眼，眼里有两道白光，能钉人仙妖魅泥丸宫的元神，纵有变化，不能逃走。那白光顶上如风轮转一般，只一二转，其头



1963

Jiang took one look at the ape and cursed, "Such a wicked devil has hurt so many people. Take it out and behead it at once."

Out by the camp gate, Yang Jian raised a cutlass high in the air and chopped off the ape's head. There was no blood, but green smoke gushed forth and a white lotus flower grew where the head had been. The flower began to vibrate and a new head appeared. Yang Jian cut it off, but in the same way, a new head sprouted up as before. He tried again and again but with the same result.

Yang Jian reported this extraordinary phenomena to Jiang Ziya, who said, "It's just because this ape sprite already has so much spirit from Heaven and earth, and the sun and moon. But I have a way to deal with him."

Jiang ordered his men to burn incense. He then took out a red gourd and laid it on a teapot. When he removed the lid, a thirty foot beam of white light soared up into the sky. Jiang Ziya bowed and said, "Please reveal yourself, precious!" Something with eyes and eyebrows appeared and quickly nailed the white ape up on the wall. Jiang bowed again and asked, "Please turn over, dear precious." The weapon turned over three times then slashed off the ape's head. Blood poured to the ground, and all present gasped in astonishment.

"What is this precious weapon that subdued such a great sprite?" all the disciples asked.

"It was given to me by Lu Ya. He said it would be very useful in the future, and that has come true today. It's called the Flying Dagger and was refined from pure iron by the essence of the sun, moon, Heaven, and earth. It has two eyes with white light beams, which can seize a sprite's spirit from right within the skull. This Flying Dagger can turn round like a windmill and cut off the head of any sprite with just one or two turns. It



自然落地。前次斩余元即此宝也。”众人无不惊叹：“乃武王之洪福，故有此宝来克治之耳。”不言子牙斩了白猿，且说殷破败、雷开败回朝歌，面见纣王，备言：“梅山七怪化成人形，与周兵屡战，俱被陆续诛灭，复现原形，大失朝廷体面，全军覆没；臣等只得逃回。今天下诸侯齐集孟津，旌旗蔽日，杀气笼罩数百里。望陛下早安社稷为重，不可令诸侯一至城下，那时救解迟矣。”纣王着忙，急急设朝，问两班文武曰：“今周兵猖獗，如何救解？”众官钳口不言。有中大夫飞廉出班奏曰：“今陛下速行旨意，张挂朝歌四门：如能破得周兵，能斩将夺旗者，官居一品。古云：‘重赏之下，必有勇夫。’况鲁仁杰才兼文武，令彼调团营人马，训练精锐，以待敌军，严备守城之具，坚守勿战，以老其师。今诸侯远来，利在速战。一不与战，以待彼粮尽，彼不战自走；乘其乱以破之，天下诸侯虽众，未有不败者也，此为上策。”纣王曰：“卿言甚善。”随传旨意，张挂各门，一面令鲁仁杰操练士卒，修理攻守之具。不表。

且说金吒、木吒别了子牙，兄弟二人在路商议。金吒曰：“我二人奉姜元帅将令来救东伯侯姜文焕进关，若与窦荣大战，恐不利也。我和你且假扮道者，诈进游魂关反去协助窦荣，于中用事，使彼不疑；然后里应外合，一阵成功，何为不美。”木吒曰：“长兄言得甚善。”二人分付使命：“领人马先去报知姜文焕，我弟兄二人随后就来。”使命领人马去讫。金、木二吒随借土遁，落在关内，径至帅府前，金吒



1965

was the Flying Dagger that cut off Yu Yuan's head not very long ago," Jiang Ziya explained.

Yin Pobai and Lei Kai fled back to Zhaoge and went to see King Zhou. They said sadly, "The seven sprites from Mount Plum have all been exterminated. It was a great humiliation to discover that a snake, a centipede, a pig, a dog, a goat, a water buffalo, and a white ape sprite had come to fight on our side. Our whole army has been wiped out and the dukes are all gathering at Mengjin. For the nation's sake, we beg you to do something about this grave situation. If they make it here, it will be all over for us."

King Zhou began to worry. He called his ministers to a conference, but no one said a word, except Fei Lian, who proposed, "You should issue proclamations and post them as quickly as possible on all four gates of Zhaoge. Promise the highest rank to anyone who can defeat the Zhou army. We also have General Lu Renjie, who is skilled in both civil and military affairs. You should authorize him to prepare all our troops for any emergency. We must fortify the city and defend it with all our might. Don't challenge the enemy to fight but hold out long against them until they are wearied and out of food supplies. We may be able to beat them in the end. It's our only chance now."

King Zhou agreed with his proposals and issued an order to post the proclamations on the four city gates. He ordered General Lu Renjie to drill the soldiers and to fortify the city against attack.

After they left Jiang Ziya, Jinzha and Muzha consulted each other on the way to Youhun Pass in the East Grand Dukedom.

"It's difficult to say if we can beat Dou Rong or not. Let's present ourselves to him as Taoists. When we earn his trust, we can fight him from within and win the day with just one combat. What do you think?" Jinzha suggested.

"That's a good idea, Brother," Muzha replied.

They sent their troops on Jiang Wenhuan to report that they would be with him after a few days. They then dropped from the air near the pass



1966

曰：“门上的，传与你元帅得知，海外有炼气士求见。”门官不敢隐讳，急至殿前启曰：“府外有二道者，口称海外之士，要见老爷。”窦荣听说，传令：“请来。”二人径至檐前，打稽首曰：“老将军，贫道稽首了。”窦荣曰：“道者请了。今道者此来，有何见谕？”金吒答曰：“贫道二人乃东海蓬莱岛炼气散人孙德、徐仁是也。方才我兄弟偶尔闲游湖海，从此经过，因见姜文焕欲进此关，往孟津会合天下诸侯，以伐当天子；此是姜尚大逆不道，以惶惑之言挑衅天下诸侯，致生民涂炭，海宇腾沸。此天下之叛臣，人人得而诛之者也。我弟兄昨观乾象，汤气正旺，姜尚等徒苦生灵耳。吾弟兄愿出一臂之力，助将军先擒姜文焕，解往朝歌；然后以得胜之兵，掩诸侯之后，出其不意，彼前后受敌，一战乃成擒耳。正所谓‘迅雷不及掩耳’，此诚不世出之功也。但贫道出家之人，本不当以兵戈为事，因偶然不平，故向将军道之，幸毋以方外术士之言见谄可也。乞将军思之。”窦荣听罢，沉吟不语。傍有副将姚忠厉声大呼曰：“主将切不可信此术士之言！姜尚门下方士甚多，是非何足以辨？前日闻报，孟津有六百诸侯协助姬发。今见主将阻住来兵，不能会合孟津，姜尚故将此二人假作云游之士，诈投麾下，为里应外合之计。主将不可不察，毋得轻信，以堕其计。”金吒听罢，大笑不止，回首谓木吒曰：“道友，不出你之所料。”金吒复向窦荣曰：“此位将军之言甚是。此时龙蛇混杂，是非莫辨，安知我辈不是姜尚之所使耳？在将军不得不疑。但不知贫道此来，虽是云游，其中尚有原故。因吾师叔在万仙阵死于姜尚之手，屡欲思报此恨，为独木难支，不能向前；今此来特假将军之兵，上为朝廷立功，下以报天伦私怨，中为将军效一臂之劳，岂有他心。既将军有猜疑之念，贫道又何必有此琐琐



and reported in at the headquarters.

"Two Taoists from overseas wish to see you, Commander," the gateman reported to Dou Rong.

Jinzha and Muzha greeted the general, who asked, "Dear Taoists! What can I do for you?"

"We are Sun De and Xu Ren, two hermits from Penglai Island in the East Sea. We were passing by when we noticed that Jiang Wenhuan is attempting to occupy this pass so he can meet the dukes at Mengjin. It's all because Jiang Ziya has incited the dukes to rebel. It appears to us that the Shang Dynasty is flourishing and Jiang Ziya's gang is only fighting in vain. So we have come to help you to take Jiang Wenhuan captive. When that is done, we can attack the other dukes from the rear. King Zhou will reward you handsomely for your great service to the dynasty. We hope you will consider our offer," Jinzha said.

Dou Rong said nothing, but Yao Zhong, one of his generals, shouted out, "You shouldn't believe them, Commander! There are so many Taoists under Jiang Ziya's command. We can't distinguish these from the others. According to the report the day before yesterday, 600 nobles have arrived at Mengjin in support of Ji Fa. As we are blocking the East Grand Duke, Jiang Ziya has sent these two disguised as Taoists pretending to serve you. Don't trust them, or else you'll fall into their trap."

Jinzha burst into laughter and said to Muzha, "It's just as you expected." He then turned to Dou Rong. "That general may be right. It's quite natural to be suspicious, but we have a reason to offer you our services. Our uncle lost his life in the Ten Thousand Immortal Trap, and we seek revenge. We've come today to fight against our common enemy, but we obviously can't stay as long as our motives are suspected."



也！但剖明我等一点血诚，自当告退。”道罢，抽身就走，抚掌大笑而出。窦荣听罢金吒之言，见如此光景，乃沉思曰：“天下该多少道者伐西岐，姜尚门下虽多，海外高人不少，岂得恰好这两个就是姜尚门人？况我关内之兵将甚多，若只是这两个，也做不得甚么事。如何反疑惑他？据吾看他意思，是个有道之士，况且来意至诚，不可错过。”忙令军政官赶去，“速请道者回来！”正是：

武王洪福摧无道，故令金吒建大功。

话说军政官赶上金、木二吒，大呼曰：“二位师父，我老爷有请！”金吒回头，看见有人来请，对使者正色言曰：“皇天后土，实鉴我心。我将天下诸侯之首送与你们老爷，你老爷反辞而不受，却信偏将之疑，使我蒙不智之耻，如今我断不回去！”军政官苦苦坚执不放，言曰：“师父若不回去，我也不敢去见老爷。”木吒曰：“道兄，窦将军既来请俺回去，看他怎样待我们。若重我等，我们就替他行事；如不重我等，我们再来不迟。”金吒方勉强应允。二人回至府前，军政官先进府通报。窦荣命：“快请来！”二人进府，复见窦荣，窦荣忙降阶迎接，慰之曰：“不才与师父素无一面，况兵戈在境，关防难稽，在不才副将不得不疑。只不才见识浅薄，不能立决，多有得罪于长者，幸毋过责，不胜顶戴！今姜尚聚兵孟津，人心摇撼；姜文焕在城下，日夜攻打，不识将何计可解天下之倒悬，擒其渠魁，殄其党羽，令万姓安堵，望老师明以教我，不才无不听命。”金吒曰：“据贫道愚见：今姜尚拒敌孟津，虽有诸侯数百，不过乌合之众，人各一心，久自离散；只姜文焕兵临城下，不可以力战，当以计擒之。其协从



Jinzha and Muzha then turned and left. Dou Rong pondered the matter silently, "Many Taoists joined the battle against West Qi. How can we know that those Taoists belong to Jiang Ziya? Besides, we have so many generals and soldiers, what can those two do to us? We certainly should not suspect them."

Dou Rong immediately sent his men after them. The soldiers caught up with them and said, "Masters, please return to see our commander. He wishes to beg your pardon."

Jinzha replied solemnly, "May Heaven know my heart. We came to deliver the dukes' heads into your master's hands, but he refused them. He trusted his general and did not believe us. We are so humiliated, it would be impossible for us to return."

The messengers held Jinzha's arm tightly and begged, "If you don't go back we can't return, for we shall be severely punished for our failure."

"Dear brother! Since General Dou Rong has kindly asked us to return, let's do as he wishes. If he respects us, we'll help him. If not, we can just leave again," Muzha urged his brother.

Jinzha agreed, and they returned to headquarters, where General Dou Rong rushed out, descended the stone steps, and said politely, "I'm very sorry. As you are strangers and we are at war, our general was suspicious of you. We beg your pardon. Jiang Wenhuan has been attacking the pass day and night. Would you kindly advise me how we can defeat him, so that both the people and the nation can live in peace."

"From what we can tell, though Jiang Ziya and the dukes all have their armies at Mengjin, they are not united as one and cannot last long. It may be difficult to beat Jiang Wenhuan by force. We should take him by





诸侯，不战而自走也。然后以得胜之师，掩孟津之后，姜尚虽能，安得豫为之计哉。彼所恃者天下诸侯，而众诸侯一闻姜文焕东路被擒，挫其锋锐，彼众人自然解体；乘其离而战之，此万全之功也。” 窦荣闻言大喜，慌忙请坐，命左右排酒上来。金、木二吒曰：“贫道持斋，并不用酒食。” 随在殿前蒲团而坐。窦荣亦不敢强。一夕晚景已过。次日，窦荣升殿，聚众将议事，忽报：“东伯侯遣将搦战。” 窦荣对金、木二吒曰：“今日东伯侯在城下搦战，不识二位师父作何计以破之？” 金吒曰：“贫道既来，今日先出去见一阵，看其何如，然后以计擒之。” 道罢，忙起身提剑在手，对窦荣曰：“借老将军捆绑手随吾压阵，好去拿人。” 窦荣听罢大喜，忙传令：“摆队伍，吾自去压阵。” 关内炮声响亮，三军呐喊，开放关门，一对旗摇，金吒提剑而来。怎见得，正是：

窦荣错认三山客，咫尺游魂关属周。

话说金吒出关，见东伯侯门旗脚下一员大将，金甲，红袍，走马军前，大呼曰：“来此道者，先试吾利刃也！” 金吒曰：“尔是何人？早通名来。” 来将答曰：“吾乃东伯侯麾下总兵官马兆是也。道者何人？” 金吒曰：“贫道是东海散人孙德。因见成汤旺气正盛，天下诸侯无故造反，吾偶闲游东土，见姜文焕屡战多年，众生涂炭，吾心不忍，特发慈悲，擒拿渠魁，殄灭群虏，以救众生。汝等知命，可倒戈纳降，尚能待尔等以不死；如若半字含糊，叫你立成齑粉！” 言罢，纵步绰剑来取马兆。马兆手中刀急架来迎。怎见金吒与马兆一场大战，有诗为证，诗曰：

纷纷戈甲向金城，文焕专征正未平。不是金吒施妙策，



devising a good plan, and then all the dukes would be compelled to retreat to their native lands. With that accomplished, we could attack Jiang Ziya from the rear," Jinzha replied.

Dou Rong ordered his men to lay a feast to entertain Jinzha and Muzha, but the two refused. "Sorry, we are vegetarians and can take no meat or wine, General." They spent the night meditating on reed cushions in the hall.

The next morning it was reported that the East Grand Duke had come to challenge them. "What shall we do now, Masters? The East Grand Duke is outside the city." Dou Rong asked Jinzha and Muzha.

"Let me go and see how we can take him," Jinzha said, rising from his cushion. Before he left, he turned to Dou Rong. "Have some men ready with ropes to bind the captives," he said.

Dou Rong ordered his men to open the gate and led his army out of the pass to watch the battle.

There stood a great general, wearing a pink robe and gold armor, who set his horse forward with a shout. "Come on, Taoist! Will you taste my sharp cutlass now!"

"Who are you? Tell me your name," Jinzha asked.

"I'm Ma Zhao, garrison commander under the East Grand Duke, and who are you, Taoist?"

"I'm Sun De, a hermit from the East Sea. I have come to take you all captive. We'll generously let you live if you lay down your arms, but if you refuse, you'll be smashed into powder at once," Jinzha said loudly.

Jinzha jumped forward to attack Ma Zhao, who resisted with his sword.



游魂安得渡东兵。

话说金吒大战马兆，步马相交，有三二十合，金吒祭起遁龙桩，一声响，将马兆遁住。窦荣挥动兵戈，一齐冲杀。东兵力战不住，大败而走。金吒命左右将马兆拿下，与窦荣掌得胜鼓进关。窦荣升殿坐下，金吒坐在一傍。窦荣令左右：“将马兆推来。”众军士把马兆拥至殿前，马兆立而不跪。窦荣喝曰：“匹夫！既被吾擒，如何尚自抗礼？”马兆大怒，骂曰：“吾被妖道邪术遭擒，岂肯屈膝于你无名鼠辈耶！一死何足惜，当速正典刑，不必多说。”窦荣喝令：“推出斩之！”金吒曰：“不可。待吾擒了姜文焕，一齐解送朝歌，以法归朝廷，足见老将军不世之功，非虚冒之绩，岂不美哉！”窦荣见金吒如此手段，说话有理，便倚为心腹，随传令：“将马兆囚在府内。”不表。且说东伯侯姜文焕闻报，金吒将马兆拿去，姜文焕大喜：“进关只在咫尺耳！”次日，姜文焕布开大队，摆列三军，鼓声大振，杀气迷空，来关下搦战。哨马报入关中，窦荣忙问金、木二吒曰：“二位老师，姜文焕亲自临阵，将何计以擒之，则功劳不小。”金、木二吒慨然应曰：“贫道此来，单为将军早定东兵，不负俺弟兄下山一场。”随即提剑在手，出关来迎敌。只见东伯侯姜文焕一马当先，左右分大小众将。怎生打扮，有赞为证，赞曰：

顶上盔，攒六瓣；黄金甲，锁子绊；大红袍，团龙贯；  
护心镜，精光焕；白玉带，玲花献；勒甲绦，飘红焰；  
虎眼鞭，龙尾半；方楞铜，宾铁煅；胭脂马，毛如彪；  
斩将刀，如飞电。千战千赢东伯侯，文焕姓姜千古赞。

话说金、木二吒大呼曰：“反臣慢来！”姜文焕曰：“妖道通名！”金吒答曰：“吾乃东海散人孙德、徐仁是也。尔等不守臣节，妄生事端，欺君反叛，戕害生灵，是自取覆宗灭嗣之



1973

After about twenty rounds, Jinzha cast his Invisible Dragon Stake and took Ma Zhao captive. Seeing this, Dou Rong waved his weapon and led his army to attack the enemy. The East Grand Duke's army was completely defeated, and Dou Rong and Jinzha returned in great victory.

Taken into the court before Dou Rong, Ma Zhao stood upright, refusing to bow or kneel.

"You damned bastard! Why are you so rude? You are my captive now," Dou Rong roared.

But Ma Zhao swore back angrily, "I was unfortunately captured by your witchcraft. Why should I kneel down before rats and pigs? You may kill me if you wish. There's no need to talk so much."

Dou Rong quickly ordered, "Take him out and cut his head off," but Jinzha intervened. "No, wait! Let me get Jiang Wenhuan first and then you can take them to Zhaoge together to show His Majesty the great merits you have achieved."

Considering his suggestion reasonable, Dou Rong ordered that Ma Zhao be sent to prison. He began to place more and more trust in the two Taoists.

When he heard that Ma Zhao had been taken captive by Jinzha, Jiang Wenhuan said happily, "We're so close to the pass now; it's only a few feet away." The next day, he led his great army out to challenge Dou Rong again.

When the news reached him, Dou Rong turned to Jinzha and Muzha. "Jiang Wenhuan is now challenging in person. What can we do to take him captive, dear Masters?" he asked anxiously.

The two answered, "We have come to help you defeat the East Grand Duke. We won't let this purpose rest in vain." They rushed out of the pass, and when Jiang Wenhuan saw them, he shouted, "What are you, sorcerers? Report your names."

"We are Sun De and Xu Ren, hermits from the East Sea. Why don't you act like a loyal minister? How can you rebel against His Majesty? You are committing suicide," Jinzha replied.



1974

祸；可速倒戈，免使后悔。”姜文焕大骂曰：“泼道无知，仗妖术擒吾大将，今又巧言惑众，这番拿你，定碎尸以泄马兆之恨！”催开马，使手中刀，飞来直取。金吒手中剑劈面交还。步马相交，有七八回合，姜文焕拨马便走。金、木二吒随后赶来。约有一射之地，金吒对东伯侯曰：“今夜二更，贤侯可引兵杀至关下，吾等乘机献关便了。”姜文焕谢毕，挂下钢刀，回马一箭射来。金、木二吒把手中剑望上一挑，将箭拨落在地。金吒大骂曰：“奸贼！敢暗射吾一箭也！吾且暂回，明日定拿你以报一箭之恨！”金、木二吒回关，来见窦荣。窦荣问曰：“老师为何不用宝贝伏之？”金吒答曰：“贫道方欲祭此宝，不意那匹夫拨马就走；贫道赶去擒之，反被他射了一箭。待贫道明日以法擒之。”三人正在殿上讲议，忽后边报：“夫人上殿。”金、木二吒见一女将上殿，忙向前打稽首。夫人问窦荣曰：“此二位道者何来？”窦荣曰：“此二位道长乃东海散人孙德、徐仁是也；今特来助吾共破姜文焕。前日临阵，擒获马兆；待明日用法宝擒获姜文焕等，以得胜之师，掩袭姜尚之后，此长驱莫御之策，成不世之功也。”夫人笑曰：“老将军，事不可不虑，谋不可不周，不可以一朝之言倾心相信。倘事生不测，急切难防，其祸不小。望将军当慎重其事。古云：‘将欲取之，必固与之。’愿将军详察。”金、木二吒曰：“窦将军在上：夫人之疑，大似有理。我二人又何必在此多生此一番枝节耶，即此告辞。”金、木二吒言毕，转身就走。窦荣扯住金、木二吒曰：“老师休怪。



“Lay down your weapons or it will be too late for regrets,” Muzha added.

“You are bloody sorcerers! You took my general with your witchcraft yesterday. I will cut you into pieces to get my revenge,” Jiang Wenhuan swore loudly.

Jiang Wenhuan spurred his horse forward and attacked Jinzha. Jinzha returned the blow with his sword. After only seven rounds, Jiang turned his horse and ran away. Jinzha and Muzha pursued him closely.

After they’d run some distance, Jinzha whispered to the East Grand Duke in a low voice, “Dear duke, lead your army against the pass tonight at the second watch, and we’ll do our best to fight from within.”

With a quick expression of thanks, Jiang Wenhuan hung his cutlass on the saddle, turned his horse about, and shot an arrow at Jinzha. The Taoist knocked to the arrow on the ground with his sword and yelled loudly, “You bastard! Dare you shoot an arrow at me! I’ll take you captive tomorrow.”

When they returned to the pass, Dou Rong asked Jinzha and Muzha, “Why didn’t you take Jiang Wenhuan with your magic weapon, Masters?”

“I was just about to reach for it when that old bastard suddenly turned his horse and ran away. He then surprised me with an arrow. I’ll get him tomorrow,” Jinzha answered.

During their conference, Madam Dou suddenly appeared. Jinzha and Muzha moved forward to greet her, but Madam Dou asked Dou Rong, “Who are these two Taoists?”

“They are Sun De and Xu Ren, hermits from the East Sea. They have come to help me beat Jiang Wenhuan. They took Ma Zhao the day before yesterday and they will get Jiang Wenhuan tomorrow. We then plan to attack Jiang Ziya from the rear. We should be able to defeat him handily and achieved great merit,” Dou Rong explained.

Madam Dou smiled and said, “My dear man, you should not trust sweet words. It’s not easy to guard against emergencies. I hope you will be very careful. I’d like to remind you of the old proverb, ‘If anyone wishes to take something, he must give something first’.”

“Dear General Dou! What Madam Dou says may be true. We’ll leave at once and bother you no more,” Jinzha and Muzha said. They



1976

我夫人虽系女流，亦善能用兵，颇知兵法。他不知老师实心为纣，乃以方士目之，恐其中有诈耳。老师幸毋嗔怪，容不才陪罪。俟破敌之日，不才自有重报。”金吒正色言曰：“贫道一点为纣真心，惟天地可表。今夫人相疑，吾弟兄若飘然而去，又难禁老将军一段热心相待，只等明日擒了姜文焕，方知吾等一段血诚。——只恐夫人难与贫道相见耳。”夫人不觉惭谢而退。窦荣与金吒议曰：“不知明日老师将何法擒此反臣，以释群疑，以畅众怀？”金吒曰：“明日会兵，当祭吾法宝，自然立擒姜文焕耳。文焕被擒，余党必然瓦解。然后往孟津会兵，以擒姜子牙，可解诸侯之兵也。”窦荣听说大喜，回内室安息。金、木二吒静坐殿上。将至二更，只听得关外炮声大振，喊杀连天，金鼓大作，杀至关下，架炮攻打。有中军官入府，击云板，急报窦荣。窦荣忙出殿，聚众将上关，有夫人彻地娘子披挂提刀而出。金吒对窦荣曰：“今姜文焕恃勇，乘夜提兵攻城，出我等之不意。我等不若将计就计，齐出掩杀，待贫道用法宝擒之，可以一阵成功，早早奏捷。夫人可与吾道弟谨守城池，毋使他虞。”夫人听罢，满口应允：“道者之言，甚是有理。我与此位守关；你与此位出敌。我自料理城上，乘此夤夜，可以成功也。”正是：

文焕攻关归吕望，金吒设计灭成汤。

话说窦荣听金吒之言，整点众将士，方欲出关，有夫人又言曰：“夤夜交兵，须是谨慎，毋得贪战，务要见机，不得落他圈套。将军谨记，谨记！”——看官：这是彻地夫人留心防关，恐二位道者有变，故此叮咛嘱咐耳。——金吒见夫人言语真切，乃以目送情与木吒。木吒已解其意，只在临机应变



bade farewell to Dou Rong and prepared to leave immediately.

But General Dou grasped their arms and said, "I beg your pardon, Masters! Though my wife is a woman, she knows about war and has studied war theories extensively. But she didn't know that you are faithful to King Zhou. She regards you as ordinary sorcerers and suspects you as unreliable. Won't you kindly excuse us, and I shall offer you a big reward as soon as the enemy has been wiped out."

"Only Heaven knows how loyal we are to the nation. Should we leave because of your wife, we would appear ungrateful for your kindness. We shall stay the night and prove ourselves tomorrow when we take Jiang Wenhuan. But I'm afraid Madam Dou will be ashamed to face us then," Jinzha said solemnly.

Madam Dou retired uneasily, and Dou Rong asked Jinzha, "How do you plan to take the chief rebel tomorrow?"

"I shall use my weapon to capture him, and his army will collapse at once. We can then march on to Mengjin," Jinzha replied.

Delighted at what he heard, Dou Rong returned to his residence to rest. Close to the second watch that night, as both Jinzha and Muzha were sitting in meditation inside the court, the roar of cannon fire, gongs, drums, and war cries suddenly broke the late night silence. Jiang Wenhuan's troops assaulted the pass wall with high ladders and big cannons.

Dou Rong quickly left the court and climbed the pass wall to resist the attack from above. Madam Dou joined them, fully armored, and Jinzha said to Dou Rong, "Let's beat him at his own game. I'll use my magic weapon to take him captive, and we can wipe out the whole army in just one battle. Madam Dou and my brother can defend the pass from inside while the two of us fight outside the pass wall."

Madam Dou agreed, and as her husband was about to leave, she warned him, "My dear man, you must be very careful. Don't be too greedy. You must watch out lest you fall into a trap. Always keep these words in mind."

Madam Dou did not completely trust Jinzha and Muzha. She still suspected they might try something devious, so she whispered these precau-





而已，亦以目两相关会，随同彻地夫人在关上驻扎防卫。只见窦荣开关，把人马冲出，窦荣在旗门脚下见姜文焕滚至军前，窦荣大喝曰：“反臣！今日合该休矣！”姜文焕也不答话，仗手中刀直取窦荣。窦荣以手中刀赴面交还。二马相交，双刀并举。怎见得，有诗赞之，诗曰：

杀气腾腾烛九天，将军血战苦相煎。扶王碧血垂千古，  
为国丹心勒万年。文焕归周扶帝业，窦荣尽节丧黄泉。  
谁知运际风云会，八百昌期兆已先。

话说窦荣挥动众将，两军混战，只杀得天愁地暗，鬼哭神嚎，刀枪响亮，斧剑齐鸣，喊杀之声振地，灯笼火把如同白昼，人马凶勇似海沸江翻。且言金吒纵步，在军中混战，观见东伯侯带领二百镇诸侯围将上来，金吒急祭起遁龙桩，一声响，先将窦荣遁住。不知老将军性命若何，且听下回分解。

tions to her husband. Jinzha overheard her and signaled to his brother with his eyes. Muzha answered back with a wink.

Dou Rong and Jinzha opened the gate and led a great army out to launch a counterattack. When he saw Jiang Wenhuan running toward him, Dou Rong roared, "You rebel! You won't live through the night!"

Jiang Wenhuan said nothing but attacked him with his cutlass. Dou Rong returned the blow, and the two fought wildly. Their soldiers clashed violently on all sides and struggled back and forth on the battlefield, lit up as bright as day by torches and lanterns. In the middle of this fierce combat, Jinzha suddenly cast up his Invisible Dragon Stake.

What happened next? You will find out in the next chapter.







1981





## 第九十四回

### 文焕怒斩殷破败

诗曰：

兵马临城却讲和，诸侯岂肯罢干戈。殷汤德业八荒尽；  
周武仁风四海歌。大厦将倾谁可负，溃痍已破孰能荷！  
荒淫到底成何事，尽付东流入海波。

话说金吒祭起遁龙桩，将窦荣遁住，早被姜文焕一刀挥为两段。可怜守关二十年，身经数百战，善守关防，不曾失利，今日被金吒智取杀身！正是：

争名树业随流水，为国孤忠若浪萍。

话说姜文焕斩了窦荣，三军呐喊。只见木吒在关上见东伯侯率领诸侯鏖战，声势大振，在城敌楼上暗暗祭起吴钩剑去，此剑升于空中，木吒暗曰：“请宝贝转身！”那剑在空中如风轮一般，连转三二转，可怜彻地夫人，正是：

油头粉面成虚话，广智多谋一旦休。

话说木吒暗祭吴钩剑，斩了彻地夫人，在关上大呼曰：“吾是木吒在此；奉姜元帅将令，来取此关。今主将皆已伏诛，降者免死，逆者无生！”众皆拜伏于地。金吒已知兄弟献关，同东伯侯姜文焕杀至关下。木吒令左右开关迎接。人马进了关，姜文焕查盘府库，安抚百姓，放了被禁马兆，感谢金、木二吒。金吒曰：“贤侯速行；吾等先往孟津，报与姜元帅。贤侯不可迟误戊午之辰，以应上天垂象之兆。”姜文焕曰：

## Chapter 94

### The Tyrant's Last Struggle

Jinzha captured Dou Rong with his magic weapon, and Jiang Wenhuan quickly slashed him in two. Dou had been commander of the pass for twenty years. He'd fought several hundred battles without ever losing, but he'd finally met his match.

When he saw what had happened below, Muzha stealthily threw his Hooks of Wu into the air and said, "Turn over, dear precious." The sword whirled about three times and then cut off Madam Dou's head.

Muzha then shouted from the city wall, "I'm General Muzha. By order of Jiang Ziya, I have come to take over this pass. As you have already lost your commander and his wife, you may live if you surrender now. Resistance only means death."

All knelt down to surrender. When he realized his brother had taken the pass, Jinzha accompanied Jiang Wenhuan to the pass wall. Muzha ordered the guards to open the gate, and Jiang Wenhuan sent his men to restore peace among the people, check the treasure houses, and set Ma Zhao free. He expressed his deepest gratitude to Jinzha and Muzha.

"Dear Duke! We'll leave you now to return to Commander Jiang. You must leave immediately for Mengjin. Do not delay," Jinzha urged him. Jiang Wenhuan thanked them again, and the two brothers left on a





“谨如二位师父大教。”金、木二吒辞了姜文焕，驾土遁往孟津前来。且说子牙在孟津大营，与二路大诸侯共议：“三月初九日乃是戊午之辰，看看至近，如何东伯侯尚未见来？奈何！奈何！”正商议间，忽报：“金、木二吒在辕门等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”金、木二吒来至中军行礼毕，乃曰：“奉元帅将令，往游魂关，诈为云游之士，乘机取关。”把前事如此如彼尽说了一遍，“今弟子先来报与元帅，东伯侯大兵随后至矣。”子牙闻说大喜，深羨二人用计，乃曰：“天意响应，不到戊午日，天下诸侯不能齐集。”

话说东伯侯大兵那一日来至孟津。哨马报入中军：“启元帅：东伯侯至辕门等令。”子牙传令：“请来。”姜文焕率领二百镇诸侯进中军，参谒子牙。子牙忙迎下座来。彼此温慰一番。姜文焕又曰：“烦元帅引见武王一面。”子牙同姜文焕进后营，拜见武王。不表。此时天下诸侯共有八百，各处小诸侯不计，共合人马一百六十万。子牙在孟津祭了宝纛旗幡，一声炮响，整人马望朝歌而来。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

征云迷远谷，杀气振遐方。刀枪如积雪，剑戟似堆霜。  
旌旗遮绿野，金鼓震空桑。刁斗传新令，时雨庆壶浆。  
军行如骤雨，马走似奔狼。

正是：吊民伐罪兵戈胜，压碎群凶福祚长。

话说天下诸侯领人马正行，只见哨马报入中军曰：“启元帅：人马已至朝歌，请元帅军令定夺。”子牙传令：“安下大营。”三军呐喊，放定营大炮。

只见守城军士报入午门，当驾官启奏曰：“今天下诸侯兵至城下，扎下行营，人马共有一百六十万，其锋不可当，请

dust cloud.

At Mengjin, Jiang Ziya was in a conference with the two grand dukes. "The nobles are all to meet on the ninth day of the third month. The day is fast upon us, but the East Grand Duke has not yet arrived. What shall we do?" he asked them.

Just then it was reported that Jinzha and Muzha had returned. After they had greeted Jiang Ziya, they related all that had happened at Youhun Pass. "The East Grand Duke asked us to return first and tell you he will be here in a few days," they added.

Jiang Ziya was greatly delighted. "It must be Heaven's will that the assembly can be held on the date fixed."

The East Grand Duke arrived several days later with 200 nobles from the east. He went first to pay his respects to Jiang Ziya and then asked to see King Wu. Jiang Ziya accompanied him to the back camp.

When all 800 nobles and the numerous petty lords had gathered, their army was 1,600,000 strong. After the flag-worshiping ceremony, Jiang Ziya, King Wu, and the dukes led their armies out of Mengjin and marched towards Zhaoge.







1986

陛下定夺。”纣王听罢大惊，随命众官保驾上城，看天下诸侯人马。怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

行营方正，遍地兵山。刁斗传呼，威严整肃。长枪列千条柳叶；短剑排万片冰鱼。瑞彩飘飘，旗幡色映似朝霞；寒光闪烁，刀斧影射如飞电。竹节鞭悬豹尾；方楞铜挂龙梢。弓弩排两行秋月；抓锤列数队寒星。鼓进金退，交锋士卒若神威；癸呼庚应，递传粮饷如鬼运。画角幽幽，人声寂寂。真是：堂堂正正之师，吊民伐罪之旅。

话说纣王看罢子牙行营，忙下城登殿，坐问两班文武，言曰：“方今天下诸侯会兵于此，众卿有何良策以解此危？”鲁仁杰出班奏曰：“臣闻：‘大厦将倾，一木难扶。’目今库藏空虚，民日生怨，军心俱离，总有良将，其如人心未顺何！虽与之战，臣知其不胜也。不若遣一能言之士，陈说君臣大义，顺逆之理，令其罢兵，庶几可解此危。”纣王听罢，沉吟半晌。只见中大夫飞廉出班奏曰：“臣闻：‘重赏之下，必有勇夫。’况都城之内，环堵百里，其中岂无豪杰之士隐踪避迹于其间者，愿陛下急急求之，加以重爵崇禄而显荣之，彼必出死力以解此危。况城中尚有甲兵十数万，粮饷颇足。即不然，令鲁将军督其师，背城一战，雌雄尚在未定之天。岂得骤以讲和示弱耶！”纣王曰：“此言甚是有理。”一面将圣谕张挂榜篷；一面整顿军马。不表。

且说朝歌城外离三十里地方，有一人，姓丁，名策，乃是高明隐士。正在家中闲坐，忽听得周兵来至，围了朝歌，丁策叹曰：“纣王失德，荒淫无道，杀忠听佞，残害生灵，天



Court officials immediately reported the serious situation to King Zhou, who climbed the city wall to take a look for himself. What he saw greatly frightened him, for the massive army camped below stretched out as far as the eye could see. He returned to the palace and held an urgent conference with the remaining ministers.

“We are surrounded by the enemy forces. Have you, dear Ministers, any good plan to repulse this huge army?”

Lu Renjie stepped from his line, knelt down, and said, “Just as the proverb says, ‘A log cannot support a big building that’s about to collapse.’ Our treasure houses are all empty, the people are dissatisfied, and our soldiers are discouraged. The people are not with us. We can not win. We should send an envoy to persuade them to stop the war and withdraw. This crisis may then come to a peaceful solution.”

King Zhou thought his proposal silently. Fei Lian walked up and knelt down. “It’s said that ‘brave heroes will appear when great rewards are offered.’ I beg Your Majesty to issue proclamations inviting those talented heroes to step forward now. You may promise to appoint them ministers if they succeed. We still have about 100,000 soldiers in the city and food enough to keep us going. We can also let General Lu Renjie take up the fight to defend the city. How can we beg for mercy from our enemy without a single battle!”

“You’re right,” King Zhou agreed and ordered his men to issue the proclamations at once.

Just outside Zhaoge there lived a talented hermit named Ding Ce. When he heard that the Zhou army had surrounded the city. He sighed and said, “The kingdom cannot last long when all the nobles have turned against it. Where are all the ministers who have received grace from the



愁人怨，故贤者退位，奸佞盈廷。今天下诸侯会兵至此，眼见灭国，无人替天子出力，束手待毙而已。平日所以食君之禄，分君之忧者安在！想吾丁策，昔日曾访高贤，传吾兵法，深明战守，意欲出去舒展生平所负，以报君父之恩；其如天命不眷，万姓离心，大厦将倾，一木如何支撑？可怜成汤当日如何德业，拜伊尹，放桀于南巢，相传六百余年，贤圣之君六七作，今一旦至纣而丧亡，令人目极时艰，不胜嗟叹！”丁策乃作诗一首以叹之，诗曰：

“伊尹成汤德业优，南巢放桀冠诸侯。谁知三九逢辛纣，一统华夷尽属周。”

话说丁策作诗方毕，只见大门外有人进来，却是结盟弟兄郭宸。二人相见，施礼坐下。丁策问曰：“贤弟何来？”郭宸答曰：“小弟有一事特来与长兄商议。”丁策曰：“有何事？请贤弟见教。”郭宸曰：“方今天下诸侯都已会集于此，将朝歌围困，天子出有招贤榜文。小弟特请长兄出来，共辅王室。况长兄抱经济之才，知战守之术，一出仕于朝，上可以报效于朝廷，显亲扬名，下不负胸中所学。”丁策笑曰：“贤弟之言虽则有理，但纣王失政，荒淫不道，天下离心，诸侯叛乱，已非一日；如大痈既溃，命亦随之，虽有善者，亦末如之何矣。你我多大学识，敢以一杯之水救车薪之火哉。况姜子牙乃昆仑道德之士，又有这三山五岳门人，徒送了性命，不为可惜耶。”郭宸曰：“兄言差矣！吾辈乃纣王之子民，食其土而践其茅，谁不沐其恩泽，国存与存，国亡与亡，此正当报效之时，便一死何惜，为何说此不智之言。况吾辈堂堂丈夫，一腔热血，不向此处一洒，更何待也。若论俺弟兄胸中



king? Why aren't they standing by His Majesty's side now? I was taught by a talented scholar in my youth and have often hoped for a chance to demonstrate my ability, but a single log cannot support the building alone!"

Just then someone knocked at his door. It was Guo Chen, one of his sworn brothers. "I would like to consult with you, Brother," Guo Chen said.

"What about? Tell me, please."

"His Majesty is looking for heroes to fight the enemy. I suggest we answer his call together. You are well cultured in politics and economics. You understand war strategy and military operations. If you accept this post, you may glorify your family with wealth and high rank. You may use all that you have learned," Guo Chen explained in detail.

Ding Ce just smiled and said, "Though what you say is true, King Zhou has lost the people's hearts. We can do nothing about that. What do you think we really are? How can we save a cart load of burning firewood with a cup of water? Jiang Ziya is well known as a learned scholar from Mount Kunlun with numerous disciples. We are certainly no match for him."

"You're wrong, Brother. We should live and die with the nation, and now is the right time to dedicate ourselves, even if it means our lives. We are heroes; our hot blood should rinse the earth at the right time and the



所学，讲甚么昆仑之士，理当出去解天子之忧耳。”丁策曰：“贤弟，事关利害，非同小可，岂得造次，再容商量。”二人正辩论间，忽门外马响，有一大汉进来。此人姓董，名忠，慌忙而入。丁策看董忠人来，问曰：“贤弟何来？”董忠曰：“小弟特来请兄同佐纣王，以退周兵。昨日小弟在朝歌城见招贤榜文，小弟大胆将兄名讳连郭兄、小弟，共是三人，齐投入飞廉府内。飞廉且奏纣王，令明早朝见。今特来约兄等明早朝见。古云：‘学成文武艺，货与帝王家。’况君父有难，为臣子者忍坐视之耶！”丁策曰：“贤弟也不问我一声，就将我名字投出去，此事干系重大，岂得草率如此？”董忠曰：“吾料兄必定出身报国，岂是守株待兔之辈！”郭宸欢然大笑曰：“董贤弟所举不差，我正在此劝丁兄，不意你先报了名。”丁策只得治酒管待。三人饮了一宵，次早往朝歌来。正是：

痴心要想成梁栋，天意扶周怎奈何！

话说丁策三人，次日来至午门候旨。午门官至殿上奏曰：“今有三贤士在午门候旨。”纣王命：“宣三人进殿。”午门官至外面传旨，三人闻命进殿，望驾进礼称“臣”。王曰：“昨飞廉荐卿等高才，三卿必有良策可退周兵，辅朕之社稷，以分朕忧。朕自当分茅列土，以爵卿等。朕决不食言。”丁策奏曰：“臣闻：‘战危事也。圣王不得已而用。’今周兵至此，社稷有累卵之危，我等虽幼习兵书，固知战守之宜，臣等不过



right place. What are we waiting for? We must go to free His Majesty of his worries at once," Guo Chen argued.

"Dear Brother! This is a serious problem that must be considered carefully," Ding Ce said.

Just then a tall, smart-looking fellow came in. It was Dong Zhong, another sworn brother of theirs.

"Where do you come from, Brother?" both Ding Ce and Guo Chen asked.

"I've come to invite both of you to help King Zhou repulse the Zhou army. I was in the city yesterday and read the official proclamation posted on the city gate. I was so moved that I called on Fei Lian and offered our services. Fei Lian reported this to the king at once, and we are ordered to see His Majesty tomorrow. I've come to tell you. As the ancient proverb says, 'Sell your civil and military talents to the ruler when you have mastered them all.' We cannot sit by quietly when either our father or the king is in trouble," Dong Zhong told them.

"Why didn't you consult with me first," Ding Ce reprimanded him.

"Because I'm sure that you are loyal and willing to serve the nation. You are not the type to sit under a tree waiting for the hare, so I dared to act without asking you," Dong Zhong answered.

Guo Chen burst out laughing and said, "You're perfectly right, Brother. I came to exhort Brother Ding, but you've already signed us up."

Ding Ce could do nothing. He had to lay the table and offer them dishes and wine. They drank throughout the night and entered the city early the next morning.

When they had been admitted by King Zhou, Ding Ce and his two brothers knelt down and kowtowed.

"Fei Lian recommended you three yesterday. We trust you have a good plan to repulse the Zhou army," King Zhou said.

"The ancient saint emperors often had to resort to war against their will. The Zhou army lies right outside our door, and the kingdom is balanced precariously like a pile of eggs that may fall and break at any moment. Though we are well-educated in the philosophy of war, we can



1992

尽此心报效于陛下，其成败利钝，非臣等所逆料也。愿陛下敕所司，以供臣等取用，毋令有掣肘之虞。臣等不胜幸甚！”纣王大喜，封丁策为神策上将军；郭宸、董忠为威武上将军，随赐袍带，当殿腰金衣紫，赐宴便殿。三将谢恩。次早参见鲁仁杰。鲁仁杰调人马出朝歌城来。有词为证，词曰：

御林军卒出朝歌，壮士纷纷击鼓鼙。千里愁云遮日色，  
数重怨气障山窝。被铠甲，荷干戈，人人踊跃似奔波。

诸侯八百皆离纣，枉使儿郎遭网罗。

话说鲁仁杰调人马出城安营。只见探马报入中军：“启元帅：成汤遣大兵在城外，立下营寨，请令施行。”子牙传令：“命众将出营，至成汤营前搦战。”只见探马报入中军：“有周营大队人马讨战。”鲁仁杰闻报，亲自率领众将出辕门，见子牙乘异兽，两边摆列三山五岳门人。只见哪吒登风火轮，提火尖枪，立于左手；杨戩仗三尖刀，淡黄袍，骑白马，立于右手；雷震子、韦护、金吒、木吒、李靖、南宫适、武吉等一班排立；众诸侯济济师师，大是不同。正是：

扶周灭纣姜元帅，五岳三山得道人。

话说鲁仁杰一马当先，大呼曰：“姜子牙请了！”子牙在四不相上欠背打躬，问曰：“来者是谁？”鲁仁杰曰：“吾乃纣王驾下总督兵马大将军鲁仁杰是也。姜子牙，你既是昆仑道德之士，如何不遵王化，构合诸侯，肆行猖獗，以臣伐君，屠城陷邑，诛君杀将，进逼都城，意欲何为？千古之下，安能逃叛逆之名，欺君之罪也！今天子已赦尔往愆，不行深究。尔等可速速倒戈，撤回人马，各安疆土，另行修贡。天子亦以礼相看。如若执迷，那时天子震怒，必亲率六师，定捣其穴，立成齑粉，悔之何及！”子牙笑曰：“你为纣王重臣，为



1993

only do our best to return your grace with our loyalty. May your officials supply us with all the materials and equipment we call for," Ding Ce said with a low bow.

Delighted at his answer, King Zhou appointed Ding Ce the Great General of Strategy and Guo Chen and Dong Zhong the Great Generals of Power and Grandeur. He bestowed on them silk robes and jade belts and entertained them in style.

The three new generals thanked King Zhou and went to see General Lu Renjie early the next morning. They then led their army out of Zhaohe and set up camp outside the city wall.

Jiang Ziya moved first to challenge for a combat. Lu Renjie led his generals to the camp gate, where they saw Jiang on a strange beast, attended by his disciples on both sides.

Lu Renjie galloped ahead and roared, "How do you do, Jiang Ziya!"

Jiang bowed courteously on his nondescript horse and asked, "Who is that coming, please?"

"I'm Lu Renjie, chief commander under His Majesty. Jiang Ziya, you are from Mount Kunlun. How can you break the law by joining the dukes in their attack against the capital? What will you do next? His Majesty would like to forgive you all and allow you to withdraw so the people may live in peace. If you wish to offer him tribute, he will follow through with the rites accordingly, but if you insist on being stubborn, His Majesty will lead a great army against you, and smash your nest," Lu Renjie replied.

Jiang Ziya burst into laughter. "Why do you still wish to act against





1994

何不察时务，不知兴亡？今纣王罪恶贯盈，人神共怒，天下诸侯会兵驻此，亡在旦夕，子尚欲强言以惑众也。昔日成汤德日隆盛，夏桀暴虐，成汤放于南巢，伐夏而有天下，至今六百余年。至纣之恶，过于夏桀，吾今奉天征讨而诛独夫，公何得尚执迷如此，以逆天时哉！今天下诸侯会兵在此，止弹丸一城，势如累卵，犹欲以言词相尚，公何不智如此！”

鲁仁杰大怒曰：“利口匹夫！吾以你为老成有德之人，故以理相谕，汝犹恃强妄谈彼长哉！独不思以臣伐君，遗讥万世耶！”回顾左右曰：“谁为吾擒此逆贼？”后有一将大呼曰：“吾来也！”纵马舞刀，飞来直取子牙。子牙傍有南宫适冲将过来，与郭宸截住厮杀。二马相交，双刀并举。两下擂鼓，杀声大振。丁策在马上也摇枪冲杀过来助战。这壁厢武吉走马抵住交锋。战未有二十余合，有南伯侯鄂顺飞马直冲过来截杀。那边有董忠敌住。子牙营左边恼了一路诸侯，乃是东伯侯姜文焕，磕开紫骍骝，走马刀劈了董忠，使发钢锋，好凶恶！怎见得好刀，有诗为证，诗曰：

怒发冲冠射碧空，钢刀闪灼快如风。旗开得胜姜文焕，一怒横行劈董忠。

话说东伯侯走马刀劈董忠，在成汤阵前，凶如猛虎，恶似狼豺。子牙左右有哪吒大叫曰：“吾等进五关不曾见大功，今日至都城大战，难道束手坐观成败耶！”言罢，随登开风火轮，摇火尖枪，冲杀过来。杨戩也纵马摇刀，直杀过阵内。这壁厢鲁仁杰纵马摇枪敌住。两家混战，只杀得天愁地暗，鬼哭神嚎。哪吒大战丁策，郭宸也来助战。只听得鼓振乾坤，旗遮旭日。哪吒祭起乾坤圈，正中丁策。可怜！正是：

明知昏主倾邦国，冥下含冤怨董忠。

Heaven? We have all the dukes with us now; You have only this small city. How long can you last?"

Lu Renjie roared furiously, "You bastard! I regarded you as a gentleman. I never imagined you could speak so basely. You'll be cursed forever for your attempt to attack the king!" He then looked at his men. "Who will take that rebel for me?"

A general behind him shouted loudly, "Here I come, Commander!"

Guo Chen set his horse forward and was met by Nangong Kuo. The two fought violently. Ding Ce rushed in to join the combat and was met by Wu Ji. After twenty rounds, E Shun, the South Grand Duke, galloped in to take on Dong Zhong.

Soon, Jiang Wenhuan, annoyed by the scene, spurred his purple steed in and slashed Dong Zhong to death. Standing beside Jiang Ziya, Nezha roared, "I haven't achieved any great merit since the five passes. How can I look on so passively?"

Nezha rushed forward and was followed by Yang Jian. They met Ding Ce, Guo Chen, and Lu Renjie in a desperate battle. Drums were beaten loudly to encourage the generals.

Nezha cast up his Universal Ring and smashed Ding Ce to death,





话说哪吒打死丁策，郭宸落荒，被杨戩一刀劈于马下。鲁仁杰料不能取胜，随败进行营。子牙鸣金收军。

却说鲁仁杰报入城中，连折三将，大败一阵。纣王闻报，心中甚闷，与众臣共议曰：“今周兵驻师城外，兵败将亡，不能取胜，国内无人，为之奈何？”傍有殷破败奏曰：

“今社稷有累卵之危，万姓有倒悬之急，朝野无人，旦夕莫待，臣与姜子牙有半面之识，舍死至周营，晓以君臣大义，劝其罢兵，令天下诸侯解释，各安本土，或未可知。知其不然，臣愿骂贼而死。”纣王从其言，使殷破败往周营说之。殷破败领旨出城，来至周营，命左右通报。只见中军官进营，来见子牙，启曰：“成汤差官至营门，请令定夺。”子牙传令：“令来。”殷破败随令而入，进了大营。好齐整！只见两边列坐天下诸侯，中军帐上坐姜子牙。殷破败上帐曰：“姜元帅，末将殷破败甲冑在身，不能全礼。”子牙忙欠身迎曰：“殷老将军此来有何见谕？”殷破败曰：“末将别元帅已久，不意元帅总六师之长，为诸侯之表率，真荣宠崇耀，令人惊羨！今特来参谒，有一言奉告，但不知元帅肯容纳否？”子牙曰：“老将军有何事见教？但有可听者，无不如命；如不可行者，亦不必言。幸老将军谅之。”子牙命赐坐，殷破败逊谢，坐而言曰：“末将尝闻，天子之尊，上等于天，天可灭乎？又法典所载：‘有违天子之制而擅专征伐者，是为乱臣。乱臣者，杀无赦。有构会群党谋为不轨，犯上无君者，此为逆臣。逆臣者，则族诛。天下人人得而讨之。’昔成汤以至德，沐风栉雨，伐夏以有天下，相传至今，六百余年，则天下之诸侯、百姓，皆世受国恩，何人不非纣之臣民哉！今不



Yang Jian slashed Guo Chen from his horse just as Guo was about to run away. Lu Renjie was forced to flee back to camp, and Jiang Ziya ordered his army to return.

When he heard that they had lost all three generals, King Zhou was greatly worried. He discussed the situation with his ministers and asked for their suggestions.

Yin Pobai stepped up. "As there seems no other way out, let me go to see Jiang Ziya at the risk of my life. I know Jiang quite well. I'll try to persuade him to withdraw and order the dukes back to their own dukedoms. I can only pray that I will meet with success. If not, I will swear at them and thus sacrifice my life."

King Zhou agreed to his plan, and Yin Pobai went directly to the Zhou camp. When he was admitted, Yin Pobai saw Jiang Ziya sitting in the upper middle seat, with the nobles gathered on his left and right. He moved up and said, "Dear Commander Jiang, I beg your pardon that I can't offer you a full salutation, as I'm fully armored."

"Dear old General Yin! What may we hear from you?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"It's been a long time since we last met, dear Commander. I must congratulate you now as head of the army and leader of the dukes. I've ventured here to have a word with you. Would you kindly hear me out?"

"Yes, certainly. Please take a seat."

Yin Pobai sat down and began, "As we all know, 'the king's honor is as high as Heaven.' We need a king just as we must have Heaven. Besides, according to the law, any minister who attacks another without the king's command is called a rebelling minister, and a rebelling minister must be punished by death. Any minister who unites others against the king is called a treacherous minister, and a treacherous minister and his whole family must be sentenced to death. He will be proclaimed as public enemy Number One. Every duke is bestowed with the grace of many generations and all are subjects of King Zhou. How can you be so un-



思报本，反倡为乱首，率天下诸侯相为叛乱，残贼生灵，侵王之疆土，覆军杀将，逼王之都城，为乱臣逆臣之尤，罪在不赦。千古之下，欲逃篡弑之名，岂可得乎？末将深为元帅不取也！以末将愚见：元帅当屏退诸侯，各还本国，各修德业，毋令生民涂炭。天子亦不加尔等之罪，惟厥修政事，以乐天年，则天下受无疆之福矣。不识元帅意下如何？”子牙笑曰：“老将军之言差矣！尚闻：‘天下者非一人之天下，乃天下人之天下也。’故天命无常，惟眷有德。昔尧帝有天下而让于舜；虞帝复让于禹；禹相传至桀而荒怠朝政，不修德业，遂坠夏统。成汤以大德得承天命，于是放桀而有天下，传至于今。岂意纣王罪甚于桀，荒淫不道，杀妻诛子，剖贤人之心，炮烙谏官，蚕盆宫女，囚奴正士，醢戮大臣，斲朝涉之胫，剝剔孕妇，三纲尽绝，五伦有乖，天怒民怨，自古及今，罪恶昭著未有若此之甚者。语云‘贼仁者，谓之贼；贼义者，谓之残。残贼之人，谓之一夫。’乃天下所共弃者，又安得谓之君哉！今天下诸侯共伐无道，正为天下洗此凶残，救民于水火耳，实有光于成汤。故奉天之罚者，谓之天吏，岂得尚拘之以臣伐君之名耶？”殷破败见子牙一番言词，凿凿有理，知不可解，自思：“不若明目张胆，慷慨痛言一番，以尽臣节而已。”乃大言曰：“元帅所说，乃一偏之言，岂至公之语！吾闻：君父有过，为臣子者必委曲周旋谏诤之，务引其君于当道；如甚不得已，亦尽心苦谏，虽触君父之怒，或死，或辱，或缄默以去，总不失忠臣孝子之令名。未闻暴君之过，扬父之恶，尚称为臣子者也。元帅以至德称周，以至恶归君，而尚谓之至德者乎？昔汝先王被囚羑



1999

grateful as to rebel against His Majesty? You are such a treacherous rebel and will be condemned throughout history for ten thousand years. I wish to advise you to immediately send all the dukes back to their dukedoms. His Majesty may then pardon you, and you can escape punishment. What do you think?"

Jiang Ziya replied with a smile, "You've got it all wrong, General! It's often said that 'the kingdom does not belong to one person; it's owned by all.' The will of Heaven is subject to change, and it always favors the virtuous. In ancient times, Yao offered his throne to Shun, Shun to Yu, and Yu to his descendants. His last successor, however, lost the Xia Dynasty, and the founder of the new was favored by Heaven for his great virtue. It's hard to imagine that his descendant, Zhou, is so wicked. Heaven has abandoned him, and the people hate him. We have come as a united front to save the people in distress. We will carry out punishment as Heaven has willed. We cannot recognize him as the king."

Yin Pobai realized it would be difficult to argue with him. He was silent for a moment and thought, "I must speak boldly and swear at him so that I might dedicate my life to the dynasty." He argued back in a loud voice.

"Commander, I don't think you are speaking justly. Your mind is too narrow. Should a ruler or father do something wrong, a minister or son ought to admonish him gently, trying to lead him on the proper way. Even if the king or father explodes with rage and metes out punishment by death, imprisonment or exile, the former should always act as a loyal minister or a filial son and never expose the faults of his king or father. How can you praise the West Qi regime as virtuous and curse the king as wicked? You yourself are not virtuous in the first place. Though your deceased king was imprisoned for seven years at Youli, he always be-



里七年，蒙赦归国，愈自修德，以达君父知遇之恩，未闻有一怨言及君。至今天下共以大德称之。不意传之汝君臣，构合天下诸侯，妄称君父之过，大肆猖獗，屠城陷邑，覆军杀将，白骨盈野，碧血成流；致民不聊生，四民废业，天下荒芜，父子不保，夫妻离散；此皆汝等造这等恶业，遗羞先王，得罪于天下后世，虽有孝子慈孙，焉能盖其篡弑之名哉。况我都城，尚有甲兵十余万，将不下数百员，倘背城一战，胜负尚未可知；汝等岂就藐视天子，妄恃己能耶？”左右诸侯听殷破败之言，俱各大怒。子牙未及回言，只见东伯侯姜文焕带剑上帐，指殷破败大言曰：“汝为国家大臣，不能匡正其君，引之于当道；今已陷之于丧亡，尚不自耻，犹敢鼓唇弄舌于众诸侯之前耶？真狗彘不若，死有余辜！还不速退，免尔一死！”子牙急止之曰：“两国相争，不禁来使。况为其主，何得与之相争耶？”姜文焕尚有怒色。殷破败被姜文焕数语，骂得勃然大怒，立起骂曰：“汝父搆通皇后，谋逆天子，诛之宜也。汝尚不克修德业，以盖父愆，反逞强恃众，肆行叛乱，真逆子有种。吾虽不能为君讨贼，即死为厉鬼，定杀汝等耳！”姜文焕被殷破败之骂，一腔火起，满面烟生，执剑大骂曰：“老匹夫！我思吾父被醢，国母遭害，俱是你这一班贼子播弄国政，欺君罔上，造此祸端！不杀你这老贼，吾父何日得泄此沉冤于地下也！”骂罢，手起一刀，



haved virtuously and never uttered a word against the king. How could we have guessed that his descendant would act so lawlessly? The people can't live and work in peace. You humiliate your deceased king and offend the whole nation. Even if you have filial sons and grandsons, you will never escape universal condemnation for your crime as usurpers and murderers of the king. Besides, we still have 100,000 soldiers and several hundred generals. The final victory is not yours yet. How can you be so proud?"

All the dukes and nobles listened on with growing wrath. Before Jiang Ziya could say a word, Jiang Wenhuan rushed up and pointed at Yin Pobai with his sword. He swore loudly, "If you are such a great minister, how is it that you've failed to lead the king in the proper way? His end is near, yet you go on so shamelessly before the dukes. You are lower than a pig or dog. Get out at once to save us from killing you."

Jiang Ziya hurriedly stopped Jiang Wenhuan, saying, "When two countries are at war, their messengers are always regarded as innocent, free from all charges, as each only speaks as the representative of his own master. We should not trouble him."

Jiang Wenhuan was still angry, and Yin Pobai grew red with his own fury. He got up and said loudly, "Your father plotted with the queen to murder His Majesty. Why are you still so wicked? You don't try to repent for your father's crime but only rebel against the royal government. You're just like your father. I can't put you to death for His Majesty, but I'll put you through hell after I die and turn into a wicked ghost."

Jiang Wenhuan grew even more furious and roared with his sword in hand, "You damned old fool! Why was my father cruelly minced to death? Why was Her Majesty the queen innocently slain? I'll tell you why. Because there were and still are gangs of wicked ministers, such as you, in a conspiracy against the king, inducing him to commit all kinds of evil. If I don't send you to hell, my father will never have the chance of being avenged!"





挥为两段。及至子牙止之，已无济矣。众诸侯齐曰：“东伯姜君侯斩此利口匹夫，大快人意！”子牙曰：“不然。殷破败乃天子大臣，彼以礼来讲好，岂得擅行杀戮，反成彼之名也。”姜文焕曰：“这匹夫敢于众诸侯之前鼓唇摇舌，说短论长，又叱辱不才，情殊可恨。若不杀之，心下郁闷。”子牙曰：“事已至此，悔之无及。”命左右将破败之尸抬出，以礼厚葬，打点进兵。不知后事如何，下回分解。



Then, before Jiang Ziya could stop him, Jiang Wenhuan lifted his sword and slashed Yin Pobai in two.

“Hail Duke Jiang for sending such a damned fool to death,” all the dukes cheered.

“No! It’s not right. Yin Pobai was sent here to make peace. We should not have killed him. We’ve only helped him get a good name in history,” Jiang Ziya silenced them.

“He insulted me terribly. How could I set my heart at ease if I didn’t send him to his end?” Jiang Wenhuan argued.

“It’s too late for regrets. There’s nothing we can do now,” Jiang Ziya said at last. He ordered his men to bury Yin Pobai with full funeral rites.

If you want to know how things developed, please read the next chapter.



## 第九十五回

### 子牙暴纣王十罪

诗曰：

纣王无道类穷奇，十罪传闻万世知。敲骨剖胎黎庶惨，  
蜃盆炮烙鬼神悲。西风夜吼啼玄鸟，暮雨朝垂泣子规。  
无限伤心题往事，至今青史不容私。

话说子牙命左右将殷破败尸首抬出营去，于高阜处以礼安葬毕，令众将攻城。只见纣王在殿上与众文武议事，忽午门官来启奏：“殷破败因言触忤姜尚被害，请旨定夺。”纣王大惊。傍有殷破败之子哭而奏曰：“‘两国相争，不斩来使。’岂有擅杀天使，欺逆之罪，莫此为甚！臣愿舍死以报君父之仇。”纣王慰之曰：“卿虽忠荃可嘉，须要小心用事。”殷成秀点人马出城，杀至周营搦战。子牙在营中，正议攻城，只见报马报入城中：“有将讨战。”子牙问：“谁去见阵走一遭？”有东伯侯出班曰：“末将愿往。”子牙许之。姜文焕调本部人马，出了辕门，见是殷成秀，姜文焕乃曰：“来者乃是殷成秀？你父不谙时务，鼓唇摇舌，触忤姜元帅，吾故诛之。你今又来取死也！”殷成秀大怒，骂曰：“大胆匹夫！‘两国相争，不斩来使。’吾父奉天子之命，通两国之好，反遭你这匹夫所害。杀父之仇，不共戴天，定拿你碎尸万段，以泄此恨！”骂罢，纵马舞刀，飞来直取。姜文焕手中刀劈面交还。二马相交，双刀并举。有赞为证，赞曰：



## *Chapter 95*

### **The Tyrant's Ten Capital Crimes**

Jiang Ziya ordered his men to bury Yin Pobai on a high mound. When they had finished, Jiang ordered his generals to prepare for another attack.

King Zhou was at a conference with all his ministers when it was reported that General Yin Pobai had been slain in the Zhou camp.

Yin Chengxiu, son of Yin Pobai, rushed forward. "How can they slay a messenger? This goes against custom. I'm willing to give my life in revenge for my father."

"Your loyalty is praiseworthy, but you must be very careful," King Zhou said.

Yin Chengxiu immediately left the city to launch an attack on the Zhou army. He was met by Jiang Wenhuan.

"Is that Yin Chengxiu? Your father offended Commander Jiang Ziya. I had to set him straight. Why have you come to meet your death?"

Yin Chengxiu swore back at him, "You bastard! Don't you know that when two nations are at war, their messengers are free from all charges? Didn't you realize that my father was sent by His Majesty for peace talks? How could you kill him? I can't live with my father's assassin under the same sky. I must cut you up into a thousand pieces."

Yin Chengxiu spurred his horse up to attack Jiang Wenhuan, and Jiang



2006

二将交锋势莫当，征云片片起霞光。这一个生心要保真命主；那一个立志还从侠烈王。这一个刀来恍似三冬雪；那一个利刃犹如九陌霜。这一个丹心碧血扶周主；那一个赤胆忠肝助纣王。自来恶战皆如此，怎似将军万古扬。

话说二将大战三十余合，姜文焕乃东方有名之士，殷成秀岂是文焕敌手，早被文焕一刀挥于马下。可怜父子俱尽忠于国！姜文焕下马，将殷成秀首级枭回营来，见子牙备言前事。子牙大喜。且说报马报入午门，至殿前奏曰：“殷成秀被姜文焕枭了首级，号令辕门，请旨定夺。”纣王闻言，惊魂不定，忙问左右：“事已急矣，如之奈何？”左右又报：“周兵四门攻打，各架云梯、火炮，围城甚急，十分难支，望陛下早定守城之策！”纣王未及开言，傍有鲁仁杰出班奏曰：“臣亲自上城，设法防守，保护城池，且救燃眉，再作商议。”纣王许之。鲁仁杰出朝，上城守御。不表。且说子牙见守城有法，一时难下，随鸣金收兵回营。子牙与众将商议曰：“鲁仁杰乃忠烈之士，尽心守城，急切难下，况京师城郭坚固，若以力攻，徒费心力，当以计取可也。”众门人齐曰：“我等各遁进城，里应外合，一举成功，又何必与他较胜负于城下耶？”子牙曰：“不然。今众人进城，未免有杀伤之苦，百姓岂堪遭此屠戮；况都城百姓，近在辇毂之下，被纣王残虐独甚，惨毒备尝；今再加之杀戮，非所以救民，实所以害民也。”众门人曰：“元帅之见甚是。”子牙曰：“今百姓被纣王敲骨剖胎，广施土木，负累百姓，痛入骨髓，恨不能食其肉而寝其皮，不若先写一告示射入城中，晓谕众人，使百姓自



resisted with his cutlass. Their combat raged on for over thirty rounds, and Jiang Wenhuan showed himself to be a great general. Yin Chengxiu could simply not compare. He was slashed to death and tumbled from his horse.

Jiang Wenhuan dismounted, cut off Yin's head, and returned to see Jiang Ziya. Jiang was delighted at his victory.

When he heard that Yin Chengxiu's head had been hung on a bamboo pole, King Zhou grew even more frightened and turned again to his ministers for help. As they were discussing the situation, it was reported that the Zhou army was launching attacks at all four gates. Before the king had a chance to open his mouth, Lu Renjie left his line and said, "I'll go up on the city wall in person and try my best to defend the city."

With the king's approval, Lu Renjie left to defend the city wall. As the capital was so strongly defended, Jiang Ziya finally ordered his troops to withdraw. He called a military conference with all his generals and said, "Lu Renjie is a brave general. It will be difficult for us to take the city by force. We must think of a good plan."

"We can use our magic to enter the city and attack from both within and without at the same time. We won't need to keep fighting outside the city walls," all the disciples suggested.

"Oh, no! That would result in a terrible massacre of the people. They live so close to the tyrant and have already suffered much from his ruthlessness. We must not harm them anymore. We've come to rescue them and not hurt them." Jiang Ziya would hear nothing of their idea.

"You're right. You always put the people's interests first," the disciples replied.

"The people must hate the tyrant very much. He's cut off the legs of innocent men and gouged out the bellies of pregnant women. Wouldn't it be better if we send them notes on arrows to tell them of our arrival and



相离析，人心离乱，不日其城可得矣。”众将曰：“元帅之言乃万全之策。”子牙援笔作稿。后人诗单道子牙妙计，诗曰：

告示传宣免甲戈，军民日夜受煎熬。若非妙计离心旅，安得军民唱凯歌。

话说子牙作稿，命中军官写了告示数十章，四面射入城中，或射于城上，或射于房屋之上，或射于途路之中。军民人等拾得此告示，打开观看，只见告示上写得甚是明白。怎见得，只见书上写道：

“扫荡成汤天保大元帅示谕朝歌万民知悉：天爱下民，笃生圣主，为民父母，所以保毓乾元，统御万国。岂意纣王荒淫不道，苦虐生灵，不修郊社，绝灭纪纲，杀忠拒谏，炮烙蚕盆，淫刑惨恶，人神共怒。孰意纣王稔恶不悛，惨毒性成，敲骨剖胎，取童子肾命，言之痛心切骨！民命何辜，遭此荼毒！今某奉天讨罪，大会诸侯，伐此独夫，解万民之倒悬，救群生之性命。况我周武王仁德素著，薄海通知；本欲进兵攻城，念尔等万姓久困水火之中，望拯如渴，恐一时城破，玉石俱焚，甚非我等吊民伐罪之意。尔等宜当体此，速献都城，庶免杀戮之虞，早解涂炭之苦。尔等当速议施行，毋贻后悔。特示。”

话说众军民父老人等看罢，议曰：“周主仁德著于海内，姜元帅吊伐，诚为至公。吾等遭昏君凌虐，深入骨髓，若不献城，是逆民也。”满城哄然，真是民变难治。合城军民人等俱要如此。直等至三更时分，一声喊起，朝歌城四门大开，父老军民人等齐出，大呼曰：“吾等俱系军民百姓，愿献朝



let them stage an uprising?" Jiang Ziya proposed.

"Your plan is excellent. Let's do it at once, Commander," they agreed wholeheartedly.

Jiang Ziya wrote a draft of the note and ordered his secretaries to make hundreds of copies. The Zhou soldiers then shot arrows with the attached notes into the city. Some fell on the city walls, others on roofs, and still others landed in the streets. The note read like this:

As Heaven has willed, we are united with all the dukes and have come to attack the tyrant and rescue the innocent people. The virtuous king of West Qi is worried that if we attack the city directly, you, who have suffered so long already, would only face further hardship in a battle that would burn jade and stone as one. We have given up our original plan to attack the tyrant for the sake of the people, so we beg you all to do what you can to surrender the city. Take action immediately.

When they read the note, all the soldiers and people in Zhaoge exclaimed, "King Wu is so kind and Commander Jiang so fair, but our tyrant is ruthless. We all hate him anyway, and we'd be going against the will of Heaven if we don't help overthrow him"

Everyone in the capital was stirred. At the third watch that night, cries were heard everywhere and the four gates were opened wide. Soldiers and townspeople rushed out, shouting, "We welcome our real master!" Their shouts and cheers echoed like thunder.





歌，迎迓真主！”喊声动地。且说子牙在寝帐中静坐，忽闻外面云板响，子牙忙令人探问，左右回报曰：“军民人等已献朝歌，请元帅定夺。”子牙大喜，忙传令众将：“各门止许进兵五万，其余俱在城外驻扎，不可入城搅扰。如入城者，不可妄行杀戮，擅取民间物用；违者定按军法枭首！”子牙令人马夜进朝歌，俱按警而行，各依方位，立于东、南、西、北，虽然杀声大振，百姓安堵如故。子牙将兵马屯在午门，诸侯俱各依次序扎寨。

话说纣王在宫内，正与妲己饮宴，忽听得一片杀声振天，纣王大惊，忙问宫官曰：“是那里喊杀之声！真惊破朕心也！”少时，宫官报入宫中：“启陛下：朝歌军民人等已献了城池，天下诸侯之兵俱扎在午门了。”纣王忙整衣出殿，聚文武共议大事。纣王曰：“不意军民人等如此背逆，竟将朝歌献了，如之奈何？”鲁仁杰等齐曰：“都城已破，兵临禁地，其实难支。不若背城决一死战，雌雄尚在未定；不然，徒束手待毙，无用也。”纣王曰：“卿言正合朕意。”纣王分付整点御林人马。不表。且言子牙在中军聚众诸侯商议曰：“今大兵进城，须当与纣王会兵一战，早定大事。列位贤侯并大小众将，汝其勗哉。”众诸侯齐声曰：“敢不竭股肱之力，以诛无道昏君耶！但凭元帅所委，虽死不辞。”子牙传令：“众将依次而出，不可紊乱；违者，按军法从事。”只见周营炮响，喊声大振，金鼓齐鸣，如地覆天翻之势。纣王在九间殿听得如此，忙问侍臣，只见午门官启奏：“天下诸侯请陛下答话。”纣王听罢，忙传旨意，自己结束甲冑，命排仪仗，率御林军，鲁仁杰为保驾，雷鹄、雷鹏为左右翼，纣王上逍遥



Jiang Ziya was resting in meditation when he heard the news. With great delight, he called in his men. "Only 50,000 soldiers are allowed to enter each gate. The rest must remain camped outside the city. Killing and plundering are strictly prohibited. Anyone taking from the people will be decapitated at once according to military law."

The Zhou army marched slowly and orderly into Zhaoge. They set camp right before the palace gate.

King Zhou was drinking with Daji in the palace when he suddenly heard the cries outside. He was astonished. "Where could such noise come from? How frightening!" he exclaimed.

Before long, a guard came in to report what had happened outside and told him that all the dukes were camped just before the palace gate.

King Zhou hurriedly dressed and went into court to confer with his civil and military officials. "I never expected that the soldiers and people would be so treacherous. They handed Zhaoge over to the enemy. What shall we do?" he asked anxiously.

"As we've already lost the capital, we might as well fight it out to the last. It's certainly better than waiting for our death," Lu Renjie and some other ministers said.

"You're right," King Zhou said. He ordered his royal army to meet the enemy troops.

Jiang Ziya was holding a conference with the dukes at the very same time, "Dear Dukes! Now that we've entered the capital, we must fight a decisive battle to settle the matter once and for all. Let's give our best in this final struggle!" he cried.

"We're ready to sacrifice our lives for the common cause," they answered as one.

A roar of cannons, war cries, and drums burst out like thunder from the Zhou camp. The royal gateman came in and reported to King Zhou, "The dukes demand to see you at the palace gate."

King Zhou, in full armor, ordered his guards to carry the insignia of rank in procession, with Lu Renjie as his protector and Lei Kun and Lei



马，拎金背刀，日月龙凤旗开，锵锵戈戟，整朝鸾驾，排出午门。只见周营内一声炮响，招展两杆大红旗，一对对排成队伍，循序而出，甚是整齐。纣王见子牙排五方队伍，甚是森严，兵戈整肃，左右分列，大小诸侯何止千数。又见门人、众将，一对对侍立两傍，威风凛凛，气宇轩昂。左右又列有二十四对穿大红的军政官，雁翅排开。正中央大红伞下，才是姜子牙，乘四不相而出。怎见得，有赞姜元帅一词，赞曰：

四八悟道，修身炼性。仙道难成，人间福庆。奉旨下山，辅相国政。窘迫八年，安于义命。擒怪有功，仕纣为令。姐已献谗，弃官习静。渭水持竿，磻溪隐性。八十时来，飞熊入梦。龙虎欣逢，西岐兆圣。先为相父，托孤事定。纣恶日盈，周德隆盛。三十六路，纷纷相竞。九三拜将，金台盟正。捧毂推轮，古今难并。会合诸侯，天人相应。东进五关，吉凶互订。三死七灾，缘期果证。夜进朝歌，君臣赌胜。灭纣成周，武功永咏。正是：六韬留下成王业，妙算玄机不可穷。出将入相千秋业，伐罪吊民万古功。运筹帟幄欺风后，燮理阴阳压老彭。亘古军师为第一，声名直并泰山隆。

话说纣王见子牙皓首苍颜，全装甲冑，手执宝剑，十分丰彩；又见东伯侯姜文焕、南伯侯鄂顺、北伯侯崇应鸾，当中乃武王姬发，四总督诸侯，俱张红罗伞，齐齐整整，立在子牙后面。子牙见纣王戴冲天凤翅盔，赭黄锁子甲，甚是勇猛。有赞纣王一词，赞曰：

冲天盔盘龙交结，兽吞头锁子连环。滚龙袍猩猩血染，

Peng on his left and right. He rode on his jaunty horse, held a long-handled cutlass, and followed the dragon and phoenix banners out of the palace gate.

With a roar of cannon fire, the Zhou generals marched out under two great banners. Jiang Ziya led the nobles in a square battle formation. They all looked smart and gallant. Jiang rode his nondescript horse under a great red parasol in the center. He was followed by Jiang Wenhuan, the East Grand Duke; E Shun, the South Grand Duke; Chong Yingluan, the North Grand Duke; and King Wu, the original West Grand Duke. Each was covered by a red satin parasol.

Jiang Ziya caught sight of King Zhou, who was wearing a high phoenix-wing helmet and yellow-gold chain armor. He stepped forward, bowed,





蓝鞞带紧束腰间。打将鞭悬如铁塔，斩将剑光吐霞斑。  
坐下马如同獬豸，金背刀闪烁心寒。会诸侯旗开拱手，  
逢众将力战多般。论膂力托梁换柱，讲辨难舌战群谈。  
自古为君多孟浪，可怜总赖化凶顽。

话说子牙见纣王，忙欠身言曰：“陛下，老臣姜尚甲冑在身，不能全礼。”纣王曰：“尔是姜尚么？”姜子牙答曰：“然也。”纣王曰：“尔曾为朕臣，为何逃避西岐，纵恶反叛，累辱王师。今又会天下诸侯，犯朕关隘，恃凶逞强，不遵国法，大逆不道，孰甚于此。又擅杀天使，罪在不赦！今朕亲临阵前，尚不倒戈悔过，犹自抗拒不理，情殊可恨！朕今日不杀你这贼臣，誓不回兵！”子牙答曰：“陛下居天子之尊，诸侯守拒四方，万姓供其力役，锦衣玉食，贡山航海，何莫非陛下之所有也。古云：‘率土之滨，莫非王臣。’谁敢与陛下抗礼哉。今陛下不敬上天，肆行不道，残虐百姓，杀戮大臣，惟妇言是用，淫酗沉湎，臣下化之，朋家作仇，陛下无君道久矣。其诸侯、臣民，又安得以君道待陛下也？陛下之恶，贯盈宇宙，天愁民怨，天下叛之。吾今奉天明命，行天之罚，陛下幸毋以臣叛君自居也。”纣王曰：“朕有何罪，称为大恶？”子牙曰：“天下诸侯，静听吾道纣王大恶素表著于天下者。……”众诸侯听得，齐上前，听子牙道纣王十大罪。子牙曰：

“陛下身为天子，继天立极，亶聪明，作元后，元后作民父母；今陛下沉湎酒色，弗敬上天，谓宗庙不足祀，社稷不足守，动曰：‘我有民，有命。’远君子，亲小人，败伦丧德，极古今未有之恶。罪之一也。



and said, "How do you do, Your Majesty? I beg your pardon that I can't offer you a full salutation as I am fully armored."

"Are you Jiang Shang, also known as Jiang Ziya?" King Zhou asked.

"Yes, I am."

"You were my minister once. Why did you flee to West Qi to rebel and attack the royal army? You have invaded my territories and now occupy my passes. You slew the royal messenger and still refuse to repent. You must die today. I won't return until I have your head," King Zhou said.

"You have not been a proper ruler. How can you expect us to honor you as the king!" Jiang Ziya replied.

"Tell me what crimes I've committed. How can you accuse me of being improper without any proof?"

Jiang Ziya turned, so all could hear. "Dear dukes of the nation! I will now describe King Zhou's capital crimes," he cried loudly.

All the nobles moved in closely so they could hear what Jiang Ziya announced.

Jiang Ziya said in a big voice, "Dear Dukes! Dear Colleagues! Please listen carefully to the ten crimes:

"(1) The king's foremost duty is to rule the people by the constitution that has been drafted with his wisdom according to the will of Heaven. A king must act as the parent of the people and love them above all. But you have only devoted yourself to wine and women. You blaspheme Heaven, forsake the people, and pay no heed to your dynasty. You have often bragged, 'I have the people; I am destined to be the ruler by fate.' You distance yourself from proper ministers, trust the bootlickers, ruin ethical relationships, and disdain virtue. You have been the most wicked king in the dynasty since ancient times. This is your first capital crime.



皇后为万国母仪，未闻有失德；陛下乃听信妲己之谗言，断恩绝爱，剜剔其目，炮烙其手，致皇后死于非命，废元配而妄立妖妃，纵淫败度，大坏彝伦。罪之二也。

太子为国之储贰，承祧宗社，乃万民所仰望者也；轻信谗言，命晁雷、晁田封赐尚方，立刻赐死；轻弃国本，不顾嗣胤，忘祖绝宗，得罪宗社。罪之三也。

黄耆大臣，乃国之枝干；陛下乃播弃荼毒之，炮烙杀戮之，囚奴幽辱之，如杜元铣、梅柏、商容、胶鬲、微子、箕子、比干是也。诸君子不过去君之非，引君子之道，而遭此惨毒，废股肱而昵比罪人，君臣之道绝矣。罪之四也。

信者人之大本，又为天子号召四方者也，不得以一字增损；今陛下听妲己之阴谋，宵小之奸计，诬诈诸侯入朝，将东伯侯姜桓楚、南伯侯鄂崇禹，不分皂白，一碎醢其尸，一身首异处，失信于天下诸侯，四维不张。罪之五也。

法者非一己之私，刑者乃持平之用，未有过用之者也；今陛下悉听妲己惨恶之言，造炮烙，阻忠谏之口，设蜃盆，吞宫人之肉，冤魂啼号于白昼，毒焰障蔽于青天，天地伤心，人神共愤。罪之六也。

天地之生财有数，岂得妄用奢靡，穷财之力，拥为己有，竭民之生？今陛下惟污池台榭是崇，酒池肉林是



“(2) The queen was regarded by all as the kind mother of the nation. She was virtuous and loved by all. How could you believe Daji’s lies and sever your love of her? You cruelly gouged out her eyes, burned her hands, and caused her to die. How could you depose her and set up that lewd concubine as your queen, copulating with her day and night? This is your second capital crime.

“(3) The crown prince was the successor to the throne. He was respected by the people, but you believed the lies against him. You sent Chao Lei and Chao Tian to assassinate the crown prince and his brother with your sword. You completely ignored what your ancestors’ have done to create this dynasty. This is your third capital crime.

“(4) The loyal high ministers are the trunk and strong branches of the nation, but you have shown no concern whatsoever for them. You disdained them and treated them unkindly. You cruelly burnt them to death on the red hot burning pillars or imprisoned them as slaves. Du Yuanxian, Mei Bo, Shang Rong, Jiao Ge, Wei Zi, Ji Zi, and Bi Gan merely admonished you as they should have, trying to bring you back onto the right track. How could you treat them so ruthlessly? You severed the ethical relationship between a king and his ministers. This is your fourth capital crime.

“(5) Honesty is the foundation of human existence. It’s the most powerful weapon a king needs to rule his nation. How could you believe the plot of Daji and the bootlickers? You tricked the dukes into coming to see you and minced up Jiang Huanchu, the East Grand Duke and beheaded E Chongyu, the South Grand Duke. They were completely innocent, and the nobles lost all faith in you. This is your fifth capital crime.

“(6) The law must be justly applied and punishment fairly meted out. But you were deluded by Daji and accepted her wicked idea of building the brass burning pillars to roast faithful officials in a cruel death. You also followed Daji’s suggestion of digging a large pit filled with poisonous serpents. You had your palace maids pushed in to feed the serpents, causing their innocent souls to wail and their bodies to fill the air with a foul stink. This is your sixth capital crime.

“(7) Natural resources and national wealth are always limited. They should not be spent extravagantly. But you insisted on building high tow-





用，残宫人之命，造鹿台广施土木，积天下之财，穷民物之力，又纵崇侯虎剥削贫民，有钱者三丁免抽，无钱者独丁赴役，民生日促，偷薄成风，皆陛下贪剥有以倡之。罪之七也。

廉耻者乃风顽惩钝之防，况人君为万民之主者；今陛下信妲己狐媚之言，诬贾氏上摘星楼，君欺臣妻，致贞妇死节，西宫黄贵妃直谏，反遭摔下摘星楼，死于非命，三纲已绝，廉耻全无。罪之八也。

举措乃人君之大体，岂得妄自施张；今陛下以玩赏之娱，残虐生命，斲朝涉者之胫，验民生之老少，剝剔孕妇之胎，试反背之阴阳，民庶何辜，遭此荼毒！罪之九也。

人君之宴乐有常，未闻流连忘反。今陛下夤夜暗纳妖妇喜媚，共妲己在鹿台昼夜宣淫，酗酒肆乐，信妲己以童男，割炙肾命，以作羹汤，绝万姓之嗣脉，残忍惨毒，极今古之冤。罪之十也。

臣虽能言之，陛下决不肯悔过迁善，肆行荼毒，累军民于万死，暴白骨于青天，独不思臣民生斯世者，竟遭陛下无辜之杀戮耶！今臣尚特奉天之明命，襄周王发恭行天之罚，陛下毋得以臣逆君而少之也。”纣王听姜子牙暴其十罪，只气得目瞪口呆。只见八百诸侯听罢，齐呐一声喊：“愿诛此无道昏君！”众人方欲上前，有东伯侯姜文焕大呼曰：“殷受不得回



ers, terraces, a wine pond, and a Meat Forest. The national treasure house and the people's own resources have been depleted. In addition, you allowed Chong Houhu to exploit the poor people through bribery. A household with three adults was free from conscription, but a single parent family was press-ganged if no bribe was paid. The people's daily life has degenerated, and thefts are a daily occurrence. All this has been encouraged and promoted by you. This is your seventh capital crime.

“(8) Chastity is our strongest defense against violation of the rites. As master of the whole nation, the king must watch himself closely. But you were induced by the coquettish Daji to trick Huang Feihu's wife into seeing you in the Star-Picking Mansion. There you attempted to insult the wife of your minister, forcing that chaste lady to commit suicide by jumping from the high building. Concubine Huang of the West Palace came straightaway to admonish you, but you threw her from the balcony and killed her. You are shameless. This is your eighth capital crime.

“(9) Good conduct is of utmost importance. The king must not act recklessly. But you did away with innocent people for your own personal pleasure. You broke the legs of two men and cut open pregnant women. Why should these innocent citizens die so tragically? This is your ninth capital crime.

“(10) A king must exercise restraint in pleasure. But you have taken Hu Ximei, that lewd sprite woman, to join you and Daji in the Happy Terrace. You drink and copulate with no thought for other matters. You believed what Daji said and drank soup cooked with the kidneys of virgin lads to increase your sexual drive. You cruelly and savagely destroyed these young people for your own selfish desire. This is your tenth capital crime.

“Though I may speak clearly and without reserve, you are unwilling to repent and act in a proper manner. You have caused millions of innocent people and soldiers to die. We have now come, by order of Heaven, with King Wu of Zhou to punish you as you deserve.”

Listening to Jiang Ziya's list of his ten capital crimes, King Zhou became greatly enraged. His mouth grew numb and his eyes stared straight ahead. Suddenly he heard the dukes roar with one voice, “This tyrant must die!”



马!吾来也!”纣王见一员大将，金甲，红袍，白马，大刀，怎见得，有赞为证，赞曰：

顶上盔，朱缨灿；龟背甲，金光烂。大红袍上绣团龙，护心宝镜光华现。腰间宝带扣丝蛮，鞍傍箭插如云雁。打将鞭，吴钩剑，杀人如草心无间。马上横担斩将刀，坐下龙驹追紫电。铜心铁胆东伯侯，保周灭纣姜文焕。

话说东伯侯走马至军前，大喝曰：“吾父王姜桓楚被你醢尸，吾姐姐姜后被你剜目烙手，俱死于非命。今日借武王仁义之师，仗姜元帅之力，诛此无道，以泄我无穷之恨!”只见南伯侯青骢马冲出，厉声大叫：“无道昏君!杀父之仇，不共戴天，姜皇兄，留功与我鄂顺!”马至军前，叱曰：“你行无道，吾父王未曾犯罪，无故而诛大臣，情理难容也!”把手中枪一晃，劈胸就刺。纣王手中刀劈面交还。姜文焕手中刀使开，冲杀过来。二侯与纣王战在午门。怎见得，有诗为证，诗曰：

龙虎相争起战场，三军擂鼓列刀枪。红旗招展如赤焰，素带飘飘似雪霜。纣王江山风烛短，周家福祚海天长。从今一战雌雄定，留得声名万古扬。

北伯侯崇应鸾见东、南二侯大战纣王，也把马催开，来助二侯。纣王又见来了一路诸侯，抖擞神威，力战三路诸侯，一口刀抵住他三般兵器，只杀得天昏地暗，旭日无光。武王在逍遥马上叹曰：“只因天子无道，致使天下诸侯会集于此，不分君臣，互相争战，冠履倒置，成何体统!真是天翻地覆之



Jiang Wenhuan rushed up first and shouted loudly, "King Zhou, don't run away! Here I come."

King Zhou saw a great general in gold armor and a red robe on a white horse with a long-handled cutlass running straight at him, yelling, "My father was sliced to mincemeat and my sister, your queen, had her eyes gouged out and her hands burned. We have come with King Wu and Jiang Ziya to punish this tyrant with death to avenge them."

E Shun rode up beside him on his green-hair horse and yelled, "Brother Jiang, let me slay the tyrant with my own hands! This damned tyrant ruthlessly killed my father, who was innocent. How can Heaven allow you to live any longer," E Shun swore at King Zhou.

He attacked with his lance, and the tyrant parried with his cutlass. Jiang Wenhuan and Chong Yingluan spurred their horses in to join the combat with King Zhou. The tyrant was able to resist the three dukes with his cutlass.

King Wu watched the scene from his jaunty horse and sighed, "His Majesty did not conduct himself properly, forcing the dukes to come and take him on in combat. It's all mixed up, as if one wore shoes on the head and a coronet on the feet. Ah, how terrible it is."



时!”忙将逍遥马催上前，与子牙曰：“三侯还该善化天子，如何与天子抗礼，甚无君臣体面。”子牙曰：“方才大王听老臣言纣王十罪，乃获罪于天地人神者，天下之人，皆可讨之，此正是奉天命而灭无道，老臣岂敢有违天命耶！”武王曰：“当今虽是失政，吾等莫非臣子，岂有君臣相对敌之理？元帅可解此危。”子牙曰：“大王既有此意，传令命军士擂鼓。”子牙传令：“擂鼓！”天下诸侯听的鼓响，左右有三十五骑纷纷杀出，把纣王围在垓心。不知纣王性命如何，且听下回分解。

King Wu rode over to Jiang Ziya and said, "The dukes ought to help His Majesty onto the proper track. How can they fight him, ignoring the fact that he is the king and they are his ministers?"

"You must have heard the ten capital crimes I just announced. He is a tyrant and has been discarded by Heaven and earth. Everyone has the right to curse and attack him. How can we disobey the will of Heaven?" Jiang Ziya replied.

"Though he does not act properly, his ministers must not fight with him directly," King Wu argued.

But Jiang Ziya would not give in. "Oh, Your Highness! How can you be so obstinate. Let's order the soldiers to beat the drums then," he said with a shrug of his shoulders.

When the drums were beaten, fifty more nobles rushed out to join the fight. They surrounded the tyrant in a large circle.

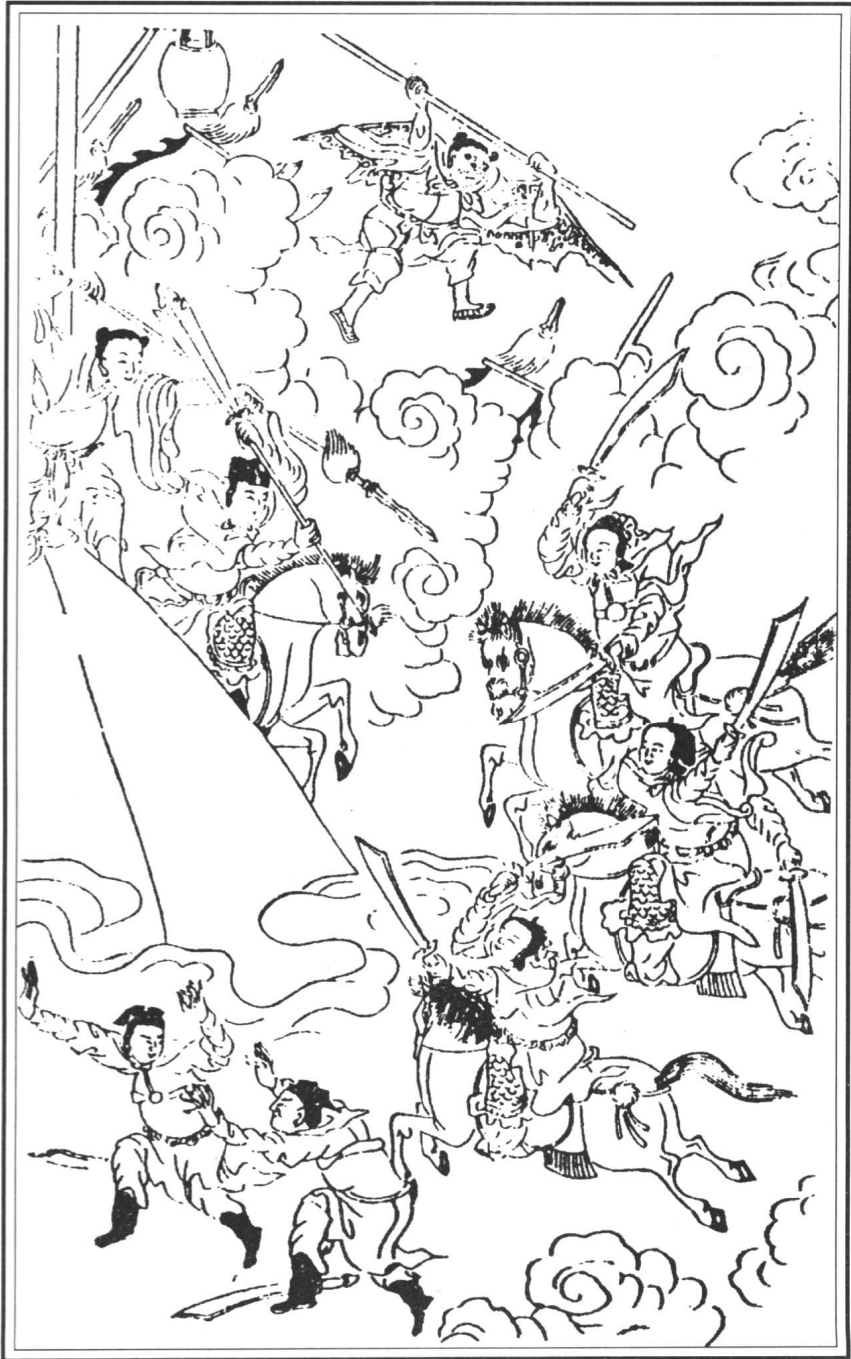
What happened to King Zhou? Please read the next chapter if you wish to find out.







2025





## 第九十六回

### 子牙发柬擒妲己

诗曰：

从来巧笑号倾城，狐媚君王浪用情。嫵娜腰肢催命剑，  
轻盈体态引魂兵。雉鸡有意能歌月，玉石无心解鼓声。  
断送殷汤成个事，依然都带血痕羹。

话说武王是仁德之君，一时那里想起“鼓进金止”之意。只见众将听的鼓响，各要争先，枪刀剑戟，鞭铜抓锤，钩镰钺斧，拐子流星，一齐上前，将纣王裹在垓心。鲁仁杰对雷鹄、雷鹏曰：“‘主忧臣辱’，吾等正于此时尽忠报国，舍一死以决雌雄，岂得令反臣扬威逞武哉！”雷鹄曰：“兄言是也。吾等当舍死以报先帝。”三将纵马杀进重围。怎见得纣王大战天下诸侯，有赞为证，赞曰：

杀气迷空锁地，烟尘障岭漫山。摆列诸侯八百，一时地覆天翻。花腔鼓插如雷震，御林军展动旗幡。众门人犹如猛虎，殷纣王渐渐摧残。这也是天下遭逢杀运，午门外撼动天关。众诸侯各分方位，满空中剑戟如攒。东伯侯姜文焕施威仗勇；南伯侯鄂顺抖擞如彪。北伯侯崇应鸾横施雪刃；武王下南宫适似猛虎争飧。正东上青幡下，众诸侯犹如靛染；正西上白幡下，骁勇将恍若冰岩。正南上红幡下，众门徒浑如火块；正北上皂幡下，牙门将恰似乌漫。这纣王神威天纵；鲁仁杰一点心丹。



## Chapter 96

### Daji Is Captured

King Wu was a virtuous man. He did not understand military commands, such as “charge at the beating of drums and retreat at the striking of gongs.” He could only see that all the generals, nobles, and even soldiers rushed in to fight when they heard the drums. The tyrant was completely encircled by lances, cutlasses, swords, halberds, staves, hammers, scythes, hooks, and axes.

“An insult to His Majesty is humiliation for his subjects. It’s the right time now to sacrifice our lives for the nation. We can’t let these rebels go on so recklessly,” Lu Renjie said to Lei Kun and Lei Peng.

“You’re right, Brother! We should fight until we drop for our deceased rulers,” Lei Kun replied.

Lu Renjie, Lei Kun, and Lei Peng broke into the circle to help King Zhou. Though the tyrant was surrounded, he still fought on fearlessly.





雷鹞右遮左架；雷鹏左护右拦。众诸侯齐动手那分上下；殷纣王共三员将前后胡戡。顶上砍，这兵器似飏飏冰块；肋下刺，那枪剑如蟒龙齐翻。只听得叮叮咣咣响亮，乒乒乓乓循环。鞭来打，铜来敲，斧来劈，剑来刳，左左右右吸人魂；勾开鞭，拨去铜，逼去斧，架开剑，上上下下心惊颤。正是那纣王力如三春茂草，越战越有精神；众诸侯怒发，恍似轰雷，喊杀声闻斗柄。纣王初时节精神足备，次后来气力难撑。为社稷何必贪生，好功名焉能惜命！存亡只在今朝，死生就此目下。殷纣王毕竟勇猛，众诸侯终欠调停。喝声：“着！”将官落马；叫声：“中！”翻下鞍鞞。纣王刀摆似飞龙，砍将伤军如雪片，劈诸侯如同儿戏，斩大将鬼哭神惊。当此时恼了哪吒殿下，那杨戩怒气冲冲，大喝道：“纣王不要逃走！等我来与你见个雌雄！”可怜见：惊天动地哭声悲，嚎山泣岭三军泪。英雄为国尽亡躯，血水滔滔红满地。马撞人死口难开，将劈三军无躲避。只杀的：哀声小校乱奔驰，破鼓折枪都抛弃。多少良才带血回，无数军兵拖伤去。纣王胆战将心惊，雷鹞、雷鹏无主意。这是：君王无道丧家邦，谋臣枉用千条计。这一阵只杀得：雪消春水世无双，风卷残红铺满地。

话说纣王被众诸侯围在垓心，全然不惧，使发了手中刀，一声响，将南伯侯一刀挥于马下。鲁仁杰枪挑林善。恼了哪吒，登开风火轮，大喝曰：“不得猖獗，吾来也！”傍有杨戩、雷震子、韦护、金木二吒一齐大叫曰：“今日大会天下诸侯，难道我等不如他们！”齐杀至重围。杨戩刀劈了雷鹞；

Suddenly, with a powerful sweep of his right arm, he slashed the South Grand Duke in two. At his side, Lu Renjie stabbed Lin Shan in the breast.

Nezha was greatly annoyed by the scene and shouted, "Calm down there! I'm coming."

Thunderbolt, Yang Jian, Wei Hu, Jinzha, and Muzha also set up a great clamor. "The nobles are fighting so gallantly. How can we just watch?" they roared.

They all quickly ran forward to join the combat. Yang Jian chopped Lei Kun to death with his cutlass, Nezha knocked Lu Renjie to the ground with his Universal Ring, and Thunderbolt struck Lei Peng to death with his cudgel.





哪吒祭起乾坤圈，把鲁仁杰打下鞍鞞，丧了性命。雷震子一棍结果雷鹏。东伯侯姜文焕见哪吒众人立功，将刀放下，取鞭在手，照纣王打来。纣王及至看时，鞭已来得太急，闪不及，早已打中后背，几乎落马，逃回午门。众诸侯呐一声喊，齐追至午门。只见午门紧闭，众诸侯方回。子牙鸣金收兵，升帐坐下。众诸侯来见子牙。子牙查点大小将官，损了二十六员。又见南伯侯鄂顺被纣王所害，姜文焕等着实伤悼。武王对众诸侯曰：“今日这场恶战，大失君臣名分，姜君侯又伤主上一鞭，使孤心下甚是不忍。”姜文焕曰：“大王言之差矣！纣王残虐，人神共怒，便杀之于市曹，犹不足以尽其辜，大王又何必为彼惜哉！”

话说纣王被姜文焕一鞭打伤后背，败回午门，至九间殿坐下，低头不言，自己沉吟叹曰：“悔不听忠谏之言，果有今日之辱！可惜鲁仁杰、雷鹄兄弟皆遭此难！”傍有中大夫飞廉、恶来奏曰：“今陛下神威天纵，虽于千万人之中，犹能刀劈数名反臣。只是悞被姜文焕鞭伤陛下龙体，只须保养数日，再来会战，必定胜其反叛也。古云：‘吉人天相。’‘胜负乃兵家之常’，陛下又何须过虑？”纣王曰：“忠良已尽，文武萧条；朕已着伤，何能再举，又有何颜与彼争衡哉？”随卸甲胄入内宫，不表。且说飞廉谓恶来曰：“兵困午门，内无应



Jiang Wenhuan saw how well the other generals were fighting. He put his cutlass on the saddle, took out his staff, and struck King Zhou with all his might. The tyrant was hit heavily on the back and nearly fell from his horse. He ran back inside the palace, and though the nobles chased after him, he managed to get in safely, with the gate closed tightly behind him.

Jiang Ziya ordered his army to withdraw. He called the roll and found that, though they had won the battle, they'd lost twenty-six officers of different ranks. Jiang Wenhuan and the other nobles deeply mourned the death of the South Grand Duke, but King Wu said, "The fight today destroyed the relationship between the king and his ministers. Jiang Wenhuan has wounded His Majesty. That causes me unbearable pain."

"No, Your Highness! King Zhou is hated by Heaven and the people. Even execution is not punishment enough. You should not pity him, Your Highness," Jiang Wenhuan stated emphatically.

King Zhou ran through the palace gate and went to rest in the Nine Chamber Court. He lowered his head in silence. "I do regret that I didn't listen to my loyal ministers. What a humiliation! And what a pity that Lu Renjie, Lei Kun, and Lei Peng all lost their lives in today's combat," he said with a sigh.

Fei Lian and E Lai approached the king and flattered him. "You fought heroically today. You were completely surrounded yet managed to chop several rebelling nobles to death. You must rest for a few days until your wound is healed and then take them on again. Victory is certain as the old proverbs say, 'Heaven helps the good man,' and 'victory and defeat are common in war.' Don't worry too much, Your Majesty."

"All the loyal and talented ministers are gone. We've only a few officials left, and I'm severely wounded. How can I fight them again? How can I maintain my dignity?" King Zhou turned his back on them in disappointment. He took off his armor and went into the inner chambers to rest.



兵，外无救援，眼见旦夕必休；吾辈何处以之？倘或兵进皇城。‘荆山失火，玉石俱焚。’可惜百万家资，竟被他人所有！”恶来笑曰：“长兄此言竟不知时务！凡为丈夫者，当见机而作。眼见纣王做不得事业，退不得天下诸侯，亡在旦夕；我和你乘机弃纣归周，原不失了自己富贵。况武王仁德，姜子牙英明，他见我等归周，必不加罪。如此方是上着。”飞廉曰：“贤弟此言使我如梦中唤醒。只是还有一件，以我愚意，俟他攻破皇城之日，我和你入内庭，将传国符玺盗出，藏隐于家，待诸侯议定，吾想继汤者必周，等武王入内庭，吾等方去朝见，献此国玺玉符。武王必定以我们系忠心为国，欣然不疑，必加以爵禄。此不是一举两得？”恶来又曰：“即后世必以我等为知机，而不失‘良禽择木，贤臣择主’之智。”二人言罢大笑，自谓得计。正是：

痴心妄想居周室，斩首周岐谢将台。

话说飞廉与恶来共议弃纣归周，不表。

且说纣王入内宫，有妲己、胡喜媚、王贵人三个前来接驾。纣王一见三人，不觉心头酸楚，语言悲咽，对妲己曰：“朕每以姬发、姜尚小视，不曾着心料理，岂知彼纠合天下诸侯，会兵于此。今日朕亲与姜尚会兵，势孤莫敌，虽然斩了他数员反臣，到被姜文焕这厮鞭伤后背，致鲁仁杰阵亡，雷鹄兄弟死节。朕静坐自思，料此不能久守，亡在旦夕。想成汤传位二十八世，今一旦有失，朕将何面目见先帝于在天也！朕已追悔无及，只三位美人与朕久处，一旦分离，朕心不忍，为之奈何？倘武王兵入内庭，朕岂肯为彼所掳，朕当



“A great army is at the palace gate, and there’s no way we can fight them off. We will die sooner or later. What can we do? Once they enter the palace, our personal property will be lost. What a pity!” Fei Lian said to E Lai.

“How can you be so pessimistic, Brother? A hero must be ready to deal with any situation. It’s obvious that King Zhou will be defeated at any time. Why don’t we surrender so we can keep what we already have? Besides, King Wu is kind and Jiang Ziya is gallant. They must expect us to join them. What do you think?” E Lai proposed.

Fei Lian replied with a smile, “You are so clever, Brother. But I have another idea. When the enemy troops break into the palace, let’s go into the inner court and take the national seal. When King Wu enters the inner court as the new king, we can present the seal to him. He’ll then think we are loyal to the new dynasty and grant us high posts. This way we can kill two birds with one stone!”

They plotted on enthusiastically, filling the room with devious laughter.

“All future generations will regard us as wise men with a good understanding of the proverb, “A smart bird knows how to choose a tree to perch on, and a good minister knows how to select the right master to serve’,” E Lai concluded with a snicker.

Entering the inner chamber, King Zhou was met by Daji, Hu Ximei and Concubine Wang. He wept bitterly before them.

“I ignore Ji Fa and Jiang Ziya and never took any precaution against them. How could I have imagined they would unite all the dukes to attack us? Even though I hacked some of their generals to death, I was hit seriously by Jiang Wenhuan on the back. Lu Renjie, Lei Kun, and Lei Peng have all lost their lives. The palace will be taken any time now. The Shang Dynasty has lasted for twenty-eight generations. How can I face my ancestors after I die? How can I bear to be separated from you three? What shall we do? If King Wu breaks into the inner palace, I must





先期自尽。但朕绝之后，卿等必归姬发。只朕与卿等一番恩爱，竟如此结局，言之痛心！”道罢，泪如雨下。三妖闻纣王之言，齐齐跪下，泣对纣王曰：“妾等蒙陛下眷爱，镂心刻骨，没世难忘。今不幸遭此离乱，陛下欲舍妾身何往？”纣王泣曰：“朕恐被姜尚所掳，有辱我万乘之尊。朕今别你三人，自有去向。”姐已俯伏纣王膝上，泣曰：“妾听陛下之言，心如刀割。陛下何遽忍舍妾等而他往耶？”随扯住纣王袍服，泪流满面，柔声娇语，哭在一处，甚难割舍。纣王亦无可奈何，遂命左右治酒，与三美人共饮作别。纣王把盏，作诗一首，歌之以劝酒，诗曰：

“忆昔歌舞在鹿台，孰知姜尚会兵来。分飞鸾凤惟今日，再会鸳鸯已隔垓。烈士尽随烟焰灭，贤臣方际运弘开。一杯别酒心如醉，醒后沧桑变几回。”

话说纣王作诗毕，遂连饮数杯。姐已又奉一盏为寿。纣王曰：“此酒甚是难饮，真所谓不能下咽者也！”姐已曰：“陛下且省愁烦。妾身生长将门，昔日曾学刀马，颇能厮杀。况妹妹喜媚与王贵人善知道术，皆通战法。陛下放心，今晚看妾等三人一阵成功，解陛下之忧闷耳。”纣王闻言大悦：“若是御妻果能破贼，真百世之功，朕有何忧也！”姐已又奉纣王数杯，乃与喜媚、王贵人结束停当，议定今晚去劫周营。纣王见三人甲冑整齐，心中大喜，只看今晚成功。不表。



kill myself first. I could not stand to be their captive. Perhaps I should run away, but you would all be taken by Ji Fa and our love would be destroyed. What a tragedy! I feel as if my heart has been broken,” King Zhou cried to Daji, tears streaking down his face.

The three sprite women knelt down, wept, and said, “We can never forget your deep love. How can you give us up? Where will you go?”

Daji put her head in King Zhou’s lap, her face covered with falling tears. She held him fast and would not let him leave. King Zhou could do nothing, so he ordered his attendants to lay the table for a farewell feast with his three beautiful women.

The king downed a cup and then wrote a poem for Daji to sing as they drank on.

Much pleasure had we on this Happy Terrace,  
But unexpectedly comes the bloody army.  
The love of the phoenix couple gone forever,  
A reunion never to come again.  
Our heroes have all been turned to ashes,  
While good scholars now enjoy their best day.  
This cup of separation helps me to forget,  
Sobering, the world is new in every aspect.

King Zhou drank several more cups but finally sighed and said, “I can’t drink another. The wine only sticks to my throat.”

“Don’t feel so sad, Your Majesty. I was born into a general’s family and learned how to fight with a cutlass as a child. Besides, both Hu Ximei and Concubine Wang know some magic and are familiar with military strategies. Your Majesty, let us fight for you tonight,” Daji said comfortingly.

“It would be wonderful if you could defeat those rebels. I can set my heart at ease then,” King Zhou said happily.

After offering him several more cups, Daji, Hu Ximei, and Concubine Wang donned armor in preparation for their surprise night raid. The king was really delighted to see his favorite ladies so smartly dressed up.



且说子牙在营中筹算：“甲子届期，纣王当灭。”心中大喜，不曾着意，就未曾提防三妖来劫营，故此几乎失利。只见将至二更，只听得半空中风响。怎见得，有赋为证，赋曰：

冷冷飕飕，惊人清况。飒飒萧萧，沙扬尘障。透壁穿窗，寻波逐浪。聚怪藏妖，兴魔伏魍。也会去助虎张威，也会去从龙俯仰。起初时，都是些悠悠荡荡浙零声；次后来，却尽是滂滂湃湃呼吼响。且休言推残月里娑罗；尽道是刮倒人间丛莽。推开了积雾重云，吹折了兰桡画桨。苍松翠竹尽遭殃，朱阁丹楼俱扫荡。这一阵风只吹得鬼哭与神惊，八百诸侯俱胆丧。

话说姐已与胡喜媚等三人俱全装甲冑，甚是停当。姐己用双刀，胡喜媚用两口宝剑，王贵人用一口绣鸾刀，俱乘桃花马；发一声响，杀人周营。各驾妖风，播土扬尘，飞砂走石，冲进周营内来。只见周营中军士，咫尺间不分南北，那辨东西，守营小校尽奔驰，巡逻将士皆束手。真个是：层围木栅撞得东倒西歪，铁骑连车冲得七横八竖。惊动了大小众将，急报子牙。子牙忙起身出帐观看，只见一派妖风怪雾，滚将进来。子牙忙传令：“命众门人齐去，将妖怪获来！”哪吒听得，急登风火轮，摇火尖枪；杨戩纵马，使三尖刀；雷震子使黄金棍；韦护用降魔杵；李靖摇方天戟；金、木二吒用四口宝剑，齐杀出中军帐来，迎敌三妖。只见三妖全身甲冑，横冲直撞，左右厮杀。杨戩大呼曰：“好业障！不要猖獗，敢来此自送死也！”哪吒登轮，奋勇当先；七位门人将三妖围在垓心。子牙在中军用五雷正法镇压邪气，把手一放，半空中一声霹雳，只震得三妖胆颤心寒。三妖见来的势头不好，俱是些道术之士，料难取胜，不敢恋战，借一阵怪风，连人带马冲出周营，往午门逃回。三妖自二更入周营，



Jiang Ziya had already predicted the date of King Zhou's complete downfall and never imagined that the three sprites would try to attack his camp at night. Suddenly, at the second watch, a strong wind whipped through the camp, sending stones flying. Daji, Hu Ximei, and Concubine Wang rode horses on their sprite wind towards the Zhou camp. Daji held double cutlasses, Hu Ximei two swords, and Concubine Wang a large slender knife forged with a phoenix on each side. The Zhou soldiers were sleeping soundly in their tents, and the patrolmen and guards were so surprised that the camp barricades were nearly all broken through. The generals rushed in to report to Jiang Ziya. When he saw the sprite aura outside, he immediately ordered the disciples to go into action.

Nezha got on his Wind-Fire Wheels with his Fire-Tip Lance, Yang Jian galloped out with his three-pointed cutlass, Thunderbolt flew out with his gold cudgel, Wei Hu carried his Monster Subduing Club, Li Jing his ridged halberd, and Jinzha and Muzha each wielded two swords.

Nezha led the pack, and in a second, all seven highly talented disciples surrounded the three sprites. At the very same moment, Jiang Ziya was sitting in his tent reciting charms. Thunder crashed in the air above the sprites and lightning exploded around them.

When they realized their enemy's tremendous power, the sprites knew they had absolutely no chance of victory. To linger on would mean death, so they turned their horses and ran away with a whirl of sprite wind. They had left the palace at the second watch and returned at the fourth.



只至四更方才逃回，也伤了些士卒。不表。且说纣王在午门外看三妃今夜劫营成功，洗目以待。忽见三妃来至，纣王问曰：“三卿劫营，胜负如何？”妲己曰：“姜子牙俱有准备，故此不能成功，几乎被他众门人困于核心，险不能见陛下也。”纣王闻言大惊，低首不言。进了午门，上了大殿，纣王不觉泪下曰：“不期天意丧吾，莫可救解。”妲己亦泣曰：“妾身指望今日成功，平定反臣而安社稷，不料天心不顺，力不能支，如之奈何！”纣王曰：“朕已知天意难回，非人力可解，从今与你三人一别，各自投生，免使彼此牵绊。”把袍袖一摆，径往摘星楼去了。三妖也慰留不住。后人有诗叹之，诗曰：

大厦将倾止一茎，尚思劫寨破周兵。孰知天意归真主，犹向三妖诉别情。

话说三妖见纣王自往摘星楼去了，妲己谓二妖曰：“今日纣王此去，必寻自尽，只我等数年来把成汤一个天下送得乾乾淨净，如今我们却往那里去好？”九头雉鸡精曰：“我等只好迷惑纣王，其他皆不听也。此时无处可栖，不若还归轩辕坟去，依然自家巢穴，尚可安身，再为之计。”玉石琵琶精曰：“姐姐之言甚善。”三妖共议还归旧巢。不表。

且说子牙被三妖劫营，杀至营前，三妖逃遁。子牙收军，升帐坐下。众诸侯上帐参谒。子牙曰：“一时未曾防此妖孽，被他劫营，幸得众门人俱是道术之士，不然几为所算，失了锐气。今若不早除，后必为患。”子牙言罢，命排香案。左右闻命，即将香案施設停当。子牙祷毕，将金钱排下，乃大惊曰：“原来如此！若再迟延，几被三妖逃去。”忙



King Zhou was waiting patiently just inside the palace gates, expecting his ladies to return in great victory. When he saw them come back in such an awful condition, he asked, "What happened in the raid, my sweets?"

"Jiang Ziya was well prepared. We were surrounded by his disciples and nearly killed. We came back because we were afraid we would not be able to see you again," Daji replied.

Disappointed, King Zhou lowered his head in silence. He went into the court and wept. "I now know that the grace of Heaven will never return to my side. It's hopeless to keep on trying. Let's go our own separate ways, lest we all suffer together in the coming doomsday," King Zhou stated resolutely, and with a flick of his sleeves, went directly to the Star-Picking Mansion. The three sprites had no chance of stopping him.

Daji turned to Hu Ximei and Concubine Wang. "King Zhou must mean to commit suicide. Where can we go then, as we have already ruined this dynasty?" she asked them.

"It seems we can delude only King Zhou with sexual pleasure. No one else is likely to fall into our trap. Why don't we return to our old nest, the cave at Emperor Xuanyuan's grave. It was our home before and we can stay there for the time being," Hu Ximei, the pheasant sprite with nine heads suggested.

The others agreed, and the three sprites planned their immediate return to the old nest.

After the night raid, Jiang Ziya called a military conference to discuss the situation. "We were attacked by the three sprites, and though it was a complete surprise, we were not defeated. The disciples are strong enough to deal with them. But we must get rid of them as soon as possible to ward off further trouble," Jiang Ziya explained.

Jiang then ordered his men to lay the incense burner on the desk. He burnt incense and offered prayers to predict what would happen next. He was greatly astonished to see how the gold coins landed.

"We must move quickly. The sprites are preparing to run away!" Jiang Ziya cried.



传令，命：“杨戩领柬帖，你去把九头雉鸡精拿来。如走了，定按军法！”杨戩领令去了。子牙又令：“雷震子领柬帖，你去把九尾狐狸精拿来。如有有失，定依军法！”又令：“韦护领柬帖，你去将玉石琵琶精拿来。如违令，定按军法！”三个门人领令，出了辕门，议曰：“我三人去拿此三妖，不知从何处下手？那里去寻他？”杨戩道：“三妖此时料纣王已不济事了，必竟从宫中逃出。吾等借土遁，站在空中等候，看他从何处逃走。吾等务要小心擒获，不得卤莽，恐有疏虞不便。”雷震子曰：“杨师兄言之有理。”道罢，各驾土遁，往空中等候三妖来至。有诗赞之，诗曰：

一道光华隐法身，修成幻化合天真。驱龙伏虎生来妙，  
今日三妖怎脱神。

话说姐己与胡喜媚、王贵人在宫中还吃了几个宫人，方才起身。一阵风响，三妖起在空中，往前要走，只见杨戩看见风响，随与雷震子、韦护曰：“孽怪来也！各要小心！”杨戩拎宝剑大呼曰：“怪物休走！吾来也！”九头雉鸡精见杨戩仗剑赶来，举手中剑骂道：“我们姊妹断送了成汤天下，与你们的功名，你反来害我等，何无天理也！”杨戩大怒曰：“业畜休得多言，早早受缚！吾奉姜元帅将令，特来擒你。不要走，吃吾一剑！”雉鸡精举剑来迎。雷震子黄金棍打来，早有九尾狐狸精双刀架住。韦护降魔杵打来，玉石琵琶精用绣鸾刀敌住。三妖与杨戩等三人战，未及三五回合，三妖架妖光逃走；杨戩与雷震子、韦护惟恐有失，紧紧赶来。怎见得，有



Jiang then wrote instructions on three sheets of paper and sent Yang Jian after the pheasant sprite, Thunderbolt after the fox sprite, and Wei Hu after the jade lute sprite. The three disciples decided to wait high in the air above the palace gate for the sprites to come out.

After devouring several palace maids, Daji, Hu Ximei, and Concubine Wang got up to leave. With a rush of wind, they flew into the air and headed back to their old nest.

Yang Jian heard the wind and yelled, "Attention! Here come the sprites. Don't run away, you three!"

When she saw Yang Jian chasing after them with his sword, the pheasant sprite lifted her own and swore, "We've done our best to ruin the Shang Dynasty, and you've achieved great merit as a result. How can you be so ungrateful to us?"

Seething with rage, Yang Jian yelled, "Shut up, beast! By order of Jiang Ziya, we have come to arrest you. Don't go! Look, here's my sword!"

The pheasant sprite with nine heads held up her sword to meet Yang Jian, and Thunderbolt raised his yellow gold cudgel against the fox sprite with nine tails — Daji. Wei Hu waved his club and was met by the jade lute sprite's slender knife.

After only three or four rounds, the three sprites gave up ground and fled on beams of sprite light. Yang Jian, Thunderbolt, and Wei Hu chased close behind.





赞为证，赞曰：

妖光荡荡，冷气飏飏。妖光荡荡，旭日无光；冷气飏飏，乾坤黑暗。黄河漠漠怪尘飞，黑雾漫漫妖气惨。雉鸡精、狐狸精、琵琶精往前逃，似电光飞闪；雷震子与杨戩并韦护紧追随，如骤雨狂风。三妖要命，恍如弩箭离弦，那顾东西南北；三圣争功，恰似叶落随风，岂知流行坎止。雷震性起，追得狐狸有穴难寻；杨戩心忙，赶得雉鸡上天无路。琵琶性巧欲腾挪；韦护英明驱压定。这也是三妖作过罪业多，故遇着三圣玄功能取命。

话说杨戩追赶九头雉鸡精，往前多时，看看赶上，杨戩取出哮天犬祭在空中。那犬乃仙犬修成灵性，见妖精舞爪张牙，赶上前一口，将雉鸡头咬吊了一个。那妖精也顾不得疼痛，带血逃灾。杨戩见犬伤了他一头，依旧走了，心下着忙，急驾土遁紧追。雷震子赶狐狸，韦护追琵琶精，紧紧不舍。只见前面两首黄幡，空中飘荡，香烟霏霏，遍地氤氲。不知是谁来了，且听下回分解。

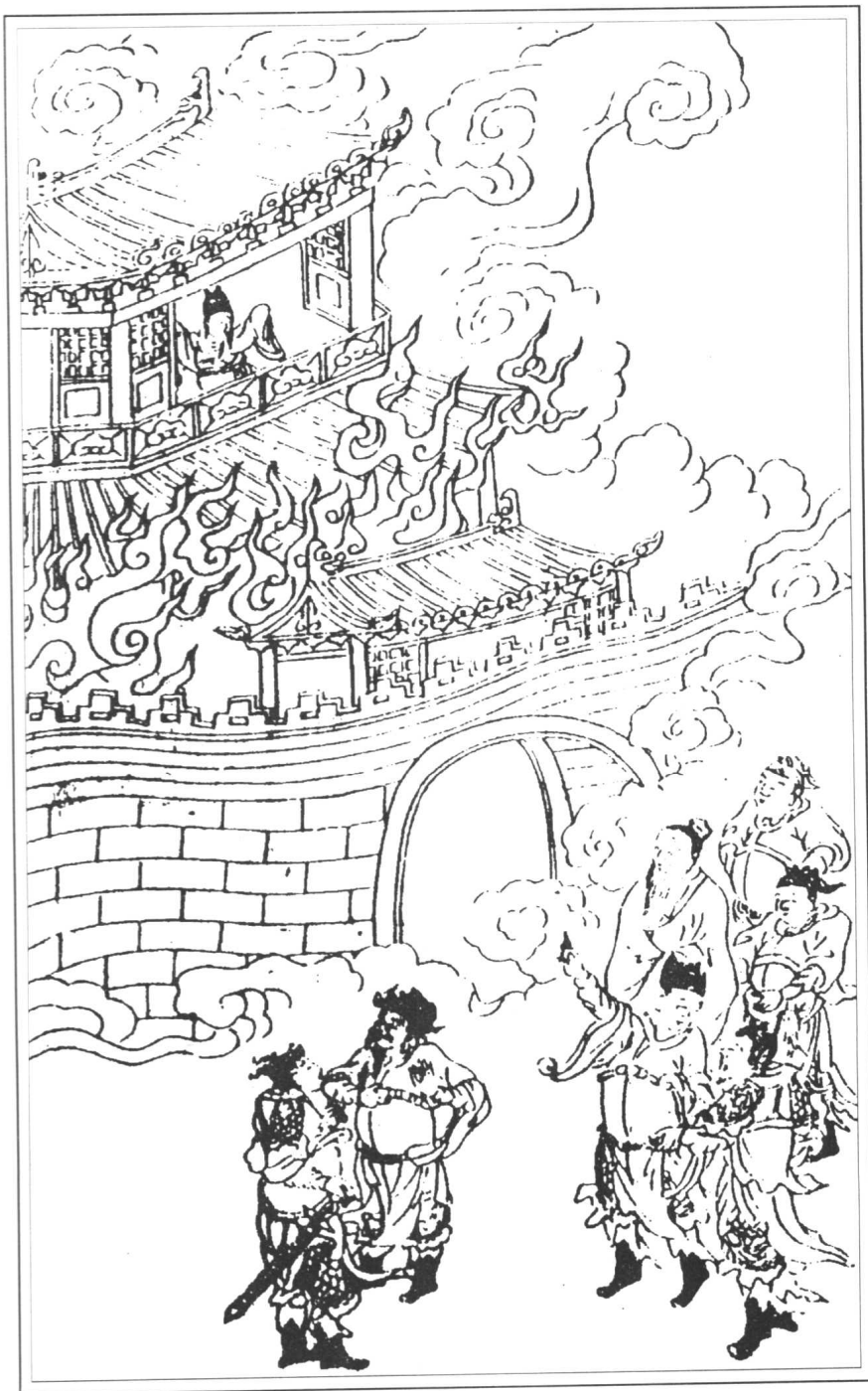
Chasing after the pheasant sprite, Yang Jian released his Sky Barking Hound, which bared its fangs and bit off one of the pheasant heads. Ignoring the pain and the blood, the pheasant sprite picked up speed and ran for its life. Yang Jian followed.

Thunderbolt was still after the fox sprite and Wei Hu the jade lute sprite when two flying pennants suddenly appeared in front of them and a sweet fragrance filled in the air.

Who had arrived? Please read the next chapter to find out.









## 第九十七回

### 摘星楼纣王自焚

诗曰：

纣王暴虐害黔黎，国事纷纷日夜迷。浪饮不知民血尽，  
荒淫那顾鬼神凄。蜃盆宫女真残贼，焚炙忠良类虎鲛。  
报应昭昭须不爽，旗悬太白古今题。

话说杨戩正赶雉鸡精，见前面黄旛隐隐，宝盖飘扬，有数对女童分于左右，当中一位娘娘，跨青鸾而来，乃是女娲娘娘驾至。怎见得，有诗为证：

一天瑞彩紫霞浮，香霭氤氲拥凤舆。展翅鸾凰皆雅驯，  
飘飘童女自优游。旛幢缭绕迎华盖，瓔珞飞扬罩冕旒。  
止为昌期逢泰运，故教仙圣至中州。

话说女娲娘娘跨青鸾而来，阻住三个妖怪之路。三妖不敢前进，按落妖光，俯伏在地，口称：“娘娘圣驾降临，小畜有失回避，望娘娘恕罪。小畜今被杨戩等追赶甚迫，求娘娘救命。”女娲娘娘听罢，分付碧云童儿：“将缚妖索把这三个业障锁了，交与杨戩，解往周营，与子牙发落。”童儿领命，将三妖缚定。三妖泣而告曰：“启娘娘得知：昔日是娘娘用招妖旛招小妖去朝歌，潜入宫禁，迷惑纣王，使他不行正道，断送他的天下。小畜奉命，百事逢迎，去其左右，令彼将天下断送。今已垂亡，正欲覆娘娘钧旨，不期被杨戩等追袭，路遇娘娘圣驾，尚望娘娘救护，娘娘反将小畜缚去，见姜子

## Chapter 97

### The Tyrant Ends His Own Life

Yang Jian saw the yellow pennants and a parasol before him. A fairy, attended by her lasses, rode forward on a green phoenix. It was the Goddess Nu Wa.

The three sprites dared not run away when they saw Nu Wa. They had to descend from their sprite light, kneel down, and greet the Goddess. "Dear lady! Your small beasts must beg your pardon as we were not aware of your honorable presence. We are being chased by Yang Jian and two others. Have mercy on us, dear lady!" they begged.

Nu Wa ordered her Blue Cloud Lad, "Tie them up with my Demon Binding Ropes and hand them over to Yang Jian."

The three sprites wept bitterly and cried, "Let us, your small beasts, have one more word with you. It was you that instructed us to delude King Zhou and lead his kingdom to destruction. By your order, we met his every desire and offered him every pleasure he could imagine. We murdered all his loyal ministers and helped him lose the nation. His end is near. We were returning to report to you when Yang Jian suddenly attacked us. We are so happy to meet you here. Have mercy on us! Set us free! We beg you to consider what we've said."





牙发落，不是娘娘‘出乎反乎’了？望娘娘上裁！”女媧娘娘曰：“吾使你断送殷受天下，原是合上天气数；岂意你无端造业，残贼生灵，屠毒忠烈，惨恶异常，大拂上天好生之仁。今日你罪恶贯盈，理宜正法。”三妖俯伏，不敢声言。只见杨戩同雷震子、韦护正望前追赶三妖，杨戩望见祥光，忙对雷震子、韦护曰：“此位是女媧娘娘大驾降临，快上前参谒。”雷震子听罢，三人向前，倒身下拜。杨戩等曰：“弟子不知圣驾降临，有失迎迓，望娘娘恕罪。”女媧娘娘曰：“杨戩，我与你将此三妖拿在此间，你可带往行营，与姜子牙正法施行。今日周室重兴，又是太平天下也。你三人去罢。”杨戩等感谢娘娘，叩首而退，将妖解往周营。后人诗叹之：

三妖造恶万民殃，断送殷商至丧亡。今日难逃天鉴报，  
轩辕巢穴枉思量。

话说杨戩等将三妖摔下云端，三人随收土遁，来至辕门。那众军士见半空中吊下三个女人，后随着杨戩等三人，军士忙报入中军：“启元帅：杨戩等令。”子牙传令：“令来。”杨戩上帐见子牙，子牙曰：“你拿的妖怪如何？”杨戩曰：“奉元帅将令，赶三妖于中途，幸逢女媧娘娘大发仁慈，赐缚妖绳，将三妖捉至辕门，请令施行。”子牙传令：“解进来。”帐下左右诸侯俱来观看怎样个妖精。少时，杨戩解九头雉鸡精，雷震子解九尾狐狸精，韦护解玉石琵琶精同至帐下。三妖跪于帐前。子牙曰：“你这三个业障，无端造恶，残害生灵，食人无厌，将成汤天下送得干干净净；虽然是天数，你岂可纵欲杀人，唆纣王造炮烙，惨杀忠谏，治蚕盆荼毒官人，造鹿台聚天下之财，为酒池、肉林，内官丧命，甚至敲骨看髓，



“I sent you to help King Zhou lose his kingdom; it was just as fate had destined. But you were too cruel and ruthless. You murdered so many loyal ministers and innocent people. Your crimes are too great and you must be dealt with according to the law,” Nu Wa stated resolutely.

The three sprites knelt down, not daring utter another word. Yang Jian, Thunderbolt, and Wei Hu rushed up, and knelt down before Nu Wa with the others.

“Yang Jian! Take these sprites back with you. Let Jiang Ziya deal with them according to the law. The country will soon enjoy peace again, and the Zhou Dynasty will prosper and shine like the sun. You may return now,” Nu Wa announced.

Yang Jian and his colleagues kowtowed their thanks. They left Nu Wa and rushed back to camp. The sprites tumbled from the clouds and their arrival was immediately reported to Jiang Ziya, who ordered that they be brought before him. The three disciples led in a sprite each. Many nobles came to see what would happen.

The sprites knelt down, and Jiang Ziya spoke loudly so all could hear. “You damned beasts have ruthlessly murdered and caused great suffering to the people. The Shang Dynasty has been brought to its end as destined by fate, but how could you destroy so many innocent people through ruthless torture? How could you waste the national resources and wealth on the Happy Terrace and other big mansions? Heaven cannot forgive you for these crimes. You must pay with your lives.”





剖腹验胎；此等惨恶，罪不容诛，天地人神共怒，虽食肉寝皮，不足以尽厥辜！”姐已俯伏哀泣告曰：“妾身系冀州侯苏护之女，幼长深闺，鲜知世务，谬蒙天子宣诏，选择为妃。不意国母薨逝，天子强立为后。凡一应主持，皆操之于天子，政事俱掌握于大臣。妾不过一女流，惟知洒扫应对，整饰宫闱，侍奉巾栉而已；其他妾安能以自专也。纣王失政，虽文武百官不啻千百，皆不能厘正，又何况区区一女子能动其听也？今元帅德播天下，仁溢四方，纣王不日授首，纵杀妾一女流，亦无补于元帅。况古语云：‘罪人不孥。’恳祈元帅大开慈隐，怜妾身之无辜，赦归故国，得全残年，真元帅天地之仁，再生之德也。望元帅裁之！”众诸侯听姐已一派言语，大是有理，皆有怜惜之心。子牙笑曰：“你说你是苏侯之女，将这一番巧言，迷惑众听，众诸侯岂知你是九尾狐狸在恩州驿迷死苏姐已，借窍成形，惑乱天子？其无端毒恶，皆是你造业。今已被擒，死且不足以尽其罪，尚假此巧语花言，希图漏网！”命左右：“推出辕门，斩首号令！”姐已等三妖低头无语。左右旗牌官簇拥出辕门来，后有雷震子、杨戩、韦护监斩。只见三妖推至法场，雉鸡精垂头丧气，琵琶精默默无言，惟有这狐狸精乃是姐已，他就有许多娇痴，又连累了几个军士。话说那姐已绑缚在辕门外，跪在尘埃，恍然似一块美玉无瑕，娇花欲语，脸衬朝霞，唇含碎玉，绿蓬松云鬓，娇滴滴朱颜，转秋波无限钟情，顿歌喉百般妩媚，



Daji wept bitterly before Commander Jiang. "I am the daughter of Su Hu, the Marquis of Jizhou, and was brought up in seclusion at home, ignorant of world affairs. By the grace of His Majesty, I was sent to the palace as a royal concubine. Unexpectedly, Her Majesty the queen died soon thereafter, I was kindly chosen by His Majesty as the queen.

All political matters were controlled by His Majesty, and all administrative affairs were dealt with by the high ministers. As a woman, I was kept busy cleaning the royal courts and chambers, managing the palace maids, and serving His Majesty. I could do nothing else. King Zhou behaved improperly, but though he had thousands of civil and military officials, no one could change him. How could I, an ordinary woman, lead him to the proper path?

"Dear Commander! Your virtue is known throughout the whole country and your kindness extends in all directions. King Zhou's days are numbered, but it would be useless to send such a poor woman as I to death just to prove your greatness. As the ancient proverb says, 'The wife and children of a guilty man are themselves innocent.' Have mercy on me, Commander. Send me back to my native land so I can live out the rest of my days in peace. Forgive me, and your great virtue will allow me another life," she begged pitifully.

Jiang Ziya smiled. "You're a great liar. You said that you are the daughter of Su Hu, but you're really a fox sprite with nine tails. You murdered Daji in the Jizhou Hostel and have used her body to allure the king. All the crimes we have listed were executed by King Zhou, but they were created by you. Even your death cannot pay for all the lives you've destroyed." Jiang then ordered, "Take them out and cut their heads off."

Yang Jian was appointed to supervise the execution of the pheasant sprite, Thunderbolt the execution of the fox sprite, and Wei Hu the lute sprite.

The pheasant and lute sprite hung their heads dejectedly, but the fox sprite was still very bewitching. Though bound and kneeling on the ground, Daji looked like a piece of white spotless jade. Her face was as beautiful as the morning haze, her eyes were like ripples of autumn water, and her teeth were as bright as jade. She spoke sweetly, as if she were singing.



乃对那持刀军士曰：“妾身系无辜受屈，望将军少缓须臾，胜造浮屠七级！”那军士见姐已美貌，已自有十分怜惜，再加他娇滴滴的叫了几声将军长，将军短，便把这几个军士叫得骨软筋酥，口呆目瞪，软痴痴瘫作一堆，麻酥酥痒成一块，莫能动履。只见行刑令下：“杨戩监斩九头雉鸡精；韦护监斩玉石琵琶精；雷震子监斩狐狸精。”三人见行刑令下，喝令：“军士动手！”杨戩镇压住雉鸡精，韦护镇压住琵琶精，一声呐喊，军士动手，将两个妖精斩了首级。有一首诗单道琵琶精终不免一刀之厄，诗曰：

忆昔当年遇子牙，砚台击顶炼琵琶。谁知三九重逢日，  
万死无生空自嗟。

话说三军动手，已将雉鸡精、琵琶精斩了首级，杨戩与韦护上帐报功。只有雷震子监斩狐狸精，众军士被姐已迷惑，皆目瞪口呆，手软不能举刃。雷震子发怒，喝令军士，只见个个如此，雷震子急得没奈何，只得来中军帐报知，请令定夺。子牙见杨戩、韦护报功，令：“拿出辕门号令。”惟有雷震子赤手来见。子牙问曰：“你监斩姐已，如何空身来见我！莫非这狐狸走了？”雷震子曰：“弟子奉令监斩姐已，孰意众军士被这妖狐迷惑，皆目瞪口呆，莫能动履。”子牙怒曰：“监斩无能，要你何用！”一声喝退。雷震子羞惭满面，站立一傍。子牙命：“将行刑军士拿下，斩首示众。”复命杨戩、韦护监斩。二人领命，另换了军士，再至辕门。只见那妖妇依旧如前，一样软款，又把这些军士弄得东倒西歪，如痴如醉。杨戩与韦护看见这等光景，二人商议曰：“这毕竟是个多年狐狸，极善迷惑人，所以纣王被他缠缚得迷而忘返，又何况这些愚人哉！我与你快去禀明元帅，无令这些无辜军士死于非命也。”杨戩道罢，二人齐至中军帐来，对子牙“……如此如彼”说了一遍。众诸侯俱各惊异。子牙对众人曰：



Daji looked up charmingly at her executioner. "Dear General!" she cried. "Don't you know that I am innocent. I've been wronged. Please let me live. Your good deed would be greater than if you built a pagoda for the Buddhas."

The executioners melted at her words. They stood fixed as if intoxicated; their bones softened, their muscles slackened, and their arms became numb. Charmed by Daji, they only felt deep sympathy and great pity for her.

The pheasant and jade lute sprites were both quickly beheaded, but the executioners under Thunderbolt's command could not even lift up their swords. Thunderbolt shouted his order again and again, but they were all paralyzed and absolutely helpless before Daji.

Yang Jian and Wei Hu carried in the heads to report to Jiang Ziya, but Thunderbolt was empty-handed.

"Where is that fox sprite's head? Don't tell me it ran away?" Jiang Ziya said excitedly.

"The fox sprite has bewitched the executioners, and no one could move to cut her head off. What shall we do?" Thunderbolt reported, hanging his head low.

In a great wrath, Jiang Ziya ordered, "Then cut the executioners' heads off. Let Yang Jian and Wei Hu be the new supervisors!"

The new executioners led in by Yang Jian and Wei Hu melted just like the first group. Completely paralyzed by Daji's coquettish charms, they could not move, much less lift their swords.

When they saw what had happened, Yang Jian and Wei Hu discussed what they should do. "Daji is a fox sprite, experienced in alluring and bewitching ordinary men. King Zhou himself fell into her trap; his heart and body were completely bound up by her invincible rope. How can these common men resist her charms? We must report this to Commander Jiang at once and save these innocent executioners."



“此怪乃千年老狐，受日精月华，偷采天地灵气，故此善能迷惑人，待吾自出营去，斩此恶怪。”子牙道罢先行，众诸侯随后。子牙同众诸侯门弟子出得辕门，见妲己绑缚在法场，果然千娇百媚，似玉如花，众军士如木雕泥塑。子牙喝退众士卒，命左右排香案，焚香炉内，取出陆压所赐葫芦，放于案上，揭去顶盖，只见一道白光上升，现出一物，有眉，有眼，有翅，有足，在白光上旋转。子牙打一躬：“请宝贝转身！”那宝贝连转两三转，只见妲己头落在尘埃，血溅满地。诸侯中尚有怜惜之者。有诗为证，诗曰：

妲己妖娆起众怜，临刑军士也情牵。桃花难写温柔态，芍药堪方窈窕妍。忆昔恩州能借窍，应知内阙善周旋。从来娇媚归何处，化作南柯带血眠。

话说子牙斩了妲己将首级号令辕门。众诸侯等无不叹赏。

且说纣王在显庆殿恹恹独坐，有宫人左右纷纷如蚁，慌慌乱乱。纣王问曰：“尔等为何这样急遽？想是皇城破了么？”傍一内臣跪下，泣而奏曰：“三位娘娘，夜来二更时分不知何往，因此六宫无主，故此着忙。”纣王听罢，忙叫内臣快快查，“往那里去了！速速来报！”有常侍打听，少时来报：“启陛下：三位娘娘首级已号令于周营辕门。”纣王大惊，忙随左右宦官，急上五凤楼观看，果是三后之首。纣王看罢，不觉心酸，泪如雨下，乃作诗一首以吊之，诗曰：

“玉碎香消实可怜，娇容云鬓尽高悬。奇歌妙舞今何在，覆雨翻云竟枉然。凤枕已无藏玉日，鸳衾难再拂花眠。悠悠此恨情无极，日落沧桑又万年。”

话说纣王吟罢诗，自嗟自叹，不胜伤感。只见周营中一声炮



When Jiang heard their report, he said, "I have a way of dealing with this 1,000-year-old fox sprite." He led the nobles out to the camp gate, where they saw Daji still lying tied up on the ground. She was as beautiful as jade or fresh flowers. The executioners around her looked like idols made of clay. Jiang ordered them to retire and told his men to lay a teapot with an incense burner. He burnt incense and took out Lu Ya's gourd. When he removed the lid, a whirling light soared high. Jiang Ziya bowed and said, "Please turn over, dear precious."

With only three turns, Daji's head dropped to the ground, and her blood flowed like a river. Many of the nobles felt it was a shame to kill such a beautiful creature. Jiang then ordered the three heads to be hung atop bamboo poles at the camp gate.

Sitting alone in the Celebration Court, King Zhou noticed the palace attendants and maids running about in panic. "Why are you so excited? Has the palace wall been broken down?" he asked.

One of his attendants knelt down, and with tears in his eyes, reported, "Her Majesty and two of your ladies have been missing since the second watch last night. No one knows where they went!"

King Zhou immediately ordered his men to find out where his ladies had gone, and a short while later, he received news that their heads were hanging outside the Zhou camp. Greatly frightened, the king went to the Five Phoenix Mansion where he could look down and see the heads on the bamboo poles. His heart was broken at the sight, and tears coursed down his cheeks. He wrote a poem in memory of his ladies, which goes like this:

What a pity! The jade is broken and fragrance gone,  
Hanging there, your charming faces.  
How can I enjoy your sweet singing and dancing?  
Our love is completely gone.  
On the phoenix pillow, I miss my dear sleeping,  
Under the mandarin duck quilt, I see no flower again.  
Hatred which knows no conclusion,  
In a wink, ten thousand years gone in romance.



响，三军呐喊，齐欲攻城。纣王看见，不觉大惊，知大势已去，非人力可挽，点头数点，长吁一声，竟下五凤楼，过九间殿，至显庆殿，过分宫楼，将至摘星楼来，忽然一阵旋窝风，就地滚来，将纣王罩住。怎见得怪风一阵，透胆生寒，有诗为证，诗曰：

萧萧飒飒摄离魂，透骨浸肌气若吞。撮起沉冤悲往事，  
追随枉死泣新猿。催花须借吹嘘力，助雨敲残次第先。  
止为纣王惨毒甚，故教屈鬼诉辜恩。

话说纣王方行至摘星楼，只见一阵怪风，就地裹将上来，那盂盆内咽咽哽哽，悲悲泣泣，无限蓬头披发、赤身裸体之鬼，血腥臭恶，秽不可闻，齐上前来，扯住纣王大呼曰：“还吾命来！”又见赵启、梅伯赤身大叫：“昏君！你一般也有今日败亡之时！”纣王忽的把二目一睁，阳气冲出，将阴魂扑散。那些屈魂怨鬼隐然而退。纣王把袍袖一抖，上了头一层楼，又见姜娘娘一把扯住纣王，大骂曰：“无道昏君，诛妻杀子，绝灭彝伦，今日你将社稷断送，将何面目见先王于泉壤也！”姜娘娘正扯住纣王不放，又见黄娘娘一身血污，腥气逼人，也上前扯住，大呼曰：“昏君摔我下楼，跌吾粉骨碎身，此心何忍！真残忍刻薄之徒！今日罪盈恶满，天地必诛！”纣王被两个冤魂缠得如痴似醉一般，又见贾夫人也上前大骂曰：“昏君受辛！你君欺臣妻，吾为守贞立节，坠楼而死，沉冤莫白。今日方能泄我恨也！”照纣王一掌劈面打来。纣王忽然一点真灵惊醒，把二目一睁，冲出阳神，那阴魂如何敢近，隐隐散了。纣王上了摘星楼，行至九曲栏边，默默无语，神思不宁，扶栏而问：“封宫官何在？”封宫官朱



As he was reading the poem over with a sigh, King Zhou suddenly heard a roar of cannons from the Zhou camp. He knew the enemy troops were attacking the palace wall and realized he had not much longer to live. He stepped down from the Five Phoenix Mansion and walked through the Nine Chamber Court to the Celebration Hall. When he got to the Star Picking Mansion, a freezing cold wind enveloped him, and looking down, he saw that the serpent pit was swarming with ghosts, their hair disheveled and faces dirty. They grasped at King Zhou and shouted, "Pay back our lives!" Soon, the naked ghosts of Zhao Qi and Mei Bo appeared before him. "Tyrant! You'll go to hell today!" they roared.

King Zhou opened his eyes wide and stared at them with his vital energy to drive them away. When the ghosts had disappeared, he turned with a flick of his sleeves and climbed the stairs of the Star Picking Mansion. Suddenly Queen Jiang grabbed him and swore loudly, "You tyrant! You killed your wife and sons, completely destroying the proper ethical ties between us. You've brought the dynasty to its end. With what face will you meet your ancestors underground?"

As he was being held by Queen Jiang, royal Concubine Huang appeared, her whole body drenched in blood. She grabbed King Zhou and screamed, "Tyrant! You threw me from the balcony and smashed me to pieces. Your cruelty is beyond compare. Heaven and earth will rejoice at your death!"

Just then Lady Jia rushed forward and swore, "You damned tyrant! To keep myself pure, I had to throw myself from the balcony. This injustice, known to all, will be rightly avenged today!"

Lady Jia then slapped the king's face, bringing him back to his senses. He opened his eyes wide and stared at the ghosts with his strong inner light until they gradually disappeared.

King Zhou climbed to the top of the Star Picking Mansion in silence. When he got to the Nine Winding Rails, he stopped and turned to his attendants. "Where is the officer in charge of the palace gatemmen?" he asked.





升闻纣王呼唤，慌忙上摘星楼来，俯伏栏边，口称：“陛下，奴婢听旨。”纣王曰：“朕悔不听群臣之言，悞被谗奸所惑，今兵连祸结，莫可救解，噬脐何及。朕思身为天子之尊，万一城破，为群小所获，辱莫甚焉。欲寻自尽，此身尚遗人间，犹为他人作念；不若自焚，反为乾净，毋得令儿女子借口也。你可取柴薪堆积楼下，朕当与此楼同焚。你当如朕命。”朱升听罢，披泪满面，泣而奏曰：“奴婢侍陛下多年，蒙豢养之恩，粉骨难报。不幸皇天不造我商，祸亡旦夕，奴婢恨不能以死报国，何敢举火焚君也！”言罢，呜咽不能成声。纣王曰：“此天亡我也，非干你罪。你不听朕命，反有忤逆之罪。昔日朕曾命费、尤向姬昌演数，言朕有自焚之厄；今日正是天定，人岂能逃，当听朕言！”后人有诗单叹纣王临焚念文王易数之验，有诗为证，诗曰：

昔日文王羑里囚，纣王无道困西侯。费尤曾问先天数，  
烈焰飞烟锁玉楼。

话说朱升再三哭奏，劝纣王：“且自宽慰，另寻别策，以解此围。”纣王怒曰：“事已急矣！朕筹之已审。若诸侯攻破午门，杀入内庭，朕一被擒，汝之罪不啻泰山之重也！”朱升大哭下楼，去寻柴薪，堆积楼下。不表。且说纣王见朱升下楼，自服袞冕，手执碧圭，珮满身珠玉，端坐楼中。朱升将柴堆满，挥泪下拜毕，方敢举火，放声大哭。后人有诗为证，诗曰：

摘星楼下火初红，烟卷乌云四面风。今日成汤倾社稷，  
朱升原是尽孤忠。

话说朱升举火，烧着楼下干柴，只见烟卷冲天，风狂火猛，



Zhu Sheng was called and immediately ascended the stairs to kneel before King Zhou. "Your Majesty! Here I am," he said with a bow.

"I regret now that I didn't listen to my loyal ministers and allowed myself to be deluded by the bootlickers. There's no way I can win this war, but as the king, His Majesty before all, I can't stand being insulted by being taken into captivity. If I commit suicide by the sword, my corpse would remain for my enemy to abuse. I intend to burn myself to ashes so that nothing will remain. I command you to bring in fuel and pile it up below. The mansion and I will burn together. Quick, do as I say!" King Zhou ordered.

Zhu Sheng wept and said, "I have served Your Majesty for so many years and I've always deeply appreciated the boundless grace you have shown me. Now Heaven does not look favorably upon our dynasty, and the end is very near. If only I could save the nation from destruction by my own death. I dare not start a fire to burn His Majesty to ashes."

As Zhu Sheng continued to whimper, King Zhou said, "This has nothing to do with you. Heaven has forsaken me, and me alone. You'll be guilty if you disobey my order. Long ago Ji Chang foretold that I would burn myself to death. It has been destined by Heaven. You must do as I say."

Zhu wept and begged the king, "Please don't think about this. Let's plan how to save your life."

"This is a serious matter. I have considered it more than once. If the dukes break in and take me captive, your crime will be as high as Mount Tai," the king said angrily.

When Zhu Sheng had finally gone, King Zhou put on the royal robe, decorated himself with pearl and jade ornaments, and sat down with a piece of green jade in his hands.

With tears running down his face, Zhu Sheng piled up the fuel, knelt down, and kowtowed. Then he got up and set the mansion on fire. Thick,



六宫中宫人喊叫，霎时间乾坤昏暗，宇宙翻崩，鬼哭神号，帝王失位。朱升见摘星楼一派火着，甚是凶恶。朱升撩衣，痛哭数声，大叫：“陛下！奴辈以死报陛下也！”言罢，将身摔入火中。可怜朱升忠烈，身为宦竖，犹知死节。话说纣王在三层楼上，看楼下火起，烈焰冲天，不觉抚膺长叹曰：“悔不听忠谏之言，今日自焚，死故不足惜，有何面目见先王于泉壤也！”只见火趁风威，风乘火势，须臾间，四面通红，烟雾障天。怎见得，有赋为证，赋曰：

烟迷雾卷，金光灼灼掣天飞；焰吐云从，烈风呼呼如雨骤。排炕列炬，似煽如熯。须臾万物尽成灰，说甚么栋连霄汉；顷刻千里化红尘，那管他雨聚云屯。五行之内最无情，二气之中为独盛。雕梁画栋，不知费几许工夫，遭着他尽成齑粉；珠栏玉砌，不知用多少金钱，逢着你皆为瓦解。摘星楼下势如焚，六宫三殿延烧得柱倒墙崩；天子命丧在须臾；八妃九嫔牵连得头焦额烂；无辜宫女尽遭殃；作恶内臣皆在劫。这纣天子呵！抛却尘寰，讲不起贡衣航海，锦衣玉食，金瓯社稷，锦绣乾坤，都化作滔滔洪水向东流；脱离欲海，休夸那粉黛蛾眉，温香暖玉，翠袖殷勤，清讴皓齿，尽赴于栩栩羽化随梦绕。这正是：从前余焰逞雄威，作过灾殃还自受。

成汤事业化飞灰，周室江山方赤炽。

话说子牙在中军方与众诸侯议攻皇城，忽左右报进中军：“启元帅：摘星楼火起。”子牙忙领众将，同武王、东伯侯、北伯侯共天下诸侯，齐上马出了辕门看火。武王在马上观看，见烟迷一人，身穿赭黄袞服，头戴冕旒，手拱碧玉圭，端坐

black smoke whirled around and soared high into the air. A strong wind fanned the fire until the mansion burnt furiously, sending the palace attendants and maids running about, shouting and crying in terror. Zhu Sheng pulled up his gown, and with a loud cry, "Your Majesty! I'll sacrifice my life for your grace," he jumped straight into the fire.

Sitting on the fourth floor of the Star Picking Mansion, King Zhou saw the flames licking closer and the smoke filling the air. He clapped his hand to his breast and gave a long sigh. "Ah! I regret now that I didn't listen to my loyal ministers. There can be no pity for me today. But how can I meet my ancestors underground?"

The fire intensified as the wind rose. Before long, the whole mansion was a mass of red flames, and smoke covered the sky.

When Jiang Ziya heard that the Star Picking Mansion was on fire, he hurriedly got on his nondescript horse and led his generals, King Wu, the East Grand Duke, the North Grand Duke, and all the other nobles out of the camp.

Suddenly King Wu noticed a man in a yellow dragon robe, wearing a crown and holding a jade piece between his two hands, sitting solemnly in





于烟雾之中，朦胧不甚明白。武王问左右曰：“那烟雾中乃是纣天子么？”众诸侯答曰：“此正是无道昏君。今日如此，正所谓‘自作自受’耳。”武王闻言，掩面不忍看视，兜马回营。子牙忙上前启曰：“大王为何掩面而回？”武王曰：“纣王虽则无道，得罪于天地鬼神，今日自焚，适为业报；但我皆为臣下，曾北面事之，何忍目睹其死，而蒙逼君之罪哉？不若回营为便。”子牙曰：“纣王作恶，残贼生民，天怒民怨，纵太白悬旗，亦不为过；今日自焚，正当其罪。但大王不忍，是大王之仁明忠爱之至意也。然犹有一说：昔成汤以至仁放桀于南巢，救民于水火，天下未尝少之；今大王会天下诸侯，奉天征讨，吊民伐罪，实于汤有光，大王幸毋介意。”众诸侯同武王回营。子牙督领众将门人看火，以便取城。只见那火越盛，看看卷上楼顶，那楼下的柱脚烧倒，只听得一声响，摘星楼塌倒，如天崩地裂之状，将纣王埋在火中，一霎时化为灰烬。——一灵已入封神台去了。后人诗叹之，诗曰：

放桀南巢忆昔时，深仁厚泽立根基。谁知殷受多残虐，  
烈焰焚身悔已迟。

又有史官观史，有诗单道纣王失政云，诗曰：

女娲宫里祈甘霖，忽动携云握雨心。岂为有情联好句，  
应知无道起商参。妇言是用残黄耆，忠谏难听纵浪淫。  
炮烙冤魂多屈死，古来惨恶独君深。

又诗叹纣王才兼文武，诗曰：

打虎雄威气更骁，千斤膂力冠群僚。托梁换柱超今古，  
赤手擒飞过鸷雕。拒谏空称才绝代，饰非枉道巧多饶。

the smoke. "Is that His Majesty, King Zhou, up there in the smoke?" King Wu asked doubtfully.

"Yes, that's the tyrant! Now he's reaping what he's sown," the dukes replied.

King Wu could not stand to watch any longer. He covered his face with his hand and turned to retreat to camp.

"What wrong, Your Highness?" Jiang Ziya asked.

"Though King Zhou was so wicked and committed unpardonable crimes against both Heaven and the people, and though he deserves to burn himself to death, it is intolerable for me, as his former subject, to see him die so tragically. We shall be cursed as we have forced him to end his own life. Don't you think we should return now?" King Wu said sadly.

"King Zhou is wicked and cruel. He has caused many to die, angering both Heaven and the people. Even if we cut off his head and hung it on a pole, we could not exceed what is just. Your Highness, you are kind and sincere and cannot stand to watch. But we must remember that King Tang of the Shang Dynasty expelled the tyrant Jie of the Xia Dynasty at Nanchao to rescue the people from drowning in water and burning in fire. King Tang was praised by the people for his deeds. You today are leading the dukes against the tyrant as Heaven has willed. You will save the people from further suffering. I hope you don't mind too much, Your Highness," Jiang Ziya said comfortingly.

King Wu and the dukes returned to camp, but Jiang Ziya and his generals kept watch on the fire. When the flames had reached the top of the Star Picking Mansion, the pillars down below suddenly gave way. The whole building collapsed with a tremendous noise, and the soul of King Zhou flew directly to the Terrace of Creation.



只因三怪迷真性，赢得楼前血肉焦。

话说摘星楼焚了纣王，众诸侯俱在午门外住扎。少时，午门开处，众宫人同侍卫将军，御林士卒酌水献花，焚香拜迎武王车驾，并诸侯入九间殿。姜子牙忙传令：“且救息宫中火。”不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



Before long, the gate was opened and the palace guards, palace attendants, and palace maids welcomed in King Wu with wine and flowers. They burnt incense and led King Wu and the nobles into the Nine Chamber Court. Jiang Ziya ordered the fire to be put out immediately.

If you want to know what happened next, please read on.







## 第九十八回

### 周武王鹿台散财

诗曰：

纣王聚敛吸民脂，不信当年放桀时。积粟已无千载计，盈财岂有百年期。须知世运逢真主，却笑贪淫有阿痴。今日还归民社去，从来天意岂容私！

话说众诸侯俱上了九间殿，只见丹墀下大小将领、头目等众，踉踉跄跄，簇拥两傍。子牙传令：“军士先救灭宫中火焰。”武王对子牙曰：“纣王无道，残虐生灵，而六宫近在肘腋，其宫人、宦寺被害更惨，今军士救火，不无波及无辜；相父当首先严禁，毋令复遭陷害也。”子牙闻言，忙传令：“凡军士人等止许救火，毋得肆行暴虐，敢有违令妄取六宫中一物，妄杀一人者，斩首示众，决不姑惜！汝宜悉知。”

只见众宫人、宦寺、侍卫、军官齐呼：“万岁！”武王在九间殿驻蹕，与众诸侯看军士救火。武王猛抬头，看见殿东边有黄邓邓二十根大铜柱摆列在傍，武王问曰：“此铜柱乃是何物？”子牙曰：“此铜柱乃是纣王所造炮烙之刑。”武王曰：“善哉！不但临刑者甚惨，只今日孤观之，不觉心胆皆裂。纣天子可谓残忍之甚！”子牙引武王入后宫，至摘星楼下，见蛭盆里面蛇蝎上下翻腾，白骨暴露，骷髅乱滚；又见酒池内阴风惨惨，肉林下冷露凄凄。武王问曰：“此是何故？”子牙曰：“此是纣王所制蛭盆，杀害宫人者；左右正是肉林、酒



## Chapter 98

### Relief Supplies Distributed

When the nobles had entered the Nine Chamber Court, Jiang Ziya ordered the soldiers to put out the fire. King Wu then said to Jiang Ziya, "The palace maids have suffered the most. None of us is to trouble them. Orders must be issued at once, prohibiting any soldier from hurting them."

When this was made known, the palace maids and guards hailed him, "Long live King Wu! Long live King Wu!"

When King Wu saw the twenty brass pillars on the east side of the court, he wondered what they could be.

"Those are instruments of torture that King Zhou used on innocent people," Jiang Ziya pointed out.

"Oh, Lord! I feel as if my heart were broken. How ruthless King Zhou was!" King Wu cried in dismay.

Jiang Ziya then led King Wu to the back palace. When they approached the Star Picking Mansion, they saw the serpent pit, full of snakes and white bones. The wind blew sadly around the wine pond, and a cold fog rested over the Meat Forest.

"What is all that?" King Wu asked in amazement.

"It's where King Zhou killed his palace maids. On the left is the Meat Forest, and on the right is the wine pond," Jiang Ziya explained.



池。”武王曰：“伤哉！纣天子何无仁心一至此也！”不胜伤感。乃作诗以纪之，诗曰：

“成汤祝网德声扬，放桀南巢正大纲。六百年来风气薄，谁知惨恶丧疆场！”

又伤炮烙之刑，作诗以纪之，诗曰：

“苦陷忠良性独偏，肆行炮烙悦婵娟。遗魂常傍黄金柱，楼下焚烧业报牵。”

话说武王来至摘星楼，见余火尚存，烟焰未绝，烧得七狼八豕，也有无辜宫人遭在此劫，尚有余骸未尽，臭秽难闻。武王更觉心中不忍，忙分付军士：“快将这些遗骸检出去埋葬，无令暴露。”因谓子牙曰：“但不知纣王骸骨焚于何所？当另为检出，以礼安葬，不可使暴露于天地；你我为人臣者，此心何安！”子牙曰：“纣王无道，人神共愤，今日自焚，实所以报之也。今大王以礼葬之，诚大王之仁耳。”子牙分付军士：“检点遗骸，毋使混杂；须寻纣王骸骨，具衣衾棺槨，以天子之礼葬之。”后人有诗叹成汤王业如斯而尽：

天丧成汤业，敌兵尽倒戈。积山尸遍野，漂杵血流河。尽去烦苛法，方兴时雨歌。太平今日定，衽席乐天和。

话说子牙令军士寻纣王遗骸，以礼安葬，不表。

且说众诸侯同武王往鹿台而来。上了台时，见阁耸云端，楼飞霄汉，亭台叠叠，殿宇巍峨，雕栏玉饰，梁栋金装；又只见明珠异宝，珊瑚玉树，厢嵌成琼宫瑶室，堆砌就绣阁兰房，不时起万道霞光，顷刻有千条瑞彩，真所谓目眩心摇，神飞魄乱。武王点首叹曰：“纣天子这等奢靡，竭天下之财以穷己欲，安有不亡身丧国者也！”子牙曰：“古今之所



“Oh, how terrible! How could King Zhou lose every bit of human feeling!” King Wu sighed deeply.

When they reached the Star Picking Mansion, they saw that the splendid building had already been completely destroyed. Quite a number of innocent palace maids had been killed in the fire, and seeing so many half-burnt corpses before him, King Wu felt uneasy and ordered, “Pick out the corpses and bury them in suitable places. Where are the remains of King Zhou? Pick them out carefully and bury them lest they be exposed,” King Wu said to Jiang Ziya.

Jiang Ziya turned to his men and related King Wu’s order. “King Zhou’s remains should be dressed and laid in a coffin. We will bury him with the funeral rites of a king,” he concluded.

The group then ascended the Happy Terrace, where they saw the lofts, the high chambers touching the blue sky, and the pavilions, all adorned with carved jade railings, gold-plated beams and pillars, pearls, coral, jade, and other precious jewels. King Wu shook his head and sighed, “How extravagant! How could he protect the kingdom if the national treasures were emptied to construct this!”



以丧亡者，未有不从奢侈而败，故圣王再三叮咛垂戒者，‘宝己以德，毋宝珠玉’，良有以也。”武王曰：“如今纣王已灭，天下诸侯与闾阎百姓受纣王剥削之祸，荼毒之苦，征敛之烦，日坐水火之中，衽席不安，重足而立，今不若将鹿台聚积之货财，给散与诸侯、百姓，将巨桥聚敛之稻粟，赈济与饥民，使万民昭苏，享一日安康之福耳。”子牙曰：“大王兴言及此，真社稷生民之福也！宜速行之。”武王命左右去发财运粟，不表。只见后宫擒纣王之子武庚至，子牙令：“推来。”众诸侯切齿。少时，众将将武庚推至殿前，武庚跪下。众诸侯齐曰：“殷受不道，罪盈满贯，人神共怒，今日当斩首正罪，以泄天地之恨。”子牙曰：“众诸侯之言甚是。”武王急止之曰：“不可！纣王肆行不道，皆是群小、妖妇惑乱其心，与武庚何干？且纣王炮烙大臣，虽贤如比干、微子，皆不能匡救其君，又何况武庚一幼稚之子哉？今纣王已灭，与子何讐？且‘罪人不孥’，原是上天好生之德，孤愿与众位大王共体之，切不可枉行杀戮也。俟新君嗣位，封之以茅土，以存商祀，正所以报商之先王也。”东伯侯姜文焕出而言曰：“元帅在上：今大事俱定，当立新君以安天下诸侯、士民之心。况且天不可以无日，国不可以无君，天命有道，归于至仁，今武王仁德著于四海，天下归心，宜正大位，以安天下民心。况我等众诸侯入关，襄武王以伐无道，正为今日之大事也。望元帅一力担当，不可迟滞，有辜众人之心。”众诸侯齐曰：“姜君侯讲得有理，正合众人之意。”子牙尚未及对，武王惶惧逊谢曰：“孤位轻德薄，名誉未著，惟日兢兢，求为寡过以嗣先王之业而未遑，安敢妄覬



“Since ancient times no ruler living in extravagance has been able to keep his dynasty from destruction. The saints have warned us over and over again, ‘We must treasure virtue rather than pearls or jade.’ We can all see this is true now,” Jiang Ziya said.

“King Zhou’s subjects have been cruelly exploited and heavily taxed. They have suffered tremendously. I hold that the riches of the Happy Terrace be distributed among them and the rice stored at Juqiao be used to relieve anyone without food,” King Wu announced.

“What you have proposed, Your Highness, is really a blessing for the people and the nation. Your wishes will be carried out at once,” Jiang Ziya said with approval.

Just then they received a report that Wu Keng, son of King Zhou, had been arrested in the back palace. Jiang Ziya ordered, “Send him here immediately.”

When Wu Keng was brought before them, he knelt down and bowed. The nobles gnashed their teeth with hatred and said, “King Zhou was a wicked ruler. We should cut his son’s head off to appease Heaven and earth.”

“You’re right, dear dukes,” Jiang Ziya agreed.

But King Wu intervened, “Oh, no! This had nothing to do with Wu Keng. Even Bi Gan and Wei Zi could not stop King Zhou. What could Wu Keng do? How can you hate his son? The wife and children of a guilty man are free of guilt themselves. Grant him a state to continue the Shang Dynasty and comfort his ancestors underground.”

Jiang Wenhuan then said, “We need a new king to pacify the country. King Wu is known by all for his virtue. The people and nobles support him. He should get the throne.”

Before Jiang Ziya could say anything, King Wu declined and said, “The throne should be for the most virtuous. I pray you select such a



天位哉！况天位惟艰，惟仁德者居之，乞众位贤侯共择一有德者以嗣大位，毋令有忝厥职，遗天下羞。孤与相父早归故土，以守臣节而已。”傍有东伯侯厉声大言曰：“大王此言差矣！天下之至德，孰有如大王者！今天下归周，已非一日，即黎民之箪食壶浆以迎王师，岂有他哉！谓大王能救民于水火也。且天下诸侯景从云集，随大王以伐无道，其爱戴之心，盖有自也。大王又何必固辞？望大王俯从众议，毋令众人失望耳。”武王曰：“发有何德，望贤侯无得执此成议，还当访询有众，以服天下之心。”东伯侯姜文焕曰：“昔帝尧以至德克相上帝，得膺大位；后生丹朱不肖，帝求人而逊位，众臣举舜。舜以重华之德，以继尧而有天下。后帝舜生子商均亦不肖，舜乃举天下而让之禹。禹生启贤明，能承继夏命，故相继而传十七世。至桀无道而失夏政，成汤以至德放桀于南巢，代夏而有天下。传二十六世至纣，大肆无道，恶贯罪盈。大王以至德与众诸侯恭行天之讨，今大事已定，克承大宝，非大王而谁？大王又何必固逊哉！”武王曰：“孤安敢方禹汤之贤哲也。”姜文焕曰：“大王不事干戈，以仁义教率天下，化行俗美，三分天下有其二；故凤鸣于岐山，万民而乐业。天人相应，理不可诬。大王之政德，与二君何多让哉！”武王曰：“姜君侯素有才德，当为天下之主。”忽听得两傍众诸侯一齐上前，大呼曰：“天下归心，已非一日，大王为何苦苦固辞？大拂众人之心矣！况吾等会盟此地，岂是一朝一夕之力，无非欲立大王，再见太平之日耳。今大王舍此不居，则天下诸侯瓦解，自此生乱，是使天下终无太平之日矣。”子牙上前急止之曰：“列位贤侯不必如此，我自有名正



man to succeed the throne. I must return to my native land as soon as possible and do my best as a good minister.”

But the nobles pressed him. “What the East Grand Duke just said is perfectly right. We agree with him completely,” they all said.

The East Grand Duke then shouted, “Who is the most virtuous in the country? None stands higher than you. Why did the people welcome your army so warmly with food and wine? Because you’ve come to help them. All the nobles are assembled here and support you as the new king. How can you refuse?”

“What virtue do I have? We must look around more,” King Wu still insisted.

“You are the only one qualified for the throne. You must not refuse,” Jiang Wenhuan added emotionally.

“How dare I compare myself to Yu and Tang,” King Wu said modestly.

“Your Highness! The phoenix sang on Mount Qi, signaling the will of Heaven. Your virtue clearly matches that of Yu and Tang,” Jiang Wenhuan replied frankly.

“You are so virtuous, Duke, that you ought to get the throne,” King Wu argued back.

The nobles roared in one voice, “Why do you still refuse? We only wish to see the country at peace again. If you don’t accept the throne, the union of the dukes will be ruined and the country will face hard times again!”

Jiang Ziya moved up to intervene and said, “Dear dukes! Please calm down. I’m on your side and I’ll do my best to talk him round.”





言顺之说。”正是：

子牙一计成王业，致使诸侯拜圣君。

话说众诸侯在九间殿，见武王固逊，俱纷然争辩不一，子牙乃止之，对武王曰：“纣王祸乱天下，大王率诸侯明正其罪，天下无不悦服，大王礼当正位，号令天下。况当日凤鸣岐山，祥瑞现于周地，此上天垂应之兆，岂是偶然！今天下人心悦而归周，正是天人响应，时不可失。大王今日固辞，恐诸侯心冷，各散归国，涣无所统，各据其地，日生祸乱，甚非大王吊伐之意。深失民望，非所以爱之，实所以害之也。愿大王详察！”武王曰：“众人固是美爱，然孤之德薄，不足以胜此任，恐遗先王之羞耳。”东伯侯姜文焕曰：“大王不必辞逊，元帅自有主见。”乃对子牙曰：“请元帅速行，不得迟滞，恐人心解散。”子牙急忙传令：“命画图样造台，作祝文昭告天地社稷，俟后有大贤，大王再让位未迟。”众诸侯已知子牙之意，随身应诺。傍有周公旦自去造台。后人有一诗诵之，诗曰：

朝歌城内筑禅台，万姓欢呼动八垓。  
沴气已随余焰尽，和风方向太阳来。  
岐山鸣凤缠祯瑞，殿陛赓歌进寿杯。  
四海雍熙从此盛，周家泰运又重开。

话说周公旦画了图样，于天地坛前造一座台。台高三层，按三才之象，分八卦之形。正中设“皇天后土之位”；傍立“山川社稷之神”；左右有“十二元神”旗号，按子、丑、寅、卯、辰、巳、午、未、申、酉、戌、亥立于其地；前后有“十干”旗号，按甲、乙、丙、丁、戊、己、庚、辛、壬、癸立于本位；坛上有“四季正神方位”：春日太昊，夏



“Don’t you remember when the phoenix sang on Mount Qi? It was an auspicious omen. The people of the country love you. If you continue to refuse, the nobles’ hearts will freeze against you and more disturbances will follow. You will have failed in your original intention to save the people from distress, and instead of peace and happiness, they will only suffer more. Kindly think it over, Your Highness,” Jiang Ziya urged the king.

“Though the nobles love me, I’m really not qualified. I’m afraid I will only humiliate my ancestors,” King Wu said.

“You need not be so resolute, Your Highness. I trust our Commander can break this deadlock,” Jiang Wenhuan said. He turned to Jiang Ziya, “Dear Commander! You must do something immediately or the nobles will be disheartened.”

Jiang Ziya then ordered, “We must build a terrace and write a prayer to Heaven and earth calling for His Highness to ascend the throne. The most virtuous one can then take his rightful place.”

The nobles cheered loudly, and Ji Dan was sent to build the terrace. It stood three-stories high in the shape of the eight diagrams, representing Heaven, earth and man. In the center were seats for Heaven and earth, and lining the sides were seats for the Gods of the mountains, rivers, and land. On the left and right were twelve banners, representing the twelve vital Gods, and in the front and back were ten banners of the decimal cycle. On the terrace were the seats for the Gods of the four seasons:



日炎帝，秋日少昊，冬日颛顼；中有皇帝轩辕；坛上罗列笾、豆、簠、簋、金爵、玉斝，陈设祭前，并生刍炙脯，列于几席，鲜、酱、鱼、肉设于案桌，无不齐备。只见香烧宝鼎，花插金瓶，子牙方请武王上坛。武王再三谦让，然后祭坛。八百诸侯齐立于两傍，周公旦高捧祝文，上台开读，祝文曰：

“惟大周元年壬辰，越甲子昧爽三日，西伯侯西岐武王姬发敢昭告于皇天后土神祇曰：呜呼！惟天惠民，惟辟奉天。有殷受弗克上天，自绝于命。臣发承祖宗累治之仁，列圣相沿之德，予小子曷敢有越厥志，恭天承命，底商之罪，大正于商。惟尔神祇，克成厥勋，诞膺天命。予小子方日夜祇惧，恐坠前烈，敬修未遑。无奈诸侯、军、民、耆老人等，疏请再三，众志成城难固违。俯从群议，爰考旧典，式諏吉日，祇告于天、地、宗庙、社稷暨我文考，于是日受册、宝，嗣即大位。仰承中外靖恭之颂，天人协应之符，庆日月之照临，膺皇天之永命。尚望福我维新，永终不替，慰兆人胥戴之情，垂累业无疆之绪。神其鉴兹！伏惟尚飨。”

话说周公旦读罢祝文，焚了，祝告天地毕，只见香烟笼罩空中，瑞霭氤氲满地，其日天朗气清，惠风庆云，真是昌期应运，太平景象，自然迥别。那朝歌百姓挤拥，遍地欢呼。

武王受了册、宝，即天子位，面南垂拱端坐。乐奏三番，众诸侯出笏，山呼“万岁”。拜贺毕，武王传旨，大赦天下。众人簇拥武王下坛，来至殿廷，从新拜贺毕，武王传旨，命摆九龙饰席，大宴八百诸侯，君臣共乐。众人酒过数巡，俱各欢畅。百官觉已深沉，各辞阙谢恩而散。



Taihao, the God of spring; Yandi, the God of summer; Shaohao, the God of autumn; and Zhuanxu, the God of winter. In the middle was the seat for Xuanyuan. Laid out before the terrace were bowls, plates, gold cups, jade pitchers, and sacrificial utensils. Vegetables, roast pork, fish, and sauces filled the bowls. Fragrant incense was burned and sweet flowers were arranged in ornate vases.

Jiang Ziya then invited King Wu to ascend the terrace. King Wu continued to decline modestly but was finally urged up to the top. The 800 nobles arranged themselves in an orderly way on both sides, and Ji Dan began to read the prayer:

Ji Fa sincerely offers this prayer: Only Heaven can enthrone king! I solemnly report to Heaven, earth, and my ancestors that I will ascend the throne as king of the nation, to be hailed by our own people and those from other lands. It is as Heaven has promised and the people wish, with the grace of the shining sun and bright moon and with eternal blessings from Heaven. I'll forever walk on the proper path....

When he had finished, Ji Dan burnt incense again. The fragrant air floated softly through the crowd and up into the clear, blue sky. A fresh breeze blew auspicious clouds over the city. The people of Zhaoge cheered loudly all over the city.

King Wu received the royal seals and sat down on the throne as His Majesty the king. He sat solemnly facing the south, and the nobles, each holding an ivory piece, came forward to greet King Wu. "Long live our new king! Long live our new king!" they hailed.

When the greetings were finished, King Wu ordered that all prisoners be pardoned and released. He then ordered a grand banquet for the nobles. They drank and feasted until late in the night.



后人读史，见武王一戎衣而有天下，君臣和乐，作诗以咏之，诗曰：

坛上香风绕圣王，军民嵩祝舞霓裳。江山依旧承柴望，社稷重新乐裸将。金阙晓临仙掌动，玉阶时听珮环忙。熙熙皞皞清明世，万姓讴歌庆未央。

话说次日武王设朝，众诸侯朝贺毕，武王谓子牙曰：“殷纣因广施土木之功，竭天下之财，荒淫失政，故有此败。朕蒙众诸侯立之为君，朕欲将鹿台之货财给散与天下诸侯，颁赐各夷王衣裘之费，列爵惟五，分土惟三，建官惟贤，位事惟能，重民五教，惟食丧祭，惇信明义，崇德报功，命诸侯各引人马归国，以安享其土地。”又将摘星楼殿阁尽行拆毁，散鹿台之财，发巨桥之粟，释箕子之囚，封比干之墓，式商容之闾，放内宫之人，大赉于四海，而万姓悦服。乃偃武修文，归马于华山之阳，放牛于桃林之野，以示天下大服。武王在朝歌旬月，万民乐业，人物安阜，瑞草生，凤凰现，醴泉溢，甘露降，景星庆云，熙熙皞皞，真是太平景象。有诗为证，诗曰：

八十公公杖策行，相逢欣笑话生平。眼中不识干戈事，耳内稀闻战鼓声。每见麒麟鸾凤现，时听丝竹管弦鸣。于今世上称宁宇，不似当年枕席惊。

话说武王为天子，天人感应，民安物阜，天降祥瑞，万民无不悦服。只见天下诸侯俱辞朝，各归本国。子牙入内庭见武王，王曰：“相父有何奏章？”子牙奏曰：“方今天下已定，老臣启陛下，命官镇守朝歌。”武王曰：“俱听相父。着用何官？”子牙曰：“今武庚，陛下既待以不杀，使守本土，得存商祀，必用何人监守方可？”武王曰：“俟明日临朝商议。”



The next morning King Wu called a conference for all the nobles and ministers. He turned to Jiang Ziya. "King Zhou depleted national resources by constructing big buildings. As my support comes from the nobles, I wish to distribute the riches in the Happy Terrace among them. The tribal petty kings will be granted money to buy fur coats; they will be promoted by five degrees and granted territories in three grades. They are to appoint talented ministers, educate the people according to the five virtues, worship their ancestors, and encourage those who are good by bestowing them with grace. May all the nobles return to their dukedoms to enjoy peace in their own land."

He then ordered his men to dismantle the Star Picking Mansion, distribute the riches in the Happy Terrace, relieve the people with the rice stored at Juqiao, set Ji Zi free, pay respect before Bi Gan's grave mound, honor Shang Rong's residence, and free the palace maids. King Wu blessed the people everywhere and he was loved by all. Finally, King Wu gave up both weapons and armor and worked on improving the civil administration. He released all animals, both horses and oxen used in war, to the wilderness of the Peach Forest as a sign that there should be no more fighting.

King Wu had stayed in Zhaoge for about ten months and all the people were happy. Auspicious grass grew and phoenixes appeared. The sky was full of bright stars and auspicious clouds. The people lived peacefully without any disturbances whatsoever.

After the dukes had gone, Jiang Ziya said to the king, "We ought to appoint a garrison commander to guard Zhaoge."

"Whom shall we appoint?"

"As you generously allowed Wu Keng to live, it's natural that he should remain here to protect the original territory of the Shang Dynasty and continue worshiping the Shang ancestors. We must also appoint someone to assist and supervise him," Jiang Ziya replied.



子牙退朝，回相府。只至次日，武王早朝，诸臣朝见毕，武王曰：“朕今封武庚世守本土，以存商祀，必使人监国；当用何人而后可？”武王问罢，众臣共议：“非亲王不可。”遂议管叔鲜、蔡叔度二王监国。武王依允，随命二叔守此朝歌。武王分付：“明日大驾归国。”只见武王圣谕一出，朝歌军民暨耆老人等，俱谋议遮留圣驾。不表。话说武王次日，分付二叔监国，大驾随起行。只见那些百姓，扶老挈幼，遮拜于道，大呼曰：“陛下救我等于水火之中，今一旦归国，是使万姓而无父母也。望陛下一视同仁，留居此地，我等百姓不胜庆幸！”武王见百姓挽留，乃慰之曰：“今朝歌朕已命二叔监守，如朕一样，必不令尔等失所也。尔等当奉公守法，自然安业，又何必朕在此，方能安阜也？”百姓挽留不住，放声大哭，震动天地。武王亦觉凄然；复谓二弟管叔鲜、蔡叔度曰：“民乃国之根本。尔不可轻虐下民，当视之如子。若是不体朕意，有虐下民，朕自有国法在，必不能为亲者讳也。二弟其勉之！”二叔受命。武王即日发驾起程，往西岐前进。百姓哭送一程，竟回朝歌。不表。

话说武王离朝歌，一路行来，也非一日，不觉来至孟津。思想昔日渡孟津时，白鱼跃舟，兵戈扰攘；今日又是一番光景，不胜嗟叹。后人诗咏之：

驾返西岐龙入海，与民欢忭乐尧年。归牛桃圃开新运，牧马华山洗旧膻。箕子囚中先解释，比干墓上有封笺。孟津昔日曾流血，无怪周王念往贤。



“That’s a very good idea. Let’s discuss it at the court conference tomorrow,” King Wu said.

The next morning, King Wu brought up the question before his ministers. “I wish to grant Wu Keng this territory to retain the Shang Ancestral Temple. But we need someone to assist and supervise him. Who do you recommend, dear Ministers?” he asked.

The ministers suggested two princes ought to stay behind for the job, so King Wu appointed Guan Shuxian and Cai Shudu, his two younger brothers, to remain at Zhaoge with Wu Keng. King Wu then said that he and his entire entourage would leave Zhaoge and return to West Qi early the next morning.

The next day, as their procession began to march from the city, all the people, men and women, young and old, crowded the streets to cheer the king. When they begged the king to stay with them and live in Zhaoge, he comforted them and said, “I’m deeply touched and thank you all for your sincere requests. I’ve asked my two brothers to remain at Zhaoge to assist and supervise Wu Keng. They will serve you just as I would. They will do everything they can to let you live in peace and happiness. You will have everything according to the law and will be allowed to work hard in your own trade. I really don’t need to stay here any longer.”

When they realized King Wu was determined to leave them, the people wept and cried loudly. King Wu also felt heartbroken. He turned to Guan Shuxian and Cai Shudu. “The people are the foundation of the nation. You must not treat them unkindly, but rather love them as your own children. If you do not obey this command, the law will be waiting for you. It must be as this even though we are brothers. I beg you earnestly to keep it in mind,” he urged them.

The two brothers promised to do as he ordered, and the long procession filed out of the city for West Qi. The people escorted King Wu for a long distance, crying all the way, before they returned to their homes in Zhaoge.

When they got to Mengjin, King Wu remembered how huge white fish had jumped into his dragon boat. They crossed the river again, passed





话说武王同子牙渡了黄河，过澠池，出五关，子牙一路行来，忽然想起一班随行征伐阵亡的将官，心下不胜伤悼。一日来至金鸡岭，兵过首阳山。只见大队方行，前面有二位道者阻住，对旗门官曰：“与我请姜元帅答话。”左右报进中军，子牙忙出辕门观看，却是伯夷、叔齐。子牙忙躬身问曰：“二位贤侯见尚，有何见谕？”伯夷曰：“姜元帅今日回兵，纣王致于何地？”子牙答曰：“纣王无道，天下共弃之。吾兵进五关，只见天下诸侯已大会于孟津。至甲子日，受率其旅若林，罔敢敌于我师，前徒倒戈攻于后，以北，至血流漂杵，纣王自焚，天下大定。吾主武王散鹿台之财，发巨桥之粟，封比干之墓，式商容之闾，诸侯无不悦服，尊武王为天子。今日之天下，非纣王之天下也。”子牙道罢，只见伯夷、叔齐仰面涕泣，大呼曰：“伤哉！伤哉！以暴易暴兮，予意欲何为！”歌罢，拂袖而回，竟入首阳山，作“采薇”之诗，七日不食周粟，饿死首阳山。后人诗吊之，诗曰：

昔阻周兵在首阳，忠心一点为成汤。三分已去犹啼血，  
万死无辞立大纲。水土不知新世界，江山还念旧君王。  
可怜耻食甘名节，万古常存日月光。

话说子牙兵过首阳山，至燕山，一路上，周民箪食壶浆迎武王。一日，兵至西岐山，忽有上大夫散宜生、黄滚前来接驾，领众官俱在道旁俯伏。武王在车中见众弟与黄滚老将军后随孙儿黄天爵，武王曰：“朕东征五载，今见卿等，不觉满腔凄惨，愁怀勃勃也。”宜生近前启曰：“陛下今登大位，天下太平，此不胜之喜。臣等得复睹天颜，正是龙虎重逢，再庆都俞喜起之风，陛下与万姓同乐太平，又何至凄惨不悦



through Mianchi County, and marched back through the five passes. They sighed to think of all the generals, colleagues, and soldiers lost along the way.

Just as they were approaching the Golden Chicken Range, two Taoists suddenly appeared. They told the patrolmen to report their arrival to Jiang Ziya. Jiang hurried out to meet them and recognized them as Boyi and Shuqi, two of King Zhou's uncles. Jiang Ziya greeted them and asked, "What can I do for you, honorable dukes?"

"We're glad to see your army returning to your native land, but may we know what happened to King Zhou in Zhaoge?" they questioned him eagerly.

Jiang reported all that had taken place. Since their army had arrived in Zhaoge. He told how King Zhou had burned himself to death and how King Wu had restored order among the people and distributed the royal wealth among the nobles. "Everyone acknowledges and respects King Wu as king of the Zhou Dynasty now," he concluded.

When he finished speaking, Boyi and Shuqi turned with a flick of their sleeves and went into the mountains. They died of starvation in seven days because they would not eat grain grown on land of the Zhou Dynasty.

For the rest of the journey into West Qi, the people came out to welcome King Wu and his army with delicious food and excellent wine. When they got to Mount West Qi, San Yisheng, Huang Gun, Huang Tianjue, and King Wu's brothers all knelt to offer their greetings.

Seeing the group from his coach, King Wu said, "We have been gone five years on this expedition against King Zhou. I've missed you all so terribly. But I feel rather heartbroken to see you today!"

San Yisheng moved forward and said, "Your Majesty! The country now enjoys peace and happiness with you on the throne. Your Majesty should enjoy these happy blessings with the people. How can you be sad like this today?"



也！”武王曰：“朕因会诸侯而伐纣，东进五关，一路内损朕许多忠良，未得共享太平，先归泉壤；今日卿等，老者、少者、存者、没者，俱不一其人，使朕不胜今昔之感，所以郁郁不乐耳。”散宜生启曰：“以臣死忠，以子死孝，俱是报君父之洪恩，遗芳名于史册，自是美事。陛下爵禄其子孙，世受国恩，即所以报之也，又何必不乐哉？”武王与众臣并辔而行。西岐山至岐州只七十里，一路上，万民争看，无不欢悦。武王鸾驾簇拥，来至西岐城，笙簧嘹亮，香气氤氲。武王至前殿下辇，入内庭，参见太姜，谒太妊，会太姬，设筵宴在显庆殿，大会文武。正是：

太平天子排佳宴，龙虎风云聚会时。

话说武王宴赏百官，君臣欢饮，尽醉而散。

次日早朝，聚众文武参谒毕，武王曰：“有奏章出班见朕，无事早散。”言未毕，子牙出班奏曰：“老臣奉天征讨，灭纣兴周，陛下大事已定；只有历年阵亡人、仙，未受封职。老臣不日辞陛下，往昆仑山，见掌教师尊，请玉牒、金符，封赠众人，使他各安其位，不致他怅怅无依耳。”武王曰：“相父之言甚是。”言未毕，午门官启驾：“外有商臣飞廉、恶来在午门候旨。”武王问子牙曰：“今商臣至此见朕，意欲何为？”子牙奏曰：“飞廉、恶来，纣之佞臣。前破纣之时，二奸隐匿；今见天下太平，至此欲簧惑陛下，希图爵禄耳。此等奸佞，岂可一日容之于天地间哉，但老臣有用他之处，陛下可宣入殿廷，俟老臣分付他，自有道理。”武王从



“Dear Minister! Don’t you know that we have lost so many loyal generals and ministers on this expedition? They can never enjoy this blessing of peace with us. It’s wonderful to meet one another again, but when I think of all those we left behind, I feel terribly sad,” King Wu said emotionally.

“Those ministers who sacrificed their lives for the nation will never be forgotten. You may grant their descendants land and titles of honor in memory of their loyal service. Don’t feel so sad again,” San Yisheng said earnestly.

King Wu then continued on with his ministers and generals to receive the people’s welcome about seventy *li* from the city. When he had returned to his palace, King Wu went first into the inner court to pay respects to his grand mother, Taijiang, Tairen, and his mother Taiji. Finally, he ordered a grand banquet be held in Celebration Court to entertain all the civil and military officials. They toasted one another and drank until early morning.

At the court conference the next morning, King Wu asked, “Have you anything to report, dear Ministers?”

Jiang Ziya left his line, moved forward, and said, “By your order, your old minister led an army to attack the tyrant, exterminate King Zhou, and establish the Zhou Dynasty. Now everything is nearly settled, but those who lost their lives on the battlefields have not yet been deified. Your old minister would thus like to ask leave, Your Majesty, to go to Mount Kunlun and discuss the upcoming deification with my religious chief.”

“You may leave at once, Prime Minister,” King Wu replied.

During their discussion it was reported that Fei Lian and E Lai, two ministers of the former Shang Dynasty, were waiting outside to see the king.

“Why would two ex-ministers of the Shang Dynasty come to see me?” King Wu asked Jiang Ziya.

“Fei Lian and E Lai were two bootlickers in the former Shang Dynasty. They must have hidden when King Zhou fell and now come to you for high posts. How can we let such wicked men live under the sky? But they may still be of some use to me. Your Majesty may see them in the court. Let me deal with them,” Jiang Ziya replied.



其言，命：“宣入殿前来。”左右将二臣引至丹墀，拜舞毕，口称：“亡国臣飞廉、恶来愿陛下万岁！”武王曰：“二卿至此，有何所愿？”飞廉奏曰：“纣王不听忠宣，荒淫酒色，以至社稷倾覆。臣闻大王仁德著于四海，天下归心，真可驾尧轶舜，臣故不惮千里，求见陛下，愿效犬马。倘蒙收录，得执鞭于左右，则臣之幸也。谨献玉符、金册，愿陛下容纳。”子牙曰：“二位大夫在纣俱有忠诚，奈纣王不察，致有败亡之祸。今既归周，是弃暗投明，愿陛下当用二位大夫，正所谓舍珉珠而用美玉也。”武王听子牙之言，封飞廉、恶来为中大夫；二臣谢恩。后人诗叹之，诗曰：

贪望高官特地来，玉符金节献金阶。子牙早定防奸计，难免封神剑下灾。

话说武王封了飞廉、恶来二人，子牙出朝，回相府，不表。

单说当年马氏笑子牙不能成其大事，竟弃子牙而他适。及至今日，武王嗣位，天下归周，宇宙太平，即茅檐蔀屋，穷谷深山，凡有人烟聚集之处，无有不知武王伐纣，俱是相父姜子牙之功。今日一统华夷，姜子牙出将入相，享人间无穷富贵，权牟人主，位极人臣，古今罕及，天下人无不赞叹：“当日子牙困穷之时，磻溪坐隐，此身已老于渔樵；孰意八十岁方被文王聘请归国，今日做出这无大不事业来。”今日讲，明日讲，一日讲到这马氏耳朵里来。马氏此时跟随了一个乡村田户之人。其日闻得邻家一个老婆子对马氏曰：“昔日你当时嫁的那个姜某，如今做了多大事业，……”如此长，如此短，说了一遍，说得那马氏满面通红，一腔热烘烘的起来，半日无语。那老婆子又促了他两句，说道：“当日还是大娘子错了，若是当时随了姜某，今日也享这无穷富贵，却强如在这里守穷度日。这还是你命里没福！”马氏越



King Wu ordered the two to be led in, and they knelt down before him. "Fei Lian and E Lai, two ministers of the Shang Dynasty, pray Your Majesty live for ten thousand years," they greeted him.

"What can I do for you?" King Wu asked.

"King Zhou did not listen to his loyal ministers but deluded himself with women and wine, destroying both himself and his kingdom. But Your Majesty's virtue and kindness are known throughout the kingdom. You are just like the Saint Emperors Yao and Shun of ancient times. We have traveled several thousand *li* in the hope of being able to serve you like dogs. We shall greatly appreciate your grace if you kindly accept us as your attendants or merely horse boys to hold your whip or wait on your every need. Here are the jade seals and gold leaf records as our presents to you, Your Majesty," Fei Lian said with another low bow.

"These two were faithful to King Zhou, but he paid no heed to them. Now they come to serve us, as they wish to leave the darkness and enter the brightness. How wonderful it is! May Your Majesty trust them and accept their service," Jiang Ziya recommended.

King Wu did as Jiang Ziya said and appointed Fei Lian and E Lai as middle ministers. They knelt down and kowtowed to show their gratitude.

Madam Ma was the woman who had married Jiang Ziya but then divorced him not long afterwards. She had disdained and ridiculed him as a good-for-nothing. But when King Wu rose to power as the king of the new dynasty, every house, even those in the mountains, knew it was Jiang Ziya who had helped the king defeat the tyrant and unite the country. Jiang Ziya was not only a great prime minister but also the commander of the whole army. He was admired by all. When Jiang lived at Panxi Stream as a hermit, he was discovered by King Wen at the age of eighty. The story of his subsequent services and great deeds was known by all. One day Madam Ma heard about it.

Ma had long ago married another villager. One day, her old neighbor came to visit. "Don't you know that your former husband Jiang is a famous man now? He's both prime minister and commander of the army. You shouldn't have divorced him. If you hadn't, you'd be enjoying riches



发心里如油煎火燎一般，追悔不及，越觉怒恼。当时马氏辞了老婆子，自家归来，坐在房里，越想越恨：“我当初如何看不上他！这双眼睛，还生在上！”自思：“便活一百岁，也只是如此；天下岂有这等大贵人错过了，还有什么好处！”又想：“适才这个老婆子说是我没福，不觉羞惭，再有何颜立于人世！不如寻个自尽罢！”乃大哭了一回。心里又想：“恐怕不是他。假如错听了，天下也有这个同名同姓的，却不是枉死了？”自己又自解叹：“且等到晚间，俟我这个丈夫来家，问他明白，再也未迟。”那日天晚，只见那农夫张三老往城中卖菜来家，马氏接着，收拾了晚饭与丈夫吃了，因问曰：“如今姜子牙，闻说他出将入相，百般富贵，果然真么？”张三老听说，忙陪笑脸答曰：“贤妻不问，我也不好说，果然是真的。前日姜丞相在朝歌，甚么样威仪！天下诸侯，俱各听命。我那时要与你说去见他一见，也讨个小小的富贵；我只怕他品位俱尊，恐惹出事来，故此一向不曾说得。今蒙娘子问及，只得说与你知道。如今迟了，姜丞相回国多时，只是当初在这里好的。”马氏闻言，半日无语。这张三老恐娘子着恼，又安慰了一回。马氏假意劝丈夫睡了，自己收拾浑身干净，哭了数声，悬梁自缢而死。——魂往封神台去了。及至张三老知觉，天已明了，马氏气绝，张三老只得买棺木埋葬。不表。后人诗叹之：

痴心尚望享荣华，应悔当时一念差。三复垂思无计策，  
悬梁虽死愧黄沙。



and honor with him today. As it is, you've sunk into poverty like the rest of us. I guess you're not destined to enjoy such happiness," the old woman said to Ma.

Ma felt as if her heart were on fire. She was greatly annoyed by the old woman's words. When the old woman had gone, she sat alone in her room thinking sadly. "Why is it I couldn't see him clearly at that time? What good are my eyes in this world?" Ma hated herself very much. "How can I stand in such poverty even if I live to be one hundred years old? What hope is there when I was so foolish as to let such a great man slip from my hands?

"How humiliating! The old woman said it wasn't my fate to live with such a great man. I haven't any face to meet the world; I should commit suicide to put an end to this life at once.

"But her news may be unreliable. It may be another man with the same name. I shouldn't kill myself unless I'm certain," Ma thought it over again.

"I'll wait until this evening when I can confirm what I've heard about my husband. If it's true I can then kill myself," Ma sighed, trying to comfort herself.

That evening when Zhang San, her husband, returned from selling vegetables, Ma welcomed him as usual and served him supper on time. After their meal, Ma asked, "It's said that Jiang Ziya is a great man now. He's not only the prime minister but also commander of the army. Have you heard this? Do you think it's true?"

"As you now ask me, I must tell you the truth, my dear wife. It's absolutely true. How glorious and dignified he was when his troops were in Zhaoge not long ago! I thought then about consulting you as to whether we should venture to see him and ask for a job as a low-ranking officer, but fearing his powerful position, I dared not take such a risk, nor was I willing to mention it to you. But now it's too late, as Premier Jiang has already returned to West Qi with the king," Zhang San replied.

Madam Ma said nothing, and seeing her in such distress, Zhang San tried to comfort her in any way he could. Ma finally asked Zhang to go to bed first, and when he had fallen asleep, she hung herself from a beam in the ceiling. Her soul flew straight to the Terrace of Creation.





话说次日子牙入朝见武王，奏曰：“昔日老臣奉师命下山，助陛下吊民伐罪，原是应运而兴，凡人、仙皆逢杀劫，先立有‘封神榜’在封神台上。今大事已定，人、仙魂魄无依，老臣特启陛下，给假往昆仑山见师尊，请玉符、金册，来封众神，早安其位，望陛下准臣施行。”武王曰：“相父劳苦多年，当享太平之福；但此事亦是不了之局，相父可速宜施行，不得久羁仙岛，令朕凝望眼耳。”子牙曰：“老臣怎敢有辜圣恩而乐游林壑也！”子牙忙辞武王，回相府，沐浴毕，驾土遁往昆仑山而来。不知后事如何，且听下回分解。



A few days later at a court conference, Jiang Ziya said to King Wu, "Many years ago, by order of my master, I left the mountain to come to help you attack the tyrant for the sake of the people. As fate had destined, many fairies and ordinary generals were killed along the way. Before we left, we put the List of Creations in the Terrace of Creation, but now the souls of the deceased need a fixed place to stay. So I must ask leave from you to go to Mount Kunlun to see my master. I will ask him for the jade spells, seal, and golden-leaf booklet, so that I may deify the deceased upon my return. Please permit me to go, Your Majesty."

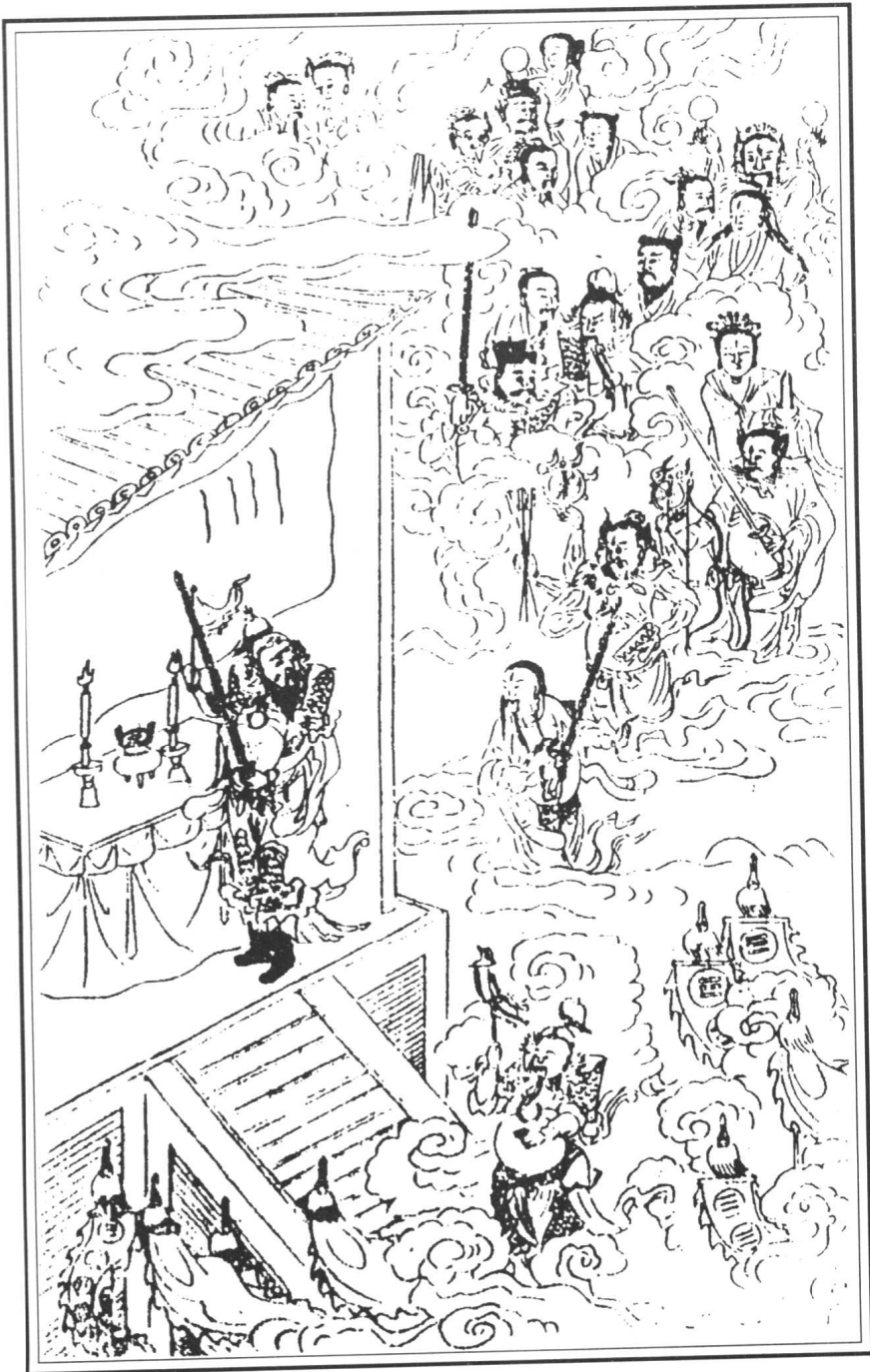
"You've served the nation so many years and ought to enjoy the blessings of peace. But this matter is very important and should be taken care of immediately. You may go at once. Don't linger too long in the fairyland, or I miss you terribly," King Wu replied.

"How dare I forget you, Your Majesty? I won't spend too much time in the forests and mountains. I'll return very soon," Jiang Ziya promised.

Jiang then bowed and bade farewell to King Wu. He returned to his residence, took a bath, and left for Mount Kunlun.

Please read the next chapter if you wish to know what happened at the Terrace of Creation.







## 第九十九回

### 姜子牙归国封神

诗曰：

濛濛香霭彩云生，满道讴歌贺太平。北极祥光笼兑地，  
南来紫气绕金城。群仙此日皆登果，列圣明朝尽返贞。  
万古崇呼禋祀远，从今护国永澄清。

话说子牙借土遁来至玉虚宫前，不敢擅入。少时，只见白鹤童儿出来，看见姜子牙，忙问曰：“师叔何来？”子牙曰：“烦你通报一声，特来叩谒老师。”童子忙进宫来，至碧游床前启曰：“禀上老爷：姜师叔在宫外求见。”元始天尊曰：“着他进来。”童子出来，传与子牙。子牙进宫，至碧游床前，倒身下拜：“弟子姜尚愿老师万寿无疆！弟子今日上山，拜见老师，特为请玉符、救命，将阵亡忠臣孝子，逢劫神仙，早早封其品位，毋令他游魂无依，终日悬望。乞老师大发慈悲，速赐施行。诸神幸甚！弟子幸甚！”元始曰：“我已知道了。你且先回，不日就有符敕至封神台来。你速回去罢。”子牙叩首谢恩而退。子牙离了玉虚宫，回至西岐；次日，入朝参谒武王，备言封神一事，“老师自令人赍来。”不觉光阴迅速，也非止一日，只见那日空中笙簧嘹亮，香气氤氲，旌幢羽盖，黄巾力士簇拥而来。白鹤童子亲赍符敕降临相府。怎见得，有诗为证：

紫府金符降玉台，旌幢羽盖拂三台。雷瘟火斗分先后，

## Chapter 99

### Deification of the Dead

When he arrived at the Jade Emptiness Palace on Mount Kunlun, Jiang Ziya was admitted by White Crane Lad and went in to see Heavenly Primogenitor.

Jiang knelt down and said, "May you live ten thousand years. I beg you to grant me the jade spells so I can deify the souls in the Terrace of Creation. Dear Master, have mercy on them. Both I and the Gods will appreciate your kindness forever."

"I already knew this, Jiang Ziya. You may return first. I will send the jade spells and my decree before long," Heavenly Primogenitor replied.

Jiang Ziya kowtowed and returned to West Qi. He went to see King Wu to report all that had happened. A few days later, soft music and a sweet fragrance drifted down from the sky. Several yellow-scarved genii accompanied White Crane Lad to deliver the jade spells and decree.





列宿群星次第开。纠察无私称至德，滋生有自序长才。

仙神人鬼从今定，不使朝朝堕草莱。

话说子牙迎接玉符、金敕，供于香案上，望玉虚宫谢恩毕，黄巾力士与白鹤童子别了子牙回昆仑。不表。子牙将符敕亲自赍捧，借土遁往岐山前来。只一阵风早到了封神台。有清福神柏鉴来接子牙。子牙捧符敕进了封神台，将符敕在正中供奉，传令武吉、南宫适：“立八卦纸幡，镇压方向与干支旗号。”又令二人领三千人马，按五方排列。子牙分付停当，方沐浴更衣，拈香金鼎，酌酒献花，绕台三匝。子牙拜毕诰敕，先命清福神柏鉴在台下听候。子牙然后开读玉虚宫元始天尊诰敕：

“太上无极混元教主元始天尊敕曰：呜呼！仙凡路迥，非厚培根行岂能通；神鬼途分，岂谄媚奸邪所凯窃。纵服气炼形于岛屿，未曾斩却三尸，终归五百年后之劫；总抱真守一于玄关，若未超脱阳神，难赴三千瑶池之约。故尔等虽闻至道，未证菩提。有心自修持，贪痴未脱；有身已入圣，嗔怒难除。须至往愆累积，劫运相寻。或托凡躯而尽忠报国；或因嗔怒而自惹灾尤。生死轮回，循环无已；业冤相逐，转报无休。吾甚悯焉！怜尔等身从锋刃，日沉沦于苦海，心虽忠荩，每飘泊而无依。特命姜尚依劫运之轻重，循资品之高下，封尔等为八部正神，分掌各司，按布周天，纠察人间善恶，检举三界功行。祸福自尔等施行，生死从今超脱，有功之日，循序而迁。尔等其恪守弘规，毋肆私妄，自惹愆尤，以貽伊戚，永膺宝篆，常握丝纶。故兹尔敕，尔其

Jiang Ziya went out to welcome the messengers. He knelt down to receive the jade spells and golden decree and kowtowed toward the Jade Emptiness Palace to thank his master. Jiang then left immediately for Mount Qi. When he got to the Terrace of Creation, he was welcomed by Bai Jian, the God of Pure Happiness.

Jiang Ziya placed the jade spells and golden decree on the alter in the center. He ordered Wu Ji and Nangong Kuo to erect paper pennants with the decimal and duodecimal cycle signs all around the terrace to suppress evil spirits. He also ordered that 3,000 soldiers should be brought in to guard the terrace.

Jiang then took a bath and changed his robe. He burnt incense inside a gold tripod, poured wine, presented flowers and raced around the terrace three times. After he had thus given honor to the golden decree, Jiang Ziya ordered Bai Jian to wait below the terrace for his order. He then unrolled the golden decree and read aloud:

I authorize Jiang Ziya to deify you on my behalf. You shall all be free from transmigration from birth to death. You shall be promoted according to your merits. You must obey the law. Don't commit any new sin or crime...







钦哉!”

子牙宣读敕书毕，将符箓供放案桌之上，乃全装甲冑，左手执杏黄旗，右手执打神鞭，站立中央，大呼曰：“柏鉴可将‘封神榜’张挂台下。诸神俱当循序而进，不得搀越取咎。”柏鉴领法旨，将“封神榜”张挂台下。只见诸神俱簇拥前来观看。那榜首就是柏鉴。柏鉴看见，手执引魂幡，忙进坛跪伏坛下，听宣元始封诰。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔柏鉴昔为轩辕皇帝大帅，征伐蚩尤，曾有勋功；不幸殛死北海，捐躯报国，忠荃可嘉！一向沉沦，冤尤可悯。幸遇姜尚封神，守台功茂，特赐宝箓，慰尔忠魂。今敕封尔为三界首领八部三百六十五位清福正神之职。尔其钦哉！”柏鉴在坛下，阴风影里，手执百灵幡，望玉敕叩头谢恩毕。只见坛下风云簇拥，香雾盘旋。柏鉴至台外，手执百灵幡伺候指挥。子牙命柏鉴：“引黄天化上台听封。”不一时，只见清福神用幡引黄天化至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔黄天化以青年尽忠报国，下山首建大功，救父尤为孝养；未享荣封，捐躯马革，情实痛焉！援功定赏，当存其厚，特敕封尔为管领三山正神炳灵公之职。尔其钦哉！”黄天化在坛下叩首谢恩，出坛而去。子牙命柏鉴：“引五岳正神上坛受封。”少时，清福神引黄飞虎等齐至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔黄飞虎遭暴主之惨恶，致逃亡于他国，流离迁徙，方切骨肉之悲；奋志酌知，突遇阳针之劫，遂罹凶祸，情实可悲！崇黑虎有志济民，时逢劫运；闻聘等三人金兰气重，方图协力同心，忠义志坚，欲效股肱之愿；岂意阳运告终，赍志而歿。尔五人同一孤忠，功有深浅。特锡荣封，以是差等。乃敕封尔黄飞虎



Jiang Ziya then placed the jade spells on the desk. He was fully armed and held the Yellow Apricot Flag in his left hand and the Staff for Beating Gods in his right. "Bai Jian!" he shouted loudly. "Hang up the List of Creations. Let all the souls come to me in good order. No one is allowed to leave the line."

Bai Jian hung up the list, and all the souls rushed forward to read it. When he saw that his name was at the top of the list, Bai Jian instantly held up the Soul Leading Pennant, entered the terrace, and knelt down before the altar.

"By decree of Heavenly Primogenitor, I deify you as the God of Pure Happiness. You must take this post with care and respect," Jiang Ziya declared.

Bai Jian kowtowed and then left the terrace to wait for further orders.

"Bring in Huang Tianhua," Jiang Ziya ordered.

Huang Tianhua entered and knelt down.

"Huang Tianhua, you sacrificed your life for the nation when you were young. You achieved many great merits. We must reward you with a high post. I deify you as Bing Ling Gong, the God of the Three Sacred Mountains." Jiang Ziya declared.

Huang Tianhua kowtowed and left the terrace at once.

Jiang Ziya then ordered, "Bring in Huang Feihu, Chong Heihu, Wen Pin, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong."

Bai Jian led the five souls to the terrace, and they all knelt down.

"All of you were loyal, but your merits differ one from another. I entitle you, Huang Feihu, as the chief God of the five mountains with



为五岳之首，仍加敕一道，执掌幽冥地府一十八重地狱，凡一应生死转化人神仙鬼，俱从东岳勘对，方许施行。特敕封尔为东岳泰山天齐仁圣大帝之职，总管天地人间吉凶祸福。尔其钦哉！毋渝厥典。”黄飞虎在台下先叩首谢恩。子牙方读四敕曰：“特敕封尔崇黑虎为南岳衡山司天昭圣大帝；特敕封尔闻聘为中岳嵩山中天崇圣大帝；特敕封尔崔英为北岳恒山安天玄圣大帝；特敕封尔蒋雄为西岳华山金天愿圣大帝。尔其钦哉！”崇黑虎等俱叩首谢恩毕，同黄飞虎出坛而去。子牙命柏鉴：“引雷部正神上台受封”。只见清福神持引魂幡出坛来引雷部正神。只见闻太师，毕竟他英风锐气，不肯让人，那里肯随柏鉴。子牙在台上看见香风一阵，云气盘旋，率领二十四位正神径闯至台下，也不跪。子牙执鞭大呼曰：“雷部正神跪听宣读玉虚宫封号！”闻太师方才率众神跪听封号。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔闻仲曾入名山，证修大道，虽闻朝元之果，未证至一之谛，登大罗而无缘，位人臣之极品，辅相两朝，竭忠补衮，虽劫运之使然，其贞烈之可悯。今特令尔督率雷部，兴云布雨，万物托以长养，诛逆除奸，善恶由之祸福；特敕封尔为九天应元雷神普化天尊之职，仍率领雷部二十四员催云助雨护法天君，任尔施行。尔其钦哉！”

雷部二十四位天君正神名讳：

邓天君	讳忠	辛天君	讳环	张天君	讳节
陶天君	讳荣	庞天君	讳洪	刘天君	讳甫
苟天君	讳章	毕天君	讳环	秦天君	讳完
赵天君	讳江	董天君	讳全	袁天君	讳角



power over the eighteen hells for the deceased. All incarnations after death, into human beings, Gods, fairies, or ghosts, are under your control. I deify you, Huang Feihu, as the God of Taishan, the East Mountain—the King and Saintly Emperor as great as Heaven. You control all fortune and misfortune, blessings and punishment for the human beings in this world.”

Huang Feihu kowtowed to show his gratitude. Then Jiang Ziya announced, “I deify Chong Heihu as the God of Hengshan, the South Mountain; Wen Pin the God of Songshan, the Middle Mountain; Cui Ying the God of Hengshan, the North Mountain; and Jiang Xiong the God of Huashan, the West Mountain. Each is entitled the ‘Great Saint Emperor’.”

Chong Heihu, Wen Pin, Cui Ying, and Jiang Xiong all kowtowed and then left the terrace with Huang Feihu.

“Let the Gods of thunder come to see me,” Jiang Ziya ordered.

When they were led forward, Grand Tutor Wen was unwilling to kneel before Jiang Ziya.

“All kneel down at once to hear the decree from the Jade Emptiness Palace,” Jiang Ziya shouted, waving his staff.

Grand Tutor Wen was forced to yield and kneel down with other souls.

“Wen Zhong, your loyalty and chastity are admirable. You are to be the head of the thunder Gods. Your duties are gather clouds, drop rain, and grow crops for the people. You will punish the wicked and bless the good. I deify you as Chief of the Thunder Gods under the Nine Heavens. The twenty-four Gods under your leadership are as follows:

Deng Zhong, Xin Huan, Zhang Jie, Tao Rong, Pang Hong, Liu Fu, Gou Zhang, Bi Huan, Qin Wan, Zhao Jiang, Dong Quan, Yuan Jue, Li De,



李天君	讳德 <small>(万仙阵亡)</small>	孙天君	讳良	柏天君	讳礼
王天君	讳变	姚天君	讳宾	张天君	讳绍
黄天君	讳庚 <small>(万仙阵亡)</small>	金天君	讳素 <small>(万仙阵亡)</small>	吉天君	讳立
余天君	讳庆	闪电神	<small>(即金光圣母)</small>	助风神	<small>(即菡芝仙)</small>

话说雷祖率领二十四位天君听封号毕，俱望台上叩首谢恩，出封神台去讫。只见祥光缥缈，紫雾盘旋，电光闪烁，风云簇拥，自是不同。有诗赞之，诗曰：

布雨兴云助太平，滋培万物育群生。从今雷部承天敕，  
诛恶安良达圣明。

雷祖去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引火部正神上台听封。”不一时，清福神引罗宣等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔罗宣昔在火龙岛曾修无上之真，未跨青鸾之翼，因一念嗔痴，弃七尺为乌有，虽尤尔咎，实乃往愆。特敕封尔为南方三气火德星君正神之职；仍率领火部五位正神，任尔施行，巡察人间善恶。尔其钦哉！”

火部五位正神名讳：

尾火虎	朱	讳招	室火猪	高	讳震
觜火猴	方	讳贵	翼火蛇	王	讳蛟
接火天君	刘	讳环”			

话说火星率领五位正神叩首谢恩，出台去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引瘟部正神上台受封。”少时，清福神引吕岳等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。只见惨雾凄凄，阴风习习。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔吕岳潜修岛屿，有成仙了道之机，误听萋菲，动干戈杀戮之惨，自堕恶趣，夫复何戚！特敕封尔为主掌瘟癘昊天大帝之职；率领瘟部六位正神，凡有时症，任



Sun Liang, Bai Li, Wang Bian, Yao Bin, Zhang Shao, Huang Geng, Jin Su, Ji Li, Yu Qing, Mother Golden Light (Goddess of Lightning), and Fairy Lotus (Goddess of the Wind). All are honored with the title of ‘Heavenly Master,’” Jiang Ziya declared.

Wen Zhong and his twenty-four thunder Gods kowtowed and left the terrace. Auspicious clouds and purple haze floated through the air. lightning and wind appeared immediately in the air.

“Lead the Gods of fire before me,” Jiang Ziya ordered next.

When Luo Xuan and the other fire Gods had knelt down, Jiang Ziya declared, “Luo Xuan, you are deified as Chief of the Fire Gods. You must watch over the people and check their evil or good deeds. The five Gods beneath you are: Zhu Zhao, Gao Zhen, Fang Gui, Wang Jiao, and Liu Huan.”

After they had kowtowed and left, Jiang Ziya ordered, “Lead the Gods of plague to the terrace.”

Before long, Lu Yue and the others ascended the terrace, knelt down, and listened.

“Lu Yue, I deify you as Chief of the Plague Gods, with the honorable title of ‘Heavenly King.’ The six Gods under your control are: Zhou



尔施行。尔其钦哉！

瘟部六位正神名讳：

东方行瘟使者	周	讳信
南方行瘟使者	李	讳奇
西方行瘟使者	朱	讳天麟
北方行瘟使者	杨	讳文辉
劝善大师	陈	讳庚
和瘟道士	李	讳平”

吕岳等听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引斗部正神至台上受封。”不一时，只见清福神引金灵圣母等至台下，跪听宣读救命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始救命：尔金灵圣母，道德已全，曾历百千之劫；嗔心未退，致罹杀戮之殃；皆自蹈于烈焰之中，岂冥数定轮回之苦。悔已无及。慰尔潜修，特敕封尔执掌金阙，坐镇斗府，居周天列宿之首，为北极紫气之尊，八万四千群星恶煞，咸听驱使，永坐坎宫斗母正神之职。钦承新命，克盖往愆！”

五斗群星吉曜恶煞正神名讳：

东斗星官	苏	讳护	金	讳奎
	姬	讳叔明	赵	讳丙
西斗星官	黄	讳天禄	龙	讳环
	孙	讳子羽	胡	讳升
	胡	讳云鹏		
中斗星官	鲁	讳仁杰	晁	讳雷
	姬	讳叔升		

Xin, the God of Plague in the East; Li Qi, the God of Plague in the South; Zhu Tianlin, the God of Plague in the West; Yang Wenhui, the God of Plague in the North; Chen Geng, the Grand Instructor for Goodness; and Li Ping, the God of Destroying the Plague,” Jiang Ziya declared.

Lu Yue and the other Gods kowtowed and left the terrace for their posts at once.

Jiang Ziya then ordered, “Lead the Gods of the constellation to the terrace for deification.”

In a short while, Bai Jian led Mother Golden Spirit and the others to the terrace. They knelt down and listened.

“Mother Golden Spirit, I appoint you as the head of the constellations. You are deified as the Honorable Goddess of the North Pole Dippers, with 84,000 Gods of the stars under your command. These are the Gods of the five constellations:

Gods of the Eastern Constellation: Su Hu, Jin Kui, Ji Shuming, and Zhao Bing;

Gods of the Western Constellation: Huang Tianlu, Long Huan, Sun Ziyu, Hu Sheng, and Hu Yunpeng;

Gods of the Central Constellation: Lu Renjie, Chao Lei, and Ji Shusheng;







中天北极紫微大帝

南斗星官 周 讳纪

高 讳贵

孙 讳宝

北斗星官 黄 讳天祥 天罡

窦 讳荣 武曲

韩 讳变 右弼

鄂 讳顺 贪狼

董 讳忠 招摇

姬 讳伯邑考

胡 讳雷

余 讳成

雷 讳鹏

比干 文曲

韩 讳升 左辅

苏 讳全忠 破军

郭 讳宸 巨门

群星名讳：

青龙星 邓 讳九公

朱雀星 马 讳方

勾陈星 雷 讳鹏

太阳星 徐 讳盖

玉堂星 商 讳容

龙德星 洪 讳锦

天喜星 纣王 天子

月德星 夏 讳招 (纣大夫)

貌端星 贾氏 (黄飞虎妻)

木府星 邓 讳华

火府星 火灵 圣母

六合星 邓氏 婵玉

力士星 邬 讳文化

河魁星 黄 讳飞彪

帝车星 姜 讳桓楚

白虎星 殷 讳成秀

玄武星 徐 讳坤

滕蛇星 张 讳山

太阴星 姜氏 (纣后)

天贵星 姬 讳叔乾

红鸾星 龙吉 公主

天德星 梅 讳伯 (纣大夫)

天赦星 赵 讳启 (纣大夫)

金府星 萧 讳臻

水府星 余 讳元

土府星 土 讳行孙

博士星 杜 讳元铣

奏书星 胶 讳鬲

月魁星 彻地 夫人

天嗣星 黄 讳飞豹



God of the North Pole, the Great Emperor: Ji Bo Yikao;

Gods of the South Constellation: Zhou Ji, Hu Lei, Gao Gui, Yu Cheng, Sun Bao, and Lei Kun;

Gods of the Northern Constellation: Huang Tianxiang, Bi Gan (God of Culture), Dou Rong (God of Military Affairs), Han Sheng, Han Bian, Su Quanzhong, E Shun, Guo Chen, and Dong Zhong;

The Gods or Goddesses of the stars:

- God of the Green Dragon Star: Deng Jiugong;
- God of the White Tiger Star: Yin Chengxiu;
- God of the Red Sparrow Star: Ma Fang;
- God of the Mysterious Martial Star: Xu Kun;
- God of the Gone-with-the-Old Star: Lei Peng;
- God of the Snake Star: Zhang Shan;
- God of the Solar Star: Xu Gai;
- Goddess of the Lunar Star: Queen Jiang;
- God of the Jade Hall Star: Shang Rong;
- God of the Heavenly Precious Star: Ji Shuqian;
- God of the Dragon Virtue Star: Hong Jin;
- Goddess of the Red Phoenix Star: Princess Long Ji;
- God of the Heavenly Happy Star: King Zhou;
- God of the Heavenly Virtue Star: Mei Bo;
- God of the Lunar Virtue Star: Xia Zhao;
- God of the Heavenly Amnesty Star: Zhao Qi;
- Goddess of the Upright Behavior Star: Lady Jia (Huang Feihu's wife);
- God of the Metal Mansion Star: Xiao Zhen;
- God of the Wooden Mansion Star: Deng Hua;
- God of the Water Mansion Star: Yu Yuan;
- Goddess of the Fire Mansion Star: Mother Fiery Spirit;
- God of the Earth Mansion Star (Saturn): Earth Traveler Sun;
- Goddess of the Six Combinations Star: Deng Chanyu;
- God of the Doctorate Star: Du Yuanxian;
- God of the Power Star: Wu Wenhua;
- God of the Admonishment Star: Jiao Ge;
- God of the River Leading Star: Huang Feibiao;



帝辂星	丁	讳策	天马星	鄂	讳崇	禹
皇恩星	李	讳锦	天医星	钱	讳保	
地后星	黄氏	(纣妃)	宅龙星	姬	讳叔	德
伏龙星	黄	讳明	驿马星	雷	讳开	
黄旛星	魏	讳贲	豹尾星	吴	讳谦	
丧门星	张	讳桂芳	吊客星	风	讳林	
勾绞星	费	讳仲	卷舌星	尤	讳浑	
罗喉星	彭	讳遵	计都星	王	讳豹	
飞廉星	姬	讳叔坤	大耗星	崇	讳侯	虎
小耗星	殷	讳破败	贯索星	丘	讳引	
栏杆星	龙	讳安吉	披头星	太	讳鸾	
五鬼星	邓	讳秀	羊刃星	赵	讳升	
血光星	孙	讳焰红	官符星	方	讳义	真
孤辰星	余	讳化	天狗星	季	讳康	
病符星	王	讳佐	钻骨星	张	讳凤	
死符星	卞	讳金龙	天败星	柏	讳显	忠
浮沉星	郑	讳椿	天杀星	卞	讳吉	
岁杀星	陈	讳庚	岁刑星	徐	讳芳	(穿云总兵)
岁破星	晁	讳田	独火星	姬	讳叔	义
血光星	马	讳忠	亡神星	欧阳	讳淳	(临潼总兵)
月破星	王	讳虎	月游星	石	矾	娘娘



Goddess of the Moon Leading Star: Madam Chedi;  
God of the Imperial Coach Star: Jiang Huanchu;  
God of the Heavenly Inheritance Star: Huang Feibao;  
God of the Imperial Chariot Star: Ding Ce;  
God of the Heavenly Horse Star: E Chongyu;  
God of the Imperial Grace Star: Li Jin;  
God of the Heavenly Medical Star: Qian Bao;  
Goddess of the Earthly Queen Star: Concubine Huang;  
God of the Domestic Dragon Star: Ji Shude;  
God of the Dragon Taming Star: Huang Ming;  
God of the Station Horse Star: Lei Kai;  
God of the Yellow Pennant Star: Wei Ben;  
God of the Leopard Tail Star: Wu Qian;  
God of the Mourning House Star: Zhang Guifang;  
God of the Lamenting Visitor Star: Feng Lin;  
God of the Pulling-Twisting Star: Fei Zhong;  
God of the Rolled Tongue Star: You Hun;  
God of the Throat Control Star: Peng Zun;  
God of the City Planning Star: Wang Bao;  
God of the Flying Curtain Star: Ji Shukun;  
God of the Great Spending Star: Chong Houhu;  
God of the Minor Spending Star: Yin Pobai;  
God of the the Linked String Star: Qiu Yin;  
God of the Railing Star: Long Anji;  
God of the Head Spreading Star: Tai Luan;  
God of the Five Devils Star: Deng Xiu;  
God of the Goat Cutlass Star: Zhao Sheng;  
God of the Bloody Light Star: Sun Yanhong;  
God of the Official Seal Star: Fang Yizhen;  
God of the Single Morning Star: Yu Hua;  
God of the Heavenly Dog Star: Ji Kang;  
God of the Sickness Spell Star: Wang Zuo;  
God of the Bone Boring Star: Zhang Feng;  
God of the Death Spell Star: Bian Jinlong;  
God of the Heavenly Defeat Star: Bai Xianzhong;  
God of the Floating-Submerging Star: Zheng Chun;  
God of the Heavenly Slaying Star: Bian Ji;  
God of the Yearly Killing Star: Chen Geng;  
God of the Yearly Punishment Star: Xu Fang;  
God of the Yearly Breaking Star: Chao Tian;  
God of the Lonely Fire Star: Ji Shuyi;  
God of the Blood Red Star: Ma Zhong;  
God of the Lost Spirit Star: Ouyang Chun;  
God of the Monthly Breaking Star: Wang Hu;  
Goddess of the Monthly Touring Star: Lady Rock;



死气星	陈	讳	季贞	咸池星	徐	讳	忠
月厌星	姚	讳	忠	月刑星	陈	讳	梧
黑杀星	高	讳	继能	七杀星	张	讳	奎
五谷星	殷	讳	洪	除杀星	余	讳	忠
天刑星	欧阳	讳	天禄	天罗星	陈	讳	桐
地网星	姬	讳	叔吉	天空星	梅	讳	武
华盖星	敖	讳	丙	十恶星	周	讳	信
蚕畜星	黄	讳	元济	桃花星	高	氏	兰英
扫帚星	马	氏	(子牙妻)	大祸星	李	讳	良
狼籍星	韩	讳	荣	披麻星	林	讳	善
九丑星	龙	须	虎	三尸星	撒	讳	坚
三尸星	撒	讳	强	三尸星	撒	讳	勇
阴错星	金	讳	成	阳差星	马	讳	成龙
刃杀星	公孙	讳	铎	四废星	袁	讳	洪
五穷星	孙	讳	合	地空星	梅	讳	德
红艳星	杨	氏	(纣妃)	流霞星	武	讳	荣
寡宿星	朱	讳	升	天瘟星	金	讳	大升
荒芜星	戴	讳	礼	胎神星	姬	讳	叔礼
伏断星	朱	讳	子真	反吟星	杨	讳	显
伏吟星	姚	讳	庶良	刀砧星	常	讳	昊
灭没星	房	讳	景元	岁厌星	彭	讳	祖寿
破碎星	吴	讳	龙				

二十八宿名讳(内有八人封在水、火二部管事,俱万仙阵亡):

角木蛟	柏	讳	林	斗木豸	杨	讳	信
奎木狼	李	讳	雄	井木犴	沈	讳	庚



God of the Dead Air Star: Chen Jizhen;  
God of the Salty Pond Star: Xu Zhong;  
God of the Monthly Disgusted Star: Yao Zhong;  
God of the Monthly Punishment Star: Chen Wu;  
God of the Black Killing Star: Gao Jineng;  
God of the Seven Murders Star: Zhang Kui;  
God of the Five Grains Star: Yin Hong;  
God of the Avoiding Murder Star: Yu Zhong;  
God of the Heavenly Punishment Star: Ouyang Tianlu;  
God of the Heavenly Net Star: Chen Tong;  
God of the Earthly Net Star: Ji Shuji;  
God of the Heavenly Space Star: Mei Wu;  
God of the Parasol Star: Ao Bing;  
God of the Ten Evils Star: Zhou Xin;  
Goddess of the Silkworm Breeding Star: Huang Yuanji;  
Goddess of the Peach Blossom Star: Gao Lanying;  
Goddess of the Broom Star: Lady Ma (Jiang Ziya's wife);  
God of the Great Calamity Star: Li Gen;  
God of the Scattering About Star: Han Rong;  
God of the Mourning Dress Star: Lin Shan;  
God of the Nine Ugliness Star: Dragon Beard Tiger;  
Gods of the Three Corpse Stars: Sa Jian, Sa Qiang, and Sa Yong;  
God of the Yin Mistake Star: Jin Cheng;  
God of the Yang Error Star: Ma Chenglong;  
God of the Cutlass Slaying Star: Gongsun Duo;  
God of the Four Waste Star: Yuan Hong;  
God of the Five Poverties Star: Sun He;  
God of the Earthly Space Empty Star: Mei De;  
Goddess of the Red Lovely Star: Concubine Yang;  
God of the Flowing Haze Star: Wu Rong;  
God of the Sleeping Alone Star: Zhu Sheng;  
God of the Heavenly Plague Star: Jin Dasheng;  
God of the Laying Waste Star: Dai Li;  
God of the Fetus Spirit Star: Ji Shuli;  
God of the Decision Star: Zhu Zizhen;  
God of the Anti-Singing Star: Yang Xian;  
God of the Pro-Singing Star: Yao Shuliang;  
God of the Knife Anvil Star: Chang Hao;  
God of the Exterminating Star: Fang Jingyuan;  
God of the Yearly Disgusted Star: Peng Zushou;  
God of the Breaking Star: Wu Long.

The Gods of the twenty-eight constellations:

God of the Horny Wood Dragon Constellation: Bai Lin;  
God of the Dipper Wood Insect Constellation: Yang Xin;  
God of the Huge Wood Wolf Constellation; Li Xiong;  
God of the Well Wood Elk Constellation: Shen Geng;



牛金牛	李	讳弘	鬼金羊	赵	讳白高
娄金狗	张	讳雄	亢金龙	李	讳道通
女土蝠	郑	讳元	胃土雉	宋	讳庚
柳土獐	吴	讳坤	氏土貉	高	讳丙
星日马	吕	讳能	昴日鸡	黄	讳仓
虚日鼠	周	讳宝	房日兔	姚	讳公伯
毕月乌	金	讳绳阳	危月燕	侯	讳太乙
心月狐	苏	讳元	张月鹿	薛	讳定

随斗部天罡星三十六位名讳(俱万仙阵亡):

天魁星	高	讳衍	天罡星	黄	讳真
天机星	卢	讳昌	天闲星	纪	讳丙
天勇星	姚	讳公孝	天雄星	施	讳桧
天猛星	孙	讳乙	天威星	李	讳豹
天英星	朱	讳义	天贵星	陈	讳坎
天富星	黎	讳仙	天满星	方	讳保
天孤星	詹	讳秀	天伤星	李	讳洪仁
天玄星	王	讳龙茂	天健星	邓	讳玉
天暗星	李	讳新	天祐星	徐	讳正道
天空星	典	讳通	天速星	吴	讳旭
天异星	吕	讳自成	天煞星	任	讳来聘
天微星	龚	讳清	天究星	单	讳百招
天退星	高	讳可	天寿星	戚	讳成
天剑星	王	讳虎	天平星	卜	讳同



God of the Ox Metal Ox Constellation: Li Hong;  
God of the Devil Metal Goat Constellation: Zhao Baigao;  
God of the Blundering Metal Dog Constellation: Zhang Xiong;  
God of the Haughty Metal Dragon Constellation: Li Daotong;  
God of the Female Earth Bat Constellation: Zheng Yuan;  
God of the Stomach Earth Pheasant Constellation: Song Geng;  
God of the Willow Earth Roebuck Constellation: Wu Kun;  
God of the Native Earth Jackal Constellation: Gao Bing;  
God of the Star Sun Horse Constellation: Lu Neng;  
God of the Heroic Sun Cock Constellation: Huang Cang;  
God of the Vain Sun Rat Constellation: Zhou Bao;  
God of the Room Sun Rabbit Constellation: Yao Gongbo;  
God of the Completion Moon Crow Constellation: Jin Shengyang;  
God of the Danger Moon Swallow Constellation: Hou Taiyi;  
God of the Heart Moon Fox Constellation: Su Yuan;  
God of the Long Moon Deer Constellation: Xue Ding.

The thirty-six Gods of the Heavenly Gallant Stars:

God of the Heavenly Leading Star: Gao Yan;  
God of the Heavenly Gallant Star: Huang Zhen;  
God of the Heavenly Planning Star: Lu Chang;  
God of the Heavenly Leisure Star: Ji Bing;  
God of the Heavenly Courageous Star: Yao Gongxiao;  
God of the Heavenly Heroic Star: Shi Kuai;  
God of the Heavenly Fierce Star: Sun Yi;  
God of the Heavenly Mighty Star: Li Bao;  
God of the Heavenly Courageous Star: Zhu Yi;  
God of the Heavenly Honorable Star: Chen Kan;  
God of the Heavenly Rich Star: Li Xian;  
God of the Heavenly Full Star: Fang Bao;  
God of the Heavenly Lonely Star: Zhan Xiu;  
God of the Heavenly Injured Star: Li Hongren;  
God of the Heavenly Mystic Star: Wang Longmao;  
God of the Heavenly Healthy Star: Deng Yu;  
God of the Heavenly Dark Star: Li Xin;  
God of the Heavenly Safety Star: Xu Zhengdao;  
God of the Heavenly Empty Star: Dian Tong;  
God of the Heavenly Swift Star: Wu Xu;  
God of the Heavenly Different Star: Lu Zicheng;  
God of the Heavenly Demon Star: Ren Laipin;  
God of the Heavenly Minute Star: Gong Qing;  
God of the Heavenly Contemplating Star: Shan Baizhao;  
God of the Heavenly Retreating Star: Gao Ke;  
God of the Heavenly Longevity Star: Qi Cheng;  
God of the Heavenly Sword Star: Wang Hu;  
God of the Heavenly Level Star: Bu Tong;





天罪星	姚	讳公	天损星	唐	讳天正
天败星	申	讳礼	天牢星	闻	讳杰
天慧星	张	讳智雄	天暴星	毕	讳德
天哭星	刘	讳达	天巧星	程	讳三益

随斗部地煞星七十二位名讳(俱万仙阵亡):

地魁星	陈	讳继真	地煞星	黄	讳景元
地勇星	贾	讳成	地杰星	呼	讳百颜
地雄星	鲁	讳修德	地威星	须	讳成
地英星	孙	讳祥	地奇星	王	讳平
地猛星	柏	讳有患	地文星	革	讳高
地正星	考	讳鬲	地辟星	李	讳燧
地阖星	刘	讳衡	地强星	夏	讳祥
地暗星	余	讳惠	地辅星	鲍	讳龙
地会星	鲁	讳芝	地佐星	黄	讳丙庆
地祐星	张	讳奇	地灵星	郭	讳已
地兽星	金	讳南道	地微星	陈	讳元
地慧星	车	讳坤	地暴星	桑	讳成道
地默星	周	讳庚	地猖星	齐	讳公
地狂星	霍	讳之元	地飞星	叶	讳中
地走星	顾	讳宗	地巧星	李	讳昌
地明星	方	讳吉	地进星	徐	讳吉
地退星	樊	讳焕	地满星	卓	讳公
地遂星	孔	讳成	地周星	姚	讳金秀

God of the Heavenly Criminal Star: Yao Gong;  
God of the Heavenly Damage Star: Tang Tianzheng;  
God of the Heavenly Defeat Star: Shen Li;  
God of the Heavenly Imprisonment Star: Wen Jie;  
God of the Heavenly Clever Star: Zhang Zhixiong;  
God of the Heavenly Violent Star: Bi De;  
God of the Heavenly Weeping Star: Liu Da;  
God of the Heavenly Skillful Star: Chen Sanyi.

The seventy-two Gods of the Earthly Evil Stars:

God of the Earthly Leading Star: Chen Jizhen;  
God of the Earthly Evil Star: Huang Jingyuan;  
God of the Earthly Courageous Star: Jia Cheng;  
God of the Earthly Heroic Star: Hu Baiyan;  
God of the Earthly Gallant Star: Lu Xiude;  
God of the Earthly Power Star: Xu Cheng;  
God of the Earthly Mighty Star: Sun Xiang;  
God of the Earthly Strange Star: Wang Ping;  
God of the Earthly Fierce Star: Bai Youhuan;  
God of the Earthly Literature Star: Ge Gao;  
God of the Earthly Upright Star: Kao Ge;  
God of the Earthly Secluded Star: Li Sui;  
God of the Earthly Closing Star: Liu Heng;  
God of the Earthly Strong Star: Xia Xiang;  
God of the Earthly Dark Star: Yu Hui;  
God of the Earthly Helping Star: Bao Long;  
God of the Earthly Gathering Star: Lu Zhi;  
God of the Earthly Assisting Star: Huang Bingqing;  
God of the Earthly Safety Star: Zhang Qi;  
God of the Earthly Spirit Star: Guo Yi;  
God of the Earthly Beast Star: Jin Nandao;  
God of the Earthly Minute Star: Chen Yuan;  
God of the Earthly Clever Star: Che Kun;  
God of the Earthly Violent Star: Sang Chengdao;  
God of the Earthly Silent Star: Zhou Geng;  
God of the Earthly Mad Star: Qi Gong;  
God of the Earthly Rampant Star: Huo Zhiyuan;  
God of the Earthly Flying Star: Ye Zhong;  
God of the Earthly Walking Star: Gu Zong;  
God of the Earthly Skillful Star: Li Chang;  
God of the Earthly Bright Star: Fang Ji;  
God of the Earthly Progressive Star: Xu Ji;  
God of the Earthly Retreating Star: Fan Huan;  
God of the Earthly Full Star: Zhuo Gong;  
God of the Earthly Successful Star: Kong Cheng;  
God of the Earthly Round Star: Yao Jinxiu;





地隐星	宁	讳	三益	地异星	余	讳	知
地理星	童	讳	贞	地俊星	袁	讳	鼎相
地乐星	汪	讳	祥	地捷星	耿	讳	颜
地速星	邢	讳	三鸾	地镇星	姜	讳	忠
地羈星	孔	讳	天兆	地魔星	李	讳	跃
地妖星	龚	讳	倩	地幽星	段	讳	清
地伏星	门	讳	道正	地僻星	祖	讳	林
地空星	萧	讳	电	地孤星	吴	讳	四玉
地全星	匡	讳	玉	地短星	蔡	讳	公
地角星	蓝	讳	虎	地囚星	宋	讳	禄
地藏星	关	讳	斌	地平星	龙	讳	成
地损星	黄	讳	乌	地奴星	孔	讳	道灵
地察星	张	讳	焕	地恶星	李	讳	信
地魂星	徐	讳	山	地数星	葛	讳	方
地阴星	焦	讳	龙	地刑星	秦	讳	祥
地壮星	武	讳	衍公	地劣星	范	讳	斌
地健星	叶	讳	景昌	地耗星	姚	讳	焯
地贼星	孙	讳	吉	地狗星	陈	讳	梦庚

随斗部九曜星官名讳(俱万仙阵亡):

崇	讳	应彪	高	讳	系平	韩	讳	鹏
李	讳	济	王	讳	封	刘	讳	禁
王	讳	储	彭	讳	九元	李	讳	三益

北斗五气水德星君名讳:

水德星	鲁	讳	雄	率领水部四位正神				
箕水豹	杨	讳	真	壁水獬	方	讳	吉清	
参水猿	孙	讳	祥	轸水蚓	胡	讳	道元”	



God of the Earthly Disappearing Star: Ning Sanyi;  
God of the Earthly Different Star: Yu Zhi;  
God of the Earthly Theory Star: Tong Zhen;  
God of the Earthly Gallant Star: Yuan Dingxiang;  
God of the Earthly Happy Star: Wang Xiang;  
God of the Earthly Adroit Star: Geng Yan;  
God of the Earthly Swift Star: Xing Sanluan;  
God of the Earthly Suppressing Star: Jiang Zhong;  
God of the Earthly Detaining Star: Kong Tianzhao;  
God of the Earthly Devil Star: Li Yue;  
God of the Earthly Sprite Star: Gong Qian;  
God of the Earthly Tranquil Star: Duan Qing;  
God of the Earthly Submitting Star: Men Daozheng;  
God of the Earthly Secluded Star: Zu Lin;  
God of the Earthly Space Star: Xiao Dian;  
God of the Earthly Lonely Star: Wu Siyu;  
God of the Earthly Complete Star: Kuang Yu;  
God of the Earthly Short Star: Cai Gong;  
God of the Earthly Corner Star: Lan Hu;  
God of the Earthly Imprisonment Star: Song Lu;  
God of the Earthly Treasure Star: Guan Bin;  
God of the Earthly Level Star: Long Cheng;  
God of the Earthly Damage Star: Huang Wu;  
God of the Earthly Slave Star: Kong Daoling;  
God of the Earthly Examining Star: Zhang Huan;  
God of the Earthly Wicked Star: Li Xin;  
God of the Earthly Soul Star: Xu Shan;  
God of the Earthly Counting Star: Ge Fang;  
God of the Earthly Punishment Star: Jiao Long;  
God of the Earthly Torture Star: Qin Xiang;  
God of the Earthly Strong Star: Wu Yangong;  
God of the Earthly Inefficient Star: Fan Bin;  
God of the Earthly Healthy Star: Ye Jingchang;  
God of the Earthly Spending Star: Yao Ye;  
God of the Earthly Theft Star: Sun Ji;  
God of the Earthly Dog Star: Chen Menggeng.

The Gods of the Nine Brightly Shining Stars: Chong Yingbiao, Gao Xiping, Han Peng, Li Ji, Wang Feng, Liu Jin, Wang Chu, Peng Jiuyuan and Li Sanyi.

The five Gods of the Water Virtue Stars in the Big Dipper:

God of the Water Virtue Star: Lu Xiong;  
God of the Water Leopard Star: Yang Zhen;  
God of the Water Beaver Star: Fang Jiqing;  
God of the Water Ape Star: Sun Xiang;  
God of the Water Earthworm Star: Hu Daoyuan.



众群星列宿听罢封号，叩首谢恩，纷纷出坛而去。子牙又命柏鉴：“引直年太岁至台下受封。”少时，清福神用幡引殷郊、杨任等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔殷郊昔身为纣子，痛母后致触君父，几罹不测之殃；后证道名山，背师言有逆天意，酿成犁锄之祸。虽申公豹之唆使，亦尔自作之愆由。尔杨任事纣，忠君直谏，先遭劓目之苦，归周舍身报国，后罹横死之灾，总劫运之使然，亦冥数之难道。特敕封尔殷郊为执年岁君太岁之神，坐守周年，管当年之休咎。尔杨任为甲子太岁之神，率领尔部下，日直正神，循周天星宿度数，察人间过往愆由。尔等宜恪修厥职，永钦新命。”

太岁部下日直众星名讳：

日游神	温 讳良	夜游神	乔 讳坤
增福神	韩 讳毒龙	损福神	薛 讳恶虎
显道神	方 讳弼	开路神	方 讳相
直年神	李 讳丙(万仙阵亡)	直月神	黄 讳承乙(万仙阵亡)
直日神	周 讳登(万仙阵亡)	直时神	刘 讳洪(万仙阵亡)”

殷郊等听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引王魔等上坛受封。”不一时，清福神用幡引王魔等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命；尔王魔等昔在九龙岛潜修大道，奈根行之未深，听唆使之萋菲，致抛九转功夫，反受血刃之苦。此亦自作之愆，莫怨彼苍之咎。特敕封尔等为镇守灵霄宝殿四圣大元帅。永承钦命，慰尔幽魂。”

王 讳魔 杨 讳森 高 讳体乾 李 讳兴霸”

王魔等听罢封号，叩头谢恩，出坛去了。又命柏鉴：“引赵公明等上坛受封。”不一时，清福神用幡引赵公明等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔赵公明



The Gods of the stars and constellations, after hearing the announcements, kowtowed to express their thanks and left the terrace.

“Lead the Gods of the year to the terrace for their deification,” Jiang Ziya ordered.

Bai Jian then led Yin Jiao, Yang Ren, and a few others to the terrace. They knelt down to wait for their orders.

“I declare Yin Jiao as the God of the Year. Your duty is to watch over all that happens in the year, whether good or bad. And I deify you, Yang Ren, as the God of the Sixty-Year Cycle. The Gods under you will act according to the decrees of the universe and examine all the good or evil done by the people. All of you must adhere strictly to your duties. The Gods under your command are:

God on Day Patrol: Wen Liang;  
God on Night Patrol: Qiao Kuan;  
God for Increasing Happiness: Han Dulong;  
God for Reducing Happiness: Xue Ehu;  
God of Doctrine Preaching: Fang Bi;  
God of the Vanguard: Fang Xiang;  
God on Yearly Duty: Li Bing;  
God on Monthly Duty: Huang Chengyi;  
God on Daily Duty: Zhou Deng;  
God on Hourly Duty: Liu Hong.”

After they had left the terrace, Jiang Ziya ordered, “Lead Wang Mo and others to the terrace for deification.”

When they had knelt down on the terrace to listen, Jiang said, “I deify you four as the Gods to guard the Precious Spiritual Firmament. All will hold the honorable title of Great Saint Commander-in-Chief.” Wang Mo, Yang Sen, Gao Tiqian, and Li Xingba kowtowed their thanks and left the terrace.

Jiang Ziya next ordered, “Lead Zhao Gongming and others to the terrace.”

When they arrived, Jiang Ziya declared, “Zhao Gongming, you are deified as the Genuine God of the Profound Dragon Tiger Altar. Your



昔修大道，已证三乘根行；深入仙乡，无奈心头火热。德业迥超清净，其如妄境牵缠。一堕恶趣，返真无路。生未能入大罗之境，死当受金诰之封。特敕封尔为金龙如意正一龙虎玄坛真君之神；率领部下四位正神，迎祥纳福，追逃捕亡。尔其钦哉！

招宝天尊 萧 讳升      纳珍天尊 曹 讳宝  
招财使者 陈 讳九公      利市仙官 姚 讳少司”

赵公明等听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引魔家四将上坛受封。”少时，只见清福神用旛引魔礼青兄弟等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔魔礼青等仗秘授之奇珍，有逆天命；逞弟兄之一体，致戮无辜。虽忠荃之可嘉，奈劫运之难躲。同时而尽，久入沉沦。今特敕封尔为四大天王之职；辅弼西方教典，立地水火风之相，护国安民，掌风调雨顺之权。永修厥职，毋忝新纶。

增长天王 魔礼青掌青光宝剑一口 职风  
广目天王 魔礼红掌碧玉琵琶一面 职调  
多文天王 魔礼海掌管混元珍珠伞 职雨  
持国天王 魔礼寿掌紫金龙花狐貂 职顺”

魔礼青等听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引郑伦等上坛受封。”不一时，清福神用旛引郑伦等至台下，跪听宣读敕命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始敕命：尔郑伦弃纣归周，方庆良臣之得主，督粮尽瘁，深勤跋涉之劬劳。未膺一命之荣，反罹阳九之厄。尔陈奇阻吊伐之师，虽违天命；荃忠节于国，实有可嘉。总归劫运，无用深嗟。兹特即尔等腹内之奇，加之位职。敕封尔等镇守西释山门、宣布教化、保护法宝、为哼哈二将之神。尔其恪修厥职，永钦成



duties are to welcome the blessings of auspicious happiness and chase criminals who are fleeing. The names of the four other Gods under your command are:

God of Welcoming Treasures: Xiao Sheng;  
God of Storing Valuables: Cao Bao;  
Envoy of Welcoming Wealth: Chen Jiugong;  
Fairy Officer of Good Market: Yao Shaosi.”

Zhao and the four others kowtowed and left the terrace.

“Lead the four Mo generals to the terrace for deification,” Jiang Ziya ordered once again.

In a short while, Bai Jian led Mo Liqing and his three brothers to the terrace. They knelt down to receive their deification.

Jiang Ziya declared, “You are named the Great Heavenly Kings, who will guard and serve the western religion of Buddhism, protect the country and people with earth, water, fire, and wind, and regulate both the wind and rain. Your posts and duties are as follows:

Mo Liqing, you are the Developing Heavenly King. You hold the green light precious sword and are in charge of the wind;

Mo Lihong, you are the Wide-eyed Heavenly King. You hold the green jade lute, and your duty is to regulate the wind;

Mo Lihai, you are the Literature Heavenly King. You hold the Precious Universe Muddling Umbrella and are in charge of the rain;

Mo Lishou, you are the National Protection Heavenly King. You hold the spotted ermine, and your duty is to adjust the rain. You all must adhere to your duties faithfully.”

The four generals kowtowed and left the terrace.

Jiang Ziya then ordered, “Lead Zheng Lun and Chen Qi to the terrace for deification.”

When both Zheng Lun and Chen Qi came and knelt before him, Jiang Ziya announced, “I deify you, because of your wonderful strength, as the Gods of *heng* and *ha*; to guard the gate of the western Buddha’s residence; to preach the truth; and to protect the precious weapons and instruments there. You must carry out your duties faithfully.”





命。”郑伦与陈奇听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引余化龙父子上坛受封。”不一时，只见清福神用旛引余化龙等至坛下，跪听宣读救命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始救命：尔余化龙父子，拒守孤城，深切忠贞，一门死难，永堪华袞之封。特锡尔之新纶，当克襄乎上理；乃赖封尔掌人间之时症，主生死之修短，秉阴阳之顺逆，立造化之元神，为主痘碧霞元君之神；率领五方痘神，任尔施行。仍敕封尔元配金氏为卫房圣母元君；同承新命，永修厥职，汝其钦哉！”

五方主痘正神名讳：

东方主痘正神 余 讳达 西方主痘正神 余 讳兆  
 南方主痘正神 余 讳光 北方主痘正神 余 讳先  
 中央主痘正神 余 讳德”

余化龙等听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙命柏鉴：“引三仙岛云霄、琼霄、碧霄上台受封。”少时，只见清福神用旛引云霄等至台下，跪听宣读救命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始救命：尔云霄等，潜修仙岛，虽勤日夜之功；得道天皇，未登大罗彼岸。况狂逞于兄言，借金剪残害生灵，且愤怒于冥数，摆‘黄河’擒拿正士，致历代之门徒，劫遭金斗，削三花之元气，后转凡胎，业更造乎多端，心无悔乎彰报。姑从惠典，锡尔荣封。特敕封尔执掌混元金斗，专擅先后之天，凡一应仙、凡、人、圣、诸侯、天子、贵、贱、贤、愚，落地先从金斗转劫，不得越此，为感应随世仙姑正神之位。尔当念此鸾封，克勤尔职！”

云霄娘娘 琼霄娘娘 碧霄娘娘

(以上三姑，正是坑三姑娘之神。混元金斗即人间之净桶。凡人之生育，俱从此化生也。)”三姑听罢封号，叩头



Both Zheng Lun and Chen Qi kowtowed and left the terrace. Jiang Ziya ordered Yu Hualong and others to see him. When they arrived, he said, "I deify you, Yu Hualong, as chief God, with the title of the Green Haze Prime King Controller of Smallpox. You must carry out your duties with the five other Gods of Smallpox. I deify your wife, Lady Jin, as the Saint Queen to Protect Sickrooms. The five other Gods are as follows:

- God of Smallpox in the east: Yu Da;
- God of Smallpox in the west: Yu Zhao;
- God of Smallpox in the south: Yu Guang;
- God of Smallpox in the north: Yu Xian;
- God of Smallpox in the center: Yu De.

You must all fulfil your duties respectfully."

After the Yu family had left the terrace, High Firmament, Jade Firmament, and Green Firmament arrived for deification. Jiang Ziya announced, "Your crimes were serious, but you are generously forgiven and honored with glorious titles. Hereafter, you are to be called the Goddesses of the Golden Universe Muddling Dipper. Your duty is to deal with birth. Everyone, fairies, ordinary people, saints, dukes, kings, the rich and the poor, the clever and the foolish, must all come into this world with the golden dipper. You, High Firmament, Jade Firmament, and Green Firmament, must strictly adhere to your duties and respectfully appreciate the grace bestowed upon you."

The three Goddesses kowtowed their thanks, and Jiang Ziya finally ordered Shen Gongbao to ascend the terrace.



谢恩，出坛去了。子牙又命柏鉴：“引申公豹至台上受封。”不一时，只见清福神用百灵幡引申公豹至台下，跪听宣读救命。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始救命：尔申公豹身归阐教，反助逆以拒直，既已被擒，又发誓以粉过。身虽塞乎北海，情难释其往愆。姑念清修之苦，少加一命之荣。特敕封尔执掌东海，朝观日出，暮转天河，夏散冬凝，周而复始，为分水将军之职。尔其永钦成命，毋替厥职！”申公豹听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙封罢三百六十五位正神已毕，只见众神各去领受执掌，不一时，封神台边凄风尽息，惨雾澄清，红日中天，和风荡漾。子牙下坛传令，命南宫适：“会合朝大小文武官员，至岐山听候发落。”南宫适领命，忙令马上飞递前去。不表。次日，众官踉踉跄跄，齐至坛下伺候。少时，子牙升帐。众官俱进帐参谒毕，子牙传令：“将飞廉、恶来拿下。”飞廉、恶来二人齐曰：“无罪！”子牙笑曰：“你这二贼，惑君乱政，陷害忠良，断送成汤社稷，罪盈恶贯，死有余辜！今国破君亡，又来献宝偷安，希图仕周，以享厚禄。新天子祇承休命，万国维新，岂容你这不忠不义之贼于世，以貽新政之羞也！”命左右：“推出斩之正法！”二人低头不语。左右推出辕门。不知性命如何，且听下回分解。



When Shen Gongbao had come to kneel before him, Jiang Ziya pronounced, "Shen Gongbao, you were originally a member of Chan Taoism but later opposed your own sect. When you were arrested, you dishonestly made a false oath to cover up your crimes. Knowing that you once tried to devote yourself to learning the doctrines, we now generously grant you the title of God of the East Sea. Your duties are to watch the sunrise and sunset and the water in summer and the ice in winter. In addition, you are graced with the position of Water-Dividing General. You must adhere faithfully to your post."

After the announcement was over, Shen Gongbao kowtowed and left the terrace. As soon as all 365 Gods were deified, they left Mount Qi to take up their posts. The sad wind and fog disappeared, and the bright sun shone again from above.

Jiang Ziya went below and gave an order to General Nangong Kuo. "Invite all the ministers and officials, civil and military, high and low, to come to Mount Qi tomorrow."

General Nangong raced to West Qi City to carry out the order. Early the next day, Jiang Ziya held a conference with his ministers and officials. He ordered that Fei Lian and E Lai be led before them.

When Fei Lian and E Lai pleaded innocence, Jiang Ziya smiled and said, "You two wicked chaps have committed capital crimes. You tricked the king and put many loyal ministers to death, leading to the complete destruction of the Shang Dynasty. Even death is far too light a punishment for the seriousness of your crimes. Both the nation and the king were destroyed, and you brought treasures to us in an attempt to buy high posts in the Zhou Dynasty. Our new king has risen to the throne according to the will of Heaven and is doing his best to effect reform. We cannot let you two disloyal bastards live any longer to humiliate us."

Jiang Ziya then ordered, "Take them out and cut their heads off!"

Please read the next chapter if you wish to know how they fared.



## 第一百回

### 武王封列国诸侯

诗曰：

周室开基立帝图，分茅列土报功殊。制田世禄惟三等，品爵官人树五途。铁券金书藏石室，高牙大纛拥铜符。从今藩镇如星布，倡化宣猷万姓苏。

话说子牙传令，命斩飞廉、恶来，只见左右旗门官将二人推至辕门外，斩首号令，回报子牙。子牙斩了两个佞臣，复进封神台，拍案大呼曰：“清福神柏鉴何在？快引飞廉、恶来魂魄至坛前受封！”不一时，只见清福神用旛引飞廉、恶来至坛下，跪听宣读救命。但见二魂俯伏坛下，凄切不胜。子牙曰：“今奉太上元始救命：尔飞廉、恶来，生前甘心奸佞，簧惑主聪，败国亡君，偷生苟免；只知盗宝以荣身，孰意法网无疏漏。既正明刑，当有幽录。此皆尔自受之愆，亦是运逢之劫。特敕封尔为冰消瓦解之神。虽为恶煞，尔宜克修厥职，毋得再肆凶锋。汝其钦此！”飞廉、恶来听罢封号，叩首谢恩，出坛去了。子牙封罢神下台，率领百官回西岐。有诗为证：

天理循环若转车，有成有败更无差。往来消长应堪笑，反复兴衰若可嗟。夏桀南巢风里烛，商辛焚死浪中花。古今吊伐皆如此，惟有忠魂傍日斜。

话说子牙回岐州，进了都城，入相府安息。众官俱回私宅。

## *Chapter 100*

### **King Wu Creates the States**

By order of Jiang Ziya, Fei Lian and E Lai were led out to have their heads cut off. Jiang Ziya re-entered the Terrace of Creation, knocked on his desk, and shouted, "Where is Bai Jian? Lead the souls of Fei Lian and E Lai to the terrace."

When the souls of Fei Lian and E Lai came forward to kneel down, Jiang Ziya declared, "Fei Lian and E Lai were bootlickers by birth. They cheated the king, causing him to lose his nation and his life. Though these crimes were their own, it had all been destined by fate. I now declare them the Gods to Dissolve Frozen Ice."

Fei Lian and E Lai kowtowed and left the terrace. After all the ceremonies were completed, Jiang Ziya led his ministers back to West Qi.





一夕晚景已过。

次日早朝，武王登殿，真是有道天子，朝仪自是不同。所谓香雾横空，瑞烟缥缈，旭日围黄，庆云舒彩。只听得玉珮叮当，众官袍袖舞清风，蛇龙弄影，四围御帐迎晓日，静鞭三响整朝班，文武嵩呼称“万岁”。怎见得早朝美景，后唐人有诗，单道早朝好处：

绛帟鸡人报晓筹，尚衣方进翠云裘。九天阊阖开宫殿，  
万国衣冠拜冕旒。日色才临仙掌动，香烟欲傍袞龙浮。  
朝罢须裁五色诏，珮声归到凤池头。

话说武王升殿，只见当驾官传旨：“有事出班启奏，无事卷帘朝散。”言还未毕，班部中有姜子牙出班上殿，俯伏称“臣”。武王曰：“相父有何奏章见朕？”子牙奏曰：“老臣昨日奉师命将忠臣良将与不道之仙、奸佞之辈，俱依劫运，遵玉敕一一封定神位，皆各分执掌，受享禋祀，护国祐民，掌风调雨顺之权，职福善祸淫之柄。自今以往，永保澄清，无复劳陛下宸虑。但天下诸侯与随行征战功臣、名山洞府门人，曾亲冒矢石，俱有血战之功。今天下底定，宜分茅列土，封之以爵禄，使子孙世食其土，以昭崇德报功之义。其亲王子孙，亦当封树藩屏，以壮王室。昔上古三皇、五帝之后，亦宜分封土地，以报其立极之功。此皆陛下首先之务，当亟行之，不可一刻缓者。”武王曰：“朕有此心久矣。只因相父封神未竣，故少俟之耳。今相父既回，一听相父行之。”武王方才言罢，只见李靖、杨戩等出班奏曰：“臣等原系山谷野人；奉师法旨下山，克襄劫运，戡定祸乱。今已太平，臣等理宜归山，以复师命。凡红尘富贵、功名、爵禄，



The next morning King Wu appeared at a court conference. The atmosphere is always different when a virtuous ruler ascends the throne. Fragrant mist filled the air, and the sun shone brightly over all. Auspicious clouds floated above, and the tinkling of jade worn by the ministers was as sweet as music. The bells were rung three times, and the court conference began with cheers of "Long Live His Majesty!"

When King Wu had ascended the throne, his attendants asked, "Is there anyone who has something important to report? If not, the court conference shall be dismissed at once."

Jiang Ziya immediately left his line, bowed, and reported, "By order of my master, your old minister has deified all the loyal ministers, brave generals, good fairies and bad who were killed in the war. They are to be worshiped by the people. They are to protect the nation and all its citizens and to regulate the wind and rain. They are authorized to bless the people, to do good deeds, and to punish the wicked. Peace shall reign forever in this world. Further, there are many nobles, generals, and Taoist disciples who bravely risked their lives in the war effort, some falling to the enemy's arrows. They have accomplished great deeds for the nation, and as the whole country is settling down now, we should bestow upon them honorable titles and land. In recognition of their efforts, let their descendants be eligible for inheritance forever. To strengthen the royal family, the royal sons and grandsons should also enjoy the same privileges, and the descendants of the three ancient emperors and five renowned emperors should be granted the same in recognition of their ancestors' good works. These important matters should all be settled as quickly as possible."

"I had been considering this for a long time, but we had to wait until the deification was finished. Now that you have returned, you may do things as you wish." King Wu replied.

Before King Wu could finish speaking, Li Jing, Jinzha, Muzha, Nezha, Yang Jian, Wei Hu, and Thunderbolt moved up and said, "We are not highly cultured, having come from the mountains and valleys. Following our masters' orders, we left our mountain homes to help you put an end to the disturbances. Now that there is peace, we must all return to report to our masters. We cannot accept honor, riches, or high rank in this vulgar world. We bid you farewell today, and we beg you, Your Majesty, to





亦非臣等所甘心者也。今日特陛辞皇上。望陛下敕臣等归山，真莫大之洪恩也。”武王曰：“朕蒙卿等旋乾转坤之力，浴日补天之才，戡祸乱于永清，辟宇宙而再朗，其有功于社稷生民，真无涯际；虽家禋户祀，尚不足以报其劳，岂骤舍朕而归山也？朕何忍焉！”李靖等曰：“陛下仁恩厚德，臣等沐之久矣。但臣等恬淡性成，山野素志，况师命难以抗违，天心岂敢故逆。乞陛下怜而赦之，臣等不胜幸甚！”武王见李靖等坚执要去，不肯少留，不胜伤感，乃曰：“昔日从朕，始事征伐之时，其忠臣义士，云屯雨集；不意中道有死于王事、殁于征战者，不知凡几，今仅存者甚是残落，朕已不胜今昔之感。今卿等方际太平，当与朕共享康宁之福；卿等又坚请归山，朕欲强留，恐违素志，今勉从卿请，心甚戚然。俟明日，朕率百官亲至南郊饯别，少尽数年从事之情。”李靖等谢恩平身，众官无不凄恻。子牙听得七人告辞归山，也不胜惨戚。俱各朝散。一宿晚景不题。次日，光禄寺典膳官预先至南郊，整治下九龙饰席，一色齐备。只见众文武百官与李靖等先至南郊候驾；惟姜子牙在朝内伺候武王御驾同行。话说武王升殿，传旨：“排銮舆出城。”子牙随后。一路上香烟载道，瑞彩缤纷，士民欢悦，俱来看天子与众人、仙饯别。真是哄动一城居民，齐集郊外。只见武王来至南郊，众文武百官上前接驾毕，李靖等复上前叩谢曰：“臣等有何德能，敢劳陛下御驾亲临赐宴，使臣等不胜感激！”武王用手挽住，慰之曰：“今日卿等归山，乃方外神仙，朕与卿已无君臣之属，卿等幸毋过谦。今日当痛饮尽醉，使朕不知卿之去方可耳。不然，朕心何以为情哉！”李靖等顿首称谢不已。



allow us leave. Your grace will be appreciated forever.”

“With your help, all has been settled, and the sun shines brightly again. Your good works for the people and nation are boundless. Nothing can ever return your grace. How can you leave us now and return to the mountains? How can I see you go without great sorrow?” King Wu said sadly.

“We have bathed in your kindness and virtue for so long already, and we are used to simple living. We’d rather have springs and rocks in the mountains than honor and riches here. Besides, it would be difficult for us to go against our masters and the will of Heaven. We beg for your mercy to allow us to return to our mountains,” Li Jing and his colleagues replied in unison.

King Wu was greatly saddened to know that the Taoist disciples had resolutely decided to leave him. He said, “At the onset of our expedition against King Zhou, many loyal ministers and righteous generals joined our efforts. How could I have known that so many would lose their lives for the nation? Only a few are left; I can’t help but feel sentimental when I compare the present with the past. But you wish to leave me now instead of staying to enjoy happiness in this peaceful time. What shall I do? If I don’t agree with you, it would certainly be against your will. But if I’m compelled to agree, what a sad day for me! As there seems to be no other way, won’t you let us hold a farewell feast tomorrow in the southern suburb to wish you on your way?”

Li Jing and his six colleagues thanked the king for his grace and left the court, Jiang Ziya also felt sad to watch them go.

The next day, a grand feast was prepared on the southern suburbs of the West Qi City. The civil and military ministers arrived first with Li Jing, Jinzha, Muzha, Nezha, Yang Jian, Wei Hu, and Thunderbolt. Jiang Ziya went to the palace to accompany King Wu. Their long procession attracted great crowds along the way; everyone wanted to see His Majesty’s farewell party to the Taoists.

In the southern suburb, the ministers and all the disciples went out to greet His Majesty King Wu.

Li Jing and his party kowtowed to express their thanks and said, “How dare we expect that His Majesty trouble himself to come here to drink and dine with us. We will appreciate your kindness forever.”



须臾，当驾官报：“酒已齐备。”武王命左右奏乐，各官俱依次就位。武王上坐。只见箫韶迭奏，君臣欢饮，把盏轮杯，真是畅快。说甚么炮凤烹龙，味穷水陆。君臣饮罢多时，只见李靖等出席谢宴告辞，武王亦起身执手，再三劝慰，又饮数杯。李靖等苦苦告别，武王知不可留，不觉泪下。李靖等慰之曰：“陛下当善保天和，则臣等不胜庆幸。俟他日再图相晤也。”武王不得已，方肯放行。李靖等拜别武王及文武百官；子牙不忍分离，又送了一程，各洒泪而别。——后来李靖、金吒、木吒、哪吒、杨戩、韦护、雷震子，此七人俱是肉身成圣。后人诗赞之，诗曰：

别驾归山避世器，闲将丹灶自焚烧。修成羽翼超三界，  
炼就阴阳越九霄。两耳怕闻金紫贵，一身离却是非朝。  
逍遥不问人间事，任尔沧桑化海潮。

话说子牙别了李靖等七人率领从者进西岐城，回相府。至次日早朝，武王升殿，姜子牙与周公旦出班奏曰：“昨蒙陛下赐李靖等归山，得遂他修行之愿，臣等不胜欣幸。但有功臣，当分茅土者，乞陛下速赐施行，以慰臣下之望。”武王曰：“昨七臣归山，朕心甚是不忍；今所有分封仪制，一如相父、御弟所议施行。”子牙与周公旦谢恩出殿，条议分封仪注并位次，上请武王裁定。次日，武王登宝座，命御弟周公旦于金殿上唱名策封，先追王祖考，自太王、王季、文王皆为天子，其余功臣与先朝帝王后裔俱列爵为五等：公、侯、伯、子、男，其不及五等者为附庸。条序已毕，周公方才唱名。

列侯分封国号名讳：



King Wu grasped their hands and said, "As you must return to your mountains, you are not subject to our rule any longer. The relationship of a king and his ministers does not exist between us. You mustn't be too polite. Let us drink till we can forget the sorrow of our parting."

Li Jing and the others kowtowed to thank King Wu. In a short while, it was reported that the feast was ready. King Wu ordered his orchestra to play, and everyone took their seats, with King Wu in the seat of honor. The king and his ministers toasted one another and drank together happily. The delicious spread, including dragon and phoenix, was enjoyed by all.

After drinking for a long time, the Taoists tried to leave, but King Wu held them back and urged them to have more.

After several more cups, Li and his party got up again to bid the king farewell. King Wu wept sadly when he realized that he could not detain them any longer.

They all comforted King Wu, saying, "May Your Majesty enjoy good health and live long so that we may meet again some day in the future."

King Wu finally had to let Li Jing and the others leave, but Jiang Ziya was still reluctant to see them go. He escorted them a long way and finally saw them off in bitter tears. Not long thereafter, Li Jing, Jinzha, Muzha, Nezha, Yang Jian, Wei Hu, and Thunderbolt all became immortals, free from the cycle of death and rebirth.

When King Wu ascended his throne the next morning, both Jiang Ziya and Ji Dan moved forward and said, "We were delighted to see Your Majesty kindly allow Li Jing and his colleagues return to their mountains yesterday. However, we beg you to act immediately to grant land and titles to those who have achieved great merit for the nation."

"I was so sad to see the seven disciples return to their mountains yesterday, but now the prime minister and my brother may discuss how to divide land and grant titles as proposed. Please implement these measures as soon as possible," King Wu replied.

Jiang Ziya and Ji Dan left the king and drafted a proposal to present to King Wu. The king ascended the throne the next day and asked his brother, Ji Dan, to read out the names of those to whom land and titles had been granted. The draft first bestowed upon Tai Wang, Wang Ji and King Wen, King Wu's great-grandfather, grandfather, and father, the title of emperor. Next, five ranks—duke, marquise, count, viscount, and baron—were granted to those ministers who had served the country as well as



鲁——姬姓，侯爵。系周文王第四子周(姬)公旦，佐文王、武王、成王有大勋劳于天下。后成王命为大宰，食邑扶风雍县东北之周城，号宰周公，留相天子，主自陕以东之诸侯。乃封其长子伯禽于曲阜，地方七百里，分以宝玉、大弓，而俾侯于鲁，以辅周室。

齐——姜姓，侯爵。系炎帝裔孙伯益为四岳，佐禹平水土有功，赐姓曰姜氏，谓之吕侯。其国在南阳宛县之西南。自太公吕望起自渭水，为周文、武师，号为师尚父，佐文、武定天下，有大功，封营丘，为齐侯，列于五侯九伯之上。即今山东青州府是也。

燕——姬姓，伯爵。系周同姓功臣，曰君奭，佐文、武定天下，有大功，为周太保，食邑于召，谓之召康。留相天子，主自陕以西之诸侯。乃封其子为北燕伯，其地乃幽州蓟县是也。

魏——姬姓，伯爵。系周同姓功臣，曰毕公高，佐文、武定天下，有大功，封镇魏国。即今河南开封府高密县是也。

管——姬姓，侯爵。系武王弟，曰姬叔鲜，以监武庚封于管。即今河南信阳县是也。

蔡——姬姓，侯爵。系武王弟，曰姬叔度，以监武庚封于蔡。即今河南汝宁府上蔡县是也。

曹——姬姓，伯爵。系武王弟，曰姬叔振铎。武王克商，封于曹。即今济阳定陶县是也。

邾——姬姓，伯爵。系武王弟，曰姬叔武。武王克商，封于邾。即今山东兖州府汶上县是也。



the descendants of the past and present dynasties. Any petty state below the fifth rank was called a vassal. The most important states and their ministers were named as follows:

State of Lu — surnamed Ji, marquis, the fourth son of King Wen, named Ji Dan. He achieved great merit in his service to King Wen, King Wu, and King Cheng. He was later appointed Grand Premier and the head duke east of Shaanxi by King Cheng. His eldest son, Bo Qin, was granted 700 square *li* in Qufu and bestowed with precious jade and a great bow to offer service to Zhou forever.

State of Qi — surnamed Jiang, marquis. Bo Yi, grandson of Emperor Yan, achieved great merit in helping Emperor Yu deal with floods and was surnamed Jiang by the emperor. Jiang Ziya, honored as Jiang Taigong, from Weishui River, helped King Wen and King Wu defeat King Zhou and restore peace to the nation. Also honored as Father-Prime Minister, he was granted land at Yingqiu and given the title of Marquis Qi. As the head of five marquises and nine counts, his state was situated in Qingzhou (today's Shandong Province).

State of Yan — surnamed Ji, count, named Ji Junshi. Having offered his service to King Wen and King Wu in the struggle against King Zhou, he was honored as the Grand Protector of Zhou, with land granted at Shao but remained to serve in the royal court and supervise the nobles west of Shaanxi. His son was given the title Count of North Yan (today's Hebei Province).

State of Wei — surnamed Ji, count, named Bi Gongkao. He aided King Wen and King Wu in the struggle to restore peace to the country. He was granted the state of Wei (in today's Gaomi County, Kaifeng Prefecture, Henan Province).

State of Guan — surnamed Ji, marquis, brother of King Wu, named Ji Shuxian. He was appointed to supervise Wu Keng, with land granted at Guan (today's Xinyang County, Henan Province).

State of Cai — surnamed Ji, marquis, brother of King Wu, named Ji Shudu. He was appointed to supervise Wu Keng, with land granted at Cai (today's Shangcai County, Henan Province).

State of Cao — surnamed Ji, count, brother of King Wu, named Ji Shuzhenduo. Granted the state of Cao (today's Dingtao County).

State of Cheng — surnamed Ji, count, brother of King Wu, named Ji Shuwu. He was granted the state of Cheng (today's Yanzhou, Shandong Province).



霍——姬姓，伯爵。系武王弟，曰姬叔处。武王克商，封于霍。即今山西平阳府是也。

卫——姬姓，侯爵。系武王同母少弟，封为大司寇，食采于康，谓之康叔，封于卫。即今北京冀州是也。

滕——姬姓，侯爵。系武王弟，曰姬叔绣。武王克商，封于滕。即今山东章邱县是也。

晋——姬姓，侯爵。系武王少子，曰唐叔虞。封于唐，后改为晋。即今山西平阳府绛县东翼城是也。

吴——姬姓，子爵。系周太王长子泰伯之后。武王克商，遂封之为吴。即今之吴郡是也。

虞——姬姓，公爵。系周太王子仲雍之后。武王克商，求泰伯、仲雍之后，得章已为吴君；别封其为虞。在河东太阳县是也。

虢——姬姓，公爵。系王季子虢仲，文王弟也。仲与虢叔为文王卿士，勋在王室，藏于盟府；而文王友爱二弟，谓之二虢。武王克商，封仲于弘农。陕县东南之虢城。

楚——半姓，子爵。系颡帝之裔，曰鬻熊。为周文、武师，有勤劳于王家，封之于荆蛮；以子男之上居之。即今丹阳南郡枝江县是也。

许——姜姓，男爵。系尧四岳伯夷之后。因先世有功，武王克商，封其裔文叔于许。即今之许州是也。

秦——嬴姓，伯爵。系颡帝之裔。因先世有功，武王克商，封其裔柏翳于秦。即今之陕西西安府是也。



State of Huo — surnamed Ji, count, brother of King Wu, named Ji Shuchu. He was granted the state of Huo (today's Pingyang Prefecture, Shanxi Province).

State of Wei — surnamed Ji, marquis, brother of King Wu by the same mother. He was appointed Grand Minister of National Public Safety and was known as Uncle Kang, because he had a piece of land there. He was granted land at Wei (today's Jizhou, Hebei Province).

State of Teng — surnamed Ji, marquis, brother of King Wu, named Ji Shuxiao. He was granted land at Teng (today's Zhangqiu County, Shandong Province).

State of Jin — surnamed Ji, marquis, the youngest son of King Wu. He was called Tang Shuyu as he was granted land at Tang, but was soon re-granted land at Jin (today's Pingyang Prefecture, Shanxi Province).

State of Wu — surnamed Ji, viscount, grandson of Taibo, the eldest son of Tai Wang. He was granted land at Wu (today's Suzhou, Jiangsu Province).

State of Yu — surnamed Ji, duke, grandson of Zhong Yong, son of Tai Wang. He was granted land at Yu, in Taiyang County of Hedong District.

State of Guo — surnamed Ji, duke, named Guo Zhong, son of Emperor Wang Ji, brother of King Wen. Both brothers, Guo Zhong and Guo Shu, were ministers in King Wen's court. He loved them very much and called them the two Guos. Guo Zhong was granted land at Hongnong, (in today's southeast of Shaanxi Province).

State of Chu — surnamed Mi, viscount, descendant of the ancient Emperor Zhuan Xu, named Yu Xiong. He served as tutor for both King Wen and King Wu. He was granted land at Jinmen, (somewhere in today's Hubei Province).

State of Xu — surnamed Jiang, baron, descendant of Emperor Yao. For his ancestors achievements, Wen Shu was granted land at Xu (today's Xuzhou).

State of Qin — surnamed Ying, count, descendant of the ancient Emperor Zhuan Xu. For his ancestor's achievements, Bai Yi was granted land at Qin (today's Xian, Shaanxi Province).





莒——嬴姓，子爵。系少昊之后。因先世有功，武王克商，封其后兹与期于莒城。即今之莒县是也。

纪——姜姓，侯爵。系太公之次子。武王念太公之功，分封于纪。即今东莞剧县是也。

邾——曹姓，子爵。系陆终第五子晏安之后。武王克商，封其裔曹挟于邾。即今之山东邹县是也。

薛——仕姓，侯爵。黄帝之后。因世有功，武王克商，封其后裔奚仲于薛。即今山东沂州是也。

宋——子姓，公爵。系商王帝乙之长庶子曰微子启；因纣王不道，微子抱祭器归周。武王克商，封微子于宋。即今之睢阳县是也。

杞——姒姓，伯爵。系夏禹王之后，武王克商，求夏禹苗裔，得东楼公，封于杞，以奉禹祀。即今之开封府雍丘县是也。

陈——妘姓，侯爵。系帝舜之后。其裔孙阍父作武王陶正，能利器用，王实敕之。以元女大姬下嫁其子满，而封诸陈，使奉虞帝祀。其地在太皞之墟，即今之陈县是也。

焦——伊耆姓，侯爵。系神农之后。因先世之功，武王克商，封之于焦。即今之弘农陕县是也。

蓟——姬姓，侯爵。系帝尧之裔。武王克商，求其后，封之于蓟，以奉唐帝之祀。即今之北京顺天府是也。

高丽——子姓，乃殷贤臣，曰箕子，亦商王之裔。因不肯臣事于周，武王请见，乃陈《洪范九畴》一篇而



State of Ju—surnamed Ying, viscount, descendant of the ancient Emperor Shao Hao. For his ancestor's achievements, Shu Wuqi was granted land at Ju (today's Ju County).

State of Ji—surnamed Jiang, marquis, second son of Jiang Ziya. In recognition of his father's service, He was granted land at Ji (today's Dongguanju County).

State of Zhu—surnamed Cao, viscount, named Cao Xie, descendant of Yan An. He was granted land at Zhu (today's Zou County, Shandong Province).

State of Xue—surnamed Shi, marquis, descendant of the ancient Yellow Emperor. For his ancestor's achievements, Xi Zhong was granted land at Xue (today's Yizhou, Shandong Province).

State of Song—surnamed Zi, duke, named Wei Ziqi, the eldest son of King Diyi of the Shang Dynasty. As King Zhou was improper and not virtuous, Prince Wei Zi took the sacrificial utensils to West Qi. He was later granted land at Song (today's Suiyang County).

State of Qi—surnamed Si, count, descendant of the ancient Emperor Yu. After subduing Shang, King Wu searched for the descendants of Emperor Yu. He found Dong Lougong and granted him land at Qi (today's Yongqiu County, Henan Province).

State of Chen—surnamed Wei, marquis, descendant of the ancient Emperor Shun, named Yu Fu. He served King Wu as an artisan of pottery. King Wu married his eldest daughter to Yu Fu's son and granted him land at Chen (today's Chen County).

State of Jiao—surnamed Yi Qi, marquis, descendant of the ancient Emperor Shen Nong. For his ancestor's achievements, he was granted land at Jiao (today's Hongnong in Shan County).

State of Ji—surnamed Ji, marquis, descendant of the ancient Emperor Yao. When the new dynasty was established, King Wu found a descendant of Emperor Yao and granted him land at Ji (today's Beijing).

State of Korea—surnamed Zi, known as Ji Zi, descendant and virtuous minister of the Shang Dynasty. As he was unwilling to serve King



去之辽东。武王即其地以封之。至今乃其子孙，即朝鲜国是也。

其亲王、功臣、帝王后裔，共封有七十二国。今录其最著者。其余如越封于会稽，向封于谯国，凡封于汲郡，伯封于东平，郤封于济阴，邓封于赖川，戎封于陈留，芮封于冯翊，极封为附庸，穀封于南阳，牟封于泰山，葛封于梁国，郈封为附庸，谭封于平陵，遂封于济北，滑封于河南，郟封于东平，刑封于襄国，江封于汝南，冀封于皮县，徐封于下邳，舒封于庐江，弦封于弋阳，郟封于琅玕，厉封于义阳，项封于汝阴，英附于楚，申封于南阳，共封于汲郡，夷封于城阳等国，不悉详记。如南宫适、散宜生、閎夭等，各分列茅土有差。即于其日大排筵宴，庆贺功臣、亲王、文武等官。又开库藏，将金银宝物悉分于诸侯人等。众人俱各痛饮，尽醉而散。次日，各上谢表，陛辞天子，各归本国。后人有诗为证：

一举戎衣定大周，分茅列土赐诸侯。三王漫道家天下，全仗屏藩立远谋。

话说众人各领封敕，俱望本国以赴职任，惟御弟周公旦、召公奭在朝辅相王室。武王乃谓周公曰：“镐京为天下之中，真乃帝王之居。”于是命召公迁都于镐京，即今陕西西安府咸阳县是也。武王谓：“师尚父年老，不便在朝。”乃厚其赐赉，赐以宫女、黄金、蜀锦，镇国宝器黄钺、白旄，得专征伐，为诸侯之长，令其之国，以享安康之福。

次日，子牙入朝，拜谢赐赉，陛辞之国。武王乃率百官钱送于南郊。子牙叩首谢恩曰：“臣蒙陛下赐令之国，不得朝



Zhou, he moved far away to the Liaodong Peninsula. King Wu granted him land in the place now known as Korea.

There were seventy-two states granted in all. Nangong Kuo, San Yisheng, Hong Yao, and many others were given land and honorable titles as well.

That same day King Wu held a grand banquet to celebrate and congratulate the new dukes, marquises, and others granted land. Finally, the king's treasure houses were opened to share out gold, silver, jewels, and money among the nobles. They toasted each other and drank happily, not dispersing until late that night.

The next day, after all the newly appointed nobles sent King Wu letters of thanks and farewell, they left to take up their various posts. Only Ji Dan and Shao Shi, King Wu's two younger brothers, remained in the court to handle administrative affairs.

"Gaojing is located in the center of the country and is therefore the most suitable place for the capital," King Wu said to Ji Dan. The king then ordered Shao Shi to arrange the transfer of the capital from West Qi to Gaojing. Gaojing was located to the north of Xi'an in Shaanxi Province (today's Xianyang County).

"Prime Minister!" King Wu said to Jiang Ziya one day, "You are old now and may find it inconvenient to continue your service in the court. It would do you good to relax in your own state."

King Wu gave Jiang Ziya precious jewels, a yellow axe, and the white scepter, representing leadership over all the dukes. Jiang was also authorized to attack any state in a punitive expedition if necessary. The next day, Jiang appeared at court to thank King Wu before leaving the capital. King Wu and his ministers then escorted Jiang as far as the southern suburb. Jiang kowtowed to thank the king and said, "As you have so kindly granted me the state of Qi, I shall be unable to serve you and be at



夕侍奉左右，今日一别，不知何日再睹天颜也！”言罢，不胜伤感。武王慰之曰：“朕因相父年迈，多有勤劳于王室，欲令相父之国，以享安康之福，不再劳相父在此朝夕勤劬耳。”子牙再三拜谢曰：“陛下念臣至此，臣将何以报陛下知遇之恩也！”其日君臣分别，子牙拜送武王与百官进城，子牙方才就道，往齐国而去。太公至齐，因思：“昔日下山至朝歌时，深蒙宋异人百般恩义，因王事多艰，一向未曾图报；今天下大定，不乘此时修候，是忘恩负义之人耳。”乃遣一使臣，赍黄金千斤，锦衣，玉帛，修书一封，前往朝歌，问候宋异人。使臣离了齐国，一路行来，不觉一日来到朝歌。其时宋异人夫妇已死，止有儿子掌管家私，反觉比往时更胜几倍。其日收了礼物，修回书与来使至齐，回复了太公。太公在齐，治国有法，使民以时；不五越月，而齐国大治。——后子牙薨，公子灶嗣位，至小白，相管仲，伯天下，“春秋”赖之。后至康公，方为田氏所灭。此是后事，亦不必表。



your side day and night. I hate to leave you, for I don't know when we'll have the chance to meet again."

King Wu comforted Jiang, saying "Prime Minister, you are old and have already served the royal court for so many years. I think you should return to your own state to rest and enjoy the blessings of peace and good health. I don't expect you to work hard here any longer."

Jiang Ziya thanked him again and again. "How can I ever return your magnificent grace? You are always so kind to me," he said.

Thus, King Wu and Jiang Ziya separated that day. King Wu and his ministers returned to the capital, while Jiang Ziya went on his way to the state of Qi in Shandong.

When he had settled in, Jiang Ziya thought, "Many years ago when I left Mount Kunlun for Zhaoge, I was treated kindly by my sworn brother, Song Yiren. I was so busy handling state affairs, I never had the chance to express my thanks. Now that everything is settled, it would be most ungrateful if I didn't send him a letter with my best regards and a small gift."

Jiang Ziya sent a special messenger to Zhaoge with a letter and a thousand catties of gold to pay his respects to Song Yiren and his wife.

A few days later, the messenger found that unfortunately both Song and his wife had passed away. Song's son, however, had taken over as head of the family property and was managing their business enterprises so well that he was more prosperous than ever. He received the letter and gift, and sent the messenger back to express his thanks.

Jiang Ziya governed his state according to the law and directed the people to work properly. After five months, everything was in good order, and everyone was living peacefully and happily.

After Jiang Ziya passed away, his son Zhao succeeded him as ruler of the state. Xiao Bai, his later descendant, appointed Guan Zhong as prime minister, and Qi ruled superior over all the states during the Spring and Autumn Period of the Zhou Dynasty. In the days of Kang Gong, the Qi state was taken over by the Tian family.



且说武王西都长安，武王垂拱而治，海内清平，万民乐业，天下熙熙皞皞，顺帝之则。真一戎衣而天下大定，不逊尧舜之揖让也。——后武王崩，成王立，周公辅相之，戡定内难，天下复睹太平。自太公开基，周公赞襄，遂成周家八百年基业。然子牙、周公之鸿功伟烈，充塞乎天地之间矣。后人诗单赞子牙斩将封神，开周家不世之基以美之：

宝符秘篆出先天，斩将封神合往愆。赖赐昆仑承旨渥，  
名班册籍注铨编。斗瘟雷火分前后，神鬼人仙任倒颠。  
自是修持凭造化，故教伐纣洗腥膻。

又有诗赞周公辅相成王，戡定内难，为开基首功，而又有十乱以襄之，诗曰：

天潢分派足承祧，继述訏谟更自饶。岂独簪缨资启沃，  
还从剑履秩宗朝。和邦协佐能戡乱，典礼咸称善补貂。  
总为周家多福荫，天生十乱始同调。

At Gaojing, King Wu ruled the country well, enabling all within the four seas to enjoy peace. The people lived happily and everyone prospered. King Wu was a virtuous ruler just like the ancient emperors Yao and Shun. After King Wu's death, King Cheng succeeded to the throne, with the assistance of his uncle, Ji Dan. The country continued to enjoy peace and prosperity. The Zhou Dynasty lasted a full eight hundred years from the days when Jiang Ziya launched his attacks against King Zhou and Ji Dan succeeded him as prime minister.





[ G e n e r a l I n f o r m a t i o n ]

书名 = 大中华文库：封神演义 ( 、 、 、 ) 汉英对照

作者 = (明) 许仲琳编 顾执中译

页数 = 2145

出版社 = 新世界出版社

出版日期 = 2000年第1版

SS号 = 11109401

DX号 = 000002246307

url = <http://book2.duxiu.com/bookDetail.jsp?dxNumber=000002246307&d=F64525E3D2946616947611CA2DCBA205&fenlei=0804011204&sw=%B4%F3%D6%D0%BB%AA%CE%C4%BF%E2>

封面  
书名  
版权  
前言  
目录

- 第一回 纣王女娲宫进香  
第二回 冀州侯苏护反商  
第三回 姬昌解围进妲己  
第四回 恩州驿狐狸死妲己  
第五回 云中子进剑除妖  
第六回 纣王无道造炮烙  
第七回 费仲计废姜皇后  
第八回 方弼方相反朝歌  
第九回 商容九间殿死节  
第十回 姬伯燕山收雷震  
第十一回 姜里城囚西伯侯  
第十二回 陈塘关哪吒出世  
第十三回 太乙真人收石矶  
第十四回 哪吒现莲花化身  
第十五回 昆仑山子牙下山  
第十六回 子牙火烧琵琶精  
第十七回 纣王无道造蚕盆  
第十八回 子牙谏主隐磻溪  
第十九回 伯邑考进贡赎罪  
第二十回 散宜生私通费尤  
第二十一回 文王夸官逃五关  
第二十二回 西伯侯文王吐子  
第二十三回 文王夜梦飞熊兆  
第二十四回 渭水文王聘子牙  
第二十五回 苏妲己请妖赴宴  
第二十六回 妲己设计害比干  
第二十七回 太师回兵陈十策  
第二十八回 子牙兵伐崇侯虎  
第二十九回 斩侯虎文王托孤  
第三十回 周纪激反武成王  
第三十一回 闻太师驱兵追袭  
第三十二回 黄天化潼关会父  
第三十三回 黄飞虎泗水大战  
第三十四回 飞虎归周见子牙  
第三十五回 晁田兵探西岐事  
第三十六回 张桂芳奉诏西征  
第三十七回 姜子牙一上昆仑  
第三十八回 四圣西岐会子牙  
第三十九回 姜子牙冰冻岐山

- 第四十回 四天王遇丙灵公  
第四十一回 闻太师兵伐西岐  
第四十二回 黄花山收邓辛张陶  
第四十三回 闻太师西岐大战  
第四十四回 子牙魂游昆仑山  
第四十五回 燃灯议破十绝阵  
第四十六回 广成子破金光阵  
第四十七回 公明辅佐闻太师  
第四十八回 陆压献计射公明  
第四十九回 武王失陷红沙阵  
第五十回 三姑计摆黄河阵  
第五十一回 子牙劫营破闻仲  
第五十二回 绝龙岭闻仲归天  
第五十三回 邓九公奉敕西征  
第五十四回 土行孙立功显耀  
第五十五回 土行孙归伏西岐  
第五十六回 子牙设计收九公  
第五十七回 冀州侯苏护伐西岐  
第五十八回 子牙西岐逢吕岳  
第五十九回 殷洪下山收四将  
第六十回 马元下山助殷洪  
第六十一回 太极图殷洪绝命  
第六十二回 张山李锦伐西岐  
第六十三回 申公豹说反殷郊  
第六十四回 罗宣火焚西岐城  
第六十五回 殷郊岐山受犁锄  
第六十六回 洪锦西岐城大战  
第六十七回 姜子牙金台拜将  
第六十八回 首阳山夷齐阻兵  
第六十九回 孔宣兵阻金鸡岭  
第七十回 准提道人收孔宣  
第七十一回 姜子牙三路分兵  
第七十二回 广成子三谒碧游宫  
第七十三回 青龙关飞虎折兵  
第七十四回 哼哈二将显神通  
第七十五回 土行孙盗骑陷身  
第七十六回 郑伦捉将取汜水  
第七十七回 老子一气化三清  
第七十八回 三教会破诛仙阵  
第七十九回 穿云关四将被擒  
第八十回 杨任下山破瘟司  
第八十一回 子牙潼关遇痘神  
第八十二回 三教大会万仙阵  
第八十三回 三大师收狮象吼

- 第八十四回 子牙兵取临潼关  
第八十五回 邓芮二侯归周主  
第八十六回 ？县五岳归天  
第八十七回 土行孙夫妻阵亡  
第八十八回 武王白鱼跃龙舟  
第八十九回 纣王敲骨剖孕妇  
第九十回 子牙捉神荼郁垒  
第九十一回 蟠龙岭烧邬文化  
第九十二回 杨戩哪吒收七怪  
第九十三回 金吒智取游魂关  
第九十四回 文焕怒斩殷破败  
第九十五回 子牙暴纣王十罪  
第九十六回 子牙发柬擒妲己  
第九十七回 摘星楼纣王自焚  
第九十八回 周武王鹿台散财  
第九十九回 姜子牙归国封神  
第一百回 武王封列国诸侯